<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>What Is a Computer?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Computer Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>Early Operating Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>Personal, Distributed and Client/Server Computing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>The Internet and the World Wide Web</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>Machine Languages, Assembly Languages and High-Level Languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>History of C and C++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>History of Java</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>Java Class Libraries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>FORTRAN, COBOL, Pascal and Ada</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>BASIC, Visual Basic, Visual C++, C# and .NET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>Typical Java Development Environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.14</td>
<td>Notes about Java and Java How to Program, Sixth Edition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>Test-Driving a Java Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>Software Engineering Case Study: Introduction to Object Technology and the UML (Required)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.17</td>
<td>Wrap-Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>Web Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terminology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-Review Exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Answers to Self-Review Exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercises</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 2. Introduction to Java Applications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>First Program in Java: Printing a Line of Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Modifying Our First Java Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>Displaying Text with printf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>Another Java Application: Adding Integers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>Memory Concepts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.7</td>
<td>Arithmetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>Decision Making: Equality and Relational Operators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>(Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Examining the Requirements Document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.10</td>
<td>Wrap-Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terminology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-Review Exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Answers to Self-Review Exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercises</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 3. Introduction to Classes and Objects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 17.3. Autoboxing and Auto-Unboxing</td>
<td>819</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 17.4. Self-Referential Classes</td>
<td>820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 17.5. Dynamic Memory Allocation</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 17.6. Linked Lists</td>
<td>821</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 17.7. Stacks</td>
<td>832</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 17.8. Queues</td>
<td>836</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 17.9. Trees</td>
<td>838</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 17.10. Wrap-Up</td>
<td>845</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>846</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminology</td>
<td>847</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-Review Exercises</td>
<td>848</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answers to Self-Review Exercises</td>
<td>849</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises</td>
<td>850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Special Section: Building Your Own Compiler</td>
<td>855</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 18. Generics</td>
<td>869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.1. Introduction</td>
<td>870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.2. Motivation for Generic Methods</td>
<td>871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.3. Generic Methods: Implementation and Compile-Time Translation</td>
<td>873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.4. Additional Compile-Time Translation Issues: Methods That Use a Type Parameter as the Return Type</td>
<td>876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.5. Overloading Generic Methods</td>
<td>879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.6. Generic Classes</td>
<td>879</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.7. Raw Types</td>
<td>890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.8. Wildcards in Methods That Accept Type Parameters</td>
<td>891</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.9. Generics and Inheritance: Notes</td>
<td>898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.10. Wrap-Up</td>
<td>898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 18.11. Internet and Web Resources</td>
<td>899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary</td>
<td>899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminology</td>
<td>901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self-Review Exercises</td>
<td>901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answers to Self-Review Exercises</td>
<td>902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercises</td>
<td>902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chapter 19. Collections</td>
<td>904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.1. Introduction</td>
<td>905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.2. Collections Overview</td>
<td>906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.3. Class Arrays</td>
<td>907</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.4. Interface Collection and Class Collections</td>
<td>910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.5. Lists</td>
<td>911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.6. Collections Algorithms</td>
<td>922</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.7. Stack Class of Package java.util</td>
<td>935</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.8. Class PriorityQueue and Interface Queue</td>
<td>938</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.9. Sets</td>
<td>939</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.10. Maps</td>
<td>942</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 19.11. Properties Class</td>
<td>946</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 25. Accessing Databases with JDBC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.2</td>
<td>Relational Databases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.3</td>
<td>Relational Database Overview: The books Database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>SQL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>Instructions to install MySQL and MySQL Connector/J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.6</td>
<td>Instructions on Setting MySQL User Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.7</td>
<td>Creating Database books in MySQL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.8</td>
<td>Manipulating Databases with JDBC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.9</td>
<td>Stored Procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.10</td>
<td>RowSet Interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.11</td>
<td>Wrap-Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.12</td>
<td>Internet and Web Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recommended Readings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terminology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-Review Exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Answers to Self-Review Exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercises</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 26. Servlets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.2</td>
<td>Servlet Overview and Architecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>Setting Up the Apache Tomcat Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.4</td>
<td>Handling HTTP get Requests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.5</td>
<td>Handling HTTP get Requests Containing Data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>Handling HTTP post Requests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.7</td>
<td>Redirecting Requests to Other Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.8</td>
<td>Multitier Applications: Using JDBC from a Servlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>Welcome Files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.10</td>
<td>Wrap-Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26.11</td>
<td>Internet and Web Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Terminology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Self-Review Exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Answers to Self-Review Exercises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exercises</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 27. JavaServer Pages (JSP)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>27.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.2</td>
<td>JavaServer Pages Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.3</td>
<td>First JSP Example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.4</td>
<td>Implicit Objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27.5</td>
<td>Scripting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Trademarks

Java and all Java-based marks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Pearson Education is independent of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Microsoft, Microsoft® Internet Explorer and the Windows logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Netscape browser window © 2004 Netscape Communications Corporation. Used with permission. Netscape Communications has not authorized, sponsored, endorsed, or approved this publication and is not responsible for its content.

MySQL is a registered trademark of MySQL AB in the United States, the European Union and other countries.

Copyright® 19992002 The Apache Software Foundation. All Rights Reserved.

Dedication

In memory of Edsger W. Dijkstra:

We continue to learn from your writings every day.

Harvey M. Deitel and Paul J. Deitel
Deitel® Books, Cyber Classrooms, Complete Training Courses and Web-Based Training Courses published by Prentice Hall

How To Program Series

Advanced Java™ 2 Platform How to Program

C How to Program, 4/E

C++ How to Program, 4/E

C# How to Program

e-Business and e-Commerce How to Program

Internet and World Wide Web How to Program, 3/E

Java How to Program, 6/E

Small Java™ How to Program, 6/E

Perl How to Program

Python How to Program

Visual C++® .NET How to Program

Visual Basic® 6 How to Program

Visual Basic® .NET How to Program, 2/E

Wireless Internet & Mobile Business How to Program

XML How to Program

Simply Series
Simply C++: An Application-Driven Tutorial Approach

Simply C#: An Application-Driven Tutorial Approach

Simply Java™ Programming: An Application-Driven Tutorial Approach


.NET How to Program Series

C# How to Program

Visual Basic® .NET How to Program, 2/E

Visual C++® .NET How to Program

For Managers Series

e-Business and e-Commerce for Managers

Visual Studio® Series

C# How to Program

Visual Basic® .NET How to Program, 2/E

Getting Started with Microsoft® Visual C++® 6 with an Introduction to MFC

Visual Basic® 6 How to Program

Also Available

e-books
Premium CourseCompass, WebCT and Blackboard Multimedia Cyber Classroom versions

Pearson Choices: SafariX

Multimedia Cyber Classroom and Web-Based Training Series

C++ Multimedia Cyber Classroom, 4/E

C# Multimedia Cyber Classroom

e-Business and e-Commerce Multimedia Cyber Classroom

Internet and World Wide Web Multimedia Cyber Classroom, 2/E

Java™ 2 Multimedia Cyber Classroom, 5/E

Perl Multimedia Cyber Classroom

Python Multimedia Cyber Classroom

Visual Basic® 6 Multimedia Cyber Classroom

Visual Basic® .NET Multimedia Cyber Classroom, 2/E

Wireless Internet & Mobile Business Programming Multimedia Cyber Classroom

XML Multimedia Cyber Classroom

The Complete Training Course Series

The Complete C++ Training Course, 4/E

The Complete C# Training Course

The Complete e-Business and e-Commerce Programming Training Course
The Complete Internet and World Wide Web Programming Training Course, 2/E

The Complete Java™ 2 Training Course, 5/E

The Complete Perl Training Course

The Complete Python Training Course

The Complete Visual Basic® 6 Training Course

The Complete Visual Basic® .NET Training Course, 2/E

The Complete Wireless Internet & Mobile Business Programming Training Course

The Complete XML Programming Training Course

To follow the Deitel publishing program, please register at:
www.deitel.com/newsletter/subscribe.html
for the free DEITEL® BUZZ ONLINE e-mail newsletter.

To communicate with the authors, send e-mail to:
deitel@deitel.com

For information on corporate on-site seminars offered by Deitel & Associates, Inc. worldwide, visit:
www.deitel.com or write to deitel@deitel.com

For continuing updates on Prentice Hall/Deitel publications visit:
www.deitel.com,
www.prenhall.com/deitel or
www.InformIT.com/deitel
Preface

"Live in fragments no longer, only connect."

Edgar Morgan Foster

Welcome to Java and Java How to Program, Sixth Edition! At Deitel & Associates, we write computer science textbooks and professional books. This book was a joy to create. To start, we put the fifth edition of Java How to Program under the microscope:

- We audited the presentation against the most recent ACM/IEEE curriculum recommendations and the Computer Science Advanced Placement Examination.

- All of the chapters have been significantly updated and upgraded.

- We changed to an early classes and objects pedagogy. Now students build their first reusable classes starting in Chapter 3.

- All of the GUI and graphics in the early chapters has been replaced by carefully paced optional sections in Chapters 3, 10 with two special exercise sections in Chapters 11 and 12. Instructors have a broad choice of the amount of GUI and graphics to cover from none, to a 10-section introductory sequence, to a deep treatment in Chapters 11, 12 and 22.

- We updated our object-oriented presentation to use the latest version of the UML (Unified Modeling Language) UML™ 2.0 the industry-standard graphical language for modeling object-oriented systems.

- We replaced the optional elevator simulator case study from the previous edition with a new optional OOD/UML automated teller machine (ATM) case study in Chapters 18 and 10. The new case study is much simpler and more attractive for first and second programming courses.

- Several multi-section object-oriented programming case studies have been added.

- We incorporated key new features of Sun Microsystems' latest release of Java the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition version 5.0 (J2SE 5.0).
The design of the book has been completely revised. This new design uses color, fonts and various design elements to enhance a student's learning experience.

All of this has been carefully scrutinized by a team of 37 distinguished academic and industry reviewers.

We believe that this book and its support materials have everything instructors and students need for an informative, interesting, challenging and entertaining Java educational experience. In this Preface, we overview various conventions used in the book, such as syntax coloring the code examples, "code washing" and code highlighting. We discuss the software bundled with the book as well as the comprehensive suite of educational materials that help instructors maximize their students' learning experience, including the Instructor's Resource CD, PowerPoint® Slide lecture notes, lab manual, companion Web site, course management systems, SafariX (Pearson Education's WebBook publications) and more.

As you read this book, if you have questions, send an e-mail to deitel@deitel.com; we will respond promptly. Please visit our Web site, www.deitel.com, regularly and be sure to sign up for the free Deitel® Buzz Online e-mail newsletter at www.deitel.com/newsletter/subscribe.html. We use the Web site and the newsletter to keep our readers and industry clients informed of the latest news on Deitel publications and services. Please check the Web site occasionally for errata, updates regarding the Java software, free downloads and other resources.
Features in *Java How to Program, 6/e*

This new edition contains many new and enhanced features including:

**Updated for the Java 2 Platform Standard Edition 5.0 (J2SE 5.0)**

We updated entire text to reflect the latest release of J2SE 5.0. New topics include:

- obtaining formatted input with class `Scanner`
- displaying formatted output with the `System.out` object's `printf` method
- using enhanced `for` statements to process array elements and collections
- declaring methods with variable-length argument lists ("varargs")
- using `enum` classes that declare sets of constants
- importing the `static` members of one class for use in another
- converting primitive-type values to type-wrapper objects and vice versa using autoboxing and auto-unboxing, respectively
- using generics to create general models of methods and classes that can be declared once, but used with many different data types
- using the generics-enhanced data structures of the Collections API
- using the Concurrency API to implement multithreaded applications
- using JDBC `RowSets` to access data in a database

In addition, we carefully audited the manuscript against the *Java Language*...
Specification (available at java.sun.com/docs/books/jls/index.html). The programs you create as you study this text should work with any J2SE 5.0 compatible Java platform.

[Note: Sun Microsystems recently renamed J2SE from the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition 1.5.0 to the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition 5.0. However, Sun decided not to replace all occurrences of 1.5.0 with 5.0 in the online Java documentation (available at java.sun.com/j2se/1.5.0/docs/api/index.html) and in the software installation directory (which is called jdk1.5.0). Sun's Web site accepts URLs that replace 1.5.0 with 5.0. For example, you can use the URL java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/index.html to access the online documentation.]

New Interior Design

Working with the creative services team at Prentice Hall, we redesigned the interior styles for our How to Program Series. In response to reader requests, we now place the key terms and the index's page reference for each defining occurrence in blue, bold style text for easier reference. We emphasize on-screen components in the bold Helvetica font (e.g., the File menu) and emphasize Java program text in the Lucida font (for example, int x = 5).

[Page xxvii]

Syntax Coloring

This book is presented in full color to show programs and their outputs as they typically appear on a computer screen. We syntax color all the Java code, as most Java integrated-development environments and code editors do. This greatly improves code readability an especially important goal, given that this book contains 20,383 lines of code. Our syntax-coloring conventions are as follows:

- comments appear in green
- keywords appear in dark blue
- errors and JSP scriptlet delimiters appear in red
- constants and literal values appear in light blue
- all other code appears in black
Code Highlighting

Extensive code highlighting makes it easy for readers to spot each program's featured segments and helps students review the material rapidly when preparing for exams or labs.

"Code Washing"

"Code washing" is our term for applying comments, using meaningful identifiers, applying uniform indentation conventions and using vertical spacing to highlight significant program units. This process results in programs that are easy to read and self-documenting. We have extensively "code washed" of all the source-code programs in the text and in the book's ancillaries. We have worked hard to make our code exemplary.

Early Classes and Objects Approach

Students are still introduced to the basic concepts and terminology of object technology in Chapter 1. In the previous edition, students began developing their customized classes and objects in Chapter 8, but in this edition, they start doing that in our completely new Chapter 3. Chapters 4-7 have been carefully rewritten from an "early classes and objects approach." For all intents and purposes, this new edition is object-oriented from the start and throughout the text. Moving the discussion of objects and classes to earlier chapters gets students "thinking about objects" immediately and mastering these concepts more thoroughly. Java is not trivial by any means, but it's fun to program with, and students can see immediate results. Students can get text-based and graphical programs running quickly by using Java's extensive class libraries of reusable components.

Carefully Tuned Treatment of Object-Oriented Programming in Chapters 810

We performed a high-precision upgrade of Java How to Program, 5/e.
edition is clearer and more accessible especially if you are new to object-oriented programming (OOP). We completely rewrote the OOP chapters with an integrated case study in which we develop an employee payroll hierarchy, and we motivate interfaces with a payables hierarchy.

Case Studies

This book is loaded with case studies that span multiple sections and chapters. Often we build on a class introduced earlier in the book to demonstrate new programming concepts later in the book. Students learn the new concepts in the context of applications that they already know. These case studies include the development of the:

- **GradeBook** class in *Chapters 3, 4, 5 and 7*
- ATM application in the optional OOD/UML sections of *Chapters 18 and 10*
- polymorphic drawing program in the optional GUI and Graphics track in *Chapters 312*
- **Time** class in several sections of *Chapter 8*
- **Employee** payroll application in *Chapter 9 and Chapter 10*

Integrated **GradeBook** Case Study

To reinforce our early classes presentation, we present an integrated case study using classes and objects in *Chapters 35 and 7*. We incrementally build a **GradeBook** class that represents an instructor's grade book and performs various calculations based on a set of student grades finding the average, finding the maximum and minimum, and printing a bar chart. Our goal is to familiarize students with the important concepts of objects and classes through a real-world example of a substantial class. We develop this class from the ground up, constructing methods from control statements and carefully developed algorithms, and adding instance variables and arrays as needed to enhance the functionality of the class.
GUI and Graphics Case Study (Optional)

The optional GUI and Graphics Case Study in Chapters 3 and 12 demonstrates techniques for adding visual elements to applications. It is designed for those who want to begin learning Java's powerful capabilities for creating graphical user interfaces (GUIs) and graphics. Each section introduces basic concepts and provides visual, graphical examples and complete source code. In the first few sections, we show how to create simple graphical applications. In the subsequent sections, we use the object-oriented programming concepts presented through Chapter 10 to create an application that draws a variety of shapes polymorphically. In Chapter 11, we add an event-driven GUI interface and in Chapter 12 we incorporate graphics features of Java 2D.

Unified Modeling Language (UML) Using the UML 2.0 to Develop an Object-Oriented Design of an ATM

The Unified Modeling Language™ (UML) has become the preferred graphical modeling language for designing object-oriented systems. All the UML diagrams in the book comply with the new UML 2.0 specification. We use UML class diagrams to visually represent classes and their inheritance relationships, and we use UML activity diagrams to demonstrate the flow of control in each of Java's several control statements.

This Sixth Edition includes a new, optional (but highly recommended) case study on object-oriented design using the UML. The case study was reviewed by a distinguished team of OOD/UML academic and industry professionals, including leaders in the field from Rational (the creators of the UML and now a division of IBM) and the Object Management Group (responsible for maintaining and evolving the UML). In the case study, we design and fully implement the software for a simple automatic teller machine (ATM). The "Software Engineering Case Study" sections at the ends of Chapters 18 and 10 present a carefully paced introduction to object-oriented design using the UML. We introduce a concise, simplified subset of the UML 2.0, then guide the reader through a first design experience intended for the novice object-oriented designer/programmer. The case study is not an exercise; rather, it is an end-to-end learning experience that concludes with a detailed walkthrough of the complete Java code. The "Software Engineering Case Study" sections help students develop an object-oriented design to complement the object-oriented programming concepts they begin learning in Chapter 1 and implementing in Chapter 3. In the first of these sections at the end of Chapter
In Chapter 25, Accessing Databases with JDBC, demonstrates how to build data-driven applications with the JDBC™ API. Chapter 26, Servlets, and Chapter 27, JavaServer Pages (JSP), expand our treatment of Internet and Web programming topics, giving readers everything they need to develop their own Web-based applications. Readers will learn how to build so-called \( n \)-tier applications, in which the functionality provided by each tier can be distributed to separate computers across the Internet or executed on the same computer. In particular, we build a three-tier Web-based survey application and a three-tier Web-based guest-book application. Each application's information is stored in the application's data tier in this book, a database implemented with MySQL (a trial version is on the CD that accompanies this book). The user enters requests and receives responses at each application's client tier, which is typically a computer running a Web browser such as Microsoft Internet Explorer or Netscape. Web browsers, of course, know how to communicate with Web sites throughout the Internet. The middle tier contains both a Web server and one or more application-specific servlets (Java programs that extend the server to handle requests from client browsers) or JavaServer Pages (an extension of servlets that simplifies handling requests and formatting responses to client browsers). We use Apache's Tomcat Web server
for these examples. Tomcat, which is the reference implementation for the servlets and JavaServer Pages technologies, is included on the CD that accompanies this book and is available free for download from www.apache.org. Tomcat communicates with client Web browsers across the Internet using the HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP) the foundation of the World Wide Web. We discuss the crucial role of the Web server in Web programming and provide extensive examples demonstrating interactions between a Web browser and a Web server.
Teaching Approach

*Java How to Program, 6/e* contains a rich collection of examples, exercises and projects drawn from many fields to provide the student with a chance to solve interesting real-world problems. The book concentrates on the principles of good software engineering and stresses program clarity. We avoid arcane terminology and syntax specifications in favor of teaching by example. Our code examples have been tested on popular Java platforms. We are educators who teach leading-edge topics in industry classrooms worldwide. Dr. Harvey M. Deitel has 20 years of college teaching experience and 15 years of industry teaching experience. Paul Deitel has 12 years of industry teaching experience and is one of the world's most experienced Java corporate trainers, having taught about 100 Java courses at all levels since 1996 to government, industry, military and academic clients of Deitel & Associates.

Learning Java via the LIVE-CODE Approach

*Java How to Program, 6/e*, is loaded with LIVE-CODE exampleseach new concept is presented in the context of a complete working Java application that is immediately followed by one or more sample executions showing the program's inputs and outputs. This style exemplifies the way we teach and write about programming. We call this method of teaching and writing the **LIVE-CODE Approach**. We use programming languages to teach programming languages. Reading the examples in the text is much like typing and running them on a computer. We provide all the source code for the book's examples on the accompanying CD and at www.deitel.com making it easy for students to run each example as they study it.

World Wide Web Access

All of the source-code examples for *Java How to Program, 6/e*, (and our other publications) are available on the Internet as downloads from the following Web sites:
Registration is quick and easy, and the downloads are free. We suggest that students download all the examples, then run each program as they read the corresponding text discussions. Making changes to the examples and immediately seeing the effects of those changes is a great way to enhance your Java learning experience.

Objectives

Each chapter begins with a statement of objectives. This lets students know what to expect and gives them an opportunity, after reading the chapter, to determine if they have met these objectives. This is a confidence builder and a source of positive reinforcement.

Quotations

The learning objectives are followed by quotations. Some are humorous, philosophical or offer interesting insights. We hope that you will enjoy relating the quotations to the chapter material. Many of the quotations are worth a second look after reading the chapter.

Outline

The chapter outline helps students approach the material in a top-down fashion, so they can anticipate what is to come, and set a comfortable and effective learning pace.

20,383 Lines of Code in 256 Example Programs (with Program Outputs)

Our Live-Code programs range in size from just a few lines of code to substantial examples containing hundreds of lines of code. Each program is followed by a window containing the outputs produced when the program is
run, so students can confirm that the programs run as expected. Relating outputs to the program statements that produce them is an excellent way to learn and to reinforce concepts. Our programs demonstrate the diverse features of Java. The code is syntax colored, with Java keywords, comments and other program text each appearing in different colors. This facilitates reading the code; students will especially appreciate the syntax coloring when they read the larger programs.

816 Illustrations/Figures

An abundance of charts, tables, line drawings, programs and program outputs is included. We model the flow of control in control statements with UML activity diagrams. UML class diagrams model the fields, constructors and methods of classes. We use additional types of UML diagrams throughout our optional OOD/UML ATM case study.

481 Programming Tips

We include programming tips to help students focus on important aspects of program development. We highlight these tips in the form of Good Programming Practices, Common Programming Errors, Error-Prevention Tips, Look-and-Feel Observations, Performance Tips, Portability Tips and Software Engineering Observations. These tips and practices represent the best we have gleaned from a combined six decades of programming and teaching experience. One of our students, a mathematics major, told us that she feels this approach is like the highlighting of axioms, theorems and corollaries in mathematics books; it provides a basis on which to build good software.

Good Programming Practices

Good Programming Practices are tips for writing clear programs. These techniques help students produce programs that are more readable, self-documenting and easier to maintain.
Common Programming Errors

Students who are new to programming (or a programming language) tend to make certain errors frequently. Focusing on these Common Programming Errors reduces the likelihood that students will make the same mistakes and shortens long lines outside instructors' offices during office hours!

Error-Prevention Tips

When we first designed this "tip type," we thought we would use it strictly to tell people how to test and debug Java programs. In fact, many of the tips describe aspects of Java that reduce the likelihood of "bugs" and thus simplify the testing and debugging processes.

Look-and-Feel Observations

Look-and-Feel Observations highlight graphical user interface conventions. These observations help students design their own graphical user interfaces in conformance with industry norms.

Performance Tips

In our experience, teaching students to write clear and understandable programs is by far the most important goal for a first programming course. But students want to write the programs that run the fastest, use the least memory, require the smallest number of keystrokes, or dazzle in other nifty ways. Students really care about performance. They want to know what they can do to "turbo charge" their programs. So we highlight opportunities for improving program performance making programs run faster or minimizing the amount of memory that they occupy.
Portability Tips

One of Java's "claims to fame" is "universal" portability, so some programmers assume that an application written in Java will automatically be "perfectly" portable across all Java platforms. Unfortunately, this is not always the case. We include Portability Tips to help students write portable code and to provide insights on how Java achieves its high degree of portability.

Software Engineering Observations

The object-oriented programming paradigm requires a complete rethinking about the way we build software. Java is an effective language for performing good software engineering. The Software Engineering Observations highlight architectural and design issues that affect the construction of software systems, especially large-scale systems. Much of what the student learns here will be useful in upper-level courses and in industry as the student begins to work with large, complex, real-world systems.

Wrap-Up Section

New in this edition, each chapter ends with a brief "wrap-up" section that recaps the topics that were presented. Each section also helps the student transition to the next chapter.

Summary (1,303 Summary Bullets)

Each chapter ends with additional pedagogical devices. We present a thorough,
An average of 45 summary bullets per chapter. This helps students review and reinforce key concepts.

**Terminology (2,388 Terms)**

We include an alphabetized list of important terms defined in each chapter, for further reinforcement. There is an average of 82 terms per chapter. Each term also appears in the index, and the defining occurrence of each term is highlighted in the index with a blue, bold page number so students can locate the definitions of terms quickly.

**701 Self-Review Exercises and Answers (Count Includes Separate Parts)**

Extensive self-review exercises and answers are included for self-study. This gives students a chance to build confidence with the material and prepare for the regular exercises. We encourage students to do all the self-review exercises and check their answers.

**874 Exercises (Count Includes Separate Parts)**

Each chapter concludes with a set of exercises, including simple recall of important terminology and concepts; writing individual Java statements; writing small portions of Java methods and classes; writing complete Java methods, classes, applications and applets; and writing major term projects. The large number of exercises across a wide variety of areas enables instructors to tailor their courses to the unique needs of their classes and vary course assignments each semester. Instructors can use these exercises to form homework assignments, short quizzes and/or major examinations. The solutions for the vast majority of the exercises are included on the Instructor's Resource CD (IRCD), which is available only to instructors through their Prentice Hall representatives. [NOTE: Please do not write to us requesting the Instructor's CD. Distribution of this ancillary is limited strictly to college instructors teaching from the book. Instructors may obtain the solutions manual only from their Prentice Hall representatives.]

Students will have access to approximately half the exercises in the book in the free, Web-based Cyber Classroom, which will be available in Spring 2005. For more information about the availability of the Cyber Classroom, please visit...
Approximately 7150 Index Entries

We have included an extensive index at the back of the book. This helps students find terms or concepts by keyword. The Index is useful to people reading the book for the first time and is especially useful to practicing programmers who use the book as a reference.

"Double Indexing" of Java LIVE-CODE Examples

Java How to Program, 6/e has 256 live-code examples and 874 exercises (including parts). We have double indexed each of the live-code examples and most of the more substantial exercises. For every source-code program in the book, we indexed the figure caption both alphabetically and as a subindex item under "Examples." This makes it easier to find examples using particular features. The more substantial exercises are also indexed both alphabetically and as subindex items under "Exercises."
Tour of the Book

In this section, we take a tour of the many capabilities of Java that we explore in *Java How to Program, 6/e*. Figure 1 illustrates the dependencies among the chapters. We recommend studying these topics in the order indicated by the arrows, though other orders are possible. This book is widely used in all levels of Java programming courses. Search the Web for "syllabus," "Java" and "Deitel" to find syllabii used with recent editions this book.

**Figure 1. Flowchart illustrating the dependencies among chapters in *Java How to Program, 6/e.*

(This item is displayed on page xxxiv in the print version)
Chapter 1 Introduction to Computers, the Internet and the Web discusses what computers are, how they work and how they are programmed. The chapter gives a brief history of the development of programming languages from machine languages, to assembly languages and to high-level languages. The origin of the Java programming language is discussed. The chapter includes an introduction to a typical Java programming environment. Chapter 1 walks readers through a "test drive" of a typical Java application. This chapter also introduces basic object technology concepts and terminology and
Chapter 2 Introduction to Java Applications provides a lightweight introduction to programming applications in the Java programming language. The chapter introduces nonprogrammers to basic programming concepts and constructs. The programs in this chapter illustrate how to display data on the screen and how to obtain data from the user at the keyboard. This chapter introduces J2SE 5.0's new Scanner class, which greatly simplifies obtaining user input. This chapter also introduces some of J2SE 5.0's new formatted output capabilities with method \texttt{System.out.printf}. Chapter 2 ends with detailed treatments of decision making and arithmetic operations.

Chapter 3 Introduction to Classes and Objects introduces classes, objects, methods, constructors and instance variables using five simple real-world examples. The first four of these begin our \textbf{case study on developing a grade-book class} that instructors can use to maintain student test scores. The first example presents a \texttt{GradeBook} class with one method that simply displays a welcome message when it is called. We show how to create an object of that class and call the method so that it displays the welcome message. The second example modifies the first by allowing the method to receive a course name as an argument and by displaying the name as part of the welcome message. The third example illustrates storing the course name in a \texttt{GradeBook} object. For this version of the class, we also show how to set the course name and obtain the course name using methods. The fourth example demonstrates how the data in a \texttt{GradeBook} object can be initialized when the object is created the initialization is performed by the class's constructor. The last example introduces floating-point numbers in the context of a bank account class that maintains a customer's balance. The chapter describes how to declare a class and use it to create an object and then discusses how to declare methods in a class to implement the class's behaviors, how to declare instance variables in a class to implement the class's attributes and how to call an object's methods to make them perform their tasks. Chapter 3 explains the differences between instance variables of a class and local variables of a method, how to use a constructor to ensure that an object's data is initialized when the object is created, and the differences between primitive and reference types.

Chapter 4 Control Statements: Part 1 focuses on the program-development process. The chapter discusses how to take a problem statement and develop a working Java program from it, including performing intermediate steps in pseudocode. The chapter introduces some primitive types and simple control
statements for decision making (if and if...else) and repetition (while). We examine counter-controlled and sentinel-controlled repetition using the GradeBook class from Chapter 3, and introduce Java's increment, decrement and assignment operators. The chapter includes two enhanced versions of the GradeBook class, each based on Chapter 3's final version. These versions each include a method that uses control statements to calculate the average of a set of student grades. In the first version, the method uses counter-controlled repetition to input 10 student grades from the user, then determines the average grade. In the second version, the method uses sentinel-controlled repetition to input an arbitrary number of grades from the user, then calculates the average of the grades that were entered. The chapter uses simple UML activity diagrams to show the flow of control through each of the control statements.

Chapter 5 Control Statements: Part 2 continues the discussions of Java control statements with examples of the for repetition statement, the do...while repetition statement, the switch selection statement, the break statement and the continue statement. We create an enhanced version of class GradeBook that uses a switch statement to count the number of A, B, C, D and F grade equivalents in a set of numeric grades entered by the user. This version uses sentinel-controlled repetition to input the grades. While reading the grades from the user, a method modifies instance variables that keep track of the sum of the grades entered and the number of grades entered, as well as the count of grades in each letter grade category. Other methods of the class then use these instance variables to perform the averaging calculation and display a summary report based on the grades entered. The chapter also discusses logical operators.

Chapter 6 Methods: A Deeper Look takes a deeper look inside objects and their methods. We discuss class-library methods and examine more closely how students can build their own methods. We present our first example of a method with multiple parameters. A portion of the chapter focuses on developing a game playing application that uses random number generation to simulate the rolling of dice. This application divides its required work into small, reusable methods. The techniques presented in Chapter 6 are essential to the production of properly organized programs, especially the larger programs that system programmers and application programmers are likely to develop. The topic of method overloading (i.e., allowing multiple methods to have the same name provided they have different "signatures") is motivated and explained clearly. We introduce the method call stack to explain how Java is able to keep track of which method is currently executing, how local variables of methods are maintained in memory and how a method knows where to return after it completes execution. Additional chapter topics include
Chapter 7 Arrays explains how to process lists and tables of values. Arrays in Java are objects, further evidence of Java's commitment to almost 100% object orientation. We discuss the structuring data in arrays of data items of the same type. The chapter presents numerous examples of both one-dimensional arrays and two-dimensional arrays. The examples investigate common array manipulations, printing bar charts, passing arrays to methods and an introduction to the field of survey data analysis (with simple statistics). The chapter includes a case study that simulates the shuffling and dealing of playing cards in a game playing application. Also, the chapter includes the final two GradeBook case study sections, in which we use arrays to store student grades for the duration of a program's execution. Previous versions of the class process a set of grades entered by the user, but do not maintain the individual grade values in instance variables of the class. Thus, repeat calculations require the user to reenter the same grades. In this chapter, we use arrays to enable an object of the GradeBook class to maintain a set of grades in memory, thus eliminating the need to repeatedly input the same set of grades. The first version of the class in this chapter stores the grades in a one-dimensional array and can produce a report containing the average of the grades, the minimum and maximum grades and a bar chart representing the grade distribution. The second version of the class in this chapter (i.e., the final version in the case study) uses a two-dimensional array to store the grades of a number of students on multiple exams in a semester. This version can calculate each student's semester average, as well as the minimum and maximum grades across all grades received for the semester. The class also produces a bar chart displaying the overall grade distribution for the semester. This chapter introduces J2SE 5.0's new enhanced for statement to traverse the elements of an array. Variable-length argument lists (new in J2SE 5.0) are also demonstrated.

Chapter 8 Objects: A Deeper Look begins a deeper discussion of objects and classes. The chapter represents a wonderful opportunity for teaching data abstraction the "right way" through a language (Java) expressly devoted to implementing new types. Building on the concepts introduced in Chapters 3-7, the chapter focuses on the essence and terminology of classes and objects. In the context of the Time class case study, Chapter 8 discusses implementing Java classes, accessing class members, enforcing information hiding with access modifiers, separating interface from implementation, using access
methods and utility methods and initializing objects with constructors. We discuss declaring and using constants, composition, the **this** reference, **static** class members and examples of popular abstract data types such as stacks and queues. We introduce the **package** statement and discuss how to create reusable packages, and present J2SE 5.0's new **static** import and **enum** capabilities. Java's **enums** are class types that can have methods, constructors and fields.

**Chapter 9 Object-Oriented Programming: Inheritance** introduces one of the most fundamental capabilities of object-oriented programming languages: inheritance which is a form of software reusability in which new classes are developed quickly and easily by absorbing the capabilities of existing classes and adding appropriate new capabilities. In the context of an **Employee hierarchy**, this substantially revised chapter presents a five-example sequence demonstrating **private** data, **protected** data and software reuse via inheritance. We begin by demonstrating a class with **private** instance variables and **public** methods to manipulate that data. Next, we implement a second class with additional capabilities. To do this, we duplicate much of the first example's code. The third example begins our discussion of inheritance and software reuse: we use the class from the first example as a superclass and inherit its data and functionality into a new subclass. This example introduces the inheritance mechanism and demonstrates that a subclass cannot access its superclass's **private** members directly. This motivates our fourth example, in which we introduce **protected** data in the superclass and demonstrate that the subclass can indeed access the **protected** data inherited from the superclass. The last example in the sequence demonstrates proper software engineering by defining the superclass's data as **private** and using the superclass's **public** methods (that were inherited by the subclass) to manipulate the superclass's **private** data in the subclass. The chapter discusses the notions of superclasses and subclasses, direct and indirect superclasses, use of constructors in superclasses and subclasses, and software engineering with inheritance. The chapter also compares inheritance (is a relationships) with composition (has a relationships).

**Chapter 10 Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism** deals with another fundamental capability of object-oriented programming: polymorphic behavior. The completely revised **Chapter 10** builds on the inheritance concepts presented in **Chapter 9** and focuses on the relationships among classes in a class hierarchy, and the powerful processing capabilities that these relationships enable. A feature of this chapter is its two polymorphism case studies: a **payroll system using an abstract class Employee** and an **accounts**
payable system using an interface Payable. Both case studies expand on the Employee hierarchy introduced in Chapter 9. The first case study processes an array of variables that contain references to Employee objects. All the objects referenced by the array elements have a common abstract superclass Employee containing the set of methods common to every class in the hierarchy. The case study demonstrates that when a method is invoked via a superclass reference, the subclass-specific version of that method is invoked. The case study also shows how a program that processes objects polymorphically can perform type-specific processing by determining the type of the object currently being processed via operator instanceof. This chapter distinguishes between abstract classes and concrete classes, and introduces interfaces Java's replacement for the feature of C++ called multiple inheritance in the context of the second payroll case study.

Chapter 11 Graphical User Interface Components: Part 1 introduces several of Java's Swing components for creating programs with user-friendly graphical user interfaces (GUIs). These platform-independent GUI components are written entirely in Java, providing them with great flexibility. Swing components can be customized to look like the computer platform on which the program executes, or they can use the standard Java look-and-feel to provide an identical user interface on all computer platforms. GUI development is a huge topic, so we divided it into two chapters. These chapters cover the material in sufficient depth to enable you to build rich user interfaces. The chapter illustrates GUI principles, the javax.swing hierarchy, labels, buttons, lists, textfields, combo boxes, checkboxes, radio buttons, panels, handling mouse events, handling keyboard events and layout managers used to position components. We present the powerful concept of nested classes that help hide implementation details. Then, the chapter demonstrates our first GUI-based applications as part of a more complete introduction to event handling. In these examples, we use nested classes to define the event handlers for several GUI components.

Chapter 12 Graphics and Java 2D presents Java's graphical capabilities. We discuss graphics contexts and graphics objects; drawing strings, characters and bytes; color and font control; screen manipulation; and paint modes and drawing lines, rectangles, rounded rectangles, three-dimensional rectangles, ovals, arcs and polygons. We introduce the Java 2D API, which provides powerful two-dimensional graphics capabilities. Figure 12.29 and Fig. 12.30 are examples of how easy it is to use the Java 2D API to create complex graphics effects such as textures and gradients.
Chapter 13 Exception Handling is one of the most important chapters in the book from the standpoint of building "mission-critical" or "business-critical" applications. Programmers need to be concerned with, "What happens when the component I call on to do a job experiences difficulty? How will that component signal that it had a problem?" To use a Java component, you need to know not only how that component behaves when "things go well," but also what exceptions that component "throws" when "things go poorly." The chapter distinguishes between Exceptions and rather serious system Errors, and distinguishes further between checked Exceptions (which the compiler requires an application to catch or declare) and unchecked Exceptions (which an application is not required to catch or declare). The chapter discusses the elements of exception handling, including Try blocks, catch blocks, finally blocks and the throw statement. The chapter also introduces Java's chained-exception facility. The material in this chapter is crucial to many of the examples in the remainder of the book.

Chapter 14 Files and Streams deals with input/output that is accomplished through streams of data directed to and from files. The chapter begins with an introduction to the data hierarchy from bits, to bytes, to fields, to records, to files. Next, Java's view of files and streams is presented as well as the differences between text files and binary files. We show how programs pass data to secondary storage devices, like disks, and how programs retrieve data already stored on those devices. We demonstrate manipulating both sequential- and random-access files. We discuss class File which programs use to obtain information about files and directories. The chapter explains how objects can be input and output in their entirety by using object serialization. We also introduce the JFileChooser dialog, which enables users of a program to easily select files. Many of the stream processing techniques demonstrated in this chapter can also be used to create applications that communicate with one another across networks (Chapter 24), such as the Internet.

[Note: The next five chapters form the core of a nice Java-specific data structures course.]

Chapter 15 Recursion (New Chapter) discusses recursive methods i.e., methods that call themselves. We discuss the notions of base cases, recursion steps and infinite recursion. We present some popular recursion examples, including factorials, the Fibonacci series, string permutations, The Towers of Hanoi and fractals. We explain how recursion works "under the hood," including the order in which method activation records are pushed on or popped off the program execution stack. We compare and contrast recursive methods and iterative methods, and explain when to choose each. We introduce recursive backtracking. The chapter exercises include recursive
approaches to: raising an integer to an integer power, visualizing recursion, greatest common divisor, palindromes, the Eight Queens problem (recursive backtracking), printing an array, minimum value in an array, star fractal, maze traversal (recursive backtracking), and generating mazes. The recursive examples and exercises of Chapter 16 and Chapter 17 include merge sort, linear search, binary search, quicksort, binary tree insert, (preorder, inorder and postorder) binary tree traversals, and various linked list manipulations.

Chapter 16 Sorting and Searching (New Chapter) discusses two of the most important classes of algorithms in Computer Science. We consider a variety of specific algorithms for each and compare them with regard to their memory consumption and processor consumption (introducing Big O notation, which indicates how hard an algorithm may have to work to solve a problem). Searching data involves determining whether a value (referred to as the search key) is present in the data and, if so, finding the value's location. In the examples and exercises of this chapter, we discuss a variety of searching algorithms, including: linear search, binary search, recursive linear search and recursive binary search; Chapter 17 discusses linear list search and the binary tree search; Chapter 19 discusses the binarySearch method of class Collections. Sorting places data in ascending or descending order based on one or more sort keys. Chapter 16 discusses through examples and exercises the selection sort, insertion sort, recursive merge sort, bubble sort, bucket sort and the recursive quicksort; Chapter 17 discusses the binary tree sort and Chapter 19 discusses the sort method of class Collections and the SortedSet collection. Chapter 16 also discusses the notion of loop invariants.

Chapter 17 Data Structures discusses the techniques used to create and manipulate dynamic data structures, such as linked lists, stacks, queues and trees. For each type of data structure, we present examples with sample outputs. Although it is valuable to know how these classes are implemented, Java programmers will quickly discover that most of the data structures they need are available in class libraries, such as Java's own java.util that we discuss in Chapter 19. This chapter also introduces the J2SE 5.0's boxing capability, which simplifies converting between primitive-type values and type-wraper objects. The chapter offers a rich selection of exercises, including a special section on building your own compiler that will enable you to compile high-level language programs into machine language code that will execute on the Simpletron simulator in the exercises of Chapter 7.

Chapter 18 Generics (New Chapter) presents one of J2SE 5.0's new features: generics. The examples demonstrate generic methods and generic classes
which enable programmers to specify, with a single method declaration, an entire range of related methods or, with a single class declaration, an entire range of related types, respectively. The chapter discusses how this new feature achieves legacy compatibility with earlier versions, such as through raw types. This chapter also introduces wildcards, a powerful generics concept that enables programmers to represent an "unknown type."

**Chapter 19 Collections** discusses the `java.util` classes of the Java Collections Framework that provide predefined implementations of many of the data structures discussed in Chapter 17. Collections provide Java programmers with a standard set of data structures for storing and retrieving data and a standard set of algorithms (i.e., procedures) that allow programmers to manipulate the data (such as searching for particular data items and sorting data into ascending or descending order). The chapter examples demonstrate collections, such as linked lists, trees, maps and sets, and algorithms for searching, sorting, finding the maximum value, finding the minimum value and so on. We also demonstrate how generics are used in the collections API.

**Chapter 20 Introduction to Applets** introduces Java applets, which are Java programs designed to be transported over the Internet and executed in Web browsers, such as Microsoft Internet Explorer, Netscape, Opera and Mozilla Firefox. The chapter shows several of the demonstration applets supplied with the JDK. We then write Java applets that perform tasks similar to the programs of Chapter 2, and we explain the similarities and differences between applets and applications. This chapter can be covered early in the book after Chapter 3. Applets are GUIs and graphical, so for a deeper understanding of Chapter 20, cover it after Chapters 11 and 12 (these prerequisites are not absolutely necessary). The next chapter and Chapter 24 present additional interesting applets.

**Chapter 21 Multimedia: Images, Animation and Audio** presents some of Java's capabilities that make programs come alive through multimedia. The chapter discusses images and image manipulation, audio, animation and video. We present an image-map application with the icons from the programming tips shown earlier in the Preface and that appear throughout the book. As the user moves the mouse pointer across the icons, the tip type is displayed. Once you have read this chapter, you will be eager to try out all these techniques, so we have included many exercises to challenge and entertain you.

**Chapter 22 Graphical User Interface Components: Part 2** continues the Swing discussion started in Chapter 11. Through its programs, tables and line
Chapter 23: Multithreading

introduces Java's capabilities that enable programmers to implement applications that can perform tasks concurrently. We introduce threads, and present a thread state transition diagram. We overview thread priorities and thread scheduling. We then present a simple example that creates three threads. Next, we introduce the producer/consumer relationship in which a producer thread places data in a shared location and a consumer thread then reads that data. In this context, we use a sequence of examples to illustrate problems that may arise when multiple threads manipulate shared data. The first example demonstrates these problems. We then introduce features of J2SE 5.0's new concurrency API and use them to "synchronize" access to the shared data to ensure correct operation. Next, we enhance the example to use a shared circular buffer in which the producer can place up to three values before the consumer attempts to read a value. The last example in the sequence reimplements the circular buffer example using J2SE 5.0's `ArrayBlockingQueue` class, which automatically synchronizes access to its contents. This is significant, because programming concurrent applications is a difficult and error-prone undertaking. The last example in the chapter demonstrates the producer/consumer relationship using the pre-J2SE 5.0 synchronization techniques. Though we present several of J2SE 5.0's lower-level synchronization features in this chapter for those who are interested, the vast majority of programmers should use the predefined classes like `ArrayBlockingQueue` to provide synchronized access to data in multithreaded applications.

[Note: The next four chapters form the core of a nice introduction to distributed computing in Java.]

Chapter 24: Networking

focuses on Java programs that communicate over computer networks. This chapter presents Java's lowest-level networking capabilities. The chapter examples illustrate an applet interacting with the browser in which it executes, creating a mini Web browser, communicating between two Java programs using streams-based sockets and communicating between two Java programs using packets of data. A key feature of the chapter is the implementation of a collaborative client/server Tic-Tac-Toe game in which two clients play Tic-Tac-Toe against each other arbitrated by a multithreaded server. The capstone example in the chapter is the `DeitelMessenger` case study, which simulates many of today's popular instant-messaging applications that enable computer users to communicate with friends, relatives and coworkers over the Internet. This 788-line,
multithreaded, client/server case study uses most of the programming techniques presented up to this point in the book.

**Chapter 25** Accessing Databases with JDBC™ discusses the JDBC API, which enables applications to access data in databases. Today's most popular database systems are relational databases. The examples in this chapter use the MySQL database management system (DBMS), which is included on the CD that accompanies the book. In the context of a database that contains information about many of our publications, this chapter introduces JDBC and uses it to connect to a MySQL database, then to manipulate its content. We discuss the Structured Query Language (SQL) and how it can be used to extract information from, insert information into and update data in a database. The examples enable you to obtain data from the database with SQL queries and display the data in a JTable GUI component. In addition, we discuss J2SE 5.0's RowSets, which simplify connecting to a database and accessing its data. In the next two chapters, we use the JDBC techniques in Chapter 25 to build data-driven three-tier Web applications.

**Chapter 26** Servlets discusses servlets, Java programs that extend the functionality of Web servers. Servlets are effective for developing Web-based solutions that interact with databases on behalf of clients, dynamically generate custom content to be displayed by browsers and maintain unique session information for each client. The Java Servlet API allows developers to add functionality to Web servers for handling client requests. Servlets are also reusable across Web servers and across platforms. This chapter demonstrates the Web's request/response mechanism (primarily with HTTP get and post requests), redirecting requests to other resources and interacting with databases through JDBC. The chapter features a three-tier client/server application that tracks users' responses to a survey. For readers not familiar with developing Web pages, the CD includes PDFs of three chapters from our book *Internet & World Wide Web How to Program, Third Edition* Introduction to XHTML: Part 1, Introduction to XHTML: Part 2 and Cascading Style Sheets (CSS). These chapters are also useful in Chapter 27.

**Chapter 27** JavaServer Pages (JSP) introduces an extension of servlet technology called JavaServer Pages (JSP). JSPs enable delivery of dynamically generated Web content, and are frequently used by Web designers and others who are not familiar with Java programming. JSPs may contain Java code in the form of scriptlets. Each JSP is compiled into a Java servlet this normally occurs the first time a JSP is requested by a client. Subsequent client requests are fulfilled by the compiled servlet. This chapter features a three-tier
client/server guest-book application that stores guest information in a database.

**Chapter 28** Formatted Output (New Chapter) presents the powerful formatting capabilities of *printf*, which is new to J2SE 5.0. We discuss *printf*'s capabilities such as rounding floating point values to a given number of decimal places, aligning columns of numbers, right justification and left justification, insertion of literal information, forcing a plus sign, printing leading zeros, using exponential notation, using octal and hexadecimal numbers, controlling field widths and precisions, and displaying dates and times in various formats. We also demonstrate formatting output with class *Formatter*.  

**Chapter 29** Strings, Characters and Regular Expressions deals with processing words, sentences, characters and groups of characters. We present classes *String*, *String-Buffer*, *Character* and *StringTokenizer*. The chapter explores Java's API for regular expressions, which enables programs to search strings for sequences of characters that match specified patterns.

**Appendix A** Operator Precedence Chart lists each of the Java operators and indicates their relative precedence and associativity.

**Appendix B** ASCII Character Set lists the characters of the ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) character set and indicates the character code value for each. Java uses the Unicode character set with 16-bit characters for representing all of the characters in the world's "commercially significant" languages. Unicode includes ASCII as a subset.

**Appendix C** Keywords and Reserved Words lists all keywords and reserved words defined in the *Java Programming Language Specification*.

**Appendix D** Primitive Types lists all primitive types defined in the *Java Programming Language Specification*.

**Appendix E (On CD)** Number Systems discusses the binary (base 2), decimal (base 10), octal (base 8) and hexadecimal (base 16) number systems.

**Appendix F (On CD)** Unicode® discusses the Unicode character set, which enables Java to display information in many languages. The appendix provides a sample Java program that displays "Welcome to Unicode" in several languages: English, Chinese, Cyrillic, French, German, Japanese, Portuguese and Spanish.
Appendix G Using the Java API Documentation introduces the Java API documentation, which provides easy-to-use information on Java's built-in packages. This appendix is important for Java novices. You should search the Java API documentation regularly to learn more about the Java API classes used in this book and additional predefined classes. Java provides thousands of them that perform all kinds of useful tasks. Reusing these classes enables you to develop applications faster. The appendix discusses the information you can find, how this information is organized, and how to navigate the Java API documentation online, including viewing a package, a class and a method. The appendix also demonstrates how to find a particular package, class or method from the index page.

Appendix H (On CD) Creating HTML Documentation with javadoc introduces the javadoc documentation generation tool. Sun Microsystems uses the javadoc tool to produce the Java API documentation that is presented in Appendix G. The example takes the reader through the javadoc documentation process. First, we introduce the comment style and tags that javadoc recognizes and uses to create documentation. Next, we discuss the commands and options used to run the utility. Finally, we examine the source files javadoc uses and the HTML files javadoc creates.

Appendix I (On CD) Bit Manipulation discusses Java's bit-manipulation operators and class BitSet. It also includes an extensive discussion of bit-manipulation operators, such as bitwise AND, bitwise inclusive OR, bitwise exclusive OR, left shift, signed right shift, unsigned right shift and complement. The appendix also discusses class BitSet, which enables the creation of bit-array-like objects for setting and getting individual bit values.

Appendix J (On CD) ATM Case Study Code contains the implementation of our case study on object-oriented design with the UML. This appendix is discussed in the overview of the case study (presented shortly).

Appendix K (On CD) Labeled break and continue Statements introduces specialized versions of the break and continue statements presented in Chapter 5. These versions are for use with nested repetition statements.

Appendix L (On CD) UML 2: Additional Diagram Types Overviews the UML 2 diagram types that are not found in the OOD/UML Case Study.

Appendix M (On CD) Design Patterns. In their book, Design Patterns, Elements of Reusable Object-Oriented Software, the "Gang of Four" (E.
Gamma, R. Helm, R. Johnson, and J. Vlissides) described 23 design patterns that provide proven architectures for building object-oriented software systems. We briefly discuss 18 of their patterns: creational patterns address issues related to object creation; structural patterns organize classes and objects in a system; and behavioral patterns offer strategies for modeling how objects collaborate with one another. We also discuss concurrency patterns, which are useful in multithreaded systems, and architectural patterns, which help designers assign functionality to subsystems. We mention how Java API packages take advantage of design patterns and explain how certain programs in this book use design patterns. Design patterns are used mostly in the J2EE (Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition) community, where systems tend to be large and complex.

Appendix N (On CD) Using the Debugger demonstrates key features of the J2SE Development Kit (JDK) version 5.0's built-in debugger, which allows a programmer to monitor the execution of applications to locate and remove logic errors. The appendix presents step-by-step instructions, so students learn how to use the debugger in a hands-on manner.
A Tour of the Optional Case Study on Object-Oriented Design with the UML

In this section we tour the book's optional case study of object-oriented design with the UML. This tour previews the contents of the nine "Software Engineering Case Study" sections (in Chapters 18 and 10). After completing this case study, the reader will be thoroughly familiar with an object-oriented design and implementation for a significant Java application.

The design presented in the ATM case study was developed at Deitel & Associates, Inc. and scrutinized by industry professionals. We crafted this design to meet the requirements of introductory course sequences. Surely real ATM systems used by banks around the world are based on more sophisticated designs that take into consideration many more issues than we have addressed here. Our primary goal throughout the design process, however, was to create a simple design that would be clear to OOD and UML novices, while still demonstrating key OOD concepts and the related UML modeling techniques.

Section 1.16 Software Engineering Case Study: Introduction to Object Technology and the UML introduces the object-oriented design case study with the UML. The section introduces the basic concepts and terminology of object technology, including classes, objects, encapsulation, inheritance and polymorphism. We discuss the history of the UML. This is the only required section of the case study.

Section 2.9 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Examining the Requirements discusses a requirements document that specifies the requirements for a system that we will design and implement. The software for a simple automated teller machine (ATM). We investigate the structure and behavior of object-oriented systems in general. We discuss how the UML will facilitate the design process in subsequent "Software Engineering Case Study" sections by providing several additional types of diagrams to model our system. We include a list of URLs and book references on object-oriented design with the UML. We discuss the interaction between the ATM system specified by the requirements document and its user. Specifically, we investigate the scenarios that may occur between the user and the system itself; these are called use cases. We model these interactions, using use case diagrams of the UML.
Section 3.9 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Identifying the Classes in the Requirements Documents begins to design the ATM system. We identify its classes, or "building blocks," by extracting the nouns and noun phrases from the requirements document. We arrange these classes into a UML class diagram that describes the class structure of our simulation. The class diagram also describes relationships, known as associations, among classes.

Section 4.14 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Identifying Class Attributes focuses on the attributes of the classes discussed in Section 3.9. A class contains both attributes (data) and operations (behaviors). As we see in later sections, changes in an object's attributes often affect the object's behavior. To determine the attributes for the classes in our case study, we extract the adjectives describing the nouns and noun phrases (which defined our classes) from the requirements document, then place the attributes in the class diagram we created in Section 3.9.

Section 5.10 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Identifying Objects' States and Activities discusses how an object, at any given time, occupies a specific condition called a state. A state transition occurs when that object receives a message to change state. The UML provides the state machine diagram, which identifies the set of possible states that an object may occupy and models that object's state transitions. An object also has an activity—the work it performs in its lifetime. The UML provides the activity diagram, a flowchart that models an object's activity. In this section, we use both types of diagrams to begin modeling specific behavioral aspects of our ATM system, such as how the ATM carries out a withdrawal transaction and how the ATM responds when the user is authenticated.

Section 6.13 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Identifying Class Operations identifies the operations, or services, of our classes. We extract from the requirements document the verbs and verb phrases that specify the operations for each class. We then modify the class diagram of Section 3.9 to include each operation with its associated class. At this point in the case study, we will have gathered all information possible from the requirements document. However, as future chapters introduce such topics as inheritance, we will modify our classes and diagrams.

Section 7.10 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Collaboration Among Objects provides a "rough sketch" of the model for our ATM system. In this section, we see how it works. We investigate the behavior of the simulation by discussing collaborations—messages that objects send to each
other to communicate. The class operations that we discovered in Section 6.13 turn out to be the collaborations among the objects in our system. We determine the collaborations, then collect them into a communication diagram—the UML diagram for modeling collaborations. This diagram reveals which objects collaborate and when. We present a communication diagram of the collaborations among objects to perform an ATM balance inquiry. We then present the UML sequence diagram for modeling interactions in a system. This diagram emphasizes the chronological ordering of messages. A sequence diagram models how objects in the system interact to carry out withdrawal and deposit transactions.

Section 8.19 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Starting to Program the Classes of the ATM System takes a break from designing the behavior of our system. We begin the implementation process to emphasize the material discussed in Chapter 8. Using the UML class diagram of Section 3.9 and the attributes and operations discussed in Section 4.14 and Section 6.13, we show how to implement a class in Java from a design. We do not implement all classes because we have not completed the design process. Working from our UML diagrams, we create code for the Withdrawal class.

Section 10.8 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Incorporating Inheritance into the ATM System continues our discussion of object-oriented programming. We consider inheritance—classes sharing common characteristics may inherit attributes and operations from a "base" class. In this section, we investigate how our ATM system can benefit from using inheritance. We document our discoveries in a class diagram that models inheritance relationships—the UML refers to these relationships as generalizations. We modify the class diagram of Section 3.9 by using inheritance to group classes with similar characteristics. This section concludes the design of the model portion of our simulation. We implement this model as Java code in Appendix J.

Appendix J (On CD) ATM Case Study Code The majority of the case study involved designing the model (i.e., the data and logic) of the ATM system. In this appendix, we implement that model in Java. Using all the UML diagrams we created, we present the Java classes necessary to implement the model. We apply the concepts of object-oriented design with the UML and object-oriented programming in Java that you learned in the chapters. By the end of this appendix, students will have completed the design and implementation of a real-world system, and should now feel confident tackling larger systems, such as those that professional software engineers build.
Appendix L UML 2 Additional Diagrams

Overviews the UML 2 diagram types not found in the OOD/UML Case Study.
A Tour of the Optional GUI and Graphics Case Study

In this section, we tour the book's optional 10-section case study on creating graphics and graphical user interfaces (GUIs) in Java. The goal of this case study is to create a polymorphic drawing application in which the user can select a shape to draw, select the characteristics of the shape (such as the color of the shape and whether it is filled with color or hollow) and use the mouse to draw the shape. This integrated case study builds gradually toward that goal, with the reader implementing polymorphic drawing in Chapter 10, adding an event-driven GUI in Chapter 11 and enhancing the drawing capabilities in Chapter 12 with Java 2D. This tour previews the topics covered in each section of the case study. After completing this case study, students will be able to create their own simple graphical applications.

Section 3.9 Using Dialog Boxes introduces graphical user interfaces and demonstrates handling input and output with dialog boxes. We use predefined JOptionPane dialogs to display information and read text in an application.

Section 4.14 Creating Simple Drawings introduces Java's graphics capabilities. First, we describe Java's coordinate system, then we cover drawing lines and creating a window that displays drawings.

Section 5.10 Rectangles and Ovals explains how to use the graphics methods that draw rectangles and ovals.

Section 6.13 Colors and Filled Shapes discusses how computers represent colors, how to use colors in graphics, and how to fill oval or rectangular regions with a solid color.

Section 7.13 Drawing Arcs describes how Java specifies angles; then we demonstrate drawing arcs (i.e., sections of an oval) by defining an oval and angular positions along the oval.

Section 8.18 Using Objects with Graphics describes how to use objects to represent shapes. We create classes to represent each shape type, store these objects in arrays and retrieve the shapes each time we need to draw them.

Section 9.8 Displaying Text and Images Using Labels explores creating labels and attaching them to the application window. Applications use labels to
display information to the user. Labels in Java can display text, an image or both.

Section 10.8 Drawing with Polymorphism focuses on the common characteristics of the classes created in Section 8.18. In this section, we examine these similarities and redesign the individual shape classes so that they inherit their common functionality from a "base" class and can be processed polymorphically.

Exercise 11.18 Expanding the Interface asks the reader to apply the event-driven GUI programming techniques they learn in Chapter 11. Readers create a GUI that allows users to select the shape to draw and its color, then draw the shape with a mouse. The application stores and manipulates shapes using the classes created in Section 10.8.

Exercise 12.31 Adding Java2D asks the reader to use Java 2D's more elaborate two-dimensional drawing capabilities to create a robust drawing application in which users select a shape's line thickness and fill options (solid colors or gradients that transition between colors). To do this, the reader enhances the shape classes in Exercise 11.18 to store information about each shape's Java 2D features.
Software Included with *Java How to Program, 6/e*

A number of for-sale Java development tools are available, but you do not need any to get started with Java. We wrote *Java How to Program, 6/e* using only the new Java 2 Standard Edition Development Kit (JDK), version 5.0. The current JDK version can be downloaded from Sun's Java Web site [java.sun.com/j2se/downloads/index.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/downloads/index.html). This site also contains the JDK documentation downloads.

The CD that accompanies *Java How to Program, 6/e*, contains several Java editors, including BlueJ Version 1.3.5, JCreator Lite Version 3.10 (Windows only), jEdit Version 4.1 and jGRASP Version 1.7.0. The CD also contains the NetBeans™ Version 3.6 Integrated Development Environment (IDE). Windows and Linux versions of MySQL® 4.0.20 and MySQL® Connector/J Version 3.0.14 are provided for the database processing performed in Chapters 25–27. Finally, Apache Tomcat Version 5.0.25 is provided for use with servlets and JavaServer Pages in Chapters 26–27. If you have questions about using this software, please read the documentation on the CD, or read our *Dive Into™* Series publications, which are available with the resources for *Java How to Program, 6/e* at [www.deitel.com/books/downloads.html](http://www.deitel.com/books/downloads.html). The free *Dive-Into™* Series publications help students and instructors familiarize themselves with various Java development tools. These publications include: *Dive Into™ NetBeans, Dive Into™ Eclipse, Dive Into™ JBuilder, Dive Into™ jEdit, Dive Into™ jCreator, Dive Into™ jGRASP and Dive Into™ BlueJ*.

The CD also contains the book's examples and an HTML Web page with links to the Deitel & Associates, Inc. Web site and the Prentice Hall Web site. This Web page can be loaded to a Web browser to afford quick access to all the resources.
Teaching Resources for *Java How to Program, 6/e*

*Java How to Program, 6/e,* has extensive resources for instructors. The *Instructor's Resource CD (IRCD)* contains the *Solutions Manual* with solutions to the vast majority of the end-of-chapter exercises, a *Test Item File* of multiple-choice questions (approximately two per book section) and PowerPoint slides containing all the code and figures in the text, plus bulleted items that summarize the key points in the text. Instructors can customize the slides.

Prentice Hall's *Companion Web Site* (www.prenhall.com/deitel) for *Java How to Program, 6/e* offers resources for students and instructors. For instructors, the *Companion Web Site* offers a *Syllabus Manager,* which helps instructors plan courses interactively and create online syllabi.

Chapter-specific resources available for students on the *Companion Web Site* include:

- Chapter objectives
- Highlights (e.g., chapter summary)
- Outline
- Tips (e.g., *Common Programming Errors, Error-Prevention Tips, Good Programming Practices, Portability Tips, Performance Tips* and *Software Engineering Observations*)
- Online Study Guide contains additional short-answer self-review exercises (e.g., true/false) with answers and provides immediate feedback to the student

Students can track their results and course performance on quizzes using the *Student Profile* feature, which records and manages all feedback and results from tests taken on the *Companion Web Site.* To access the *Companion Web Site,* visit www.prenhall.com/deitel.
Java in the Lab

Java in the Lab, Lab Manual to Accompany Java How to Program, 6/e (ISBN 0-13-149497-X) complements Java How to Program, 6/e and Small Java How to Program 6/e with hands-on lab assignments designed to reinforce students' understanding of lecture material. This lab manual is designed for closed laboratories regularly scheduled classes supervised by an instructor. Closed laboratories provide an excellent learning environment, because students can use concepts presented in class to solve carefully designed lab problems. Instructors are better able to gauge the students' understanding of the material by monitoring the students' progress in lab. This lab manual also can be used for open laboratories, homework and for self-study. Java How to Program, 6/e, and the lab manual are available individually or together in a value pack (ISBN 0-13-167380-7).

Every chapter in the lab manual is divided into Prelab Activities, Lab Exercises and Postlab Activities. Each chapter contains objectives that introduce the lab's key topics and an assignment checklist that allows students to mark which exercises the instructor has assigned. The lab manual pages are perforated, so students can submit their answers (if required).

Solutions to the lab manual's Prelab Activities, Lab Exercises and Postlab Activities are available in electronic form. Instructors can obtain these materials from their regular Prentice Hall representatives; the solutions are not available to students.

Prelab Activities

Prelab Activities are intended to be completed by students after studying each chapter of Java How to Program, 6/e. Prelab Activities test students' understanding of the textbook material and prepare students for the programming exercises in the lab session. The exercises focus on important terminology and programming concepts and are effective for self-review. Prelab Activities include Matching Exercises, Fill-in-the-Blank Exercises, Short-Answer Questions, Programming-Output Exercises (determine what short code segments do without actually running the program) and Correct-the-Code
Exercises (identify and correct all errors in short code segments).

Lab Exercises

The most important section in each chapter is the Lab Exercises. These teach students how to apply the material learned in Java How to Program, 6/e, and prepare them for writing Java programs. Each lab contains one or more lab exercises and a debugging problem. The Lab Exercises contain the following:

- **Lab Objectives** highlight specific concepts on which the lab exercise focuses.
- **Problem Descriptions** provide the details of the exercise and hints to help students implement the program.
- **Sample Outputs** illustrate the desired program behavior, which further clarifies the problem descriptions and aids the students with writing programs.
- **Program Templates** take complete Java programs and replace key lines of code with comments describing the missing code.
- **Problem-Solving Tips** highlight key issues that students need to consider when solving the lab exercises.
- **Follow-Up Questions and Activities** ask students to modify solutions to lab exercises, write new programs that are similar to their lab-exercise solutions or explain the implementation choices that were made when solving lab exercises.
- **Debugging Problems** consist of blocks of code that contain syntax errors and/or logic errors. These alert students to the types of errors they are likely to encounter while programming.

Postlab Activities

Professors typically assign Postlab Activities to reinforce key concepts or to provide students with more programming experience outside the lab. Postlab
Activities test the students' understanding of the Prelab and Lab Exercise material, and ask students to apply their knowledge to creating programs from scratch. The section provides two types of programming activities: coding exercises and programming challenges. Coding exercises are short and serve as review after the Prelab Activities and Lab Exercises have been completed. The coding exercises ask students to write programs or program segments using key concepts from the textbook. Programming Challenges allow students to apply their knowledge to substantial programming exercises. Hints, sample outputs and pseudocode are provided to aid students with these problems. Students who successfully complete the Programming Challenges for a chapter have mastered the chapter material. Answers to the programming challenges are available at www.deitel.com/books/downloads.html.
OneKey, CourseCompass<sup>SM</sup>, WebCT™ and by Blackboard™

OneKey is Prentice Hall's exclusive new resource that gives instructors and students access to the best online teaching and learning tools through one convenient Web site. OneKey enables instructors to prepare their courses effectively, present their courses more dramatically and assess students easily. An abundance of searchable presentation material together with practice activities and test questions all organized by chapter or topic helps to simplify course preparation.

Selected content from the Deitels' introductory programming language *How to Program* series, including *Java How to Program, 6/e*, is available to integrate into various popular course management systems, including CourseCompass, Blackboard and WebCT. Course management systems help faculty create, manage and use sophisticated Web-based educational tools and programs. Instructors can save hours of inputting data by using Deitel course-management-systems content. [*Note: The e-Book included with OneKey contains the entire text of *Java How to Program, 6/e*.*]

Blackboard, CourseCompass and WebCT offer:

- **Features to create and customize an online course**, such as areas to post course information (e.g., policies, syllabi, announcements, assignments, grades, performance evaluations and progress tracking), class and student management tools, a gradebook, reporting tools, page tracking, a calendar and assignments.

- **Communication tools** to help create and maintain interpersonal relationships between students and instructors, including chat rooms, whiteboards, document sharing, bulletin boards and private e-mail.

- **Flexible testing tools** that allow an instructor to create online quizzes and tests from questions directly linked to the text, and that grade and track results effectively. All tests can be inputted into the gradebook for efficient course management. WebCT also allows instructors to administer timed online quizzes.

- **Support materials** for instructors are available in print and online
In addition to the types of tools found in Blackboard and WebCT, CourseCompass from Prentice Hall includes:

- **CourseCompass course home page**, which makes the course as easy to navigate as a book. An expandable table of contents allows instructors to view course content at a glance and to link to any section.

- **Hosting on Prentice Hall's centralized servers**, which allows course administrators to avoid separate licensing fees or server-space issues. Access to Prentice Hall technical support is available.

- **"How Do I" online-support sections** are available for users who need help personalizing course sites, including step-by-step instructions for adding PowerPoint slides, video and more.

- **Instructor Quick Start Guide** helps instructors create online courses using a simple, step-by-step process.

To view free online demonstrations and learn more about these Course Management Systems, which support Deitel content, visit the following Web sites:

- Blackboard: [www.blackboard.com](http://www.blackboard.com) and [www.prenhall.com/blackboard](http://www.prenhall.com/blackboard)

- WebCT: [www.webct.com](http://www.webct.com) and [www.prenhall.com/webct](http://www.prenhall.com/webct)

- CourseCompass: [www.coursecompass.com](http://www.coursecompass.com) and [www.prenhall.com/coursecompass](http://www.prenhall.com/coursecompass)
Java 2 Multimedia Cyber Classroom, 6/e Through OneKey

Java How to Program, 6/e and Small Java How to Program, 6/e will now include a free, Web-based interactive multimedia accompaniment to the book The Java 2 Multimedia Cyber Classroom, 6/e available in spring 2005 through OneKey. Our Web-based Cyber Classroom will include audio walkthroughs of code examples in the text, solutions to about half of the exercises in the book and more. For more information about the new Web-based Cyber Classroom and its availability through OneKey, please visit our Web site at www.deitel.com or sign up for the free Deitel® Buzz Online e-mail newsletter at www.deitel.com/newsletter/subscribe.html.

Students who use our Cyber Classrooms tell us that they like the interactivity and that the Cyber Classroom is a powerful reference tool. Professors tell us that their students enjoy using the Cyber Classroom and consequently spend more time on the courses, mastering more of the material than in textbook-only courses. For a complete list of our current CD-ROM-based Cyber Classrooms, see the Deitel® Series page at the beginning of this book, the product listing and ordering information at the end of this book, or visit www.deitel.com, www.prenhall.com/deitel or www.InformIT.com/deitel.
PearsonChoices

Today's students have increasing demands on their time and money, and they need to be resourceful about how, when and where they study. Pearson/Prentice Hall, a division of Pearson Education, has responded to that need by creating PearsonChoices to allow faculty and students to choose from a variety of textbook formats and prices.

Small Java How to Program 6/e

Small Java How to Program, 6/e is our new 10-chapter alternative print edition to Java How to Program, 6/e. Small Java How to Program, 6/e is focused on first-semester Computer Science (CS1) programming courses and is priced lower than our 29-chapter Java How to Program, 6/e and other competing texts in the CS1 market. The following is a chapter-level table of contents for the book. [Note: This book includes Chapters 1-10 of Java How to Program, 6/e and their corresponding optional GUI and graphics case study sections, but does not include the OOD/UML optional automated teller machine (ATM) case study.]

Chapters in Both Small Java How to Program, 6/e and Java How to Program, 6/e

- Chapter 1 Introduction to Computers, the Internet and the Web
- Chapter 2 Introduction to Java Applications
- Chapter 3 Introduction to Classes and Objects
- Chapter 4 Control Statements: Part 1
- Chapter 5 Control Statements Part 2
- Chapter 6 Methods: A Deeper Look
- Chapter 7 Arrays
- Chapter 8 Classes and Objects: A Deeper Look
SafariX WebBooks

SafariX Textbooks Online is a new service for college students looking to save money on required or recommended textbooks for academic courses. This secure WebBooks platform creates a new option in the higher education market; an additional choice for students alongside conventional textbooks and online learning services. Pearson provides students with a WebBook at 50% of the cost of its conventional print equivalent.

SafariX WebBooks are viewed through a Web browser connected to the Internet. No special plug-ins are required and no applications need to be downloaded. Students simply log in, purchase access and begin studying. With SafariX Textbooks Online students can search the text, make notes online, print out reading assignments that incorporate their professors' lecture notes and bookmark important passages they want to review later. They can navigate easily to a page number, reading assignment, or chapter. The Table of Contents of each WebBook appears in the left hand column alongside the text.

We are pleased to offer students the *Java How to Program, 6/e* SafariX WebBook available for January 2005 classes. Visit [www.pearsonchoices.com](http://www.pearsonchoices.com) for more information. Other Deitel titles available as SafariX WebBooks include *Small Java How to Program, 6/e* and *Simply C++: An Application-Driven Tutorial Approach*. Visit [www.safarix.com/tour.html](http://www.safarix.com/tour.html) for more information.
Computer Science AP Courses

Java How to Program, 6/e, is a suitable textbook for teaching AP Computer-Science classes and for preparing students to take the corresponding exams. While writing this book, we carefully reviewed the syllabi for the AP Computer Science A and AB exams, to ensure that Java How to Program, 6/e, covers the vast majority of the information required for the exams. Instructors and students interested in preparing for these exams should visit:

www.deitel.com/books/jHTP6/Java_AP_Exam.html

This site is dedicated to the use of Java How to Program, 6/e, in the Computer Science AP curriculum. We will update this site regularly with additional information about the exams. For detailed information on the Computer Science AP curriculum, please visit

apcentral.collegeboard.com
Our free e-mail newsletter, the *Deitel® Buzz Online*, includes commentary on industry trends and developments, links to free articles and resources from our published books and upcoming publications, product-release schedules, errata, challenges, anecdotes, information on our corporate instructor-led training courses and more. It's also our way to notify our readers proactively about issues related to *Java How to Program, 6/e*. To subscribe, visit

[www.deitel.com/newsletter/subscribe.html](http://www.deitel.com/newsletter/subscribe.html)
Acknowledgments

One of the great pleasures of writing a textbook is acknowledging the efforts of many people whose names may not appear on the cover, but whose hard work, cooperation, friendship and understanding were crucial to the production of the book. Many people at Deitel & Associates, Inc. devoted long hours to this project.

Andrew B. Goldberg is a recent graduate of Amherst College, where he earned a degree in Computer Science. Andrew is a co-author with us of *Internet and World Wide Web How to Program, 3/e* and contributed to *Operating Systems, Third Edition*. Andrew's contributions to *Java How to Program, 6/e* included updating [Chapters 310](#) based on the new early-classes presentation of the book and other content revisions. He co-designed and co-authored the new, optional OOD/UML ATM case study. He updated [Appendix M](#), Design Patterns and co-authored [Appendix L](#), UML 2: Additional Diagram Types and [Appendix N](#), Using the Debugger.

Jeff Listfield is a Computer Science graduate of Harvard College. Jeff co-authored *C# How to Program, C# A Programmer's Introduction, C# for Experienced Programmers* and *Simply Java Programming*. He has also contributed to *Perl How to Program* and *Operating Systems, Third Edition*. Jeff contributed to [Chapter 11](#), GUI: Part 1; [Chapter 16](#), Searching and Sorting; [Chapter 22](#), GUI: Part 2; [Chapter 23](#), Multithreading; [Chapter 24](#), Networking; and [Chapter 29](#), Strings, Characters and Regular Expressions.

Su Zhang holds B.Sc. and a M.Sc. degrees in Computer Science from McGill University. She is co-author with us of *Java Web Services for Experienced Programmers* and *Simply Java Programming*. She has also contributed to other Deitel publications, including *Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program, Python How to Program* and *Operating Systems, Third Edition*. Su contributed to the sections on the new features of J2SE 5.0 in [Chapters 7](#) and [8](#). She contributed to [Chapter 18](#), Generics; [Chapter 19](#), Collections; [Chapter 25](#), Manipulating Database with JDBC; [Chapter 26](#), Servlets; [Chapter 27](#), JavaServer Pages; [Chapter 28](#), Formatted Output; [Appendix F](#), Unicode®; [Appendix G](#), Using Java API.
Documentation; Appendix H, Creating HTML Documentation with javadoc; and Appendix I, Bit Manipulation. Su also converted much of the code from Java How to Program, 5/e to J2SE 5.0.

• Cheryl Yaeger graduated from Boston University in three years with a bachelor's degree in Computer Science. Cheryl has co-authored various Deitel & Associates, Inc. publications, including C# How to Program, C#: A Programmer’s Introduction, C# for Experienced Programmers, Visual Basic .NET for Experienced Programmers, Simply Visual Basic .NET 2003 and Simply C#. Cheryl has also contributed to other Deitel & Associates publications including Perl How to Program, Wireless Internet and Mobile Business How to Program, Internet and World Wide Web How to Program, 3/e, Visual Basic .NET How to Program, 2/e and Simply Java Programming. Cheryl contributed to Chapter 12, Graphics; Chapter 13, Exceptions; Chapter 14, Files and Streams; Chapter 15, Recursion; and Chapter 21, Multimedia.

• Jing Hu, a participant in the Deitel & Associates, Inc. Summer Internship Program, is a sophomore at Cornell University studying Computer Science. He contributed to the new optional GUI and Graphics Case Study and the instructor's manual for Chapters 38. He also contributed to the sections on preconditions/postconditions, assertions, invariants, and the discussion of video in Chapter 21, Multimedia.

• Sin Han Lo, a participant in the Deitel & Associates, Inc. Summer Internship Program in 2003, is a recent graduate of Wellesley College where she studied Computer Science and Economics. She contributed to Chapter 15, Recursion, and designed the fractal example in that chapter.

• John Paul Casiello, a participant in the Deitel & Associates, Inc. Summer Internship Program in 2003, is a Computer Science student at Northeastern University. He contributed to Chapter 16, Searching and Sorting.

• Barbara Deitel, Chief Financial Officer at Deitel & Associates, Inc. researched the quotes at the beginning of each chapter and applied copyedits to the book.

• Abbey Deitel, President of Deitel & Associates, Inc., is an Industrial
Christi Kelsey, a Management Information Systems graduate of Purdue University, contributed to Chapter 1, the Preface and Appendix N, Using the Debugger. She edited the Index and paged the entire manuscript.

We are fortunate to have worked on this project with the talented and dedicated team of publishing professionals at Prentice Hall. We especially appreciate the extraordinary efforts of our Computer Science Editor, Kate Hargett and her boss and our mentor in publishing Marcia Horton, Editorial Director of Prentice Hall's Engineering and Computer Science Division. Jennifer Cappello did an extraordinary job recruiting the review team and managing the review process. Vince O'Brien, Tom Manshreck and John Lovell did a marvelous job managing the production of the book. The talents of Carole Anson, Paul Belfanti and Geoffrey Cassar are evident in the re-design of the book's interior and the new cover art, and Sarah Parker managed the publication of the book's extensive ancillary package.

We sincerely appreciate the efforts of our fifth edition post-publication reviewers and our sixth edition reviewers:

Academic Reviewers

Karen Arlien, Bismarck State College

Ben Blake, Cleveland State University

Walt Bunch, Chapman University

Marita Ellixson, Eglin AFB/University of Arkansas

Ephrem Eyob, Virginia State University

Bjorn Foss, Florida Metropolitan University

Bill Freitas, The Lawrenceville School

Joe Kasprzyk, Salem State College
Brian Larson, Modesto Junior College

Roberto Lopez-Herrejon, University of Texas at Austin

Dean Mellas, Cerritos College

David Messier, Eastern University

Andy Novobilski, University of Tennessee, Chattanooga

Richard Ord, University of California, San Diego

Gavin Osborne, Saskatchewan Institute of Applied Science & Technology

Donna Reese, Mississippi State University

Craig Slinkman, University of Texas at Arlington

Sreedhar Thota, Western Iowa Tech Community College

Mahendran Velauthapillai, Georgetown University

Loran Walker, Lawrence Technological University

Stephen Weiss, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill

Industry Reviewers

Butch Anton, Wi-Tech Consulting

Jonathan Bruce, Sun Microsystems, Inc. (JCP Specification Lead for JDBC)

Gilad Bracha, Sun Microsystems, Inc. (JCP Specification Lead for Generics)
Michael Develle, Independent Consultant

Jonathan Gadzik, Independent Consultant

Brian Goetz, Quiotix Corporation (JCP Concurrency Utilities Specification Expert Group Member)

Anne Horton, AT&T Bell Laboratories

James Huddleston, Independent Consultant

Peter Jones, Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Doug Kohlert, Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Earl LaBatt, Altaworks Corp./University of New Hampshire

Paul Monday, Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Bill O'Farrell, IBM

Cameron Skinner, Embarcadero Technologies, Inc.

Brandon Taylor, Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Karen Tegtmeyer, Independent Consultant

OOD/UML Optional Case Study Reviewers

Sinan Si Alhir, Independent Consultant

Gene Ames, Star HRG

Jan Bergandy, University of Massachusetts at Dartmouth

Marita Ellixson, Eglin AFB/University of Arkansas

Jonathan Gadzik, Independent Consultant
Under a tight time schedule, they scrutinized every aspect of the text and made countless suggestions for improving the accuracy and completeness of the presentation.

Well, there you have it! Java is a powerful programming language that will help you write programs quickly and effectively. Java scales nicely into the realm of enterprise-systems development to help organizations build their critical information systems. As you read the book, we would sincerely appreciate your comments, criticisms, corrections and suggestions for improving the text. Please address all correspondence to:

[Page lv]

deitel@deitel.com

We will respond promptly, and we will post corrections and clarifications on our Web site:
We hope you enjoy learning with *Java How to Program, Sixth Edition* as much as we enjoyed writing it!

*Dr. Harvey M. Deitel*

*Paul J. Deitel*
About the Authors

**Dr. Harvey M. Deitel**, Chairman and Chief Strategy Officer of Deitel & Associates, Inc., has 43 years experience in the computing field, including extensive industry and academic experience. Dr. Deitel earned B.S. and M.S. degrees from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology and a Ph.D. from Boston University. He worked on the pioneering virtual-memory operating-systems projects at IBM and MIT that developed techniques now widely implemented in systems such as UNIX, Linux and Windows XP. He has 20 years of college teaching experience, including earning tenure and serving as the Chairman of the Computer Science Department at Boston College before founding Deitel & Associates, Inc., with his son, Paul J. Deitel. He and Paul are the co-authors of several dozen books and multimedia packages and they are writing many more. With translations published in Japanese, German, Russian, Spanish, Traditional Chinese, Simplified Chinese, Korean, French, Polish, Italian, Portuguese, Greek, Urdu and Turkish, the Deitels' texts have earned international recognition. Dr. Deitel has delivered hundreds of professional seminars to major corporations, academic institutions, government organizations and the military.

**Paul J. Deitel**, CEO and Chief Technical Officer of Deitel & Associates, Inc., is a graduate of the MIT's Sloan School of Management, where he studied Information Technology. Through Deitel & Associates, Inc., he has delivered Java, C, C++, Internet and World Wide Web courses to industry clients, including IBM, Sun Microsystems, Dell, Lucent Technologies, Fidelity, NASA at the Kennedy Space Center, the National Severe Storm Laboratory, Compaq, White Sands Missile Range, Rogue Wave Software, Boeing, Stratus, Cambridge Technology Partners, Open Environment Corporation, One Wave, Hyperion Software, Adra Systems, Entergy, CableData Systems and many other organizations. Paul is one of the most experienced Java corporate trainers having taught about 100 professional Java training courses. He has also lectured on C++ and Java for the Boston Chapter of the Association for Computing Machinery. He and his father, Dr. Harvey M. Deitel, are the world's best-selling Computer Science textbook authors.
About Deitel & Associates, Inc.

Deitel & Associates, Inc., is an internationally recognized corporate training and content-creation organization specializing in computer programming languages, Internet/World Wide Web software technology and object technology education. The company provides instructor-led courses on major programming languages and platforms, such as Java, Advanced Java, C, C++, .NET programming languages, XML, Perl, Python; object technology; and Internet and World Wide Web programming. The founders of Deitel & Associates, Inc., are Dr. Harvey M. Deitel and Paul J. Deitel. The company's clients include many of the world's largest computer companies, government agencies, branches of the military and business organizations. Through its 28-year publishing partnership with Prentice Hall, Deitel & Associates, Inc. publishes leading-edge programming textbooks, professional books, interactive multimedia Cyber Classrooms, Complete Training Courses, Web-based training courses and course management systems e-content for popular CMSs such as WebCT, Blackboard and Pearson's CourseCompass. Deitel & Associates, Inc., and the authors can be reached via e-mail at:

deitel@deitel.com

To learn more about Deitel & Associates, Inc., its publications and its worldwide DIVE INTO™ Series Corporate Training curriculum, see the last few pages of this book or visit:

www.deitel.com

and subscribe to the free Deitel® Buzz Online e-mail newsletter at:

www.deitel.com/newsletter/subscribe.html

Individuals wishing to purchase Deitel books, Cyber Classrooms, Complete Training Courses and Web-based training courses can do so through:

www.deitel.com/books/index.html
Bulk orders by corporations and academic institutions should be placed directly with Prentice Hall. See the last few pages of this book for worldwide ordering details.
Before You Begin

Please follow the instructions in this section to ensure that Java is installed properly on your computer before you begin using this book.

**Font and Naming Conventions**

We use fonts to distinguish between on-screen components (such as menu names and menu items) and Java code or commands. Our convention is to emphasize on-screen components in a sans-serif bold *Helvetica* font (for example, **File** menu) and to emphasize Java code and commands in a sans-serif *Lucida* font (for example, `System.out.println()`).
Software and Other Resources on the CD That Accompanies *Java How to Program, Sixth Edition*

The CD that accompanies this book includes:

- BlueJ (version 1.3.5) for Windows/Linux
- jGRASP (version 1.7.0) and handbook, for Windows/Linux
- jEdit (version 4.1) for Windows/Linux
- JCreator LE (version 3.10) for Windows only
- NetBeans IDE (version 3.6) for Windows/Linux
- MySQL (version 4.0.20c) for Windows/Linux
- MySQL Connector/J (version 3.0.14) for Windows/Linux
- Apache Tomcat (version 5.0.25) for Windows/Linux

The examples in this book were developed with the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition Development Kit (JDK) version 5.0. At the time of this printing the JDK 5.0 was still in its final beta version, so the JDK is not included on the CD that accompanies this book. You can download the latest version of JDK 5.0 and its documentation from

 java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/download.jsp

When Sun releases the final version of JDK 5.0, it will be included on the CD in future prints. If you have any questions, please feel free to email us at deitel@deitel.com. We will respond promptly.
Hardware and Software Requirements to Run JDK 5.0

To install and run JDK 5.0, Sun recommends that PCs meet the following minimum requirements:

- 500 MHz, Pentium III processor
- 256 MB RAM
- 100 MB of available disk space

[Note: the JDK is available for Windows, Linux and Solaris Operating Systems.]
Copying and Organizing Files

All of the examples for *Java How To Program, Sixth Edition* are included on the CD that accompanies this textbook. Follow the steps in the next section, *Copying the Book Examples from the CD*, to copy the examples directory from the CD onto your hard drive. We suggest that you work from your hard drive rather than your CD drive for two reasons: The CD is read-only, so you cannot save your applications to the book's CD, and files can be accessed faster from a hard drive than from a CD. The examples from the book are also available for download from:

www.deitel.com

www.prenhall.com/deitel

Screen shots in the following section might differ slightly from what you see on your computer, depending on whether you are using Windows 2000 or Windows XP, or your version of Internet Explorer.
Inserting the CD. Insert the CD that accompanies *Java How To Program, Sixth Edition* into your computer's CD drive. The window displayed in Fig. 1 should appear. If the page appears, proceed to Step 3 of this section. If the page does not appear, proceed to Step 2.

**Figure 1. Welcome page for Java How to Program CD.**
(This item is displayed on page lix in the print version)

Opening the CD directory using My Computer. If the page shown in Fig. 1 does not appear, double click the My Computer icon on your desktop. In the My Computer window, double click your CD-ROM drive (Fig. 2) to access the
CD's contents. Proceed to Step 4.

**Figure 2. Locating the CD-ROM drive.**  
(This item is displayed on page lix in the print version)

[View full size image]

2.

Opening the CD-ROM directory. If the page in Fig. 1 does appear, click the Browse CD Contents link (Fig. 1) to access the CD's contents.

**Copying the examples directory.** Right click the examples directory (Fig. 3), then select Copy. Next, go to My Computer and double click the C: drive. Select the Edit menu's Paste option to copy the directory and its contents from the CD to your C: drive. [Note: We save the examples to the C: drive and refer to this drive throughout the text. You may choose to save your files to a different drive based on your computer's set up, the setup in your school's lab or personal preferences. If you are working in a computer lab, please see your instructor for more information to confirm where the examples should be saved.]

**Figure 3. Copying the examples directory.**  
(This item is displayed on page lx in the print version)
4.

The book example files you copied onto your computer from the CD are read-only. Next, you will remove the read-only property so you can modify and run the examples.
Changing the Read-Only Property of Files

1. **Opening the Properties dialog.** Right click the `examples` directory and select Properties from the menu. The `examples Properties` dialog appears (Fig. 4).

   **Figure 4.** `examples Properties` dialog.
   (This item is displayed on page lx in the print version)

2. **Changing the read-only property.** In the Attributes section of this dialog, click the box next to Read-only to remove the check mark (Fig. 5). Click Apply to apply the changes.

   **Figure 5.** Unchecking the Read-only check box.
3. **Changing the property for all files.** Clicking **Apply** will display the Confirm Attribute Changes window (**Fig. 6**). In this window, click the radio button next to **Apply changes to this folder, subfolders and files** and click **OK** to remove the read-only property for all of the files and directories in the examples directory.

**Figure 6.** Removing read-only for all the files in the examples directory.

Before you can run the applications in *Java How To Program, Sixth Edition* or build your own applications, you must install the Java Development Kit (JDK)
5.0 or another Java development tool. The following section describes how to install JDK 5.0.
Installing the J2SE Development Kit (JDK)

1. **Locating the JDK installer.** At the time of publication, the JDK 5.0 was still in beta releases and being updated frequently. As a result, the JDK installer might not be included on the CD that accompanies your book. If this is the case, you can download the most recent version of the installer from Sun's Web site. Go to java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/download.jsp and click the **DOWNLOAD** link in the **SDK** column. You must accept the license agreement before downloading. Once you accept the license agreement, you are directed to a download page, where you can select and download the installer for your computer platform. Save the installer on your hard disk and keep track of where you save it. The following steps show the installation procedure on the Windows platform.

2. **Starting installation of the JDK.** After either downloading the JDK installer or locating it on the CD that accompanies the book, double click the installer program to begin installing the JDK. The **InstallShield Wizard** window (Fig. 7) is displayed. Wait for the wizard to finish the configuration.

3. **Accepting the license agreement.** Carefully read the license agreement. Select **Yes** to agree to the terms (Fig. 8). [Note: If you choose not to accept the license agreement, the software will not install and you will not be able to execute or create Java applications.]

![InstallShield Wizard](image1.png)

**Figure 7. InstallShield Wizard for the JDK.**

![JDK license agreement](image2.png)

**Figure 8. JDK license agreement.**
4. **Choosing the installation directory for the JDK.** Select the directory in which you want the JDK to be installed (Fig. 9). If you change the default installation directory, be sure to write down the exact name and location of the directory you choose, as you will need this information later in the installation process. After selecting a directory, click the **Next >** button to install the development tool.

**Figure 9. Choosing the destination location.**
5. **Choosing the installation directory for the Java Runtime Environment (JRE).** Select the directory in which you want the JRE to be installed ([Fig. 10](#fig10)). We recommend that you choose the default installation directory. After you have selected a directory, click the **Next >** button to install the JRE.

**Figure 10. Selecting the components of the JDK to install.**
6. **Selecting browsers.** As part of the installation, you have the option of making the Java plug-in the default Java runtime environment for Java programs called applets that run in Web browsers (Fig. 11). After you select the desired browsers click the Next > button.

![Figure 11. Selecting browsers.](This item is displayed on page lxiv in the print version)

7. **Finishing the installation.** The program will now install the JRE. Click the Finish button to complete the installation process (Fig. 12).

![Figure 12. Completing the installation.](Page lxiv)
The **PATH** environment variable on your computer designates which directories the computer searches when looking for applications, such as the applications that enable you to compile and run your Java applications (called `javac.exe` and `java.exe`, respectively). You will now learn how to set the **PATH** environment variable on your computer.
Setting the **PATH** Variable

The last step before you can use the JDK is to set the PATH environment variable to indicate where the JDK's tools are installed.

1. **Opening the System Properties dialog.** Right click on the My Computer icon on your desktop and select Properties from the menu. The System Properties dialog (Fig. 13) appears. [*Note: Your System Properties dialog may appear different than the one shown in Fig. 13, depending on your version of Microsoft Windows. This particular dialog is from a computer running Microsoft Windows XP. Your dialog might include different information.*]

![System Properties dialog](image.png)

**Figure 13. System Properties dialog.**

2. **Opening the Environment Variables dialog.** Select the Advanced tab at the top...
of the System Properties dialog (Fig. 14). Click the Environment Variables button to display the Environment Variables dialog (Fig. 15).

**Figure 14. Advanced tab of System Properties dialog.**

![Advanced tab of System Properties dialog](image)

**Figure 15. Environment Variables dialog.**

(This item is displayed on page lxvi in the print version)
3. **Editing the path variable.** Scroll down inside the System variables box to select the path variable. Click the Edit button. This will cause the Edit System Variable dialog to appear (Fig. 16).

![Edit System Variable dialog]

**Figure 16. Edit System Variable dialog.**

4. **Changing the contents of the path variable.** Place the cursor inside the Variable Value field. Use the left-arrow key to move the cursor to the beginning of the list. At the beginning of the list, type the name of the directory in which you placed the JDK followed by `bin`; (Fig. 17). If you chose the default installation directory in Step 4 of **Installing the J2SE Development Kit (JDK)**, you will add `C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.5.0\bin`; to the path variable. Click the OK button to complete the modification of the path variable.
variable. [Note: The default installation directory is named jdk1.5.0, even though the JDK is now version 5.0.]

**Figure 17. Editing the **PATH** variable.**

![Edit System Variable dialog box](image)

You are now ready to being your Java studies with *Java How to Program*. We hope you enjoy the book! You can reach us easily at deitel@deitel.com. We will respond promptly.
Chapter 1. Introduction to Computers, the Internet and the World Wide Web

Our life is frittered away by detail....Simplify, simplify.

Henry David Thoreau

The chief merit of language is clearness.

Galen

My object all sublime I shall achieve in time.

W. S. Gilbert

He had a wonderful talent for packing thought close, and rendering it portable.

Thomas B. Macaulay

"Egad, I think the interpreter is the hardest to be understood of the two!"

Richard Brinsley Sheridan

Man is still the most extraordinary computer of all.

John F. Kennedy

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- Basic hardware and software concepts.
- Basic object technology concepts, such as classes, objects, attributes, behaviors, encapsulation, inheritance and polymorphism.
- The different types of programming languages.
• Which programming languages are most widely used.

• A typical Java development environment.

• Java's role in developing distributed client/server applications for the Internet and the Web.

• The history of the industry-standard object-oriented design language, the UML.

• The history of the Internet and the World Wide Web.

• To test-drive Java applications.

Outline

1.1 Introduction

1.2 What Is a Computer?

1.3 Computer Organization

1.4 Early Operating Systems

1.5 Personal, Distributed and Client/Server Computing

1.6 The Internet and the World Wide Web

1.7 Machine Languages, Assembly Languages and High-Level Languages

1.8 History of C and C++

1.9 History of Java

1.10 Java Class Libraries

1.11 FORTRAN, COBOL, Pascal and Ada

1.12 BASIC, Visual Basic, Visual C++, C# and .NET

1.13 Typical Java Development Environment
1.1. Introduction

Welcome to Java! We have worked hard to create what we hope you will find to be an informative, entertaining and challenging learning experience. Java is a powerful computer programming language that is fun for novices and appropriate for experienced programmers to use in building substantial information systems. *Java How to Program, Sixth Edition*, is an effective learning tool for each of these audiences.

The core of the book emphasizes achieving program *clarity* through the proven techniques of object-oriented programming. Nonprogrammers will learn programming the right way from the beginning. The presentation is clear, straightforward and abundantly illustrated. It includes hundreds of working Java programs and shows the outputs produced when those programs are run on a computer. We teach Java features in the context of complete working Java programs—we call this the **live-code approach**. The example programs are included on the CD that accompanies this book, or you may download them from [www.deitel.com](http://www.deitel.com) or [www.prenhall.com/deitel](http://www.prenhall.com/deitel).

The early chapters introduce the fundamentals of computers, computer programming and the Java computer programming language, providing a solid foundation for the deeper treatment of Java in the later chapters. Experienced programmers tend to read the early chapters quickly and find the treatment of Java in the later chapters rigorous and challenging.

Most people are familiar with the exciting tasks computers perform. Using this textbook, you will learn how to command computers to perform those tasks. It is software (i.e., the instructions you write to command computers to perform **actions** and make **decisions**) that controls computers (often referred to as hardware). Java, developed by Sun Microsystems, is one of today's most popular software development languages.

This book is based on Sun's **Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition (J2SE)**. Sun provides an implementation of this platform, called the **J2SE Development Kit (JDK)**, that includes the minimum set of tools you need to write software in Java. We used JDK version 5.0 to implement and test the programs in this book. When Sun makes the JDK available to publishers, it will be wrapped with the textbook on the accompanying CD. Sun updates the JDK on a regular basis
to fix bugs. To download the most recent version of the JDK, visit java.sun.com/j2se.

Computer use is increasing in almost every field of endeavor. Computing costs have been decreasing dramatically due to rapid developments in both hardware and software technologies. Computers that might have filled large rooms and cost millions of dollars two decades ago can now be inscribed on silicon chips smaller than a fingernail, costing perhaps a few dollars each. Fortunately, silicon is one of the most abundant materials on earth— it is an ingredient in common sand. Silicon chip technology has made computing so economical that hundreds of millions of general-purpose computers are in use worldwide, helping people in business, industry and government, and in their personal lives. The number could easily double in the next few years.

Over the years, many programmers learned the programming methodology called structured programming. You will learn structured programming and an exciting newer methodology, object-oriented programming. Why do we teach both? Object orientation is the key programming methodology used by programmers today. You will create and work with many software objects in this text. But you will discover that their internal structure is often built using structured-programming techniques. Also, the logic of manipulating objects is occasionally expressed with structured programming.

Java has become the language of choice for implementing Internet-based applications and software for devices that communicate over a network. Before long the stereo and other devices in your home will be networked together by Java technology. Don't be surprised when your wireless devices, like cell phones, pagers and personal digital assistants (PDAs), begin to communicate over the so-called wireless Internet via the kind of Java-based networking applications that you will learn in this book and its companion, Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program. According to Sun's Web site (www.sun.com), in 2003, over 267 million cell phones equipped with Java technology were shipped! Java has evolved rapidly into the large-scale applications arena. It is no longer used simply to make World Wide Web pages come alive—it has become the preferred language for meeting the enterprise-wide programming needs of many organizations.

Java has evolved so rapidly that this sixth edition of Java How to Program has been written just eight years after the first edition was published. This edition is based on the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition (J2SE) version 5.0. Java has grown so large that it now has two other editions. The Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE), is geared toward developing large-scale, distributed networking applications and Web-based applications. The Java 2 Platform, Micro Edition (J2ME) is geared toward developing applications for
small, memory-constrained devices, such as cell phones, pagers and PDAs. *Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program* emphasizes developing applications with J2EE and provides coverage of several high-end topics from the J2SE. *Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program* also includes substantial materials on J2ME and wireless-application development.

You are embarking on a challenging and rewarding path. As you proceed, if you would like to communicate with us, please send e-mail to

deitel@deitel.com

or browse our Web site at

www.deitel.com

We will respond promptly. To keep up to date with Java developments at Deitel & Associates, please register for our free e-mail newsletter, *The Deitel Buzz Online*, at

www.deitel.com/newsletter/subscribe.html

We hope that you will enjoy learning with *Java How to Program*. 
1.2. What Is a Computer?

A computer is a device capable of performing computations and making logical decisions at speeds millions (even billions) of times faster than human beings can. For example, many of today's personal computers can perform a billion additions per second. A person operating a desk calculator could spend an entire lifetime performing calculations and still not complete as many calculations as a powerful personal computer can perform in one second. (Points to ponder: How would you know whether the person added the numbers correctly? How would you know whether the computer added the numbers correctly?) Today's fastest supercomputers can perform hundreds of billions of additions per second. And trillion-instructions-per-second computers are already functioning in research laboratories.

Computers process data under the control of sets of instructions called computer programs. These programs guide the computer through orderly sets of actions specified by people called computer programmers.

A computer consists of various devices referred to as hardware (e.g., the keyboard, screen, mouse, disks, memory, DVD, CD-ROM and processing units). The programs that run on a computer are referred to as software. Hardware costs have been declining dramatically in recent years, to the point that personal computers have become a commodity. Unfortunately, in the absence of significantly improved technology for software development, costs have been rising steadily as programmers develop ever more powerful and complex applications. In this book, you will learn proven methodologies that can reduce software development costs object-oriented programming and (in our optional Software Engineering Case Study in Chapters 28 and 10) object-oriented design.
1.3. Computer Organization

Regardless of differences in physical appearance, virtually every computer may be envisioned as divided into six **logical units** or sections:

1. **Input unit.** This is the "receiving" section of the computer. It obtains information (data and computer programs) from **input devices** and places this information at the disposal of the other units so that it can be processed. Most information is entered into computers through keyboards and mouse devices. Information also can be entered in many other ways, including by speaking to your computer, by scanning images and by having your computer receive information from a network, such as the Internet.

2. **Output unit.** This is the "shipping" section of the computer. It takes information that the computer has processed and places it on various **output devices** to make the information available for use outside the computer. Most information output from computers today is displayed on screens, printed on paper or used to control other devices. Computers also can output their information to networks, such as the Internet.

3. **Memory unit.** This is the rapid-access, relatively low-capacity "warehouse" section of the computer. It retains information that has been entered through the input unit, so that it will be immediately available for processing when needed. The memory unit also retains processed information until it can be placed on output devices by the output unit. Information in the memory unit is typically lost when the computer's power is turned off. The memory unit is often called either **memory** or **primary memory**.

4. **Arithmetic and logic unit (ALU).** This is the "manufacturing" section of the computer. It is responsible for performing calculations, such as addition, subtraction, multiplication and division. It contains the decision mechanisms that allow the computer, for example, to compare two items from the memory unit to determine whether they are equal.

5. **Central processing unit (CPU).** This is the "administrative" section of the computer. It coordinates and supervises the operation of the other sections. The CPU tells the input unit when information should be read into
the memory unit, tells the ALU when information from the memory unit should be used in calculations and tells the output unit when to send information from the memory unit to certain output devices. Many of today's computers have multiple CPUs and, hence, can perform many operations simultaneously such computers are called **multiprocessors**.

6. **Secondary storage unit.** This is the long-term, high-capacity "warehousing" section of the computer. Programs or data not actively being used by the other units normally are placed on secondary storage devices (e.g., your hard drive) until they are again needed, possibly hours, days, months or even years later. Information in secondary storage takes much longer to access than information in primary memory, but the cost per unit of secondary storage is much less than that of primary memory. Examples of secondary storage devices include CDs and DVDs, which can hold up to hundreds of millions of characters and billions of characters, respectively.
1.4. Early Operating Systems

Early computers could perform only one job or task at a time. This is often called single-user batch processing. The computer runs a single program at a time while processing data in groups or batches. In these early systems, users generally submitted their jobs to a computer center on decks of punched cards and often had to wait hours or even days before printouts were returned to their desks.

Software systems called operating systems were developed to make using computers more convenient. Early operating systems smoothed and speeded up the transition between jobs, and hence increased the amount of work, or throughput, computers could process.

As computers became more powerful, it became evident that single-user batch processing was inefficient, because so much time was spent waiting for slow input/output devices to complete their tasks. It was thought that many jobs or tasks could share the resources of the computer to achieve better utilization. This is called multiprogramming. Multiprogramming involves the simultaneous operation of many jobs that are competing to share the computer's resources. With early multiprogramming operating systems, users still submitted jobs on decks of punched cards and waited hours or days for results.

In the 1960s, several groups in industry and the universities pioneered timesharing operating systems. Timesharing is a special case of multiprogramming in which users access the computer through terminals, typically devices with keyboards and screens. Dozens or even hundreds of users share the computer at once. The computer actually does not run them all simultaneously. Rather, it runs a small portion of one user's job, then moves on to service the next user, perhaps providing service to each user several times per second. Thus, the users' programs appear to be running simultaneously. An advantage of timesharing is that user requests receive almost immediate responses.
1.5. Personal, Distributed and Client/Server Computing

In 1977, Apple Computer popularized personal computing. Computers became so economical that people could buy them for their own personal or business use. In 1981, IBM, the world's largest computer vendor, introduced the IBM Personal Computer. This quickly legitimized personal computing in business, industry and government organizations.

These computers were "standalone" unitspeople transported disks back and forth between them to share information (often called "sneakernet"). Although early personal computers were not powerful enough to timeshare several users, these machines could be linked together in computer networks, sometimes over telephone lines and sometimes in local area networks (LANs) within an organization. This led to the phenomenon of distributed computing, in which an organization's computing, instead of being performed only at some central computer installation, is distributed over networks to the sites where the organization's work is performed. Personal computers were powerful enough to handle the computing requirements of individual users as well as the basic communications tasks of passing information between computers electronically.

Today's personal computers are as powerful as the million-dollar machines of just two decades ago. The most powerful desktop machinescalled workstationsprovide individual users with enormous capabilities. Information is shared easily across computer networks where computers called file servers offer a common data store that may be used by client computers distributed throughout the network, hence the term client/server computing. Java has become widely used for writing software for computer networking and for distributed client/server applications. Today's popular operating systems, such as UNIX, Linux, Apple Mac OS X (pronounced "O-S ten") and Microsoft Windows, provide the kinds of capabilities discussed in this section.
1.6. The Internet and the World Wide Web

The Internet, a global network of computers, was developed almost four decades ago with funding supplied by the U.S. Department of Defense. Originally designed to connect the main computer systems of about a dozen universities and research organizations, the Internet today is accessible by hundreds of millions of computers worldwide.

With the introduction of the World Wide Web, which allows computer users to locate and view multimedia-based documents on almost any subject over the Internet, the Internet has exploded into one of the world's premier communication mechanisms.

The Internet and the World Wide Web are surely among humankind's most important and profound creations. In the past, most computer applications ran on computers that were not connected to one another. Today's applications can be written to communicate among the world's hundreds of millions of computers. The Internet mixes computing and communications technologies. It makes our work easier. It makes information instantly and conveniently accessible worldwide. It enables individuals and local small businesses to get worldwide exposure. It is changing the way business is done. People can search for the best prices on virtually any product or service. Special-interest communities can stay in touch with one another. Researchers can be made instantly aware of the latest breakthroughs.

Java How to Program, 6/e, presents programming techniques that allow Java applications to use the Internet and the Web to interact with other applications. These capabilities, and those discussed in our companion book, Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program, allow Java programmers to develop the kind of enterprise-level distributed applications that are used in industry today. Java applications can be written to execute on every major type of computer, greatly reducing the time and cost of systems development for corporations. If you are interested in developing applications to run over the Internet and the Web, learning Java may be the key to rewarding career opportunities for you.
1.7. Machine Languages, Assembly Languages and High-Level Languages

Programmers write instructions in various programming languages, some directly understandable by computers and others requiring intermediate translation steps. Hundreds of computer languages are in use today. These may be divided into three general types:

1. Machine languages
2. Assembly languages
3. High-level languages

Any computer can directly understand only its own machine language. Machine language is the "natural language" of a computer and as such is defined by its hardware design. Machine languages generally consist of strings of numbers (ultimately reduced to 1s and 0s) that instruct computers to perform their most elementary operations one at a time. Machine languages are machine dependent (i.e., a particular machine language can be used on only one type of computer). Such languages are cumbersome for humans, as illustrated by the following section of an early machine-language program that adds overtime pay to base pay and stores the result in gross pay:

```
+1300042774
+1400593419
+1200274027
```

Machine-language programming was simply too slow and tedious for most programmers. Instead of using the strings of numbers that computers could directly understand, programmers began using English-like abbreviations to represent elementary operations. These abbreviations formed the basis of assembly languages. Translator programs called assemblers were developed to convert early assembly-language programs to machine language at computer speeds. The following section of an assembly-language program also adds overtime pay to base pay and stores the result in gross pay:
Although such code is clearer to humans, it is incomprehensible to computers until translated to machine language.

Computer usage increased rapidly with the advent of assembly languages, but programmers still had to use many instructions to accomplish even the simplest tasks. To speed the programming process, **high-level languages** were developed in which single statements could be written to accomplish substantial tasks. Translator programs called **compilers** convert high-level language programs into machine language. High-level languages allow programmers to write instructions that look almost like everyday English and contain commonly used mathematical notations. A payroll program written in a high-level language might contain a statement such as

\[
grossPay = basePay + overTimePay
\]

Obviously, high-level languages are preferable to machine and assembly language from the programmer's standpoint. C, C++, Microsoft's .NET languages (e.g., Visual Basic .NET, Visual C++ .NET and C#) and Java are among the most widely used high-level programming languages.

The process of compiling a high-level language program into machine language can take a considerable amount of computer time. **Interpreter** programs were developed to execute high-level language programs directly, although much more slowly. Interpreters are popular in program-development environments in which new features are being added and errors corrected. Once a program is fully developed, a compiled version can be produced to run most efficiently.

You now know that there are ultimately two ways to translate a high-level language program into a form that the computer understands: compilation and interpretation. As you will learn in **Section 1.13**, Java uses a clever mixture of these technologies.
1.8. History of C and C++

Java evolved from C++, which evolved from C, which evolved from BCPL and B. BCPL was developed in 1967 by Martin Richards as a language for writing operating systems software and compilers. Ken Thompson modeled many features in his language B after their counterparts in BCPL, using B to create early versions of the UNIX operating system at Bell Laboratories in 1970.

The C language was evolved from B by Dennis Ritchie at Bell Laboratories and was originally implemented in 1972. It initially became widely known as the development language of the UNIX operating system. Today, most of the code for general-purpose operating systems (e.g., those found in laptops, desktops, workstations and small servers) is written in C or C++.

C++, an extension of C, was developed by Bjarne Stroustrup in the early 1980s at Bell Laboratories (now part of Lucent). C++ provides a number of features that "spruce up" the C language, but more important, it provides capabilities for object-oriented programming (discussed in more detail in Section 1.16 and throughout this book). C++ is a hybrid languageit is possible to program in either a C-like style, an object-oriented style or both.

A revolution is brewing in the software community. Building software quickly, correctly and economically remains an elusive goal at a time when demands for new and more powerful software are soaring. Objects, or more precisely as we will see in Section 1.16 the classes objects come from, are essentially reusable software components. There are date objects, time objects, audio objects, automobile objects, people objects and so on. In fact, almost any noun can be represented as a software object in terms of attributes (e.g., name, color and size) and behaviors (e.g., calculating, moving and communicating). Software developers are discovering that using a modular, object-oriented design and implementation approach can make software-development groups much more productive than was possible with earlier popular programming techniques like structured programming. Object-oriented programs are often easier to understand, correct and modify. Java is the world's most widely used object-oriented programming language.
1.9. History of Java

The microprocessor revolution's most important contribution to date is that it made possible the development of personal computers, which now number in the hundreds of millions worldwide. Personal computers have profoundly affected people's lives and the ways organizations conduct and manage their business.

Microprocessors are having a profound impact in intelligent consumer-electronic devices. Recognizing this, Sun Microsystems in 1991 funded an internal corporate research project code-named Green, which resulted in the development of a C++-based language that its creator, James Gosling, called Oak after an oak tree outside his window at Sun. It was later discovered that there already was a computer language called Oak. When a group of Sun people visited a local coffee shop, the name Java was suggested, and it stuck.

The Green project ran into some difficulties. The marketplace for intelligent consumer-electronic devices was not developing in the early 1990s as quickly as Sun had anticipated. The project was in danger of being canceled. By sheer good fortune, the World Wide Web exploded in popularity in 1993, and Sun people saw the immediate potential of using Java to add dynamic content, such as interactivity and animations, to Web pages. This breathed new life into the project.

Sun formally announced Java at a major conference in May 1995. Java garnered the attention of the business community because of the phenomenal interest in the World Wide Web. Java is now used to develop large-scale enterprise applications, to enhance the functionality of Web servers (the computers that provide the content we see in our Web browsers), to provide applications for consumer devices (e.g., cell phones, pagers and personal digital assistants) and for many other purposes.
1.10. Java Class Libraries

Java programs consist of pieces called **classes**. Classes include pieces called **methods** that perform tasks and return information when they complete them. Programmers can create each piece they need to form Java programs. However, most Java programmers take advantage of the rich collections of existing classes in the **Java class libraries**, which are also known as the **Java APIs (Application Programming Interfaces)**. Thus, there are really two aspects to learning the Java "world." The first is the Java language itself, so that you can program your own classes, and the second is the classes in the extensive Java class libraries. Throughout this book, we discuss many library classes. Class libraries are provided primarily by compiler vendors, but many are supplied by independent software vendors (ISVs).

---

**Software Engineering Observation 1.1**

*Use a building-block approach to create programs. Avoid reinventing the wheel use existing pieces wherever possible. Called software reuse, this practice is central to object-oriented programming.*

---

We include many tips such as these **Software Engineering Observations** throughout the book to explain concepts that affect and improve the overall architecture and quality of software systems. We also highlight other kinds of tips, including **Good Programming Practices** (to help you write programs that are clearer, more understandable, more maintainable and easier to test and debug or remove programming errors), **Common Programming Errors** (problems to watch out for and avoid), **Performance Tips** (techniques for writing programs that run faster and use less memory), **Portability Tips** (techniques to help you write programs that can run, with little or no modification, on a variety of computerstheses tips also include general observations about how Java achieves its high degree of portability), **Error-Prevention Tips** (techniques for removing bugs from your programs and, more important, techniques for writing bug-free programs in the first place)
and **Look and Feel Observations** (techniques to help you design the "look" and "feel" of your applications' user interfaces for appearance and ease of use). Many of these are only guidelines. You will, no doubt, develop your own preferred programming style.

**Software Engineering Observation 1.2**

When programming in Java, you will typically use the following building blocks: Classes and methods from class libraries, classes and methods you create yourself and classes and methods that others create and make available to you.

The advantage of creating your own classes and methods is that you know exactly how they work and you can examine the Java code. The disadvantage is the time-consuming and potentially complex effort that is required.

**Performance Tip 1.1**

*Using Java API classes and methods instead of writing your own versions can improve program performance, because they are carefully written to perform efficiently. This technique also shortens program development time.*

**Portability Tip 1.1**

*Using classes and methods from the Java API instead of writing your own improves program portability, because they are included in every Java implementation.*
Extensive class libraries of reusable software components are available over the Internet and the Web, many at no charge.

To download the Java API documentation, go to the Sun Java site java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/download.jsp.
1.11. FORTRAN, COBOL, Pascal and Ada

Hundreds of high-level languages have been developed, but only a few have achieved broad acceptance. **FORTRAN** (FORmula TRANslator) was developed by IBM Corporation in the mid-1950s to be used for scientific and engineering applications that require complex mathematical computations. FORTRAN is still widely used, especially in engineering applications.

**COBOL (COmmon Business Oriented Language)** was developed in the late 1950s by computer manufacturers, the U.S. government and industrial computer users. COBOL is used for commercial applications that require precise and efficient manipulation of large amounts of data. Much business software is still programmed in COBOL.

During the 1960s, many large software-development efforts encountered severe difficulties. Software deliveries were typically late, costs greatly exceeded budgets and the finished products were unreliable. People began to realize that software development was a far more complex activity than they had imagined. Research in the 1960s resulted in the evolution of structured programming—a disciplined approach to writing programs that are clearer, easier to test and debug and easier to modify than large programs produced with previous techniques.

One of the more tangible results of this research was the development of the Pascal programming language by Professor Niklaus Wirth in 1971. Named after the seventeenth-century mathematician and philosopher Blaise Pascal, it was designed for teaching structured programming in academic environments and rapidly became the preferred programming language in most colleges. Pascal lacks many features needed to make it useful in commercial, industrial and government applications, so it has not been widely accepted in these environments.

The **Ada** programming language was developed under the sponsorship of the U.S. Department of Defense (DOD) during the 1970s and early 1980s. Hundreds of separate languages were being used to produce the DOD's massive command-and-control software systems. The DOD wanted a single language that would fill most of its needs. The Ada language was named after Lady Ada Lovelace, daughter of the poet Lord Byron. Lady Lovelace is credited with writing the world's first computer program in the early 1800s (for the Analytical Engine mechanical computing device designed by Charles Babbage). One important capability of Ada, called **multitasking**, allows programmers to
specify that many activities are to occur in parallel. Java, through a technique called multithreading, also enables programmers to write programs with parallel activities.
1.12. BASIC, Visual Basic, Visual C++, C# and .NET

The **BASIC** (Beginner's All-Purpose Symbolic Instruction Code) programming language was developed in the mid-1960s at Dartmouth College as a means of writing simple programs. BASIC's primary purpose was to familiarize novices with programming techniques.

Microsoft's Visual Basic language was introduced in the early 1990s to simplify the development of Microsoft Windows applications and is one of the most popular programming languages in the world.

Microsoft's latest development tools are part of its corporate-wide strategy for integrating the Internet and the Web into computer applications. This strategy is implemented in Microsoft's **.NET platform**, which provides developers with the capabilities they need to create and run computer applications that can execute on computers distributed across the Internet. Microsoft's three primary programming languages are **Visual Basic .NET** (based on the original BASIC), **Visual C++ .NET** (based on C++) and **C#** (a new language based on C++ and Java that was developed expressly for the .NET platform). Developers using .NET can write software components in the language they are most familiar with and then form applications by combining those components with components written in any .NET language.
1.13. Typical Java Development Environment

We now explain the commonly used steps in creating and executing a Java application using a Java development environment (illustrated in Fig. 1.1).

**Figure 1.1. Typical Java development environment.**
(This item is displayed on page 13 in the print version)
Java programs normally go through five phases: edit, compile, load, verify and execute. We discuss these phases in the context of the J2SE Development Kit (JDK) version 5.0 from Sun Microsystems, Inc., which will be wrapped with the book as an accompanying CD once Sun releases the final version of the JDK 5.0. If the CD for your book does not have the JDK on it, you can download both the JDK and its documentation now from java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/download.jsp. For help with the download, visit servlet.java.sun.com/help/download. Carefully follow the installation instructions for the JDK provided on the CD (or at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/install.html) to ensure that you set up your computer.
properly to compile and execute Java programs. Complete installation instructions can also be found on Sun's Java Web site at java.sun.com/learning/new2java/index.html

[Note: This Web site provides installation instructions for Windows, UNIX/Linux and Mac OS X. If you are not using one of these operating systems, refer to the manuals for your system's Java environment or ask your instructor how to accomplish these tasks based on your computer's operating system. In addition, please keep in mind that Web links occasionally break as companies evolve their Web sites. If you encounter a problem with this link or any other links referenced in this book, please check our Web site (www.deitel.com) for errata and please notify us by e-mail at deitel@deitel.com. We will respond promptly.]

Phase 1: Creating a Program

Phase 1 consists of editing a file with an editor program (normally known simply as an editor). You type a Java program (typically referred to as source code) using the editor, make any necessary corrections and save the program on a secondary storage device, such as your hard drive. Java source-code file names end with the .java extension, which indicates that a file contains Java source code. We assume that the reader knows how to edit a file.

Two editors widely used on UNIX/Linux systems are vi and emacs. On Windows, a simple editing program like Windows Notepad will suffice. Many freeware and shareware editors are also available for download from the Internet on sites like www.download.com.

For organizations that develop substantial information systems, integrated development environments (IDEs) are available from many major software suppliers, including Sun Microsystems. IDEs provide many tools that support the software development process, including editors for writing and editing programs and debuggers for locating logic errors in programs.

Several popular IDEs are NetBeans (www.netbeans.org), jEdit (www.jedit.org), Eclipse (www.eclipse.org), JBuilder (www.borland.com), JCreator (www.jcreator.com), BlueJ (www.bluej.org) and jGRASP (www.jgrasp.org). Sun Microsystems has the Sun Java Studio (wwws.sun.com/software/sundev/jde/), which is an enhanced version of Net-Beans. [Note: NetBeans v. 3.6, jEdit v.
4.1, jGRASP v. 1.7 and BlueJ v. 1.3.5 are included on the CD that accompanies this book. These IDEs are designed to execute on most major platforms. Our example programs should operate properly with any Java integrated development environment that supports the JDK 5.0. We also provide free Dive Into™ guides for various IDEs on our Web site at www.deitel.com/books/jHTP6/index.html.]

Phase 2: Compiling a Java Program into Bytecodes

In Phase 2, the programmer uses the command javac (the Java compiler) to compile a program. For example, to compile a program called Welcome.java, you would type

    javac Welcome.java

in the command window of your system (i.e., the MS-DOS prompt in Windows 95/98/ ME, the Command Prompt in Windows NT/2000/XP, the shell prompt in UNIX/Linux or the Terminal application in Mac OS X). If the program compiles, the compiler produces a .class file called Welcome.class that contains the compiled version of the program.

The Java compiler translates the Java source code into bytecodes that represent the tasks to be performed during the execution phase (Phase 5). Bytecodes are executed by the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) a part of the JDK and the foundation of the Java platform. A virtual machine(VM) is a software application that simulates a computer, but hides the underlying operating system and hardware from the programs that interact with the VM. If the same VM is implemented on many computer platforms, applications that it executes can be used on all those platforms. The JVM is one of the most widely used virtual machines.

Unlike machine language, which is dependent on specific computer hardware, byte-codes are platform-independent instructionsthey are not dependent on a particular hardware platform. So Java's bytecodes are portable that is, the same bytecodes can execute on any platform containing a JVM that understands the version of Java in which the bytecodes were compiled. The JVM is invoked by the java command. For example, to execute a Java application called Welcome, you would type the command

    java Welcome
in a command window to invoke the JVM, which would then initiate the steps necessary to execute the application. This begins Phase 3.

**Phase 3: Loading a Program into Memory**

In Phase 3, the program must be placed in memory before it can execute a process known as **loading**. The **class loader** takes the `.class` files containing the program's bytecodes and transfers them to primary memory. The class loader also loads any of the `.class` files provided by Java that your program uses. The `.class` files can be loaded from a disk on your system or over a network (e.g., your local college or company network, or the Internet).

**Phase 4: Bytecode Verification**

In Phase 4, as the classes are loaded, the **bytecode verifier** examines their bytecodes to ensure that they are valid and do not violate Java's security restrictions. Java enforces strong security, to make sure that Java programs arriving over the network do not damage your files or your system (as computer viruses and worms might).

**Phase 5: Execution**

In Phase 5, the JVM executes the program's bytecodes, thus performing the actions specified by the program. In early Java versions, the JVM was simply an interpreter for Java bytecodes. This caused most Java programs to execute slowly because the JVM would interpret and execute one bytecode at a time. Today's JVMs typically execute bytecodes using a combination of interpretation and so-called **just-in-time (JIT) compilation**. In this process, The JVM analyzes the bytecodes as they are interpreted, searching for **hot spots** parts of the bytecodes that execute frequently. For these parts, a **just-in-time (JIT) compiler** known as the **Java HotSpot compiler** translates the bytecodes into the underlying computer's machine language. When the JVM encounters these compiled parts again, the faster machine-language code executes. Thus Java programs actually go through two compilation phasesone
in which source code is translated into bytecodes (for portability across JVMs on different computer platforms) and a second in which, during execution, the bytecodes are translated into machine language for the actual computer on which the program executes.

Problems That May Occur at Execution Time

Programs might not work on the first try. Each of the preceding phases can fail because of various errors that we will discuss throughout this book. For example, an executing program might attempt to divide by zero (an illegal operation for whole-number arithmetic in Java). This would cause the Java program to display an error message. If this occurs, you would have to return to the edit phase, make the necessary corrections and proceed through the remaining phases again to determine that the corrections fix the problem(s).

[Note: Most programs in Java input or output data. When we say that a program displays a message, we normally mean that it displays that message on your computer's screen. Messages and other data may be output to other devices, such as disks and hardcopy printers, or even to a network for transmission to other computers.]

Common Programming Error 1.1

Errors like division by zero occur as a program runs, so they are called runtime errors or execution-time errors. Fatal runtime errors cause programs to terminate immediately without having successfully performed their jobs. Nonfatal runtime errors allow programs to run to completion, often producing incorrect results.
1.14. Notes about Java and Java How to Program, Sixth Edition

Java is a powerful programming language. Experienced programmers sometimes take pride in creating weird, contorted, convoluted usage of a language. This is a poor programming practice. It makes programs more difficult to read, more likely to behave strangely, more difficult to test and debug, and more difficult to adapt to changing requirements. This book stresses clarity. The following is our first "good programming practice" tip.

**Good Programming Practice 1.1**

Write your Java programs in a simple and straightforward manner. This is sometimes referred to as KIS ("keep it simple"). Do not "stretch" the language by trying bizarre usages.

---

You have heard that Java is a portable language and that programs written in Java can run on many different computers. For programming in general, **portability is an elusive goal**. The ANSI C standard document (located at [www.ansi.org](http://www.ansi.org)), which describes the C programming language, contains a lengthy list of portability issues. In fact, whole books have been written to discuss portability, such as Rex Jaeschke's *Portability and the C Language*.

**Portability Tip 1.2**

Although it is easier to write portable programs in Java than in other programming languages, differences between compilers, JVMs and computers can make portability difficult to achieve. Simply writing programs in Java does not guarantee portability.
Error-Prevention Tip 1.1

Always test your Java programs on all systems on which you intend to run them, to ensure that they will work correctly for their intended audiences.

We have audited our presentation against Sun's current Java documentation for completeness and accuracy. However, Java is a rich language, and no textbook can cover every topic. A Web-based version of the Java API documentation can be found at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/index.html or you can download this documentation to your own computer from java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/download.html. For additional technical details on Java, visit java.sun.com/reference/docs/index.html. This site provides detailed information about many aspects of Java development, including all three Java platforms.

Good Programming Practice 1.2

Read the documentation for the version of Java you are using. Refer to it frequently to be sure you are aware of the rich collection of Java features and are using them correctly.

Good Programming Practice 1.3

Your computer and compiler are good teachers. If, after carefully reading your Java documentation manual, you are not sure how a feature of Java works, experiment and see what happens. Study each error or warning message you get when you compile your programs (called compile-time errors or compilation errors), and correct the programs to eliminate these messages.
Software Engineering Observation 1.4

The J2SE Development Kit comes with the Java source code. Some programmers like to read the source code for the Java API classes to determine how the classes work and to learn additional programming techniques.
1.15. Test-Driving a Java Application

In this section, you will run and interact with your first Java application. You will begin by running an ATM application that simulates the transactions that take place when using an ATM machine (e.g., withdrawing money, making deposits and checking account balances). You will learn how to build this application in the optional, object-oriented case study included in Chapters 18 and 10. Figure 1.10 at the end of this section suggests many additional interesting applications that you may also want to test-drive after completing the ATM test-drive.

In the following steps, you will run the application and perform various transactions. The elements and functionality you see in this application are typical of what you will learn to program in this book. [Note: We use fonts to distinguish between features you see on a screen (e.g., the Command Prompt) and elements that are not directly related to a screen. Our convention is to emphasize screen features like titles and menus (e.g., the File menu) in a semibold sans-serif Helvetica font and to emphasize non-screen elements, such as file names or input (e.g., ProgramName.java) in a sans-serif Lucida font. As you have already noticed, the defining occurrence of each term is set in blue, heavy bold. In the figures in this section, we highlight in yellow the user input required by each step and point out significant parts of the application with lines and text. To make these features more visible, we have modified the background color of the Command Prompt windows.]

[Page 17]

**Checking your setup.** Read the For Students and Instructors: Important Information Before You Begin section to confirm that you have set up Java properly on your computer and that you have copied the book's examples to your hard drive.

**Locating the completed application.** Open a Command Prompt window. For readers using Windows 95, 98 or 2000, this can be done by selecting Start > Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt. For Windows XP users, select Start > All Programs > Accessories > Command Prompt. Change to your completed ATM application directory by typing `cd C:\examples\ch01\ATM` and then pressing Enter (Fig. 1.2). The command `cd` is used to change directories.
2. **Figure 1.2. Opening a Windows XP Command Prompt and changing directories.**

[View full size image]

**Running the ATM application.** Now that you are in the directory that contains the ATM application, type the command `java ATMCaseStudy` ([Fig. 1.3]) and press *Enter*. Remember from the preceding section that the `java` command, followed by the name of the application's `.class` file (in this case, `ATMCaseStudy`), executes the application. It is not necessary to specify the `.class` extension when using the `java` command. [*Note: Java commands are case sensitive. It is important to type the name of this application with a capital A, T and M in "ATM," a capital C in "Case" and a capital S in "Study." Otherwise, the application will not execute.*]

3. **Figure 1.3. Using the java command to execute the ATM application.**

[View full size image]

**Entering an account number.** When the application first executes, it displays a "Welcome!" greeting and prompts you for an account number. Type `12345` at the "Please enter your account number:" prompt ([Fig. 1.4]) and press *Enter.*
4. **Figure 1.4. Prompting the user for an account number.**

![ATM welcome message and Enter account number prompt]

**Entering a PIN.** Once a valid account number is entered, the application displays the prompt "Enter your PIN:". Type "54321" as your valid PIN (Personal Identification Number) and press Enter. The ATM main menu containing a list of options will be displayed (Fig. 1.5).

**Figure 1.5. Entering a valid PIN number and displaying the ATM application's main menu.**

![Enter valid PIN and ATM main menu]

5. **Viewing the account balance.** Select option 1, "View my balance", from the ATM menu. The application then displays two numbers—the Available balance ($1000.00) and the Total balance ($1,200.00). The available balance is the maximum amount of money in your account which is available for withdrawal at a given time. In some cases, certain funds, such as recent deposits, are not immediately available for the user to withdraw, so the available balance may be less than the total balance, as it is here. After the account balance information is shown, the application's main menu is displayed again (Fig. 1.6).
6. **Figure 1.6. ATM application displaying user account balance information.**

[View full size image]

![Account balance information](image)

7. **Withdrawing money from the account.** Select option 2, "Withdraw cash", from the application menu. You are then presented (Fig. 1.7) with a list of dollar amounts (e.g., 20, 40, 60, 100 and 200). You are also given the option to cancel the transaction and return to the main menu. Withdraw $100 by selecting option 4. The application displays "Please take your cash now." and returns to the main menu. [Note: Unfortunately, this application only simulates the behavior of a real ATM and thus does not actually dispense money.]

[Page 19]

**Figure 1.7. Withdrawing money from the account and returning to the main menu.**

[View full size image]
Confirming that the account information has been updated. From the main menu, select option 1 again to view your current account balance. Note that both the available balance and the total balance have been updated to reflect your withdrawal transaction (Fig. 1.8).

Figure 1.8. Checking new balance.

Ending the transaction. To end your current ATM session, select option 4, "Exit" from the main menu. The ATM will exit the system and display a goodbye message to the user. The application will then return to its original prompt asking for the next user's account number (Fig. 1.9).

Figure 1.9. Ending an ATM transaction session.

(This item is displayed on page 20 in the print version)
Exiting the ATM application and closing the Command Prompt window.

Most applications provide an option to exit and return to the Command Prompt directory from which the application was run. A real ATM does not provide a user with the option to turn off the ATM machine. Rather, when a user has completed all desired transactions and chooses the menu option to exit, the ATM resets itself and displays a prompt for the next user's account number. As Fig. 1.9 illustrates, the ATM application here behaves similarly. Choosing the menu option to exit ends only the current user's ATM session, not the entire ATM application. To actually exit the ATM application, click the close (x) button in the upper-right corner of the Command Prompt window. Closing the window causes the running application to terminate.

Additional Applications Found in Java How to Program, 6/e

We encourage you to practice running some of the Java applications featured in this textbook. Figure 1.10 lists a few of the hundreds of applications found in the examples and exercises in this text. Many of these programs simulate real-world applications and introduce the powerful and fun features of Java programming. Please feel free to run any or all of the programs listed to see some of the different types of applications you will learn how to build as you study the programming concepts in this textbook. The examples folder for Chapter 1 contains all the files required to run each application. You can do so by typing the commands listed in Fig. 1.10 in a Command Prompt window.
Figure 1.10. Examples of additional Java applications found in
*Java How to Program, 6/e.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application Name</th>
<th>Chapter Location</th>
<th>Commands to Run</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tic-Tac-Toe</td>
<td><strong>Chapters 8 and 24</strong></td>
<td>cd C:\examples\ch01\Tic-Tac-Toe java TicTacToeTest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guessing Game</td>
<td><strong>Chapter 11</strong></td>
<td>cd C:\examples\ch01\GuessGame java GuessGame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logo Animator</td>
<td><strong>Chapter 21</strong></td>
<td>cd C:\examples\ch01\LogoAnimator java Logo Animator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bouncing Ball</td>
<td><strong>Chapter 23</strong></td>
<td>cd C:\examples\ch01\BouncingBall java BouncingBall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.16. Software Engineering Case Study: Introduction to Object Technology and the UML (Required)

Now we begin our early introduction to object orientation, a natural way of thinking about the world and writing computer programs. Chapters 18 and 10 all end with a brief "Software Engineering Case Study" section in which we present a carefully paced introduction to object orientation. Our goal here is to help you develop an object-oriented way of thinking and to introduce you to the Unified Modeling Language™ (UML™) a graphical language that allows people who design software systems to use an industry standard notation to represent them.

In this required section, we introduce object-oriented concepts and terminology. The optional sections in Chapters 28 and 10 present an object-oriented design and implementation of the software for a simple automated teller machine (ATM). The "Software Engineering Case Study" sections at the ends of Chapters 27

- analyze a typical requirements document that describes a software system (the ATM) to be built
- determine the objects required to implement that system
- determine the attributes the objects will have
- determine the behaviors these objects will exhibit
- specify how the objects interact with one another to meet the system requirements

The "Software Engineering Case Study" sections at the ends of Chapters 8 and 10 modify and enhance the design presented in Chapters 27. Appendix J contains a complete, working Java implementation of the object-oriented ATM system.

You will experience a solid introduction to object-oriented design with the UML. Also, you will sharpen your code-reading skills by touring the complete, carefully written and well-documented Java implementation of the ATM.
Basic Object Technology Concepts

We begin our introduction to object orientation with some key terminology. Everywhere you look in the real world you see objects—people, animals, plants, cars, planes, buildings, computers and so on. Humans think in terms of objects. Telephones, houses, traffic lights, microwave ovens and water coolers are just a few more objects we see around us every day. Computer programs, such as the Java programs you will read in this book and the ones you will write, can also be viewed as objects, composed of lots of interacting software objects.

We sometimes divide objects into two categories: animate and inanimate. Animate objects are "alive" in some sense—they move around and do things. Inanimate objects, on the other hand, do not move on their own. Objects of both types, however, have some things in common. They all have attributes (e.g., size, shape, color and weight), and they all exhibit behaviors (e.g., a ball rolls, bounces, inflates and deflates; a baby cries, sleeps, crawls, walks and blinks; a car accelerates, brakes and turns; a towel absorbs water). We will study the kinds of attributes and behaviors that software objects have.

Humans learn about existing objects by studying their attributes and observing their behaviors. Different objects can have similar attributes and can exhibit similar behaviors. Comparisons can be made, for example, between babies and adults and between humans and chimpanzees.

Object-oriented design (OOD) models software in terms similar to those that people use to describe real-world objects. It takes advantage of class relationships, where objects of a certain class, such as a class of vehicles, have the same characteristics—cars, trucks, little red wagons and roller skates have much in common. OOD also takes advantage of inheritance relationships, where new classes of objects are derived by absorbing characteristics of existing classes and adding unique characteristics of their own. An object of class "convertible" certainly has the characteristics of the more general class "automobile," but more specifically, the roof goes up and down.

Object-oriented design provides a natural and intuitive way to view the software design process—namely, modeling objects by their attributes and behaviors just as we describe real-world objects. OOD also models communication between objects. Just as people send messages to one another (e.g., a sergeant commands a soldier to stand at attention), objects also
communicate via messages. A bank account object may receive a message to
decrease its balance by a certain amount because the customer has withdrawn
that amount of money.

OOD encapsulates (i.e., wraps) attributes and operations (behaviors) into
objects; an object's attributes and operations are intimately tied together.
Objects have the property of information hiding. This means that objects
may know how to communicate with one another across well-defined
interfaces, but normally they are not allowed to know how other objects are
implemented; implementation details are hidden within the objects themselves.
We can drive a car effectively, for instance, without knowing the details of how
engines, transmissions, brakes and exhaust systems work internally; as long as
we know how to use the accelerator pedal, the brake pedal, the wheel and so
on. Information hiding, as we will see, is crucial to good software engineering.

Languages like Java are object oriented. Programming in such a language is
called object-oriented programming (OOP), and it allows computer
programmers to implement an object-oriented design as a working system.
Languages like C, on the other hand, are procedural, so programming tends
to be action oriented. In C, the unit of programming is the function. Groups
of actions that perform some common task are formed into functions, and
functions are grouped to form programs. In Java, the unit of programming is
the class from which objects are eventually instantiated (created). Java
classes contain methods (which implement operations and are similar to
functions in C) as well as fields (which implement attributes).

Java programmers concentrate on creating classes. Each class contains fields
and the set of methods that manipulate the fields and provide services to
clients (i.e., other classes that use the class). The programmer uses existing
classes as the building blocks for constructing new classes.

Classes are to objects as blueprints are to houses. Just as we can build many
houses from one blueprint, we can instantiate (create) many objects from one
class. You cannot cook meals in the kitchen of a blueprint; you can cook meals
in the kitchen of a house.

Classes can have relationships with other classes. For example, in an object-
oriented design of a bank, the "bank teller" class needs to relate to the
"customer" class, the "cash drawer" class, the "safe" class, and so on. These
relationships are called associations.

Packaging software as classes makes it possible for future software systems to
reuse the classes. Groups of related classes are often packaged as reusable
components. Just as realtors often say that the three most important factors
affecting the price of real estate are "location, location and location," people in
the software community often say that the three most important factors
affecting the future of software development are "reuse, reuse and reuse." Reuse of existing classes when building new classes and programs saves time and effort. Reuse also helps programmers build more reliable and effective systems, because existing classes and components often have gone through extensive testing, debugging and performance tuning.

Indeed, with object technology, you can build much of the software you will need by combining classes, just as automobile manufacturers combine interchangeable parts. Each new class you create will have the potential to become a valuable software asset that you and other programmers can use to speed and enhance the quality of future software development efforts.

Introduction to Object-Oriented Analysis and Design (OOAD)

Soon you will be writing programs in Java. How will you create the code for your programs? Perhaps, like many beginning programmers, you will simply turn on your computer and start typing. This approach may work for small programs (like the ones we present in the early chapters of the book), but what if you were asked to create a software system to control thousands of automated teller machines for a major bank? Or suppose you were asked to work on a team of 1,000 software developers building the next U.S. air traffic control system. For projects so large and complex, you could not sit down and simply start writing programs.

To create the best solutions, you should follow a detailed process for analyzing your project's requirements (i.e., determining what the system is supposed to do) and developing a design that satisfies them (i.e., deciding how the system should do it). Ideally, you would go through this process and carefully review the design (or have your design reviewed by other software professionals) before writing any code. If this process involves analyzing and designing your system from an object-oriented point of view, it is called an object-oriented analysis and design (OOAD) process. Experienced programmers know that analysis and design can save many hours by helping them to avoid an ill-planned system-development approach that has to be abandoned part of the way through its implementation, possibly wasting considerable time, money and effort.
OOAD is the generic term for the process of analyzing a problem and developing an approach for solving it. Small problems like the ones discussed in these first few chapters do not require an exhaustive OOAD process. It may be sufficient to write **pseudocode** before we begin writing Java code. Pseudocode is an informal means of expressing program logic. It is not actually a programming language, but we can use it as a kind of outline to guide us as we write our code. We introduce pseudocode in Chapter 4.

As problems and the groups of people solving them increase in size, the methods of OOAD become more appropriate than pseudocode. Ideally, a group should agree on a strictly defined process for solving its problem and a uniform way of communicating the results of that process to one another. Although many different OOAD processes exist, a single graphical language for communicating the results of any OOAD process has come into wide use. This language, known as the Unified Modeling Language (UML), was developed in the mid-1990s under the initial direction of three software methodologists: Grady Booch, James Rumbaugh and Ivar Jacobson.

**History of the UML**

In the 1980s, increasing numbers of organizations began using OOP to build their applications, and a need developed for a standard OOAD process. Many methodologists—including Booch, Rumbaugh and Jacobson—individually produced and promoted separate processes to satisfy this need. Each process had its own notation, or "language" (in the form of graphical diagrams), to convey the results of analysis and design.

By the early 1990s, different organizations, and even divisions within the same organization, were using their own unique processes and notations. At the same time, these organizations also wanted to use software tools that would support their particular processes. Software vendors found it difficult to provide tools for so many processes. Clearly, a standard notation and standard processes were needed.

In 1994, James Rumbaugh joined Grady Booch at Rational Software Corporation (now a division of IBM), and the two began working to unify their popular processes. They soon were joined by Ivar Jacobson. In 1996, the group released early versions of the UML to the software engineering community and requested feedback. Around the same time, an organization
known as the **Object Management Group™ (OMG™)** invited submissions for a common modeling language. The OMG ([www.omg.org](http://www.omg.org)) is a nonprofit organization that promotes the standardization of object-oriented technologies by issuing guidelines and specifications, such as the UML. Several corporations among them HP, IBM, Microsoft, Oracle and Rational Software had already recognized the need for a common modeling language. In response to the OMG's request for proposals, these companies formed **UML Partners**, the consortium that developed the UML version 1.1 and submitted it to the OMG. The OMG accepted the proposal and, in 1997, assumed responsibility for the continuing maintenance and revision of the UML. In March 2003, the OMG released UML version 1.5. The UML version 2 now under development marks the first major revision of the UML since the 1997 version 1.1 standard. Owing to the forthcoming adoption of UML 2 by the OMG and the fact that many books, modeling tools and industry experts are already using UML 2, we present UML 2 terminology and notation throughout this book.

### What Is the UML?

The Unified Modeling Language is now the most widely used graphical representation scheme for modeling object-oriented systems. It has indeed unified the various popular notational schemes. Those who design systems use the language (in the form of diagrams) to model their systems.

An attractive feature of the UML is its flexibility. The UML is **extensible** (i.e., capable of being enhanced with new features) and is independent of any particular OOAD process. UML modelers are free to use various processes in designing systems, but all developers can now express their designs with one standard set of graphical notations.

The UML is a complex, feature-rich graphical language. In our "Software Engineering Case Study" sections, we present a simple, concise subset of these features. We then use this subset to guide you through a first design experience with the UML intended for novice object-oriented programmers in a first- or second-semester programming course.

### Internet and Web UML Resources

For more information about the UML, refer to the following Web sites.

[www.uml.org](http://www.uml.org)
This UML resource page from the Object Management Group (OMG) provides specification documents for the UML and other object-oriented technologies.

www.ibm.com/software/rational/uml

This is the UML resource page for IBM Rational, the successor to the Rational Software Corporation (the company that created the UML).

Recommended Readings

Many books on the UML have been published. The following recommended books provide information about object-oriented design with the UML.


**Reed, P.** *Developing Applications with Java and UML*. Boston: Addison-Wesley, 2002.


For additional books on the UML, please refer to the recommended readings listed at the end of Section 2.9, or visit [www.amazon.com](http://www.amazon.com) or [www.bn.com](http://www.bn.com). IBM Rational, formerly Rational Software Corporation, also provides a recommended-reading list for UML books at [www.ibm.com/software/rational/info/technical/books.jsp](http://www.ibm.com/software/rational/info/technical/books.jsp).

Section 1.16 Self-Review Exercises

1. List three examples of real-world objects that we did not mention. For each object, list several attributes and behaviors.

   Pseudocode is__________.

   1. another term for OOAD
1.2  2. a programming language used to display UML diagrams
     3. an informal means of expressing program logic
     4. a graphical representation scheme for modeling object-oriented systems

The UML is used primarily to__________.
     1. test object-oriented systems
     2. design object-oriented systems
     3. implement object-oriented systems
     4. Both a and b

Answers to **Section 1.16** Self-Review Exercises

[Note: Answers may vary.] a) A television's attributes include the size of the screen, the number of colors it can display, its current channel and its current volume. A television turns on and off, changes channels, displays video and plays sounds. b) A coffee maker's attributes include the maximum volume of water it can hold, the time required to brew a pot of coffee and the temperature of the heating plate under the coffee pot. A coffee maker turns on and off, brews coffee and heats coffee. c) A turtle's attributes include its age, the size of its shell and its weight. A turtle walks, retreats into its shell, emerges from its shell and eats vegetation.

1.2  c.

1.3  b.
1.17. Wrap-Up

This chapter introduced basic hardware and software concepts, and basic object technology concepts, including classes, objects, attributes, behaviors, encapsulation, inheritance and polymorphism. We discussed the different types of programming languages and which programming languages are most widely used. You learned the steps for creating and executing a Java application using Sun's JDK 5.0. The chapter explored the history of the Internet and the World Wide Web and Java's role in developing distributed client/server applications for the Internet and the Web. You also learned about the history and purpose of the UML—the industry-standard graphical language for modeling software systems. Finally, you "test drove" a sample Java application similar to the types of applications you will learn to program in this book.

In the next chapter, you will create your first Java applications. You will see several examples that demonstrate how programs display messages and obtain information from the user for processing. We closely analyze and explain each example to help ease your way into Java programming.
1.18. Web Resources

This section provides many Web resources that will be useful to you as you learn Java. The sites include Java resources, Java development tools for students and professionals, and our own Web sites where you can find downloads and resources associated with this book. We also provide a link where you can subscribe to our free *Deitel Buzz Online* e-mail newsletter.

**Deitel & Associates Web Sites**


The Deitel & Associates home page for *Java How to Program, Sixth Edition*. Here you will find links to the book's examples (also included on the CD that accompanies the book) and other resources, such as our free *Dive Into™* guides that help you get started with several Java integrated development environments (IDEs).

[www.deitel.com](http://www.deitel.com)

Please check the Deitel & Associates home page for updates, corrections and additional resources for all Deitel publications.

[www.deitel.com/newsletter/subscribe.html](http://www.deitel.com/newsletter/subscribe.html)

Please visit this site to subscribe to the free *Deitel Buzz Online* e-mail newsletter to follow the Deitel & Associates publishing program.

[www.prenhall.com/deitel](http://www.prenhall.com/deitel)

Prentice Hall's home page for Deitel publications. Here you will find detailed product information, sample chapters and *Companion Web Sites* containing book- and chapter-specific resources for students and instructors.

**Sun Microsystems Web Sites**

[java.sun.com](http://java.sun.com)
Sun's home page for Java technology. Here you will find downloads, reference guides for developers, community forums, online tutorials and many other valuable Java resources.

**java.sun.com/j2se**


**java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/download.jsp**

The download page for the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition version 5.0 and its documentation. This development kit includes everything you need to compile and execute your Java applications. Please note that as Sun updates Java, the number 5.0 in the preceding URL will change. You can always go to [java.sun.com/j2se](http://java.sun.com/j2se) to locate the most recent version of Java.

**java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/install.html**

Instructions for installing the JDK version 5.0 on Solaris, Windows and Linux platforms. Please check this site if you are having difficulty installing Java on your computer. Also please note that as Java is updated, 5.0 in the preceding URL will change. You can always go to [java.sun.com/j2se](http://java.sun.com/j2se) to locate the most recent version of Java.

**java.sun.com/learning/new2java/index.html**

The "New to Java Center" on the Sun Microsystems Web site features online training resources to help you get started with Java programming.

**java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/index.html**

This site provides the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition version 5.0 API documentation. Refer to this site to learn about the Java class library's predefined classes and interfaces.

**java.sun.com/reference/docs/index.html**

Sun's documentation site for all Java technologies. Here you will find technical information on all Java technologies, including API (application programming interface) specifications for Java and related Sun technologies.

**java.sun.com/products/hotspot**
Visit the product information page for Sun's HotSpot virtual machine and compiler, a standard component of the Java 2 Runtime Environment and the JDK, for the latest information on high-speed Java program translation.

developers.sun.com

Sun's home page for Java developers provides downloads, APIs, code samples, articles with technical advice and other resources on the best Java development practices.

Editors and Integrated Development Environments

www.download.com

A site that contains freeware and shareware application downloads. In particular, several editors are available at this site that can be used to edit Java source code.

www.eclipse.org

The home page for the Eclipse development environment, which can be used to develop code in any programming language. You can download the environment and several Java plug-ins to use this environment to develop your Java programs.

www.netbeans.org

The home page for the NetBeans IDE, one of the most widely used, freely distributed Java development tools.

borland.com/products/downloads/download_jbuilder.html

Borland provides a free Foundation Edition version of its popular Java IDE JBuilder. The site also provides 30-day trial versions of the Enterprise and Developer editions.

www.blueJ.org

The home page for the BlueJ environmenta tool designed to help teach object-oriented Java to new programmers. BlueJ is available as a free download.

www.jgrasp.org

The home page for jGRASP provides downloads, documentation and tutorials
for this tool that displays visual representations of Java programs to aid comprehension.

[Page 28]

www.jedit.org

The home page for jEdit a text editor for programmers that is written in Java.

wwws.sun.com/software/sundev/jde/

The home page for Sun Java Studio the Sun Microsystems enhanced version of NetBeans.

www.jcreator.com

The home page for JCreator a popular Java IDE. JCreator Lite Edition is available as a free download. A 30-day trial version of JCreator Pro Edition is also available.

Additional Java Resource Sites

www.javalobby.org

Provides up-to-date Java news, forums where developers can exchange tips and advice, and a comprehensive Java knowledge base organizing articles and downloads from across the Web.

www.jguru.com

Provides forums, downloads, articles, online courses and a large collection of Java FAQs (Frequently Asked Questions).

www.javaworld.com

Provides resources for Java developers, such as articles, indices of popular Java books, tips and FAQs.

www.ftponline.com/javapro

The home page for the JavaPro magazine features monthly articles, programming tips, book reviews and more.
The home page for the Java Developer's Journal from Sys-Con Media, provides articles, e-books and other Java resources.
Summary

- The various devices that comprise a computer system (e.g., the keyboard, screen, disks, memory and processing units) are referred to as hardware.

- The computer programs that run on a computer are referred to as software.

- Java is one of today's most popular software development languages. Java is a fully object-oriented language with strong support for proper software-engineering techniques.

- A computer is a device capable of performing computations and making logical decisions at speeds millions, even billions, of times faster than humans can.

- Computers process data under the control of sets of instructions called computer programs. Computer programs guide the computer through actions specified by computer programmers.

- The input unit is the "receiving" section of the computer. It obtains information from input devices and places it at the disposal of other units for processing.

- The output unit is the "shipping" section of the computer. It takes information processed by the computer and places it on output devices to make it available for use outside the computer.

- The memory unit is the rapid-access, relatively low-capacity "warehouse" section of the computer. It retains information that has been entered through the input unit, making it immediately available for processing when needed, and retains information that has already been processed until that information can be placed on output devices by the output unit.

- The arithmetic and logic unit (ALU) is the "manufacturing" section of the computer. It is responsible for performing calculations and making decisions.
The central processing unit (CPU) is the "administrative" section of the computer. It coordinates and supervises the operation of the other sections.

The secondary storage unit is the long-term, high-capacity "warehousing" section of the computer. Programs or data not being used by the other units are normally placed on secondary storage devices (e.g., disks) until they are needed, possibly hours, days, months or even years later.

Software systems called operating systems were developed to help make it more convenient to use computers.

Multiprogramming involves the sharing of a computer's resources among the jobs competing for its attention, so that the jobs appear to run simultaneously.

With distributed computing, an organization's computing is distributed over networks to the sites where the work of the organization is performed.

Java has become the language of choice for developing Internet-based applications.

Any computer can directly understand only its own machine language. Machine languages generally consist of strings of numbers (ultimately reduced to 1s and 0s) that instruct computers to perform their most elementary operations one at a time.

English-like abbreviations form the basis of assembly languages. Translator programs called assemblers convert assembly-language programs to machine language.

Compilers translate high-level language programs into machine-language programs. High-level languages (like Java) contain English words and conventional mathematical notations.

Interpreter programs directly execute high-level language programs, eliminating the need to compile them into machine language.
• Java is used to create Web pages with dynamic and interactive content, develop large-scale enterprise applications, enhance the functionality of Web servers, provide applications for consumer devices and more.

• Java programs consist of pieces called classes. Classes include pieces called methods that perform tasks and return information when they complete their tasks.

• C++ is an extension of C developed by Bjarne Stroustrup in the early 1980s at Bell Laboratories. C++ provides a number of features that "spruce up" the C language, but more important, it provides capabilities for object-oriented programming.

• FORTRAN (FORmula TRANslator) was developed by IBM Corporation in the mid-1950s for scientific and engineering applications that require complex mathematical computations.

• COBOL (COmmon Business Oriented Language) was developed in the late 1950s by a group of computer manufacturers and government and industrial computer users. COBOL is used primarily for commercial applications that require precise and efficient data manipulation.

• Ada was developed under the sponsorship of the United States Department of Defense (DOD) during the 1970s and early 1980s. One important capability of Ada is multitasking—this allows programmers to specify that many activities are to occur in parallel. The Ada language was named after Lady Ada Lovelace, daughter of the poet Lord Byron. Lady Lovelace is credited with writing the world's first computer program in the early 1800s.

• The BASIC (Beginner's All-Purpose Symbolic Instruction Code) programming language was developed in the mid-1960s at Dartmouth College as a language for writing simple programs. BASIC's primary purpose was to familiarize novices with programming techniques.

• Microsoft's Visual Basic was introduced in the early 1990s to simplify the process of developing Microsoft Windows applications.

• Microsoft has a corporate-wide strategy for integrating the Internet and the Web into computer applications. This strategy is implemented in Microsoft's .NET platform, which provides developers with the capabilities
they need to create and run computer applications that can execute on computers distributed across the Internet.

- The .NET platform's three primary programming languages are Visual Basic .NET (based on the original BASIC), Visual C++ .NET (based on C++) and C# (a new language based on C++ and Java that was developed expressly for the .NET platform).

- Developers using .NET can write software components in the language they are most familiar with and then form applications by combining those components with components written in any .NET language.

- Java, through a technique called multithreading, enables programmers to write programs with parallel activities.

- Java programs normally go through five phases: edit, compile, load, verify and execute.

- Java source code file names end with the .java extension.

- The Java compiler (javac) translates a Java program into bytecodes instructions understood by the Java Virtual Machine (JVM), which executes Java programs. If a program compiles correctly, the compiler produces a file with the .class extension. This is the file containing the bytecodes that are executed by the JVM.

- A Java program must be placed in memory before it can execute. This is done by the class loader, which takes the .class file (or files) containing the bytecodes and transfers it to memory. The .class file can be loaded from a disk on your system or over a network.

- Object orientation is a natural way of thinking about the world and of writing computer programs.

- The Unified Modeling Language (UML) is a graphical language that allows people who build systems to represent their object-oriented designs in a common notation.
• Object-oriented design (OOD) models software components in terms of real-world objects. It takes advantage of class relationships, where objects of a certain class have the same characteristics. It also takes advantage of inheritance relationships, where newly created classes of objects are derived by absorbing characteristics of existing classes and adding unique characteristics of their own. OOD encapsulates data (attributes) and functions (behavior) into objects—the data and functions of an object are intimately tied together.

• Objects have the property of information hiding—objects normally are not allowed to know how other objects are implemented.

• Object-oriented programming (OOP) allows programmers to implement object-oriented designs as working systems.

• In Java, the unit of programming is the class from which objects are eventually instantiated. Java programmers concentrate on creating their own classes and reusing existing classes. Each class contains data and functions that manipulate that data. Function components are called methods.

• An instance of a class is called an object.

• Classes can have relationships with other classes. These relationships are called associations.

• With object technology, programmers can build much of the software they will need by combining standardized, interchangeable parts called classes.

• The process of analyzing and designing a system from an object-oriented point of view is called object-oriented analysis and design (OOAD).
Terminology

Ada

ALU (arithmetic and logic unit)

ANSI C

arithmetic and logic unit (ALU)

assembler

assembly language

attribute

BASIC

behavior

bytecode

bytecode verifier

C

C#

C++

central processing unit (CPU)

class

class file
file server

FORTRAN

hardware

high-level language

HotSpot™ compiler

HTML (Hypertext Markup Language)

IDE (Integrated Development Environment)

information hiding

inheritance

input device

input unit

input/output (I/O)

Internet

interpreter

Java

Java API (Java Application Programming Interface)

.java file-name extension

Java 2 Platform Standard Edition (J2SE)

Java 2 Platform Enterprise Edition (J2EE)

Java 2 Platform Micro Edition (J2ME)
J2SE Development Kit (JDK)

java interpreter

Java Virtual Machine (JVM)

javac compiler

JIT (just-in-time) compiler

KIS (keep it simple)

LAN (local area network)

legacy systems

live-code approach

load phase

machine language

memory unit

method

Microsoft Internet Explorer Web browser

modeling

multiprocessor

multiprogramming

multithreading

.NET

nonfatal runtime error
software reuse
structured programming
Sun Microsystems
throughput
timesharing
translation
translator program
Unified Modeling Language (UML)
verify phase
Visual Basic .NET
Visual C++ .NET
World Wide Web
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. The company that popularized personal computing was __________.
2. The computer that made personal computing legitimate in business and industry was the __________.
3. Computers process data under the control of sets of instructions called __________.
4. The six key logical units of the computer are the __________, __________, __________, __________, __________, and __________.
5. The three classes of languages discussed in the chapter are __________, and __________.
6. The programs that translate high-level language programs into machine language are called __________.
7. The __________ allows computer users to locate and view multimedia-based documents on almost any subject over the Internet.
8. __________ allows a Java program to perform multiple activities in parallel.

Fill in the blanks in each of the following sentences about the Java environment:

1. The __________ command from the J2SE Development Kit executes a Java application.
2. The __________ command from the J2SE Development Kit compiles a Java program.
3. A Java program file must end with the __________ file extension.
4. When a Java program is compiled, the file produced by the compiler ends with the __________ file extension.
5. The file produced by the Java compiler contains __________ that are executed by the Java Virtual Machine.

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements (based on Section 1.16):

1. Objects have the property of __________ although objects may know how to communicate with one another across well-defined interfaces, they normally are not allowed to know how other objects are implemented.
2. Java programmers concentrate on creating __________, which contain fields and the set of methods that manipulate those fields and provide services to clients.
3. Classes can have relationships with other classes. These relationships are called __________.
4. The process of analyzing and designing a system from an object-oriented point of view is called __________.
5. OOD also takes advantage of __________ relationships, where new classes of objects are derived by absorbing characteristics of existing classes then adding unique characteristics of their own.
6. __________ is a graphical language that allows people who design software systems to use an...
industry standard notation to represent them.

7. The size, shape, color and weight of an object are considered__________of the object.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

1.1 a) Apple. b) IBM Personal Computer. c) programs. d) input unit, output unit, memory unit, arithmetic and logic unit, central processing unit, secondary storage unit. e) machine languages, assembly languages, high-level languages. f) compilers. g) World Wide Web. h) Multithreading.

1.2 a) java. b) javac. c) .java. d) .class. e) bytecodes.

1.3 a) information hiding. b) classes. c) associations. d) object-oriented analysis and design (OOAD). e) inheritance. f) The Unified Modeling Language (UML). g) attributes.
Exercises

Categorize each of the following items as either hardware or software:

1. CPU
2. Java compiler
3. JVM
4. input unit
5. editor

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. The logical unit of the computer that receives information from outside the computer for use by the computer is the __________.
2. The process of instructing the computer to solve a problem is called __________.
3. __________ is a type of computer language that uses English-like abbreviations for machine-language instructions.
4. __________ is a logical unit of the computer that sends information which has already been processed by the computer to various devices so that it may be used outside the computer.
5. __________ and __________ are logical units of the computer that retain information.
6. __________ is a logical unit of the computer that performs calculations.
7. __________ is a logical unit of the computer that makes logical decisions.
8. __________ languages are most convenient to the programmer for writing programs quickly and easily.
9. The only language that a computer can directly understand is that computer's __________.
10. __________ is a logical unit of the computer that coordinates the activities of all the other logical units.

What is the difference between fatal errors and nonfatal errors? Why might you prefer to experience a fatal error rather than a nonfatal error?

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. __________ is now used to develop large-scale enterprise applications, to enhance the functionality of Web servers, to provide applications for consumer devices and for many other purposes.
2. __________ was designed specifically for the .NET platform to enable programmers to migrate easily to .NET.
3. __________ initially became widely known as the development language of the UNIX operating system.
1.7 4. __________ was developed at Dartmouth College in the mid-1960s as a means of writing simple programs.

5. __________ was developed by IBM Corporation in the mid-1950s to be used for scientific and engineering applications that require complex mathematical computations.

6. __________ is used for commercial applications that require precise and efficient manipulation of large amounts of data.

7. __________ was developed by Bjarne Stroustrup in the early 1980s at Bell Laboratories (now part of Lucent).

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements (based on Section 1.13):

1. Java programs normally go through five phases __________, __________, __________, __________ and __________.

2. A(n) __________ provides many tools that support the software development process, such as editors for writing and editing programs, debuggers for locating logic errors in programs and many other features.

3. The command java invokes the __________, which executes Java programs.

4. A(n) __________ is a software application that simulates a computer, but hides the underlying operating system and hardware from the programs that interact with the VM.

5. A(n) __________ program can run on multiple platforms.

6. The __________ takes the .class files containing the program's bytecodes and transfers them to primary memory.

7. The __________ examines bytecodes to ensure that they are valid.

1.9 Explain the two compilation phases of Java programs.
Chapter 2. Introduction to Java Applications

What's in a name? that which we call a rose By any other name would smell as sweet.

William Shakespeare

When faced with a decision, I always ask, "What would be the most fun?"

Peggy Walker

"Take some more tea," the March Hare said to Alice, very earnestly. "I've had nothing yet," Alice replied in an offended tone: "so I can't take more." "You mean you can't take less," said the Hatter: "it's very easy to take more than nothing."

Lewis Carroll

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- To write simple Java applications.
- To use input and output statements.
- Java's primitive types.
- Basic memory concepts.
- To use arithmetic operators.
- The precedence of arithmetic operators.
- To write decision-making statements.
- To use relational and equality operators.
Outline

2.1 Introduction

2.2 First Program in Java: Printing a Line of Text

2.3 Modifying Our First Java Program

2.4 Displaying Text with `printf`

2.5 Another Java Application: Adding Integers

2.6 Memory Concepts

2.7 Arithmetic

2.8 Decision Making: Equality and Relational Operators

2.9 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Examining the Requirements Document

2.10 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
2.1. Introduction

We now introduce Java application programming which facilitates a disciplined approach to program design. Most of the Java programs you will study in this book process information and display results. We present six examples that demonstrate how your programs can display messages and how they can obtain information from the user for processing. We begin with several examples that simply display messages on the screen. We then demonstrate a program that obtains two numbers from a user, calculates their sum and displays the result. You will learn how to perform various arithmetic calculations and save their results for later use. Many programs contain logic that requires the program to make decisions. The last example in this chapter demonstrates decision-making fundamentals by showing you how to compare numbers then display messages based on the comparison results. For example, the program displays a message indicating that two numbers are equal only if they have the same value. We analyze each example one line at a time to help you ease your way into Java programming. To help you apply the skills you learn here, we provide many fun and challenging problems in the chapter's exercises.
2.2. First Program in Java: Printing a Line of Text

Every time you use a computer, you execute various applications that perform tasks for you. For example, your e-mail application helps you send and receive e-mail, and your Web browser lets you view Web pages from Web sites around the world. Computer programmers create such applications by writing computer programs.

A Java application is a computer program that executes when you use the java command to launch the Java Virtual Machine (JVM). Let us consider a simple application that displays a line of text. (Later in this section we will discuss how to compile and run an application.) The program and its output are shown in Fig. 2.1. The output appears in the light blue box at the end of the program. The program illustrates several important Java language features. Java uses notations that may look strange to nonprogrammers. In addition, for your convenience, each program we present in this book includes line numbers, which are not part of actual Java programs. We will soon see that line 9 does the real work of the programnamely, displaying the phrase Welcome to Java Programming! on the screen. We now consider each line of the program in order.

Figure 2.1. Text-printing program.
(This item is displayed on page 37 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 2.1: Welcome1.java
// Text-printing program.

public class Welcome1
{
    // main method begins execution of Java application
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        System.out.println( "Welcome to Java Programming!" );
    }

    // end method main
}

// end class Welcome1
```

Welcome to Java Programming!
begins with //, indicating that the remainder of the line is a comment. Programmers insert comments to document programs and improve their readability. This helps other people to read and understand programs. The Java compiler ignores comments, so they do not cause the computer to perform any action when the program is run. We begin every program with a comment indicating the figure number and file name.

A comment that begins with // is called an end-of-line (or single-line) comment, because the comment terminates at the end of the line on which it appears. A // comment also can begin in the middle of a line and continue until the end of that line (as in lines 11 and 13).

Traditional comments (also called multiple-line comments), such as

    /* This is a traditional comment. It can be split over many lines */

can be spread over several lines. This type of comment begins with the delimiter */ and ends with */. All text between the delimiters is ignored by the compiler. Java incorporated traditional comments and end-of-line comments from the C and C++ programming languages, respectively. In this book, we use end-of-line comments.

Java also provides Javadoc comments that are delimited by /** and */. As with traditional comments, all text between the Javadoc comment delimiters is ignored by the compiler. Javadoc comments enable programmers to embed
program documentation directly in their programs. Such comments are the preferred Java commenting format in industry. The javadoc utility program (part of the J2SE Development Kit) reads Javadoc comments and uses them to prepare your program's documentation in HTML format. We demonstrate Javadoc comments and the javadoc utility in Appendix H. For complete information, visit Sun's javadoc Tool Home Page at java.sun.com/j2se/javadoc.

Common Programming Error 2.1

Forgetting one of the delimiters of a traditional or Javadoc comment is a syntax error. The syntax of a programming language specifies the rules for creating a proper program in that language. A syntax error occurs when the compiler encounters code that violates Java's language rules (i.e., its syntax). In this case, the compiler does not produce a .class file. Instead, the compiler issues an error message to help the programmer identify and fix the incorrect code. Syntax errors are also called compiler errors, compile-time errors or compilation errors, because the compiler detects them during the compilation phase. You will be unable to execute your program until you correct all the syntax errors in it.

Line 2

// Text-printing program.

is an end-of-line comment that describes the purpose of the program.

Good Programming Practice 2.1

Every program should begin with a comment that explains the purpose of the program, the author and the date and time the program was last modified. (We are not showing the author, date and time in this book's programs because this information would be redundant.)
Line 3 is simply a blank line. Programmers use blank lines and space characters to make programs easier to read. Together, blank lines, space characters and tab characters are known as **white space**. (Space characters and tabs are known specifically as **white-space characters**.) White space is ignored by the compiler. In this chapter and the next several chapters, we discuss conventions for using white space to enhance program readability.

**Good Programming Practice 2.2**

*Use blank lines and space characters to enhance program readability.*

---

Line 4

```java
public class Welcome1
```

begins a **class declaration** for class `Welcome1`. Every program in Java consists of at least one class declaration that is defined by you the programmer. These are known as **programmer-defined classes** or **user-defined classes**. The **class keyword** introduces a class declaration in Java and is immediately followed by the **class name** (`Welcome1`). Keywords (sometimes called **reserved words**) are reserved for use by Java (we discuss the various keywords throughout the text) and are always spelled with all lowercase letters. The complete list of Java keywords is shown in **Appendix C**.

By convention, all class names in Java begin with a capital letter and capitalize the first letter of each word they include (e.g., `SampleClassName`). A Java class name is an **identifier** a series of characters consisting of letters, digits, underscores (_`) and dollar signs (`$`) that does not begin with a digit and does not contain spaces. Some valid identifiers are `Welcome1`, `$value`, `_value`, `m_inputField1` and `button7`. The name 7button is not a valid identifier because it begins with a digit, and the name `input field` is not a valid identifier because it contains a space. Normally, an identifier that does not begin with a capital letter is not the name of a Java class. Java is **case sensitive** that is, uppercase
and lowercase letters are distinct, so \texttt{a1} and \texttt{A1} are different (but both valid) identifiers.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Good Programming Practice 2.3}
\end{center}

\begin{quote}
By convention, always begin a class name's identifier with a capital letter and start each subsequent word in the identifier with a capital letter. Java programmers know that such identifiers normally represent Java classes, so naming your classes in this manner makes your programs more readable.
\end{quote}

\begin{center}
\textbf{Common Programming Error 2.2}
\end{center}

\begin{quote}
Java is case sensitive. Not using the proper uppercase and lowercase letters for an identifier normally causes a compilation error.
\end{quote}

In \textbf{Chapters 27}, every class we define begins with the \texttt{public} keyword. For now, we will simply require this keyword. When you save your \texttt{public} class declaration in a file, the file name must be the class name followed by the "\texttt{.java} file-name extension". For our application, the file name is \texttt{Welcome1.java}. You will learn more about \texttt{public} and non-\texttt{public} classes in \textbf{Chapter 8}.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Common Programming Error 2.3}
\end{center}

\begin{quote}
It is an error for a \texttt{public} class to have a file name that is not identical to the class name (plus the \texttt{.java} extension) in terms of both spelling and capitalization.
\end{quote}
Common Programming Error 2.4

It is an error not to end a file name with the .java extension for a file containing a class declaration. If that extension is missing, the Java compiler will not be able to compile the class declaration.

A **left brace** (at line 5 in this program), {, begins the **body** of every class declaration. A corresponding **right brace** (at line 13), }, must end each class declaration. Note that lines 611 are indented. This indentation is one of the spacing conventions mentioned earlier. We define each spacing convention as a Good Programming Practice.

**Good Programming Practice 2.4**

Whenever you type an opening left brace, {, in your program, immediately type the closing right brace, }, then reposition the cursor between the braces and indent to begin typing the body. This practice helps prevent errors due to missing braces.

**Good Programming Practice 2.5**

Indent the entire body of each class declaration one "level" of indentation between the left brace, {, and the right brace, }, that delimit the body of the class. This format emphasizes the class declaration's structure and makes it easier to read.

**Good Programming Practice 2.6**

Set a convention for the indent size you prefer, and then uniformly apply that convention. The Tab key may be used to create indents, but tab stops
Common Programming Error 2.5

It is a syntax error if braces do not occur in matching pairs.

Line 6
// main method begins execution of Java application

is an end-of-line comment indicating the purpose of lines 711 of the program.

Line 7
public static void main( String args[] )

is the starting point of every Java application. The parentheses after the identifier main indicate that it is a program building block called a method. Java class declarations normally contain one or more methods. For a Java application, exactly one of the methods must be called main and must be defined as shown on line 7; otherwise, the JVM will not execute the application. Methods are able to perform tasks and return information when they complete their tasks. Keyword void indicates that this method will perform a task but will not return any information when it completes its task. Later, we will see that many methods return information when they complete their task. You will learn more about methods in Chapters 3 and 6. For now, simply mimic main's first line in your Java applications. In Line 7, the String
args[] in parentheses is a required part of the method main's declaration. We discuss this in Chapter 7, Arrays.

The left brace, {, on line 8 begins the **body of the method declaration**. A corresponding right brace, }, must end the method declaration's body (line 11 of the program). Note that line 9 in the body of the method is indented between the braces.

**Good Programming Practice 2.7**

*Indent the entire body of each method declaration one "level" of indentation between the left brace, {, and the right brace, }, that define the body of the method. This format makes the structure of the method stand out and makes the method declaration easier to read.*

Line 9

```java
System.out.println( "Welcome to Java Programming!" );
```

instructs the computer to **perform an action** namely, to print the string of characters contained between the double quotation marks. A string is sometimes called a **character string**, a **message** or a **string literal**. We refer to characters between double quotation marks simply as **strings**. White-space characters in strings are not ignored by the compiler.

**System.out** is known as the **standard output object**. **System.out** allows Java applications to display sets of characters in the **command window** from which the Java application executes. In Microsoft Windows 95/98/ME, the command window is the **MS-DOS prompt**. In Microsoft Windows NT/2000/XP, the command window is the **Command Prompt**. In UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X, the command window is called a **terminal window** or a **shell**. Many programmers refer to the command window simply as the **command line**.

Method **System.out.println** displays (or **prints**) a **line** of text in the command window. The string in the parentheses on line 9 is the **argument** to the method. Method **System.out.println** performs its task by displaying (also called outputting) its argument in the command window. When
System.out.println completes its task, it positions the **output cursor** (the location where the next character will be displayed) to the beginning of the next line in the command window. (This move of the cursor is similar to when a user presses the *Enter* key while typing in a text editor—the cursor appears at the beginning of the next line in the file.)

The entire line 9, including `System.out.println`, the argument "Welcome to Java Programming!" in the parentheses and the **semicolon** (`;`), is called a **statement**. Each statement ends with a semicolon. When the statement on line 9 of our program executes, it displays the message *Welcome to Java Programming!* in the command window. As we will see in subsequent programs, a method is typically composed of one or more statements that perform the method's task.

**Common Programming Error 2.6**

Omitting the semicolon at the end of a statement is a syntax error.

**Error-Prevention Tip 2.1**

When learning how to program, sometimes it is helpful to "break" a working program so you can familiarize yourself with the compiler's syntax-error messages. These messages do not always state the exact problem in the code. When you encounter such syntax-error messages in the future, you will have an idea of what caused the error. Try removing a semicolon or brace from the program of Fig. 2.1, then recompile the program to see the error messages generated by the omission.

**Error-Prevention Tip 2.2**

When the compiler reports a syntax error, the error may not be on the line number indicated by the error message. First, check the line for which the
Some programmers find it difficult when reading or writing a program to match the left and right braces (\{ and \}) that delimit the body of a class declaration or a method declaration. For this reason, some programmers include an end-of-line comment after a closing right brace (\}) that ends a method declaration and after a closing right brace that ends a class declaration. For example, line 11

```
} // end method main
```

specifies the closing right brace (\}) of method `main`, and line 13

```
} // end class Welcome1
```

specifies the closing right brace (\}) of class `Welcome1`. Each comment indicates the method or class that the right brace terminates.

**Good Programming Practice 2.8**

Following the closing right brace (\}) of a method body or class declaration with an end-of-line comment indicating the method or class declaration to which the brace belongs improves program readability.

**Compiling and Executing Your First Java Application**

We are now ready to compile and execute our program. For this purpose, we assume you are using the Sun Microsystems' J2SE Development Kit. On the
To prepare to compile the program, open a command window and change to the directory where the program is stored. Most operating systems use the command `cd` to change directories. For example,

```
cd c:\examples\ch02\fig02_01
```

changes to the `fig02_01` directory on Windows. The command

```
cd ~/examples/ch02/fig02_01
```

changes to the `fig02_01` directory on UNIX/Linux/Max OS X.

To compile the program, type

```
javac Welcome1.java
```

If the program contains no syntax errors, the preceding command creates a new file called `Welcome1.class` (known as the **class file** for `Welcome1`) containing the Java bytecodes that represent our application. When we use the `java` command to execute the application, these bytecodes will be executed by the JVM.

**Error-Prevention Tip 2.3**

> When attempting to compile a program, if you receive a message such as "bad command or filename," "javac: command not found" or "'javac' is not recognized as an internal or external command, operable program or batch file," then your Java software installation was not completed properly. If you are using the J2SE Development Kit, this indicates that the system’s `PATH` environment variable was not set properly. Please review the J2SE Development Kit installation instructions at [java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/install.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/install.html) carefully. On some systems, after...
correcting the PATH, you may need to reboot your computer or open a new command window for these settings to take effect.

Error-Prevention Tip 2.4

The Java compiler generates syntax-error messages when the syntax of a program is incorrect. Each error message contains the file name and line number where the error occurred. For example, Welcome1.java:6 indicates that an error occurred in the file Welcome1.java at line 6. The remainder of the error message provides information about the syntax error.

Error-Prevention Tip 2.5

The compiler error message "Public class ClassName must be defined in a file called ClassName.java" indicates that the file name does not exactly match the name of the public class in the file or that you typed the class name incorrectly when compiling the class.

Figure 2.2 shows the program of Fig. 2.1 executing in a Microsoft® Windows® XP Command Prompt window. To execute the program, type java Welcome1. This launches the JVM, which loads the "class" file for class Welcome1. Note that the "class" filename extension is omitted from the preceding command; otherwise, the JVM will not execute the program. The JVM calls method main. Next, the statement at line 9 of main displays "Welcome to Java Programming!" [Note: Many environments show command prompts with black backgrounds and white text. We adjusted these settings in our environment to make our screen captures more readable.]
Figure 2.2. Executing \texttt{Welcome1} in a Microsoft Windows XP Command Prompt window.

Error-Prevention Tip 2.6

When attempting to run a Java program, if you receive a message such as "Exception in thread "main" java.lang.NoClassDefFoundError: Welcome1," your \texttt{CLASSPATH} environment variable has not been set properly. Please review the J2SE Development Kit installation instructions carefully. On some systems, you may need to reboot your computer or open a new command window after configuring the \texttt{CLASSPATH}. 
2.3. Modifying Our First Java Program

This section continues our introduction to Java programming with two examples that modify the example in Fig. 2.1 to print text on one line by using multiple statements and to print text on several lines by using a single statement.

Displaying a Single Line of Text with Multiple Statements

Welcome to Java Programming! can be displayed several ways. Class Welcome2, shown in Fig. 2.3, uses two statements to produce the same output as that shown in Fig. 2.1. From this point forward, we highlight the new and key features in each code listing, as shown in lines 910 of this program.

Figure 2.3. Printing a line of text with multiple statements.  
(This item is displayed on pages 43 - 44 in the print version)

```
1 // Fig. 2.3: Welcome2.java
2 // Printing a line of text with multiple statements.
3
4 public class Welcome2
5 {
6     // main method begins execution of Java application
7     public static void main( String args[] )
8     {
9         System.out.print( "Welcome to " );
10         System.out.println( "Java Programming!" );
11     } // end method main
12 } // end class Welcome2
```

Welcome to Java Programming!
The program is almost identical to Fig. 2.1, so we discuss only the changes here. Line 2

```java
// Printing a line of text with multiple statements.
```
is an end-of-line comment stating the purpose of this program. Line 4 begins the Welcome2 class declaration.

Lines 9-10 of method `main`

```java
System.out.print( "Welcome to" );
System.out.println( "Java Programming!" );
```
display one line of text in the command window. The first statement uses `System.out`'s method `print` to display a string. Unlike `println`, after displaying its argument, `print` does not position the output cursor at the beginning of the next line in the command window the next character the program displays will appear immediately after the last character that `print` displays. Thus, line 10 positions the first character in its argument (the letter "J") immediately after the last character that line 9 displays (the space character before the string's closing double-quote character). Each `print` or `println` statement resumes displaying characters from where the last `print` or `println` statement stopped displaying characters.

**Displaying Multiple Lines of Text with a Single Statement**

A single statement can display multiple lines by using newline characters, which indicate to `System.out`'s `print` and `println` methods when they should position the output cursor at the beginning of the next line in the command window. Like blank lines, space characters and tab characters, newline characters are white-space characters. **Figure 2.4** outputs four lines of text, using newline characters to determine when to begin each new line.

**Figure 2.4. Printing multiple lines of text with a single**
Most of the program is identical to those in Fig. 2.1 and Fig. 2.3, so we discuss only the changes here. Line 2

    // Printing multiple lines of text with a single statement.

is a comment stating the purpose of this program. Line 4 begins the Welcome3 class declaration.

Line 9

    System.out.println( "Welcome\nto\nJava\nProgramming!" );

displays four separate lines of text in the command window. Normally, the
characters in a string are displayed exactly as they appear in the double quotes. Note, however, that the two characters \ and \n (repeated three times in the statement) do not appear on the screen. The backslash (\) is called an escape character. It indicates to System.out's print and println methods that a "special character" is to be output. When a backslash appears in a string of characters, Java combines the next character with the backslash to form an escape sequence. The escape sequence \n represents the newline character. When a new-line character appears in a string being output with System.out, the newline character causes the screen's output cursor to move to the beginning of the next line in the command window. Figure 2.5 lists several common escape sequences and describes how they affect the display of characters in the command window.

---

**Figure 2.5. Some common escape sequences.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Escape sequence</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\n</td>
<td>Newline. Position the screen cursor at the beginning of the next line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\t</td>
<td>Horizontal tab. Move the screen cursor to the next tab stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\r</td>
<td>Carriage return. Position the screen cursor at the beginning of the current line; do not advance to the next line. Any characters output after the carriage return overwrite the characters previously output on that line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\</td>
<td>Backslash. Used to print a backslash character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>Double quote. Used to print a double-quote character. For example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System.out.println( &quot;&quot;in quotes&quot;&quot; );</td>
<td>displays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;in quotes&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
2.4. Displaying Text with `printf`

A new feature of J2SE 5.0 is the `System.out.printf` method for displaying formatted data. The name `printf` stands for "formatted." Figure 2.6 outputs the strings "Welcome to" and "Java Programming!" with `System.out.printf`.

**Figure 2.6. Displaying multiple lines with method `System.out.printf`.**

(This item is displayed on page 46 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 2.6: Welcome4.java
2 // Printing multiple lines in a dialog box.
3
4 public class Welcome4
5 {
6     // main method begins execution of Java application
7     public static void main( String args[] )
8     {
9         System.out.printf( "%s
%s
",
10                     "Welcome to", "Java Programming!" );
11     }
12 } // end method main
13
14 } // end class Welcome4
```

Welcome to
Java Programming!

**Lines 9-10**

```
System.out.printf( "%s
%s
",
"Welcome to", "Java Programming!" );
```
call method `System.out.printf` to display the program's output. The method call specifies three arguments. When a method requires multiple arguments, the arguments are separated with commas (,). This is known as a comma-separated list.

**Good Programming Practice 2.9**

Place a space after each comma (,) in an argument list to make programs more readable.

Remember that all statements in Java end with a semicolon (;). Therefore, lines 910 represent only one statement. Java allows large statements to be split over many lines. However, you cannot split a statement in the middle of an identifier or in the middle of a string.

**Common Programming Error 2.7**

Splitting a statement in the middle of an identifier or a string is a syntax error.

Method `printf`'s first argument is a format string that may consist of fixed text and format specifiers. Fixed text is output by `printf` just as it would be output by `println`. Each format specifier is a placeholder for a value and specifies the type of data to output. Format specifiers also may include optional formatting information.

Format specifiers begin with a percent sign (%) and are followed by a character that represents the data type. For example, the format specifier `%s` is a placeholder for a string. The format string in line 9 specifies that `printf` should output two strings and that each string should be followed by a newline character. At the first format specifier's position, `printf` substitutes the value of
the first argument after the format string. At each subsequent format specifier's position, `printf` substitutes the value of the next argument in the argument list. So this example substitutes "Welcome to" for the first `%s` and "Java Programming!" for the second `%s`. The output shows that two lines of text were displayed.

We introduce various formatting features as they are needed in our examples. [Chapters 28](#) presents the details of formatting output with `printf`.
2.5. Another Java Application: Adding Integers

Our next application reads (or inputs) two integers (whole numbers, like 22, 7, 0 and 1024) typed by a user at the keyboard, computes the sum of the values and displays the result. This program must keep track of the numbers supplied by the user for the calculation later in the program. Programs remember numbers and other data in the computer's memory and access that data through program elements called variables. The program of Fig. 2.7 demonstrates these concepts. In the sample output, we use highlighting to differentiate between the user's input and the program's output.

**Figure 2.7. Addition program that displays the sum of two numbers.**

```java
// Fig. 2.7: Addition.java
// Addition program that displays the sum of two numbers.
import java.util.Scanner; // program uses class Scanner

public class Addition
{
    // main method begins execution of Java application
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        // create Scanner to obtain input from command window
        Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );

        int number1; // first number to add
        int number2; // second number to add
        int sum; // sum of number1 and number2

        System.out.print( "Enter first integer: " ); // prompt
        number1 = input.nextInt(); // read first number from user

        System.out.print( "Enter second integer: " ); // prompt
        number2 = input.nextInt(); // read second number from user

        sum = number1 + number2; // add numbers

        System.out.printf( "Sum is %d\n", sum ); // display sum
    }
}
```
Enter first integer: 45
Enter second integer: 72
Sum is 117

// Fig. 2.7: Addition.java
// Addition program that displays the sum of two numbers.

Lines 12

is an import declaration that helps the compiler locate a class that is used in this program. A great strength of Java is its rich set of predefined classes that programmers can reuse rather than "reinventing the wheel." These classes are grouped into packages named collections of classes. Collectively, Java's packages are referred to as the Java class library, or the Java Application Programming Interface (Java API). Programmers use import declarations to identify the predefined classes used in a Java program. The import declaration in line 3 indicates that this example uses Java's predefined Scanner class (discussed shortly) from package java.util. Then the compiler attempts to ensure that you use class Scanner correctly.

Common Programming Error 2.8

All import declarations must appear before the first class declaration in the file. Placing an import declaration inside a class declaration's body or after a class declaration is a syntax error.
Error-Prevention Tip 2.7

Forgetting to include an import declaration for a class used in your program typically results in a compilation error containing a message such as "cannot resolve symbol." When this occurs, check that you provided the proper import declarations and that the names in the import declarations are spelled correctly, including proper use of uppercase and lowercase letters.

Line 5

```
public class Addition
```

begins the declaration of class Addition. The file name for this public class must be Addition.java. Remember that the body of each class declaration starts with an opening left brace (line 6), {, and ends with a closing right brace (line 29), }.

The application begins execution with method main (lines 827). The left brace (line 9) marks the beginning of main's body, and the corresponding right brace (line 27) marks the end of main's body. Note that method main is indented one level in the body of class Addition and that the code in the body of main is indented another level for readability.

Line 11

```
Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in);
```

is a variable declaration statement (also called a declaration) that specifies the name and type of a variable (input) that is used in this program. A variable is a location in the computer's memory where a value can be stored for use later in a program. All variables must be declared with a name and a type before they can be used. A variable's name enables the program to access the value of the variable in memory. A variable's name can be any valid
The declaration in line 11 specifies that the variable named input is of type Scanner. A Scanner enables a program to read data (e.g., numbers) for use in a program. The data can come from many sources, such as a file on disk or the user at the keyboard. Before using a Scanner, the program must create it and specify the source of the data.

The equal sign (=) in line 11 indicates that Scanner variable input should be initialized (i.e., prepared for use in the program) in its declaration with the result of the expression new Scanner(System.in) to the right of the equal sign. This expression creates a Scanner object that reads data typed by the user at the keyboard. Recall that the standard output object, System.out, allows Java applications to display characters in the command window. Similarly, the standard input object, System.in, enables Java applications to read information typed by the user. So, line 11 creates a Scanner that enables the application to read information typed by the user at the keyboard.

The variable declaration statements at lines 13-15

```java
int number1; // first number to add
int number2; // second number to add
int sum; // sum of number1 and number2
```

declare that variables number1, number2 and sum are data of type int; these variables will hold integer values (whole numbers such as 7, 11, 0 and 31,914). These variables are not yet initialized. The range of values for an int is 2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647. We will soon discuss types float and double, for specifying real numbers, and type char, for specifying character data. Real numbers are numbers that contain decimal points, such as 3.4, 0.0 and 11.19. Variables of type char represent individual characters, such as an uppercase letter (e.g., A), a digit (e.g., 7), a special character (e.g., * or %) or an escape sequence (e.g., the newline character, \n). Types such as int, float, double and char are often called primitive types or built-in types. Primitive-type names are keywords and therefore must appear in all lowercase letters. Appendix D summarizes the characteristics of the eight primitive types.
(boolean, byte, char, short, int, long, float and double).

Variable declaration statements can be split over several lines, with the variable names separated by commas (i.e., a comma-separated list of variable names). Several variables of the same type may be declared in one declaration or in multiple declarations. For example, lines 1315 can also be written as follows:

```java
int number1, // first number to add
    number2, // second number to add
    sum; // sum of number1 and number2
```

Note that we used end-of-line comments in lines 1315. This use of comments is a common programming practice for indicating the purpose of each variable in the program.

**Good Programming Practice 2.10**

*Declare each variable on a separate line. This format allows a descriptive comment to be easily inserted next to each declaration.*

**Good Programming Practice 2.11**

*Choosing meaningful variable names helps a program to be self-documenting (i.e., one can understand the program simply by reading it rather than by reading manuals or viewing an excessive number of comments).*

**Good Programming Practice 2.12**

*By convention, variable-name identifiers begin with a lowercase letter, and every word in the name after the first word begins with a capital letter. For*
example, variable-name identifier firstNumber has a capital N in its second word, Number.

Line 17

    System.out.print( "Enter first integer: " ); // prompt

uses System.out.print to display the message "Enter first integer:". This message is called a prompt because it directs the user to take a specific action. Recall from Section 2.2 that identifiers starting with capital letters represent class names. So, System is a class. Class System is part of package java.lang. Notice that class System is not imported with an import declaration at the beginning of the program.

Software Engineering Observation 2.1

By default, package java.lang is imported in every Java program; thus, java.lang is the only package in the Java API that does not require an import declaration.

Line 18

    number1 = input.nextInt(); // read first number from user

uses Scanner object input's nextInt method to obtain an integer from the user at the keyboard. At this point the program waits for the user to type the number and press the Enter key to submit the number to the program.
Technically, the user can type anything as the input value. Our program assumes that the user enters a valid integer value as requested. In this program, if the user types a non-integer value, a runtime logic error will occur and the program will terminate. Chapter 13, Exception Handling, discusses how to make your programs more robust by enabling them to handle such errors. This is also known as making your program fault tolerant.

In line 17, the result of the call to method `nextInt` (an `int` value) is placed in variable `number1` by using the assignment operator, `.=`. The statement is read as "`number1` gets the value of `input.nextInt()`." Operator `.=` is called a binary operator because it has two operands `number1` and the result of the method call `input.nextInt()`. This statement is called an assignment statement because it is a statement that assigns a value to a variable. Everything to the right of the assignment operator, `.=` , is always evaluated before the assignment is performed.

**Good Programming Practice 2.13**

Place spaces on either side of a binary operator to make it stand out and make the program more readable.

Line 20

```java
System.out.print( "Enter second integer: " ); // prompt
```

prompts the user to input the second integer. Line 21

```java
number2 = input.nextInt(); // read second number from user
```

reads the second integer and assigns it to variable `number2`.

Line 23

```java
sum = number1 + number2; // add numbers
```
is an assignment statement that calculates the sum of the variables \texttt{number1} and \texttt{number2} and assigns the result to variable \texttt{sum} by using the assignment operator, =. The statement is read as "\texttt{sum} gets the value of \texttt{number1} + \texttt{number2}." Most calculations are performed in assignment statements. When the program encounters the addition operation, it uses the values stored in the variables \texttt{number1} and \texttt{number2} to perform the calculation. In the preceding statement, the addition operator is a binary operator; its two operands are \texttt{number1} and \texttt{number2}. Portions of statements that contain calculations are called expressions. In fact, an expression is any portion of a statement that has a value associated with it. For example, the value of the expression \texttt{number1 + number2} is the sum of the numbers. Similarly, the value of the expression \texttt{input.nextInt()} is an integer typed by the user.

After the calculation has been performed, line 25

\begin{verbatim}
    System.out.printf( "Sum is %d\n", sum ); // display sum
\end{verbatim}

uses method \texttt{System.out.printf} to display the \texttt{sum}. The format specifier \texttt{%d} is a place-holder for an \texttt{int} value (in this case the value of \texttt{sum}); the letter \texttt{d} stands for "decimal integer." Note that other than the \texttt{%d} format specifier, the remaining characters in the format string are all fixed text. So method \texttt{printf} displays "Sum is", followed by the value of \texttt{sum} (in the position of the \texttt{%d} format specifier) and a newline.

Note that calculations can also be performed inside \texttt{printf} statements. We could have combined the statements at lines 23 and 25 into the statement

\begin{verbatim}
    System.out.printf( "Sum is %d\n", ( number1 + number2 ) );
\end{verbatim}

The parentheses around the expression \texttt{number1 + number2} are not required; they are included to emphasize that the value of the expression is output in the position of the \texttt{%d} format specifier.
For each new Java API class we use, we indicate the package in which it is located. This package information is important because it helps you locate descriptions of each package and class in the Java API documentation. A Web-based version of this documentation can be found at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/

Also, you can download this documentation to your own computer from java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/download.jsp

The download is approximately 40 megabytes (MB) in size. Appendix G provides an overview of using the Java API documentation.
2.6. Memory Concepts

Variable names such as `number1`, `number2` and `sum` actually correspond to locations in the computer's memory. Every variable has a name, a type, a size and a value.

In the addition program of Fig. 2.7, when the statement (line 18)

```java
number1 = input.nextInt(); // read first number from user
```

executes, the number typed by the user is placed into a memory location to which the name `number1` has been assigned by the compiler. Suppose that the user enters 45. The computer places that integer value into location `number1`, as shown in Fig. 2.8. Whenever a value is placed in a memory location, the value replaces the previous value in that location. The previous value is lost.

---

**Figure 2.8. Memory location showing the name and value of variable `number1`.

[View full size image]**

When the statement (line 21)

```java
number2 = input.nextInt(); // read second number from user
```

executes, suppose that the user enters 72. The computer places that integer value into location `number2`. The memory now appears as shown in Fig. 2.9.
After the program of Fig. 2.7 obtains values for number1 and number2, it adds the values and places the sum into variable sum. The statement (line 23)

```
sum = number1 + number2; // add numbers
```

performs the addition, then replaces sum's previous value. After sum has been calculated, memory appears as shown in Fig. 2.10. Note that the values of number1 and number2 appear exactly as they did before they were used in the calculation of sum. These values were used, but not destroyed, as the computer performed the calculation. Thus, when a value is read from a memory location, the process is nondestructive.

Figure 2.10. Memory locations after calculating and storing the sum of number1 and number2.
2.7. Arithmetic

Most programs perform arithmetic calculations. The arithmetic operators are summarized in Fig. 2.11. Note the use of various special symbols not used in algebra. The asterisk (*) indicates multiplication, and the percent sign (%) is the remainder operator (called-modulus in some languages), which we will discuss shortly. The arithmetic operators in Fig. 2.11 are binary operators because they each operate on two operands. For example, the expression \( f + 7 \) contains the binary operator + and the two operands \( f \) and 7.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Java operation</th>
<th>Arithmetic operator</th>
<th>Algebraic expression</th>
<th>Java expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Addition</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>( f + 7 )</td>
<td>( f + 7 )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtraction</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>( p - c )</td>
<td>( p - c )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiplication</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>( b * m )</td>
<td>( b * m )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>( x \div y ) or ( \frac{x}{y} ) or ( x \div y )</td>
<td>( x \div y )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remainder</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>( r \mod s )</td>
<td>( r % s )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Integer division** yields an integer quotient for example, the expression \( 7 / 4 \) evaluates to 1, and the expression \( 17 / 5 \) evaluates to 3. Any fractional part in integer division is simply discarded (i.e., truncated) no rounding occurs. Java provides the remainder operator, %, which yields the remainder after division. The expression \( x \mod y \) yields the remainder after \( x \) is divided by \( y \). Thus, \( 7 \mod 4 \) yields 3, and \( 17 \mod 5 \) yields 2. This operator is most commonly used with integer operands, but can also be used with other arithmetic types. In this chapter's exercises and in later chapters, we consider several interesting applications of the remainder operator, such as determining whether one number is a multiple of another.
Arithmetic expressions in Java must be written in **straight-line form** to facilitate entering programs into the computer. Thus, expressions such as "\( \frac{a}{b} \)" must be written as \( a / b \), so that all constants, variables and operators appear in a straight line. The following algebraic notation is generally not acceptable to compilers:

\[
\frac{a}{b}
\]

Parentheses are used to group terms in Java expressions in the same manner as in algebraic expressions. For example, to multiply \( a \) times the quantity \( b + c \), we write

\[
a * (b + c)
\]

If an expression contains **nested parentheses**, such as

\[
( (a + b) * c )
\]

the expression in the innermost set of parentheses \((a + b)\) in this case) is evaluated first.

Java applies the operators in arithmetic expressions in a precise sequence determined by the following **rules of operator precedence**, which are generally the same as those followed in algebra (Fig. 2.12):

1. Multiplication, division and remainder operations are applied first. If an expression contains several such operations, the operators are applied from left to right. Multiplication, division and remainder operators have the same level of precedence.

2. Addition and subtraction operations are applied next. If an expression contains several such operations, the operators are applied from left to right. Addition and subtraction operators have the same level of precedence.

---

**Figure 2.12. Precedence of arithmetic operators.**
These rules enable Java to apply operators in the correct order. When we say that operators are applied from left to right, we are referring to their associativity. You will see that some operators associate from right to left. Figure 2.12 summarizes these rules of operator precedence. The table will be expanded as additional Java operators are introduced. A complete precedence chart is included in Appendix A.

Now let us consider several expressions in light of the rules of operator precedence. Each example lists an algebraic expression and its Java equivalent. The following is an example of an arithmetic mean (average) of five terms:

Algebra: \[ m = \frac{a + b + c + d + e}{5} \]
Java: \[ m = (a + b + c + d + e) / 5; \]

The parentheses are required because division has higher precedence than addition. The entire quantity \((a + b + c + d + e)\) is to be divided by \(5\). If the parentheses are erroneously omitted, we obtain \(a + b + c + d + e / 5\), which evaluates as

\[ \frac{a + b + c + d + e}{5} \]

The following is an example of the equation of a straight line:

Algebra: \[ y = mx + b \]
Java: \[ y = m * x + b; \]
No parentheses are required. The multiplication operator is applied first because multiplication has a higher precedence than addition. The assignment occurs last because it has a lower precedence than multiplication or addition.

The following example contains remainder (%), multiplication, division, addition and subtraction operations:

\[
\text{Algebra: } \quad z = pr\%q + w/x - y
\]

\[
\text{Java: } \quad z = p * r \% q + w / x - y;
\]

The circled numbers under the statement indicate the order in which Java applies the operators. The multiplication, remainder and division operations are evaluated first in left-to-right order (i.e., they associate from left to right), because they have higher precedence than addition and subtraction. The addition and subtraction operations are evaluated next. These operations are also applied from left to right.

To develop a better understanding of the rules of operator precedence, consider the evaluation of a second-degree polynomial \((y = ax^2 + bx + c)\):

\[
y = a * x * x + b * x + c;
\]

The circled numbers indicate the order in which Java applies the operators. The multiplication operations are evaluated first in left-to-right order (i.e., they associate from left to right), because they have higher precedence than addition. The addition operations are evaluated next and are applied from left to right. There is no arithmetic operator for exponentiation in Java, so \(x^2\) is represented as \(x * x\). **Section 5.4** shows an alternative for performing exponentiation in Java.

Suppose that \(a, b, c\) and \(x\) in the preceding second-degree polynomial are
initialized (given values) as follows: \( a = 2, \ b = 3, \ c = 7 \) and \( x = 5 \). Figure 2.13 illustrates the order in which the operators are applied.

**Figure 2.13.** Order in which a second-degree polynomial is evaluated.

As in algebra, it is acceptable to place unnecessary parentheses in an expression to make the expression clearer. These are called **redundant parentheses**. For example, the preceding assignment statement might be parenthesized as follows:

\[
y = (a \times x \times x) + (b \times x) + c;
\]

**Good Programming Practice 2.14**

*Using parentheses for complex arithmetic expressions, even when the parentheses are not necessary, can make the arithmetic expressions easier to read.*
2.8. Decision Making: Equality and Relational Operators

A condition is an expression that can be either true or false. This section introduces a simple version of Java's if statement that allows a program to make a decision based on the value of a condition. For example, the condition "grade is greater than or equal to 60" determines whether a student passed a test. If the condition in an if statement is true, the body of the if statement executes. If the condition is false, the body does not execute. We will see an example shortly.

Conditions in if statements can be formed by using the equality operators (== and !=) and relational operators (>, <, >= and <=) summarized in Fig. 2.14. Both equality operators have the same level of precedence, which is lower than that of the relational operators. The equality operators associate from left to right. The relational operators all have the same level of precedence and also associate from left to right.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard algebraic equality or relational operator</th>
<th>Java equality or relational operator</th>
<th>Sample Java condition</th>
<th>Meaning of Java condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Equality operators</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>==</td>
<td>x == y</td>
<td>x is equal to y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!=</td>
<td>!=</td>
<td>x != y</td>
<td>x is not equal to y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relational operators</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>&gt;</td>
<td>x &gt; y</td>
<td>x is greater than y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>x &lt; y</td>
<td>x is less than y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;=</td>
<td>&gt;=</td>
<td>x &gt;= y</td>
<td>x is greater than or equal to y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The application of Fig. 2.15 uses six if statements to compare two integers input by the user. If the condition in any of these if statements is true, the assignment statement associated with that if statement executes. The program uses a Scanner to input the two integers from the user and store them in variables number1 and number2. Then the program compares the numbers and displays the results of the comparisons that are true.

Figure 2.15. Equality and relational operators.
(This item is displayed on pages 57 - 58 in the print version)
public class Comparison

Enter first integer: 777
Enter second integer: 777
777 == 777
777 <= 777
777 >= 777

Enter first integer: 1000
Enter second integer: 2000
1000 != 2000
1000 < 2000
1000 <= 2000

Enter first integer: 2000
Enter second integer: 1000
2000 != 1000
2000 > 1000
2000 >= 1000

The declaration of class Comparison begins at line 6
The class's `main` method (lines 941) begins the execution of the program.

Line 12

```java
Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );
```

declares `Scanner` variable `input` and assigns it a `Scanner` that inputs data from the standard input (i.e., the keyboard).

Lines 14–15

```java
int number1; // first number to compare
int number2; // second number to compare
```

declare the `int` variables used to store the values input from the user.

Lines 17–21

```java
System.out.print( "Enter first integer: " ); // prompt
number1 = input.nextInt(); // read first number from user
```

prompt the user to enter the first integer and input the value, respectively. The input value is stored in variable `number1`.

Lines 20–24

```java
System.out.print( "Enter second integer: " ); // prompt
number2 = input.nextInt(); // read second number from user
```

prompt the user to enter the second integer and input the value, respectively. The input value is stored in variable `number2`. 
if ( number1 == number2 )
    System.out.printf("%d == %d\n", number1, number2);

Common Programming Error 2.9

Forgetting the left and/or right parentheses for the condition in an if statement is a syntax error. The parentheses are required.

Common Programming Error 2.10

Confusing the equality operator, ==, with the assignment operator, =, can cause a logic error or a syntax error. The equality operator should be read as "is equal to," and the assignment operator should be read as "gets" or "gets the value of." To avoid confusion, some people read the equality operator as "double equals" or "equals equals."
Common Programming Error 2.11

It is a syntax error if the operators $\rightarrow$, $\not\rightarrow$, $\geq$ and $\leq$ contain spaces between their symbols, as in $\rightarrow$, $\not\rightarrow$, $\geq$ and $\leq$, respectively.

Common Programming Error 2.12

Reversing the operators $\not\rightarrow$, $\geq$ and $\leq$, as in $\rightarrow$, $\not\rightarrow$ and $\leq$, is a syntax error.

Good Programming Practice 2.15

Indent an if statement's body to make it stand out and to enhance program readability.

Good Programming Practice 2.16

Place only one statement per line in a program. This format enhances program readability.

Note that there is no semicolon (;) at the end of the first line of each if statement. Such a semicolon would result in a logic error at execution time. For example,
if ( number1 == number2 ); // logic error
System.out.printf( "%d == %d\n", number1, number2 );

would actually be interpreted by Java as

if ( number1 == number2 )
;
// empty statement
System.out.printf( "%d == %d\n", number1, number2 );

where the semicolon on the line by itself called the empty statement is the statement to execute if the condition in the if statement is true. When the empty statement executes, no task is performed in the program. The program then continues with the output statement, which always executes, regardless of whether the condition is true or false, because the output statement is not part of the if statement.

Common Programming Error 2.13

Placing a semicolon immediately after the right parenthesis of the condition in an if statement is normally a logic error.

Note the use of white space in Fig. 2.15. Recall that white-space characters, such as tabs, newlines and spaces, are normally ignored by the compiler. So statements may be split over several lines and may be spaced according to the programmer's preferences without affecting the meaning of a program. It is incorrect to split identifiers and strings. Ideally, statements should be kept small, but this is not always possible.
A lengthy statement can be spread over several lines. If a single statement must be split across lines, choose breaking points that make sense, such as after a comma in a comma-separated list, or after an operator in a lengthy expression. If a statement is split across two or more lines, indent all subsequent lines until the end of the statement.

Figure 2.16 shows the precedence of the operators introduced in this chapter. The operators are shown from top to bottom in decreasing order of precedence. All these operators, with the exception of the assignment operator, =, associate from left to right. Addition is left associative, so an expression like \( x + y + z \) is evaluated as if it had been written as \( ( x + y ) + z \). The assignment operator, =, associates from right to left, so an expression like \( x = y = 0 \) is evaluated as if it had been written as \( x = ( y = 0 ) \), which, as we will soon see, first assigns the value 0 to variable \( y \) and then assigns the result of that assignment, 0, to \( x \).

**Figure 2.16. Precedence and associativity of operations discussed.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operators</th>
<th>Associativity</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>* / %</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>multiplicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ -</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>additive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; &lt;= &gt; &gt;=</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>relational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>== !=</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>equality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>right to left</td>
<td>assignment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Good Programming Practice 2.18**

Refer to the operator precedence chart (see the complete chart in Appendix A) when writing expressions containing many operators. Confirm that the operations in the expression are performed in the order you expect. If you are uncertain about the order of evaluation in a complex expression, use parentheses to force the order, exactly as you would do in algebraic expressions. Observe that some operators, such as assignment, =, associate
from right to left rather than from left to right.
2.9. (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Examining the Requirements Document

Now we begin our optional object-oriented design and implementation case study. The "Software Engineering Case Study" sections at the ends of this and the next several chapters will ease you into object orientation by examining an automated teller machine (ATM) case study. This case study will provide you with a concise, carefully paced, complete design and implementation experience. In Chapters 3, 8, and 10, we will perform the various steps of an object-oriented design (OOD) process using the UML while relating these steps to the object-oriented concepts discussed in the chapters. Appendix J implements the ATM using the techniques of object-oriented programming (OOP) in Java. We present the complete case-study solution. This is not an exercise; rather, it is an end-to-end learning experience that concludes with a detailed walkthrough of the Java code that implements our design. It will acquaint you with the kinds of substantial problems encountered in industry and their potential solutions. We hope you enjoy this learning experience.

We begin our design process by presenting a requirements document that specifies the overall purpose of the ATM system and what it must do. Throughout the case study, we refer to the requirements document to determine precisely what functionality the system must include.

Requirements Document

A local bank intends to install a new automated teller machine (ATM) to allow users (i.e., bank customers) to perform basic financial transactions (Fig. 2.17). Each user can have only one account at the bank. ATM users should be able to view their account balance, withdraw cash (i.e., take money out of an account) and deposit funds (i.e., place money into an account).

Figure 2.17. Automated teller machine user interface.

The user interface of the automated teller machine contains the following components:
• a screen that displays messages to the user
• a keypad that receives numeric input from the user
• a cash dispenser that dispenses cash to the user and
• a deposit slot that receives deposit envelopes from the user.

The cash dispenser begins each day loaded with 500 $20 bills. [Note: Due to the limited scope of this case study, certain elements of the ATM described here do not accurately mimic those of a real ATM. For example, a real ATM typically contains a device that reads a user's account number from an ATM card, whereas this ATM asks the user to type an account number on the keypad. A real ATM also usually prints a receipt at the end of a session, but all output from this ATM appears on the screen.]

The bank wants you to develop software to perform the financial transactions initiated by bank customers through the ATM. The bank will integrate the software with the ATM's hardware at a later time. The software should encapsulate the functionality of the hardware devices (e.g., cash dispenser, deposit slot) within software components, but it need not concern itself with how these devices perform their duties. The ATM hardware has not been developed yet, so instead of writing your software to run on the ATM, you should develop a first version of the software to run on a personal computer. This version should use the computer's monitor to simulate the ATM's screen, and the computer's keyboard to simulate the ATM's keypad.

An ATM session consists of authenticating a user (i.e., proving the user's identity) based on an account number and personal identification number (PIN), followed by creating and executing financial transactions. To authenticate a user and perform transactions, the ATM must interact with the bank's account information database (i.e., an organized collection of data stored on a computer). For each bank account, the database stores an account number, a PIN and a balance indicating the amount of money in the account. [Note: We assume that the bank plans to build only one ATM, so we do not need to worry about multiple ATMs accessing this database at the same time. Furthermore, we assume that the bank does not make any changes to the information in the database while a user is accessing the ATM. Also, any business system like an ATM faces reasonably complicated security issues that go well beyond the scope of a first- or second-semester computer science course. We make the simplifying assumption, however, that the bank trusts the ATM to access and manipulate the information in the database without significant security measures.]

Upon first approaching the ATM (assuming no one is currently using it), the user should experience the following sequence of events (shown in Fig. 2.17):

1. The screen displays a welcome message and prompts the user to enter an account number.
2. The user inputs a five-digit account number using the keypad.
3. The screen prompts the user to enter the PIN (personal identification number) associated with the specified account number.
4. The user enters a five-digit PIN using the keypad.

If the user enters a valid account number and the correct PIN for that account, the screen displays the main menu (Fig. 2.18). If the user enters an invalid account number or an incorrect PIN, the screen displays an appropriate message, then the ATM returns to Step 1 to restart the authentication process.

**Figure 2.18. ATM main menu.**
(This item is displayed on page 63 in the print version)
After the ATM authenticates the user, the main menu (Fig. 2.18) should contain a numbered option for each of the three types of transactions: balance inquiry (option 1), withdrawal (option 2) and deposit (option 3). The main menu also should contain an option to allow the user to exit the system (option 4). The user then chooses either to perform a transaction (by entering 1, 2 or 3) or to exit the system (by entering 4).

If the user enters 1 to make a balance inquiry, the screen displays the user’s account balance. To do so, the ATM must retrieve the balance from the bank’s database.

The following steps describe the actions that occur when the user enters 2 to make a withdrawal:

The screen displays a menu (shown in Fig. 2.19) containing standard withdrawal amounts: $20 (option 1), $40 (option 2), $60 (option 3), $100 (option 4) and $200 (option 5). The menu also contains an option to allow the user to cancel the transaction (option 6).

**Figure 2.19. ATM withdrawal menu.**

(This item is displayed on page 64 in the print version)
2. The user inputs a menu selection using the keypad.

   If the withdrawal amount chosen is greater than the user's account balance, the screen displays a message stating this and telling the user to choose a smaller amount. The ATM then returns to Step 1. If the withdrawal amount chosen is less than or equal to the user's account balance (i.e., an acceptable amount), the ATM proceeds to Step 4. If the user chooses to cancel the transaction (option 6), the ATM displays the main menu and waits for user input.

3. If the cash dispenser contains enough cash to satisfy the request, the ATM proceeds to Step 5. Otherwise, the screen displays a message indicating the problem and telling the user to choose a smaller withdrawal amount. The ATM then returns to Step 1.

4. The ATM debits the withdrawal amount from the user's account in the bank's database (i.e., subtracts the withdrawal amount from the user's account balance).

5. The cash dispenser dispenses the desired amount of money to the user.

6. The screen displays a message reminding the user to take the money.

The following steps describe the actions that occur when the user enters 3 to make a deposit:

1. The screen prompts the user to enter a deposit amount or type 0 (zero) to cancel the transaction.

   The user inputs a deposit amount or 0 using the keypad. [Note: The keypad does not contain a decimal point or a dollar sign, so the user cannot type a real dollar amount (e.g., $1.25). Instead, the user must enter a deposit amount as a number of cents (e.g., 125). The ATM then divides this number by 100 to obtain a number representing a dollar amount (e.g., 125 ÷ 100 = 1.25).]

2. If the user specifies a deposit amount, the ATM proceeds to Step 4. If the user chooses to cancel the transaction (by entering 0), the ATM displays the main menu and waits for user input.

3. The screen displays a message telling the user to insert a deposit envelope into the deposit slot.

   If the deposit slot receives a deposit envelope within two minutes, the ATM credits the deposit amount
to the user's account in the bank's database (i.e., adds the deposit amount to the user's account balance). [Note: This money is not immediately available for withdrawal. The bank first must physically verify the amount of cash in the deposit envelope, and any checks in the envelope must clear (i.e., money must be transferred from the check writer's account to the check recipient's account). When either of these events occur, the bank appropriately updates the user's balance stored in its database. This occurs independently of the ATM system.] If the deposit slot does not receive a deposit envelope within this time period, the screen displays a message that the system has canceled the transaction due to inactivity. The ATM then displays the main menu and waits for user input.

After the system successfully executes a transaction, the system should return to the main menu so that the user can perform additional transactions. If the user chooses to exit the system, the screen should display a thank you message, then display the welcome message for the next user.

Analyzing the ATM System

The preceding statement is a simplified example of a requirements document. Typically, such a document is the result of a detailed process of requirements gathering that might include interviews with possible users of the system and specialists in fields related to the system. For example, a systems analyst who is hired to prepare a requirements document for banking software (e.g., the ATM system described here) might interview financial experts to gain a better understanding of what the software must do. The analyst would use the information gained to compile a list of system requirements to guide systems designers as they design the system.

The process of requirements gathering is a key task of the first stage of the software life cycle. The software life cycle specifies the stages through which software goes from the time it is first conceived to the time it is retired from use. These stages typically include: analysis, design, implementation, testing and debugging, deployment, maintenance and retirement. Several software life cycle models exist, each with its own preferences and specifications for when and how often software engineers should perform each of these stages. Waterfall models perform each stage once in succession, whereas iterative models may repeat one or more stages several times throughout a product's life cycle.

The analysis stage of the software life cycle focuses on defining the problem to be solved. When designing any system, one must solve the problem right, but of equal importance, one must solve the right problem. Systems analysts collect the requirements that indicate the specific problem to solve. Our requirements document describes the requirements of our ATM system in sufficient detail that you do not need to go through an extensive analysis stage it has been done for you.

To capture what a proposed system should do, developers often employ a technique known as use case modeling. This process identifies the use cases of the system, each of which represents a different capability that the system provides to its clients. For example, ATMs typically have several use cases, such as "View Account Balance," "Withdraw Cash," "Deposit Funds," "Transfer Funds Between Accounts" and "Buy Postage Stamps." The simplified ATM system we build in this case study allows only the first three use cases.

Each use case describes a typical scenario for which the user uses the system. You have already read descriptions of the ATM system's use cases in the requirements document; the lists of steps required to perform each transaction type (i.e., balance inquiry, withdrawal and deposit) actually described the three use cases of our ATM"View Account Balance," "Withdraw Cash" and "Deposit Funds."

Use Case Diagrams

We now introduce the first of several UML diagrams in the case study. We create a use case diagram to model the interactions between a system's clients (in this case study, bank customers) and its use cases. The goal is to show the kinds of interactions users have with a system without providing the detailsthesedepicted in other UML diagrams (which we present throughout this case study). Use case diagrams are often accompanied by informal text that describes the use cases in more detail like the text that appears in the
requirements document. Use case diagrams are produced during the analysis stage of the software life cycle. In larger systems, use case diagrams are indispensable tools that help system designers remain focused on satisfying the users' needs.

**Figure 2.20** shows the use case diagram for our ATM system. The stick figure represents an **actor**, which defines the roles that an external entity such as a person or another system plays when interacting with the system. For our automated teller machine, the actor is a User who can view an account balance, withdraw cash and deposit funds from the ATM. The User is not an actual person, but instead comprises the roles that a real person when playing the part of a User can play while interacting with the ATM. Note that a use case diagram can include multiple actors. For example, the use case diagram for a real bank's ATM system might also include an actor named Administrator that refills the cash dispenser each day.

**Figure 2.20. Use case diagram for the ATM system from the user's perspective.**

Our requirements document supplies the actors “ATM users should be able to view their account balance, withdraw cash and deposit funds.” Therefore, the actor in each of the three use cases is the user who interacts with the ATM. An external entity a real person plays the part of the user to perform financial transactions. **Figure 2.20** shows one actor, whose name, User, appears below the actor in the diagram. The UML models each use case as an oval connected to an actor with a solid line.

Software engineers (more precisely, systems designers) must analyze the requirements document or a set of use cases and design the system before programmers implement it in a particular programming language. During the analysis stage, systems designers focus on understanding the requirements document to produce a high-level specification that describes what the system is supposed to do. The output of the design stage a **design specification** should specify clearly how the system should be constructed to satisfy these requirements. In the next several "Software Engineering Case Study" sections, we perform the steps of a simple object-oriented design (OOD) process on the ATM system to produce a design specification containing a collection of UML diagrams and supporting text. The UML is designed for use with any OOD process. Many such processes exist, the most well-known of which is the Rational Unified Process™ (RUP) developed by Rational Software Corporation. RUP is a rich process intended for designing "industrial strength" applications. For this case study, we present our own simplified design process, designed for students in first- and second-semester programming courses.

**Designing the ATM System**

We now begin the design stage of our ATM system. A **system** is a set of components that interact to solve a
problem. For example, to perform the ATM system's designated tasks, our ATM system has a user interface (Fig. 2.17), contains software that executes financial transactions and interacts with a database of bank-account information. **System structure** describes the system's objects and their interrelationships. **System behavior** describes how the system changes as its objects interact with one another. Every system has both structure and behavior; designers must specify both. There are several distinct types of system structures and behaviors. For example, the interactions among objects in the system differ from those between the user and the system, yet both constitute a portion of the system behavior.

The UML 2 specifies 13 diagram types for documenting the models of systems. Each models a distinct characteristic of a system's structure or behaviors: six diagrams relate to system structure; the remaining seven relate to system behavior. We list here only the six types used in our case study: one of these (class diagrams) models system structure, whereas the remaining five model system behavior. We overview the remaining seven UML diagram types in Appendix L, UML 2: Additional Diagram Types.

1. **Use case diagrams**, such as the one in Fig. 2.20, model the interactions between a system and its external entities (actors) in terms of use cases (system capabilities, such as "View Account Balance," "Withdraw Cash" and "Deposit Funds").

2. **Class diagrams**, which you will study in Section 3.10, model the classes, or "building blocks," used in a system. Each noun or "thing" described in the requirements document is a candidate to be a class in the system (e.g., `Account`, `Keypad`). Class diagrams help us specify the structural relationships between parts of the system. For example, the ATM system class diagram will specify that the ATM is physically composed of a screen, a keypad, a cash dispenser and a deposit slot.

3. **State machine diagrams**, which you will study in Section 5.11, model the ways in which an object changes state. An object's **state** is indicated by the values of all the object's attributes at a given time. When an object changes state, that object may behave differently in the system. For example, after validating a user's PIN, the ATM transitions from the "user not authenticated" state to the "user authenticated" state, at which point the ATM allows the user to perform financial transactions (e.g., view account balance, withdraw cash, deposit funds).

4. **Activity diagrams**, which you will also study in Section 5.11, model an object's **activity** the object's workflow (sequence of events) during program execution. An activity diagram models the actions the object performs and specifies the order in which the object performs these actions. For example, an activity diagram shows that the ATM must obtain the balance of the user's account (from the bank's account information database) before the screen can display the balance to the user.

5. **Communication diagrams** (called **collaboration diagrams** in earlier versions of the UML) model the interactions among objects in a system, with an emphasis on **what** interactions occur. You will learn in Section 7.14 that these diagrams show which objects must interact to perform an ATM transaction. For example, the ATM must communicate with the bank's account information database to retrieve an account balance.

6. **Sequence diagrams** also model the interactions among the objects in a system, but unlike communication diagrams, they emphasize **when** interactions occur. You will learn in Section 7.14 that these diagrams help show the order in which interactions occur in executing a financial transaction. For example, the screen prompts the user to enter a withdrawal amount before cash is dispensed.

In Section 3.10, we continue designing our ATM system by identifying the classes from the requirements document. We accomplish this by extracting key nouns and noun phrases from the requirements document. Using these classes, we develop our first draft of the class diagram that models the structure of our ATM system.

### Internet and Web Resources

The following URLs provide information on object-oriented design with the UML.

Lists frequently asked questions about the UML, provided by IBM Rational.


Hosts the Unified Modeling Language Dictionary, which lists and defines all terms used in the UML.


Provides information about IBM Rational software available for designing systems. Provides downloads of 30-day trial versions of several products, such as IBM Rational Rose® XDE Developer.

www.embarcadero.com/products/describe/index.html

Provides a free 15-day license to download a trial version of Describe™, a UML modeling tool from Embarcadero Technologies®.

www.borland.com/together/index.html

Provides a free 30-day license to download a trial version of Borland® Together® Control-Center™, a software-development tool that supports the UML.

wwwilogix.com/rhapsody/rhapsody.cfm

Provides a free 30-day license to download a trial version of I-Logix Rhapsody® 2, a UML 2-based model-driven development environment.

argouml.tigris.org

Contains information and downloads for ArgoUML, a free open-source UML tool written in Java.

www.objectsbydesign.com/books/booklist.html

Lists books on the UML and object-oriented design.

www.objectsbydesign.com/tools/umltools_byCompany.html

Lists software tools that use the UML, such as IBM Rational Rose, Embarcadero Describe, Sparx Systems Enterprise Architect, I-Logix Rhapsody, and Gentleware Poseidon for UML.

www.oottips.org/ood-principles.html

Provides answers to the question, "What Makes a Good Object-Oriented Design?"

www.parlezuml.com/tutorials/java/class/index_files/frame.htm

Provides a UML tutorial for Java developers that presents UML diagrams side by side with the Java code that implements them.

www.cetus-links.org/oo_uml.html

Introduces the UML and provides links to numerous UML resources.

www.agilemodeling.com/essays/umlDiagrams.htm

Provides in-depth descriptions and tutorials on each of the 13 UML 2 diagram types.

**Recommended Readings**

The following books provide information on object-oriented design with the UML.

Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

2.1 Suppose we enabled a user of our ATM system to transfer money between two bank accounts. Modify the use case diagram of Fig. 2.20 to reflect this change.

2.2 _____model the interactions among objects in a system with an emphasis on when these interactions occur.

1. Class diagrams
2. Sequence diagrams
3. Communication diagrams
4. Activity diagrams

Which of the following choices lists stages of a typical software life cycle in sequential order?

1. design, analysis, implementation, testing
2. design, analysis, testing, implementation
3. analysis, design, testing, implementation
4. analysis, design, implementation, testing

Answers to Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

Figure 2.21 contains a use case diagram for a modified version of our ATM system that also allows users to transfer money between accounts.

Figure 2.21. Use case diagram for a modified version of our ATM system that also allows users to transfer money between accounts.
2.1

[View full size image]

2.2 b.

2.3 d.
2.10. Wrap-Up

You learned many important features of Java in this chapter, including displaying data on the screen in a command prompt, inputting data from the keyboard, performing calculations and making decisions. The applications presented here were meant to introduce you to basic programming concepts. As you will see in Chapter 3, Java applications typically contain just a few lines of code in method `main`; these statements normally create the objects that perform the work of the application. In Chapter 3, you will learn how to implement your own classes and use objects of those classes in applications.
Summary

- Computer programmers create applications by writing computer programs. A Java application is a computer program that executes when you use the `java` command to launch the JVM.

- Programmers insert comments to document programs and improve their readability. The Java compiler ignores comments.

- A comment that begins with `//` is called an end-of-line (or single-line) comment because the comment terminates at the end of the line on which it appears.

- Traditional (multiple-line) comments can be spread over several lines and are delimited by `/*` and `*/`. All text between the delimiters is ignored by the compiler.

- Javadoc comments are delimited by `/**` and `*/`. Javadoc comments enable programmers to embed program documentation directly in their programs. The `javadoc` utility program generates HTML documentation based on Javadoc comments.

- A programming language's syntax specifies the rules for creating a proper program in that language.

- A syntax error (also called a compiler error, compile-time error or compilation error) occurs when the compiler encounters code that violates Java's language rules.

- Programmers use blank lines and space characters to make programs easier to read. Together, blank lines, space characters and tab characters are known as white space. Space characters and tabs are known specifically as white-space characters. White space is ignored by the compiler.

- Every program in Java consists of at least one class declaration that is defined by the programmer (also known as a programmer-defined class or a user-defined class).
• Keywords are reserved for use by Java and are always spelled with all lowercase letters.

• Keyword `class` introduces a class declaration and is immediately followed by the class name.

• By convention, all class names in Java begin with a capital letter and capitalize the first letter of each word they include (e.g., `SampleClassName`).

• A Java class name is an identifier—a series of characters consisting of letters, digits, underscores (\_) and dollar signs ($$) that does not begin with a digit and does not contain spaces. Normally, an identifier that does not begin with a capital letter is not the name of a Java class.

• Java is case sensitive—that is, uppercase and lowercase letters are distinct.

• The body of every class declaration is delimited by braces, `{` and `}`.

A public class declaration must be saved in a file with the same name as the class followed by the "\*.java" file-name extension.

• Method `main` is the starting point of every Java application and must begin with

```
public static void main( String args[] )
```

otherwise, the JVM will not execute the application.

• Methods are able to perform tasks and return information when they complete their tasks. Keyword `void` indicates that a method will perform a task but will not return any information.

• Statements instruct the computer to perform actions.

• A sequence of characters in double quotation marks is called a string, a character string, a message or a string literal.

• `System.out`, the standard output object, allows Java applications to display
- Method `System.out.println` displays its argument in the command window followed by a new-line character to position the output cursor to the beginning of the next line.

- Every statement ends with a semicolon.

- Most operating systems use the command `cd` to change directories in the command window.

- You compile a program with the command `javac`. If the program contains no syntax errors, a class file containing the Java bytecodes that represent the application is created. These bytecodes are interpreted by the JVM when we execute the program.

- `System.out.print` displays its argument and positions the output cursor immediately after the last character displayed.

- A backslash (`\`) in a string is an escape character. It indicates that a "special character" is to be output. Java combines the next character with the backslash to form an escape sequence. The escape sequence `\n` represents the newline character, which positions the cursor on the next line.

- `System.out.printf` method (\(f\) means "formatted") displays formatted data.

- When a method requires multiple arguments, the arguments are separated with commas (\(,\)) this is known as a comma-separated list.

- Method `printf`'s first argument is a format string that may consist of fixed text and format specifiers. Fixed text is output by `printf` just as it would be output by `print` or `println`. Each format specifier is a placeholder for a value and specifies the type of data to output.

- Format specifiers begin with a percent sign (`%`) and are followed by a character that represents the (\(-\)) data type. The format specifier `\%s` is a placeholder for a string.

- At the first format specifier's position, `printf` substitutes the value of the
first argument after the format string. At each subsequent format specifier's position, `printf` substitutes the value of the next argument in the argument list.

- Integers are whole numbers, like 22, 7, 0 and 1024.

- An `import` declaration helps the compiler locate a class that is used in a program.

- Java provides a rich set of predefined classes that programmers can reuse rather than "reinventing the wheel." These classes are grouped into packages named collections of classes.

- Collectively, Java's packages are referred to as the Java class library, or the Java Application Programming Interface (Java API).

- A variable declaration statement specifies the name and type of a variable.

- A variable is a location in the computer's memory where a value can be stored for use later in a program. All variables must be declared with a name and a type before they can be used.

---

- A variable's name enables the program to access the value of the variable in memory. A variable name can be any valid identifier.

- Like other statements, variable declaration statements end with a semicolon (`;`).

- A `Scanner` (package `java.util`) enables a program to read data for use in a program. The data can come from many sources, such as a file on disk or the user at the keyboard. Before using a `Scanner`, the program must create it and specify the source of the data.

- Variables should be initialized to prepare them for use in a program.

- The expression `new Scanner(System.in)` creates a `Scanner` that reads from the keyboard. The standard input object, `System.in`, enables Java applications to read data typed by the user.
Data type int is used to declare variables that will hold integer values. The range of values for an int is 2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647.

Types float and double specify real numbers, and type char specifies character data. Real numbers are numbers that contain decimal points, such as 3.4, 0.0 and 11.19. Variables of type char data represent individual characters, such as an uppercase letter (e.g., A), a digit (e.g., 7), a special character (e.g., * or %) or an escape sequence (e.g., the newline character, \n).

Types such as int, float, double and char are often called primitive types or built-in types. Primitive-type names are keywords; thus, they must appear in all lowercase letters.

A prompt directs the user to take a specific action.

Scanner method nextInt obtains an integer for use in a program.

The assignment operator, =, enables the program to give a value to a variable. Operator = is called a binary operator because it has two operands. A n assignment statement uses an assignment operator to assign a value to a variable.

Portions of statements that have values are called expressions.

The format specifier %d is a placeholder for an int value.

Variable names correspond to locations in the computer's memory. Every variable has a name, a type, a size and a value.

Whenever a value is placed in a memory location, the value replaces the previous value in that location. The previous value is lost.

Most programs perform arithmetic calculations. The arithmetic operators are + (addition), - (subtraction), * (multiplication), / (division) and % (remainder).

Integer division yields an integer quotient.

The remainder operator, %, yields the remainder after division.
• Arithmetic expressions in Java must be written in straight-line form.

• If an expression contains nested parentheses, the innermost set of parentheses is evaluated first.

• Java applies the operators in arithmetic expressions in a precise sequence determined by the rules of operator precedence.

• When we say that operators are applied from left to right, we are referring to their associativity. Some operators associate from right to left.

• Redundant parentheses in an expression can make an expression clearer.

• A condition is an expression that can be either true or false. Java's if statement allows a program to make a decision based on the value of a condition.

• Conditions in if statements can be formed by using the equality (== and !=) and relational (> , <, >= and <=) operators.

• An if statement always begins with keyword if, followed by a condition in parentheses, and expects one statement in its body.

• The empty statement is a statement that does not perform a task.
Terminology

addition operator (+)

application

argument

arithmetic operators (+, /, %, + and -)

assignment operator (=)

assignment statement

associativity of operators

backslash (\) escape character

binary operator

body of a class declaration

body of a method declaration

built-in type

case sensitive

char primitive type

character string

class declaration

class file

.class file extension
class keyword

class name

comma (,)

comma-separated list

command line

Command Prompt

command window

comment

compilation error

compiler error

compile-time error

condition

%d format specifier

decision

division operator (/)

document a program

double primitive type

empty statement (;)

end-of-line comment (//)

equality operators
java command

ejavadoc utility program

ejavadoc tool home page

ejavac lang package

Javadoc comment (/** */)

left brace ({}

literal

location of a variable

main method

memory location

message

method

modulus operator (%)

multiple-line comment (/* */)

MS-DOS prompt

multiplication operator (*)

name of a variable

nested parentheses

newline character (\n)

object
operand
operator
optional package
output cursor
package
parentheses ()
perform an action
precedence
primitive type
programmer-defined class
prompt
public keyword
redundant parentheses
relational operators

  < "is less than"

  <= "is less than or equal to"

  > "is greater than"

  >= "is greater than or equal to"

remainder operator (%)
reserved words
right brace (}

rules of operator precedence

%s format specifier

Scanner class

self-documenting

semicolon (;)

shell

single-line comment (//)

size of a variable

standard input object (System.in)

standard output object (System.out)

statement

straight-line form

string

string literal

subtraction operator (-)

syntax error

System class
System.in (standard input) object

System.out (standard output) object

System.out.println method

System.out.printf method

System.out.println method

terminal window

traditional comment /* */

type of a variable

user-defined class

variable

variable declaration

variable declaration statement

variable name

variable value

void keyword

white space

white-space characters
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. A(n) _____ begins the body of every method, and a(n) _____ ends the body of every method.
2. Every statement ends with a(n) _____.
3. The _____ statement is used to make decisions.
4. _____ begins an end-of-line comment.
5. _____, _____, _____ and _____ are called white space.
6. _____ are reserved for use by Java.
7. Java applications begin execution at method _____.
8. Methods _____, _____ and _____ display information in the command window.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. Comments cause the computer to print the text after the // on the screen when the program executes.
2. All variables must be given a type when they are declared.
3. Java considers the variables number and NuMbEr to be identical.
4. The remainder operator (\%) can be used only with integer operands.
5. The arithmetic operators *, /, %, + and - all have the same level of precedence.

Write statements to accomplish each of the following tasks:

1. Declare variables c, thisIsAVariable, q76354 and number to be of type int.
2. Prompt the user to enter an integer.
3. Input an integer and assign the result to int variable value. Assume Scanner variable input can be used to read a value from the keyboard.
4. d) If the variable number is not equal to 7, display "The variable number is not equal to 7".
5. Print "This is a Java program" on one line in the command window.
6. Print "This is a Java program" on two lines in the command window. The first line should end with Java. Use method System.out.println.
7. Print "This is a Java program" on two lines in the command window. The first line should end with Java. Use method System.out.printf and two %s format specifiers.

Identify and correct the errors in each of the following statements:
2.4 if (c < 7 );
    System.out.println( "c is less than 7" );

2.5 if (c => 7 )
    System.out.println( "c is equal to or greater than 7" );

Write declarations, statements or comments that accomplish each of the following tasks:

1. State that a program will calculate the product of three integers.
2. Create a Scanner that reads values from the standard input.
3. Declare the variables x, y, z and result to be of type int.
4. Prompt the user to enter the first integer.
5. Read the first integer from the user and store it in the variable x.
6. Prompt the user to enter the second integer.
7. Read the second integer from the user and store it in the variable y.
8. Prompt the user to enter the third integer.
9. Read the third integer from the user and store it in the variable z.
10. Compute the product of the three integers contained in variables x, y and z, and assign the result to the variable result.
11. Display the message "Product is" followed by the value of the variable result.

2.6 Using the statements you wrote in Exercise 2.5, write a complete program that calculates and prints the product of three integers.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

2.1  
a) left brace (\{), right brace (\}). b) semicolon (;). c) \texttt{if}. d) //. e) Blank lines, space characters, newline characters and tab characters. f) Keywords. g) \texttt{main}. h) \texttt{System.out.print}, \texttt{System.out.println} and \texttt{System.out.printf}.

1. False. Comments do not cause any action to be performed when the program executes. They are used to document programs and improve their readability.

2. True.

3. False. Java is case sensitive, so these variables are distinct.

4. False. The remainder operator can also be used with noninteger operands in Java.

5. False. The operators *, / and % are on the same level of precedence, and the operators + and - are on a lower level of precedence.

2.2  
1. \texttt{int c, thisIsAVariable, q76354, number;}
   
   or
   
   \texttt{int c;}
   \texttt{int thisIsAVariable;}
   \texttt{int q76354;}
   \texttt{int number;}

2. \texttt{System.out.print( "Enter an integer: ");}

3. \texttt{value = input.nextInt();}

4. \texttt{if ( number != 7 )}
   \texttt{System.out.println( "The variable number is not equal to 7" );}

5. \texttt{System.out.println("This is a Java program");}

6. \texttt{System.out.println("This is a Java
program");}

7. \texttt{System.out.printf("%s
%s
", "This is a Java", "program");}

The solutions to Self-Review Exercise 2.4 are as follows:

2.4  
1. Error: Semicolon after the right parenthesis of the condition (c < 7) in the if. Correction: Remove the semicolon after the right parenthesis. [Note: As a result, the output statement will execute regardless of whether the condition in the if is true.]

2. Error: The relational operator \texttt{\rightarrow} is incorrect. Correction: Change \texttt{\rightarrow} to \texttt{\geq}.

---

1. // Calculate the product of three integers

2. Scanner input = \texttt{new Scanner( System.in );}
3. int x, y, z, result;

    or

    int x;
    int y;
    int z;
    int result;

4. System.out.print("Enter first integer: ");

5. x = input.nextInt();

6. System.out.print("Enter second integer: ");

7. y = input.nextInt();

8. System.out.print("Enter third integer: ");

9. z = input.nextInt();

10. result = x * y * z;

11. System.out.printf("Product is %d\n", result);

The solution to Exercise 2.6 is as follows:

1 // Ex. 2.6: Product.java
2 // Calculate the product of three integers.
3 import java.util.Scanner; // program uses Scanner
4
5 public class Product
6 {
7    public static void main( String args[] )
8    {
9        // create Scanner to obtain input from command window
10        Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );
11
12        int x; // first number input by user
13        int y; // second number input by user
14        int z; // third number input by user
15        int result; // product of numbers
16
17        System.out.print("Enter first integer: "); // prompt for input
18        x = input.nextInt(); // read first integer
19
20        System.out.print("Enter second integer: "); // prompt for input
21        y = input.nextInt(); // read second integer
22
23        System.out.print("Enter third integer: "); // prompt for input
24        z = input.nextInt(); // read third integer
25
26        result = x * y * z; // calculate product of numbers
27
28        System.out.printf("Product is %d\n", result);
29
30    } // end method main
31
32 } // end class Product
Enter first integer: 10
Enter second integer: 20
Enter third integer: 30
Product is 6000
Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. _____ are used to document a program and improve its readability.
2. A decision can be made in a Java program with a(n) _____.
3. Calculations are normally performed by _____ statements.
4. The arithmetic operators with the same precedence as multiplication are and _____.
5. When parentheses in an arithmetic expression are nested, the _____ set of parentheses is evaluated first.
6. A location in the computer's memory that may contain different values at various times throughout the execution of a program is called a(n) _____.

Write Java statements that accomplish each of the following tasks:

1. Display the message "Enter an integer:", leaving the cursor on the same line.
2. Assign the product of variables \( b \) and \( c \) to variable \( a \).
3. State that a program performs a sample payroll calculation (i.e., use text that helps to document a program).

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. Java operators are evaluated from left to right.
2. The following are all valid variable names: _under_bar_, m928134, t5, j7, her_sales$, his$_account_total, a, b$, c, z and z2.
3. A valid Java arithmetic expression with no parentheses is evaluated from left to right.
4. The following are all invalid variable names: 3g, 87, 67H2, h22 and 2h.

Assuming that \( x = 2 \) and \( y = 3 \), what does each of the following statements display?

1. `System.out.printf("x = %d\n", x);`
2. `System.out.printf("Value of %d + %d is %d\n", x, x, ( x + x ) );`
3. `System.out.printf("x =" );`
4. `System.out.printf("%d = %d\n", ( x + y ), ( y + x ));`
Which of the following Java statements contain variables whose values are modified?

1. \( p = i + j + k + 7 \);

2.11

2. \( \text{System.out.println("variables whose values are destroyed");} \)

3. \( \text{System.out.println("a = 5");} \)

4. \( \text{value = input.nextInt();} \)

Given that \( y = ax^3 + 7 \), which of the following are correct Java statements for this equation?

1. \( y = a * x * x * x + 7 \);

2. \( y = a * x * x * (x + 7); \)

2.12

3. \( y = (a * x) * x * (x + 7); \)

4. \( y = (a * x) * x * x + 7; \)

5. \( y = a * (x * x * x) + 7; \)

6. \( y = a * x * (x * x + 7); \)

State the order of evaluation of the operators in each of the following Java statements, and show the value of \( x \) after each statement is performed:

2.13

[Page 78]

1. \( x = 7 + 3 \cdot 6 / 2 - 1; \)

2. \( x = 2 \% 2 + 2 \cdot 2 - 2 / 2; \)

3. \( x = (3 * 9 * (3 + (9 * 3 / (3) ));) \)

Write an application that displays the numbers 1 to 4 on the same line, with each pair of adjacent numbers separated by one space. Write the program using the following techniques:

2.14

1. Use one \texttt{System.out.println} statement.

2. Use four \texttt{System.out.print} statements.

3. Use one \texttt{System.out.printf} statement.

Write an application that asks the user to enter two integers, obtains them from the user and prints their sum, product, difference and quotient (division). Use the techniques shown in Fig. 2.7.

Write an application that asks the user to enter two integers, obtains them from the user and displays the larger number followed by the words "is larger". If the numbers are equal, print the message "These numbers are equal." Use the techniques shown in Fig. 2.15.
Write an application that inputs three integers from the user and displays the sum, average, product, smallest and largest of the numbers. Use the techniques shown in Fig. 2.15. [Note: The calculation of the average in this exercise should result in an integer representation of the average. So if the sum of the values is 7, the average should be 2, not 2.3333....]

Write an application that displays a box, an oval, an arrow and a diamond using asterisks (·), as follows:

```
***********  ***  *
* * * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * * *
* * * * * * * * * * *
***********  ***  *
```

What does the following code print?

```
2.19 System.out.println( "\n**\n***\n****\n*****" );
```

What does the following code print?

```
2.20 System.out.println( "\n****\n*****\n***\n" );
```

What does the following code print?

```
2.21 System.out.print( "\n*****\n***\n" );
```

What does the following code print?

```
2.22 System.out.print( "\n****\n*****\n***\n" );
```
What does the following code print?

```
System.out.printf("%s\n%s\n%s\n", ", ***", ", *****
```

Write an application that reads five integers, determines and prints the largest and smallest integers in the group. Use only the programming techniques you learned in this chapter.

Write an application that reads an integer and determines and prints whether it is odd or even. [Hint: An even number is a multiple of 2. Any multiple of 2 leaves a remainder of 0 when divided.]

Write an application that reads two integers, determines whether the first is a multiple of the second and prints the result. [Hint: Use the remainder operator.]

Write an application that displays a checkerboard pattern, as follows:

Here's a peek ahead. In this chapter, you have learned about integers and the type `int`. Java can represent floating-point numbers that contain decimal points, such as 3.14159. Write an application that inputs from the user the radius of a circle as an integer and prints the circle's diameter, circumference and area using the floating-point value 3.14159 shown in Fig. 2.7. [Note: You may also use the predefined constant `Math.PI` for the value of π. This constant is more precise than the value 3.14159. Classes in that package are imported automatically, so you do not need to import class `Math` forms (r is the radius):

```
diameter = 2r
circumference = 2πr
area = πr²
```

Do not store the results of each calculation in a variable. Rather, specify each calculation as the value in a `System.out.printf` statement. Note that the circumference and area calculations result in floating-point numbers. Such values can be output with the format specifier in a `System.out.printf` statement. You will learn more about floating-point numbers in Chapter 3.
Here's another peek ahead. In this chapter, you have learned about integers and the type \texttt{int}. Java can also represent uppercase letters, lowercase letters and a considerable variety of special symbols. Every character has a corresponding integer representation. The set of characters corresponding integer representation is called a computer's character set. You can indicate a character value in a program simply by enclosing that character in single quotes, as in \texttt{'A'}.

You can determine the integer equivalent of a character by preceding that character with \texttt{(int)},

\begin{verbatim}
(int) 'A'
\end{verbatim}

This form is called a cast operator. (Cast operators are discussed in Chapter 4.) The following statement outputs a character and its integer equivalent:

\begin{verbatim}
System.out.printf("The character %c has the value %d\n", 'A');
\end{verbatim}

When the preceding statement executes, it displays the character \texttt{A} and the value \texttt{65} (from the so-called Unicode character set) as part of the string. The format specifier \texttt{%c} is a placeholder for a character (in this case, the character \texttt{'A'}).

Using statements similar to the one shown earlier in this exercise, write an application that displays the integer equivalents of some uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits and special symbols. Display the integer equivalents of the following:

\begin{verbatim}
A B C a b c 0 1 2 $ * + /
\end{verbatim}

Write an application that inputs one number consisting of five digits from the user, separates the number into its individual digits and prints the digits separated from one another by three spaces each. For example, if the user types in the number \texttt{42339} the program should print \texttt{4 2 3 3 9}. Assume that the user enters the correct number of digits. What happens when you execute the program and type a number with more than five digits? What happens when you execute the program and type a number with fewer than five digits?
is possible to do this exercise with techniques you learned in this chapter. You will need to use both division and remainder operations to "pick off" each digit.

Using only the programming techniques you learned in this chapter, write an application that calculates the squares and cubes of the numbers from 0 to 10 and prints the resulting values in table format, as shown below. (This does not require any input from the user.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>number</th>
<th>square</th>
<th>cube</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>729</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write a program that inputs five numbers and determines and prints the number of negative numbers input, the number of positive numbers input, and the number of zeros input.
Chapter 3. Introduction to Classes and Objects

You will see something new. Two things. And I call them Thing One and Thing Two.

Dr. Theodor Seuss Geisel

Nothing can have value without being an object of utility.

Karl Marx

Your public servants serve you right.

Adlai E. Stevenson

Knowing how to answer one who speaks, To reply to one who sends a message.

Amenemope

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- What classes, objects, methods and instance variables are.
- How to declare a class and use it to create an object.
- How to declare methods in a class to implement the class's behaviors.
- How to declare instance variables in a class to implement the class's attributes.
- How to call an object's method to make that method perform its task.
- The differences between instance variables of a class and local variables of a method.
- How to use a constructor to ensure that an object's data is initialized when the object is created.
The differences between primitive and reference types.

Outline

3.1 Introduction

3.2 Classes, Objects, Methods and Instance Variables

3.3 Declaring a Class with a Method and Instantiating an Object of a Class

3.4 Declaring a Method with a Parameter

3.5 Instance Variables, set Methods and get Methods

3.6 Primitive Types vs. Reference Types

3.7 Initializing Objects with Constructors

3.8 Floating-Point Numbers and Type double

3.9 (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Using Dialog Boxes

3.10 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Identifying the Classes in a Requirements Document

3.11 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
3.1. Introduction

We introduced the basic terminology and concepts of object-oriented programming in Section 1.16. In Chapter 2, you began to use those concepts to create simple applications that displayed messages to the user, obtained information from the user, performed calculations and made decisions. One common feature of every application in Chapter 2 was that all the statements that performed tasks were located in method main. Typically, the applications you develop in this book will consist of two or more classes, each containing one or more methods. If you become part of a development team in industry, you might work on applications that contain hundreds, or even thousands, of classes. In this chapter, we present a simple framework for organizing object-oriented applications in Java.

First, we motivate the notion of classes with a real-world example. Then we present five complete working applications to demonstrate creating and using your own classes. The first four of these examples begin our case study on developing a grade-book class that instructors can use to maintain student test scores. This case study is enhanced over the next several chapters, culminating with the version presented in Chapter 7, Arrays. The last example in the chapter introduces floating-point numbers that is, numbers containing decimal points, such as 0.0345, 7.23 and 100.7 in the context of a bank account class that maintains a customer's balance.
3.2. Classes, Objects, Methods and Instance Variables

Let's begin with a simple analogy to help you understand classes and their contents. Suppose you want to drive a car and make it go faster by pressing down on its accelerator pedal. What must happen before you can do this? Well, before you can drive a car, someone has to design the car. A car typically begins as engineering drawings, similar to the blueprints used to design a house. These engineering drawings include the design for an accelerator pedal to make the car go faster. The pedal "hides" the complex mechanisms that actually make the car go faster, just as the brake pedal "hides" the mechanisms that slow the car and the steering wheel "hides" the mechanisms that turn the car. This enables people with little or no knowledge of how engines work to drive a car easily.

Unfortunately, you cannot drive the engineering drawings of a car. Before you can drive a car, the car must be built from the engineering drawings that describe it. A completed car will have an actual accelerator pedal to make the car go faster, but even that's not enough—the car will not accelerate on its own, so the driver must press the accelerator pedal.

Now let's use our car example to introduce the key programming concepts of this section. Performing a task in a program requires a method. The method describes the mechanisms that actually perform its tasks. The method hides from its user the complex tasks that it performs, just as the accelerator pedal of a car hides from the driver the complex mechanisms of making the car go faster. In Java, we begin by creating a program unit called a class to house a method, just as a car's engineering drawings house the design of an accelerator pedal. In a class, you provide one or more methods that are designed to perform the class's tasks. For example, a class that represents a bank account might contain one method to deposit money to an account, another to withdraw money from an account and a third to inquire what the current balance is.

Just as you cannot drive an engineering drawing of a car, you cannot "drive" a class. Just as someone has to build a car from its engineering drawings before you can actually drive a car, you must build an object of a class before you can get a program to perform the tasks the class describes how to do. That is one reason Java is known as an object-oriented programming language.
When you drive a car, pressing its gas pedal sends a message to the car to perform a task—namely, to make the car go faster. Similarly, you send messages to an object; each message is known as a method call and tells a method of the object to perform its task.

Thus far, we have used the car analogy to introduce classes, objects and methods. In addition to the capabilities a car provides, it also has many attributes, such as its color, the number of doors, the amount of gas in its tank, its current speed and its total miles driven (i.e., its odometer reading). Like the car's capabilities, these attributes are represented as part of a car's design in its engineering diagrams. As you drive a car, these attributes are always associated with the car. Every car maintains its own attributes. For example, each car knows how much gas is in its own gas tank, but not how much is in the tanks of other cars. Similarly, an object has attributes that are carried with the object as it is used in a program. These attributes are specified as part of the object's class. For example, a bank account object has a balance attribute that represents the amount of money in the account. Each bank account object knows the balance in the account it represents, but not the balances of the other accounts in the bank. Attributes are specified by the class's instance variables.

The remainder of this chapter presents examples that demonstrate the concepts we introduced in the context of the car analogy. The first four examples, summarized below, incrementally build a GradeBook class to demonstrate these concepts:

1. The first example presents a GradeBook class with one method that simply displays a welcome message when it is called. We then show how to create an object of that class and call the method so that it displays the welcome message.

2. The second example modifies the first by allowing the method to receive a course name as an argument and by displaying the name as part of the welcome message.

3. The third example shows how to store the course name in a GradeBook object. For this version of the class, we also show how to use methods to set the course name and obtain the course name.

4. The fourth example demonstrates how the data in a GradeBook object can be initialized when the object is created—the initialization is performed by the
The last example in the chapter presents an Account class that reinforces the concepts presented in the first four examples and introduces floating-point numbers containing decimal points, such as 0.0345, 7.23 and 100.7. For this purpose, we present an Account class that represents a bank account and maintains its balance as a floating-point number. The class contains two methods—one that credits a deposit to the account, thus increasing the balance, and another that retrieves the balance. The class's constructor allows the balance of each Account object to be initialized as the object is created. We create two Account objects and make deposits into each to show that each object maintains its own balance. The example also demonstrates how to input and display floating-point numbers.
3.3. Declaring a Class with a Method and Instantiating an Object of a Class

We begin with an example that consists of classes GradeBook (Fig. 3.1) and GradeBookTest (Fig. 3.2). Class GradeBook (declared in file GradeBook.java) will be used to display a message on the screen (Fig. 3.2) welcoming the instructor to the grade-book application. Class GradeBookTest (declared in file GradeBookTest.java) is an application class in which the main method will use class GradeBook. Each class declaration that begins with keyword public must be stored in a file that has the same name as the class and ends with the .java file-name extension. Thus, classes GradeBook and GradeBookTest must be declared in separate files, because each class is declared public.

Figure 3.1. Class declaration with one method.

```
// Fig. 3.1: GradeBook.java
// Class declaration with one method.

public class GradeBook {
  // display a welcome message to the GradeBook user
  public void displayMessage()
  {
    System.out.println("Welcome to the Grade Book!");
  } // end method displayMessage
}
// end class GradeBook
```

Figure 3.2. Creating an object of class GradeBook and calling its displayMessage method.
(This item is displayed on page 86 in the print version)

```
// Fig. 3.2: GradeBookTest.java
// Create a GradeBook object and call its displayMessage method.

public class GradeBookTest {
  // main method begins program execution
  public static void main( String args[] )
  {
  }
}
```
```java
// create a GradeBook object and assign it to myGradeBook
GradeBook myGradeBook = new GradeBook();

// call myGradeBook's displayMessage method
myGradeBook.displayMessage();

} // end main

} // end class GradeBookTest
```

Welcome to the Grade Book!

Common Programming Error 3.1

Declaring more than one public class in the same file is a compilation error.

Class GradeBook

The GradeBook class declaration (Fig. 3.1) contains a displayMessage method (lines 710) that displays a message on the screen. Line 9 of the class performs the work of displaying the message. Recall that a class is like a blueprint we'll need to make an object of this class and call its method to get line 9 to execute and display its message.

The class declaration begins at line 4. The keyword public is an access modifier. For now, we will simply declare every class public. Every class declaration contains keyword class followed immediately by the class's name. Every class's body is enclosed in a pair of left and right braces ({ and }), as in
In **Chapter 2**, each class we declared had one method named `main`. Class `GradeBook` also has one method `displayMessage` (lines 710). Recall that `main` is a special method that is always called automatically by the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) when you execute an application. Most methods do not get called automatically. As you will soon see, you must call method `displayMessage` to tell it to perform its task.

The method declaration begins with keyword `public` to indicate that the method is "available to the public" that is, it can be called from outside the class declaration's body by methods of other classes. Keyword `void` indicates that this method will perform a task but will not return (i.e., give back) any information to its **calling method** when it completes its task. You have already used methods that return information; for example, in **Chapter 2** you used `Scanner` method `nextInt` to input an integer typed by the user at the keyboard. When `nextInt` inputs a value, it returns that value for use in the program.

The name of the method, `displayMessage`, follows the return type. By convention, method names begin with a lowercase first letter and all subsequent words in the name begin with a capital letter. The parentheses after the method name indicate that this is a method. An empty set of parentheses, as shown in line 7, indicates that this method does not require additional information to perform its task. Line 7 is commonly referred to as the **method header**. Every method's body is delimited by left and right braces (`{` and `}`), as in lines 8 and 10.

The body of a method contains statement(s) that perform the method's task. In this case, the method contains one statement (line 9) that displays the message "Welcome to the Grade Book!" followed by a newline in the command window. After this statement executes, the method has completed its task.

Next, we'd like to use class `GradeBook` in an application. As you learned in **Chapter 2**, method `main` begins the execution of every application. A class that contains method `main` is a Java application. Such a class is special because the JVM can use `main` to begin execution. Class `GradeBook` is not an application because it does not contain `main`. Therefore, if you try to execute `GradeBook` by typing `java GradeBook` in the command window, you will get the error message:

```
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.NoSuchMethodError: main
```
This was not a problem in Chapter 2, because every class you declared had a main method. To fix this problem for the GradeBook, we must either declare a separate class that contains a main method or place a main method in class GradeBook. To help you prepare for the larger programs you will encounter later in this book and in industry, we use a separate class (GradeBookTest in this example) containing method main to test each new class we create in this chapter.

Class GradeBookTest

The GradeBookTest class declaration (Fig. 3.2) contains the main method that will control our application's execution. Any class that contains main declared as shown on line 7 can be used to execute an application. This class declaration begins at line 4 and ends at line 16. The class contains only a main method, which is typical of many classes that begin an application's execution.

Lines 714 declare method main. Recall from Chapter 2 that the main header must appear as shown in line 7; otherwise, the application will not execute. A key part of enabling the JVM to locate and call method main to begin the application's execution is the static keyword (line 7), which indicates that main is a static method. A static method is special because it can be called without first creating an object of the class in which the method is declared. We thoroughly explain static methods in Chapter 6, Methods: A Deeper Look.

In this application, we'd like to call class GradeBook's displayMessage method to display the welcome message in the command window. Typically, you cannot call a method that belongs to another class until you create an object of that class, as shown in line 10. We begin by declaring variable myGradeBook. Note that the variable's type is GradeBook, the class we declared in Fig. 3.1. Each new class you create becomes a new type in Java that can be used to declare variables and create objects. Programmers can declare new class types as needed; this is one reason why Java is known as an extensible language.

Variable myGradeBook is initialized with the result of the class instance creation expression new GradeBook(). Keyword new creates a new object of the class specified to the right of the keyword (i.e., GradeBook). The parentheses to the right of the GradeBook are required. As you will learn in Section 3.7, those parentheses in combination with a class name represent a call to a constructor,
which is similar to a method, but is used only at the time an object is created to initialize the object's data. In that section you will see that data can be placed in parentheses to specify initial values for the object's data. For now, we simply leave the parentheses empty.

Just as we can use object `System.out` to call methods `print`, `printf` and `println`, we can now use `myGradeBook` to call method `displayMessage`. Line 13 calls the method `displayMessage` (declared at lines 710 of `Fig. 3.1`) using variable `myGradeBook` followed by a `dot separator` (`.`), the method name `displayMessage` and an empty set of parentheses. This call causes the `displayMessage` method to perform its task. This method call differs from the method calls in `Chapter 2` that displayed information in a command window; each of those method calls provided arguments that specified the data to display. At the beginning of line 13, "myGradeBook." indicates that `main` should use the `GradeBook` object that was created on line 10. Line 7 of `Fig. 3.1` indicates that method `displayMessage` has an empty parameter list; that is, `displayMessage` does not require additional information to perform its task. For this reason, the method call (line 13 of `Fig. 3.2`) specifies an empty set of parentheses after the method name to indicate that no arguments are being passed to method `displayMessage`. When method `displayMessage` completes its task, method `main` continues executing at line 14. This is the end of method `main`, so the program terminates.

---

### Compiling an Application with Multiple Classes

You must compile the classes in `Fig. 3.1` and `Fig. 3.2` before you can execute the application. First, change to the directory that contains the application's source-code files. Next, type the command

```
javac GradeBook.java GradeBookTest.java
```

to compile both classes at once. If the directory containing the application includes only the files for this application, you can compile all the classes in the directory with the command

```
javac *.java
```
The asterisk (*) in *.java indicates that all files in the current directory that end with the file name extension ".java" should be compiled.

**UML Class Diagram for Class GradeBook**

**Figure 3.3** presents a **UML class diagram** for class GradeBook of **Fig. 3.1**. Recall from **Section 1.16** that the UML is a graphical language used by programmers to represent their object-oriented systems in a standardized manner. In the UML, each class is modeled in a class diagram as a rectangle with three compartments. The top compartment contains the name of the class centered horizontally in boldface type. The middle compartment contains the class's attributes, which correspond to instance variables in Java. In **Fig. 3.3**, the middle compartment is empty because the version of class GradeBook in **Fig. 3.1** does not have any attributes. The bottom compartment contains the class's operations, which correspond to methods in Java. The UML models operations by listing the operation name followed by a set of parentheses. Class GradeBook has one method, displayMessage, so the bottom compartment of **Fig. 3.3** lists one operation with this name. Method displayMessage does not require additional information to perform its tasks, so the parentheses following displayMessage in the class diagram are empty, just as they were in the method's declaration in line 7 of **Fig. 3.1**. The plus sign (+) in front of the operation name indicates that displayMessage is a public operation in the UML (i.e., a public method in Java). We will often use UML class diagrams to summarize a class's attributes and operations.

**Figure 3.3. UML class diagram indicating that class GradeBook has a public displayMessage operation.**

[View full size image]
3.4. Declaring a Method with a Parameter

In our car analogy from Section 3.2, we discussed the fact that pressing a car's gas pedal sends a message to the car to perform a task—make the car go faster. But how fast should the car accelerate? As you know, the farther down you press the pedal, the faster the car accelerates. So the message to the car actually includes the task to perform and additional information that helps the car perform the task. This additional information is known as a parameter—the value of the parameter helps the car determine how fast to accelerate. Similarly, a method can require one or more parameters that represent additional information it needs to perform its task. A method call supplies values—called arguments—for each of the method's parameters. For example, the method `System.out.println` requires an argument that specifies the data to output in a command window. Similarly, to make a deposit into a bank account, a `deposit` method specifies a parameter that represents the deposit amount. When the `deposit` method is called, an argument value representing the deposit amount is assigned to the method's parameter. The method then makes a deposit of that amount.

Our next example declares class `GradeBook` (Fig. 3.4) with a `displayMessage` method that displays the course name as part of the welcome message. (See the sample execution in Fig. 3.5.) The new `displayMessage` method requires a parameter that represents the course name to output.

**Figure 3.4. Class declaration with one method that has a parameter.**

```java
// Fig. 3.4: GradeBook.java
// Class declaration with a method that has a parameter.

public class GradeBook
{
    // display a welcome message to the GradeBook user
    public void displayMessage( String courseName )
    {
        System.out.printf( "Welcome to the grade book for\n%s!\n", courseName );
    } // end method displayMessage

} // end class GradeBook
```
Before discussing the new features of class `GradeBook`, let's see how the new class is used from the `main` method of class `GradeBookTest` (Fig. 3.5). Line 12 creates a `Scanner` named `input` for reading the course name from the user. Line 15 creates an object of class `GradeBook` and assigns it to variable `myGradeBook`. Line 18 prompts the user to enter the course name and Line 24 calls `myGradeBook.displayMessage` method and passes `nameOfCourse` as an argument.
18 prompts the user to enter a course name. Line 19 reads the name from the user and assigns it to the `nameOfCourse` variable, using `Scanner` method `nextLine` to perform the input. The user types the course name and presses `Enter` to submit the course name to the program. Note that pressing `Enter` inserts a newline character at the end of the characters typed by the user. Method `nextLine` reads characters typed by the user until the newline character is encountered, then returns a `String` containing the characters up to, but not including, the newline. The newline character is discarded. Note that `Scanner` provides a similar method `next` that reads individual words. When the user presses `Enter` after typing input, method `next` reads characters until a white-space character (such as a space, tab or newline) is encountered, then returns a `String` containing the characters up to, but not including, the white-space character (which is discarded). All information after the first white-space character is not lost; it can be read by other statements that call the `Scanner`'s methods later in the program.

Line 24 calls `myGradeBooks`'s `displayMessage` method. The variable `nameOfCourse` in parentheses is the argument that is passed to method `displayMessage` so that the method can perform its task. The value of variable `nameOfCourse` in `main` becomes the value of method `displayMessage`'s parameter `courseName` in line 7 of Fig. 3.4. When you execute this application, notice that method `displayMessage` outputs the name you type as part of the welcome message (Fig. 3.5).

**Software Engineering Observation 3.1**

Normally, objects are created with `new`. One exception is a string literal that is contained in quotes, such as "hello". String literals are references to `String` objects that are implicitly created by Java.

---

More on Arguments and Parameters

When you declare a method, you must specify in the method's declaration
whether the method requires data to perform its task. To do so, you place additional information in the method's **parameter list**, which is located in the parentheses that follow the method name. The parameter list may contain any number of parameters, including none at all. Empty parentheses following the method name (as in Fig. 3.1, line 7) indicate that a method does not require any parameters. In Fig. 3.4, `displayMessage`'s parameter list (line 7) declares that the method requires one parameter. Each parameter must specify a type and an identifier. In this case, the type `String` and the identifier `courseName` indicate that method `displayMessage` requires a `String` to perform its task. At the time the method is called, the argument value in the call is assigned to the corresponding parameter (in this case, `courseName`) in the method header. Then, the method body uses the parameter `courseName` to access the value. Lines 9-10 of Fig. 3.4 display parameter `courseName`'s value, using the `%s` format specifier in `printf`'s format string. Note that the parameter variable's name (Fig. 3.4, line 7) can be the same or different from the argument variable's name (Fig. 3.5, line 24).

A method can specify multiple parameters by separating each parameter from the next with a comma (we'll see an example of this in Chapter 6). The number of arguments in a method call must match the number of parameters in the parameter list of the called method's declaration. Also, the argument types in the method call must be consistent with the types of the corresponding parameters in the method's declaration. (As you will learn in subsequent chapters, an argument's type and its corresponding parameter's type are not always required to be identical.) In our example, the method call passes one argument of type `String` (`nameOfCourse` is declared as a `String` on line 19 of Fig. 3.5) and the method declaration specifies one parameter of type `String` (line 7 in Fig. 3.4). So the type of the argument in the method call exactly matches the type of the parameter in the method header.

**Common Programming Error 3.2**

A compilation error occurs if the number of arguments in a method call does not match the number of parameters in the method declaration.

**Common Programming Error 3.3**
A compilation error occurs if the types of the arguments in a method call are not consistent with the types of the corresponding parameters in the method declaration.

**Updated UML Class Diagram for Class GradeBook**

The UML class diagram of *Fig. 3.6* models class GradeBook of *Fig. 3.4*. Like *Fig. 3.1*, this GradeBook class contains public operation displayMessage. However, this version of displayMessage has a parameter. The UML models a parameter a bit differently from Java by listing the parameter name, followed by a colon and the parameter type in the parentheses following the operation name. The UML has its own data types similar to those of Java (but as you will see, not all the UML data types have the same names as the corresponding Java types). The UML type String does correspond to the Java type String. Method displayMessage of class GradeBook (*Fig. 3.4*) has a String parameter named courseName, so *Fig. 3.6* lists courseName : String between the parentheses following displayMessage.

---

**Figure 3.6. UML class diagram indicating that class GradeBook has a displayMessage operation with a courseName parameter of UML type String.**

(This item is displayed on page 90 in the print version)

[View full size image]

---

**Notes on import Declarations**
Notice the `import` declaration in Fig. 3.5 (line 4). This indicates to the compiler that the program uses class `Scanner`. Why do we need to import class `Scanner`, but not class `System`, `String` or class `GradeBook`? Most classes you will use in Java programs must be imported. Classes `System` and `String` are in package `java.lang`, which is implicitly imported into every Java program. Thus, all programs can use package `java.lang`'s classes without explicitly importing them.

There is a special relationship between classes that are compiled in the same directory on disk, like classes `GradeBook` and `GradeBookTest`. By default, such classes are considered to be in the same package known as the **default package**. Classes in the same package are implicitly imported into the source code files of other classes in the same package. Thus, an `import` declaration is not required when one class in a package uses another in the same package such as when class `GradeBookTest` uses class `GradeBook`.

Actually, the `import` declaration at line 4 is not required if we always refer to class `Scanner` as `java.util.Scanner`, which includes the full package name and class name. This is known as the class's **fully qualified class name**. For example, line 12 could be written as

```java
java.util.Scanner input = new java.util.Scanner( System.in );
```

**Software Engineering Observation 3.2**

The Java compiler does not require `import` declarations in a Java source code file if the fully qualified class name is specified every time a class name is used in the source code. But most Java programmers consider using fully qualified names to be cumbersome, and instead prefer to use `import` declarations.
3.5. Instance Variables, set Methods and get Methods

In Chapter 2, we declared all of an application's variables in the application's main method. Variables declared in the body of a particular method are known as local variables and can be used only in that method. When that method terminates, the values of its local variables are lost. Recall from Section 3.2 that an object has attributes that are carried with the object as it is used in a program. Such attributes exist before a method is called on an object and after the method completes execution.

A class normally consists of one or more methods that manipulate the attributes that belong to a particular object of the class. Attributes are represented as variables in a class declaration. Such variables are called fields and are declared inside a class declaration but outside the bodies of the class's method declarations. When each object of a class maintains its own copy of an attribute, the field that represents the attribute is also known as an instance variable each object (instance) of the class has a separate instance of the variable in memory. The example in this section demonstrates a GradeBook class that contains a courseName instance variable to represent a particular GradeBook object's course name.

GradeBook Class with an Instance Variable, a set Method and a get Method

In our next application (Fig. 3.7 Fig. 3.8), class GradeBook (Fig. 3.7) maintains the course name as an instance variable so that it can be used or modified at any time during an application's execution. The class contains three methods setCourseName, getCourseName and displayMessage. Method setCourseName stores a course name in a GradeBook. Method getCourseName obtains a GradeBook's course name. Method displayMessage which now specifies no parameters still displays a welcome message that includes the course name. However, as you will see, the method now obtains the course name by calling another method in the same class getCourseName.

Figure 3.7. GradeBook class that contains a courseName
A typical instructor teaches more than one course, each with its own course name. Line 7 declares that `courseName` is a variable of type `String`. Because the variable is declared in the body of the class (lines 6-30) but outside the bodies of the class's methods (lines 10-13, 16-19 and 22-25), line 7 is a declaration for an instance variable. Every instance (i.e., object) of class `GradeBook` contains one copy of each instance variable. For example, if there are two `GradeBook` objects, each object has its own copy of `courseName` (one per object). A benefit of making `courseName` an instance variable is that all the methods of the class (in this case, `GradeBook`) can manipulate any instance variables that appear in the class (in this case, `courseName`).
Most instance variable declarations are preceded with the `private` keyword (as in line 7). Like `public`, keyword `private` is an access modifier. Variables or methods declared with access modifier `private` are accessible only to methods of the class in which they are declared. Thus, variable `courseName` can be used only in methods `setCourseName`, `getCourseName` and `displayMessage` of (every object of) class `GradeBook`.

**Software Engineering Observation 3.3**

*Precede every field and method declaration with an access modifier. As a rule of thumb, instance variables should be declared `private` and methods should be declared `public`. (We will see that it is appropriate to declare certain methods `private`, if they will be accessed only by other methods of the class.)*

**Good Programming Practice 3.1**

*We prefer to list the fields of a class first, so that, as you read the code, you see the names and types of the variables before you see them used in the methods of the class. It is possible to list the class’s fields anywhere in the class outside its method declarations, but scattering them tends to lead to hard-to-read code.*

**Good Programming Practice 3.2**

*Place a blank line between method declarations to separate the methods and enhance program readability.*
Declaring instance variables with access modifier `private` is known as **data hiding**. When a program creates (instantiates) an object of class `GradeBook`, variable `courseName` is encapsulated (hidden) in the object and can be accessed only by methods of the object's class. In class `GradeBook`, methods `setCourseName` and `getCourseName` manipulate the instance variable `courseName`.

Method `setCourseName` (lines 1013) does not return any data when it completes its task, so its return type is `void`. The method receives one parameter `name` which represents the course name that will be passed to the method as an argument. Line 12 assigns `name` to instance variable `courseName`.

Method `getCourseName` (lines 1619) returns a particular `GradeBook` object's `courseName`. The method has an empty parameter list, so it does not require additional information to perform its task. The method specifies that it returns a `String`, this is known as the method's **return type**. When a method that specifies a return type is called and completes its task, the method returns a result to its calling method. For example, when you go to an automated teller machine (ATM) and request your account balance, you expect the ATM to give you back a value that represents your balance. Similarly, when a statement calls method `getCourseName` on a `GradeBook` object, the statement expects to receive the `GradeBook`'s course name (in this case, a `String`, as specified in the method declaration's return type). If you have a method `square` that returns the square of its argument, you would expect the statement

```
int result = square( 2 );
```

[Page 94]

to return 4 from method `square` and assign 4 to variable `result`. If you have a method `maximum` that returns the largest of three integer arguments, you would expect the statement

```
int biggest = maximum( 27, 114, 51 );
```

to return 114 from method `maximum` and assign 114 to variable `biggest`.

Note that the statements at lines 12 and 18 each use `courseName` even though it was not declared in any of the methods. We can use `courseName` in the methods of class `GradeBook` because `courseName` is a field of the class. Also note that the
order in which methods are declared in a class does not determine when they are called at execution time. So method `getCourseName` could be declared before method `setCourseName`.

Method `displayMessage` (lines 2228) does not return any data when it completes its task, so its return type is `void`. The method does not receive parameters, so the parameter list is empty. Lines 2627 output a welcome message that includes the value of instance variable `courseName`. Once again, we need to create an object of class `GradeBook` and call its methods before the welcome message can be displayed.

**GradeBookTest Class That Demonstrates Class GradeBook**

Class `GradeBookTest` (Fig. 3.8) creates one object of class `GradeBook` and demonstrates its methods. Line 11 creates a `Scanner` that will be used to obtain a course name from the user. Line 14 creates a `GradeBook` object and assigns it to local variable `myGradeBook` of type `GradeBook`. Lines 17-18 display the initial course name calling the object's `getCourseName` method. Note that the first line of the output shows the name "null." Unlike local variables, which are not automatically initialized, every field has a default initial value a value provided by Java when the programmer does not specify the field's initial value. Thus, fields are not required to be explicitly initialized before they are used in a programunless they must be initialized to values other than their default values. The default value for a field of type `String` (like `courseName` in this example) is null, which we say more about in Section 3.6.

**Figure 3.8. Creating and manipulating a GradeBook object.**

(This item is displayed on page 95 in the print version)
// create a GradeBook object and assign it to myGradeBook
GradeBook myGradeBook = new GradeBook();

// display initial value of courseName
System.out.printf( "Initial course name is: %s\n\n", myGradeBook.getCourseName() );

// prompt for and read course name
System.out.println( "Please enter the course name:" );
String theName = input.nextLine(); // read a line of text
myGradeBook.setCourseName( theName ); // set the course name
System.out.println(); // outputs a blank line

// display welcome message after specifying course name
myGradeBook.displayMessage();

} // end main

} // end class GradeBookTest

Initial course name is: null

Please enter the course name:
CS101 Introduction to Java Programming

Welcome to the grade book for
CS101 Introduction to Java Programming!

Line 21 prompts the user to enter a course name. Local String variable theName (declared in line 22) is initialized with the course name entered by the user, which is returned by the call to the nextLine method of the Scanner object input. Line 23 calls object myGradeBook's setCourseName method and supplies theName as the method's argument. When the method is called, the argument's value is assigned to parameter name (line 10, Fig. 3.7) of method setCourseName (lines 1013, Fig. 3.7). Then the parameter's value is assigned to instance variable courseName (line 12, Fig. 3.7). Line 24 (Fig. 3.8) skips a line in the output, then line 27 calls object myGradeBook's displayMessage method to display the welcome message containing the course name.

set and get Methods
A class's \textit{private} fields can be manipulated only by methods of that class. So a \textbf{client of an object} that is, any class that calls the object's methods calls the class's \textit{public} methods to manipulate the \textit{private} fields of an object of the class. This is why the statements in method \texttt{main} (Fig. 3.8) call methods \texttt{setCourseName}, \texttt{getCourseName} and \texttt{displayMessage} on a \texttt{GradeBook} object. Classes often provide \textit{public} methods to allow clients of the class to \textbf{set} (i.e., assign values to) or \textbf{get} (i.e., obtain the values of) \textit{private} instance variables. The names of these methods need not begin with \texttt{set} or \texttt{get}, but this naming convention is highly recommended in Java and is required for special Java software components called JavaBeans that can simplify programming in many Java integrated development environments (IDEs). The method that \textit{sets} instance variable \texttt{courseName} in this example is called \texttt{setCourseName}, and the method that \textit{gets} the value of instance variable \texttt{courseName} is called \texttt{getCourseName}.

\textbf{GradeBook's UML Class Diagram with an Instance Variable and set and get Methods}

\textbf{Figure 3.9} contains an updated UML class diagram for the version of class \texttt{GradeBook} in \textbf{Fig. 3.7}. This diagram models class \texttt{GradeBook}'s instance variable \texttt{courseName} as an attribute in the middle compartment of the class. The UML represents instance variables as attributes by listing the attribute name, followed by a colon and the attribute type. The UML type of attribute \texttt{courseName} is \texttt{String}. Instance variable \texttt{courseName} is \textit{private} in Java, so the class diagram lists a minus sign (\texttt{-}) in front of the corresponding attribute's name. Class \texttt{GradeBook} contains three \textit{public} methods, so the class diagram lists three operations in the third compartment. Recall that the plus (\texttt{+}) sign before each operation name indicates that the operation is \textit{public}. Operation \texttt{setCourseName} has a \texttt{String} parameter called \texttt{name}. The UML indicates the return type of an operation by placing a colon and the return type after the parentheses following the operation name. Method \texttt{getCourseName} of class \texttt{GradeBook} (Fig. 3.7) has a \texttt{String} return type in Java, so the class diagram shows a \texttt{String} return type in the UML. Note that operations \texttt{setCourseName} and \texttt{displayMessage} do not return values (i.e., they return \texttt{void}), so the UML class diagram does not specify a return type after the parentheses of these operations.
Figure 3.9. UML class diagram indicating that class GradeBook has a courseName attribute of UML type String and three operations setCourseName (with a name parameter of UML type String), getCourseName (returns UML type String) and displayMessage.
3.6. Primitive Types vs. Reference Types

Data types in Java are divided into two categories: primitive types and reference types (sometimes called nonprimitive types). The primitive types are `boolean`, `byte`, `char`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `float` and `double`. All nonprimitive types are reference types, so classes, which specify the types of objects, are reference types.

A primitive-type variable can store exactly one value of its declared type at a time. For example, an int variable can store one whole number (such as 7) at a time. When another value is assigned to that variable, its initial value is replaced. Primitive-type instance variables are initialized by default variables of types `byte`, `char`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `float` and `double` are initialized to 0, and variables of type `boolean` are initialized to `false`. Programmers can specify their own initial values for primitive-type variables. Recall that local variables are *not* initialized by default.

Programs use variables of reference types (normally called references) to store the locations of objects in the computer's memory. Such variables are said to refer to objects in the program. Objects that are referenced may each contain many instance variables and methods. Line 14 of Fig. 3.8 creates an object of class `GradeBook`, and the variable `myGradeBook` contains a reference to that `GradeBook` object. Reference type instance variables are initialized by default to the value `null`, a reserved word that represents a "reference to nothing." This is why the first call to `getCourseName` in Fig. 3.8 returned `null` the value of `courseName` had not been set, so the default initial value `null` was returned. The complete list of reserved words and keywords is listed in Appendix C, Keywords and Reserved Words.

A reference to an object is required to invoke (i.e., call) the object's methods. In the application of Fig. 3.8, the statements in method `main` use the variable `myGradeBook` to send messages to the `GradeBook` object. These messages are calls to methods (like `setCourseName` and `getCourseName`) that enable the program to interact with the `GradeBook` objects. For example, the statement (in line 23)

```java
myGradeBook.setCourseName( theName ); // set the course name
```
uses myGradeBook to send the setCourseName message to the GradeBook object. The message includes the argument that setCourseName requires to perform its task. The GradeBook object uses this information to set the courseName instance variable. Note that primitivetype variables do not refer to objects, so such variables cannot be used to invoke methods.

**Software Engineering Observation 3.4**

A variable's declared type (e.g., int, double or GradeBook) indicates whether the variable is of a primitive or a reference type. If a variable's type is not one of the eight primitive types, then it is a reference type. For example, Account account1 indicates that account1 is a reference to an Account object).
3.7. Initializing Objects with Constructors

As mentioned in Section 3.5, when an object of class `GradeBook` ([Fig. 3.7]) is created, its instance variable `courseName` is initialized to `null` by default. What if you want to provide a course name when you create a `GradeBook` object? Each class you declare can provide a constructor that can be used to initialize an object of a class when the object is created. In fact, Java requires a constructor call for every object that is created. Keyword `new` calls the class's constructor to perform the initialization. The constructor call is indicated by the class name followed by parentheses. For example, line 14 of [Fig. 3.8] first uses `new` to create a `GradeBook` object. The empty parentheses after "new GradeBook" indicate a call to the class's constructor without arguments. By default, the compiler provides a default constructor with no parameters in any class that does not explicitly include a constructor.

When you declare a class, you can provide your own constructor to specify custom initialization for objects of your class. For example, a programmer might want to specify a course name for a `GradeBook` object when the object is created, as in

```
GradeBook myGradeBook =
new GradeBook( "CS101 Introduction to Java Programming" );
```

In this case, the argument "CS101 Introduction to Java Programming" is passed to the `GradeBook` object's constructor and used to initialize the `courseName`. The preceding statement requires that the class provide a constructor with a `String` parameter. [Figure 3.10] contains a modified `GradeBook` class with such a constructor.

**Figure 3.10.** `GradeBook` class with a constructor that receives a course name.

(This item is displayed on pages 97 - 98 in the print version)
Lines 912 declare the constructor for class GradeBook. A constructor must have the same name as its class. Like a method, a constructor specifies in its parameter list the data it requires to perform its task. When you create a new object, this data is placed in the parentheses that follow the class name. Line 9 indicates that class GradeBook's constructor has a parameter called name of type String. In line 11 of the constructor's body, the name passed to the constructor is assigned to instance variable courseName.

Figure 3.11 demonstrates initializing GradeBook objects using this constructor. Lines 1112 create and initialize a GradeBook object. The constructor of class GradeBook is called with the argument "CS101 Introduction to Java Programming" to initialize the course name. The class instance creation expression to the right of = in lines 1112 returns a reference to the new object, which is assigned to variable gradeBook1. Lines 1314 repeat this process for another GradeBook object, this time passing the argument "CS102 Data Structures in Java" to initialize the course name for gradeBook2. Lines 1720 use each object's getCourseName method to
obtain the course names and show that they were indeed initialized when the objects were created. In the introduction to Section 3.5, you learned that each instance (i.e., object) of a class contains its own copy of the class's instance variables. The output confirms that each GradeBook maintains its own copy of instance variable courseName.

Figure 3.11. Constructor used to initialize GradeBook objects. (This item is displayed on page 99 in the print version)

```
1 // Fig. 3.11: GradeBookTest.java
2 // GradeBook constructor used to specify the course name at the
3 // time each GradeBook object is created.
4
5 public class GradeBookTest
6 {
7    // main method begins program execution
8    public static void main( String args[] )
9    {
10       // create GradeBook object
11       GradeBook gradeBook1 = new GradeBook("CS101 Introduction to Java Programming");
12       GradeBook gradeBook2 = new GradeBook("CS102 Data Structures in Java");
13
14       // display initial value of courseName for each GradeBook
15       System.out.printf( "gradeBook1 course name is: %s\n", gradeBook1.getCourseName() );
16       System.out.printf( "gradeBook2 course name is: %s\n", gradeBook2.getCourseName() );
17    } // end main
18
19 } // end class GradeBookTest
```

gradeBook1 course name is: CS101 Introduction to Java Programming
gradeBook2 course name is: CS102 Data Structures in Java

Like methods, constructors also can take arguments. However, an important difference between constructors and methods is that constructors cannot return values, so they cannot specify a return type (not even void). Normally, constructors are declared public. If a class does not include a constructor, the
Error-Prevention Tip 3.1

Unless default initialization of your class's instance variables is acceptable, provide a constructor to ensure that your class's instance variables are properly initialized with meaningful values when each new object of your class is created.

Adding the Constructor to Class GradeBook's UML Class Diagram

The UML class diagram of Fig. 3.12 models class GradeBook of Fig. 3.10, which has a constructor that has a name parameter of type String. Like operations, the UML models constructors in the third compartment of a class in a class diagram. To distinguish a constructor from a class's operations, the UML places the word "constructor" between guillemets (« and ») before the constructor's name. It is customary to list constructors before other operations in the third compartment.
GradeBook

- courseName : String

constructor GradeBook( name : String )
+ setName( name : String )
+ getName( ) : String
+ displayMessage( )
3.8. Floating-Point Numbers and Type double

In our next application, we depart temporarily from our GradeBook case study to declare a class called Account that maintains the balance of a bank account. Most account balances are not whole numbers (e.g., 0, 22 and 1024). For this reason, class Account represents the account balance as a floating-point number (i.e., a number with a decimal point, such as 7.33, 0.0975 or 1000.12345). Java provides two primitive types for storing floating-point numbers in memory float and double. The primary difference between them is that double variables can store numbers with larger magnitude and finer detail (i.e., more digits to the right of the decimal point also known as the number's precision) than float variables.

Floating-Point Number Precision and Memory Requirements

Variables of type float represent single-precision floating-point numbers and have seven significant digits. Variables of type double represent double-precision floating-point numbers. These require twice as much memory as float variables and provide 15 significant digits approximately double the precision of float variables. For the range of values required by most programs, variables of type float should suffice, but you can use double to "play it safe." In some applications, even variables of type double will be inadequate such applications are beyond the scope of this book. Most programmers represent floating-point numbers with type double. In fact, Java treats all floating-point numbers you type in a program's source code (such as 7.33 and 0.0975) as double values by default. Such values in the source code are known as floating-point literals. See Appendix D, Primitive Types, for the ranges of values for floats and doubles.

Although floating-point numbers are not always 100% precise, they have numerous applications. For example, when we speak of a "normal" body temperature of 98.6, we do not need to be precise to a large number of digits. When we read the temperature on a thermometer as 98.6, it may actually be 98.5999473210643. Calling this number simply 98.6 is fine for most applications involving body temperatures. Due to the imprecise nature of floating-point numbers, type double is preferred over type float because double variables can represent floating-point numbers more accurately. For this
reason, we use type `double` throughout the book.

Floating-point numbers also arise as a result of division. In conventional arithmetic, when we divide 10 by 3, the result is 3.3333333..., with the sequence of 3s repeating infinitely. The computer allocates only a fixed amount of space to hold such a value, so clearly the stored floating-point value can be only an approximation.

**Common Programming Error 3.4**

*Using floating-point numbers in a manner that assumes they are represented precisely can lead to logic errors.*

---

**Account Class with an Instance Variable of Type `double`**

Our next application (Fig. 3.13, Fig. 3.14) contains a class named `Account` (Fig. 3.13) that maintains the balance of a bank account. A typical bank services many accounts, each with its own balance, so line 7 declares an instance variable named `balance` of type `double`. Variable `balance` is an instance variable because it is declared in the body of the class (lines 630) but outside the class's method declarations (lines 1016, 1922 and 2528). Every instance (i.e., object) of class `Account` contains its own copy of `balance`.

---

**Figure 3.13. **Account class with an instance variable of type `double`.

```java
// Fig. 3.13: Account.java
// Account class with a constructor to initialize instance variable balance.
public class Account {
    private double balance; // instance variable that stores the balance
}
```
Figure 3.14. Inputting and outputting floating-point numbers with Account objects.

(This item is displayed on pages 102 - 103 in the print version)
account1.credit( depositAmount ); // add to account1 balance

// display balances
System.out.printf( "account1 balance:$%.2f\n",
    account1.getBalance() );
System.out.printf( "account2 balance:$%.2f\n\n",
    account2.getBalance() );

System.out.printf( "Enter deposit amount for account2: "); // prompt
depositAmount = input.nextDouble(); // obtain user input
System.out.printf( "\nadding $%.2f to account2 balance\n\n",
    depositAmount );
account2.credit( depositAmount ); // add to account2 balance

// display balances
System.out.printf( "account1 balance:$%.2f\n",
    account1.getBalance() );
System.out.printf( "account2 balance:$%.2f\n",
    account2.getBalance() );

} // end main

} // end class AccountTest

account1 balance: $50.00
account2 balance: $0.00

Enter deposit amount for account1: 25.53
adding 25.53 to account1 balance
account1 balance: $75.53
account2 balance: $0.00

Enter deposit amount for account2: 123.45
adding 123.45 to account2 balance
account1 balance: $75.53
account2 balance: $123.45

Class Account contains a constructor and two methods. Since it is common for someone opening an account to place money in the account immediately, the constructor (lines 10-16) receives a parameter initialBalance of type double that represents the account's starting balance. Lines 14-15 ensure that initialBalance is greater than 0.0. If so, initialBalance's value is assigned to
instance variable balance. Otherwise, balance remains at 0.0 its default initial value.

Method credit (lines 1922) does not return any data when it completes its task, so its return type is void. The method receives one parameter named amount a double value that will be added to the balance. Line 21 adds amount to the current value of balance, then assigns the result to balance (thus replacing the prior balance amount).

Method getBalance (lines 2528) allows clients of the class (i.e., other classes that use this class) to obtain the value of a particular Account object's balance. The method specifies return type double and an empty parameter list.

Once again, note that the statements at lines 15, 21 and 27 use instance variable balance even though it was not declared in any of the methods. We can use balance in these methods because it is an instance variable of the class.

AccountTest Class to Use Class Account

Class AccountTest (Fig. 3.14) creates two Account objects (lines 1011) and initializes them with 50.00 and -7.53, respectively. Lines 1417 output the balance in each Account by calling the Account's getBalance method. When method getBalance is called for account1 from line 15, the value of account1's balance is returned from line 27 of Fig. 3.13 and displayed by the System.out.printf statement (Fig. 3.14, lines 1415). Similarly, when method getBalance is called for account2 from line 17, the value of the account2's balance is returned from line 27 of Fig. 3.13 and displayed by the System.out.printf statement (Fig. 3.14, lines 1617). Note that the balance of account2 is 0.00 because the constructor ensured that the account could not begin with a negative balance. The value is output by printf with the format specifier %.2f. The format specifier %f is used to output values of type float or double. The .2 between % and f represents the number of decimal places (2) that should be output to the right of the decimal point in the floating-point number also known as the number's precision. Any floating point value output with %.2f will be rounded to the hundredths position for example, 123.457 would be rounded to 123.46, and 27.333 would be rounded to 27.33.

[Page 103]
Line 20 creates a `Scanner` that will be used to obtain deposit amounts from a user. Line 21 declares local variable `depositAmount` to store each deposit amount entered by the user. Unlike the instance variable `balance` in class `Account`, local variable `depositAmount` in `main` is not initialized to 0.0 by default. However, this variable does not need to be initialized here because its value will be determined by the user's input.

Line 23 prompts the user to enter a deposit amount for `account1`. Line 24 obtains the input from the user by calling `Scanner` object `input`'s `nextDouble` method, which returns a `double` value entered by the user. Lines 25-26 display the deposit amount. Line 27 calls object `account1`'s `credit` method and supplies `depositAmount` as the method's argument. When the method is called, the argument's value is assigned to parameter `amount` (line 19 of `Fig. 3.13`) of method `credit` (lines 19-22 of `Fig. 3.13`), then method `credit` adds that value to the `balance` (line 21 of `Fig. 3.13`). Lines 30-33 (`Fig. 3.14`) output the balances of both `Accounts` again to show that only `account1`'s balance changed.

[Page 104]

Line 35 prompts the user to enter a deposit amount for `account2`. Line 36 obtains the input from the user by calling `Scanner` object `input`'s `nextDouble` method. Lines 37-38 display the deposit amount. Line 39 calls object `account2`'s `credit` method and supplies `depositAmount` as the method's argument, then method `credit` adds that value to the balance. Finally, lines 42-45 output the balances of both `Accounts` again to show that only `account2`'s balance changed.

**UML Class Diagram for Class** `Account`

The UML class diagram in `Fig. 3.15` models class `Account` of `Fig. 3.13`. The diagram models the `private attribute` `balance` of UML type `Double` to correspond to the class's `instance variable` `balance` of Java type `double`. The diagram models class `Account`'s constructor with a parameter `initialBalance` of UML type `Double` in the third compartment of the class. The class's two `public` methods are modeled as operations in the third compartment as well. The diagram models operation `credit` with an `amount` parameter of UML type `Double` (because the corresponding method has an `amount` parameter of Java type `double`) and operation `getBalance` with a return type of `Double` (because the corresponding Java method returns a `double` value).
Figure 3.15. UML class diagram indicating that class Account has a private balance attribute of UML type Double, a constructor (with a parameter of UML type Double) and two public operations credit (with an amount parameter of UML type Double) and getBalance (returns UML type Double).
3.9. (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Using Dialog Boxes

Introduction

This case study is designed for those who want to begin learning Java's powerful capabilities for creating graphical user interfaces (GUIs) and graphics earlier in the book than the main discussions of these topics in Chapter 11, GUI Components: Part 1, Chapter 12, Graphics and Java2D, and Chapter 22, GUI Components: Part 2.

The GUI and Graphics Case Study appears in 10 brief sections (Fig. 3.16). Each section introduces a few basic concepts and provides visual, graphical examples and full source code. In the first few sections, you create your first graphical applications. In the following sections, you use the object-oriented programming concepts presented through Chapter 10 to create a drawing application that draws a variety of shapes. When we formally introduce GUIs in Chapter 11, we use the mouse to choose exactly which shapes to draw and where to draw them. In Chapter 12, we add capabilities of the Java 2D graphics API to draw the shapes with different line thicknesses and fills. We hope you will find this case study informative and entertaining.

---

**Figure 3.16. Summary of the GUI and Graphics Case Study in each chapter.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>TitleExercise(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Section 3.9</td>
<td>Using Dialog BoxesBasic input and output with dialog boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 4.14</td>
<td>Creating Simple DrawingsDisplaying and drawing lines on the screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 5.10</td>
<td>Drawing Rectangles and OvalsUsing shapes to represent data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 6.13</td>
<td>Colors and Filled ShapesDrawing a bull's-eye and random graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 7.13</td>
<td>Drawing ArcsDrawing spirals with arcs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Displaying Text in a Dialog Box

Although the programs presented in this book thus far display output in the command window, many Java applications use windows or dialog boxes (also called dialogs) to display output. For example, World Wide Web browsers such as Netscape or Microsoft Internet Explorer display Web pages in their own windows. E-mail programs allow you to type and read messages in a window. Typically, dialog boxes are windows in which programs display important messages to the user of the program. Class JOptionPane provides prepackaged dialog boxes that enable programs to display windows containing messages to users; such windows are called message dialogs. Figure 3.17 displays the string "Welcome\nto\nJava" in a message dialog.

Figure 3.17. Using JOptionPane to display multiple lines in a dialog box.

```java
1    // Fig. 3.17: Dialog1.java
2    // Printing multiple lines in dialog box.
3    import javax.swing.JOptionPane; // import class JOptionPane
4
5    public class Dialog1
6    {
7    public static void main( String args[] )
8    {
9        // display a dialog with the message
10       JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( null, "Welcome\nto\nJava");
```
Line 3 indicates that our program uses class `JOptionPane` from package `javax.swing`. This package contains many classes that help Java programmers create **graphical user interfaces (GUIs)** for applications. **GUI components** facilitate data entry by a program's user, and formatting or presenting data outputs to the user. In method `main`, line 10 calls method `showMessageDialog` of class `JOptionPane` to display a dialog box containing a message. The method requires two arguments. The first argument helps the Java application determine where to position the dialog box. When the first argument is `null`, the dialog box appears in the center of the computer screen. The second argument is the `String` to display in the dialog box.

Method `showMessageDialog` is a special method of class `JOptionPane` called a **static method**. Such methods often define frequently used tasks that do not explicitly require creating an object. For example, many programs display messages to users in dialog boxes. Rather than require programmers to create code that performs this task, the designers of Java's `JOptionPane` class declared a static method for this purpose. Now, with a simple method call, all programmers can make a program display a dialog box containing a message. A static method typically is called by using its class name followed by a dot (.) and the method name, as in

```
ClassName.methodName( arguments )
```

Chapter 6, Methods: A Deeper Look will cover calling static methods in greater
Entering Text in a Dialog Box

Our next application (Fig. 3.18) demonstrates input using dialogs. This program uses another predefined dialog box from class JOptionPane called an input dialog that allows the user to enter data for use in the program. The program asks for the user's name and responds with a greeting containing the name entered by the user.

Figure 3.18. Obtaining user input from a dialog.
(This item is displayed on pages 106 - 107 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 3.18: NameDialog.java
2 // Basic input with a dialog box.
3 import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
4
5 public class NameDialog
6 {
7     public static void main( String args[] )
8     {
9         // prompt user to enter name
10         String name = JOptionPane.showInputDialog( "What is your name?" );
11
12         // create the message
13         String message = String.format( "Welcome, %s, to Java Programming!", name );
14
15         // display the message to welcome the user by name
16         JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( null, message );
17     } // end main
18 } // end class NameDialog
```

[View full size image]
Lines 1011 use method `showInputDialog` of class `JOptionPane` to display a simple input dialog containing a prompt and a field for the user to enter text, known as a **text field**. The argument to `showInputDialog` is the prompt that indicates what the user should enter. The user types characters in the text field, then clicks the **OK** button or presses the **Enter** key to return the **String** to the program. Method `showInputDialog` returns a **String** containing the characters typed by the user, which we store in variable `name`. [*Note: If you press the **Cancel** button in the dialog, the method returns **null** and the program displays the word "null" as the name.*]

Lines 1415 use static **String** method `format` to return a **String** containing a greeting with the name entered by the user. Method `format` is similar to method `System.out.printf`, except that `format` returns a formatted **String** rather than displaying it in a command window. Line 18 displays the greeting in a message dialog.

**GUI and Graphics Case Study Exercise**

Modify the addition program in **Fig. 2.7** to use dialog-based input with `JOptionPane` instead of console-based input using `Scanner`. Since method `showInputDialog` only returns a `String`, you must convert the `String` the user enters to an **int** for use in calculations. Method `Integer.parseInt(String s)` takes a `String` argument representing an integer (e.g., the result of `JOptionPane.showInputDialog`) and returns the value as an **int**. If the `String` does not contain a valid integer, then the program will terminate with an error.
3.10. (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Identifying the Classes in a Requirements Document

Now we begin designing the ATM system that we introduced in Chapter 2. In this section, we identify the classes that are needed to build the ATM system by analyzing the nouns and noun phrases that appear in the requirements document. We introduce UML class diagrams to model the relationships between these classes. This is an important first step in defining the structure of our system.

Identifying the Classes in a System

We begin our OOD process by identifying the classes required to build the ATM system. We will eventually describe these classes using UML class diagrams and implement these classes in Java. First, we review the requirements document of Section 2.9 and identify key nouns and noun phrases to help us identify classes that comprise the ATM system. We may decide that some of these nouns and noun phrases are attributes of other classes in the system. We may also conclude that some of the nouns do not correspond to parts of the system and thus should not be modeled at all. Additional classes may become apparent to us as we proceed through the design process.

Figure 3.19 lists the nouns and noun phrases found in the requirements document in Section 2.9. We list them from left to right in the order in which we first encounter them in the requirements document. We list only the singular form of each noun or noun phrase.

Figure 3.19. Nouns and noun phrases in the requirements document.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns and noun phrases in the requirements document</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We create classes only for the nouns and noun phrases that have significance in the ATM system. We do not need to model "bank" as a class, because the bank is not a part of the ATM system—the bank simply wants us to build the ATM. "Customer" and "user" also represent entities outside of the system—they are important because they interact with our ATM system, but we do not need to model them as classes in the ATM software. Recall that we modeled an ATM user (i.e., a bank customer) as the actor in the use case diagram of Fig. 2.20.

We do not model "$20 bill" or "deposit envelope" as classes. These are physical objects in the real world, but they are not part of what is being automated. We can adequately represent the presence of bills in the system using an attribute of the class that models the cash dispenser. (We assign attributes to classes in Section 4.15.) For example, the cash dispenser maintains a count of the number of bills it contains. The requirements document does not say anything about what the system should do with deposit envelopes after it receives them. We can assume that simply acknowledging the receipt of an envelope operation performed by the class that models the deposit slot is sufficient to represent the presence of an envelope in the system. (We assign operations to classes in Section 6.14.)

In our simplified ATM system, representing various amounts of "money," including the "balance" of an account, as attributes of other classes seems most appropriate. Likewise, the nouns "account number" and "PIN" represent significant pieces of information in the ATM system. They are important attributes of a bank account. They do not, however, exhibit behaviors. Thus, we can most appropriately model them as attributes of an account class.

Though the requirements document frequently describes a "transaction" in a general sense, we do not model the broad notion of a financial transaction at this time. Instead, we model the three types of transactions (i.e., "balance inquiry," "withdrawal" and "deposit") as individual classes. These classes possess specific attributes needed for executing the transactions they represent. For example, a withdrawal needs to know the amount of money the user wants to withdraw. A balance inquiry, however, does not require any additional data. Furthermore, the three transaction classes exhibit unique behaviors. A withdrawal includes dispensing cash to the user, whereas a deposit involves receiving deposit envelopes from the user. [Note: In Section 10.9, we "factor out" common features of all transactions into a general "transaction" class using the object-oriented concept of inheritance.]

We determine the classes for our system based on the remaining nouns and noun phrases from Fig. 3.19. Each of these refers to one or more of the following:

- ATM
- screen
- keypad
- cash dispenser
The elements of this list are likely to be classes we will need to implement our system.

We can now model the classes in our system based on the list we have created. We capitalize class names in the design process as UML convention as we will do when we write the actual Java code that implements our design. If the name of a class contains more than one word, we run the words together and capitalize each word (e.g., MultipleWordName). Using this convention, we create classes ATM, Screen, Keypad, CashDispenser, DepositSlot, Account, BankDatabase, BalanceInquiry, Withdrawal and Deposit. We construct our system using all of these classes as building blocks. Before we begin building the system, however, we must gain a better understanding of how the classes relate to one another.

**Modeling Classes**

The UML enables us to model, via class diagrams, the classes in the ATM system and their interrelationships. Figure 3.20 represents class ATM. In the UML, each class is modeled as a rectangle with three compartments. The top compartment contains the name of the class centered horizontally in boldface. The middle compartment contains the class's attributes. (We discuss attributes in Section 4.15 and Section 5.11.) The bottom compartment contains the class's operations (discussed in Section 6.14). In Fig. 3.20, the middle and bottom compartments are empty because we have not yet determined this class's attributes and operations.
one another. For the moment, we choose to model only this subset of classes for simplicity. We present a more complete class diagram later in this section. Notice that the rectangles representing classes in this diagram are not subdivided into compartments. The UML allows the suppression of class attributes and operations in this manner to create more readable diagrams, when appropriate. Such a diagram is said to be an **elided diagram** one in which some information, such as the contents of the second and third compartments, is not modeled. We will place information in these compartments in Section 4.15 and Section 6.14.

**Figure 3.21. Class diagram showing an association among classes.**

![View full size image](image)

In Fig. 3.21, the solid line that connects the two classes represents an **association** relationship between classes. The numbers near each end of the line are **multiplicity** values, which indicate how many objects of each class participate in the association. In this case, following the line from one end to the other reveals that, at any given moment, one **ATM** object participates in an association with either zero or one **Withdrawal** objects: zero if the current user is not currently performing a transaction or has requested a different type of transaction, and one if the user has requested a withdrawal. The UML can model many types of multiplicity. Figure 3.22 lists and explains the multiplicity types.

**Figure 3.22. Multiplicity types.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>One</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m)</td>
<td>An integer value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0..1</td>
<td>Zero or one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m, n)</td>
<td>(m) or (n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m..n)</td>
<td>At least (m), but not more than (n)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(*)</td>
<td>Any non-negative integer (zero or more)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0..*</td>
<td>Zero or more (identical to *)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An association can be named. For example, the word executes above the line connecting classes ATM and Withdrawal in Fig. 3.21 indicates the name of that association. This part of the diagram reads "one object of class ATM executes zero or one objects of class Withdrawal." Note that association names are directional, as indicated by the filled arrowheads, so it would be improper, for example, to read the preceding association from right to left as "zero or one objects of class Withdrawal execute one object of class ATM."

The word currentTransaction at the Withdrawal end of the association line in Fig. 3.21 is a role name, which identifies the role the Withdrawal object plays in its relationship with the ATM. A role name adds meaning to an association between classes by identifying the role a class plays in the context of an association. A class can play several roles in the same system. For example, in a school personnel system, a person may play the role of "professor" when relating to students. The same person may take on the role of "colleague" when participating in a relationship with another professor, and "coach" when coaching student athletes. In Fig. 3.21, the role name currentTransaction indicates that the Withdrawal object participating in the executes association with an object of class ATM represents the transaction currently being processed by the ATM. In other contexts, a Withdrawal object may take on other roles (e.g., the previous transaction). Notice that we do not specify a role name for the ATM end of the executes association. Role names in class diagrams are often omitted when the meaning of an association is clear without them.

In addition to indicating simple relationships, associations can specify more complex relationships, such as objects of one class being composed of objects of other classes. Consider a real-world automated teller machine. What "pieces" does a manufacturer put together to build a working ATM? Our requirements document tells us that the ATM is composed of a screen, a keypad, a cash dispenser and a deposit slot.

In Fig. 3.23, the solid diamonds attached to the association lines of class ATM indicate that class ATM has a composition relationship with classes Screen, Keypad, CashDispenser and DepositSlot. Composition implies a whole/part relationship. The class that has the composition symbol (the solid diamond) on its end of the association line is the whole (in this case, ATM), and the classes on the other end of the association lines are the parts. In this case, classes Screen, Keypad, CashDispenser and DepositSlot. The compositions in Fig. 3.23 indicate that an object of class ATM is formed from one object of class Screen, one object of class CashDispenser, one object of class Keypad and one object of class DepositSlot. The ATM "has a" screen, a keypad, a cash dispenser and a deposit slot. The "has a" relationship defines composition. (We will see in the "Software Engineering Case Study" section in Chapter 10 that the "is-a" relationship defines inheritance.)

Figure 3.23. Class diagram showing composition relationships.

[View full size image]
According to the UML specification (www.uml.org), composition relationships have the following properties:

1. Only one class in the relationship can represent the whole (i.e., the diamond can be placed on only one end of the association line). For example, either the screen is part of the ATM or the ATM is part of the screen, but the screen and the ATM cannot both represent the whole in the relationship.

2. The parts in the composition relationship exist only as long as the whole, and the whole is responsible for the creation and destruction of its parts. For example, the act of constructing an ATM includes manufacturing its parts. Furthermore, if the ATM is destroyed, its screen, keypad, cash dispenser and deposit slot are also destroyed.

3. A part may belong to only one whole at a time, although the part may be removed and attached to another whole, which then assumes responsibility for the part.

The solid diamonds in our class diagrams indicate composition relationships that fulfill these three properties. If a "has-a" relationship does not satisfy one or more of these criteria, the UML specifies that hollow diamonds be attached to the ends of association lines to indicate aggregation a weaker form of composition. For example, a personal computer and a computer monitor participate in an aggregation relationshipthe computer "has a" monitor, but the two parts can exist independently, and the same monitor can be attached to multiple computers at once, thus violating the second and third properties of composition.

Figure 3.24 shows a class diagram for the ATM system. This diagram models most of the classes that we identified earlier in this section, as well as the associations between them that we can infer from the requirements document. [Note: Classes BalanceInquiry and Deposit participate in associations similar to those of class Withdrawal, so we have chosen to omit them from this diagram to keep the diagram simple. In Chapter 10, we expand our class diagram to include all the classes in the ATM system.]

Figure 3.24. Class diagram for the ATM system model.

(This item is displayed on page 113 in the print version)
Figure 3.24 presents a graphical model of the structure of the ATM system. This class diagram includes classes BankDatabase and Account, and several associations that were not present in either Fig. 3.21 or Fig. 3.23. The class diagram shows that class BankDatabase has a **one-to-one relationship** with class ATM. One ATM object authenticates users against one BankDatabase object. In Fig. 3.24, we also model the fact that the bank’s database contains information about many accounts—one object of class BankDatabase participates in a composition relationship with zero or more objects of class Account. Recall from Fig. 3.22 that the multiplicity value 0..* at the Account end of the association between class BankDatabase and class Account indicates that zero or more objects of class Account take part in the association. Class BankDatabase has a **one-to-many relationship** with class Account. A BankDatabase stores many Accounts. Similarly, class Account has a **many-to-one relationship** with class BankDatabase. There can be many Accounts stored in the BankDatabase. [Note: Recall from Fig. 3.22 that the multiplicity value * is identical to 0..*. We include 0..* in our class diagrams for clarity.]

Figure 3.24 also indicates that if the user is performing a withdrawal, "one object of class Withdrawal accesses/modifies an account balance through one object of class BankDatabase." We could have created an association directly between class Withdrawal and class Account. The requirements document, however, states that the "ATM must interact with the bank's account information database" to perform transactions. A bank account contains sensitive information, and systems engineers must always consider the security of personal data when designing a system. Thus, only the BankDatabase can access and manipulate an account directly. All other parts of the system must interact with the database to retrieve or update account information (e.g., an account balance).

The class diagram in Fig. 3.24 also models associations between class Withdrawal and classes Screen, CashDispenser, and Keypad. A withdrawal transaction includes prompting the user to choose a withdrawal amount.
and receiving numeric input. These actions require the use of the screen and the keypad, respectively. Furthermore, dispensing cash to the user requires access to the cash dispenser.

Classes `BalanceInquiry` and `Deposit`, though not shown in Fig. 3.24, take part in several associations with the other classes of the ATM system. Like class `Withdrawal`, each of these classes associates with classes `ATM` and `BankDatabase`. An object of class `BalanceInquiry` also associates with an object of class `Screen` to display the balance of an account to the user. Class `Deposit` associates with classes `Screen`, `Keypad`, and `DepositSlot`. Like withdrawals, deposit transactions require use of the screen and the keypad to display prompts and receive input, respectively. To receive deposit envelopes, an object of class `Deposit` accesses the deposit slot.

We have now identified the classes in our ATM system (although we may discover others as we proceed with the design and implementation). In Section 4.15, we determine the attributes for each of these classes, and in Section 5.11, we use these attributes to examine how the system changes over time.

---

### Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

3.1 Suppose we have a class `Car` that represents a car. Think of some of the different pieces that a manufacturer would put together to produce a whole car. Create a class diagram (similar to Fig. 3.23) that models some of the composition relationships of class `Car`.

3.2 Suppose we have a class `File` that represents an electronic document in a standalone, nonnetworked computer represented by class `Computer`. What sort of association exists between class `Computer` and class `File`?

1. Class `Computer` has a one-to-one relationship with class `File`.

2. Class `Computer` has a many-to-one relationship with class `File`.

3. Class `Computer` has a one-to-many relationship with class `File`.

4. Class `Computer` has a many-to-many relationship with class `File`.

3.3 State whether the following statement is `true` or `false`, and if `false`, explain why: A UML diagram in which a class’s second and third compartments are not modeled is said to be an elided diagram.

3.4 Modify the class diagram of Fig. 3.24 to include class `Deposit` instead of class `Withdrawal`.

### Answers to Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

---

[Page 114]
Figure 3.25 presents a class diagram that shows some of the composition relationships of a class Car.

Figure 3.25. Class diagram showing composition relationships of a class Car.

3.1

3.2 [Note: In a computer network, this relationship could be many-to-many.]

3.3 True.

Figure 3.26 presents a class diagram for the ATM including class Deposit instead of class Withdrawal (as in Fig. 3.24). Note that Deposit does not access CashDispenser, but does access DepositSlot.

Figure 3.26. Class diagram for the ATM system model including class Deposit.

(This item is displayed on page 115 in the print version)
3.11. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned the basic concepts of classes, objects, methods and instance variables; these will be used in most Java applications you create. In particular, you learned how to declare instance variables of a class to maintain data for each object of the class, and how to declare methods that operate on that data. You learned how to call a method to tell it to perform its task and how to pass information to methods as arguments. You learned the difference between a local variable of a method and an instance variable of a class and that only instance variables are initialized automatically. You also learned how to use a class's constructor to specify the initial values for an object's instance variables. Throughout the chapter, you saw how the UML can be used to create class diagrams that model the constructors, methods and attributes of classes. Finally, you learned about floating-point numbers; how to store them with variables of primitive type double, how to input them with a Scanner object and how to format them with printf and format specifier %f for display purposes. In the next chapter we begin our introduction to control statements, which specify the order in which a program's actions are performed. You will use these in your methods to specify how they should perform their tasks.
Summary

- Performing a task in a program requires a method. Inside the method you put the mechanisms that make the method do its task—that is, the method hides the implementation details of the tasks that it performs.

- The program unit that houses a method is called a class. A class may contain one or more methods that are designed to perform the class's tasks.

- A method can perform a task and return a result.

A class can be used to create an instance of the class called an object. This is one of the reasons Java is known as an object-oriented programming language.

- Each message sent to an object is known as a method call and tells a method of the object to perform its task.

- Each method can specify parameters that represent additional information the method requires to perform its task correctly. A method call supplies values called arguments for the method's parameters.

- An object has attributes that are carried with the object as it is used in a program. These attributes are specified as part of the object's class. Attributes are specified in classes by fields.

- Each class declaration that begins with keyword `public` must be stored in a file that has exactly the same name as the class and ends with the `.java` file-name extension.

- Keyword `public` is an access modifier.

- Every class declaration contains keyword `class` followed immediately by the class's name.
A method declaration that begins with keyword `public` indicates that the method is "available to the public" that is, it can be called by other classes declared outside the class declaration.

Keyword `void` indicates that a method will perform a task but will not return any information when it completes its task.

By convention, method names begin with a lowercase first letter and all subsequent words in the name begin with a capital first letter.

Empty parentheses following a method name indicate that the method does not require any parameters to perform its task.

Every method's body is delimited by left and right braces (`{` and `}`).

The body of a method contains statements that perform the method's task. After the statements execute, the method has completed its task.

When you attempt to execute a class, Java looks for the class's `main` method to begin execution.

Any class that contains `public static void main(String args[])` can be used to execute an application.

Typically, you cannot call a method that belongs to another class until you create an object of that class.

Class instance creation expressions beginning with keyword `new` create new objects.

To call a method of an object, follow the variable name with a dot separator (`.`), the method name and a set of parentheses containing the method's arguments.

Methods often require additional information to perform their tasks. Such additional information is provided to methods via arguments in method calls.

`Scanner` method `nextLine` reads characters until a newline character is encountered, then returns the characters as a `String`. 
• *Scanner* method *next* reads characters until any white-space character is encountered, then returns the characters as a *String*.

• A method that requires data to perform its task must specify this in its declaration by placing additional information in the method's parameter list.

• Each parameter must specify both a type and an identifier.

• At the time a method is called, its arguments are assigned to its parameters. Then the method body uses the parameter variables to access the argument values.

A method can specify multiple parameters by separating each parameter from the next with a comma.

• The number of arguments in the method call must match the number of parameters in the method declaration's parameter list. Also, the argument types in the method call must be consistent with the types of the corresponding parameters in the method's declaration.

• Class *String* is in package *java.lang*, which is imported implicitly into all source-code files.

• There is a special relationship between classes that are compiled in the same directory on disk. By default, such classes are considered to be in the same package known as the default package. Classes in the same package are implicitly imported into the source code files of other classes in the same package. Thus, an *import* declaration is not required when one class in a package uses another in the same package.

• An *import* declaration is not required if you always refer to a class with its fully qualified class name.

• Variables declared in the body of a particular method are known as local variables and can be used only in that method.

• A class normally consists of one or more methods that manipulate the
attributes (data) that belong to a particular object of the class. Attributes are represented as fields in a class declaration. Such variables are called fields and are declared inside a class declaration but outside the bodies of the class's method declarations.

- When each object of a class maintains its own copy of an attribute, the field that represents the attribute is also known as an instance variable. Each object (instance) of the class has a separate instance of the variable in memory.

- Most instance variable declarations are preceded with the `private` access modifier. Variables or methods declared with access modifier `private` are accessible only to methods of the class in which they are declared.

- Declaring instance variables with access modifier `private` is known as data hiding.

- A benefit of fields is that all the methods of the class can use the fields. Another distinction between a field and a local variable is that a field has a default initial value provided by Java when the programmer does not specify the field's initial value, but a local variable does not.

- The default value for a field of type `String` is `null`.

- When a method that specifies a return type is called and completes its task, the method returns a result to its calling method.

- Classes often provide `public` methods to allow clients of the class to `set` or `get` private instance variables. The names of these methods need not begin with `set` or `get`, but this naming convention is highly recommended in Java and is required for special Java software components called JavaBeans.

- Types in Java are divided into two categories: primitive types and reference types (sometimes called nonprimitive types). The primitive types are `boolean`, `byte`, `char`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `float` and `double`. All other types are reference types, so classes, which specify the types of objects, are reference types.

- A primitive-type variable can store exactly one value of its declared type at a time.
Primitive-type instance variables are initialized by default. Variables of types `byte`, `char`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `float` and `double` are initialized to 0. Variables of type `boolean` are initialized to `false`.

Programs use variables of reference types (called references) to store the location of an object in the computer's memory. Such variables refer to objects in the program. The object that is referenced may contain many instance variables and methods.

Reference-type fields are initialized by default to the value `null`.

A reference to an object is required to invoke an object's instance methods. A primitive-type variable does not refer to an object and therefore cannot be used to invoke a method.

A constructor can be used to initialize an object of a class when the object is created.

Constructors can specify parameters but cannot specify return types.

If no constructor is provided for a class, the compiler provides a default constructor with no parameters.

A floating-point number is a number with a decimal point, such as 7.33, 0.0975 or 1000.12345. Java provides two primitive types for storing floating-point numbers in memory `float` and `double`. The primary difference between these types is that `double` variables can store numbers with larger magnitude and finer detail (known as the number's precision) than `float` variables.

Variables of type `float` represent single-precision floating-point numbers and have seven significant digits. Variables of type `double` represent double-precision floating-point numbers. These require twice as much memory as `float` variables and provide 15 significant digits approximately double the precision of `float` variables.

Floating-point values that appear in source code are known as floating-point literals and are type `double` by default.
Scanner method `nextDouble` returns a `double` value.

- The format specifier `%f` is used to output values of type `float` or `double`. A precision can be specified between `%` and `f` to represent the number of decimal places that should be output to the right of the decimal point in the floating-point number.

- The default value for a field of type `double` is `0.0`, and the default value for a field of type `int` is `0`.

- In the UML, each class is modeled in a class diagram as a rectangle with three compartments. The top compartment contains the name of the class centered horizontally in boldface. The middle compartment contains the class's attributes, which correspond to fields in Java. The bottom compartment contains the class's operations, which correspond to methods and constructors in Java.

- The UML models operations by listing the operation name followed by a set of parentheses. A plus sign (`+`) in front of the operation name indicates that the operation is a public operation in the UML (i.e., a public method in Java).

- The UML models a parameter of an operation by listing the parameter name, followed by a colon and the parameter type between the parentheses following the operation name.

- The UML has its own data types similar to those of Java. Not all the UML data types have the same names as the corresponding Java types.

- The UML type `String` corresponds to the Java type `String`.

- The UML represents instance variables as attributes by listing the attribute name, followed by a colon and the attribute type.

- Private attributes are preceded by a minus sign (-) in the UML.

- The UML indicates the return type of an operation by placing a colon and the return type after the parentheses following the operation name.

- UML class diagrams do not specify return types for operations that do not
Like operations, the UML models constructors in the third compartment of a class diagram. To distinguish a constructor from a class's operations, the UML places the word "constructor" between guillemets (« and ») before the constructor's name.
Terminology

%f format specifier

access modifier

attribute (UML)

calling method

class

class declaration

class instance

class keyword

class instance creation expression

client of an object or a class

compartment in a class diagram (UML)

constructor

create an object

data hiding

default constructor

default package

default value

dot (.) separator
double-precision floating-point number

double primitive type

field

float primitive type

floating-point number

get method

guillemets, « and » (UML)

instance of a class (object)

instance variable

instantiate (or create) an object

invoke a method

.java file name extension

local variable

message

method

method header

new keyword

next method of class Scanner

nextDouble method of class Scanner

nextLine method of class Scanner
nonprimitive types

null reserved word

object (or instance)

operation (UML)

parameter

parameter list

precision of a floating-point value

precision of a formatted floating-point number

private access modifier

public access modifier

public method

refer to an object

reference

reference type

send a message

set method

single-precision floating-point number

UML class diagram

void keyword
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following:

1. A house is to a blueprint as a(n) ___ is to a class.

2. Each class declaration that begins with keyword ___ must be stored in a file that has exactly the same name as the class and ends with the .java file-name extension.

3. Every class declaration contains keyword ___ followed immediately by the class’s name.

4. Keyword ___ creates an object of the class specified to the right of the keyword.

5. Each parameter must specify both a(n) ___ and a(n) ___.

6. By default, classes that are compiled in the same directory are considered to be in the same package known as the ___.

7. When each object of a class maintains its own copy of an attribute, the field that represents the attribute is also known as a(n) ___.

8. Java provides two primitive types for storing floating-point numbers in memory ___ and ___.

9. Variables of type double represent ___ floating-point numbers.

10. Scanner method ___ returns a double value.

11. Keyword public is a(n) ___.

12. Return type ___ indicates that a method will perform a task but will not return any information when it completes its task.

13. Scanner method ___ reads characters until a newline character is encountered, then returns those characters as a String.

14. Class String is in package ___.

15. A(n) ___ is not required if you always refer to a class with its fully qualified class name.

16. A(n) ___ is a number with a decimal point, such as 7.33, 0.0975 or 1000.12345.

17. Variables of type float represent ___ floating-point numbers.

18. The format specifier ___ is used to output values of type float or double.

19. Types in Java are divided into two categories ___ types and ___ types.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. By convention, method names begin with an uppercase first letter and all subsequent words in the name begin with a capital first letter.

2. An import declaration is not required when one class in a package uses another in the same package.
3. Empty parentheses following a method name in a method declaration indicate that the method does not require any parameters to perform its task.

4. Variables or methods declared with access modifier `private` are accessible only to methods of the class in which they are declared.

5. A primitive-type variable can be used to invoke a method.

6. Variables declared in the body of a particular method are known as instance variables and can be used in all methods of the class.

7. Every method's body is delimited by left and right braces `{ and }`.

8. Primitive-type local variables are initialized by default.

9. Reference-type instance variables are initialized by default to the value `null`.

10. Any class that contains `public static void main( String args[] )` can be used to execute an application.

11. The number of arguments in the method call must match the number of parameters in the method declaration's parameter list.

12. Floating-point values that appear in source code are known as floating-point literals and are type `float` by default.

3.3 What is the difference between a local variable and a field?

3.4 Explain the purpose of a method parameter. What is the difference between a parameter and an argument?
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

a) object. b) public. c) class. d) new. e) type, name. f) default package. g) instance variable. h) float, double. i) double-precision. j) nextDouble. k) access modifier. l) void. m) nextLine. n) java.lang. o) import declaration. p) floating-point number. q) single-precision. r) %f. s) primitive, reference.

3.2

a) False. By convention, method names begin with a lowercase first letter and all subsequent words in the name begin with a capital first letter. b) True. c) True. d) True. e) False. A primitive-type variable cannot be used to invoke a method; a reference to an object is required to invoke the object's methods. f) False. Such variables are called local variables and can be used only in the method in which they are declared. g) True. h) False. Primitive-type instance variables are initialized by default. i) True. j) True. k) True. l) False. Such literals are of type double by default.

3.3

A local variable is declared in the body of a method and can be used only from the point at which it is declared through the end of the method declaration. A field is declared in a class, but not in the body of any of the class's methods. Every object (instance) of a class has a separate copy of the class's fields. Also, fields are accessible to all methods of the class. (We will see an exception to this in Chapter 8, Classes and Objects: A Deeper Look.)

3.4

A parameter represents additional information that a method requires to perform its task. Each parameter required by a method is specified in the method's declaration. An argument is the actual value for a method parameter. When a method is called, the argument values are passed to the method so that it can perform its task.
Exercises

3.5 What is the purpose of keyword `new`? Explain what happens when this keyword is used in an application.

3.6 What is a default constructor? How are an object's instance variables initialized if a class has only a default constructor?

3.7 Explain the purpose of an instance variable.

3.8 Most classes need to be imported before they can be used in an application. Why is every application allowed to use classes `System` and `String` without first importing them?

3.9 Explain how a program could use class `Scanner` without importing the class from package `java.util`.

3.10 Explain why a class might provide a set method and a get method for an instance variable.

Modify class `GradeBook` (*Fig. 3.10*) as follows:

1. Include a second `String` instance variable that represents the name of the course's instructor.
2. Provide a `set` method to change the instructor's name and a `get` method to retrieve it.
3. Modify the constructor to specify two parametersone for the course name and one for the instructor's name.
4. Modify method `displayMessage` such that it first outputs the welcome message and course name, then outputs "This course is presented by: " followed by the instructor's name.

Use your modified class in a test application that demonstrates the class's new capabilities.

Modify class `Account` (*Fig. 3.13*) to provide a method called `debit` that withdraws money from an `Account`. Ensure that the debit amount does not exceed the `Account`'s balance. If it does, the balance should be left unchanged and the method should print a message indicating "Debit amount exceeded account balance." Modify class `AccountTest` (*Fig. 3.14*) to test method `debit`.

Create a class called `Invoice` that a hardware store might use to represent an invoice for an item sold at the store. An `Invoice` should include four pieces of information as instance variablesa part number (type `String`), a part description (type `String`), a quantity of the item being purchased (type `int`) and a price per item (type `double`). Your class should have a constructor that initializes the four instance variables. Provide a `set` and a `get` method for each instance variable. In addition, provide a method named `getInvoiceAmount` that calculates the invoice amount (i.e., multiplies the quantity by the price per item), then returns the amount as a `double` value. If the quantity is not positive, it should be set to 0. If the price per item is not positive, it should be set to 0.0. Write a test application named `InvoiceTest` that demonstrates class `Invoice`'s capabilities.

Create a class called `Employee` that includes three pieces of information as instance variablesa first name (type `String`), a last name (type `String`) and a monthly salary (type `double`). Your class should have a constructor that initializes the three instance variables. Provide a `set` and a `get` method for each instance
variable. If the monthly salary is not positive, set it to 0.0. Write a test application named EmployeeTest that demonstrates class Employee's capabilities. Create two Employee objects and display each object's yearly salary. Then give each Employee a 10% raise and display each Employee's yearly salary again.

Create a class called Date that includes three pieces of information as instance variables: a month (type int), a day (type int) and a year (type int). Your class should have a constructor that initializes the three instance variables and assumes that the values provided are correct. Provide a set and a get method for each instance variable. Provide a method displayDate that displays the month, day and year separated by forward slashes (/). Write a test application named DateTest that demonstrates class Date's capabilities.
Chapter 4. Control Statements: Part I

*Let's all move one place on.*

Lewis Carroll

*The wheel is come full circle.*

William Shakespeare

*How many apples fell on Newton's head before he took the hint!*

Robert Frost

*All the evolution we know of proceeds from the vague to the definite.*

Charles Sanders Peirce

**OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will learn:

- To use basic problem-solving techniques.

- To develop algorithms through the process of top-down, stepwise refinement.

- To use the `if` and `if...else` selection statements to choose among alternative actions.

- To use the `while` repetition statement to execute statements in a program repeatedly.

- To use counter-controlled repetition and sentinel-controlled repetition.

- To use the assignment, increment and decrement operators.
4.1. Introduction

Before writing a program to solve a problem, it is essential to have a thorough understanding of the problem and a carefully planned approach to solving it. When writing a program, it is also essential to understand the types of building blocks that are available and to employ proven program-construction techniques. In this chapter and in Chapter 5, Control Statements: Part 2, we discuss these issues in our presentation of the theory and principles of structured programming. The concepts presented here are crucial in building classes and manipulating objects.

In this chapter, we introduce Java's if, if...else and while statements, three of the building blocks that allow programmers to specify the logic required for methods to perform their tasks. We devote a portion of this chapter (and Chapters 5 and 7) to further developing the GradeBook class introduced in Chapter 3. In particular, we add a method to the GradeBook class that uses control statements to calculate the average of a set of student grades. Another example demonstrates additional ways to combine control statements to solve a similar problem. We introduce Java's compound assignment operators and explore Java's increment and decrement operators. These additional operators abbreviate and simplify many program statements. Finally, we present an overview of the primitive data types available to programmers.
4.2. Algorithms

Any computing problem can be solved by executing a series of actions in a specific order. A procedure for solving a problem in terms of

1. the actions to execute and
2. the order in which these actions execute

is called an **algorithm**. The following example demonstrates that correctly specifying the order in which the actions execute is important.

Consider the "rise-and-shine algorithm" followed by one executive for getting out of bed and going to work: (1) Get out of bed; (2) take off pajamas; (3) take a shower; (4) get dressed; (5) eat breakfast; (6) carpool to work. This routine gets the executive to work well prepared to make critical decisions. Suppose that the same steps are performed in a slightly different order: (1) Get out of bed; (2) take off pajamas; (3) get dressed; (4) take a shower; (5) eat breakfast; (6) carpool to work. In this case, our executive shows up for work soaking wet.

Specifying the order in which statements (actions) execute in a program is called **program control**. This chapter investigates program control using Java's **control statements**.
4.3. Pseudocode

Pseudocode is an informal language that helps programmers develop algorithms without having to worry about the strict details of Java language syntax. The pseudocode we present is particularly useful for developing algorithms that will be converted to structured portions of Java programs. Pseudocode is similar to everyday English—it is convenient and user friendly, but it is not an actual computer programming language.

Pseudocode does not execute on computers. Rather, it helps the programmer "think out" a program before attempting to write it in a programming language, such as Java. This chapter provides several examples of how to use pseudocode to develop Java programs.

The style of pseudocode we present consists purely of characters, so programmers can type pseudocode conveniently, using any text-editor program. A carefully prepared pseudocode program can easily be converted to a corresponding Java program. In many cases, this simply requires replacing pseudocode statements with Java equivalents.

Pseudocode normally describes only statements representing the actions that occur after a programmer converts a program from pseudocode to Java and the program is run on a computer. Such actions might include input, output or a calculation. We typically do not include variable declarations in our pseudocode. However, some programmers choose to list variables and mention their purposes at the beginning of their pseudocode.
4.4. Control Structures

Normally, statements in a program are executed one after the other in the order in which they are written. This process is called **sequential execution**. Various Java statements, which we will soon discuss, enable the programmer to specify that the next statement to execute is not necessarily the next one in sequence. This is called **transfer of control**.

During the 1960s, it became clear that the indiscriminate use of transfers of control was the root of much difficulty experienced by software development groups. The blame was pointed at the *goto statement* (used in most programming languages of the time), which allows the programmer to specify a transfer of control to one of a very wide range of possible destinations in a program. The notion of so-called **structured programming** became almost synonymous with "*goto elimination.*" [Note: Java does not have a *goto* statement; however, the word *goto* is reserved by Java and should not be used as an identifier in programs.]

The research of Bohm and Jacopini\(^1\) had demonstrated that programs could be written without any *goto* statements. The challenge of the era for programmers was to shift their styles to "*goto*-less programming." Not until the 1970s did programmers start taking structured programming seriously. The results were impressive. Software development groups reported shorter development times, more frequent on-time delivery of systems and more frequent within-budget completion of software projects. The key to these successes was that structured programs were clearer, easier to debug and modify, and more likely to be bug free in the first place.


Bohm and Jacopini's work demonstrated that all programs could be written in terms of only three control structures: the **sequence structure**, the **selection structure** and the **repetition structure**. The term "control structures" comes from the field of computer science. When we introduce Java's implementations of control structures, we will refer to them in the terminology of the *Java Language Specification* as "control statements."
Sequence Structure in Java

The sequence structure is built into Java. Unless directed otherwise, the computer executes Java statements one after the other in the order in which they are written, that is, in sequence. The activity diagram in Fig. 4.1 illustrates a typical sequence structure in which two calculations are performed in order. Java lets us have as many actions as we want in a sequence structure. As we will soon see, anywhere a single action may be placed, we may place several actions in sequence.

![Figure 4.1. Sequence structure activity diagram. (This item is displayed on page 127 in the print version)](View full size image)

Activity diagrams are part of the UML. An activity diagram models the workflow (also called the activity) of a portion of a software system. Such workflows may include a portion of an algorithm, such as the sequence structure in Fig. 4.1. Activity diagrams are composed of special-purpose symbols, such as action-state symbols (rectangles with their left and right sides replaced with arcs curving outward), diamonds and small circles. These symbols are connected by transition arrows, which represent the flow of the activity, that is, the order in which the actions should occur.

Like pseudocode, activity diagrams help programmers develop and represent algorithms, although many programmers prefer pseudocode. Activity diagrams clearly show how control structures operate.

Consider the activity diagram for the sequence structure in Fig. 4.1. It contains two action states that represent actions to perform. Each action state contains an action expression for example, "add grade to total" or "add..."
to counter" that specifies a particular action to perform. Other actions might include calculations or input/output operations. The arrows in the activity diagram represent transitions, which indicate the order in which the actions represented by the action states occur. The program that implements the activities illustrated by the diagram in Fig. 4.1 first adds grade to total, then adds 1 to counter.

The solid circle located at the top of the activity diagram represents the activity's initial state—the beginning of the workflow before the program performs the modeled actions. The solid circle surrounded by a hollow circle that appears at the bottom of the diagram represents the final state—the end of the workflow after the program performs its actions.

Figure 4.1 also includes rectangles with the upper-right corners folded over. These are UML notes (like comments in Java) explanatory remarks that describe the purpose of symbols in the diagram. Figure 4.1 uses UML notes to show the Java code associated with each action state in the activity diagram. A dotted line connects each note with the element that the note describes. Activity diagrams normally do not show the Java code that implements the activity. We use notes for this purpose here to illustrate how the diagram relates to Java code. For more information on the UML, see our optional case study, which appears in the Software Engineering Case Study sections at the ends of Chapters 18 and 10, or visit www.uml.org.

---

**Selection Statements in Java**

Java has three types of selection statements (discussed in this chapter and Chapter 5). The if statement either performs (selects) an action if a condition is true or skips the action, if the condition is false. The if...else statement performs an action if a condition is true and performs a different action if the condition is false. The switch statement (Chapter 5) performs one of many different actions, depending on the value of an expression.

The if statement is a single-selection statement because it selects or ignores a single action (or, as we will soon see, a single group of actions). The if...else statement is called a double-selection statement because it selects between two different actions (or groups of actions). The switch statement is called a multiple-selection statement because it selects among many different actions (or groups of actions).
Java provides three repetition statements (also called looping statements) that enable programs to perform statements repeatedly as long as a condition (called the loop-continuation condition) remains true. The repetition statements are the while, do...while and for statements. (Chapter 5 presents the do...while and for statements.) The while and for statements perform the action (or group of actions) in their bodies zero or more times if the loop-continuation condition is initially false, the action (or group of actions) will not execute. The do...while statement performs the action (or group of actions) in its body one or more times.

The words if, else, switch, while, do and for are Java keywords. Recall that keywords are used to implement various Java features, such as control statements. Keywords cannot be used as identifiers, such as variable names. A complete list of Java keywords appears in Appendix C.

Summary of Control Statements in Java

Java has only three kinds of control structures, which from this point forward we refer to as control statements: the sequence statement, selection statements (three types) and repetition statements (three types). Every program is formed by combining as many sequence, selection and repetition statements as is appropriate for the algorithm the program implements. As with the sequence statement in Fig. 4.1, we can model each control statement as an activity diagram. Each diagram contains an initial state and a final state that represent a control statement's entry point and exit point, respectively. Single-entry/single-exit control statements make it easy to build programs the control statements are "attached" to one another by connecting the exit point of one to the entry point of the next. This procedure is similar to the way in which a child stacks building blocks, so we call it control-statement stacking. We will learn that there is only one other way in which control statements may be connected control-statement nesting in which a control statement appears inside another control statement. Thus, algorithms in Java programs are constructed from only three kinds of control statements, combined in only two ways. This is the essence of simplicity.
4.5. if Single-Selection Statement

Programs use selection statements to choose among alternative courses of action. For example, suppose that the passing grade on an exam is 60. The pseudocode statement

\[
\text{If student's grade is greater than or equal to 60} \\
\text{Print "Passed"}
\]

determines whether the condition "student's grade is greater than or equal to 60" is true or false. If the condition is true, "Passed" is printed, and the next pseudocode statement in order is "performed." (Remember that pseudocode is not a real programming language.) If the condition is false, the Print statement is ignored, and the next pseudocode statement in order is performed. The indentation of the second line of this selection statement is optional, but recommended, because it emphasizes the inherent structure of structured programs.

The preceding pseudocode If statement may be written in Java as

```java
if ( studentGrade >= 60 )
    System.out.println( "Passed" );
```

Note that the Java code corresponds closely to the pseudocode. This is one of the properties of pseudocode that makes it such a useful program development tool.

Figure 4.2 illustrates the single-selection if statement. This activity diagram contains what is perhaps the most important symbol in an activity diagram—the diamond, or decision symbol, which indicates that a decision is to be made. The workflow will continue along a path determined by the symbol's associated guard conditions, which can be true or false. Each transition arrow emerging from a decision symbol has a guard condition (specified in square brackets next to the transition arrow). If a guard condition is true, the workflow enters the action state to which the transition arrow points. In Fig. 4.2, if the grade is greater than or equal to 60, the program prints "Passed," then transitions to the final state of this activity. If the grade is less than 60, the program immediately transitions to the final state without displaying a message.
The *if* statement is a single-entry/single-exit control statement. We will see that the activity diagrams for the remaining control statements also contain initial states, transition arrows, action states that indicate actions to perform, decision symbols (with associated guard conditions) that indicate decisions to be made and final states. This is consistent with the *action/decision model of programming* we have been emphasizing.

Envision seven bins, each containing only one type of Java control statement. The control statements are all empty. Your task is to assemble a program from as many of each type of control statement as the algorithm demands, combining the control statements in only two possible ways (stacking or nesting), then filling in the action states and decisions with action expressions and guard conditions appropriate for the algorithm. We will discuss the variety of ways in which actions and decisions can be written.
4.6. **if...else** Double-Selection Statement

The `if` single-selection statement performs an indicated action only when the condition is `true`; otherwise, the action is skipped. The `if...else` double-selection statement allows the programmer to specify an action to perform when the condition is true and a different action when the condition is false. For example, the pseudocode statement

```
If student's grade is greater than or equal to 60
    Print "Passed"
Else
    Print "Failed"
```

prints "Passed" if the student's grade is greater than or equal to 60, but prints "Failed" if it is less than 60. In either case, after printing occurs, the next pseudocode statement in sequence is "performed."

The preceding *If...Else* pseudocode statement can be written in Java as

```java
if ( grade >= 60 )
    System.out.println( "Passed" );
else
    System.out.println( "Failed" );
```

Note that the body of the `else` is also indented. Whatever indentation convention you choose should be applied consistently throughout your programs. It is difficult to read programs that do not obey uniform spacing conventions.

**Good Programming Practice 4.1**

*Indent both body statements of an `if...else` statement.*
Good Programming Practice 4.2

If there are several levels of indentation, each level should be indented the same additional amount of space.

Figure 4.3 illustrates the flow of control in the if...else statement. Once again, the symbols in the UML activity diagram (besides the initial state, transition arrows and final state) represent action states and decisions. We continue to emphasize this action/decision model of computing. Imagine again a deep bin containing as many empty if...else statements as might be needed to build any Java program. Your job is to assemble these if...else statements (by stacking and nesting) with any other control statements required by the algorithm. You fill in the action states and decision symbols with action expressions and guard conditions appropriate to the algorithm you are developing.

Figure 4.3. if...else double-selection statement UML activity diagram.

Conditional Operator (?:)
Java provides the **conditional operator** (?:) that can be used in place of an `if...else` statement. This is Java's only **ternary operator** this means that it takes three operands. Together, the operands and the ?: symbol form a **conditional expression**. The first operand (to the left of the ?) is a boolean expression (i.e., a condition that evaluates to a boolean value `true` or `false`), the second operand (between the ? and :) is the value of the conditional expression if the boolean expression is `true` and the third operand (to the right of the :) is the value of the conditional expression if the boolean expression evaluates to `false`. For example, the statement

```
System.out.println( studentGrade >= 60 ? "Passed" : "Failed" );
```

prints the value of `println`'s conditional-expression argument. The conditional expression in this statement evaluates to the string "Passed" if the boolean expression `studentGrade >= 60` is true and evaluates to the string "Failed" if the boolean expression is false. Thus, this statement with the conditional operator performs essentially the same function as the `if...else` statement shown earlier in this section. The precedence of the conditional operator is low, so the entire conditional expression is normally placed in parentheses. We will see that conditional expressions can be used in some situations where `if...else` statements cannot.

**Good Programming Practice 4.3**

*Conditional expressions are more difficult to read than `if...else` statements and should be used to replace only simple `if...else` statements that choose between two values.*

---

**Nested `if...else` Statements**

A program can test multiple cases by placing `if...else` statements inside other `if...else` statements to create **nested `if...else` statements**. For example,
the following pseudocode represents a nested `if...else` that prints `A` for exam grades greater than or equal to 90, `B` for grades in the range 80 to 89, `C` for grades in the range 70 to 79, `D` for grades in the range 60 to 69 and `F` for all other grades:

If student's grade is greater than or equal to 90
   Print "A"
else
   If student's grade is greater than or equal to 80
      Print "B"
   else
      If student's grade is greater than or equal to 70
         Print "C"
      else
         If student's grade is greater than or equal to 60
            Print "D"
         else
            Print "F"

This pseudocode may be written in Java as

```java
if ( studentGrade >= 90 )
   System.out.println( "A" );
else
   if ( studentGrade >= 80 )
      System.out.println( "B" );
   else
      if ( studentGrade >= 70 )
         System.out.println( "C" );
      else
         if ( studentGrade >= 60 )
            System.out.println( "D" );
         else
            System.out.println( "F" );
```

If `studentGrade` is greater than or equal to 90, the first four conditions will be true, but only the statement in the `if`-part of the first `if...else` statement will execute. After that statement executes, the `else`-part of the "outermost" `if...else` statement is skipped. Most Java programmers prefer to write the preceding `if...else` statement as
The two forms are identical except for the spacing and indentation, which the compiler ignores. The latter form is popular because it avoids deep indentation of the code to the right. Such indentation often leaves little room on a line of code, forcing lines to be split and decreasing program readability.

Dangling-else Problem

The Java compiler always associates an else with the immediately preceding if unless told to do otherwise by the placement of braces ({ and }). This behavior can lead to what is referred to as the dangling-else problem. For example,

```java
if ( x > 5 )
    if ( y > 5 )
        System.out.println( "x and y are > 5" );
else
    System.out.println( "x is <= 5" );
```

appears to indicate that if \( x \) is greater than 5, the nested if statement determines whether \( y \) is also greater than 5. If so, the string "x and y are > 5" is output. Otherwise, it appears that if \( x \) is not greater than 5, the else part of the if...else outputs the string "x is <= 5".

Beware! This nested if...else statement does not execute as it appears. The compiler actually interprets the statement as
if ( x > 5 )
  if ( y > 5 )
    System.out.println( "x and y are > 5" );
  else
    System.out.println( "x is <= 5" );

in which the body of the first if is a nested if...else. The outer if statement tests whether x is greater than 5. If so, execution continues by testing whether y is also greater than 5. If the second condition is true, the proper string "x and y are > 5" is displayed. However, if the second condition is false, the string "x is <= 5" is displayed, even though we know that x is greater than 5.

To force the nested if...else statement to execute as it was originally intended, we must write it as follows:

    if ( x > 5 )
    {
      if ( y > 5 )
        System.out.println( "x and y are > 5" );
    }
    else
      System.out.println( "x is <= 5" );

The braces ({}) indicate to the compiler that the second if statement is in the body of the first if and that the else is associated with the first if. Exercise 4.27 and Exercise 4.28 investigate the dangling-else problem further.

Blocks

The if statement normally expects only one statement in its body. To include several statements in the body of an if (or the body of an else for an if...else statement), enclose the statements in braces ({ and }). A set of statements contained within a pair of braces is called a block. A block can be placed anywhere in a program that a single statement can be placed.
The following example includes a block in the else-part of an if...else statement:

```
if ( grade >= 60 )
    System.out.println( "Passed" );
else
{
    System.out.println( "Failed" );
    System.out.println( "You must take this course again." );
}
```

In this case, if grade is less than 60, the program executes both statements in the body of the else and prints

Failed.
You must take this course again.

Note the braces surrounding the two statements in the else clause. These braces are important. Without the braces, the statement

```
    System.out.println( "You must take this course again." );
```

would be outside the body of the else-part of the if...else statement and would execute regardless of whether the grade was less than 60.

Syntax errors (e.g., when one brace in a block is left out of the program) are caught by the compiler. A logic error (e.g., when both braces in a block are left out of the program) has its effect at execution time. A fatal logic error causes a program to fail and terminate prematurely. A nonfatal logic error allows a program to continue executing, but causes the program to produce incorrect results.

**Common Programming Error 4.1**

Forgetting one or both of the braces that delimit a block can lead to syntax errors or logic errors in a program.
Good Programming Practice 4.4

Always using braces in an if...else (or other) statement helps prevent their accidental omission, especially when adding statements to the if-part or the else-part at a later time. To avoid omitting one or both of the braces, some programmers type the beginning and ending braces of blocks before typing the individual statements within the braces.

Just as a block can be placed anywhere a single statement can be placed, it is also possible to have an empty statement. Recall from Section 2.8 that the empty statement is represented by placing a semicolon (;) where a statement would normally be.

Common Programming Error 4.2

Placing a semicolon after the condition in an if or if...else statement leads to a logic error in single-selection if statements and a syntax error in double-selection if...else statements (when the if-part contains an actual body statement).
4.7. **while** Repetition Statement

A **repetition statement** (also called a **looping statement** or a **loop**) allows the programmer to specify that a program should repeat an action while some condition remains true. The pseudocode statement

```
While there are more items on my shopping list
    Purchase next item and cross it off my list
```

describes the repetition that occurs during a shopping trip. The condition "there are more items on my shopping list" may be true or false. If it is true, then the action "Purchase next item and cross it off my list" is performed. This action will be performed repeatedly while the condition remains true. The statement(s) contained in the **While** repetition statement constitute the body of the **While** repetition statement, which may be a single statement or a block. Eventually, the condition will become false (when the last item on the shopping list has been purchased and crossed off the list). At this point, the repetition terminates, and the first statement after the repetition statement executes.

As an example of Java's **while** repetition statement, consider a program segment designed to find the first power of 3 larger than 100. Suppose that the **int** variable **product** is initialized to 3. When the following **while** statement finishes executing, **product** contains the result:

```
int product = 3;

while ( product <= 100 )
    product = 3 * product;
```

When this **while** statement begins execution, the value of variable **product** is 3. Each iteration of the **while** statement multiplies **product** by 3, so **product** takes on the values 9, 27, 81 and 243 successively. When variable **product** becomes 243, the **while** statement condition **product <= 100** becomes false. This terminates the repetition, so the final value of **product** is 243. At this point, program execution continues with the next statement after the **while** statement.
Common Programming Error 4.3

Not providing, in the body of a `while` statement, an action that eventually causes the condition in the `while` to become false normally results in a logic error called an **infinite loop**, in which the loop never terminates.

The UML activity diagram in [Fig. 4.4](#) illustrates the flow of control that corresponds to the preceding `while` statement. Once again, the symbols in the diagram (besides the initial state, transition arrows, a final state and three notes) represent an action state and a decision. This diagram also introduces the UML's **merge symbol**. The UML represents both the merge symbol and the decision symbol as diamonds. The merge symbol joins two flows of activity into one. In this diagram, the merge symbol joins the transitions from the initial state and from the action state, so they both flow into the decision that determines whether the loop should begin (or continue) executing. The decision and merge symbols can be distinguished by the number of "incoming" and "outgoing" transition arrows. A decision symbol has one transition arrow pointing to the diamond and two or more transition arrows pointing out from the diamond to indicate possible transitions from that point. In addition, each transition arrow pointing out of a decision symbol has a guard condition next to it. A merge symbol has two or more transition arrows pointing to the diamond and only one transition arrow pointing from the diamond, to indicate multiple activity flows merging to continue the activity. None of the transition arrows associated with a merge symbol have guard conditions.

---

**Figure 4.4.** `while` repetition statement UML activity diagram.

[View full size image]
Figure 4.4 clearly shows the repetition of the `while` statement discussed earlier in this section. The transition arrow emerging from the action state points back to the merge, from which program flow transitions back to the decision that is tested at the beginning of each iteration of the loop. The loop continues to execute until the guard condition `product > 100` becomes true. Then the `while` statement exits (reaches its final state), and control passes to the next statement in sequence in the program.
4.8. Formulating Algorithms: Counter-Controlled Repetition

To illustrate how algorithms are developed, we modify the GradeBook class of Chapter 3 to solve two variations of a problem that averages student grades. Consider the following problem statement:

A class of ten students took a quiz. The grades (integers in the range 0 to 100) for this quiz are available to you. Determine the class average on the quiz.

The class average is equal to the sum of the grades divided by the number of students. The algorithm for solving this problem on a computer must input each grade, keep track of the total of all grades input, perform the averaging calculation and print the result.

Pseudocode Algorithm with Counter-Controlled Repetition

Let's use pseudocode to list the actions to execute and specify the order in which they should execute. We use counter-controlled repetition to input the grades one at a time. This technique uses a variable called a counter (or control variable) to control the number of times a set of statements will execute. Counter-controlled repetition is often called definite repetition, because the number of repetitions is known before the loop begins executing. In this example, repetition terminates when the counter exceeds 10. This section presents a fully developed pseudocode algorithm (Fig. 4.5) and a version of class GradeBook (Fig. 4.6) that implements the algorithm in a Java method. The section then presents an application (Fig. 4.7) that demonstrates the algorithm in action. In Section 4.9, we demonstrate how to use pseudocode to develop such an algorithm from scratch.

Figure 4.5. Pseudocode algorithm that uses counter-controlled repetition to solve the class-average problem.
Set total to zero
Set grade counter to one

While grade counter is less than or equal to ten
  Prompt the user to enter the next grade
  Input the next grade
  Add the grade into the total
  Add one to the grade counter

Set the class average to the total divided by ten
Print the class average

Figure 4.6. Counter-controlled repetition: Class-average problem.
(This item is displayed on pages 136 - 138 in the print version)

// Fig. 4.6: GradeBook.java
// GradeBook class that solves class-average problem using
// counter-controlled repetition.
import java.util.Scanner; // program uses class Scanner

public class GradeBook
{
  private String courseName; // name of course this GradeBook represents

  // constructor initializes courseName
  public GradeBook( String name )
  {
    courseName = name; // initializes courseName
  }

  // method to set the course name
  public void setCourseName( String name )
  {
    courseName = name; // store the course name
  }

  // method to retrieve the course name
  public String getCourseName()
  {
    return courseName;
  }

  // display a welcome message to the GradeBook user
  public void displayMessage()
  {
    // getCourseName gets the name of the course
    System.out.printf("Welcome to the grade book for\n%s!\n\n",
      getCourseName());
  }

  // determine class average based on 10 grades entered by user
  public void determineClassAverage()
  {

Figure 4.7. GradeBookTest class creates an object of class GradeBook (Fig. 4.6) and invokes its determineClassAverage method.

(This item is displayed on pages 139 - 140 in the print version)
Welcome to the grade book for CS101 Introduction to Java Programming!

Enter grade: 67
Enter grade: 78
Enter grade: 89
Enter grade: 67
Enter grade: 87
Enter grade: 98
Enter grade: 93
Enter grade: 85
Enter grade: 82
Enter grade: 100

Total of all 10 grades is 846
Class average is 84

Software Engineering Observation 4.1

Experience has shown that the most difficult part of solving a problem on a computer is developing the algorithm for the solution. Once a correct algorithm has been specified, the process of producing a working Java program from the algorithm is normally straightforward.

Note the references in the algorithm of Fig. 4.5 to a total and a counter. A total is a variable used to accumulate the sum of several values. A counter is a variable used to count; in this case, the grade counter indicates which of the 10 grades is about to be entered by the user. Variables used to store totals are normally initialized to zero before being used in a program.

Implementing Counter-Controlled Repetition in Class GradeBook
Class `GradeBook` (Fig. 4.6) contains a constructor (lines 1114) that assigns a value to the class’s instance variable `courseName` (declared in line 8). Lines 1720, 2326 and 2934 declare methods `setCourseName`, `getCourseName` and `displayMessage`, respectively. Lines 3766 declare method `determineClassAverage`, which implements the class-averaging algorithm described by the pseudocode in Fig. 4.5.

Line 40 declares and initializes `Scanner` variable `input`, which is used to read values entered by the user. Lines 4245 declare local variables `total`, `gradeCounter`, `grade` and `average` to be of type `int`. Variable `grade` stores the user input.

Note that the declarations (in lines 4245) appear in the body of method `determinesClassAverage`. Recall that variables declared in a method body are local variables and can be used only from the line of their declaration in the method to the closing right brace (`}`) of the method declaration. A local variable's declaration must appear before the variable is used in that method. A local variable cannot be accessed outside the method in which it is declared.

In the versions of class `GradeBook` in this chapter, we simply read and process a set of grades. The averaging calculation is performed in method `determineClassAverage` using local variables—we do not preserve any information about student grades in instance variables of the class. In later versions of the class (in Chapter 7, Arrays), we maintain the grades in memory using an instance variable that refers to a data structure known as an array. This allows a `GradeBook` object to perform various calculations on the same set of grades without requiring the user to enter the grades multiple times.

**Good Programming Practice 4.5**

Separate declarations from other statements in methods with a blank line for readability.

The assignments (in lines 4849) initialize `total` to 0 and `gradeCounter` to 1. Note that these initializations occur before the variables are used in calculations. Variables `grade` and `average` (for the user input and calculated average, respectively) need not be initialized here—their values will be assigned as they
are input or calculated later in the method.

**Common Programming Error 4.4**

*Using the value of a local variable before it is initialized results in a compilation error. All local variables must be initialized before their values are used in expressions.*

**Error-Prevention Tip 4.1**

*Initialize each counter and total, either in its declaration or in an assignment statement. Totals are normally initialized to 0. Counters are normally initialized to 0 or 1, depending on how they are used (we will show examples of when to use 0 and when to use 1).*

Line 52 indicates that the `while` statement should continue looping (also called *iterating*) as long as the value of `gradeCounter` is less than or equal to 10. While this condition remains true, the `while` statement repeatedly executes the statements between the braces that delimit its body (lines 53-58).

Line 54 displays the prompt "Enter grade:" at the command line. Line 55 reads the grade entered by the user and assigns it to variable `grade`. Then line 56 adds the new `grade` entered by the user to the `total` and assigns the result to `total`, which replaces its previous value.

[Page 139]

Line 57 adds 1 to `gradeCounter` to indicate that the program has processed a grade and is ready to input the next grade from the user. Incrementing `gradeCounter` eventually causes `gradeCounter` to exceed 10. At that point the `while` loop terminates because its condition (line 52) becomes false.

When the loop terminates, line 61 performs the averaging calculation and assigns its result to the variable `average`. Line 64 uses `System.out's printf` method...
to display the text "Total of all 10 grades is " followed by variable total's value. Line 65 then uses printf to display the text "Class average is " followed by variable average's value. Method determineClassAverage returns control to the calling method (i.e., main in GradeBookTest of Fig. 4.7) after reaching line 66.

Class GradeBookTest

Class GradeBookTest (Fig. 4.7) creates an object of class GradeBook (Fig. 4.6) and demonstrates its capabilities. Lines 1011 of Fig. 4.7 create a new GradeBook object and assign it to variable myGradeBook. The String in line 11 is passed to the GradeBook constructor (lines 1114 of Fig. 4.6). Line 13 calls myGradeBook's displayMessage method to display a welcome message to the user. Line 14 then calls myGradeBook's determineClassAverage method to allow the user to enter 10 grades, for which the method then calculates and prints the average. The method performs the algorithm shown in Fig. 4.5.

Notes on Integer Division and Truncation

The averaging calculation performed by method determineClassAverage in response to the method call at line 14 in Fig. 4.7 produces an integer result. The program's output indicates that the sum of the grade values in the sample execution is 846, which, when divided by 10, should yield the floating-point number 84.6. However, the result of the calculation total / 10 (line 61 of Fig. 4.6) is the integer 84, because total and 10 are both integers. Dividing two integers results in integer division any fractional part of the calculation is lost (i.e., truncated). We will see how to obtain a floating-point result from the averaging calculation in the next section.

[Page 140]

Common Programming Error 4.5

Assuming that integer division rounds (rather than truncates) can lead to incorrect results. For example, 7 ÷ 4, which yields 1.75 in conventional arithmetic, truncates to 1 in integer arithmetic, rather than rounding to 2.
Let us generalize Section 4.8's class-average problem. Consider the following problem:

*Develop a class-averaging program that processes grades for an arbitrary number of students each time it is run.*

In the previous class-average example, the problem statement specified the number of students, so the number of grades (10) was known in advance. In this example, no indication is given of how many grades the user will enter during the program's execution. The program must process an arbitrary number of grades. How can it determine when to stop the input of grades? How will it know when to calculate and print the class average?

One way to solve this problem is to use a special value called a **sentinel value** (also called a **signal value**, a **dummy value** or a **flag value**) to indicate "end of data entry." The user enters grades until all legitimate grades have been entered. The user then types the sentinel value to indicate that no more grades will be entered. Sentinel-controlled repetition is often called **indefinite repetition** because the number of repetitions is not known before the loop begins executing.

Clearly, a sentinel value must be chosen that cannot be confused with an acceptable input value. Grades on a quiz are nonnegative integers, so 1 is an acceptable sentinel value for this problem. Thus, a run of the class-average program might process a stream of inputs such as 95, 96, 75, 74, 89 and 1. The program would then compute and print the class average for the grades 95, 96, 75, 74 and 89. Since 1 is the sentinel value, it should not enter into the averaging calculation.

**Common Programming Error 4.6**

*Choosing a sentinel value that is also a legitimate data value is a logic error.*
Developing the Pseudocode Algorithm with Top-Down, Stepwise Refinement: The Top and First Refinement

We approach the class-average program with a technique called top-down, stepwise refinement, which is essential to the development of well-structured programs. We begin with a pseudocode representation of the top—a single statement that conveys the overall function of the program:

*Determine the class average for the quiz*

The top is, in effect, a complete representation of a program. Unfortunately, the top rarely conveys sufficient detail from which to write a Java program. So we now begin the refinement process. We divide the top into a series of smaller tasks and list these in the order in which they will be performed. This results in the following first refinement:

*Initialize variables*
*Input, sum and count the quiz grades*
*Calculate and print the class average*

This refinement uses only the sequence structure—the steps listed should execute in order, one after the other.

**Software Engineering Observation 4.2**

*Each refinement, as well as the top itself, is a complete specification of the algorithm; only the level of detail varies.*

**Software Engineering Observation 4.3**

*Many programs can be divided logically into three phases: an initialization phase that initializes the variables; a processing phase that inputs data values and adjusts program variables (e.g., counters and totals) accordingly;*
and a termination phase that calculates and outputs the final results.

Proceeding to the Second Refinement

The preceding *Software Engineering Observation* is often all you need for the first refinement in the top-down process. To proceed to the next level of refinement, that is, the **second refinement**, we commit to specific variables. In this example, we need a running total of the numbers, a count of how many numbers have been processed, a variable to receive the value of each grade as it is input by the user and a variable to hold the calculated average. The pseudocode statement

*Initialize variables*

can be refined as follows:

*Initialize total to zero*

*Initialize counter to zero*

Only the variables *total* and *counter* need to be initialized before they are used. The variables *average* and *grade* (for the calculated average and the user input, respectively) need not be initialized, because their values will be replaced as they are calculated or input.

---

The pseudocode statement

*Input, sum and count the quiz grades*

requires a repetition structure (i.e., a loop) that successively inputs each grade. We do not know in advance how many grades are to be processed, so we will use sentinel-controlled repetition. The user enters grades one at a
time. After entering the last grade, the user enters the sentinel value. The
program tests for the sentinel value after each grade is input and terminates
the loop when the user enters the sentinel value. The second refinement of
the preceding pseudocode statement is then

Prompt the user to enter the first grade
Input the first grade (possibly the sentinel)

While the user has not yet entered the sentinel
   Add this grade into the running total
   Add one to the grade counter
   Prompt the user to enter the next grade
Input the next grade (possibly the sentinel)

In pseudocode, we do not use braces around the statements that form the
body of the While structure. We simply indent the statements under the While
to show that they belong to the While. Again, pseudocode is only an informal
program-development aid.

The pseudocode statement

Calculate and print the class average

can be refined as follows:

If the counter is not equal to zero
   Set the average to the total divided by the counter
   Print the average
else
   Print "No grades were entered"

We are careful here to test for the possibility of division by zero—normally a
logic error that, if undetected, would cause the program to fail or produce
invalid output. The complete second refinement of the pseudocode for the
class-average problem is shown in Fig. 4.8.

Figure 4.8. Class-average problem pseudocode algorithm with
sentinel-controlled repetition.
   (This item is displayed on pages 142 - 143 in the print version)
1. Initialize total to zero
2. Initialize counter to zero

3. Prompt the user to enter the first grade
4. Input the first grade (possibly the sentinel)

5. While the user has not yet entered the sentinel
6.   Add this grade into the running total
7.   Add one to the grade counter
8.   Prompt the user to enter the next grade
9.   Input the next grade (possibly the sentinel)

10. If the counter is not equal to zero
11.   Set the average to the total divided by the counter
12.   Print the average
13. else
14.   Print "No grades were entered"

Error-Prevention Tip 4.2

When performing division by an expression whose value could be zero, explicitly test for this possibility and handle it appropriately in your program (e.g., by printing an error message) rather than allow the error to occur.

In Fig. 4.5 and Fig. 4.8, we included some completely blank lines and indentation in the pseudocode to make it more readable. The blank lines separate the pseudocode algorithms into their various phases and set off control statements, and the indentation emphasizes the bodies of the control statements.

The pseudocode algorithm in Fig. 4.8 solves the more general class-averaging problem. This algorithm was developed after only two refinements. Sometimes more refinements are necessary.

Software Engineering Observation 4.4
Software Engineering Observation 4.5

Some experienced programmers write programs without ever using program-development tools like pseudocode. They feel that their ultimate goal is to solve the problem on a computer and that writing pseudocode merely delays the production of final outputs. Although this method may work for simple and familiar problems, it can lead to serious errors and delays in large, complex projects.

Implementing Sentinel-Controlled Repetition in Class GradeBook

Figure 4.9 shows the Java class GradeBook containing method determineClassAverage that implements the pseudocode algorithm of Fig. 4.8. Although each grade is an integer, the averaging calculation is likely to produce a number with a decimal point: in other words, a real number or floating-point number. The type `int` cannot represent such a number, so this class uses type `double` to do so.

```java
1 // Fig. 4.9: GradeBook.java
2 // GradeBook class that solves class-average program using
3 // sentinel-controlled repetition.
4 import java.util.Scanner; // program uses class Scanner
5
6 public class GradeBook {
7   
```
```
private String courseName; // name of course this GradeBook represents

public GradeBook ( String name )
{
    courseName = name; // initializes courseName
} // end constructor

// method to set the course name
public void setCourseName( String name )
{
    courseName = name; // store the course name
} // end method setCourseName

// method to retrieve the course name
public String getCourseName()
{
    return courseName;
} // end method getCourseName

// display a welcome message to the GradeBook user
public void displayMessage()
{
    System.out.printf("Welcome to the grade book for\n%s!\n\n", getCourseName());
} // end method displayMessage

// determine the average of an arbitrary number of grades
public void determineClassAverage()
{
    Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);

    int total; // sum of grades
    int gradeCounter; // number of grades entered
    int grade; // grade value
    double average; // number with decimal point for average

    total = 0; // initialize total
    gradeCounter = 0; // initialize loop counter

    // processing phase
    System.out.print("Enter grade or -1 to quit: ");
    grade = input.nextInt();

    while ( grade != -1 )
    {
        total = total + grade; // add grade to total
        gradeCounter = gradeCounter + 1; // increment counter

        System.out.print("Enter grade or -1 to quit: ");
        grade = input.nextInt();
    } // end while

    // termination phase
    // if user entered at least one grade...
```
In this example, we see that control statements may be stacked on top of one another (in sequence) just as a child stacks building blocks. The `if` statement (lines 57-65) is followed in sequence by an `if...else` statement (lines 69-80). Much of the code in this program is identical to the code in Fig. 4.6, so we concentrate on the new features and issues.

Line 45 declares `double` variable `average`. This variable allows us to store the calculated class average as a floating-point number. Line 49 initializes `gradeCounter` to 0, because no grades have been entered yet. Remember that this program uses sentinel-controlled repetition to input the grades from the user. To keep an accurate record of the number of grades entered, the program increments `gradeCounter` only when the user inputs a valid grade value.

### Program Logic for Sentinel-Controlled Repetition vs. Counter-Controlled Repetition

Compare the program logic for sentinel-controlled repetition in this application with that for counter-controlled repetition in Fig. 4.6. In counter-controlled repetition, each iteration of the `while` statement (e.g., lines 52-58 of Fig. 4.6) reads a value from the user, for the specified number of iterations. In sentinel-controlled repetition, the program reads the first value (lines 53-54 of Fig. 4.9) before reaching the `while`. This value determines whether the program's flow of control should enter the body of the `while`. If the condition of the `while` is false, the user entered the sentinel value, so the body of the `while` does not execute (i.e., no grades were entered). If, on the other hand, the condition is true, the...
Good Programming Practice 4.6

_In a sentinel-controlled loop, the prompts requesting data entry should explicitly remind the user of the sentinel value._

After the loop terminates, the _if...else_ statement at lines 6980 executes. The condition at line 69 determines whether any grades were input. If none were input, the _else_ part (lines 7980) of the _if...else_ statement executes and displays the message _"No grades were entered"_ and the method returns control to the calling method.

Notice the _while_ statement's block in _Fig. 4.9_ (lines 5865). Without the braces, the loop would consider its body to be only the first statement, which adds the _grade_ to the _total_. The last three statements in the block would fall outside the loop's body, causing the computer to interpret the code incorrectly as follows:

```java
while ( grade != -1 )
    total = total + grade; // add grade to total
gradeCounter = gradeCounter + 1; // increment counter

// prompt for input and read next grade from user
System.out.print( "Enter grade or -1 to quit: " );
grade = input.nextInt();
```
The preceding code would cause an infinite loop in the program if the user did not input the sentinel \(-1\) at line 54 (before the \texttt{while} statement).

**Common Programming Error 4.7**

Omitting the braces that delimit a block can lead to logic errors, such as infinite loops. To prevent this problem, some programmers enclose the body of every control statement in braces even if the body contains only a single statement.

Explicitly and Implicitly Converting Between Primitive Types

If at least one grade was entered, line 72 of \texttt{Fig. 4.9} calculates the average of the grades. Recall from \texttt{Fig. 4.6} that integer division yields an integer result. Even though variable \texttt{average} is declared as a \texttt{double} (line 45), the calculation

\[
\texttt{average} = \texttt{total} / \texttt{gradeCounter};
\]

loses the fractional part of the quotient before the result of the division is assigned to \texttt{average}. This occurs because \texttt{total} and \texttt{gradeCounter} are both integers and integer division yields an integer result. To perform a floating-point calculation with integer values, we must temporarily treat these values as floating-point numbers for use in the calculation. Java provides the \texttt{unary cast operator} to accomplish this task. Line 72 uses the \texttt{(double)} cast operator to create a \textit{temporary} floating-point copy of its operand \texttt{total} (which appears to the right of the operator). Using a cast operator in this manner is called \texttt{explicit conversion}. The value stored in \texttt{total} is still an integer.
The calculation now consists of a floating-point value (the temporary `double` version of `total`) divided by the integer `gradeCounter`. Java knows how to evaluate only arithmetic expressions in which the operands' types are identical. To ensure that the operands are of the same type, Java performs an operation called **promotion** (or **implicit conversion**) on selected operands. For example, in an expression containing values of the types `int` and `double`, the `int` values are **promoted** to `double` values for use in the expression. In this example, the value of `gradeCounter` is promoted to type `double`, then the floating-point division is performed and the result of the calculation is assigned to `average`. As long as the `(double)` cast operator is applied to any variable in the calculation, the calculation will yield a `double` result. Later in this chapter, we discuss all the primitive types. You will learn more about the promotion rules in **Section 6.7**.

**Common Programming Error 4.8**

The cast operator can be used to convert between primitive numeric types, such as `int` and `double`, and between related reference types (as we discuss in **Chapter 10**, Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism). Casting to the wrong type may cause compilation errors or runtime errors.

Cast operators are available for any type. The cast operator is formed by placing parentheses around the name of a type. The operator is a **unary operator** (i.e., an operator that takes only one operand). In **Chapter 2**, we studied the binary arithmetic operators. Java also supports unary versions of the plus (`+`) and minus (`-`) operators, so the programmer can write expressions like `-7` or `+5`. Cast operators associate from right to left and have the same precedence as other unary operators, such as unary `+` and unary `-`. This precedence is one level higher than that of the **multiplicative operators** `*`, `/` and `%`. (See the operator precedence chart in **Appendix A**.) We indicate the cast operator with the notation `(type)` in our precedence charts, to indicate that any type name can be used to form a cast operator.

Line 77 outputs the class average using `System.out.printf` method. In this example, we decided that we'd like to display the class average rounded to the nearest hundredth and output the average with exactly two digits to the right of the decimal point. The format specifier `%2f` in `printf`'s format control string (line 77) indicates that variable `average`'s value should be displayed with two
digits of precision to the right of the decimal point indicated by .2 in the format specifier. The three grades entered during the sample execution of class GradeBookTest (Fig. 4.10) total 257, which yields the average 85.666666.... Method printf uses the precision in the format specifier to round the value to the specified number of digits. In this program, the average is rounded to the hundredths position and the average is displayed as 85.67.

Figure 4.10. GradeBookTest class creates an object of class GradeBook (Fig. 4.9) and invokes its determineClassAverage method.

(This item is displayed on pages 147 - 148 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 4.10: GradeBookTest.java
// Create GradeBook object and invoke its determineClassAverage method.

public class GradeBookTest {
  public static void main( String args[] ) {
    // create GradeBook object myGradeBook and
    // pass course name to constructor
    GradeBook myGradeBook = new GradeBook( "CS101 Introduction to Java Programming" );
    myGradeBook.displayMessage(); // display welcome message
    myGradeBook.determineClassAverage(); // find average of grades
  } // end main
}
// end class GradeBookTest
```

Welcome to the grade book for
CS101 Introduction to Java Programming!

Enter grade or -1 to quit: 97
Enter grade or -1 to quit: 88
Enter grade or -1 to quit: 72
Enter grade or -1 to quit: -1

Total of the 3 grades entered is 257
Class average is 85.67
4.10. Formulating Algorithms: Nested Control Statements

For the next example, we once again formulate an algorithm by using pseudocode and top-down, stepwise refinement, and write a corresponding Java program. We have seen that control statements can be stacked on top of one another (in sequence) just as a child stacks building blocks. In this case study, we examine the only other structured way control statements can be connected, namely, by nesting one control statement within another.

Consider the following problem statement:

A college offers a course that prepares students for the state licensing exam for real estate brokers. Last year, ten of the students who completed this course took the exam. The college wants to know how well its students did on the exam. You have been asked to write a program to summarize the results. You have been given a list of these 10 students. Next to each name is written a 1 if the student passed the exam or a 2 if the student failed.

Your program should analyze the results of the exam as follows:

1. Input each test result (i.e., a 1 or a 2). Display the message "Enter result" on the screen each time the program requests another test result.

2. Count the number of test results of each type.

3. Display a summary of the test results indicating the number of students who passed and the number who failed.

4. If more than eight students passed the exam, print the message "Raise tuition."

After reading the problem statement carefully, we make the following observations:

1. The program must process test results for 10 students. A counter-controlled loop can be used because the number of test results is known in
2. Each test result has a numeric value either a 1 or a 2. Each time the program reads a test result, the program must determine whether the number is a 1 or a 2. We test for a 1 in our algorithm. If the number is not a 1, we assume that it is a 2. (Exercise 4.24 considers the consequences of this assumption.)

3. Two counters are used to keep track of the exam results—one to count the number of students who passed the exam and one to count the number of students who failed the exam.

4. After the program has processed all the results, it must decide whether more than eight students passed the exam.

Let us proceed with top-down, stepwise refinement. We begin with a pseudocode representation of the top:

```
Analyze exam results and decide whether tuition should be raised
```

Once again, the top is a complete representation of the program, but several refinements are likely to be needed before the pseudocode can evolve naturally into a Java program.

Our first refinement is

```
Initialize variables
```

```
Input the 10 exam results, and count passes and failures
```

```
Print a summary of the exam results and decide whether tuition should be raised
```

Here, too, even though we have a complete representation of the entire program, further refinement is necessary. We now commit to specific variables. Counters are needed to record the passes and failures, a counter will be used to control the looping process and a variable is needed to store the user input. The variable in which the user input will be stored is not initialized at the start of the algorithm, because its value is read from the user during each iteration of the loop.

The pseudocode statement

```
Initialize variables
```
can be refined as follows:

*Initialize passes to zero*
*Initialize failures to zero*
*Initialize student counter to one*

Notice that only the counters are initialized at the start of the algorithm.

The pseudocode statement

*Input the 10 exam results, and count passes and failures*

requires a loop that successively inputs the result of each exam. We know in advance that there are precisely 10 exam results, so counter-controlled looping is appropriate. Inside the loop (i.e., *nested* within the loop), a double-selection structure will determine whether each exam result is a pass or a failure and will increment the appropriate counter. The refinement of the preceding pseudocode statement is then

```
While student counter is less than or equal to 10
    Prompt the user to enter the next exam result
    Input the next exam result
    If the student passed
        Add one to passes
    Else
        Add one to failures
    Add one to student counter
```

We use blank lines to isolate the *If...Else* control structure, which improves readability.

The pseudocode statement

*Print a summary of the exam results and decide whether tuition should be*
can be refined as follows:

*Print the number of passes*
*Print the number of failures*

*If more than eight students passed*
*Print "Raise tuition"*

**Complete Second Refinement of Pseudocode and Conversion to Class Analysis**

The complete second refinement of the pseudocode appears in Fig. 4.11. Notice that blank lines are also used to set off the *While* structure for program readability. This pseudocode is now sufficiently refined for conversion to Java. The Java class that implements the pseudocode algorithm is shown in Fig. 4.12, and two sample executions appear in Fig. 4.13.

**Figure 4.11. Pseudocode for examination-results problem.**

```plaintext
1  Initialize passes to zero
2  Initialize failures to zero
3  Initialize student counter to one
4
5  While student counter is less than or equal to 10
6    Prompt the user to enter the next exam result
7    Input the next exam result
8
9  If the student passed
10     Add one to passes
11    Else
12     Add one to failures
13
14  Add one to student counter
15
16  Print the number of passes
17  Print the number of failures
18
19  If more than eight students passed
20     Print "Raise tuition"
```
```java
// Fig. 4.12: Analysis.java
// Analysis of examination results.
import java.util.Scanner; // class uses class Scanner

class Analysis {
    public void processExamResults {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);

        int passes = 0; // number of passes
        int failures = 0; // number of failures
        int studentCounter = 1; // student counter
        int result; // one exam result (obtains value from user)

        while (studentCounter <= 10) {
            System.out.print("Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): ");
            result = input.nextInt();

            if (result == 1) // if result 1,
                passes = passes + 1; // increment passes;
            else // else result is not 1, so
                failures = failures + 1; // increment failures

            studentCounter = studentCounter + 1;
        }

        System.out.printf("Passed: %d
Failed: %d
", passes, failures);

        if (passes > 8) // determine whether more than 8 students passed
            System.out.println("Raise Tuition");
    }
}
```
// Fig. 4.13: AnalysisTest.java
// Test program for class Analysis.

public class AnalysisTest
{
    public static void main(String args[])
    {
        Analysis application = new Analysis(); // create Analysis object
        application.processExamResults(); // call method to process results
    } // end main
} // end class AnalysisTest

Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 2
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Passed: 9
Failed: 1

Raise Tuition

Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 2
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 2
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 2
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 1
Enter result (1 = pass, 2 = fail): 2
Passed: 6
Failed: 4
Lines 1316 of Fig. 4.12 declare the variables that method `processExamResults` of class `Analysis` uses to process the examination results. Several of these declarations use Java's ability to incorporate variable initialization into declarations (passes is assigned 0, failures is assigned 0 and studentCounter is assigned 1). Looping programs may require initialization at the beginning of each repetition such reinitialization would normally be performed by assignment statements rather than in declarations.

The `while` statement (lines 1933) loops 10 times. During each iteration, the loop inputs and processes one exam result. Notice that the `if...else` statement (lines 2629) for processing each result is nested in the `while` statement. If the result is 1, the `if...else` statement increments `passes`; otherwise, it assumes the result is 2 and increments `failures`. Line 32 increments `studentCounter` before the loop condition is tested again at line 19. After 10 values have been input, the loop terminates and line 36 displays the number of `passes` and the number of `failures`. The `if` statement at lines 3940 determines whether more than eight students passed the exam and, if so, outputs the message "Raise Tuition".

**Error-Prevention Tip 4.3**

Initializing local variables when they are declared helps the programmer avoid any compilation errors that might arise from attempts to use uninitialized data. While Java does not require that local variable initializations be incorporated into declarations, it does require that local variables be initialized before their values are used in an expression.

**AnalysisTest Class That Demonstrates Class Analysis**

Class `AnalysisTest` (Fig. 4.13) creates an `Analysis` object (line 8) and invokes the
object's processExamResults method (line 9) to process a set of exam results entered by the user. Figure 4.13 shows the input and output from two sample executions of the program. During the first sample execution, the condition at line 39 of method processExamResults in Fig. 4.12 is true: more than eight students passed the exam, so the program outputs a message indicating that the tuition should be raised.
4.11. Compound Assignment Operators

Java provides several *compound assignment operators* for abbreviating assignment expressions. Any statement of the form

```
variable = variable operator expression;
```

where *operator* is one of the binary operators `+`, `-`, `*`, `/` or `%` (or others we discuss later in the text) can be written in the form

```
variable operator= expression;
```

For example, you can abbreviate the statement

```
c = c + 3;
```

with the *addition compound assignment operator*, `+=`, as

```
c += 3;
```

The `+=` operator adds the value of the expression on the right of the operator to the value of the variable on the left of the operator and stores the result in the variable on the left of the operator. Thus, the assignment expression `c += 3` adds 3 to `c`. *Figure 4.14* shows the arithmetic compound assignment operators, sample expressions using the operators and explanations of what the operators do.

*Figure 4.14. Arithmetic compound assignment operators.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assignment operator</th>
<th>Sample expression</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Assigns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>+=</code></td>
<td><code>c += 7</code></td>
<td><code>c = c + 7</code></td>
<td>10 to c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
\[- \quad d \quad \text{--} \quad 4 \quad \quad d = d - 4 \quad \quad 1 \text{ to } d \]

\[- \quad e \quad *= \quad 5 \quad \quad e = e * 5 \quad \quad 20 \text{ to } e \]

\[- \quad f \quad /= \quad 3 \quad \quad f = f / 3 \quad \quad 2 \text{ to } f \]

\[- \quad g \quad %= \quad 9 \quad \quad g = g \% 9 \quad \quad 3 \text{ to } g \]
4.12. Increment and Decrement Operators

Java provides two unary operators for adding 1 to or subtracting 1 from the value of a numeric variable. These are the unary increment operator, 
, and the unary decrement operator, --, which are summarized in Fig. 4.15. A program can increment by 1 the value of a variable called \( c \) using the increment operator, ++, rather than the expression \( c = c + 1 \) or \( c += 1 \). An increment or decrement operator that is prefixed to (placed before) a variable is referred to as the prefix increment or prefix decrement operator, respectively. An increment or decrement operator that is postfixed to (placed after) a variable is referred to as the postfix increment or postfix decrement operator, respectively.

**Figure 4.15. Increment and decrement operators.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator Called</th>
<th>Sample expression</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>++ prefix increment</td>
<td>++a</td>
<td>Increment ( a ) by 1, then use the new value of ( a ) in the expression in which ( a ) resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>++ postfix increment</td>
<td>a++</td>
<td>Use the current value of ( a ) in the expression in which ( a ) resides, then increment ( a ) by 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- prefix decrement</td>
<td>--b</td>
<td>Decrement ( b ) by 1, then use the new value of ( b ) in the expression in which ( b ) resides.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-- postfix decrement</td>
<td>b--</td>
<td>Use the current value of ( b ) in the expression in which ( b ) resides, then decrement ( b ) by 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Using the prefix increment (or decrement) operator to add (or subtract) 1 from a variable is known as **preincrementing** (or **predecrementing**) the variable. Preincrementing (or predecrementing) a variable causes the variable to be incremented (decremented) by 1, and then the new value of the variable is used in the expression in which it appears. Using the postfix increment (or decrement) operator to add (or subtract) 1 from a variable is known as **postincrementing** (or **postdecrementing**) the variable. Postincrementing (or postdecrementing) the variable causes the current value of the variable to be used in the expression in which it appears, and then the variable's value is
Unlike binary operators, the unary increment and decrement operators should be placed next to their operands, with no intervening spaces.

Figure 4.16 demonstrates the difference between the prefix increment and postfix increment versions of the `++` increment operator. The decrement operator (`--`) works similarly. Note that this example contains only one class, with method `main` performing all the class's work. In this chapter and in Chapter 3, you have seen examples consisting of two classes—one class containing methods that perform useful tasks and one containing method `main`, which creates an object of the other class and calls its methods. In this example, we simply want to show the mechanics of the `++` operator, so we use only one class declaration containing method `main`. Occasionally, when it does not make sense to try to create a reusable class to demonstrate a simple concept, we will use a mechanical example contained entirely within the `main` method of a single class.

Figure 4.16. Preincrementing and postincrementing.

```java
// Fig. 4.16: Increment.java
// Prefix increment and postfix increment operators.

public class Increment {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        int c;

        // demonstrate postfix increment operator
        c = 5; // assign 5 to c
        System.out.println( c ); // print 5
        System.out.println( c++ ); // print 5 then postincrement
        System.out.println( c ); // print 6

        System.out.println(); // skip a line
    }
}
```
Line 11 initializes the variable \( c \) to 5, and line 12 outputs \( c \)'s initial value. Line 13 outputs the value of the expression \( c++ \). This expression postincrements the variable \( c \), so \( c \)'s original value (5) is output, then \( c \)'s value is incremented. Thus, line 13 outputs \( c \)'s initial value (5) again. Line 14 outputs \( c \)'s new value (6) to prove that the variable's value was indeed incremented in line 13.

Line 19 resets \( c \)'s value to 5, and line 20 outputs \( c \)'s value. Line 21 outputs the value of the expression \( ++c \). This expression preincrements \( c \), so its value is incremented, then the new value (6) is output. Line 22 outputs \( c \)'s value again to show that the value of \( c \) is still 6 after line 21 executes.

The arithmetic compound assignment operators and the increment and decrement operators can be used to simplify program statements. For example, the three assignment statements in Fig. 4.12 (lines 27, 29 and 32)

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{passes} &= \text{passes} + 1; \\
\text{failures} &= \text{failures} + 1; \\
\text{studentCounter} &= \text{studentCounter} + 1;
\end{align*}
\]
can be written more concisely with compound assignment operators as

```java
passes += 1;
failures += 1;
studentCounter += 1;
```

with prefix increment operators as

```java
++passes;
++failures;
++studentCounter;
```

or with postfix increment operators as

```java
passes++;
failures++;
studentCounter++;
```

When incrementing or decrementing a variable in a statement by itself, the prefix increment and postfix increment forms have the same effect, and the prefix decrement and postfix decrement forms have the same effect. It is only when a variable appears in the context of a larger expression that preincrementing and postincrementing the variable have different effects (and similarly for predecrementing and postdecrementing).

**Common Programming Error 4.9**

*Attempting to use the increment or decrement operator on an expression other than one to which a value can be assigned is a syntax error. For example, writing `++(x + 1)` is a syntax error because `(x + 1)` is not a variable.*
Figure 4.17 shows the precedence and associativity of the operators we have introduced to this point. The operators are shown from top to bottom in decreasing order of precedence. The second column describes the associativity of the operators at each level of precedence. The conditional operator (?:); the unary operators increment (++) and decrement (--), plus (+) and minus (-); the cast operators and the assignment operators =, +=, -=, *=, /= and %= associate from right to left. All the other operators in the operator precedence chart in Fig. 4.17 associate from left to right. The third column names the groups of operators.

### Figure 4.17. Precedence and associativity of the operators discussed so far.
(This item is displayed on page 157 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operators</th>
<th>Associativity</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>++</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>right to left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>++</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>right to left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>++</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>left to right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>left to right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;</td>
<td>&lt;=</td>
<td>left to right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>==</td>
<td>!=</td>
<td>left to right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?:</td>
<td></td>
<td>right to left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>+=</td>
<td>right to left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>-=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>*=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>/=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>%=</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.13. Primitive Types

The table in Appendix D, Primitive Types, lists the eight primitive types in Java. Like its predecessor languages C and C++, Java requires all variables to have a type. For this reason, Java is referred to as a **strongly typed language**.

In C and C++, programmers frequently have to write separate versions of programs to support different computer platforms, because the primitive types are not guaranteed to be identical from computer to computer. For example, an `int` value on one machine might be represented by 16 bits (2 bytes) of memory, while an `int` value on another machine might be represented by 32 bits (4 bytes) of memory. In Java, `int` values are always 32 bits (4 bytes).

**Portability Tip 4.1**

*Unlike C and C++, the primitive types in Java are portable across all computer platforms that support Java. Thanks to this and Java's many other portability features, a programmer can write a program once and be certain that it will execute on any computer platform that supports Java. This capability is sometimes referred to as *WORA* (Write Once, Run Anywhere).*

Each type in Appendix D is listed with its size in bits (there are eight bits to a byte) and its range of values. Because the designers of Java want it to be maximally portable, they use internationally recognized standards for both character formats (Unicode; for more information, visit [www.unicode.org](http://www.unicode.org)) and floating-point numbers (IEEE 754; for more information, visit [grouper.ieee.org/groups/754/](http://grouper.ieee.org/groups/754/)).

Recall from Section 3.5 that variables of primitive types declared outside of a method as fields of a class are automatically assigned default values unless explicitly initialized. Instance variables of types `char`, `byte`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `float` and `double` are all given the value 0 by default. Instance variables of type `boolean` are given the value `false` by default. Similarly, reference type instance
variables are initialized by default to the value `null`.
4.14. (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Creating Simple Drawings

One of Java's appealing features is its graphics support that enables programmers to visually enhance their applications. This section introduces one of Java's graphical capabilities—drawing lines. It also covers the basics of creating a window to display a drawing on the computer screen.

To begin drawing in Java, you must first understand Java's coordinate system (Fig. 4.18), a scheme for identifying every point on the screen. By default, the upper-left corner of a GUI component has the coordinates (0, 0). A coordinate pair is composed of an x-coordinate (the horizontal coordinate) and a y-coordinate (the vertical coordinate). The x-coordinate is the horizontal location moving from left to right. The y-coordinate is the vertical location moving top to bottom. The x-axis describes every horizontal coordinate, and the y-axis every vertical coordinate.

Figure 4.18. Java coordinate system. Units are measured in pixels.

Coordinates are used to indicate where graphics should be displayed on a screen. Coordinate units are measured in pixels. A pixel is a display monitor's smallest unit of resolution. (The term pixel stands for "picture element.")
Our first drawing application simply draws two lines from the corners. Class DrawPanel (Fig. 4.19) performs the actual drawing, while class DrawPanelTest (Fig. 4.20) creates a window to display the drawing. In class DrawPanel, the import statements in lines 34 allow us to use class Graphics (from package java.awt), which provides various methods for drawing text and shapes onto the screen, and class JPanel (from package javax.swing), which provides an area on which we can draw.

Figure 4.19. Using drawLine to connect the corners of a panel.  
(This item is displayed on pages 158 - 159 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 4.19: DrawPanel.java
2 // Draws two crossing lines on a panel.
3 import java.awt.Graphics;
4 import javax.swing.JPanel;
5
6 public class DrawPanel extends JPanel
7 {
8     // draws an X from the corners of the panel
9     public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
10     {
11         // call paintComponent to ensure the panel displays correctly
12         super.paintComponent( g );
13
14         int width = getWidth(); // total width
15         int height = getHeight(); // total height
16
17         // draw a line from the upper-left to the lower-right
18         g.drawLine( 0, 0, width, height );
19
20         // draw a line from the lower-left to the upper-right
21         g.drawLine( 0, height, width, 0 );
22     } // end method paintComponent
23 } // end class DrawPanel
```

Figure 4.20. Creating JFrame to display DrawPanel.  
(This item is displayed on page 160 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 4.20: DrawPanelTest.java
2 // Application to display a DrawPanel.
3 import javax.swing.JFrame;
4
5 public class DrawPanelTest
6 {
7     public static void main( String args[] )
```
Line 6 uses the keyword `extends` to indicate that class `DrawPanel` is an enhanced type of `JPanel`. The keyword `extends` represents a so-called inheritance relationship in which our new class `DrawPanel` begins with the existing members (data and methods) from class `JPanel`. The class from which `DrawPanel` inherits, `JPanel`, appears to the right of keyword `extends`. In this inheritance relationship, `JPanel` is called the `superclass` and `DrawPanel` is called the `subclass`. This results in a `DrawPanel` class that has the attributes (data) and behaviors (methods) of class `JPanel` as well as the new features we are adding in our `DrawPanel` class declaration (specifically, the ability to draw two lines along the diagonals of the panel). Inheritance will be explained in more detail in Chapter 9.

Every `JPanel`, including our `DrawPanel`, has a `paintComponent` method (lines
Method `paintComponent` must be declared as shown on line 9 otherwise, the system will not call the method. This method is called when a `JPanel` is first displayed on the screen, when it is covered then uncovered by a window on the screen and when the window in which it appears is resized. Method `paintComponent` requires one argument, a `Graphics` object, that is provided for you by the system when it calls `paintComponent`.

The first statement in every `paintComponent` method you create should always be:

```java
super.paintComponent(g);
```

This will ensure that the panel is properly rendered on the screen before we begin drawing on it. Next, lines 14 and 15 call two methods that class `DrawPanel` inherits from class `JPanel`. Because `DrawPanel` extends `JPanel`, `DrawPanel` can use any public methods that are declared in `JPanel`. Methods `setWidth` and `setHeight` return the width and the height of the `JPanel` respectively. Lines 14-15 store these values in the local variables `width` and `height`. Finally, lines 18 and 21 use the `Graphics` reference `g` to call method `drawLine` to draw the two lines. Method `drawLine` draws a line between two points represented by its four arguments.

To display the `DrawPanel` on the screen, we must place it in a window. You create a window with an object of class `JFrame`. In `DrawPanelTest.java` (Fig. 4.20), line 3 imports class `JFrame` from package `javax.swing`. Line 10 in the `main` method of class `DrawPanelTest` creates an instance of class `DrawPanel`, which contains our drawing, and line 13 creates a new `JFrame` that can hold and display our panel. Line 16 calls method `setDefaultCloseOperation` with the argument `JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE` to indicate that the application should terminate when the user closes the window. Line 18 uses `JFrame`'s `add` method to attach the `DrawPanel` containing our drawing to the `JFrame`. Line 19 sets the size of the `JFrame`. Method `setSize` takes two parameters, the first parameter is the width of the `JFrame`, and the second is the height. Finally, line 20 displays the `JFrame`. When the `JFrame` is displayed, the `DrawPanel`'s `paintComponent` method (lines 922 of Fig. 4.19) is called, and the two lines are drawn (see the sample outputs in Fig. 4.20).
Try resizing the window to see that the lines always draw based on the window's current width and height.

For the next several GUI and graphics sections, there will be very few changes required in the `main` method. As we introduce additional drawing capabilities, most of the changes will come in the class that extends `JPanel`, since that is where the drawing takes place.

**GUI and Graphics Case Study Exercises**

Using loops and control statements to draw lines can lead to many interesting designs.

1. Create the design in the left screen capture of Fig. 4.21. This design draws lines from the top-left corner, fanning out the lines until they cover the upper-left half of the panel. One approach is to divide the width and height into an equal number of steps (we found 15 steps worked well). The first endpoint of a line will always be in the top-left corner (0, 0). The second endpoint can be found by starting at the bottom-left corner and moving up one vertical step and moving right one horizontal step. Draw a line between the two endpoints. Continue moving up and to the right one step to find each successive endpoint. The figure should scale accordingly as you resize the window.

![Figure 4.21. Lines fanning from a corner.](image)

- Modify your answer in part (a) to have lines fan out from all four corners, as shown in the right screen capture of Fig. 4.21. Lines from opposite corners should intersect along the middle.
Figure 4.22 displays two additional designs created using *while* loops and `drawLine`.

![Figure 4.22. Line art with loops and `drawLine`.](image)

1. Create the design in the left screen capture of Fig. 4.22. Begin by dividing each edge into an equal number of increments (we chose 15 again). The first line starts in the topleft corner and ends one step right on the bottom edge. For each successive line, move down one increment on the left edge and right one increment on the bottom edge. Continue drawing lines until you reach the bottom-right corner. The figure should scale as you resize the window so that the endpoints always touch the edges.

2. Modify your answer in part (a) to mirror the design in all four corners, as shown in the right screen capture of Fig. 4.22.
4.15. (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Identifying Class Attributes

In Section 3.10, we began the first stage of an object-oriented design (OOD) for our ATM system analyzing the requirements document and identifying the classes needed to implement the system. We listed the nouns and noun phrases in the requirements document and identified a separate class for each one that plays a significant role in the ATM system. We then modeled the classes and their relationships in a UML class diagram (Fig. 3.24). Classes have attributes (data) and operations (behaviors). Class attributes are implemented in Java programs as fields, and class operations are implemented as methods. In this section, we determine many of the attributes needed in the ATM system. In Chapter 5, we examine how these attributes represent an object's state. In Chapter 6, we determine class operations.

Identifying Attributes

Consider the attributes of some real-world objects: A person's attributes include height, weight and whether the person is left-handed, right-handed or ambidextrous. A radio's attributes include its station setting, its volume setting and its AM or FM setting. A car's attributes include its speedometer and odometer readings, the amount of gas in its tank and what gear it is in. A personal computer's attributes include its manufacturer (e.g., Dell, Sun, Apple or IBM), type of screen (e.g., LCD or CRT), main memory size and hard disk size.

We can identify many attributes of the classes in our system by looking for descriptive words and phrases in the requirements document. For each one we find that plays a significant role in the ATM system, we create an attribute and assign it to one or more of the classes identified in Section 3.10. We also create attributes to represent any additional data that a class may need, as such needs become clear throughout the design process.

Figure 4.23 lists the words or phrases from the requirements document that describe each class. We formed this list by reading the requirements document and identifying any words or phrases that refer to characteristics of the classes in the system. For example, the requirements document describes the steps taken to obtain a "withdrawal amount," so we list "amount" next to class Withdrawal.
**Figure 4.23** leads us to create one attribute of class ATM. Class ATM maintains information about the state of the ATM. The phrase "user is authenticated" describes a state of the ATM (we introduce states in Section 5.11), so we include userAuthenticated as a **Boolean attribute** (i.e., an attribute that has a value of either true or false) in class ATM. Note that the `Boolean` attribute type in the UML is equivalent to the `boolean` type in Java. This attribute indicates whether the ATM has successfully authenticated the current user. `userAuthenticated` must be true for the system to allow the user to perform transactions and access account information. This attribute helps ensure the security of the data in the system.

Classes **BalanceInquiry**, **Withdrawal** and **Deposit** share one attribute. Each
transaction involves an "account number" that corresponds to the account of the user making the transaction. We assign an integer attribute accountNumber to each transaction class to identify the account to which an object of the class applies.

Descriptive words and phrases in the requirements document also suggest some differences in the attributes required by each transaction class. The requirements document indicates that to withdraw cash or deposit funds, users must input a specific "amount" of money to be withdrawn or deposited, respectively. Thus, we assign to classes Withdrawal and Deposit an attribute amount to store the value supplied by the user. The amounts of money related to a withdrawal and a deposit are defining characteristics of these transactions that the system requires for these transactions to take place. Class BalanceInquiry, however, needs no additional data to perform its task—it requires only an account number to indicate the account whose balance should be retrieved.

Class Account has several attributes. The requirements document states that each bank account has an "account number" and "PIN," which the system uses for identifying accounts and authenticating users. We assign to class Account two integer attributes: accountNumber and pin. The requirements document also specifies that an account maintains a "balance" of the amount of money in the account and that money the user deposits does not become available for a withdrawal until the bank verifies the amount of cash in the deposit envelope, and any checks in the envelope clear. An account must still record the amount of money that a user deposits, however. Therefore, we decide that an account should represent a balance using two attributes: availableBalance and totalBalance. Attribute availableBalance tracks the amount of money that a user can withdraw from the account. Attribute totalBalance refers to the total amount of money that the user has "on deposit" (i.e., the amount of money available, plus the amount waiting to be verified or cleared). For example, suppose an ATM user deposits $50.00 into an empty account. The totalBalance attribute would increase to $50.00 to record the deposit, but the availableBalance would remain at $0. [Note: We assume that the bank updates the availableBalance attribute of an Account some length of time after the ATM transaction occurs, in response to confirming that $50 worth of cash or checks was found in the deposit envelope. We assume that this update occurs through a transaction that a bank employee performs using some piece of bank software other than the ATM. Thus, we do not discuss this transaction in our case study.]
Class `CashDispenser` has one attribute. The requirements document states that the cash dispenser "begins each day loaded with 500 $20 bills." The cash dispenser must keep track of the number of bills it contains to determine whether enough cash is on hand to satisfy withdrawal requests. We assign to class `CashDispenser` an integer attribute `count`, which is initially set to 500.

For real problems in industry, there is no guarantee that requirements documents will be rich enough and precise enough for the object-oriented systems designer to determine all the attributes or even all the classes. The need for additional classes, attributes and behaviors may become clear as the design process proceeds. As we progress through this case study, we too will continue to add, modify and delete information about the classes in our system.

**Modeling Attributes**

The class diagram in Fig. 4.24 lists some of the attributes for the classes in our system the descriptive words and phrases in Fig. 4.23 lead us to identify these attributes. For simplicity, Fig. 4.24 does not show the associations among classes we showed these in Fig. 3.24. This is a common practice of systems designers when designs are being developed. Recall from Section 3.10 that in the UML, a class's attributes are placed in the middle compartment of the class's rectangle. We list each attribute's name and type separated by a colon (:), followed in some cases by an equal sign (=) and an initial value.

**Figure 4.24. Classes with attributes.**
(This item is displayed on page 165 in the print version)
Consider the `userAuthenticated` attribute of class `ATM`:

\[
\text{userAuthenticated} : \text{Boolean} = \text{false}
\]

This attribute declaration contains three pieces of information about the attribute. The **attribute name** is `userAuthenticated`. The **attribute type** is `Boolean`. In Java, an attribute can be represented by a primitive type, such as `boolean`, `int` or `double`, or a reference type like a class as discussed in Chapter 3. We have chosen to model only primitive-type attributes in Fig. 4.24, however we discuss the reasoning behind this decision below. [Note: The attribute types in Fig. 4.24 are in UML notation. We will associate the types `Boolean`, `Integer` and `Double` in the UML diagram with the primitive types `boolean`, `int` and `double` in Java, respectively.]

We can also indicate an initial value for an attribute. The `userAuthenticated` attribute in class `ATM` has an initial value of `false`. This indicates that the system initially does not consider the user to be authenticated. If an attribute has no initial value specified, only its name and type (separated by a colon) are shown. For example, the `accountNumber` attribute of class `BalanceInquiry` is an integer. Here we show no initial value, because the value of this attribute is a
number that we do not yet know. This number will be determined at execution time based on the account number entered by the current ATM user.

**Figure 4.24** does not include any attributes for classes **Screen**, **Keypad** and **DepositSlot**. These are important components of our system, for which our design process simply has not yet revealed any attributes. We may still discover some, however, in the remaining phases of design or when we implement these classes in Java. This is perfectly normal.

**Software Engineering Observation 4.6**

At early stages in the design process, classes often lack attributes (and operations). Such classes should not be eliminated, however, because attributes (and operations) may become evident in the later phases of design and implementation.

Note that **Fig. 4.24** also does not include attributes for class **BankDatabase**. Recall from **Chapter 3** that in Java, attributes can be represented by either primitive types or reference types. We have chosen to include only primitive-type attributes in the class diagram in **Fig. 4.24** (and in similar class diagrams throughout the case study). A reference-type attribute is modeled more clearly as an association (in particular, a composition) between the class holding the reference and the class of the object to which the reference points. For example, the class diagram in **Fig. 3.24** indicates that class **BankDatabase** participates in a composition relationship with zero or more **Account** objects. From this composition, we can determine that when we implement the ATM system in Java, we will be required to create an attribute of class **BankDatabase** to hold references to zero or more **Account** objects. Similarly, we can determine reference-type attributes of class **ATM** that correspond to its composition relationships with classes **Screen**, **Keypad**, **CashDispenser** and **DepositSlot**. These composition-based attributes would be redundant if modeled in **Fig. 4.24**, because the compositions modeled in **Fig. 3.24** already convey the fact that the database contains information about zero or more accounts and that an ATM is composed of a screen, keypad, cash dispenser and deposit slot. Software developers typically model these whole/part relationships as compositions rather than as attributes required to implement the relationships.
The class diagram in Fig. 4.24 provides a solid basis for the structure of our model, but the diagram is not complete. In Section 5.11, we identify the states and activities of the objects in the model, and in Section 6.14 we identify the operations that the objects perform. As we present more of the UML and object-oriented design, we will continue to strengthen the structure of our model.

Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

We typically identify the attributes of the classes in our system by analyzing the __________ in the requirements document.

1. nouns and noun phrases
2. descriptive words and phrases
3. verbs and verb phrases
4. All of the above.

Which of the following is not an attribute of an airplane?

1. length
2. wingspan
3. fly
4. number of seats

Describe the meaning of the following attribute declaration of class CashDispenser in the class diagram in Fig. 4.24:

```
count : Integer = 500
```

Answers to Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

4.1 b.

4.2 c. Fly is an operation or behavior of an airplane, not an attribute.
This indicates that `count` is an `integer` with an initial value of 500. This attribute keeps track of the number of bills available in the `CashDispenser` at any given time.
4.16. Wrap-Up

This chapter presented basic problem-solving strategies that programmers use in building classes and developing methods for these classes. We demonstrated how to construct an algorithm (i.e., an approach to solving a problem), then how to refine the algorithm through several phases of pseudocode development, resulting in Java code that can be executed as part of a method. The chapter showed how to use top-down, stepwise refinement to plan out the specific actions that a method must perform and the order in which the method must perform these actions.

Only three types of control structures—sequence, selection and repetition—are needed to develop any problem-solving algorithm. Specifically, this chapter demonstrated the \texttt{if} single-selection statement, the \texttt{if...else} double-selection statement and the \texttt{while} repetition statement. These are some of the building blocks used to construct solutions to many problems. We used control-statement stacking to total and compute the average of a set of student grades with counter- and sentinel-controlled repetition, and we used control-statement nesting to analyze and make decisions based on a set of exam results. We introduced Java's compound assignment operators, as well as its increment and decrement operators. Finally, we discussed the primitive types available to Java programmers. In Chapter 5, Control Statements: Part 2, we continue our discussion of control statements, introducing the \texttt{for}, \texttt{do...while} and \texttt{switch} statements.
Summary

- An algorithm is a procedure for solving a problem in terms of the actions to execute and the order in which the actions execute.

- Specifying the order in which statements (actions) execute in a program is called program control.

- Pseudocode helps a programmer think out a program before attempting to write it in a programming language.

- Activity diagrams are part of the Unified Modeling Language (UML) an industry standard for modeling software systems.

- An activity diagram models the workflow (also called the activity) of a software system.

- Activity diagrams are composed of special-purpose symbols, such as action-state symbols, diamonds and small circles. These symbols are connected by transition arrows that represent the flow of the activity.

- Like pseudocode, activity diagrams help programmers develop and represent algorithms.

- An action state is represented as a rectangle with its left and right sides replaced with arcs curving outward. The action expression appears inside the action state.

- The arrows in an activity diagram represent transitions, which indicate the order in which the actions represented by action states occur.

- The solid circle located at the top of an activity diagram represents the initial state the beginning of the workflow before the program performs the modeled actions.

- The solid circle surrounded by a hollow circle that appears at the bottom of the activity diagram represents the final state the end of the workflow after the program performs its actions.
- Rectangles with the upper-right corners folded over are called notes in the UML. Notes are explanatory remarks that describe the purpose of symbols in the diagram. A dotted line connects each note with the element that the note describes.

- A diamond or decision symbol in an activity diagram indicates that a decision is to be made. The workflow will continue along a path determined by the symbol's associated guard conditions, which can be true or false. Each transition arrow emerging from a decision symbol has a guard condition (specified in square brackets next to the transition arrow). If a guard condition is true, the workflow enters the action state to which the transition arrow points.

- A diamond in an activity diagram also represents the merge symbol, which joins two flows of activity into one. A merge symbol has two or more transition arrows pointing to the diamond and only one transition arrow pointing from the diamond, to indicate multiple activity flows merging to continue the activity.

- Top-down, stepwise refinement is a process for refining pseudocode by maintaining a complete representation of the program during each refinement.

- There are three types of control structures: sequence, selection, and repetition.

- The sequence structure is built into Java by default, statements execute in the order they appear.

- A selection structure chooses among alternative courses of action.

- The if single-selection statement either performs (selects) an action if a condition is true, or skips the action if the condition is false.

- The if...else double-selection statement performs (selects) an action if a condition is true and performs a different action if the condition is false.

- To include several statements in an if's body (or the body of else for an if...else statement), enclose the statements in braces ({ and }). A set of statements contained within a pair of braces is called a block. A block can be placed anywhere in a program that a single statement can be placed.
• An empty statement, indicating that no action is to be taken, is indicated by a semicolon (;).

• A repetition statement specifies that an action is to be repeated while some condition remains true.

• The format for the **while** repetition statement is

  ```java
  while ( condition )
  statement
  ```

• Counter-controlled repetition is used when the number of repetitions is known before a loop begins executing.

• The unary cast operator **(double)** creates a temporary floating-point copy of its operand.

• Sentinel-controlled repetition is used when the number of repetitions is not known before a loop begins executing.

• A nested control statement appears in the body of another control statement.

• Java provides the arithmetic compound assignment operators `+=, -=, *=, /=` and `%=` for abbreviating assignment expressions.

• The increment operator, `++`, and the decrement operator, `--`, increment or decrement a variable by 1, respectively. If the operator is prefixed to the variable, the variable is incremented or decremented by 1 first, and then its new value is used in the expression in which it appears. If the operator is postfixed to the variable, the variable is first used in the expression in which it appears, and then the variable's value is incremented or decremented by 1.

• The primitive types (**boolean**, **char**, **byte**, **short**, **int**, **long**, **float** and **double**) are portable across all computer platforms that support Java.

• Java is a strongly typed language; it requires all variables to have a type.
• Local variables are declared inside methods and are not assigned default values.

• Variables declared outside of methods as fields are assigned default values. Instance variables of types `char`, `byte`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `float` and `double` are all given the value 0 by default. Instance variables of type `boolean` are given the value `false` by default. Reference-type instance variables are initialized by default to the value `null`.
Terminology

-- operator

?: operator

++ operator

action

action/decision model of programming

action expression (in the UML)

action state (in the UML)

action-state symbol (in the UML)

activity (in the UML)

activity diagram (in the UML)

addition compound assignment operator (=+)

algorithm

arithmetic compound assignment operators: +=, -=, *=, /= and %=.

block

boolean primitive type

body of a loop

cast operator, (type)

compound assignment operator
conditional expression

conditional operator (?:)

count control statement

control-statement nesting

control-statement stacking

control variable

counter

counter-controlled repetition

creating an instance of a class

dangling-else problem

decision

decision symbol (in the UML)

decrement operator (--) 

definite repetition

diamond (in the UML)

dotted line

double-selection statement

dummy value

explicit conversion
false

fatal logic error

final state (in the UML)

first refinement

flag value

goto statement

guard condition (in the UML)

if statement

if...else statement

implicit conversion

increment operator (++)

indefinite repetition

infinite loop

initial state (in the UML)

initialization

integer division

instantiate an object

iteration

logic error

loop
loop-continuation condition
loop counter
looping statement
merge symbol (in the UML)
multiple-selection statement
multiplicative operator
nested control statements
nested if...else statements
new keyword
nonfatal logic error
note (in the UML)
order in which actions should execute
postdecrement a variable
postfix decrement operator
postfix increment operator
postincrement a variable
predecrement a variable
prefix decrement operator
prefix increment operator
prefix increment operator
preincrement a variable
primitive types

procedure

program control

promotion

pseudocode

repetition

repetition structure

second refinement

selection structure

sentinel-controlled repetition

sentinel value

sequence structure

sequential execution

signal value

single-entry/single-exit control statements

single-selection statement

small circle (in the UML)

solid circle (in the UML)

solid circle surrounded by a hollow circle (in the UML)

stacked control statements
strongly typed language
structured programming
syntax error
ternary operator
top-down stepwise refinement
top

Transfer of control
transition (in the UML)
transition arrow (in the UML)
true

truncate
unary cast operator
unary operator

while statement

WORA (write once, run anywhere)

workflow
Self-Review Exercises

4.1 Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. All programs can be written in terms of three types of control structures: __________, __________ and __________.

2. The __________ statement is used to execute one action when a condition is true and another when that condition is false.

3. Repeating a set of instructions a specific number of times is called __________ repetition.

4. When it is not known in advance how many times a set of statements will be repeated, a(n) __________ value can be used to terminate the repetition.

5. The __________ structure is built into Javaby default, statements execute in the order they appear.

6. Instance variables of types char, byte, short, int, long, float and double are all given the value __________ by default.

7. Java is a __________ language it requires all variables to have a type.

8. If the increment operator is __________ to a variable, the variable is incremented by 1 first, then its new value is used in the expression.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. An algorithm is a procedure for solving a problem in terms of the actions to execute and the order in which these actions execute.

2. A set of statements contained within a pair of parentheses is called a block.

3. A selection statement specifies that an action is to be repeated while some condition remains true.

4. A nested control statement appears in the body of another control statement.

5. Java provides the arithmetic compound assignment operators +=, -=, *=, /= and %= for abbreviating assignment expressions.

6. The primitive types (boolean, char, byte, short, int, long, float and double) are portable across only Windows platforms.

7. Specifying the order in which statements (actions) execute in a program is called program control.

8. The unary cast operator (double) creates a temporary integer copy of its operand.

9. Instance variables of type boolean are given the value True by default.

10. Pseudocode helps a programmer think out a program before attempting to write it in a programming language.

4.3 Write four different Java statements that each add 1 to integer variable x.
Write Java statements to accomplish each of the following tasks:

1. Assign the sum of \( x \) and \( y \) to \( z \), and increment \( x \) by 1 after the calculation. Use only one statement.

2. Test whether variable \( \text{count} \) is greater than 10. If it is, print "Count is greater than 10".

3. Decrement the variable \( x \) by 1, then subtract it from the variable \( \text{total} \). Use only one statement.

4. Calculate the remainder after \( q \) is divided by \( \text{divisor} \), and assign the result to \( q \). Write this statement in two different ways.

Write a Java statement to accomplish each of the following tasks:

1. Declare variables \( \text{sum} \) and \( x \) to be of type \( \text{int} \).

2. Assign 1 to variable \( x \).

3. Assign 0 to variable \( \text{sum} \).

4. Add variable \( x \) to variable \( \text{sum} \), and assign the result to variable \( \text{sum} \).

5. Print "The sum is: ", followed by the value of variable \( \text{sum} \).

Combine the statements that you wrote in Exercise 4.5 into a Java application that calculates and prints the sum of the integers from 1 to 10. Use a \( \text{while} \) statement to loop through the calculation and increment statements. The loop should terminate when the value of \( x \) becomes 11.

Determine the value of the variables in the following statement after the calculation is performed. Assume that when the statement begins executing, all variables are type \( \text{int} \) and have the value 5.

\[
\text{product} *= x++; \\
\]

Identify and correct the errors in each of the following sets of code:

1. \[
\text{while} \ ( \ c <= 5 \ ) \\
\{ \\
\text{product} *= c; \\
++c; \\
\}
\]

2. \[
\text{if} \ ( \ \text{gender} == 1 \ ) \\
\text{System.out.println( "Woman" );} \\
\text{else;} \\
\text{System.out.println( "Man" );} \\
\]

What is wrong with the following \( \text{while} \) statement?

\[
\text{while} \ ( \ z >= 0 \ ) \\
\text{sum} += z; \\
\]


Answers to Self-Review Exercises

4.1  
a) sequence, selection, repetition.  
b) if...else.  
c) counter-controlled (or definite).  
d) sentinel, signal, flag or dummy.  
e) sequence.  
f) 0 (zero).  
g) strongly typed.  
h) prefixed.

4.2  
a) True.  
b) False.  
c) A set of statements contained within a pair of braces ( { and } ) is called a block.  
d) True.  
e) True.  
f) False.  
g) The primitive types (boolean, char, byte, short, int, long, float and double) are portable across all computer platforms that support Java.  
h) True.  
i) False.  
j) True.

x = x + 1;  
x += 1;  
++x;  
x++;

4.3  
1. z = x++ + y;  
2. if ( count > 10 )  
   System.out.println( "Count is greater than 10" );  
3. total -- --x;  
4. q %= divisor;  
   q = q % divisor;

4.4  
1. int sum, x;  
2. x = 1;  
3. sum = 0;  
4. sum += x; or sum = sum + x;  
5. System.out.printf( "The sum is: %d\n", sum );

The program is as follows:

1 // Calculate the sum of the integers from 1 to 10  
2 public class Calculate  
3 {  
4     public static void main( String args[] )  
5     {  
6         int sum;  
7         int x;  
8         x = 1; // initialize x to 1 for counting  
9     }  
10 }  
11
4.6 Sum = 0; // initialize sum to 0 for totaling
11 while ( x <= 10 ) // while x is less than or equal to 10
12     {
13         sum += x; // add x to sum
14         ++x; // increment x
15     } // end while
17 System.out.printf( "The sum is: %d\n", sum );
19 } // end main
20
21 } // end class Calculate

The sum is: 55

4.7 Product = 25, x = 6

1. Error: The closing right brace of the while statement's body is missing.
   Correction: Add a closing right brace after the statement ++c;.

2. Error: The semicolon after else results in a logic error. The second output statement will always be executed.
   Correction: Remove the semicolon after else.

The value of the variable z is never changed in the while statement. Therefore, if the loop-continuation condition ( z >= 0 ) is true, an infinite loop is created. To prevent an infinite loop from occurring, z must be decremented so that it eventually becomes less than 0.
Exercises

4.10 Compare and contrast the *if* single-selection statement and the *while* repetition statement. How are these two statements similar? How are they different?

4.11 Explain what happens when a Java program attempts to divide one integer by another. What happens to the fractional part of the calculation? How can a programmer avoid that outcome?

4.12 Describe the two ways in which control statements can be combined.

What type of repetition would be appropriate for calculating the sum of the first 100 positive integers?

4.13 What type of repetition would be appropriate for calculating the sum of an arbitrary number of positive integers? Briefly describe how each of these tasks could be performed.

4.14 What is the difference between preincrementing a variable and postincrementing a variable?

4.15 Identify and correct the errors in each of the following pieces of code. [Note: There may be more than one error in each piece of code.]

1. 
   ```java
   if ( age >= 65 );
   System.out.println( "Age greater than or equal to 65" );
   else
   System.out.println( "Age is less than 65" );
   ```

2. 
   ```java
   int x = 1, total;
   while ( x <= 10 )
   { 
   total += x;
   ++x;
   }
   ```

3. 
   ```java
   while ( x <= 100 )
   total += x;
   ++x;
   ```

4. 
   ```java
   while ( y > 0 )
   {
   System.out.println( y );
   ++y;
   ```

What does the following program print?

```java
1  public class Mystery
2  {
3     public static void main( String args[] )
4     {
5         int y;
6         int x = 1;
```
4.16 For Exercise 4.17 through Exercise 4.20, perform each of the following steps:

1. Read the problem statement.

2. Formulate the algorithm using pseudocode and top-down, stepwise refinement.

3. Write a Java program.

4. Test, debug and execute the Java program.

5. Process three complete sets of data.

Drivers are concerned with the mileage their automobiles get. One driver has kept track of several tankfuls of gasoline by recording the miles driven and gallons used for each tankful. Develop a Java application that will input the miles driven and gallons used (both as integers) for each tankful. The program should calculate and display the miles per gallon obtained for each tankful and print the combined miles per gallon obtained for all tankfuls up to this point. All averaging calculations should produce floating-point results. Use class `Scanner` and sentinel-controlled repetition to obtain the data from the user.

Develop a Java application that will determine whether any of several department-store customers has exceeded the credit limit on a charge account. For each customer, the following facts are available:

1. account number

2. balance at the beginning of the month

3. total of all items charged by the customer this month

4. total of all credits applied to the customer's account this month

5. allowed credit limit.

The program should input all these facts as integers, calculate the new balance (= beginning balance + charges credits), display the new balance and determine whether the new balance exceeds the customer's credit limit. For those customers whose credit limit is exceeded, the program should display the message "Credit limit exceeded".
plus 9% of their gross sales for that week. For example, a salesperson who sells $5,000 worth of
merchandise in a week receives $200 plus 9% of $5,000, or a total of $650. You have been supplied with
a list of the items sold by each salesperson. The values of these items are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>239.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>129.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>99.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>350.89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Develop a Java application that inputs one salesperson's items sold for last week and calculates and
displays that salesperson's earnings. There is no limit to the number of items that can be sold by a
salesperson.

Develop a Java application that will determine the gross pay for each of three employees. The company
pays straight time for the first 40 hours worked by each employee and time and a half for all hours
worked in excess of 40 hours. You are given a list of the employees of the company, the number of
hours each employee worked last week and the hourly rate of each employee. Your program should input
this information for each employee and should determine and display the employee's gross pay. Use
class Scanner to input the data.

The process of finding the largest value (i.e., the maximum of a group of values) is used frequently in
computer applications. For example, a program that determines the winner of a sales contest would
input the number of units sold by each salesperson. The salesperson who sells the most units wins the
contest. Write a pseudocode program and then a Java application that inputs a series of 10 integers and
determines and prints the largest integer. Your program should use at least the following three variables:

1. counter: A counter to count to 10 (i.e., to keep track of how many numbers have been input and to
determine when all 10 numbers have been processed).
2. number: The integer most recently input by the user.
3. largest: The largest number found so far.

Write a Java application that uses looping to print the following table of values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>10*N</th>
<th>100*N</th>
<th>1000*N</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.23 Using an approach similar to that for Exercise 4.21, find the two largest values of the 10 values entered. [Note: You may input each number only once.]

4.24 Modify the program in Fig. 4.12 to validate its inputs. For any input, if the value entered is other than 1 or 2, keep looping until the user enters a correct value.

What does the following program print?

```java
public class Mystery2 {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        int count = 1;
        while ( count <= 10 ) {
            System.out.println( count % 2 == 1 ? "****" : "++++++++" );
            ++count;
        } // end while
    } // end main
} // end class Mystery2
```

What does the following program print?

```java
public class Mystery3 {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        int row = 10;
        int column;
        while ( row >= 1 ) {
            column = 1;
            while ( column <= 10 ) {
                System.out.print( row % 2 == 1 ? "<" : ">");
                ++column;
            } // end while
            --row;
            System.out.println();
        } // end while
    } // end main
} // end class Mystery3
```
(Dangling-else Problem) Determine the output for each of the given sets of code when $x$ is 9 and $y$ is 11 and when $x$ is 11 and $y$ is 9. Note that the compiler ignores the indentation in a Java program. Also, the Java compiler always associates an else with the immediately preceding if unless told to do otherwise by the placement of braces ({}). On first glance, the programmer may not be sure which if an else matchesthis situation is referred to as the "dangling-else problem." We have eliminated the indentation from the following code to make the problem more challenging. [Hint: Apply the indentation conventions you have learned.]

1. \[
\begin{align*}
\text{if ( x } &\text{ < 10) } \\
&\text{if ( y } &\text{ > 10) System.out.println("*****");} \\
&\text{else System.out.println("#####");} \\
&\text{System.out.println("$$$$");}
\end{align*}
\]

2. \[
\begin{align*}
\text{if ( x } &\text{ < 10) } \\
&\{ \\
&\text{if ( y } &\text{ > 10) System.out.println("*****");} \\
&\} \\
&\text{else } \\
&\{ \\
&\text{System.out.println("#####");} \\
&\text{System.out.println("$$$$");}
\end{align*}
\]

(Another Dangling-else Problem) Modify the given code to produce the output shown in each part of the problem. Use proper indentation techniques. Make no changes other than inserting braces and changing the indentation of the code. The compiler ignores indentation in a Java program. We have eliminated the indentation from the given code to make the problem more challenging. [Note: It is possible that no modification is necessary for some of the parts.]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{if ( y } &\text{ == 8) } \\
&\text{if ( x } &\text{ == 5) System.out.println("@@@@@");} \\
&\text{else System.out.println("#####");} \\
&\text{System.out.println("$$$$");} \\
&\text{System.out.println("&&&&");}
\end{align*}
\]

1. Assuming that $x = 5$ and $y = 8$, the following output is produced:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{@@@@@} \\
\text{$$$$$} \\
\text{&&&&}
\end{align*}
\]

2. Assuming that $x = 5$ and $y = 8$, the following output is produced:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{@@@@@}
\end{align*}
\]

3. Assuming that $x = 5$ and $y = 8$, the following output is produced:
4. Assuming that \( x = 5 \) and \( y = 7 \), the following output is produced. [Note: The last three output statements after the else are all part of a block.]

```
#
$
$
&
```

Write an application that prompts the user to enter the size of the side of a square, then displays a hollow square of that size made of asterisks. Your program should work for squares of all side lengths between 1 and 20.

4.29

(Palindromes) A palindrome is a sequence of characters that reads the same backward as forward. For example, each of the following five-digit integers is a palindrome: 12321, 55555, 45554 and 11611.

Write an application that reads in a five-digit integer and determines whether it is a palindrome. If the number is not five digits long, display an error message and allow the user to enter a new value.

4.30

Write an application that inputs an integer containing only 0s and 1s (i.e., a binary integer) and prints its decimal equivalent. [Hint: Use the remainder and division operators to pick off the binary number’s digits one at a time, from right to left. In the decimal number system, the rightmost digit has a positional value of 1 and the next digit to the left has a positional value of 10, then 100, then 1000, and so on. The decimal number 234 can be interpreted as \( 4 \times 1 + 3 \times 10 + 2 \times 100 \). In the binary number system, the rightmost digit has a positional value of 1, the next digit to the left has a positional value of 2, then 4, then 8, and so on. The decimal equivalent of binary 1101 is \( 1 \times 1 + 0 \times 2 + 1 \times 4 + 1 \times 8 \), or \( 1 + 0 + 4 + 8 \) or, 13.]

4.31

Write an application that uses only the output statements

```
System.out.print( "* " );
System.out.print( " " );
System.out.println();
```

to display the checkerboard pattern that follows. Note that a `System.out.println` method call with no arguments causes the program to output a single newline character. [Hint: Repetition statements are required.]

```
* * * * * *
* * * * * *
* * * * * *
* * * * * *
* * * * * *
```

4.32

Write an application that keeps displaying in the command window the multiples of the integer 2, namely, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, and so on. Your loop should not terminate (i.e., create an infinite loop). What happens when you run this program?
What is wrong with the following statement? Provide the correct statement to add one to the sum of \( x \) and \( y \).

\[
\text{System.out.println( ++(x + y) );}
\]

4.35 Write an application that reads three nonzero values entered by the user and determines and prints whether they could represent the sides of a triangle.

4.36 Write an application that reads three nonzero integers and determines and prints whether they could represent the sides of a right triangle.

A company wants to transmit data over the telephone, but is concerned that its phones may be tapped. It has asked you to write a program that will encrypt the data so that it may be transmitted more securely. All the data is transmitted as four-digit integers. Your application should read a four-digit integer entered by the user and encrypt it as follows: Replace each digit with the result of adding 7 to the digit and getting the remainder after dividing the new value by 10. Then swap the first digit with the third, and swap the second digit with the fourth. Then print the encrypted integer. Write a separate application that inputs an encrypted four-digit integer and decrypts it to form the original number.

4.37

The factorial of a nonnegative integer \( n \) is written as \( n! \) (pronounced "\( n \) factorial") and is defined as follows:

\[
n! = n \cdot (n - 1) \cdot (n - 2) \cdot \ldots \cdot 1 \text{ (for values of } n \text{ greater than or equal to 1)}
\]

and

\[
n! = 1 \text{ (for } n = 0)\]

For example, \( 5! = 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 \), which is 120.

4.38

1. Write an application that reads a nonnegative integer and computes and prints its factorial.

2. Write an application that estimates the value of the mathematical constant \( e \) by using the formula

\[
e = 1 + \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} + \ldots
\]

3. Write an application that computes the value of \( e^x \) by using the formula

\[
e^x = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \ldots
\]
Chapter 5. Control Statements: Part 2

Not everything that can be counted counts, and not every thing that counts can be counted.

Albert Einstein

Who can control his fate?

William Shakespeare

The used key is always bright.

Benjamin Franklin

Intelligence...is the faculty of making artificial objects, especially tools to make tools.

Henri Bergson

Every advantage in the past is judged in the light of the final issue.

Demosthenes

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- The essentials of counter-controlled repetition.
- To use the `for` and `do...while` repetition statements to execute statements in a program repeatedly.
- To understand multiple selection using the `switch` selection statement.
- To use the `break` and `continue` program control statements to alter the flow of control.
- To use the logical operators to form complex conditional expressions in control statements.
Outline

5.1 Introduction

5.2 Essentials of Counter-Controlled Repetition

5.3 for Repetition Statement

5.4 Examples Using the for Statement

5.5 do...while Repetition Statement

5.6 switch Multiple-Selection Statement

5.7 break and continue Statements

5.8 Logical Operators

5.9 Structured Programming Summary

5.10 (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Drawing Rectangles and Ovals

5.11 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Identifying Objects' States and Activities

5.12 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
5.1. Introduction

Chapter 4 began our introduction to the types of building blocks that are available for problem solving. We used those building blocks to employ proven program-construction techniques. In this chapter, we continue our presentation of the theory and principles of structured programming by introducing Java's remaining control statements. The control statements we study here and in Chapter 4 are helpful in building and manipulating objects.

In this chapter, we demonstrate Java's for, do...while and switch statements. Through a series of short examples using while and for, we explore the essentials of counter-controlled repetition. We devote a portion of the chapter (and Chapter 7) to expanding the GradeBook class presented in Chapters 3-4. In particular, we create a version of class GradeBook that uses a switch statement to count the number of A, B, C, D and F grade equivalents in a set of numeric grades entered by the user. We introduce the break and continue program control statements. We discuss Java's logical operators, which enable programmers to use more complex conditional expressions in control statements. Finally, we summarize Java's control statements and the proven problem-solving techniques presented in this chapter and Chapter 4.
5.2. Essentials of Counter-Controlled Repetition

This section uses the `while` repetition statement introduced in Chapter 4 to formalize the elements required to perform counter-controlled repetition. Counter-controlled repetition requires

1. a **control variable** (or loop counter)
2. the **initial value** of the control variable
3. the **increment** (or **decrement**) by which the control variable is modified each time through the loop (also known as **each iteration of the loop**)
4. the **loop-continuation condition** that determines whether looping should continue.

To see these elements of counter-controlled repetition, consider the application of Fig. 5.1, which uses a loop to display the numbers from 1 through 10. Note that Fig. 5.1 contains only one method, `main`, which does all of the class's work. For most applications in Chapters 34, we have encouraged the use of two separate filesone that declares a reusable class (e.g., `Account`) and one that instantiates one or more objects of that class (e.g., `AccountTest`) and demonstrates its (their) functionality. Occasionally, however, it is more appropriate simply to create one class whose `main` method concisely illustrates a basic concept. Throughout this chapter, we use several one-class examples like Fig. 5.1 to demonstrate the mechanics of Java's control statements.

Figure 5.1. Counter-controlled repetition with the `while` repetition statement.

```java
1 // Fig. 5.1: WhileCounter.java
2 // Counter-controlled repetition with the while repetition statement.
3
4 public class WhileCounter
5 {
6     public static void main( String args[] )
7     {
8         int counter = 1; // declare and initialize control variable
```
while (counter <= 10) // loop-continuation condition
{
    System.out.printf("%d ", counter);
    ++counter; // increment control variable by 1
}
} // end while
System.out.println(); // output a newline
} // end main
} // end class WhileCounter

In `main` of Fig. 5.1 (lines 617), the elements of counter-controlled repetition are defined in lines 8, 10 and 13. Line 8 declares the control variable (counter) as an `int`, reserves space for it in memory and sets its initial value to 1. Variable counter could also have been declared and initialized with the following local-variable declaration and assignment statements:

    int counter; // declare counter
    counter = 1; // initialize counter to 1

Line 12 in the `while` statement displays control variable counter's value during each iteration of the loop. Line 13 increments the control variable by 1 for each iteration of the loop. The loop-continuation condition in the `while` (line 10) tests whether the value of the control variable is less than or equal to 10 (the final value for which the condition is true). Note that the program performs the body of this `while` even when the control variable is 10. The loop terminates when the control variable exceeds 10 (i.e., counter becomes 11).

**Common Programming Error 5.1**

Because floating-point values may be approximate, controlling loops with floating-point variables may result in imprecise counter values and inaccurate termination tests.
Error-Prevention Tip 5.1

Control counting loops with integers.

Good Programming Practice 5.1

Place blank lines above and below repetition and selection control statements, and indent the statement bodies to enhance readability.

The program in Fig. 5.1 can be made more concise by initializing counter to 0 in line 8 and preincrementing counter in the while condition as follows:

```java
while ( ++counter <= 10 ) // loop-continuation condition
    System.out.printf( "%d ", counter );
```

This code saves a statement (and eliminates the need for braces around the loop's body), because the while condition performs the increment before testing the condition. (Recall from Section 4.12 that the precedence of ++ is higher than that of <=.) Coding in such a condensed fashion takes practice and might make code more difficult to read, debug, modify and maintain, and typically should be avoided.

Software Engineering Observation 5.1
"Keep it simple" remains good advice for most of the code you will write.
5.3. **for Repetition Statement**

Section 5.2 presented the essentials of counter-controlled repetition. The `while` statement can be used to implement any counter-controlled loop. Java also provides the `for` repetition statement, which specifies the counter-controlled-repetition details in a single line of code. Figure 5.2 reimplements the application in Fig. 5.1 using `for`.

**Figure 5.2. Counter-controlled repetition with the `for` repetition statement.**

```java
1 // Fig. 5.2: ForCounter.java
2 // Counter-controlled repetition with the for repetition statement.
3
4 public class ForCounter
5 {
6      public static void main( String args[] )
7     {
8          // for statement header includes initialization,
9          // loop-continuation condition and increment
10         for ( int counter = 1; counter <= 10; counter++ )
11             System.out.printf( "%d  ", counter );
12
13         System.out.println(); // output a newline
14     } // end main
15 } // end class ForCounter
```

The application's `main` method operates as follows: When the `for` statement (lines 10-11) begins executing, the control variable `counter` is declared and initialized to 1. (Recall from Section 5.2 that the first two elements of counter-
controlled repetition are the control variable and its initial value.) Next, the program checks the loop-continuation condition, `counter <= 10`, which is between the two required semicolons. Because the initial value of `counter` is 1, the condition initially is true. Therefore, the body statement (line 11) displays control variable `counter`'s value, namely 1. After executing the loop's body, the program increments `counter` in the expression `counter++`, which appears to the right of the second semicolon. Then the loop-continuation test is performed again to determine whether the program should continue with the next iteration of the loop. At this point, the control variable value is 2, so the condition is still true (the final value is not exceeded) thus, the program performs the body statement again (i.e., the next iteration of the loop). This process continues until the numbers 1 through 10 have been displayed and the `counter`'s value becomes 11, causing the loop-continuation test to fail and repetition to terminate (after 10 repetitions of the loop body at line 11). Then the program performs the first statement after the `for` in this case, line 13.

Note that Fig. 5.2 uses (in line 10) the loop-continuation condition `counter <= 10`. If the programmer incorrectly specified `counter < 10` as the condition, the loop would iterate only nine times. This mistake is a common logic error called an **off-by-one error**.

### Common Programming Error 5.2

Using an incorrect relational operator or an incorrect final value of a loop counter in the loop-continuation condition of a repetition statement can cause an off-by-one error.

### Good Programming Practice 5.2

Using the final value in the condition of a `while` or `for` statement and using the `<=` relational operator helps avoid off-by-one errors. For a loop that prints the values 1 to 10, the loop-continuation condition should be `counter <= 10` rather than `counter < 10` (which causes an off-by-one error) or `counter < 11` (which is correct). Many programmers prefer so-called zero-based counting, in which to count 10 times, `counter` would be initialized to zero and the loop-continuation test would be `counter < 10`. 
Figure 5.3 takes a closer look at the for statement in Fig. 5.2. The for's first line (including the keyword for and everything in parentheses after for) line 10 in Fig. 5.2 is sometimes called the for statement header, or simply the for header. Note that the for header "does it all" it specifies each of the items needed for counter-controlled repetition with a control variable. If there is more than one statement in the body of the for, braces ({ and }) are required to define the body of the loop.

Figure 5.3. for statement header components.  
(This item is displayed on page 184 in the print version)

The general format of the for statement is

```plaintext
for ( initialization; loopContinuationCondition; increment )
  statement
```

where the initialization expression names the loop's control variable and provides its initial value, loopContinuationCondition is the condition that determines whether the loop should continue executing and increment modifies the control variable's value (possibly an increment or decrement), so that the loop-continuation condition eventually becomes false. The two semicolons in the for header are required.
**Common Programming Error 5.3**

Using commas instead of the two required semicolons in a for header is a syntax error.

In most cases, the `for` statement can be represented with an equivalent `while` statement as follows:

```java
initialization;

while (loopContinuationCondition) {
  statement
  increment;
}
```

In **Section 5.7**, we show a case in which a `for` statement cannot be represented with an equivalent `while` statement.

Typically, `for` statements are used for counter-controlled repetition and `while` statements are used for sentinel-controlled repetition. However, `while` and `for` can each be used for either repetition type.

If the `initialization` expression in the `for` header declares the control variable (i.e., the control variable's type is specified before the variable name, as in **Fig. 5.2**), the control variable can be used only in that `for` statement and it will not exist outside the `for` statement. This restricted use of the name of the control variable is known as the variable's **scope**. The scope of a variable defines where it can be used in a program. For example, a local variable can be used only in the method that declares the variable and only from the point of declaration through the end of the method. Scope is discussed in detail in **Chapter 6**, Methods: A Deeper Look.

**Common Programming Error 5.4**

When a `for` statement's control variable is declared in the initialization section of the `for`'s header, using the control variable after the `for`'s body is
All three expressions in a `for` header are optional. If the `loopContinuationCondition` is omitted, Java assumes that the loop-continuation condition is always true, thus creating an infinite loop. You might omit the `initialization` expression if the program initializes the control variable before the loop. You might omit the `increment` expression if the program calculates the increment with statements in the loop's body or if no increment is needed. The increment expression in a `for` acts as if it were a stand-alone statement at the end of the `for`'s body. Therefore, the expressions

```java
counter = counter + 1
counter += 1
++counter
counter++
```

are equivalent increment expressions in a `for` statement. Many programmers prefer `counter++` because it is concise and because a `for` loop evaluates its increment expression after its body executes. Therefore, the postfix increment form seems more natural. In this case, the variable being incremented does not appear in a larger expression, so preincrementing and postincrementing actually have the same effect.

**Performance Tip 5.1**

*There is a slight performance advantage to preincrementing, but if you choose to postincrement because it seems more natural (as in a `for` header), optimizing compilers will generate Java byte-code that uses the more efficient form anyway.*
Good Programming Practice 5.3

In most cases, preincrementing and postincrementing are both used to add 1 to a variable in a statement by itself. In these cases, the effect is exactly the same, except that preincrementing has a slight performance advantage. Given that the compiler typically optimizes your code to help you get the best performance, use the idiom with which you feel most comfortable in these situations.

Common Programming Error 5.5

Placing a semicolon immediately to the right of the right parenthesis of a for header makes that for's body an empty statement. This is normally a logic error.

Error-Prevention Tip 5.2

Infinite loops occur when the loop-continuation condition in a repetition statement never becomes false. To prevent this situation in a counter-controlled loop, ensure that the control variable is incremented (or decremented) during each iteration of the loop. In a sentinel-controlled loop, ensure that the sentinel value is eventually input.

The initialization, loop-continuation condition and increment portions of a for statement can contain arithmetic expressions. For example, assume that \( x = 2 \) and \( y = 10 \). If \( x \) and \( y \) are not modified in the body of the loop, the statement

\[
\text{for ( int } j = x; j <= 4 * x * y; j += y / x )
\]
is equivalent to the statement

```
for ( int j = 2 ; j <= 80 ; j += 5 )
```

The increment of a `for` statement may also be negative, in which case it is really a decrement, and the loop counts downward.

If the loop-continuation condition is initially `false`, the program does not execute the `for` statement's body. Instead, execution proceeds with the statement following the `for`.

Programs frequently display the control variable value or use it in calculations in the loop body, but this use is not required. The control variable is commonly used to control repetition without mentioning the control variable in the body of the `for`.

**Error-Prevention Tip 5.3**

> Although the value of the control variable can be changed in the body of a `for` loop, avoid doing so, because this practice can lead to subtle errors.

The `for` statement's UML activity diagram is similar to that of the `while` statement (Fig. 4.4). **Figure 5.4** shows the activity diagram of the `for` statement in Fig. 5.2. The diagram makes it clear that initialization occurs once before the loop-continuation test is evaluated the first time, and that incrementing occurs each time through the loop after the body statement executes.

**Figure 5.4. UML activity diagram for the for statement in Fig. 5.2.**
Initialize control variable

int counter = 1

[couter <= 10] → Display the counter value → Increment the control variable

[couter > 10] → Determine whether looping should continue

System.out.printf("%d ", counter);
5.4. Examples Using the for Statement

The following examples show techniques for varying the control variable in a for statement. In each case, we write the appropriate for header. Note the change in the relational operator for loops that decrement the control variable.

1. Vary the control variable from 1 to 100 in increments of 1.

   ```c
   for ( int i = 1; i <= 100; i++ )
   ```

2. Vary the control variable from 100 to 1 in decrements of 1.

   ```c
   for ( int i = 100; i >= 1; i-- )
   ```

3. Vary the control variable from 7 to 77 in increments of 7.

   ```c
   for ( int i = 7; i <= 77; i += 7 )
   ```

4. Vary the control variable from 20 to 2 in decrements of 2.

   ```c
   for ( int i = 20; i >= 2; i -= 2 )
   ```

5. Vary the control variable over the following sequence of values: 2, 5, 8, 11, 14, 17, 20.

   ```c
   for ( int i = 2 ; i <= 20; i += 3 )
   ```

6. Vary the control variable over the following sequence of values: 99, 88, 77, 66, 55, 44, 33, 22, 11, 0.

   ```c
   for ( int i = 99; i >= 0; i -= 11 )
   ```

**Common Programming Error 5.6**

Not using the proper relational operator in the loop-continuation condition of a loop that counts downward (e.g., using i <= 1 instead of i >= 1 in a loop counting down to 1) is usually a logic error.
Application: Summing the Even Integers from 2 to 20

We now consider two sample applications that demonstrate simple uses of for. The application in Fig. 5.5 uses a for statement to sum the even integers from 2 to 20 and store the result in an int variable called total.

**Figure 5.5. Summing integers with the for statement.**

```
1  // Fig. 5.5: Sum.java
2  // Summing integers with the for statement.
3
4  public class Sum
5  {
6      public static void main( String args[] )
7      {
8          int total = 0; // initialize total
9
10         // total even integers from 2 through 20
11          for ( int number = 2; number <= 20; number += 2 )
12             total += number;
13
14          System.out.printf( "Sum is %d\n", total ); // display results
15      } // end main
16  } // end class Sum
```

```
Sum is 110
```

The initialization and increment expressions can be comma-separated lists of expressions that enable the programmer to use multiple initialization expressions or multiple increment expressions. For example, the body of the for statement in lines 11-12 of Fig. 5.5 could be merged into the increment portion of the for header by using a comma as follows:

```
for ( int number = 2 ; number <= 20; total += number, number += 2 )
```
Good Programming Practice 5.4

Limit the size of control statement headers to a single line if possible.

Good Programming Practice 5.5

Place only expressions involving the control variables in the initialization and increment sections of a for statement. Manipulations of other variables should appear either before the loop (if they execute only once, like initialization statements) or in the body of the loop (if they execute once per iteration of the loop, like increment or decrement statements).

Application: Compound Interest Calculations

The next application uses the for statement to compute compound interest. Consider the following problem:

A person invests $1,000 in a savings account yielding 5% interest. Assuming that all the interest is left on deposit, calculate and print the amount of money in the account at the end of each year for 10 years. Use the following formula to determine the amounts:

\[ a = p \ (1 + r)^n \]
where

\[ p \text{ is the original amount invested (i.e., the principal)} \]

\[ r \text{ is the annual interest rate (e.g., use 0.05 for 5\%)} \]

\[ n \text{ is the number of years} \]

\[ a \text{ is the amount on deposit at the end of the } n\text{th year.} \]

This problem involves a loop that performs the indicated calculation for each of the 10 years the money remains on deposit. The solution is the application shown in Fig. 5.6. Lines 8-10 in method main declare double variables amount, principal and rate, and initialize principal to 1000.0 and rate to 0.05. Java treats floating-point constants like 1000.0 and 0.05 as type double. Similarly, Java treats whole number constants like 7 and -22 as type int.

**Figure 5.6. Compound-interest calculations with for.**
(This item is displayed on page 189 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 5.6: Interest.java
2 // Compound-interest calculations with for.
3
4 public class Interest
5 {
6    public static void main( String args[] )
7    {
8        double amount; // amount on deposit at end of each year
9        double principal = 1000.0; // initial amount before interest
10       double rate = 0.05; // interest rate
11
12       // display headers
13       System.out.printf( "%s%20s
", "Year", "Amount on deposit" );
14
15       // calculate amount on deposit for each of ten years
16       for ( int year = 1; year <= 10; year++ )
17           {
18           // calculate new amount for specified year
19           amount = principal * Math.pow( 1.0 + rate, year );
20
21           // display the year and the amount
22           System.out.printf( "%4d%,20.2f\n", year, amount );
23           } // end for
24    } // end main
25 } // end class Interest
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Amount on deposit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1,050.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1,102.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1,157.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1,215.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1,276.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1,340.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1,407.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>1,477.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1,551.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1,628.89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Line 13 outputs the headers for this application's two columns of output. The first column displays the year, and the second column displays the amount on deposit at the end of that year. Note that we use the format specifier `%20s` to output the String "Amount on Deposit". The integer 20 between the % and the conversion character s indicates that the value output should be displayed with a **field width** of 20 that is, `printf` displays the value with at least 20 character positions. If the value to be output is less than 20 character positions wide (17 characters in this example), the value is **right justified** in the field by default. If the `year` value to be output were more than four character positions wide, the field width would be extended to the right to accommodate the entire value; this would push the `amount` field to the right, upsetting the neat columns of our tabular output. To indicate that values should be output **left justified**, simply precede the field width with the **minus sign () formatting flag**.

The **for** statement (lines 16-23) executes its body 10 times, varying control variable `year` from 1 to 10 in increments of 1. This loop terminates when control variable `year` becomes 11. (Note that `year` represents `n` in the problem statement.)

Classes provide methods that perform common tasks on objects. In fact, most methods must be called on a specific object. For example, to output text in **Fig. 5.6**, line 13 calls method `printf` on the `System.out` object. Many classes also provide methods that perform common tasks and do not require objects. Such methods are called **static methods**. For example, Java does not include an exponentiation operator, so the designers of Java's `Math` class defined static method `pow` for raising a value to a power. You can call a static method by specifying the class name followed by a dot (.) and the method name, as in
In **Chapter 6**, you will learn how to implement *static* methods in your own classes. We use *static* method `pow` of class `Math` to perform the compound interest calculation in **Fig. 5.6**. `Math.pow(x, y)` calculates the value of \( x \) raised to the \( y \)th power. The method receives two *double* arguments and returns a *double* value. Line 19 performs the calculation \( a = p(1 + r)^n \), where \( a \) is *amount*, \( p \) is *principal*, \( r \) is *rate* and \( n \) is *year*.

After each calculation, line 22 outputs the year and the amount on deposit at the end of that year. The year is output in a field width of four characters (as specified by `%4d`). The amount is output as a floating-point number with the format specifier `%.20.2f`. The *comma (,) formatting flag* indicates that the floating-point value should be output with a thousands separator. The actual separator used is specific to the user's locale (i.e., country). For example, in the United States, the number will be output using commas to separate the thousands and a decimal point to separate the fractional part of the number, as in 1,234.45. The number 20 in the format specification indicates that the value should be output right justified in a field width of 20 characters. The .2 specifies the formatted number's precisionin this case, the number is rounded to the nearest hundredth and output with two digits to the right of the decimal point.

We declared variables *amount*, *principal* and *rate*to be of type *double* in this example. We are dealing with fractional parts of dollars and thus need a type that allows decimal points in its values. Unfortunately, floating-point numbers can cause trouble. Here is a simple explanation of what can go wrong when using *double* (or *float*) to represent dollar amounts (assuming that dollar amounts are displayed with two digits to the right of the decimal point): Two *double* dollar amounts stored in the machine could be 14.234 (which would normally be rounded to 14.23 for display purposes) and 18.673 (which would normally be rounded to 18.67 for display purposes). When these amounts are added, they produce the internal sum 32.907, which would normally be rounded to 32.91 for display purposes. Thus, your output could appear as
14.23
+ 18.67
-------
32.91

but a person adding the individual numbers as displayed would expect the sum to be 32.90. You have been warned!

**Good Programming Practice 5.6**

*Do not use variables of type double (or float) to perform precise monetary calculations. The imprecision of floating-point numbers can cause errors that will result in incorrect monetary values. In the exercises, we explore the use of integers to perform monetary calculations. [Note: Some third-party vendors provide for-sale class libraries that perform precise monetary calculations. In addition, the Java API provides class java.math.BigDecimal for performing calculations with arbitrary precision floating-point values.]*

Note that the body of the for statement contains the calculation 1.0 + rate, which appears as an argument to the Math.pow method. In fact, this calculation produces the same result each time through the loop, so repeating the calculation every iteration of the loop is wasteful.

**Performance Tip 5.2**

*In loops, avoid calculations for which the result never changes; such calculations should typically be placed before the loop. [Note: Many of today’s sophisticated optimizing compilers will place such calculations outside loops in the compiled code.]*
5.5. **do...while** Repetition Statement

The **do...while** repetition statement is similar to the **while** statement. In the **while**, the program tests the loop-continuation condition at the beginning of the loop, before executing the loop's body. If the condition is false, the body never executes. The **do...while** statement tests the loop-continuation condition *after* executing the loop's body; therefore, the body always executes at least once. When a **do...while** statement terminates, execution continues with the next statement in sequence. **Figure 5.7** uses a **do...while** (lines 1014) to output the numbers 110.

**Figure 5.7. do...while repetition statement.**

```java
1  // Fig. 5.7: DoWhileTest.java
2  // do...while repetition statement.
3  public class DoWhileTest
4  {
5     public static void main( String args[] )
6     {
7         int counter = 1; // initialize counter
8         do
9             {
10                System.out.printf( "%d 
", counter );
11                ++counter;
12         } while ( counter <= 10 ); // end do...while
13     } // end main
14  } // end class DoWhileTest
```

Line 8 declares and initializes control variable `counter`. Upon entering the **do...while** statement, line 12 outputs `counter`'s value and line 13 increments...
counter. Then the program evaluates the loop-continuation test at the bottom of the loop (line 14). If the condition is true, the loop continues from the first body statement in the do...while (line 12). If the condition is false, the loop terminates and the program continues with the next statement after the loop.

Figure 5.8 contains the UML activity diagram for the do...while statement. This diagram makes it clear that the loop-continuation condition is not evaluated until after the loop performs the action state at least once. Compare this activity diagram with that of the while statement (Fig. 4.4). It is not necessary to use braces in the do...while repetition statement if there is only one statement in the body. However, most programmers include the braces, to avoid confusion between the while and do...while statements. For example,

```plaintext
while ( condition )
```

is normally the first line of a while statement. A do...while statement with no braces around a single-statement body appears as:

```plaintext
while ( condition )
```

which can be confusing. A reader may misinterpret the last line while ( condition ); as a while statement containing an empty statement (the semicolon by itself). Thus, the do...while statement with one body statement is usually written as follows:

```plaintext
do
{
    statement
} while ( condition );
```

Figure 5.8. do...while repetition statement UML activity diagram.
Good Programming Practice 5.7

Always include braces in a do...while statement, even if they are not necessary. This helps eliminate ambiguity between the while statement and a do...while statement containing only one statement.
5.6. switch Multiple-Selection Statement

We discussed the if single-selection statement and the if...else double-selection statement in Chapter 4. Java provides the switch multiple-selection statement to perform different actions based on the possible values of an integer variable or expression. Each action is associated with the value of a constant integral expression (i.e., a constant value of type byte, short, int or char, but not long) that the variable or expression on which the switch is based may assume.

GradeBook Class with switch Statement to Count A, B, C, D and F Grades

Figure 5.9 contains an enhanced version of the GradeBook class introduced in Chapter 3 and further developed in Chapter 4. The version of the class we now present not only calculates the average of a set of numeric grades entered by the user, but uses a switch statement to determine whether each grade is the equivalent of an A, B, C, D or F and to increment the appropriate grade counter. The class also displays a summary of the number of students who received each grade. Please refer to Fig. 5.10 for sample input and output of the GradeBook-Test application that uses class GradeBook to process a set of grades.

Figure 5.9. GradeBook class uses switch statement to count A, B, C, D and F grades.

(This item is displayed on pages 193 - 195 in the print version)
private int bCount; // count of B grades
private int cCount; // count of C grades
private int dCount; // count of D grades
private int fCount; // count of F grades

// constructor initializes courseName;
// int instance variables are initialized to 0 by default
public GradeBook( String name )
{
    courseName = name; // initializes courseName
} // end constructor

// method to set the course name
public void setCourseName( String name )
{
    courseName = name; // store the course name
} // end method setCourseName

// method to retrieve the course name
public String getCourseName()
{
    return courseName;
} // end method getCourseName

// display a welcome message to the GradeBook user
public void displayMessage()
{
    // getCourseName gets the name of the course
    System.out.printf("Welcome to the grade book for\n%s!\n\n", getCourseName());
} // end method displayMessage

// input arbitrary number of grades from user
public void inputGrades()
{
    Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );
    int grade; // grade entered by user
    System.out.printf( "%s
%s
%s
%s
", "Enter the integer grades in the range 0-100.", "Type the end-of-file indicator to terminate input: ", "On UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X type <ctrl> d then press Enter", "On Windows type <ctrl> z then press Enter ");

// loop until user enters the end-of-file indicator
while ( input.hasNext() )
{
    grade = input.nextInt(); // read grade
    total += grade; // add grade to total
    ++gradeCounter; // increment number of grades

    // call method to increment appropriate counter
    incrementLetterGradeCounter( grade );
} // end while
} // end method inputGrades

// add 1 to appropriate counter for specified grade
public void incrementLetterGradeCounter( int numericGrade )
{
    // determine which grade was entered
Figure 5.10. GradeBookTest creates a GradeBook object and invokes its methods.
Welcome to the grade book for
CS101 Introduction to Java Programming!

Enter the integer grades in the range 0-100.
Type the end-of-file indicator to terminate input:
  On UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X type <ctrl> d then press Enter
  On Windows type <ctrl> z then press Enter

99
92
45
57
63
71
76
85
90
100
^Z

Grade Report:
Total of the 10 grades entered is 778
Class average is 77.80
Number of students who received each grade:
A: 4
B: 1
C: 2
D: 1
F: 2
Like earlier versions of the class, class GradeBook (Fig. 5.9) declares instance variable courseName (line 7) and contains methods setCourseName (lines 2427), getCourseName (lines 3033) and displayMessage (lines 3641), which set the course name, store the course name and display a welcome message to the user, respectively. The class also contains a constructor (lines 1821) that initializes the course name.

Class GradeBook also declares instance variables total (line 8) and gradeCounter (line 9), which keep track of the sum of the grades entered by the user and the number of grades entered, respectively. Lines 1014 declare counter variables for each grade category. Class GradeBook maintains total, gradeCounter and the five letter-grade counters as instance variables so that these variables can be used or modified in any of the class's methods. Note that the class's constructor (lines 1821) sets only the course name, because the remaining seven instance variables are ints and are initialized to 0 by default.

Class GradeBook (Fig. 5.9) contains three additional methods inputGrades, incrementLetterGradeCounter and displayGradeReport. Method inputGrades (lines 4466) reads an arbitrary number of integer grades from the user using sentinel-controlled repetition and updates instance variables total and gradeCounter. Method inputGrades calls method incrementLetterGradeCounter (lines 6995) to update the appropriate letter-grade counter for each grade entered. Class GradeBook also contains method displayGradeReport (lines 98122), which outputs a report containing the total of all grades entered, the average of the grades and the number of students who received each letter grade. Let's examine these methods in more detail.

Line 48 in method inputGrades declares variable grade, which will store the user's input. Lines 5054 prompt the user to enter integer grades and to type the end-of-file indicator to terminate the input. The end-of-file indicator is a system-dependent keystroke combination which the user enters to indicate that there is no more data to input. In Chapter 14, Files and Streams, we will see how the end-of-file indicator is used when a program reads its input from a file.
On UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X systems, end-of-file is entered by typing the sequence

\[<\text{ctrl}> \text{d}\]
on a line by itself. This notation means to simultaneously press both the \text{ctrl} key and the \text{d} key. On Windows systems, end-of-file can be entered by typing

\[<\text{ctrl}> \text{z}\]

\textbf{Portability Tip 5.1}

The keystroke combinations for entering end-of-file are system dependent.

The \texttt{while} statement (lines 5765) obtains the user input. The condition at line 57 calls \texttt{Scanner} method \texttt{hasNext} to determine whether there is more data to input. This method returns the \texttt{boolean} value \texttt{true} if there is more data; otherwise, it returns \texttt{false}. The returned value is then used as the condition in the \texttt{while} statement. As long as the end-of-file indicator has not been typed, method \texttt{hasNext} will return \texttt{true}.

Line 59 inputs a grade value from the user. Line 60 uses the \texttt{+=} operator to add \texttt{grade} to \texttt{total}. Line 61 increments \texttt{gradeCounter}. The class's \texttt{displayGradeReport} method uses these variables to compute the average of the grades. Line 64 calls the class's \texttt{incrementLetterGradeCounter} method (declared in lines 6995) to increment the appropriate letter-grade counter based on the numeric grade entered.

Method \texttt{incrementLetterGradeCounter} contains a \texttt{switch} statement (lines 7294) that determines which counter to increment. In this example, we assume that the user enters a valid grade in the range 0100. A grade in the range 90100 represents A, 8089 represents B, 7079 represents C, 6069 represents D and
059 represents F. The `switch` statement consists of a block that contains a sequence of `case` labels and an optional `default case`. These are used in this example to determine which counter to increment based on the grade.

When the flow of control reaches the `switch`, the program evaluates the expression in the parentheses (`grade / 10`) following keyword `switch`. This is called the **controlling expression** of the `switch`. The program compares the value of the controlling expression (which must evaluate to an integral value of type `byte`, `char`, `short` or `int`) with each `case` label. The controlling expression in line 72 performs integer division, which truncates the fractional part of the result. Thus, when we divide any value for 0100 by 10, the result is always a value from 0 to 10. We use several of these values in our `case` labels. For example, if the user enters the integer 85, the controlling expression evaluates to the `int` value 8. The `switch` compares 8 with each `case`. If a match occurs (`case 8:` at line 79), the program executes the statements for that `case`. For the integer 8, line 80 increments `bCount`, because a grade in the 80s is a B. The `break` statement (line 81) causes program control to proceed with the first statement after the `switch` in this program, we reach the end of method `incrementLetterGradeCounter`'s body, so control returns to line 65 in method `inputGrades` (the first line after the call to `incrementLetterGradeCounter`). This line marks the end of the body of the `while` loop that inputs grades (lines 5765), so control flows to the `while`'s condition (line 57) to determine whether the loop should continue executing.

The `cases` in our `switch` explicitly test for the values 10, 9, 8, 7 and 6. Note the cases at lines 7475 that test for the values 9 and 10 (both of which represent the grade A). Listing cases consecutively in this manner with no statements between them enables the cases to perform the same set of statements when the controlling expression evaluates to 9 or 10, the statements in lines 7677 will execute. The `switch` statement does not provide a mechanism for testing ranges of values, so every value that must be tested should be listed in a separate `case` label. Note that each `case` can have multiple statements. The `switch` statement differs from other control statements in that it does not require braces around multiple statements in each `case.`

Without `break` statements, each time a match occurs in the `switch`, the statements for that case and subsequent cases execute until a `break` statement or the end of the `switch` is encountered. This is often referred to as "falling through" to the statements in subsequent `cases`. (This feature is perfect for writing a concise program that displays the iterative song "The Twelve Days of
Common Programming Error 5.7

Forgetting a *break* statement when one is needed in a *switch* is a logic error.

If no match occurs between the controlling expression's value and a *case* label, the *default* case (lines 9193) executes. We use the *default* case in this example to process all controlling-expression values that are less than 6, that is, all failing grades. If no match occurs and the *switch* does not contain a *default* case, program control simply continues with the first statement after the *switch*.

**GradeBookTest** Class that Demonstrates Class **GradeBook**

Class **GradeBookTest** *(Fig. 5.10)* creates a **GradeBook** object (lines 1011). Line 13 invokes the object's *displayMessage* method to output a welcome message to the user. Line 14 invokes the object's *inputGrades* method to read a set of grades from the user and keep track of the sum of all the grades entered and the number of grades. Recall that method *inputGrades* also calls method *incrementLetterGradeCounter* to keep track of the number of students who received each letter grade. Line 15 invokes method *displayGradeReport* of class **GradeBook**, which outputs a report based on the grades entered (as in the input/output window in *Fig. 5.10*). Line 103 of class **GradeBook** *(Fig. 5.9)* determines whether the user entered at least one grade; this helps us avoid dividing by zero. If so, line 106 calculates the average of the grades. Lines 109118 then output the total of all the grades, the class average and the number of students who received each letter grade. If no grades were entered, line 121 outputs an appropriate message. The output in *Fig. 5.10* shows a sample grade report based on 10 grades.

Note that class **GradeBookTest** *(Fig. 5.10)* does not directly call **GradeBook** method *incrementLetterGradeCounter* (lines 6995 of *Fig. 5.9*). This method is used exclusively by method *inputGrades* of class **GradeBook** to update the appropriate
letter-grade counter as each new grade is entered by the user. Method incrementLetterGradeCounter exists solely to support the operations of class GradeBook's other methods and thus could be declared private. Recall from Chapter 3 that methods declared with access modifier private can be called only by other methods of the class in which the private methods are declared. Such methods are commonly referred to as utility methods or helper methods because they can be called only by other methods of that class and are used to support the operation of those methods.

**switch Statement UML Activity Diagram**

Figure 5.11 shows the UML activity diagram for the general switch statement. Most switch statements use a break in each case to terminate the switch statement after processing the case. Figure 5.11 emphasizes this by including break statements in the activity diagram. The diagram makes it clear that the break statement at the end of a case causes control to exit the switch statement immediately.

**Figure 5.11. switch multiple-selection statement UML activity diagram with break statements.**

[View full size image]
The `break` statement is not required for the `switch`'s last `case` (or the `default` case, when it appears last), because execution continues with the next statement after the `switch`.

**Software Engineering Observation 5.2**

*Provide a `default` case in `switch` statements. Including a `default` case focuses you on the need to process exceptional conditions.*

**Good Programming Practice 5.8**

*Although each `case` and the `default` case in a `switch` can occur in any order, place the `default` case last. When the `default` case is listed last, the `break` for that case is not required. Some programmers include this `break` for clarity and symmetry with other cases.*
When using the `switch` statement, remember that the expression after each `case` can be only a constant integral expression — that is, any combination of integer constants that evaluates to a constant integer value (e.g., -7, 0 or 221). An integer constant is simply an integer value. In addition, you can use character constants — specific characters in single quotes, such as `'A'`, `'7'` or `'\$'` which represent the integer values of characters. (Appendix B, ASCII Character Set shows the integer values of the characters in the ASCII character set, which is a subset of the Unicode character set used by Java.)

The expression in each `case` also can be a constant variable — a variable that contains a value which does not change for the entire program. Such a variable is declared with keyword `final` (discussed in Chapter 6, Methods: A Deeper Look). J2SE 5.0 has a new feature called enumerations, which we also present in Chapter 6. Enumeration constants can also be used in `case` labels. In Chapter 10, Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism, we present a more elegant way to implement `switch` logic — we use a technique called polymorphism to create programs that are often clearer, easier to maintain and easier to extend than programs using `switch` logic.
5.7. **break and continue** Statements

In addition to selection and repetition statements, Java provides statements `break` and `continue` (presented in this section and Appendix K, Labeled `break` and `continue` Statements) to alter the flow of control. The preceding section showed how `break` can be used to terminate a `switch` statement's execution. This section discusses how to use `break` in a repetition statement.

In addition to the `break` and `continue` statements discussed in this section, Java provides the labeled `break` and `continue` statements for use in cases in which a programmer needs to conveniently alter the flow of control in nested control statements. We discuss the labeled `break` and `continue` statements in Appendix K.

**break** Statement

The `break` statement, when executed in a `while`, `for`, `do...while` or `switch`, causes immediate exit from that statement. Execution continues with the first statement after the control statement. Common uses of the `break` statement are to escape early from a loop or to skip the remainder of a `switch` (as in Fig. 5.9). **Figure 5.12** demonstrates a `break` statement exiting a `for`.

**Figure 5.12.** `break` statement exiting a `for` statement. 
(This item is displayed on page 201 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 5.12: BreakTest.java
// break statement exiting a for statement.
public class BreakTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        int count; // control variable also used after loop terminates
        for ( count = 1; count <= 10; count++ ) // loop 10 times
            {
                if ( count == 5 ) // if count is 5,
                    break; // terminate loop
                System.out.printf( "%d ", count );
            } // end for
        System.out.printf( "\nBroke out of loop at count = %d\n", count );
    }
}
```
When the if nested at line 11 in the for statement (lines 9-15) detects that \texttt{count} is 5, the \texttt{break} statement at line 12 executes. This terminates the for statement, and the program proceeds to line 17 (immediately after the for statement), which displays a message indicating the value of the control variable when the loop terminated. The loop fully executes its body only four times instead of 10.

\textbf{continue Statement}

The \texttt{continue} statement, when executed in a while, for or do...while, skips the remaining statements in the loop body and proceeds with the next iteration of the loop. In while and do...while statements, the program evaluates the loop-continuation test immediately after the \texttt{continue} statement executes. In a for statement, the increment expression executes, then the program evaluates the loop-continuation test.

\textbf{Figure 5.13} uses the continue statement in a for to skip the statement at line 12 when the nested if (line 9) determines that the value of \texttt{count} is 5. When the \texttt{continue} statement executes, program control continues with the increment of the control variable in the for statement (line 7).

\textbf{Figure 5.13.} \texttt{continue} statement terminating an iteration of a for statement.

(This item is displayed on pages 201 - 202 in the print version)
In Section 5.3, we stated that while could be used in most cases in place of for. The one exception occurs when the increment expression in the while follows a continue statement. In this case, the increment does not execute before the program evaluates the repetition-continuation condition, so the while does not execute in the same manner as the for.

Software Engineering Observation 5.3

Some programmers feel that break and continue violate structured programming. Since the same effects are achievable with structured programming techniques, these programmers do not use break or continue.
There is a tension between achieving quality software engineering and achieving the best-performing software. Often, one of these goals is achieved at the expense of the other. For all but the most performance-intensive situations, apply the following rule of thumb: First, make your code simple and correct; then make it fast and small, but only if necessary.
5.8. Logical Operators

The if, if...else, while, do...while and for statements each require a condition to determine how to continue a program's flow of control. So far, we have studied only simple conditions, such as count <= 10, number != sentinelValue and total > 1000. Simple conditions are expressed in terms of the relational operators >, <, >= and <= and the equality operators == and !=, and each expression tests only one condition. To test multiple conditions in the process of making a decision, we performed these tests in separate statements or in nested if or if...else statements. Sometimes, control statements require more complex conditions to determine a program's flow of control.

Java provides logical operators to enable programmers to form more complex conditions by combining simple conditions. The logical operators are && (conditional AND), || (conditional OR), & (boolean logical AND), | (boolean logical inclusive OR), ^ (boolean logical exclusive OR) and ! (logical NOT).

Conditional AND (&&) Operator

Suppose that we wish to ensure at some point in a program that two conditions are both true before we choose a certain path of execution. In this case, we can use the && (conditional AND) operator, as follows:

if ( gender == FEMALE && age >= 65 )
   ++seniorFemales;

This if statement contains two simple conditions. The condition gender == FEMALE compares variable gender to the constant FEMALE. This might be evaluated, for example, to determine whether a person is female. The condition age >= 65 might be evaluated to determine whether a person is a senior citizen. The if statement considers the combined condition

gender == FEMALE && age >= 65
which is true if and only if both simple conditions are true. If the combined condition is true, the if statement's body increments seniorFemales by 1. If either or both of the simple conditions are false, the program skips the increment. Some programmers find that the preceding combined condition is more readable when redundant parentheses are added, as in:

\[
( \text{gender} == \text{FEMALE} ) \&\& ( \text{age} \geq 65 )
\]

The table in Fig. 5.14 summarizes the \&\& operator. The table shows all four possible combinations of false and true values for expression1 and expression2. Such tables are called truth tables. Java evaluates to false or true all expressions that include relational operators, equality operators or logical operators.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>expression1</th>
<th>expression2</th>
<th>expression1 &amp;&amp; expression2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 5.14. \&\& (conditional AND) operator truth table.

Conditional OR (||) Operator

Now suppose that we wish to ensure that either or both of two conditions are true before we choose a certain path of execution. In this case, we use the || (conditional OR) operator, as in the following program segment:

```java
if ( ( semesterAverage \geq 90 ) || ( finalExam \geq 90 ) )
    System.out.println ( "Student grade is A" );
```
This statement also contains two simple conditions. The condition `semesterAverage >= 90` evaluates to determine whether the student deserves an A in the course because of a solid performance throughout the semester. The condition `finalExam >= 90` evaluates to determine whether the student deserves an A in the course because of an outstanding performance on the final exam. The `if` statement then considers the combined condition

\[
( \text{semesterAverage} \geq 90 ) \quad \text{||} \quad ( \text{finalExam} \geq 90 )
\]

and awards the student an A if either or both of the simple conditions are true. The only time the message "Student grade is A" is not printed is when both of the simple conditions are false. Figure 5.15 is a truth table for operator conditional OR (`||`). Operator `&&` has a higher precedence than operator `||`. Both operators associate from left to right.

| expression1 | expression2 | expression1 || expression2 |
|-------------|-------------|----------------|
| false       | false       | false          |
| false       | true        | true           |
| True        | false       | true           |
| true        | true        | True           |

Short-Circuit Evaluation of Complex Conditions

The parts of an expression containing `&&` or `||` operators are evaluated only until it is known whether the condition is true or false. Thus, evaluation of the
expression

\((\text{gender} == \text{FEMALE}) \&\& (\text{age} \geq 65)\)

stops immediately if \text{gender} is not equal to \text{FEMALE} (i.e., the entire expression is \text{false}) and continues if \text{gender} \text{is} equal to \text{FEMALE} (i.e., the entire expression could still be \text{true} if the condition \text{age} \geq 65 is \text{true}). This feature of conditional AND and conditional OR expressions is called \text{short-circuit evaluation}.

\textbf{Common Programming Error 5.8}

\textit{In expressions using operator \&\&, a condition we will call this the dependent condition may require another condition to be true for the evaluation of the dependent condition to be meaningful. In this case, the dependent condition should be placed after the other condition, or an error might occur. For example, in the expression \((i \neq 0) \&\& (10/i == 2)\), the second condition must appear after the first condition, or a divide-by-zero error might occur.}

\textbf{Boolean Logical AND (\&)} and \textbf{Boolean Logical OR (|)} Operators

The \textbf{boolean logical AND} (\&) and \textbf{boolean logical inclusive OR} (|) operators work identically to the \&\& (conditional AND) and || (conditional OR) operators, with one exception: The boolean logical operators always evaluate both of their operands (i.e., they do not perform short-circuit evaluation). Therefore, the expression

\((\text{gender} == 1) \& (\text{age} \geq 65)\)

evaluates \text{age} \geq 65 regardless of whether \text{gender} is equal to \text{1}. This is useful if the right operand of the boolean logical AND or boolean logical inclusive OR operator has a required \textbf{side effect} a modification of a variable's value. For
example, the expression

\[
( \text{birthday} == \text{true} ) \mid ( \text{++age} \geq 65 )
\]

guarantees that the condition \text{++age} \geq 65 will be evaluated. Thus, the variable \text{age} is incremented in the preceding expression, regardless of whether the overall expression is \text{true} or \text{false}.

**Error-Prevention Tip 5.4**

*For clarity, avoid expressions with side effects in conditions. The side effects may look clever, but they can make it harder to understand code and can lead to subtle logic errors.*

[Page 205]

**Boolean Logical Exclusive OR (\(^\))**

A simple condition containing the **boolean logical exclusive OR (\(^\))** operator is **true if and only if one of its operands is \text{True} and the other is \text{false}**. If both operands are \text{true} or both are \text{false}, the entire condition is \text{false}. Figure 5.16 is a truth table for the boolean logical exclusive OR operator (\(^\)). This operator is also guaranteed to evaluate both of its operands.

**Figure 5.16. \(^\) (boolean logical exclusive OR) operator truth table.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>expression1</th>
<th>expression2</th>
<th>expression1 ^ expression2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>TRue</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Logical Negation (!) Operator

The ! (logical NOT, also called logical negation or logical complement) operator enables a programmer to "reverse" the meaning of a condition. Unlike the logical operators &&, ||, &, | and ^, which are binary operators that combine two conditions, the logical negation operator is a unary operator that has only a single condition as an operand. The logical negation operator is placed before a condition to choose a path of execution if the original condition (without the logical negation operator) is false, as in the program segment

```java
if ( ! ( grade == sentinelValue ) )
    System.out.printf( "The next grade is %d\n", grade );
```

which executes the `printf` call only if `grade` is not equal to `sentinelValue`. The parentheses around the condition `grade == sentinelValue` are needed because the logical negation operator has a higher precedence than the equality operator.

In most cases, the programmer can avoid using logical negation by expressing the condition differently with an appropriate relational or equality operator. For example, the previous statement may also be written as follows:

```java
if ( grade != sentinelValue )
    System.out.printf( "The next grade is %d\n", grade );
```

This flexibility can help a programmer express a condition in a more convenient manner. Figure 5.17 is a truth table for the logical negation operator.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>expression</th>
<th>!expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>false</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Logical Operators Example

Figure 5.18 demonstrates the logical operators and boolean logical operators by producing their truth tables. The output shows the expression that was evaluated and the boolean result of that expression. The values of the boolean expressions are displayed with printf using the %b format specifier, which outputs the word "true" or the word "false" based on the expression's value. Lines 913 produce the truth table for &&. Lines 1620 produce the truth table for ||. Lines 2327 produce the truth table for &. Lines 3035 produce the truth table for ^. Lines 3843 produce the truth table for !.

Figure 5.18. Logical operators.
(This item is displayed on pages 206 - 207 in the print version)
// create truth table for | (boolean logical inclusive OR) operator
System.out.printf("%s
%s: %b
%s: %b
%s: %b
%s: %b

", "Boolean logical inclusive OR (|)", "false | false", (false | false), "false | true", (false | true), "true | false", (true | false), "true | true", (true | true));

// create truth table for ^ (boolean logical exclusive OR) operator
System.out.printf("%s
%s: %b
%s: %b
%s: %b
%s: %b

", "Boolean logical exclusive OR (^)", "false ^ false", (false ^ false), "false ^ true", (false ^ true), "true ^ false", (true ^ false), "true ^ true", (true ^ true));

// create truth table for ! (logical negation) operator
System.out.printf("%s
%s: %b
%s: %b
", "Logical NOT (!)", "!false", (!false), "!true", (!true));
Figure 5.19 shows the precedence and associativity of the Java operators introduced so far. The operators are shown from top to bottom in decreasing order of precedence.

Figure 5.19. Precedence/associativity of the operators discussed so far.
(This item is displayed on pages 207 - 208 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operators</th>
<th>Associativity</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>++ --</td>
<td>right to left</td>
<td>unary postfix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>++ - + - !</td>
<td>right to left</td>
<td>unary prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* / %</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>multiplicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ -</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>additive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; &lt;= &gt; &gt;=</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>relational</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-= !=</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>equality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&amp;</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>boolean logical AND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>boolean logical exclusive OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>left to right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&amp;&amp;</td>
<td>left to right</td>
<td>conditional AND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>??:</td>
<td>right to left</td>
<td>conditional</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.9. Structured Programming Summary

Just as architects design buildings by employing the collective wisdom of their profession, so should programmers design programs. Our field is younger than architecture, and our collective wisdom is considerably sparser. We have learned that structured programming produces programs that are easier than unstructured programs to understand, test, debug, modify and even prove correct in a mathematical sense.

Figure 5.20 uses UML activity diagrams to summarize Java's control statements. The initial and final states indicate the single entry point and the single exit point of each control statement. Arbitrarily connecting individual symbols in an activity diagram can lead to unstructured programs. Therefore, the programming profession has chosen a limited set of control statements that can be combined in only two simple ways to build structured programs.

Figure 5.20. Java's single-entry/single-exit sequence, selection and repetition statements.
(This item is displayed on page 209 in the print version)
For simplicity, only single-entry/single-exit control statements are used; there is only one way to enter and only one way to exit each control statement. Connecting control statements in sequence to form structured programs is simple. The final state of one control statement is connected to the initial state of the next control statement; that is, the control statements are placed one after another in a program in sequence. We call this "control-statement stacking." The rules for forming structured programs also allow for control statements to be nested.

Figure 5.21 shows the rules for forming structured programs. The rules
assume that action states may be used to indicate any action. The rules also assume that we begin with the simplest activity diagram (Fig. 5.22) consisting of only an initial state, an action state, a final state and transition arrows.

**Figure 5.21. Rules for forming structured programs.**
(This item is displayed on page 210 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rules for Forming Structured Programs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Begin with the simplest activity diagram (Fig. 5.22).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Any action state can be replaced by two action states in sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Any action state can be replaced by any control statement (sequence of action states, if, if...else, switch, while, do...while or for).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Rules 2 and 3 can be applied as often as you like and in any order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 5.22. Simplest activity diagram.**
(This item is displayed on page 210 in the print version)

[View full size image]

Applying the rules in Fig. 5.21 always results in a properly structured activity diagram with a neat, building-block appearance. For example, repeatedly applying rule 2 to the simplest activity diagram results in an activity diagram containing many action states in sequence (Fig. 5.23). Rule 2 generates a stack of control statements, so let us call rule 2 the **stacking rule**. [Note: The vertical dashed lines in Fig. 5.23 are not part of the UML. We use them to
Rule 3 is called the **nesting rule**. Repeatedly applying rule 3 to the simplest activity diagram results in an activity diagram with neatly nested control statements. For example, in Fig. 5.24, the action state in the simplest activity diagram is replaced with a double-selection (if...else) statement. Then rule 3 is applied again to the action states in the double-selection statement, replacing each of these action states with a double-selection statement. The dashed action-state symbols around each of the double-selection statements represent the action state that was replaced. [Note: The dashed arrows and dashed action state symbols shown in Fig. 5.24 are not part of the UML. They are used here to illustrate that any action state can be replaced with a control statement.]

Figure 5.24. Repeatedly applying the nesting rule (rule 3) of
Rule 4 generates larger, more involved and more deeply nested statements. The diagrams that emerge from applying the rules in Fig. 5.21 constitute the set of all possible structured activity diagrams and hence the set of all possible structured programs. The beauty of the structured approach is that we use only seven simple single-entry/single-exit control statements and assemble them in only two simple ways.

If the rules in Fig. 5.21 are followed, an "unstructured" activity diagram (like the one in Fig. 5.25) cannot be created. If you are uncertain about whether a particular diagram is structured, apply the rules of Fig. 5.21 in reverse to
Structured programming promotes simplicity. Bohm and Jacopini have given us the result that only three forms of control are needed to implement an algorithm:

- **Sequence**
- **Selection**
- **Repetition**

The sequence structure is trivial. Simply list the statements to execute in the order in which they should execute. Selection is implemented in one of three ways:

- **if** statement (single selection)
- **if...else** statement (double selection)
In fact, it is straightforward to prove that the simple `if` statement is sufficient to provide any form of selection—everything that can be done with the `if...else` statement and the `switch` statement can be implemented by combining `if` statements (although perhaps not as clearly and efficiently).

Repetition is implemented in one of three ways:

- `while` statement
- `do...while` statement
- `for` statement

It is straightforward to prove that the `while` statement is sufficient to provide any form of repetition. Everything that can be done with the `do...while` statement and the `for` statement can be done with the `while` statement (although perhaps not as conveniently).

Combining these results illustrates that any form of control ever needed in a Java program can be expressed in terms of

- `sequence`
- `if` statement (selection)
- `while` statement (repetition)

and that these can be combined in only two ways—stacking and nesting. Indeed, structured programming is the essence of simplicity.
5.10. (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Drawing Rectangles and Ovals

This section introduces two other shapes you can draw using the graphics features in Javarectangles and ovals. To draw rectangles and ovals, we call Graphics methods \texttt{drawRect} and \texttt{drawOval}, respectively, as demonstrated in \textbf{Fig. 5.26}.

\textbf{Figure 5.26. Drawing a cascade of shapes based on the user's choice.}

(This item is displayed on pages 213 - 214 in the print version)

\begin{verbatim}
1 // Fig. 5.26: Shapes.java
2 // Demonstrates drawing different shapes.
3 import java.awt.Graphics;
4 import javax.swing.JPanel;
5
6 public class Shapes extends JPanel
7 {
8     private int choice; // user's choice of which shape to draw
9
10     // constructor sets the user's choice
11     public Shapes(int userChoice)
12     {
13         choice = userChoice;
14     } // end Shapes constructor
15
16     // draws a cascade of shapes starting from the top left corner
17     public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
18     {
19         super.paintComponent(g);
20
21         for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
22         {
23             // pick the shape based on the user's choice
24             switch (choice)
25             {
26                 case 1: // draw rectangles
27                     g.drawRect(10 + i * 10, 10 + i * 10,
28                                 50 + i * 10, 50 + i * 10);
29                     break;
30                 case 2: // draw ovals
31                     g.drawOval(10 + i * 10, 10 + i * 10,
32                                 50 + i * 10, 50 + i * 10);
33                     break;
34             } // end switch
35         } // end for
36     } // end method paintComponent
\end{verbatim}
Line 6 begins the class declaration for Shapes, which extends JPanel.Shapes contains one instance variable, choice, declared on line 8, that determines whether paintComponent should draw rectangles or ovals. The Shapes constructor at lines 1114 initializes choice with the value passed in parameter userChoice.

Method paintComponent (lines 1736) performs the actual drawing. Remember, the first statement in every paintComponent method should be a call to super.paintComponent, as in line 19. The for statement (lines 2135) loops 10 times to draw 10 shapes. The switch statement (Lines 2434) chooses between drawing rectangles and drawing ovals.

If choice is 1, then the program draws a rectangle. Lines 2728 call Graphics method drawRect. Method drawRect requires four arguments. The first two arguments represent the x- and y-coordinates of the upper-left corner of the rectangle. The next two represent the width and the height of the rectangle. In this example, we start at a position 10 pixels down and 10 pixels right of the top-left corner, and every iteration of the loop moves the upper-left corner another 10 pixels down and to the right. The width and the height of the rectangle start at 50 pixels and increase by 10 pixels in each iteration.

If choice is 2, then the program performs a similar operation, drawing an oval instead of a rectangle. When drawing an oval, an imaginary rectangle called a bounding rectangle is created, and an oval that touches the midpoints of all four sides of the bounding rectangle is placed inside. Method drawOval (lines 3132) requires the same four arguments as method drawRect. The arguments specify the position and size of the bounding rectangle for the oval. The values passed to drawOval in this example are exactly the same as the values passed to drawRect in lines 2728. Since the width and height of the bounding rectangle are identical in this example, lines 2728 draw a circle. You may modify the program to draw both rectangles and ovals to see how drawOval and drawRect are related.

Figure 5.27 is responsible for handling input from the user and creating a window to display the appropriate drawing based on the user's response. Line 3 imports JFrame to handle the display, and Line 4 imports JOptionPane to handle the input.
Figure 5.27. Obtaining user input and creating a JFrame to display Shapes.
(This item is displayed on page 215 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 5.27: ShapesTest.java
// Test application that displays class Shapes.
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;

public class ShapesTest {
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        // obtain user's choice
        String input = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(
            "Enter 1 to draw rectangles\n" +
            "Enter 2 to draw ovals\n");

        int choice = Integer.parseInt(input); // convert input to int

        // create the panel with the user's input
        Shapes panel = new Shapes(choice);

        JFrame application = new JFrame(); // creates a new JFrame
        application.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
        application.add(panel); // add the panel to the frame
        application.setSize(300, 300); // set the desired size
        application.setVisible(true); // show the frame
    }
}
```

[View full size image]
Lines 1113 prompt the user with an input dialog and store the user's response in variable input. Line 15 uses Integer method parseInt to convert the String entered by the user to an int and stores the result in variable choice. An instance of class Shapes is created at line 18, with the user's choice passed to the constructor. Lines 20-25 perform the standard operations for creating and setting up a window: creating a frame, setting it to exit the application when closed, adding the drawing to the frame, setting the frame size and making it visible.

GUI and Graphics Case Study Exercises

Draw 12 concentric circles in the center of a JPanel (Fig. 5.28). The innermost circle should have a radius of 10 pixels, and each successive circle should have a radius 10 pixels larger than the previous one. Begin by finding the center of the JPanel. To get the upper-left corner of a circle, move up one radius and to the left one radius from the center. The width and height of the bounding rectangle is the diameter of the circle (twice the radius).

Figure 5.28. Drawing concentric circles.
5.2

Modify Exercise 5.16 from the end-of-chapter exercises to read input using dialogs and to display the bar chart using rectangles of varying lengths.
5.11. (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Identifying Objects' States and Activities

In *Section 4.15*, we identified many of the class attributes needed to implement the *ATM* system and added them to the class diagram in *Fig. 4.24*. In this section, we show how these attributes represent an object's state. We identify some key states that our objects may occupy and discuss how objects change state in response to various events occurring in the system. We also discuss the workflow, or *activities*, that objects perform in the *ATM* system. We present the activities of *BalanceInquiry* and *Withdrawal* transaction objects in this section.

**State Machine Diagrams**

Each object in a system goes through a series of states. An object's current state is indicated by the values of the object's attributes at a given time. *State machine diagrams* (commonly called *state diagrams*) model several states of an object and show under what circumstances the object changes state. Unlike the class diagrams presented in earlier case study sections, which focused primarily on the structure of the system, state diagrams model some of the behavior of the system.

*Figure 5.29* is a simple state diagram that models some of the states of an object of class *ATM*. The UML represents each state in a state diagram as a *rounded rectangle* with the name of the state placed inside it. A *solid circle* with an attached stick arrowhead designates the *initial state*. Recall that we modeled this state information as the *Boolean* attribute *userAuthenticated* in the class diagram of *Fig. 4.24*. This attribute is initialized to *false*, or the "User not authenticated" state, according to the state diagram.

---

*Figure 5.29. State diagram for the *ATM* object.*

[View full size image]
The arrows with stick arrowheads indicate transitions between states. An object can transition from one state to another in response to various events that occur in the system. The name or description of the event that causes a transition is written near the line that corresponds to the transition. For example, the ATM object changes from the "User not authenticated" state to the "User authenticated" state after the database authenticates the user. Recall from the requirements document that the database authenticates a user by comparing the account number and PIN entered by the user with those of an account in the database. If the database indicates that the user has entered a valid account number and the correct PIN, the ATM object transitions to the "User authenticated" state and changes its userAuthenticated attribute to a value of true. When the user exits the system by choosing the "exit" option from the main menu, the ATM object returns to the "User not authenticated" state.

**Software Engineering Observation 5.5**

Software designers do not generally create state diagrams showing every possible state and state transition for all attributes; there are simply too many of them. State diagrams typically show only key states and state transitions.

**Activity Diagrams**

Like a state diagram, an activity diagram models aspects of system behavior. Unlike a state diagram, an activity diagram models an object’s workflow (sequence of events) during program execution. An activity diagram models the actions the object will perform and in what order. The activity diagram in Fig. 5.30 models the actions involved in executing a balance-inquiry transaction. We assume that a BalanceInquiry object has already been initialized and assigned a valid account number (that of the current user), so the object knows which balance to retrieve. The diagram includes the actions that occur
after the user selects a balance inquiry from the main menu and before the
ATM returns the user to the main menu a BalanceInquiry object does not perform
or initiate these actions, so we do not model them here. The diagram begins
with retrieving the balance of the account from the database. Next, the
BalanceInquiry displays the balance on the screen. This action completes the
execution of the transaction. Recall that we have chosen to represent an
account balance as both the availableBalance and totalBalance attributes of class
Account, so the actions modeled in Fig. 5.30 refer to the retrieval and display of
both balance attributes.

Figure 5.30. Activity diagram for a BalanceInquiry object.
(This item is displayed on page 218 in the print version)

[View full size image]

The UML represents an action in an activity diagram as an action state
modeled by a rectangle with its left and right sides replaced by arcs curving
outward. Each action state contains an action expression for example, "get
balance of account from database" that specifies an action to be performed. An
arrow with a stick arrowhead connects two action states, indicating the order
in which the actions represented by the action states occur. The solid circle (at
the top of Fig. 5.30) represents the activity's initial statethe beginning of the
workflow before the object performs the modeled actions. In this case, the
transaction first executes the "get balance of account from database" action
expression. The transaction then displays both balances on the screen. The
solid circle enclosed in an open circle (at the bottom of Fig. 5.30) represents
the final state the end of the workflow after the object performs the modeled
actions. We used UML activity diagrams to illustrate the flow of control for the
control statements presented in Chapters 45.
Figure 5.31 shows an activity diagram for a withdrawal transaction. We assume that a Withdrawal object has been assigned a valid account number. We do not model the user selecting a withdrawal from the main menu or the ATM returning the user to the main menu because these are not actions performed by a Withdrawal object. The transaction first displays a menu of standard withdrawal amounts (shown in Fig. 2.19) and an option to cancel the transaction. The transaction then receives a menu selection from the user. The activity flow now arrives at a decision (a fork indicated by the small diamond symbol). [ Note: A decision was known as a branch in earlier versions of the UML.] This point determines the next action based on the associated guard condition (in square brackets next to the transition), which states that the transition occurs if this condition is met. If the user cancels the transaction by choosing the "cancel" option from the menu, the activity flow immediately skips to the final state. Note the merge (indicated by the small diamond symbol) where the cancellation flow of activity joins the main flow of activity before reaching the activity's final state. If the user selects a withdrawal amount from the menu, Withdrawal sets amount (an attribute originally modeled in Fig. 4.24) to the value chosen by the user.

Figure 5.31. Activity diagram for a withdrawal transaction.
(This item is displayed on page 219 in the print version)

[View full size image]
After setting the withdrawal amount, the transaction retrieves the available balance of the user's account (i.e., the `availableBalance` attribute of the user's `Account` object) from the database. The activity flow then arrives at another decision. If the requested withdrawal amount exceeds the user's available balance, the system displays an appropriate error message informing the user of the problem, then returns to the beginning of the activity diagram and prompts the user to input a new amount. If the requested withdrawal amount is less than or equal to the user's available balance, the transaction proceeds. The transaction next tests whether the cash dispenser has enough cash remaining to satisfy the withdrawal request. If it does not, the transaction displays an appropriate error message, then returns to the beginning of the activity diagram and prompts the user to choose a new amount. If sufficient
cash is available, the transaction interacts with the database to debit the withdrawal amount from the user's account (i.e., subtract the amount from both the `availableBalance` and `totalBalance` attributes of the user's `Account` object). The transaction then dispenses the desired amount of cash and instructs the user to take the cash that is dispensed. Finally, the main flow of activity merges with the cancellation flow of activity before reaching the final state.

We have taken the first steps in modeling the behavior of the ATM system and have shown how an object's attributes participate in performing the object's activities. In Section 6.14, we investigate the behaviors for all classes to give a more accurate interpretation of the system behavior by "filling in" the third compartments of the classes in our class diagram.

Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

5.1 State whether the following statement is true or false, and if false, explain why: State diagrams model structural aspects of a system.

5.2 An activity diagram models the _________ that an object performs and the order in which it performs them.

1. actions
2. attributes
3. states
4. state transitions

5.3 Based on the requirements document, create an activity diagram for a deposit transaction.

Answers to Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

5.1 False. State diagrams model some of the behavior of a system.

5.2 a.

*Figure 5.32* presents an activity diagram for a deposit transaction. The diagram models the actions that
occur after the user chooses the deposit option from the main menu and before the ATM returns the user to the main menu. Recall that part of receiving a deposit amount from the user involves converting an integer number of cents to a dollar amount. Also recall that crediting a deposit amount to an account involves increasing only the `totalBalance` attribute of the user’s `Account` object. The bank updates the `availableBalance` attribute of the user’s `Account` object only after confirming the amount of cash in the deposit envelope and after the enclosed checks clear this occurs independently of the ATM system.

**Figure 5.32. Activity diagram for a deposit transaction.**
(This item is displayed on page 221 in the print version)

[View full size image]
5.12. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, we completed our introduction to Java's control statements, which enable programmers to control the flow of execution in methods. Chapter 4 discussed Java's \texttt{if}, \texttt{if...else} and \texttt{while} statements. The current chapter demonstrated Java's remaining control statements \texttt{for}, \texttt{do...while} and \texttt{switch}. We have shown that any algorithm can be developed using combinations of the sequence structure (i.e., statements listed in the order in which they should execute), the three types of selection statements \texttt{if}, \texttt{if...else} and \texttt{switch} and the three types of repetition statements \texttt{while}, \texttt{do...while} and \texttt{for}. In this chapter and Chapter 4, we have discussed how programmers can combine these building blocks to utilize proven program-construction and problem-solving techniques. This chapter also introduced Java's logical operators, which enable programmers to use more complex conditional expressions in control statements.

In Chapter 3, we introduced the basic concepts of objects, classes and methods. Chapter 4 and this chapter provided a thorough introduction to the types of control statements that programmers use to specify program logic in methods. In Chapter 6, we examine methods in greater depth.
Summary

- The `for` repetition statement specifies the details of counter-controlled-repetition. The general format of the `for` statement is

  ```java
  for ( initialization; loopContinuationCondition; increment )
  statement
  ```

  where the `initialization` expression names the loop's control variable and provides its initial value, `loopContinuationCondition` is the condition that determines whether the loop should continue executing and `increment` modifies the control variable's value, so that the loop-continuation condition eventually becomes false.

- Typically, `for` statements are used for counter-controlled repetition and `while` statements are used for sentinel-controlled repetition.

The scope of a variable defines where it can be used in a program. For example, a local variable can be used only in the method that declares the variable and only from the point of declaration through the end of the method.

- The initialization, loop-continuation condition and increment portions of a `for` statement can contain arithmetic expressions. The increment of a `for` statement may also be negative, in which case it is really a decrement, and the loop counts downward.

- If the loop-continuation condition in a `for` header is initially `false`, the program does not execute the `for` statement's body. Instead, execution proceeds with the statement following the `for`.

- The format specifier `%20s` outputs a `String` with a field width of 20 (i.e., at least 20 character positions). If the value to be output is less than 20 character positions wide, the value is right justified in the field by default. A value can be output left justified by simply preceding the field width with
Methods that perform common tasks and do not require objects are called static methods.

Java does not include an exponentiation operator. Instead, `Math.pow(x, y)` can be used to calculate the value of \( x \) raised to the \( y \)th power. The method receives two `double` arguments and returns a `double` value.

The comma (,) formatting flag in a format specifier (e.g., `%20.2f`) indicates that a value should be output with a thousands separator.

The `do...while` statement tests the loop-continuation condition after executing the loop's body; therefore, the body always executes at least once. The format for the `do...while` statement is

```java
    do
    {
        statement
    } while ( condition );
```

The `switch` multiple-selection statement performs different actions based on the possible values of an integer variable or expression. Each action is associated with the value of a constant integral expression (i.e., a constant value of type `byte`, `short`, `int` or `char`, but not `long`) that the variable or expression on which the `switch` is based may assume. The `switch` statement consists of a block containing a sequence of `case` labels and an optional `default` case.

The expression in parentheses following keyword `switch` is called the controlling expression of the `switch`. A program compares the value of the controlling expression with each `case` label, and if a match occurs, the program executes the statements for that `case`.

The `switch` statement does not provide a mechanism for testing ranges of values, so every value that must be tested should be listed in a separate `case` label.

Listing cases consecutively with no statements between them enables those cases to perform the same set of statements.
• Each case can have multiple statements. The switch statement differs from other control statements in that it does not require braces around multiple statements in each case.

• Most switch statements use a break in each case to terminate the switch statement after processing the case.

• The end-of-file indicator is a system-dependent keystroke combination which indicates that there is no more data to input.

• Scanner method hasNext determines whether there is more data to input. This method returns the boolean value True if there is more data; otherwise, it returns false.

• The break statement, when executed in one of the repetition statements, causes immediate exit from that statement. Execution continues with the first statement after the control statement.

[Page 223]

• The continue statement, when executed in a while, for or do...while, skips the remaining statements in the loop body and proceeds with the next iteration of the loop.

• Logical operators enable programmers to form complex conditions by combining simple conditions. The logical operators are && (conditional AND), || (conditional OR), & (boolean logical AND), | (boolean logical inclusive OR), ^ (boolean logical exclusive OR) and ! (logical NOT).

• The && (conditional AND) operator can be used to ensure that two conditions are both true before choosing a certain path of execution.

• The || (conditional OR) operator can be used to ensure that either or both of two conditions are true before choosing a certain path of execution.

• The parts of an expression containing && or || operators are evaluated only until it is known whether the condition is true or false. This feature of conditional AND and conditional OR expressions is called short-circuit evaluation.
• The boolean logical AND (\&) and boolean logical inclusive OR (|) operators work identically to the && (conditional AND) and || (conditional OR) operators, with one exception: The boolean logical operators always evaluate both of their operands (i.e., they do not perform short-circuit evaluation).

• A simple condition containing the boolean logical exclusive OR (^) operator is True if and only if one of its operands is True and the other is false. If both operands are True or both are false, the entire condition is false.

• The ! (logical NOT, also called logical negation or logical complement) operator enables a programmer to "reverse" the meaning of a condition. The logical negation operator is placed before a condition to choose a path of execution if the original condition (without the logical negation operator) is false. In most cases, the programmer can avoid using logical negation by expressing the condition differently with an appropriate relational or equality operator.

• Unlike the logical operators &&, ||, &, | and ^, which are binary operators that combine two conditions, the logical negation operator is a unary operator that has only a single condition as an operand.

• The %b format specifier causes the value of a boolean expression to be output as the word "true" or the word "false" based on the expression's value.

• Any form of control ever needed in a Java program can be expressed in terms of sequence, selection and repetition statements, and these can be combined in only two ways: stacking and nesting.
Terminology

\!, logical not operator

\&\&, boolean logical AND operator

\&&, conditional AND operator

\|\|, boolean logical OR operator

\|||, conditional OR operator

^, boolean logical exclusive OR operator

boolean logical AND (\&)

boolean logical exclusive OR (^)

boolean logical inclusive OR (\|)

break statement

case label

character constant

conditional AND (\&&)

conditional OR (\|||)

constant integral expression

constant variable

continue statement
control variable

controlling expression of a switch

decrement a control variable

default case in switch

do...while repetition statement

final keyword

for header

for repetition statement

for statement header

increment a control variable

initial value

[Page 224]

iteration of a loop

logical complement (!)

logical negation (!)

logical operators

loop-continuation condition

multiple selection

nested control statements

nesting rule
off-by-one error

repetition statement

scope of a variable

short-circuit evaluation

side effect

simple condition

single-entry/single-exit control statements

stacked control statements

stacking rule

static method

switch selection statement

truth table
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Typically, ________ statements are used for counter-controlled repetition and statements are used for sentinel-controlled repetition.

2. The **do...while** statement tests the loop-continuation condition ________ executing the loop's body; therefore, the body always executes at least once.

3. The ________ statement selects among multiple actions based on the possible values of an integer variable or expression.

4. The ________ statement, when executed in a repetition statement, skips the remaining statements in the loop body and proceeds with the next iteration of the loop.

5. The ________ operator can be used to ensure that two conditions are both true before choosing a certain path of execution.

6. If the loop-continuation condition in a **for** header is initially ________, the program does not execute the **for** statement's body.

7. Methods that perform common tasks and do not require objects are called ________ methods.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. The default case is required in the **switch** selection statement.

2. The break statement is required in the last case of a **switch** selection statement.

3. The expression ( (x > y) && (a < b) ) is true if either x > y is true or a < b is true.

4. An expression containing the **||** operator is true if either or both of its operands are true.

5. The comma (, ) formatting flag in a format specifier (e.g., %,20.2f) indicates that a value should be output with a thousands separator.

6. To test for a range of values in a **switch** statement, use a hyphen (-) between the start and end values of the range in a case label.

7. Listing cases consecutively with no statements between them enables the cases to perform the same set of statements.

Write a Java statement or a set of Java statements to accomplish each of the following tasks:

1. Sum the odd integers between 1 and 99, using a **for** statement. Assume that the integer variables **sum** and **count** have been declared.

2. Calculate the value of 2.5 raised to the power of 3, using the **pow** method.

3. Print the integers from 1 to 20, using a **while** loop and the counter variable **i**. Assume that the variable **i** has been declared, but not initialized. Print only five integers per line. [**Hint** : Use the calculation i % 5. When the value of this expression is 0, print a newline character; otherwise, print a tab character. Assume that this code is an application. Use the **System.out.println()** method to output the newline character, and use the **System.out.print('\t')** method to output the tab character.]
4. Repeat part (c), using a for statement.

Find the error in each of the following code segments, and explain how to correct it:

1. \( i = 1; \)
   \[
   \text{while (} i \leq 10 \text{);}
   \text{ }
   i++;
   \]

2. \(\text{for (} k = 0.1; k != 1.0; k += 0.1 \text{) \}
   \text{System.out.println( } k \text{);}\)

3. \(\text{switch (} n \text{)}
   \{
   \text{case 1:}
   \text{System.out.println( } "The number is 1" \text{);}
   \text{case 2:}
   \text{System.out.println( } "The number is 2" \text{);}
   \text{break;}
   \text{default:}
   \text{System.out.println( } "The number is not 1 or 2" \text{);}
   \text{break;}
   \}

4. The following code should print the values 1 to 10:
   \[
   \text{n = 1 ;}
   \text{while (} n < > 10 \text{)}
   \text{System.out.println( } n++ \text{);}\]
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

5.1 a) for, while. b) after. c) switch. d) continue. e) \&\& (conditional AND). f) false. g) static.

5.2 a) False. The default case is optional. If no default action is needed, then there is no need for a default case. b) False. The break statement is used to exit the switch statement. The break statement is not required for the last case in a switch statement. c) False. Both of the relational expressions must be true for the entire expression to be true when using the \&\& operator. d) True. e) True. f) False. The switch statement does not provide a mechanism for testing ranges of values, so every value that must be tested should be listed in a separate case label. g) True.

1. sum = 0;
   for ( count = 1; count <= 99; count += 2 )
       sum += count;

2. double result = Math.pow( 2.5, 3 ) ;

3. i = 1;

   while ( i <= 20 )
   {
      System.out.print( i );

      if ( i % 5 == 0 )
          System.out.println();
      else
          System.out.print( '\t' );
      ++i;
   }

4. for ( i = 1 ; i <= 20; i++ )
   {
      System.out.print( i );

      if ( i % 5 == 0 )
          System.out.println();
      else
          System.out.print( '\t' );
   }
1. Error: The semicolon after the `while` header causes an infinite loop, and there is a missing left brace.

Correction: Replace the semicolon by a `{`, or remove both the ; and the }.

2. Error: Using a floating-point number to control a `for` statement may not work, because floating-point numbers are represented only approximately by most computers.

Correction: Use an integer, and perform the proper calculation in order to get the values you desire:

```java
for ( k = 1; k != 10; k++ )
    System.out.println( (double) k / 10 );
```

3. Error: The missing code is the `break` statement in the statements for the first `case`.

Correction: Add a `break` statement at the end of the statements for the first case. Note that this omission is not necessarily an error if the programmer wants the statement of `case 2:` to execute every time the `case 1:` statement executes.

4. Error: An improper relational operator is used in the `while` repetition-continuation condition.

Correction: Use `<=` rather than `<`, or change 10 to 11.
Exercises

5.5 Describe the four basic elements of counter-controlled repetition.

5.6 Compare and contrast the while and for repetition statements.

5.7 Discuss a situation in which it would be more appropriate to use a do...while statement than a while statement. Explain why.

5.8 Compare and contrast the break and continue statements.

Find and correct the error(s) in each of the following segments of code:

1. for ( i = 100, i >= 1, i++ )
   System.out.println( i );

2. The following code should print whether integer value is odd or even:

   switch ( value % 2 )
   {
     case 0:
       System.out.println( "Even integer" );
     case 1:
       System.out.println( "Odd integer" );
   }

5.9 3. The following code should output the odd integers from 19 to 1:

   for ( i = 19; i >= 1; i += 2 )
   System.out.println( i );

4. The following code should output the even integers from 2 to 100:

   counter = 2;
   do
   {
     System.out.println( counter );
     counter += 2;
   } While ( counter < 100 );

What does the following program do?

```java
public class Printing {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        for ( int i = 1; i <= 10; i++ )
```
```java
for ( int j = 1; j <= 5; j++ )
    System.out.print( '@' );

System.out.println();
}

// end main

// end class Printing

5.11 Write an application that finds the smallest of several integers. Assume that the first value read specifies
the number of values to input from the user.

5.12 Write an application that calculates the product of the odd integers from 1 to 15.

Factorials are used frequently in probability problems. The factorial of a positive integer \( n \) (written \( n! \) and
pronounced " \( n \) factorial") is equal to the product of the positive integers from 1 to \( n \). Write an
application that evaluates the factorials of the integers from 1 to 5. Display the results in tabular format.
What difficulty might prevent you from calculating the factorial of 20?

5.13 Modify the compound-interest application of Fig. 5.6 to repeat its steps for interest rates of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9
and 10%. Use a for loop to vary the interest rate.

5.14 Write an application that displays the following patterns separately, one below the other. Use for loops to
generate the patterns. All asterisks (*) should be printed by a single statement of the form
System.out.print( '*' ); which causes the asterisks to print side by side. A statement of the form
System.out.println(); can be used to move to the next line. A statement of the form System.out.print( ' ' );
can be used to display a space for the last two patterns. There should be no other output
statements in the program. [Hint: The last two patterns require that each line begin with an appropriate
number of blank spaces.]

1. *
   **
   ***
   ****
   *****
   2. *********
   3. **********

5.15
One interesting application of computers is to display graphs and bar charts. Write an application that reads five numbers between 1 and 30. For each number that is read, your program should display the same number of adjacent asterisks. For example, if your program reads the number 7, it should display *******.

5.16

A mail-order house sells five products whose retail prices are as follows: Product 1, $2.98; product 2, $4.50; product 3, $9.98; product 4, $4.49 and product 5, $6.87. Write an application that reads a series of pairs of numbers as follows:

1. product number
2. quantity sold

Your program should use a switch statement to determine the retail price for each product. It should calculate and display the total retail value of all products sold. Use a sentinel-controlled loop to determine when the program should stop looping and display the final results.

5.17

Modify the application in Fig. 5.6 to use only integers to calculate the compound interest. [Hint: Treat all monetary amounts as integral numbers of pennies. Then break the result into its dollars and cents portions by using the division and remainder operations, respectively. Insert a period between the dollars and the cents portions.]

5.18

Assume that $i = 1$, $j = 2$, $k = 3$ and $m = 2$. What does each of the following statements print?

1. System.out.println( i == 1 );
2. System.out.println( j == 3 );
3. System.out.println( ( i >= 1 ) && ( j < 4 ) );
4. System.out.println( ( m <= 99 ) && ( k < m ) );
5. System.out.println( ( j >= i ) || ( k == m ) );
6. System.out.println( ( k + m < j ) || ( 3 - j >= k ) );
7. System.out.println( !( k > m ) );
Calculate the value of π from the infinite series

\[ \pi = 4 - \frac{4}{3} + \frac{4}{5} - \frac{4}{7} + \frac{4}{9} - \frac{4}{11} + \ldots \]

5.20

Print a table that shows the value of π approximated by computing one term of this series, by two terms, by three terms, and so on. How many terms of this series do you have to use before you first get 3.14? 3.141? 3.1415? 3.14159?

(Pythagorean Triples) A right triangle can have sides whose lengths are all integers. The set of three integer values for the lengths of the sides of a right triangle is called a Pythagorean triple. The lengths of the three sides must satisfy the relationship that the sum of the squares of two of the sides is equal to the square of the hypotenuse. Write an application to find all Pythagorean triples for \texttt{side1}, \texttt{side2} and the \texttt{hypotenuse}, all no larger than 500. Use a triple-nested for loop that tries all possibilities. This method is an example of "brute-force" computing. You will learn in more advanced computer science courses that there are large numbers of interesting problems for which there is no known algorithmic approach other than using sheer brute force.

5.21

Modify Exercise 5.15 to combine your code from the four separate triangles of asterisks such that all four patterns print side by side. Make clever use of nested \texttt{for} loops.

(De Morgan’s Laws) In this chapter, we have discussed the logical operators \&\&, \&, ||, |, ^ and !. DeMorgan’s Laws can sometimes make it more convenient for us to express a logical expression. These laws state that the expression \( !((\text{condition1} \&\& \text{condition2}) \) is logically equivalent to the expression \( !(\text{condition1} \| \! \text{condition2}) \). Also, the expression \( !(\text{condition1} \| \! \text{condition2}) \) is logically equivalent to the expression \( !(\text{condition1} \&\& \! \text{condition2}) \). Use De Morgan’s Laws to write equivalent expressions for each of the following, then write an application to show that both the original expression and the new expression in each case produce the same value:

5.23

1. \( !(x < 5) \&\& !(y \geq 7) \)
2. \( !(a == b) || !(g != 5) \)
3. \( !(x <= 8) \&\& (y > 4) \)
4. \( !(i > 4) \| (j <= 6) \)

Write an application that prints the following diamond shape. You may use output statements that print a single asterisk (*), a single space or a single newline character. Maximize your use of repetition (with nested for statements), and minimize the number of output statements.

5.24

```
  *
 ***
 ****
********
*********
**********
***********
  *.```
Modify the application you wrote in Exercise 5.24 to read an odd number in the range 1 to 19 to specify the number of rows in the diamond. Your program should then display a diamond of the appropriate size.

A criticism of the `break` statement and the `continue` statement is that each is unstructured. Actually, `break` statements and `continue` statements can always be replaced by structured statements, although doing so can be awkward. Describe in general how you would remove any `break` statement from a loop in a program and replace that statement with some structured equivalent. [Hint: The `break` statement exits a loop from the body of the loop. The other way to exit is by failing the loop-continuation test. Consider using in the loop-continuation test a second test that indicates "early exit because of a 'break' condition." ] Use the technique you develop here to remove the `break` statement from the application in Fig 5.12.

What does the following program segment do?

```java
for ( i = 1; i <= 5; i++ )
{
    for ( j = 1; j <= 3; j++ )
    {
        for ( k = 1; k <= 4; k++ )

            System.out.print( '*' );

        System.out.println();
    } // end inner for
}
} // end outer for
```

Describe in general how you would remove any `continue` statement from a loop in a program and replace it with some structured equivalent. Use the technique you develop here to remove the `continue` statement from the program in Fig 5.13.

("The Twelve Days of Christmas" Song) Write an application that uses repetition and `switch` statements to print the song "The Twelve Days of Christmas." One `switch` statement should be used to print the day (i.e., "First," "Second," etc.). A separate `switch` statement should be used to print the remainder of each verse. Visit the Web site www.12days.com/library/carols/12daysofxmas.htm for the complete lyrics of the song.
Chapter 6. Methods: A Deeper Look

The greatest invention of the nineteenth century was the invention of the method of invention.

Alfred North Whitehead

Call me Ishmael.

Herman Melville

When you call me that, smile!

Owen Wister

Answer me in one word.

William Shakespeare

O! call back yesterday, bid time return.

William Shakespeare

There is a point at which methods devour themselves.

Frantz Fanon

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- How static methods and fields are associated with an entire class rather than specific instances of the class.

- To use common Math methods available in the Java API.

- To understand the mechanisms for passing information between methods.

- How the method call/return mechanism is supported by the method call stack and activation records.
• How packages group related classes.

• How to use random-number generation to implement game-playing applications.

• To understand how the visibility of declarations is limited to specific regions of programs.

• What method overloading is and how to create overloaded methods.

Outline

6.1 Introduction

6.2 Program Modules in Java

6.3 static Methods, static Fields and Class Math

6.4 Declaring Methods with Multiple Parameters

6.5 Notes on Declaring and Using Methods

6.6 Method Call Stack and Activation Records

6.7 Argument Promotion and Casting

6.8 Java API Packages

6.9 Case Study: Random-Number Generation

   6.9.1 Generalized Scaling and Shifting of Random Numbers

   6.9.2 Random-Number Repeatability for Testing and Debugging

6.10 Case Study: A Game of Chance (Introducing Enumerations)

6.11 Scope of Declarations

6.12 Method Overloading

6.13 (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Colors and Filled Shapes
6.1. Introduction

Most computer programs that solve real-world problems are much larger than the programs presented in the first few chapters of this book. Experience has shown that the best way to develop and maintain a large program is to construct it from small, simple pieces, or **modules**. This technique is called **divide and conquer**. We introduced methods in Chapter 3. In Chapter 6, we study methods in more depth. We emphasize how to declare and use methods to facilitate the design, implementation, operation and maintenance of large programs.

You will see that it is possible for certain methods, called **static** methods, to be called without the need for an object of the class to exist. You will learn how to declare a method with more than one parameter. You will also learn how Java is able to keep track of which method is currently executing, how local variables of methods are maintained in memory and how a method knows where to return after it completes execution.

We will take a brief diversion into simulation techniques with random-number generation and develop a version of the casino dice game called craps that will use most of the programming techniques you have used to this point in the book. In addition, you will learn two techniques for declaring values that cannot change (i.e., constants) in your programs.

Many of the classes you will use or create while developing applications will have more than one method of the same name. This technique, called **overloading**, is used by programmers to implement methods that perform similar tasks for arguments of different types or possibly for different numbers of arguments.
6.2. Program Modules in Java

Three kinds of modules exist in Java: methods, classes and packages. Java programs are written by combining new methods and classes that the programmer writes with predefined methods and classes available in the **Java Application Programming Interface** (also referred to as the **Java API** or **Java class library**) and in various other class libraries. Related classes are typically grouped into packages so that they can be imported into programs and reused. You will learn how to group your own classes into packages in **Chapter 8**. The Java API provides a rich collection of predefined classes that contain methods for performing common mathematical calculations, string manipulations, character manipulations, input/output operations, database operations, networking operations, file processing, error checking and many other useful operations. The Java API classes are part of the J2SE Development Kit (JDK) 5.0.

**Good Programming Practice 6.1**

Familiarize yourself with the rich collection of classes and methods provided by the Java API ([java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/index.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/index.html)). In **Section 6.8**, we present an overview of several common packages. In **Appendix G**, we explain how to navigate the Java API documentation.

**Software Engineering Observation 6.1**

Don't try to reinvent the wheel. When possible, reuse Java API classes and methods. This reduces program development time and avoids introducing programming errors.

Methods (called **functions** or **procedures** in other programming languages) allow the programmer to modularize a program by separating its tasks into self-contained units. You have declared methods in every program you have
written. These methods are sometimes referred to as programmer-declared methods. The actual statements in the method bodies are written only once, reused from perhaps several locations in a program and are hidden from other methods.

There are several motivations for modularizing a program by means of methods. One is the divide-and-conquer approach, which makes program development more manageable by constructing programs from small, simple pieces. Another is software reusability using existing methods as building blocks to create new programs. Often, you can create programs mostly from standardized methods rather than by building customized code. For example, in earlier programs, we did not have to define how to read data values from the keyboardJava provides these capabilities in class Scanner. A third motivation is to avoid repeating code. Dividing a program into meaningful methods makes the program easier to debug and maintain.

Software Engineering Observation 6.2

To promote software reusability, every method should be limited to performing a single, well-defined task, and the name of the method should express that task effectively. Such methods make programs easier to write, debug, maintain and modify.

Error-Prevention Tip 6.1

A small method that performs one task is easier to test and debug than a larger method that performs many tasks.

Software Engineering Observation 6.3

If you cannot choose a concise name that expresses a method’s task, your
method might be attempting to perform too many diverse tasks. It is usually best to break such a method into several smaller method declarations.

As you know, a method is invoked by a method call, and when the called method completes its task, it either returns a result or simply control to the caller. An analogy to this program structure is the hierarchical form of management (Figure 6.1). A boss (the caller) asks a worker (the called method) to perform a task and report back (i.e., return) the results after completing the task. The boss method does not know how the worker method performs its designated tasks. The worker may also call other worker methods, unbeknownst to the boss. This "hiding" of implementation details promotes good software engineering. Figure 6.1 shows the boss method communicating with several worker methods in a hierarchical manner. The boss method divides the responsibilities among the various worker methods. Note that worker1 acts as a "boss method" to worker4 and worker5.

Figure 6.1. Hierarchical boss-method/worker-method relationship.

[View full size image]
6.3. **static** Methods, **static** Fields and Class **Math**

As you know, every class provides methods that perform common tasks on objects of the class. For example, to input data from the keyboard, you have called methods on a `Scanner` object that was initialized in its constructor to obtain input from the standard input stream (`System.in`). As you will learn in Chapter 14, Files and Streams, you can initialize a `Scanner` to obtain input from other sources, such as a file on disk. One program could have a `Scanner` object that inputs information from the standard input stream and a second `Scanner` that inputs information from a file. Each input method called on the standard input stream `Scanner` would obtain input from the keyboard, and each input method called on the file `Scanner` would obtain input from the specified file on disk.

Although most methods execute in response to method calls on specific objects, this is not always the case. Sometimes a method performs a task that does not depend on the contents of any object. Such a method applies to the class in which it is declared as a whole and is known as a **static** method or a **class method**. It is not uncommon for a class to contain a group of convenient **static** methods to perform common tasks. For example, recall that we used **static** method `pow` of class **Math** to raise a value to a power in Fig. 5.6.

To declare a method as **static**, place the keyword `static` before the return type in the method's declaration. You can call any **static** method by specifying the name of the class in which the method is declared, followed by a dot (`.`) and the method name, as in

```
ClassName.methodName( arguments )
```

We use various **Math** class methods here to present the concept of **static** methods. Class **Math** provides a collection of methods that enable you to perform common mathematical calculations. For example, you can calculate the square root of `900.0` with the **static** method call

```
Math.sqrt( 900.0 )
```
The preceding expression evaluates to 30.0. Method sqrt takes an argument of type double and returns a result of type double. To output the value of the preceding method call in the command window, you might write the statement

```
System.out.println( Math.sqrt( 900.0 ) );
```

In this statement, the value that sqrt returns becomes the argument to method println. Note that there was no need to create a Math object before calling method sqrt. Also note that all Math class methods are static; therefore, each is called by preceding the name of the method with the class name Math and a dot (.) separator.

**Software Engineering Observation 6.4**

Class Math is part of the java.lang package, which is implicitly imported by the compiler, so it is not necessary to import class Math to use its methods.

Method arguments may be constants, variables or expressions. If \( c = 13.0 \), \( d = 3.0 \) and \( f = 4.0 \), then the statement

```
System.out.println( Math.sqrt( c + d * f ) );
```

calculates and prints the square root of \( 13.0 + 3.0 * 4.0 = 25.0 \) namely, 5.0. Figure 6.2 summarizes several Math class methods. In the figure, \( x \) and \( y \) are of type double.

**Figure 6.2. Math class methods.**

(This item is displayed on page 235 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| abs( \( x \) ) | absolute value of \( x \) | abs( 23.7 ) is 23.7  
<p>|          |             | abs( 0.0 ) is 0.0 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>abs( -23.7 )</code></td>
<td>rounds x to the smallest integer not less than x</td>
<td>is 23.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ceil( 9.2 )</code></td>
<td>rounds x to the smallest integer not less than x</td>
<td>is 10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ceil( -9.8 )</code></td>
<td>rounds x to the smallest integer not less than x</td>
<td>is -9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cos( x )</code></td>
<td>trigonometric cosine of x (x in radians)</td>
<td><code>cos( 0.0 )</code> is 1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp( x )</code></td>
<td>exponential method $e^x$</td>
<td><code>exp( 1.0 )</code> is 2.71828</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>floor( x )</code></td>
<td>rounds x to the largest integer not greater than x</td>
<td><code>floor( 9.2 )</code> is 9.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>floor( -9.8 )</code></td>
<td>rounds x to the largest integer not greater than x</td>
<td><code>floor( -9.8 )</code> is -10.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>log( x )</code></td>
<td>natural logarithm of x (base $e$)</td>
<td><code>log( Math.E )</code> is 1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>max( x, y )</code></td>
<td>larger value of x and y</td>
<td><code>max( 2.3, 12.7 )</code> is 12.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>min( x, y )</code></td>
<td>smaller value of x and y</td>
<td><code>min( 2.3, 12.7 )</code> is 2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pow( x, y )</code></td>
<td>$x$ raised to the power $y$ (i.e., $x^y$)</td>
<td><code>pow( 2.0, 7.0 )</code> is 128.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sin( x )</code></td>
<td>trigonometric sine of x (x in radians)</td>
<td><code>sin( 0.0 )</code> is 0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sqrt( x )</code></td>
<td>square root of x</td>
<td><code>sqrt( 900.0 )</code> is 30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tan( x )</code></td>
<td>trigonometric tangent of x (x in radians)</td>
<td><code>tan( 0.0 )</code> is 0.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Math Class Constants PI and E**

Class `Math` also declares two fields that represent commonly used mathematical constants: **Math.PI** and **Math.E**. The constant `Math.PI` (3.14159265358979323846) is the ratio of a circle's circumference to its diameter. The constant `Math.E` (2.7182818284590450517) is the base value for natural logarithms (calculated with static `Math` method `log`). These fields are declared in class `Math` with the modifiers `public`, `final` and `static`. Making them public allows other programmers to use these fields in their own classes. Any
field declared with keyword **final** is constant its value cannot be changed after the field is initialized. Both \( \pi \) and \( e \) are declared **final** because their values never change. Making these fields **static** allows them to be accessed via the class name `Math` and a dot (.) separator, just like class `Math`'s methods. Recall from **Section 3.5** that when each object of a class maintains its own copy of an attribute, the field that represents the attribute is also known as an instance variable. Each object (instance) of the class has a separate instance of the variable in memory. There are fields for which each object of a class does not have a separate instance of the field. That is the case with **static** fields, which are also known as **class variables**. When objects of a class containing **static** fields are created, all the objects of that class share one copy of the class's **static** fields. Together the class variables and instance variables represent the fields of a class. You will learn more about **static** fields in **Section 8.11**.

---

### Why Is Method `main` Declared **static**?

Why must `main` be declared **static**? When you execute the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) with the `java` command, the JVM attempts to invoke the `main` method of the class you specify when no objects of the class have been created. Declaring `main` as **static** allows the JVM to invoke `main` without creating an instance of the class. Method `main` is usually declared with the header:

```java
public static void main( String args[] )
```

When you execute your application, you specify its class name as an argument to the command `java`, as in

```java
java ClassName argument1 argument2 ...
```

The JVM loads the class specified by `ClassName` and uses that class name to invoke method `main`. In the preceding command, `ClassName` is a **command-line argument** to the JVM that tells it which class to execute. Following the `ClassName`, you can also specify a list of `Strings` (separated by spaces) as command-line arguments that the JVM will pass to your application. Such arguments might be used to specify options (e.g., a file name) to run the
application. As you will learn in Chapter 7, Arrays, your application can access those command-line arguments and use them to customize the application.

Additional Comments about Method main

In earlier chapters, every application had one class that contained only main and possibly a second class that was used by main to create and manipulate objects. Actually, any class can contain a main method. In fact, each of our two-class examples could have been implemented as one class. For example, in the application in Fig. 5.9 and Fig. 5.10, method main (lines 616 of Fig. 5.10) could have been taken as is and placed in class GradeBook (Fig. 5.9). You would then execute the application by typing the command java GradeBook in the command window; the application results would be identical to those of the two-class version. You can place a main method in every class you declare. The JVM invokes the main method only in the class used to execute the application. Some programmers take advantage of this to build a small test program into each class they declare.
6.4. Declaring Methods with Multiple Parameters

Chapters 35 presented classes containing simple methods that had at most one parameter. Methods often require more than one piece of information to perform their tasks. We now consider how programmers write their own methods with multiple parameters.

The application in Fig. 6.3 and Fig. 6.4 uses a programmer-declared method called maximum to determine and return the largest of three double values that are input by the user. When the application begins execution, class MaximumFinderTest's main method (lines 711 of Fig. 6.4) creates one object of class MaximumFinder (line 9) and calls the object's determineMaximum method (line 10) to produce the program's output. In class MaximumFinder (Fig. 6.3), lines 1418 of method determineMaximum prompt the user to enter three double values and read them from the user. Line 21 calls method maximum (declared in lines 2841) to determine the largest of the three double values passed as arguments to the method. When method maximum returns the result to line 21, the program assigns maximum's return value to local variable result. Then line 24 outputs the maximum value. At the end of this section, we'll discuss the use of operator + in line 24.

Figure 6.3. Programmer-declared method maximum that has three double parameters.

(This item is displayed on page 237 in the print version)

```
1 // Fig. 6.3: MaximumFinder.java
2 // Programmer-declared method maximum.
3 import java.util.Scanner;
4
5 public class MaximumFinder
6 {
7     // obtain three floating-point values and locate the maximum value
8     public void determineMaximum()
9     {
10         // create Scanner for input from command window
11         Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );
12
13         // obtain user input
14         System.out.print( "Enter three floating-point values separated by spaces: " );
15         double number1 = input.nextDouble(); // read first double
16         double number2 = input.nextDouble(); // read second double
17         double number3 = input.nextDouble(); // read third double
```
// determine the maximum value
double result = maximum( number1, number2, number3 );

// display maximum value
System.out.println( "Maximum is: " + result );
}
} // end method determineMaximum

// returns the maximum of its three double parameters
public double maximum( double x, double y, double z )
{
    double maximumValue = x; // assume x is the largest to start

    // determine whether y is greater than maximumValue
    if ( y > maximumValue )
        maximumValue = y;

    // determine whether z is greater than maximumValue
    if ( z > maximumValue )
        maximumValue = z;

    return maximumValue;
} // end method maximum

// Fig. 6.4: Application to test class MaximumFinder.
(This item is displayed on page 238 in the print version)

public class MaximumFinderTest
{
    // application starting point
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        MaximumFinder maximumFinder = new MaximumFinder();
        maximumFinder.determineMaximum();
    } // end main
} // end class MaximumFinderTest

Enter three floating-point values separated by spaces: 9.35 2.74 5.1
Maximum is: 9.35
Consider the declaration of method `maximum` (lines 2841). Line 28 indicates that the method returns a `double` value, that the method's name is `maximum` and that the method requires three `double` parameters (\(x\), \(y\) and \(z\)) to accomplish its task. When a method has more than one parameter, the parameters are specified as a comma-separated list. When maximum is called from line 21, the parameter \(x\) is initialized with the value of the argument `number1`, the parameter \(y\) is initialized with the value of the argument `number2` and the parameter \(z\) is initialized with the value of the argument `number3`. There must be one argument in the method call for each parameter (sometimes called a **formal parameter**) in the method declaration. Also, each argument must be consistent with the type of the corresponding parameter. For example, a parameter of type `double` can receive values like 7.35, 22 or 0.03456, but not Strings like "hello". **Section 6.7** discusses the argument types that can be provided in a method call for each parameter of a primitive type.

To determine the maximum value, we begin with the assumption that parameter \(x\) contains the largest value, so line 30 declares local variable `maximumValue` and initializes it with the value of parameter \(x\). Of course, it is possible that parameter \(y\) or \(z\) contains the actual largest value, so we must compare each of these values with `maximumValue`. The if statement at lines 3334 determines whether \(y\) is greater than `maximumValue`. If so, line 34 assigns \(y\) to `maximumValue`. The if statement at lines 3738 determines whether \(z\) is greater than `maximumValue`. If so, line 38 assigns \(z\) to `maximumValue`. At this point the largest
of the three values resides in `maximumValue`, so line 40 returns that value to line 21. When program control returns to the point in the program where `maximum` was called, `maximum`'s parameters `x`, `y` and `z` no longer exist in memory. Note that methods can return at most one value, but the returned value could be a reference to an object that contains many values.

Note that `result` is a local variable in `determineMaximum` because it is declared in the block that represents the method's body. Variables should be declared as fields of a class only if they are required for use in more than one method of the class or if the program should save their values between calls to the class's methods.

**Common Programming Error 6.1**

Declaring method parameters of the same type as `float x, y` instead of `float x, float y` is a syntax error—a type is required for each parameter in the parameter list.

**Software Engineering Observation 6.5**

A method that has many parameters may be performing too many tasks. Consider dividing the method into smaller methods that perform the separate tasks. As a guideline, try to fit the method header on one line if possible.

Implementing Method `maximum` by Reusing Method `Math.max`

Recall from Fig. 6.2 that class `Math` has a `max` method that can determine the larger of two values. The entire body of our maximum method could also be
implemented with two calls to Math.max, as follows:

\[
\text{return Math.max( x, Math.max( y, z ) );}
\]

The first call to Math.max specifies arguments \( x \) and \( \text{Math.max( y, z )} \). Before any method can be called, all its arguments must be evaluated to determine their values. If an argument is a method call, the method call must be performed to determine its return value. So, in the preceding statement, \( \text{Math.max( y, z )} \) is evaluated first to determine the maximum of \( y \) and \( z \). Then the result is passed as the second argument to the other call to Math.max, which returns the larger of its two arguments. Using Math.max in this manner is a good example of software reuse: find the largest of three values by reusing Math.max, which finds the largest of two values. Note how concise this code is compared to lines 3040 of Fig. 6.3.

Assembling Strings with String Concatenation

Java allows String objects to be created by assembling smaller strings into larger strings using operator + (or the compound assignment operator +=). This is known as string concatenation. When both operands of operator + are String objects, operator + creates a new String object in which the characters of the right operand are placed at the end of those in the left operand. For example, the expression "hello " + "there" creates the String "hello there".

In line 24 of Fig. 6.3, the expression "Maximum is: " + result uses operator + with operands of types String and double. Every primitive value and object in Java has a String representation. When one of the + operator's operands is a String, the other is converted to a String, then the two are concatenated. In line 24, the double value is converted to its String representation and placed at the end of the String "Maximum is: ". If there are any trailing zeros in a double value, these will be discarded when the number is converted to a String. Thus, the number 9.3500 would be represented as 9.35 in the resulting String.

For primitive values used in string concatenation, the primitive values are converted to Strings. If a boolean is concatenated with a String, the boolean is converted to the String "true" or "false". All objects have a method named toString that returns a String representation of the object. When an object is
concatenated with a `String`, the object's `toString` method is implicitly called to obtain the `String` representation of the object. You will learn more about method `toString` in Chapter 7, Arrays.

When a large `String` literal is typed into a program's source code, programmers sometimes prefer to break that `String` into several smaller `Strings` and place them on multiple lines of code for readability. In this case, the `Strings` can be reassembled using concatenation. We discuss the details of `Strings` in Chapter 29, Strings, Characters and Regular Expressions.

**Common Programming Error 6.2**

It is a syntax error to break a `String` literal across multiple lines in a program. If a `String` does not fit on one line, split the `String` into several smaller `Strings` and use concatenation to form the desired `String`.

**Common Programming Error 6.3**

Confusing the `+` operator used for string concatenation with the `+` operator used for addition can lead to strange results. Java evaluates the operands of an operator from left to right. For example, if integer variable `y` has the value 5, the expression "y + 2 = " + y + 2 results in the string "y + 2 = 52", not "y + 2 = 7", because first the value of `y` (5) is concatenated with the string "y + 2 = ", then the value 2 is concatenated with the new larger string "y + 2 = 5". The expression "y + 2 = " + (y + 2) produces the desired result "y + 2 = 7".
6.5. Notes on Declaring and Using Methods

There are three ways to call a method:

1. Using a method name by itself to call another method of the same class such as `maximum(number1, number2, number3)` in line 21 of Fig. 6.3.

2. Using a variable that contains a reference to an object, followed by a dot (.) and the method name to call a method of the referenced object such as the method call in line 10 of Fig. 6.4, `maximumFinder.determineMaximum()`, which calls a method of class `MaximumFinder` from the main method of `MaximumFinderTest`.

3. Using the class name and a dot (.) to call a static method of a class such as `Math.sqrt(900.0)` in Section 6.3.

Note that a static method can call only other static methods of the same class directly (i.e., using the method name by itself) and can manipulate only static fields in the same class directly. To access the class's non-static members, a static method must use a reference to an object of the class. Recall that static methods relate to a class as a whole, whereas non-static methods are associated with a specific instance (object) of the class and may manipulate the instance variables of that object. Many objects of a class, each with its own copies of the instance variables, may exist at the same time. Suppose a static method were to invoke a non-static method directly. How would the method know which object's instance variables to manipulate? What would happen if no objects of the class existed at the time the non-static method was invoked? Clearly, such a situation would be problematic. Thus, Java does not allow a static method to access non-static members of the same class directly.

There are three ways to return control to the statement that calls a method. If the method does not return a result, control returns when the program flow reaches the method-ending right brace or when the statement

```
return;
```

is executed. If the method returns a result, the statement
return expression;
evaluates the expression, then returns the result to the caller.

**Common Programming Error 6.4**

Declaring a method outside the body of a class declaration or inside the body of another method is a syntax error.

**Common Programming Error 6.5**

Omitting the return-value-type in a method declaration is a syntax error.

**Common Programming Error 6.6**

Placing a semicolon after the right parenthesis enclosing the parameter list of a method declaration is a syntax error.

**Common Programming Error 6.7**

Redeclaring a method parameter as a local variable in the method's body is a compilation error.
Forgetting to return a value from a method that should return a value is a compilation error. If a return value type other than `void` is specified, the method must contain a `return` statement that returns a value consistent with the method's return-value-type. Returning a value from a method whose return type has been declared `void` is a compilation error.
6.6. Method Call Stack and Activation Records

To understand how Java performs method calls, we first need to consider a data structure (i.e., collection of related data items) known as a stack. Students can think of a stack as analogous to a pile of dishes. When a dish is placed on the pile, it is normally placed at the top (referred to as pushing the dish onto the stack). Similarly, when a dish is removed from the pile, it is always removed from the top (referred to as popping the dish off the stack). Stacks are known as last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structures; the last item pushed (inserted) on the stack is the first item popped (removed) from the stack.

When a program calls a method, the called method must know how to return to its caller, so the return address of the calling method is pushed onto the program execution stack (sometimes referred to as the method call stack). If a series of method calls occurs, the successive return addresses are pushed onto the stack in last-in, first-out order so that each method can return to its caller.

The program execution stack also contains the memory for the local variables used in each invocation of a method during a program's execution. This data, stored as a portion of the program execution stack, is known as the activation record or stack frame of the method call. When a method call is made, the activation record for that method call is pushed onto the program execution stack. When the method returns to its caller, the activation record for this method call is popped off the stack and those local variables are no longer known to the program. If a local variable holding a reference to an object is the only variable in the program with a reference to that object, when the activation record containing that local variable is popped off the stack, the object can no longer be accessed by the program and will eventually be deleted from memory by the JVM during "garbage collection." We'll discuss garbage collection in Section 8.10.

Of course, the amount of memory in a computer is finite, so only a certain amount of memory can be used to store activation records on the program execution stack. If more method calls occur than can have their activation records stored on the program execution stack, an error known as a stack overflow occurs.
6.7. Argument Promotion and Casting

Another important feature of method calls is argument promotion converting an argument's value to the type that the method expects to receive in its corresponding parameter. For example, a program can call Math method \texttt{sqrt} with an integer argument even though the method expects to receive a \texttt{double} argument (but, as we will soon see, not vice versa). The statement

\[ \text{System.out.println( Math.sqrt( 4 ) );} \]

correctly evaluates \texttt{Math.sqrt( 4 )} and prints the value \texttt{2.0}. The method declaration's parameter list causes Java to convert the \texttt{int} value \texttt{4} to the \texttt{double} value \texttt{4.0} before passing the value to \texttt{sqrt}. Attempting these conversions may lead to compilation errors if Java's promotion rules are not satisfied. The promotion rules specify which conversions are allowed, that is, which conversions can be performed without losing data. In the \texttt{sqrt} example above, an \texttt{int} is converted to a \texttt{double} without changing its value. However, converting a \texttt{double} to an \texttt{int} truncates the fractional part of the \texttt{double} value thus, part of the value is lost. Converting large integer types to small integer types (e.g., \texttt{long} to \texttt{int}) may also result in changed values.

The promotion rules apply to expressions containing values of two or more primitive types and to primitive-type values passed as arguments to methods. Each value is promoted to the "highest" type in the expression. (Actually, the expression uses a temporary copy of each value the types of the original values remain unchanged.) Figure 6.5 lists the primitive types and the types to which each can be promoted. Note that the valid promotions for a given type are always to a type higher in the table. For example, an \texttt{int} can be promoted to the higher types \texttt{long}, \texttt{float} and \texttt{double}.

\begin{table}[h]
\centering
\begin{tabular}{|l|l|}
\hline
Type & Valid promotions \\
\hline
\texttt{double} & None \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{Promotions allowed for primitive types.}
\end{table}
Converting values to types lower in the table of Fig. 6.5 will result in different values if the lower type cannot represent the value of the higher type (e.g., the int value 2000000 cannot be represented as a short, and any floating-point number with digits after its decimal point cannot be represented in an integer type such as long, int or short). Therefore, in cases where information may be lost due to conversion, the Java compiler requires the programmer to use a cast operator (introduced in Section 4.9) to explicitly force the conversion to occur otherwise a compilation error occurs. This enables the programmer to "take control" from the compiler. The programmer essentially says, "I know this conversion might cause loss of information, but for my purposes here, that's fine." Suppose method square calculates the square of an integer and thus requires an int argument. To call square with a double argument named doubleValue, we would be required to write the method call as square( (int) doubleValue ). This method call explicitly casts (converts) the value of doubleValue to an integer for use in method square. Thus, if doubleValue's value is 4.5, the method receives the value 4 and returns 16, not 20.25.

Common Programming Error 6.9

Converting a primitive-type value to another primitive type may change the value if the new type is not a valid promotion. For example, converting a floating-point value to an integral value may introduce truncation errors (loss of the fractional part) into the result.
6.8. Java API Packages

As we have seen, Java contains many predefined classes that are grouped into categories of related classes called packages. Together, we refer to these packages as the Java Application Programming Interface (Java API), or the Java class library.

Throughout the text, `import` declarations specify the classes required to compile a Java program. For example, a program includes the declaration

```java
import java.util.Scanner;
```

to specify that the program uses class `Scanner` from the `java.util` package. This allows programmers to use the simple class name `Scanner`, rather than the fully qualified class name `java.util.Scanner`, in the code. A great strength of Java is the large number of classes in the packages of the Java API. Some key Java API packages are described in Fig. 6.6, which represents only a small portion of the reusable components in the Java API. When learning Java, spend a portion of your time browsing the packages and classes in the Java API documentation ([java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/index.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/index.html)).

**Figure 6.6. Java API packages (a subset).**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Package</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>java.applet</td>
<td>The <strong>Java Applet Package</strong> contains a class and several interfaces required to create Java applets programs that execute in Web browsers. (Applets are discussed in Chapter 20, Introduction to Java Applets; interfaces are discussed in Chapter 10, Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>java.awt</td>
<td>The <strong>Java Abstract Window Toolkit Package</strong> contains the classes and interfaces required to create and manipulate GUIs in Java 1.0 and 1.1. In current versions of Java, the Swing GUI components of the <code>javax.swing</code> packages are often used instead. (Some elements of the <code>java.awt</code> package are discussed in Chapter 11, GUI Components: Part 1, Chapter 12, Graphics and Java2D, and Chapter 22, GUI Components: Part 2.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The **Java Abstract Window Toolkit Event Package** contains classes and interfaces that enable event handling for GUI components in both the `java.awt` and `javax.swing` packages. (You will learn more about this package in Chapter 11, GUI Components: Part 1 and Chapter 22, GUI Components: Part 2.)

The **Java Input/Output Package** contains classes and interfaces that enable programs to input and output data. (You will learn more about this package in Chapter 14, Files and Streams.)

The **Java Language Package** contains classes and interfaces (discussed throughout this text) that are required by many Java programs. This package is imported by the compiler into all programs, so the programmer does not need to do so.

The **Java Networking Package** contains classes and interfaces that enable programs to communicate via computer networks like the Internet. (You will learn more about this in Chapter 24, Networking.)

The **Java Text Package** contains classes and interfaces that enable programs to manipulate numbers, dates, characters and strings. The package provides internationalization capabilities that enable a program to be customized to a specific locale (e.g., a program may display strings in different languages, based on the user's country).

The **Java Utilities Package** contains utility classes and interfaces that enable such actions as date and time manipulations, random-number processing (class `Random`), the storing and processing of large amounts of data and the breaking of strings into smaller pieces called tokens (class `StringTokenizer`). (You will learn more about the features of this package in Chapter 19, Collections.)

The **Java Swing GUI Components Package** contains classes and interfaces for Java's Swing GUI components that provide support for portable GUIs. (You will learn more about this package in Chapter 11, GUI Components: Part 1 and Chapter 22, GUI Components: Part 2.)

The **Java Swing Event Package** contains classes and interfaces that enable event handling (e.g., responding to button clicks) for GUI components in package `javax.swing`. (You will learn more about this package in Chapter 11, GUI Components: Part 1 and Chapter 22, GUI Components: Part 2.)
The set of packages available in the J2SE Development Kit (JDK) is quite large. In addition to the packages summarized in Fig. 6.6, the JDK includes packages for complex graphics, advanced graphical user interfaces, printing, advanced networking, security, database processing, multimedia, accessibility (for people with disabilities) and many other capabilities. For an overview of the packages in the JDK 5.0, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/overview-summary.html

Many other packages are also available for download at java.sun.com.

You can locate additional information about a predefined Java class's methods in the Java API documentation at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/index.html. When you visit this site, click the Index link to see an alphabetical listing of all the classes and methods in the Java API. Locate the class name and click its link to see the online description of the class. Click the METHOD link to see a table of the class's methods. Each static method will be listed with the word "static" preceding the method's return type. For a more detailed overview of navigating the Java API documentation, see Appendix G, Using the Java API Documentation.

Good Programming Practice 6.2

The online Java API documentation is easy to search and provides many details about each class. As you learn a class in this book, you should get in the habit of looking at the class in the online documentation for additional information.
6.9. Case Study: Random-Number Generation

We now take a brief and, hopefully, entertaining diversion into a popular type of programming applicationsimulation and game playing. In this and the next section, we develop a nicely structured game-playing program with multiple methods. The program uses most of the control statements presented thus far in the book and introduces several new programming concepts.

There is something in the air of a casino that invigorates people from the high rollers at the plush mahogany-and-felt craps tables to the quarter poppers at the one-armed bandits. It is the element of chance, the possibility that luck will convert a pocketful of money into a mountain of wealth. The element of chance can be introduced in a program via an object of class Random (package java.util) or via the static method random of class Math. Objects of class Random can produce random boolean, byte, float, double, int, long and Gaussian values, whereas Math method random can produce only double values in the range 0.0 < x < 1.0, where x is the value returned by method random. In the next several examples, we use objects of class Random to produce random values.

A new random-number generator object can be created as follows:

```java
Random randomNumbers = new Random();
```

The random-number generator object can then be used to generate random boolean, byte, float, double, int, long and Gaussian values we discuss only random int values here. For more information on the Random class, see java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/Random.html.

Consider the following statement:

```java
int randomValue = randomNumbers.nextInt();
```

Method nextInt of class Random generates a random int value in the range 2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647. If the nextInt method truly produces values at random, then every value in that range should have an equal chance (or probability) of being chosen each time method nextInt is called. The values
returned by `nextInt` are actually **pseudorandom numbers** a sequence of values produced by a complex mathematical calculation. The calculation uses the current time of day (which, of course, changes constantly) to **seed** the random-number generator such that each execution of a program yields a different sequence of random values.

The range of values produced directly by method `nextInt` often differs from the range of values required in a particular Java application. For example, a program that simulates coin tossing might require only 0 for "heads" and 1 for "tails." A program that simulates the rolling of a six-sided die might require random integers in the range 16. A program that randomly predicts the next type of spaceship (out of four possibilities) that will fly across the horizon in a video game might require random integers in the range 14. For cases like these, class `Random` provides another version of method `nextInt` that receives an `int` argument and returns a value from 0 up to, but not including, the argument's value. For example, to simulate coin tossing, you might use the statement

```
int randomValue = randomNumbers.nextInt( 2 );
```

which returns 0 or 1.

### Rolling a Six-Sided Die

To demonstrate random numbers, let us develop a program that simulates 20 rolls of a six-sided die and displays the value of each roll. We begin by using `nextInt` to produce random values in the range 05, as follows:

```
face = randomNumbers.nextInt( 6 );
```

The argument is called the **scaling factor** represents the number of unique values that `nextInt` should produce (in this case six0, 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5). This manipulation is called **scaling** the range of values produced by `Random` method `nextInt`. 
A six-sided die has the numbers 16 on its faces, not 05. So we shift the range of numbers produced by adding a shifting value in this case 1 to our previous result, as in

\[ \text{face} = 1 + \text{randomNumbers.nextInt( 6 )}; \]

The shifting value (1) specifies the first value in the desired set of random integers. The preceding statement assigns `face` a random integer in the range 16.

Figure 6.7 shows two sample outputs which confirm that the results of the preceding calculation are integers in the range 16, and that each run of the program can produce a different sequence of random numbers. Line 3 imports class `Random` from the `java.util` package. Line 9 creates the `Random` object `randomNumbers` to produce random values. Line 16 executes 20 times in a loop to roll the die. The if statement (lines 21-22) in the loop starts a new line of output after every five numbers, so the results can be presented on multiple lines.

Figure 6.7. Shifted and scaled random integers.

(This item is displayed on page 247 in the print version)
Rolling a Six-Sided Die 6000 Times

To show that the numbers produced by `nextInt` occur with approximately equal likelihood, let us simulate 6000 rolls of a die with the application in Fig. 6.8. Each integer from 1 to 6 should appear approximately 1000 times.

Figure 6.8. Rolling a six-sided die 6000 times.
(This item is displayed on pages 247 - 249 in the print version)
int frequency2 = 0; // count of 2s rolled
int frequency3 = 0; // count of 3s rolled
int frequency4 = 0; // count of 4s rolled
int frequency5 = 0; // count of 5s rolled
int frequency6 = 0; // count of 6s rolled

int face; // stores most recently rolled value

// summarize results of 6000 rolls of a die
for ( int roll = 1; roll <= 6000; roll++ )
{
    face = 1 + randomNumbers.nextInt( 6 ); // number from 1 to 6

    // determine roll value 1-6 and increment appropriate counter
    switch ( face )
    {
        case 1:
            ++frequency1; // increment the 1s counter
            break;
        case 2:
            ++frequency2; // increment the 2s counter
            break;
        case 3:
            ++frequency3; // increment the 3s counter
            break;
        case 4:
            ++frequency4; // increment the 4s counter
            break;
        case 5:
            ++frequency5; // increment the 5s counter
            break;
        case 6:
            ++frequency6; // increment the 6s counter
            break; // optional at end of switch
    } // end switch
} // end for

System.out.println( "Face	Frequency" ); // output headers
System.out.printf( "1\t%d\n2\t%d\n3\t%d\n4\t%d\n5\t%d\n6\t%d\\n",
    frequency1, frequency2, frequency3, frequency4,
    frequency5, frequency6 );
} // end main
} // end class RollDie
As the two sample outputs show, scaling and shifting the values produced by method `nextInt` enables the program to realistically simulate rolling a six-sided die. The application uses nested control statements (the `switch` is nested inside the `for`) to determine the number of times each side of the die occurred. The `for` statement (lines 2147) iterates 6000 times. During each iteration, line 23 produces a random value from 1 to 6. That value is then used as the controlling expression (line 26) of the `switch` statement (lines 2646). Based on the `face` value, the `switch` statement increments one of the six counter variables during each iteration of the loop. (When we study arrays in Chapter 7, we will show an elegant way to replace the entire `switch` statement in this program with a single statement!) Note that the `switch` statement has no `default` case because we have a `case` for every possible die value that the expression in line 23 could produce. Run the program several times, and observe the results. As you will see, every time you execute this program, it produces different results.

### 6.9.1. Generalized Scaling and Shifting of Random Numbers

Previously, we demonstrated the statement

```java
    face = 1 + randomNumbers.nextInt( 6 );
```
which simulates the rolling of a six-sided die. This statement always assigns to variable `face` an integer in the range $1 \leq face \leq 6$. The width of this range (i.e., the number of consecutive integers in the range) is 6, and the starting number in the range is 1. Referring to the preceding statement, we see that the width of the range is determined by the number 6 that is passed as an argument to `Random.nextInt`, and the starting number of the range is the number 1 that is added to `randomNumberGenerator.nextInt(6)`. We can generalize this result as

$$number = shiftingValue + randomNumberGenerator.nextInt(scalingFactor);$$

where `shiftingValue` specifies the first number in the desired range of consecutive integers and `scalingFactor` specifies how many numbers are in the range.

It is also possible to choose integers at random from sets of values other than ranges of consecutive integers. For example, to obtain a random value from the sequence 2, 5, 8, 11 and 14, you could use the statement

$$number = 2 + 3 \times randomNumberGenerator.nextInt(5);$$

In this case, `randomNumberGenerator.nextInt(5)` produces values in the range 04. Each value produced is multiplied by 3 to produce a number in the sequence 0, 3, 6, 9 and 12. We then add 2 to that value to shift the range of values and obtain a value from the sequence 2, 5, 8, 11 and 14. We can generalize this result as

$$number = shiftingValue + differenceBetweenValues \times randomNumberGenerator.nextInt(scalingFactor);$$

where `shiftingValue` specifies the first number in the desired range of values, `differenceBetweenValues` represents the difference between consecutive numbers in the sequence and `scalingFactor` specifies how many numbers are in the range.

### 6.9.2. Random-Number Repeatability for Testing and Debugging
As we mentioned earlier in Section 6.9, the methods of class Random actually generate pseudorandom numbers based on complex mathematical calculations. Repeatedly calling any of Random's methods produces a sequence of numbers that appears to be random. The calculation that produces the pseudorandom numbers uses the time of day as a seed value to change the sequence's starting point. Each new Random object seeds itself with a value based on the computer system's clock at the time the object is created, enabling each execution of a program to produce a different sequence of random numbers.

When debugging an application, it is sometimes useful to repeat the exact same sequence of pseudorandom numbers during each execution of the program. This repeatability enables you to prove that your application is working for a specific sequence of random numbers before you test the program with different sequences of random numbers. When repeatability is important, you can create a Random object as follows:

```java
Random randomNumbers = new Random( seedValue );
```

The seedValue argument (type long) seeds the random-number calculation. If the same seedValue is used every time, the Random object produces the same sequence of random numbers. You can set a Random object's seed at any time during program execution by calling the object's setSeed method, as in

```java
randomNumbers.setSeed( seedValue );
```

**Error-Prevention Tip 6.2**

While a program is under development, create the Random object with a specific seed value to produce a repeatable sequence of random numbers each time the program executes. If a logic error occurs, fix the error and test the program again with the same seed value this allows you to reconstruct the same sequence of random numbers that caused the error. Once the logic errors have been removed, create the Random object without using a seed value, causing the Random object to generate a new sequence of random numbers each time the program executes.
6.10. Case Study: A Game of Chance (Introducing Enumerations)

A popular game of chance is a dice game known as "craps," which is played in casinos and back alleys throughout the world. The rules of the game are straightforward:

You roll two dice. Each die has six faces, which contain one, two, three, four, five and six spots, respectively. After the dice have come to rest, the sum of the spots on the two upward faces is calculated. If the sum is 7 or 11 on the first throw, you win. If the sum is 2, 3 or 12 on the first throw (called "craps"), you lose (i.e., the "house" wins). If the sum is 4, 5, 6, 8, 9 or 10 on the first throw, that sum becomes your "point." To win, you must continue rolling the dice until you "make your point" (i.e., roll that same point value). You lose by rolling a 7 before making the point.

The application in Fig. 6.9 and Fig. 6.10 simulates the game of craps, using methods to define the logic of the game. In the main method of class CrapsTest (Fig. 6.10), line 8 creates an object of class Craps (Fig. 6.9) and line 9 calls its play method to start the game. The play method (Fig. 6.9, lines 2165) calls the rollDice method (Fig. 6.9, lines 6881) as necessary to roll the two dice and compute their sum. Four sample outputs in Fig. 6.10 show winning on the first roll, losing on the first roll, winning on a subsequent roll and losing on a subsequent roll, respectively.

Figure 6.9. Craps class simulates the dice game craps.
(This item is displayed on pages 251 - 252 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 6.9: Craps.java
// Craps class simulates the dice game craps.
import java.util.Random;

public class Craps {
    // create random number generator for use in method rollDice
    private Random randomNumbers = new Random();

    // enumeration with constants that represent the game status
    private enum Status { CONTINUE, WON, LOST;}
```
// constants that represent common rolls of the dice
private final static int SNAKE_EYES = 2;
private final static int TREY = 3;
private final static int SEVEN = 7;
private final static int YO_LEVEN = 11;
private final static int BOX_CARS = 12;

// plays one game of craps
public void play()
{
    int myPoint = 0; // point if no win or loss on first roll
    Status gameStatus; // can contain CONTINUE, WON or LOST

    int sumOfDice = rollDice(); // first roll of the dice

    // determine game status and point based on first roll
    switch (sumOfDice)
    {
        case SEVEN: // win with 7 on first roll
            case YO_LEVEN: // win with 11 on first roll
                gameStatus = Status.WON;
                break;
        case SNAKE_EYES: // lose with 2 on first roll
        case TREY: // lose with 3 on first roll
        case BOX_CARS: // lose with 12 on first roll
            gameStatus = Status.LOST;
            break;
        default: // did not win or lose, so remember point
            gameStatus = Status.CONTINUE; // game is not over
            myPoint = sumOfDice; // remember the point
            System.out.printf("Point is %d\n", myPoint);
            break; // optional at end of switch
    } // end switch

    // while game is not complete
    while (gameStatus == Status.CONTINUE) // not WON or LOST
    {
        sumOfDice = rollDice(); // roll dice again

        // determine game status
        if (sumOfDice == myPoint) // win by making point
            gameStatus = Status.WON;
        else
            if (sumOfDice == SEVEN) // lose by rolling 7 before point
                gameStatus = Status.LOST;
    } // end while

    // display won or lost message
    if (gameStatus == Status.WON)
        System.out.println("Player wins");
    else
        System.out.println("Player loses");

    } // end method play

// roll dice, calculate sum and display results
public int rollDice()
{
    // pick random die values
    int die1 = 1 + randomNumbers.nextInt(6); // first die roll
    int die2 = 1 + randomNumbers.nextInt(6); // second die roll
int sum = die1 + die2; // sum of die values

// display results of this roll
System.out.printf("Player rolled %d + %d = %d\n", 
die1, die2, sum);

return sum; // return sum of dice
} // end method rollDice
} // end class Craps

Player rolled 5 + 6 = 11
Player wins

Player rolled 1 + 2 = 3
Player loses

Player rolled 5 + 4 = 9
Point is 9
Player rolled 2 + 2 = 4
Player rolled 2 + 6 = 8
Player rolled 4 + 2 = 6
Player rolled 3 + 6 = 9
Player wins

Player rolled 2 + 6 = 8
Point is 8
Player rolled 5 + 1 = 6
Player rolled 2 + 1 = 3
Player rolled 1 + 6 = 7
Player loses

Let's discuss the declaration of class Craps in Fig. 6.9. In the rules of the game, the player must roll two dice on the first roll, and must do the same on all subsequent rolls. We declare method rollDice (lines 6881) to roll the dice and compute and print their sum. Method rollDice is declared once, but it is called from two places (lines 26 and 50) in method play, which contains the logic for one complete game of craps. Method rollDice takes no arguments, so it has an empty parameter list. Each time it is called, rollDice returns the sum of the dice, so the return type int is indicated in the method header (line 68).

Although lines 71 and 72 look the same (except for the die names), they do not necessarily produce the same result. Each of these statements produces a random value in the range 16. Note that randomNumbers (used in lines 7172) is not declared in the method. Rather it is declared as a private instance variable of the class and initialized in line 8. This enables us to create one Random object that is reused in each call to rollDice.

The game is reasonably involved. The player may win or lose on the first roll,
or may win or lose on any subsequent roll. Method `play` (lines 2165) uses local variable `myPoint` (line 23) to store the "point" if the player does not win or lose on the first roll, local variable `gameStatus` (line 24) to keep track of the overall game status and local variable `sumOfDice` (line 26) to maintain the sum of the dice for the most recent roll. Note that `myPoint` is initialized to 0 to ensure that the application will compile. If you do not initialize `myPoint`, the compiler issues an error, because `myPoint` is not assigned a value in every branch of the `switch` statement, and thus the program could try to use `myPoint` before it is assigned a value. By contrast, `gameStatus` does not require initialization because it is assigned a value in every branch of the `switch` statement thus, it is guaranteed to be initialized before it is used.

[Page 253]

Note that local variable `gameStatus` is declared to be of a new type called `Status`, which we declared at line 11. Type `Status` is declared as a `private` member of class `Craps`, because `Status` will be used only in that class. `Status` is a programmer-declared type called an `enumeration`, which, in its simplest form, declares a set of constants represented by identifiers. An enumeration is a special kind of class that is introduced by the `keyword enum` (new to J2SE 5.0) and a type name (in this case, `Status`). As with any class, braces (`{` and `}`) delimit the body of an `enum` declaration. Inside the braces is a comma-separated list of `enumeration constants`, each representing a unique value. The identifiers in an `enum` must be unique. (You will learn more about enumerations in Chapter 8.)

[Page 254]

**Good Programming Practice 6.3**

*Use only uppercase letters in the names of constants. This makes the constants stand out in a program and reminds the programmer that enumeration constants are not variables.*

Variables of type `Status` can be assigned only one of the three constants declared in the enumeration or a compilation error will occur. When the game is won, the program sets local variable `gameStatus` to `Status.WON` (lines 33 and 54).
When the game is lost, the program sets local variable `gameStatus` to `Status.LOST` (lines 38 and 57). Otherwise, the program sets local variable `gameStatus` to `Status.CONTINUE` (line 41) to indicate that the dice must be rolled again.

**Good Programming Practice 6.4**

Using enumeration constants (like `Status.WON`, `Status.LOST` and `Status.CONTINUE`) rather than literal integer values (such as 0, 1 and 2) can make programs easier to read and maintain.

Line 26 in method `play` calls `rollDice`, which picks two random values from 1 to 6, displays the value of the first die, the value of the second die and the sum of the dice, and returns the sum of the dice. Method `play` next enters the `switch` statement at lines 2945, which uses the `sumOfDice` value from line 26 to determine whether the game has been won or lost, or whether it should continue with another roll. The sums of the dice that would result in a win or loss on the first roll are declared as `public final static int` constants in lines 1418. These are used in the `cases` of the `switch` statement. The identifier names use casino parlance for these sums. Note that these constants, like `enum` constants, are declared with all capital letters by convention, to make them stand out in the program. Lines 3134 determine whether the player won on the first roll with `SEVEN` (7) or `YO_LEVEN` (11). Lines 3539 determine whether the player lost on the first roll with `SNAKE_EYES` (2), `TREY` (3), or `BOX_CARS` (12). After the first roll, if the game is not over, the `default` case (lines 4044) saves `sumOfDice` in `myPoint` (line 42) and displays the point (line 43).

If we are still trying to "make our point" (i.e., the game is continuing from a prior roll), the loop in lines 4858 executes. Line 50 rolls the dice again. In line 53, if `sumOfDice` matches `myPoint`, line 54 sets `gameStatus` to `Status.WON`, then the loop terminates because the game is complete. In line 56, if `sumOfDice` is equal to `SEVEN` (7), line 57 sets `gameStatus` to `Status.LOST`, and the loop terminates because the game is complete. When the game completes, lines 6164 display a message indicating whether the player won or lost and the program terminates.

Note the use of the various program-control mechanisms we have discussed. The `Craps` class uses three methods: `main`, `play` (called from `main`) and `rollDice` (called twice from `play`) and the `switch`, `while`, `if...else` and nested `if` control
You might be wondering why we declared the sums of the dice as `public final static int` constants rather than as `enum` constants. The answer lies in the fact that the program must compare `int sumOfDice` (line 26) to these constants to determine the outcome of each roll. Suppose we were to declare `enum Sum` containing constants (e.g., `Sum.SNAKE_EYES`) representing the five sums used in the game, then use these constants in place of the `final` variables in the `cases` of the `switch` statement (lines 2945). Doing so would prevent us from using `sumOfDice` as the `switch` statement's controlling expression. Java does not allow an `int` to be compared to an enumeration constant. To achieve the same functionality as the current program, we would have to use a variable `currentSum` of type `Sum` as the `switch`'s controlling expression. Unfortunately, Java does not provide an easy way to convert an `int` value to a particular `enum` constant. To translate an `int` into an `enum` constant would require a separate `switch` statement. Clearly this would be cumbersome and not improve the readability of the program (thus defeating the purpose of using an `enum`), so we are better off using `public final static int` constants to represent the sums of the dice.
6.11. Scope of Declarations

You have seen declarations of various Java entities, such as classes, methods, variables and parameters. Declarations introduce names that can be used to refer to such Java entities. The scope of a declaration is the portion of the program that can refer to the declared entity by its name. Such an entity is said to be "in scope" for that portion of the program. This section introduces several important scope issues. (For more scope information, see the Java Language Specification, Section 6.3: Scope of a Declaration, at java.sun.com/docs/books/jls/second_edition/html/names.doc.html#103228.)

The basic scope rules are as follows:

1. The scope of a parameter declaration is the body of the method in which the declaration appears.

2. The scope of a local-variable declaration is from the point at which the declaration appears to the end of that block.

3. The scope of a local-variable declaration that appears in the initialization section of a for statement's header is the body of the for statement and the other expressions in the header.

4. The scope of a method or field of a class is the entire body of the class. This enables non-static methods of a class to use the class's fields and other methods.

Any block may contain variable declarations. If a local variable or parameter in a method has the same name as a field, the field is "hidden" until the block terminates execution this is called shadowing. In Chapter 8, we discuss how to access shadowed fields.

Common Programming Error 6.10

A compilation error occurs when a local variable is declared more than once in a method.
Error-Prevention Tip 6.3

Use different names for fields and local variables to help prevent subtle logic errors that occur when a method is called and a local variable of the method shadows a field of the same name in the class.

The application in Fig. 6.11 and Fig. 6.12 demonstrates scoping issues with fields and local variables. When the application begins execution, class ScopeTest's main method (Fig. 6.12, lines 711) creates an object of class Scope (line 9) and calls the object's begin method (line 10) to produce the program's output (shown in Fig. 6.12).

Figure 6.11. Scope class demonstrating scopes of a field and local variables.

(This item is displayed on page 256 in the print version)
System.out.printf("local x on entering method useLocalVariable is \%d\n", x);
++x; // modifies this method's local variable x
System.out.printf("local x before exiting method useLocalVariable is \%d\n", x);
} // end method useLocalVariable

// modify class Scope's field x during each call
public void useField()
{
    System.out.printf("field x on entering method useField is \%d\n", x);
    x *= 10; // modifies class Scope's field x
    System.out.printf("field x before exiting method useField is \%d\n", x);
} // end method useField

} // end class Scope

// Fig. 6.12: ScopeTest.java
// Application to test class Scope.
public class ScopeTest
{
    // application starting point
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        Scope testScope = new Scope();
        testScope.begin();
    } // end main
} // end class ScopeTest

local x in method begin is 5
local x on entering method useLocalVariable is 25
local x before exiting method useLocalVariable is 26
field x on entering method useField is 1
field x before exiting method useField is 10
local x on entering method useLocalVariable is 25
local x before exiting method useLocalVariable is 26
field x on entering method useField is 10
field x before exiting method useField is 100
In class `Scope`, line 7 declares and initializes the field `x` to 1. This field is shadowed (hidden) in any block (or method) that declares a local variable named `x`. Method `begin` (lines 1123) declares a local variable `x` (line 13) and initializes it to 5. This local variable's value is output to show that the field `x` (whose value is 1) is shadowed in method `begin`. The program declares two other methods, `useLocalVariable` (lines 2635) and `useField` (lines 3845) that each take no arguments and do not return results. Method `begin` calls each method twice (lines 1720). Method `useLocalVariable` declares local variable `x` (line 28). When `useLocalVariable` is first called (line 17), it creates local variable `x` and initializes it to 25 (line 28), outputs the value of `x` (lines 3031), increments `x` (line 32) and outputs the value of `x` again (lines 3334). When `useLocalVariable` is called a second time (line 19), it re-creates local variable `x` and re-initializes it to 25, so the output of each `useLocalVariable` call is identical.

Method `useField` does not declare any local variables. Therefore, when it refers to `x`, field `x` (line 7) of the class is used. When method `useField` is first called (line 18), it outputs the value (1) of field `x` (lines 4041), multiplies the field `x` by 10 (line 42) and outputs the value (10) of field `x` again (lines 4344) before returning. The next time method `useField` is called (line 20), the field has its modified value, 10, so the method outputs 10, then 100. Finally, in method `begin`, the program outputs the value of local variable `x` again (line 22) to show that none of the method calls modified `start`'s local variable `x`, because the methods all referred to variables named `x` in other scopes.
6.12. Method Overloading

Methods of the same name can be declared in the same class, as long as they have different sets of parameters (determined by the number, types and order of the parameters) this is called **method overloading**. When an overloaded method is called, the Java compiler selects the appropriate method by examining the number, types and order of the arguments in the call. Method overloading is commonly used to create several methods with the same name that perform the same or similar tasks, but on different types or different numbers of arguments. For example, Math methods `abs`, `min` and `max` (summarized in Section 6.3) are overloaded with four versions each:

1. One with two `double` parameters.
2. One with two `float` parameters.
3. One with two `int` parameters.
4. One with two `long` parameters.

Our next example demonstrates declaring and invoking overloaded methods. You will see examples of overloaded constructors in Chapter 8.

**Declaring Overloaded Methods**

In our class `MethodOverload` (Fig. 6.13), we include two overloaded versions of a method called `square` one that calculates the square of an `int` (and returns an `int`) and one that calculates the square of a `double` (and returns a `double`). Although these methods have the same name and similar parameter lists and bodies, you can think of them simply as different methods. It may help to think of the method names as "square of int" and "square of double," respectively. When the application begins execution, class `MethodOverloadTest`'s main method (Fig. 6.14, lines 610) creates an object of class `MethodOverload` (line 8) and calls the object's method `testOverloadedMethods` (line 9) to produce the program's output (Fig. 6.14).
Figure 6.13. Overloaded method declarations.
(This item is displayed on pages 258 - 259 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 6.13: MethodOverload.java
// Overloaded method declarations.

public class MethodOverload {

    // test overloaded square methods
    public void testOverloadedMethods() {
        System.out.printf("Square of integer 7 is %d\n", square(7));
        System.out.printf("Square of double 7.5 is %f\n", square(7.5));
    }

    // square method with int argument
    public int square(int intValue) {
        System.out.printf("\nCalled square with int argument: %d\n", intValue);
        return intValue * intValue;
    }

    // square method with double argument
    public double square(double doubleValue) {
        System.out.printf("\nCalled square with double argument: %f\n", doubleValue);
        return doubleValue * doubleValue;
    }

} // end class MethodOverload
```

Figure 6.14. Overloaded method declarations.
(This item is displayed on page 259 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 6.14: MethodOverloadTest.java
// Application to test class MethodOverload.

public class MethodOverloadTest {

    public static void main(String args[]) {
        MethodOverload methodOverload = new MethodOverload();
        methodOverload.testOverloadedMethods();
    } // end main

} // end class MethodOverloadTest
```
In **Fig. 6.13**, line 9 invokes method `square` with the argument `7`. Literal integer values are treated as type `int`, so the method call on line 9 invokes the version of `square` at lines 1419 that specifies an `int` parameter. Similarly, line 10 invokes method `square` with the argument `7.5`. Literal floating-point values are treated as type `double`, so the method call on line 10 invokes the version of `square` at lines 2227 that specifies a `double` parameter. Each method first outputs a line of text to prove that the proper method was called in each case. In line 10, note that the argument value and return value are displayed with the format specifier `%f` and that we did not specify a precision in either case. By default, floating-point values are displayed with six digits of precision if the precision is not specified in the format specifier.

**Distinguishing Between Overloaded Methods**

The compiler distinguishes overloaded methods by their **signature** a combination of the method's name and the number, types and order of its parameters. If the compiler looked only at method names during compilation, the code in **Fig. 6.13** would be ambiguous—the compiler would not know how to distinguish between the two `square` methods (lines 1419 and 2227). Internally, the compiler uses longer method names that include the original method name, the types of each parameter and the exact order of the parameters to determine whether the methods in a class are unique in that class.

For example, in **Fig. 6.13**, the compiler might use the logical name "square of int" for the `square` method that specifies an `int` parameter and "square of double" for the `square` method that specifies a `double` parameter (the actual names the
If method1's declaration begins as

```java
void method1( int a, float b )
```

then the compiler might use the logical name "method1 of int and float." If the parameters are specified as

```java
void method1( float a, int b )
```

then the compiler might use the logical name "method1 of float and int." Note that the order of the parameter types is important---the compiler considers the preceding two method1 headers to be distinct.

### Return Types of Overloaded Methods

In discussing the logical names of methods used by the compiler, we did not mention the return types of the methods. This is because method calls cannot be distinguished by return type. The program in Fig. 6.15 illustrates the compiler errors generated when two methods have the same signature and different return types. Overloaded methods can have different return types if the methods have different parameter lists. Also, overloaded methods need not have the same number of parameters.

**Figure 6.15.** Overloaded method declarations with identical signatures cause compilation errors, even if the return types are different.

```java
// Fig. 6.15: MethodOverloadError.java
1 // Overloaded methods with identical signatures
2 // cause compilation errors, even if return types are different.
3
class MethodOverloadError {  
   public int square( int x )
   {   return x * x;
   }
}  
```
Common Programming Error 6.11

Declaring overloaded methods with identical parameter lists is a compilation error regardless of whether the return types are different.
6.13. (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Colors and Filled Shapes

Although you can create many interesting designs with just lines and basic shapes, class Graphics provides many more capabilities. The next two features we introduce are colors and filled shapes. Adding color brings another dimension to the drawings a user sees on the computer screen. Filled shapes fill entire regions with solid colors, rather than just drawing outlines.

Colors displayed on computer screens are defined by their red, green, and blue components. These components, called **RGB values**, have integer values from 0 to 255. The higher the value of a particular component, the brighter the particular shade will be in the final color. Java uses class Color in package java.awt to represent colors using their RGB values. For convenience, the Color object contains 13 predefined static Color objects: Color.BLACK, Color.BLUE, Color.CYAN, Color.DARK_GRAY, Color.GRAY, Color.GREEN, Color.LIGHT_GRAY, Color.MAGENTA, Color.ORANGE, Color.PINK, Color.RED, Color.WHITE, and Color.YELLOW. Class Color also contains a constructor of the form:

```java
public Color( int r, int g, int b )
```

so you can create custom colors by specifying values for the individual red, green and blue components of a color.

Filled rectangles and filled ovals are drawn using Graphics methods fillRect and fillOval, respectively. These two methods have the same parameters as their unfilled counterparts drawRect and drawOval; the first two parameters are the coordinates for the upper-left corner of the shape, while the next two parameters determine its width and height. The example in Fig. 6.16 and Fig. 6.17 demonstrates colors and filled shapes by drawing and displaying a yellow smiley face on the screen.

**Figure 6.16. Drawing a smiley face using colors and filled shapes.**

(This item is displayed on page 262 in the print version)
// Fig. 6.16: DrawSmiley.java
// Demonstrates filled shapes.
import java.awt.Color;
import java.awt.Graphics;
import javax.swing.JPanel;

public class DrawSmiley extends JPanel
{
    public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
    {
        super.paintComponent( g );

        // draw the face
        g.setColor( Color.YELLOW );
        g.fillOval( 10, 10, 200, 200 );

        // draw the eyes
        g.setColor( Color.BLACK );
        g.fillOval( 55, 65, 30, 30 );
        g.fillOval( 135, 65, 30, 30 );

        // draw the mouth
        g.fillOval( 50, 110, 120, 60 );

        // "touch up" the mouth into a smile
        g.setColor( Color.YELLOW );
        g.fillRect( 50, 110, 120, 30 );
        g.fillOval( 50, 120, 120, 40 );
    }
}

Figure 6.17. Creating JFrame to display a smiley face.
(This item is displayed on pages 262 - 263 in the print version)

// Fig. 6.17: DrawSmileyTest.java
// Test application that displays a smiley face.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class DrawSmileyTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        DrawSmiley panel = new DrawSmiley();
        JFrame application = new JFrame();
        application.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        application.add( panel );
        application.setSize( 230, 250 );
        application.setVisible( true );
    }
}
The import statements in lines 35 of Fig. 6.16 import Color, Graphics and JPanel. Class DrawSmiley uses class Color to specify drawing colors and class Graphics to draw. Class JPanel again provides the area in which we draw. Line 14 in method paintComponent uses Graphics method setColor to set the current drawing color to Color.YELLOW. Method setColor requires one argument, the Color to set as the drawing color. In this case, we use the predefined object Color.YELLOW. Line 15 draws a circle with diameter 200 to represent the face when the width and height arguments are identical, method fillOval draws a circle. Next, line 18 sets the color to Color.Black, and lines 19-20 draw the eyes. Line 23 draws the mouth as an oval, but this is not quite what we want. To create a happy face, we will "touch up" the mouth. Line 26 sets the color to Color.YELLOW, so any shapes we draw will blend in with the face. Line 27 draws a rectangle that is half the mouth's height. This "erases" the top half of the mouth, leaving just the bottom half. To create a better smile, line 28 draws another oval to slightly cover the upper portion of the mouth. Class DrawSmileyTest (Fig. 6.17) creates and displays a JFrame containing the drawing, resulting in the system calling method paintComponent to draw the smiley face.

GUI and Graphics Case Study Exercises

Using method fillOval, draw a bull's-eye that alternates between two random colors, as in Fig. 6.18. Use the constructor Color( int r, int g, int b ) with random arguments to generate random colors.

Figure 6.18. A bull's-eye with two alternating, random colors.
6.1

6.2

Create a program that draws 10 random filled shapes in random colors and positions (Fig. 6.19). Method `paintComponent` should contain a loop that iterates 10 times. In each iteration, the loop should determine whether to draw a filled rectangle or an oval, create a random color and choose coordinates and dimensions at random. The coordinates should be chosen based on the panel's width and height. Lengths of sides should be limited to half the width or height of the window. What happens each time `paintComponent` is called (i.e., the window is resized, uncovered, etc.)? We will resolve this issue in Chapter 8.

**Figure 6.19. Randomly generated shapes.**
(This item is displayed on page 264 in the print version)

In the "Software Engineering Case Study" sections at the ends of Chapters 3, 4 and 5, we performed the first few steps in the object-oriented design of our ATM system. In Chapter 3, we identified the classes that we will need to implement and created our first class diagram. In Chapter 4, we described some attributes of our classes. In Chapter 5, we examined objects' states and modeled objects' state transitions and activities. In this section, we determine some of the class operations (or behaviors) needed to implement the ATM system.

Identifying Operations

An operation is a service that objects of a class provide to clients (users) of the class. Consider the operations of some real-world objects. A radio's operations include setting its station and volume (typically invoked by a person adjusting the radio's controls). A car's operations include accelerating (invoked by the driver pressing the accelerator pedal), decelerating (invoked by the driver pressing the brake pedal or releasing the gas pedal), turning and shifting gears. Software objects can offer operations as well: for example, a software graphics object might offer operations for drawing a circle, drawing a line, drawing a square and the like. A spreadsheet software object might offer operations like printing the spreadsheet, totaling the elements in a row or column and graphing information in the spreadsheet as a bar chart or pie chart.

We can derive many of the operations of each class by examining the key verbs and verb phrases in the requirements document. We then relate each of these to particular classes in our system (Fig. 6.20). The verb phrases in Fig. 6.20 help us determine the operations of each class.

Figure 6.20. Verbs and verb phrases for each class in the ATM system.

(This item is displayed on page 265 in the print version)
Modeling Operations

To identify operations, we examine the verb phrases listed for each class in Fig. 6.20. The "executes financial transactions" phrase associated with class ATM implies that class ATM instructs transactions to execute. Therefore, classes 
BalanceInquiry, Withdrawal and Deposit each need an operation to provide this service to the ATM. We place this operation (which we have named execute) in the third compartment of the three transaction classes in the updated class diagram of Fig. 6.21. During an ATM session, the ATM object will invoke the execute operation of each transaction object to tell it to execute.

Figure 6.21. Classes in the ATM system with attributes and operations.
(This item is displayed on page 266 in the print version)
The UML represents operations (which are implemented as methods in Java) by listing the operation name, followed by a comma-separated list of parameters in parentheses, a colon and the return type:

\[
\text{operationName} (\ parameter1, parameter2, \ldots, parameterN ) : \text{return type}
\]

Each parameter in the comma-separated parameter list consists of a parameter name, followed by a colon and the parameter type:

\[
\text{parameterName} : \text{parameterType}
\]

For the moment, we do not list the parameters of our operations—we will identify and model the parameters of some of the operations shortly. For some of the operations, we do not yet know the return types, so we also omit them.
from the diagram. These omissions are perfectly normal at this point. As our design and implementation proceed, we will add the remaining return types.

**Figure 6.20** lists the phrase "authenticates a user" next to class BankDatabase; the database is the object that contains the account information necessary to determine whether the account number and PIN entered by a user match those of an account held at the bank. Therefore, class BankDatabase needs an operation that provides an authentication service to the ATM. We place the operation authenticateUser in the third compartment of class BankDatabase (**Fig. 6.21**). However, an object of class Account, not class BankDatabase, stores the account number and PIN that must be accessed to authenticate a user, so class Account must provide a service to validate a PIN obtained through user input against a PIN stored in an Account object. Therefore, we add a validatePIN operation to class Account. Note that we specify a return type of Boolean for the authenticateUser and validatePIN operations. Each operation returns a value indicating either that the operation was successful in performing its task (i.e., a return value of true) or that it was not (i.e., a return value of false).

[Page 266]

**Figure 6.20** lists several additional verb phrases for class BankDatabase: "retrieves an account balance," "credits a deposit amount to an account" and "debits a withdrawal amount from an account." Like "authenticates a user," these remaining phrases refer to services that the database must provide to the ATM, because the database holds all the account data used to authenticate a user and perform ATM transactions. However, objects of class Account actually perform the operations to which these phrases refer. Thus, we assign an operation to both class BankDatabase and class Account to correspond to each of these phrases. Recall from **Section 3.10** that, because a bank account contains sensitive information, we do not allow the ATM to access accounts directly. The database acts as an intermediary between the ATM and the account data, thus preventing unauthorized access. As we will see in **Section 7.14**, class ATM invokes the operations of class BankDatabase, each of which in turn invokes the operation with the same name in class Account.

[Page 267]

The phrase "retrieves an account balance" suggests that classes BankDatabase and Account each need a getBalance operation. However, recall that we created two attributes in class Account to represent a balance availableBalance and totalBalance. A balance inquiry requires access to both balance attributes so
that it can display them to the user, but a withdrawal needs to check only the value of `availableBalance`. To allow objects in the system to obtain each balance attribute individually, we add operations `getAvailableBalance` and `getTotalBalance` to the third compartment of classes `BankDatabase` and `Account` (Fig. 6.21). We specify a return type of `Double` for these operations because the balance attributes which they retrieve are of type `Double`.

The phrases "credits a deposit amount to an account" and "debits a withdrawal amount from an account" indicate that classes `BankDatabase` and `Account` must perform operations to update an account during a deposit and withdrawal, respectively. We therefore assign `credit` and `debit` operations to classes `BankDatabase` and `Account`. You may recall that crediting an account (as in a deposit) adds an amount only to the `totalBalance` attribute. Debiting an account (as in a withdrawal), on the other hand, subtracts the amount from both balance attributes. We hide these implementation details inside class `Account`. This is a good example of encapsulation and information hiding.

If this were a real ATM system, classes `BankDatabase` and `Account` would also provide a set of operations to allow another banking system to update a user's account balance after either confirming or rejecting all or part of a deposit. Operation `confirmDepositAmount`, for example, would add an amount to the `availableBalance` attribute, thus making deposited funds available for withdrawal. Operation `rejectDepositAmount` would subtract an amount from the `totalBalance` attribute to indicate that a specified amount, which had recently been deposited through the ATM and added to the `totalBalance`, was not found in the deposit envelope. The bank would invoke this operation after determining either that the user failed to include the correct amount of cash or that any checks did not clear (i.e., they "bounced"). While adding these operations would make our system more complete, we do not include them in our class diagrams or our implementation because they are beyond the scope of the case study.

Class `Screen" displays a message to the user" at various times in an ATM session. All visual output occurs through the screen of the ATM. The requirements document describes many types of messages (e.g., a welcome message, an error message, a thank you message) that the screen displays to the user. The requirements document also indicates that the screen displays prompts and menus to the user. However, a prompt is really just a message describing what the user should input next, and a menu is essentially a type of prompt consisting of a series of messages (i.e., menu options) displayed consecutively. Therefore, rather than assign class `Screen` an individual operation to display each type of message, prompt and menu, we simply create one operation that can display any message specified by a parameter. We place this
operation (displayMessage) in the third compartment of class Screen in our class diagram (Fig. 6.21). Note that we do not worry about the parameter of this operation at this time; we model the parameter later in this section.

From the phrase "receives numeric input from the user" listed by class Keypad in Fig. 6.20, we conclude that class Keypad should perform a getInput operation. Because the ATM's keypad, unlike a computer keyboard, contains only the numbers 09, we specify that this operation returns an integer value. Recall from the requirements document that in different situations the user may be required to enter a different type of number (e.g., an account number, a PIN, the number of a menu option, a deposit amount as a number of cents). Class Keypad simply obtains a numeric value for a client of the class; it does not determine whether the value meets any specific criteria. Any class that uses this operation must verify that the user entered an appropriate number in a given situation, then respond accordingly (i.e., display an error message via class Screen). [Note: When we implement the system, we simulate the ATM's keypad with a computer keyboard, and for simplicity we assume that the user does not enter non-numeric input using keys on the computer keyboard that do not appear on the ATM's keypad.]

Figure 6.20 lists "dispenses cash" for class CashDispenser. Therefore, we create operation dispenseCash and list it under class CashDispenser in Fig. 6.21. Class CashDispenser also "indicates whether it contains enough cash to satisfy a withdrawal request." Thus, we include isSufficientCashAvailable, an operation that returns a value of UML type Boolean, in class CashDispenser. Figure 6.20 also lists "receives a deposit envelope" for class DepositSlot. The deposit slot must indicate whether it received an envelope, so we place an operation isEnvelopeReceived, which returns a Boolean value, in the third compartment of class DepositSlot. [Note: A real hardware deposit slot would most likely send the ATM a signal to indicate that an envelope was received. We simulate this behavior, however, with an operation in class DepositSlot that class ATM can invoke to find out whether the deposit slot received an envelope.]

We do not list any operations for class ATM at this time. We are not yet aware of any services that class ATM provides to other classes in the system. When we implement the system with Java code, however, operations of this class, and additional operations of the other classes in the system, may emerge.

Identifying and Modeling Operation Parameters
So far, we have not been concerned with the parameters of our operations—we have attempted to gain only a basic understanding of the operations of each class. Let's now take a closer look at some operation parameters. We identify an operation's parameters by examining what data the operation requires to perform its assigned task.

Consider the `authenticateUser` operation of class `BankDatabase`. To authenticate a user, this operation must know the account number and PIN supplied by the user. Thus we specify that operation `authenticateUser` takes integer parameters `userAccountNumber` and `userPIN`, which the operation must compare to the account number and PIN of an `Account` object in the database. We prefix these parameter names with "user" to avoid confusion between the operation's parameter names and the attribute names that belong to class `Account`. We list these parameters in the class diagram in Fig. 6.22 that models only class `BankDatabase`. [Note: It is perfectly normal to model only one class in a class diagram. In this case, we are most concerned with examining the parameters of this one class in particular, so we omit the other classes. In class diagrams later in the case study, in which parameters are no longer the focus of our attention, we omit these parameters to save space. Remember, however, that the operations listed in these diagrams still have parameters.]

Recall that the UML models each parameter in an operation's comma-separated parameter list by listing the parameter name, followed by a colon and the parameter type (in UML notation). Figure 6.22 thus specifies that operation `authenticateUser` takes two parameters `userAccountNumber` and `userPIN`, both of type `Integer`. When we implement the system in Java, we will represent these parameters with `int` values.

---

**Figure 6.22. Class BankDatabase with operation parameters.**

[View full size image]
Class BankDatabase operations getAvailableBalance, getTotalBalance, credit and debit also each require a userAccountNumber parameter to identify the account to which the database must apply the operations, so we include these parameters in the class diagram of Fig. 6.22. In addition, operations credit and debit each require a Double parameter amount to specify the amount of money to be credited or debited, respectively.

The class diagram in Fig. 6.23 models the parameters of class Account's operations. Operation validatePIN requires only a userPIN parameter, which contains the user-specified PIN to be compared with the PIN associated with the account. Like their counterparts in class BankDatabase, operations credit and debit in class Account each require a Double parameter amount that indicates the amount of money involved in the operation. Operations getAvailableBalance and getTotalBalance in class Account require no additional data to perform their tasks. Note that class Account's operations do not require an account number parameter to distinguish between Accounts, because these operations can be invoked only on a specific Account object.

**Figure 6.23.** Class Account with operation parameters.

[View full size image]

Figure 6.24 models class Screen with a parameter specified for operation displayMessage. This operation requires only a String parameter message that indicates the text to be displayed. Recall that the parameter types listed in our class diagrams are in UML notation, so the String type listed in Fig. 6.24 refers to the UML type. When we implement the system in Java, we will in fact use the Java class String to represent this parameter.
The class diagram in Fig. 6.25 specifies that operation dispenseCash of class CashDispenser takes a Double parameter amount to indicate the amount of cash (in dollars) to be dispensed. Operation isSufficientCashAvailable also takes a Double parameter amount to indicate the amount of cash in question.

Note that we do not discuss parameters for operation execute of classes BalanceInquiry, Withdrawal and Deposit, operation getInput of class Keypad and operation isEnvelopeReceived of class DepositSlot. At this point in our design process, we cannot determine whether these operations require additional data to perform their tasks, so we leave their parameter lists empty. As we progress through the case study, we may decide to add parameters to these operations.

In this section, we have determined many of the operations performed by the classes in the ATM system. We have identified the parameters and return types...
of some of the operations. As we continue our design process, the number of operations belonging to each class may vary—we might find that new operations are needed or that some current operations are unnecessary—and we might determine that some of our class operations need additional parameters and different return types.

Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

6.1 Which of the following is not a behavior?

   1. reading data from a file
   2. printing output
   3. text output
   4. obtaining input from the user

6.2 If you were to add to the ATM system an operation that returns the amount attribute of class Withdrawal, how and where would you specify this operation in the class diagram of Fig. 6.21?

6.3 Describe the meaning of the following operation listing that might appear in a class diagram for an object-oriented design of a calculator:

   add( x : Integer, y : Integer ) : Integer

Answers to Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

6.1 c.

To specify an operation that retrieves the amount attribute of class Withdrawal, the following operation listing would be placed in the operation (i.e., third) compartment of class Withdrawal:

6.2 getAmount( ) : Double

6.3 This operation listing indicates an operation named add that takes integers x and y as parameters and returns an integer value.
6.15. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned more about the details of method declarations. You also learned the difference between non-static and static methods and how to call static methods by preceding the method name with the name of the class in which it appears and a dot (.). You learned how to use operator + to perform string concatenations. You learned how to declare named constants using both enum types and public final static variables. You saw how to use class Random to generate sets of random numbers that can be used for simulations. You also learned about the scope of fields and local variables in a class. Finally, you learned that multiple methods in one class can be overloaded by providing methods with the same name and different signatures. Such methods can be used to perform the same or similar tasks using different types or different numbers of parameters.

In Chapter 7, you will learn how to maintain lists and tables of data in arrays. You will see a more elegant implementation of the application that rolls a die 6000 times and two enhanced versions of our GradeBook case study that you studied in Chapters 35. You will also learn how to access an application's command-line arguments that are passed to method main when an application begins execution.
Summary

- Experience has shown that the best way to develop and maintain a large program is to construct it from small, simple pieces, or modules. This technique is called divide and conquer.

- There are three kinds of modules in Java: methods, classes, and packages. Methods are declared within classes. Classes are typically grouped into packages so that they can be imported into programs and reused.

- Methods allow the programmer to modularize a program by separating its tasks into self-contained units. The statements in a method are written only once and hidden from other methods.

- Using existing methods as building blocks to create new programs is a form of software reusability that allows programmers to avoid repeating code within a program.

- A method call specifies the name of the method to call and provides the arguments that the called method requires to perform its task. When the method call completes, the method returns either a result or simply control to its caller.

- A class may contain static methods to perform common tasks that do not require an object of the class. Any data a static method might require to perform its tasks can be sent to the method as arguments in a method call. A static method is called by specifying the name of the class in which the method is declared followed by a dot (.) and the method name, as in

  ```
  ClassName. methodName( arguments )
  ```

- Method arguments may be constants, variables or expressions.

- Class Math provides static methods for performing common mathematical calculations. Class Math declares two fields that represent commonly used mathematical constants: Math.PI and Math.E. The constant Math.PI (3.14159265358979323846) is the ratio of a circle's circumference to its
diameter. The constant \texttt{Math.E} (2.7182818284590452354) is the base value for natural logarithms (calculated with \texttt{static Math method log}).

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{Math.PI} and \texttt{Math.E} are declared with the modifiers \texttt{public}, \texttt{final} and \texttt{static}. Making them \texttt{public} allows other programmers to use these fields in their own classes. Any field declared with keyword \texttt{final} is constant its value cannot be changed after the field is initialized. Both \texttt{PI} and \texttt{E} are declared \texttt{final} because their values never change. Making these fields \texttt{static} allows them to be accessed via the class name \texttt{Math} and a dot (.) separator, just like class \texttt{Math}'s methods.

  \item When objects of a class containing \texttt{static} fields (class variables) are created, all the objects of that class share one copy of the class's \texttt{static} fields. Together the class variables and instance variables represent the fields of a class. You will learn more about \texttt{static} fields in \texttt{Section 8.11}.

  \item When you execute the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) with the \texttt{java} command, the JVM attempts to invoke the \texttt{main} method of the class you specify. The JVM loads the class specified by \texttt{Class-Name} and uses that class name to invoke method \texttt{main}. You can specify an optional list of Strings (separated by spaces) as command-line arguments that the JVM will pass to your application.

  \item You can place a \texttt{main} method in every class you declare only the \texttt{main} method in the class you use to execute the application will be called. Some programmers take advantage of this to build a small test program into each class they declare.

  \item When a method is called, the program makes a copy of the method's argument values and assigns them to the method's corresponding parameters, which are created and initialized when the method is called. When program control returns to the point in the program where the method was called, the method's parameters are removed from memory.

  \item A method can return at most one value, but the returned value could be a reference to an object that contains many values.

  \item Variables should be declared as fields of a class only if they are required
\end{itemize}
for use in more than one method of the class or if the program should save their values between calls to the class's methods.

- There are three ways to call a method using a method name by itself to call another method of the same class; using a variable that contains a reference to an object, followed by a dot (.) and the method name to call a method of the referenced object; and using the class name and a dot (.) to call a `static` method of a class.

- There are three ways to return control to a statement that calls a method. If the method does not return a result, control returns when the program flow reaches the method-ending right brace or when the statement

  ```java
  return;
  ```

  is executed. If the method returns a result, the statement

  ```java
  return expression;
  ```

  evaluates the `expression`, then immediately returns the resulting value to the caller.

- When a method has more than one parameter, the parameters are specified as a comma-separated list. There must be one argument in the method call for each parameter in the method declaration. Also, each argument must be consistent with the type of the corresponding parameter. If a method does not accept arguments, the parameter list is empty.

- Strings can be concatenated using operator `+`, which places the characters of the right operand at the end of those in the left operand.

- Every primitive value and object in Java has a `String` representation. When an object is concatenated with a `String`, the object is converted to a `String`, then the two `Strings` are concatenated.

- For primitive values used in string concatenation, the JVM handles the conversion of the primitive values to `Strings`. If a `boolean` is concatenated with a `String`, the word "True" or the word "false" is used to represent the `boolean` value. If there are any trailing zeros in a floating-point value, these will be discarded when the number is concatenated to a `String`. 
• All objects in Java have a special method named `toString` that returns a `String` representation of the object's contents. When an object is concatenated with a `String`, the JVM implicitly calls the object's `toString` method to obtain the string representation of the object.

• When a large `String` literal is typed into a program's source code, programmers sometimes break that `String` into several smaller `Strings` and place them on multiple lines of code for readability, then reassemble the `Strings` using concatenation.

• Stacks are known as last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structures—the last item pushed (inserted) on the stack is the first item popped (removed) from the stack.

• A called method must know how to return to its caller, so the return address of the calling method is pushed onto the program execution stack when the method is called. If a series of method calls occurs, the successive return addresses are pushed onto the stack in last-in, first-out order so that the last method to execute will be the first to return to its caller.

• The program execution stack contains the memory for the local variables used in each invocation of a method during a program's execution. This data is known as the activation record or stack frame of the method call. When a method call is made, the activation record for that method call is pushed onto the program execution stack. When the method returns to its caller, the activation record for this method call is popped off the stack and those local variables are no longer known to the program. If a local variable holding a reference to an object is the only variable in the program with a reference to that object, when the activation record containing that local variable is popped off the stack, the object can no longer be accessed by the program and will eventually be deleted from memory by the JVM during "garbage collection."

• The amount of memory in a computer is finite, so only a certain amount of memory can be used to store activation records on the program execution stack. If there are more method calls than can have their activation records stored on the program execution stack, an error known as a stack overflow occurs. The application will compile correctly, but its execution
causes a stack overflow.

- An important feature of method calls is argument promotion converting an argument's value to the type that the method expects to receive in its corresponding parameter.

- A set of promotion rules apply to expressions containing values of two or more primitive types and to primitive-type values passed as arguments to methods. Each value is promoted to the "highest" type in the expression. In cases where information may be lost due to conversion, the Java compiler requires the programmer to use a cast operator to explicitly force the conversion to occur.

- Objects of class Random (package java.util) can produce random int, long, float or double values. Math method random can produce double values in the range $0.0 < x < 1.0$, where $x$ is the value returned by method random.

- Random method nextInt generates a random int value in the range 2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647. The values returned by nextInt are actually pseudorandom numbers a sequence of values produced by a complex mathematical calculation. That calculation uses the current time of day to seed the random-number generator such that each execution of a program yields a different sequence of random values.

- Class Random provides another version of method nextInt that receives an int argument and returns a value from 0 up to, but not including, the argument's value.

- Random numbers in a range can be generated with

\[
\text{number} = \text{shiftingValue} + \text{randomNumbers.nextInt( scalingFactor )};
\]

where shiftingValue specifies the first number in the desired range of consecutive integers, and scalingFactor specifies how many numbers are in the range.

Random numbers can be chosen from nonconsecutive integer ranges, as in
number = shiftingValue + differenceBetweenValues * randomNumbers.nextInt(scalingFactor);

where shiftingValue specifies the first number in the range of values, differenceBetweenValues represents the difference between consecutive numbers in the sequence and scalingFactor specifies how many numbers are in the range.

- For debugging, it is sometimes useful to repeat the same sequence of pseudorandom numbers during each program execution to prove that your application is working for a specific sequence of random numbers before testing the program with different sequences of random numbers. When repeatability is important, you can create a Random object by passing a long integer value to the constructor. If the same seed is used every time the program executes, the Random object produces the same sequence of random numbers. You can also set a Random object's seed at any time by calling the object's setSeed method.

- An enumeration is introduced by the keyword enum (new to J2SE 5.0) and a type name. As with any class, braces ({ and }) delimit the body of an enum declaration. Inside the braces is a comma-separated list of enumeration constants, each representing a unique value. The identifiers in an enum must be unique. Variables of an enum type can be assigned only constants of that enum type.

- Constants can also be declared as public final static variables. Such constants are declared with all capital letters by convention to make them stand out in the program.

- Scope is the portion of the program in which an entity, such as a variable or a method, can be referred to by its name. Such an entity is said to be "in scope" for that portion of the program.

- The scope of a parameter declaration is the body of the method in which the declaration appears.

- The scope of a local-variable declaration is from the point at which the declaration appears to the end of that block.

- The scope of a label in a labeled break or continue statement is the labeled
• The scope of a local-variable declaration that appears in the initialization section of a for statement's header is the body of the for statement and the other expressions in the header.

• The scope of a method or field of a class is the entire body of the class. This enables a class's methods to use simple names to call the class's other methods and to access the class's fields.

• Any block may contain variable declarations. If a local variable or parameter in a method has the same name as a field, the field is shadowed until the block terminates execution.

• Java allows several methods of the same name to be declared in a class, as long as the methods have different sets of parameters (determined by the number, order and types of the parameters). This technique is called method overloading.

• Overloaded methods are distinguished by their signatures—combinations of the methods' names and the number, types and order of their parameters. Methods cannot be distinguished by return type.
Terminology

activation record

application programming interface

argument promotion

block

class variable

class method

comma-separated list of parameters

command-line argument

divide-and-conquer approach

element of chance

enum keyword

enumeration

enumeration constant

final keyword

formal parameter

function

"hidden" fields
hide implementation details

hierarchical boss method/worker method relationship

invoke a method

Java API documentation

Java Application Programming Interface (API)

last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structure

local variable

make your point (game of craps)

method call

method call stack

method declaration

method overloading

modularizing a program with methods

module

nextInt method of Random

overload method

package

parameter

parameter list

popping (from a stack)
primitive type promotions

procedure

program execution stack

programmer-declared method

promotion rules

pushing (onto a stack)

pseudorandom number

Random class

random method of Math

random numbers

return keyword

reusable software components

scaling factor (random numbers)

scope of a declaration

seed value (random numbers)

setSeed method of Random

shadow a field

shift a range (random numbers)

shifting value (random numbers)

signature of a method
simulation
software reuse
stack
stack frame
stack overflow
string concatenation
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. A method is invoked with a(n) __________.
2. A variable known only within the method in which it is declared is called a(n) __________.
3. The __________ statement in a called method can be used to pass the value of an expression back to the calling method.
4. The keyword __________ indicates that a method does not return a value.
5. Data can be added or removed only from the of a __________ stack.
6. Stacks are known as __________ data structuresthe last item pushed (inserted) on the stack is the first item popped (removed) from the stack.
7. The three ways to return control from a called method to a caller are __________, and __________.
8. An object of class __________ produces random numbers.
9. The program execution stack contains the memory for local variables on each invocation of a method during a program's execution. This data, stored as a portion of the program execution stack, is known as the __________ or __________ of the method call.
10. If there are more method calls than can be stored on the program execution stack, an error known as a(n) __________ occurs.
11. The __________ of a declaration is the portion of a program that can refer to the entity in the declaration by name.
12. In Java, it is possible to have several methods with the same name that each operate on different types or numbers of arguments. This feature is called method __________.

6.2

For the class Craps in Fig. 6.9, state the scope of each of the following entities:

1. the variable randomNumbers.
2. the variable die1.
3. the method rollDice.
4. the method play.
5. the variable sumOfDice.

6.3 Write an application that tests whether the examples of the Math class method calls shown in Fig. 6.2 actually produce the indicated results.
Give the method header for each of the following methods:

1. Method `hypotenuese`, which takes two double-precision, floating-point arguments `side1` and `side2` and returns a double-precision, floating-point result.

2. Method `smallest`, which takes three integers `x`, `y` and `z` and returns an integer.

3. Method `instructions`, which does not take any arguments and does not return a value. [Note: Such methods are commonly used to display instructions to a user.]

4. Method `intToFloat`, which takes an integer argument `number` and returns a floating-point result.

Find the error in each of the following program segments. Explain how to correct the error.

1. ```
   int g()
   {
       System.out.println( "Inside method g" );
       int h()
       { 
           System.out.println( "Inside method h" );
       }
   }
   ```

2. ```
   int sum( int x, int y )
   {
       int result;
       result = x + y;
   }
   ```

3. ```
   void f( float a );
   {
       float a;
       System.out.println( a );
   }
   ```

4. ```
   void product()
   {
       int a = 6, b = 5, c = 4, result;
       result = a * b * c;
       System.out.printf( "Result is %d\n", result );
       return result;
   }
   ```

Write a complete Java application to prompt the user for the double radius of a sphere, and call method `sphereVolume` to calculate and display the volume of the sphere. Use the following statement to calculate the volume:

```java
   double volume = ( 4.0 / 3.0 ) * Math.PI * Math.pow( radius, 3 )
   ```
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

6.1 a) method call. b) local variable. c) return. d) void. e) top. f) last-in, first-out (LIFO). g) return; or return expression; or encountering the closing right brace of a method. h) Random. i) activation record, stack frame. j) stack overflow. k) scope. l) overloading. m) method call.

6.2 a) class body. b) block that defines method rollDice's body. c) class body. d) class body. e) block that defines method play's body.

The following solution demonstrates the Math class methods in Fig. 6.2:

```java
// Exercise 6.3: MathTest.java
// Testing the Math class methods.

public class MathTest
{

    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        System.out.printf( "Math.abs( 23.7 ) = %f\n", Math.abs( 23.7 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.abs( 0.0 ) = %f\n", Math.abs( 0.0 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.abs( -23.7 ) = %f\n", Math.abs( -23.7 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.ceil( 9.2 ) = %f\n", Math.ceil( 9.2 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.ceil( -9.8 ) = %f\n", Math.ceil( -9.8 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.cos( 0.0 ) = %f\n", Math.cos( 0.0 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.exp( 1.0 ) = %f\n", Math.exp( 1.0 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.exp( 2.0 ) = %f\n", Math.exp( 2.0 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.floor( 9.2 ) = %f\n", Math.floor( 9.2 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.floor( -9.8 ) = %f\n", Math.floor( -9.8 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.log( Math.E ) = %f\n", Math.log( Math.E ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.max( 2.3, 12.7 ) = %f\n", Math.max( 2.3, 12.7 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.max( -2.3, -12.7 ) = %f\n", Math.max( -2.3, -12.7 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.min( 2.3, 12.7 ) = %f\n", Math.min( 2.3, 12.7 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.min( -2.3, -12.7 ) = %f\n", Math.min( -2.3, -12.7 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.pow( 2.0, 7.0 ) = %f\n", Math.pow( 2.0, 7.0 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.pow( 9.0, 0.5 ) = %f\n", Math.pow( 9.0, 0.5 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.sin( 0.0 ) = %f\n", Math.sin( 0.0 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.sqrt( 900.0 ) = %f\n", Math.sqrt( 900.0 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.sqrt( 9.0 ) = %f\n", Math.sqrt( 9.0 ) );
        System.out.printf( "Math.tan( 0.0 ) = %f\n", Math.tan( 0.0 ) );
    }
}
```

6.3
Math.abs( 23.7 ) = 23.700000
Math.abs( 0.0 ) = 0.000000
Math.abs( -23.7 ) = 23.700000
Math.ceil( 9.2 ) = 10.000000
Math.ceil( -9.8 ) = -9.000000
Math.cos( 0.0 ) = 1.000000
Math.exp( 1.0 ) = 2.718282
Math.exp( 2.0 ) = 7.389056
Math.floor( 9.2 ) = 9.000000
Math.floor( -9.8 ) = -10.000000
Math.log( Math.E ) = 1.000000
Math.max( 2.3, 12.7 ) = 12.700000
Math.max( -2.3, -12.7 ) = -2.300000
Math.min( 2.3, 12.7 ) = 2.300000
Math.min( -2.3, -12.7 ) = -12.700000
Math.pow( 2.0, 7.0 ) = 128.000000
Math.pow( 9.0, 0.5 ) = 3.000000
Math.sin( 0.0 ) = 0.000000
Math.sqrt( 900.0 ) = 30.000000
Math.sqrt( 9.0 ) = 3.000000
Math.tan( 0.0 ) = 0.000000

1. double hypotenuse( double side1, double side2 )

2. int smallest( int x, int y, int z )

3. void instructions()

4. float intToFloat( int number )

1. Error: Method h is declared within method g.
   Correction: Move the declaration of h outside the declaration of g.

2. Error: The method is supposed to return an integer, but does not.
   Correction: Delete the variable result, and place the statement
   return x + y;
   in the method, or add the following statement at the end of the method body:
   return result;

3. Error: The semicolon after the right parenthesis of the parameter list is incorrect, and the
parameter a should not be redeclared in the method.

Correction: Delete the semicolon after the right parenthesis of the parameter list, and delete the declaration `float a;`.

4. Error: The method returns a value when it is not supposed to.

Correction: Change the return type from `void` to `int`.

The following solution calculates the volume of a sphere, using the radius entered by the user:

```java
// Exercise 6.6: Sphere.java
// Calculate the volume of a sphere.
import java.util.Scanner;

public class Sphere {
    // obtain radius from user and display volume of sphere
    public void determineSphereVolume() {
        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.print("Enter radius of sphere: ");
        double radius = input.nextDouble();
        System.out.printf("Volume is %f\n", sphereVolume(radius));
    }
    // end method determineSphereVolume
    // calculate and return sphere volume
    public double sphereVolume(double radius) {
        double volume = (4.0 / 3.0) * Math.PI * Math.pow(radius, 3);
        return volume;
    }
    // end method sphereVolume
}
// end class Sphere

// Exercise 6.6: SphereTest.java
// Calculate the volume of a sphere.
public class SphereTest {
    // application starting point
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        Sphere mySphere = new Sphere();
        mySphere.determineSphereVolume();
    }
    // end main
}
// end class SphereTest
```

Enter radius of sphere: 4
Volume is 268.082573
Exercises

What is the value of $x$ after each of the following statements is executed?

1. $x = \text{Math.abs}(7.5);$  
2. $x = \text{Math.floor}(7.5);$  
3. $x = \text{Math.abs}(0.0);$  
4. $x = \text{Math.ceil}(0.0);$  
5. $x = \text{Math.abs}(-6.4);$  
6. $x = \text{Math.ceil}(-6.4);$  
7. $x = \text{Math.ceil}(-\text{Math.abs}(-8 + \text{Math.floor}(-5.5)));$  

A parking garage charges a $2.00 minimum fee to park for up to three hours. The garage charges an additional $0.50 per hour for each hour or part thereof in excess of three hours. The maximum charge for any given 24-hour period is $10.00. Assume that no car parks for longer than 24 hours at a time. Write an application that calculates and displays the parking charges for each customer who parked in the garage yesterday. You should enter the hours parked for each customer. The program should display the charge for the current customer and should calculate and display the running total of yesterday’s receipts. The program should use the method `calculateCharges` to determine the charge for each customer.

An application of method `Math.floor` is rounding a value to the nearest integer. The statement

$$y = \text{Math.floor}(x + 0.5);$$

will round the number $x$ to the nearest integer and assign the result to $y$. Write an application that reads `double` values and uses the preceding statement to round each of the numbers to the nearest integer. For each number processed, display both the original number and the rounded number.

`Math.floor` may be used to round a number to a specific decimal place. The statement

$$y = \text{Math.floor}(x * 10 + 0.5) / 10;$$

rounds $x$ to the tenths position (i.e., the first position to the right of the decimal point). The statement

$$y = \text{Math.floor}(x * 100 + 0.5) / 100;$$

rounds $x$ to the hundredths position (i.e., the second position to the right of the decimal point).
Write an application that defines four methods for rounding a number \( x \) in various ways:

1. `roundToInteger( number )`
2. `roundToTenths( number )`
3. `roundToHundredths( number )`
4. `roundToThousandths( number )`

For each value read, your program should display the original value, the number rounded to the nearest integer, the number rounded to the nearest tenth, the number rounded to the nearest hundredth and the number rounded to the nearest thousandth.

Answer each of the following questions:

1. What does it mean to choose numbers "at random?"
2. Why is the `Math.random` method useful for simulating games of chance?
3. Why is it often necessary to scale or shift the values produced by a `Random` object?
4. Why is computerized simulation of real-world situations a useful technique?

Write statements that assign random integers to the variable \( n \) in the following ranges:

1. \( 1 < n < 2 \)
2. \( 1 < n < 100 \)
3. \( 0 < n < 9 \)
4. \( 1000 < n < 1112 \)
5. \( 1 < n < 1 \)
6. \( 3 < n < 11 \)

For each of the following sets of integers, write a single statement that will display a number at random from the set:

1. \( 2, 4, 6, 8, 10 \).
2. \( 3, 5, 7, 9, 11 \).
3. \( 6, 10, 14, 18, 22 \).

Write a method `integerPower( base, exponent )` that returns the value of \( base^{exponent} \). For example, `integerPower( 3, 4 )` calculates \( 3^4 \) (or \( 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \)). Assume that `exponent` is a positive, nonzero integer and that `base` is an integer. Method `integerPower` should use a `for` or `while` loop to control the calculation. Do not use any math-library methods. Incorporate this method into an application that reads integer values for `base` and `exponent` and performs the calculation with the `integerPower` method.

Define a method `hypotenuse` that calculates the length of the `hypotenuse` of a right triangle when the lengths of the other two sides are given. (Use the sample data in Fig. 6.26.) The method should take two arguments of type `double` and return the hypotenuse as a `double`. Incorporate this method into an
application that reads values for side1 and side2 and performs the calculation with the hypotenuse method. Determine the length of the hypotenuse for each of the triangles in Fig. 6.26.

Figure 6.26. Values for the sides of triangles in Exercise 6.15.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Triangle</th>
<th>Side 1</th>
<th>Side 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>12.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>15.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Write a method multiple that determines, for a pair of integers, whether the second integer is a multiple of the first. The method should take two integer arguments and return True if the second is a multiple of the first and False otherwise. Incorporate this method into an application that inputs a series of pairs of integers (one pair at a time) and determines whether the second value in each pair is a multiple of the first.

Write a method isEven that uses the remainder operator (%) to determine whether an integer is even. The method should take an integer argument and return True if the integer is even and False otherwise. Incorporate this method into an application that inputs a sequence of integers (one at a time) and determines whether each is even or odd.

Write a method squareOfAsterisks that displays a solid square (the same number of rows and columns) of asterisks whose side is specified in integer parameter side. For example, if side is 4, the method should display

```
****
****
****
****
```

Incorporate this method into an application that reads an integer value for side from the user and outputs the asterisks with the squareOfAsterisks method.

Modify the method created in Exercise 6.18 to form the square out of whatever character is contained in character parameter fillCharacter. Thus, if side is 5 and fillCharacter is ",", the method should display

```
#####
#####
#####
#####
#####
```
Write an application that prompts the user for the radius of a circle and uses a method called circleArea to calculate the area of the circle.

Write program segments that accomplish each of the following tasks:

1. Calculate the integer part of the quotient when integer a is divided by integer b.
2. Calculate the integer remainder when integer a is divided by integer b.
3. Use the program pieces developed in parts (a) and (b) to write a method displayDigits that receives an integer between 1 and 99999 and displays it as a sequence of digits, separating each pair of digits by two spaces. For example, the integer 4562 should appear as 4 5 6 2.

4. Incorporate the method developed in part (c) into an application that inputs an integer and calls displayDigits by passing the method the integer entered. Display the results.

Implement the following integer methods:

1. Method celsius returns the Celsius equivalent of a Fahrenheit temperature, using the calculation
   \[ C = \frac{5.0}{9.0} \times (F - 32); \]
2. Method fahrenheit returns the Fahrenheit equivalent of a Celsius temperature, using the calculation
   \[ F = \frac{9.0}{5.0} \times C + 32; \]
3. Use the methods from parts (a) and (b) to write an application that enables the user either to enter a Fahrenheit temperature and display the Celsius equivalent or to enter a Celsius temperature and display the Fahrenheit equivalent.

Write a method minimum3 that returns the smallest of three floating-point numbers. Use the Math.min method to implement minimum3. Incorporate the method into an application that reads three values from the user, determines the smallest value and displays the result.

An integer number is said to be a perfect number if its factors, including 1 (but not the number itself), sum to the number. For example, 6 is a perfect number, because 6 = 1 + 2 + 3. Write a method perfect that determines whether parameter number is a perfect number. Use this method in an application that determines and displays all the perfect numbers between 1 and 1000. Display the factors of each perfect number to confirm that the number is indeed perfect. Challenge the computing power of your computer by testing numbers much larger than 1000. Display the results.

An integer is said to be prime if it is divisible by only 1 and itself. For example, 2, 3, 5 and 7 are prime, but 4, 6, 8 and 9 are not.

1. Write a method that determines whether a number is prime.
2. Use this method in an application that determines and displays all the prime numbers less than 10,000. How many numbers up to 10,000 do you have to test to ensure that you have found all the primes?
3. Initially, you might think that \( n/2 \) is the upper limit for which you must test to see whether a number is prime, but you need only go as high as the square root of \( n \). Why? Rewrite the program, and run it both ways. Estimate the performance improvement.
Write a method that takes an integer value and returns the number with its digits reversed. For example, given the number 7631, the method should return 1367. Incorporate the method into an application that reads a value from the user and displays the result.

The **greatest common divisor (GCD)** of two integers is the largest integer that evenly divides each of the two numbers. Write a method `gcd` that returns the greatest common divisor of two integers. Incorporate the method into an application that reads two values from the user and displays the result.

Write a method `qualityPoints` that inputs a student's average and returns 4 if the student's average is 90-100, 3 if the average is 80-89, 2 if the average is 70-79, 1 if the average is 60-69 and 0 if the average is lower than 60. Incorporate the method into an application that reads a value from the user and displays the result.

Write an application that simulates coin tossing. Let the program toss a coin each time the user chooses the "Toss Coin" menu option. Count the number of times each side of the coin appears. Display the results. The program should call a separate method `flip` that takes no arguments and returns `false` for tails and `true` for heads. **[Note:** If the program realistically simulates coin tossing, each side of the coin should appear approximately half the time.]

Computers are playing an increasing role in education. Write a program that will help an elementary school student learn multiplication. Use a `Random` object to produce two positive one-digit integers. The program should then prompt the user with a question, such as

```
How much is 6 times 7?
```

The student then inputs the answer. Next, the program checks the student's answer. If it is correct, display the message "Very good!" and ask another multiplication question. If the answer is wrong, display the message "No. Please try again." and let the student try the same question repeatedly until the student finally gets it right. A separate method should be used to generate each new question. This method should be called once when the application begins execution and each time the user answers the question correctly.

The use of computers in education is referred to as **computer-assisted instruction (CAI)**. One problem that develops in CAI environments is student fatigue. This problem can be eliminated by varying the computer's responses to hold the student's attention. Modify the program of **Exercise 6.30** so that the various comments are displayed for each correct answer and each incorrect answer as follows:

**Responses to a correct answer:**

```
Very good!
Excellent!
Nice work!
Keep up the good work!
```

**Responses to an incorrect answer:**

```
No. Please try again.
Wrong. Try once more.
Don't give up!
```
Use random-number generation to choose a number from 1 to 4 that will be used to select an appropriate response to each answer. Use a switch statement to issue the responses.

More sophisticated computer-assisted instruction systems monitor the student's performance over a period of time. The decision to begin a new topic is often based on the student's success with previous topics. Modify the program of Exercise 6.31 to count the number of correct and incorrect responses typed by the student. After the student types 10 answers, your program should calculate the percentage of correct responses. If the percentage is lower than 75%, display Please ask your instructor for extra help and reset the program so another student can try it.

Write an application that plays "guess the number" as follows: Your program chooses the number to be guessed by selecting a random integer in the range 1 to 1000. The application displays the prompt Guess a number between 1 and 1000. The player inputs a first guess. If the player's guess is incorrect, your program should display Too high. Try again. or Too low. Try again. to help the player "zero in" on the correct answer. The program should prompt the user for the next guess. When the user enters the correct answer, display Congratulations. You guessed the number!, and allow the user to choose whether to play again. [Note: The guessing technique employed in this problem is similar to a binary search, which is discussed in Chapter 16, Searching and Sorting.]

Modify the program of Exercise 6.33 to count the number of guesses the player makes. If the number is 10 or fewer, display Either you know the secret or you got lucky! If the player guesses the number in 10 tries, display Aha! You know the secret! If the player makes more than 10 guesses, display You should be able to do better! Why should it take no more than 10 guesses? Well, with each "good guess," the player should be able to eliminate half of the numbers. Now show why any number from 1 to 1000 can be guessed in 10 or fewer tries.

Exercise 6.30 through Exercise 6.32 developed a computer-assisted instruction program to teach an elementary school student multiplication. Perform the following enhancements:

1. Modify the program to allow the user to enter a school grade-level capability. A grade level of 1 means that the program should use only single-digit numbers in the problems, a grade level of 2 means that the program should use numbers as large as two digits, and so on.

2. Modify the program to allow the user to pick the type of arithmetic problems he or she wishes to study. An option of 1 means addition problems only, 2 means subtraction problems only, 3 means multiplication problems only, 4 means division problems only and 5 means a random mixture of problems of all these types.

Write method distance to calculate the distance between two points \((x1, y1)\) and \((x2, y2)\). All numbers and return values should be of type double. Incorporate this method into an application that enables the user to enter the coordinates of the points.

Modify the craps program of Fig. 6.9 to allow wagering. Initialize variable bankBalance to 1000 dollars. Prompt the player to enter a wager. Check that wager is less than or equal to bankBalance, and if it is not, have the user reenter wager until a valid wager is entered. After a correct wager is entered, run one game of craps. If the player wins, increase bankBalance by wager and display the new bankBalance. If the player loses, decrease bankBalance by wager, display the new bankBalance, check whether bankBalance has become zero and, if so, display the message "Sorry. You busted!" As the game progresses, display various messages to create some "chatter," such as "Oh, you're going for broke, huh?" or "Aw c'mon, take a
Write an application that displays a table of the binary, octal, and hexadecimal equivalents of the decimal numbers in the range 1 through 256. If you are not familiar with these number systems, read Appendix E first.
Chapter 7. Arrays

*Now go, write it before them in a table, and note it in a book.*

Isaiah 30:8

*To go beyond is as wrong as to fall short.*

Confucius

*Begin at the beginning, ... and go on till you come to the end: then stop.*

Lewis Carroll

**OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will learn:

- What arrays are.
- To use arrays to store data in and retrieve data from lists and tables of values.
- To declare an array, initialize an array and refer to individual elements of an array.
- To use the enhanced for statement to iterate through arrays.
- To pass arrays to methods.
- To declare and manipulate multidimensional arrays.
- To write methods that use variable-length argument lists.
- To read command-line arguments into a program.
7.1. Introduction

This chapter introduces the important topic of **data structures** collections of related data items. **Arrays** are data structures consisting of related data items of the same type. Arrays are fixed-length entities; they remain the same length once they are created, although an array variable may be reassigned such that it refers to a new array of a different length.

After discussing how arrays are declared, created and initialized, this chapter presents a series of practical examples that demonstrate several common array manipulations. We also present a case study that examines how arrays can help simulate the shuffling and dealing of playing cards for use in an application that implements a card game. The chapter then introduces Java's enhanced `for` statement, which allows a program to access the data in an array more easily than the counter-controlled `for` statement presented in **Section 5.3** does. Two sections of the chapter enhance the case study of class `GradeBook` in Chapters 3-5. In particular, we use arrays to enable the class to maintain a set of grades in memory and analyze student grades from multiple exams in a semester—two capabilities that were absent from previous versions of the class. These and other chapter examples demonstrate the ways in which arrays allow programmers to organize and manipulate data.
7.2. Arrays

An array is a group of variables (called **elements** or **components**) containing values that all have the same type. Recall that types are divided into two categories: primitive types and reference types. Arrays are objects, so they are considered reference types. As you will soon see, what we typically think of as an array is actually a reference to an array object in memory. The elements of an array can be either primitive types or reference types (including arrays, as we will see in **Section 7.9**). To refer to a particular element in an array, we specify the name of the reference to the array and the position number of the element in the array. The position number of the element is called the element's **index** or **subscript**.

Figure 7.1 shows a logical representation of an integer array called \( c \). This array contains 12 elements. A program refers to any one of these elements with an **array-access expression** that includes the name of the array followed by the index of the particular element in **square brackets** \([\_\_]\). The first element in every array has **index zero** and is sometimes called the **zeroth element**. Thus, the elements of array \( c \) are \( c[0], c[1], c[2] \) and so on. The highest index in array \( c \) is 11, which is 1 less than 12, the number of elements in the array. Array names follow the same conventions as other variable names.

**Figure 7.1. A 12-element array.**

[View full size image]
An index must be a nonnegative integer. A program can use an expression as an index. For example, if we assume that variable a is 5 and variable b is 6, then the statement

\[ c[a + b] += 2; \]

adds 2 to array element \( c[11] \). Note that an indexed array name is an array-access expression. Such expressions can be used on the left side of an assignment to place a new value into an array element.

**Common Programming Error 7.1**

Using a value of type `long` as an array index results in a compilation error. An index must be an `int` value or a value of a type that can be promoted to `int`: namely, `byte`, `short` or `char`, but not `long`.

Let us examine array \( c \) in Fig. 7.1 more closely. The name of the array is \( c \). Every array object knows its own length and maintains this information in a `length` field. The expression \( c.length \) accesses array \( c \)'s `length` field to determine the length of the array. Note that, even though the `length` member of an array is `public`, it cannot be changed because it is a `final` variable. This array's 12 elements are referred to as \( c[0], c[1], c[2], \ldots, c[11] \). The value of \( c[0] \)
is -45, the value of $c[1]$ is 6, the value of $c[2]$ is 0, the value of $c[7]$ is 62 and the value of $c[11]$ is 78. To calculate the sum of the values contained in the first three elements of array $c$ and store the result in variable $sum$, we would write

$$sum = c[0] + c[1] + c[2];$$

To divide the value of $c[6]$ by 2 and assign the result to the variable $x$, we would write

$$x = c[6] / 2;$$
7.3. Declaring and Creating Arrays

Array objects occupy space in memory. Like other objects, arrays are created with keyword `new`. To create an array object, the programmer specifies the type of the array elements and the number of elements as part of an array-creation expression that uses keyword `new`. Such an expression returns a reference that can be stored in an array variable. The following declaration and array-creation expression create an array object containing 12 `int` elements and store the array's reference in variable `c`:

```java
int c[] = new int[12];
```

This expression can be used to create the array shown in Fig. 7.1. This task also can be performed in two steps as follows:

```java
int c[]; // declare the array variable
c = new int[12]; // create the array; assign to array variable
```

In the declaration, the square brackets following the variable name `c` indicate that `c` is a variable that will refer to an array (i.e., the variable will store an array reference). In the assignment statement, the array variable `c` receives the reference to a new array of 12 `int` elements. When an array is created, each element of the array receives a default value: zero for the numeric primitive-type elements, `false` for `boolean` elements and `null` for references (any nonprimitive type). As we will soon see, we can provide specific, nondefault initial element values when we create an array.

**Common Programming Error 7.2**

In an array declaration, specifying the number of elements in the square brackets of the declaration (e.g., `int c[12];`) is a syntax error.
A program can create several arrays in a single declaration. The following String array declaration reserves 100 elements for `b` and 27 elements for `x`:

```java
String b[] = new String[100], x[] = new String[27];
```

In this case, the class name `String` applies to each variable in the declaration. For readability, we prefer to declare only one variable per declaration, as in:

```java
String b[] = new String[100]; // create array b
String x[] = new String[27]; // create array x
```

**Good Programming Practice 7.1**

> For readability, declare only one variable per declaration. Keep each declaration on a separate line, and include a comment describing the variable being declared.

When an array is declared, the type of the array and the square brackets can be combined at the beginning of the declaration to indicate that all the identifiers in the declaration are array variables. For example, the declaration

```java
double[] array1, array2;
```

indicates that `array1` and `array2` are "array of double" variables. The preceding declaration is equivalent to:

```java
double array1[];
double array2[];
```
or

```java
double[] array1;
double[] array2;
```

The preceding pairs of declarations are equivalent when only one variable is declared in each declaration, the square brackets can be placed either after the type or after the array variable name.

**Common Programming Error 7.3**

Declaring multiple array variables in a single declaration can lead to subtle errors. Consider the declaration `int[] a, b, c;`. If `a`, `b` and `c` should be declared as array variables, then this declaration is correct placing square brackets directly following the type indicates that all the identifiers in the declaration are array variables. However, if only `a` is intended to be an array variable, and `b` and `c` are intended to be individual `int` variables, then this declaration is incorrect the declaration `int a[], b, c;` would achieve the desired result.

A program can declare arrays of any type. Every element of a primitive-type array contains a value of the array's declared type. Similarly, in an array of a reference type, every element is a reference to an object of the array's declared type. For example, every element of an `int` array is an int value, and every element of a `String` array is a reference to a `String` object.
7.4. Examples Using Arrays

This section presents several examples that demonstrate declaring arrays, creating arrays, initializing arrays and manipulating array elements.

Creating and Initializing an Array

The application of Fig. 7.2 uses keyword new to create an array of 10 int elements, which are initially zero (the default for int variables).

Figure 7.2. Initializing the elements of an array to default values of zero.
(This item is displayed on page 290 in the print version)

```
// Fig. 7.2: InitArray.java
// Creating an array.

public class InitArray
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        int array[]; // declare array named array
        array = new int[ 10 ]; // create the space for array
        System.out.printf( "%s%8s
", "Index", "Value" ); // column headings

        // output each array element's value
        for ( int counter = 0; counter < array.length; counter++ )
            System.out.printf( "%5d%8d\n", counter, array[ counter ] );
    } // end main
} // end class InitArray
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Line 8 declares `array` a reference capable of referring to an array of `int` elements. Line 10 creates the array object and assigns its reference to variable `array`. Line 12 outputs the column headings. The first column contains the index (09) of each array element, and the second column contains the default value (0) of each array element.

The `for` statement in lines 15-16 outputs the index number (represented by `counter`) and value of each array element (represented by `array[counter]`). Note that the loop control variable `counter` is initially `0`; index values start at 0, so using zero-based counting allows the loop to access every element of the array. The `for`'s loop-continuation condition uses the expression `array.length` (line 15) to determine the length of the array. In this example, the length of the array is 10, so the loop continues executing as long as the value of control variable `counter` is less than 10. The highest index value of a 10-element array is 9, so using the less-than operator in the loop-continuation condition guarantees that the loop does not attempt to access an element beyond the end of the array (i.e., during the final iteration of the loop, `counter` is `9`). We will soon see what Java does when it encounters such an out-of-range index at execution time.

---

**Using an Array Initializer**

A program can create an array and initialize its elements with an `array initializer`, which is a comma-separated list of expressions (called an `initializer list`) enclosed in braces (`{` and `}`). In this case, the array length is determined by the number of elements in the initializer list. For example, the declaration

```java
int n[] = { 10, 20, 30, 40, 50 };
```
creates a five-element array with index values 0, 1, 2, 3, and 4. Element \texttt{a[0]} is initialized to 10, \texttt{a[1]} is initialized to 20, and so on. This declaration does not require \texttt{new} to create the array object. When the compiler encounters an array declaration that includes an initializer list, the compiler counts the number of initializers in the list to determine the size of the array, then sets up the appropriate \texttt{new} operation "behind the scenes."

The application in \textbf{Fig. 7.3} initializes an integer array with 10 values (line 9) and displays the array in tabular format. The code for displaying the array elements (lines 14-15) is identical to that in \textbf{Fig. 7.2} (lines 15-16).

\textbf{Figure 7.3. Initializing the elements of an array with an array initializer.}

```
1 // Fig. 7.3: InitArray.java
2 // Initializing the elements of an array with an array initializer.
3
4 public class InitArray
5 {
6    public static void main( String args[] )
7    {
8        // initializer list specifies the value for each element
9        int array[] = { 32, 27, 64, 18, 95, 14, 90, 70, 60, 37 }; // column headings
10
11        System.out.printf( "%s%8s
" , "Index", "Value" );
12
13        // output each array element's value
14        for ( int counter = 0; counter < array.length; counter++ )
15            System.out.printf( "%5d%8d
", counter, array[ counter ] );
16    } // end main
17 } // end class InitArray
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Calculating a Value to Store in Each Array Element

Some programs calculate the value stored in each array element. The application in Fig. 7.4 creates a 10-element array and assigns to each element one of the even integers from 2 to 20 (2, 4, 6, ..., 20). Then the application displays the array in tabular format. The for statement at lines 12-13 calculates an array element's value by multiplying the current value of the for loop's control variable counter by 2, then adding 2.

Figure 7.4. Calculating values to be placed into elements of an array.

(This item is displayed on page 292 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 7.4: InitArray.java
2 // Calculating values to be placed into elements of an array.
3
4 public class InitArray
5 {
6   public static void main( String args[] )
7     {
8       final int ARRAY_LENGTH = 10; // declare constant
9          int array[] = new int[ ARRAY_LENGTH ]; // create array
10
11       // calculate value for each array element
12       for ( int counter = 0; counter < array.length; counter++ )
13           array[ counter ] = 2 + 2 * counter;
14
15       System.out.printf( "%s%8s
", "Index", "Value" ); // column headings
16
17       // output each array element's value
18       for ( int counter = 0; counter < array.length; counter++ )
19           System.out.printf( "%5d%8d
", counter, array[ counter ] );
20     } // end main
21 } // end class InitArray
```
Line 8 uses the modifier `final` to declare the **constant variable** `ARRAY_LENGTH`, whose value is 10. Constant variables (also known as `final` variables) must be initialized before they are used and cannot be modified thereafter. If an attempt is made to modify a `final` variable after it is initialized in its declaration (as in line 8), the compiler issues the error message

```
cannot assign a value to final variable variableName
```

If an attempt is made to access the value of a `final` variable before it is initialized, the compiler issues the error message

```
variable variableName might not have been initialized
```

**Good Programming Practice 7.2**

*Constant variables also are called named constants or read-only variables.* Such variables often make programs more readable than programs that use literal values (e.g., `10`). A named constant such as `ARRAY_LENGTH` clearly indicates its purpose, whereas a literal value could have different meanings based on the context in which it is used.
Common Programming Error 7.4

Assigning a value to a constant after the variable has been initialized is a compilation error.

[Page 293]

Common Programming Error 7.5

Attempting to use a constant before it is initialized is a compilation error.

Summing the Elements of an Array

Often, the elements of an array represent a series of values to be used in a calculation. For example, if the elements of an array represent exam grades, a professor may wish to total the elements of the array and use that sum to calculate the class average for the exam. The examples using class GradeBook later in the chapter, namely Fig. 7.14 and Fig. 7.18, use this technique.

The application in Fig. 7.5 sums the values contained in a 10-element integer array. The program declares, creates and initializes the array at line 8. The for statement performs the calculations. [Note: The values supplied as array initializers are often read into a program rather than specified in an initializer list. For example, an application could input the values from a user or from a file on disk (as discussed in Chapter 14, Files and Streams). Reading the data into a program makes the program more reusable, because it can be used with different sets of data.]

Figure 7.5. Computing the sum of the elements of an array.
// Fig. 7.5: SumArray.java
// Computing the sum of the elements of an array.

class SumArray
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        int array[] = { 87, 68, 94, 100, 83, 78, 85, 91, 76, 87 };
        int total = 0;

        for ( int counter = 0; counter < array.length; counter++ )
            total += array[ counter ];

        System.out.printf( "Total of array elements: %d\n", total );
    }
}

Total of array elements: 849

Using Bar Charts to Display Array Data Graphically

Many programs present data to users in a graphical manner. For example, numeric values are often displayed as bars in a bar chart. In such a chart, longer bars represent proportionally larger numeric values. One simple way to display numeric data graphically is with a bar chart that shows each numeric value as a bar of asterisks (*).

Professors often like to examine the distribution of grades on an exam. A professor might graph the number of grades in each of several categories to visualize the grade distribution for the exam. Suppose the grades on an exam were 87, 68, 94, 100, 83, 78, 85, 91, 76 and 87. Note that there was one grade of 100, two grades in the 90s, four grades in the 80s, two grades in the 70s, one grade in the 60s and no grades below 60. Our next application (Fig. 7.6) stores this grade distribution data in an array of 11 elements, each corresponding to a category of grades. For example, array[ 0 ] indicates the number of grades in the range 09, array[ 7 ] indicates the number of grades in the range 7079 and array[ 10 ] indicates the number of 100 grades. The two
versions of class \texttt{GradeBook} later in the chapter (Fig. 7.14 and Fig. 7.18) contain code that calculates these grade frequencies based on a set of grades. For now, we manually create the array by looking at the set of grades.

Figure 7.6. Bar chart printing program.

```java
// Fig. 7.6: BarChart.java
// Bar chart printing program.

public class BarChart {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        int array[] = { 0, 0, 0, 0, 1, 2, 4, 2, 1 };
        System.out.println( "Grade distribution:" );
        // for each array element, output a bar of the chart
        for ( int counter = 0; counter < array.length; counter++ ) {
            // output bar label ( "00-09: ", ..., "90-99: ", "100: " )
            if ( counter == 10 )
                System.out.printf( "%5d: ", 100 );
            else
                System.out.printf( "%02d-%02d: ",
                                    counter * 10,
                                    counter * 10 + 9 );
            // print bar of asterisks
            for ( int stars = 0; stars < array[ counter ]; stars++ )
                System.out.print( "*" );
            System.out.println(); // start a new line of output
        } // end outer for
    } // end main
} // end class BarChart

Grade distribution:
00-09:  
10-19:  
20-29:  
30-39:  
40-49:  
50-59:  
60-69:  
70-79:  
80-89:  
90-99:  
```
The application reads the numbers from the array and graphs the information as a bar chart. The program displays each grade range followed by a bar of asterisks indicating the number of grades in that range. To label each bar, lines 1620 output a grade range (e.g., "70-79: ") based on the current value of counter. When counter is 10, line 17 outputs 100 with a field width of 5, followed by a colon and a space, to align the label "100: " with the other bar labels. The nested for statement (lines 2324) outputs the bars. Note the loop-continuation condition at line 23 (stars < array[ counter ]). Each time the program reaches the inner for, the loop counts from 0 up to array[ counter ], thus using a value in array to determine the number of asterisks to display. In this example, array[ 0 ] array[ 5 ] contain zeroes because no students received a grade below 60. Thus, the program displays no asterisks next to the first six grade ranges. Note that line 19 uses the format specifier %02d to output the numbers in a grade range. This specifier indicates that an int value should be formatted as a field of two digits. The 0 flag in the format specifier indicates that values with fewer digits than the field width (2) should begin with a leading 0.

Using the Elements of an Array as Counters

Sometimes, programs use counter variables to summarize data, such as the results of a survey. In Fig. 6.8, we used separate counters in our die-rolling program to track the number of occurrences of each side of a die as the program rolled the die 6000 times. An array version of the application in Fig. 6.8 is shown in Fig. 7.7.

Figure 7.7. Die-rolling program using arrays instead of switch.

1 // Fig. 7.7: RollDie.java
2 // Roll a six-sided die 6000 times.
3 import java.util.Random;
4
public class RollDie
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        Random randomNumbers = new Random(); // random number generator
        int frequency[] = new int[7]; // array of frequency counters

        // roll die 6000 times; use die value as frequency index
        for ( int roll = 1; roll <= 6000; roll++ )
        {
            ++frequency[1 + randomNumbers.nextInt(6)];
        }

        System.out.printf( "%s%10s
" , "Face", "Frequency" );

        // output each array element's value
        for ( int face = 1; face < frequency.length; face++ )
            System.out.printf( "%4d%10d
" , face, frequency[face] );
    }
} // end class RollDie

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Face</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>963</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1041</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1012</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 7.7 uses the array `frequency` (line 10) to count the occurrences of each side of the die. The single statement in line 14 of this program replaces lines 2346 of Fig. 6.8. Line 14 uses the random value to determine which `frequency` element to increment during each iteration of the loop. The calculation in line 14 produces random numbers from 1 to 6, so array `frequency` must be large enough to store six counters. However, we use a seven-element array in which we ignore `frequency[0]` it is more logical to have the face value 1 increment `frequency[1]` than `frequency[0]`. Thus, each face value is used as an index for array `frequency`. We also replaced lines 5052 from Fig. 6.8 by looping through array `frequency` to output the results (lines 1920).
Forty students were asked to rate the quality of the food in the student cafeteria on a scale of 1 to 10 (where 1 means awful and 10 means excellent). Place the 40 responses in an integer array, and summarize the results of the poll.

This is a typical array-processing application (see Fig. 7.8). We wish to summarize the number of responses of each type (i.e., 1 through 10). The array responses (lines 9-11) is a 40-element integer array of the students' responses to the survey. We use an 11-element array frequency (line 12) to count the number of occurrences of each response. Each element of the array is used as a counter for one of the survey responses and is initialized to zero by default. As in Fig. 7.7, we ignore frequency[0].

Figure 7.8. Poll analysis program.
(This item is displayed on pages 296 - 297 in the print version)
### Rating Frequency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rating</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `for` loop at lines 1617 takes the responses one at a time from array `responses` and increments one of the 10 counters in the `frequency` array (`frequency[1]` to `frequency[10]`). The key statement in the loop is line 17, which increments the appropriate `frequency` counter, depending on the value of `responses[answer]`.

Let's consider several iterations of the `for` loop. When control variable `answer` is 0, the value of `responses[answer]` is the value of `responses[0]` (i.e., 1), so the program interprets `++frequency[responses[answer]]` as

```plaintext
++frequency[1]
```

which increments the value in array element 1. To evaluate the expression, start with the value in the innermost set of square brackets (`answer`). Once you know `answer`'s value (which is the value of the loop control variable in line 16), plug it into the expression and evaluate the next outer set of square brackets (i.e., `responses[answer]`, which is a value selected from the `responses` array in lines 911). Then use the resulting value as the index for the `frequency` array to specify which counter to increment.

When `answer` is 1, `responses[answer]` is the value of `responses[1]` (2), so the
program interprets \texttt{++frequency[ responses[ answer ] ]} as
\begin{verbatim}
    ++frequency[ 2 ]
\end{verbatim}

which increments array element 2.

When \texttt{answer} is 2, \texttt{responses[ answer ]} is the value of \texttt{responses[ 2 ]} (6), so the program interprets \texttt{++frequency[ responses[ answer ] ]} as
\begin{verbatim}
    ++frequency[ 6 ]
\end{verbatim}

which increments array element 6, and so on. Regardless of the number of responses processed in the survey, the program requires only an 11-element array (ignoring element zero) to summarize the results, because all the response values are between 1 and 10 and the index values for an 11-element array are 0 through 10.

If the data in the \texttt{responses} array had contained invalid values, such as 13, the program would have attempted to add 1 to \texttt{frequency[ 13 ]}, which is outside the bounds of the array. Java disallows this. When a Java program executes, the JVM checks array indices to ensure that they are valid (i.e., they must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than the length of the array). If a program uses an invalid index, Java generates a so-called exception to indicate that an error occurred in the program at execution time. A control statement can be used to prevent such an "out-of-bounds" error from occurring. For example, the condition in a control statement could determine whether an index is valid before allowing it to be used in an array-access expression.

\begin{center}
[Page 298]
\end{center}

\textbf{Error-Prevention Tip 7.1}

An exception indicates that an error has occurred in a program. A programmer often can write code to recover from an exception and continue program execution, rather than abnormally terminating the program. When a program attempts to access an element outside the array bounds, an \texttt{ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException} occurs. Exception handling is discussed in \textit{Chapter 13}. 
Error-Prevention Tip 7.2

When writing code to loop through an array, ensure that the array index is always greater than or equal to 0 and less than the length of the array. The loop-continuation condition should prevent the accessing of elements outside this range.
7.5. Case Study: Card Shuffling and Dealing Simulation

The examples in the chapter thus far have used arrays containing elements of primitive types. Recall from Section 7.2 that the elements of an array can be either primitive types or reference types. This section uses random number generation and an array of reference-type elements, namely objects representing playing cards, to develop a class that simulates card shuffling and dealing. This class can then be used to implement applications that play specific card games. The exercises at the end of the chapter use the classes developed here to build a simple poker application.

We first develop class Card (Fig. 7.9), which represents a playing card that has a face (e.g., "Ace", "Deuce", "Three", ..., "Jack", "Queen", "King") and a suit (e.g., "Hearts", "Diamonds", "Clubs", "Spades"). Next, we develop the DeckOfCards class (Fig. 7.10), which creates a deck of 52 playing cards in which each element is a Card object. We then build a test application (Fig. 7.11) that demonstrates class DeckOfCards's card shuffling and dealing capabilities.

Figure 7.9. Card class represents a playing card.
(This item is displayed on page 299 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 7.9: Card.java
// Card class represents a playing card.

public class Card {
    private String face; // face of card ("Ace", "Deuce", ...)
    private String suit; // suit of card ("Hearts", "Diamonds", ...)

    // two-argument constructor initializes card's face and suit
    public Card( String cardFace, String cardSuit )
    {
        face = cardFace; // initialize face of card
        suit = cardSuit; // initialize suit of card
    } // end two-argument Card constructor

    // return String representation of Card
    public String toString()
    {
        return face + " of " + suit;
    } // end method toString

} // end class Card
```
public class DeckOfCards {
    private Card deck[];    // array of Card objects
    private int currentCard;  // index of next Card to be dealt
    private final int NUMBER_OF_CARDS = 52;    // constant number of Cards
    private Random randomNumbers;  // random number generator

    // constructor fills deck of Cards
    public DeckOfCards() {
        String suits[] = { "Hearts", "Diamonds", "Clubs", "Spades" };

        deck = new Card[NUMBER_OF_CARDS];    // create array of Card objects
        currentCard = 0;    // set currentCard so first Card dealt is deck[ 0 ]
        randomNumbers = new Random();    // create random number generator

        // populate deck with Card objects
        for ( int count = 0; count < deck.length; count++ )
            deck[ count ] = new Card( faces[ count % 13 ], suits[ count / 13 ] );
    }    // end DeckOfCards constructor

    // shuffle deck of Cards with one-pass algorithm
    public void shuffle() {
        // after shuffling, dealing should start at deck[ 0 ] again
        currentCard = 0;    // reinitialize currentCard

        // for each Card, pick another random Card and swap them
        for ( int first = 0; first < deck.length; first++ ) {
            // select a random number between 0 and 51
            int second = randomNumbers.nextInt( NUMBER_OF_CARDS );

            // swap current Card with randomly selected Card
            Card temp = deck[ first ];
            deck[ first ] = deck[ second ];
            deck[ second ] = temp;
        }    // end for
    }    // end method shuffle

    // deal one Card
    public Card dealCard() {
        // determine whether Cards remain to be dealt
        if ( currentCard < deck.length ) {
            return deck[ currentCard++ ];    // return current Card in array
        }
    }    // end method dealCard
else
    return null; // return null to indicate that all Cards were dealt
// end method dealCard
}
// end class DeckOfCards

Figure 7.11. Card shuffling and dealing.
(This item is displayed on page 302 in the print version)

// Fig. 7.11: DeckOfCardsTest.java
// Card shuffling and dealing application.

public class DeckOfCardsTest
{
    // execute application
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        DeckOfCards myDeckOfCards = new DeckOfCards();
        myDeckOfCards.shuffle(); // place Cards in random order

        // print all 52 Cards in the order in which they are dealt
        for ( int i = 0; i < 13; i++ )
        {
            // deal and print 4 Cards
            System.out.printf("%-20s%-20s%-20s%-20s\n", myDeckOfCards.dealCard(), myDeckOfCards.dealCard(), myDeckOfCards.dealCard(), myDeckOfCards.dealCard());
        }
    } // end main
} // end class DeckOfCardsTest

Six of Spades     Eight of Spades     Six of Clubs     Nine of Hearts
Queen of Hearts   Seven of Clubs     Nine of Spades   King of Hearts
Three of Diamonds Deuce of Clubs    Ace of Hearts     Ten of Spades
Four of Spades    Ace of Clubs       Seven of Diamonds Four of Hearts
Three of Clubs    Deuce of Hearts    Five of Spades   Jack of Diamonds
King of Clubs     Ten of Hearts      Three of Hearts  Six of Diamonds
Queen of Clubs    Eight of Diamonds  Deuce of Diamonds Ten of Diamonds
Three of Spades   King of Diamonds  Nine of Clubs     Six of Hearts
Ace of Spades     Four of Diamonds  Seven of Hearts   Eight of Clubs
Deuce of Spades   Eight of Hearts   Five of Hearts   Queen of Spades
Jack of Hearts    Seven of Spades   Four of Clubs     Nine of Diamonds
Ace of Diamonds   Queen of Diamonds Five of Clubs     King of Spades
Five of Diamonds  Ten of Clubs      Jack of Spades   Jack of Clubs
Class Card

Class Card (Fig. 7.9) contains two String instance variables face and suit that are used to store references to the face name and suit name for a specific Card. The constructor for the class (lines 1014) receives two Strings that it uses to initialize face and suit. Method toString (lines 1720) creates a String consisting of the face of the card, the String " of " and the suit of the card. Recall from Chapter 6 that the + operator can be used to concatenate (i.e., combine) several Strings to form one larger String. Card's toString method can be invoked explicitly to obtain a string representation of a Card object (e.g., "Ace of Spades"). The toString method of an object is called implicitly when the object is used where a String is expected (e.g., when printf outputs the object as a String using the %s format specifier or when the object is concatenated to a String using the + operator). For this behavior to occur, toString must be declared with the header shown in Fig. 7.9.

Class DeckOfCards

Class DeckOfCards (Fig. 7.10) declares an instance variable array named deck of Card objects (line 7). Like primitive-type array declarations, the declaration of an array of objects includes the type of the elements in the array, followed by the name of the array variable and square brackets (e.g., Card deck[]). Class DeckOfCards also declares an integer instance variable currentCard (line 8) representing the next Card to be dealt from the deck array and a named constant NUMBER_OF_CARDS (line 9) indicating the number of Cards in the deck (52).

The class's constructor instantiates the deck array (line 19) to be of size NUMBER_OF_CARDS. When first created, the elements of the deck array are null by default, so the constructor uses a for statement (lines 2426) to fill the deck array with Cards. The for statement initializes control variable count to 0 and loops while count is less than deck.length, causing count to take on each integer value from 0 to 51 (the indices of the deck array). Each Card is instantiated and
initialized with two Strings one from the faces array (which contains the Strings "Ace" through "King") and one from the suits array (which contains the Strings "Hearts", "Diamonds", "Clubs" and "Spades"). The calculation count % 13 always results in a value from 0 to 12 (the 13 indices of the faces array in lines 1516), and the calculation count / 13 always results in a value from 0 to 3 (the four indices of the suits array in line 17). When the deck array is initialized, it contains the Cards with faces "Ace" through "King" in order for each suit.

Method shuffle (lines 3046) shuffles the Cards in the deck. The method loops through all 52 Cards (array indices 0 to 51). For each Card, a number between 0 and 51 is picked randomly to select another Card. Next, the current Card object and the randomly selected Card object are swapped in the array. This exchange is performed by the three assignments in lines 4244. The extra variable temp temporarily stores one of the two Card objects being swapped. The swap cannot be performed with only the two statements

    deck[ first ] = deck[ second ];
    deck[ second ] = deck[ first ];

If deck[ first ] is the "Ace" of "Spades" and deck[ second ] is the "Queen" of "Hearts", after the first assignment, both array elements contain the "Queen" of "Hearts" and the "Ace" of "Spades" is lost hence, the extra variable temp is needed. After the for loop terminates, the Card objects are randomly ordered. A total of only 52 swaps are made in a single pass of the entire array, and the array of Card objects is shuffled!

Method dealCard (lines 4956) deals one Card in the array. Recall that currentCard indicates the index of the next Card to be dealt (i.e., the Card at the top of the deck). Thus, line 52 compares currentCard to the length of the deck array. If the deck is not empty (i.e., currentCard is less than 52), line 53 returns the top Card and increments currentCard to prepare for the next call to dealCard otherwise, null is returned. Recall from Chapter 3 that null represents a "reference to nothing."

Shuffling and Dealing Cards
The application of Fig. 7.11 demonstrates the card dealing and shuffling capabilities of class DeckOfCards (Fig. 7.10). Line 9 creates a DeckOfCards object named myDeckOfCards. Recall that the DeckOfCards constructor creates the deck with the 52 Card objects in order by suit and face. Line 10 invokes myDeckOfCards's shuffle method to rearrange the Card objects. The for statement in lines 1319 deals all 52 Cards in the deck and prints them in four columns of 13 Cards each. Lines 1618 deal and print four Card objects, each obtained by invoking myDeckOfCards's dealCard method. When printf outputs a Card with the %-20s format specifier, the Card's toString method (declared in lines 1720 of Fig. 7.9) is implicitly invoked, and the result is output left justified in a field of width 20.
7.6. Enhanced for Statement

In previous examples, we demonstrated how to use counter-controlled for statements to iterate through the elements in an array. In this section, we introduce a feature new in J2SE 5.0—the enhanced for statement, which iterates through the elements of an array or a collection without using a counter. This section discusses how to use the enhanced for statement to loop through an array. We show how to use the enhanced for statement with collections in Chapter 19, Collections. The syntax of an enhanced for statement is:

```
for ( parameter : arrayName )
  statement
```

where parameter has two parts—a type and an identifier (e.g., int number), and arrayName is the array through which to iterate. The type of the parameter must match the type of the elements in the array. As the next example illustrates, the identifier represents successive values in the array on successive iterations of the enhanced for statement.

Figure 7.12 uses the enhanced for statement to calculate the sum of the integers in an array of student grades (lines 12-13). The type specified in the parameter to the enhanced for is int, because array is an array containing int values; therefore, the loop will select one int value from the array during each iteration. The enhanced for statement iterates through successive values in the array one-by-one. The enhanced for header can be read concisely as "for each iteration, assign the next element of array to int variable number, then execute the following statement." Thus, for each iteration, identifier number represents an int value in array. Lines 12-13 are equivalent to the following counter-controlled repetition used in lines 12-13 of Fig. 7.5 to total the integers in array:

```
for ( int counter = 0; counter < array.length; counter++ )
  total += array[ counter ];
```
The enhanced for statement simplifies the code for iterating through an array. Note, however, that the enhanced for statement can be used only to access array elements; it cannot be used to modify elements. If your program needs to modify elements, use the traditional counter-controlled for statement.

The enhanced for statement can be used in place of the counter-controlled for statement whenever code looping through an array does not require access to the counter indicating the index of the current array element. For example, totalling the integers in an array requires access only to the element values; the index of each element is irrelevant. However, if a program must use a counter for some reason other than simply to loop through an array (e.g., to print an index number next to each array element value, as in the examples earlier in this chapter), use the counter-controlled for statement.
7.7. Passing Arrays to Methods

This section demonstrates how to pass arrays and array elements as arguments to methods. At the end of the section, we discuss how all types of arguments are passed to methods. To pass an array argument to a method, specify the name of the array without any brackets. For example, if array `hourlyTemperatures` is declared as

```java
double hourlyTemperatures[] = new double[24];
```

then the method call

```java
modifyArray( hourlyTemperatures );
```

passes the reference of array `hourlyTemperatures` to method `modifyArray`. Every array object "knows" its own length (via its `length` field). Thus, when we pass an array object's reference into a method, we need not pass the array length as an additional argument.

For a method to receive an array reference through a method call, the method's parameter list must specify an array parameter. For example, the method header for method `modifyArray` might be written as

```java
void modifyArray( int b[] )
```

indicating that `modifyArray` receives the reference of an integer array in parameter `b`. The method call passes array `hourlyTemperature's` reference, so when the called method uses the array variable `b`, it refers to the same array object as `hourlyTemperatures` in the calling method.

When an argument to a method is an entire array or an individual array element of a reference type, the called method receives a copy of the
reference. However, when an argument to a method is an individual array element of a primitive type, the called method receives a copy of the element’s value. Such primitive values are called **scalars** or **scalar quantities**. To pass an individual array element to a method, use the indexed name of the array as an argument in the method call.

**Figure 7.13** demonstrates the difference between passing an entire array and passing a primitive-type array element to a method. The enhanced `for` statement at lines 16-17 outputs the five elements of `array` (an array of `int` values). Line 19 invokes method `modifyArray`, passing `array` as an argument. Method `modifyArray` (lines 36-40) receives a copy of `array`'s reference and uses the reference to multiply each of `array`'s elements by 2. To prove that `array`'s elements were modified, the `for` statement at lines 23-24 outputs the five elements of `array` again. As the output shows, method `modifyArray` doubled the value of each element.

**Figure 7.13. Passing arrays and individual array elements to methods.**

(This item is displayed on pages 304 - 305 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 7.13: PassArray.java
// Passing arrays and individual array elements to methods.

public class PassArray
{
    // main creates array and calls modifyArray and modifyElement
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        int array[] = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 };
        System.out.println(
            "Effects of passing reference to entire array:
            The values of the original array are:" );
        // output original array elements
        for ( int value : array )
            System.out.printf( "   %d", value );
        System.out.println("\n\nEffects of passing array element value:
array[3] before modifyElement: %d\n", array[ 3 ] );
```
Effects of passing reference to entire array:
The values of the original array are:
  1  2  3  4  5
The values of the modified array are:
  2  4  6  8 10

Effects of passing array element value:
array[3] before modifyElement: 8
Value of element in modifyElement: 16
array[3] after modifyElement: 8

Figure 7.13 next demonstrates that when a copy of an individual primitive-type array element is passed to a method, modifying the copy in the called method does not affect the original value of that element in the calling method's array. To show the value of array[3] before invoking method modifyElement, lines 2628 output the value of array[3] (8). Line 30 calls method modifyElement and passes array[3] as an argument. Remember that array[3] is actually one int value (8) in array. Therefore, the program passes a copy of the value of array[3]. Method modifyElement (lines 43-48) multiplies the value
received as an argument by \texttt{2}, stores the result in its parameter \texttt{element}, then outputs the value of \texttt{element} (16). Since method parameters, like local variables, cease to exist when the method in which they are declared completes execution, the method parameter \texttt{element} is destroyed when method \texttt{modifyElement} terminates. Thus, when the program returns control to \texttt{main}, lines 3132 output the unmodified value of \texttt{array[3]} (i.e., 8).

\begin{center}
[Page 306]
\end{center}

\section*{Notes on Passing Arguments to Methods}

The preceding example demonstrated the different ways that arrays and primitive-type array elements are passed as arguments to methods. We now take a closer look at how arguments in general are passed to methods. Two ways to pass arguments in method calls in many programming languages are \textbf{pass-by-value} and \textbf{pass-by-reference} (also called \textbf{call-by-value} and \textbf{call-by-reference}). When an argument is passed by value, a copy of the argument's value is passed to the called method. The called method works exclusively with the copy. Changes to the called method's copy do not affect the original variable's value in the caller.

When an argument is passed by reference, the called method can access the argument's value in the caller directly and modify that data, if necessary. Pass-by-reference improves performance by eliminating the need to copy possibly large amounts of data.

Unlike some other languages, Java does not allow programmers to choose pass-by-value or pass-by-reference all arguments are passed by value. A method call can pass two types of values to a method: copies of primitive values (e.g., values of type \texttt{int} and \texttt{double}) and copies of references to objects (including references to arrays). Objects themselves cannot be passed to methods. When a method modifies a primitive-type parameter, changes to the parameter have no effect on the original argument value in the calling method. For example, when line 30 in \texttt{main} of \textit{Fig. 7.13} passes \texttt{array[3]} to method \texttt{modifyElement}, the statement in line 45 that doubles the value of parameter \texttt{element} has no effect on the value of \texttt{array[3]} in \texttt{main}. This is also true for reference-type parameters. If you modify a reference-type parameter by assigning it the reference of another object, the parameter refers to the new object, but the reference stored in the caller's variable still refers to the original object.
Although an object's reference is passed by value, a method can still interact with the referenced object by calling its public methods using the copy of the object's reference. Since the reference stored in the parameter is a copy of the reference that was passed as an argument, the parameter in the called method and the argument in the calling method refer to the same object in memory. For example, in Fig. 7.13, both parameter `array2` in method `modifyArray` and variable `array` in `main` refer to the same array object in memory. Any changes made using the parameter `array2` are carried out on the same object that is referenced by the variable that was passed as an argument in the calling method. In Fig. 7.13, the changes made in `modifyArray` using `array2` affect the contents of the array object referenced by `array` in `main`. Thus, with a reference to an object, the called method can manipulate the caller's object directly.

**Performance Tip 7.1**

Passing arrays by reference makes sense for performance reasons. If arrays were passed by value, a copy of each element would be passed. For large, frequently passed arrays, this would waste time and consume considerable storage for the copies of the arrays.
7.8. Case Study: Class GradeBook Using an Array to Store Grades

This section further evolves class GradeBook, introduced in Chapter 3 and expanded in Chapters 45. Recall that this class represents a grade book used by a professor to store and analyze a set of student grades. Previous versions of the class process a set of grades entered by the user, but do not maintain the individual grade values in instance variables of the class. Thus, repeat calculations require the user to reenter the same grades. One way to solve this problem would be to store each grade entered in an individual instance of the class. For example, we could create instance variables grade1, grade2, ..., grade10 in class GradeBook to store 10 student grades. However, the code to total the grades and determine the class average would be cumbersome, and the class would not be able to process any more than 10 grades at a time. In this section, we solve this problem by storing grades in an array.

Storing Student Grades in an Array in Class GradeBook

The version of class GradeBook (Fig. 7.14) presented here uses an array of integers to store the grades of several students on a single exam. This eliminates the need to repeatedly input the same set of grades. Array grades is declared as an instance variable in line 7therefore, each GradeBook object maintains its own set of grades. The class's constructor (lines 1014) has two parameters - the name of the course and an array of grades. When an application (e.g., class GradeBookTest in Fig. 7.15) creates a GradeBook object, the application passes an existing int array to the constructor, which assigns the array's reference to instance variable grades (line 13). The size of the array grades is determined by the class that passes the array to the constructor. Thus, a GradeBook object can process a variable number of grades. The grade values in the passed array could have been input from a user or read from a file on disk (as discussed in Chapter 14). In our test application, we simply initialize an array with a set of grade values (Fig. 7.15, line 10). Once the grades are stored in instance variable grades of class GradeBook, all the class's methods can access the elements of grades as needed to perform various calculations.
public class GradeBook {
    private String courseName; // name of course this GradeBook represents
    private int grades[]; // array of student grades

    // two-argument constructor initializes courseName and grades array
    public GradeBook( String name, int gradesArray[] ) {
        courseName = name; // initialize courseName
        grades = gradesArray; // store grades
    } // end two-argument GradeBook constructor

    // method to set the course name
    public void setCourseName( String name ) {
        courseName = name; // store the course name
    } // end method setCourseName

    // method to retrieve the course name
    public String getCourseName() {
        return courseName;
    } // end method getCourseName

    // display a welcome message to the GradeBook user
    public void displayMessage() {
        // getCourseName gets the name of the course
        System.out.printf( "Welcome to the grade book for %s!\n\n", getCourseName() );
    } // end method displayMessage

    // perform various operations on the data
    public void processGrades() {
        // output grades array
        outputGrades();

        // call method getAverage to calculate the average grade
        System.out.printf( "Class average is %.2f\n", getAverage() );

        // call methods getMinimum and getMaximum
        System.out.printf( "Lowest grade is %d\nHighest grade is %d\n", getMinimum(), getMaximum() );

        // call outputBarChart to print grade distribution chart
        outputBarChart();
    } // end method processGrades

    // find minimum grade
public int getMinimum()
{
    int lowGrade = grades[0]; // assume grades[0] is smallest
    // loop through grades array
    for (int grade : grades)
    {
        // if grade lower than lowGrade, assign it to lowGrade
        if (grade < lowGrade)
            lowGrade = grade; // new lowest grade
    } // end for
    return lowGrade; // return lowest grade
} // end method getMinimum

// find maximum grade
public int getMaximum()
{
    int highGrade = grades[0]; // assume grades[0] is largest
    // loop through grades array
    for (int grade : grades)
    {
        // if grade greater than highGrade, assign it to highGrade
        if (grade > highGrade)
            highGrade = grade; // new highest grade
    } // end for
    return highGrade; // return highest grade
} // end method getMaximum

// determine average grade for test
public double getAverage()
{
    int total = 0; // initialize total
    // sum grades for one student
    for (int grade : grades)
        total += grade;
    // return average of grades
    return (double) total / grades.length;
} // end method getAverage

// output bar chart displaying grade distribution
public void outputBarChart()
{
    System.out.println( "Grade distribution: " );
    // stores frequency of grades in each range of 10 grades
    int frequency[] = new int[11];
    // for each grade, increment the appropriate frequency
    for (int grade : grades)
        ++frequency[grade / 10];
    // for each grade frequency, print bar in chart
    for (int count = 0; count < frequency.length; count++)
    {
        // output bar label ("00-09: ", \ldots, "90-99: ", "100: ")
        if (count == 10)
System.out.printf("%5d: ", 100);
else
    System.out.printf("%02d-%02d: ",
    count * 10, count * 10 + 9);

    // print bar of asterisks
    for ( int stars = 0; stars < frequency[ count ]; stars++ )
        System.out.print("*");
System.out.println(); // start a new line of output
}
} // end method outputBarChart

// output the contents of the grades array
public void outputGrades()
{
    System.out.println("The grades are:
    ");

    // output each student's grade
    for ( int student = 0; student < grades.length; student++ )
        System.out.printf("Student %2d: %3d
", student + 1, grades[ student ]);
} // end method outputGrades

Figure 7.15. GradeBookTest creates a GradeBook object using an array of grades, then invokes method processGrades to analyze them.

(This item is displayed on pages 311 - 312 in the print version)
Welcome to the grade book for CS101 Introduction to Java Programming!

The grades are:

Student 1: 87
Student 2: 68
Student 3: 94
Student 4: 100
Student 5: 83
Student 6: 78
Student 7: 85
Student 8: 91
Student 9: 76
Student 10: 87

Class average is 84.90
Lowest grade is 68
Highest grade is 100

Grade distribution:
00-09:
10-19:
20-29:
30-39:
40-49:
50-59:
60-69: *
70-79: **
80-89: ****
90-99: **
100: *

Method processGrades (lines 3751) contains a series of method calls that result in the output of a report summarizing the grades. Line 40 calls method outputGrades to print the contents of the array grades. Lines 134136 in method outputGrades use a for statement to output each student's grade. A counter-controlled for must be used in this case, because lines 135136 use counter variable student's value to output each grade next to a particular student number (see Fig. 7.15). Although array indices start at 0, a professor would typically number students starting at 1. Thus, lines 135136 output student + 1 as the student number to produce grade labels "Student 1: ", "Student 2: ", and so on.
Method `processGrades` next calls method `getAverage` (line 43) to obtain the average of the grades in the array. Method `getAverage` (lines 8696) uses an enhanced `for` statement to total the values in array `grades` before calculating the average. The parameter in the enhanced `for`'s header (e.g., `int grade`) indicates that for each iteration, the `int` variable `grade` takes on a value in the array `grades`. Note that the averaging calculation in line 95 uses `grades.length` to determine the number of grades being averaged.

Lines 4647 in method `processGrades` calls methods `getMinimum` and `getMaximum` to determine the lowest and highest grades of any student on the exam, respectively. Each of these methods uses an enhanced `for` statement to loop through array `grades`. Lines 5964 in method `getMinimum` loop through the array, and lines 6263 compare each grade to `lowGrade`. If a grade is less than `lowGrade`, `lowGrade` is set to that grade. When line 66 executes, `lowGrade` contains the lowest grade in the array. Method `getMaximum` (lines 7083) works the same way as method `getMinimum`.

Finally, line 50 in method `processGrades` calls method `outputBarChart` to print a distribution chart of the grade data using a technique similar to that in Fig. 7.6. In that example, we manually calculated the number of grades in each category (i.e., 09, 1019, ..., 9099 and 100) by simply looking at a set of grades. In this example, lines 107108 use a technique similar to that in Fig. 7.7 and Fig. 7.8 to calculate the frequency of grades in each category. Line 104 declares and creates array `frequency` of 11 ints to store the frequency of grades in each grade category. For each grade in array `grades`, lines 107108 increment the appropriate element of the `frequency` array. To determine which element to increment, line 108 divides the current `grade` by 10 using integer division. For example, if `grade` is 85, line 108 increments `frequency[8]` to update the count of grades in the range 8089. Lines 111125 next print the bar chart (see Fig. 7.15) based on the values in array `frequency`. Like lines 2324 of Fig. 7.6, lines 121122 of Fig. 7.14 use a value in array `frequency` to determine the number of asterisks to display in each bar.

Class `GradeBookTest` That Demonstrates Class `GradeBook`

The application of `Fig. 7.15` creates an object of class `GradeBook` (`Fig. 7.14`) using the `int` array `gradesArray` (declared and initialized in line 10). Lines 121 pass a
Software Engineering Observation 7.1

A test harness (or test application) is responsible for creating an object of the class being tested and providing it with data. This data could come from any of several sources. Test data can be placed directly into an array with an array initializer, it can come from the user at the keyboard, it can come from a file (as you will see in Chapter 14), or it can come from a network (as you will see in Chapter 24). After passing this data to the class's constructor to instantiate the object, the test harness should call upon the object to test its methods and manipulate its data. Gathering data in the test harness like this allows the class to manipulate data from several sources.
7.9. Multidimensional Arrays

Multidimensional arrays with two dimensions are often used to represent tables of values consisting of information arranged in rows and columns. To identify a particular table element, we must specify two indices. By convention, the first identifies the element's row and the second its column. Arrays that require two indices to identify a particular element are called two-dimensional arrays. (Multidimensional arrays can have more than two dimensions.) Java does not support multidimensional arrays directly, but it does allow the programmer to specify one-dimensional arrays whose elements are also one-dimensional arrays, thus achieving the same effect. Figure 7.16 illustrates a two-dimensional array a that contains three rows and four columns (i.e., a three-by-four array). In general, an array with m rows and n columns is called an m-by-n array.

Figure 7.16. Two-dimensional array with three rows and four columns.
(This item is displayed on page 313 in the print version)

[View full size image]

Every element in array a is identified in Fig. 7.16 by an array-access expression of the form a[row][column]; a is the name of the array, and row and column are the indices that uniquely identify each element in array a by row and column number. Note that the names of the elements in row 0 all have a
first index of 0, and the names of the elements in column 3 all have a second index of 3.

## Arrays of One-Dimensional Arrays

Like one-dimensional arrays, multidimensional arrays can be initialized with array initializers in declarations. A two-dimensional array `b` with two rows and two columns could be declared and initialized with **nested array initializers** as follows:

```c
int b[][] = { { 1, 2 }, { 3, 4 } };  
```

The initializer values are grouped by row in braces. So 1 and 2 initialize `b[ 0 ][ 0 ]` and `b[ 0 ][ 1 ]`, respectively, and 3 and 4 initialize `b[ 1 ][ 0 ]` and `b[ 1 ][ 1 ]`, respectively. The compiler counts the number of nested array initializers (represented by sets of braces within the outer braces) in the array declaration to determine the number of rows in array `b`. The compiler counts the initializer values in the nested array initializer for a row to determine the number of columns in that row. As we will see momentarily, this means that rows can have different lengths.

Multidimensional arrays are maintained as arrays of one-dimensional arrays. Therefore array `b` in the preceding declaration is actually composed of two separate one-dimensional arraysone containing the values in the first nested initializer list `{ 1, 2 }` and one containing the values in the second nested initializer list `{ 3, 4 }`. Thus, array `b` itself is an array of two elements, each a one-dimensional array of `int` values.

## Two-Dimensional Arrays with Rows of Different Lengths

The manner in which multidimensional arrays are represented makes them quite flexible. In fact, the lengths of the rows in array `b` are not required to be the same. For example,

```c
int b[][] = { { 1, 2 }, { 3, 4, 5 } };  
```
creates integer array \( b \) with two elements (determined by the number of nested array initializers) that represent the rows of the two-dimensional array. Each element of \( b \) is a reference to a one-dimensional array of \texttt{int} \ variables. The \texttt{int} array for row 0 is a one-dimensional array with two elements (1 and 2), and the \texttt{int} array for row 1 is a one-dimensional array with three elements (3, 4 and 5).

Creating Two-Dimensional Arrays with Array-Creation Expressions

A multidimensional array with the same number of columns in every row can be created with an array-creation expression. For example, the following lines declare array \( b \) and assign it a reference to a three-by-four array:

```java
int b[][];
b = new int [3][4];
```

In this case, we use the literal values 3 and 4 to specify the number of rows and number of columns, respectively, but this is not required. Programs can also use variables to specify array dimensions. As with one-dimensional arrays, the elements of a multidimensional array are initialized when the array object is created.

A multidimensional array in which each row has a different number of columns can be created as follows:

```java
int b[][];
b = new int[2][ ]; // create 2 rows
b[ 0 ] = new int[5 ]; // create 5 columns for row 0
b[ 1 ] = new int[3 ]; // create 3 columns for row 1
```

The preceding statements create a two-dimensional array with two rows. Row 0 has five columns, and row 1 has three columns.
Two-Dimensional Array Example: Displaying Element Values

Figure 7.17 demonstrates initializing two-dimensional arrays with array initializers and using nested for loops to traverse the arrays (i.e., manipulate every element of each array).

Figure 7.17. Initializing two-dimensional arrays.
(This item is displayed on pages 314 - 315 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 7.17: InitArray.java
// Initializing two-dimensional arrays.
public class InitArray {
    // create and output two-dimensional arrays
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        // create array1 and array2
        int array1[][] = { { 1, 2, 3 }, { 4, 5, 6 } };
        int array2[][] = { { 1, 2 }, { 3 }, { 4, 5, 6 } };

        System.out.println("Values in array1 by row are");
        outputArray( array1 ); // displays array1 by row

        System.out.println("Values in array2 by row are");
        outputArray( array2 ); // displays array2 by row
    }

    // output rows and columns of a two-dimensional array
    public static void outputArray( int array[][] )
    {
        // loop through array's rows
        for ( int row = 0; row < array.length; row++ )
        {
            // loop through columns of current row
            for ( int column = 0; column < array[row].length; column++ )
                System.out.printf("%d ", array[row][column]);
            System.out.println(); // start new line of output
        }
    }
}
```

Values in array1 by row are
1 2 3
4 5 6
Values in array2 by row are
Class `InitArray`'s `main` declares two arrays. The declaration of `array1` (line 9) uses nested array initializers to initialize the first row of the array to the values 1, 2 and 3, and the second row to the values 4, 5 and 6. The declaration of `array2` (line 10) uses nested initializers of different lengths. In this case, the first row is initialized to have two elements with values 1 and 2, respectively. The second row is initialized to have one element with value 3. The third row is initialized to have three elements with the values 4, 5 and 6, respectively.

Lines 13 and 16 call method `outputArray` (lines 2031) to output the elements of `array1` and `array2`, respectively. Method `outputArray` specifies the array parameter as `int array[][]` to indicate that the method receives a two-dimensional array. The `for` statement (lines 2330) outputs the rows of a two-dimensional array. In the loop-continuation condition of the outer `for` statement, the expression `array.length` determines the number of rows in the array. In the inner `for` statement, the expression `array[row].length` determines the number of columns in the current row of the array. This condition enables the loop to determine the exact number of columns in each row.

**Common Multidimensional-Array Manipulations Performed with `for` Statements**

Many common array manipulations use `for` statements. As an example, the following `for` statement sets all the elements in row 2 of array `a` in Fig. 7.16 to zero:

```java
for ( int column = 0; column < a[2].length; column++)
    a[2][column] = 0;
```
We specified row 2; therefore, we know that the first index is always 2 (0 is the first row, and 1 is the second row). This for loop varies only the second index (i.e., the column index). The preceding for statement is equivalent to the assignment statements

```java
a[ 2 ][ 0 ] = 0;
a[ 2 ][ 1 ] = 0;
a[ 2 ][ 2 ] = 0;
a[ 2 ][ 3 ] = 0;
```

The following nested for statement totals the values of all the elements in array a:

```java
int total = 0;
for ( int row = 0; row < a.length; row++ )
{
    for ( int column = 0; column < a[ row ].length; column++
        total += a[ row ][ column ];
}
// end outer for
```

This nested for statements total the array elements one row at a time. The outer for statement begins by setting the row index to 0 so that the first row's elements may be totaled by the inner for statement. The outer for then increments row to 1 so that the second row can be totaled. Then, the outer for increments row to 2 so that the third row can be totaled. The variable total can be displayed when the outer for statement terminates. In the next example, we show how to process a two-dimensional array in a similar manner using nested enhanced for statements.
7.10. Case Study: Class **GradeBook** Using a Two-Dimensional Array

In Section 7.8, we presented class **GradeBook** (Fig. 7.14), which used a one-dimensional array to store student grades on a single exam. In most semesters, students take several exams. Professors are likely to want to analyze grades across the entire semester, both for a single student and for the class as a whole.

**Storing Student Grades in a Two-Dimensional Array in Class GradeBook**

**Figure 7.18** contains a version of class **GradeBook** that uses a two-dimensional array **grades** to store the grades of a number of students on multiple exams. Each row of the array represents a single student's grades for the entire course, and each column represents a grade on one of the exams the students took during the course. An application such as **GradeBookTest** (Fig. 7.19) passes the array as an argument to the **GradeBook** constructor. In this example, we use a ten-by-three array containing ten students' grades on three exams. Five methods perform array manipulations to process the grades. Each method is similar to its counterpart in the earlier one-dimensional array version of class **GradeBook** (Fig. 7.14). Method **getMinimum** (lines 5270) determines the lowest grade of any student for the semester. Method **getMaximum** (lines 7391) determines the highest grade of any student for the semester. Method **getAverage** (lines 94104) determines a particular student's semester average. Method **outputBarChart** (lines 107137) outputs a bar chart of the distribution of all student grades for the semester. Method **outputGrades** (lines 140164) outputs the two-dimensional array in a tabular format, along with each student's semester average.

**Figure 7.18. GradeBook class using a two-dimensional array to store grades.**

(This item is displayed on pages 316 - 319 in the print version)
public class GradeBook
{
    private String courseName; // name of course this grade book represents
    private int grades[][]; // two-dimensional array of student grades

    // two-argument constructor initializes courseName and grades array
    public GradeBook( String name, int gradesArray[][] )
    {
        courseName = name; // initialize courseName
        grades = gradesArray; // store grades
    } // end two-argument GradeBook constructor

    // method to set the course name
    public void setCourseName( String name )
    {
        courseName = name; // store the course name
    } // end method setCourseName

    // method to retrieve the course name
    public String getCourseName()
    {
        return courseName;
    } // end method getCourseName

    // display a welcome message to the GradeBook user
    public void displayMessage()
    {
        System.out.printf("Welcome to the grade book for\n%s!\n\n", getCourseName());
    } // end method displayMessage

    // perform various operations on the data
    public void processGrades()
    {
        // output grades array
        outputGrades();

        // call methods getMinimum and getMaximum
        System.out.printf("\n%s %d\n%s %d\n\n", "Lowest grade in the grade book is", getMinimum(),
                           "Highest grade in the grade book is", getMaximum());

        // output grade distribution chart of all grades on all tests
        outputBarChart();
    } // end method processGrades

    // find minimum grade
    public int getMinimum()
    {
        // assume first element of grades array is smallest
        int lowGrade = grades[0][0];

        // loop through rows of grades array
        for ( int studentGrades[] : grades )
        {
            // loop through columns of current row
            for ( int grade : studentGrades )
            {
                // compare current grade with lowest grade
                if ( grade < lowGrade )
                {
                    lowGrade = grade;
                }
            }
        }
        return lowGrade;
    } // end method getMinimum
} // end class GradeBook
// if grade less than lowGrade, assign it to lowGrade
if ( grade < lowGrade )
    lowGrade = grade;
} // end inner for
} // end outer for

return lowGrade; // return lowest grade
} // end method getMinimum

// find maximum grade
public int getMaximum()
{
    // assume first element of grades array is largest
    int highGrade = grades[0][0];

    // loop through rows of grades array
    for ( int studentGrades[] : grades )
    {
        // loop through columns of current row
        for ( int grade : studentGrades )
        {
            // if grade greater than highGrade, assign it to highGrade
            if ( grade > highGrade )
                highGrade = grade;
        } // end inner for
    } // end outer for

    return highGrade; // return highest grade
} // end method getMaximum

// determine average grade for particular set of grades
public double getAverage( int setOfGrades[] )
{
    int total = 0; // initialize total

    // sum grades for one student
    for ( int grade : setOfGrades )
        total += grade;

    // return average of grades
    return (double) total / setOfGrades.length;
} // end method getAverage

// output bar chart displaying overall grade distribution
public void outputBarChart()
{
    System.out.println( "Overall grade distribution:");

    // stores frequency of grades in each range of 10 grades
    int frequency[] = new int[11];

    // for each grade in GradeBook, increment the appropriate frequency
    for ( int studentGrades[] : grades )
    {
        for ( int grade : studentGrades )
            ++frequency[ grade / 10 ];
    } // end outer for

    // for each grade frequency, print bar in chart
    for ( int count = 0; count < frequency.length; count++ )
    {
Figure 7.19. Creates GradeBook object using a two-dimensional array of grades, then invokes method processGrades to analyze them.

(This item is displayed on pages 321 - 322 in the print version)
Welcome to the grade book for
CS101 Introduction to Java Programming!

The grades are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Test 1</th>
<th>Test 2</th>
<th>Test 3</th>
<th>Average</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Student 1</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>84.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student 2</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>81.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student 3</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>94.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student 4</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>87.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student 5</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>77.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student 6</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>76.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student 7</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>81.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student 8</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>95.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student 9</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>77.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Student 10</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>84.33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lowest grade in the grade book is 65
Highest grade in the grade book is 100

Overall grade distribution:
00-09:  *
10-19:  
20-29:  
30-39:  
40-49:  
50-59:  
60-69:  ***
70-79:  *****
80-89:  *********
90-99:  ********
Methods `getMinimum`, `getMaximum`, `outputBarChart` and `outputGrades` each loop through array `grades` by using nested `for` statements. For example, the nested enhanced `for` statement from the declaration of method `getMinimum` (lines 5867). The outer enhanced `for` statement iterates through the two-dimensional array `grades`, assigning successive rows to parameter `studentGrades` on successive iterations. The square brackets following the parameter name indicate that `studentGrades` refers to a one-dimensional `int` array, namely, a row in array `grades` containing one student's grades. To find the lowest overall grade, the inner `for` statement compares the elements of the current one-dimensional array `studentGrades` to variable `lowGrade`. For example, on the first iteration of the outer `for`, row 0 of `grades` is assigned to parameter `studentGrades`. The inner enhanced `for` statement then loops through `studentGrades` and compares each `grade` value with `lowGrade`. If a grade is less than `lowGrade`, `lowGrade` is set to that grade. On the second iteration of the outer enhanced `for` statement, row 1 of `grades` is assigned to `studentGrades`, and the elements of this row are compared with variable `lowGrade`. This repeats until all rows of `grades` have been traversed. When execution of the nested statement is complete, `lowGrade` contains the lowest grade in the two-dimensional array. Method `getMaximum` works similarly to method `getMinimum`.

Method `outputBarChart` in Fig. 7.18 is nearly identical to the one in Fig. 7.14. However, to output the overall grade distribution for a whole semester, the method here uses a nested enhanced `for` statement (lines 115119) to create the one-dimensional array `frequency` based on all the grades in the two-dimensional array. The rest of the code in each of the two `outputBarChart` methods that displays the chart is identical.

Method `outputGrades` (lines 140164) also uses nested `for` statements to output values of the array `grades`, in addition to each student's semester average. The output in Fig. 7.19 shows the result, which resembles the tabular format of a professor's physical grade book. Lines 146147 print the column headings for
each test. We use a counter-controlled for statement here so that we can identify each test with a number. Similarly, the for statement in lines 152-163 first outputs a row label using a counter variable to identify each student (line 154). Although array indices start at 0, note that lines 147 and 154 output test + 1 and student + 1, respectively, to produce test and student numbers starting at 1 (see Fig. 7.19). The inner for statement in lines 156-157 uses the outer for statement's counter variable student to loop through a specific row of array grades and output each student's test grade. Note that an enhanced for statement can be nested in a counter-controlled for statement, and vice versa. Finally, line 161 obtains each student's semester average by passing the current row of grades (i.e., grades[ student ]) to method getAverage.

Method getAverage (lines 94-104) takes one argument a one-dimensional array of test results for a particular student. When line 161 calls getAverage, the argument is grades[ student ], which specifies that a particular row of the two-dimensional array grades should be passed to getAverage. For example, based on the array created in Fig. 7.19, the argument grades[ 1 ] represents the three values (a one-dimensional array of grades) stored in row 1 of the two-dimensional array grades. Remember that a two-dimensional array is an array whose elements are one-dimensional arrays. Method getAverage calculates the sum of the array elements, divides the total by the number of test results and returns the floating-point result as a double value (line 103).

Class GradeBookTest That Demonstrates Class GradeBook

The application in Fig. 7.19 creates an object of class GradeBook (Fig. 7.18) using the two-dimensional array of ints named gradesArray (declared and initialized in lines 1019). Lines 2122 pass a course name and gradesArray to the GradeBook constructor. Lines 2324 then invoke myGradeBook's displayMessage and processGrades methods to display a welcome message and obtain a report summarizing the students' grades for the semester, respectively.
7.11. Variable-Length Argument Lists

Variable-length argument lists are a new feature in J2SE 5.0. Programmers can create methods that receive an unspecified number of arguments. An argument type followed by an ellipsis (...) in a method's parameter list indicates that the method receives a variable number of arguments of that particular type. This use of the ellipsis can occur only once in a parameter list, and the ellipsis, together with its type, must be placed at the end of the parameter list. While programmers can use method overloading and array passing to accomplish much of what is accomplished with "varargs," or variable-length argument lists, using an ellipsis in a method's parameter list is more concise.

Figure 7.20 demonstrates method average (lines 716), which receives a variable-length sequence of doubles. Java treats the variable-length argument list as an array whose elements are all of the same type. Hence, the method body can manipulate the parameter numbers as an array of doubles. Lines 12-13 use the enhanced for loop to walk through the array and calculate the total of the doubles in the array. Line 15 accesses numbers.length to obtain the size of the numbers array for use in the averaging calculation. Lines 29, 31 and 33 in main call method average with two, three and four arguments, respectively. Method average has a variable-length argument list, so it can average as many double arguments as the caller passes. The output reveals that each call to method average returns the correct value.

Figure 7.20. Using variable-length argument lists.
(This item is displayed on pages 322 - 323 in the print version)

```java
    // Fig. 7.20: VarargsTest.java
    // Using variable-length argument lists.

    public class VarargsTest {
      // calculate average
      public static double average( double... numbers ) {
        double total = 0.0; // initialize total
        // calculate total using the enhanced for statement
        for ( double d : numbers )
          total += d;
```
return total / numbers.length;
}

public static void main( String args[] )
{
    double d1 = 10.0;
    double d2 = 20.0;
    double d3 = 30.0;
    double d4 = 40.0;

    System.out.printf( "d1 = %.1f\nd2 = %.1f\nd3 = %.1f\nd4 = %.1f\n\n", d1, d2, d3, d4 );

    System.out.printf( "Average of d1 and d2 is %.1f\n", average( d1, d2 ) );
    System.out.printf( "Average of d1, d2 and d3 is %.1f\n", average( d1, d2, d3 ) );
    System.out.printf( "Average of d1, d2, d3 and d4 is %.1f\n", average( d1, d2, d3, d4 ) );
}

Common Programming Error 7.6

Placing an ellipsis in the middle of a method parameter list is a syntax error. An ellipsis may be placed only at the end of the parameter list.

On many systems it is possible to pass arguments from the command line (these are known as **command-line arguments**) to an application by including a parameter of type `String[]` (i.e., an array of `Strings`) in the parameter list of `main`, exactly as we have done in every application in the book. By convention, this parameter is named `args`. When an application is executed using the `java` command, Java passes the command-line arguments that appear after the class name in the `java` command to the application's main method as `Strings` in the array `args`. The number of arguments passed in from the command line is obtained by accessing the array's `length` attribute. For example, the command "java MyClass a b" passes two command-line arguments to application `MyClass`. Note that command-line arguments are separated by white space, not commas. When this command executes, `MyClass`'s `main` method receives the two-element array `args` (i.e., `args.length` is 2) in which `args[0]` contains the `String"a"` and `args[1]` contains the `String"b"`. Common uses of command-line arguments include passing options and file names to applications.

Figure 7.21 uses three command-line arguments to initialize an array. When the program executes, if `args.length` is not 3, the program prints an error message and terminates (lines 912). Otherwise, lines 1432 initialize and display the array based on the values of the command-line arguments.

---

```java
// Fig. 7.21: InitArray.java
// Using command-line arguments to initialize an array.

public class InitArray
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        // check number of command-line arguments
        if ( args.length != 3 )
            System.out.println("
```

(This item is displayed on pages 324 - 325 in the print version)
Else

// get array size from first command-line argument
int arrayLength = Integer.parseInt(args[0]);
int array[] = new int[arrayLength]; // create array

// get initial value and increment from command-line argument
int initialValue = Integer.parseInt(args[1]);
int increment = Integer.parseInt(args[2]);

// calculate value for each array element
for(int counter = 0; counter < array.length; counter++)
    array[counter] = initialValue + increment * counter;

System.out.printf("%s%8s
", "Index", "Value");

// display array index and value
for(int counter = 0; counter < array.length; counter++)
    System.out.printf("%5d%8d
", counter, array[counter]);

// end else

} // end main

} // end class InitArray
The command-line arguments become available to `main` as `Strings` in `args`. Line 16 gets `args[0]` a `String` that specifies the array size and converts it to an `int` value that the program uses to create the array in line 17. The `static` method `parseInt` of class `Integer` converts its `String` argument to an `int`.

Lines 2021 convert the `args[1]` and `args[2]` command-line arguments to `int` values and store them in `initialValue` and `increment`, respectively. Lines 2425 calculate the value for each array element.

The output of the first sample execution indicates that the application received an insufficient number of command-line arguments. The second sample execution uses command-line arguments 5, 0 and 4 to specify the size of the array (5), the value of the first element (0) and the increment of each value in the array (4), respectively. The corresponding output indicates that these values create an array containing the integers 0, 4, 8, 12 and 16. The output from the third sample execution illustrates that the command-line arguments 10, 1 and 2 produce an array whose 10 elements are the nonnegative odd integers from 1 to 19.
7.13. (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Drawing Arcs

Using Java's graphics features, we can create complex drawings that would be more tedious to code line by line. In Fig. 7.22 and Fig. 7.23, we use arrays and repetition statements to draw a rainbow by using the Graphics method `fillArc`. Drawing arcs in Java is similar to drawing ovals—an arc is simply a section of an oval.

**Figure 7.22. Drawing a rainbow using arcs and an array of colors.**

(This item is displayed on pages 325 - 326 in the print version)

```java
1  // Fig. 7.22: DrawRainbow.java
2  // Demonstrates using colors in an array.
3  import java.awt.Color;
4  import java.awt.Graphics;
5  import javax.swing.JPanel;
6
7  public class DrawRainbow extends JPanel
8  {
9      // Define indigo and violet
10     final Color VIOLET = new Color( 128, 0, 128 );
11     final Color INDIGO = new Color( 75, 0, 130 );
12
13     // colors to use in the rainbow, starting from the innermost
14     // The two white entries result in an empty arc in the center
15     private Color colors[] =
16         { Color.WHITE, Color.WHITE, VIOLET, INDIGO, Color.BLUE,
17             Color.GREEN, Color.YELLOW, Color.ORANGE, Color.RED };
18
19      // constructor
20     public DrawRainbow()
21     {
22         setBackground( Color.WHITE ); // set the background to white
23     } // end DrawRainbow constructor
24
25     // draws a rainbow using concentric circles
26     public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
27     {
28         super.paintComponent( g );
29
30         int radius = 20; // radius of an arch
31
32         // draw the rainbow near the bottom-center
33         int centerX = getWidth() / 2;
34         int centerY = getHeight() - 10;
```
// draws filled arcs starting with the outermost
for (int counter = colors.length; counter > 0; counter-- )
{
    // set the color for the current arc
    g.setColor( colors[ counter - 1 ] );

    // fill the arc from 0 to 180 degrees
    g.fillArc( centerX - counter * radius,
               centerY - counter * radius,
               counter * radius * 2, counter * radius * 2, 0, 180 );
} // end for
} // end method paintComponent
} // end class DrawRainbow

Figure 7.23. Creating JFrame to display a rainbow.
(This item is displayed on page 327 in the print version)

// Fig. 7.23: DrawRainbowTest.java
// Test application to display a rainbow.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class DrawRainbowTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        DrawRainbow panel = new DrawRainbow();
        JFrame application = new JFrame();

        application.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        application.add( panel );
        application.setSize( 400, 250 );
        application.setVisible( true );
    } // end main
} // end class DrawRainbowTest
Figure 7.22 begins with the usual import statements for creating drawings (lines 35). Lines 910 declare and create two new colors \texttt{VIOLET} and \texttt{INDIGO}. As you may know, the colors of a rainbow are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo and violet. Java only has predefined constants for the first five colors. Lines 1517 initialize an array with the colors of the rainbow, starting with the innermost arcs first. The array begins with two \texttt{Color.WHITE} elements, which, as you will soon see, are for drawing the empty arcs at the center of the rainbow. Note that the instance variables can be initialized when they are declared, as shown in lines 1017. The constructor (lines 2023) contains a single statement that calls method \texttt{setBackground} (which is inherited from class \texttt{JPanel}) with the parameter \texttt{Color.WHITE}. Method \texttt{setBackground} takes a single \texttt{Color} argument and sets the background of the component to that color.

Line 30 in \texttt{paintComponent} declares local variable \texttt{radius}, which determines the thickness of each arc. Local variables \texttt{centerX} and \texttt{centerY} (lines 3334) determine the location of the midpoint on the base of the rainbow. The loop at lines 3746 uses control variable \texttt{counter} to count backwards from the end of the array, drawing the largest arcs first and placing each successive smaller arc on top of the previous one. Line 40 sets the color to draw the current arc from the array. The reason we have \texttt{Color.WHITE} entries at the beginning of the array is to create the empty arc in the center. Otherwise, the center of the rainbow would just be a solid violet semicircle. [\textit{Note}: You can change the individual colors and the number of entries in the array to create new designs.]

The \texttt{fillArc} method call at lines 4345 draws a filled semicircle. Method \texttt{fillArc} requires six parameters. The first four represent the bounding rectangle in which the arc will be drawn. The first two specify the coordinates for the upper-left corner of the bounding rectangle, and the next two specify its width and height. The fifth parameter is the starting angle on the oval, and the sixth specifies the \texttt{sweep}, or the amount of arc to cover. The starting angle and sweep are measured in degrees, with zero degrees pointing right. A positive sweep draws the arc counter-clockwise, while a negative sweep draws the arc clockwise. A method similar to \texttt{fillArc} is \texttt{drawArc}; it requires the same parameters as \texttt{fillArc}, but draws the edge of the arc rather than filling it.
Class `DrawRainbowTest` (Fig. 7.23) creates and sets up a `JFrame` to display the rainbow. Once the program makes the `JFrame` visible, the system calls the `paintComponent` method in class `DrawRainbow` to draw the rainbow on the screen.

**GUI and Graphics Case Study Exercise**

(Drawing Spirals) In this exercise, you will draw spirals with methods `drawLine` and `drawArc`.

1. Draw a square-shaped spiral (as in the left screen capture of Fig. 7.24), centered on the panel, using method `drawLine`. One technique is to use a loop that increases the line length after drawing every second line. The direction in which to draw the next line should follow a distinct pattern, such as down, left, up, right.

   **Figure 7.24. Drawing a spiral using `drawLine` (left) and `drawArc` (right).**

- Draw a circular spiral (as in the right screen capture of Fig. 7.24), using method `drawArc` to draw one semicircle at a time. Each successive semicircle should have a larger radius (as specified by the bounding rectangle's width) and should continue drawing where the previous semicircle finished.
7.14. (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Collaboration Among Objects

In this section, we concentrate on the collaborations (interactions) among objects. When two objects communicate with each other to accomplish a task, they are said to collaborate. Objects do this by invoking one another's operations. A collaboration consists of an object of one class sending a message to an object of another class. Messages are sent in Java via method calls.

In Section 6.14, we determined many of the operations of the classes in our system. In this section, we concentrate on the messages that invoke these operations. To identify the collaborations in the system, we return to the requirements document in Section 2.9. Recall that this document specifies the range of activities that occur during an ATM session (e.g., authenticating a user, performing transactions). The steps used to describe how the system must perform each of these tasks are our first indication of the collaborations in our system. As we proceed through this and the remaining "Software Engineering Case Study" sections, we may discover additional collaborations.

Identifying the Collaborations in a System

We identify the collaborations in the system by carefully reading the sections of the requirements document that specify what the ATM should do to authenticate a user and to perform each transaction type. For each action or step described in the requirements document, we decide which objects in our system must interact to achieve the desired result. We identify one object as the sending object and another as the receiving object. We then select one of the receiving object's operations (identified in Section 6.14) that must be invoked by the sending object to produce the proper behavior. For example, the ATM displays a welcome message when idle. We know that an object of class Screen displays a message to the user via its displayMessage operation. Thus, we decide that the system can display a welcome message by employing a collaboration between the ATM and the Screen in which the ATM sends a displayMessage message to the Screen by invoking the displayMessage operation of class Screen. [Note: To avoid repeating the phrase "an object of class...," we
Figure 7.25 lists the collaborations that can be derived from the requirements document. For each sending object, we list the collaborations in the order in which they first occur during an ATM session (i.e., the order in which they are discussed in the requirements document). We list each collaboration involving a unique sender, message and recipient only once, even though the collaborations may occur at several different times throughout an ATM session. For example, the first row in Fig. 7.25 indicates that the ATM collaborates with the Screen whenever the ATM needs to display a message to the user.

### Figure 7.25. Collaborations in the ATM system.
(This item is displayed on page 330 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>An object of class...</th>
<th>sends the message...</th>
<th>to an object of class...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ATM</td>
<td>displayMessage</td>
<td>Screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>getInput</td>
<td>Keypad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>authenticateUser</td>
<td>BankDatabase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>execute</td>
<td>BalanceInquiry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>execute</td>
<td>Withdrawal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Deposit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BalanceInquiry</td>
<td>getAvailableBalance</td>
<td>BankDatabase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>getTotalBalance</td>
<td>BankDatabase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>displayMessage</td>
<td>Screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Withdrawal</td>
<td>displayMessage</td>
<td>Screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>getInput</td>
<td>Keypad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>getAvailableBalance</td>
<td>BankDatabase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isSufficientCashAvailable</td>
<td>CashDispenser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>debit</td>
<td>BankDatabase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dispenseCash</td>
<td>CashDispenser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deposit</td>
<td>displayMessage</td>
<td>Screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>getInput</td>
<td>Keypad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isEnvelopeReceived</td>
<td>DepositSlot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>credit</td>
<td>BankDatabase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BankDatabase</td>
<td>validatePIN</td>
<td>Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>getAvailableBalance</td>
<td>Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>getTotalBalance</td>
<td>Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>debit</td>
<td>Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>credit</td>
<td>Account</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Let's consider the collaborations in Fig. 7.25. Before allowing a user to perform any transactions, the ATM must prompt the user to enter an account number, then to enter a PIN. It accomplishes each of these tasks by sending a displayMessage message to the Screen. Both of these actions refer to the same
collaboration between the ATM and the Screen, which is already listed in Fig. 7.25. The ATM obtains input in response to a prompt by sending a getInput message to the Keypad. Next, the ATM must determine whether the user-specified account number and PIN match those of an account in the database. It does so by sending an authenticateUser message to the BankDatabase. Recall that the BankDatabase cannot authenticate a user directly only the user's Account (i.e., the Account that contains the account number specified by the user) can access the user's PIN on record to authenticate the user. Figure 7.25 therefore lists a collaboration in which the BankDatabase sends a validatePIN message to an Account.

After the user is authenticated, the ATM displays the main menu by sending a series of displayMessage messages to the Screen and obtains input containing a menu selection by sending a getInput message to the Keypad. We have already accounted for these collaborations, so we do not add anything to Fig. 7.25. After the user chooses a type of transaction to perform, the ATM executes the transaction by sending an execute message to an object of the appropriate transaction class (i.e., a BalanceInquiry, a Withdrawal or a Deposit). For example, if the user chooses to perform a balance inquiry, the ATM sends an execute message to a BalanceInquiry.

Further examination of the requirements document reveals the collaborations involved in executing each transaction type. A BalanceInquiry retrieves the amount of money available in the user's account by sending a getAvailableBalance message to the BankDatabase, which responds by sending a getAvailableBalance message to the user's Account. Similarly, the BalanceInquiry retrieves the amount of money on deposit by sending a getTotalBalance message to the BankDatabase, which sends the same message to the user's Account. To display both measures of the user's balance at the same time, the BalanceInquiry sends a displayMessage message to the Screen.

A Withdrawal sends a series of displayMessage messages to the Screen to display a menu of standard withdrawal amounts (i.e., $20, $40, $60, $100, $200). The Withdrawal sends a getInput message to the Keypad to obtain the user's menu selection. Next, the Withdrawal determines whether the requested withdrawal amount is less than or equal to the user's account balance. The Withdrawal can obtain the amount of money available in the user's account by sending a getAvailableBalance message to the BankDatabase. The Withdrawal then tests whether the cash dispenser contains enough cash by sending an isSufficientCashAvailable message to the CashDispenser. A Withdrawal sends a debit message to the BankDatabase to decrease the user's account balance. The BankDatabase in turn
sends the same message to the appropriate Account. Recall that debiting funds from an Account decreases both the totalBalance and the availableBalance. To disburse the requested amount of cash, the Withdrawal sends a dispenseCash message to the CashDispenser. Finally, the Withdrawal sends a displayMessage message to the Screen, instructing the user to take the cash.

A Deposit responds to an execute message first by sending a displayMessage message to the Screen to prompt the user for a deposit amount. The Deposit then sends a getInput message to the Keypad to obtain the user's input. The Deposit then sends a displayMessage message to the Screen to tell the user to insert a deposit envelope. To determine whether the deposit slot received an incoming deposit envelope, the Deposit sends an isEnvelopeReceived message to the DepositSlot. The Deposit updates the user's account by sending a credit message to the BankDatabase, which subsequently sends a credit message to the user's Account. Recall that crediting funds to an Account increases the totalBalance but not the availableBalance.

Interaction Diagrams

Now that we have identified a set of possible collaborations between the objects in our ATM system, let us graphically model these interactions using the UML. The UML provides several types of interaction diagrams that model the behavior of a system by modeling how objects interact. The communication diagram emphasizes which objects participate in collaborations. [Note: Communication diagrams were called collaboration diagrams in earlier versions of the UML.] Like the communication diagram, the sequence diagram shows collaborations among objects, but it emphasizes when messages are sent between objects over time.

Communication Diagrams

Figure 7.26 shows a communication diagram that models the ATM executing a BalanceInquiry. Objects are modeled in the UML as rectangles containing names in the form objectName : ClassName. In this example, which involves only one object of each type, we disregard the object name and list only a colon followed by the class name. [Note: Specifying the name of each object in a communication diagram is recommended when modeling multiple objects of
Communicating objects are connected with solid lines, and messages are passed between objects along these lines in the direction shown by arrows. The name of the message, which appears next to the arrow, is the name of an operation (i.e., a method in Java) belonging to the receiving object. Think of the name as a "service" that the receiving object provides to sending objects (its "clients").

**Figure 7.26. Communication diagram of the ATM executing a balance inquiry.**

(This item is displayed on page 332 in the print version)

The solid filled arrow in Fig. 7.26 represents a message or synchronous call in the UML and a method call in Java. This arrow indicates that the flow of control is from the sending object (the ATM) to the receiving object (a BalanceInquiry). Since this is a synchronous call, the sending object may not send another message, or do anything at all, until the receiving object processes the message and returns control to the sending object. The sender just waits. For example, in Fig. 7.26, the ATM calls method `execute` of a BalanceInquiry and may not send another message until `execute` has finished and returns control to the ATM. [Note: If this were an asynchronous call, represented by a stick arrowhead, the sending object would not have to wait for the receiving object to return control; it would continue sending additional messages immediately following the asynchronous call. Asynchronous calls are implemented in Java using a technique called multithreading, which is discussed in Chapter 23, Multithreading.]

**Sequence of Messages in a Communication Diagram**

**Figure 7.27** shows a communication diagram that models the interactions among objects in the system when an object of class BalanceInquiry executes.
We assume that the object's `accountNumber` attribute contains the account number of the current user. The collaborations in Fig. 7.27 begin after the ATM sends an `execute` message to a `BalanceInquiry` (i.e., the interaction modeled in Fig. 7.26). The number to the left of a message name indicates the order in which the message is passed. The sequence of messages in a communication diagram progresses in numerical order from least to greatest. In this diagram, the numbering starts with message 1 and ends with message 3. The `BalanceInquiry` first sends a `getAvailableBalance` message to the `BankDatabase` (message 1), then sends a `getTotalBalance` message to the `BankDatabase` (message 2). Within the parentheses following a message name, we can specify a comma-separated list of the names of the parameters sent with the message (i.e., arguments in a Java method call) the `BalanceInquiry` passes attribute `accountNumber` with its messages to the `BankDatabase` to indicate which `Account`'s balance information to retrieve. Recall from Fig. 6.22 that operations `getAvailableBalance` and `getTotalBalance` of class `BankDatabase` each require a parameter to identify an account. The `BalanceInquiry` next displays the available balance and the total balance to the user by passing a `displayMessage` message to the `Screen` (message 3) that includes a parameter indicating the message to be displayed.

**Figure 7.27. Communication diagram for executing a balance inquiry.**
(This item is displayed on page 332 in the print version)
Note, however, that Fig. 7.27 models two additional messages passing from the BankDatabase to an Account (message 1.1 and message 2.1). To provide the ATM with the two balances of the user's Account (as requested by messages 1 and 2), the BankDatabase must pass a getAvailableBalance and a getTotalBalance message to the user's Account. Such messages passed within the handling of another message are called nested messages. The UML recommends using a decimal numbering scheme to indicate nested messages. For example, message 1.1 is the first message nested in message 1. The BankDatabase passes a getAvailableBalance message during BankDatabase's processing of a message by the same name.

[Note: If the BankDatabase needed to pass a second nested message while processing message 1, the second message would be numbered 1.2.] A message may be passed only when all the nested messages from the previous message have been passed. For example, the BalanceInquiry passes message 3 only after messages 2 and 2.1 have been passed, in that order.

The nested numbering scheme used in communication diagrams helps clarify precisely when and in what context each message is passed. For example, if we numbered the messages in Fig. 7.27 using a flat numbering scheme (i.e., 1, 2, 3, 4, 5), someone looking at the diagram might not be able to determine that BankDatabase passes the getAvailableBalance message (message 1.1) to an Account during the BankDatabase's processing of message 1, as opposed to after completing the processing of message 1. The nested decimal numbers make it clear that the second getAvailableBalance message (message 1.1) is passed to an Account within the handling of the first getAvailableBalance message (message 1) by the BankDatabase.

Sequence Diagrams

Communication diagrams emphasize the participants in collaborations, but model their timing a bit awkwardly. A sequence diagram helps model the timing of collaborations more clearly. Figure 7.28 shows a sequence diagram modeling the sequence of interactions that occur when a Withdrawal executes. The dotted line extending down from an object's rectangle is that object's lifeline, which represents the progression of time. Actions occur along an object's lifeline in chronological order from top to bottom: an action near the top happens before one near the bottom.

Figure 7.28. Sequence diagram that models a Withdrawal
Message passing in sequence diagrams is similar to message passing in communication diagrams. A solid arrow with a filled arrowhead extending from the sending object to the receiving object represents a message between two objects. The arrowhead points to an activation on the receiving object's lifeline. An **activation**, shown as a thin vertical rectangle, indicates that an object is executing. When an object returns control, a return message, represented as a dashed line with a stick arrowhead, extends from the activation of the object returning control to the activation of the object that initially sent the message. To eliminate clutter, we omit the return-message arrows—the UML allows this practice to make diagrams more readable. Like communication diagrams, sequence diagrams can indicate message parameters.
between the parentheses following a message name.

The sequence of messages in Fig. 7.28 begins when a Withdrawal prompts the user to choose a withdrawal amount by sending a displayMessage message to the Screen. The Withdrawal then sends a getInput message to the Keypad, which obtains input from the user. We have already modeled the control logic involved in a Withdrawal in the activity diagram of Fig. 5.31, so we do not show this logic in the sequence diagram of Fig. 7.28. Instead, we model the best-case scenario in which the balance of the user's account is greater than or equal to the chosen withdrawal amount, and the cash dispenser contains a sufficient amount of cash to satisfy the request. For information on how to model control logic in a sequence diagram, please refer to the Web resources and recommended readings listed at the end of Section 2.9.

After obtaining a withdrawal amount, the Withdrawal sends a getAvailableBalance message to the BankDatabase, which in turn sends a getAvailableBalance message to the user's Account. Assuming that the user's account has enough money available to permit the transaction, the Withdrawal next sends an isSufficientCashAvailable message to the CashDispenser. Assuming that there is enough cash available, the Withdrawal decreases the balance of the user's account (i.e., both the totalBalance and the availableBalance) by sending a debit message to the BankDatabase. The BankDatabase responds by sending a debit message to the user's Account. Finally, the Withdrawal sends a dispenseCash message to the CashDispenser and a displayMessage message to the Screen, telling the user to remove the cash from the machine.

We have identified the collaborations among objects in the ATM system and modeled some of these collaborations using UML interaction diagrams—both communication diagrams and sequence diagrams. In the next "Software Engineering Case Study" section (Section 8.19), we enhance the structure of our model to complete a preliminary object-oriented design, then we begin implementing the ATM system.

Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

A(n) _________ consists of an object of one class sending a message to an object of another class.
7.1

1. association
2. aggregation
3. collaboration
4. composition

7.2 Which form of interaction diagram emphasizes *what* collaborations occur? Which form emphasizes *when* collaborations occur?

7.3 Create a sequence diagram that models the interactions among objects in the ATM system that occur when a Deposit executes successfully, and explain the sequence of messages modeled by the diagram.

**Answers to Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises**

7.1 c.

7.2 Communication diagrams emphasize *what* collaborations occur. Sequence diagrams emphasize *when* collaborations occur.

Figure 7.29 presents a sequence diagram that models the interactions between objects in the ATM system that occur when a Deposit executes successfully.

**Figure 7.29. Sequence diagram that models a Deposit executing.**

(This item is displayed on page 336 in the print version)

[View full size image]
Figure 7.29 indicates that a Deposit first sends a displayMessage message to the Screen to ask the user to enter a deposit amount. Next the Deposit sends a getInput message to the Keypad to receive input from the user. The Deposit then instructs the user to enter a deposit envelope by sending a displayMessage message to the Screen. The Deposit next sends an isEnvelopeReceived message to the DepositSlot to confirm that the deposit envelope has been received by the ATM. Finally, the Deposit increases the totalBalance attribute (but not the availableBalance attribute) of the user's Account by sending a credit message to the BankDatabase. The BankDatabase responds by sending the same message to the user's Account.
7.15. Wrap-Up

This chapter began our introduction to data structures, exploring the use of arrays to store data in and retrieve data from lists and tables of values. The chapter examples demonstrated how to declare an array, initialize an array and refer to individual elements of an array. The chapter introduced the enhanced for statement to iterate through arrays. We also illustrated how to pass arrays to methods and how to declare and manipulate multidimensional arrays. Finally, the chapter showed how to write methods that use variable-length argument lists and how to read arguments passed to a program from the command line.

We continue our coverage of data structures in Chapter 17, Data Structures, which introduces dynamic data structures, such as lists, queues, stacks and trees, that can grow and shrink as programs execute. Chapter 18, Generics, presents one of J2SE 5.0's new features, generics which provides the means to create general models of methods and classes that can be declared once, but used with many different data types. Chapter 19, Collections, introduces the Java Collections Framework, which uses generics to allow programmers to specify the exact types of objects that a particular data structure will store. Chapter 19 also introduces Java's predefined data structures, which programmers can use instead of building their own. Chapter 19 discusses many data structure classes, including Vector and ArrayList, which are array-like data structures that can grow and shrink in response to a program's changing storage requirements. The Collections API also provides class Arrays, which contains utility methods for array manipulation. Chapter 19 uses several static methods of class Arrays to perform such manipulations as sorting and searching the data in an array. You will be able to use some of the Arrays methods discussed in Chapter 19 after reading the current chapter, but some of the Arrays methods require knowledge of concepts presented later in the book.

We have now introduced the basic concepts of classes, objects, control statements, methods and arrays. In Chapter 8, we take a deeper look at classes and objects.
Summary

- Arrays are data structures consisting of related data items of the same type. Arrays are fixed-length entities; they remain the same length once they are created, although an array variable may be reassigned the reference of a new array of a different length.

- An array is a group of variables (called elements or components) containing values that all have the same type. Arrays are objects, so they are considered reference types. The elements of an array can be either primitive types or reference types (including arrays).

- To refer to a particular element in an array, we specify the name of the reference to the array and the index (subscript) of the element in the array.

- A program refers to any one of an array's elements with an array-access expression that includes the name of the array followed by the index of the particular element in square brackets (\([\])\).

- The first element in every array has index zero and is sometimes called the zeroth element.

- An index must be a nonnegative integer. A program can use an expression as an index.

- Every array object knows its own length and maintains this information in a `length` field. The expression `array.length` accesses `array`'s length field to determine the length of the array.

- To create an array object, the programmer specifies the type of the array elements and the number of elements as part of an array-creation expression that uses keyword `new`. The following array-creation expression creates an array of 100 `int` values:

  ```java
  int b[] = new int[100];
  ```

- When an array is created, each element of the array receives a default
value zero for numeric primitive-type elements, false for boolean elements and null for references (any nonprimitive type).

- When an array is declared, the type of the array and the square brackets can be combined at the beginning of the declaration to indicate that all the identifiers in the declaration are array variables, as in

  ```java
double[] array1, array2;
```

- A program can declare arrays of any type. Every element of a primitive-type array contains a variable of the array's declared type. Similarly, in an array of a reference type, every element is a reference to an object of the array's declared type.

- A program can create an array and initialize its elements with an array initializer (i.e., an initializer list enclosed in braces).

- Constant variables (also called named constants or read-only variables) must be initialized before they are used and cannot be modified thereafter.

When a Java program executes, the JVM checks array indices to ensure that they are valid (i.e., they must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than the length of the array). If a program uses an invalid index, Java generates a so-called exception to indicate that an error occurred in the program at execution time.

- The enhanced for statement allows programmers to iterate through the elements of an array or a collection without using a counter. The syntax of an enhanced for statement is:

  ```java
  for (parameter : arrayName)
      statement
  ```

  where parameter has two parts—a type and an identifier (e.g., int number), and arrayName is the array through which to iterate.

- The enhanced for statement cannot be used to modify elements in an array. If a program needs to modify elements, use the traditional counter-
controlled for statement.

- When an argument is passed by value, a copy of the argument's value is made and passed to the called method. The called method works exclusively with the copy.

- When an argument is passed by reference, the called method can access the argument's value in the caller directly and possibly modify it.

- Java does not allow programmers to choose between pass-by-value and pass-by-reference all arguments are passed by value. A method call can pass two types of values to a method copies of primitive values (e.g., values of type `int` and `double`) and copies of references to objects. Although an object's reference is passed by value, a method can still interact with the referenced object by calling its `public` methods using the copy of the object's reference.

- To pass an object reference to a method, simply specify in the method call the name of the variable that refers to the object.

- When an argument to a method is an entire array or an individual array element of a reference type, the called method receives a copy of the array or element's reference. When an argument to a method is an individual array element of a primitive type, the called method receives a copy of the element's value.

- To pass an individual array element to a method, use the indexed name of the array as an argument in the method call.

- Multidimensional arrays with two dimensions are often used to represent tables of values consisting of information arranged in rows and columns.

- Arrays that require two indices to identify a particular element are called two-dimensional arrays. An array with \( m \) rows and \( n \) columns is called an \( m \)-by-\( n \) array. A two-dimensional array can be initialized with an array initializer of the form

```java
arrayType arrayName[][] = { { row1 initializer }, { row2 initializer }, ... };
```
• Multidimensional arrays are maintained as arrays of separate one-dimensional arrays. As a result, the lengths of the rows in a two-dimensional array are not required to be the same.

• A multidimensional array with the same number of columns in every row can be created with an array-creation expression of the form

  \[
  \text{arrayType arrayName}[][] = \text{new arrayType}[\text{numRows}]
  \[
  \text{[ numColumns ]};
  \]

• An argument type followed by an ellipsis (...) in a method's parameter list indicates that the method receives a variable number of arguments of that particular type. The ellipsis can occur only once in a method's parameter list and it must be at the end of the parameter list.

A variable-length argument list is treated as an array within the method body. The number of arguments in the array can be obtained using the array's length field.

• Passing arguments to main in a Java application from the command line is achieved by including a parameter of type String[] in the parameter list of main. By convention, main's parameter is named args.

Java passes the command-line arguments that appear after the class name in the java command to the application's main method as Strings in the array args. The number of arguments passed in from the command line is obtained by accessing the array's length attribute.

• The static method parseInt of class Integer converts its String argument to an int.
**Terminology**

0 flag (in a format specifier)

\[ a[i] \]

\[ a[i][j] \]

array

array-access expression

array-creation expression

array initializer

bounds checking

column index

column of an array

command-line arguments

component of an array

constant variable

data structure

declare an array

element of an array

ellipsis (...) in a method's parameter list

enhanced for statement
final keyword

index

index zero

initialize an array

initializer list

length field of an array

$m$-by-$n$ array

multidimensional array

name of an array

named constant

nested array initializers

off-by-one error

one-dimensional array

parseInt method of class Integer

pass-by-reference

pass-by-value

passing arrays to methods

position number

read-only variable

row index
row of an array

scalar

scalar quantity

square brackets, \[ \]

subscript

table of values

tabular format

traverse an array

two-dimensional array

value of an element

variable-length argument list

zeroth element
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blank(s) in each of the following statements:

1. Lists and tables of values can be stored in __________.
2. An array is a group of __________ (called elements or components) containing values that all have the same __________.
3. The __________ allows programmers to iterate through the elements in an array without using a counter.
4. The number used to refer to a particular element of an array is called the element's __________.
5. An array that uses two indices is referred to as a(n) __________ array.
6. Use the enhanced for statement __________ to walk through double array numbers.
7. Command-line arguments are stored in __________.
8. Use the expression __________ to receive the total number of arguments in a command line. Assume that command-line arguments are stored in String args[].
9. Given the command java MyClass test, the first command-line argument is __________.
10. A(/n) __________ in the parameter list of a method indicates that the method can receive a variable number of arguments.

Determine whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. An array can store many different types of values.
2. An array index should normally be of type float.
3. An individual array element that is passed to a method and modified in that method will contain the modified value when the called method completes execution.
4. Command-line arguments are separated by commas.
5. Expression array.length is used to access the number of arguments of a variable-length argument called array.

Perform the following tasks for an array called fractions:

1. Declare a constant ARRAY_SIZE that is initialized to 10.
2. Declare an array with ARRAY_SIZE elements of type double, and initialize the elements to 0.
3. Name the fourth element of the array.
4. Refer to array element 4.
5. Assign the value 1.667 to array element 9.
6. Assign the value 3.333 to the seventh element of the array.

7. Sum all the elements of the array, using a for statement. Declare the integer variable $x$ as a control variable for the loop.

Perform the following tasks for an array called `table`:

1. Declare and create the array as an integer array that has three rows and three columns. Assume that the constant `ARRAY_SIZE` has been declared to be 3.

7.4

2. How many elements does the array contain?

3. Use a for statement to initialize each element of the array to the sum of its indices. Assume that the integer variables $x$ and $y$ are declared as control variables.

Find and correct the error in each of the following program segments:

7.5

1. ```java
   final int ARRAY_SIZE = 5;
   ARRAY_SIZE = 10;
   ```

2. ```java
   Assume int b[] = new int [ 10 ];
   for ( int i = 0; i <= b.length; i++ )
     b[ i ] = 1;
   ```

3. ```java
   Assume int a[][] = { { 1, 2 }, { 3, 4 } };  
   a[ 1, 1 ] = 5;
   ```
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

7.1
a) arrays. b) variables, type. c) enhanced for statement. d) index (or subscript or position number). e) two-dimensional. f) for ( double d : numbers ). g) an array of Strings, usually called args. h) args.length. i) test. j) ellipsis (...).

1. False. An array can store only values of the same type.

2. False. An array index must be an integer or an integer expression.

3. For individual primitive-type elements of an array: False. A called method receives and manipulates a copy of the value of such an element, so modifications do not affect the original value. If the reference of an array is passed to a method, however, modifications to the array elements made in the called method are indeed reflected in the original. For individual elements of a nonprimitive type: True. A called method receives a copy of the reference of such an element, and changes to the referenced object will be reflected in the original array element.

4. False. Command-line arguments are separated by white space.

5. True.

7.2
1. final int ARRAY_SIZE = 10;

2. double fractions[] = new double[ ARRAY_SIZE ];

3. fractions[ 3 ]

4. fractions[ 4 ]

5. fractions[ 9 ] = 1.667;


7. double total = 0.0;
   for ( int x = 0; x < fractions.length; x++ )
      total += fractions[ x ];

7.3
1. int table[][] = new int [ ARRAY_SIZE ][ ARRAY_SIZE ];

2. Nine.

3. for ( int x = 0; x < table.length; x++ )
   for ( int y = 0; y < table[ x ].length; y++ )
      table[ x ][ y ] = x + y;

7.4
1. Error: Assigning a value to a constant after it has been initialized.
   Correction: Assign the correct value to the constant in a final int ARRAY_SIZE declaration or declare another variable.

7.5
2. Error: Referencing an array element outside the bounds of the array (b[10]).
   Correction: Change the <= operator to <.
3. Error: Array indexing is performed incorrectly.
   Correction: Change the statement to `a[1][1] = 5;`. 
Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. One-dimensional array \( p \) contains four elements. The names of those elements are __________, __________, __________ and __________.

2. Naming an array, stating its type and specifying the number of dimensions in the array is called __________ the array.

7.6

3. In a two-dimensional array, the first index identifies the __________ of an element and the second index identifies the __________ of an element.

4. An \( m \)-by-\( n \) array contains __________ rows, __________ columns and __________ elements.

5. The name of the element in row 3 and column 5 of array \( a \) is __________.

Determine whether each of the following is \textit{true} or \textit{false}. If \textit{false}, explain why.

1. To refer to a particular location or element within an array, we specify the name of the array and the value of the particular element.

2. An array declaration reserves space for the array.

7.7

3. To indicate that 100 locations should be reserved for integer array \( p \), the programmer writes the declaration

\[
p[100];
\]

4. An application that initializes the elements of a 15-element array to zero must contain at least one \textit{for} statement.

5. An application that totals the elements of a two-dimensional array must contain nested \textit{for} statements.

Write Java statements to accomplish each of the following tasks:

1. Display the value of the seventh element of character array \( f \).

2. Initialize each of the five elements of one-dimensional integer array \( g \) to 8.

7.8

3. Total the 100 elements of floating-point array \( c \).

4. Copy 11-element array \( a \) into the first portion of array \( p \), which contains 34 elements.

5. Determine and display the smallest and largest values contained in 99-element floating-point array \( w \).
Consider a two-by-three integer array $t$.

1. Write a statement that declares and creates $t$.
2. How many rows does $t$ have?
3. How many columns does $t$ have?
4. How many elements does $t$ have?
5. Write the names of all the elements in the second row of $t$.
6. Write the names of all the elements in the third column of $t$.
7. Write a single statement that sets the element of $t$ in row 1 and column 2 to zero.
8. Write a series of statements that initializes each element of $t$ to zero. Do not use a repetition statement.
9. Write a nested for statement that initializes each element of $t$ to zero.
10. Write a nested for statement that inputs the values for the elements of $t$ from the user.
11. Write a series of statements that determines and displays the smallest value in $t$.
12. Write a statement that displays the elements of the first row of $t$.
13. Write a statement that totals the elements of the third column of $t$.
14. Write a series of statements that displays the contents of $t$ in tabular format. List the column indices as headings across the top, and list the row indices at the left of each row.

*(Sales Commissions)* Use a one-dimensional array to solve the following problem: A company pays its salespeople on a commission basis. The salespeople receive $200 per week plus 9% of their gross sales for that week. For example, a salesperson who grosses $5000 in sales in a week receives $200 plus 9% of $5000, or a total of $650. Write an application (using an array of counters) that determines how many of the salespeople earned salaries in each of the following ranges (assume that each salesperson's salary is truncated to an integer amount):

1. $200299
2. $300399
3. $400499
4. $500599
5. $600699
6. $700799
7. $800899
8. $900999
9. $1000 and over

Summarize the results in tabular format.

Write statements that perform the following one-dimensional-array operations:

1. Set the 10 elements of integer array `counts` to zero.

2. Add one to each of the 15 elements of integer array `bonus`.

3. Display the five values of integer array `bestScores` in column format.

*(Duplicate Elimination)* Use a one-dimensional array to solve the following problem: Write an application that inputs five numbers, each of which is between 10 and 100, inclusive. As each number is read, display it only if it is not a duplicate of a number already read. Provide for the "worst case," in which all five numbers are different. Use the smallest possible array to solve this problem. Display the complete set of unique values input after the user inputs each new value.

Label the elements of three-by-five two-dimensional array `sales` to indicate the order in which they are set to zero by the following program segment:

```java
for ( int row = 0; row < sales.length; row++ )
{
    for ( int col = 0; col < sales[ row ].length; col++ )
    {
        sales[ row ][ col ] = 0;
    }
}
```

Write an application that calculates the product of a series of integers that are passed to method `product` using a variable-length argument list. Test your method with several calls, each with a different number of arguments.

Rewrite Fig. 7.2 so that the size of the array is specified by the first command-line argument. If no command-line argument is supplied, use 10 as the default size of the array.

Write an application that uses an enhanced `for` statement to sum the double values passed by the command-line arguments. *[Hint: Use the static method `parseDouble` of class `Double` to convert a String to a double value.]*

*(Dice Rolling)* Write an application to simulate the rolling of two dice. The application should use an object of class `Random` once to roll the
first die and again to roll the second die. The sum of the two values should then be calculated. Each die can show an integer value from 1 to 6, so the sum of the values will vary from 2 to 12, with 7 being the most frequent sum and 2 and 12 being the least frequent sums. Figure 7.30 shows the 36 possible combinations of the two dice. Your application should roll the dice 36,000 times. Use a one-dimensional array to tally the number of times each possible sum appears. Display the results in tabular format. Determine whether the totals are reasonable (e.g., there are six ways to roll a 7, so approximately one-sixth of the rolls should be 7).

7.17

Figure 7.30. The 36 possible sums of two dice.

![Figure 7.30](image-url)

7.18

(Game of Craps) Write an application that runs 1000 games of craps (Fig. 6.9) and answers the following questions:

1. How many games are won on the first roll, second roll, ..., twentieth roll and after the twentieth roll?
2. How many games are lost on the first roll, second roll, ..., twentieth roll and after the twentieth roll?
3. What are the chances of winning at craps? Should you discover that craps is one of the fairest casino games. What do you suppose this means?
4. What is the average length of a game of craps?
5. Do the chances of winning improve with the length of the game?

(Airline Reservations System) A small airline has just purchased a computer for its new automated reservations system. You have been asked to develop the new application to assign seats on each flight of the airline’s only plane (capacity: 10 seats).

Your application should display the following alternatives:

- Type 1 for First Class
- Type 2 for Economy

If the user types type 1, your application should assign a seat in the first-class section (seats 15). If the user types type 2, your application should assign a seat in the economy section (seats 1-10). If the user types any other type, your application should display an error message.
assign a seat in the economy section of the plane.

Use a one-dimensional array of primitive type to represent the seating chart of the plane. Initialize all the elements of the array to false to indicate that all the seats are empty. As each seat is assigned, set the corresponding elements of the array to true to indicate that the seat is no longer available.

Your application should never assign a seat that has already been assigned. When the economy section is full, your application should ask the person if it is acceptable to be placed in the first-class section (and vice versa). If yes, make the appropriate seat assignment. If no, display the message "flight leaves in 3 hours."

(Total Sales) Use a two-dimensional array to solve the following problem: A company has four salespeople (1 to 4) who sell five different products (1 to 5). Once a day, each salesperson passes in a slip for each type of product sold. Each slip contains the following:

1. The salesperson number
2. The product number
3. The total dollar value of that product sold that day

Thus, each salesperson passes in between 0 and 5 sales slips per day. Assume that the information from all the slips for last month is available. Write an application that will read all this information for last month's sales and summarize the total sales by salesperson and by product. All totals should be stored in the two-dimensional array sales. After processing all the information for last month, display the results in tabular format, with each column representing a particular salesperson and each row representing a particular product. Cross-total each row to get the total sales of each product for last month. Cross-total each column to get the total sales by salesperson for last month. Your tabular output should include these cross-totals to the right of the totaled rows and to the bottom of the totaled columns.

(Turtle Graphics) The Logo language made the concept of graphics famous. Imagine a mechanical turtle that walks around the room under the control of a Java application. The turtle holds a pen in one of two positions, up or down. While the pen is down, the turtle traces out shapes as it moves, and while the pen is up, the turtle moves about freely without writing anything. In this problem, you will simulate the operation of the turtle and create a computerized sketchpad.

Use a 20-by-20 array floor that is initialized to zeros. Read commands from an array that contains them. Keep track of the current position of the turtle at all times and whether the pen is currently up or down. Assume that the turtle always starts at position (0, 0) of the floor with its pen up. The set of turtle commands that you will use are as follows:

- Go forward
- Turn right
- Turn left
- Pen up
- Pen down
- Quit

Your application should use a two-dimensional array to store the turtle's current position. Each element of the array should be an integer that represents the x-coordinate of the turtle. The y-coordinate of the turtle is determined by the row number of the array. The turtle's current position is updated whenever it moves or changes its pen state. The turtle commands should be read from an array that contains them. Each command should be processed by the application, which should update the turtle's current position and pen state accordingly. The turtle's current position should be displayed on the screen at all times, along with its pen state.
Figure 7.31. Turtle graphics commands.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Pen up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Pen down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Turn right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Turn left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, 10</td>
<td>Move forward 10 spaces (replace 10 for a different number of spaces)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Display the 20-by-20 array</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>End of data (sentinel)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Suppose that the turtle is somewhat near the center of the floor. The following "program" would draw and display a 12-by-12 square, leaving the pen in the up position:

```
2 5,12
3 5,12
3 5,12
3 5,12
3 5,12
```

As the turtle moves with the pen down, set the appropriate elements of array `floor` to 1s. Wherever there is a character (asterisk or any character you choose), display a blank.

Write an application to implement the turtle graphics capabilities.
discussed here. Write several turtle graphics programs to draw interesting shapes. Add other commands to increase the power of your turtle graphics language.

**(Knight's Tour)** One of the more interesting puzzlers for chess buffs is the Knight's Tour problem, mathematician Euler. Can the chess piece called the knight move around an empty chessboard and touch each of the 64 squares once and only once? We study this here.

The knight makes only L-shaped moves (two spaces in one direction and one space in a perpendicular direction). Thus, as shown in Fig. 7.32, from a square near the middle of an empty chessboard, the knight (labeled K) can make eight different moves (numbered 0 through 7).

**Figure 7.32. The eight possible moves of the knight.**

[View full size image]

1. Draw an eight-by-eight chessboard on a sheet of paper, and attempt a Knight's Tour by hand. Put a 2 in the second square, a 3 in the third square, and so on. Before starting the tour, estimate how far you think you will get, remembering that a full tour consists of 64 moves. How far did you get? Was this close to your estimate?

2. Now let us develop an application that will move the knight around a chessboard. The board is represented by an eight-by-eight two-dimensional array `board`. Each square is initialized to zero. We describe each of the eight possible moves in terms of their horizontal and vertical components. For example, a move of type 0, as shown in Fig. 7.32, consists of moving two squares horizontally to the right and one square vertically upward. A move of type 2 consists of moving one square horizontally to the left and two squares vertically upward. Horizontal moves to the left and vertical moves upward are indicated with negative numbers. The eight moves may be described by two one-dimensional arrays, `horizontal` and `vertical`. 

```python
horizontal = [2, -1, -2, 1, -2, -1, 1, 2]
vertical = [1, 2, -1, -2, 2, 1, -2, -1]
```
Let the variables \texttt{currentRow} and \texttt{currentColumn} denote, respectively, the row and column of the knight’s current position. To make a move of type \texttt{moveNumber}, \texttt{moveNumber} is between 0 and 7, the statements

\begin{verbatim}
currentRow += vertical[moveNumber];
currentColumn += horizontal[moveNumber];
\end{verbatim}

Write an application to move the knight around the chessboard. Keep a counter that varies from 0 to \texttt{numMoves}. Record the latest count in each square the knight moves to. Test each potential move to see if the knight has already visited that square. To ensure that the knight does not land off the chessboard, run the application. How many moves did the knight make?

3. After attempting to write and run a Knight’s Tour application, you have probably developed some valuable insights. We will use these insights (or “rules of thumb”) for moving the knight. Heuristics do not guarantee success, but a carefully developed heuristic greatly improves the chance of success. You may have observed that the outer squares are more troublesome than the squares nearer the center of the board. In fact, the most troublesome or inaccessible squares are the four corners.

Intuition may suggest that you should attempt to move the knight to the most troublesome squares first and leave open those that are easier to get to, so that when the board gets congested near the end of the tour, there will be a greater chance of success.

We could develop an “accessibility heuristic” by classifying each of the squares according to how accessible it is. Always moving the knight (using the knight’s L-shaped moves) to the most inaccessible square greatly improves the chance of success. We label a two-dimensional array \texttt{accessibility} from how many squares each particular square is accessible. On a blank chessboard, each of the 16 squares nearest the center is rated as 2, and the other squares have accessibility numbers of 3, 4 or 6 as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
2 & 3 & 4 & 4 & 4 & 4 & 3 \\
3 & 4 & 6 & 6 & 6 & 6 & 4 \\
4 & 6 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 8 & 6 \\
\end{array}
\]
Write a new version of the Knight's Tour application that always moves to the square with the lowest accessibility number. In case of a tie, the knight may move to any of the tied squares. Therefore, the tour may begin in any of the four corners.

[Note: As the knight moves across the chessboard, your application should reduce the accessibility numbers as more squares become occupied. In this way, at any given time during the tour, each available square's accessibility number will remain equal to precisely the number of squares from which that square may be reached.]

Run this version of your application. Did you get a full tour? Modify the application to run 64 tours, one starting from each square of the chessboard. How many full tours did you get?

4. Write a version of the Knight's Tour application that, when encountering a tie between two or more squares, decides what square to choose by looking ahead to those squares reachable from the "tied" square. Your application should move to the tied square for which the next move would arrive at a square with the lowest accessibility number.

(Knight's Tour: Brute-Force Approaches 7.22, we developed a solution to the Knight's Tour problem. The approach used, called the "accessibility heuristic," generates many solutions and executes efficiently.)

As computers continue to increase in power, we will be able to solve more problems with sheer computer power and relatively unsophisticated algorithms. Let us call this approach "brute-force" problem solving.

1. Use random-number generation to enable the knight to walk around the chessboard (in its legitimate L-shaped moves) at random. Your application should run one tour and display the final chessboard. How far did the knight get?

2. Most likely, the application in part (a) produced a relatively short tour. Now modify your application to attempt 1000 tours. Use a one-dimensional array to keep track of the number of tours of each length. When your application finishes attempting the 1000 tours, it should display this information in neat tabular format. What was the best result?

3. Most likely, the application in part (b) gave you some "respectable" tours, but no full tours. Now let your application run until it produces a full tour. (version of the application could run for hours on a powerful computer.) Once again, keep a table of the number of tours of each length, and display this table when the first full tour is found. How many tours did your application attempt before producing a full tour? How
much time did it take?

4. Compare the brute-force version of the Knight's Tour with the accessibility-heuristic version. Which required a more careful study of the problem? Which required more computer power? Could we be certain (in advance) of obtaining a full tour with the accessibility-heuristic approach? Argue the pros and cons of brute-force problem solving in general.

(Eight Queens) Another puzzler for chess buffs is the Eight Queens problem, which asks the following: Is it possible to place eight queens on an empty chessboard so that no queen is "attacking" any other (i.e., no two queens are in the same row, in the same column or along the same diagonal)?

It is possible to assign a value to each square of the chessboard to indicate how many squares of an empty chessboard are "eliminated" if a queen is placed in that square. Each of the corners would be assigned the value 22, as demonstrated by Fig. 7.33. Once these "elimination numbers" are placed in all 64 squares, an appropriate heuristic might be as follows: Place the next queen in the square with the smallest elimination number. Why is this strategy intuitively appealing?

Figure 7.33. The 22 squares eliminated by placing a queen in the upper left corner.

7.24

**Figure 7.33.** The 22 squares eliminated by placing a queen in the upper left corner.

7.25

(Eight Queens: Brute-Force Approaches) We will develop several brute-force approaches to solving the Eight Queens problem introduced in Exercise 7.24.

1. Use the random brute-force technique developed in Exercise 7.23 to solve the Eight Queens problem.

2. Use an exhaustive technique (i.e., try all possible combinations of eight queens on the chessboard) to solve the Eight Queens problem.
the Eight Queens problem.

3. Why might the exhaustive brute-force approach not be appropriate for solving the Knight's Tour problem?

4. Compare and contrast the random brute-force and exhaustive brute-force approaches.

(Knight's Tour: Closed-Tour Test) In Exercise 7.22, a full tour occurs when the knight makes 64 moves, touching each square of the chessboard once and only once. A closed tour occurs when the 64th move is one move away from the square in which the knight started the tour. Modify the application you wrote in Exercise 7.22 so that a full tour has occurred.

(Sieve of Eratosthenes) A prime number is any integer greater than one that is evenly divisible only by itself and 1. The Sieve of Eratosthenes is a method of finding prime numbers. It operates as follows:

1. Create a primitive type boolean initialized to true. Array elements with prime indices will remain true. All other array elements will eventually be set to false.

2. Starting with array index 2, determine whether an element is true. If so, loop through the remainder of the array and set to false every element whose index is a multiple of the index for the element with value true. Continue the process with the next element with value true. For array index 2, all elements beyond element 2 in the array that have indices which are multiples of 2 (indices 4, 6, 8, 10, etc.) will be set to false; and so on.

When this process completes, the array elements that are still true indicate that the index is a prime number. These indices can be displayed. Write an application that uses an array of 1000 elements to determine and display the prime numbers between 2 and 999. Ignore array elements 0 and 1.

(Simulation: The Tortoise and the Hare) will re-create the classic race of the tortoise and the hare. You will use random-number generation to develop a simulation of this memorable event.

Our contenders begin the race at square 1 of 70 squares. Each square represents a possible position along the race course. The finish line is at square 70. The first contender to reach or pass square 70 is rewarded with a pail of fresh carrots and lettuce. The course weaves its way up the side of a slippery mountain, so occasionally the contender...
A clock ticks once per second. With each tick of the clock, your application should adjust the position of the animals according to the rules in Fig. 7.34. Use variables to keep track of the positions of the animals (i.e., position numbers are 170). Start each animal at position 1 (the "starting gate"). If an animal slips left before square 1, move it back to square 1.

**Figure 7.34. Rules for adjusting the positions of the tortoise and the hare.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Animal</th>
<th>Move type</th>
<th>Percentage of the time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tortoise</td>
<td>Fast plod</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slip</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Slow plod</td>
<td>30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hare</td>
<td>Sleep</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Big hop</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Big slip</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Small hop</td>
<td>30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Small slip</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Generate the percentages in Fig. 7.34. Integer \( i \) in the range \( 1 \leq i \leq 10 \). If "fast plod" when \( 1 \leq i \leq 5 \), a "slip" plod" when \( 8 \leq i \leq 10 \). Use a similar technique to move the hare.

Begin the race by displaying

```
BANG !!!!!
AND THEY'RE OFF !!!!!
```

Then, for each tick of the clock (i.e., display a 70-position line showing the tortoise and the letter \( \text{H} \) in the hare position). Occasionally, the contenders will land on the same square. In this case, the tortoise bites the hare, and your application should display `OUCH!!!` beginning at that position. All output positions other than the \( \text{T} \), \( \text{H} \) or \( \text{O} \) should be blank.
After each line is displayed, test for reached or passed square 70. If so, 
terminate the simulation. If the tortoise wins, display 
WINS!!! YAY!!! If the hare wins, display 
It's a tie. If neither animal wins, proceed to 
simulate the next tick of the clock. When you are ready to run 
your application, assemble a group of fans to watch the race. 
You'll be amazed at how involved your audience gets!

Later in the book, we introduce a number of Java capabilities, 
such as graphics, images, animation, sound and multithreading. 
As you study those features, you might enjoy enhancing your 
tortoise-and-hare contest simulation.

(Fibonacci Series) The Fibonacci series 
0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, ... 
begins with the terms 0 and 1 and each succeeding term is the sum of the two preceding terms.

1. Write a method fibonacci(n) that returns the n-th Fibonacci number. Incorporate this method into an application that enables the user to enter the value of n.

2. Determine the largest Fibonacci number that can be displayed on your system.

3. Modify the application you wrote in part (a) to use long instead of int to calculate and return Fibonacci numbers, and use this modified application to repeat part (b).

Exercise 7.30 and Exercise 7.33 are reasonably challenging. Once you have done these problems, you ought to be able to implement most popular card games easily.

(Card Shuffling and Dealing) Modify the application of Fig. 7.10 to deal a five-card poker hand. Then modify class Fig. 7.10 to include methods that determine whether a hand contains

1. a pair
2. two pairs
3. three of a kind (e.g., three jacks)
4. four of a kind (e.g., four aces)
5. a flush (i.e., all five cards of the same suit)
6. a straight (i.e., five cards of consecutive face values)
7. a full house (i.e., two cards of one face value and three cards of another face value)

[Hint: Add methods getFace and getSuit]
(Card Shuffling and Dealing) Use the methods developed in Exercise 7.30 to write an application that deals two five-card poker hands, evaluates each hand and determines which is the better hand.

(Card Shuffling and Dealing) Modify Exercise 7.31 so that it can simulate the dealer. The dealer's five-card hand is dealt "face down," so the player cannot see it. The application should then evaluate the dealer's hand based on the quality of the hand, and, if necessary, draw two or three more cards to replace the corresponding number of unneeded cards in the original hand. The application should then reevaluate the dealer's hand. [problem!]

(Card Shuffling and Dealing) Modify Exercise 7.32 so that it can handle the dealer's hand automatically, but the player is allowed to decide which cards of the player's hand to replace. The application should then evaluate both hands and determine who wins. Now use this new application to play 20 games against the computer. Who wins more games, you or the computer? Have a friend play 20 games against the computer. Who wins more games? Based on the results of these games, refine your poker-playing application. (This, too, is a difficult problem.) Play 20 more games. Does your modified application play a better game?
Special Section: Building Your Own Computer

In the next several problems, we take a temporary diversion from the world of high-level language programming. To "peel open" a computer and look at its internal structure. We introduce machine-language programming and write several machine-language programs. To make this an especially valuable experience, we then build a computer (through the technique of software-based simulation) on which you can execute your machine-language programs.

(Machine-Language Programming) Let us create a computer called the Simpletron. As its name implies, it is a simple, but powerful, machine. The Simpletron runs programs written in the only language it directly understands: Simpletron Machine Language, or SML for short.

The Simpletron contains an accumulator, a special register in which information is put before the Simpletron uses that information in calculations or examines it in various ways. All the information in the Simpletron is handled in terms of words. A word is a signed four-digit decimal number, such as +3364, -1293, +0007 and -0001. The Simpletron is equipped with a 100-word memory, and these words are referenced by their location numbers 00, 01, ..., 99.

Before running an SML program, we must load, or place, the program into memory. The first instruction (or statement) of every SML program is always placed in location 00. The simulator will start executing at this location.

Each instruction written in SML occupies one word of the Simpletron's memory (and hence instructions are signed four-digit decimal numbers). We shall assume that the sign of an SML instruction is always plus, but the sign of a data word may be either plus or minus. Each location in the Simpletron's memory may contain an instruction, a data value used by a program or an unused (and hence undefined) area of memory. The first two digits of each SML instruction are the operation code specifying the operation to be performed. SML operation codes are summarized in Fig. 7.35.

**Figure 7.35. Simpletron Machine Language (SML) operation codes.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation code</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Input/output operations:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final int READ = 10;</td>
<td>Read a word from the keyboard into a specific location in memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final int WRITE = 11;</td>
<td>Write a word from a specific location in memory to the screen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Load/store operations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LOAD = 20</td>
<td>Load a word from a specific location in memory into the accumulator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STORE = 21</td>
<td>Store a word from the accumulator into a specific location in memory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Arithmetic operations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ADD = 30</td>
<td>Add a word from a specific location in memory to the word in the accumulator (leave the result in the accumulator).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBTRACT = 31</td>
<td>Subtract a word from a specific location in memory from the word in the accumulator (leave the result in the accumulator).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIVIDE = 32</td>
<td>Divide a word from a specific location in memory into the word in the accumulator (leave result in the accumulator).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULTIPLY = 33</td>
<td>Multiply a word from a specific location in memory by the word in the accumulator (leave the result in the accumulator).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Transfer of control operations:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BRANCH = 40</td>
<td>Branch to a specific location in memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRANCHNEG = 41</td>
<td>Branch to a specific location in memory if the accumulator is negative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRANCHZERO = 42</td>
<td>Branch to a specific location in memory if the accumulator is zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HALT = 43</td>
<td>Halt. The program has completed its task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The last two digits of an SML instruction are the *operand* the address of the memory location containing the word to which the operation applies. Let's consider several simple SML programs.

The first SML program (Fig. 7.36) reads two numbers from the keyboard and computes and displays their sum. The instruction +1007 reads the first number from the keyboard and places it into location 07 (which has been initialized to 0). Then instruction +1008 reads the next number into location 08. The *load* instruction, +2007, puts the first number into the accumulator, and the *add* instruction, +3008, adds the second number to the number in the accumulator. *All SML arithmetic instructions leave their results in the accumulator.* The *store* instruction, +2109, places the result back into memory location 09, from which...
the write instruction, \( +1109 \), takes the number and displays it (as a signed four-digit decimal number). The halt instruction, \( +4300 \), terminates execution.

Figure 7.36. SML program that reads two integers and computes their sum.
(This item is displayed on page 353 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>+1007</td>
<td>(Read A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>+1008</td>
<td>(Read B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>+2007</td>
<td>(Load A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td>+3008</td>
<td>(Add B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>04</td>
<td>+2109</td>
<td>(Store C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>05</td>
<td>+1109</td>
<td>(Write C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06</td>
<td>+4300</td>
<td>(Halt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07</td>
<td>+0000</td>
<td>(Variable A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>08</td>
<td>+0000</td>
<td>(Variable B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>09</td>
<td>+0000</td>
<td>(Result C)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The second SML program (Fig. 7.37) reads two numbers from the keyboard and determines and displays the larger value. Note the use of the instruction \( +4107 \) as a conditional transfer of control, much the same as Java's if statement.

Figure 7.37. SML program that reads two integers and determines the larger.
(This item is displayed on page 353 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Instruction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>+1009</td>
<td>(Read A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>+1010</td>
<td>(Read B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>+2009</td>
<td>(Load A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td>+3110</td>
<td>(Subtract B)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Now write SML programs to accomplish each of the following tasks:

1. Use a sentinel-controlled loop to read 10 positive numbers. Compute and display their sum.

2. Use a counter-controlled loop to read seven numbers, some positive and some negative, and compute and display their average.

3. Read a series of numbers, and determine and display the largest number. The first number read indicates how many numbers should be processed.

(Computer Simulator) In this problem, you are going to build your own computer. No, you will not be soldering components together. Rather, you will use the powerful technique of software-based simulation to create an object-oriented software model of the Simpletron of Exercise 7.34. Your Simpletron simulator will turn the computer you are using into a Simpletron, and you will actually be able to run, test and debug the SML programs you wrote in Exercise 7.34.

When you run your Simpletron simulator, it should begin by displaying:

```plaintext
*** Welcome to Simpletron! ***
*** Please enter your program one instruction (or data word) at a time into the input text field. I will display the location number and a question mark (?). You then type the word for that location. Press the Done button to stop entering your program. ***
```

Your application should simulate the memory of the Simpletron with a one-dimensional array memory that has 100 elements. Now assume that the simulator is running, and let us examine the dialog as we enter the program of Fig. 7.37 (Exercise 7.34):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>00</td>
<td>+1009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>+1010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>+2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td>+3110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

04 ? +4107 (Branch negative to 07)
05 ? +1109 (Write A)
06 ? +4300 (Halt)
07 ? +1110 (Write B)
08 ? +4300 (Halt)
09 ? +0000 (Variable A)
10 ? +0000 (Variable B)
Your program should display the memory location followed by a question mark. Each of the values to the right of a question mark is input by the user. When the sentinel value -99999 is input, the program should display the following:

*** Program loading completed ***
*** Program execution begins ***

The SML program has now been placed (or loaded) in array memory. Now the Simpletron executes the SML program. Execution begins with the instruction in location 00 and, as in Java, continues sequentially, unless directed to some other part of the program by a transfer of control.

Use the variable accumulator to represent the accumulator register. Use the variable instructionCounter to keep track of the location in memory that contains the instruction being performed. Use the variable operationCode to indicate the operation currently being performed (i.e., the left two digits of the instruction word). Use the variable operand to indicate the memory location on which the current instruction operates. Thus, operand is the rightmost two digits of the instruction currently being performed. Do not execute instructions directly from memory. Rather, transfer the next instruction to be performed from memory to a variable called instructionRegister. Then "pick off" the left two digits and place them in operationCode, and "pick off" the right two digits and place them in operand. When the Simpletron begins execution, the special registers are all initialized to zero.

Now, let us "walk through" execution of the first SML instruction, +1009 in memory location 00. This procedure is called an instruction execution cycle.

The instructionCounter tells us the location of the next instruction to be performed. We fetch the contents of that location from memory by using the Java statement

```
instructionRegister = memory[ instructionCounter ];
```

The operation code and the operand are extracted from the instruction register by the statements

```
operationCode = instructionRegister / 100;
operand = instructionRegister % 100;
```

Now the Simpletron must determine that the operation code is actually a read (versus a write, a load, etc.). A switch differentiates among the 12 operations of SML. In the switch statement, the behavior of various SML instructions is simulated as shown in Fig. 7.38. We discuss branch instructions shortly and leave the others to you.

**Figure 7.38. Behavior of several SML instructions in the Simpletron.**
### Instruction Description

**Read:** Display the prompt "Enter an integer", then input the integer and store it in location memory[ operand ].

**Load:**

```plaintext
accumulator = memory[ operand ];
```

**Add:**

```plaintext
accumulator += memory[ operand ];
```

**Halt:** This instruction displays the message

```plaintext
*** Simpletron execution terminated ***
```

When the SML program completes execution, the name and contents of each register as well as the complete contents of memory should be displayed. Such a printout is often called a computer dump (no, a computer dump is not a place where old computers go). To help you program your dump method, a sample dump format is shown in Fig. 7.39. Note that a dump after executing a Simpletron program would show the actual values of instructions and data values at the moment execution terminated.

**Figure 7.39. A sample dump.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REGISTERS:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accumulator</td>
<td>+0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instructionCounter</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instructionRegister</td>
<td>+0000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operationCode</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operand</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEMORY:</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```plaintext
0 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
10 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
20 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
30 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
40 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
50 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
60 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
70 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
80 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
90 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000 +0000
```
Let us proceed with the execution of our program's first instruction namely, the +1009 in location 00. As we have indicated, the switch statement simulates this task by prompting the user to enter a value, reading the value and storing it in memory location memory[ operand ]. The value is then read into location 09.

At this point, simulation of the first instruction is completed. All that remains is to prepare the Simpletron to execute the next instruction. Since the instruction just performed was not a transfer of control, we need merely increment the instruction-counter register as follows:

```
instructionCounter++;
```

This action completes the simulated execution of the first instruction. The entire process (i.e., the instruction execution cycle) begins anew with the fetch of the next instruction to execute.

Now let us consider how the branching instructionsthe transfers of controlare simulated. All we need to do is adjust the value in the instruction counter appropriately. Therefore, the unconditional branch instruction (40) is simulated within the switch as

```
instructionCounter = operand;
```

The conditional "branch if accumulator is zero" instruction is simulated as

```
if ( accumulator == 0 )
    instructionCounter = operand;
```

At this point, you should implement your Simpletron simulator and run each of the SML programs you wrote in Exercise 7.34. If you desire, you may embellish SML with additional features and provide for these features in your simulator.

Your simulator should check for various types of errors. During the program-loading phase, for example, each number the user types into the Simpletron's memory must be in the range -9999 to +9999. Your simulator should test that each number entered is in this range and, if not, keep prompting the user to reenter the number until the user enters a correct number.

During the execution phase, your simulator should check for various serious errors, such as attempts to divide by zero, attempts to execute invalid operation codes, and accumulator overflows (i.e., arithmetic operations resulting in values larger than +9999 or smaller than -9999). Such serious errors are called fatal errors. When a fatal error is detected, your simulator should display an error message, such as

```
*** Attempt to divide by zero ***
*** Simpletron execution abnormally terminated ***
```

and should display a full computer dump in the format we discussed previously. This treatment will help the user locate the error in the program.

(Simpletron Simulator Modifications) In Exercise 7.35, you wrote a software simulation of a computer that executes programs written in Simpletron Machine Language (SML). In this exercise, we propose several modifications and enhancements to the Simpletron Simulator. In Exercise 17.26 and Exercise 17.27, we propose building a compiler that converts programs written in a high-level programming language (a variation of Basic) to Simpletron Machine Language. Some of the following modifications and
enhancements may be required to execute the programs produced by the compiler:

1. Extend the Simpletron Simulator's memory to contain 1000 memory locations to enable the Simpletron to handle larger programs.

2. Allow the simulator to perform remainder calculations. This modification requires an additional SML instruction.

3. Allow the simulator to perform exponentiation calculations. This modification requires an additional SML instruction.

4. Modify the simulator to use hexadecimal values rather than integer values to represent SML instructions.

5. Modify the simulator to allow output of a newline. This modification requires an additional SML instruction.

6. Modify the simulator to process floating-point values in addition to integer values.

7. Modify the simulator to handle string input. [Hint: Each Simpletron word can be divided into two groups, each holding a two-digit integer. Each two-digit integer represents the ASCII (see Appendix B) decimal equivalent of a character. Add a machine language instruction that will input a string and store the string, beginning at a specific Simpletron memory location. The first half of the word at that location will be a count of the number of characters in the string (i.e., the length of the string). Each succeeding half-word contains one ASCII character expressed as two decimal digits. The machine language instruction converts each character into its ASCII equivalent and assigns it to a half-word.]

8. Modify the simulator to handle output of strings stored in the format of part (g). [Hint: Add a machine-language instruction that will display a string, beginning at a certain Simpletron memory location. The first half of the word at that location is a count of the number of characters in the string (i.e., the length of the string). Each succeeding half-word contains one ASCII character expressed as two decimal digits. The machine-language instruction checks the length and displays the string by translating each two-digit number into its equivalent character.]
Instead of this absurd division into sexes, they ought to class people as static and dynamic.

Evelyn Waugh

Is it a world to hide virtues in?

William Shakespeare

But what, to serve our private ends, Forbids the cheating of our friends?

Charles Churchill

This above all: to thine own self be true.

William Shakespeare

Don't be "consistent," but be simply true.

Oliver Wendell Holmes, Jr.

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- Encapsulation and data hiding.
- The notions of data abstraction and abstract data types (ADTs).
- To use keyword `this`.
- To use `static` variables and methods.
- To import `static` members of a class.
- To use the `enum` type to create sets of constants with unique identifiers.
• How to declare `enum` constants with parameters.
8.20 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
8.1. Introduction

In our discussions of object-oriented programs in the preceding chapters, we introduced many basic concepts and terminology that relate to Java object-oriented programming (OOP). We also discussed our program development methodology: We selected appropriate variables and methods for each program and specified the manner in which an object of our class collaborated with objects of Java API classes to accomplish the program's overall goals.

In this chapter, we take a deeper look at building classes, controlling access to members of a class and creating constructors. We discuss composition, a capability that allows a class to have references to objects of other classes as members. We reexamine the use of set and get methods and further explore the new J2SE 5.0 class type enum (introduced in Section 6.10) that enables programmers to declare and manipulate sets of unique identifiers that represent constant values. In Section 6.10, we introduced the basic enum type, which appeared within another class and simply declared a set of constants. In this chapter, we discuss the relationship between enum types and classes, demonstrating that an enum, like a class, can be declared in its own file with constructors, methods and fields. The chapter also discusses static class members and final instance variables in detail. We investigate issues such as software reusability, data abstraction and encapsulation. Finally, we explain how to organize classes in packages to help manage large applications and promote reuse, then show a special relationship between classes in the same package.

Chapter 9, Object-Oriented Programming: Inheritance, and Chapter 10, Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism, introduce inheritance and polymorphism, respectively, two additional key object-oriented programming technologies.
8.2. **Time** Class Case Study

**Time** Class Declaration

Our first example consists of two classes `Time1` ([Fig. 8.1](#)) and `Time1Test` ([Fig. 8.2](#)). Class `Time1` represents the time of day. Class `Time1Test` is an application class in which the `main` method creates one object of class `Time1` and invokes its methods. These classes must be declared in separate files because they are both `public` classes. The output of this program appears in [Fig. 8.2](#).

**Figure 8.1.** *Time1* class declaration maintains the time in 24-hour format.

(This item is displayed on page 360 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 8.1: Time1.java
// Time1 class declaration maintains the time in 24-hour format.

public class Time1 {
    private int hour; // 0 - 23
    private int minute; // 0 - 59
    private int second; // 0 - 59

    // set a new time value using universal time; ensure that
    // the data remains consistent by setting invalid values to zero
    public void setTime(int h, int m, int s)
    {
        hour = (h >= 0 && h < 24) ? h : 0; // validate hour
        minute = (m >= 0 && m < 60) ? m : 0; // validate minute
        second = (s >= 0 && s < 60) ? s : 0; // validate second
    }

    // convert to String in universal-time format (HH:MM:SS)
    public String toUniversalString()
    {
        return String.format("%02d:%02d:%02d", hour, minute, second);
    }

    // convert to String in standard-time format (H:MM:SS AM or PM)
    public String toString()
    {
        return String.format("%d:%02d:%02d %s",
            (hour == 0 || hour == 12) ? 12 : hour % 12,
            minute, second, (hour < 12 ? "AM" : "PM")
        );
    }
}
```
Figure 8.2. **Time1** object used in an application.

(This item is displayed on page 362 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 8.2: Time1Test.java
2 // Time1 object used in an application.
3
4 public class Time1Test
5 {
6     public static void main( String args[] )
7     {
8         // create and initialize a Time1 object
9         Time1 time = new Time1(); // invokes Time1 constructor
10
11         // output string representations of the time
12         System.out.print( "The initial universal time is: ");
13         System.out.println( time.toUniversalString() );
14         System.out.print( "The initial standard time is: ");
15         System.out.println( time.toString() );
16         System.out.println(); // output a blank line
17
18         // change time and output updated time
19         time.setTime( 13, 27, 6 );
20         System.out.print( "Universal time after setTime is: ");
21         System.out.println( time.toUniversalString() );
22         System.out.print( "Standard time after setTime is: ");
23         System.out.println( time.toString() );
24         System.out.println(); // output a blank line
25
26         // set time with invalid values; output updated time
27         time.setTime( 99, 99, 99 );
28         System.out.println( "After attempting invalid settings:" );
29         System.out.print( "Universal time: ");
30         System.out.println( time.toUniversalString() );
31         System.out.print( "Standard time: ");
32         System.out.println( time.toString() );
33     } // end main
34 } // end class Time1Test
```

The initial universal time is: 00:00:00  
The initial standard time is: 12:00:00 AM

Universal time after setTime is: 13:27:06  
Standard time after setTime is: 1:27:06 PM

After attempting invalid settings:
Universal time: 00:00:00  
Standard time: 12:00:00 AM
Class `Time1` contains three `private` instance variables of type `int` ((Fig. 8.1, lines 68) `hour`, `minute` and `second` that represent the time in universal-time format (24-hour clock format in which hours are in the range 023). Class `Time1` contains `public` methods `setTime` (lines 1217), `toString` (lines 2631). These methods are also called the `public services` or the `public interface` that the class provides to its clients.

In this example, class `Time1` does not declare a constructor, so the class has a default constructor that is supplied by the compiler. Each instance variable implicitly receives the default value 0 for an `int`. Note that instance variables also can be initialized when they are declared in the class body using the same initialization syntax as with a local variable.

Method `setTime` (lines 1217) is a `public` method that declares three `int` parameters and uses them to set the time. A conditional expression tests each argument to determine whether the value is in a specified range. For example, the `hour` value (line 14) must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than 24, because universal-time format represents hours as integers from 0 to 23 (e.g., 1 PM is hour 13 and 11 PM is hour 23; midnight is hour 0 and noon is hour 12). Similarly, both `minute` and `second` values (lines 15 and 16) must be greater than or equal to 0 and less than 60. Any values outside these ranges are set to zero to ensure that a `Time1` object always contains consistent datathat is, the object's data values are always kept in range, even if the values provided as arguments to method `setTime` were incorrect. In this example, zero is a consistent value for `hour`, `minute` and `second`.

A value passed to `setTime` is a correct value if that value is in the allowed range for the member it is initializing. So, any number in the range 023 would be a correct value for the `hour`. A correct value is always a consistent value. However, a consistent value is not necessarily a correct value. If `setTime` sets `hour` to 0 because the argument received was out of range, then `setTime` is taking an incorrect value and making it consistent, so the object remains in a consistent state at all times. In this case, the program might want to indicate that the object is incorrect. In Chapter 13, Exception Handling, you will learn techniques that enable your classes to indicate when incorrect values are received.
Methods that modify the values of private variables should verify that the intended new values are proper. If they are not, the set methods should place the private variables into an appropriate consistent state.

Method toUniversalString (lines 2023) takes no arguments and returns a String in universal-time format, consisting of six digits: two for the hour, two for the minute and two for the second. For example, if the time were 1:30:07 PM, method toUniversalString would return 13:30:07. The return statement (line 22) uses static method format of class String to return a String containing the formatted hour, minute and second values, each with two digits and possibly a leading 0 (specified with the 0 flag). Method format is similar to method System.out.printf except that format returns a formatted String rather than displaying it in a command window. The formatted String is returned by method toUniversalString.

Method toString (lines 2631) takes no arguments and returns a String in standard-time format, consisting of the hour, minute and second values separated by colons and followed by an AM or PM indicator (e.g., 1:27:06 PM). Like method toUniversalString, method toString uses static String method format to format the minute and second as two-digit values with leading zeros if necessary. Line 29 uses a conditional operator (?:) to determine the value for hour in the string if the hour is 0 or 12 (AM or PM), it appears as 12 otherwise, the hour appears as a value from 1 to 11. The conditional operator in line 30 determines whether AM or PM will be returned as part of the String.

Recall from Section 6.4 that all objects in Java have a toString method that returns a String representation of the object. We chose to return a String containing the time in standard-time format. Method toString can be called implicitly whenever a Time1 object appears in the code where a String is needed, such as the value to output with a %s format specifier in a call to System.out.printf.
Using Class **Time1**

As you learned in Chapter 3, each class you declare represents a new type in Java. Therefore, after declaring class **Time1**, we can use it as a type in declarations such as

```
Time1 sunset; // sunset can hold a reference to a Time1 object
```

The **Time1Test** application class (Fig. 8.2) uses class **Time1**. Line 9 declares and creates a **Time1** object and assigns it to local variable **time**. Note that **new** implicitly invokes class **Time1**'s default constructor, since **Time1** does not declare any constructors. Lines 12-16 output the time first in universal-time format (by invoking **time**'s **toUniversalString** method in line 13), then in standard-time format (by explicitly invoking **time**'s **toString** method in line 15) to confirm that the **Time1** object was initialized properly.

Line 19 invokes method **setTime** of the **time** object to change the time. Then lines 20-24 output the time again in both formats to confirm that the time was set correctly.

To illustrate that method **setTime** maintains the object in a consistent state, line 27 calls method **setTime** with arguments of 99 for the **hour**, **minute** and **second**. Lines 28-32 output the time again in both formats to confirm that **setTime** maintained the object's consistent state, then the program terminates. The last two lines of the application's output show that the time is reset to midnight—the initial value of a **Time1** object—after an attempt to set the time with three out-of-range values.

**Notes on the Time1 Class Declaration**

Consider several issues of class design with respect to class **Time1**. The instance variables **hour**, **minute** and **second** are each declared **private**. The actual data representation used within the class is of no concern to the class's clients. For example, it would be perfectly reasonable for **Time1** to represent the time internally as the number of seconds since midnight or the number of minutes and seconds since midnight. Clients could use the same **public** methods and get the same results without being aware of this. (**Exercise 8.5** asks you to represent the time in class **Time1** as the number of seconds since midnight and...
show that there is indeed no change visible to the clients of the class.)

**Software Engineering Observation 8.2**

Classes simplify programming, because the client can use only the public methods exposed by the class. Such methods are usually client oriented rather than implementation oriented. Clients are neither aware of, nor involved in, a class's implementation. Clients generally care about what the class does but not how the class does it.

**Software Engineering Observation 8.3**

Interfaces change less frequently than implementations. When an implementation changes, implementation-dependent code must change accordingly. Hiding the implementation reduces the possibility that other program parts will become dependent on class-implementation details.
8.3. Controlling Access to Members

The access modifiers `public` and `private` control access to a class's variables and methods. (In Chapter 9, we will introduce the additional access modifier `protected`.) As we stated in Section 8.2, the primary purpose of `public` methods is to present to the class's clients a view of the services the class provides (the class's public interface). Clients of the class need not be concerned with how the class accomplishes its tasks. For this reason, the `private` variables and `private` methods of a class (i.e., the class's implementation details) are not directly accessible to the class's clients.

Figure 8.3 demonstrates that `private` class members are not directly accessible outside the class. Lines 9-11 attempt to access directly the `private` instance variables `hour`, `minute` and `second` of the `Time1` object `time`. When this program is compiled, the compiler generates error messages stating that these `private` members are not accessible. \[Note: This program assumes that the `Time1` class from Fig. 8.1 is used.\]

**Figure 8.3. Private members of class `Time1` are not accessible.**

```
1 // Fig. 8.3: MemberAccessTest.java
2 // Private members of class Time1 are not accessible.
3 public class MemberAccessTest
4 {
5     public static void main( String args[] )
6     {
7         Time1 time = new Time1(); // create and initialize Time1 object
8
9         time.hour = 7;    // error: hour has private access in Time1
10         time.minute = 15; // error: minute has private access in Time1
11         time.second = 30; // error: second has private access in Time1
12     } // end main
13 } // end class MemberAccessTest
```
Common Programming Error 8.1

An attempt by a method that is not a member of a class to access a private member of that class is a compilation error.
8.4. Referring to the Current Object's Members with the \texttt{this} Reference

Every object can access a reference to itself with keyword \texttt{this} (sometimes called the \texttt{this} \texttt{reference}). When a non-\texttt{static} method is called for a particular object, the method's body implicitly uses keyword \texttt{this} to refer to the object's instance variables and other methods. As you will see in Fig. 8.4, you can also use keyword this explicitly in a non-\texttt{static} method's body. \texttt{Section 8.5} shows another interesting use of keyword this. \texttt{Section 8.11} explains why keyword this cannot be used in a \texttt{static} method.

\begin{figure}[h]
\begin{center}
\textbf{Figure 8.4}. \texttt{this} used implicitly and explicitly to refer to members of an object.
\end{center}
\end{figure}

\begin{verbatim}
1 // Fig. 8.4: ThisTest.java
2 // this used implicitly and explicitly to refer to members of an object.
3 public class ThisTest
4 {
5     public static void main( String args[] )
6         {
7             SimpleTime time = new SimpleTime( 15, 30, 19 );
8             System.out.println( time.buildString() );
9         } // end main
10     } // end class ThisTest
11
12 // class SimpleTime demonstrates the "this" reference
13 class SimpleTime
14 {
15     private int hour;    // 0-23
16     private int minute; // 0-59
17     private int second; // 0-59
18     
19     // if the constructor uses parameter names identical to
20     // instance variable names the "this" reference is
21     // required to distinguish between names
22     public SimpleTime( int hour, int minute, int second )
23         {
24             \texttt{this}.hour = hour;    // set "this" object's hour
25             \texttt{this}.minute = minute; // set "this" object's minute
26             \texttt{this}.second = second; // set "this" object's second
27         } // end SimpleTime constructor
28 }
\end{verbatim}
We now demonstrate implicit and explicit use of the `this` reference to enable class `ThisTest`'s main method to display the private data of a class `SimpleTime` object (Fig. 8.4). Note that this example is the first in which we declare two classes in one file—class `ThisTest` is declared in lines 411, and class `SimpleTime` is declared in lines 1447. We did this to demonstrate that when you compile a `.java` file that contains more than one class, the compiler produces a separate class file with the `.class` extension for every compiled class. In this case two separate files are produced—one for `SimpleTime` and one for `ThisTest`. When one source-code (.java) file contains multiple class declarations, the class files for those classes are placed in the same directory by the compiler. Also, note that only class `ThisTest` is declared public in Fig. 8.4. A source-code file can contain only one public class otherwise, a compilation error occurs.

Class `SimpleTime` (lines 1447) declares three private instance variables `hour`, `minute`, and `second` (lines 1618). The constructor (lines 2328) receives three `int` arguments to initialize a `SimpleTime` object. Note that we used parameter names for the constructor (line 23) that are identical to the class's instance variable names (lines 1618). We don't recommend this practice, but we did it here to...
shadow (hide) the corresponding instance variables so that we could illustrate explicit use of the this reference. If a method contains a local variable with the same name as a field, that method will refer to the local variable rather than the field. In this case, the local variable shadows the field in the method's scope. However, the method can use the this reference to refer to the shadowed field explicitly, as shown in lines 25-27 for SimpleTime's shadowed instance variables.

Method buildString (lines 313-36) returns a String created by a statement that uses the this reference explicitly and implicitly. Line 34 uses the this reference explicitly to call method toUniversalString. Line 35 uses the this reference implicitly to call the same method. Note that both lines perform the same task. Programmers typically do not use this explicitly to reference other methods within the current object. Also, note that line 45 in method toUniversalString explicitly uses the this reference to access each instance variable. This is not necessary here, because the method does not have any local variables that shadow the instance variables of the class.

**Common Programming Error 8.2**

It is often a logic error when a method contains a parameter or local variable that has the same name as a field of the class. In this case, use reference this if you wish to access the field of the class otherwise, the method parameter or local variable will be referenced.

**Error-Prevention Tip 8.1**

Avoid method parameter names or local variable names that conflict with field names. This helps prevent subtle, hard-to-locate bugs.

Application class ThisTest (lines 411) demonstrates class SimpleTime. Line 8
creates an instance of class `SimpleTime` and invokes its constructor. Line 9 invokes the object's `buildString` method, then displays the results.

---

**Performance Tip 8.1**

Java conserves storage by maintaining only one copy of each method per class. This method is invoked by every object of the class. Each object, on the other hand, has its own copy of the class's instance variables (i.e., non-static fields). Each method of the class implicitly uses this to determine the specific object of the class to manipulate.
8.5. **Time** Class Case Study: Overloaded Constructors

As you know, you can declare your own constructor to specify how objects of a class should be initialized. Next, we demonstrate a class with several **overloaded constructors** that enable objects of that class to be initialized in different ways. To overload constructors, simply provide multiple constructor declarations with different signatures. Recall from **Section 6.12** that the compiler differentiates signatures by the number and types of the parameters in each signature.

**Class Time2 with Overloaded Constructors**

The default constructor for class **Time1** (Fig. 8.1) initialized `hour`, `minute` and `second` to their default 0 values (which is midnight in universal time). The default constructor does not enable the class's clients to initialize the time with specific non-zero values. Class **Time2** (Fig. 8.5) contains five overloaded constructors that provide convenient ways to initialize objects of the new class **Time2**. Every object each constructor initializes begins in a consistent state. In this program, four of the constructors invoke a fifth constructor, which, in turn, calls method `setTime` to ensure that the value supplied for `hour` is in the range 0 to 23 and that the values for `minute` and `second` are each in the range 0 to 59. If a value is out of range, it is set to zero by `setTime` (once again ensuring that each instance variable remains in a consistent state). The compiler invokes the appropriate constructor by matching the number and types of the arguments specified in the constructor call with the number and types of the parameters specified in each constructor declaration. Note that class **Time2** also provides **set** and **get** methods for each instance variable.

---

**Figure 8.5. Time2 class with overloaded constructors.**  
(This item is displayed on pages 366 - 368 in the print version)
public class Time2 {

    private int hour; // 0 - 23
    private int minute; // 0 - 59
    private int second; // 0 - 59

    // Time2 no-argument constructor: initializes each instance variable
to zero; ensures that Time2 objects start in a consistent state
    public Time2()
    {
        this(0, 0, 0); // invoke Time2 constructor with three arguments
    } // end Time2 no-argument constructor

    // Time2 constructor: hour supplied, minute and second defaulted to 0
    public Time2(int h)
    {
        this(h, 0, 0); // invoke Time2 constructor with three arguments
    } // end Time2 one-argument constructor

    // Time2 constructor: hour and minute supplied, second defaulted to 0
    public Time2(int h, int m)
    {
        this(h, m, 0); // invoke Time2 constructor with three arguments
    } // end Time2 two-argument constructor

    // Time2 constructor: hour, minute and second supplied
    public Time2(int h, int m, int s)
    {
        setTime(h, m, s); // invoke setTime to validate time
    } // end Time2 three-argument constructor

    // Time2 constructor: another Time2 object supplied
    public Time2(Time2 time)
    {
        // invoke Time2 three-argument constructor
        this(time.getHour(), time.getMinute(), time.getSecond());
    } // end Time2 constructor with a Time2 object argument

    // Set Methods
    // set a new time value using universal time; ensure that
    // the data remains consistent by setting invalid values to zero
    public void setTime(int h, int m, int s)
    {
        setHour(h); // set the hour
        setMinute(m); // set the minute
        setSecond(s); // set the second
    } // end method setTime

    // validate and set hour
    public void setHour(int h)
    {
        hour = (h >= 0 && h < 24) ? h : 0;
    } // end method setHour

    // validate and set minute
    public void setMinute(int m)
    {
        minute = (m >= 0 && m < 60) ? m : 0;
    } // end method setMinute

    // validate and set second

public void setSecond( int s )
{
    second = ( ( s >= 0 && s < 60 ) ? s : 0 );
} // end method setSecond

// Get Methods
// get hour value
public int getHour()
{
    return hour;
} // end method getHour

// get minute value
public int getMinute()
{
    return minute;
} // end method getMinute

// get second value
public int getSecond()
{
    return second;
} // end method getSecond

// convert to String in universal-time format (HH:MM:SS)
public String toUniversalString()
{
    return String.format( "%02d:%02d:%02d", getHour(), getMinute(), getSecond() );
} // end method toUniversalString

// convert to String in standard-time format (H:MM:SS AM or PM)
public String toString()
{
    return String.format( "%d:%02d:%02d %s",
        ( getHour() == 0 || getHour() == 12 ) ? 12 : getHour() % 12 ),
        getMinute(), getSecond(), ( getHour() < 12 ? "AM" : "PM" ) );
} // end method toString

} // end class Time2

Class Time2's Constructors

Lines 1215 declare a so-called **no-argument constructor** that is, a constructor invoked without arguments. Such a constructor simply initializes the object as specified in the constructor's body. In the body, we introduce a use of the **this** reference that is allowed only as the first statement in a constructor's body. Line 14 uses this in method-call syntax to invoke the Time2 constructor that takes three arguments (lines 3033). The no-argument constructor passes values of 0 for the **hour, minute** and **second** to the constructor with three parameters. Using the **this** reference as shown here is a popular way to reuse initialization code provided by another of the class's constructors.
rather than defining similar code in the no-argument constructor's body. We use this syntax in four of the five Time2 constructors to make the class easier to maintain and modify. If we need to change how objects of class Time2 are initialized, only the constructor that the class's other constructors call would need to be modified. In fact, even that constructor might not need modification in this example. That constructor simply calls the setTime method to perform the actual initialization, so it is possible that the changes the class might require would be localized to the set methods.

Common Programming Error 8.3

It is a syntax error when this is used in a constructor's body to call another constructor of the same class if that call is not the first statement in the constructor. It is also a syntax error when a method attempts to invoke a constructor directly via this.

Lines 1821 declare a Time2 constructor with a single int parameter representing the hour, which is passed with 0 for the minute and second to the constructor at lines 3033. Lines 2427 declare a Time2 constructor that receives two int parameters representing the hour and minute, which are passed with 0 for the second to the constructor at lines 3033. Like the no-argument constructor, each of these constructors invokes the constructor at lines 3033 to minimize code duplication. Lines 3033 declare the Time2 constructor that receives three int parameters representing the hour, minute and second. This constructor calls setTime to initialize the instance variables to consistent values.

Common Programming Error 8.4

A constructor can call methods of the class. Be aware that the instance variables might not yet be in a consistent state, because the constructor is in the process of initializing the object. Using instance variables before they have been initialized properly is a logic error.
Lines 3640 declare a `Time2` constructor that receives a `Time2` reference to another `Time2` object. In this case, the values from the `Time2` argument are passed to the three-argument constructor at lines 3033 to initialize the `hour`, `minute` and `second`. Note that line 39 could have directly accessed the `hour`, `minute` and `second` values of the constructor's argument `time` with the expressions `time.hour`, `time.minute` and `time.second` even though `hour`, `minute` and `second` are declared as private variables of class `Time2`. This is due to a special relationship between objects of the same class.

**Software Engineering Observation 8.4**

> When one object of a class has a reference to another object of the same class, the first object can access all the second object's data and methods (including those that are private).

**Notes Regarding Class `Time2`'s Set and Get Methods and Constructors**

Note that `Time2`'s `set` and `get` methods are called throughout the body of the class. In particular, method `setTime` calls methods `setHour`, `setMinute` and `setSecond` in lines 4749, and methods `toUniversalString` and `toString` call methods `getHour`, `getMinute` and `getSecond` in line 93 and lines 100101, respectively. In each case, these methods could have accessed the class's private data directly without calling the `set` and `get` methods. However, consider changing the representation of the time from three `int` values (requiring 12 bytes of memory) to a single `int` value representing the total number of seconds that have elapsed since midnight (requiring only 4 bytes of memory). If we make such a change, only the bodies of the methods that access the private data directly would need to changein particular, the individual `set` and `get` methods for the `hour`, `minute` and `second`. There would be no need to modify the bodies of methods `setTime`, `toUniversalString` or `toString` because they do not access the data directly. Designing the class in this manner reduces the likelihood of programming errors when altering the class's implementation.

Similarly, each `Time2` constructor could be written to include a copy of the appropriate statements from method `setTime`. Doing so may be slightly more...
efficient, because the extra constructor call and call to `setTime` are eliminated. However, duplicating statements in multiple methods or constructors makes changing the class's internal data representation more difficult. Having the `Time2` constructors call the constructor with three arguments (or even call `setTime` directly) requires any changes to the implementation of `setTime` to be made only once.

Software Engineering Observation 8.5

When implementing a method of a class, use the class's set and get methods to access the class's private data. This simplifies code maintenance and reduces the likelihood of errors.

Using Class `Time2`'s Overloaded Constructors

Class `Time2Test` ([Fig. 8.6](#)) creates six `Time2` objects (lines 813) to invoke the overloaded `Time2` constructors. Line 8 shows that the no-argument constructor (lines 1215 of [Fig. 8.5](#)) is invoked by placing an empty set of parentheses after the class name when allocating a `Time2` object with `new`. Lines 913 of the program demonstrate passing arguments to the other `Time2` constructors. Java invokes the appropriate overloaded constructor by matching the number and types of the arguments specified in the constructor call with the number and types of the parameters specified in each constructor declaration. Line 9 invokes the constructor at lines 1821 of [Fig. 8.5](#). Line 10 invokes the constructor at lines 2427 of [Fig. 8.5](#). Lines 1112 invoke the constructor at lines 3033 of [Fig. 8.5](#). Line 13 invokes the constructor at lines 3640 of [Fig. 8.5](#). The application displays the String representation of each initialized `Time2` object to confirm that it was initialized properly.

**Figure 8.6. Overloaded constructors used to initialize `Time2` objects.**

(This item is displayed on pages 370 - 371 in the print version)
public class Time2Test
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        Time2 t1 = new Time2(); // 00:00:00
        Time2 t2 = new Time2( 2 ); // 02:00:00
        Time2 t3 = new Time2( 21, 34 ); // 21:34:00
        Time2 t4 = new Time2( 12, 25, 42 ); // 12:25:42
        Time2 t5 = new Time2( 27, 74, 99 ); // 00:00:00
        Time2 t6 = new Time2( t4 ); // 12:25:42

        System.out.println( "Constructed with:" );
        System.out.println( "t1: all arguments defaulted" );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t1.toUniversalString() );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t1.toString() );

        System.out.println( "t2: hour specified; minute and second defaulted" );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t2.toUniversalString() );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t2.toString() );

        System.out.println( "t3: hour and minute specified; second defaulted" );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t3.toUniversalString() );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t3.toString() );

        System.out.println( "t4: hour, minute and second specified" );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t4.toUniversalString() );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t4.toString() );

        System.out.println( "t5: all invalid values specified" );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t5.toUniversalString() );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t5.toString() );

        System.out.println( "t6: Time2 object t4 specified" );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t6.toUniversalString() );
        System.out.printf( " %s\n", t6.toString() );
    } // end main
} // end class Time2Test

---

t1: all arguments defaulted
  00:00:00
  12:00:00 AM
t2: hour specified; minute and second defaulted
  02:00:00
  2:00:00 AM
t3: hour and minute specified; second defaulted
  21:34:00
  9:34:00 PM
t4: hour, minute and second specified
  12:25:42
  12:25:42 PM
t5: all invalid values specified
  00:00:00
  12:00:00 AM

t6: Time2 object t4 specified
  12:25:42
  12:25:42 PM
8.6. Default and No-Argument Constructors

Every class must have at least one constructor. As you learned in Section 3.7, if you do not provide any constructors in a class's declaration, the compiler creates a default constructor that takes no arguments when it is invoked. The default constructor initializes the instance variables to the initial values specified in their declarations or to their default values (zero for primitive numeric types, \texttt{false} for \texttt{boolean} values and \texttt{null} for references). In Section 9.4.1, you will learn that the default constructor performs another task in addition to initializing instance variables to their default value.

If your class declares constructors, the compiler will not create a default constructor for your class. In this case, to specify the default initialization for objects of your class, you must declare a no-argument constructoras in lines 1215 of Fig. 8.5. Like a default constructor, a no-argument constructor is invoked with empty parentheses. Note that the \texttt{Time2} no-argument constructor explicitly initializes a \texttt{Time2} object by passing to the three-argument constructor 0 for each parameter. Since 0 is the default value for \texttt{int} instance variables, the no-argument constructor in this example could actually be declared with an empty body. In this case, each instance variable would receive its default value when the no-argument constructor is called. If we omit the no-argument constructor, clients of this class would not be able to create a \texttt{Time2} object with the expression \texttt{new Time2()}.

---

Common Programming Error 8.5

\textit{If a class has constructors, but none of the public constructors are no-argument constructors, and a program attempts to call a no-argument constructor to initialize an object of the class, a compilation error occurs. A constructor can be called with no arguments only if the class does not have any constructors (in which case the default constructor is called) or if the class has a public no-argument constructor.}

---

Software Engineering Observation 8.6
Java allows other methods of the class besides its constructors to have the same name as the class and to specify return types. Such methods are not constructors and will not be called when an object of the class is instantiated. Java determines which methods are constructors by locating the methods that have the same name as the class and do not specify a return type.
8.7. Notes on Set and Get Methods

As you know, a class's private fields can be manipulated only by methods of that class. A typical manipulation might be the adjustment of a customer's bank balance (e.g., a private instance variable of a class BankAccount) by a method `computeInterest`. Classes often provide public methods to allow clients of the class to set (i.e., assign values to) or get (i.e., obtain the values of) private instance variables.

As a naming example, a method that sets instance variable `interestRate` would typically be named `setInterestRate` and a method that gets the `interestRate` would typically be called `getInterestRate`. Set methods are also commonly called mutator methods, because they typically change a value. Get methods are also commonly called accessor methods or query methods.

Set and Get Methods vs. public Data

It would seem that providing set and get capabilities is essentially the same as making the instance variables public. This is a subtlety of Java that makes the language so desirable for software engineering. A public instance variable can be read or written by any method that has a reference to an object that contains the instance variable. If an instance variable is declared private, a public get method certainly allows other methods to access the variable, but the get method can control how the client can access the variable. For example, a get method might control the format of the data it returns and thus shield the client code from the actual data representation. A public set method can and should carefully scrutinize attempts to modify the variable's value to ensure that the new value is appropriate for that data item. For example, an attempt to set the day of the month to 37 would be rejected, an attempt to set a person's weight to a negative value would be rejected, and so on. Thus, although set and get methods provide access to private data, the access is restricted by the programmer's implementation of the methods. This helps promote good software engineering.

Validity Checking in Set Methods
The benefits of data integrity are not automatic simply because instance variables are declared `private` the programmer must provide validity checking. Java enables programmers to design better programs in a convenient manner. A class's `set` methods can return values indicating that attempts were made to assign invalid data to objects of the class. A client of the class can test the return value of a `set` method to determine whether the client's attempt to modify the object was successful and to take appropriate action. In Chapter 13, Exception Handling, we demonstrate how clients of a class can be notified when an attempt is made to modify an object with an inappropriate value.

**Software Engineering Observation 8.7**

*When necessary, provide public methods to change and retrieve the values of private instance variables. This architecture helps hide the implementation of a class from its clients, which improves program modifiability.*

**Software Engineering Observation 8.8**

*Class designers need not provide set or get methods for each private field. These capabilities should be provided only when it makes sense.*

**Predicate Methods**

Another common use for accessor methods is to test whether a condition is true or false such methods are often called `predicate methods`. An example of a predicate method would be an `isEmpty` method for a `container class` a class capable of holding many objects, such as a linked list, a stack or a queue. (These data structures are discussed in depth in Chapters 17 and 19.) A program might test `isEmpty` before attempting to read another item from a container object. A program might test `isFull` before attempting to insert another item into a container object.
Using Set and Get Methods to Create a Class That Is Easier to Debug and Maintain

If only one method performs a particular task, such as setting the hour in a Time2 object, it is easier to debug and maintain the class. If the hour is not being set properly, the code that actually modifies instance variable hour is localized to one method's body setHour. Thus, your debugging efforts can be focused on method setHour.
8.8. Composition

A class can have references to objects of other classes as members. Such a capability is called **composition** and is sometimes referred to as a **has-a relationship**. For example, an object of class `AlarmClock` needs to know the current time and the time when it is supposed to sound its alarm, so it is reasonable to include two references to `Time` objects as members of the `AlarmClock` object.

**Software Engineering Observation 8.9**

*One form of software reuse is composition, in which a class has as members references to objects of other classes.*

Our example of composition contains three classes `Date` (**Fig. 8.7**), `Employee` (**Fig. 8.8**) and `EmployeeTest` (**Fig. 8.9**). Class `Date` (**Fig. 8.7**) declares instance variables month, day and year (lines 68) to represent a date. The constructor receives three **int** parameters. Line 14 invokes utility method `checkMonth` (lines 2333) to validate the monthan out-of-range value is set to 1 to maintain a consistent state. Line 15 assumes that the value for `year` is correct and does not validate it. Line 16 invokes utility method `checkDay` (lines 3652) to validate the value for day based on the current month and year. Lines 4243 determine whether the day is correct based on the number of days in the particular month. If the day is not correct, lines 4647 determine whether the month is February, the day is 29 and the year is a leap year. If lines 4248 do not return a correct value for day, line 51 returns 1 to maintain the `Date` in a consistent state. Note that lines 1819 in the constructor output the `this` reference as a `String`. Since `this` is a reference to the current `Date` object, the object's `toString` method (lines 5558) is called implicitly to obtain the object's `String` representation.

**Figure 8.7.** `Date` class declaration.
public class Date {
    private int month; // 1-12
    private int day; // 1-31 based on month
    private int year; // any year

    // constructor: call checkMonth to confirm proper value for month;
    // call checkDay to confirm proper value for day
    public Date( int theMonth, int theDay, int theYear )
    {
        month = checkMonth( theMonth ); // validate month
        year = theYear; // could validate year
        day = checkDay( theDay ); // validate day

        System.out.printf("Date object constructor for date %s\n", this);
    }

    // utility method to confirm proper month value
    private int checkMonth( int testMonth )
    {
        if ( testMonth > 0 && testMonth <= 12 ) // validate month
            return testMonth;
        else // month is invalid
        {
            System.out.printf("Invalid month (%d) set to 1.\n", testMonth);
            return 1; // maintain object in consistent state
        }
    }

    // utility method to confirm proper day value based on month and year
    private int checkDay( int testDay )
    {
        int daysPerMonth[] =
            { 0, 31, 28, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31, 30, 31, 31 };

        // check if day in range for month
        if ( testDay > 0 && testDay <= daysPerMonth[ month ] )
            return testDay;

        // check for leap year
        if ( month == 2 && testDay == 29 && ( year % 400 == 0 ||
            ( year % 4 == 0 && year % 100 != 0 ) ) )
            return testDay;

        System.out.printf("Invalid day (%d) set to 1.\n", testDay);
        return 1; // maintain object in consistent state
    }

    // return a String of the form month/day/year
    public String toString()
    {
        return "\n";}
```java
57    return String.format("%d/%d/%d", month, day, year);
58  } // end method toString
59 } // end class Date

Figure 8.8. Employee class with references to other objects.
(This item is displayed on pages 375 - 376 in the print version)

1 // Fig. 8.8: Employee.java
2 // Employee class with references to other objects.
3
4 public class Employee
5 {
6    private String firstName;
7    private String lastName;
8    private Date birthDate;
9    private Date hireDate;
10
11    // constructor to initialize name, birth date and hire date
12    public Employee( String first, String last, Date dateOfBirth,
13                      Date dateOfHire )
14    {
15        firstName = first;
16        lastName = last;
17        birthDate = dateOfBirth;
18        hireDate = dateOfHire;
19    } // end Employee constructor
20
21    // convert Employee to String format
22    public String toString()
23    {
24        return String.format("%s, %s Hired: %s Birthday: %s",
25                                 lastName, firstName, hireDate, birthDate);
26    } // end method toString
27 } // end class Employee

Figure 8.9. Composition demonstration.
(This item is displayed on page 376 in the print version)

1 // Fig. 8.9: EmployeeTest.java
2 // Composition demonstration.
3
4 public class EmployeeTest
5 {
6    public static void main( String args[] )
7    {
8        Date birth = new Date( 7, 24, 1949 );
```
Date hire = new Date( 3, 12, 1988 );
Employee employee = new Employee( "Bob", "Blue", birth, hire );
System.out.println( employee );

Date object constructor for date 7/24/1949
Date object constructor for date 3/12/1988

Class Employee (Fig. 8.8) has instance variables firstName, lastName, birthDate and hireDate. Members birthDate and hireDate (lines 89) are references to Date objects. This demonstrates that a class can have as instance variables references to objects of other classes. The Employee constructor (lines 1219) takes four parameters first, last, dateOfBirth and dateOfHire. The objects referenced by the parameters dateOfBirth and dateOfHire are assigned to the Employee object's birthDate and hireDate instance variables, respectively. Note that when class Employee's toString method is called, it returns a String containing the String representations of the two Date objects. Each of these Strings is obtained with an implicit call to the Date class's toString method.

Class EmployeeTest (Fig. 8.9) creates two Date objects (lines 89) to represent an Employee's birthday and hire date, respectively. Line 10 creates an Employee and initializes its instance variables by passing to the constructor two Strings (representing the Employee's first and last names) and two Date objects (representing the birthday and hire date). Line 12 implicitly invokes the Employee's toString method to display the values of its instance variables and demonstrate that the object was initialized properly.
8.9. Enumerations

In Fig. 6.9 (Craps.java), we introduced the basic `enum` type which defines a set of constants that are represented as unique identifiers. In that program, the `enum` constants represented the game's status. In this section, we discuss the relationship between `enum` types and classes. Like classes, all `enum` types are reference types, which means that you can refer to an object of an `enum` type with a reference. An `enum` type is declared with an `enum declaration`, which is a comma-separated list of `enum` constantsthe declaration may optionally include other components of traditional classes, such as constructors, fields and methods. Each `enum` declaration declares an `enum` class with the following restrictions:

1. `enum` types are implicitly `final`, because they declare constants that should not be modified.

2. `enum` constants are implicitly `static`.

3. Any attempt to create an object of an `enum` type with operator `new` results in a compilation error.

The `enum` constants can be used anywhere constants can be used, such as in the case labels of `switch` statements and to control enhanced `for` statements.

**Figure 8.10** illustrates how to declare instance variables, a constructor and methods in an `enum` type. The `enum` declaration (lines 537) contains two parts: the `enum` constants and the other members of the `enum` type. The first part (lines 813) declares six `enum` constants. Each `enum` constant is optionally followed by arguments which are passed to the `enum constructor` (lines 2024). Like the constructors you have seen in classes, an `enum` constructor can specify any number of parameters and can be overloaded. In this example, the `enum` constructor has two `String` parameters, hence each `enum` constant is followed by parentheses containing two `String` arguments. The second part (lines 1636) declares the other members of the `enum` type: two instance variables (lines 1617), a constructor (lines 2024) and two methods (lines 2730 and 3336).
Lines 16-17 declare the instance variables `title` and `copyrightYear`. Each `enum` constant in `Book` is actually an object of type `Book` that has its own copy of instance variables `title` and `copyrightYear`. The constructor (lines 20-24) takes two `String` parameters, one that specifies the book title and one that specifies the copyright year of the book. Lines 22-23 assign these parameters to the instance variables. Lines 27-36 declare two methods, which return the book...
Figure 8.11 tests the `enum` type declared in Fig. 8.10 and illustrates how to iterate through a range of `enum` constants.

**Figure 8.11. Testing an `enum` type.**

(This item is displayed on pages 378 - 379 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 8.11: EnumTest.java
2 // Testing enum type Book.
3 import java.util.EnumSet;
4
5 public class EnumTest
6 {
7    public static void main( String args[] )
8    {
9       System.out.println( "All books:\n" );
10
11       // print all books in enum Book
12       for ( Book book : Book.values() )
13          System.out.printf( "%-10s%-45s%s\n", book,
14                               book.getTitle(), book.getCopyrightYear() );
15
16       System.out.println( "Display a range of enum constants:\n" );
17
18       // print first four books
19       for ( Book book : EnumSet.range( Book.JHTP6, Book.CPPHTP4 ) )
20          System.out.printf( "%-10s%-45s%s\n", book,
21                               book.getTitle(), book.getCopyrightYear() );
22    } // end main
23 } // end class EnumTest
```

All books:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JHTP6</td>
<td>Java How to Program 6e</td>
<td>2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHTP4</td>
<td>C How to Program 4e</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IW3HTP3</td>
<td>Internet &amp; World Wide Web How to Program 3e</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPPHTP4</td>
<td>C++ How to Program 4e</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VBHTP2</td>
<td>Visual Basic .NET How to Program 2e</td>
<td>2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSHARPHTP</td>
<td>C# How to Program</td>
<td>2002</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Display a range of enum constants:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Book</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JHTP6</td>
<td>Java How to Program 6e</td>
<td>2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHTP4</td>
<td>C How to Program 4e</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IW3HTP3</td>
<td>Internet &amp; World Wide Web How to Program 3e</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPPHTP4</td>
<td>C++ How to Program 4e</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For every enum, the compiler generates a static method called values (called in line 12) that returns an array of the enum's constants in the order in which they were declared. Recall from Section 7.6 that the enhanced for statement can be used to iterate through an array. Lines 1214 use the enhanced for statement to display all the constants declared in the enum Book. Line 14 invokes the enum Book's getTitle and getCopyrightYear methods to get the title and copyright year associated with the constant. Note that when an enum constant is converted to a String (e.g., book in line 13), the constant's identifier is used as the String representation (e.g., JHTP6 for the first enum constant).

[Page 379]

Lines 1921 use the static method range of class EnumSet (declared in package java.util) to display a range of the enum Book's constants. Method range takes two parameters—the first enum constant in the range and the last enum constant in the range—and returns an EnumSet that contains all the constants between these two constants, inclusive. For example, EnumSet.range(Book.JHTP6, Book.CPPHTP4) returns an EnumSet containing Book.JHTP6, Book.CHTP4, Book.IW3HTP3 and Book.CPPHTP4. The enhanced for statement can be used with an EnumSet just as it can with an array, so lines 1921 use the enhanced for statement to display the title and copyright year of every book in the EnumSet. Class EnumSet provides several other static methods for creating sets of enum constants from the same enum type. For more details of class EnumSet, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/EnumSet.html.

Common Programming Error 8.6

In an enum declaration, it is a syntax error to declare enum constants after the enum type's constructors, fields and methods in the enum declaration.
8.10. Garbage Collection and Method `finalize`

Every class in Java has the methods of class `Object` (package `java.lang`), one of which is the `finalize` method. This method is rarely used. In fact, we searched over 6500 source-code files for the Java API classes and found fewer than 50 declarations of the `finalize` method. Nevertheless, because this method is part of every class, we discuss it here to help you understand its intended purpose in case you encounter it in your studies or in industry. The complete details of the `finalize` method are beyond the scope of this book, and most programmers should not use it; you'll soon see why. You will learn more about class `Object` in Chapter 9, Object-Oriented Programming: Inheritance.

Every object you create uses various system resources, such as memory. We need a disciplined way to give resources back to the system when they are no longer needed to avoid "resource leaks." The Java Virtual Machine (JVM) performs automatic garbage collection to reclaim the memory occupied by objects that are no longer in use. When there are no more references to an object, the object is marked for garbage collection by the JVM. The memory for such an object can be reclaimed when the JVM executes its garbage collector, which is responsible for retrieving the memory of objects that are no longer used so the memory can be used for other objects. Therefore, memory leaks that are common in other languages like C and C++ (because memory is not automatically reclaimed in those languages) are less likely in Java (but some can still happen in subtle ways). Other types of resource leaks can occur. For example, an application could open a file on disk to modify the file's contents. If the application does not close the file, no other application can use the file until the application that opened the file completes.

The `finalize` method is called by the garbage collector to perform termination housekeeping on an object just before the garbage collector reclaims the object's memory. Method `finalize` does not take parameters and has return type `void`. A problem with method `finalize` is that the garbage collector is not guaranteed to execute at a specified time. In fact, the garbage collector may never execute before a program terminates. Thus, it is unclear if, or when, method `finalize` will be called. For this reason, most programmers should avoid method `finalize`. In Section 8.11, we demonstrate a situation in which method `finalize` is called by the garbage collector.
A class that uses system resources, such as files on disk, should provide a method to eventually release the resources. Many Java API classes provide close or dispose methods for this purpose. For example, class Scanner (java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/Scanner.html) has a close method.
8.11. **static** Class Members

Every object has its own copy of all the instance variables of the class. In certain cases, only one copy of a particular variable should be shared by all objects of a class. A **static field** called a **class variable** is used in such cases. A static variable represents **classwide information** all objects of the class share the same piece of data. The declaration of a static variable begins with the keyword `static`.

Let's motivate static data with an example. Suppose that we have a video game with Martians and other space creatures. Martians tend to be brave and willing to attack other space creatures when the Martian is aware that there are at least four other Martians present. If fewer than five Martians are present, become cowardly. Thus each Martian needs to know the `martianCount`. We could endow class Martian with `martianCount` as an instance variable. If we do this, then every Martian will have a separate copy of the instance variable, and every time we create a new Martian, we will have to update the instance variable `martianCount` in every Martian. This wastes space with the redundant copies, wastes time in updating the separate copies and is error prone. Instead, we declare `martianCount` to be static, making `martianCount` classwide data. Every Martian can see the `martianCount` as if it were an instance variable of class Martian, but only one copy of the static `martianCount` is maintained. This saves space. We save time by having the Martian constructor increment the static `martianCount` there is only one copy, so we do not have to increment separate copies of `martianCount` for each Martian object.

**Software Engineering Observation 8.11**

Use a static variable when all objects of a class must use the same copy of the variable.

Static variables have class scope. A class's **public static** members can be
accessed through a reference to any object of the class, or they can be
accessed by qualifying the member name with the class name and a dot (.), as in
\texttt{Math.random()}. A class's \texttt{private static} class members can be accessed only
through methods of the class. Actually, \texttt{static} class members exist even when
no objects of the class exist; they are available as soon as the class is loaded
into memory at execution time. To access a \texttt{public static} member when no
objects of the class exist (and even when they do), prefix the class name and a
dot (.) to the \texttt{static} member, as in \texttt{Math.PI}. To access a \texttt{private static}
member when no objects of the class exist, a \texttt{public static} method must be provided and
the method must be called by qualifying its name with the class name and a
dot.

\textbf{Software Engineering Observation 8.12}

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{image.png}
\caption{Static class variables and methods exist, and can be used, even if no objects
of that class have been instantiated.}
\end{figure}

Our next program declares two classes \texttt{Employee (Fig. 8.12)} and \texttt{EmployeeTest (Fig.
8.13)}. Class \texttt{Employee} declares \texttt{private static} variable \texttt{count (Fig. 8.12, line 9)}, and
\texttt{public static} method \texttt{getCount (lines 4649)}. The \texttt{static} variable \texttt{count} is initialized
to zero in line 9. If a static variable is not initialized, the compiler assigns a
default value to the variable in this case 0, the default value for type \texttt{int}.
Variable \texttt{count} maintains a count of the number of objects of class \texttt{Employee} that
currently reside in memory. This includes objects that have already been
marked for garbage collection by the JVM, but have not yet been reclaimed by
the garbage collector.

\textbf{Figure 8.12. \texttt{static} variable used to maintain a count of the
number of \texttt{Employee} objects in memory.}

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{image.png}
\caption{Static variable used to maintain a count of the number of
\texttt{Employee} objects in memory.}
\end{figure}

\begin{lstlisting}
1 // Fig. 8.12: Employee.java
2 // Static variable used to maintain a count of the number of
3 // Employee objects in memory.
4
5 public class Employee
6 {
7     private static int count = 0;
8     public static void getCount()
9     {
10         System.out.println(\"Employee count: \" + count);
11     }
12     public static void main(String[] args)
13     {
14         Employee.count++;   // Increment the count
15         Employee.getCount();
16     }
17 }
\end{lstlisting}
private String firstName;
private String lastName;
private static int count = 0; // number of objects in memory

// initialize employee, add 1 to static count and
// output String indicating that constructor was called
public Employee( String first, String last )
{
    firstName = first;
    lastName = last;

    count++; // increment static count of employees
    System.out.printf( "Employee constructor: %s %s; count = %d\n",
                        firstName, lastName, count );
} // end Employee constructor

// subtract 1 from static count when garbage
collector calls finalize to clean up object;
// confirm that finalize was called
protected void finalize()
{
    count--; // decrement static count of employees
    System.out.printf( "Employee finalizer: %s %s; count = %d\n",
                        firstName, lastName, count );
} // end method finalize

// get first name
public String getFirstName()
{
    return firstName;
} // end method getFirstName

// get last name
public String getLastName()
{
    return lastName;
} // end method getLastName

// static method to get static count value
public static int getCount()
{
    return count;
} // end method getCount

} // end class Employee

Figure 8.13. static member demonstration.
(This item is displayed on pages 382 - 383 in the print version)
show that count is 0 before creating Employees

Employees before instantiation: 0
Employee constructor: Susan Baker; count = 1
Employee constructor: Bob Blue; count = 2

Employees after instantiation:
via e1.getCount(): 2
via e2.getCount(): 2
via Employee.getCount(): 2

Employee 1: Susan Baker
Employee 2: Bob Blue

Employee finalizer: Bob Blue; count = 1
Employee finalizer: Susan Baker; count = 0

Employees after System.gc(): 0
When Employee objects exist, member count can be used in any method of an Employee object. This example increments count in the constructor (line 18) and decrements it in the finalize method (line 28). When no objects of class Employee exist, member count can still be referenced, but only through a call to public static method getCount (lines 46-49), as in Employee.getCount(), which returns the number of Employee objects currently in memory. When objects exist, method getCount can also be called through any reference to an Employee object, as in the call e1.getCount().

[Page 383]

**Good Programming Practice 8.1**

Invoke every static method by using the class name and a dot (.) to emphasize that the method being called is a static method.

[Page 384]

Note that the Employee class has a finalize method (lines 26-31). This method is included only to show when the garbage collector executes in this program. Method finalize is normally declared protected, so it is not part of the public services of a class. We will discuss the protected member access modifier in detail in Chapter 9.

EmployeeTest method main (Fig. 8.13) instantiates two Employee objects (lines 13-14). When each Employee object's constructor is invoked, lines 15-16 of Fig. 8.12 assign the Employee's first name and last name to instance variables firstName and lastName. Note that these two statements do not make copies of the original String arguments. Actually, String objects in Java are immutable—they cannot be modified after they are created. Therefore, it is safe to have many references to one String object. This is not normally the case for objects of most other classes in Java. If String objects are immutable, you might wonder why are we able to use operators + and += to concatenate String
objects. String concatenation operations actually result in a new Strings object containing the concatenated values. The original String objects are not modified.

When main has finished using the two Employee objects, the references e1 and e2 are set to null at lines 3132. At this point, references e1 and e2 no longer refer to the objects that were instantiated on lines 1314. This "marks the objects for garbage collection" because there are no more references to the objects in the program.

Eventually, the garbage collector might reclaim the memory for these objects (or the operating system surely will reclaim the memory when the program terminates). The JVM does not guarantee when the garbage collector will execute (or even whether it will execute), so this program explicitly calls the garbage collector in line 34 using static method gc of class System (package java.lang) to indicate that the garbage collector should make a best-effort attempt to reclaim objects that are eligible for garbage collection. This is just a best effort is possible that no objects or only a subset of the eligible objects will be collected. In Fig. 8.13's sample output, the garbage collector did execute before lines 3940 displayed current Employee count. The last output line indicates that the number of Employee objects in memory is 0 after the call to System.gc(). The third- and second-to-last lines of the output show that the Employee object for Bob Blue was finalized before the Employee object for Susan Baker. The output on your system may differ, because the garbage collector is not guaranteed to execute when System.gc() is called, nor is it guaranteed to collect objects in a specific order.

[Note: A method declared static cannot access non-static class members, because a static method can be called even when no objects of the class have been instantiated. For the same reason, the this reference cannot be used in a static methodthe this reference must refer to a specific object of the class, and when a static method is called, there might not be any objects of its class in memory. The this reference is required to allow a method of a class to access other non-static members of the same class.]

Common Programming Error 8.7

A compilation error occurs if a static method calls an instance (non-static) method in the same class by using only the method name. Similarly, a compilation error occurs if a static method attempts to access an instance variable in the same class by using only the variable name.
Common Programming Error 8.8

Referring to `this` in a `static` method is a syntax error.
8.12. **static** Import

In Section 6.3, you learned about the **static** fields and methods of class `Math`. We invoked class `Math`'s static fields and methods by preceding each with the class name `Math` and a dot (\`). A **static import** declaration (a new feature of J2SE 5.0) enables programmers to refer to imported static members as if they were declared in the class that uses them—the class name and a dot (\`) are not required to use an imported static member.

A static import declaration has two forms—one that imports a particular static member (which is known as **single static import**) and one that imports all static members of a class (which is known as **static import on demand**). The following syntax imports a particular static member:

```java
import static packageName.ClassName.staticMemberName;
```

where `packageName` is the package of the class (e.g., `java.lang`), `ClassName` is the name of the class (e.g., `Math`) and `staticMemberName` is the name of the static field or method (e.g., `PI` or `abs`). The following syntax imports all static members of a class:

```java
import static packageName.ClassName.*;
```

where `packageName` is the package of the class (e.g., `java.lang`) and `ClassName` is the name of the class (e.g., `Math`). The asterisk (\*) indicates that all static members of the specified class should be available for use in the class(es) declared in the file. Note that static import declarations import only static class members. Regular import statements should be used to specify the classes used in a program.

**Figure 8.14** demonstrates a static import. Line 3 is a static import declaration, that imports all static fields and methods of class `Math` from package `java.lang`. Lines 9-12 access the `Math` class's static field `E` (line 11) and the static methods `sqrt` (line 9), `ceil` (line 10), `log` (line 11) and `cos` (line 12) without preceding the field name or method names with class name `Math` and a dot.

**Figure 8.14. Static import Math methods.**
// Fig. 8.14: StaticImportTest.java
// Using static import to import static methods of class Math.
import static java.lang.Math.*;

public class StaticImportTest {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        System.out.printf( "sqrt( 900.0 ) = %.1f\n", sqrt( 900.0 ) );
        System.out.printf( "ceil( -9.8 ) = %.1f\n", ceil( -9.8 ) );
        System.out.printf( "log( E ) = %.1f\n", log( E ) );
        System.out.printf( "cos( 0.0 ) = %.1f\n", cos( 0.0 ) );
    }
}

Common Programming Error 8.9

A compilation error occurs if a program attempts to import static methods that have the same signature or static fields that have the same name from two or more classes.
8.13. **final Instance Variables**

The **principle of least privilege** is fundamental to good software engineering. In the context of an application, the principle states that code should be granted only the amount of privilege and access that the code needs to accomplish its designated task, but no more. Let us see how this principle applies to instance variables.

Some instance variables need to be modifiable and some do not. You can use the keyword `final` to specify that a variable is not modifiable (i.e., it is a constant) and that any attempt to modify it is an error. For example,

```java
private final int INCREMENT;
```

declares a `final` (constant) instance variable `INCREMENT` of type `int`. Although constants can be initialized when they are declared, this is not required. Constants can be initialized by each of the class's constructors.

**Software Engineering Observation 8.13**

> Declaring an instance variable as `final` helps enforce the principle of least privilege. If an instance variable should not be modified, declare it to be `final` to prevent modification.

Our next example contains two classes: `Increment` (**Fig. 8.15**) and class `IncrementTest` (**Fig. 8.16**). Class `Increment` contains a `final` instance variable of type `int` named `INCREMENT` (**Fig. 8.15**, line 7). Note that the `final` variable is not initialized in its declaration, so it must be initialized by the class's constructor (lines 9–13). If the class provided multiple constructors, every constructor would be required to initialize the `final` variable. The constructor receives `int` parameter `incrementValue` and assigns its value to `INCREMENT` (line 12). A `final` variable cannot be modified by assignment after it is initialized. Application class `IncrementTest` creates an object of class `Increment` (**Fig. 8.16**, line 8) and
provides as the argument to the constructor the value 5 to be assigned to the constant `INCREMENT`.

**Figure 8.15. final instance variable in a class.**
(This item is displayed on pages 386 - 387 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 8.15: Increment.java
// final instance variable in a class.

public class Increment
{
    private int total = 0; // total of all increments
    private final int INCREMENT; // constant variable (uninitialized)

    public Increment( int incrementValue )
    {
        INCREMENT = incrementValue; // initialize constant variable (once)
    } // end Increment constructor

    // add INCREMENT to total
    public void addIncrementToTotal()
    {
        total += INCREMENT;
    } // end method addIncrementToTotal

    // return String representation of an Increment object's data
    public String toString()
    {
        return String.format( "total = %d", total );
    } // end method toString

} // end class Increment
```

**Figure 8.16. final variable initialized with a constructor argument.**

```java
// Fig. 8.16: IncrementTest.java
// final variable initialized with a constructor argument.

public class IncrementTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        Increment value = new Increment( 5 );
    }
} // end class IncrementTest
```
Common Programming Error 8.10

Attempting to modify a final instance variable after it is initialized is a compilation error.

Error-Prevention Tip 8.2

Attempts to modify a final instance variable are caught at compilation time rather than causing execution-time errors. It is always preferable to get bugs out at compilation time, if possible, rather than allow them to slip through to execution time (where studies have found that the cost of repair is often many times more expensive).
Software Engineering Observation 8.14

A final field should also be declared static if it is initialized in its declaration. Once a final field is initialized in its declaration, its value can never change. Therefore, it is not necessary to have a separate copy of the field for every object of the class. Making the field static enables all objects of the class to share the final field.

If a final variable is not initialized, a compilation error occurs. To demonstrate this, we placed line 12 of Fig. 8.15 in a comment and recompiled the class. Fig. 8.17 shows the error message produced by the compiler.

Figure 8.17. final variable INCREMENT must be initialized.

```
Increment.java:13: variable INCREMENT might not have been initialized
    } // end Increment constructor
    ^
1 error
```

Common Programming Error 8.11

Not initializing a final instance variable in its declaration or in every constructor of the class yields a compilation error indicating that the variable might not have been initialized. The same error occurs if the class initializes the variable in some, but not all, of the class's constructors.
8.14. Software Reusability

Java programmers concentrate on crafting new classes and reusing existing classes. Many class libraries exist, and others are being developed worldwide. Software is then constructed from existing, well-defined, carefully tested, well-documented, portable, widely available components. This kind of software reusability speeds the development of powerful, high-quality software. Rapid application development (RAD) is of great interest today.

Java programmers now have thousands of classes in the Java API from which to choose to help them implement Java programs. Indeed, Java is not just a programming language. It is a framework in which Java developers can work to achieve true reusability and rapid application development. Java programmers can focus on the task at hand when developing their programs and leave the lower-level details to the classes of the Java API. For example, to write a program that draws graphics, a Java programmer does not require knowledge of graphics on every computer platform where the program will execute. Instead, the programmer can concentrate on learning Java's graphics capabilities (which are quite substantial and growing) and write a Java program that draws the graphics, using Java's API classes, such as `Graphics`. When the program executes on a given computer, it is the job of the JVM to translate Java commands into commands that the local computer can understand.

The Java API classes enable Java programmers to bring new applications to market faster by using preexisting, tested components. Not only does this reduce development time, it also improves the programmer's ability to debug and maintain applications. To take advantage of Java's many capabilities, it is essential that programmers familiarize themselves with the variety of packages and classes in the Java API. There are many Web-based resources at java.sun.com to help you with this task. The primary resource for learning about the Java API is the Java API documentation, which can be found at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/index.html

We overview how to use the documentation in Appendix G, Using the Java API Documentation. You can download the API documentation from
In addition, java.sun.com provides many other resources, including tutorials, articles and sites specific to individual Java topics.

**Good Programming Practice 8.2**

Avoid reinventing the wheel. Study the capabilities of the Java API. If the API contains a class that meets your program’s requirements, use that class rather than create your own.

To realize the full potential of software reusability, we need to improve cataloging schemes, licensing schemes, protection mechanisms which ensure that master copies of classes are not corrupted, description schemes that system designers use to determine whether existing objects meet their needs, browsing mechanisms that determine what classes are available and how closely they meet software developer requirements, and the like. Many interesting research and development problems have been solved and many more need to be solved. These problems will likely be solved because the potential value of increased software reuse is enormous.
8.15. Data Abstraction and Encapsulation

Classes normally hide the details of their implementation from their clients. This is called information hiding. As an example, let us consider the stack data structure introduced in Section 6.6. Recall that a stack is a last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structure—the last item pushed (inserted) on the stack is the first item popped (removed) from the stack.

Stacks can be implemented with arrays and with other data structures, such as linked lists. (We discuss stacks and linked lists in Chapter 17, Data Structures, and in Chapter 19, Collections.) A client of a stack class need not be concerned with the stack's implementation. The client knows only that when data items are placed in the stack, they will be recalled in last-in, first-out order. The client cares about what functionality a stack offers, not about how that functionality is implemented. This concept is referred to as data abstraction. Although programmers might know the details of a class's implementation, they should not write code that depends on these details. This enables a particular class (such as one that implements a stack and its operations, push and pop) to be replaced with another version without affecting the rest of the system. As long as the public services of the class do not change (i.e., every original method still has the same name, return type and parameter list in the new class declaration), the rest of the system is not affected.

Most programming languages emphasize actions. In these languages, data exists to support the actions that programs must take. Data is "less interesting" than actions. Data is "crude." Only a few primitive types exist, and it is difficult for programmers to create their own types. Java and the object-oriented style of programming elevate the importance of data. The primary activities of object-oriented programming in Java are the creation of types (e.g., classes) and the expression of the interactions among objects of those types. To create languages that emphasize data, the programming-languages community needed to formalize some notions about data. The formalization we consider here is the notion of abstract data types (ADTs), which improve the program-development process.

Consider primitive type int, which most people would associate with an integer in mathematics. Rather, an int is an abstract representation of an integer. Unlike mathematical integers, computer ints are fixed in size. For example,
type `int` in Java is limited to the range \(2,147,483,648\) to \(+2,147,483,647\). If the result of a calculation falls outside this range, an error occurs, and the computer responds in some machine-dependent manner. It might, for example, "quietly" produce an incorrect result, such as a value too large to fit in an `int` variable (commonly called **arithmetic overflow**). Mathematical integers do not have this problem. Therefore, the notion of a computer `int` is only an approximation of the notion of a real-world integer. The same is true of `float` and other built-in types.

We have taken the notion of `int` for granted until this point, but we now consider it from a new perspective. Types like `int`, `float`, and `char` are all examples of abstract data types. They are representations of real-world notions to some satisfactory level of precision within a computer system.

An ADT actually captures two notions: A **data representation** and the **operations** that can be performed on that data. For example, in Java, an `int` contains an integer value (data) and provides addition, subtraction, multiplication, division and remainder operations (division by zero is undefined). Java programmers use classes to implement abstract data types.

**Software Engineering Observation 8.15**

> Programmers create types through the class mechanism. New types can be designed to be convenient to use as the built-in types. This marks Java as an extensible language. Although the language is easy to extend via new types, the programmer cannot alter the base language itself.

Another abstract data type we discuss is a **queue**, which is similar to a "waiting line." Computer systems use many queues internally. A queue offers well-understood behavior to its clients: Clients place items in a queue one at a time via an `enqueue` operation, then get them back one at a time via a `dequeue` operation. A queue returns items in **first-in, first-out (FIFO)** order, which means that the first item inserted in a queue is the first item removed from the queue. Conceptually, a queue can become infinitely long, but real queues are finite.

The queue hides an internal data representation that keeps track of the items currently waiting in line, and it offers operations to its clients (`enqueue` and `dequeue`). The clients are not concerned about the implementation of the
they simply depend on the queue to operate "as advertised." When a client enqueues an item, the queue should accept that item and place it in some kind of internal FIFO data structure. Similarly, when the client wants the next item from the front of the queue, the queue should remove the item from its internal representation and deliver it in FIFO order (i.e., the item that has been in the queue the longest should be the next one returned by the next dequeue operation).

The queue ADT guarantees the integrity of its internal data structure. Clients cannot manipulate this data structure directly only the queue ADT has access to its internal data. Clients are able to perform only allowable operations on the data representation the ADT rejects operations that its public interface does not provide.
8.16. Time Class Case Study: Creating Packages

We have seen in almost every example in the text that classes from preexisting libraries, such as the Java API, can be imported into a Java program. Each class in the Java API belongs to a package that contains a group of related classes. As applications become more complex, packages help programmers manage the complexity of application components. Packages also facilitate software reuse by enabling programs to import classes from other packages (as we have done in most examples). Another benefit of packages is that they provide a convention for unique class names, which helps prevent class-name conflicts (discussed later in this section). This section introduces how to create your own packages.

---

Steps for Declaring a Reusable Class

Before a class can be imported into multiple applications, it must be placed in a package to make it reusable. Figure 8.18 shows how to specify the package in which a class should be placed. Figure 8.19 shows how to import our packaged class so that it can be used in an application. The steps for creating a reusable class are:

1. Declare a public class. If the class is not public, it can be used only by other classes in the same package.

2. Choose a package name and add a package declaration to the source-code file for the reusable class declaration. There can be only one package declaration in each Java source-code file, and it must precede all other declarations and statements in the file. Note that comments are not statements, so comments can be placed before a package statement in a file.

3. Compile the class so that it is placed in the appropriate package directory structure.

4. Import the reusable class into a program and use the class.
Time1 class declaration maintains the time in 24-hour format.

```java
package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch08;

class Time1 {
    private int hour;  // 0 - 23
    private int minute; // 0 - 59
    private int second; // 0 - 59

    public void setTime(int h, int m, int s) {
        hour = (h >= 0 && h < 24) ? h : 0;  // validate hour
        minute = (m >= 0 && m < 60) ? m : 0;  // validate minute
        second = (s >= 0 && s < 60) ? s : 0;  // validate second
    }

    public String toUniversalString() {
        return String.format("%02d:%02d:%02d", hour, minute, second);
    }

    public String toString() {
        int h = (hour == 0 || hour == 12) ? 12 : hour % 12;
        return String.format("%d:%02d:%02d %s", h, minute, second, (hour < 12 ? "AM" : "PM"));
    }
}
```

Time1 object used in an application.

```java
import com.deitel.jhtp6.ch08.Time1;

class Time1PackageTest {
    public static void main(String args[]) {
```
The initial universal time is: 00:00:00
The initial standard time is: 12:00:00 AM

Universal time after setTime is: 13:27:06
Standard time after setTime is: 1:27:06 PM

After attempting invalid settings:
Universal time: 00:00:00
Standard time: 12:00:00 AM

Steps 1 and 2: Creating a public Class and Adding the package Statement

For Step 1, we modify the public class Time1 declared in Fig. 8.1. The new version is shown in Fig. 8.18. No modifications have been made to the
implementation of the class, so we will not discuss its implementation details again here.

For Step 2, we add a `package` declaration (line 3) that declares a `package` named `com.deitel.jhtp6.ch08`. Placing a `package` declaration at the beginning of a Java source file indicates that the class declared in the file is part of the specified package. Only `package` declarations, `import` declarations and comments can appear outside the braces of a class declaration. A Java source-code file must have the following order:

1. a `package` declaration (if any),
2. `import` declarations (if any), then
3. class declarations.

Only one of the class declarations in a particular file can be `public`. Other classes in the file are placed in the package and can be used only by the other classes in the package. Non-`public` classes are in a package to support the reusable classes in the package.

In an effort to provide unique names for every package, Sun Microsystems specifies a convention for package naming that all Java programmers should follow. Every package name should start with your Internet domain name in reverse order. For example, our domain name is `deitel.com`, so our package names begin with `com.deitel`. For the domain name `yourcollege.edu`, the package name should begin with `edu.yourcollege`. After the domain name is reversed, you can choose any other names you want for your package. If you are part of a company with many divisions or a university with many schools, you may want to use the name of your division or school as the next name in the package. We chose to use `jhtp6` as the next name in our package name to indicate that this class is from *Java How to Program, Sixth Edition*. The last name in our package name specifies that this package is for Chapter 8 (ch08).

---

**Step 3: Compiling the Packaged Class**

*Step 3* is to compile the class so that it is stored in the appropriate package. When a Java file containing a `package` declaration is compiled, the resulting class file is placed in the directory specified by the `package` declaration. The
The directory names in the `package` declaration specify the exact location of the classes in the package.

When compiling a class in a package, the `javac` command-line option `-d` causes the `javac` compiler to create appropriate directories based on the class's `package` declaration. The option also specifies where the directories should be stored. For example, in a command window, we used the compilation command

```
javac -d . Time1.java
```

to specify that the first directory in our package name should be placed in the current directory. The period (.) after `-d` in the preceding command represents the current directory on the Windows, UNIX and Linux operating systems (and several others as well). After executing the compilation command, the current directory contains a directory called `com`, `com` contains a directory called `deitel`, `deitel` contains a directory called `jhtp6` and `jhtp6` contains a directory called `ch08`. In the `ch08` directory, you can find the file `Time1.class`. [Note: If you do not use the `-d` option, then you must copy or move the class file to the appropriate package directory after compiling it.]

The `package` name is part of the fully qualified class name, so the name of class `Time1` is actually `com.deitel.jhtp6.ch08.Time1`. You can use this fully qualified name in your programs, or you can `import` the class and use its `simple name` (the class name by itself `Time1`) in the program. If another package also contains a `Time1` class, the fully qualified class names can be used to distinguish between the classes in the program and prevent a `name conflict` (also called a `name collision`).
Step 4: Importing the Reusable Class

Once the class is compiled and stored in its package, the class can be imported into programs (Step 4). In the Time1PackageTest application of Fig. 8.19, line 3 specifies that class Time1 should be imported for use in class Time1PackageTest. Class Time1PackageTest is in the default package because the class's .java file does not contain a package declaration. Since the two classes are in different packages, the import at line 3 is required so that class Time1PackageTest can use class Time1.

Line 3 is known as a **single-type-import declaration** that is, the import declaration specifies one class to import. When your program uses multiple classes from the same package, you can import those classes with a single import declaration. For example, the import declaration

```java
import java.util.*; // import classes from package java.util
```

uses an asterisk (*) at the end of the import declaration to inform the compiler that all classes from the java.util package are available for use in the program. This is known as a **type-import-on-demand declaration**. Only the classes from package java.util that are used in the program are loaded by the JVM. The preceding import allows you to use the simple name of any class from the java.util package in the program. Throughout this book, we use single-type-import declarations for clarity.

**Common Programming Error 8.12**

> Using the import declaration import java.*; causes a compilation error. You must specify the exact name of the package from which you want to import classes.

---

Specifying the Classpath During Compilation
When compiling `TimelPackageTest`, `javac` must locate the `.class` file for `Time1` to ensure that class `TimelPackageTest` uses class `Time1` correctly. The compiler uses a special object called a **class loader** to locate the classes it needs. The class loader begins by searching the standard Java classes that are bundled with the JDK. Then it searches for **optional packages**. Java provides an **extension mechanism** that enables new (optional) packages to be added to Java for development and execution purposes. [Note: The extension mechanism is beyond the scope of this book. For more information, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/extensions.] If the class is not found in the standard Java classes or in the extension classes, the class loader searches the **classpath**, which contains a list of locations in which classes are stored. The classpath consists of a list of directories or **archive files**, each separated by a **directory separator** (a semicolon (;) on Windows or a colon (:) on UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X). Archive files are individual files that contain directories of other files, typically in a compressed format. For example, the standard classes used by your programs are contained in the archive file `rt.jar`, which is installed with the JDK. Archive files normally end with the `.jar` or `.zip` filename extensions. The directories and archive files specified in the classpath contain the classes you wish to make available to the Java compiler and the JVM.

By default, the classpath consists only of the current directory. However, the classpath can be modified by

1. providing the `-classpath` option to the `javac` compiler or

2. setting the `CLASSPATH` environment variable (a special variable that you define and the operating system maintains so that applications can search for classes in the specified locations).

For more information on the classpath, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/tooldocs/tools.html. The section entitled "General Information" contains information on setting the classpath for UNIX/Linux and Windows.

**Common Programming Error 8.13**

Specifying an explicit classpath eliminates the current directory from the classpath. This prevents classes in the current directory (including packages in the current directory) from loading properly. If classes must be loaded from the current directory, include a dot (.) in the classpath to specify the
Software Engineering Observation 8.16

In general, it is a better practice to use the -classpath option of the compiler, rather than the CLASSPATH environment variable, to specify the classpath for a program. This enables each application to have its own classpath.

Error-Prevention Tip 8.3

Specifying the classpath with the CLASSPATH environment variable can cause subtle and difficult-to-locate errors in programs that use different versions of the same package.

For the example of Fig. 8.18 and Fig. 8.19, we did not specify an explicit classpath. Thus, to locate the classes in the com.deitel.jhttp6.ch08 package from this example, the class loader looks in the current directory for the first name in the package com. Next, the class loader navigates the directory structure. Directory com contains the subdirectory deitel. Directory deitel contains the subdirectory jhttp6. Finally, directory jhttp6 contains subdirectory ch08. In the ch08 directory is the file Time1.class, which is loaded by the class loader to ensure that the class is used properly in our program.

Specifying the Classpath When Executing an Application
When you execute an application, the JVM must be able to locate the classes used in that application. Like the compiler, the java command uses a class loader that searches the standard classes and extension classes first, then searches the classpath (the current directory by default). The classpath for the JVM can be specified explicitly by using either of the techniques discussed for the compiler. As with the compiler, it is better to specify an individual program's classpath via command-line options to the JVM. You can specify the classpath in the java command via the -classpath or -cp command-line options, followed by a list of directories or archive files separated by semicolons (;) on Microsoft Windows or by colons (:) on UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X. Again, if classes must be loaded from the current directory, be sure to include a dot (.) in the classpath to specify the current directory.
8.17. Package Access

If no access modifier (public, protected or privateprotected is discussed in Chapter 9) is specified for a method or variable when it is declared in a class, the method or variable is considered to have package access. In a program that consists of one class declaration, this has no specific effect. However, if a program uses multiple classes from the same package (i.e., a group of related classes), these classes can access each other's package-access members directly through references to objects of the appropriate classes.

The application in Fig. 8.20 demonstrates package access. The application contains two classes in one source-code file the PackageDataTest application class (lines 521) and the PackageData class (lines 2441). When you compile this program, the compiler produces two separate .class files PackageDataTest.class and PackageData.class. The compiler places the two .class files in the same directory, so the classes are considered to be part of the same package. Since they are part of the same package, class PackageDataTest is allowed to modify the package-access data of PackageData objects.

Figure 8.20. Package-access members of a class are accessible by other classes in the same package. 
(This item is displayed on page 397 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 8.20: PackageDataTest.java
// Package-access members of a class are accessible by other classes
// in the same package.

public class PackageDataTest {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        PackageData packageData = new PackageData();

        // output String representation of packageData
        System.out.printf( "After instantiation:\n%s\n", packageData );

        // change package access data in packageData object
        packageData.number = 77;
        packageData.string = "Goodbye";

        // output String representation of packageData
        System.out.printf( "\nAfter changing values:\n%s\n", packageData );
    } // end main
} // end class PackageDataTest
```
In the `PackageData` class declaration, lines 26-27 declare the instance variables `number` and `string` with no access modifier; therefore, these are package-access instance variables. The `PackageDataTest` application's `main` method creates an instance of the `PackageData` class (line 9) to demonstrate the ability to modify the `PackageData` instance variables directly (as shown on lines 15-16). The results of the modification can be seen in the output window.
8.18. (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Using Objects with Graphics

Most of the graphics you have seen to this point did not vary each time you executed the program. However, Exercise 6.2 asked you to create a program that generated shapes and colors at random. In that exercise, the drawing changed every time the system called `paintComponent` to redraw the panel. To create a more consistent drawing that remains the same each time it is drawn, we must store information about the displayed shapes so that we can reproduce them exactly each time the system calls `paintComponent`.

To do this, we will create a set of shape classes that store information about each shape. We will make these classes "smart" by allowing objects of these classes to draw themselves if provided with a `Graphics` object. Figure 8.21 declares class `MyLine`, which has all these capabilities.

**Figure 8.21.** `MyLine` class represents a line.

```java
// Fig. 8.21: MyLine.java
// Declaration of class MyLine.
import java.awt.Color;
import java.awt.Graphics;

public class MyLine {
    private int x1; // x coordinate of first endpoint
    private int y1; // y coordinate of first endpoint
    private int x2; // x coordinate of second endpoint
    private int y2; // y coordinate of second endpoint
    private Color myColor; // color of this shape

    // constructor with input values
    public MyLine( int x1, int y1, int x2, int y2, Color color ) {
        this.x1 = x1; // set x coordinate of first endpoint
        this.y1 = y1; // set y coordinate of first endpoint
        this.x2 = x2; // set x coordinate of second endpoint
        this.y2 = y2; // set y coordinate of second endpoint
        myColor = color; // set the color
    }

    // Draw the line in the specified color
}
```
public class DrawPanel extends JPanel

{ private Random randomNumbers = new Random();
  private MyLine lines[]; // array of lines

  // constructor, creates a panel with random shapes
  public DrawPanel()
  { 
    setBackground( Color.WHITE );
  }
Method `paintComponent` iterates through the `MyLine` objects in array `lines` using an enhanced `for` statement (lines 45-46). Each iteration calls the `draw` method of the current `MyLine` object and passes it the `Graphics` object for drawing on the panel. Class `TestDraw` in Fig. 8.23 sets up a new window to display our drawing. Since we are setting the coordinates for the lines only once in the constructor, the drawing does not change if `paint-Component` is called to refresh the drawing on the screen.

**Figure 8.23. Creating JFrame to display DrawPanel.**
public static void main( String args[] )
{
    DrawPanel panel = new DrawPanel();
    JFrame application = new JFrame();

    application.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
    application.add( panel );
    application.setSize( 300, 300 );
    application.setVisible( true );
}

// end class TestDraw

GUI and Graphics Case Study Exercise

Extend the program in Fig. 8.21 Fig. 8.23 to randomly draw rectangles and ovals. Create classes MyRectangle and MyOval. Both of these classes should include \( x_1, y_1, x_2, y_2 \) coordinates, a color and a boolean flag to determine whether the shape is a filled shape. Declare a constructor in each class with arguments for initializing all the instance variables. To help draw rectangles and ovals, each class should provide methods `getUpperLeftX`, `getUpperLeftY`, `getWidth` and `getHeight` that calculate the upper-left \( x \)-coordinate, upper-left \( y \)-coordinate, width and height, respectively. The upper-left \( x \)-coordinate is the smaller of the two \( x \)-coordinate values, the upper-left \( y \)-coordinate is the smaller of the two \( y \)-coordinate values, the width is the absolute value of the difference between the two \( x \)-coordinate values, and the height is the absolute value of the difference between the two \( y \)-coordinate values.

Class DrawPanel, which extends JPanel and handles the creation of the shapes, should declare three arrays, one for each shape type. The length of each array should be a random number between 1 and 5. The constructor of class DrawPanel will fill each of the arrays with shapes of random position, size, color and fill.
In addition, modify all three shape classes to include the following:

1. A constructor with no arguments that sets all the coordinates of the shape to 0, the color of the shape to `Color.BLACK`, and the filled property to `false` (`MyRect` and `MyOval` only).

2. `Set` methods for the instance variables in each class. The methods that set a coordinate value should verify that the argument is greater than or equal to zero before setting the coordinate if it is not, they should set the coordinate to zero. The constructor should call the `set` methods rather than initialize the local variables directly.

3. `Get` methods for the instance variables in each class. Method `draw` should reference the coordinates by the `get` methods rather than access them directly.
8.19. (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Starting to Program the Classes of the ATM System

In the "Software Engineering Case Study" sections in Chapters 17, we introduced the fundamentals of object orientation and developed an object-oriented design for our ATM system. Earlier in this chapter, we discussed many of the details of programming with Java classes. We now begin implementing our object-oriented design in Java. At the end of this section, we show how to convert class diagrams to Java code. In the final "Software Engineering Case Study" section (Section 10.9), we modify the code to incorporate the object-oriented concept of inheritance. We present the full Java code implementation in Appendix J.

Visibility

We now apply access modifiers to the members of our classes. In Chapter 3, we introduced access modifiers public and private. Access modifiers determine the visibility or accessibility of an object's attributes and methods to other objects. Before we can begin implementing our design, we must consider which attributes and methods of our classes should be public and which should be private.

In Chapter 3, we observed that attributes normally should be private and that methods invoked by clients of a given class should be public. Methods that are called only by other methods of the class as "utility methods," however, normally should be private. The UML employs visibility markers for modeling the visibility of attributes and operations. Public visibility is indicated by placing a plus sign (+) before an operation or an attribute, whereas a minus sign (-) indicates private visibility. Figure 8.24 shows our updated class diagram with visibility markers included. [Note: We do not include any operation parameters in Fig. 8.24 this is perfectly normal. Adding visibility markers does not affect the parameters already modeled in the class diagrams of Fig. 6.22Fig. 6.25.]

Figure 8.24. Class diagram with visibility markers.
(This item is displayed on page 402 in the print version)
Navigability

Before we begin implementing our design in Java, we introduce an additional UML notation. The class diagram in Fig. 8.25 further refines the relationships among classes in the ATM system by adding navigability arrows to the association lines. **Navigability arrows** (represented as arrows with stick arrowheads in the class diagram) indicate in which direction an association can be traversed. When implementing a system designed using the UML, programmers use navigability arrows to help determine which objects need references to other objects. For example, the navigability arrow pointing from class **ATM** to class **BankDatabase** indicates that we can navigate from the former to the latter, thereby enabling the **ATM** to invoke the **BankDatabase**'s operations. However, since Fig. 8.25 does not contain a navigability arrow pointing from class **BankDatabase** to class **ATM**, the **BankDatabase** cannot access the **ATM**'s operations. Note that associations in a class diagram that have navigability arrows at both ends or do not have navigability arrows at all indicate **bidirectional**.
navigability navigation can proceed in either direction across the association.

Figure 8.25. Class diagram with navigability arrows.
(This item is displayed on page 403 in the print version)

[View full size image]

Like the class diagram of Fig. 3.24, the class diagram of Fig. 8.25 omits classes BalanceInquiry and Deposit to keep the diagram simple. The navigability of the associations in which these classes participate closely parallels the navigability of class Withdrawal. Recall from Section 3.10 that BalanceInquiry has an association with class Screen. We can navigate from class BalanceInquiry to class Screen along this association, but we cannot navigate from class Screen to class BalanceInquiry. Thus, if we were to model class BalanceInquiry in Fig. 8.25, we would place a navigability arrow at class Screen's end of this association. Also recall that class Deposit associates with classes Screen, Keypad and DepositSlot. We can navigate from class Deposit to each of these classes, but not vice versa. We therefore would place navigability arrows at the Screen, Keypad and DepositSlot ends of these associations. [Note: We model these additional classes and associations in our final class diagram in Section 10.9, after we have simplified
Implementing the ATM System from Its UML Design

We are now ready to begin implementing the ATM system. We first convert the classes in the diagrams of Fig. 8.24 and Fig. 8.25 into Java code. The code will represent the "skeleton" of the system. In Chapter 10, we modify the code to incorporate the object-oriented concept of inheritance. In Appendix J, ATM Case Study Code, we present the complete working Java code for our model.

As an example, we develop the code from our design of class Withdrawal in Fig. 8.24. We use this figure to determine the attributes and operations of the class. We use the UML model in Fig. 8.25 to determine the associations among classes. We follow the following four guidelines for each class:

1. Use the name located in the first compartment to declare the class as a public class with an empty no-argument constructor. We include this constructor simply as a placeholder to remind us that most classes will indeed need constructors. In Appendix J, when we complete a working version of this class, we add any necessary arguments and code the body of the constructor as needed. For example, class Withdrawal yields the code in Fig. 8.26. [Note: If we find that the class's instance variables require only default initialization, then we remove the empty no-argument constructor because it is unnecessary.]

Figure 8.26. Java code for class Withdrawal based on Fig. 8.24 and Fig. 8.25.

```java
1  // Class Withdrawal represents an ATM withdrawal transaction
2  public class Withdrawal
3  {
4      // no-argument constructor
5      public Withdrawal()
6      {
```
2. Use the attributes located in the second compartment to declare the instance variables. For example, the private attributes `accountNumber` and `amount` of class `Withdrawal` yield the code in Fig. 8.27. [Note: The constructor of the complete working version of this class will assign values to these attributes.]

Figure 8.27. Java code for class `Withdrawal` based on Fig. 8.24 and Fig. 8.25.

```
1 // Class Withdrawal represents an ATM withdrawal transaction
2 public class Withdrawal
3 {
4     // attributes
5     private int accountNumber; // account to withdraw funds
6     private double amount;    // amount to withdraw
7
8     // no-argument constructor
9     public Withdrawal()
10     {
11         } // end no-argument Withdrawal constructor
12 } // end class Withdrawal
```

3. Use the associations described in the class diagram to declare the references to other objects. For example, according to Fig. 8.25, `Withdrawal` can access one object of class `Screen`, one object of class `Keypad`, one object of class `CashDispenser` and one object of class `BankDatabase`. This yields the code in Fig. 8.28. [Note: The constructor of the complete working version of this class will initialize these instance variables with references to actual objects.]

Figure 8.28. Java code for class `Withdrawal` based on Fig. 8.24 and Fig. 8.25.

```
1 // Class Withdrawal represents an ATM withdrawal transaction
2 public class Withdrawal
3 {
4     // attributes
5     private int accountNumber; // account to withdraw funds
6     private double amount;    // amount to withdraw
7
8     // no-argument constructor
9     public Withdrawal()
10     {
11         } // end no-argument Withdrawal constructor
12 } // end class Withdrawal
```
public class Withdrawal
{
  // attributes
  private int accountNumber; // account to withdraw funds
  private double amount; // amount to withdraw

  // references to associated objects
  private Screen screen; // ATM's screen
  private Keypad keypad; // ATM's keypad
  private CashDispenser cashDispenser; // ATM's cash dispenser
  private BankDatabase bankDatabase; // account info database

  // no-argument constructor
  public Withdrawal()
  {
  } // end no-argument Withdrawal constructor
} // end class Withdrawal

4. Use the operations located in the third compartment of Fig. 8.24 to declare the shells of the methods. If we have not yet specified a return type for an operation, we declare the method with return type void. Refer to the class diagrams of Fig. 6.22 Fig. 6.25 to declare any necessary parameters. For example, adding the public operation execute in class Withdrawal, which has an empty parameter list, yields the code in Fig. 8.29. [Note: We code the bodies of methods when we implement the complete system in Appendix J.]

Figure 8.29. Java code for class Withdrawal based on Fig. 8.24 and Fig. 8.25. (This item is displayed on page 405 in the print version)
This concludes our discussion of the basics of generating classes from UML diagrams.

Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

State whether the following statement is true or false, and if false, explain why: If an attribute of a class is marked with a minus sign (-) in a class diagram, the attribute is not directly accessible outside of the class.

8.1

In Fig. 8.25, the association between the ATM and the Screen indicates that:

1. we can navigate from the Screen to the ATM

8.2

2. we can navigate from the ATM to the Screen

3. Both a and b; the association is bidirectional

4. None of the above

8.3 Write Java code to begin implementing the design for class Keypad.

Answers to Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review
Exercises

8.1 True. The minus sign (−) indicates private visibility.

8.2 b.

The design for class Keypad yields the code in Fig. 8.30. Recall that class Keypad has no attributes for the moment, but attributes may become apparent as we continue the implementation. Also note that if we were designing a real ATM, method getInput would need to interact with the ATM's keypad hardware. We will actually do input from the keyboard of a personal computer when we write the complete Java code in Appendix J.

Figure 8.30. Java code for class Keypad based on Fig. 8.24 and Fig. 8.25.

```java
1 // Class Keypad represents an ATM's keypad
2 public class Keypad
3 {
4     // no attributes have been specified yet
5     // no-argument constructor
6     public Keypad()
7     {
8         } // end no-argument Keypad constructor
9     // operations
10     public int getInput()
11     {
12         } // end method getInput
13     } // end class Keypad
14 }
```
8.20. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, we presented additional class concepts. The Time class case study presented a complete class declaration consisting of private data, overloaded public constructors for initialization flexibility, set and get methods for manipulating the class's data, and methods that returned String representations of a Time object in two different formats. You also learned that every class can declare a toString method that returns a String representation of an object of the class and that method toString can be called implicitly whenever an object of a class appears in the code where a String is expected.

You learned that the this reference is used implicitly in a class's non-static methods to access the class's instance variables and other non-static methods. You also saw explicit uses of the this reference to access the class's members (including shadowed fields) and how to use keyword this in a constructor to call another constructor of the class.

The chapter discussed the differences between default constructors provided by the compiler and no-argument constructors provided by the programmer. You learned that a class can have references to objects of other classes as members—a concept known as composition. You saw the new enum class type introduced in J2SE 5.0 and learned how it can be used to create a set of constants for use in a program. You learned about Java's garbage collection capability and how it reclaims the memory of objects that are no longer used. The chapter explained the motivation for static fields in a class and demonstrated how to declare and use static fields and methods in your own classes. You also learned how to declare and initialize final variables.

You learned how to package your own classes for reuse and how to import those classes into an application. Finally, you learned that fields declared without an access modifier are given package access by default. You saw the relationship between classes in the same package that allows each class in a package to access the package-access members of other classes in the package.

In the next chapter, you will learn about an important aspect of object-oriented programming in Java—inheritance. You will see that all classes in Java are related directly or indirectly to the class called Object. You will also begin to
understand how the relationships between classes enable you to build more powerful applications.
Summary

- Every class you declare represents a new type in Java.

- The public methods of a class are also known as the class's public services or public interface. The primary purpose of public methods is to present to the class's clients a view of the services the class provides. Clients of the class need not be concerned with how the class accomplishes its tasks. For this reason, private class members are not directly accessible to the class's clients.

- An object that contains consistent data has data values that are always kept in range.

- A value passed to a method to modify an instance variable is a correct value if that value is in the instance variable's allowed range. A correct value is always a consistent value, but a consistent value is not correct if a method receives an out-of-range value and sets it to a consistent value to maintain the object in a consistent state.

- String class static method format is similar to method System.out.printf except that format returns a formatted String rather than displaying it in a command window.

- All objects in Java have a toString method that returns a String representation of the object. Method toString is called implicitly when an object appears in code where a String is needed.

- A non-static method of an object implicitly uses keyword this to refer to the object's instance variables and other methods. Keyword this can also be used explicitly.

- The compiler produces a separate file with the .class extension for every compiled class.

- If a method contains a local variable with the same name as one of its class's fields, the local variable shadows the field in the method's scope. The method can use the this reference to refer to the shadowed field.
Overloaded constructors enable objects of a class to be initialized in different ways. The compiler differentiates overloaded constructors by their signatures.

Every class must have at least one constructor. If none are provided, the compiler creates a default constructor that initializes the instance variables to the initial values specified in their declarations or to their default values.

If a class declares constructors, the compiler will not create a default constructor. To specify the default initialization for objects of a class with multiple constructors, the programmer must declare a no-argument constructor.

*Set* methods are commonly called mutator methods because they typically change a value. *Get* methods are commonly called accessor methods or query methods. A predicate method tests whether a condition is true or false.

A class can have references to objects of other classes as members. Such a capability is called composition and is sometimes referred to as a *has-a* relationship.

All *enum* types are reference types. An *enum* type is declared with an *enum* declaration, which is a comma-separated list of *enum* constants. The declaration may optionally include other components of traditional classes, such as constructors, fields and methods.

*enum* types are implicitly *final*, because they declare constants that should not be modified.

*enum* constants are implicitly *static*.

Any attempt to create an object of an *enum* type with operator *new* results in a compilation error.
- **enum** constants can be used anywhere constants can be used, such as in the case labels of **switch** statements and to control enhanced **for** statements.

- Each **enum** constant in an **enum** declaration is optionally followed by arguments which are passed to the **enum** constructor.

- For every **enum**, the compiler generates a **static** method called **values** that returns an array of the **enum**'s constants in the order in which they were declared.

- **EnumSet** **static** method **range** takes two parameters the first **enum** constant in a range and the last **enum** constant in a range and returns an **EnumSet** that contain all the constants between these two constants, inclusive.

- Every class in Java has the methods of class **Object**, one of which is the **finalize** method.

- The Java Virtual Machine (JVM) performs automatic garbage collection to reclaim the memory occupied by objects that are no longer in use. When there are no more references to an object, the object is marked for garbage collection by the JVM. The memory for such an object can be reclaimed when the JVM executes its garbage collector.

- The **finalize** method is called by the garbage collector just before it reclaims the object's memory. Method **finalize** does not take parameters and has return type **void**.

- The garbage collector may never execute before a program terminates. Thus, it is unclear if, or when, method **finalize** will be called.

- A **static** variable represents classwide information that is shared among all objects of the class.

- Static variables have class scope. A class's **public static** members can be accessed through a reference to any object of the class, or they can be accessed by qualifying the member name with the class name and a dot (.). A class's **private static** class members can be accessed only through methods of the class.

- **static** class members exist even when no objects of the class exist—they are
available as soon as the class is loaded into memory at execution time. To access a private static member when no objects of the class exist, a public static method must be provided.

- System class static method gc indicates that the garbage collector should make a best-effort attempt to reclaim objects that are eligible for garbage collection.

---

- A method declared static cannot access non-static class members, because a static method can be called even when no objects of the class have been instantiated.

- The this reference cannot be used in a static method.

- A static import declaration enables programmers to refer to imported static members without the class name and a dot (.). A single static import declaration imports one static member, and a static import on demand imports all static members of a class.

- In the context of an application, the principle of least privilege states that code should be granted only the amount of privilege and access that the code needs to accomplish its designated task.

- Keyword final specifies that a variable is not modifiable—in other words, it is constant. Constants can be initialized when they are declared or by each of a class’s constructors. If a final variable is not initialized, a compilation error occurs.

- Software is constructed from existing, well-defined, carefully tested, well-documented, portable, widely available components. Software reusability speeds the development of powerful, high-quality software. Rapid application development (RAD) is of great interest today.

- Java programmers now have thousands of classes in the Java API from which to choose to help them implement Java programs. The Java API classes enable Java programmers to bring new applications to market faster by using preexisting, tested components.
The client of a class cares about the functionality the class offers, but not about how the functionality is implemented. This is referred to as **data abstraction**. Although programmers may know the details of a class's implementation, they should not write code that depends on these details. This enables a class to be replaced with another version without affecting the rest of the system.

An **abstract data type (ADT)** consists of a data representation and the operations that can be performed on that data.

Each class in the Java API belongs to a package that contains a group of related classes. Packages help manage the complexity of application components and facilitate software reuse.

Packages provide a convention for unique class names that helps prevent class name conflicts.

Before a class can be imported into multiple applications, the class must be placed in a package. There can be only one **package** declaration in each Java source-code file, and it must precede all other declarations and statements in the file.

Every package name should start with your Internet domain name in reverse order. After the domain name is reversed, you can choose any other names you want for your package.

When compiling a class in a package, the **javac** command-line option `-d` specifies where to store the package and causes the compiler to create the package's directories if they do not exist.

The **package** name is part of the fully qualified class name. This helps prevent name conflicts.

A single-type-import declaration specifies one class to import. A type-import-on-demand declaration imports only the classes that the program uses from a particular package.

The compiler uses a class loader to locate the classes it needs in the classpath. The classpath consists of a list of directories or archive files, each separated by a directory separator.
• The classpath for the compiler and JVM can be specified by providing the `-classpath` option to the `javac` or `java` command, or by setting the `CLASSPATH` environment variable. The classpath for the JVM can also be specified via the `-cp` command-line option. If classes must be loaded from the current directory, include a dot (`.`) in the classpath.

• If no access modifier is specified for a method or variable when it is declared in a class, the method or variable is considered to have package access.
Terminology

abstract data type (ADT)

access modifier

accessor method

attribute

behavior

class library

class loader

class scope

class variable

classpath

-classpath command line argument to javac

CLASSPATH environment variable

composition

constant variable

-d command line argument to javac

data abstraction

default constructor

directory separator
enum keyword
enum constant
EnumSet class
extensible language
extensions mechanism
finalize method
format method of String
garbage collector
gc method of System
has-a relationship
mark an object for garbage collection
memory leak
mutator method
name collision
name conflict
no-argument constructor
optional package
overloaded constructors
package access
package declaration
predicate method

principle of least privilege

private access modifier

protected access modifier

public access modifier

query method

range method of EnumSet

rapid application development (RAD)

resource leak

service of a class

simple name of a class, field or method

single static import

single-type-import declaration

static field (class variable)

static import

static import on demand

termination housekeeping

this keyword

type-import-on-demand declaration

validity checking
values method of an enum

variable is not modifiable
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. When compiling a class in a package, the `javac` command-line option ________ specifies where to store the package and causes the compiler to create the package's directories if they do not exist.

2. `String` class `static` method ________ is similar to method `System.out.printf`, but returns a formatted `String` rather than displaying a `String` in a command window.

3. If a method contains a local variable with the same name as one of its class's fields, the local variable ________ the field in that method's scope.

4. The ________ method is called by the garbage collector just before it reclaims an object's memory.

5. A(n) ________ declaration specifies one class to import.

6. If a class declares constructors, the compiler will not create a(n) ________ .

7. An object’s ________ method is called implicitly when an object appears in code where a `String` is needed.

8. `Get` methods are commonly called ________ or ________ .

9. A(n) ________ method tests whether a condition is true or false.

10. For every `enum`, the compiler generates a `static` method called ________ that returns an array of the `enum`'s constants in the order in which they were declared.

11. Composition is sometimes referred to as a(n) ________ relationship.

12. A(n) ________ declaration contains a comma-separated list of constants.

13. A(n) ________ variable represents classwide information that is shared by all the objects of the class.

14. A(n) ________ declaration imports one `static` member.

15. The ________ states that code should be granted only the amount of privilege and access that the code needs to accomplish its designated task.

16. Keyword ________ specifies that a variable is not modifiable.

17. A(n) ________ consists of a data representation and the operations that can be performed on the data.

18. There can be only one ________ in a Java source-code file, and it must precede all other declarations and statements in the file.

19. A(n) ________ declaration imports only the classes that the program uses from a particular package.

20. The compiler uses a(n) ________ to locate the classes it needs in the classpath.

21. The classpath for the compiler and JVM can be specified with the ________ option to the `javac`
or java command, or by setting __________ the environment variable.

22. Set methods are commonly called __________ because they typically change a value.

23. A(n) __________ imports all static members of a class.

24. The public methods of a class are also known as the class's __________ or __________.

25. System class static method __________ indicates that the garbage collector should make a best-effort attempt to reclaim objects that are eligible for garbage collection.

26. An object that contains __________ has data values that are always kept in range.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

8.1

a) -d. b) format. c) shadows. d) finalize. e) single-type-import. f) default constructor. g) toString. h) accessor methods, query methods. i) predicate. j) values. k) has-a. l) enum. m) static. n) single static import. o) principle of least privilege. p) final. q) abstract data type (ADT). r) package declaration. s) type-import-on-demand. t) class loader. u) -classpath, CLASSPATH. v) mutator methods. w) static import on demand. x) public services, public interface. y) gc. z) consistent data.
Exercises

8.2 Explain the notion of package access in Java. Explain the negative aspects of package access.

8.3 What happens when a return type, even void, is specified for a constructor?

(Rectangle Class) Create a class Rectangle. The class has attributes length and width, each of which defaults to 1. It has methods that calculate the perimeter and the area of the rectangle. It has set and get methods for both length and width. The set methods should verify that length and width are each floating-point numbers larger than 0.0 and less than 20.0. Write a program to test class Rectangle.

(Modifying the Internal Data Representation of a Class) It would be perfectly reasonable for the Time2 class of Fig. 8.5 to represent the time internally as the number of seconds since midnight rather than the three integer values hour, minute and second. Clients could use the same public methods and get the same results. Modify the Time2 class of Fig. 8.5 to implement the Time2 as the number of seconds since midnight and show that no change is visible to the clients of the class.

(Savings Account Class) Create class SavingsAccount. Use a static variable annualInterestRate to store the annual interest rate for all account holders. Each object of the class contains a private instance variable savingsBalance indicating the amount the saver currently has on deposit. Provide method calculateMonthlyInterest to calculate the monthly interest by multiplying the savingsBalance by annualInterestRate divided by 12this interest should be added to savingsBalance. Provide a static method modifyInterestRate that sets the annualInterestRate to a new value. Write a program to test class SavingsAccount. Instantiate two savingsAccount objects, saver1 and saver2, with balances of $2000.00 and $3000.00, respectively. Set annualInterestRate to 4%, then calculate the monthly interest and print the new balances for both savers. Then set the annualInterestRate to 5%, calculate the next month’s interest and print the new balances for both savers.

(Enhancing Class Time2) Modify class Time2 of Fig. 8.5 to include a tick method that increments the time stored in a Time2 object by one second. Provide method incrementMinute to increment the minute and method incrementHour to increment the hour. The Time2 object should always remain in a consistent state. Write a program that tests the tick method, the increment-Minute method and the incrementHour method to ensure that they work correctly. Be sure to test the following cases:

1. incrementing into the next minute,
2. incrementing into the next hour and
3. incrementing into the next day (i.e., 11:59:59 PM to 12:00:00 AM).

(Enhancing Class Date) Modify class Date of Fig. 8.7 to perform error checking on the initializer values for instance variables month, day and year (currently it validates only the month and day). Provide a method nExtDay to increment the day by one. The Date object should always remain in a consistent state. Write a program that tests the nExtDay method in a loop that prints the date during each iteration of the loop to illustrate that the nExtDay method works correctly. Test the following cases:

1. incrementing into the next month and
2. incrementing into the next year.

(Returning Error Indicators from Methods) Modify the set methods in class Time2 of Fig. 8.5 to return appropriate error values if an attempt is made to set one of the instance variables hour, minute or second of an object of class Time to an invalid value. [Hint: Use boolean return types on each method.] Write a program that tests these new set methods and outputs error messages when incorrect values are supplied.

8.9 Rewrite Fig. 8.14 to use a separate import declaration for each static member of class Math that is used in the example.

Write an enum type TrafficLight, whose constants (RED, GREEN, YELLOW) take one parameter—the duration of the light. Write a program to test the trafficLight enum so that it displays the enum constants and their durations.

(Complex Numbers) Create a class called Complex for performing arithmetic with complex numbers. Complex numbers have the form

\[
\text{realPart} + \text{imaginaryPart} \times i
\]

where \( i \) is

\[
\sqrt{-1}
\]

8.12 Write a program to test your class. Use floating-point variables to represent the private data of the class. Provide a constructor that enables an object of this class to be initialized when it is declared. Provide a no-argument constructor with default values in case no initializers are provided. Provide public methods that perform the following operations:

1. Add two Complex numbers: The real parts are added together and the imaginary parts are added together.

2. Subtract two Complex numbers: The real part of the right operand is subtracted from the real part of the left operand, and the imaginary part of the right operand is subtracted from the imaginary part of the left operand.

3. Print Complex numbers in the form \((a, b)\), where \(a\) is the real part and \(b\) is the imaginary part.

(Date and Time Class) Create class DateAndTime that combines the modified Time2 class of Exercise 8.7 and the modified Date class of Exercise 8.8. Modify method incrementHour to call method nextday if the time is incremented into the next day. Modify methods toStandardString and toUniversalString to output the date in addition to the time. Write a program to test the new class DateAndTime. Specifically, test incrementing the time to the next day.

(Enhanced Rectangle Class) Create a more sophisticated Rectangle class than the one you created in Exercise 8.4. This class stores only the Cartesian coordinates of the four corners of the rectangle. The constructor calls a set method that accepts four sets of coordinates and verifies that each of these is in the first quadrant with no single \(x\)- or \(y\)-coordinate larger than 20.0. The set method also verifies that the supplied coordinates specify a rectangle. Provide methods to calculate the length, width, perimeter
and area. The length is the larger of the two dimensions. Include a predicate method isSquare which determines whether the rectangle is a square. Write a program to test class Rectangle.

(Set of Integers) Create class IntegerSet. Each IntegerSet object can hold integers in the range 0100. The set is represented by an array of booleans. Array element a[i] is true if integer i is in the set. Array element a[j] is false if integer j is not in the set. The no-argument constructor initializes the Java array to the "empty set" (i.e., a set whose array representation contains all false values).

Provide the following methods: Method union creates a third set that is the set-theoretic union of two existing sets (i.e., an element of the third set's array is set to True if that element is true in either or both of the existing setsotherwise, the element of the third set is set to false). Method intersection creates a third set which is the set-theoretic intersection of two existing sets (i.e., an element of the third set's array is set to false if that element is false in either or both of the existing setsotherwise, the element of the third set is set to true). Method insertElement inserts a new integer k into a set (by setting a[k] to true). Method deleteElement deletes integer m (by setting a[m] to false). Method toString returns a string containing a set as a list of numbers separated by spaces. Include only those elements that are present in the set. Use --- to represent an empty set. Method isEqualTo determines whether two sets are equal. Write a program to test class IntegerSet. Instantiate several IntegerSet objects. Test that all your methods work properly.

(Date Class) Create class Date with the following capabilities:

1. Output the date in multiple formats, such as

   MM/ DD/YYYY
   June 14, 1992
   DDD YYYY

2. Use overloaded constructors to create Date objects initialized with dates of the formats in part (a). In the first case the constructor should receive three integer values. In the second case it should receive a String and two integer values. In the third case it should receive two integer values, the first of which represents the day number in the year. [Hint: To convert the string representation of the month to a numeric value, compare strings using the equals method. For example, if s1 and s2 are strings, the method call s1.equals( s2 ) returns true if the strings are identical and otherwise returns false.]

(Rational Numbers) Create a class called Rational for performing arithmetic with fractions. Write a program to test your class. Use integer variables to represent the private instance variables of the classthe numerator and the denominator. Provide a constructor that enables an object of this class to be initialized when it is declared. The constructor should store the fraction in reduced form. The fraction 2/4 is equivalent to 1/2 and would be stored in the object as 1 in the numerator and 2 in the denominator. Provide a no-argument constructor with default values in case no initializers are provided. Provide public methods that perform each of the following operations:

1. Add two Rational numbers: The result of the addition should be stored in reduced form.
2. Subtract two Rational numbers: The result of the subtraction should be stored in reduced form.
3. Multiply two Rational numbers: The result of the multiplication should be stored in reduced form.
4. Divide two Rational numbers: The result of the division should be stored in reduced form.
5. Print rational numbers in the form $a/b$, where $a$ is the numerator and $b$ is the denominator.

6. Print rational numbers in floating-point format. (Consider providing formatting capabilities that enable the user of the class to specify the number of digits of precision to the right of the decimal point.)

(Huge Integer Class) Create a class `HugeInteger` which uses a 40-element array of digits to store integers as large as 40 digits each. Provide methods `input`, `output`, `add` and `subtract`. For comparing `HugeInteger` objects, provide the following methods: `isEqualTo`, `isNotEqualTo`, `isGreaterThan`, `isLessThan`, `isGreaterThanOrEqualTo` and `isLessThanOrEqualTo`. Each of these is a predicate method that returns `true` if the relationship holds between the two `HugeInteger` objects and returns `false` if the relationship does not hold. Provide a predicate method `isZero`. If you feel ambitious, also provide methods `multiply`, `divide` and `remainder`. [Note: Primitive boolean values can be output as the word "true" or the word "false" with format specifier `%b`.]

(Tic-Tac-Toe) Create a class `TicTacToe` that will enable you to write a complete program to play the game of Tic-Tac-Toe. The class contains a private 3-by-3 two-dimensional array of integers. The constructor should initialize the empty board to all zeros. Allow two human players. Wherever the first player moves, place a 1 in the specified square, and place a 2 wherever the second player moves. Each move must be to an empty square. After each move, determine whether the game has been won and whether it is a draw. If you feel ambitious, modify your program so that the computer makes the moves for one of the players. Also, allow the player to specify whether he or she wants to go first or second. If you feel exceptionally ambitious, develop a program that will play three-dimensional Tic-Tac-Toe on a 4-by-4-by-4 board [Note: This is a challenging project that could take many weeks of effort!].
Chapter 9. Object-Oriented Programming: Inheritance

Say not you know another entirely, till you have divided an inheritance with him.

Johann Kasper Lavater

This method is to define as the number of a class the class of all classes similar to the given class.

Bertrand Russell

Good as it is to inherit a library, it is better to collect one.

Augustine Birrell

Save base authority from others' books.

William Shakespeare

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- How inheritance promotes software reusability.
- The notions of superclasses and subclasses.
- To use keyword extends to create a class that inherits attributes and behaviors from another class.
- To use access modifier protected to give subclass methods access to superclass members.
- To access superclass members with super.
- How constructors are used in inheritance hierarchies.
- The methods of class Object, the direct or indirect superclass of all classes
Outline

9.1 Introduction

9.2 Superclasses and Subclasses

9.3 protected Members

9.4 Relationship between Superclasses and Subclasses

9.4.1 Creating and Using a CommissionEmployee Class

9.4.2 Creating a BasePlusCommissionEmployee Class without Using Inheritance

9.4.3 Creating a CommissionEmployeeBasePlusCommissionEmployee Inheritance Hierarchy

9.4.4 CommissionEmployeeBasePlusCommissionEmployee Inheritance Hierarchy Using protected Instance Variables

9.4.5 CommissionEmployeeBasePlusCommissionEmployee Inheritance Hierarchy Using private Instance Variables

9.5 Constructors in Subclasses

9.6 Software Engineering with Inheritance

9.7 Object Class

9.8 (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Displaying Text and Images Using Labels

9.9 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
9.1. Introduction

This chapter continues our discussion of object-oriented programming (OOP) by introducing one of its primary features, inheritance, which is a form of software reuse in which a new class is created by absorbing an existing class's members and embellishing them with new or modified capabilities. With inheritance, programmers save time during program development by reusing proven and debugged high-quality software. This also increases the likelihood that a system will be implemented effectively.

When creating a class, rather than declaring completely new members, the programmer can designate that the new class should inherit the members of an existing class. The existing class is called the superclass, and the new class is the subclass. (The C++ programming language refers to the superclass as the base class and the subclass as the derived class.) Each subclass can become the superclass for future subclasses.

A subclass normally adds its own fields and methods. Therefore, a subclass is more specific than its superclass and represents a more specialized group of objects. Typically, the subclass exhibits the behaviors of its superclass and additional behaviors that are specific to the subclass.

The direct superclass is the superclass from which the subclass explicitly inherits. An indirect superclass is any class above the direct superclass in the class hierarchy, which defines the inheritance relationships between classes. In Java, the class hierarchy begins with class Object (in package java.lang), which every class in Java directly or indirectly extends (or "inherits from"). Section 9.7 lists the methods of class Object, which every other class inherits. In the case of single inheritance, a class is derived from one direct superclass. Java, unlike C++, does not support multiple inheritance (which occurs when a class is derived from more than one direct superclass). In Chapter 10, Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism, we explain how Java programmers can use interfaces to realize many of the benefits of multiple inheritance while avoiding the associated problems.

Experience in building software systems indicates that significant amounts of code deal with closely-related special cases. When programmers are preoccupied with special cases, the details can obscure the big picture. With
object-oriented programming, programmers focus on the commonalities among objects in the system rather than on the special cases.

We distinguish between the "is-a" relationship and the "has-a" relationship. "Is-a" represents inheritance. In an "is-a" relationship, an object of a subclass can also be treated as an object of its superclass. For example, a car is a vehicle. By contrast, "has-a" represents composition (see Chapter 8). In a "has-a" relationship, an object contains one or more object references as members. For example, a car has a steering wheel (and a car object has a reference to a steering wheel object).

New classes can inherit from classes in class libraries. Organizations develop their own class libraries and can take advantage of others available worldwide. Some day, most new software likely will be constructed from standardized reusable components, just as automobiles and most computer hardware are constructed today. This will facilitate the development of more powerful, abundant and economical software.
9.2. Superclasses and Subclasses

Often, an object of one class "is an" object of another class as well. For example, in geometry, a rectangle is a quadrilateral (as are squares, parallelograms and trapezoids). Thus, in Java, class Rectangle can be said to inherit from class Quadrilateral. In this context, class Quadrilateral is a superclass and class Rectangle is a subclass. A rectangle is a specific type of quadrilateral, but it is incorrect to claim that every quadrilateral is a rectangle—the quadrilateral could be a parallelogram or some other shape. Figure 9.1 lists several simple examples of superclasses and subclasses—note that superclasses tend to be "more general" and subclasses tend to be "more specific."

Figure 9.1. Inheritance examples.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Superclass</th>
<th>Subclasses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Student</td>
<td>GraduateStudent, UndergraduateStudent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shape</td>
<td>Circle, Triangle, Rectangle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loan</td>
<td>CarLoan, HomeImprovementLoan, MortgageLoan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employee</td>
<td>Faculty, Staff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BankAccount</td>
<td>CheckingAccount, SavingsAccount</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Because every subclass object "is an" object of its superclass, and one superclass can have many subclasses, the set of objects represented by a superclass is typically larger than the set of objects represented by any of its subclasses. For example, the superclass Vehicle represents all vehicles, including cars, trucks, boats, bicycles and so on. By contrast, subclass Car represents a smaller, more specific subset of vehicles.

Inheritance relationships form tree-like hierarchical structures. A superclass exists in a hierarchical relationship with its subclasses. When classes participate in inheritance relationships, they become "affiliated" with other
classes. A class becomes either a superclass, supplying members to other classes, or a subclass, inheriting its members from other classes. In some cases, a class is both a superclass and a subclass.

Let us develop a sample class hierarchy ([Fig. 9.2]), also called an **inheritance hierarchy**. A university community has thousands of members, including employees, students and alumni. Employees are either faculty members or staff members. Faculty members are either administrators (such as deans and department chairpersons) or teachers. Note that the hierarchy could contain many other classes. For example, students can be graduate or undergraduate students. Undergraduate students can be freshmen, sophomores, juniors or seniors.

**Figure 9.2. Inheritance hierarchy for university CommunityMembers.**

[View full size image]

Each arrow in the hierarchy represents an "is-a" relationship. As we follow the arrows in this class hierarchy, we can state, for instance, that "an Employee is a CommunityMember" and "a Teacher is a Faculty member." CommunityMember is the direct superclass of Employee, Student and Alumnus, and is an indirect superclass of all the other classes in the diagram. Starting from the bottom of the diagram, the reader can follow the arrows and apply the "is-a" relationship up to the topmost superclass. For example, an Administrator is a Faculty member, is an Employee and is a CommunityMember.

Now consider the **Shape** inheritance hierarchy in [Fig. 9.3]. This hierarchy begins with superclass **Shape**, which is extended by subclasses TwoDimensionalShape and
ThreeDimensionalShapeShapes are either TwoDimensionalShape or ThreeDimensionalShape. The third level of this hierarchy contains some more specific types of TwoDimensionalShape and ThreeDimensionalShape. As in Fig. 9.2, we can follow the arrows from the bottom of the diagram to the topmost superclass in this class hierarchy to identify several "is-a" relationships. For instance, a triangle is a TwoDimensionalShape and is a Shape, while a Sphere is a ThreeDimensionalShape and is a Shape. Note that this hierarchy could contain many other classes. For example, ellipses and trapezoids are TwoDimensionalShape.

**Figure 9.3. Inheritance hierarchy for Shapes.**
(This item is displayed on page 419 in the print version)

Not every class relationship is an inheritance relationship. In Chapter 8, we discussed the "has-a" relationship, in which classes have members that are references to objects of other classes. Such relationships create classes by composition of existing classes. For example, given the classes Employee, BirthDate and TelephoneNumber, it is improper to say that an Employee is a BirthDate or that an Employee is a TelephoneNumber. However, an Employee has a BirthDate, and an Employee has a TelephoneNumber.

It is possible to treat superclass objects and subclass objects similarly—their commonalities are expressed in the members of the superclass. Objects of all classes that extend a common superclass can be treated as objects of that superclass (i.e., such objects have an "is-a" relationship with the superclass). However, superclass objects cannot be treated as objects of their subclasses. For example, all cars are vehicles, but not all vehicles are cars (the other vehicles could be trucks, planes or bicycles, for example). Later in this chapter...
and in Chapter 10, Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism, we consider many examples that take advantage of the "is-a" relationship.

One problem with inheritance is that a subclass can inherit methods that it does not need or should not have. Even when a superclass method is appropriate for a subclass, that subclass often needs a customized version of the method. In such cases, the subclass can override (redefine) the superclass method with an appropriate implementation, as we will see often in the chapter's code examples.
9.3. **protected** Members

Chapter 8 discussed access modifiers public and private. A class's public members are accessible wherever the program has a reference to an object of that class or one of its subclasses. A class's private members are accessible only from within the class itself. A superclass's private members are not inherited by its subclasses. In this section, we introduce access modifier protected. Using protected access offers an intermediate level of access between public and private. A superclass's protected members can be accessed by members of that superclass, by members of its subclasses and by members of other classes in the same package (i.e., protected members also have package access).

All public and protected superclass members retain their original access modifier when they become members of the subclass (i.e., public members of the superclass become public members of the subclass, and protected members of the superclass become protected members of the subclass).

Subclass methods can refer to public and protected members inherited from the superclass simply by using the member names. When a subclass method overrides a superclass method, the superclass method can be accessed from the subclass by preceding the superclass method name with keyword super and a dot (.) separator. We discuss accessing overridden members of the superclass in Section 9.4.

Software Engineering Observation 9.1

Methods of a subclass cannot directly access private members of their superclass. A subclass can change the state of private superclass instance variables only through non-private methods provided in the superclass and inherited by the subclass.

Software Engineering Observation 9.2
Declaring private instance variables helps programmers test, debug and correctly modify systems. If a subclass could access its superclass's private instance variables, classes that inherit from that subclass could access the instance variables as well. This would propagate access to what should be private instance variables, and the benefits of information hiding would be lost.
9.4. Relationship between Superclasses and Subclasses

In this section, we use an inheritance hierarchy containing types of employees in a company's payroll application to discuss the relationship between a superclass and its subclass. In this company, commission employees (who will be represented as objects of a superclass) are paid a percentage of their sales, while base-salaried commission employees (who will be represented as objects of a subclass) receive a base salary plus a percentage of their sales.

We divide our discussion of the relationship between commission employees and base-salaried commission employees into five examples. The first example declares class `CommissionEmployee`, which directly inherits from class `Object` and declares as private instance variables a first name, last name, social security number, commission rate and gross (i.e., total) sales amount.

The second example declares class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee`, which also directly inherits from class `Object` and declares as private instance variables a first name, last name, social security number, commission rate, gross sales amount and base salary. We create the latter class by writing every line of code the class requireswe will soon see that it is much more efficient to create this class by inheriting from class `CommissionEmployee`.

The third example declares a separate `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` class that extends class `CommissionEmployee` (i.e., a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` is a `CommissionEmployee` who also has a base salary) and attempts to access class `CommissionEmployee`'s private membersthis results in compilation errors, because the subclass cannot access the superclass's private instance variables.

The fourth example shows that if `CommissionEmployee`'s instance variables are declared as protected, a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee3` class that extends class `CommissionEmployee2` can access that data directly. For this purpose, we declare class `CommissionEmployee2` with protected instance variables. Both of the `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` classes contain identical functionality, but we show how the class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee3` is easier to create and manage.

After we discuss the convenience of using protected instance variables, we create the fifth example, which sets the `CommissionEmployee` instance variables back to private in class `CommissionEmployee3` to enforce good software engineering. Then we show how a separate `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` class, which extends class `CommissionEmployee3`, can use `CommissionEmployee3`'s public methods to
9.4.1. Creating and Using a **CommissionEmployee** Class

We begin by declaring class **CommissionEmployee** (**Fig. 9.4**). Line 4 begins the class declaration and indicates that class **CommissionEmployee** extends (i.e., inherits from) class **Object** (from package **java.lang**). Java programmers use inheritance to create classes from existing classes. In fact, every class in Java (except **Object**) extends an existing class. Because class **CommissionEmployee** extends class **Object**, class **CommissionEmployee** inherits the methods of class **Object**. **Object** does not have any fields. In fact, every Java class directly or indirectly inherits **Object**'s methods. If a class does not specify that it extends another class, the new class implicitly extends **Object**. For this reason, programmers typically do not include "extends Object" in their code—we do so in this example for demonstration purposes.

**Figure 9.4.** **CommissionEmployee** class represents an employee paid a percentage of gross sales.

(This item is displayed on pages 421 - 423 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 9.4: CommissionEmployee.java
// CommissionEmployee class represents a commission employee.

public class CommissionEmployee extends Object {

    private String firstName;
    private String lastName;
    private String socialSecurityNumber;
    private double grossSales; // gross weekly sales
    private double commissionRate; // commission percentage

    // five-argument constructor
    public CommissionEmployee( String first, String last, String ssn,
        double sales, double rate ) {
        // implicit call to Object constructor occurs here
        firstName = first;
        lastName = last;
        socialSecurityNumber = ssn;
        setGrossSales( sales ); // validate and store gross sales
        setCommissionRate( rate ); // validate and store commission rate
    }

    // end five-argument CommissionEmployee constructor

```
// set first name
public void setFirstName( String first )
{
    firstName = first;
} // end method setFirstName

// return first name
public String getFirstName()
{
    return firstName;
} // end method getFirstName

// set last name
public void setLastName( String last )
{
    lastName = last;
} // end method setLastName

// return last name
public String getLastName()
{
    return lastName;
} // end method getLastName

// set social security number
public void setSocialSecurityNumber( String ssn )
{
    socialSecurityNumber = ssn; // should validate
} // end method setSocialSecurityNumber

// return social security number
public String getSocialSecurityNumber()
{
    return socialSecurityNumber;
} // end method getSocialSecurityNumber

// set gross sales amount
public void setGrossSales( double sales )
{
    grossSales = ( sales < 0.0 ) ? 0.0 : sales;
} // end method setGrossSales

// return gross sales amount
public double getGrossSales()
{
    return grossSales;
} // end method getGrossSales

// set commission rate
public void setCommissionRate( double rate )
{
    commissionRate = ( rate > 0.0 && rate < 1.0 ) ? rate : 0.0;
} // end method setCommissionRate

// return commission rate
public double getCommissionRate()
{
    return commissionRate;
} // end method getCommissionRate

// calculate earnings
public double earnings()
{
    return commissionRate * grossSales;
} // end method earnings

// return String representation of CommissionEmployee object
public String toString()
{
    return String.format("%s: %s %s
%s: %s
%s: %.2f
%s: %.2f", "commission employee", firstName, lastName,
    "social security number", socialSecurityNumber,
    "gross sales", grossSales,
    "commission rate", commissionRate );
} // end method toString

} // end class CommissionEmployee

Software Engineering Observation 9.3

The Java compiler sets the superclass of a class to Object when the class declaration does not explicitly extend a superclass.

The public services of class CommissionEmployee include a constructor (lines 1322) and methods earnings (lines 8588) and toString (lines 9198). Lines 2582 declare public get and set methods for manipulating the class's instance variables (declared in lines 610) firstName, lastName, socialSecurityNumber, grossSales and commissionRate. Class CommissionEmployee declares each of its instance variables as private, so objects of other classes cannot directly access these variables. Declaring instance variables as private and providing get and set methods to manipulate and validate the instance variables helps enforce good software engineering. Methods setGrossSales and setCommissionRate, for example, validate their arguments before assigning the values to instance variables grossSales and commissionRate, respectively.

Constructors are not inherited, so class CommissionEmployee does not inherit class Object's constructor. However, class CommissionEmployee's constructor calls class Object's constructor implicitly. In fact, the first task of any subclass constructor is to call its direct superclass's constructor, either explicitly or implicitly (if no constructor call is specified), to ensure that the instance variables inherited
from the superclass are initialized properly. The syntax for calling a superclass constructor explicitly is discussed in Section 9.4.3. If the code does not include an explicit call to the superclass constructor, Java implicitly calls the superclass's default or no-argument constructor. The comment in line 16 of Fig. 9.4 indicates where the implicit call to the superclass Object's default constructor is made (the programmer does not write the code for this call). Object's default (empty) constructor does nothing. Note that even if a class does not have constructors, the default constructor that the compiler implicitly declares for the class will call the superclass's default or no-argument constructor.

After the implicit call to Object's constructor occurs, lines 1721 of CommissionEmployee's constructor assign values to the class's instance variables. Note that we do not validate the values of arguments first, last and ssn before assigning them to the corresponding instance variables. While validating data is good software engineering, including extensive validation in this class could add a potentially large amount of code that would obscure the focus of this example. We certainly could validate the first and last names perhaps by ensuring that they are of a reasonable length. Similarly, a social security number could be validated to ensure that it contains nine digits, with or without dashes (e.g., 123-45-6789 or 123456789).

Method earnings (lines 8588) calculates a CommissionEmployee's earnings. Line 87 multiplies the commissionRate by the grossSales and returns the result.

Method toString (lines 9198) is special since it is one of the methods that every class inherits directly or indirectly from class Object, which is the root of the Java class hierarchy. Section 9.7 summarizes class Object's methods. Method toString returns a String representing an object. This method is called implicitly by a program whenever an object must be converted to a string representation, such as when an object is output by printf or String method format using the %s format specifier. Class Object's toString method returns a String that includes the name of the object's class. It is primarily a placeholder that can be overridden by a subclass to specify an appropriate string representation of the data in a subclass object. Method toString of class CommissionEmployee overrides (redefines) class Object's toString method. When invoked, CommissionEmployee's toString method uses String method format to return a String containing information about the CommissionEmployee. We use format specifier %.2f to format both the grossSales and the commissionRate with two digits of precision to the right of the decimal point. To override a superclass method, a subclass must declare a method with the
same signature (method name, number of parameters and parameter types) as the superclass method `Object`'s `toString` method takes no parameters, so `CommissionEmployee` declares `toString` with no parameters.

**Common Programming Error 9.1**

It is a syntax error to override a method with a more restricted access modifier: a `public` method of the superclass cannot become a `protected` or `private` method in the subclass; a `protected` method of the superclass cannot become a `private` method in the subclass. Doing so would break the "is-a" relationship in which it is required that all subclass objects be able to respond to method calls that are made to `public` methods declared in the superclass. If a `public` method could be overridden as a `protected` or `private` method, the subclass objects would not be able to respond to the same method calls as superclass objects. Once a method is declared `public` in a superclass, the method remains `public` for all that class's direct and indirect subclasses.

Figure 9.5 tests class `CommissionEmployee`. Lines 910 instantiate a `CommissionEmployee` object and invoke `CommissionEmployee`'s constructor (lines 1322 of Fig. 9.4) to initialize it with "Sue" as the first name, "Jones" as the last name, "222-22-2222" as the social security number, 10000 as the gross sales amount and .06 as the commission rate. Lines 1524 use `CommissionEmployee`'s `get` methods to retrieve the object's instance variable values for output. Lines 2627 invoke the object's methods `setGrossSales` and `setCommissionRate` to change the values of instance variables `grossSales` and `commissionRate`. Lines 2930 output the string representation of the updated `CommissionEmployee`. Note that when an object is output using the `%s` format specifier, the object's `toString` method is invoked implicitly to obtain the object's string representation.

---

Figure 9.5. `CommissionEmployee` class test program.
(This item is displayed on pages 424 - 425 in the print version)
9.4.2. Creating a BasePlusCommissionEmployee Class
We now discuss the second part of our introduction to inheritance by declaring and testing (a completely new and independent) class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` *(Fig. 9.6)*, which contains a first name, last name, social security number, gross sales amount, commission rate and base salary. Class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee`'s public services include a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` constructor (lines 1525) and methods `earnings` (lines 100103) and `toString` (lines 106114). Lines 2897 declare public `get` and `set` methods for the class's private instance variables (declared in lines 712) `firstName`, `lastName`, `socialSecurityNumber`, `grossSales`, `commissionRate` and `baseSalary`. These variables and methods encapsulate all the necessary features of a base-salaried commission employee. Note the similarity between this class and class `CommissionEmployee` *(Fig. 9.4)* in this example, we will not yet exploit that similarity.

---

Figure 9.6. `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` class represents an employee who receives a base salary in addition to a commission.

(This item is displayed on pages 426 - 428 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 9.6: BasePlusCommissionEmployee.java
// BasePlusCommissionEmployee class represents an employee that receives a base salary in addition to commission.

public class BasePlusCommissionEmployee {

private String firstName;
private String lastName;
private String socialSecurityNumber;
private double grossSales; // gross weekly sales
private double commissionRate; // commission percentage
private double baseSalary; // base salary per week

// six-argument constructor
public BasePlusCommissionEmployee( String first, String last,
        String ssn, double sales, double rate, double salary )
{
    // implicit call to Object constructor occurs here
    firstName = first;
    lastName = last;
    socialSecurityNumber = ssn;

```
setGrossSales( sales ); // validate and store gross sales
setCommissionRate( rate ); // validate and store commission rate
setBaseSalary( salary ); // validate and store base salary
} // end six-argument BasePlusCommissionEmployee constructor

// set first name
public void setFirstName( String first )
{
    firstName = first;
} // end method setFirstName

// return first name
public String getFirstName()
{
    return firstName;
} // end method getFirstName

// set last name
public void setLastName( String last )
{
    lastName = last;
} // end method setLastName

// return last name
public String getLastName()
{
    return lastName;
} // end method getLastName

// set social security number
public void setSocialSecurityNumber( String ssn )
{
    socialSecurityNumber = ssn; // should validate
} // end method setSocialSecurityNumber

// return social security number
public String getSocialSecurityNumber()
{
    return socialSecurityNumber;
} // end method getSocialSecurityNumber

// set gross sales amount
public void setGrossSales( double sales )
{
    grossSales = ( sales < 0.0 ) ? 0.0 : sales;
} // end method setGrossSales

// return gross sales amount
public double getGrossSales()
{
    return grossSales;
} // end method getGrossSales

// set commission rate
public void setCommissionRate( double rate )
{
    commissionRate = ( rate > 0.0 && rate < 1.0 ) ? rate : 0.0;
} // end method setCommissionRate

// return commission rate
public double getCommissionRate()
Note that class BasePlusCommissionEmployee does not specify "extends Object" on line 5, so the class implicitly extends Object. Also note that, like class CommissionEmployee's constructor (lines 1322 of Fig. 9.4), class BasePlusCommissionEmployee's constructor invokes class Object's default constructor implicitly, as noted in the comment on line 18.

Class BasePlusCommissionEmployee's earnings method (lines 100103) computes the earnings of a base-salaried commission employee. Line 102 returns the result of adding the employee's base salary to the product of the commission rate and the employee's gross sales.

Class BasePlusCommissionEmployee overrides Object method toString to return a String containing the BasePlusCommissionEmployee's information. Once again, we use format specifier %.2f to format the gross sales, commission rate and base salary with two digits of precision to the right of the decimal point (line 109).
BasePlusCommissionEmployee object and pass "Bob", "Lewis", "333-33-3333", 5000, .04 and 300 to the constructor as the first name, last name, social security number, gross sales, commission rate and base salary, respectively. Lines 1627 use BasePlusCommissionEmployee’s get methods to retrieve the values of the object's instance variables for output. Line 29 invokes the object's setBaseSalary method to change the base salary. Method setBaseSalary (Fig. 9.6, lines 8891) ensures that instance variable baseSalary is not assigned a negative value, because an employee's base salary cannot be negative. Lines 3133 of Fig. 9.7 invoke the object's toString method explicitly to get the object's string representation.

Figure 9.7. BasePlusCommissionEmployee test program.  
(This item is displayed on page 429 in the print version)
Employee information obtained by get methods:

First name is Bob
Last name is Lewis
Social security number is 333-33-3333
Gross sales is 5000.00
Commission rate is 0.04
Base salary is 300.00

Updated employee information obtained by toString:

base-salaried commission employee: Bob Lewis
social security number: 333-33-3333
gross sales: 5000.00
commission rate: 0.04
base salary: 1000.00

Note that much of the code for class BasePlusCommissionEmployee (Fig. 9.6) is similar, if not identical, to the code for class CommissionEmployee (Fig. 9.4). For example, in class BasePlusCommissionEmployee, private instance variables firstName and lastName and methods setFirstName, getFirstName, setLastName and getLastName are identical to those of class CommissionEmployee. Classes CommissionEmployee and BasePlusCommissionEmployee also both contain private instance variables socialSecurityNumber, commissionRate and grossSales, as well as get and set methods to manipulate these variables. In addition, the constructor is almost identical to that of class CommissionEmployee, except that BasePlusCommissionEmployee's constructor also sets the baseSalary. The other additions to class BasePlusCommissionEmployee are private instance variable baseSalary and methods setBaseSalary and getBaseSalary. Class BasePlusCommissionEmployee's toString method is nearly identical to that of class CommissionEmployee except that BasePlusCommissionEmployee's toString also outputs the value of instance variable baseSalary with two digits of precision to the right of the decimal point.

We literally copied code from class CommissionEmployee and pasted it into class BasePlusCommissionEmployee, then modified class BasePlusCommissionEmployee to include a base salary and methods that manipulate the base salary. This "copy-and-paste" approach is often error prone and time consuming. Worse yet, it can spread many physical copies of the same code throughout a system, creating a
code-maintenance nightmare. Is there a way to "absorb" the instance variables and methods of one class in a way that makes them part of other classes without duplicating code? In the next several examples, we answer this question, using a more elegant approach to building classes that emphasizes the benefits of inheritance.

**Software Engineering Observation 9.4**

Copying and pasting code from one class to another can spread errors across multiple source code files. To avoid duplicating code (and possibly errors), use inheritance, rather than the "copy-and-paste" approach, in situations where you want one class to "absorb" the instance variables and methods of another class.

**Software Engineering Observation 9.5**

With inheritance, the common instance variables and methods of all the classes in the hierarchy are declared in a superclass. When changes are required for these common features, software developers need only to make the changes in the superclass; subclasses then inherit the changes. Without inheritance, changes would need to be made to all the source code files that contain a copy of the code in question.

**9.4.3. Creating a `CommissionEmployee` BasePlusCommissionEmployee Inheritance Hierarchy**

Now we declare class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` (**Fig. 9.8**), which extends class `CommissionEmployee` (**Fig. 9.4**). A `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` object is a `CommissionEmployee` (because inheritance passes on the capabilities of class `CommissionEmployee`), but class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` also has instance variable `baseSalary` (**Fig. 9.8**, line 6). Keyword `extends` in line 4 of the class declaration indicates inheritance. As a subclass, `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` inherits the public
and protected instance variables and methods of class `CommissionEmployee`. The constructor of class `CommissionEmployee` is not inherited. Thus, the public services of `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` include its constructor (lines 916), public methods inherited from class `CommissionEmployee`, method `setBaseSalary` (lines 1922), method `getBaseSalary` (lines 2528), method `earnings` (lines 3135) and method `toString` (lines 3847).

---

**Figure 9.8.** `private` superclass members cannot be accessed in a subclass.

(This item is displayed on pages 431 - 432 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 9.8: BasePlusCommissionEmployee2.java
// BasePlusCommissionEmployee2 inherits from class CommissionEmployee.

public class BasePlusCommissionEmployee2 extends CommissionEmployee {
    private double baseSalary; // base salary per week

    // six-argument constructor
    public BasePlusCommissionEmployee2( String first, String last,
        String ssn, double sales, double rate, double salary )
    {
        super( first, last, ssn, sales, rate );

        setBaseSalary( amount ); // validate and store base salary
    }

    // return base salary
    public double getBaseSalary()
    {
        return baseSalary;
    }

    // return String representation of BasePlusCommissionEmployee2
    public String toString()
    {
        // not allowed: commissionRate and grossSales private in superclass
        return baseSalary + ( commissionRate * grossSales );
    }
}
```
Three errors were discovered in the code:

1. `commissionRate` has private access in `CommissionEmployee`.
   ```java
   return baseSalary + (commissionRate * grossSales);
   ```
2. `grossSales` has private access in `CommissionEmployee`.
   ```java
   return baseSalary + (commissionRate * grossSales);
   ```
3. `firstName` has private access in `CommissionEmployee`.
   ```java
   "base-salaried commission employee", firstName, lastName,
   ```
4. `lastName` has private access in `CommissionEmployee`.
   ```java
   "base-salaried commission employee", firstName, lastName,
   ```
5. `socialSecurityNumber` has private access in `CommissionEmployee`.
   ```java
   "social security number", socialSecurityNumber,
   ```
6. `grossSales` has private access in `CommissionEmployee`.
   ```java
   "gross sales", grossSales, "commission rate", commissionRate,
   ```
7. `commissionRate` has private access in `CommissionEmployee`.
   ```java
   "gross sales", grossSales, "commission rate", commissionRate,
   ```

Each subclass constructor must implicitly or explicitly call its superclass.
constructor to ensure that the instance variables inherited from the superclass are initialized properly. `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2`'s six-argument constructor (lines 916) explicitly calls class `CommissionEmployee`'s five-argument constructor to initialize the superclass portion of a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` object (i.e., variables `firstName`, `lastName`, `socialSecurityNumber`, `grossSales` and `commissionRate`). Line 13 in `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2`'s six-argument constructor invokes the `CommissionEmployee`'s five-argument constructor (declared at lines 1322 of Fig. 9.4) by using the **superclass constructor call syntax** keyword `super`, followed by a set of parentheses containing the superclass constructor arguments. The arguments `first`, `last`, `ssn`, `sales` and `rate` are used to initialize superclass members `firstName`, `lastName`, `socialSecurityNumber`, `grossSales` and `commissionRate`, respectively. If `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2`'s constructor did not invoke `CommissionEmployee`'s constructor explicitly, Java would attempt to invoke class `CommissionEmployee`'s no-argument or default constructor but the class does not have such a constructor, so the compiler would issue an error. The explicit superclass constructor call on line 13 must be the first statement in the subclass constructor's body. Also, when a superclass contains a no-argument constructor, you can use `super()` to call that constructor explicitly, but this is rarely done.

[Page 433]

**Common Programming Error 9.2**

A compilation error occurs if a subclass constructor calls one of its superclass constructors with arguments that do not match exactly the number and types of parameters specified in one of the superclass constructor declarations.

The compiler generates errors for line 34 of Fig. 9.8 because superclass `CommissionEmployee`'s instance variables `commissionRate` and `grossSales` are `private` subclass `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2`'s methods are not allowed to access superclass `CommissionEmployee`'s `private` instance variables. Note that we used red text in Fig. 9.8 to indicate erroneous code. The compiler issues additional errors at lines 4345 of `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2`'s `toString` method for the same reason. The errors in `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` could have been prevented by using the `get` methods inherited from class `CommissionEmployee`. For example, line
34 could have used `getCommissionRate` and `getGrossSales` to access CommissionEmployee's private instance variables `commissionRate` and `grossSales`, respectively. Lines 4345 also could have used appropriate `get` methods to retrieve the values of the superclass's instance variables.


To enable class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` to directly access superclass instance variables `firstName`, `lastName`, `socialSecurityNumber`, `grossSales` and `commissionRate`, we can declare those members as protected in the superclass. As we discussed in Section 9.3, a superclass's protected members are inherited by all subclasses of that superclass. Class `CommissionEmployee2` ([Fig. 9.9](#)) is a modification of class `CommissionEmployee` ([Fig. 9.4](#)) that declares instance variables `firstName`, `lastName`, `socialSecurityNumber`, `grossSales` and `commissionRate` as protected ([Fig. 9.9](#), lines 610) rather than private. Other than the change in the class name (and thus the change in the constructor name) to `CommissionEmployee2`, the rest of the class declaration in [Fig. 9.9](#) is identical to that of [Fig. 9.4](#).

---

**Figure 9.9. `CommissionEmployee2` with protected instance variables.**

(This item is displayed on pages 433 - 435 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 9.9: CommissionEmployee2.java
// CommissionEmployee2 class represents a commission employee.

public class CommissionEmployee2 {

  protected String firstName;
  protected String lastName;
  protected String socialSecurityNumber;
  protected double grossSales; // gross weekly sales
  protected double commissionRate; // commission percentage

  // five-argument constructor
  public CommissionEmployee2 ( String first, String last, String ssn,
                               double sales, double rate )
  {
    // implicit call to Object constructor occurs here
  }

  // five-argument constructor
  public CommissionEmployee2 ( String first, String last, String ssn,
                               double sales, double rate )
  {
    // implicit call to Object constructor occurs here
  }
```

---
firstName = first;
lastName = last;
socialSecurityNumber = ssn;
setGrossSales( sales ); // validate and store gross sales
setCommissionRate( rate ); // validate and store commission rate
} // end five-argument CommissionEmployee2 constructor
// set first name
public void setFirstName( String first )
{
    firstName = first;
} // end method setFirstName
// return first name
public String getFirstName()
{
    return firstName;
} // end method getFirstName
// set last name
public void setLastName( String last )
{
    lastName = last;
} // end method setLastName
// return last name
public String getLastName()
{
    return lastName;
} // end method getLastName
// set social security number
public void setSocialSecurityNumber( String ssn )
{
    socialSecurityNumber = ssn; // should validate
} // end method setSocialSecurityNumber
// return social security number
public String getSocialSecurityNumber()
{
    return socialSecurityNumber;
} // end method getSocialSecurityNumber
// set gross sales amount
public void setGrossSales( double sales )
{
    grossSales = ( sales < 0.0 ) ? 0.0 : sales;
} // end method setGrossSales
// return gross sales amount
public double getGrossSales()
{
    return grossSales;
} // end method getGrossSales
// set commission rate
public void setCommissionRate( double rate )
{
    commissionRate = ( rate > 0.0 && rate < 1.0 ) ? rate : 0.0;
} // end method setCommissionRate
We could have declared the superclass `CommissionEmployee2`'s instance variables `firstName`, `lastName`, `socialSecurityNumber`, `grossSales` and `commissionRate` as public to enable subclass `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` to access the superclass instance variables. However, declaring public instance variables is poor software engineering because it allows unrestricted access to the instance variables, greatly increasing the chance of errors. With protected instance variables, the subclass gets access to the instance variables, but classes that are not subclasses and classes that are not in the same package cannot access these variables directly. Recall that protected class members are also visible to other classes in the same package.

Class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee3` ([Fig. 9.10](#)) is a modification of class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee2` ([Fig. 9.8](#)) that extends `CommissionEmployee2` (line 5) rather than class `CommissionEmployee`. Objects of class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee3` inherit `CommissionEmployee2`'s protected instance variables `firstName`, `lastName`, `socialSecurityNumber`, `grossSales` and `commissionRate` all these variables are now protected members of `BasePlusCommissionEmployee3`. As a result, the compiler does not generate errors when compiling line 32 of method `earnings` and lines 40-42 of method `toString`. If another class extends `BasePlusCommissionEmployee3`, the new subclass also inherits the protected members.
Class \texttt{BasePlusCommissionEmployee3} does not inherit class \texttt{CommissionEmployee2}'s constructor. However, class \texttt{BasePlusCommissionEmployee3}'s six-argument constructor (lines 10-15) calls class \texttt{CommissionEmployee2}'s five-argument constructor explicitly.
BasePlusCommissionEmployee3's six-argument constructor must explicitly call the five-argument constructor of class CommissionEmployee2, because CommissionEmployee2 does not provide a no-argument constructor that could be invoked implicitly.

**Figure 9.11** uses a BasePlusCommissionEmployee3 object to perform the same tasks that Fig. 9.7 performed on a BasePlusCommissionEmployee object (Fig. 9.6). Note that the outputs of the two programs are identical. Although we declared class BasePlusCommissionEmployee without using inheritance and declared class BasePlusCommissionEmployee3 using inheritance, both classes provide the same functionality. The source code for class BasePlusCommissionEmployee3, which is 45 lines, is considerably shorter than that for class BasePlusCommissionEmployee, which is 115 lines, because class BasePlusCommissionEmployee3 inherits most of its functionality from CommissionEmployee2, whereas class BasePlusCommissionEmployee inherits only class Object's functionality. Also, there is now only one copy of the commission employee functionality declared in class CommissionEmployee2. This makes the code easier to maintain, modify and debug, because the code related to a commission employee exists only in class CommissionEmployee2.

---

**Figure 9.11. protected superclass members inherited into subclass BasePlusCommissionEmployee3.**

(This item is displayed on pages 437 - 438 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 9.11: BasePlusCommissionEmployeeTest3.java
2 // Testing class BasePlusCommissionEmployee3.
3
4 public class BasePlusCommissionEmployeeTest3
5 {
6   public static void main( String args[] )
7   {
8     // instantiate BasePlusCommissionEmployee3 object
9     BasePlusCommissionEmployee3 employee =
10        new BasePlusCommissionEmployee3(
11          "Bob", "Lewis", "333-33-3333", 5000, .04, 300 );
12
13     // get base-salaried commission employee data
14     System.out.println("Employee information obtained by get methods: \n");
15     System.out.printf( "%s %s\n", "First name is",
16        employee.getFirstName() );
17     System.out.printf( "%s %s\n", "Last name is",
18```
In this example, we declared superclass instance variables as protected so that subclasses could inherit them. Inheriting protected instance variables slightly increases performance, because we can directly access the variables in the subclass without incurring the overhead of a set or get method call. In most cases, however, it is better to use private instance variables to encourage proper software engineering, and leave code optimization issues to the compiler. Your code will be easier to maintain, modify and debug.

Using protected instance variables creates several potential problems. First, the
subclass object can set an inherited variable's value directly without using a set method. Therefore, a subclass object can assign an invalid value to the variable, thus leaving the object in an inconsistent state. For example, if we were to declare CommissionEmployee3's instance variable grossSales as protected, a subclass object (e.g., BasePlusCommissionEmployee) could then assign a negative value to grossSales. The second problem with using protected instance variables is that subclass methods are more likely to be written so that they depend on the superclass's data implementation. In practice, subclasses should depend only on the superclass services (i.e., non-private methods) and not on the superclass data implementation. With protected instance variables in the superclass, we may need to modify all the subclasses of the superclass if the superclass implementation changes. For example, if for some reason we were to change the names of instance variables firstName and lastName to first and last, then we would have to do so for all occurrences in which a subclass directly references superclass instance variables firstName and lastName. In such a case, the software is said to be fragile or brittle, because a small change in the superclass can "break" subclass implementation. The programmer should be able to change the superclass implementation while still providing the same services to the subclasses. (Of course, if the superclass services change, we must reimplement our subclasses.) A third problem is that a class's protected members are visible to all classes in the same package as the class containing the protected members; this is not always desirable.

Software Engineering Observation 9.6

*Use the protected access modifier when a superclass should provide a method only to its subclasses and other classes in the same package, but not to other clients.*

Software Engineering Observation 9.7

*Declaring superclass instance variables private (as opposed to protected) enables the superclass implementation of these instance variables to change without affecting subclass implementations.*
Error-Prevention Tip 9.1

When possible, do not include protected instance variables in a superclass. Instead, include non-private methods that access private instance variables. This will ensure that objects of the class maintain consistent states.

9.4.5.

CommissionEmployeeBasePlusCommissionEmployee

Inheritance Hierarchy Using private Instance Variables

We now reexamine our hierarchy once more, this time using the best software engineering practices. Class CommissionEmployee3 (Fig. 9.12) declares instance variables firstName, lastName, socialSecurityNumber, grossSales and commissionRate as private (lines 610) and provides public methods setFirstName, getFirstName, setLastName, getLastName, setSocialSecurityNumber, getSocialSecurityNumber, setGrossSales, getGrossSales, setCommissionRate, getCommissionRate, earnings and toString for manipulating these values. Note that methods earnings (lines 8588) and toString (lines 9198) use the class's get methods to obtain the values of its instance variables. If we decide to change the instance variable names, the earnings and toString declarations will not require modification, only the bodies of the get and set methods that directly manipulate the instance variables will need to change. Note that these changes occur solely within the superclass; no changes to the subclass are needed. Localizing the effects of changes like this is a good software engineering practice. Subclass BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 (Fig. 9.13) inherits CommissionEmployee3's non-private methods and can access the private superclass members via those methods.

Figure 9.12. CommissionEmployee3 class uses methods to manipulate its private instance variables.

(This item is displayed on pages 439 - 441 in the print version)
public class CommissionEmployee3 {
    private String firstName;
    private String lastName;
    private String socialSecurityNumber;
    private double grossSales; // gross weekly sales
    private double commissionRate; // commission percentage

    // five-argument constructor
    public CommissionEmployee3( String first, String last, String ssn,
            double sales, double rate )
    {
        firstName = first;
        lastName = last;
        socialSecurityNumber = ssn;
        setGrossSales( sales ); // validate and store gross sales
        setCommissionRate( rate ); // validate and store commission rate
    } // end five-argument CommissionEmployee3 constructor

    // set first name
    public void setFirstName( String first )
    {
        firstName = first;
    } // end method setFirstName

    // return first name
    public String getFirstName()
    {
        return firstName;
    } // end method getFirstName

    // set last name
    public void setLastName( String last )
    {
        lastName = last;
    } // end method setLastName

    // return last name
    public String getLastName()
    {
        return lastName;
    } // end method getLastName

    // set social security number
    public void setSocialSecurityNumber( String ssn )
    {
        socialSecurityNumber = ssn; // should validate
    } // end method setSocialSecurityNumber

    // return social security number
    public String getSocialSecurityNumber()
    {
        return socialSecurityNumber;
    } // end method getSocialSecurityNumber

    // set gross sales amount

public void setGrossSales(double sales)
{
    grossSales = (sales < 0.0) ? 0.0 : sales;
} // end method setGrossSales

// return gross sales amount
public double getGrossSales()
{
    return grossSales;
} // end method getGrossSales

// set commission rate
public void setCommissionRate(double rate)
{
    commissionRate = (rate > 0.0 && rate < 1.0) ? rate : 0.0;
} // end method setCommissionRate

// return commission rate
public double getCommissionRate()
{
    return commissionRate;
} // end method getCommissionRate

// calculate earnings
public double earnings()
{
    return getCommissionRate() * getGrossSales();
} // end method earnings

// return String representation of CommissionEmployee3 object
public String toString()
{
    return String.format("%s: %s %s
%s: %s
%s: %.2f
%s: %.2f",
        "commission employee", getFirstName(), getLastName(),
        "social security number", getSocialSecurityNumber(),
        "gross sales", getGrossSales(),
        "commission rate", getCommissionRate() );
} // end method toString

} // end class CommissionEmployee3

Figure 9.13. BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 class extends CommissionEmployee3, which provides only private instance variables.

(This item is displayed on page 442 in the print version)
Class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` (**Fig. 9.13**) has several changes to its method implementations that distinguish it from class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee3` (**Fig. 9.10**). Methods `earnings` (**Fig. 9.13**, lines 3134) and `toString` (lines 3741) each invoke method `getBaseSalary` to obtain the base salary value, rather than accessing `baseSalary` directly. If we decide to rename instance variable `baseSalary`, only the bodies of method `setBaseSalary` and `getBaseSalary` will need to change.

Class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4`'s `earnings` method (**Fig. 9.13**, lines 3134) overrides class `CommissionEmployee3`'s `earnings` method (**Fig. 9.12**, lines 8588) to calculate the earnings of a base-salaried commission employee. The new version obtains the portion of the employee's earnings based on commission alone by calling `CommissionEmployee3`'s `earnings` method with the expression `super.earnings()` (**Fig. 9.13**, line 33). `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4`'s `earnings` method then adds the base salary to this value to calculate the total earnings of the employee. Note the syntax used to invoke an overridden superclass method.
from a subclass place the keyword `super` and a dot (.) separator before the superclass method name. This method invocation is a good software-engineering practice: Recall from **Software Engineering Observation 8.5** that if a method performs all or some of the actions needed by another method, call that method rather than duplicate its code. By having `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4`'s `earnings` method invoke `CommissionEmployee3`'s `earnings` method to calculate part of a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` object's earnings, we avoid duplicating the code and reduce code-maintenance problems.

[Page 442]

[Page 443]

**Common Programming Error 9.3**

*When a superclass method is overridden in a subclass, the subclass version often calls the superclass version to do a portion of the work. Failure to prefix the superclass method name with the keyword `super` and a dot (.) separator when referencing the superclass's method causes the subclass method to call itself, creating an error called infinite recursion. Recursion, used correctly, is a powerful capability discussed in Chapter 15, Recursion.*

Similarly, `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4`'s `toString` method ([Fig. 9.13](#)), lines 3741) overrides class `CommissionEmployee3`'s `toString` method ([Fig. 9.12](#), lines 9198) to return a string representation that is appropriate for a base-salaried commission employee. The new version creates part of a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` object's string representation (i.e., the string "commission employee" and the values of class `CommissionEmployee3`'s private instance variables) by calling `CommissionEmployee3`'s `toString` method with the expression `super.toString()` ([Fig. 9.13](#), line 40). `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4`'s `toString` method then outputs the remainder of a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` object's string representation (i.e., the value of class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4`'s base salary). [Fig. 9.14](#) performs the same manipulations on a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` object as did [Fig. 9.7](#) and [Fig. 9.11](#) on objects of classes `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` and `BasePlusCommissionEmployee3`, respectively. Although each "base-salaried commission employee" class behaves identically, class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` is the best engineered. By using inheritance and by
calling methods that hide the data and ensure consistency, we have efficiently and effectively constructed a well-engineered class.

Figure 9.14. Superclass private instance variables are accessible to a subclass via public or protected methods inherited by the subclass.

(This item is displayed on pages 443 - 444 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 9.14: BasePlusCommissionEmployeeTest4.java
3
4 public class BasePlusCommissionEmployeeTest4
5 {
6     public static void main( String args[] )
7     {
8         // instantiate BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 object
9         BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 employee =
10             new BasePlusCommissionEmployee4(
11                 "Bob", "Lewis", "333-33-3333", 5000, .04, 300 );
12
13         // get base-salaried commission employee data
14         System.out.println("Employee information obtained by get methods: \n");
15         System.out.printf("%s %s%n", "First name is",
16             employee.getFirstName() );
17         System.out.printf("%s %s%n", "Last name is",
18             employee.getLastName() );
19         System.out.printf("%s %s%n", "Social security number is",
20             employee.getSocialSecurityNumber() );
21         System.out.printf("%s %.2f\n", "Gross sales is",
22             employee.getGrossSales() );
23         System.out.printf("%s %.2f\n", "Commission rate is",
24             employee.getCommissionRate() );
25         System.out.printf("%s %.2f\n", "Base salary is",
26             employee.getBaseSalary() );
27
28         employee.setBaseSalary( 1000 ); // set base salary
29
30         System.out.println("Updated employee information obtained by toString",
31             employee.toString() );
32     } // end main
33 } // end class BasePlusCommissionEmployeeTest4
```

Employee information obtained by get methods:

First name is Bob
Last name is Lewis
Social security number is 333-33-3333
In this section, you saw an evolutionary set of examples that was carefully designed to teach key capabilities for good software engineering with inheritance. You learned how to use the keyword `extends` to create a subclass using inheritance, how to use `protected` superclass members to enable a subclass to access inherited superclass instance variables and how to override superclass methods to provide versions that are more appropriate for subclass objects. In addition, you learned how to apply software-engineering techniques from Chapter 8 and this chapter to create classes that are easy to maintain, modify and debug.
9.5. Constructors in Subclasses

As we explained in the preceding section, instantiating a subclass object begins a chain of constructor calls in which the subclass constructor, before performing its own tasks, invokes its direct superclass's constructor either explicitly (via the `super` reference) or implicitly (calling the superclass's default constructor or no-argument constructor). Similarly, if the superclass is derived from another class (as is, of course, every class except `Object`), the superclass constructor invokes the constructor of the next class up in the hierarchy, and so on. The last constructor called in the chain is always the constructor for class `Object`. The original subclass constructor's body finishes executing last. Each superclass's constructor manipulates the superclass instance variables that the subclass object inherits. For example, consider again the `CommissionEmployee3`-`BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` hierarchy from Fig. 9.12 and Fig. 9.13. When a program creates a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` object, the `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` constructor is called. That constructor calls `CommissionEmployee3`'s constructor, which in turn calls `Object`'s constructor. Class `Object`'s constructor has an empty body, so it immediately returns control to `CommissionEmployee3`'s constructor, which then initializes the private instance variables of `CommissionEmployee3` that are part of the `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` object. When `CommissionEmployee3`'s constructor completes execution, it returns control to `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4`'s constructor, which initializes the `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` object's `baseSalary`.

---

**Software Engineering Observation 9.8**

When a program creates a subclass object, the subclass constructor immediately calls the superclass constructor (explicitly, via `super`, or implicitly). The superclass constructor's body executes to initialize the superclass's instance variables that are part of the subclass object, then the subclass constructor's body executes to initialize the subclass-only instance variables. Java ensures that even if a constructor does not assign a value to an instance variable, the variable is still initialized to its default value (e.g., 0 for primitive numeric types, `false` for `booleans`, `null` for references).
Our next example revisits the commission employee hierarchy by declaring a `CommissionEmployee4` class (Fig. 9.15) and a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee5` class (Fig. 9.16). Each class’s constructor prints a message when invoked, enabling us to observe the order in which the constructors in the hierarchy execute.

**Figure 9.15.** *CommissionEmployee4’s constructor outputs text.*
(This item is displayed on pages 445 - 447 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 9.15: CommissionEmployee4.java
// CommissionEmployee4 class represents a commission employee.

public class CommissionEmployee4 {
    private String firstName;
    private String lastName;
    private String socialSecurityNumber;
    private double grossSales; // gross weekly sales
    private double commissionRate; // commission percentage

    // five-argument constructor
    public CommissionEmployee4( String first, String last, String ssn, double sales, double rate ) {
        firstName = first;
        lastName = last;
        socialSecurityNumber = ssn;
        setGrossSales( sales ); // validate and store gross sales
        setCommissionRate( rate ); // validate and store commission rate
    }

    // set first name
    public void setFirstName( String first ) {
        firstName = first;
    }

    // return first name
    public String getFirstName() {
        return firstName;
    }

    // set last name
    public void setLastName( String last ) {
        lastName = last;
    }

    // return last name
    public String getLastName()
```
47  {
48      return lastName;
49  } // end method getLastName
50
51  // set social security number
52  public void setSocialSecurityNumber( String ssn )
53  {
54      socialSecurityNumber = ssn; // should validate
55  } // end method setSocialSecurityNumber
56
57  // return social security number
58  public String getSocialSecurityNumber()
59  {
60      return socialSecurityNumber;
61  } // end method getSocialSecurityNumber
62
63  // set gross sales amount
64  public void setGrossSales( double sales )
65  {
66      grossSales = ( sales < 0.0 ) ? 0.0 : sales;
67  } // end method setGrossSales
68
69  // return gross sales amount
70  public double getGrossSales()
71  {
72      return grossSales;
73  } // end method getGrossSales
74
75  // set commission rate
76  public void setCommissionRate( double rate )
77  {
78      commissionRate = ( rate > 0.0 && rate < 1.0 ) ? rate : 0.0;
79  } // end method setCommissionRate
80
81  // return commission rate
82  public double getCommissionRate()
83  {
84      return commissionRate;
85  } // end method getCommissionRate
86
87  // calculate earnings
88  public double earnings()
89  {
90      return getCommissionRate() * getGrossSales();
91  } // end method earnings
92
93  // return String representation of CommissionEmployee4 object
94  public String toString()
95  {
96      return String.format( "%s: %s
%s: %s
%s: %.2f
%s: %.2f",
97           "commission employee", getFirstName(), getLastName(),
98           "social security number", getSocialSecurityNumber(),
99           "gross sales", getGrossSales(),
100          "commission rate", getCommissionRate() );
101 } // end method toString
102 } // end class CommissionEmployee4
Figure 9.16. `BasePlusCommissionEmployee5's constructor outputs text.

(This item is displayed on pages 447 - 448 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 9.16: BasePlusCommissionEmployee5.java
// BasePlusCommissionEmployee5 class declaration.

public class BasePlusCommissionEmployee5 extends CommissionEmployee4 {

    private double baseSalary; // base salary per week

    // six-argument constructor
    public BasePlusCommissionEmployee5( String first, String last, String ssn, double sales, double rate, double salary )
    {
        super( first, last, ssn, sales, rate );
        setBaseSalary( salary ); // validate and store base salary
    }

    System.out.printf("BasePlusCommissionEmployee5 constructor:
    %s\n", this);

    // set base salary
    public void setBaseSalary( double salary )
    {
        baseSalary = ( salary < 0.0 ) ? 0.0 : salary;
    }

    // return base salary
    public double getBaseSalary()
    {
        return baseSalary;
    }

    // calculate earnings
    public double earnings()
    {
        return getBaseSalary() + super.earnings();
    }

    // return String representation of BasePlusCommissionEmployee5
    public String toString()
    {
        return String.format("%s \n%s\n: %.2f", super.toString(), "base salary", getBaseSalary());
    }

} // end class BasePlusCommissionEmployee5
```

Class `CommissionEmployee4` (Fig. 9.15) contains the same features as the version of
the class shown in Fig. 9.4. We modified the constructor (lines 1325) to output
text upon its invocation. Note that outputting this with the `%s` format specifier
(lines 2324) implicitly invokes the `toString` method of the object being
constructed to obtain the object's string representation.

Class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee5` (Fig. 9.16) is almost identical to
`BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` (Fig. 9.13), except that `BasePlusCommissionEmployee5`'s
constructor also outputs text when invoked. As in `CommissionEmployee4` (Fig. 9.15),
we output this using the `%s` format specifier in line 16 to obtain the object's
string representation.

Figure 9.17 demonstrates the order in which constructors are called for objects
of classes that are part of an inheritance hierarchy. Method `main` begins by
instantiating `CommissionEmployee4` object `employee1` (lines 89). Next, lines 1214
`BasePlusCommissionEmployee5` object `employee2`. This invokes the
`CommissionEmployee4` constructor, which prints output with the values passed from
the `BasePlusCommissionEmployee5` constructor, then performs the output specified in
the `BasePlusCommissionEmployee5` constructor. Lines 1719 then instantiate
`BasePlusCommissionEmployee5` object `employee3`. Again, the `CommissionEmployee4`
and `BasePlusCommissionEmployee5` constructors are both called. In each case, the body of
the `CommissionEmployee4` constructor executes before the body of the
`BasePlusCommissionEmployee5` constructor executes. Note that `employee2` is
constructed completely before construction of `employee3` begins.

Figure 9.17. Constructor call order.
(This item is displayed on pages 448 - 449 in the print version)
new BasePlusCommissionEmployee5("Lisa", "Jones", "555-55-5555", 2000, .06, 800);

System.out.println();
BasePlusCommissionEmployee5 employee3 =
    new BasePlusCommissionEmployee5("Mark", "Sands", "888-88-8888", 8000, .15, 2000);

// end main

} // end class ConstructorTest

CommissionEmployee4 constructor:
  commission employee: Bob Lewis
  social security number: 333-33-3333
  gross sales: 5000.00
  commission rate: 0.04

CommissionEmployee4 constructor:
  base-salaried commission employee: Lisa Jones
  social security number: 555-55-5555
  gross sales: 2000.00
  commission rate: 0.06
  base salary: 0.00

BasePlusCommissionEmployee5 constructor:
  base-salaried commission employee: Lisa Jones
  social security number: 555-55-5555
  gross sales: 2000.00
  commission rate: 0.06
  base salary: 800.00

CommissionEmployee4 constructor:
  base-salaried commission employee: Mark Sands
  social security number: 888-88-8888
  gross sales: 8000.00
  commission rate: 0.15
  base salary: 0.00

BasePlusCommissionEmployee5 constructor:
  base-salaried commission employee: Mark Sands
  social security number: 888-88-8888
  gross sales: 8000.00
  commission rate: 0.15
  base salary: 2000.00
9.6. Software Engineering with Inheritance

This section discusses customizing existing software with inheritance. When a new class extends an existing class, the new class inherits the non-private members of the existing class. We can customize the new class to meet our needs by including additional members and by overriding superclass members. Doing this does not require the subclass programmer to change the superclass's source code. Java simply requires access to the superclass's .class file so it can compile and execute any program that uses or extends the superclass. This powerful capability is attractive to independent software vendors (ISVs), who can develop proprietary classes for sale or license and make them available to users in bytecode format. Users then can derive new classes from these library classes rapidly and without accessing the ISVs' proprietary source code.

**Software Engineering Observation 9.9**

*Despite the fact that inheriting from a class does not require access to the class's source code, developers often insist on seeing the source code to understand how the class is implemented. Developers in industry want to ensure that they are extending a solid class, for example, a class that performs well and is implemented securely.*

Sometimes, students have difficulty appreciating the scope of the problems faced by designers who work on large-scale software projects in industry. People experienced with such projects say that effective software reuse improves the software development process. Object-oriented programming facilitates software reuse, potentially shortening development time.

The availability of substantial and useful class libraries delivers the maximum benefits of software reuse through inheritance. Application designers build their applications with these libraries, and library designers are rewarded by having their libraries included with the applications. The standard Java class libraries that are shipped with J2SE 5.0 tend to be rather general purpose. Many special-purpose class libraries exist and more are being created.
Software Engineering Observation 9.10

At the design stage in an object-oriented system, the designer often finds that certain classes are closely related. The designer should "factor out" common instance variables and methods and place them in a superclass. Then the designer should use inheritance to develop subclasses, specializing them with capabilities beyond those inherited from the superclass.

Software Engineering Observation 9.11

Declaring a subclass does not affect its superclass's source code. Inheritance preserves the integrity of the superclass.

Software Engineering Observation 9.12

Just as designers of non-object-oriented systems should avoid method proliferation, designers of object-oriented systems should avoid class proliferation. Such proliferation creates management problems and can hinder software reusability, because in a huge class library it becomes difficult for a client to locate the most appropriate classes. The alternative is to create fewer classes that provide more substantial functionality, but such classes might prove cumbersome.

Performance Tip 9.1

If subclasses are larger than they need to be (i.e., contain too much functionality), memory and processing resources might be wasted. Extend the superclass that contains the functionality that is closest to what is needed.
Reading subclass declarations can be confusing, because inherited members are not declared explicitly in the subclasses, but are nevertheless present in them. A similar problem exists in documenting subclass members.
9.7. Object Class

As we discussed earlier in this chapter, all classes in Java inherit directly or indirectly from the `Object` class (package `java.lang`), so its 11 methods are inherited by all other classes. Figure 9.18 summarizes `Object`'s methods.

**Figure 9.18.** `Object` methods that are inherited directly or indirectly by all classes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>clone</td>
<td>This protected method, which takes no arguments and returns an <code>Object</code> reference, makes a copy of the object on which it is called. When cloning is required for objects of a class, the class should override method <code>clone</code> as a public method and should implement interface <code>Cloneable</code> (package <code>java.lang</code>). The default implementation of this method performs a so-called shallow copy; instance variable values in one object are copied into another object of the same type. For reference types, only the references are copied. A typical overridden <code>clone</code> method's implementation would perform a deep copy that creates a new object for each reference type instance variable. There are many subtleties to overriding method <code>clone</code>. You can learn more about cloning in the following article: java.sun.com/developer/JDCTechTips/2001/tt0306.html</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equals</td>
<td>This method compares two objects for equality and returns <code>true</code> if they are equal and <code>false</code> otherwise. The method takes any <code>Object</code> as an argument. When objects of a particular class must be compared for equality, the class should override method <code>equals</code> to compare the contents of the two objects. The method's implementation should meet the following requirements:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• It should return <code>false</code> if the argument is <code>null</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• It should return <code>true</code> if an object is compared to itself, as in <code>object1.equals( object1 )</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• It should return <code>true</code> only if both <code>object1.equals( object2 )</code> and <code>object2.equals( object1 )</code> would return <code>true</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For three objects, if <code>object1.equals( object2 )</code> returns <code>true</code> and <code>object2.equals( object3 )</code> returns <code>true</code>, then <code>object1.equals( object3 )</code> should also return <code>true</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If <code>equals</code> is called multiple times with the two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
objects and the objects do not change, the method should consistently return `true` if the objects are equal and `false` otherwise.

A class that overrides `equals` should also override `hashCode` to ensure that equal objects have identical hashcodes. The default `equals` implementation uses operator `==` to determine whether two references refer to the same object in memory. Section 29.3.3 demonstrates class `String`'s `equals` method and differentiates between comparing `String` objects with `==` and with `equals`.

This `protected` method (introduced in Section 8.10 and Section 8.11) is called by the garbage collector to perform termination housekeeping on an object just before the garbage collector reclaims the object's memory. It is not guaranteed that the garbage collector will reclaim an object, so it cannot be guaranteed that the object's `finalize` method will execute. The method must specify an empty parameter list and must return `void`. The default implementation of this method serves as a placeholder that does nothing.

Every object in Java knows its own type at execution time. Method `getClass` (used in Section 10.5 and Section 21.3) returns an object of class `Class` (package `java.lang`) that contains information about the object's type, such as its class name (returned by `Class` method `getName`). You can learn more about class `Class` in the online API documentation at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/lang/Class.html.

A hashtable is a data structure (discussed in Section 19.10) that relates one object, called the key, to another object, called the value. When initially inserting a value into a hashtable, the key's `hashCode` method is called. The hashcode value returned is used by the hashtable to determine the location at which to insert the corresponding value. The key's hashcode is also used by the hashtable to locate the key's corresponding value.

Methods `notify`, `notifyAll` and the three overloaded versions of `wait` are related to multithreading, which is discussed in Chapter 23. In J2SE 5.0, the multithreading model has changed substantially, but these features continue to be supported.

This method (introduced in Section 9.4.1) returns a `String` representation of an object. The default implementation of this method returns the package name and class name of the object's class followed by a hexadecimal representation of the value returned by the object's `hashCode` method.
We discuss several of Object methods throughout this book (as indicated in the table). You can learn more about Object's methods in Object's online API documentation and in The Java Tutorial at the following sites:

java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/lang/Object.html

java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/java/javaOO/objectclass

Recall from Chapter 7 that arrays are objects. As a result, like all other objects, an array inherits the members of class Object. Note that arrays have an overridden clone method that copies the array. However, if the array stores references to objects, the objects are not copied. For more information about the relationship between arrays and class Object, please see Java Language Specification, Chapter 10, at

9.8. (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Displaying Text and Images Using Labels

Programs often use labels when they need to display information or instructions to the user in a graphical user interface. **Labels** are a convenient way of keeping the user informed about the current state of a program. In Java, an object of class **JLabel** (from package **javax.swing**) can display a single line of text, an image or both. The example in **Fig. 9.19** demonstrates several **JLabel** features.

Lines 36 import the classes we need to display **JLabels**. **BorderLayout** from package **java.awt** contains constants that specify where we can place GUI components in the **JFrame**. Class **ImageIcon** represents an image that can be displayed on a **JLabel**, and class **JFrame** represents the window that will contain all the labels.

Line 13 creates a **JLabel** that displays its constructor argument—the string "North". Line 16 declares local variable **labelIcon** and assigns it a new **ImageIcon**. The constructor for **ImageIcon** receives a **String** that specifies the path to the image. Since we only specify a file name, Java assumes that it is in the same directory as class **LabelDemo**. **ImageIcon** can load images in GIF, JPEG and PNG image formats. Line 19 declares and initializes local variable **centerLabel** with a **JLabel** that displays the **labelIcon**. Line 22 declares and initializes local variable **southLabel** with a **JLabel** similar to the one in line 19. However, line 25 calls method **setText** to change the text the label displays. Method **setText** can be called on any **JLabel** to change its text. This **JLabel** displays both the icon and the text.

Line 28 creates the **JFrame** that displays the **JLabels**, and line 30 indicates that the program should terminate when the **JFrame** is closed. We attach the labels to the **JFrame** in lines 34-36 by calling an overloaded version of method add that takes two parameters. The first parameter is the component we want to attach, and the second is the region in which it should be placed. Each **JFrame** has an associated **layout** that helps the **JFrame** position the GUI components that are attached to it. The default layout for a **JFrame** is known as a **BorderLayout** and has five regions **NORTH** (top), **SOUTH** (bottom), **EAST** (right side), **WEST** (left side) and **CENTER**. Each of these is declared as a constant in class **BorderLayout**. When calling method add with one argument, the **JFrame** places the component in the **CENTER** automatically. If a position already contains a
component, then the new component takes its place. Lines 38 and 39 set the size of the JFrame and make it visible on screen.

Figure 9.19. JLabel with text and with images.
(This item is displayed on pages 453 - 454 in the print version)

```java
// Fig 9.19: LabelDemo.java
// Demonstrates the use of labels.
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import javax.swing.ImageIcon;
import javax.swing.JLabel;
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class LabelDemo {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        // Create a label with plain text
        JLabel northLabel = new JLabel( "North" );
        // create an icon from an image so we can put it on a JLabel
        ImageIcon labelIcon = new ImageIcon( "GUItip.gif" );
        // create a label with an Icon instead of text
        JLabel centerLabel = new JLabel( labelIcon );
        // create another label with an Icon
        JLabel southLabel = new JLabel( labelIcon );
        // set the label to display text (as well as an icon)
        southLabel.setText( "South" );
        // create a frame to hold the labels
        JFrame application = new JFrame();
        application.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        // add the labels to the frame; the second argument specifies
        // where on the frame to add the label
        application.add( northLabel, BorderLayout.NORTH );
        application.add( centerLabel, BorderLayout.CENTER );
        application.add( southLabel, BorderLayout.SOUTH );
        application.setSize( 300, 300 ); // set the size of the frame
        application.setVisible( true ); // show the frame
    }
}
```
GUI and Graphics Case Study Exercise

Modify Exercise 8.1 to include a JLabel as a status bar that displays counts representing the number of each shape displayed. Class DrawPanel should declare a method that returns a String containing the status text. In main, first create the DrawPanel, then create the JLabel with the status text as an argument to the JLabel's constructor. Attach the JLabel to the SOUTH region of the JFrame, as shown in Fig. 9.20.

Figure 9.20. JLabel displaying shape statistics.
9.9. Wrap-Up

This chapter introduced inheritance—the ability to create classes by absorbing an existing class's members and embellishing them with new capabilities. You learned the notions of superclasses and subclasses and used keyword `extends` to create a subclass that inherits members from a superclass. The chapter introduced the access modifier `protected`; subclass methods can access `protected` superclass members. You learned how to access superclass members with `super`. You also saw how constructors are used in inheritance hierarchies. Finally, you learned about the methods of class `Object`, the direct or indirect superclass of all classes in Java.

In **Chapter 10**, Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism, we build on our discussion of inheritance by introducing polymorphism—an object-oriented concept that enables us to write programs that handle, in a more general manner, objects of a wide variety of classes related by inheritance. After studying **Chapter 10**, you will be familiar with classes, objects, encapsulation, inheritance and polymorphism—the most essential aspects of object-oriented programming.
Summary

- Software reuse reduces program-development time.

- The direct superclass of a subclass (specified by the keyword `extends` in the first line of a class declaration) is the superclass from which the subclass inherits. An indirect superclass of a subclass is two or more levels up the class hierarchy from that subclass.

- In single inheritance, a class is derived from one direct superclass. In multiple inheritance, a class is derived from more than one direct superclass. Java does not support multiple inheritance.

- A subclass is more specific than its superclass and represents a smaller group of objects.

- Every object of a subclass is also an object of that class's superclass. However, a superclass object is not an object of its class's subclasses.

- An "is-a" relationship represents inheritance. In an "is-a" relationship, an object of a subclass also can be treated as an object of its superclass.

- A "has-a" relationship represents composition. In a "has-a" relationship, a class object contains references to objects of other classes.

- A subclass cannot access or inherit the `private` members of its superclass allowing this would violate the encapsulation of the superclass. A subclass can, however, inherit the non-`private` members of its superclass.

- A superclass method can be overridden in a subclass to declare an appropriate implementation for the subclass.

- Single-inheritance relationships form tree-like hierarchical structures a superclass exists in a hierarchical relationship with its subclasses.
- A superclass's public members are accessible wherever the program has a reference to an object of that superclass or one of its subclasses.

- A superclass's private members are accessible only within the declaration of that superclass.

- A superclass's protected members have an intermediate level of protection between public and private access. They can be accessed by members of the superclass, by members of its subclasses and by members of other classes in the same package.

- The first task of any subclass constructor is to call its direct superclass's constructor, either explicitly or implicitly, to ensure that the instance variables inherited from the superclass are initialized properly.

- A subclass can explicitly invoke a constructor of its superclass by using the superclass constructor call syntax keyword super, followed by a set of parentheses containing the superclass constructor arguments.

- When a subclass method overrides a superclass method, the superclass method can be accessed from the subclass if the superclass method name is preceded by the keyword super and a dot (.) separator.

- Declaring instance variables private, while providing non-private methods to manipulate and perform validation, helps enforce good software engineering.

- Method toString takes no arguments and returns a String. The Object class's toString method is normally overridden by a subclass.

- When an object is output using the %s format specifier, the object's toString method is called implicitly to obtain its string representation.
Terminology

base class
brittle software
class hierarchy
class library
clone method of class Object
composition
derived class
direct superclass
equals method of class Object
extends keyword
fragile software
getClass method of class Object
"has-a" relationship
hashCode method of class Object
hierarchical relationship
hierarchy diagram
subclass constructor

super keyword

superclass

superclass constructor

superclass constructor call syntax

superclass no-argument constructor

toString method of class Object
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. _____ is a form of software reusability in which new classes acquire the members of existing classes and embellish those classes with new capabilities.

2. A superclass's _____ members can be accessed in the superclass declaration and in subclass declarations.

3. In a(n) _____ relationship, an object of a subclass can also be treated as an object of its superclass.

4. In a(n) _____ relationship, a class object has references to objects of other classes as members.

5. In single inheritance, a class exists in a(n) _____ relationship with its subclasses.

6. A superclass's _____ members are accessible anywhere that the program has a reference to an object of that superclass or to an object of one of its subclasses.

7. When an object of a subclass is instantiated, a superclass _____ is called implicitly or explicitly.

8. Subclass constructors can call superclass constructors via the _____ keyword.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If a statement is false, explain why.

1. Superclass constructors are not inherited by subclasses.

2. A "has-a" relationship is implemented via inheritance.

3. A Car class has an "is-a" relationship with the SteeringWheel and Brakes classes.

4. Inheritance encourages the reuse of proven high-quality software.

5. When a subclass redefines a superclass method by using the same signature, the subclass is said to overload that superclass method.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

9.1 a) Inheritance. b) public or protected. c) "is-a" or inheritance. d) "has-a" or composition. e) hierarchical. f) public. g) constructor. h) super.

9.2 a) True. b) False. A "has-a" relationship is implemented via composition. An "is-a" relationship is implemented via inheritance. c) False. This is an example of a "has-a" relationship. Class Car has an "is-a" relationship with class Vehicle. d) True. e) False. This is known as overriding, not overloading.
Exercises

Many programs written with inheritance could be written with composition instead, and vice versa. Rewrite class `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` (Fig. 9.13) of the `CommissionEmployee3BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` hierarchy to use composition rather than inheritance. After you do this, assess the relative merits of the two approaches for the `CommissionEmployee3` and `BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` problems, as well as for object-oriented programs in general. Which approach is more natural? Why?

9.4 Discuss the ways in which inheritance promotes software reuse, saves time during program development and helps prevent errors.

Draw an inheritance hierarchy for students at a university similar to the hierarchy shown in Fig. 9.2. Use `Student` as the superclass of the hierarchy, then extend `Student` with classes `UndergraduateStudent` and `GraduateStudent`. Continue to extend the hierarchy as deep (i.e., as many levels) as possible. For example, `Freshman`, `Sophomore`, `Junior` and `Senior` might extend `UndergraduateStudent`, and `DoctoralStudent` and `MastersStudent` might be subclasses of `GraduateStudent`. After drawing the hierarchy, discuss the relationships that exist between the classes. [Note: You do not need to write any code for this exercise.]

The world of shapes is much richer than the shapes included in the inheritance hierarchy of Fig. 9.3. Write down all the shapes you can think of both two-dimensional and three-dimensional and form them into a more complete `Shape` hierarchy with as many levels as possible. Your hierarchy should have class `Shape` at the top. Class `TwoDimensionalShape` and class `ThreeDimensionalShape` should extend `Shape`. Add additional subclasses, such as `Quadrilateral` and `Sphere`, at their correct locations in the hierarchy as necessary.

Some programmers prefer not to use `protected` access, because they believe it breaks the encapsulation of the superclass. Discuss the relative merits of using `protected` access vs. using `private` access in superclasses.

Write an inheritance hierarchy for classes `Quadrilateral`, `Trapezoid`, `Parallelogram`, `Rectangle` and `Square`. Use `Quadrilateral` as the superclass of the hierarchy. Make the hierarchy as deep (i.e., as many levels) as possible. Specify the instance variables and methods for each class. The `private` instance variables of `Quadrilateral` should be the x-y coordinate pairs for the four endpoints of the `Quadrilateral`. Write a program that instantiates objects of your classes and outputs each object's area (except `Quadrilateral`).
Chapter 10. Object-Oriented Programming: Polymorphism

One Ring to rule them all,
One Ring to find them,
One Ring to bring them all
and in the darkness bind
them.

John Ronald Reuel Tolkien

General propositions do not decide concrete cases.

Oliver Wendell Holmes

A philosopher of imposing stature doesn't think in a vacuum. Even his most abstract ideas are, to some extent, conditioned by what is or is not known in the time when he lives.

Alfred North Whitehead

Why art thou cast down,
O my soul?

Psalms 42:5

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- The concept of polymorphism.
- To use overridden methods to effect polymorphism.
- To distinguish between abstract and concrete classes.
- To declare abstract methods to create abstract classes.
- How polymorphism makes systems extensible and maintainable.
• To determine an object's type at execution time.
• To declare and implement interfaces.

Outline

10.1 Introduction

10.2 Polymorphism Examples

10.3 Demonstrating Polymorphic Behavior

10.4 Abstract Classes and Methods

10.5 Case Study: Payroll System Using Polymorphism

10.5.1 Creating Abstract Superclass Employee

10.5.2 Creating Concrete Subclass SalariedEmployee

10.5.3 Creating Concrete Subclass HourlyEmployee

10.5.4 Creating Concrete Subclass CommissionEmployee

10.5.5 Creating Indirect Concrete Subclass BasePlusCommissionEmployee

10.5.6 Demonstrating Polymorphic Processing, Operator instanceof and Downcasting

10.5.7 Summary of the Allowed Assignments Between Superclass and Subclass Variables

10.6 final Methods and Classes

10.7 Case Study: Creating and Using Interfaces

10.7.1 Developing a Payable Hierarchy
10.7.2 Declaring Interface Payable

10.7.3 Creating Class Invoice

10.7.4 Modifying Class Employee to Implement Interface Payable

10.7.5 Modifying Class SalariedEmployee for Use in the Payable Hierarchy

10.7.6 Using Interface Payable to Process Invoices and Employees Polymorphically

10.7.7 Declaring Constants with Interfaces

10.7.8 Common Interfaces of the Java API

10.8 (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Drawing with Polymorphism

10.9 (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Incorporating Inheritance into the ATM System

10.10 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
10.1. Introduction

We now continue our study of object-oriented programming by explaining and demonstrating **polymorphism** with inheritance hierarchies. Polymorphism enables us to "program in the general" rather than "program in the specific." In particular, polymorphism enables us to write programs that process objects that share the same superclass in a class hierarchy as if they are all objects of the superclass.

Consider the following example of polymorphism. Suppose we create a program that simulates the movement of several types of animals for a biological study. Classes *Fish*, *Frog* and *Bird* represent the three types of animals under investigation. Imagine that each of these classes extends superclass *Animal*, which contains a method *move* and maintains an animal's current location as x-y coordinates. Each subclass implements method *move*. Our program maintains an array of references to objects of the various *Animal* subclasses. To simulate the animals' movements, the program sends each object the same message once per secondnamely, *move*. However, each specific type of *Animal* responds to a *move* message in a unique way—a *Fish* might swim three feet, a *Frog* might jump five feet and a *Bird* might fly ten feet. The program issues the same message (i.e., *move*) to each animal object generically, but each object knows how to modify its x-y coordinates appropriately for its specific type of movement. Relying on each object to know how to "do the right thing" (i.e., do what is appropriate for that type of object) in response to the same method call is the key concept of polymorphism. The same message (in this case, *move*) sent to a variety of objects has "many forms" of resultshence the term polymorphism.

With polymorphism, we can design and implement systems that are easily extensible—new classes can be added with little or no modification to the general portions of the program, as long as the new classes are part of the inheritance hierarchy that the program processes generically. The only parts of a program that must be altered to accommodate new classes are those that require direct knowledge of the new classes that the programmer adds to the hierarchy. For example, if we extend class *Animal* to create class *Tortoise* (which might respond to a *move* message by crawling one inch), we need to write only the *Tortoise* class and the part of the simulation that instantiates a *Tortoise*
object. The portions of the simulation that process each Animal generically can remain the same.

This chapter has several key parts. First, we discuss common examples of polymorphism. We then provide a live-code example demonstrating polymorphic behavior. As you will soon see, you will use superclass references to manipulate both superclass objects and subclass objects polymorphically.

We then present a case study that revisits the employee hierarchy of Section 9.4.5. We develop a simple payroll application that polymorphically calculates the weekly pay of several different types of employees using each employee's earnings method. Though the earnings of each type of employee are calculated in a specific way, polymorphism allows us to process the employees "in the general." In the case study, we enlarge the hierarchy to include two new classes SalariedEmployee (for people paid a fixed weekly salary) and HourlyEmployee (for people paid an hourly salary and so-called time-and-a-half for overtime). We declare a common set of functionality for all the classes in the updated hierarchy in a so-called abstract class, Employee, from which classes SalariedEmployee, HourlyEmployee and CommissionEmployee inherit directly and class BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 inherits indirectly. As you will soon see, when we invoke each employee's earnings method off a superclass Employee reference, the correct earnings calculation is performed due to Java's polymorphic capabilities.

Occasionally, when performing polymorphic processing, we need to program "in the specific." Our Employee case study demonstrates that a program can determine the type of an object at execution time and act on that object accordingly. In the case study, we use these capabilities to determine whether a particular employee object is a BasePlusCommissionEmployee. If so, we increase that employee's base salary by 10%.

The chapter continues with an introduction to Java interfaces. An interface describes a set of methods that can be called on an object, but does not provide concrete implementations for the methods. Programmers can declare classes that implement (i.e., provide concrete implementations for the methods of) one or more interfaces. Each interface method must be declared in all the classes that implement the interface. Once a class implements an interface, all objects of that class have an is-a relationship with the interface type, and all objects of the class are guaranteed to provide the functionality described by the interface. This is true of all subclasses of that class as well.
Interfaces are particularly useful for assigning common functionality to possibly unrelated classes. This allows objects of unrelated classes to be processed polymorphically. Objects of classes that implement the same interface can respond to the same method calls. To demonstrate creating and using interfaces, we modify our payroll application to create a general accounts payable application that can calculate payments due for company employees and invoice amounts to be billed for purchased goods. As you will see, interfaces enable polymorphic capabilities similar to those possible with inheritance.
10.2. Polymorphism Examples

We now consider several additional examples of polymorphism. If class Rectangle is derived from class Quadrilateral, then a Rectangle object is a more specific version of a Quadrilateral object. Any operation (e.g., calculating the perimeter or the area) that can be performed on a Quadrilateral object can also be performed on a Rectangle object. These operations can also be performed on other Quadrilaterals, such as Squares, Parallelograms and trapezoids. The polymorphism occurs when a program invokes a method through a superclass variable at execution time, the correct subclass version of the method is called, based on the type of the reference stored in the superclass variable. You will see a simple code example that illustrates this process in Section 10.3.

As another example, suppose we design a video game that manipulates objects of many different types, including objects of classes Martian, Venusian, Plutonian, SpaceShip and LaserBeam. Imagine that each class inherits from the common superclass called SpaceObject, which contains method draw. Each subclass implements this method. A screen-manager program maintains a collection (e.g., a SpaceObject array) of references to objects of the various classes. To refresh the screen, the screen manager periodically sends each object the same message, namely, draw. However, each object responds in a unique way. For example, a Martian object might draw itself in red with the appropriate number of antennae. A SpaceShip object might draw itself as a bright silver flying saucer. A LaserBeam object might draw itself as a bright red beam across the screen. Again, the same message (in this case, draw) sent to a variety of objects has "many forms" of results.

A polymorphic screen manager might use polymorphism to facilitate adding new classes to a system with minimal modifications to the system's code. Suppose that we want to add Mercurian objects to our video game. To do so, we must build a class Mercurian that extends SpaceObject and provides its own draw method implementation. When objects of class Mercurian appear in the SpaceObject collection, the screen manager code invokes method draw, exactly as it does for every other object in the collection, regardless of its type. So the new Mercurian objects simply "plug right in" without any modification of the screen manager code by the programmer. Thus, without modifying the system (other than to build new classes and modify the code that creates new objects), programmers can use polymorphism to include additional types that were not envisioned when the system was created.
With polymorphism, the same method name and signature can be used to cause different actions to occur, depending on the type of object on which the method is invoked. This gives the programmer tremendous expressive capability.

Software Engineering Observation 10.1

Polymorphism enables programmers to deal in generalities and let the execution-time environment handle the specifics. Programmers can command objects to behave in manners appropriate to those objects, without knowing the types of the objects (as long as the objects belong to the same inheritance hierarchy).

Software Engineering Observation 10.2

Polymorphism promotes extensibility: Software that invokes polymorphic behavior is independent of the object types to which messages are sent. New object types that can respond to existing method calls can be incorporated into a system without requiring modification of the base system. Only client code that instantiates new objects must be modified to accommodate new types.
10.3. Demonstrating Polymorphic Behavior

Section 9.4 created a commission employee class hierarchy, in which class BasePlusCommissionEmployee inherited from class CommissionEmployee. The examples in that section manipulated CommissionEmployee and BasePlusCommissionEmployee objects by using references to them to invoke their methods. We aimed superclass references at superclass objects and subclass references at subclass objects. These assignments are natural and straightfoward superclass references are intended to refer to superclass objects, and subclass references are intended to refer to subclass objects. However, as you will soon see, other assignments are possible.

In the next example, we aim a superclass reference at a subclass object. We then show how invoking a method on a subclass object via a superclass reference invokes the subclass functionality—the type of the actual referenced object, not the type of the reference, determines which method is called. This example demonstrates the key concept that an object of a subclass can be treated as an object of its superclass. This enables various interesting manipulations. A program can create an array of superclass references that refer to objects of many subclass types. This is allowed because each subclass object is an object of its superclass. For instance, we can assign the reference of a BasePlusCommissionEmployee object to a superclass CommissionEmployee variable because a BasePlusCommissionEmployee is a CommissionEmployee we can treat a BasePlusCommissionEmployee as a CommissionEmployee.

As you will learn later in the chapter, we cannot treat a superclass object as a subclass object because a superclass object is not an object of any of its subclasses. For example, we cannot assign the reference of a CommissionEmployee object to a subclass BasePlusCommissionEmployee variable because a CommissionEmployee is not a BasePlusCommissionEmployee a CommissionEmployee does not have a baseSalary instance variable and does not have methods setBaseSalary and getBaseSalary. The is-a relationship applies only from a subclass to its direct (and indirect) superclasses, and not vice versa.

It turns out that the Java compiler does allow the assignment of a superclass reference to a subclass variable if we explicitly cast the superclass reference to the subclass type—a technique we discuss in greater detail in Section 10.5. Why would we ever want to perform such an assignment? A superclass reference can be used to invoke only the methods declared in the superclass attempting to invoke subclass-only methods through a superclass reference results in
compilation errors. If a program needs to perform a subclass-specific operation on a subclass object referenced by a superclass variable, the program must first cast the superclass reference to a subclass reference through a technique known as **downcasting**. This enables the program to invoke subclass methods that are not in the superclass. We will show you a concrete example of downcasting in **Section 10.5**.

The example in **Fig. 10.1** demonstrates three ways to use superclass and subclass variables to store references to superclass and subclass objects. The first two are straightforward as in **Section 9.4**, we assign a superclass reference to a superclass variable, and we assign a subclass reference to a subclass variable. Then we demonstrate the relationship between subclasses and superclasses (i.e., the is-a relationship) by assigning a subclass reference to a superclass variable. [*Note: This program uses classes CommissionEmployee3 and BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 from **Fig. 9.12** and **Fig. 9.13**, respectively.*]

**Figure 10.1. Assigning superclass and subclass references to superclass and subclass variables.**

(This item is displayed on pages 464 - 465 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 10.1: PolymorphismTest.java
// Assigning superclass and subclass references to superclass and
// subclass variables.

public class PolymorphismTest
{
  public static void main( String args[] )
  {
    // assign superclass reference to superclass variable
    CommissionEmployee3 commissionEmployee = new CommissionEmployee3(
      "Sue", "Jones", "222-22-2222", 10000, .06 );

    // assign subclass reference to subclass variable
    BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 basePlusCommissionEmployee =
      new BasePlusCommissionEmployee4(
      "Bob", "Lewis", "333-33-3333", 5000, .04, 300 );

    // invoke toString on superclass object using superclass variable
    System.out.printf( "%s %s:\n%sn\n%n", 
      "Call CommissionEmployee3's toString with superclass reference ",
      "to superclass object", commissionEmployee.toString() );

    // invoke toString on subclass object using subclass variable
    System.out.printf( "%s %s:\n%sn\n%n", 
      "Call BasePlusCommissionEmployee4's toString with subclass",
      "reference to subclass object", basePlusCommissionEmployee.toString() );
  }
}
```
// invoke toString on subclass object using superclass variable
 CommissionEmployee3 commissionEmployee2 =
    basePlusCommissionEmployee;
 System.out.printf("%s %s:

%s
", "Call BasePlusCommissionEmployee4's toString with superclass",
    "reference to subclass object", commissionEmployee2.toString());
 } // end main
} // end class PolymorphismTest

Call CommissionEmployee3's toString with superclass reference to superclass object:

commission employee: Sue Jones
social security number: 222-22-2222
gross sales: 10000.00
commission rate: 0.06

Call BasePlusCommissionEmployee4's toString with subclass reference to subclass object:

base-salaried commission employee: Bob Lewis
social security number: 333-33-3333
gross sales: 5000.00
commission rate: 0.04
base salary: 300.00

Call BasePlusCommissionEmployee4's toString with superclass reference to subclass object:

base-salaried commission employee: Bob Lewis
social security number: 333-33-3333
gross sales: 5000.00
commission rate: 0.04
base salary: 300.00

In Fig. 10.1, lines 1011 create a CommissionEmployee3 object and assign its reference to a CommissionEmployee3 variable. Lines 1416 create a BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 object and assign its reference to a BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 variable. These assignments are natural for example,
variable's primary purpose is to hold a reference to a CommissionEmployee3 object. Lines 1921 use reference commissionEmployee to invoke toString explicitly. Because commissionEmployee refers to a CommissionEmployee3 object, superclass CommissionEmployee3's version of toString is called. Similarly, lines 2427 use basePlusCommissionEmployee to invoke toString explicitly on the BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 object. This invokes subclass BasePlusCommissionEmployee4's version of toString.

Lines 3031 then assign the reference to subclass object basePlusCommissionEmployee to a superclass CommissionEmployee3 variable, which lines 3234 use to invoke method toString. A superclass variable that contains a reference to a subclass object and is used to call a method actually calls the subclass version of the method. Hence, commissionEmployee2.toString() in line 34 actually calls class BasePlusCommissionEmployee4's toString method. The Java compiler allows this "crossover" because an object of a subclass is *an* object of its superclass (but not vice versa). When the compiler encounters a method call made through a variable, the compiler determines if the method can be called by checking the variable's class type. If that class contains the proper method declaration (or inherits one), the compiler allows the call to be compiled. At execution time, the type of the object to which the variable refers determines the actual method to use.
10.4. Abstract Classes and Methods

When we think of a class type, we assume that programs will create objects of that type. In some cases, however, it is useful to declare classes for which the programmer never intends to instantiate objects. Such classes are called abstract classes. Because they are used only as superclasses in inheritance hierarchies, we refer to them as abstract superclasses. These classes cannot be used to instantiate objects, because, as we will soon see, abstract classes are incomplete. Subclasses must declare the "missing pieces." We demonstrate abstract classes in Section 10.5.

The purpose of an abstract class is primarily to provide an appropriate superclass from which other classes can inherit and thus share a common design. In the Shape hierarchy of Fig. 9.3, for example, subclasses inherit the notion of what it means to be a Shape: common attributes such as location, color and borderThickness, and behaviors such as draw, move, resize and changeColor. Classes that can be used to instantiate objects are called concrete classes. Such classes provide implementations of every method they declare (some of the implementations can be inherited). For example, we could derive concrete classes Circle, Square and triangle from abstract superclass TwoDimensionalShape. Similarly, we could derive concrete classes Sphere, Cube and Tetrahedron from abstract superclass ThreeDimensionalShape. Abstract superclasses are too general to create real objects; they specify only what is common among subclasses. We need to be more specific before we can create objects. For example, if you send the draw message to abstract class TwoDimensionalShape, it knows that two-dimensional shapes should be drawable, but it does not know what specific shape to draw, so it cannot implement a real draw method. Concrete classes provide the specifics that make it reasonable to instantiate objects.

Not all inheritance hierarchies contain abstract classes. However, programmers often write client code that uses only abstract superclass types to reduce client code's dependencies on a range of specific subclass types. For example, a programmer can write a method with a parameter of an abstract superclass type. When called, such a method can be passed an object of any concrete class that directly or indirectly extends the superclass specified as the parameter's type.

Abstract classes sometimes constitute several levels of the hierarchy. For example, the Shape hierarchy of Fig. 9.3 begins with abstract class Shape. On the next level of the hierarchy are two more abstract classes, TwoDimensionalShape
and ThreeDimensionalShape. The next level of the hierarchy declares concrete classes for TwoDimensionalShapes (Circle, Square and Triangle) and for ThreeDimensionalShapes (Sphere, Cube and Tetrahedron).

You make a class abstract by declaring it with keyword `abstract`. An abstract class normally contains one or more `abstract methods`. An abstract method is one with keyword `abstract` in its declaration, as in

```java
public abstract void draw(); // abstract method
```

Abstract methods do not provide implementations. A class that contains any abstract methods must be declared as an abstract class even if that class contains concrete (non-abstract) methods. Each concrete subclass of an abstract superclass also must provide concrete implementations of the superclass's abstract methods. Constructors and `static` methods cannot be declared `abstract`. Constructors are not inherited, so an `abstract` constructor could never be implemented. Similarly, subclasses cannot override `static` methods, so an `abstract static` method could never be implemented.

---

**Software Engineering Observation 10.3**

An abstract class declares common attributes and behaviors of the various classes in a class hierarchy. An abstract class typically contains one or more abstract methods that subclasses must override if the subclasses are to be concrete. The instance variables and concrete methods of an abstract class are subject to the normal rules of inheritance.

---

**Common Programming Error 10.1**

Attempting to instantiate an object of an abstract class is a compilation error.
Although we cannot instantiate objects of abstract superclasses, you will soon see that we can use abstract superclasses to declare variables that can hold references to objects of any concrete class derived from those abstract classes. Programs typically use such variables to manipulate subclass objects polymorphically. We also can use abstract superclass names to invoke static methods declared in those abstract superclasses.

Consider another application of polymorphism. A drawing program needs to display many shapes, including new shape types that the programmer will add to the system after writing the drawing program. The drawing program might need to display shapes, such as Circles, Triangles, Rectangles or others, that derive from abstract superclass Shape. The drawing program uses Shape variables to manage the objects that are displayed. To draw any object in this inheritance hierarchy, the drawing program uses a superclass Shape variable containing a reference to the subclass object to invoke the object's draw method. This method is declared abstract in superclass Shape, so each concrete subclass must implement method draw in a manner specific to that shape. Each object in the Shape inheritance hierarchy knows how to draw itself. The drawing program does not have to worry about the type of each object or whether the drawing program has ever encountered objects of that type.

Polymorphism is particularly effective for implementing so-called layered software systems. In operating systems, for example, each type of physical device could operate quite differently from the others. Even so, commands to read or write data from and to devices may have a certain uniformity. For each device, the operating system uses a piece of software called a device driver to control all communication between the system and the device. The write message sent to a device-driver object needs to be interpreted specifically in the context of that driver and how it manipulates devices of a specific type. However, the write call itself really is no different from the write to any other device in the system: Place some number of bytes from memory onto that
device. An object-oriented operating system might use an abstract superclass to provide an "interface" appropriate for all device drivers. Then, through inheritance from that abstract superclass, subclasses are formed that all behave similarly. The device driver methods are declared as abstract methods in the abstract superclass. The implementations of these abstract methods are provided in the subclasses that correspond to the specific types of device drivers. New devices are always being developed, and often long after the operating system has been released. When you buy a new device, it comes with a device driver provided by the device vendor. The device is immediately operational after you connect it to your computer and install the driver. This is another elegant example of how polymorphism makes systems extensible.

It is common in object-oriented programming to declare an **iterator class** that can traverse all the objects in a collection, such as an array (Chapter 7) or an ArrayList (Chapter 19, Collections). For example, a program can print an ArrayList of objects by creating an iterator object and using it to obtain the next list element each time the iterator is called. Iterators often are used in polymorphic programming to traverse a collection that contains references to objects from various levels of a hierarchy. (Chapter 19, presents a thorough treatment of ArrayList, iterators and J2SE 5.0's new "generics" capabilities.) An ArrayList of objects of class TwoDimensionalShape, for example, could contain objects from subclasses Square, Circle, triangle and so on. Calling method draw for each TwoDimensionalShape object off a TwoDimensionalShape variable would polymorphically draw each object correctly on the screen.
10.5. Case Study: Payroll System Using Polymorphism

This section reexamines the CommissionEmployee-BasePlusCommissionEmployee hierarchy that we explored throughout Section 9.4. Now we use an abstract method and polymorphism to perform payroll calculations based on the type of employee. We create an enhanced employee hierarchy to solve the following problem:

A company pays its employees on a weekly basis. The employees are of four types: Salaried employees are paid a fixed weekly salary regardless of the number of hours worked, hourly employees are paid by the hour and receive overtime pay for all hours worked in excess of 40 hours, commission employees are paid a percentage of their sales and salaried-commission employees receive a base salary plus a percentage of their sales. For the current pay period, the company has decided to reward salaried-commission employees by adding 10% to their base salaries. The company wants to implement a Java application that performs its payroll calculations polymorphically.

We use abstract class Employee to represent the general concept of an employee. The classes that extend Employee are SalariedEmployee, CommissionEmployee and HourlyEmployee. Class BasePlusCommissionEmployee which extends CommissionEmployee represents the last employee type. The UML class diagram in Fig. 10.2 shows the inheritance hierarchy for our polymorphic employee-payroll application. Note that abstract class Employee is italicized, as per the convention of the UML.

**Figure 10.2. Employee hierarchy UML class diagram.**
Abstract superclass `Employee` declares the "interface" to the hierarchy that is, the set of methods that a program can invoke on all `Employee` objects. We use the term "interface" here in a general sense to refer to the various ways programs can communicate with objects of any `Employee` subclass. Be careful not to confuse the general notion of an "interface" to something with the formal notion of a Java interface, the subject of Section 10.7. Each employee, regardless of the way his or her earnings are calculated, has a first name, a last name and a social security number, so private instance variables `firstName`, `lastName` and `socialSecurityNumber` appear in abstract superclass `Employee`.

Software Engineering Observation 10.4

A subclass can inherit "interface" or "implementation" from a superclass. Hierarchies designed for implementation inheritance tend to have their functionality high in the hierarchy—each new subclass inherits one or more methods that were implemented in a superclass, and the subclass uses the superclass implementations. Hierarchies designed for interface inheritance tend to have their functionality lower in the hierarchy—a superclass specifies one or more abstract methods that must be declared for each concrete class in the hierarchy, and the individual subclasses override these methods to provide subclass-specific implementations.

The following sections implement the `Employee` class hierarchy. The first four sections each implement one of the concrete classes. The last section implements a test program that builds objects of all these classes and processes those objects polymorphically.

10.5.1. Creating Abstract Superclass `Employee`

Class `Employee` ([Fig. 10.4]) provides methods `earnings` and `toString`, in addition to the `get` and `set` methods that manipulate `Employee`'s instance variables. An `earnings` method certainly applies generically to all employees. But each earnings calculation depends on the employee's class. So we declare `earnings` as abstract in superclass `Employee` because a default implementation does not make
sense for that method there is not enough information to determine what amount earnings should return. Each subclass overrides earnings with an appropriate implementation. To calculate an employee's earnings, the program assigns a reference to the employee's object to a superclass Employee variable, then invokes the earnings method on that variable. We maintain an array of Employee variables, each of which holds a reference to an Employee object (of course, there cannot be Employee objects because Employee is an abstract class because of inheritance, however, all objects of all subclasses of Employee may nevertheless be thought of as Employee objects). The program iterates through the array and calls method earnings for each Employee object. Java processes these method calls polymorphically. Including earnings as an abstract method in Employee forces every direct subclass of Employee to override earnings in order to become a concrete class. This enables the designer of the class hierarchy to demand that each subclass provide an appropriate pay calculation.

Method toString in class Employee returns a String containing the first name, last name and social security number of the employee. As we will see, each subclass of Employee overrides method toString to create a string representation of an object of that class that contains the employee's type (e.g., "salaried employee:") followed by the rest of the employee's information.

The diagram in Fig. 10.3 shows each of the five classes in the hierarchy down the left side and methods earnings and toString across the top. For each class, the diagram shows the desired results of each method. [Note: We do not list superclass Employee's get and set methods because they are not overridden in any of the subclasses each of these methods is inherited and used "as is" by each of the subclasses.]

---

Figure 10.3. Polymorphic interface for the Employee hierarchy classes.

[View full size image]
Let us consider class Employee's declaration (Fig. 10.4). The class includes a constructor that takes the first name, last name and social security number as arguments (lines 1116); get methods that return the first name, last name and social security number (lines 2528, 3740 and 4952, respectively); set methods that set the first name, last name and social security number (lines 1922, 3134 and 4346, respectively); method toString (lines 5559), which returns the string representation of Employee, and abstract method earnings (line 62), which will be implemented by subclasses. Note that the Employee constructor does not validate the social security number in this example. Normally, such validation should be provided.

**Figure 10.4. Employee abstract superclass.**

(This item is displayed on pages 471 - 472 in the print version)
public Employee( String first, String last, String ssn )
{
    firstName = first;
    lastName = last;
    socialSecurityNumber = ssn;
} // end three-argument Employee constructor

// set first name
public void setFirstName( String first )
{
    firstName = first;
} // end method setFirstName

// return first name
public String getFirstName()
{
    return firstName;
} // end method getFirstName

// set last name
public void setLastName( String last )
{
    lastName = last;
} // end method setLastName

// return last name
public String getLastName()
{
    return lastName;
} // end method getLastName

// set social security number
public void setSocialSecurityNumber( String ssn )
{
    socialSecurityNumber = ssn; // should validate
} // end method setSocialSecurityNumber

// return social security number
public String getSocialSecurityNumber()
{
    return socialSecurityNumber;
} // end method getSocialSecurityNumber

// return String representation of Employee object
public String toString()
{
    return String.format("%s %s
social security number: %s",
    getFirstName(), getLastName(), getSocialSecurityNumber());
} // end method toString

// abstract method overridden by subclasses
public abstract double earnings(); // no implementation here
} // end abstract class Employee

Why did we decide to declare `earnings` as an abstract method? It simply does not make sense to provide an implementation of this method in class `Employee`. We
cannot calculate the earnings for a general Employee we first must know the specific Employee type to determine the appropriate earnings calculation. By declaring this method abstract, we indicate that each concrete subclass must provide an appropriate earnings implementation and that a program will be able to use superclass Employee variables to invoke method earnings polymorphically for any type of Employee.

10.5.2. Creating Concrete Subclass SalariedEmployee

Class SalariedEmployee (Fig. 10.5) extends class Employee (line 4) and overrides earnings (lines 2932), which makes SalariedEmployee a concrete class. The class includes a constructor (lines 9-14) that takes a first name, a last name, a social security number and a weekly salary as arguments; a set method to assign a new non-negative value to instance variable weeklySalary (lines 17-20); a get method to return weeklySalary's value (lines 23-26); a method earnings (lines 29-32) to calculate a SalariedEmployee's earnings; and a method toString (lines 35-39), which returns a String including the employee's type, namely, "salaried employee:" followed by employee-specific information produced by superclass Employee's toString method and SalariedEmployee's getWeeklySalary method. Class SalariedEmployee's constructor passes the first name, last name and social security number to the Employee constructor (line 12) to initialize the private instance variables not inherited from the superclass. Method earnings overrides abstract method earnings in Employee to provide a concrete implementation that returns the SalariedEmployee's weekly salary. If we do not implement earnings, class SalariedEmployee must be declared abstract otherwise, a compilation error occurs (and, of course, we want SalariedEmployee here to be a concrete class).

Figure 10.5. SalariedEmployee class derived from Employee.
(This item is displayed on pages 472 - 473 in the print version)
private double weeklySalary;

// four-argument constructor
public SalariedEmployee( String first, String last, String ssn,
    double salary )
{
    super( first, last, ssn ); // pass to Employee constructor
    setWeeklySalary( salary ); // validate and store salary
} // end four-argument SalariedEmployee constructor

// set salary
public void setWeeklySalary( double salary )
{
    weeklySalary = salary < 0.0 ? 0.0 : salary;
} // end method setWeeklySalary

// return salary
public double getWeeklySalary()
{
    return weeklySalary;
} // end method getWeeklySalary

// calculate earnings; override abstract method earnings in Employee
public double earnings()
{
    return getWeeklySalary();
} // end method earnings

// return String representation of SalariedEmployee object
public String toString()
{
    return String.format( "salaried employee: %s
%s: $%,.2f",
        super.toString(), "weekly salary", getWeeklySalary() );
} // end method toString

} // end class SalariedEmployee

Method toString (lines 3539) of class SalariedEmployee overrides Employee method toString. If class SalariedEmployee did not override toString, SalariedEmployee would have inherited the Employee version of toString. In that case, SalariedEmployee's toString method would simply return the employee's full name and social security number, which does not adequately represent a SalariedEmployee. To produce a complete string representation of a SalariedEmployee, the subclass's toString method returns "salaried employee:" followed by the superclass Employee-specific information (i.e., first name, last name and social security number) obtained by invoking the superclass's toString (line 38) this is a nice example of code reuse. The string representation of a SalariedEmployee also contains the employee's weekly salary obtained by invoking the class's getWeeklySalary method.
10.5.3. Creating Concrete Subclass \texttt{HourlyEmployee}

Class \texttt{HourlyEmployee} (Fig. 10.6) also extends class \texttt{Employee} (line 4). The class includes a constructor (lines 1016) that takes as arguments a first name, a last name, a social security number, an hourly wage and the number of hours worked. Lines 1922 and 3135 declare \textit{set} methods that assign new values to instance variables \texttt{wage} and \texttt{hours}, respectively. Method \texttt{setWage} (lines 1922) ensures that \texttt{wage} is non-negative, and method \texttt{setHours} (lines 3135) ensures that \texttt{hours} is between 0 and 168 (the total number of hours in a week). Class \texttt{HourlyEmployee} also includes \textit{get} methods (lines 2528 and 3841) to return the values of \texttt{wage} and \texttt{hours}, respectively; a method \texttt{earnings} (lines 4450) to calculate an \texttt{HourlyEmployee}'s earnings; and a method \texttt{toString} (lines 5358), which returns the employee's type, namely, "hourly employee:" and employee-specific information. Note that the \texttt{HourlyEmployee} constructor, like the \texttt{SalariedEmployee} constructor, passes the first name, last name and social security number to the superclass \texttt{Employee} constructor (line 13) to initialize the private instance variables. In addition, method \texttt{toString} calls superclass method \texttt{toString} (line 56) to obtain the \texttt{Employee}-specific information (i.e., first name, last name and social security number) this is another nice example of code reuse.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{fig10_6.png}
\caption{\texttt{HourlyEmployee} class derived from \texttt{Employee}. (This item is displayed on pages 474 - 475 in the print version)}
\end{figure}

```
1  // Fig. 10.6: HourlyEmployee.java
2  // HourlyEmployee class extends Employee.
3
4  public class HourlyEmployee extends Employee {
5    private double wage; // wage per hour
6    private double hours; // hours worked for week
7
8    // five-argument constructor
9    public HourlyEmployee( String first, String last, String ssn,
10        double hourlyWage, double hoursWorked )
11    {
12      super( first, last, ssn );
13      setWage( hourlyWage ); // validate hourly wage
14      setHours( hoursWorked ); // validate hours worked
15    } // end five-argument HourlyEmployee constructor
```
10.5.4. Creating Concrete Subclass CommissionEmployee

Class CommissionEmployee (Fig. 10.7) extends class Employee (line 4). The class includes a constructor (lines 1016) that takes a first name, a last name, a social security number, a sales amount and a commission rate; set methods (lines 1922 and 3134) to assign new values to instance variables commissionRate and grossSales, respectively; get methods (lines 2528 and 3740) that retrieve the values of these instance variables; method earnings (lines 4346) to
Figure 10.7. **CommissionEmployee class derived from Employee.** 
(This item is displayed on pages 475 - 476 in the print version)
10.5.5. Creating Indirect Concrete Subclass

BasePlusCommissionEmployee

Class BasePlusCommissionEmployee (Fig. 10.8) extends class CommissionEmployee (line 4) and therefore is an indirect subclass of class Employee. Class BasePlusCommissionEmployee has a constructor (lines 9-14) that takes as arguments a first name, a last name, a social security number, a sales amount, a commission rate and a base salary. It then passes the first name, last name, social security number, sales amount and commission rate to the CommissionEmployee constructor (line 12) to initialize the inherited members.

BasePlusCommissionEmployee also contains a set method (lines 17-20) to assign a new value to instance variable baseSalary and a get method (lines 23-26) to return baseSalary's value. Method earnings (lines 29-32) calculates a BasePlusCommissionEmployee's earnings. Note that line 31 in method earnings calls superclass CommissionEmployee's earnings method to calculate the commission-based portion of the employee's earnings. This is a nice example of code reuse. BasePlusCommissionEmployee's toString method (lines 35-40) creates a string representation of a BasePlusCommissionEmployee that contains "base-salaried", followed by the String obtained by invoking superclass CommissionEmployee's toString method (another example of code reuse), then the base salary. The result is a String beginning with "base-salaried commission employee" followed by the rest of the BasePlusCommissionEmployee's information. Recall that CommissionEmployee's toString obtains the employee's first name, last name and social security number by invoking the toString method of its superclass (i.e., Employee) yet another example of code reuse. Note that BasePlusCommissionEmployee's toString
Figure 10.8. BasePlusCommissionEmployee class derived from CommissionEmployee.
(This item is displayed on page 477 in the print version)

```java
public class BasePlusCommissionEmployee extends CommissionEmployee {

    private double baseSalary; // base salary per week

    // six-argument constructor
    public BasePlusCommissionEmployee( String first, String last,
            String ssn, double sales, double rate, double salary )
    {
        super( first, last, ssn, sales, rate );
        setBaseSalary( salary ); // validate and store base salary
    } // end six-argument BasePlusCommissionEmployee constructor

    // set base salary
    public void setBaseSalary( double salary )
    {
        baseSalary = ( salary < 0.0 ) ? 0.0 : salary; // non-negative
    } // end method setBaseSalary

    // return base salary
    public double getBaseSalary()
    {
        return baseSalary;
    } // end method getBaseSalary

    // calculate earnings; override method earnings in CommissionEmployee
    public double earnings()
    {
        return getBaseSalary() + super.earnings();
    } // end method earnings

    // return String representation of BasePlusCommissionEmployee object
    public String toString()
    {
        return String.format( "%s %s; %s: $%,.2f", 
                "base-salaried", super.toString(), 
                "base salary", getBaseSalary() );
    } // end method toString

} // end class BasePlusCommissionEmployee
```
10.5.6. Demonstrating Polymorphic Processing, Operator `instanceof` and Downcasting

To test our Employee hierarchy, the application in Fig. 10.9 creates an object of each of the four concrete classes `SalariedEmployee`, `HourlyEmployee`, `CommissionEmployee` and `BasePlusCommissionEmployee`. The program manipulates these objects, first via variables of each object's own type, then polymorphically, using an array of `Employee` variables. While processing the objects polymorphically, the program increases the base salary of each `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` by 10% (this, of course, requires determining the object's type at execution time). Finally, the program polymorphically determines and outputs the type of each object in the `Employee` array. Lines 918 create objects of each of the four concrete `Employee` subclasses. Lines 2230 output the string representation and earnings of each of these objects. Note that each object's `toString` method is called implicitly by `printf` when the object is output as a `String` with the `%s` format specifier.

**Figure 10.9. Employee class hierarchy test program.**
(This item is displayed on pages 478 - 480 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 10.9: PayrollSystemTest.java
2 // Employee hierarchy test program.
3
4 public class PayrollSystemTest
5 {
6     public static void main( String args[] )
7     {
8         // create subclass objects
9         SalariedEmployee salariedEmployee =
10             new SalariedEmployee( "John", "Smith", "111-11-1111", 800.00 );
11         HourlyEmployee hourlyEmployee =
12             new HourlyEmployee( "Karen", "Price", "222-22-2222", 16.75, 40 );
13         CommissionEmployee commissionEmployee =
14             new CommissionEmployee( "Sue", "Jones", "333-33-3333", 10000, .06 );
15         BasePlusCommissionEmployee basePlusCommissionEmployee =
16             new BasePlusCommissionEmployee( "Bob", "Lewis", "444-44-4444", 5000, .04, 300 );
17
18         System.out.println( "Employees processed individually:
19     ");
20         System.out.printf( "%s\n%s: $%,.2f\n", salariedEmployee, "earned", salariedEmployee.earnings() );
21         System.out.printf( "%s\n%s: $%,.2f\n", hourlyEmployee, "earned", hourlyEmployee.earnings() );
22         System.out.printf( "%s\n%s: $%,.2f\n", commissionEmployee, "earned", commissionEmployee.earnings() );
23         System.out.printf( "%s\n%s: $%,.2f\n", basePlusCommissionEmployee, "earned", basePlusCommissionEmployee.earnings() );
24     }
25 }
```
System.out.printf("%s\n%s: $%,.2f\n\n", commissionEmployee, "earned", commissionEmployee.earnings() );
System.out.printf("%s\n%s: $%,.2f\n\n", basePlusCommissionEmployee, "earned", basePlusCommissionEmployee.earnings() );

// create four-element Employee array
Employee employees[] = new Employee[ 4 ];

// initialize array with Employees
employees[ 0 ] = salariedEmployee;
employees[ 1 ] = hourlyEmployee;
employees[ 2 ] = commissionEmployee;

System.out.println("Employees processed polymorphically:\n");

// generically process each element in array employees
for ( Employee currentEmployee : employees )
{
    System.out.println( currentEmployee ); // invokes toString

    // determine whether element is a BasePlusCommissionEmployee
    if ( currentEmployee instanceof BasePlusCommissionEmployee )
    {
        // downcast Employee reference to
        // BasePlusCommissionEmployee reference
        BasePlusCommissionEmployee employee =
            ( BasePlusCommissionEmployee ) currentEmployee;

        double oldBaseSalary = employee.getBaseSalary();
        employee.setBaseSalary( 1.10 * oldBaseSalary );
        System.out.printf("new base salary with 10% increase is: $%,.2f\n", employee.getBaseSalary() );
    } // end if

    System.out.printf("earned $%,.2f\n\n", currentEmployee.earnings() );
} // end for

// get type name of each object in employees array
for ( int j = 0; j < employees.length; j++ )
    System.out.printf("Employee %d is a %s\n", j, employees[ j ].getClass().getName() );

Employees processed individually:
salaried employee: John Smith
    social security number: 111-11-1111
    weekly salary: $800.00
    earned: $800.00
hourly employee: Karen Price
social security number: 222-22-2222
hourly wage: $16.75; hours worked: 40.00
earned: $670.00

commission employee: Sue Jones
social security number: 333-33-3333
gross sales: $10,000.00; commission rate: 0.06
earned: $600.00

base-salaried commission employee: Bob Lewis
social security number: 444-44-4444
gross sales: $5,000.00; commission rate: 0.04; base salary: $300.00
earned: $500.00

Employees processed polymorphically:
salaried employee: John Smith
social security number: 111-11-1111
weekly salary: $800.00
earned $800.00

hourly employee: Karen Price
social security number: 222-22-2222
hourly wage: $16.75; hours worked: 40.00
earned $670.00

commission employee: Sue Jones
social security number: 333-33-3333
gross sales: $10,000.00; commission rate: 0.06
earned $600.00

base-salaried commission employee: Bob Lewis
social security number: 444-44-4444
gross sales: $5,000.00; commission rate: 0.04; base salary: $300.00
new base salary with 10% increase is: $330.00
earned $530.00

Employee 0 is a SalariedEmployee
Employee 1 is a HourlyEmployee
Employee 2 is a CommissionEmployee
Employee 3 is a BasePlusCommissionEmployee

Line 33 declares employees and assigns it an array of four Employee variables. Line 36 assigns to element employees[0] the reference to a SalariedEmployee object. Line 37 assigns to element employees[1] the reference to an HourlyEmployee object. Line 38 assigns to element employees[2] the reference to a
CommissionEmployee object. Line 39 assigns to element employee[3] the reference to a BasePlusCommissionEmployee object. Each assignment is allowed, because a SalariedEmployee is an Employee, an HourlyEmployee is an Employee, a CommissionEmployee is an Employee and a BasePlusCommissionEmployee is an Employee. Therefore, we can assign the references of SalariedEmployee, HourlyEmployee, CommissionEmployee and BasePlusCommissionEmployee objects to superclass Employee variables, even though Employee is an abstract class.

Lines 4465 iterate through array employees and invoke methods toString and earnings with Employee variable currentEmployee, which is assigned the reference to a different Employee in the array during each iteration. The output illustrates that the appropriate methods for each class are indeed invoked. All calls to method toString and earnings are resolved at execution time, based on the type of the object to which currentEmployee refers. This process is known as dynamic binding or late binding. For example, line 46 implicitly invokes method toString of the object to which currentEmployee refers. As a result of dynamic binding, Java decides which class's toString method to call at execution time rather than at compile time. Please note that only the methods of class Employee can be called via an Employee variable (and Employee, of course, includes the methods of class Object). (Section 9.7 discusses the set of methods that all classes inherit from class Object.) A superclass reference can be used to invoke only methods of the superclass.

We perform special processing on BasePlusCommissionEmployee objects as we encounter these objects, we increase their base salary by 10%. When processing objects polymorphically, we typically do not need to worry about the "specifics," but to adjust the base salary, we do have to determine the specific type of Employee object at execution time. Line 49 uses the instanceof operator to determine whether a particular Employee object's type is BasePlusCommissionEmployee. The condition in line 49 is true if the object referenced by currentEmployee is a BasePlusCommissionEmployee. This would also be true for any object of a BasePlusCommissionEmployee subclass because of the is-a relationship a subclass has with its superclass. Lines 5354 downcast currentEmployee from type Employee to type BasePlusCommissionEmployee, this cast is allowed only if the object has an is-a relationship with BasePlusCommissionEmployee. The condition at line 49 ensures that this is the case. This cast is required if we are to invoke subclass BasePlusCommissionEmployee methods getBaseSalary and setBaseSalary on the current
Employee object as you will see momentarily, attempting to invoke a subclass-only method directly on a superclass reference is a compilation error.

**Common Programming Error 10.3**

Assigning a superclass variable to a subclass variable (without an explicit cast) is a compilation error.

**Software Engineering Observation 10.5**

If at execution time the reference of a subclass object has been assigned to a variable of one of its direct or indirect superclasses, it is acceptable to cast the reference stored in that superclass variable back to a reference of the subclass type. Before performing such a cast, use the `instanceof` operator to ensure that the object is indeed an object of an appropriate subclass type.

**Common Programming Error 10.4**

When downcasting an object, a `ClassCastException` occurs, if at execution time the object does not have an is-a relationship with the type specified in the cast operator. An object can be cast only to its own type or to the type of one of its superclasses.

If the `instanceof` expression in line 49 is `true`, the `if` statement (lines 49-61) performs the special processing required for the `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` object. Using `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` variable `employee`, lines 56 and 57 invoke subclass-only methods `getBaseSalary` and `setBaseSalary` to retrieve and update the employee's base salary with the 10% raise.
Lines 6364 invoke method `earnings` on `currentEmployee`, which calls the appropriate subclass object's `earnings` method polymorphically. Note that obtaining the earnings of the `SalariedEmployee`, `HourlyEmployee` and `CommissionEmployee` polymorphically in lines 6364 produces the same result as obtaining these employees' earnings individually in lines 2227. However, the earnings amount obtained for the `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` in lines 6364 is higher than that obtained in lines 2830, due to the 10% increase in its base salary.

Lines 6870 display each employee's type as a string. Every object in Java knows its own class and can access this information through method `getClass`, which all classes inherit from class `Object`. Method `getClass` returns an object of type `Class` (package `java.lang`), which contains information about the object's type, including its class name. Line 70 invokes method `getClass` on the object to get its runtime class (i.e., a `Class` object that represents the object's type). Then method `getName` is invoked on the object returned by `getClass` to get the class's name.

In the previous example, we avoid several compilation errors by downcasting an `Employee` variable to a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` variable in lines 5354. If we remove the cast operator `(BasePlusCommissionEmployee)` from line 54 and attempt to assign `Employee` variable `currentEmployee` directly to `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` variable `employee`, we would receive an "incompatible types" compilation error. This error indicates that the attempt to assign the reference of superclass object `commissionEmployee` to subclass variable `basePlusCommissionEmployee` is not allowed. The compiler prevents this assignment because a `CommissionEmployee` is not a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` the `is-a` relationship applies only between the subclass and its superclasses, not vice versa.

Similarly, if lines 56, 57 and 60 used superclass variable `currentEmployee`, rather than subclass variable `employee`, to invoke subclass-only methods `getBaseSalary` and `setBaseSalary`, we would receive a "cannot find symbol" compilation error on each of these lines. Attempting to invoke subclass-only methods on a superclass reference is not allowed. While lines 56, 57 and 60 execute only if `instanceof` in line 49 returns true to indicate that `currentEmployee` has been assigned a reference to a `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` object, we cannot attempt to invoke subclass `BasePlusCommissionEmployee` methods `getBaseSalary` and `setBaseSalary` on superclass `Employee` reference `currentEmployee`. The compiler would generate errors on lines 56, 57 and 60, because `getBaseSalary` and `setBaseSalary` are not superclass methods and cannot be invoked on a superclass variable. Although the actual method that is called depends on the object's type at execution.
time, a variable can be used to invoke only those methods that are members of that variable's type, which the compiler verifies. Using a superclass `Employee` variable, we can invoke only methods found in class `Employee`. `earnings`, `toString` and `Employee`'s `get` and `set` methods.

### 10.5.7. Summary of the Allowed Assignments Between Superclass and Subclass Variables

Now that you have seen a complete application that processes diverse subclass objects polymorphically, we summarize what you can and cannot do with superclass and subclass objects and variables. Although a subclass object also is a superclass object, the two objects are nevertheless different. As discussed previously, subclass objects can be treated as if they are superclass objects. However, the subclass can have additional subclass-only members. For this reason, assigning a superclass reference to a subclass variable is not allowed without an explicit cast such an assignment would leave the subclass members undefined for the superclass object.

In the current section, in **Section 10.3** and in **Chapter 9**, we have discussed four ways to assign superclass and subclass references to variables of superclass and subclass types:

1. Assigning a superclass reference to a superclass variable is straightforward.

2. Assigning a subclass reference to a subclass variable is straightforward.

3. Assigning a subclass reference to a superclass variable is safe, because the subclass object is an object of its superclass. However, this reference can be used to refer only to superclass members. If this code refers to subclass-only members through the superclass variable, the compiler reports errors.

4. Attempting to assign a superclass reference to a subclass variable is a compilation error. To avoid this error, the superclass reference must be cast to a subclass type explicitly. At execution time, if the object to which the reference refers is not a subclass object, an exception will occur. (For more on exception handling, see **Chapter 13**, **Exception Handling**.) The `instanceof` operator can be used to ensure that such a cast is performed only if the
object is a subclass object.
10.6. **final** Methods and Classes

We saw in [Section 6.10](#) that variables can be declared `final` to indicate that they cannot be modified after they are declared and that they must be initialized when they are declared: such variables represent constant values. It is also possible to declare methods and classes with the `final` modifier.

A method that is declared `final` in a superclass cannot be overridden in a subclass. Methods that are declared `private` are implicitly `final`, because it is impossible to override them in a subclass (though the subclass can declare a new method with the same signature as the `private` method in the superclass). Methods that are declared `static` are also implicitly `final`, because `static` methods cannot be overridden either. A `final` method's declaration can never change, so all subclasses use the same method implementation and calls to `final` methods are resolved at compile time: this is known as **static binding**. Since the compiler knows that `final` methods cannot be overridden, it can optimize programs by removing calls to `final` methods and replacing them with the expanded code of their declarations at each method call location: a technique known as **inlining the code**.

**Performance Tip 10.1**

*The compiler can decide to inline a `final` method call and will do so for small, simple `final` methods. Inlining does not violate encapsulation or information hiding, but does improve performance because it eliminates the overhead of making a method call.*

A class that is declared `final` cannot be a superclass (i.e., a class cannot extend a `final` class). All methods in a `final` class are implicitly `final`. Class `String` is an example of a `final` class. This class cannot be extended, so programs that use `Strings` can rely on the functionality of `String` objects as specified in the Java API. Making the class `final` also prevents programmers from creating subclasses that might bypass security restrictions. For more information on `final` classes and methods, visit [java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/java/javaOO/final.html](http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/java/javaOO/final.html). This site contains...
additional insights into using final classes to improve the security of a system.

Common Programming Error 10.5

Attempting to declare a subclass of a final class is a compilation error.

Software Engineering Observation 10.6

In the Java API, the vast majority of classes are not declared final. This enables inheritance and polymorphism—the fundamental capabilities of object-oriented programming. However, in some cases, it is important to declare classes final typically for security reasons.
10.7. Case Study: Creating and Using Interfaces

Our next example (Fig. 10.11, Fig. 10.13) reexamines the payroll system of Section 10.5. Suppose that the company involved wishes to perform several accounting operations in a single accounts payable application in addition to calculating the earnings that must be paid to each employee, the company must also calculate the payment due on each of several invoices (i.e., bills for goods purchased). Though applied to unrelated things (i.e., employees and invoices), both operations have to do with obtaining some kind of payment amount. For an employee, the payment refers to the employee's earnings. For an invoice, the payment refers to the total cost of the goods listed on the invoice. Can we calculate such different things as the payments due for employees and invoices in a single application polymorphically? Does Java offer a capability that requires that unrelated classes implement a set of common methods (e.g., a method that calculates a payment amount)? Java interfaces offer exactly this capability.

Interfaces define and standardize the ways in which things such as people and systems can interact with one another. For example, the controls on a radio serve as an interface between radio users and a radio's internal components. The controls allow users to perform only a limited set of operations (e.g., changing the station, adjusting the volume, choosing between AM and FM), and different radios may implement the controls in different ways (e.g., using push buttons, dials, voice commands). The interface specifies what operations a radio must permit users to perform but does not specify how the operations are performed. Similarly, the interface between a driver and a car with a manual transmission includes the steering wheel, the gear shift, the clutch pedal, the gas pedal and the brake pedal. This same interface is found in nearly all manual transmission cars, enabling someone who knows how to drive one particular manual transmission car to drive just about any manual transmission car. The components of each individual car may look different, but the components' general purpose is the same—to allow people to drive the car.

Software objects also communicate via interfaces. A Java interface describes a set of methods that can be called on an object, to tell the object to perform some task or return some piece of information, for example. The next example introduces an interface named Payable to describe the functionality of any object that must be capable of being paid and thus must offer a method to determine the proper payment amount due. An interface declaration begins with the keyword interface and contains only constants and abstract methods.
Unlike classes, all interface members must be `public`, and interfaces may not specify any implementation details, such as concrete method declarations and instance variables. So all methods declared in an interface are implicitly `public abstract` methods and all fields are implicitly `public, static and final`.

**Good Programming Practice 10.1**

According to Chapter 9 of the Java Language Specification, it is proper style to declare an interface's methods without keywords `public` and `abstract` because they are redundant in interface method declarations. Similarly, constants should be declared without keywords `public, static and final` because they, too, are redundant.

To use an interface, a concrete class must specify that it `implements` the interface and must declare each method in the interface with the signature specified in the interface declaration. A class that does not implement all the methods of the interface is an abstract class and must be declared `abstract`. Implementing an interface is like signing a contract with the compiler that states, "I will declare all the methods specified by the interface or I will declare my class `abstract`."  

**Common Programming Error 10.6**

Failing to implement any method of an interface in a concrete class that `implements` the interface results in a syntax error indicating that the class must be declared `abstract`.

An interface is typically used when disparate (i.e., unrelated) classes need to share common methods and constants. This allows objects of unrelated classes to be processed polymorphically—objects of classes that implement the same interface can respond to the same method calls. Programmers can create an interface that describes the desired functionality, then implement this interface...
in any classes that require that functionality. For example, in the accounts payable application developed in this section, we implement interface `Payable` in any class that must be able to calculate a payment amount (e.g., `Employee`, `Invoice`).

An interface is often used in place of an `abstract` class when there is no default implementation to inherit—that is, no fields and no default method implementations. Like `public abstract` classes, interfaces are typically `public` types, so they are normally declared in files by themselves with the same name as the interface and the `.java` file-name extension.

### 10.7.1. Developing a Payable Hierarchy

To build an application that can determine payments for employees and invoices alike, we first create interface `Payable` ([Fig. 10.11](#)). Interface `Payable` contains method `getPaymentAmount` that returns a `double` amount that must be paid for an object of any class that implements the interface. Method `getPaymentAmount` is a general purpose version of method `earnings` of the `Employee` hierarchy; method `earnings` calculates a payment amount specifically for an `Employee`, while `getPaymentAmount` can be applied to a broad range of unrelated objects. After declaring interface `Payable`, we introduce class `Invoice` ([Fig. 10.12](#)), which implements interface `Payable`. We then modify class `Employee` such that it also implements interface `Payable`. Finally, we update `Employee` subclass `SalariedEmployee` to "fit" into the `Payable` hierarchy (i.e., rename `SalariedEmployee` method `earnings` as `getPaymentAmount`).

---

**Good Programming Practice 10.2**

> When declaring a method in an interface, choose a method name that describes the method’s purpose in a general manner, because the method may be implemented by a broad range of unrelated classes.

Classes `Invoice` and `Employee` both represent things for which the company must be able to calculate a payment amount. Both classes implement `Payable`, so a
program can invoke method `getPaymentAmount` on `Invoice` objects and `Employee` objects alike. As we will soon see, this enables the polymorphic processing of `Invoices` and `Employees` required for our company's accounts payable application.

The UML class diagram in Fig. 10.10 shows the hierarchy used in our accounts payable application. The hierarchy begins with interface `Payable`. The UML distinguishes an interface from other classes by placing the word "interface" in guillemets (« and ») above the interface name. The UML expresses the relationship between a class and an interface through a relationship known as a realization. A class is said to "realize," or implement, the methods of an interface. A class diagram models a realization as a dashed arrow with a hollow arrowhead pointing from the implementing class to the interface. The diagram in Fig. 10.10 indicates that classes `Invoice` and `Employee` each realize (i.e., implement) interface `Payable`. Note that, as in the class diagram of Fig. 10.2, class `Employee` appears in italics, indicating that it is an abstract class. Concrete class `SalariedEmployee` extends `Employee` and inherits its superclass's realization relationship with interface `Payable`.

**Figure 10.10. Payable interface hierarchy UML class diagram.**

[View full size image]

### 10.7.2. Declaring Interface `Payable`

The declaration of interface `Payable` begins in Fig. 10.11 at line 4. Interface `Payable` contains public abstract method `getPaymentAmount` (line 6). Note that the method is not explicitly declared public or abstract. Interface methods must be public and abstract, so they do not need to be declared as such. Interface `Payable` has only one method; interfaces can have any number of methods. (We will see
later in the book the notion of "tagging interfaces" these actually have no methods. In fact, a tagging interface contains no constant values either simply contains an empty interface declaration.) In addition, method getPaymentAmount has no parameters, but interface methods can have parameters.

Figure 10.11. Payable interface declaration.

```
1  // Fig. 10.11: Payable.java
2  // Payable interface declaration.
3  
4  public interface Payable {
5      double getPaymentAmount(); // calculate payment; no implementation
6  } // end interface Payable
```

10.7.3. Creating Class Invoice

We now create class Invoice (Fig. 10.12) to represent a simple invoice that contains billing information for only one kind of part. The class declares private instance variables partNumber, partDescription, quantity and pricePerItem (in lines 69) that indicate the part number, a description of the part, the quantity of the part ordered and the price per item. Class Invoice also contains a constructor (lines 1219), get and set methods (lines 2267) that manipulate the class's instance variables and a toString method (lines 7075) that returns a string representation of an Invoice object. Note that methods setQuantity (lines 4649) and setPricePerItem (lines 5861) ensure that quantity and pricePerItem obtain only non-negative values.

Figure 10.12. Invoice class that implements Payable.

(This item is displayed on pages 487 - 488 in the print version)
```java
// Invoice class implements Payable.

public class Invoice implements Payable {

    private String partNumber;
    private String partDescription;
    private int quantity;
    private double pricePerItem;

    // four-argument constructor
    public Invoice( String part, String description, int count,
                    double price ) {
        partNumber = part;
        partDescription = description;
        setQuantity( count ); // validate and store quantity
        setPricePerItem( price ); // validate and store price per item
    } // end four-argument Invoice constructor

    // set part number
    public void setPartNumber( String part ) {
        partNumber = part;
    } // end method setPartNumber

    // get part number
    public String getPartNumber() {
        return partNumber;
    } // end method getPartNumber

    // set description
    public void setPartDescription( String description ) {
        partDescription = description;
    } // end method setPartDescription

    // get description
    public String getPartDescription() {
        return partDescription;
    } // end method getPartDescription

    // set quantity
    public void setQuantity( int count ) {
        quantity = ( count < 0 ) ? 0 : count; // quantity cannot be negative
    } // end method setQuantity

    // get quantity
    public int getQuantity() {
        return quantity;
    } // end method getQuantity

    // set price per item
    public void setPricePerItem( double price ) {
        pricePerItem = ( price < 0.0 ) ? 0.0 : price; // validate price
    } // end method setPricePerItem
```
Line 4 of Fig. 10.12 indicates that class Invoice implements interface Payable. Like all classes, class Invoice also implicitly extends Object. Java does not allow subclasses to inherit from more than one superclass, but it does allow a class to inherit from a superclass and implement more than one interface. In fact, a class can implement as many interfaces as it needs, in addition to extending another class. To implement more than one interface, use a comma-separated list of interface names after keyword implements in the class declaration, as in:

```
public class ClassName extends SuperclassName implements FirstInterface, SecondInterface, ...
```

All objects of a class that implement multiple interfaces have the is-a relationship with each implemented interface type.

Class Invoice implements the one method in interface Payable. Method getPaymentAmount is declared in lines 78-81. The method calculates the total payment required to pay the invoice. The method multiplies the values of quantity and pricePerItem (obtained through the appropriate get methods) and returns the result (line 80). This method satisfies the implementation requirement for this method in interface Payable; we have fulfilled the interface contract with the compiler.

10.7.4. Modifying Class Employee to Implement Interface Payable
We now modify class `Employee` such that it implements interface `Payable`. Figure 10.13 contains the modified `Employee` class. This class declaration is identical to that of Fig. 10.4 with only two exceptions. First, line 4 of Fig. 10.13 indicates that class `Employee` now implements interface `Payable`. Second, since `Employee` now implements interface `Payable`, we must rename `earnings` to `getPaymentAmount` throughout the `Employee` hierarchy. As with method `earnings` in the version of class `Employee` in Fig. 10.4, however, it does not make sense to implement method `getPaymentAmount` in class `Employee` because we cannot calculate the earnings payment owed to a general `Employee` first we must know the specific type of `Employee`. In Fig. 10.4, we declared method `earnings` as `abstract` for this reason, and as a result class `Employee` had to be declared `abstract`. This forced each `Employee` subclass to override `earnings` with a concrete implementation.

Figure 10.13. `Employee` class that implements `Payable`. (This item is displayed on pages 489 - 490 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 10.13: Employee.java
// Employee abstract superclass implements Payable.

public abstract class Employee implements Payable {

  private String firstName;
  private String lastName;
  private String socialSecurityNumber;

  // three-argument constructor
  public Employee( String first, String last, String ssn )
  {
    firstName = first;
    lastName = last;
    socialSecurityNumber = ssn;
  } // end three-argument Employee constructor

  // set first name
  public void setFirstName( String first )
  {
    firstName = first;
  } // end method setFirstName

  // return first name
  public String getFirstName()
  {
    return firstName;
  } // end method getFirstName

  // set last name
  public void setLastName( String last )
```
In 

Fig. 10.13, we handle this situation differently. Recall that when a class implements an interface, the class makes a contract with the compiler stating either that the class will implement each of the methods in the interface or that the class will be declared abstract. If the latter option is chosen, we do not need to declare the interface methods as abstract in the abstract class; they are already implicitly declared as such in the interface. Any concrete subclass of the abstract class must implement the interface methods to fulfill the superclass's contract with the compiler. If the subclass does not do so, it too must be declared abstract. As indicated by the comments in lines 61-62, class Employee of Fig. 10.13 does not implement method getPaymentAmount, so the class is declared abstract. Each direct Employee subclass inherits the superclass's contract to implement method getPaymentAmount and thus must implement this method to become a concrete class for which objects can be instantiated. A class that extends one of Employee's concrete subclasses will inherit an implementation of
getPaymentAmount and thus will also be a concrete class.

10.7.5. Modifying Class SalariedEmployee for Use in the Payable Hierarchy

Figure 10.14 contains a modified version of class SalariedEmployee that extends Employee and fulfills superclass Employee's contract to implement method getPaymentAmount of interface Payable. This version of SalariedEmployee is identical to that of Fig. 10.5 with the exception that the version here implements method getPaymentAmount (lines 3033) instead of method earnings. The two methods contain the same functionality but have different names. Recall that the Payable version of the method has a more general name to be applicable to possibly disparate classes. The remaining Employee subclasses (e.g., HourlyEmployee, CommissionEmployee and BasePlusCommissionEmployee) also must be modified to contain method getPaymentAmount in place of earnings to reflect the fact that Employee now implements Payable. We leave these modifications as an exercise and use only SalariedEmployee in our test program in this section.

Figure 10.14. SalariedEmployee class that implements interface Payable method getPaymentAmount.

(This item is displayed on page 492 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 10.14: SalariedEmployee.java
// SalariedEmployee class extends Employee, which implements Payable.

public class SalariedEmployee extends Employee {
    private double weeklySalary;

    // four-argument constructor
    public SalariedEmployee( String first, String last, String ssn, double salary )
    { super( first, last, ssn ); // pass to Employee constructor
        setWeeklySalary( salary ); // validate and store salary
    }

    // set salary
    public void setWeeklySalary( double salary )
    { weeklySalary = salary < 0.0 ? 0.0 : salary; }

    // return salary
    public double getWeeklySalary()
```
When a class implements an interface, the same is-a relationship provided by inheritance applies. For example, class Employee implements Payable, so we can say that an Employee is a Payable. In fact, objects of any classes that extend Employee are also Payable objects. SalariedEmployee objects, for instance, are Payable objects. As with inheritance relationships, an object of a class that implements an interface may be thought of as an object of the interface class. Objects of any subclasses of the class that implements the interface can also be thought of as objects of the interface class. Thus, just as we can assign the reference of a SalariedEmployee object to a superclass Employee variable, we can assign the reference of a SalariedEmployee object to an interface Payable variable. Invoice implements Payable, so an Invoice object also is a Payable object, and we can assign the reference of an Invoice object to a Payable variable.

Software Engineering Observation 10.7

Inheritance and interfaces are similar in their implementation of the "is-a" relationship. An object of a class that implements an interface may be thought of as an object of that interface type. An object of any subclasses of a class that implements an interface also can be thought of as an object of the interface type.
Software Engineering Observation 10.8

The "is-a" relationship that exists between superclasses and subclasses, and between interfaces and the classes that implement them, holds when passing an object to a method. When a method parameter receives a variable of a superclass or interface type, the method processes the object received as an argument polymorphically.

Software Engineering Observation 10.9

Using a superclass reference, we can polymorphically invoke any method specified in the superclass declaration (and in class Object). Using an interface reference, we can polymorphically invoke any method specified in the interface declaration (and in class Object).

10.7.6. Using Interface Payable to Process Invoices and Employees Polymorphically

PayableInterfaceTest (Fig. 10.15) illustrates that interface Payable can be used to process a set of Invoices and Employees polymorphically in a single application. Line 9 declares payableObjects and assigns it an array of four Payable variables. Lines 1213 assign the references of Invoice objects to the first two elements of payableObjects. Lines 1417 then assign the references of SalariedEmployee objects to the remaining two elements of payableObjects. These assignments are allowed because an Invoice is a Payable, a SalariedEmployee is an Employee and an Employee is a Payable. Lines 2329 use the enhanced for statement to polymorphically process each Payable object in payableObjects, printing the object as a String, along with the payment amount due. Note that line 27 invokes method toString off a Payable interface reference, even though toString is not declared in interface Payable. All references (including those of interface types) refer to objects that
extend Object and therefore have a toString method. Line 28 invokes Payable method getPaymentAmount to obtain the payment amount for each object in payableObjects, regardless of the actual type of the object. The output reveals that the method calls in lines 27-28 invoke the appropriate class's implementation of methods toString and getPaymentAmount. For instance, when currentEmployee refers to an Invoice during the first iteration of the for loop, class Invoice's toString and getPaymentAmount execute.

Figure 10.15. Payable interface test program processing Invoices and Employees polymorphically.

(This item is displayed on pages 493 - 494 in the print version)
Software Engineering Observation 10.10

All methods of class Object can be called by using a reference of an interface type. A reference refers to an object, and all objects inherit the methods of class Object.

10.7.7. Declaring Constants with Interfaces

As we mentioned in Section 10.7, an interface can declare constants. The constants are implicitly public, static and final again, these keywords are not required in the interface declaration. One popular use of an interface is to declare a set of constants that can be used in many class declarations. Consider interface Constants:
public interface Constants
{
    int ONE = 1;
    int TWO = 2;
    int THREE = 3;
}

A class can use these constants by importing the interface, then referring to each constant as Constants.ONE, Constants.TWO and Constants.THREE. Note that a class can refer to the imported constants with just their names (i.e., ONE, TWO and THREE) if it uses a static import declaration (presented in Section 8.12) to import the interface.

Software Engineering Observation 10.11

As of J2SE 5.0, it is considered a better programming practice to create sets of constants as enumerations with keyword enum. See Section 6.10 for an introduction to enum and Section 8.9 for additional enum details.

10.7.8. Common Interfaces of the Java API

In this section, we overview several common interfaces found in the Java API. The power and flexibility of interfaces is used frequently throughout the Java API. These interfaces are implemented and used in the same manner as the interfaces you create (e.g., interface Payable in Section 10.7.2). As you will see throughout this book, the Java API's interfaces enable you to extend many important aspects of Java with your own classes. Figure 10.16 presents a brief overview of a few of the more popular interfaces of the Java API that we use in Java How to Program, Sixth Edition.

Figure 10.16. Common interfaces of the Java API.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Interface comparable</td>
<td>As you learned in Chapter 2, Java contains several comparison operators (e.g., <code>&lt;</code>, <code>&lt;==</code>, <code>&gt;</code>, <code>&gt;==</code>, <code>==</code>, <code>!=</code>) that allow you to compare primitive values. However, these operators cannot be used to compare the contents of objects. Interface Comparable is used to allow objects of a class that implements the interface to be compared to one another. The interface contains one method, <code>compareTo</code>, that compares the object that calls the method to the object passed as an argument to the method. Classes must implement <code>compareTo</code> such that it returns a value indicating whether the object on which it is invoked is less than (negative integer return value), equal to (0 return value) or greater than (positive integer return value) the object passed as an argument, using any criteria specified by the programmer. For example, if class Employee implements Comparable, its <code>compareTo</code> method could compare Employee objects by their earnings amounts. Interface Comparable is commonly used for ordering objects in a collection such as an array. We use Comparable in Chapter 18, Generics, and Chapter 19, Collections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serializable</td>
<td>A tagging interface used only to identify classes whose objects can be written to (i.e., serialized) or read from (i.e., deserialized) some type of storage (e.g., file on disk, database field) or transmitted across a network. We use Serializable in Chapter 14, Files and Streams, and Chapter 24, Networking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Runnable</td>
<td>Implemented by any class for which objects of that class should be able to execute in parallel using a technique called multithreading (discussed in Chapter 23, Multithreading). The interface contains one method, <code>run</code>, which describes the behavior of an object when executed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUI event-listener</td>
<td>You work with Graphical User Interfaces (GUIs) every day. For example, in your Web browser, you might type in a text field the address of a Web site to visit, or you might click a button to return to the previous site you visited. When you type a Web site address or click a button in the Web browser, the browser must respond to your interaction and perform the desired task for you. Your interaction is known as an event, and the code that the browser uses to respond to an event is known as an event handler. In Chapter 11, GUI Components: Part 1, and Chapter 22, GUI Components: Part 2, you will learn how to build Java GUIs and how to build event handlers to respond to user interactions. The event handlers are declared in classes that implement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
an appropriate event-listener interface. Each event listener interface specifies one or more methods that must be implemented to respond to user interactions.

Contains a set of constants used in GUI programming to position GUI elements on the screen. We explore GUI programming in Chapters 11 and 22.
10.8. (Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Drawing with Polymorphism

You may have noticed in the drawing program created in Exercise 8.1 (and modified in Exercise 9.1) that there are many similarities between the shape classes. Using inheritance, we can "factor out" the common features from all three classes and place them in a single shape superclass. We can then manipulate objects of all three shape types polymorphically using variables of the superclass type. Removing the redundancy in the code will result in a smaller, more flexible program that is easier to maintain.

GUI and Graphics Case Study Exercises

Modify the MyLine, MyOval, and MyRectangle classes of Exercise 8.1 and Exercise 9.1 to create the class hierarchy in Fig. 10.17. Classes of the MyShape hierarchy should be "smart" shape classes that know how to draw themselves (if provided with a Graphics object that tells them where to draw). Once the program creates an object from this hierarchy, it can manipulate it polymorphically for the rest of its lifetime as a MyShape.

Figure 10.17. MyShape hierarchy.
(This item is displayed on page 497 in the print version)

1. In your solution, class MyShape in Fig. 10.17 must be abstract. Since MyShape represents any shape in general, you cannot implement a draw method without knowing exactly what shape it is. The data representing the coordinates and color of the shapes in the hierarchy should be declared as private members of class MyShape. In addition to the common data, class MyShape should declare the following methods:

1. A no-argument constructor that sets all the coordinates of the shape to 0 and the color to Color.BLACK.
2. A constructor that initializes the coordinates and color to the values of the arguments supplied.

3. Set methods for the individual coordinates and color that allow the programmer to set any piece of data independently for a shape in the hierarchy.

4. Get methods for the individual coordinates and color that allow the programmer to retrieve any piece of data independently for a shape in the hierarchy.

5. The abstract method

   ```java
   public abstract void draw( Graphics g );
   ```

   which will be called from the program's `paintComponent` method to draw a shape on the screen.

To ensure proper encapsulation, all data in class `MyShape` must be private. This requires declaring proper set and get methods to manipulate the data. Class `MyLine` should provide a no-argument constructor and a constructor with arguments for the coordinates and color. Classes `MyOval` and `MyRect` should provide a no-argument constructor and a constructor with arguments for the coordinates, color and determining whether the shape is filled. The no-argument constructor should, in addition to setting the default values, set the shape to be an unfilled shape.

You can draw lines, rectangles and ovals if you know two points in space. Lines require \( x_1, y_1, x_2 \) and \( y_2 \) coordinates. The `drawLine` method of the `Graphics` class will connect the two points supplied with a line. If you have the same four coordinate values \( (x_1, y_1, x_2, y_2) \) for ovals and rectangles, you can calculate the four arguments needed to draw them. Each requires an upper-left \( x \)-coordinate value (the smaller of the two \( x \)-coordinate values), an upper-left \( y \)-coordinate value (the smaller of the two \( y \) coordinate values), a width (the absolute value of the difference between the two \( x \)-coordinate values) and a height (the absolute value of the difference between the two \( y \)-coordinate values). Rectangles and ovals should also have a filled flag that determines whether to draw the shape as a filled shape.

There should be no `MyLine`, `MyOval` or `MyRectangle` variables in the program only `MyShape` variables that contain references to `MyLine`, `MyOval` and `MyRectangle` objects. The program should generate random shapes and store them in an array of type `MyShape`. Method `paintComponent` should walk through the `MyShape` array and draw every shape (i.e., polymorphically calling every shape's `draw` method).

[Page 498]

Allow the user to specify (via an input dialog) the number of shapes to generate. The program will then generate and display the shapes along with a status bar that informs the user how many of each shape were created.

(Drawing Application Modification)
In Exercise 10.1, you created a `MyShape` hierarchy in which classes `MyLine`, `MyOval` and `MyRectangle` extend `MyShape` directly. If your hierarchy was properly designed, you should be able to see the similarities between the `MyOval` and `MyRectangle` classes. Redesign and
reimplement the code for the `MyOval` and `MyRectangle` classes to "factor out" the common features into the abstract class `MyBoundedShape` to produce the hierarchy in Fig. 10.18.

**Figure 10.18. MyShape hierarchy with MyBoundedShape.**

Class `MyBoundedShape` should declare two constructors that mimic the constructors of class `MyShape`, only with an added parameter to set whether the shape is filled. Class `MyBoundedShape` should also declare `get` and `set` methods for manipulating the filled flag and methods that calculate the upper-left `x`-coordinate, upper-left `y`-coordinate, width and height. Remember, the values needed to draw an oval or a rectangle can be calculated from two `(x, y)` coordinates. If designed properly, the new `MyOval` and `MyRectangle` classes should each have two constructors and a `draw` method.
10.9. (Optional) Software Engineering Case Study: Incorporating Inheritance into the ATM System

We now revisit our ATM system design to see how it might benefit from inheritance. To apply inheritance, we first look for commonality among classes in the system. We create an inheritance hierarchy to model similar (yet not identical) classes in a more elegant and efficient manner. We then modify our class diagram to incorporate the new inheritance relationships. Finally, we demonstrate how our updated design is translated into Java code.

In Section 3.10, we encountered the problem of representing a financial transaction in the system. Rather than create one class to represent all transaction types, we decided to create three individual transaction classes BalanceInquiry, Withdrawal and Deposit to represent the transactions that the ATM system can perform. Figure 10.19 shows the attributes and operations of classes BalanceInquiry, Withdrawal and Deposit. Note that these classes have one attribute (accountNumber) and one operation (execute) in common. Each class requires attribute accountNumber to specify the account to which the transaction applies. Each class contains operation execute, which the ATM invokes to perform a transaction. Clearly, BalanceInquiry, Withdrawal and Deposit represent types of transactions. Figure 10.19 reveals commonality among the transaction classes, so using inheritance to factor out the common features seems appropriate for designing classes BalanceInquiry, Withdrawal and Deposit. We place the common functionality in a superclass, transaction, that classes BalanceInquiry, Withdrawal and Deposit extend.
The UML specifies a relationship called a **generalization** to model inheritance. **Figure 10.20** is the class diagram that models the generalization of superclass **Transaction** and subclasses **BalanceInquiry**, **Withdrawal** and **Deposit**. The arrows with triangular hollow arrowheads indicate that classes **BalanceInquiry**, **Withdrawal** and **Deposit** extend class **Transaction**. Class **Transaction** is said to be a generalization of classes **BalanceInquiry**, **Withdrawal** and **Deposit**. Class **BalanceInquiry**, **Withdrawal** and **Deposit** are said to be **specializations** of class **transaction**.

**Figure 10.20.** Class diagram modeling generalization of superclass **Transaction** and subclasses **BalanceInquiry**, **Withdrawal** and **Deposit**. Note that abstract class names (e.g., **transaction**) and method names (e.g., **execute** in class **transaction**) appear in italics.

Classes **BalanceInquiry**, **Withdrawal** and **Deposit** share integer attribute **accountNumber**, so we factor out this common attribute and place it in superclass **Transaction**.
We no longer list `accountNumber` in the second compartment of each subclass, because the three subclasses inherit this attribute from `transaction`. Recall, however, that subclasses cannot access private attributes of a superclass. We therefore include `public` method `getAccountNumber` in class `transaction`. Each subclass will inherit this method, enabling the subclass to access its `accountNumber` as needed to execute a transaction.

According to Fig. 10.19, classes `BalanceInquiry`, `Withdrawal` and `Deposit` also share operation `execute`, so we decided that superclass `transaction` should contain `public` method `execute`. However, it does not make sense to implement `execute` in class `transaction`, because the functionality that this method provides depends on the type of the actual transaction. We therefore declare method `execute` as `abstract` in superclass `transaction`. Any class that contains at least one abstract method must also be declared `abstract`. This forces any subclass of `transaction` that must be a concrete class (i.e., `BalanceInquiry`, `Withdrawal` and `Deposit`) to implement method `execute`. The UML requires that we place abstract class names (and abstract methods) in italics, so `transaction` and its method `execute` appear in italics in Fig. 10.20. Note that method `execute` is not italicized in subclasses `BalanceInquiry`, `Withdrawal` and `Deposit`. Each subclass overrides superclass `transaction`'s `execute` method with a concrete implementation that performs the steps appropriate for completing that type of transaction. Note that Fig. 10.20 includes operation `execute` in the third compartment of classes `BalanceInquiry`, `Withdrawal` and `Deposit`, because each class has a different concrete implementation of the overridden method.

Incorporating inheritance provides the ATM with an elegant way to execute all transactions "in the general." For example, suppose a user chooses to perform a balance inquiry. The ATM sets a `transaction` reference to a new object of class `BalanceInquiry`. When the ATM uses its `transaction` reference to invoke method `execute`, `BalanceInquiry`'s version of `execute` is called.

This polymorphic approach also makes the system easily extensible. Should we wish to create a new transaction type (e.g., funds transfer or bill payment), we would just create an additional `transaction` subclass that overrides the `execute` method with a version of the method appropriate for executing the new transaction type. We would need to make only minimal changes to the system code to allow users to choose the new transaction type from the main menu and for the ATM to instantiate and execute objects of the new subclass. The ATM could execute transactions of the new type using the current code, because it executes all transactions polymorphically using a general `transaction` reference.
As you learned earlier in the chapter, an abstract class like Transaction is one for which the programmer never intends to instantiate objects. An abstract class simply declares common attributes and behaviors of its subclasses in an inheritance hierarchy. Class Transaction defines the concept of what it means to be a transaction that has an account number and executes. You may wonder why we bother to include abstract method execute in class Transaction if it lacks a concrete implementation. Conceptually, we include this method because it corresponds to the defining behavior of all transaction executing. Technically, we must include method execute in superclass Transaction so that the ATM (or any other class) can polymorphically invoke each subclass's overridden version of this method through a Transaction reference. Also, from a software engineering perspective, including an abstract method in a superclass forces the implementor of the subclasses to override that method with concrete implementations in the subclasses, or else the subclasses, too, will be abstract, preventing objects of those subclasses from being instantiated.

Subclasses BalanceInquiry, Withdrawal and Deposit inherit attribute accountNumber from superclass Transaction, but classes Withdrawal and Deposit contain the additional attribute amount that distinguishes them from class BalanceInquiry. Classes Withdrawal and Deposit require this additional attribute to store the amount of money that the user wishes to withdraw or deposit. Class BalanceInquiry has no need for such an attribute and requires only an account number to execute. Even though two of the three Transaction subclasses share this attribute, we do not place it in superclass Transaction we place only features common to all the subclasses in the superclass, otherwise subclasses could inherit attributes (and methods) that they do not need and should not have.

Figure 10.21 presents an updated class diagram of our model that incorporates inheritance and introduces class Transaction. We model an association between class ATM and class Transaction to show that the ATM, at any given moment, is either executing a transaction or it is not (i.e., zero or one objects of type Transaction exist in the system at a time). Because a Withdrawal is a type of transaction, we no longer draw an association line directly between class ATM and class Withdrawal. Subclass Withdrawal inherits superclass Transaction's association with class ATM. Subclasses BalanceInquiry and Deposit inherit this association, too, so the previously omitted associations between ATM and classes BalanceInquiry and Deposit no longer exist either.
We also add an association between class transaction and the BankDatabase (Fig. 10.21). All transactions require a reference to the BankDatabase so they can access and modify account information. Because each Transaction subclass inherits this reference, we no longer model the association between class Withdrawal and the BankDatabase. Similarly, the previously omitted associations between the BankDatabase and classes BalanceInquiry and Deposit no longer exist.

We show an association between class Transaction and the Screen. All transactions display output to the user via the Screen. Thus, we no longer include the association previously modeled between Withdrawal and the Screen, although Withdrawal still participates in associations with the CashDispenser and the Keypad. Our class diagram incorporating inheritance also models Deposit and BalanceInquiry. We show associations between Deposit and both the DepositSlot and the Keypad. Note that class BalanceInquiry takes part in no associations other than those inherited from class transaction. A BalanceInquiry needs to interact only
with the BankDatabase and with the Screen.

The class diagram of Fig. 8.24 showed attributes and operations with visibility markers. Now we present a modified class diagram that incorporates inheritance in Fig. 10.22. This abbreviated diagram does not show inheritance relationships, but instead shows the attributes and methods after we have employed inheritance in our system. To save space, as we did in Fig. 4.24, we do not include those attributes shown by associations in Fig. 10.21; we do, however, include them in the Java implementation in Appendix J. We also omit all operation parameters, as we did in Fig. 8.24 incorporating inheritance does not affect the parameters already modeled in Fig. 6.22Fig. 6.25.

Figure 10.22. Class diagram with attributes and operations (incorporating inheritance). Note that abstract class names (e.g., transaction) and method names (e.g., execute in class transaction) appear in italics.

(This item is displayed on page 503 in the print version)
Software Engineering Observation 10.12

A complete class diagram shows all the associations among classes and all the attributes and operations for each class. When the number of class attributes, methods and associations is substantial (as in Fig. 10.21 and Fig. 10.22), a good practice that promotes readability is to divide this information between two class diagrams—one focusing on associations and the other on attributes and methods.

Implementing the ATM System Design (Incorporating Inheritance)

In Section 8.19, we began implementing the ATM system design in Java code. We now modify our implementation to incorporate inheritance, using class Withdrawal as an example.

1. If a class \( A \) is a generalization of class \( B \), then class \( B \) extends class \( A \) in the class declaration. For example, abstract superclass transaction is a generalization of class Withdrawal. Figure 10.23 contains the shell of class Withdrawal containing the appropriate class declaration.

2. If class \( A \) is an abstract class and class \( B \) is a subclass of class \( A \), then class \( B \) must implement the abstract methods of class \( A \) if class \( B \) is to be a concrete class. For example, class TRansaction contains abstract method execute, so class Withdrawal must implement this method if we want to instantiate a Withdrawal object. Figure 10.24 is the Java code for class Withdrawal from Fig. 10.21 and Fig. 10.22. Class Withdrawal inherits field accountNumber from superclass transaction, so Withdrawal does not need to declare this field. Class Withdrawal also inherits references to the Screen and the BankDatabase from its superclass Transaction, so we do not include these references in our code. Figure 10.22 specifies attribute amount and operation execute for class Withdrawal. Line 6 of Fig. 10.24 declares a field for attribute amount. Lines 1618 declare the shell of a method for operation execute. Recall that subclass Withdrawal must provide a concrete implementation of the abstract method execute in superclass Transaction. The
keypad and cashDispenser references (lines 78) are fields derived from Withdrawal's associations in Fig. 10.21. [Note: The constructor in the complete working version of this class will initialize these references to actual objects.]

Figure 10.23. Java code for shell of class Withdrawal.

```java
// Class Withdrawal represents an ATM withdrawal transaction
public class Withdrawal extends Transaction
{
}
// end class Withdrawal
```

Figure 10.24. Java code for class Withdrawal based on Fig. 10.21 and Fig. 10.22.

```java
// Withdrawal.java
// Generated using the class diagrams in Fig. 10.21 and Fig
public class Withdrawal extends Transaction
{
    // attributes
    private double amount; // amount to withdraw
    private Keypad keypad; // reference to keypad
    private CashDispenser cashDispenser; // reference to cash dispenser

    // no-argument constructor
    public Withdrawal()
    {
    } // end no-argument Withdrawal constructor

    // method overriding execute
    public void execute()
    {
    } // end method execute
```
Congratulations on completing the design portion of the case study! This concludes our object-oriented design of the ATM system. We completely implement the ATM system in 670 lines of Java code in Appendix J. We recommend that you carefully read the code and its description. The code is abundantly commented and precisely follows the design with which you are now familiar. The accompanying description is carefully written to guide your understanding of the implementation based on the UML design. Mastering this code is a wonderful culminating accomplishment after studying Chapters 18.

Software Engineering Case Study Self-Review Exercises

The UML uses an arrow with a __________ to indicate a generalization relationship.

1. solid filled arrowhead

10.1 2. triangular hollow arrowhead

3. diamond-shaped hollow arrowhead

4. stick arrowhead

State whether the following statement is true or false, and if false, explain why: The UML requires that we underline abstract class names and method names.

10.2 Write Java code to begin implementing the design for class transaction specified in Fig. 10.21 and Fig. 10.22. Be sure to include private reference-type attributes based on class Transaction's associations. Also be sure to include public get methods that provide access to any of these private attributes that the subclasses require to perform their tasks.
**10.1** b.

**10.2** False. The UML requires that we italicize abstract class names and method names.

The design for class `Transaction` yields the code in Fig. 10.25. The bodies of the class constructor and methods will be completed in Appendix J. When fully implemented, methods `getScreen` and `getBankDatabase` will return superclass `transaction`'s private reference attributes `screen` and `bankDatabase`, respectively. These methods allow the `transaction` subclasses to access the ATM's screen and interact with the bank's database.

**Figure 10.25. Java code for class `transaction` based on Fig. 10.21 and Fig. 10.22.**

```java
// Abstract class Transaction represents an ATM transaction
public abstract class Transaction {
    // attributes
    private int accountNumber; // indicates account involved
    private Screen screen; // ATM's screen
    private BankDatabase bankDatabase; // account info database

    // no-argument constructor invoked by subclasses using super()
    public Transaction() {
    } // end no-argument Transaction constructor

    // return account number
    public int getAccountNumber() {
    } // end method getAccountNumber

    // return reference to screen
    public Screen getScreen() {
    } // end method getScreen

    // return reference to bank database
    public BankDatabase getBankDatabase() {
    } // end method getBankDatabase

    // abstract method overridden by subclasses
    public abstract void execute();
} // end class Transaction
```
10.10. Wrap-Up

This chapter introduced polymorphism—the ability to process objects that share the same superclass in a class hierarchy as if they are all objects of the superclass. The chapter discussed how polymorphism makes systems extensible and maintainable, then demonstrated how to use overridden methods to effect polymorphic behavior. We introduced abstract classes, which allow programmers to provide an appropriate superclass from which other classes can inherit. You learned that an abstract class can declare abstract methods that each subclass must implement to become a concrete class and that a program can use variables of an abstract class to invoke subclasses' implementations of abstract methods polymorphically. You also learned how to determine an object's type at execution time. Finally, the chapter discussed declaring and implementing an interface as another way to achieve polymorphic behavior.

You should now be familiar with classes, objects, encapsulation, inheritance, interfaces and polymorphism—the most essential aspects of object-oriented programming. In the next chapter, we take a deeper look at Graphical User Interfaces (GUIs).
Summary

- With polymorphism, it is possible to design and implement systems that are more easily extensible. Programs can be written to process even objects of types that do not exist when the program is under development.

- There are many situations in which it is useful to declare abstract classes for which the programmer never intends to create objects. These are used only as superclasses, so we sometimes refer to them as abstract superclasses. You cannot instantiate objects of an abstract class.

- Classes from which objects can be created are called concrete classes.

- A class must be declared `abstract` if one or more of its methods are `abstract`. An abstract method is one with keyword `abstract` to the left of the return type in its declaration.

- If a class extends a class with an abstract method and does not provide a concrete implementation of that method, then that method remains abstract in the subclass. Consequently, the subclass is also an abstract class and must be declared `abstract`.

- Java enables polymorphism—the ability for objects of different classes related by inheritance or interface implementation to respond differently to the same method call.

- When a request is made through a superclass reference to a subclass object to use an `abstract` method, Java executes the implemented version of the method found in the subclass.

- Although we cannot instantiate objects of `abstract` classes, we can declare variables of abstract class types. Such variables can be used to reference subclass objects.

- Due to dynamic binding (also called late binding), the specific type of a subclass object need not be known at compile time for a method call off a superclass variable to be compiled. At execution time, the correct subclass version of the method is called, based on the type of the reference stored.
in the superclass variable.

- Operator `instanceof` checks the type of the object to which its left operand refers and determines whether this type has an *is-a* relationship with the type specified as its right operand. If the two have an *is-a* relationship, the `instanceof` expression is `true`. If not, the `instanceof` expression is `false`.

- Every object in Java knows its own class and can access this information through method `getClass`, which all classes inherit from class `Object`. Method `getClass` returns an object of type `Class` (package `java.lang`), which contains information about the object's type that can be accessed using `Class`'s public methods. `Class` method `getName`, for example, returns the name of the class.

- An interface declaration begins with the keyword `interface` and contains a set of `public abstract` methods. Interfaces may also contain `public static final` fields.

- To use an interface, a class must specify that it `implements` the interface and must either declare every method in the interface with the signatures specified in the interface declaration or be declared `abstract`.

- An interface is typically used when disparate (i.e., unrelated) classes need to provide common functionality (i.e., methods) or use common constants.

- An interface is often used in place of an `abstract` class when there is no default implementation to inherit.

- When a class implements an interface, it establishes an *is-a* relationship with the interface type, as do all its subclasses.

- To implement more than one interface, simply provide a comma-separated list of interface names after keyword `implements` in the class declaration.
Terminology

abstract class

abstract keyword

abstract method

abstract superclass

Class class

concrete class

constants declared in an interface

downcasting

dynamic binding

final class

final method

getClass method of Object

getName method of Class

implement an interface

implementation inheritance

implements keyword

inlining code

instanceof operator
interface declaration

interface inheritance

interface keyword

iterator class

late binding

polymorphism

static binding

subclass reference

superclass reference
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Polymorphism helps eliminate __________ logic.

2. If a class contains at least one abstract method, it is a(n) __________ class.

3. Classes from which objects can be instantiated are called __________ classes.

4. __________ involves using a superclass variable to invoke methods on superclass and subclass objects, enabling you to "program in the general."

5. Methods that are not interface methods and that do not provide implementations must be declared using keyword __________.

6. Casting a reference stored in a superclass variable to a subclass type is called __________.

State whether each of the statements that follows is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. It is possible to treat superclass objects and subclass objects similarly.

2. All methods in an abstract class must be declared as abstract methods.

3. It is dangerous to try to invoke a subclass-only method through a subclass variable.

4. If a superclass declares an abstract method, a subclass must implement that method.

5. An object of a class that implements an interface may be thought of as an object of that interface type.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

10.1  a) switch. b) abstract. c) concrete. d) Polymorphism. e) abstract. f) downcasting.

10.2  a) True. b) False. An abstract class can include methods with implementations and abstract methods. c) False. Trying to invoke a subclass-only method with a superclass variable is dangerous. d) False. Only a concrete subclass must implement the method. e) True.
Exercises

10.3 How does polymorphism enable you to program "in the general" rather than "in the specific"? Discuss the key advantages of programming "in the general."

10.4 A subclass can inherit "interface" or "implementation" from a superclass. How do inheritance hierarchies designed for inheriting interface differ from those designed for inheriting implementation?

10.5 What are abstract methods? Describe the circumstances in which an abstract method would be appropriate.

10.6 How does polymorphism promote extensibility?

10.7 Discuss four ways in which you can assign superclass and subclass references to variables of superclass and subclass types.

10.8 Compare and contrast abstract classes and interfaces. Why would you use an abstract class? Why would you use an interface?

(Payroll System Modification) Modify the payroll system of Fig. 10.4 Fig. 10.9 to include private instance variable `birthDate` in class `Employee`. Use class `Date` of Fig. 8.7 to represent an employee’s birthday. Add get methods to class `Date` and replace method `toString` with method `toDateString`. Assume that payroll is processed once per month. Create an array of `Employee` variables to store references to the various employee objects. In a loop, calculate the payroll for each `Employee` (polymorphically), and add a $100.00 bonus to the person's payroll amount if the current month is the month in which the `Employee`'s birthday occurs.

(Shape Hierarchy) Implement the `Shape` hierarchy shown in Fig. 9.3. Each `TwoDimensionalShape` should contain method `getArea` to calculate the area of the two-dimensional shape. Each `ThreeDimensionalShape` should have methods `getArea` and `getVolume` to calculate the surface area and volume, respectively, of the three-dimensional shape. Create a program that uses an array of `Shape` references to objects of each concrete class in the hierarchy. The program should print a text description of the object to which each array element refers. Also, in the loop that processes all the shapes in the array, determine whether each shape is a `TwoDimensionalShape` or a `ThreeDimensionalShape`. If a shape is a `TwoDimensionalShape`, display its area. If a shape is a `ThreeDimensionalShape`, display its area and volume.

(Payroll System Modification) Modify the payroll system of Fig. 10.4 Fig. 10.9 to include an additional `Employee` subclass `PieceWorker` that represents an employee whose pay is based on the number of pieces of merchandise produced. Class `PieceWorker` should contain private instance variables `wage` (to store the employee’s wage per piece) and `pieces` (to store the number of pieces produced). Provide a concrete implementation of method `earnings` in class `PieceWorker` that calculates the employee’s earnings by multiplying the number of pieces produced by the wage per piece. Create an array of `Employee` variables to store references to objects of each concrete class in the new `Employee` hierarchy. For each `Employee`, display its string representation and earnings.
In this exercise, we modify the accounts payable application of Fig. 10.11 to include the complete functionality of the payroll application of Fig. 10.4. The application should still process two Invoice objects, but now should process one object of each of the four Employee subclasses. If the object currently being processed is a BasePlusCommissionEmployee, the application should increase the BasePlusCommissionEmployee’s base salary by 10%. Finally, the application should output the payment amount for each object. Complete the following steps to create the new application:

1. Modify classes HourlyEmployee (Fig. 10.6) and CommissionEmployee (Fig. 10.7) to place them in the Payable hierarchy as subclasses of the version of Employee (Fig. 10.13) that implements Payable. [Hint: Change the name of method earnings to getPaymentAmount in each subclass so that the class satisfies its inherited contract with interface Payable.]

2. Modify class BasePlusCommissionEmployee (Fig. 10.8) such that it extends the version of class CommissionEmployee created in Part a.

3. Modify PayableInterfaceTest (Fig. 10.15) to polymorphically process two Invoices, one SalariedEmployee, one HourlyEmployee, one CommissionEmployee and one BasePlusCommissionEmployee. First output a string representation of each Payable object. Next, if an object is a BasePlusCommissionEmployee, increase its base salary by 10%. Finally, output the payment amount for each Payable object.
Chapter 11. GUI Components: Part 1

Do you think I can listen all day to such stuff?
Lewis Carroll

Even a minor event in the life of a child is an event of that child's world and thus a world event.
Gaston Bachelard

You pays your money and you takes your choice.
Punch

Guess if you can, choose if you dare.
Pierre Corneille

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- The design principles of graphical user interfaces (GUIs).
- To build GUIs and handle events generated by user interactions with GUIs.
- To understand the packages containing GUI components, event-handling classes and interfaces.
- To create and manipulate buttons, labels, lists, text fields and panels.
- To handle mouse events and keyboard events.
- To use layout managers to arrange GUI components.
11.1 Introduction
11.2 Simple GUI-Based Input/Output with JOptionPane
11.3 Overview of Swing Components
11.4 Displaying Text and Images in a Window
11.5 Text Fields and an Introduction to Event Handling with Nested Classes
11.6 Common GUI Event Types and Listener Interfaces
11.7 How Event Handling Works
11.8 JButton
11.9 Buttons That Maintain State
  11.9.1 JCheckBox
  11.9.2 JRadioButton
11.10 JComboBox and Using an Anonymous Inner Class for Event Handling
11.11 JList
11.12 Multiple-Selection Lists
11.13 Mouse Event Handling
11.14 Adapter Classes
11.15 JPanel Subclass for Drawing with the Mouse
11.16 Key-Event Handling
11.17 Layout Managers
  11.17.1 FlowLayout
  11.17.2 BorderLayout
  11.17.3 GridLayout
Using Panels to Manage More Complex Layouts

Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
11.1. Introduction

A graphical user interface (GUI) presents a user-friendly mechanism for interacting with an application. A GUI (pronounced "GOO-ee") gives an application a distinctive "look" and "feel." Providing different applications with consistent, intuitive user interface components allows users to be somewhat familiar with an application, so that they can learn it more quickly and use it more productively.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.1**

Consistent user interfaces enable a user to learn new applications faster.

As an example of a GUI, Fig. 11.1 contains an Internet Explorer Web-browser window with some of its GUI components labeled. At the top is a title bar that contains the window's title. Below that is a menu bar containing menus (File, Edit, View, etc.). Below the menu bar is a set of buttons that the user can click to perform tasks in Internet Explorer. Below the buttons is a combo box; the user can type into it the name of a Web site to visit or can click the down arrow at the right side of the box to select from a list of sites previously visited. The menus, buttons and combo box are part of Internet Explorer's GUI. They enable you to interact with Internet Explorer.

---

**Figure 11.1. Internet Explorer window with GUI components.**

[View full size image]
GUIs are built from **GUI components**. These are sometimes called **controls** or **widgets** short for **window gadgets** in other languages. A GUI component is an object with which the user interacts via the mouse, the keyboard or another form of input, such as voice recognition. In this chapter and Chapter 22, GUI Components: Part 2, you will learn about many of Java's GUI components. [Note: Several concepts covered in this chapter have already been covered in the optional GUI and Graphics Case Study of Chapters 310. So, some material will be repetitive if you read the case study. You do not need to read the case study to understand this chapter.]
11.2. Simple GUI-Based Input/Output with JOptionPane

The applications in Chapters 210 display text at the command window and obtain input from the command window. Most applications you use on a daily basis use windows or dialog boxes (also called dialogs) to interact with the user. For example, e-mail programs allow you to type and read messages in a window provided by the e-mail program. Typically, dialog boxes are windows in which programs display important messages to the user or obtain information from the user. Java's JOptionPane class (package javax.swing) provides prepackaged dialog boxes for both input and output. These dialogs are displayed by invoking static JOptionPane methods. Figure 11.2 presents a simple addition application that uses two input dialogs to obtain integers from the user and a message dialog to display the sum of the integers the user enters.

Figure 11.2. JOptionPane input and message dialogs used to input values from the user and display results.
(This item is displayed on page 513 in the print version)

```
1  // Fig. 11.2: Addition.java
2  // Addition program that uses JOptionPane for input and output.
3  import javax.swing.JOptionPane; // program uses JOptionPane
4
5  public class Addition
6  {
7    public static void main( String args[] )
8    {
9      // obtain user input from JOptionPane input dialogs
10     String firstNumber =
11        JOptionPane.showInputDialog( "Enter first integer" );
12     String secondNumber =
13        JOptionPane.showInputDialog( "Enter second integer" );
14
15     // convert String inputs to int values for use in a calculation
16     int number1 = Integer.parseInt( firstNumber );
17     int number2 = Integer.parseInt( secondNumber );
18
19     int sum = number1 + number2; // add numbers
20
21     // display result in a JOptionPane message dialog
22     JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( null, "The sum is " + sum,
23                                    "Sum of Two Integers", JOptionPane.PLAIN_MESSAGE );
24   } // end method main
25 } // end class Addition
```
Line 3 imports class `JOptionPane` for use in this application. Lines 10–11 declare the local `String` variable `firstNumber` and assign it the result of the call `JOptionPane` static method `showInputDialog`. This method displays an input dialog (see the first screen capture in Fig. 11.2), using the method's `String` argument ("Enter first integer") as a prompt to the user.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.2**

The prompt in an input dialog typically uses *sentence-style capitalization* a style that capitalizes only the first letter of the first word in the text unless the word is a proper noun (for example, Deitel).
The user types characters in the text field, then clicks the OK button or presses the Enter key to submit the String to the program. Clicking OK also dismisses (hides) the dialog. [Note: If you type in the text field and nothing appears, activate the text field by clicking it with the mouse.] Unlike Scanner, which can be used to input values of several types from the user at the keyboard, an input dialog can input only input Strings. This is typical of most GUI components. Technically, the user can type anything in the input dialog's text field. Our program assumes that the user enters a valid integer value. If the user clicks the Cancel button, showInputDialog returns null. If the user either types a noninteger value or clicks the Cancel button in the input dialog, a runtime logic error will occur in this program and it will not operate correctly. Chapter 13, Exception Handling, discusses how to handle such errors. Lines 1213 display another input dialog that prompts the user to enter the second integer.

To perform the calculation in this application, we must convert the strings that the user entered to int values. Recall from Section 7.12 that the Integer class's static method parseInt converts its String argument to an int value. Lines 1617 assign the converted values to local variables number1 and number2. Then, line 19 sums these values and assigns the result to local variable sum.

Lines 2223 use JOptionPane static method showMessageDialog to display a message dialog (the last screen capture of Fig. 11.2) containing the sum. The first argument helps the Java application determine where to position the dialog box. The value null indicates that the dialog should appear in the center of the computer screen. The first argument can also be used to specify that the dialog should appear centered over a particular window, which we will demonstrate later in Section 11.8. The second argument is the message to display in this case, the result of concatenating the String "The sum is " and the value of sum. The third argument "Sum of Two Integers" represents the string that should appear in the dialog's title bar at the top of the dialog. The fourth argument, javax.swing.JOptionPane.PLAIN_MESSAGE, is the type of message dialog to display. A PLAIN_MESSAGE dialog does not display an icon to the left of the message. Class JOptionPane provides several overloaded versions of methods showInputDialog and showMessageDialog, as well as methods that display other dialog types. For complete information on class JOptionPane, visit java.sun.com/j2se/1.5.0/docs/api/javax/swing/JOptionPane.html.

Look-and-Feel Observation 11.3

The title bar of a window typically uses book-title capitalization, a style that
JOptionPane Message Dialog Constants

The constants that represent the message dialog types are shown in Fig. 11.3. All message dialog types except PLAIN_MESSAGE display an icon to the left of the message. These icons provide a visual indication of the message's importance to the user. Note that a QUESTION_MESSAGE icon is the default icon for an input dialog box (see Fig. 11.2).

**Figure 11.3. JOptionPane static constants for message dialogs.**

(This item is displayed on page 515 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Message dialog type</th>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ERROR_MESSAGE</td>
<td>![x]</td>
<td>A dialog that indicates an error to the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INFORMATION_MESSAGE</td>
<td>![i]</td>
<td>A dialog with an informational message to the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WARNING_MESSAGE</td>
<td>![!]</td>
<td>A dialog warning the user of a potential problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUESTION_MESSAGE</td>
<td>![?]</td>
<td>A dialog that poses a question to the user. This dialog normally requires a response, such as clicking a Yes or a No button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLAIN_MESSAGE</td>
<td>![no icon]</td>
<td>A dialog that contains a message, but no icon.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.3. Overview of Swing Components

Though it is possible to perform input and output using the `JOptionPane` dialogs presented in Section 11.2, most GUI applications require more elaborate, customized user interfaces. The remainder of this chapter discusses many GUI components that enable application developers to create robust GUIs. Figure 11.4 lists several Swing GUI components from package `javax.swing` that are used to build Java GUIs. Most Swing components are pure Java components—they are written, manipulated and displayed completely in Java. They are part of the Java Foundation Classes (JFC) Java's libraries for cross-platform GUI development. Visit java.sun.com/products/jfc for more information on JFC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>JLabel</td>
<td>Displays uneditable text or icons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JTextField</td>
<td>Enables user to enter data from the keyboard. Can also be used to display editable or uneditable text.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JButton</td>
<td>Triggers an event when clicked with the mouse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JCheckBox</td>
<td>Specifies an option that can be selected or not selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JComboBox</td>
<td>Provides a drop-down list of items from which the user can make a selection by clicking an item or possibly by typing into the box.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JList</td>
<td>Provides a list of items from which the user can make a selection by clicking on any item in the list. Multiple elements can be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JPanel</td>
<td>Provides an area in which components can be placed and organized. Can also be used as a drawing area for graphics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Swing vs. AWT

There are actually two sets of GUI components in Java. Before Swing was introduced in J2SE 1.2, Java GUIs were built with components from the Abstract Window Toolkit (AWT) in package java.awt. When a Java application with an AWT GUI executes on different Java platforms, the application's GUI components display differently on each platform. Consider an application that displays an object of type Button (package java.awt). On a computer running the Microsoft Windows operating system, the Button will have the same appearance as the buttons in other Windows applications. Similarly, on a computer running the Apple Mac OS X operating system, the Button will have the same look and feel as the buttons in other Macintosh applications. Sometimes, the manner in which a user can interact with a particular AWT component differs between platforms.

Together, the appearance and the way in which the user interacts with the application are known as that application's look-and-feel. Swing GUI components allow you to specify a uniform look-and-feel for your application across all platforms or to use each platform's custom look-and-feel. An application can even change the look-and-feel during execution to enable users to choose their own preferred look-and-feel.

Portability Tip 11.1

Swing components are implemented in Java, so they are more portable and flexible than the original Java GUI components from package java.awt, which were based on the GUI components of the underlying platform. For this reason, Swing GUI components are generally preferred.

Lightweight vs. Heavyweight GUI Components

Most Swing components are not tied to actual GUI components supported by the underlying platform on which an application executes. Such GUI components are known as lightweight components. AWT components (many of which parallel the Swing components), are tied to the local platform and are called heavyweight components, because they rely on the local platform's
Several Swing components are heavyweight components. Like AWT components, heavyweight Swing GUI components require direct interaction with the local windowing system, which may restrict their appearance and functionality. As you will learn, lightweight components provide you with more control over their appearance and functionality.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.4**

The look and feel of a GUI defined with heavyweight GUI components from package `java.awt` may vary across platforms. Because heavyweight components are tied to the local-platform GUI, the look and feel varies from platform to platform.

**Superclasses of Swing's Lightweight GUI Components**

The UML class diagram of **Fig. 11.5** shows an inheritance hierarchy containing classes from which lightweight Swing components inherit their common attributes and behaviors. As discussed in Chapter 9, class `Object` is the superclass of the Java class hierarchy.

**Figure 11.5. Common superclasses of many of the Swing components.**

(This item is displayed on page 517 in the print version)
Software Engineering Observation 11.1

Study the attributes and behaviors of the classes in the class hierarchy of Fig. 11.5. These classes declare the features that are common to most Swing components.

Class **Component** (package `java.awt`) is a subclass of `Object` that declares many of the attributes and behaviors common to the GUI components in packages `java.awt` and `javax.swing`. Most GUI components extend class `Component` directly or indirectly. Visit [java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/awt/Component.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/awt/Component.html) for a complete list of these common features.

Class **Container** (package `java.awt`) is a subclass of `Component`. As you will soon see, Components are attached to Containers (such as windows) so the Components can be organized and displayed on the screen. Any object that is a `Container` can be used to organize other Components in a GUI. Because a `Container` is a `Component`, you can attach Containers to other Containers to help organize a GUI. Visit [java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/awt/Container.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/awt/Container.html) for a complete list of the Container features that are common to Swing lightweight components.

Class **JComponent** (package `javax.swing`) is a subclass of `Container`. `JComponent` is the superclass of all lightweight Swing components and declares their common attributes and behaviors. Because `JComponent` is a subclass of `Container`, all lightweight Swing components are also Containers. Some common lightweight component features supported by `JComponent` include:

1. A **pluggable look-and-feel** that can be used to customize the appearance of components (e.g., for use on particular platforms). You will see an example of this in Section 22.6.

2. Shortcut keys (called **mnemonics**) for direct access to GUI components through the keyboard. You will see an example of this in Section 22.4.

3. Common event-handling capabilities for cases where several GUI
components initiate the same actions in an application.

4. Brief descriptions of a GUI component's purpose (called **tool tips**) that are displayed when the mouse cursor is positioned over the component for a short time. You will see an example of this in the next section.

5. Support for assistive technologies, such as braille screen readers for the visually impaired.

6. Support for user-interface **localization** that is, customizing the user interface to display in different languages and use local cultural conventions.

These are just some of the many features of the Swing components. Visit [java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/javax/swing/JComponent.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/javax/swing/JComponent.html) for more details of the common lightweight component features.
11.4. Displaying Text and Images in a Window

Our next example introduces a framework for building GUI applications. This framework uses several concepts that you will see in many of our GUI applications. This is our first example in which the application appears in its own window. Most windows you will create are an instance of class JFrame or a subclass of JFrame. JFrame provides the basic attributes and behaviors of a window—a title bar at the top of the window, and buttons to minimize, maximize and close the window. Since an application's GUI is typically specific to the application, most of our examples will consist of two classes—a subclass of JFrame that helps us demonstrate new GUI concepts and an application class in which main creates and displays the application's primary window.

Labeling GUI Components

A typical GUI consists of many components. In a large GUI, it can be difficult to identify the purpose of every component unless the GUI designer provides text instructions or information stating the purpose of each component. Such text is known as a label and is created with class JLabel, a subclass of JComponent. A JLabel displays a single line of read-only text, an image, or both text and an image. Applications rarely change a label's contents after creating it.

Look-and-Feel Observation 11.5

Text in a JLabel normally uses sentence-style capitalization.

The application of Fig. 11.6 and Fig. 11.7 demonstrates several JLabel features and presents the framework we use in most of our GUI examples. We did not highlight the code in this example since most of it is new. [Note: There are many more features for each GUI component than we can cover in our examples. To learn the complete details of each GUI component, visit its page
in the online documentation. For class JLabel, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/javax/swing/JLabel.html.

Figure 11.6. JLabels with text and icons.
(This item is displayed on page 519 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.6: LabelFrame.java
// Demonstrating the JLabel class.
import java.awt.FlowLayout; // specifies how components are arranged
import javax.swing.JFrame; // provides basic window features
import javax.swing.JLabel; // displays text and images
import javax.swing.SwingConstants; // common constants used with Swing
import javax.swing.Icon; // interface used to manipulate images
import javax.swing.ImageIcon; // loads images

public class LabelFrame extends JFrame
{
    private JLabel label1; // JLabel with just text
    private JLabel label2; // JLabel constructed with text and icon
    private JLabel label3; // JLabel with added text and icon

    // LabelFrame constructor adds JLabels to JFrame
    public LabelFrame()
    {
        super( "Testing JLabel" );
        setLayout( new FlowLayout() ); // set frame layout

        // JLabel constructor with a string argument
        label1 = new JLabel( "Label with text" );
        label1.setToolTipText( "This is label1" );
        add( label1 ); // add label1 to JFrame

        // JLabel constructor with string, Icon and alignment arguments
        Icon bug = new ImageIcon( getClass().getResource( "bug1.gif" ) );
        label2 = new JLabel( "Label with text and icon", bug,
            SwingConstants.LEFT );
        label2.setToolTipText( "This is label2" );
        add( label2 ); // add label2 to JFrame

        label3 = new JLabel(); // JLabel constructor no arguments
        label3.setText( "Label with icon and text at bottom" );
        label3.setIcon( bug ); // add icon to JLabel
        label3.setHorizontalTextPosition( SwingConstants.CENTER );
        label3.setVerticalTextPosition( SwingConstants.BOTTOM );
        label3.setToolTipText( "This is label3" );
        add( label3 ); // add label3 to JFrame
    }
    // end LabelFrame constructor
}
// end class LabelFrame
```

Figure 11.7. Test class for LabelFrame.
// Fig. 11.7: LabelTest.java
// Testing LabelFrame.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class LabelTest {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        LabelFrame labelFrame = new LabelFrame(); // create LabelFrame
        labelFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        labelFrame.setSize( 275, 180 ); // set frame size
        labelFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class LabelTest

Class LabelFrame (Fig. 11.6) is a subclass of JFrame. We will use an instance of class LabelFrame to display a window containing three JLabels. Lines 38 import the classes used in class LabelFrame. The class extends JFrame to inherit the features of a window. Lines 1214 declare the three JLabel instance variables, each of which is instantiated in the LabelFrame constructor (lines 1741). Typically, the JFrame subclass's constructor builds the GUI that is displayed in the window when the application executes. Line 19 invokes superclass JFrame's constructor with the argument "Testing JLabel". JFrame's constructor uses this String to specify the text in the window's title bar.

Specifying the Layout
When building a GUI, each GUI component must be attached to a container, such as a window created with a `JFrame`. Also, you typically must decide where to position each GUI component. This is known as specifying the layout of the GUI components. As you will learn at the end of this chapter and in Chapter 22, Java provides several layout managers that can help you position components.

Many integrated development environments provide GUI design tools in which you can specify the exact size and location of a component in a visual manner by using the mouse, then the IDE will generate the GUI code for you. Though such IDEs can greatly simplify GUI creation, they are each different in capability.

To ensure that the code in this book can be used with any IDE, we did not use an IDE to create our GUI code. For this reason, we take advantage of Java's various layout managers in our GUI examples. One such layout manager is `FlowLayout` in which GUI components are placed on a container from left to right in the order in which they are attached to the container by the program. When there is no more room to fit components left to right, components continue to display left to right on the next line. If the container is resized, a `FlowLayout` reflows (i.e., rearranges) the components to accommodate the new width of the container, possibly with fewer or more rows of GUI components. Line 20 specifies that the layout of the `LabelFrame` should be a `FlowLayout`. Method `setLayout` is inherited into class `LabelFrame` indirectly from class `Container`. The argument to the method must be an object of a class that implements the `LayoutManager` interface, such as an object of class `FlowLayout`. In this case, we create a new `FlowLayout` object and pass its reference as the argument to `setLayout`.

---

Creating and Attaching `label1`

Now that we have specified the layout for the window, we can begin creating and attaching GUI components to the window. Line 23 creates a `JLabel` object and passes the `String "Label with text"` to the constructor. The `JLabel` displays this text when the `JLabel` appears on the screen as part of the application's GUI. Line 24 uses method `setToolTipText` (inherited by `JLabel` from `JComponent`) to
specify the tool tip that is displayed when the user positions the mouse cursor over the `JLabel` in the GUI. You can see a sample tool tip in the second screen capture of Fig. 11.7. When you execute this application, try positioning the mouse over each `JLabel` to see its tool tip. Line 25 attaches `label1` to the `LabelFrame` by passing `label1` to the `add` method, which is inherited indirectly from class `Container`.

[Page 521]

**Common Programming Error 11.1**

*If you do not explicitly add a GUI component to a container, the GUI component will not be displayed when the container appears on the screen.*

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.6**

*Use tool tips to add descriptive text to your GUI components. This text helps the user determine the GUI component’s purpose in the user interface.*

Creating and Attaching `label2`

Icons are a popular way to enhance the look-and-feel of an application and are also commonly used to indicate functionality. For examples, most of today’s VCRs and DVD players use the same icon to play a tape or DVD. Several Swing components can display images. An icon is normally specified with an `Icon` argument to a constructor or to the component's `setIcon` method. An `Icon` is an object of any class that implements interface `Icon` (package `javax.swing`). One such class is `ImageIcon` (package `javax.swing`), which supports several image formats, including **Graphics Interchange Format (GIF), Portable Network Graphics (PNG)** and **Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG)**. File
names for each of these types end with .gif, .png or .jpg (or .jpeg), respectively. We discuss images in more detail in Chapter 21, Multimedia: Applets and Applications.

Line 28 declares an ImageIcon object. The file bug1.gif contains the image to load and store in the ImageIcon object. (This image is included in the directory for this example on the CD that accompanies this book) The ImageIcon object is assigned to Icon reference bug. Remember, class ImageIcon implements interface Icon; an ImageIcon is an Icon.

In line 28, the expression getClass().getResource( "bug1.gif" ) invokes method getClass (inherited from class Object) to retrieve a reference to the Class object that represents the LabelFrame class declaration. That reference is then used to invoke Class method getResource, which returns the location of the image as a URL. The ImageIcon constructor uses the URL to locate the image then loads it into memory. As we discussed in Chapter 1, the JVM loads class declarations into memory, using a class loader. The class loader knows where each class it loads is located on disk. Method getResource uses the Class object's class loader to determine the location of a resource, such as an image file. In this example, the image file is stored in the same location as the LabelFrame.class file. The techniques described here enable an application to load image files from locations that are relative to LabelFrame's.class file on disk.

A JLabel can display an Icon. Lines 2930 use another JLabel constructor to create a JLabel that displays the text "Label with text and icon" and the Icon bug created in line 28. The last constructor argument indicates that the label's contents are left justified, or left aligned (i.e., the icon and text are at the left side of the label's area on the screen). Interface SwingConstants (package javax.swing) declares a set of common integer constants (such as SwingConstants.LEFT) that are used with many Swing components. By default, the text appears to the right of the image when a label contains both text and an image. Note that the horizontal and vertical alignments of a JLabel can be set with methods setHorizontalAlignment and setVerticalAlignment, respectively. Line 31 specifies the tool-tip text for label2, and line 32 adds label2 to the JFrame.

[Page 522]

Creating and Attaching label3

Class JLabel provides many methods to change a label's appearance after the
label has been instantiated. Line 34 creates a `JLabel` and invokes its no-argument constructor. Such a label initially has no text or `Icon`. Line 35 uses `JLabel` method `setText` to set the text displayed on the label. The corresponding method `getText` retrieves the current text displayed on a label. Line 36 uses `JLabel` method `setIcon` to specify the `Icon` to display on the label. The corresponding method `getIcon` retrieves the current `Icon` displayed on a label. Lines 37-38 use `JLabel` methods `setHorizontalTextPosition` and `setVerticalTextPosition` to specify the text position in the label. In this case, the text will be centered horizontally and will appear at the bottom of the label. Thus, the `Icon` will appear above the text. The horizontal-position constants in `SwingConstants` are `LEFT`, `CENTER` and `RIGHT` (Fig. 11.8). The vertical-position constants in `SwingConstants` are `TOP`, `CENTER` and `BOTTOM` (Fig. 11.8). Line 39 sets the tool-tip text for `label3`. Line 40 adds `label3` to the `JFrame`.

**Figure 11.8. Some basic GUI components.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Horizontal-position constants</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SwingConstants.LEFT</code></td>
<td>Place text on the left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SwingConstants.CENTER</code></td>
<td>Place text in the center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SwingConstants.RIGHT</code></td>
<td>Place text on the right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Vertical-position constants</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SwingConstants.TOP</code></td>
<td>Place text at the top.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SwingConstants.CENTER</code></td>
<td>Place text in the center.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>SwingConstants.BOTTOM</code></td>
<td>Place text at the bottom.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Creating and Displaying a `LabelFrame` Window

Class `LabelTest` (Fig. 11.7) creates an object of class `LabelFrame` (line 9), then specifies the default close operation for the window. By default, closing a
window simply hides the window. However, when the user closes the LabelFrame window, we would like the application to terminate. Line 10 invokes LabelFrame's setDefaultCloseOperation method (inherited from class JFrame) with constant JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE as the argument to indicate that the program should terminate when the window is closed by the user. This line is important. Without it the application will not terminate when the user closes the window. Next, line 11 invokes LabelFrame's setSize method to specify the width and height of the window. Finally, line 12 invokes LabelFrame's setVisible method with the argument true to display the window on the screen. Try resizing the window to see how the FlowLayout changes the JLabel positions as the window width changes.
11.5. Text Fields and an Introduction to Event Handling with Nested Classes

Normally, a user interacts with an application's GUI to indicate the tasks that the application should perform. For example, when you write an e-mail in an e-mail application, clicking the Send button tells the application to send the e-mail to the specified e-mail addresses. GUIs are event driven. When the user interacts with a GUI component, the interaction known as an event drives the program to perform a task. Some common events (user interactions) that might cause an application to perform a task include clicking a button, typing in a text field, selecting an item from a menu, closing a window and moving the mouse. The code that performs a task in response to an event is called an event handler and the overall process of responding to events is known as event handling.

In this section, we introduce two new GUI components that can generate events JTextFields and JPasswordField (package javax.swing). Class JTextField extends class JTextComponent (package javax.swing.text), which provides many features common to Swing's text-based components. Class JPasswordField extends JTextField and adds several methods that are specific to processing passwords. Each of these components is a single-line area in which the user can enter text via the keyboard. Applications can also display text in a JTextField (see the output of Fig. 11.10). A JPasswordField shows that characters are being typed as the user enters them, but hides the actual characters with an echo character, assuming that they represent a password that should remain known only to the user.

When the user types data into a JTextField or a JPasswordField, then presses Enter, an event occurs. Our next example demonstrates how a program can perform a task when that event occurs. The techniques shown here are applicable to all GUI components that generate events.

The application of Fig. 11.9 and Fig. 11.10 uses classes JTextField and JPasswordField to create and manipulate four text fields. When the user types in one of the text fields, then presses Enter, the application displays a message dialog box containing the text the user typed. You can only type in the text field that is "in focus." A component receives the focus when the user clicks...
the component. This is important because the text field with the focus is the one that generates an event when the user presses Enter. In this example, when the user presses Enter in the JPasswordField, the password is revealed. We begin by discussing the setup of the GUI, then discuss the event-handling code.

Figure 11.9. **JTextFields and JPasswordField**.
(This item is displayed on pages 523 - 525 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 11.9: TextFieldFrame.java
2 // Demonstrating the JTextField class.
3 import java.awt.FlowLayout;
4 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
5 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
6 import javax.swing.JFrame;
7 import javax.swing.JTextField;
8 import javax.swing.JPasswordField;
9 import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
10
11 public class TextFieldFrame extends JFrame
12 {
13     private JTextField textField1; // text field with set size
14     private JTextField textField2; // text field constructed with text
15     private JTextField textField3; // text field with text and size
16     private JPasswordField passwordField; // password field with text
17
18     // TextFieldFrame constructor adds JTextFields to JFrame
19     public TextFieldFrame()
20     {
21         super( "Testing JTextField and JPasswordField" );
22         setLayout( new FlowLayout() ); // set frame layout
23
24         // construct textfield with 10 columns
25         textField1 = new JTextField( 10 );
26         add( textField1 ); // add textField1 to JFrame
27
28         // construct textfield with default text
29         textField2 = new JTextField( "Enter text here" );
30         add( textField2 ); // add textField2 to JFrame
31
32         // construct textfield with default text and 21 columns
33         textField3 = new JTextField( "Uneditable text field", 21 );
34         textField3.setEditable( false ); // disable editing
35         add( textField3 ); // add textField3 to JFrame
36
37         // construct passwordfield with default text
38         passwordField = new JPasswordField( "Hidden text" );
39         add( passwordField ); // add passwordField to JFrame
40
41         // register event handlers
42         TextFieldHandler handler = new TextFieldHandler();
43         textField1.addActionListener( handler );
44         textField2.addActionListener( handler );
45         textField3.addActionListener( handler );
```
Lines 39 import the classes and interfaces we use in this example. Class TextFieldFrame extends JFrame and declares three JTextField variables and a JPasswordField variable (lines 1316). Each of the corresponding text fields is instantiated and attached to the TextFieldFrame in the constructor (lines 1947).

Creating the GUI

Line 22 sets the layout of the TextFieldFrame to FlowLayout. Line 25 creates textField1 with 10 columns of text. The width in pixels of a text column is determined by the average width of a character in the text field's current font.
When text is displayed in a text field and the text is wider than the text field itself, a portion of the text at the right side is not visible. If you are typing in a text field and the cursor reaches the right edge of the text field, the text at the left edge is pushed off the left side of the text field and will no longer be visible. Users can use the left and right arrow keys to move through the complete text even though the entire text will not be visible at one time. Line 26 adds `textField1` to the `JFrame`.

Line 29 creates `textField2` with the initial text "Enter text here" to display in the text field. The width of the text field is determined by the width of the default text specified in the constructor. Line 30 adds `textField2` to the `JFrame`.

Line 33 creates `textField3` and calls the `JTextField` constructor with two arguments—the default text "Uneditable text field" to display and the number of columns (21). The width of the text field is determined by the number of columns specified. Line 34 uses method `setEditable` (inherited by `JTextField` from class `JTextComponent`) to make the text field uneditable. i.e., the user cannot modify the text in the text field. Line 35 adds `textField3` to the `JFrame`.

Line 38 creates `passwordField` with the text "Hidden text" to display in the text field. The width of the text field is determined by the width of the default text. When you execute the application, notice that the text is displayed as a string of asterisks. Line 39 adds `passwordField` to the `JFrame`.

**Steps Required to Set Up Event Handling for a GUI Component**

This example should display a message dialog containing the text from a text field when the user presses `Enter` in that text field. Before an application can respond to an event for a particular GUI component, you must perform several coding steps:

1. Create a class that represents the event handler.
   
   Implement an appropriate interface, known as an `event-listener` interface, in the class from **Step 1**.

   2. `interface`, in the class from **Step 1**.

   Indicate that an object of the class from **Steps 1 and 2** should be notified
3. when the event occurs. This is known as registering the event handler.

Using a Nested Class to Implement an Event Handler

All the classes discussed so far were so-called top-level classes that is, the classes were not declared inside another class. Java allows you to declare classes inside other classes; these are called nested classes. Nested classes can be static or non-static. Non-static nested classes are called inner classes and are frequently used for event handling.

Software Engineering Observation 11.2

An inner class is allowed to directly access its top-level class's variables and methods, even if they are private.

Before an object of an inner class can be created, there must first be an object of the top-level class that contains the inner class. This is required because an inner-class object implicitly has a reference to an object of its top-level class. There is also a special relationship between these objects: the inner-class object is allowed to directly access all the instance variables and methods of the outer class. A nested class that is static does not require an object of its top-level class and does not implicitly have a reference to an object of the top-level class. As you will see in Chapter 12, the Java 2D graphics API uses static nested classes extensively.

The event handling in this example is performed by an object of the private inner class TextFieldHandler (lines 5080). This class is private because it will be used only to create event handlers for the text fields in top-level class TextFieldFrame. As with other members of a class, inner classes can be declared public, protected or private.

GUI components can generate a variety of events in response to user interactions. Each event is represented by a class and can be processed only by the appropriate type of event handler. In most cases, the events a GUI component supports are described in the Java API documentation for that component's class and its superclasses. When the user presses Enter in a
JTextField or JPasswordField, the GUI component generates an ActionEvent (package java.awt.event). Such an event is processed by an object that implements the interface ActionListener (package java.awt.event). The information discussed here is available in the Java API documentation for classes JTextField and ActionEvent. Since JPasswordField is a subclass of JTextField, JPasswordField supports the same events.

To prepare to handle the events in this example, inner class TextFieldHandler implements interface ActionListener and declares the only method in that interface action-Performed (lines 5379). This method specifies the tasks to perform when an ActionEvent occurs. So inner class TextFieldHandler satisfies Steps 1 and 2 listed earlier in this section. We'll discuss the details of method actionPerformed shortly.

Registering the Event Handler for Each Text Field

In the TextFieldFrame constructor, line 42 creates a TextFieldHandler object and assigns it to variable handler. This object's actionPerformed method will be called automatically when the user presses Enter in any of the GUI's text fields. However, before this can occur, the program must register this object as the event handler for each text field. Lines 4346 are the event-registration statements that specify handler as the event handler for the three JTextFields and the JPasswordField. The application calls JTextField method addActionListener to register the event handler for each component. This method receives as its argument an ActionListener object, which can be an object of any class that implements ActionListener. The object handler is an ActionListener, because class TextFieldHandler implements ActionListener. After lines 4346 execute, the object handler listens for events. Now, when the user presses Enter in any of these four text fields, method actionPerformed (line 5379) in class TextFieldHandler is called to handle the event. If an event handler is not registered for a particular text field, the event that occurs when the user presses Enter in that text field is consumed i.e., it is simply ignored by the application.

Software Engineering Observation 11.3

The event listener for an event must implement the appropriate event-
Common Programming Error 11.2

Forgetting to register an event-handler object for a particular GUI component's event type causes events of that type to be ignored.

Details of Class `TextFieldHandler`'s `actionPerformed` Method

In this example, we are using one event-handling object's `actionPerformed` method (lines 5379) to handle the events generated by four text fields. Since we'd like to output the name of each text field's instance variable for demonstration purposes, we must determine which text field generated the event each time `actionPerformed` is called. The GUI component with which the user interacts is the **event source**. In this example, the event source is one of the text fields or the password field. When the user presses `Enter` while one of these GUI components has the focus, the system creates a unique `ActionEvent` object that contains information about the event that just occurred, such as the event source and the text in the text field. The system then passes this `ActionEvent` object in a method call to the event listener's `actionPerformed` method. In this example, we display some of that information in a message dialog. Line 55 declares the `String` that will be displayed. The variable is initialized with the empty string a string containing no characters. The compiler requires this in case none of the branches of the nested `if` in lines 5875 executes.

`ActionEvent` method `getSource` (called in lines 58, 63, 68 and 73) returns a reference to the event source. The condition in line 58 asks, "Is the **event source** `textField1`?" This condition compares the references on either side of the `==` operator to determine whether they refer to the same object. If they both refer to `textField1`, then the program knows that the user pressed `Enter` in
TextField1. In this case, lines 5960 create a String containing the message that line 78 will display in a message dialog. Line 60 uses ActionEvent method 
getActionCommand to obtain the text the user typed in the text field that generated the event.

If the user interacted with the JPasswordField, lines 7475 use JPasswordField method getPassword to obtain the password and create the String to display. This method returns the password as an array of type char that is used as an argument to a String constructor to create a string containing the characters in the array.

Class TextFieldTest

Class TextFieldTest (Fig. 11.10) contains the main method that executes this application and displays an object of class TextFieldFrame. When you execute the application, note that even the uneditable JTextField(textField3) can generate an ActionEvent. To test this, click the text field to give it the focus, then press Enter. Also note that the actual text of the password is displayed when you press Enter in the JPasswordField. Of course, you would normally not display the password!

Figure 11.10. Test class for TextFieldFrame.
(This item is displayed on pages 525 - 526 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.10: TextFieldTest.java
// Testing TextFieldFrame.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class TextFieldTest {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        TextFieldFrame textFieldFrame = new TextFieldFrame();
        textFieldFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        textFieldFrame.setSize( 325, 100 ); // set frame size
        textFieldFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class TextFieldTest
```
This application used a single object of class `TextFieldHandler` as the event listener for four text fields. Starting in Section 11.9, you will see that it is possible to declare several event-listener objects of the same type and register each individual object for a separate GUI component's event. This technique enables us to eliminate the `if...else` logic used in this example's event handler by providing separate event handlers for each component's events.
11.6. Common GUI Event Types and Listener Interfaces

In Section 11.5, you learned that information about the event that occurs when the user presses Enter in a text field is stored in an ActionEvent object. There are many different types of events that can occur when the user interacts with a GUI. The information about any GUI event that occurs is stored in an object of a class that extends AWTEvent. Figure 11.11 illustrates a hierarchy containing many event classes from the package java.awt.event. Some of these are discussed in this chapter and Chapter 22. These event types are used with both AWT and Swing components. Additional event types that are specific to Swing GUI components are declared in package javax.swing.event.

Figure 11.11. Some event classes of package java.awt.event.
(This item is displayed on page 530 in the print version)
Let's summarize the three parts to the event-handling mechanism that you saw in Section 11.5: the event source, the event object and the event listener. The event source is the particular GUI component with which the user interacts. The event object encapsulates information about the event that occurred, such as a reference to the event source and any event-specific information that may be required by the event listener for it to handle the event. The event listener is an object that is notified by the event source when an event occurs; in effect, it "listens" for an event and one of its methods executes in response to the event. A method of the event listener receives an event object when the event listener is notified of the event. The event listener then uses the event object to respond to the event. The event-handling model described here is known as the delegation event model—an event's processing is delegated to a particular object (the event listener) in the application.

For each event-object type, there is typically a corresponding event-listener interface. An event listener for a GUI event is an object of a class that implements one or more of the event-listener interfaces from packages java.awt.event and javax.swing.event. Many of the event-listener types are common to both Swing and AWT components. Such types are declared in package java.awt.event, and some of them are shown in Fig. 11.12. Additional event-listener types that are specific to Swing components are declared in package javax.swing.event.

**Figure 11.12. Some common event-listener interfaces of package java.awt.event.**

(This item is displayed on page 531 in the print version)
Each event-listener interface specifies one or more event-handling methods that must be declared in the class that implements the interface. Recall from Section 10.7 that any class which implements an interface must declare all the abstract methods of that interface; otherwise, the class is an abstract class and cannot be used to create objects.

When an event occurs, the GUI component with which the user interacted notifies its registered listeners by calling each listener's appropriate event-handling method. For example, when the user presses the Enter key in a JTextField, the registered listener's actionPerformed method is called. How did the event handler get registered? How does the GUI component know to call actionPerformed rather than another event-handling method? We answer these
questions and diagram the interaction in the next section.
11.7. How Event Handling Works

Let us illustrate how the event-handling mechanism works, using textField1 from the example of Fig. 11.9. We have two remaining open questions from Section 11.5:

1. How did the event handler get registered?
2. How does the GUI component know to call actionPerformed rather than some other event-handling method?

The first question is answered by the event registration performed in lines 4346 of the application. Figure 11.13 diagrams JTextField variable textField1, TextFieldHandler variable handler and the objects to which they refer.

**Figure 11.13. Event registration for JTextField textField1.**
(This item is displayed on page 532 in the print version)

[View full size image]

Registering Events
Every `JComponent` has an instance variable called `listenerList` that refers to an object of class `EventListenerList` (package `javax.swing.event`). Each object of a `JComponent` subclass maintains a reference to all its registered listeners in the `listenerList`. For simplicity, we have diagrammed `listenerList` as an array below the `JTextField` object in Fig. 11.13.

```
textField1.addActionListener( handler );
```

When line 43 of Fig. 11.9 executes, a new entry containing a reference to the `TextFieldHandler` object is placed in `textField1`'s `listenerList`. Although not shown in the diagram, this new entry also includes the listener's type (in this case, `ActionListener`). Using this mechanism, each lightweight Swing GUI component maintains its own list of listeners that were registered to handle the component's events.

**Event-Handler Invocation**

The event-listener type is important in answering the second question: How does the GUI component know to call `actionPerformed` rather than another method? Every GUI component supports several event types, including `mouse events`, `key events` and others. When an event occurs, the event is dispatched to only the event listeners of the appropriate type. Dispatching is simply the process by which the GUI component calls an event-handling method on each of its listeners that are registered for the particular event type that occurred.

Each event type has one or more corresponding event-listener interfaces. For example, `ActionEvents` are handled by `ActionListeners`, `MouseEvent` are handled by `MouseListener` and `MouseMotionListener`, and `KeyEvent` are handled by `KeyListener`. When an event occurs, the GUI component receives (from the JVM) a unique `event ID` specifying the event type. The GUI component uses the event ID to decide the listener type to which the event should be dispatched and to decide which method to call on each listener object. For an `ActionEvent`, the event is dispatched to every registered `ActionListener`'s `actionPerformed` method (the only method in interface `ActionListener`). For a
MouseEvent, the event is dispatched to every registered MouseListener or MouseMotionListener, depending on the mouse event that occurs. The MouseEvent's event ID determines which of the several mouse event-handling methods are called. All these decisions are handled for you by the GUI components. All you need to do is register an event handler for the particular event type that your application requires and the GUI component will ensure that the event handler's appropriate method gets called when the event occurs. [Note: We discuss other event types and event-listener interfaces as they are needed with each new component we introduce.]
11.8. JButton

A **button** is a component the user clicks to trigger a specific action. A Java application can use several types of buttons, including **command buttons**, **check boxes**, **toggle buttons** and **radio buttons**. Figure 11.14 shows the inheritance hierarchy of the Swing buttons we cover in this chapter. As you can see, all the button types are subclasses of **AbstractButton** (package javax.swing), which declares the common features of Swing buttons. In this section, we concentrate on buttons that are typically used to initiate a command.

**Figure 11.14. Swing button hierarchy.**

A command button (see output of **Fig. 11.15**) generates an **ActionEvent** when the user clicks the button. Command buttons are created with class **JButton**. The text on the face of a **JButton** is called a **button label**. A GUI can have many...
JButtons, but each button label typically should be unique in the portion of the
GUI that is currently displayed.

**Figure 11.15. Command buttons and action events.**
(This item is displayed on page 534 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.15: ButtonFrame.java
// Creating JButtons.
import java.awt.FlowLayout;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JButton;
import javax.swing.Icon;
import javax.swing.ImageIcon;
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;

public class ButtonFrame extends JFrame
{
    private JButton plainJButton; // button with just text
    private JButton fancyJButton; // button with icons

    // ButtonFrame adds JButtons to JFrame
    public ButtonFrame()
    {
        super( "Testing Buttons" );
       setLayout( new FlowLayout() ); // set frame layout

        plainJButton = new JButton( "Plain Button" ); // button with text
        add( plainJButton ); // add plainJButton to JFrame

        Icon bug1 = new ImageIcon( getClass().getResource( "bug1.gif" ) );
        Icon bug2 = new ImageIcon( getClass().getResource( "bug2.gif" ) );
        fancyJButton = new JButton( "Fancy Button", bug1 ); // set image
        fancyJButton.setRolloverIcon( bug2 ); // set rollover image
        add( fancyJButton ); // add fancyJButton to JFrame

        // create new ButtonHandler for button event handling
        ButtonHandler handler = new ButtonHandler();
        fancyJButton.addActionListener( handler );
        plainJButton.addActionListener( handler );
    } // end ButtonFrame constructor

    // inner class for button event handling
    private class ButtonHandler implements ActionListener
    {
        // handle button event
        public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
        {
            JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( ButtonFrame.this, String.format(            
                "You pressed: %s", event.getActionCommand() ) );
        } // end method actionPerformed
    } // end private inner class ButtonHandler
} // end class ButtonFrame
```
Look-and-Feel Observation 11.8

Having more than one JButton with the same label makes the JButtons ambiguous to the user. Provide a unique label for each button.

The application of Fig. 11.15 and Fig. 11.16 creates two JButtons and demonstrates that JButtons support the display of Icons. Event handling for the buttons is performed by a single instance of inner class ButtonHandler (lines 3947).

Figure 11.16. Test class for ButtonFrame.

```java
1  // Fig. 11.16: ButtonTest.java
2  // Testing ButtonFrame.
3  import javax.swing.JFrame;
4  
5  public class ButtonTest
6  {
7      public static void main( String args[] )
8      { 
9          ButtonFrame buttonFrame = new ButtonFrame(); // create ButtonFrame
10          buttonFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
11          buttonFrame.setSize( 275, 110 ); // set frame size
12          buttonFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
13      } // end main
14  } // end class ButtonTest
```

[View full size image]
Lines 1415 declare JButton variables plainButton and fancyButton. The corresponding objects are instantiated in the constructor. Line 23 creates plainButton with the button label "Plain Button". Line 24 adds the button to the JFrame.

A JButton can display an Icon. To provide the user with an extra level of visual interaction with the GUI, a JButton can also have a rollover Icon an Icon that is displayed when the user positions the mouse over the button. The icon on the button changes as the mouse moves in and out of the button's area on the screen. Lines 2627 create two ImageIcon objects that represent the default Icon and rollover Icon for the JButton created at line 28. Both statements assume that the image files are stored in the same directory as the application (which is commonly the case for applications that use images). These image files have been provided for you.

Line 28 creates fancyButton with the text "Fancy Button" and the icon bug1. By
default, the text is displayed to the right of the icon. Line 29 uses `setRolloverIcon` (inherited from class `AbstractButton`) to specify the image displayed on the button when the user positions the mouse over it. Line 30 adds the button to the `JFrame`.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.9**

Because class `AbstractButton` supports displaying text and images on a button, all subclasses of `AbstractButton` also support displaying text and images.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.10**

Using rollover icons for `JButtons` provides users with visual feedback indicating that when they click the mouse while the cursor is positioned over the button, an action will occur.

`JButtons`, like `JTextFields`, generate `ActionEvent`s that can be processed by any `ActionListener` object. Lines 3335 create an object of `ButtonHandler` and register it as the event handler for each `JButton`. Class `ButtonHandler` (lines 3947) declares `actionPerformed` to display a message dialog box containing the label for the button the user pressed. For a `JButton` event, `ActionEvent` method `getActionCommand` returns the label on the button.

**Accessing the this Reference in an Object of a Top-Level Class From an Inner Class**

When you execute this application and click one of its buttons, notice that the message dialog that appears is centered over the application's window. This occurs because the call to `JOptionPane` method `showMessageDialog` (lines 4445 of Fig. 11.15) uses `ButtonFrame.this` rather than `null` as the first argument. When this
argument is not null, it represents the so-called parent GUI component of the message dialog (in this case the application window is the parent component) and enables the dialog to be centered over that component when the dialog is displayed. ButtonFrame.this represents the this reference of the object of top-level class ButtonFrame.

Software Engineering Observation 11.4

When used in an inner class, keyword this refers to the current inner-class object being manipulated. An inner-class method can use its outer-class object’s this by preceding this with the outer-class name and a dot, as in ButtonFrame.this.
11.9. Buttons that Maintain State

The Swing GUI components contain three types of state buttons: JToggleButton, JCheckBox and JRadioButton that have on/off or true/false values. Classes JCheckBox and JRadioButton are subclasses of JToggleButton (Fig. 11.14). A JRadioButton is different from a JCheckBox in that normally several JRadioButtons are grouped together, and are mutually exclusive: only one in the group can be selected at any time. We first discuss class JCheckBox. The next two subsections also demonstrate that an inner class can access the members of its top-level class.

11.9.1. JCheckBox

The application of Fig. 11.17 and Fig. 11.18 uses two JCheckBox objects to select the desired font style of the text displayed in a JTextField. When selected, one applies a bold style and the other an italic style. If both are selected, the style of the font is bold and italic. When the application initially executes, neither JCheckBox is checked (i.e., they are both false), so the font is plain. Class CheckBoxTest (Fig. 11.18) contains the main method that executes this application.

Figure 11.17. JCheckBox buttons and item events.
(This item is displayed on pages 537 - 538 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 11.17: CheckBoxFrame.java
2 // Creating JCheckBox buttons.
3 import java.awt.FlowLayout;
4 import java.awt.Font;
5 import java.awt.event.ItemListener;
6 import java.awt.event.ItemEvent;
7 import javax.swing.JFrame;
8 import javax.swing.JTextField;
9 import javax.swing.JCheckBox;
10 public class CheckBoxFrame extends JFrame
11 { 
12   private JTextField textField; // displays text in changing fonts
```
private JCheckBox boldJCheckBox; // to select/deselect bold
private JCheckBox italicJCheckBox; // to select/deselect italic

// CheckBoxFrame constructor adds JCheckboxes to JFrame
public CheckBoxFrame()
{
    super( "JCheckBox Test" );
    setLayout( new FlowLayout() ); // set frame layout

    // set up JTextField and set its font
    textField = new JTextfield( "Watch the font style change", 20 );
    textField.setFont( new Font( "Serif", Font.PLAIN, 14 ) );
    add( textField ); // add textField to JFrame

    boldJCheckBox = new JCheckBox( "Bold" ); // create bold checkbox
    italicJCheckBox = new JCheckBox( "Italic" ); // create italic
    add( boldJCheckBox ); // add bold checkbox to JFrame
    add( italicJCheckBox ); // add italic checkbox to JFrame

    // register listeners for JCheckboxes
    CheckBoxHandler handler = new CheckBoxHandler();
    boldJCheckBox.addItemListener( handler );
    italicJCheckBox.addItemListener( handler );
}

// private inner class for ItemListener event handling
private class CheckBoxHandler implements ItemListener
{
    private int valBold = Font.PLAIN; // controls bold font style
    private int valItalic = Font.PLAIN; // controls italic font style

    // respond to checkbox events
    public void itemStateChanged( ItemEvent event )
    {
        // process bold checkbox events
        if ( event.getSource() == boldJCheckBox )
            valBold =
                boldJCheckBox.isSelected() ? Font.BOLD : Font.PLAIN;

        // process italic checkbox events
        if ( event.getSource() == italicJCheckBox )
            valItalic =
                italicJCheckBox.isSelected() ? Font.ITALIC : Font.PLAIN;

        // set text field font
        textField.setFont( new Font( "Serif", valBold + valItalic, 14 ) );
    }
}

Figure 11.18. Test class for CheckBoxFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 538 in the print version)
// Fig. 11.18: CheckBoxTest.java
// Testing CheckBoxFrame.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class CheckBoxTest {
    public static void main(String args[])
    {
        CheckBoxFrame checkBoxFrame = new CheckBoxFrame();
        checkBoxFrame.setSize(275, 100); // set frame size
        checkBoxFrame.setVisible(true); // display frame
    }
}

After the JTextField is created and initialized (Fig. 11.17, line 24), line 25 uses method setFont (inherited by JTextField indirectly from class Component) to set the font of the JTextField to a new object of class Font (package java.awt). The new Font is initialized with "Serif" (a generic font name representing a font such as Times and is supported on all Java platforms), Font.PLAIN style and 14-point size. Next, lines 2829 create two JCheckBox objects. The string passed to the JCheckBox constructor is the checkbox label that appears to the right of the JCheckBox by default.

When the user clicks a JCheckBox, an ItemEvent occurs. This event can be handled by an ItemListener object, which must implement method itemStateChanged. In this example, the event handling is performed by an instance of private inner class CheckBoxHandler (lines 4062). Lines 3436 create an...
instance of class `CheckBoxHandler` and register it with method `addItemListener` as the listener for both the `JCheckBox` objects.

Lines 4243 declare instance variables for the inner class `CheckBoxHandler`. Together, these variables represent the font style for the text displayed in the `JTextField`. Initially both are `Font.PLAIN` to indicate that the font is not bold and is not italic. Method `itemStateChanged` (lines 4661) is called when the user clicks the bold or the italic `JCheckBox`. The method uses `event.getSource()` to determine which `JCheckBox` the user clicked. If it was the `boldJCheckBox`, line 51 uses `JCheckBox` method `isSelected` to determine if the `JCheckBox` is selected (i.e., it is checked). If the checkbox is selected, local variable `valBold` is assigned `Font.BOLD`; otherwise, it is assigned `Font.PLAIN`. A similar statement executes if the user clicks the `italicJCheckBox`. If the `italicJCheckBox` is selected, local variable `valItalic` is assigned `Font.ITALIC`; otherwise, it is assigned `Font.PLAIN`. Lines 5960 change the font of the `JTextField`, using the same font name and point size. The sum of `valBold` and `valItalic` represents the `JTextField`'s new font style. Each of the `Font` constants represents a unique value. `Font.PLAIN` has the value 0, so if both `valBold` and `valItalic` are set to `Font.PLAIN`, the font will have the plain style. If one of the values is `Font.BOLD` or `Font.ITALIC`, the font will be bold or italic accordingly. If one is `BOLD` and the other is `ITALIC`, the font will be both bold and italic.

**Relationship Between an Inner Class and Its Top-Level Class**

You may have noticed that class `CheckBoxHandler` used variables `boldJCheckBox` (`Fig. 11.17`, lines 49 and 51), `italicJCheckBox` (lines 54 and 56) and `textField` (line 59) even though these variables are not declared in the inner class. An inner class has a special relationship with its top-level classthe inner class is allowed to access directly all the instance variables and methods of the top-level class. Method `itemStateChange` (line 4661) of class `CheckBoxHandler` uses this relationship to determine which `JCheckBox` is the event source, to determine the state of a `JCheckBox` and to set the font on the `JTextField`. Notice that none of the code in inner class `CheckBoxHandler` requires a reference to the top-level class object.

**11.9.2. JRadioButton**

Radio buttons (declared with class `JRadioButton`) are similar to check boxes in that they have two states selected and not selected (also called deselected). However, radio buttons normally appear as a group in which only one button
can be selected at a time (see output of Fig. 11.20). Selecting a different radio button forces all others to be deselected. Radio buttons are used to represent mutually exclusive options (i.e., multiple options in the group cannot be selected at the same time). The logical relationship between radio buttons is maintained by a ButtonGroup object (package javax.swing), which itself is not a GUI component. A ButtonGroup object organizes a group of buttons and is not itself displayed in a user interface. Rather, the individual JRadioButton objects from the group are displayed in the GUI.

Common Programming Error 11.3

Adding a ButtonGroup object (or an object of any other class that does not derive from Component) to a container results in a compilation error.

The application of Fig. 11.19 and Fig. 11.20 is similar to that of Fig. 11.17 and Fig. 11.18. The user can alter the font style of a JTextField's text. The application uses radio buttons that permit only a single font style in the group to be selected at a time. Class RadioButtonTest (Fig. 11.20) contains the main method that executes this application.

Figure 11.19. JRadioButtons and ButtonGroups.
(This item is displayed on pages 540 - 541 in the print version)
private Font plainFont; // font for plain text
private Font boldFont; // font for bold text
private Font italicFont; // font for italic text
private Font boldItalicFont; // font for bold and italic text
private JButton plainJRadioButton; // selects plain text
private JButton boldJRadioButton; // selects bold text
private JButton italicJRadioButton; // selects italic text
private JButton boldItalicJRadioButton; // bold and italic
private ButtonGroup radioGroup; // buttongroup to hold radio buttons

// RadioButtonFrame constructor adds JRadioButtons to JFrame
public RadioButtonFrame()
{
    super( "RadioButton Test" );
    setLayout( new FlowLayout() ); // set frame layout

    textField = new JTextField( "Watch the font style change", 25 );
    add( textField ); // add textField to JFrame

    // create radio buttons
    plainJRadioButton = new JButton( "Plain", true );
    boldJRadioButton = new JButton( "Bold", false );
    italicJRadioButton = new JButton( "Italic", false );
    boldItalicJRadioButton = new JButton( "Bold/Italic", false );
    add( plainJRadioButton ); // add plain button to JFrame
    add( boldJRadioButton ); // add bold button to JFrame
    add( italicJRadioButton ); // add italic button to JFrame
    add( boldItalicJRadioButton ); // add bold and italic button

    // create logical relationship between JRadioButtons
    radioGroup = new ButtonGroup(); // create ButtonGroup
    radioGroup.add( plainJRadioButton ); // add plain to group
    radioGroup.add( boldJRadioButton ); // add bold to group
    radioGroup.add( italicJRadioButton ); // add italic to group
    radioGroup.add( boldItalicJRadioButton ); // add bold and italic

    // create font objects
    plainFont = new Font( "Serif", Font.PLAIN, 14 );
    boldFont = new Font( "Serif", Font.BOLD, 14 );
    italicFont = new Font( "Serif", Font.ITALIC, 14 );
    boldItalicFont = new Font( "Serif", Font.BOLD + Font.ITALIC, 14 );
    textField.setFont( plainFont ); // set initial font to plain

    // register events for JRadioButtons
    plainJRadioButton.addActionListener( new ButtonHandler( plainFont ) );
    boldJRadioButton.addActionListener( new ButtonHandler( boldFont ) );
    italicJRadioButton.addActionListener( new ButtonHandler( italicFont ) );
    boldItalicJRadioButton.addActionListener( new ButtonHandler( boldItalicFont ) );
} // end RadioButtonFrame constructor

// private inner class to handle radio button events
private class ButtonHandler implements ItemListener
{
    private Font font; // font associated with this listener

    public ButtonHandler( Font f )
    {
    }
Figure 11.20. Test class for RadioButtonFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 542 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.20: RadioButtonTest.java
// Testing RadioButtonFrame.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class RadioButtonTest {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        RadioButtonFrame radioButtonFrame = new RadioButtonFrame();
        radioButtonFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        radioButtonFrame.setSize( 300, 100 ); // set frame size
        radioButtonFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    }
}
```

Lines 35-42 in the constructor (Fig. 11.19) create four JRadioButton objects and
add them to the JFrame. Each JButton is created with a constructor call like that in line 35. This constructor specifies the label that appears to the right of the JButton by default and the initial state of the JRadioButton. A True second argument indicates that the JRadioButton should appear selected when it is displayed.

Line 45 instantiates ButtonGroup object radioGroup. This object is the "glue" that forms the logical relationship between the four JRadioButton objects and allows only one of the four to be selected at a time. It is possible that no JRadioButtons in a ButtonGroup are selected, but this can only occur if no preselected JRadioButtons are added to the ButtonGroup and the user has not selected a JRadioButton yet. Lines 4649 use ButtonGroup method add to associate each of the JRadioButtons with radioGroup. If more than one selected JRadioButton object is added to the group, the selected one that was added first will be selected when the GUI is displayed.

JRadioButtons, like JCheckboxes, generate ItemEvents when they are clicked. Lines 5966 create four instances of inner class RadioButtonHandler (declared at lines 7084). In this example, each event listener object is registered to handle the ItemEvent generated when the user clicks a particular JRadioButton. Notice that each RadioButtonHandler object is initialized with a particular Font object (created in lines 5255).

Class RadioButtonHandler (line 7084) implements interface ItemListener so it can handle ItemEvents generated by the JRadioButtons. The constructor stores the Font object it receives as an argument in the event-listener object's instance variable font (declared at line 72). When the user clicks a JRadioButton, radioGroup turns off the previously selected JRadioButton and method itemStateChanged (line 8083) sets the font in the JTextField to the Font stored in the JRadioButton's corresponding event-listener object. Notice that line 82 of inner class RadioButtonHandler uses the top-level class's textField instance variable to set the font.
11.10. JComboBox and Using an Anonymous Inner Class for Event Handling

A **combo box** (sometimes called a **drop-down list**) provides a list of items (Fig. 11.22) from which the user can make a single selection. Combo boxes are implemented with class **JComboBox**, which extends class **JComponent**. JComboBoxes generate ItemEvents like **JCheckBoxes** and **JRadioButton**s. This example also demonstrates a special form of inner class that is used frequently in event handling.

The application of Fig. 11.20 and Fig. 11.21 uses a JComboBox to provide a list of four image file names from which the user can select one image to display. When the user selects a name, the application displays the corresponding image as an **Icon** on a JLabel. Class **ComboBoxTest** (Fig. 11.21) contains the main method that executes this application. The screen captures for this application show the JComboBox list after the selection was made to illustrate which image file name was selected.

**Figure 11.21. JComboBox that displays a list of image names.** (This item is displayed on page 544 in the print version)

```java
public class ComboBoxFrame extends JFrame {

    private JComboBox imagesJComboBox; // combobox to hold names of icons
    private JLabel label; // label to display selected icon

    private String names[] = {
        "bug1.gif", "bug2.gif", "travelbug.gif", "buganim.gif"};

    private ImageIcon icons[] = {
        new ImageIcon( getClass().getResource( names[0] ) ),
        new ImageIcon( getClass().getResource( names[1] ) ),
        new ImageIcon( getClass().getResource( names[2] ) ),
        new ImageIcon( getClass().getResource( names[3] ) )};
```

```java
```
public ComboBoxFrame()
{
    super( "Testing JComboBox" );
    setLayout( new FlowLayout() ); // set frame layout

    imagesJComboBox = new JComboBox( names ); // set up JComboBox
    imagesJComboBox.setMaximumRowCount( 3 ); // display three rows

    imagesJComboBox.addActionListener(
        new ItemListener() // anonymous inner class
        {
            // handle JComboBox event
            public void itemStateChanged( ItemEvent event )
            {
                // determine whether check box selected
                if ( event.getStateChange() == ItemEvent.SELECTED )
                    label.setIcon( icons[ imagesJComboBox.getSelectedIndex() ] );
            } // end method itemStateChanged
        } // end anonymous inner class
    ); // end call to addItemListener

    add( imagesJComboBox ); // add combobox to JFrame
    label = new JLabel( icons[ 0 ] ); // display first icon
    add( label ); // add label to JFrame
} // end ComboBoxFrame constructor

Figure 11.22. Test class for ComboBoxFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 545 in the print version)
Lines 1923 ([Fig. 11.20](#)) declare and initialize array `icons` with four new `ImageIcon` objects. String array `names` (lines 1718) contains the names of the four image files that are stored in the same directory as the application.

At line 31, the constructor creates a `JComboBox` object, using the `Strings` in array `names` as the elements in the list. Each item in the list has an `index`. The first item is added at index 0, the next at index 1 and so forth. The first item added to a `JComboBox` appears as the currently selected item when the `JComboBox` is displayed. Other items are selected by clicking the `JComboBox`, which expands into a list from which the user can make a selection.

Line 32 uses `JComboBox` method `setMaximumRowCount` to set the maximum number of elements that are displayed when the user clicks the `JComboBox`. If there are additional items, the `JComboBox` provides a `scrollbar` (see the first screen capture) that allows the user to scroll through all the elements in the list. The user can click the `scroll arrows` at the top and bottom of the scrollbar to move up and down through the list one element at a time, or else drag the `scroll box` in the middle of the scrollbar up and down. To drag the scroll box, position the mouse cursor on it, hold the mouse button down and move the mouse.

---

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.11**

Set the maximum row count for a `JComboBox` to a number of rows that prevents the list from expanding outside the bounds of the window in which it is used. This configuration will ensure that the list displays correctly when it is expanded by the user.
Line 48 attaches the JComboBox to the ComboBoxFrame's FlowLayout (set in line 29). Line 49 creates the JLabel that is used to display each ImageIcon and initializes it with the first ImageIcon in array icons. Line 50 attaches the JLabel to the ComboBoxFrame's FlowLayout.

Using an Anonymous Inner Class for Event Handling

Lines 3446 are one statement that declares the event listener's class, creates an object of that class and registers that object as the listener for imagesJComboBox's ItemEvents. In this example, the event-listener object is an instance of an anonymous inner class, a special form of inner class that is declared without a name and typically appears inside a method declaration. As with other inner classes, an anonymous inner class can access its top-level class's members. However, an anonymous inner class has limited access to the local variables of the method in which the anonymous inner class is declared. Since an anonymous inner class has no name, one object of the anonymous inner class must be created at the point where the class is declared.

Software Engineering Observation 11.5

An anonymous inner class declared in a method can access the instance variables and methods of the top-level class object that declared it, as well as the method's final local variables, but cannot access the method's non-final variables.
Lines 3446 are a call to imagesJComboBox's `addItemListener` method. The argument to this method must be an object that is an `ItemListener` (i.e., any object of a class that implements `ItemListener`). Lines 3545 are a class-instance creation expression that declares an anonymous inner class and creates one object of that class. A reference to that object is then passed as the argument to `addItemListener`. The syntax `ItemListener()` after `new` begins the declaration of an anonymous inner class that implements interface `ItemListener`. This is similar to beginning a class declaration with

```java
public class MyHandler implements ItemListener
```

The parentheses after `ItemListener` indicate a call to the default constructor of the anonymous inner class.

The opening left brace (`{`) at 36 and the closing right brace (`}`) at line 45 delimit the body of the anonymous inner class. Lines 3844 declare the `ItemListener`'s `itemStateChanged` method. When the user makes a selection from imagesJComboBox, this method sets `label`'s Icon. The Icon is selected from array `icons` by determining the index of the selected item in the `JComboBox` with method `getSelectedIndex` in line 43. Note that for each item selected from a `JComboBox`, another item is first deselected so two `ItemEvent`s occur when an item is selected. We wish to display only the icon for the item the user just selected. For this reason, line 41 determines whether `ItemEvent` method `getStateChange` returns `ItemEvent.SELECTED`. If so, lines 4243 set `label`'s icon.

**Software Engineering Observation 11.6**

*Like any other class, when an anonymous inner class implements an interface, the class must implement every method in the interface.*

The syntax shown in lines 3545 for creating an event handler with an anonymous inner class is similar to the code that would be generated by a Java integrated development environment (IDE). Typically, an IDE enables the
programmer to design a GUI visually, then the IDE generates code that implements the GUI. The programmer simply inserts statements in the event-handling methods that declare how to handle each event.
11.11. **JList**

A list displays a series of items from which the user may select one or more items (see output of Fig. 11.23). Lists are created with class `JList`, which directly extends class `JComponent`. Class `JList` supports **single-selection lists** (which allow only one item to be selected at a time) and **multiple-selection lists** (which allow any number of items to be selected). In this section, we discuss single-selection lists.

**Figure 11.23.** **JList** that displays a list of colors.

(This item is displayed on pages 546 - 547 in the print version)

```java
1  // Fig. 11.23: ListFrame.java
2  // Selecting colors from a JList.
3  import java.awt.FlowLayout;
4  import java.awt.Color;
5  import javax.swing.JFrame;
6  import javax.swing.JList;
7  import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
8  import javax.swing.event.ListSelectionListener;
9  import javax.swing.event.ListSelectionEvent;
10 import javax.swing.ListSelectionModel;
11
12 public class ListFrame extends JFrame
13 {
14    private JList colorJList; // list to display colors
15    private final String colorNames[] = {"Black", "Blue", "Cyan",
16                                          "Dark Gray", "Gray", "Green", "Light Gray", "Magenta",
17                                          "Orange", "Pink", "Red", "White", "Yellow"};
18    private final Color colors[] = {Color.BLACK, Color.BLUE, Color.CYAN,
19                                      Color.DARK_GRAY, Color.GRAY, Color.GREEN, Color.LIGHT_GRAY,
20                                      Color.MAGENTA, Color.ORANGE, Color.PINK, Color.RED, Color.WHITE,
21                                      Color.YELLOW};
22
23    // ListFrame constructor add JScrollPane containing JList to JFrame
24    public ListFrame()
25    {
26        super("List Test");
27        setLayout(new FlowLayout()); // set frame layout
28
29        colorJList = new JList(colorNames); // create with colorNames
30        colorJList.setVisibleRowCount(5); // display five rows at once
31
32        // do not allow multiple selections
33        colorJList.setSelectionMode(ListSelectionModel.SINGLE_SELECTION);
34
35        // add a JScrollPane containing JList to frame
36        add(new JScrollPane(colorJList));
```
The application of Fig. 11.23 and Fig. 11.24 creates a `JList` containing 13 color names. When a color name is clicked in the `JList`, a `ListSelectionEvent` occurs and the application changes the background color of the application window to the selected color. Class `ListTest` (Fig. 11.24) contains the `main` method that executes this application.

**Figure 11.24. Test class for ListFrame.**
(This item is displayed on pages 547 - 548 in the print version)
Line 29 (Fig. 11.23) creates JList object colorList. The argument to the JList constructor is the array of Objects (in this case Strings) to display in the list. Line 30 uses JList method setVisibleRowCount to determine the number of items that are visible in the list.

Line 33 uses JList method setSelectionMode to specify the list's selection mode. Class ListSelectionModel (of package javax.swing) declares three constants that specify a JList's selection mode SINGLE_SELECTION (which allows only one item to be selected at a time), SINGLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION (for a multiple-selection list that allows selection of several contiguous items) and MULTIPLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION (for a multiple-selection list that does not restrict the items that can be selected).

Unlike a JComboBox, a JList does not provide a scrollbar if there are more items in the list than the number of visible rows. In this case, a JScrollPane object is used to provide the scrolling capability. Line 36 adds a new instance of class JScrollPane to the JFrame. The JScrollPane constructor receives as its argument the JComponent that needs scrolling functionality (in this case, colorList). Notice in the screen captures that a scrollbar created by the JScrollPane appears at the right side of the JList. By default, the scrollbar appears only when the number of items in the JList exceeds the number of visible items.

Lines 3848 use JList method addListSelectionListener to register an object that implements ListSelectionListener (package javax.swing.event) as the listener for the JList's selection events. Once again, we use an instance of an anonymous inner class (lines 3947) as the listener. In this example, when the user makes a selection from colorList, method valueChanged (line 4246) should change the background color of the JFrame to the selected color. This is accomplished in lines 4445. Note the use of JFrame method getContentPane on line 44. Each JFrame actually consists of three layers—the background, the content pane and the glass pane. The content pane appears in front of the background and is where the GUI components in the JFrame are displayed. The glass pane is used to display tool tips and other items that should appear in front of the GUI components on the screen. The content pane completely hides the background of the JFrame; thus, to change the background color behind the
GUI components, you must change the content pane's background color. Method `getContentPane` returns a reference to the `JFrame`'s content pane (an object of class `Container`). In line 44, we then use that reference to call method `setBackground`, which sets the content pane's background color to an element in the `colors` array. The color is selected from the array by using the selected item's index. `JList` method `getSelectedIndex` returns the selected item's index. As with arrays and ` JComboBoxes`, `JList` indexing is zero based.
11.12. Multiple-Selection Lists

A **multiple-selection list** enables the user to select many items from a **JList** (see output of **Fig. 11.26**). A **SINGLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION** list allows selecting a contiguous range of items. To do so, click the first item, then press and hold the *Shift* key while clicking the last item in the range. A **MULTIPLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION** list allows continuous range selection as described for a **SINGLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION** list. Such a list allows miscellaneous items to be selected by pressing and holding the *Ctrl* key (sometimes called the *Control* key) while clicking each item to select. To deselect an item, press and hold the *Ctrl* key while clicking the item a second time.

The application of **Fig. 11.25** and **Fig. 11.26** uses multiple-selection lists to copy items from one **JList** to another. One list is a **MULTIPLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION** list and the other is a **SINGLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION** list. When you execute the application, try using the selection techniques described previously to select items in both lists.

**Figure 11.25.** **JList** that allows multiple selections.
(This item is displayed on pages 549 - 550 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 11.25: MultipleSelectionFrame.java
2 // Copying items from one List to another.
3 import java.awt.FlowLayout;
4 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
5 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
6 import javax.swing.JFrame;
7 import javax.swing.JList;
8 import javax.swing.JButton;
9 import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
10 import javax.swing.ListSelectionModel;
11
12 public class MultipleSelectionFrame extends JFrame
13 {
14   private JList colorJList; // list to hold color names
15   private JList copyJList; // list to copy color names into
16   private JButton copyJButton; // button to copy selected names
17   private final String colorNames[] = { "Black", "Blue", "Cyan",
19     "Pink", "Red", "White", "Yellow"};
20
21   // MultipleSelectionFrame constructor
22   public MultipleSelectionFrame()
23   {
24     super( "Multiple Selection Lists" );
25   }
```
```java
setLayout( new FlowLayout() ); // set frame layout
colorJList = new JList( colorNames ); // holds names of all colors
colorJList.setVisibleRowCount( 5 ); // show five rows
colorJList.setSelectionMode( ListSelectionModel.MULTIPLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION );
add( new JScrollPane( colorJList ) ); // add list with scrollpane
copyJButton = new JButton( "Copy >>>" ); // create copy button
copyJButton.addActionListener( new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
{ // handle button event
   public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
   {
      // place selected values in copyJList
      copyJList.setListData( colorJList.getSelectedValues() );
   } // end method actionPerformed
   } // end anonymous inner class
); // end call to addActionListener
add( copyJButton ); // add copy button to JFrame
copyJList = new JList(); // create list to hold copied color names
copyJList.setVisibleRowCount( 5 ); // show 5 rows
copyJList.setFixedCellWidth( 100 ); // set width
copyJList.setFixedCellHeight( 15 ); // set height
copyJList.setSelectionMode( ListSelectionModel.SINGLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION );
add( new JScrollPane( copyJList ) ); // add list with scrollpane
} // end MultipleSelectionFrame constructor
} // end class MultipleSelectionFrame

Figure 11.26. Test class for MultipleSelectionFrame.
(This item is displayed on pages 550 - 551 in the print version)

// Fig. 11.26: MultipleSelectionTest.java
// Testing MultipleSelectionFrame.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class MultipleSelectionTest
{
   public static void main( String args[] )
   {
      MultipleSelectionFrame multipleSelectionFrame =
         new MultipleSelectionFrame();
      multipleSelectionFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
      multipleSelectionFrame.setSize( 350, 140 ); // set frame size
      multipleSelectionFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
   } // end main
} // end class MultipleSelectionTest
```
Line 27 of Fig. 11.25 creates JList colorList and initializes it with the strings in the array colorNames. Line 28 sets the number of visible rows in colorList to 5. Lines 29-30 specify that colorList is a MULTIPLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION list. Line 31 adds a new JScrollPane containing colorList to the JFrame. Lines 49-55 perform similar tasks for copyList, which is declared as a SINGLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION list. Line 51 uses JList method setFixedCellWidth to set copyList's width to 100 pixels. Line 52 uses JList method setFixedCellHeight to set the height of each item in the JList to 15 pixels.

There are no events to indicate that a user has made multiple selections in a multiple-selection list. Normally, an event generated by another GUI component (known as an **external event**) specifies when the multiple selections in a JList should be processed. In this example, the user clicks the JButton called copyButton to trigger the event that copies the selected items in colorList to copyList.

Lines 39-45 declare, create and register an ActionListener for the copyButton. When the user clicks copyButton, method actionPerformed (lines 39-43) uses JList method setListData to set the items displayed in copyList. Line 42 calls colorList's method getSelectedValues, which returns an array of Objects representing the selected items in colorList. In this example, the returned array is passed as the argument to copyList's setListData method.

You might be wondering why copyList can be used in line 42 even though the application does not create the object to which it refers until Line 49? Remember that method actionPerformed (lines 39-43) does not execute until the
user presses the `copyButton`, which cannot occur until after the constructor completes execution and the application displays the GUI. At that point in the application's execution, `copyList` is already initialized with a new `JList` object.
11.13. Mouse Event Handling

This section presents the `MouseListener` and `MouseMotionListener` event-listener interfaces for handling mouse events. Mouse events can be trapped for any GUI component that derives from `java.awt.Component`. The methods of interfaces `MouseListener` and `MouseMotionListener` are summarized in Figure 11.27. Package `javax.swing.event` contains interface `MouseInputListener`, which extends interfaces `MouseListener` and `MouseMotionListener` to create a single interface containing all the `MouseListener` and `MouseMotionListener` methods. The `MouseListener` and `MouseMotionListener` methods are called when the mouse interacts with a `Component` if appropriate event-listener objects are registered for that `Component`.

![Figure 11.27. MouseListener and MouseMotionListener interface methods.](This item is displayed on page 552 in the print version)

**MouseListener and MouseMotionListener interface methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>mousePressed( MouseEvent event )</code></td>
<td>Called when a mouse button is pressed while the mouse cursor is on a component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mouseClicked( MouseEvent event )</code></td>
<td>Called when a mouse button is pressed and released while the mouse cursor remains stationary on a component. This event is always preceded by a call to <code>mousePressed</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mouseReleased( MouseEvent event )</code></td>
<td>Called when a mouse button is released after being pressed. This event is always preceded by a call to <code>mousePressed</code> and one or more calls to <code>mouseDragged</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mouseEntered( MouseEvent event )</code></td>
<td>Called when the mouse cursor enters the bounds of a component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mouseExited( MouseEvent event )</code></td>
<td>Called when the mouse cursor leaves the bounds of a component.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Methods of interface MouseMotionListener**

`public void mouseDragged( MouseEvent event )`
Called when the mouse button is pressed while the mouse cursor is on a component and the mouse is moved while the mouse button remains pressed. This event is always preceded by a call to mousePressed. All drag events are sent to the component on which the user began to drag the mouse.

```java
public void mouseMoved( MouseEvent event )
```

Called when the mouse is moved when the mouse cursor is on a component. All move events are sent to the component over which the mouse is currently positioned.

Each of the mouse event-handling methods takes a `MouseEvent` object as its argument. A `MouseEvent` object contains information about the mouse event that occurred, including the x- and y-coordinates of the location where the event occurred. These coordinates are measured from the upper-left corner of the GUI component on which the event occurred. The x-coordinates start at 0 and increase from left to right. The y-coordinates start at 0 and increase from top to bottom. In addition, the methods and constants of class `InputEvent` (`MouseEvent`'s superclass) enable an application to determine which mouse button the user clicked.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.12**

Method calls to `mouseDragged` and `mouseReleased` are sent to the `MouseMotionListener` for the Component on which a mouse drag operation started. Similarly, the `mouseReleased` method call at the end of a drag operation is sent to the `MouseListener` for the Component on which the drag operation started.

Java also provides interface `MouseWheelListener` to enable applications to respond to the rotation of a mouse wheel. This interface declares method `mouseWheelMoved`, which receives a `MouseWheelEvent` as its argument. Class `MouseWheelEvent` (a subclass of `MouseEvent`) contains methods that enable the event handler to obtain information about the amount of wheel rotation.
Tracking Mouse Events on a JPanel

The MouseTracker application (Fig. 11.28 and Fig. 11.29) demonstrates the MouseListener and MouseMotionListener interface methods. The application class implements both interfaces so it can listen for its own mouse events. Note that all seven methods from these two interfaces must be declared by the programmer when a class implements both interfaces. Each mouse event in this example displays a string in the JLabel called statusBar at the bottom of the window.

Figure 11.28. Mouse event handling.
(This item is displayed on pages 553 - 554 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 11.28: MouseTrackerFrame.java
2 // Demonstrating mouse events.
3 import java.awt.Color;
4 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
5 import java.awt.event.MouseListener;
6 import java.awt.event.MouseMotionListener;
7 import java.awt.event.MouseEvent;
8 import javax.swing.JFrame;
9 import javax.swing.JLabel;
10 import javax.swing.JPanel;
11
12 public class MouseTrackerFrame extends JFrame
13 {
14     private JPanel mousePanel; // panel in which mouse events will occur
15     private JLabel statusBar; // label that displays event information
16
17     // MouseTrackerFrame constructor sets up GUI and
18     // registers mouse event handlers
19     public MouseTrackerFrame()
20     {
21         super( "Demonstrating Mouse Events" );
22
23         mousePanel = new JPanel(); // create panel
24         mousePanel.setBackground( Color.WHITE ); // set background color
25         add( mousePanel, BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add panel to JFrame
26
27         statusBar = new JLabel( "Mouse outside JPanel" );
28         add( statusBar, BorderLayout.SOUTH ); // add label to JFrame
29
30         // create and register listener for mouse and mouse motion events
31         MouseHandler handler = new MouseHandler();
32         mousePanel.addMouseListener( handler );
33         mousePanel.addMouseMotionListener( handler );
34     } // end MouseTrackerFrame constructor
```
private class MouseHandler implements MouseListener,
    MouseMotionListener
{
    // MouseListener event handlers
    // handle event when mouse released immediately after press
    public void mouseClicked( MouseEvent event )
    {
        statusBar.setText( String.format( "Clicked at [%d, %d]", event.getX(), event.getY() ) );
    } // end method mouseClicked

    // handle event when mouse pressed
    public void mousePressed( MouseEvent event )
    {
        statusBar.setText( String.format( "Pressed at [%d, %d]", event.getX(), event.getY() ) );
    } // end method mousePressed

    // handle event when mouse released after dragging
    public void mouseReleased( MouseEvent event )
    {
        statusBar.setText( String.format( "Released at [%d, %d]", event.getX(), event.getY() ) );
    } // end method mouseReleased

    // handle event when mouse enters area
    public void mouseEntered( MouseEvent event )
    {
        statusBar.setText( String.format( "Mouse entered at [%d, %d]", event.getX(), event.getY() ) );
        mousePanel.setBackground( Color.GREEN );
    } // end method mouseEntered

    // handle event when mouse exits area
    public void mouseExited( MouseEvent event )
    {
        statusBar.setText( "Mouse outside JPanel" );
        mousePanel.setBackground( Color.WHITE );
    } // end method mouseExited

    // MouseMotionListener event handlers
    // handle event when user drags mouse with button pressed
    public void mouseDragged( MouseEvent event )
    {
        statusBar.setText( String.format( "Dragged at [%d, %d]", event.getX(), event.getY() ) );
    } // end method mouseDragged

    // handle event when user moves mouse
    public void mouseMoved( MouseEvent event )
    {
        statusBar.setText( String.format( "Moved at [%d, %d]", event.getX(), event.getY() ) );
    } // end method mouseMoved
} // end inner class MouseHandler
} // end class MouseTrackerFrame
Figure 11.29. Test class for MouseTrackerFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 555 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.29: MouseTrackerFrame.java
// Testing MouseTrackerFrame.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class MouseTracker {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        MouseTrackerFrame mouseTrackerFrame = new MouseTrackerFrame();
        mouseTrackerFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        mouseTrackerFrame.setSize( 300, 100 ); // set frame size
        mouseTrackerFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class MouseTracker
```

Line 23 in Fig. 11.28 creates JPanel mousePanel. This JPanel's mouse events will be tracked by the application. Line 24 sets mousePanel's background color to white. When the user moves the mouse into the mousePanel, the application will change mousePanel's background color to green. When the user moves the mouse out of the mousePanel, the application will change the background color back to white. Line 25 attaches mousePanel to the JFrame. As you learned in Section 11.4, you typically must specify the layout of the GUI components in a JFrame. In that section, we introduced the layout manager FlowLayout. Here we use the default
layout of a JFrame's content pane. This layout manager arranges components into five regions: NORTHERN, SOUTHERN, EASTERN, WESTERN and CENTER. NORTHERN corresponds to the top of the container. This example uses the CENTER and SOUTHERN regions. Line 25 uses a two-argument version of method add to place mousePanel in the CENTER region. The BorderLayout automatically sizes the component in the CENTER to use all the space in the JFrame that is not occupied by components in the other regions. Section 11.17.2 discusses BorderLayout in more detail.

[Page 555]

Lines 2728 in the constructor declare JLabel statusBar and attach it to the JFrame's SOUTHERN region. This JLabel occupies the width of the JFrame. The region's height is determined by the JLabel.

Line 31 creates an instance of inner class MouseHandler (lines 3690) called handler that responds to mouse events. Lines 3233 register handler as the listener for mousePanel's mouse events. Methods addMouseListener and addMouseMotionListener are inherited indirectly from class Component and can be used to register MouseListeners and MouseMotionListeners, respectively. A MouseHandler object is both a MouseListener and a MouseMotionListener because the class implements both interfaces. [Note: In this example, we chose to implement both interfaces to demonstrate a class that implements more than one interface. However, we also could have implemented interface MouseInputListener here.]

[Page 556]

When the mouse enters and exits mousePanel's area, methods mouseEntered (lines 6267) and mouseExited (lines 7074) are called, respectively. Method mouseEntered displays a message in the statusBar indicating that the mouse entered the JPanel and changes the background color to green. Method mouseExited displays a message in the statusBar indicating that the mouse is outside the JPanel (see the first sample output window) and changes the background color to white.

When any of the other five events occurs, it displays a message in the statusBar that includes a string containing the event and the coordinates at which it occurred. MouseEvent methods getX and getY return the x- and y-coordinates, respectively, of the mouse at the time the event occurred.

Many event-listener interfaces, such as `MouseListener` and `MouseMotionListener`, contain multiple methods. It is not always desirable to declare every method in an event-listener interface. For instance, an application may need only the `mouseClicked` handler from `MouseListener` or the `mouseDragged` handler from `MouseMotionListener`. Interface `WindowListener` specifies seven window event-handling methods. For many of the listener interfaces that have multiple methods, packages `java.awt.event` and `javax.swing.event` provide event-listener adapter classes. An **adapter class** implements an interface and provides a default implementation (with an empty method body) of each method in the interface. **Figure 11.30** shows several `java.awt.event` adapter classes and the interfaces they implement. You can extend an adapter class to inherit the default implementation of every method and subsequently override only the method(s) you need for event handling.

**Figure 11.30. Event-adapter classes and the interfaces they implement in package java.awt.event.**
(This item is displayed on page 557 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event-adapter class in java.awt.event</th>
<th>Implements interface</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ComponentAdapter</td>
<td>ComponentListener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ContainerAdapter</td>
<td>ContainerListener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FocusAdapter</td>
<td>FocusListener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KeyAdapter</td>
<td>KeyListener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MouseAdapter</td>
<td>MouseListener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MouseMotionAdapter</td>
<td>MouseMotionListener</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WindowAdapter</td>
<td>WindowListener</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Software Engineering Observation 11.7
When a class implements an interface, the class has an "is a" relationship with that interface. All direct and indirect subclasses of that class inherit this interface. Thus, an object of a class that extends an event-adapter class is an object of the corresponding event-listener type (e.g., an object of a subclass of MouseAdapter is a MouseListener).

Extending MouseAdapter

The application of Fig. 11.31 and Fig. 11.32 demonstrates how to determine the number of mouse clicks (i.e., the click count) and how to distinguish between the different mouse buttons. The event listener in this application is an object of inner class MouseClickHandler (lines 2646) that extends MouseAdapter, so we can declare just the mouseClicked method we need in this example.

Figure 11.31. Left, center and right mouse-button clicks. (This item is displayed on pages 557 - 558 in the print version)
public void mouseClicked( MouseEvent event )
{
    int xPos = event.getX(); // get x position of mouse
    int yPos = event.getY(); // get y position of mouse

    details = String.format( "Clicked %d time(s)", event.getClickCount() );

    if ( event.isMetaDown() ) // right mouse button
        details += " with right mouse button";
    else if ( event.isAltDown() ) // middle mouse button
        details += " with center mouse button";
    else // left mouse button
        details += " with left mouse button";

    statusBar.setText( details ); // display message in statusBar
}

Figure 11.32. Test class for **MouseDetailsFrame**.
(This item is displayed on page 558 in the print version)
Common Programming Error 11.4

If you extend an adapter class and misspell the name of the method you are overriding, your method simply becomes another method in the class. This is a logic error that is difficult to detect, since the program will call the empty version of the method inherited from the adapter class.

A user of a Java application may be on a system with a one-, two- or three-button mouse. Java provides a mechanism to distinguish among mouse buttons. Class MouseEvent inherits several methods from class InputEvent that can distinguish among mouse buttons on a multibutton mouse or can mimic a multibutton mouse with a combined keystroke and mouse-button click. Figure 11.33 shows the InputEvent methods used to distinguish among mouse-button clicks. Java assumes that every mouse contains a left mouse button. Thus, it is simple to test for a left-mouse-button click. However, users with a one- or two-button mouse must use a combination of keystrokes and mouse-button clicks at the same time to simulate the missing buttons on the mouse. In the case of a one- or two-button mouse, a Java application assumes that the center mouse button is clicked if the user holds down the Alt key and clicks the left mouse button on a two-button mouse or the only mouse button on a one-button
mouse. In the case of a one-button mouse, a Java application assumes that the right mouse button is clicked if the user holds down the Meta key and clicks the mouse button.

**Figure 11.33. InputEvent methods that help distinguish among left-, center- and right-mouse-button clicks.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>InputEvent method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isMetaDown()</td>
<td>Returns True when the user clicks the right mouse button on a mouse with two or three buttons. To simulate a right-mouse-button click on a one-button mouse, the user can hold down the Meta key on the keyboard and click the mouse button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isAltDown()</td>
<td>Returns True when the user clicks the middle mouse button on a mouse with three buttons. To simulate a middle-mouse-button click on a one- or two-button mouse, the user can press the Alt key on the keyboard and click the only- or left-mouse button, respectively.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Line 22 of **Fig. 11.31** registers a MouseListener for the MouseDetailsFrame. The event listener is an object of class MouseClickHandler, which extends MouseAdapter. This enables us to declare only method mouseClicked (lines 2945). This method first captures the coordinates where the event occurred and stores them in local variables xPos and yPos (lines 3132). Lines 3435 create a String called details containing the number of mouse clicks, which is returned by MouseEvent method getClickCount at line 35. Lines 3742 use methods isMetaDown and isAltDown to determine which mouse button the user clicked and append an appropriate String to details in each case. The resulting String is displayed in the statusBar. Class MouseDetails (**Fig. 11.32**) contains the main method that executes the application. Try clicking with each of your mouse's buttons repeatedly to see the click count increment.
11.15. **JPanel** Subclass for Drawing with the Mouse

Section 11.13 showed how to track mouse events in a JPanel. In this section, we use a JPanel as a dedicated drawing area in which the user can draw by dragging the mouse. In addition, this section demonstrates an event listener that extends an adapter class.

---

**Method paintComponent**

Lightweight Swing components that extend class JComponent (such as JPanel) contain method `paintComponent`, which is called when a lightweight Swing component is displayed. By overriding this method, you can specify how to draw shapes using Java's graphics capabilities. When customizing a JPanel for use as a dedicated drawing area, the subclass should override method `paintComponent` and call the superclass version of `paintComponent` as the first statement in the body of the overridden method to ensure that the component displays correctly. The reason for this is that subclasses of JComponent support transparency. To display a component correctly, the program must determine whether the component is transparent. The code that determines this is in superclass JComponent's `paintComponent` implementation. When a component is transparent, `paintComponent` will not clear its background when the program displays the component. When a component is opaque, `paintComponent` clears the component's background before the component is displayed. If the superclass version of `paintComponent` is not called, an opaque GUI component typically will not display correctly on the user interface. Also, if the superclass version is called after performing the customized drawing statements, the results typically will be erased. The transparency of a Swing lightweight component can be set with method `setOpaque` (a `false` argument indicates that the component is transparent).

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.13**

Most Swing GUI components can be transparent or opaque. If a Swing GUI component is opaque, its background will be cleared when its `paintComponent` method is called. Only opaque components can display a customized
Error-Prevention Tip 11.1

In a `JComponent` subclass's `paintComponent` method, the first statement should always be a call to the superclass's `paintComponent` method to ensure that an object of the subclass displays correctly.

Common Programming Error 11.5

If an overridden `paintComponent` method does not call the superclass's version, the subclass component may not display properly. If an overridden `paintComponent` method calls the superclass's version after other drawing is performed, the drawing will be erased.

Defining the Custom Drawing Area

The `Painter` application of Fig. 11.34 and Fig. 11.35 demonstrates a customized subclass of `JPanel` that is used to create a dedicated drawing area. The application uses the `mouseDragged` event handler to create a simple drawing application. The user can draw pictures by dragging the mouse on the `JPanel`. This example does not use method `mouseMoved`, so our event-listener class (the anonymous inner class at lines 22-34) extends `MouseMotionAdapter`. Since, this class already declares both `mouseMoved` and `mouseDragged`, we can simply override `mouseDragged` to provide the event handling this application requires.
Figure 11.34. Adapter classes used to implement event handlers.

(This item is displayed on page 561 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 11.34: PaintPanel.java
2 // Using class MouseMotionAdapter.
3 import java.awt.Point;
4 import java.awt.Graphics;
5 import java.awt.event.MouseEvent;
6 import java.awt.event.MouseMotionAdapter;
7 import javax.swing.JPanel;
8
9 public class PaintPanel extends JPanel
10 {
11    private int pointCount = 0 ; // count number of points
12
13    // array of 10000 java.awt.Point references
14    private Point points[] = new Point[10000];
15
16    // set up GUI and register mouse event handler
17    public PaintPanel()
18    {
19        // handle frame mouse motion event
20        addMouseMotionListener(new MouseMotionAdapter() // anonymous inner class
21            {
22                // store drag coordinates and repaint
23                public void mouseDragged( MouseEvent event )
24                {
25                    if ( pointCount < points.length )
26                    {
27                        points[ pointCount ] = event.getPoint(); // find point
28                        pointCount++; // increment number of points in array
29                        repaint(); // repaint JFrame
30                    } // end if
31                } // end method mouseDragged
32            } // end anonymous inner class
33            ); // end call to addMouseMotionListener
34    } // end PaintPanel constructor
35
36    // draw oval in a 4-by-4 bounding box at specified location on window
37    public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
38    {
39        super.paintComponent( g ); // clears drawing area
40
41        // draw all points in array
42        for ( int i = 0 ; i < pointCount; i++ )
43            g.fillOval( points[ i ].x, points[ i ].y, 4, 4 );
44    } // end method paintComponent
45 } // end class PaintPanel
```
Class PaintPanel (Fig. 11.34) extends JPanel to create the dedicated drawing area. Lines 37 import the classes used in class PaintPanel. Class Point (package java.awt) represents an x-y coordinate. We use objects of this class to store the coordinates of each mouse drag event. Class Graphics is used to draw.
In this example, we use an array of 10000 Points (line 14) to store the location at which each mouse-drag event occurs. As you will see, method paintComponent uses these Points to draw. Instance variable pointCount (line 11) maintains the total number of Points captured from mouse drag events so far.

Lines 2035 register a MouseMotionListener to listen for the PaintPanel's mouse-motion events. Lines 2234 create an object of an anonymous inner class that extends the adapter class MouseMotionAdapter. Recall that MouseMotionAdapter implements MouseMotionListener, so the anonymous inner class object is a MouseMotionListener. The anonymous inner class inherits a default implementation of methods mouseMoved and mouseDragged, so it already satisfies the requirement that all methods of the interface must be implemented. However, the default methods do nothing when they are called. So, we override method mouseDragged at lines 2533 to capture the coordinates of a mouse dragged event and store them as a Point object. Line 27 ensures that we store the event's coordinates only if there are still empty elements in the array. If so, line 29 invokes the MouseEvent's getPoint method to obtain the Point where the event occurred and stores it in the array at index pointCount. Line 30 increments the pointCount, and line 31 calls method repaint (inherited indirectly from class Component) to indicate that the PaintPanel should be refreshed on the screen as soon as possible with a call to the PaintPanel's paintComponent method.

Method paintComponent (lines 3946), which receives a Graphics parameter, is called automatically any time the PaintPanel needs to be displayed on the screen (such as when the GUI is first displayed) or refreshed on the screen (such as when method repaint is called or when the GUI component was hidden by another window on the screen and subsequently becomes visible again).

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.14**

*Calling repaint for a Swing GUI component indicates that the component should be refreshed on the screen as soon as possible. The background of the GUI component is cleared only if the component is opaque. JComponent method setOpaque can be passed a boolean argument indicating whether the component is opaque (true) or transparent (false).*
Line 41 invokes the superclass version of `paintComponent` to clear the `PaintPanel`'s background (JPanels are opaque by default). Lines 44-45 draw an oval at the location specified by each `Point` in the array (up to the `pointCount`). Graphics method `fillOval` draws a solid oval. The method's four parameters represent a rectangular area (called the `bounding box`) in which the oval is displayed. The first two parameters are the upper-left x-coordinate and the upper-left y-coordinate of the rectangular area. The last two coordinates represent the rectangular area's width and height. Method `fillOval` draws the oval so it touches the middle of each side of the rectangular area. In line 45, the first two arguments are specified by using class `Point`'s two `public` instance variables `x` and `y`. The loop terminates either when a `null` reference is encountered in the array or when the end of the array is reached. You will learn more `Graphics` features in Chapter 12.

Look-and-Feel Observation 11.15

Drawing on any GUI component is performed with coordinates that are measured from the upper-left corner (0, 0) of that GUI component, not the upper-left corner of the screen.

Using the Custom `JPanel` in an Application

Class `Painter` (Fig. 11.35) contains the main method that executes this application. Line 14 creates a `PaintPanel` object on which the user can drag the mouse to draw. Line 15 attaches the `PaintPanel` to the `JFrame`. 
11.16. Key-Event Handling

This section presents the `KeyListener` interface for handling key events. Key events are generated when keys on the keyboard are pressed and released. A class that implements `KeyListener` must provide declarations for methods `keyPressed`, `keyReleased` and `keyTyped`, each of which receives a `KeyEvent` as its argument. Class `KeyEvent` is a subclass of `InputEvent`. Method `keyPressed` is called in response to pressing any key. Method `keyTyped` is called in response to pressing any key that is not an action key. (The action keys are any arrow key, `Home`, `End`, `Page Up`, `Page Down`, any function key, `Num Lock`, `Print Screen`, `Scroll Lock`, `Caps Lock` and `Pause`.) Method `keyReleased` is called when the key is released after any `keyPressed` or `keyTyped` event.

The application of Fig. 11.36 and Fig. 11.37 demonstrates the `KeyListener` methods. Class `KeyDemo` implements the `KeyListener` interface, so all three methods are declared in the application.

Figure 11.36. Key event handling.

(This item is displayed on pages 564 - 565 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 11.36: KeyDemoFrame.java
2 // Demonstrating keystroke events.
3 import java.awt.Color;
4 import java.awt.event.KeyListener;
5 import java.awt.event.KeyEvent;
6 import javax.swing.JFrame;
7 import javax.swing.JTextArea;
8
9 public class KeyDemoFrame extends JFrame implements KeyListener
10 {
11     private String line1 = ""; // first line of textarea
12     private String line2 = ""; // second line of textarea
13     private String line3 = ""; // third line of textarea
14     private JTextArea textArea; // textarea to display output
15
16     // KeyDemoFrame constructor
17     public KeyDemoFrame()
18     {
19         super( "Demonstrating Keystroke Events" );
20     }
21     textArea = new JTextArea( 10, 15 ); // set up JTextArea
```
22    textArea.setText( "Press any key on the keyboard..." );
23    textArea.setEditable( false ); // disable textarea
24    textArea.setDisabledTextColor( Color.BLACK ); // set text color
25    add( textArea ); // add textarea to JFrame
26
27    addKeyListener( this ); // allow frame to process key events
28 } // end KeyDemoFrame constructor
29
30 // handle press of any key
31 public void keyPressed( KeyEvent event )
32 {
33    line1 = String.format( "Key pressed: %s",
34        event.getKeyText( event.getKeyCode() ) ); // output pressed key
35    setLines2and3( event ); // set output lines two and three
36 } // end method keyPressed
37
38 // handle release of any key
39 public void keyReleased( KeyEvent event )
40 {
41    line1 = String.format( "Key released: %s",
42        event.getKeyText( event.getKeyCode() ) ); // output released key
43    setLines2and3( event ); // set output lines two and three
44 } // end method keyReleased
45
46 // handle press of an action key
47 public void keyTyped( KeyEvent event )
48 {
49    line1 = String.format( "Key typed: %s",
50        event.getKeyChar() );
51    setLines2and3( event ); // set output lines two and three
52 } // end method keyTyped
53
54 // set second and third lines of output
55 private void setLines2and3( KeyEvent event )
56 {
57    line2 = String.format( "This key is %san action key",
58        ( event.isActionKey() ? "" : "not " ) );
59
60    String temp = event.getKeyModifiersText( event.getModifiers() );
61    line3 = String.format( "Modifier keys pressed: %s",
62        ( temp.equals( "" ) ? "none" : temp ) ); // output modifiers
63
64    textArea.setText( String.format( "%s\n%s\n%s\n",
65        line1, line2, line3 ) ); // output three lines of text
66 } // end method setLines2and3
67 } // end class KeyDemoFrame

Figure 11.37. Test class for KeyDemoFrame.
(This item is displayed on pages 565 - 566 in the print version)
The constructor (Fig. 11.36, lines 1728) registers the application to handle its own key events by using method `addKeyListener` at line 27. Method `addKeyListener` is declared in class `Component`, so every subclass of `Component` can notify `KeyListener` objects of key events for that `Component`.

At line 25, the constructor adds `JTextArea textArea` (where the application's output is displayed) to the `JFrame`. Notice in the screen captures that `textArea` occupies the entire window. This is due to the `JFrame`'s default `BorderLayout` (discussed in Section 11.17.2 and demonstrated in Fig. 11.41). When a single `Component` is added to a `BorderLayout`, the `Component` occupies the entire `Container`. Note that line 24 uses method `setDisabledTextColor` to change the color of the
Methods `keyPressed` (lines 3136) and `keyReleased` (lines 3944) use `KeyEvent` method `getKeyCode` to get the **virtual key code** of the key that was pressed. Class `KeyEvent` maintains a set of constants—the virtual key-code constants—that represents every key on the keyboard. These constants can be compared with the return value of `getKeyCode` to test for individual keys on the keyboard. The value returned by `getKeyCode` is passed to `KeyEvent` method `getKeyText`, which returns a string containing the name of the key that was pressed. For a complete list of virtual key constants, see the on-line documentation for class `KeyEvent` (package `java.awt.event`). Method `keyTyped` (lines 4751) uses `KeyEvent` method `getKeyChar` to get the Unicode value of the character typed.

All three event-handling methods finish by calling method `setLines2and3` (lines 5466) and passing it the `KeyEvent` object. This method uses `KeyEvent` method `isActionKey` (line 57) to determine whether the key in the event was an action key. Also, `InputEvent` method `getModifiers` is called (line 59) to determine whether any modifier keys (such as `Shift`, `Alt` and `Ctrl`) were pressed when the key event occurred. The result of this method is passed to `KeyEvent` method `getKeyModifiersText`, which produces a string containing the names of the pressed modifier keys.

**Note:** If you need to test for a specific key on the keyboard, class `KeyEvent` provides a **key constant** for every key on the keyboard. These constants can be used from the key event handlers to determine whether a particular key was pressed. Also, to determine whether the `Alt`, `Ctrl`, `Meta` and `Shift` keys are pressed individually, `InputEvent` methods `isAltDown`, `isControlDown`, `isMetaDown` and `isShiftDown` each return a `boolean` indicating if the particular key was pressed during the key event.
11.17. Layout Managers

Layout managers are provided to arrange GUI components in a container for presentation purposes. Programmers can use the layout managers for basic layout capabilities instead of determining the exact position and size of every GUI component. This functionality enables the programmer to concentrate on the basic look-and-feel and lets the layout managers process most of the layout details. All layout managers implement the interface `LayoutManager` (in package `java.awt`). Class `Container`'s `setLayout` method takes an object that implements the `LayoutManager` interface as an argument. There are basically three ways for you to arrange components in a GUI:

1. Absolute positioning: This provides the greatest level of control over a GUI's appearance. By setting a `Container`'s layout to `null`, you can specify the absolute position of each GUI component with respect to the upper-left corner of the `Container`. If you do this, you also must specify each GUI component's size. Programming a GUI with absolute positioning can be tedious unless you have an integrated development environment (IDE) that can generate the code for you.

2. Layout managers: Using layout managers to position elements can be simpler and faster than creating a GUI with absolute positioning, but you lose some control over the size and the precise positioning of GUI components.

3. Visual programming in an IDE: IDEs provide tools that make it easy to create GUIs. Each IDE typically provides a GUI design tool that allows you to drag and drop GUI components from a tool box onto a design area. You can then position, size and align GUI components as you like. The IDE generates the Java code that creates the GUI. In addition, you can typically add event-handling code for a particular component by double-clicking the component. Some design tools also allow you to use the layout managers described in this chapter and in Chapter 22.

Look-and-Feel Observation 11.16

Most Java programming environments provide GUI design tools that help a programmer graphically design a GUI; the design tools then write the Java code to create the GUI. Such tools often provide greater control over the size, position and alignment of GUI components than do the built-in layout managers.
Look-and-Feel Observation 11.17

It is possible to set a Container's layout to null, which indicates that no layout manager should be used. In a Container without a layout manager, the programmer must position and size the components in the given container and take care that, on resize events, all components are repositioned as necessary. A component's resize events can be processed by a ComponentListener.

Figure 11.38 summarizes the layout managers presented in this chapter. Other layout managers are discussed in Chapter 22.

Figure 11.38. Layout managers.  
(This item is displayed on page 568 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Layout manager</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FlowLayout</td>
<td>Default for javax.swing.JPanel. Places components sequentially (left to right) in the order they were added. It is also possible to specify the order of the components by using the Container method add, which takes a Component and an integer index position as arguments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BorderLayout</td>
<td>Default for JFrames (and other windows). Arranges the components into five areas: NORTH, SOUTH, EAST, WEST and CENTER.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GridLayout</td>
<td>Arranges the components into rows and columns.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.17.1. FlowLayout
FlowLayout is the simplest layout manager. GUI components are placed on a container from left to right in the order in which they are added to the container. When the edge of the container is reached, components continue to display on the next line. Class FlowLayout allows GUI components to be left aligned, centered (the default) and right aligned.

The application of Fig. 11.39 and Fig. 11.40 creates three JButton objects and adds them to the application, using a FlowLayout layout manager. The components are center aligned by default. When the user clicks Left, the alignment for the layout manager is changed to a left-aligned FlowLayout. When the user clicks Right, the alignment for the layout manager is changed to a right-aligned FlowLayout. When the user clicks Center, the alignment for the layout manager is changed to a center-aligned FlowLayout. Each button has its own event handler that is declared with an inner class that implements ActionListener. The sample output windows show each of the FlowLayout alignments. Also, the last sample output window shows the centered alignment after the window has been resized to a smaller width. Notice that the button Right flows onto a new line.

Figure 11.39. FlowLayout allows components to flow over multiple lines.

(This item is displayed on pages 568 - 570 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.39: FlowLayoutFrame.java
// Demonstrating FlowLayout alignments.
import java.awt.FlowLayout;
import java.awt.Container;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JButton;

public class FlowLayoutFrame extends JFrame {
    private JButton leftJButton; // button to set alignment left
    private JButton centerJButton; // button to set alignment center
    private JButton rightJButton; // button to set alignment right
    private FlowLayout layout; // layout object
    private Container container; // container to set layout

    // set up GUI and register button listeners
    public FlowLayoutFrame() {
        super( "FlowLayout Demo" );
    }
}
```
setLayout = new FlowLayout(); // create FlowLayout
container = getContentPane(); // get container to layout
setLayout( layout ); // set frame layout

// set up leftJButton and register listener
leftJButton = new JButton( "Left" ); // create Left button
add( leftJButton ); // add Left button to frame
leftJButton.addActionListener(
    new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
    {
        // process leftJButton event
        public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
        {
            layout.setAlignment( FlowLayout.LEFT );
            // realign attached components
            layout.layoutContainer( container );
        } // end method actionPerformed
    } // end anonymous inner class
); // end call to addActionListener

// set up centerJButton and register listener
centerJButton = new JButton( "Center" ); // create Center button
add( centerJButton ); // add Center button to frame
centerJButton.addActionListener(
    new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
    {
        // process centerJButton event
        public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
        {
            layout.setAlignment( FlowLayout.CENTER );
            // realign attached components
            layout.layoutContainer( container );
        } // end method actionPerformed
    } // end anonymous inner class
); // end call to addActionListener

// set up rightJButton and register listener
rightJButton = new JButton( "Right" ); // create Right button
add( rightJButton ); // add Right button to frame
rightJButton.addActionListener(
    new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
    {
        // process rightJButton event
        public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
        {
            layout.setAlignment( FlowLayout.RIGHT );
            // realign attached components
            layout.layoutContainer( container );
        } // end method actionPerformed
    } // end anonymous inner class
); // end call to addActionListener
} // end FlowLayoutFrame constructor
As seen previously, a container's layout is set with method `setLayout` of class `Container`. Line 25 sets the layout manager to the `FlowLayout` declared at line 23. Normally, the layout is set before any GUI components are added to a container.
Look-and-Feel Observation 11.18

Each container can have only one layout manager. Separate containers in the same application can use different layout managers.

Note in this example that each button's event handler is specified with a separate anonymous inner class object (lines 3043, 4861 and 6671, respectively). Each button's `actionPerformed` event handler executes two statements. For example, line 37 in method `actionPerformed` for button `left` uses `FlowLayout` method `setAlignment` to change the alignment for the `FlowLayout` to a left-aligned (`FlowLayout.LEFT`) `FlowLayout`. Line 40 uses `LayoutManager` interface method `layoutContainer` (which is inherited by all layout managers) to specify that the `JFrame` should be rearranged based on the adjusted layout. According to which button was clicked, the `actionPerformed` method for each button sets the `FlowLayout`'s alignment to `FlowLayout.LEFT` (line 37), `FlowLayout.CENTER` (line 55) or `FlowLayout.RIGHT` (line 73).

---

11.17.2. BorderLayout

The `BorderLayout` layout manager (the default layout manager for a `JFrame`) arranges components into five regions: `NORTH`, `SOUTH`, `EAST`, `WEST` and `CENTER`. `NORTH` corresponds to the top of the container. Class `BorderLayout` extends `Object` and implements interface `LayoutManager2` (a subinterface of `LayoutManager` that adds several methods for enhanced layout processing).

A `BorderLayout` limits a `Container` to containing at most five componentsone in each region. The component placed in each region can be a container to which other components are attached. The components placed in the `NORTH` and `SOUTH` regions extend horizontally to the sides of the container and are as tall as the components placed in those regions. The `EAST` and `WEST` regions expand vertically between the `NORTH` and `SOUTH` regions and are as wide as the components placed in those regions. The component placed in the `CENTER` region expands to fill all remaining space in the layout (which is the reason the `JTextArea` in Fig. 11.36...
occupies the entire window). If all five regions are occupied, the entire container's space is covered by GUI components. If the NORTH or SOUTH region is not occupied, the GUI components in the EAST, CENTER and WEST regions expand vertically to fill the remaining space. If the EAST or WEST region is not occupied, the GUI component in the CENTER region expands horizontally to fill the remaining space. If the CENTER region is not occupied, the area is left empty—the other GUI components do not expand to fill the remaining space. The application of Fig. 11.41 and Fig. 11.42 demonstrates the BorderLayout layout manager by using five JButtons.

Figure 11.41. BorderLayout containing five buttons.
(This item is displayed on page 572 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.41: BorderLayoutFrame.java
// Demonstrating BorderLayout.
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JButton;

public class BorderLayoutFrame extends JFrame implements ActionListener {
    private JButton buttons[]; // array of buttons to hide portions
    private final String names[] = { "Hide North", "Hide South", "Hide East", "Hide West", "Hide Center" };
    private BorderLayout layout; // borderlayout object

    // set up GUI and event handling
    public BorderLayoutFrame() {
        super( "BorderLayout Demo" );

        layout = new BorderLayout( 5, 5 ); // 5 pixel gaps
        setLayout( layout ); // set frame layout
        buttons = new JButton[ names.length ]; // set size of array

        // create JButtons and register listeners for them
        for ( int count = 0 ; count < names.length; count++ ) {
            buttons[ count ] = new JButton( names[ count ] );
            buttons[ count ].addActionListener( this );
        } // end for

        add( buttons[ 0 ], BorderLayout.NORTH ); // add button to north
        add( buttons[ 1 ], BorderLayout.SOUTH ); // add button to south
        add( buttons[ 2 ], BorderLayout.EAST ); // add button to east
        add( buttons[ 3 ], BorderLayout.WEST ); // add button to west
        add( buttons[ 4 ], BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add button to center
    } // end BorderLayoutFrame constructor

    // handle button events
```
public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
{
    // check event source and layout content pane correspondingly
    for ( JButton button : buttons )
    {
        if ( event.getSource() == button )
            button.setVisible( false ); // hide button clicked
        else
            button.setVisible( true ); // show other buttons
    } // end for
    layout.layoutContainer( getContentPane() ); // layout content pane
} // end method actionPerformed
// end class BorderLayoutFrame

Figure 11.42. Test class for BorderLayoutFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 573 in the print version)

// Fig. 11.42: BorderLayoutDemo.java
// Testing BorderLayoutFrame.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class BorderLayoutDemo
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        BorderLayoutFrame borderLayoutFrame = new BorderLayoutFrame();
        borderLayoutFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        borderLayoutFrame.setSize( 300, 200 ); // set frame size
        borderLayoutFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class BorderLayoutDemo
Line 21 of Fig. 11.41 creates a `BorderLayout`. The constructor arguments specify the number of pixels between components that are arranged horizontally (horizontal gap space) and between components that are arranged vertically (vertical gap space), respectively. The default is one pixel of gap space horizontally and vertically. Line 22 uses method `setLayout` to set the content pane's layout to `layout`.

We add `Components` to a `BorderLayout` with another version of `Container` method `add` that takes two arguments: the `Component` to add and the region in which the `Component` should appear. For example, line 32 specifies that `buttons[0]` should appear in the `NORTH` region. The components can be added in any order, but only one component should be added to each region.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.19**
If no region is specified when adding a Component to a BorderLayout, the layout manager assumes that the Component should be added to region BorderLayout.CENTER.

Common Programming Error 11.6

*When more than one component is added to a region in a BorderLayout, only the last component added to that region will be displayed. There is no error that indicates this problem.*

Note that class BorderLayoutFrame implements ActionListener directly in this example, so the BorderLayoutFrame will handle the events of the JButtons. For this reason, line 29 passes the this reference to the addActionListener method of each JButton. When the user clicks a particular JButton in the layout, method actionPerformed (lines 4052) executes. The enhanced for statement at lines 4349 uses an if...else to hide the particular JButton that generated the event. Method setVisible (inherited into JButton from class Component) is called with a false argument (line 46) to hide the JButton. If the current JButton in the array is not the one that generated the event, method setVisible is called with a true argument (line 48) to ensure that the JButton is displayed on the screen. Line 51 uses LayoutManager method layoutContainer to recalculate the layout of the content pane. Notice in the screen captures of Fig. 11.41 that certain regions in the BorderLayout change shape as JButtons are hidden and displayed in other regions. Try resizing the application window to see how the various regions resize based on the window's width and height. For more complex layouts, group components in JPanels, each with a separate layout manager. Place the JPanels on the JFrame using either the default BorderLayout or some other layout.
11.17.3. GridLayout

The GridLayout layout manager divides the container into a grid so that components can be placed in rows and columns. Class GridLayout inherits directly from class Object and implements interface LayoutManager. Every Component in a GridLayout has the same width and height. Components are added to a GridLayout starting at the top-left cell of the grid and proceeding left to right until the row is full. Then the process continues left to right on the next row of the grid, and so on. The application of Fig. 11.43 and Fig. 11.44 demonstrates the GridLayout layout manager by using six JButton.

Figure 11.43. GridLayout containing six buttons.
(This item is displayed on pages 574 - 575 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 11.43: GridLayoutFrame.java
2 // Demonstrating GridLayout.
3 import java.awt.GridLayout;
4 import java.awt.Container;
5 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
6 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
7 import javax.swing.JFrame;
8 import javax.swing.JButton;
9
10 public class GridLayoutFrame extends JFrame implements ActionListener {
11    {
12        private JButton buttons[]; // array of buttons
13        private final String names[] =
14            { "one", "two", "three", "four", "five", "six" };
15        private boolean toggle = true; // toggle between two layouts
16        private Container container; // frame container
17        private GridLayout gridLayout1; // first gridlayout
18        private GridLayout gridLayout2; // second gridlayout
19
20        // no-argument constructor
21        public GridLayoutFrame() {
22            {
23                super( "GridLayout Demo" );
24                gridLayout1 = new GridLayout( 2, 3, 5, 5 ); // 2 by 3; gaps of 5
25                gridLayout2 = new GridLayout( 3, 2 ); // 3 by 2; no gaps
26                container = getContentPane(); // get content pane
27                setLayout( gridLayout1 ); // set JFrame layout
28                buttons = new JButton[ names.length ]; // create array of JButtons
29
30                for ( int count = 0; count < names.length; count++ )
31                    {
32                        buttons[ count ] = new JButton( names[ count ] );
33                        buttons[ count ].addActionListener( this ); // register listener
34                        add( buttons[ count ] ); // add button to JFrame
35                    } // end for
36            } // end GridLayoutFrame constructor
```
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event) {
    if (toggle) {
        container.setLayout(gridLayout2); // set layout to second
    } else {
        container.setLayout(gridLayout1); // set layout to first
        toggle = !toggle; // set toggle to opposite value
        container.validate(); // re-layout container
    }
} // end method actionPerformed

Figure 11.44. Test class for GridLayoutFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 575 in the print version)
Lines 2425 create two `GridLayout` objects (variables `grid1` and `grid2` are declared at lines 1718). The `GridLayout` constructor used at line 24 specifies a `GridLayout` with 2 rows, 3 columns, 5 pixels of horizontal-gap space between `Components` in the grid and 5 pixels of vertical-gap space between `Components` in the grid. The `GridLayout` constructor used at line 25 specifies a `GridLayout` with 3 rows and 2 columns that uses the default gap space (1 pixel).

The `JButton` objects in this example initially are arranged using `grid1` (set for the content pane at line 27 with method `setLayout`). The first component is added to the first column of the first row. The next component is added to the second column of the first row, and so on. When a `JButton` is pressed, method `actionPerformed` (lines 3948) is called. Every call to `actionPerformed` toggles the layout between `grid2` and `grid1`, using boolean variable `toggle` to determine the next layout to set.

Line 47 illustrates another way to reformat a container for which the layout has changed. `Container` method `validate` recomputes the container's layout based on the current layout manager for the `Container` and the current set of displayed GUI components.
11.18. Using Panels to Manage More Complex Layouts

Complex GUIs (like Fig. 11.1) require that each component be placed in an exact location. They often consist of multiple panels, with each panel's components arranged in a specific layout. Class JPanel extends JTextComponent and JComponent extends class Container, so every JPanel is a Container. Thus, every JPanel may have components, including other panels, attached to it with Container method add. The application of Fig. 11.45 and Fig. 11.46 demonstrates how a JPanel can be used to create a more complex layout in which several JButton s are placed in the SOUTH region of a BorderLayout.

Figure 11.45. JPanel with five JButton s in a GridLayout attached to the SOUTH region of a BorderLayout.

(This item is displayed on pages 576 - 577 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.45: PanelFrame.java
// Using a JPanel to help lay out components.
import java.awt.GridLayout;
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JPanel;
import javax.swing.JButton;

public class PanelFrame extends JFrame
{
    private JPanel buttonJPanel; // panel to hold buttons
    private JButton buttons[]; // array of buttons

    // no-argument constructor
    public PanelFrame()
    { 
        super( "Panel Demo" );
        buttons = new JButton[ 5 ]; // create buttons array
        buttonJPanel = new JPanel(); // set up panel
        buttonJPanel.setLayout( new GridLayout( 1, buttons.length ) );

        // create and add buttons
        for ( int count = 0; count < buttons.length; count++ )
        { 
            buttons[ count ] = new JButton( "Button " + ( count + 1 ) );
            buttonJPanel.add( buttons[ count ] ); // add button to panel
        } // end for

        add( buttonJPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH ); // add panel to JFrame
    } // end PanelFrame constructor
} // end class PanelFrame
```
Figure 11.46. Test class for PanelFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 577 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.46: PanelDemo.java
// Testing PanelFrame.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class PanelDemo extends JFrame {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        PanelFrame panelFrame = new PanelFrame();
        panelFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        panelFrame.setSize( 450, 200 ); // set frame size
        panelFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class PanelDemo
```

After JPanel buttonPanel is declared in line 11 and created at line 19, line 20 sets buttonPanel's layout to a GridLayout of one row and five columns (there are five JButtons in array button). Lines 23-27 add the five JButtons in array button to the JPanel in the loop. Line 26 adds the buttons directly to the JPanel class. JPanel does not have a content pane, unlike a JFrame. Line 29 uses the default BorderLayout to add buttonPanel to the SOUTH region. Note that the SOUTH region is as
tall as the buttons on buttonPanel. A JPanel is sized to the components it contains. As more components are added, the JPanel grows (according to the restrictions of its layout manager) to accommodate the components. Resize the window to see how the layout manager affects the size of the JButton.
11.19. JTextArea

A **JTextArea** provides an area for manipulating multiple lines of text. Like class **JTextField**, **JTextArea** is a subclass of **JTextComponent**, which declares common methods for **JTextFields**, **JTextArea**s and several other text-based GUI components.

The application in **Fig. 11.47** and **Fig. 11.48** demonstrates **JTextArea**s. One **JTextArea** displays text that the user can select. The other **JTextArea** is uneditable and is used to display the text the user selected in the first **JTextArea**. Unlike **JTextFields**, **JTextArea**s do not have action events. As with multiple-selection **JLists** (**Section 11.12**), an external event from another GUI component indicates when to process the text in a **JTextArea**. For example, when typing an e-mail message, you normally click a **Send** button to send the text of the message to the recipient. Similarly, when editing a document in a word processor, you normally save the file by selecting a **Save** or **Save As...** menu item. In this program, the button **Copy >>>** generates the external event that copies the selected text in the left **JTextArea** and displays it in the right **JTextArea**.

**Figure 11.47. Copying selected text from one JTextArea to another.**

(This item is displayed on page 579 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 11.47: TextAreaFrame.java
// Copying selected text from one textarea to another.
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import javax.swing.Box;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JTextArea;
import javax.swing.JButton;
import javax.swing.JScrollPane;

public class TextAreaFrame extends JFrame {
    private JTextArea textArea1; // displays demo string
    private JTextArea textArea2; // highlighted text is copied here
    private JButton copyJButton; // initiates copying of text

    // no-argument constructor
    public TextAreaFrame() {
```

```java
```
super("TextArea Demo");
Box box = Box.createHorizontalBox(); // create box
String demo = "This is a demo string to\n" +
"illustrate copying text\nfrom one textarea to\nanother textarea using an\nexternal event\n";

TextArea = new JTextArea( demo, 10, 15 ); // create textarea
box.add( new JScrollPane( textarea1 ) ); // add scrollpane

copyJButton = new JButton( "Copy >>>" ); // create copy button
box.add( copyJButton ); // add copy button to box
copyJButton.addActionListener( new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
{
    // set text in textarea2 to selected text from textarea1
    public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
    {
        textarea2.setText( textarea1.getSelectedText() );
    } // end method actionPerformed
} // end anonymous inner class
); // end call to addActionListener

textarea2 = new JTextArea( 10, 15 ); // create second textarea
textArea2.setEditable( false ); // disable editing
box.add( new JScrollPane( textarea2 ) ); // add scrollpane

add( box ); // add box to frame
} // end TextAreaFrame constructor
} // end class TextAreaFrame

Figure 11.48. Test class for TextAreaFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 580 in the print version)
In the constructor (lines 1848), line 21 creates a **Box** container (package `javax.swing`) to organize the GUI components. **Box** is a subclass of **Container** that uses a **BoxLayout** layout manager (discussed in detail in Section 22.9) to arrange the GUI components either horizontally or vertically. **Box**'s static method `createHorizontalBox` creates a **Box** that arranges components from left to right in the order that they are attached.

Lines 26 and 43 create **JTextArea**s `textarea1` and `textarea2`. Line 26 uses **JTextArea**'s three-argument constructor, which takes a **String** representing the initial text and two **int**s specifying that the **JTextArea** has 10 rows and 15 columns. Line 43 uses **JTextArea**'s two-argument constructor, specifying that the **JTextArea** has 10 rows and 15 columns. Line 26 specifies that `demo` should be displayed as the default **JTextArea** content. A **JTextArea** does not provide scrollbars if it cannot display its complete contents. So, line 27 creates a **JScrollPane** object, initializes it with `textarea1` and attaches it to container `box`. By default, horizontal and vertical scrollbars will appear as necessary in a **JScrollPane**.

Lines 2941 create **JButton** object `copyButton` with the label "Copy >>>", add `copyButton` to container `box` and register the event handler for `copyButton`'s `ActionEvent`. This button provides the external event that determines when the
program should copy the selected text in `textArea1` to `textField2`. When the user clicks `copyButton`, line 38 in `actionPerformed` indicates that method `getSelectedText` (inherited into `JTextArea` from `JTextComponent`) should return the selected text from `textField1`. The user selects text by dragging the mouse over the desired text to highlight it. Method `setText` changes the text in `textField2` to the string returned by `getSelectedText`.

Lines 4345 create `textField2`, set its editable property to `false` and add it to container `box`. Line 47 adds `box` to the `JFrame`. Recall from Section 11.17 that the default layout of a `JFrame` is a `BorderLayout` and that the `add` method by default attaches its argument to the CENTER of the `BorderLayout`.

It is sometimes desirable, when text reaches the right side of a `JTextArea`, to have the text wrap to the next line. This is referred to as **line wrapping**. By default, `JTextArea` does not wrap lines.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 11.20**

To provide line-wrapping functionality for a `JTextArea`, invoke `JTextArea` method `setLineWrap` with a `true` argument.

---

**JScrollPane Scrollbar Policies**

This example uses a `JScrollPane` to provide scrolling for a `JTextArea`. By default, `JScrollPane` displays scrollbars only if they are required. You can set the horizontal and vertical **scrollbar policies** of a `JScrollPane` when it is constructed. If a program has a reference to a `JScrollPane`, the program can use `JScrollPane` methods `setHorizontalScrollBarPolicy` and `setVerticalScrollBarPolicy` to change the scrollbar policies at any time. Class `JScrollPane` declares the constants

```
JScrollPane.VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_ALWAYS
JScrollPane.HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_ALWAYS
```
to indicate that a scrollbar should always appear, constants

```java
JScrollPane.VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_AS_NEEDED
JScrollPane.HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_AS_NEEDED
```

[Page 581]

to indicate that a scrollbar should appear only if necessary (the defaults) and constants

```java
JScrollPane.VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_NEVER
JScrollPane.HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_NEVER
```

to indicate that a scrollbar should never appear. If the horizontal scrollbar policy is set to `JScrollPane.HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_NEVER`, a `JTextArea` attached to the `JScrollPane` will automatically wrap lines.
11.20. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned many GUI components and how to implement event handling. You also learned about nested classes, inner classes and anonymous inner classes. You saw the special relationship between an inner-class object and an object of its top-level class. You learned how to use JOptionPane dialogs to obtain text input from the user and how to display messages to the user. You also learned how to create applications that execute in their own windows. We discussed class JFrame and components that enable a user to interact with an application. We also showed you how to display text and images to the user. You learned how to customize JPanel s to create custom drawing areas, which you will use extensively in the next chapter. You saw how to organize components on a window using layout managers and how to creating more complex GUIs by using JPanel s to organize components. Finally, you learned about the JTextArea component in which a user can enter text and an application can display text. In Chapter 22, GUI Components: Part 2, you will learn about more advanced GUI components, such as sliders, menus and more complex layout managers. In the next chapter, you will learn how to add graphics to your GUI application. Graphics allow you to draw shapes and text with colors and styles.
Summary

• A graphical user interface (GUI) presents a user-friendly mechanism for interacting with an application. A GUI gives an application a distinctive "look" and "feel."

• Providing different applications with consistent, intuitive user interface components allows users to be somewhat familiar with an application, so that they can learn it more quickly.

• GUIs are built from GUI componentssometimes called controls or widgets.

• Most applications use windows or dialog boxes (also called dialogs) to interact with the user.

• Class JOptionPane (package javax.swing) provides prepackaged dialog boxes for both input and output. JOptionPane static method showInputDialog displays an input dialog.

• A prompt typically uses sentence-style capitalizationa style that capitalizes only the first letter of the first word in the text unless the word is a proper noun.

• An input dialog can input only input Strings. This is typical of most GUI components.

• JOptionPane static method showMessageDialog displays a message dialog.

• Most Swing GUI components are located in package javax.swing. They are part of the Java Foundation Classes (JFC)Java's libraries for cross-platform GUI development.

• Together, the appearance and the way in which the user interacts with the application are known as that application's look-and-feel. Swing GUI components allow you to specify a uniform look-and-feel for your application across all platforms or to use each platform's custom look-and-feel.
Lightweight Swing components are not tied to actual GUI components supported by the underlying platform on which an application executes.

Several Swing components are heavyweight components that require direct interaction with the local windowing system, which may restrict their appearance and functionality.

Class `Component (package java.awt)` declares many of the attributes and behaviors common to the GUI components in packages `java.awt` and `javax.swing`.

Class `Container (package java.awt)` is a subclass of `Component`. Components are attached to `Containers` so the `Components` can be organized and displayed on the screen.

Class `JComponent (package javax.swing)` is a subclass of `Container`. `JComponent` is the superclass of all lightweight Swing components and declares their common attributes and behaviors.

Some common `JComponent` features include a pluggable look-and-feel, shortcut keys called mnemonics, tool tips, support for assistive technologies and support for user interface localization.

Most windows are instances of class `JFrame` or a subclass of `JFrame`. `JFrame` provides the basic attributes and behaviors of a window.

A `JLabel` displays a single line of read-only text, an image, or both text and an image. Text in a `JLabel` normally uses sentence-style capitalization.

When building a GUI, each GUI component must be attached to a container, such as a window created with a `JFrame`.

Many IDEs provide GUI design tools in which you can specify the exact size and location of a component by using the mouse, then the IDE will generate the GUI code for you.

`JComponent` method `setToolTipText` specifies the tool tip that is displayed when the user positions the mouse cursor over a lightweight component.
- Container method `add` attaches a GUI component to a `Container`.

- Class `ImageIcon` (package `javax.swing`) supports several image formats, including Graphics Interchange Format (GIF), Portable Network Graphics (PNG) and Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG).

- Method `getClass` (of class `Object`) retrieves a reference to the `Class` object that represents the class declaration for the object on which the method is called.

- Class method `getResource` returns the location of its argument as a URL. Method `getResource` uses the `Class` object's class loader to determine the location of the resource.

- Interface `SwingConstants` (package `javax.swing`) declares a set of common integer constants that are used with many Swing components.

- The horizontal and vertical alignments of a `JLabel` can be set with methods `setHorizontalAlignment` and `setVerticalAlignment`, respectively.

- `JLabel` method `setText` sets the text displayed on a label. The corresponding method `getText` retrieves the current text displayed on a label.

- `JLabel` method `setIcon` specifies the `Icon` to display on a label. The corresponding method `getIcon` retrieves the current `Icon` displayed on a label.

- `JLabel` methods `setHorizontalTextPosition` and `setVerticalTextPosition` specify the text position in the label.

- `JFrame` method `setDefaultCloseOperation` with constant `JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE` as the argument indicates that the program should terminate when the window is closed by the user.

- `Component` method `setSize` specifies the width and height of a component.

- `Component` method `setVisible` with the argument `true` displays a `JFrame` on the screen.

- GUIs are event driven when the user interacts with a GUI component,
events drive the program to perform tasks.

- The code that performs a task in response to an event is called an event handler and the overall process of responding to events is known as event handling.

- Class `JTextField` extends class `JTextComponent` (package `javax.swing.text`), which provides many features common to Swing's text-based components. Class `JPasswordField` extends `JTextField` and adds several methods that are specific to processing passwords.

- A `JPasswordField` shows that characters are being typed as the user enters them, but hides the actual characters with echo characters.

- A component receives the focus when the user clicks the component.

- `JTextComponent` method `setEditable` can be used to make a text field uneditable.

- Before an application can respond to an event for a particular GUI component, you must perform several coding steps: 1) Create a class that represents the event handler. 2) Implement an appropriate interface, known as an event-listener interface, in the class from Step 1. 3) Indicate that an object of the class from Steps 1 and 2 should be notified when the event occurs. This is known as registering the event handler.

- Java allows you to declare nested classes inside other classes. Nested classes can be static or non-static. Non-static nested classes are called inner classes and are frequently used for event handling.

- Before an object of an inner class can be created, there must first be an object of the top-level class that contains the inner class, because an inner-class object implicitly has a reference to an object of its top-level class.

- An inner-class object is allowed to directly access all the instance variables and methods of its top-level class.
A nested class that is \texttt{static} does not require an object of its top-level class and does not implicitly have a reference to an object of the top-level class.

When the user presses \textit{Enter} in a \texttt{JTextField} or \texttt{JPasswordField}, the GUI component generates an \texttt{ActionEvent} (package \texttt{java.awt.event}). Such an event is processed by an object that implements the interface \texttt{ActionListener} (package \texttt{java.awt.event}).

\texttt{JTextField} method \texttt{addActionListener} registers the event handler for a component text field. This method receives as its argument an \texttt{ActionListener} object.

The GUI component with which the user interacts is the event source.

An \texttt{ActionEvent} object contains information about the event that just occurred, such as the event source and the text in the text field.

\texttt{ActionEvent} method \texttt{getSource} returns a reference to the event source. \texttt{ActionEvent} method \texttt{getActionCommand} returns the text the user typed in a text field or the label on a \texttt{JButton}.

\texttt{JPasswordField} method \texttt{getPassword} returns the password the user typed.

For each event-object type, there is typically a corresponding event-listener interface. Each event-listener interface specifies one or more event-handling methods that must be declared in the class that implements the interface.

When an event occurs, the GUI component with which the user interacted notifies its registered listeners by calling each listener's appropriate event-handling method.

Every \texttt{JComponent} has an instance variable called \texttt{listenerList} that refers to an object of class \texttt{EventListenerList} (package \texttt{javax.swing.event}). Each object of a \texttt{JComponent} subclass maintains a references to all of its registered listeners in the \texttt{listenerList}.

Every GUI component supports several event types, including mouse events, key events and others. When an event occurs, the event is dispatched only to the event listeners of the appropriate type. The GUI
A button is a component the user clicks to trigger a specific action. All the button types are subclasses of `AbstractButton` (package `javax.swing`), which declares the common features of Swing buttons. Button labels typically use book-title capitalization—a style that capitalizes the first letter of each significant word in the text and does not end with any punctuation.

Command buttons are created with class `JButton`.

A `JButton` can display an `Icon`. To provide the user with an extra level of visual interaction with the GUI, a `JButton` can also have a rollover `Icon`—an `Icon` that is displayed when the user positions the mouse over the button.

Method `setRolloverIcon` (of class `AbstractButton`) specifies the image displayed on a button when the user positions the mouse over it.

The Swing GUI components contain three types of state buttons: `JToggleButton`, `JCheckBox`, and `JRadioButton`.

Classes `JCheckBox` and `JRadioButton` are subclasses of `JToggleButton`. A `JRadioButton` is different from a `JCheckBox` in that normally several `JRadioButtons` are grouped together, and only one in the group can be selected at any time.

Method `setFont` (of class `Component`) sets the font of a component to a new object of class `Font` (package `java.awt`).

When the user clicks a `JCheckBox`, an `ItemEvent` occurs. This event can be handled by an `ItemListener` object, which must implement method `itemStateChanged`. Method `addItemListener` registers the listener for a `JCheckBox` or `JRadioButton` object.

`JCheckBox` method `isSelected` determines if a `JCheckBox` is selected.

`JRadioButtons` are similar to `JCheckboxes` in that they have two states: selected and unselected.
and not selected. However, radio buttons normally appear as a group in which only one button can be selected at a time. Selecting a different radio button forces all others to be deselected.

- **JRadioButton**s are used to represent mutually exclusive options.

- The logical relationship between **JRadioButton**s is maintained by a **ButtonGroup** object (package *javax.swing*).

- **ButtonGroup** method **add** associates each a **JRadioButton** with a **ButtonGroup**. If more than one selected **JRadioButton** object is added to a group, the selected one that was added first will be selected when the GUI is displayed.

- **JRadioButton**s generate **ItemEvent**s when they are clicked.

- A **JComboBox** provides a list of items from which the user can make a single selection. **JComboBoxes** generate **ItemEvent**s.

- Each item in a **JComboBox** has an index. The first item added to a **JComboBox** appears as the currently selected item when the **JComboBox** is displayed. Other items are selected by clicking the **JComboBox**, which expands into a list from which the user can make a selection.

- **JComboBox** method **setMaximumRowCount** sets the maximum number of elements that are displayed when the user clicks the **JComboBox**. If there are additional items, the **JComboBox** provides a scrollbar that allows the user to scroll through all the elements in the list.

- An anonymous inner class is a special form of inner class that is declared without a name and typically appears inside a method declaration. Since an anonymous inner class has no name, one object of the anonymous inner class must be created at the point where the class is declared.

- **JComboBox** method **getSelectedIndex** returns the index of the selected item.

- A **JList** displays a series of items from which the user may select one or more items. Class **JList** supports single-selection lists and multiple-selection lists.
• When the user clicks an item in a JList, a ListSelectionEvent occurs. JList method addListSelectionListener registers a ListSelectionListener for a JList's selection events. A ListSelectionListener (package javax.swing.event) must implement method valueChanged.

• JList method setVisibleRowCount specifies the number of items that are visible in the list.

• JList method setSelectionMode specifies a list's selection mode.

• A JList does not provide a scrollbar if there are more items in the list than the number of visible rows. In this case, a JScrollPane object can be used to provide the scrolling capability.

• JFrame method getContentPane returns a reference to the JFrame's content pane where GUI components are displayed.

• JList method getSelectedIndex returns the selected item's index.

• A multiple-selection list enables the user to select many items from a JList.

• JList method setFixedCellWidth sets a JList's width. Method setFixedCellHeight sets the height of each item in a JList.

• There are no events to indicate that a user has made multiple selections in a multiple-selection list. Normally, an external event generated by another GUI component specifies when the multiple selections in a JList should be processed.

• JList method setListData sets the items displayed in a JList. JList method getSelectedValues returns an array of Object's representing the selected items in a JList.

• The MouseListener and MouseMotionListener event-listener interfaces are used to handle mouse events. Mouse events can be trapped for any GUI component that extends Component.

• Interface MouseInputListener (package javax.swing.event) extends interfaces MouseListener and MouseMotionListener to create a single interface containing all their methods.
Each of the mouse event-handling methods takes a `MouseEvent` object as its argument. A `MouseEvent` object contains information about the mouse event that occurred, including the x- and y-coordinates of the location where the event occurred. These coordinates are measured from the upper-left corner of the GUI component on which the event occurred.

The methods and constants of class `InputEvent` (`MouseEvent`'s superclass) enable an application to determine which mouse button the user clicked.

Interface `MouseWheelListener` enables applications to respond to the rotation of a mouse wheel.

GUI components inherit methods `addMouseListener` and `addMouseMotionListener` from class `Component`.

Many event-listener interfaces contain multiple methods. For many of these interfaces, packages `java.awt.event` and `javax.swing.event` provide event-listener adapter classes. An adapter class implements an interface and provides a default implementation of each method in the interface. You can extend an adapter class to inherit the default implementation of every method and subsequently override only the method(s) you need for event handling.

`MouseEvent` method `getClickCount` returns the number of mouse button clicks. Methods `isMetaDown` and `isAltDown` determine which mouse button the user clicked.

Lightweight Swing components that extend class `JComponent` contain method `paintComponent`, which is called when a lightweight Swing component is displayed. By overriding this method, you can specify how to draw shapes using Java's graphics capabilities.

When customizing a `JPanel` for use as a dedicated drawing area, the subclass should override method `paintComponent` and call the superclass version of `paintComponent` as the first statement in the body of the overridden method.

Subclasses of `JComponent` support transparency. When a component is
opaque, `paintComponent` clears the component's background before the component is displayed.

- The transparency of a Swing lightweight component can be set with method `setOpaque` (a `false` argument indicates that the component is transparent).

- Class `Point` (package `java.awt`) represents an x-y coordinate.

- Class `Graphics` is used to draw.

- `MouseEvent` method `getPoint` obtains the `Point` where a mouse event occurred.

- Method `repaint` (inherited indirectly from class `Component`) indicates that a component should be refreshed on the screen as soon as possible.

- Method `paintComponent` receives a `Graphics` parameter and is called automatically any time a lightweight component needs to be displayed on the screen.

- `Graphics` method `fillOval` draws a solid oval. The method's four parameters represent the bounding box in which the oval is displayed. The first two parameters are the upper-left x-coordinate and the upper-left y-coordinate of the rectangular area. The last two coordinates represent the rectangular area's width and height.

- Interface `KeyListener` is used to handle key events that are generated when keys on the keyboard are pressed and released. Method `addKeyListener` of class `Component` registers a `KeyListener` for a component.

- `KeyEvent` method `getKeyCode` gets the virtual key code of the key that was pressed. Class `KeyEvent` maintains a set of virtual key-code constants that represent every key on the keyboard.

- `KeyEvent` method `getKeyText` returns a string containing the name of the key that was pressed.

- `KeyEvent` method `getKeyChar` gets the Unicode value of the character typed.

- `KeyEvent` method `isActionKey` determines whether the key in an event was an
- **InputEvent method getModifiers** determines whether any modifier keys (such as *Shift*, *Alt* and *Ctrl*) were pressed when the key event occurred.

- **KeyEvent method getKeyModifiersText** produces a string containing the names of the pressed modifier keys.

- Layout managers arrange GUI components in a container for presentation purposes.

- All layout managers implement the interface `LayoutManager` (package `java.awt`).

- **Container method setLayout** specifies the layout of a container.

- **FlowLayout** is the simplest layout manager. GUI components are placed on a container from left to right in the order in which they are added to the container. When the edge of the container is reached, components continue to display on the next line. Class `FlowLayout` allows GUI components to be left aligned, centered (the default) and right aligned.

- **FlowLayout method setAlignment** changes the alignment for a `FlowLayout`.

- The **BorderLayout** layout manager (the default for a `JFrame`) arranges components into five regions: *NORTH*, *SOUTH*, *EAST*, *WEST* and *CENTER*. *NORTH* corresponds to the top of the container.

- A **BorderLayout** limits a `Container` to containing at most five components one in each region.

- The **GridLayout** layout manager divides the container into a grid so that components can be placed in rows and columns.

- **Container method validate** recomputes a container's layout based on the current layout manager for the `Container` and the current set of displayed GUI components.

- A **JTextArea** provides an area for manipulating multiple lines of text. `JTextArea` is a subclass of `JTextComponent`, which declares common methods for
JTextFields, JTextAreas and several other text-based GUI components.

Class Box is a subclass of Container that uses a BoxLayout layout manager to arrange the GUI components either horizontally or vertically.

Box static method createHorizontalBox creates a Box that arranges components from left to right in the order that they are attached.

Method getSelectedText (inherited into JTextArea from JTextComponent) returns the selected text from a JTextArea.

You can set the horizontal and vertical scrollbar policies of a JScrollPane when it is constructed. JScrollPane methods setHorizontalScrollBarPolicy and setVerticalScrollBarPolicy can be used change the scrollbar policies at any time.
Terminology

AbstractButton class

ActionEvent class

ActionListener interface

actionPerformed method of ActionListener

adapter class

add method of class ButtonGroup

add method of Container

addActionListener method of class JTextField

addItemListener method of class AbstractButton

addKeyListener method of class Component

addListSelectionListener method of class JList

addMouseListener method of class Component

addMouseMotionListener method of class Component

addWindowListener method of class JFrame

anonymous inner class

AWTEvent class

book-title capitalization
BorderLayout  

Box  

BoxLayout  

ButtonGroup  

Class  

Component  

Container  

content pane  

createHorizontalBox  method of class Box  

dedicated drawing area  

default constructor of an anonymous inner class  

delegation event model  

dialog box  

dispatch an event  

event  

event driven  

event handler  

event handling  

event listener  

event-listener adapter class
event-listener interface

event object

event registration

event source

EventListenerList class

fillOval method of class Graphics

FlowLayout class

focus

Font class

getActionCommand method of ActionEvent

getClass method of Object

getClickCount method of MouseEvent

getContentPane method of JFrame

getIcon method of JLabel

getKeyChar method of KeyEvent

getKeyCode method of KeyEvent

getKeyModifiersText method of KeyEvent

getKeyText method of KeyEvent

getModifiers method of InputEvent

getPassword method of JPasswordField
getPoint method of MouseEvent

getResource method of Class

ggetSelectedIndex method of JList

ggetSelectedIndex method of JComboBox

ggetSelectedText method of JTextComponent

ggetSelectedValues method of JList

ggetSource method of EventObject

ggetStateChange method of ItemEvent

ggetText method of JLabel

ggetX method of MouseEvent

ggetY method of MouseEvent

graphical user interface (GUI)

Graphics class

GridLayout class

GUI component

heavyweight GUI component

[Page 588]

Icon interface

ImageIcon class
inner class

input dialog

InputEvent class

isActionKey method of KeyEvent

isAltDown method of InputEvent

isAltDown method of MouseEvent

isControlDown method of InputEvent

isMetaDown method of InputEvent

isMetaDown method of MouseEvent

isSelected method of JCheckBox

isShiftDown method of InputEvent

ItemEvent class

ItemClickListener interface

itemStateChanged method of ItemListener

java.awt package

java.awt.event package

javax.swing package

javax.swing.event package

JButton class

JCheckBox class
JComboBox class

JComponent class

JFrame class

JLabel class

JList class

JOptionPane class

JPanel class

JPasswordField class

JRadioButton class

JScrollPane class

JSlider class

JTextArea class

JTextComponent class

JTextField class

JToggleButton class

KeyAdapter class

KeyEvent class

KeyListener interface

keyPressed method of KeyListener

keyReleased method of KeyListener
keyTyped method of KeyListener

layout manager

layoutContainer method of LayoutManager

LayoutManager interface

LayoutManager2 interface

lightweight GUI component

listenerList field of JComponent

ListSelectionEvent class

ListSelectionListener interface

ListSelectionModel class

look-and-feel

message dialog

MouseListener class

mouseClicked method of MouseListener

mouseDragged method of MouseMotionListener

mouseEntered method of MouseListener

MouseEvent class

mouseExited method of MouseListener

MouseAdapter class

MouseInputListener interface

MouseListener interface
MouseMotionAdapter class

MouseListener interface

mouseMoved method of MouseMotionListener

mousePressed method of MouseListener

mouseReleased method of MouseListener

MouseWheelEvent class

MouseWheelListener interface

mouseWheelMoved method of MouseWheelListener

nested class

paintComponent method of JComponent

Point class

registering an event handler

repaint method of Component

rollover Icon

setAlignment method of FlowLayout

setBackground method of Component

setDefaultCloseOperation method of JFrame

setEditable method of JTextComponent

setFixedCellHeight method of JList

setFixedCellWidth method of JList
setFont method of Component

setHorizontalAlignment method of JLabel

setHorizontalScrollBarPolicy method of JScrollPane

setHorizontalTextPosition method of JLabel

setIcon method of JLabel

setLayout method of Container

setLineWrap method of JTextArea

setListData method of JList

setMaximumRowCount method of JComboBox

setOpaque method of JComponent

setRolloverIcon method of AbstractButton

setSelectionMode method of JList

setSize method of JFrame

setText method of JLabel

setText method of JTextComponent

setToolTipText method of JComponent

setVerticalAlignment method of JLabel

setVerticalScrollBarPolicy method of JSlider
setVerticalTextPosition method of JLabel

setVisible method of Component

setVisible method of JFrame

setVisibleRowCount method of JList

showInputDialog method of JOptionPane

showMessageDialog method of JOptionPane

static nested class

Swing GUI components

SwingConstants interface

tool tip

top-level class

transparency of a JComponent

typing in a text field

validate method of Container

valueChanged method of ListSelectionListener

WindowAdapter class

windowClosing method of WindowListener

WindowListener interface
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Method __________ is called when the mouse is moved with no buttons pressed and an event listener is registered to handle the event.

2. Text that cannot be modified by the user is called __________ text.

3. A(n) __________ arranges GUI components in a Container.

4. The add method for attaching GUI components is a method of class __________.

5. GUI is an acronym for __________.

6. Method __________ is used to specify the layout manager for a container.

7. A mouseDragged method call is preceded by a(n) __________ method call and followed by a(n) __________ method call.

8. Class __________ contains methods that display message dialogs and input dialogs.

9. An input dialog capable of receiving input from the user is displayed with method __________ of class __________.

10. A dialog capable of displaying a message to the user is displayed with method __________ of class __________.

11. Both JTextFields and JTextAreas directly extend class __________.

Determine whether each statement is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. BorderLayout is the default layout manager for a JFrame's content pane.

2. When the mouse cursor is moved into the bounds of a GUI component, method mouseOver is called.

3. A JPanel cannot be added to another JPanel.

4. In a BorderLayout, two buttons added to the NORTH region will be placed side by side.

5. When one is using BorderLayout, a maximum of five components can be displayed.

6. Inner classes are not allowed to access the members of the enclosing class.

7. A JTextArea's text is always read-only.

8. Class JTextArea is a direct subclass of class Component.

Find the error(s) in each of the following statements, and explain how to correct it (them):

1. buttonName = JButton( "Caption" );

2. JLabel aLabel, JLabel; // create references

3. txtField = new JTextField( 50, "Default Text" );

4. Container container = getContentPane();
setLayout( new BorderLayout() );
button1 = new JButton( "North Star" );
button2 = new JButton( "South Pole" );
container.add( button1 );
container.add( button2 );
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

11.1

a) mouseMoved. b) uneditable (read-only). c) layout manager. d) Container. e) graphical user interface.

f) 11. setLayout. g) mousePressed, mouseReleased. h) JOptionPane. i) showInputDialog, JOptionPane.

j) showMessageDialog, JOptionPane. k) JTextComponent.

11.2

1. True.

2. False. Method mouseEntered is called.

3. False. A JPanel can be added to another JPanel, because JPanel is an indirect subclass of Component. Therefore, a JPanel is a Component. Any Component can be added to a Container.

4. False. Only the last button added will be displayed. Remember that only one component should be added to each region in a BorderLayout.

5. True.

6. False. Inner classes have access to all members of the enclosing class declaration.

7. False. JTextAreas are editable by default.

8. False. JTextArea derives from class JTextComponent.

11.3

1. new is needed to create an object.

2. JLabel is a class name and cannot be used as a variable name.

3. The arguments passed to the constructor are reversed. The String must be passed first.

4. BorderLayout has been set, and components are being added without specifying the region so both are added to the center region. Proper add statements might be

   container.add( button1, BorderLayout.NORTH );
   container.add( button2, BorderLayout.SOUTH );
Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. The JTextField class directly extends class __________.

2. Container method __________ attaches a GUI component to a container.

3. Method __________ is called when a mouse button is released (without moving the mouse).

4. The __________ class is used to create a group of JRadioButtons.

Determine whether each statement is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. Only one layout manager can be used per Container.

2. GUI components can be added to a Container in any order in a BorderLayout.

3. JRadioButton\text{s} provide a series of mutually exclusive options (i.e., only one can be true at a time).

4. Graphics method setFont is used to set the font for text fields.

5. A JList displays a scrollbar if there are more items in the list than can be displayed.

6. A Mouse object has a method called mouseDragged.

Determine whether each statement is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. A JPanel is a JComponent.

2. A JPanel is a Component.

3. A JLabel is a Container.

4. A JList is a JPanel.

5. An AbstractButton is a JButton.

6. A JTextField is an Object.

7. ButtonGroup is a subclass of JComponent.

Find any errors in each of the following lines of code, and explain how to correct them.

1. import javax.swing.JFrame

2. panelObject.GridLayout( 8, 8 ); // set GridLayout

3. container.setLayout( new FlowLayout( FlowLayout.DEFAULT ) );

4. container.add( eastButton, EAST ); // BorderLayout
11.8
Create the following GUI. You do not have to provide any functionality.

11.9
Create the following GUI. You do not have to provide any functionality.

11.10
Create the following GUI. You do not have to provide any functionality.

11.11
Create the following GUI. You do not have to provide any functionality.

Write a temperature conversion application that converts from Fahrenheit to Celsius. The Fahrenheit temperature should be entered from the keyboard (via a JTextField). A JLabel should be used to display the converted temperature. Use the following formula for the conversion:

11.12
\[ \text{Celsius} = \frac{5}{9} \times (\text{Fahrenheit} - 32) \]
Enhance the temperature conversion application of Exercise 11.12 by adding the Kelvin temperature scale. The application should also allow the user to make conversions between any two scales. Use the following formula for the conversion between Kelvin and Celsius (in addition to the formula in Exercise 11.12):

$$K \text{elvin} = C \text{elsius} + 273.15$$

Write an application that displays events as they occur in a JTextArea. Provide a JComboBox with a minimum of four items. The user should be able to choose an event to monitor from the JComboBox. When that particular event occurs, display information about the event in the JTextArea. Use method to String on the event object to convert it to a string representation.

Write an application that plays "guess the number" as follows: Your application chooses the number to be guessed by selecting an integer at random in the range 11000. The application then displays the following in a label:

I have a number between 1 and 1000. Can you guess my number?
Please enter your first guess.

A JTextField should be used to input the guess. As each guess is input, the background color should change to either red or blue. Red indicates that the user is getting "warmer," and blue indicates that the user is getting "colder." A JLabel should display either "Too High" or "Too Low" to help the user zero in on the correct answer. When the user gets the correct answer, "Correct!" should be displayed, and the JTextField used for input should be changed to be uneditable. A JButton should be provided to allow the user to play the game again. When the JButton is clicked, a new random number should be generated and the input JTextField changed to be editable.

It is often useful to display the events that occur during the execution of an application. This can help you understand when the events occur and how they are generated. Write an application that enables the user to generate and process every event discussed in this chapter. The application should provide methods from the ActionListener, ItemListener, ListSelectionListener, MouseListener, MouseMotionListener and KeyListener interfaces to display messages when the events occur. Use method toString to convert the event objects received in each event handler into a String that can be displayed. Method toString creates a String containing all the information in the event object.

Modify the application of Section 6.10 to provide a GUI that enables the user to click a JButton to roll the dice. The application should also display four JLabels and four JTextFields, with one JLabel for each JTextField. The JTextFields should be used to display the values of each die and the sum of the dice after each roll. The point should be displayed in the fourth JTextField when the user does not win or lose on the first roll and should continue to be displayed until the game is lost.

(Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study Exercise: Expanding the Interface

In this exercise, you will implement a GUI application that uses the MyShape hierarchy from Exercise 10.10
to create an interactive drawing application. You will create two classes for the GUI and provide a test class that launches the application. The classes of the MyShape hierarchy require no additional changes.

The first class to create is a subclass of JPanel called DrawPanel, which represents the area on which the user draws the shapes. Class DrawPanel should have the following instance variables:

1. An array shapes of type MyShape that will store all the shapes the user draws.
2. An integer shapeCount that counts the number of shapes in the array.
3. An integer shapeType that determines the type of shape to draw.
4. A MyShape currentShape that represents the current shape the user is drawing.
5. A Color currentColor that represents the current drawing color.
6. A boolean filledShape that determines whether to draw a filled shape.
7. A JLabel statusLabel that represents the status bar. The status bar will display the coordinates of the current mouse position.

Class DrawPanel should also declare the following methods:

1. Overridden method paintComponent that draws the shapes in the array. Use instance variable shapeCount to determine how many shapes to draw. Method paintComponent should also call currentShape’s draw method, provided that currentShape is not null.
2. Set methods for the shapeType, currentColor and filledShape.
3. Method clearLastShape should clear the last shape drawn by decrementing instance variable shapeCount. Ensure that shapeCount is never less than zero.
4. Method clearDrawing should remove all the shapes in the current drawing by setting shapeCount to zero.

Methods clearLastShape and clearDrawing should call method repaint (inherited from JPanel) to refresh the drawing on the DrawPanel by indicating that the system should call method paintComponent. Class DrawPanel should also provide event handling to enable the user to draw with the mouse. Create a single inner class that both extends MouseAdapter and implements MouseMotionListener to handle all mouse events in one class.

In the inner class, override method mousePressed so that it assigns currentShape a new shape of the type specified by shapeType and initializes both points to the mouse position. Next, override method mouseReleased to finish drawing the current shape and place it in the array. Set the second point of currentShape to the current mouse position and add currentShape to the array. Instance variable shapeCount determines the insertion index. Set currentShape to null and call method repaint to update the drawing with the new shape.

Override method mouseMoved to set the text of the statusLabel so that it displays the mouse coordinates this will update the label with the coordinates every time the user moves (but does not drag) the mouse within the DrawPanel. Next, override method mouseDragged so that it sets the second point of the currentShape to the current mouse position and calls method repaint. This will allow the user to see the shape while dragging the mouse. Also, update the JLabel in mouseDragged with the current position of the mouse.

Create a constructor for DrawPanel that has a single JLabel parameter. In the constructor, initialize statusLabel with the value passed to the parameter. Also initialize array shapes with 100 entries, shapeCount to 0, shapeType to the value that represents a line, currentShape to null and currentColor to Color.BLACK. The constructor should then set the background color of the DrawPanel to Color.WHITE and register the MouseListener and MouseMotionListener so the JPanel properly handles mouse events.
Next, create a `JFrame` subclass called `DrawFrame` that provides a GUI that enables the user to control various aspects of drawing. For the layout of the `DrawFrame`, we recommend a `BorderLayout`, with the components in the `NORTH` region, the main drawing panel in the `CENTER` region, and a status bar in the `SOUTH` region, as in Fig. 11.49. In the top panel, create the components listed below. Each component’s event handler should call the appropriate method in class `DrawPanel`.

**Figure 11.49. Interface for drawing shapes.**
(This item is displayed on page 594 in the print version)

1. A button to undo the last shape drawn.
2. A button to clear all shapes from the drawing.
3. A combo box for selecting the color from the 13 predefined colors.
4. A combo box for selecting the shape to draw.
5. A check box that specifies whether a shape should be filled or unfilled.

Declare and create the interface components in `DrawFrame`'s constructor. You will need to create the status bar `JLabel` before you create the `DrawPanel`, so you can pass the `JLabel` as an argument to `DrawPanel`'s constructor. Finally, create a test class that initializes and displays the `DrawFrame` to execute the application.
Chapter 12. Graphics and Java 2D™

*One picture is worth ten thousand words.*

Chinese proverb

*Treat nature in terms of the cylinder, the sphere, the cone, all in perspective.*

Paul Cézanne

*Colors, like features, follow the changes of the emotions.*

Pablo Picasso

*Nothing ever becomes real till it is experienced even a proverb is no proverb to you till your life has illustrated it.*

John Keats

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- To understand graphics contexts and graphics objects.
- To understand and be able to manipulate colors.
- To understand and be able to manipulate fonts.
- To use methods of class `Graphics` to draw lines, rectangles, rectangles with rounded corners, three-dimensional rectangles, ovals, arcs and polygons.
- To use methods of class `Graphics2D` from the Java 2D API to draw lines, rectangles, rectangles with rounded corners, ellipses, arcs and general paths.
- To be able to specify `Paint` and `Stroke` characteristics of shapes displayed with `Graphics2D`. 
12.1. Introduction

In this chapter, we overview several of Java’s capabilities for drawing two-dimensional shapes, controlling colors and controlling fonts. One of Java's initial appeals was its support for graphics that enabled programmers to visually enhance their applications. Java now contains many more sophisticated drawing capabilities as part of the Java 2D™ API. This chapter begins with an introduction to many of Java's original drawing capabilities. Next we present several of the more powerful Java 2D capabilities, such as controlling the style of lines used to draw shapes and the way shapes are filled with color and patterns. [Note: Several concepts covered in this chapter have already been covered in the optional GUI and Graphics Case Study of Chapters 310. So, some material will be repetitive if you read the case study. You do not need to read the case study to understand this chapter.]

Figure 12.1 shows a portion of the Java class hierarchy that includes several of the basic graphics classes and Java 2D API classes and interfaces covered in this chapter. Class Color contains methods and constants for manipulating colors. Class JComponent contains method paintComponent, which will be used to draw graphics on a component. Class Font contains methods and constants for manipulating fonts. Class FontMetrics contains methods for obtaining font information. Class Graphics contains methods for drawing strings, lines, rectangles and other shapes. Class Graphics2D, which extends class Graphics, is used for drawing with the Java 2D API. Class Polygon contains methods for creating polygons. The bottom half of the figure lists several classes and interfaces from the Java 2D API. Class BasicStroke helps specify the drawing characteristics of lines. Classes GradientPaint and TexturePaint help specify the characteristics for filling shapes with colors or patterns. Classes GeneralPath, Line2D, Arc2D, Ellipse2D, Rectangle2D and RoundRectangle2D represent several Java 2D shapes. [Note: We begin the chapter by discussion Java's original graphics capabilities, then move on to the Java 2D API. However, it is important to understand that the classes discussed as part of Java's original graphics capabilities are now also considered to be part of the Java 2D API.]
To begin drawing in Java, we must first understand Java's **coordinate system** (Fig. 12.2), which is a scheme for identifying every point on the screen. By default, the upper-left corner of a GUI component (e.g., a window) has the coordinates (0, 0). A coordinate pair is composed of an **x-coordinate** (the **horizontal coordinate**) and a **y-coordinate** (the **vertical coordinate**). The x-coordinate is the horizontal distance moving right from the left of the screen. The y-coordinate is the vertical distance moving down from the top of the screen.
the screen. The **x-axis** describes every horizontal coordinate, and the **y-axis** describes every vertical coordinate.

**Figure 12.2. Java coordinate system. Units are measured in pixels.**

Text and shapes are displayed on the screen by specifying coordinates. The coordinates are used to indicate where graphics should be displayed on a screen. Coordinate units are measured in **pixels**. A pixel is a display monitor's smallest unit of resolution.

**Portability Tip 12.1**

*Different display monitors have different resolutions (i.e., the density of the pixels varies). This can cause graphics to appear to be different sizes on different monitors or on the same monitor with different settings.*
12.2. Graphics Contexts and Graphics Objects

A Java graphics context enables drawing on the screen. A Graphics object manages a graphics context and draws pixels on the screen that represent text and other graphical object (e.g., lines, ellipses, rectangles and other polygons). Graphics objects contain methods for drawing, font manipulation, color manipulation and the like. Every application we have seen in the text that performs drawing on the screen has used the Graphics object $g$ (the argument to the paintComponent method of a component such as a JPanel) to manage the application's graphics context.

Class Graphics is an abstract class (i.e., Graphics objects cannot be instantiated). This contributes to Java's portability. Because drawing is performed differently on every platform that supports Java, there cannot be just one implementation of the drawing capabilities on all systems. For example, the graphics capabilities that enable a PC running Microsoft Windows to draw a rectangle are different from those that enable a Linux workstation to draw a rectangle and they are both different from the graphics capabilities that enable a Macintosh to draw a rectangle. When Java is implemented on each platform, a subclass of Graphics is created that implements the drawing capabilities. This implementation is hidden from us by class Graphics, which supplies the interface that enables us to use graphics in a platform-independent manner.

Class Component is the superclass for many of the classes in the java.awt package. (We discussed class Component in Chapter 11.) Class JComponent, which inherits indirectly from class Component, contains a paintComponent method that can be used to draw graphics. Method paintComponent takes a Graphics object as an argument. This object is passed to the paintComponent method by the system when a lightweight Swing component needs to be repainted. The header for the paintComponent method is

```
[Page 599]

    public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
```

Parameter $g$ receives a reference to an instance of the system-specific subclass that Graphics extends. The preceding method header should look familiar to
you it is the same one we used in some of the applications in Chapter 11. Actually, class `JComponent` is a superclass of `JPanel`. Many capabilities of class `JPanel` are inherited from class `JComponent`.

Method `paintComponent` is seldom called directly by the programmer because drawing graphics is an event-driven process. When a GUI application executes, the application container calls method `paintComponent` for each lightweight component as the GUI is displayed. For `paintComponent` to be called again, an event must occur (such as covering and uncovering the component with another window).

If the programmer needs to have `paintComponent` execute (i.e., if the programmer wants to update the graphics drawn on the Swing component), a call is made to method `repaint`, which is inherited by all `JComponents` indirectly from class `Component` (package `java.awt`). Method `repaint` is frequently called by the programmer to request a call to method `paintComponent`. Method `repaint` should not be overridden, because it performs some system-dependent tasks. The header for `repaint` is

```java
public void repaint()
```
12.3. Color Control

Class `Color` declares methods and constants for manipulating colors in a Java program. The predeclared color constants are summarized in Fig. 12.3, and several color methods and constructors are summarized in Fig. 12.4. Note that two of the methods in Fig. 12.4 are `Graphics` methods that are specific to colors.

**Figure 12.3. Color constants and their RGB values.**
(This item is displayed on page 600 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Color constant</th>
<th>Color</th>
<th>RGB value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color RED</code></td>
<td>red</td>
<td>255, 0, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color GREEN</code></td>
<td>green</td>
<td>0, 255, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color BLUE</code></td>
<td>blue</td>
<td>0, 0, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color ORANGE</code></td>
<td>orange</td>
<td>255, 200, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color PINK</code></td>
<td>pink</td>
<td>255, 175, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color CYAN</code></td>
<td>cyan</td>
<td>0, 255, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color MAGENTA</code></td>
<td>magenta</td>
<td>255, 0, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color YELLOW</code></td>
<td>yellow</td>
<td>255, 255, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color BLACK</code></td>
<td>black</td>
<td>0, 0, 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color WHITE</code></td>
<td>white</td>
<td>255, 255, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color GRAY</code></td>
<td>gray</td>
<td>128, 128, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color LIGHT_GRAY</code></td>
<td>light gray</td>
<td>192, 192, 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static Color DARK_GRAY</code></td>
<td>dark gray</td>
<td>64, 64, 64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 12.4. Color methods and color-related `Graphics` methods.**
### Color constructors and methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>public Color(int r, int g, int b)</code></td>
<td>Creates a color based on red, green and blue components expressed as integers from 0 to 255.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public Color(float r, float g, float b)</code></td>
<td>Creates a color based on red, green and blue components expressed as floating-point values from 0.0 to 1.0.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>public int getRed()</code></td>
<td>Returns a value between 0 and 255 representing the red content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public int getGreen()</code></td>
<td>Returns a value between 0 and 255 representing the green content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public int getBlue()</code></td>
<td>Returns a value between 0 and 255 representing the blue content.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Graphics methods for manipulating Colors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>public Color getColor()</code></td>
<td>Returns <code>Color</code> object representing current color for the graphics context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public void setColor(Color c)</code></td>
<td>Sets the current color for drawing with the graphics context.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Every color is created from a red, a green and a blue component. Together these components are called **RGB values**. All three RGB components can be integers in the range from 0 to 255, or they can be floating-point values in the range 0.0 to 1.0. The first RGB component specifies the amount of red, the second the amount of green and the third the amount of blue. The larger the RGB value, the greater the amount of that particular color. Java enables the programmer to choose from 256 x 256 x 256 (or approximately 16.7 million) colors. However, not all computers are capable of displaying all these colors. The computer will display the closest color it can.

Two of class `Color`'s constructors are shown in **Fig. 12.4**. One that takes three `int` arguments and one that takes three `float` arguments, with each argument specifying the amount of red, green and blue. The `int` values must be in the range 0-255 and the `float` values must be in the range 0.0-1.0. The new `Color` object will have the specified amounts of red, green and blue. `Color` methods `getRed`, `getGreen` and `getBlue` return integer values from 0 to 255 representing the amount of red, green and blue, respectively. `Graphics` method `getColor` returns a `Color` object representing the current drawing color. `Graphics` method `setColor` sets the current drawing color.

The application of **Fig. 12.5** demonstrates several methods from **Fig. 12.4** by drawing filled rectangles and strings in several different colors. When the application begins execution, class `ColorJPanel`'s `paintComponent` method (lines 1037 of **Fig. 12.5**) is called to paint the window. Line 17 uses `Graphics` method `setColor` to set the current drawing color. Method `setColor` receives a `Color` object. The expression `new Color(255, 0, 0)` creates a new `Color` object that represents red (red value 255, and 0 for the green and blue values). Line 18 uses `Graphics` method `fillRect` to draw a filled rectangle in the current color. Method `fillRect` draws a rectangle based on its four arguments. The first two integer values represent the upper-left x-coordinate and upper-left y-coordinate, where the `Graphics` object begins drawing the rectangle. The third and fourth arguments are nonnegative integers that represent the width and the height of the rectangle in pixels, respectively. A rectangle drawn using method `fillRect` is filled by the current color of the `Graphics` object.

**Figure 12.5.** Color changed for drawing.
Figure 12.5: ColorJPanel.java

```java
// Fig. 12.5: ColorJPanel.java
// Demonstrating Colors.
import java.awt.Graphics;
import java.awt.Color;
import javax.swing.JPanel;

public class ColorJPanel extends JPanel
{
    // draw rectangles and Strings in different colors
    public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
    {
        super.paintComponent( g ); // call superclass's paintComponent
        this.setBackground( Color.WHITE );
        // set new drawing color using integers
        g.setColor( new Color( 255, 0, 0 ) );
        g.fillRect( 15, 25, 100, 20 );
        g.drawString( "Current RGB: " + g.getColor(), 130, 40 );
        // set new drawing color using floats
        g.setColor( new Color( 0.50f, 0.75f, 0.0f ) );
        g.fillRect( 15, 50, 100, 20 );
        g.drawString( "Current RGB: " + g.getColor(), 130, 65 );
        // set new drawing color using static Color objects
        g.setColor( Color.BLUE );
        g.fillRect( 15, 75, 100, 20 );
        g.drawString( "Current RGB: " + g.getColor(), 130, 90 );
        // display individual RGB values
        Color color = Color.MAGENTA;
        g.setColor( color );
        g.fillRect( 15, 100, 100, 20 );
        g.drawString( "RGB values: " + color.getRed() + ", " + color.getGreen() + ", " + color.getBlue(), 130, 115 );
    }
// end method paintComponent
} // end class ColorJPanel
```

Figure 12.6. Creating JFrame to display colors on JPanel.

```java
// Fig. 12.6: ShowColors.java
// Demonstrating Colors.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class ShowColors
{
    // execute application
    public static void main( String args[] )
```
Line 19 uses Graphics method **drawString** to draw a **String** in the current color. The expression `g.getColor()` retrieves the current color from the Graphics object. The returned Color object is concatenated with string "Current RGB:", resulting in an implicit call to class Color's **toString** method. Note that the String representation of the Color object contains the class name and package (java.awt.Color), and the red, green and blue values.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 12.1**

*Everyone perceives colors differently. Choose your colors carefully to ensure that your application is readable. Try to avoid using many different colors in close proximity.*

Lines 22-24 and lines 27-29 perform the same tasks again. Line 22 uses the Color constructor with three **float** arguments to create a dark green color (0.50f
for red, 0.75f for green and 0.0f for blue). Note the syntax of the values. The letter f appended to a floating-point literal indicates that the literal should be treated as type float. Recall that by default, floating-point literals are treated as type double.

Line 27 sets the current drawing color to one of the predeclared Color constants (Color.BLUE). The Color constants are static, so they are created when class Color is loaded into memory at execution time.

The statement in lines 3536 makes calls to Color methods getRed, getGreen and getBlue on the predeclared Color.MAGENTA constant. Method main of class ShowColors (lines 818 of Fig. 12.6) creates the JFrame that will contain a ColorJPanel object where the colors will be displayed.

Software Engineering Observation 12.1

To change the color, you must create a new Color object (or use one of the predeclared Color constants). Like String objects, Color objects are immutable (not modifiable).

Package javax.swing provides the JColorChooser GUI component that enables application users to select colors. The application of Fig. 12.7 Fig. 12.8 demonstrate a JColorChooser dialog. When you click the Change Color button, a JColorChooser dialog appears. When you select a color and press the dialog's OK button, the background color of the application window changes.

Figure 12.7. JColorChooser dialog.

(This item is displayed on pages 603 - 604 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 12.7: ShowColors2 JFrame.java
2 // Choosing colors with JColorChooser.
3 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
4 import java.awt.Color;
5 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
6 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
```
Figure 12.8. Choosing colors with \texttt{JColorChooser}.

(This item is displayed on pages 604 - 605 in the print version)
Class `JColorChooser` provides a static convenience method `showDialog` that creates a `JColorChooser` object, attaches it to a dialog box and displays the dialog. Lines 36-37 of Fig. 12.7 invoke this method to display the color chooser dialog. Method `showDialog` returns the selected `Color` object, or `null` if the user
presses Cancel or closes the dialog without pressing OK. The method takes three arguments: a reference to its parent Component, a String to display in the title bar of the dialog and the initial selected Color for the dialog. The parent component is a reference to the window from which the dialog is displayed (in this case the JFrame, with the reference name frame). The dialog will be centered on the parent. If the parent is null, the dialog is centered on the screen. While the color chooser dialog is on the screen, the user cannot interact with the parent component. This type of dialog is called a modal dialog (discussed in Chapter 22, GUI Components: Part 2).

After the user selects a color, lines 4041 determine whether color is null, and, if so, set color to Color.LIGHT_GRAY. Line 44 invokes method setBackground to change the background color of the JPanel. Method setBackground is one of the many Component methods that can be used on most GUI components. Note that the user can continue to use the Change Color button to change the background color of the application. Figure 12.8 contains method main, which executes the program.

The second screen capture of Fig. 12.8 demonstrates the default JColorChooser dialog that allows the user to select a color from a variety of color swatches. Note that there are actually three tabs across the top of the dialog Swatches, HSB and RGB. These represent three different ways to select a color. The HSB tab allows you to select a color based on hue, saturation and brightness values that are used to define the amount of light in a color. We do not discuss HSB values. For more information on hue, saturation and brightness, visit whatis.techtarget.com/definition/0,,sid9_qci212262,00.html. The RGB tab allows you to select a color by using sliders to select the red, green and blue components. The HSB and RGB tabs are shown in Fig. 12.9.

Figure 12.9. HSB and RGB tabs of the JColorChooser dialog.
Sliders to select the red, green and blue color components
12.4. Font Control

This section introduces methods and constants for font control. Most font methods and font constants are part of class `Font`. Some methods of class `Font` and class `Graphics` are summarized in Fig. 12.10.

Figure 12.10. Font-related methods and constants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method or constant</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Font constants, constructors and methods</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static int PLAIN</code></td>
<td>A constant representing a plain font style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static int BOLD</code></td>
<td>A constant representing a bold font style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public final static int ITALIC</code></td>
<td>A constant representing an italic font style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public Font(String name, int style, int size)</code></td>
<td>Creates a Font object with the specified font name, style and size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public int getStyle()</code></td>
<td>Returns an integer value indicating the current font style.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>public int getSize()</code></td>
<td>Returns an integer value indicating the current font size.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
public String getName()

    Returns the current font name as a string.

public String getFamily()

    Returns the font's family name as a string.

public boolean isPlain()

    Returns true if the font is plain, else false.

public boolean isBold()

    Returns true if the font is bold, else false.

public boolean isItalic()

    Returns true if the font is italic, else false.

Graphics methods for manipulating Fonts

public Font getFont()

    Returns a Font object reference representing the current font.

public void setFont( Font f )

    Sets the current font to the font, style and size specified by the Font object reference f.

Class Font's constructor takes three arguments: the font name, font style and font size. The font name is any font currently supported by the system on which the program is running, such as standard Java fonts Monospaced, SansSerif and Serif. The font style is Font.PLAIN, Font.ITALIC or Font.BOLD (each is a static field of class Font). Font styles can be used in combination (e.g., Font.ITALIC + Font.BOLD). The font size is measured in points. A point is 1/72 of an inch. Graphics method setFont sets the current drawing font to its Font argument.
Portability Tip 12.2

The number of fonts varies greatly across systems. Java provides five logical font names: serif, Monospaced, SansSerif, Dialog and DialogInput that can be used on all Java platforms. The Java runtime environment (JRE) on each platform maps these logical font names to actual fonts installed on the platform. The actual fonts used may vary by platform.

The application of Fig. 12.11 Fig. 12.12 displays text in four different fonts, with each font in a different size. Figure 12.11 uses the Font constructor to initialize Font objects (in lines 16, 20, 24 and 29) that are each passed to Graphics method setFont to change the drawing font. Each call to the Font constructor passes a font name (Serif, Monospaced or SansSerif) as a string, a font style (Font.PLAIN, Font.ITALIC or Font.BOLD) and a font size. Once Graphics method setFont is invoked, all text displayed following the call will appear in the new font until the font is changed. Each font's information is displayed in lines 17, 21, 25 and 3031 using method drawString. Note that the coordinate passed to drawString corresponds to the lower-left corner of the baseline of the font. Line 28 changes the drawing color to red, so the next string displayed appears in red. Lines 3031 display information about the final Font object. Method getFont of class Graphics returns a Font object representing the current font. Method getName returns the current font name as a string. Method getSize returns the font size in points.

Figure 12.11. Graphics method setFont changes the drawing font.

(This item is displayed on page 608 in the print version)
import javax.swing.JPanel;

public class FontJPanel extends JPanel
{
    // display Strings in different fonts and colors
    public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
    {
        super.paintComponent( g ); // call superclass's paintComponent

        // set font to Serif (Times), bold, 12pt and draw a string
        g.setFont( new Font( "Serif", Font.BOLD, 12 ) );
        g.drawString( "Serif 12 point bold.", 20, 50 );

        // set font to Monospaced (Courier), italic, 24pt and draw a string
        g.setFont( new Font( "Monospaced", Font.ITALIC, 24 ) );
        g.drawString( "Monospaced 24 point italic.", 20, 70 );

        // set font to SansSerif (Helvetica), plain, 14pt and draw a string
        g.setFont( new Font( "SansSerif", Font.PLAIN, 14 ) );
        g.drawString( "SansSerif 14 point plain.", 20, 90 );

        // set font to Serif (Times), bold/italic, 18pt and draw a string
        g.setColor( Color.RED );
        g.setFont( new Font( "Serif", Font.BOLD + Font.ITALIC, 18 ) );
        g.drawString( g.getFont().getName() + " " + g.getFont().getSize() + " point bold italic.", 20, 110 );
    } // end method paintComponent
} // end class FontJPanel

Figure 12.12. Creating JFrame to display fonts.

// Fig. 12.12: Fonts.java
// Using fonts.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class Fonts
{
    // execute application
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        // create frame for FontJPanel
        JFrame frame = new JFrame( "Using fonts" );
        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        frame.add( fontJPanel ); // add fontJPanel to frame
        frame.setSize( 420, 170 ); // set frame size
        frame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class Fonts
Figure 12.12 contains method `main`, which creates a `JFrame`. We add a `FontJPanel` object to this `JFrame` (line 15), which displays the graphics created in Fig. 12.11.

**Software Engineering Observation 12.2**

To change the font, you must create a new `Font` object. `Font` objects are immutable; `Font` has no set methods to change the characteristics of the current font.

**Font Metrics**

Sometimes it is necessary to get information about the current drawing font, such as its name, style and size. Several `Font` methods used to get font information are summarized in Fig. 12.10. Method `getStyle` returns an integer value representing the current style. The integer value returned is either `Font.PLAIN`, `Font.ITALIC`, `Font.BOLD` or the combination of `Font.ITALIC` and `Font.BOLD`. Method `getFamily` returns the name of the font family to which the current font belongs. The name of the font family is platform specific. `Font` methods are also available to test the style of the current font, and these too are summarized in Fig. 12.10. Methods `isPlain`, `isBold` and `isItalic` return `true` if the current font style is plain, bold or italic, respectively.
Sometimes precise information about a font's metrics must be known such as height, descent (the amount a character dips below the baseline), ascent (the amount a character rises above the baseline) and leading (the difference between the descent of one line of text and the ascent of the line of text below it—that is, the interline spacing). Figure 12.13 illustrates some of the common font metrics.

**Figure 12.13. Font metrics.**

Class `FontMetrics` declares several methods for obtaining font metrics. These methods and `Graphics` method `getFontMetrics` are summarized in Fig. 12.14. The application of Fig. 12.15Fig. 12.16 uses the methods of Fig. 12.14 to obtain font metric information for two fonts.

**Figure 12.14. FontMetrics and Graphics methods for obtaining font metrics.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>FontMetrics methods</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public int getAscent()</td>
<td>Returns the ascent of a font in points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public int getDescent()</td>
<td>Returns the descent of a font in points.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public int getLeading()</td>
<td>Returns the leading of a font in points.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
public int getHeight()

Returns the height of a font in points.

Graphics methods for getting a Font's FontMetrics

public FontMetrics getFontMetrics()

Returns the FontMetrics object for the current drawing Font.

public FontMetrics getFontMetrics( Font f )

Returns the FontMetrics object for the specified Font argument.

Figure 12.15. Font metrics.
(This item is displayed on page 611 in the print version)
Figure 12.16. Creating **JFrame** to display font metric information.

(This item is displayed on page 612 in the print version)
Line 15 of Fig. 12.15 creates and sets the current drawing font to a SansSerif, bold, 12-point font. Line 16 uses Graphics method getFontMetrics to obtain the FontMetrics object for the current font. Line 17 outputs the String representation of the Font returned by g.getFont(). Lines 18-21 use FontMetric methods to obtain the ascent, descent, height and leading for the font.

Line 23 creates a new Serif, italic, 14-point font. Line 24 uses a second version of Graphics method getFontMetrics, which accepts a Font argument and returns a corresponding FontMetrics object. Lines 27-30 obtain the ascent, descent, height and leading for the font. Note that the font metrics are slightly different for the two fonts.
12.5. Drawing Lines, Rectangles and Ovals

This section presents Graphics methods for drawing lines, rectangles and ovals. The methods and their parameters are summarized in Fig. 12.17. For each drawing method that requires a width and height parameter, the width and height must be nonnegative values. Otherwise, the shape will not display.

Figure 12.17. Graphics methods that draw lines, rectangles and ovals.
(This item is displayed on pages 612 - 613 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>public void drawLine( int x1, int y1, int x2, int y2 )</td>
<td>Draws a line between the point (x1, y1) and the point (x2, y2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public void drawRect( int x, int y, int width, int height)</td>
<td>Draws a rectangle of the specified width and height. The top-left corner of the rectangle has the coordinates (x, y). Only the outline of the rectangle is drawn using the Graphics object's color. The body of the rectangle is not filled with this color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public void fillRect( int x, int y, int width, int height )</td>
<td>Draws a filled rectangle with the specified width and height. The top-left corner of the rectangle has the coordinate (x, y). The rectangle is filled with the Graphics object's color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public void clearRect( int x, int y, int width, int height )</td>
<td>Draws a filled rectangle with the specified width and height in the current background color. The top-left corner of the rectangle has the coordinate (x, y). This method is useful if the programmer wants to remove a portion of an image.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public void drawRoundRect( int x, int y, int width, int height, int arcWidth, int arcHeight )</td>
<td>Draws a rectangle with rounded corners in the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
current color with the specified width and height. The arcWidth and arcHeight determine the rounding of the corners (see Fig. 12.20). Only the outline of the shape is drawn.

```java
public void fillRoundRect( int x, int y, int width, int height, int arcWidth, int arcHeight )
```

Draws a filled rectangle with rounded corners in the current color with the specified width and height. The arcWidth and arcHeight determine the rounding of the corners (see Fig. 12.20).

```java
public void draw3DRect( int x, int y, int width, int height, boolean b )
```

Draws a three-dimensional rectangle in the current color with the specified width and height. The top-left corner of the rectangle has the coordinates (x, y). The rectangle appears raised when b is true and lowered when b is false. Only the outline of the shape is drawn.

```java
public void fill3DRect( int x, int y, int width, int height, boolean b )
```

Draws a filled three-dimensional rectangle in the current color with the specified width and height. The top-left corner of the rectangle has the coordinates (x, y). The rectangle appears raised when b is true and lowered when b is false.

```java
public void drawOval( int x, int y, int width, int height )
```

Draws an oval in the current color with the specified width and height. The bounding rectangle's top-left corner is at the coordinates (x, y). The oval touches all four sides of the bounding rectangle at the center of each side (see Fig. 12.21). Only the outline of the shape is drawn.

```java
public void fillOval( int x, int y, int width, int height )
```

Draws a filled oval in the current color with the specified width and height. The bounding rectangle's top-left corner is at the coordinates (x, y). The oval touches all four sides of the bounding rectangle at the center of each side (see Fig. 12.21).
The application of Fig. 12.18 Fig. 12.19 demonstrates drawing a variety of lines, rectangles, three-dimensional rectangles, rounded rectangles and ovals.

**Figure 12.18. Drawing lines, rectangles and ovals.**
(This item is displayed on page 614 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 12.18: LinesRectsOvalsJPanel.java
2 // Drawing lines, rectangles and ovals.
3 import java.awt.Color;
4 import java.awt.Graphics;
5 import javax.swing.JPanel;
6 public class LinesRectsOvalsJPanel extends JPanel
7 {
8     // display various lines, rectangles and ovals
9     public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
10     {
11         super.paintComponent( g ); // call superclass's paint method
12         this.setBackground( Color.WHITE );
13
14         g.setColor( Color.RED );
15         g.drawLine( 5, 30, 380, 30 );
16
17         g.setColor( Color.BLUE );
18         g.drawRect( 5, 40, 90, 55 );
19         g.fillRect( 100, 40, 90, 55 );
20
21         g.setColor( Color.CYAN );
22         g.fillRoundRect( 195, 40, 90, 55, 50, 50 );
23         g.drawRoundRect( 290, 40, 90, 55, 20, 20 );
24
25         g.setColor( Color.YELLOW );
26         g.draw3DRect( 5, 100, 90, 55, true );
27         g.fill3DRect( 100, 100, 90, 55, false );
28
29         g.setColor( Color.MAGENTA );
30         g.drawOval( 195, 100, 90, 55 );
31         g.fillOval( 290, 100, 90, 55 );
32     } // end method paintComponent
33 } // end class LinesRectsOvalsJPanel
```

**Figure 12.19. Creating JFrame to display lines, rectangles and ovals.**
(This item is displayed on page 615 in the print version)
Fig. 12.19: LinesRectsOvals.java

// Drawing lines, rectangles and ovals.
import java.awt.Color;
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class LinesRectsOvals {
    // execute application
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        // create frame for LinesRectsOvalsJPanel
        JFrame frame = new JFrame( "Drawing lines, rectangles and ovals" );
        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        LinesRectsOvalsJPanel linesRectsOvalsJPanel =
            new LinesRectsOvalsJPanel();
        linesRectsOvalsJPanel.setBackground( Color.WHITE );
        frame.add( linesRectsOvalsJPanel ); // add panel to frame
        frame.setSize( 400, 210 ); // set frame size
        frame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class LinesRectsOvals

In Fig. 12.18, line 17 draws a red line, line 20 draws an empty blue rectangle and line 21 draws a filled blue rectangle. Methods fillRoundRect (line 24) and drawRoundRect (line 25) draw rectangles with rounded corners. Their first two arguments specify the coordinates of the upper-left corner of the bounding rectangle the area in which the rounded rectangle will be drawn. Note that the upper-left corner coordinates are not the edge of the rounded rectangle, but the coordinates where the edge would be if the rectangle had square corners. The third and fourth arguments specify the width and height of the rectangle. The last two arguments determine the horizontal and vertical diameters of the arc (i.e., the arc width and arc height) used to represent the
Figure 12.20 labels the arc width, arc height, width and height of a rounded rectangle. Using the same value for the arc width and arc height produces a quarter circle at each corner. When the arc width, arc height, width and height have the same values, the result is a circle. If the values for width and height are the same and the values of arcWidth and arcHeight are 0, the result is a square.

Figure 12.20. Arc width and arc height for rounded rectangles. (This item is displayed on page 615 in the print version)

Methods draw3DRect (line 28) and fill3DRect (line 29) take the same arguments. The first two arguments specify the top-left corner of the rectangle. The next two arguments specify the width and height of the rectangle, respectively. The last argument determines whether the rectangle is raised (true) or lowered (false). The three-dimensional effect of draw3DRect appears as two edges of the rectangle in the original color and two edges in a slightly darker color. The three-dimensional effect of fill3DRect appears as two edges of the rectangle in the original drawing color and the fill and other two edges in a slightly darker color. Raised rectangles have the original drawing color edges at the top and left of the rectangle. Lowered rectangles have the original drawing color edges at the bottom and right of the rectangle. The three-dimensional effect is difficult to see in some colors.
Methods `drawOval` and `fillOval` (lines 3233) take the same four arguments. The first two arguments specify the top-left coordinate of the bounding rectangle that contains the oval. The last two arguments specify the width and height of the bounding rectangle, respectively. Figure 12.21 shows an oval bounded by a rectangle. Note that the oval touches the center of all four sides of the bounding rectangle. (The bounding rectangle is not displayed on the screen.)

**Figure 12.21. Oval bounded by a rectangle.**

[View full size image]
12.6. Drawing Arcs

An **arc** is drawn as a portion of an oval. Arc angles are measured in degrees. Arcs **sweep** (i.e., move along a curve) from a **starting angle** by the number of degrees specified by their **arc angle**. The starting angle indicates in degrees where the arc begins. The arc angle specifies the total number of degrees through which the arc sweeps. **Figure 12.22** illustrates two arcs. The left set of axes shows an arc sweeping from zero degrees to approximately 110 degrees. Arcs that sweep in a counterclockwise direction are measured in **positive degrees**. The set of axes on the right shows an arc sweeping from zero degrees to approximately 110 degrees. Arcs that sweep in a clockwise direction are measured in **negative degrees**. Note the dashed boxes around the arcs in **Fig. 12.22**. When drawing an arc, we specify a bounding rectangle for an oval. The arc will sweep along part of the oval. **Graphics methods** `drawArc` and `fillArc` for drawing arcs are summarized in **Fig. 12.23**.

**Figure 12.22. Positive and negative arc angles.**
(This item is displayed on page 616 in the print version)

**Figure 12.23. Graphics methods for drawing arcs.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>public void <code>drawArc</code></td>
<td>(<code>int x, int y, int width, int height, int</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>startAngle, int arcAngle</code>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Draws an arc relative to the bounding rectangle's top-left x and y coordinates with the specified width and height. The arc segment is drawn starting at startAngle and sweeps arcAngle degrees.

```java
public void fillArc( int x, int y, int width, int height, int startAngle, int arcAngle )
```

Draws a filled arc (i.e., a sector) relative to the bounding rectangle's top-left x and y coordinates with the specified width and height. The arc segment is drawn starting at startAngle and sweeps arcAngle degrees.

The application of Fig. 12.24 Fig. 12.25 demonstrates the arc methods of Fig. 12.23. The application draws six arcs (three unfilled and three filled). To illustrate the bounding rectangle that helps determine where the arc appears, the first three arcs are displayed inside a red rectangle that has the same x, y, width and height arguments as the arcs.

**Figure 12.24. Arcs displayed with `drawArc` and `fillArc`.**

(This item is displayed on pages 617 - 618 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 12.24: ArcsJPanel.java
// Drawing arcs.
import java.awt.Color;
import java.awt.Graphics;
import javax.swing.JPanel;

public class ArcsJPanel extends JPanel {
    public void paintComponent( Graphics g ) {
        super.paintComponent( g ); // call superclass's paintComponent

        // start at 0 and sweep 360 degrees
        g.setColor( Color.RED );
        g.drawRect( 15, 35, 80, 80 );
        g.setColor( Color.BLACK );
        g.drawArc( 15, 35, 80, 80, 0, 360 );

        // start at 0 and sweep 110 degrees
        g.setColor( Color.RED );
        g.drawRect( 100, 35, 80, 80 );
```
Figure 12.25. Creating JFrame to display arcs.
(This item is displayed on pages 618 - 619 in the print version)
12.7. Drawing Polygons and Polylines

**Polygons** are closed multisided shapes composed of straight line segments. **Polylines** are sequences of connected points. Figure 12.26 discusses methods for drawing polygons and polylines. Note that some methods require a Polygon object (package java.awt). Class Polygon's constructors are also described in Fig. 12.26. The application of Fig. 12.27Fig. 12.28 draws polygons and polylines.

**Figure 12.26. Graphics methods for polygons and class Polygon methods.**

(This item is displayed on pages 619 - 620 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Graphics methods for drawing polygons</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public void drawPolygon( int xPoints[], int yPoints[], int points )</td>
<td>Draws a polygon. The x-coordinate of each point is specified in the xPoints array, and the y-coordinate of each point in the yPoints array. The last argument specifies the number of points. This method draws a closed polygon. If the last point is different from the first, the polygon is closed by a line that connects the last point to the first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public void drawPolyline( int xPoints[], int yPoints[], int points )</td>
<td>Draws a sequence of connected lines. The x-coordinate of each point is specified in the xPoints array, and the y-coordinate of each point in the yPoints array. The last argument specifies the number of points. If the last point is different from the first, the polyline is not closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public void drawPolygon( Polygon p )</td>
<td>Draws the specified polygon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public void fillPolygon( int xPoints[], int yPoints[], int points )</td>
<td>Draws a filled polygon. The x-coordinate of each point is specified in the xPoints array, and the y-coordinate of each point in the yPoints array. The last argument specifies the number of points. This method draws a closed polygon. If the last point is different from the first, the polygon is closed by a line that connects the last point to the first.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
point is different from the first, the polygon is closed by a line that connects the last point to the first.

```java
public void fillPolygon( Polygon p )
```

Draws the specified filled polygon. The polygon is closed.

**Polygon constructors and methods**

```java
public Polygon()
```

Constructs a new polygon object. The polygon does not contain any points.

```java
public Polygon( int xValues[], int yValues[], int numberOfPoints )
```

Constructs a new polygon object. The polygon has `numberOfPoints` sides, with each point consisting of an x-coordinate from `xValues` and a y-coordinate from `yValues`.

```java
public void addPoint( int x, int y )
```

Adds pairs of x- and y-coordinates to the `Polygon`.

---

**Figure 12.27. Polygons displayed with `drawPolygon` and `fillPolygon`**

(This item is displayed on pages 620 - 621 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 12.27: PolygonsJPanel.java
2 // Drawing polygons.
3 import java.awt.Graphics;
4 import java.awt.Polygon;
5 import javax.swing.JPanel;
6
7 public class PolygonsJPanel extends JPanel
8 {
9   // draw polygons and polylines
10   public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
11   {
12     super.paintComponent( g ); // call superclass's paintComponent
13   }
```
// draw polygon with Polygon object
int xValues[] = { 20, 40, 50, 30, 20, 15 };
int yValues[] = { 50, 50, 60, 80, 80, 60 };
Polygon polygon1 = new Polygon( xValues, yValues, 6 );
g.drawPolygon( polygon1 );

// draw polylines with two arrays
int xValues2[] = { 70, 90, 100, 80, 70, 65, 60 };
int yValues2[] = { 100, 100, 110, 110, 130, 110, 90 };
g.drawPolyline( xValues2, yValues2, 7 );

// fill polygon with two arrays
int xValues3[] = { 120, 140, 150, 190 };
int yValues3[] = { 40, 70, 80, 60 };
g.fillPolygon( xValues3, yValues3, 4 );

// draw filled polygon with Polygon object
Polygon polygon2 = new Polygon();
polygon2.addPoint( 165, 135 );
polygon2.addPoint( 175, 150 );
polygon2.addPoint( 270, 200 );
polygon2.addPoint( 200, 220 );
polygon2.addPoint( 130, 180 );
g.fillPolygon( polygon2 );

} // end method paintComponent

} // end class PolygonsJPanel

Figure 12.28. Creating **JFrame** to display polygons.
(This item is displayed on page 621 in the print version)
Lines 1516 of Fig. 12.27 create two `int` arrays and use them to specify the points for `Polygon polygon1`. The `Polygon` constructor call in line 17 receives array `xValues`, which contains the $x$-coordinate of each point; array `yValues`, which contains the $y$-coordinate of each point and 6 (the number of points in the polygon). Line 18 displays `polygon1` by passing it as an argument to `Graphics` method `drawPolygon`.

Lines 2122 create two `int` arrays and use them to specify the points for a series of connected lines. Array `xValues2` contains the $x$-coordinate of each point and array `yValues2` the $y$-coordinate of each point. Line 23 uses `Graphics` method `drawPolyline` to display the series of connected lines specified with the arguments `xValues2, yValues2` and 7 (the number of points).

Lines 2627 create two `int` arrays and use them to specify the points of a polygon. Array `xValues3` contains the $x$-coordinate of each point and array `yValues3` the $y$-coordinate of each point. Line 28 displays a polygon by passing to `Graphics` method `fillPolygon` the two arrays (`xValues3` and `yValues3`) and the number of points to draw (4).

Common Programming Error 12.1

An `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException` is thrown if the number of points specified...
in the third argument to method drawPolygon or method fillPolygon is greater than the number of elements in the arrays of coordinates that specify the polygon to display.

Line 31 creates Polygon polygon2 with no points. Lines 32-36 use Polygon method addPoint to add pairs of x- and y-coordinates to the Polygon. Line 37 displays Polygon polygon2 by passing it to Graphics method fillPolygon.
12.8. Java 2D API

The Java 2D API provides advanced two-dimensional graphics capabilities for programmers who require detailed and complex graphical manipulations. The API includes features for processing line art, text and images in packages java.awt, java.awt.image, java.awt.color, java.awt.font, java.awt.geom, java.awt.print and java.awt.image.renderable. The capabilities of the API are far too broad to cover in this textbook. For an overview of the capabilities, see the Java 2D demo (discussed in Chapter 20, Introduction to Java Applets) or visit java.sun.com/products/java-media/2D/index.html. In this section, we overview several Java 2D capabilities.

Drawing with the Java 2D API is accomplished with a Graphics2D reference (package java.awt). Graphics2D is an abstract subclass of class Graphics, so it has all the graphics capabilities demonstrated earlier in this chapter. In fact, the actual object used to draw in every paintComponent method is an instance of a subclass of Graphics2D that is passed to method paintComponent and accessed via the superclass Graphics. To access Graphics2D capabilities, we must cast the Graphics reference (g) passed to paintComponent into a Graphics2D reference with a statement such as

    Graphics2D g2d = ( Graphics2D ) g;

The next two examples use this technique.

Lines, Rectangles, Round Rectangles, Arcs and Ellipses

The next example demonstrates several Java 2D shapes from package java.awt.geom, including Line2D.Double, Rectangle2D.Double, RoundRectangle2D.Double, Arc2D.Double and Ellipse2D.Double. Note the syntax of each class name. Each of these classes represents a shape with dimensions specified as double-precision floating-point values. There is a separate version of each represented with single-precision floating-point values (e.g., Ellipse2D.Float). In each case, Double is a static nested class of the class specified to the left of the dot (e.g., Ellipse2D). To use the static nested class, we simply qualify its name with the outer class name.
In Fig. 12.29, we draw Java 2D shapes and modify their drawing characteristics, such as changing line thickness, filling shapes with patterns and drawing dashed lines. These are just a few of the many capabilities provided by Java 2D.

**Figure 12.29. Java 2D shapes.**

(This item is displayed on pages 623 - 624 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 12.29: ShapesJPanel.java
2 // Demonstrating some Java 2D shapes.
3 import java.awt.Color;
4 import java.awt.Graphics;
5 import java.awt.BasicStroke;
6 import java.awt.GradientPaint;
7 import java.awt.TexturePaint;
8 import java.awt.Rectangle;
9 import java.awt.Graphics2D;
10 import java.awt.geom.Ellipse2D;
11 import java.awt.geom.Rectangle2D;
12 import java.awt.geom.RoundRectangle2D;
13 import java.awt.geom.Arc2D;
14 import java.awt.geom.Line2D;
15 import java.awt.image.BufferedImage;
16 import javax.swing.JPanel;
17
18 public class ShapesJPanel extends JPanel
19 {
20  // draw shapes with Java 2D API
21  public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
22  {
23      super.paintComponent( g ); // call superclass's paintComponent
24
25      Graphics2D g2d = ( Graphics2D ) g; // cast g to Graphics2D
26
27      // draw 2D ellipse filled with a blue-yellow gradient
28      g2d.setPaint( new GradientPaint( 5, 30, Color.BLUE, 35, 100, Color.YELLOW, true ));
29      g2d.fill( new Ellipse2D.Double( 5, 30, 65, 100 ) );
30
31      // draw 2D rectangle in red
32      g2d.setPaint( Color.RED );
33      g2d.setStroke( new BasicStroke( 10.0f ) );
34      g2d.draw( new Rectangle2D.Double( 80, 30, 65, 100 ) );
35
36      // draw 2D rounded rectangle with a buffered background
37      BufferedImage buffImage = new BufferedImage( 10, 10, BufferedImage.TYPE_INT_RGB );
38
39      // obtain Graphics2D from bufferImage and draw on it
40      Graphics2D gg = buffImage.createGraphics();
41      gg.setColor( Color.YELLOW ); // draw in yellow
42      gg.fillRect( 0, 0, 10, 10 ); // draw a filled rectangle
43      gg.setColor( Color.BLACK ); // draw in black
44      gg.drawRect( 1, 1, 6, 6 ); // draw a rectangle
45  }
```

In Fig. 12.29, we draw Java 2D shapes and modify their drawing characteristics, such as changing line thickness, filling shapes with patterns and drawing dashed lines. These are just a few of the many capabilities provided by Java 2D.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class Shapes {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        // create frame for ShapesJPanel
        JFrame frame = new JFrame( "Drawing 2D shapes" );
        frame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );

        // create ShapesJPanel
        ShapesJPanel shapesJPanel = new ShapesJPanel();

        frame.add( shapesJPanel ); // add shapesJPanel to frame
        frame.setSize( 425, 200 ); // set frame size
        frame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    }
}

Figure 12.30. Creating JFrame to display shapes.
(This item is displayed on pages 624 - 625 in the print version)
Line 25 of Fig. 12.29 casts the Graphics reference received by paintComponent to a Graphics2D reference and assigns it to g2d to allow access to the Java 2D features.

The first shape we draw is an oval filled with gradually changing colors. Lines 28-29 invoke Graphics2D method setPaint to set the Paint object that determines the color for the shape to display. A Paint object is an object that implements interface java.awt.Paint. The Paint object can be something as simple as one of the predeclared Color objects introduced in Section 12.3 (class Color implements Paint), or it can be an instance of the Java 2D API's GradientPaint, SystemColor or TexturePaint classes. In this case, we use a GradientPaint object.

Class GradientPaint helps draw a shape in gradually changing colors called a gradient. The GradientPaint constructor used here requires seven arguments. The first two specify the starting coordinate for the gradient. The third specifies the starting Color for the gradient. The fourth and fifth specify the ending coordinate for the gradient. The sixth specifies the ending Color for the gradient. The last argument specifies whether the gradient is cyclic (true) or acyclic (false). The two sets of coordinates determine the direction of the gradient. Because the second coordinate (35, 100) is down and to the right of the first coordinate (5, 30), the gradient goes down and to the right at an angle. Because this gradient is cyclic (true), the color starts with blue,
gradually becomes yellow, then gradually returns to blue. If the gradient is acyclic, the color transitions from the first color specified (e.g., blue) to the second color (e.g., yellow).

Line 30 uses Graphics2D method **fill** to draw a filled **Shape** object an object that implements interface **Shape**. In this case, we display an **Ellipse2D.Double** object. The **Ellipse2D.Double** constructor receives four arguments specifying the bounding rectangle for the ellipse to display.

Next we draw a red rectangle with a thick border. Line 33 invokes **setPaint** to set the **Paint** object to **Color.RED**. Line 34 uses Graphics2D method **setStroke** to set the characteristics of the rectangle's border (or the lines for any other shape). Method **setStroke** requires as its argument an object that implements interface **Stroke**. In this case, we use an instance of class **BasicStroke**. Class **BasicStroke** provides several constructors to specify the width of the line, how the line ends (called the **end caps**), how lines join together (called **line joins**) and the dash attributes of the line (if it is a dashed line). The constructor here specifies that the line should be 10 pixels wide.

Line 35 uses Graphics2D method **draw** to draw a **Shape** object in this case, a **Rectangle2D.Double**. The **Rectangle2D.Double** constructor receives four arguments specifying the upper-left x-coordinate, upper-left y-coordinate, width and height of the rectangle.

Next we draw a rounded rectangle filled with a pattern created in a **BufferedImage** object. Lines 38-39 create the **BufferedImage** object. Class **BufferedImage** can be used to produce images in color and grayscale. This particular **BufferedImage** is 10 pixels wide and 10 pixels tall (as specified by the first two arguments of the constructor). The third argument **BufferedImage.TYPE_INT_RGB** indicates that the image is stored in color using the RGB color scheme.

To create the fill pattern for the rounded rectangle, we must first draw into the **BufferedImage**. Line 42 creates a Graphics2D object (with a call to **BufferedImage** method **createGraphics**) that can be used to draw into the **BufferedImage**. Lines 43-50 use methods **setColor**, **fillRect** and **drawRect** (discussed earlier in this chapter) to create the pattern.

Lines 53-54 set the **Paint** object to a new **TexturePaint** object. A **TexturePaint** object uses the image stored in its associated **BufferedImage** (the first
constructor argument) as the fill texture for a filled-in shape. The second argument specifies the Rectangle area from the BufferedImage that will be replicated through the texture. In this case, the Rectangle is the same size as the BufferedImage. However, a smaller portion of the BufferedImage can be used.

Lines 5556 use Graphics2D method fill to draw a filled Shape object in this case, a RoundRectangle2D.Double. The constructor for class RoundRectangle2D.Double receives six arguments specifying the rectangle dimensions and the arc width and arc height used to determine the rounding of the corners.

Next we draw a pie-shaped arc with a thick white line. Line 59 sets the Paint object to Color.WHITE. Line 60 sets the Stroke object to a new BasicStroke for a line 6 pixels wide. Lines 6162 use Graphics2D method draw to draw a Shape object in this case, an Arc2D.Double. The Arc2D.Double constructor's first four arguments specify the upperleft x-coordinate, upper-left y-coordinate, width and height of the bounding rectangle for the arc. The fifth argument specifies the start angle. The sixth argument specifies the arc angle. The last argument specifies how the arc is closed. Constant Arc2D.PIE indicates that the arc is closed by drawing two lines—one line from the arc's starting point to the center of the bounding rectangle and one line from the center of the bounding rectangle to the ending point. Class Arc2D provides two other static constants for specifying how the arc is closed. Constant Arc2D.CHORD draws a line from the starting point to the ending point. Constant Arc2D.OPEN specifies that the arc should not be closed.

Finally, we draw two lines using Line2D objects—one solid and one dashed. Line 65 sets the Paint object to Color.GREEN. Line 66 uses Graphics2D method draw to draw a Shape object in this case, an instance of class Line2D.Double. The Line2D.Double constructor's arguments specify the starting coordinates and ending coordinates of the line.

Line 69 declares a one-element float array containing the value 10. This array will be used to describe the dashes in the dashed line. In this case, each dash will be 10 pixels long. To create dashes of different lengths in a pattern, simply provide the length of each dash as an element in the array. Line 70 sets the Paint object to Color.YELLOW. Lines 7172 set the Stroke object to a new BasicStroke. The line will be 4 pixels wide and will have rounded ends (BasicStroke.CAP_ROUND). If lines join together (as in a rectangle at the corners), their joining will be rounded (BasicStroke.JOIN_ROUND). The dashes argument specifies the dash lengths for the line. The last argument indicates the starting index in the dashes array for the first dash in the pattern. Line 73 then draws a line with the current Stroke.
Next we present a **general path**—a shape constructed from straight lines and complex curves. A general path is represented with an object of class `GeneralPath` (package `java.awt.geom`). The application of Fig. 12.31 and Fig. 12.32 demonstrates drawing a general path in the shape of a five-pointed star.

**Figure 12.31. Java 2D general paths.**
(This item is displayed on page 627 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 12.31: Shapes2JPanel.java
// Demonstrating a general path.
import java.awt.Color;
import java.awt.Graphics;
import java.awt.Graphics2D;
import java.awt.geom.GeneralPath;
import java.util.Random;
import javax.swing.JPanel;

public class Shapes2JPanel extends JPanel {
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g) {
        super.paintComponent(g); // call superclass's paintComponent
        Random random = new Random(); // get random number generator

        int xPoints[] = {55, 67, 109, 73, 83, 55, 27, 37, 1, 43};
        int yPoints[] = {0, 36, 36, 54, 96, 72, 96, 54, 36, 36};

        Graphics2D g2d = (Graphics2D) g;
        GeneralPath star = new GeneralPath(); // create GeneralPath object

        // set the initial coordinate of the General Path
        star.moveTo(xPoints[0], yPoints[0]);

        // create the star--this does not draw the star
        for (int count = 1; count < xPoints.length; count++)
            star.lineTo(xPoints[count], yPoints[count]);

        star.closePath(); // close the shape

        g2d.translate(200, 200); // translate the origin to (200, 200)

        // rotate around origin and draw stars in random colors
        for (int count = 1; count <= 20; count++)
            g2d.rotate(Math.PI / 10.0); // rotate coordinate system

        // set random drawing color
        g2d.setColor(new Color(random.nextInt(256),
                                random.nextInt(256), random.nextInt(256)));
    }
}
```
g2d.fill( star ); // draw filled star
    } // end for
} // end method paintComponent
} // end class Shapes2JPanel

Figure 12.32. Creating JFrame to display stars.
(This item is displayed on page 628 in the print version)
Lines 1819 declare two int arrays representing the x- and y-coordinates of the points in the star. Line 22 creates `GeneralPath` object `star`. Line 25 uses `GeneralPath` method `moveTo` to specify the first point in the `star`. The for statement in lines 2829 uses `GeneralPath` method `lineTo` to draw a line to the next point in the `star`. Each new call to `lineTo` draws a line from the previous point to the current point. Line 31 uses `GeneralPath` method `closePath` to draw a line from the last point to the point specified in the last call to `moveTo`. This completes the general path.

Line 33 uses `Graphics2D` method `translate` to move the drawing origin to location (200, 200). All drawing operations now use location (200, 200) as (0, 0).

The for statement in lines 3645 draws the `star` 20 times by rotating it around the new origin point. Line 38 uses `Graphics2D` method `rotate` to rotate the next displayed shape. The argument specifies the rotation angle in radians (with
360° = 2π radians). Line 44 uses Graphics2D method fill to draw a filled version of the star.
12.9. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned how to use Java's graphics capabilities to produce colorful drawings. You learned how to specify the location of an object using Java's coordinate system, and how to draw on a window using the `paintComponent` method. You were introduced to class `Color`, and how to use this class to specify different colors using their RGB components. You used the `JColorChooser` dialog to allow users to select colors in a program. You then learned how to work with fonts when drawing text on a window. You learned how to create a `Font` object from a font name, style and size, as well as how to access the metrics of a font. From there, you learned how to draw various shapes on a window, such as rectangles (regular, rounded and 3D), ovals and polygons, as well as lines and arcs. You then used the Java 2D API to create more complex shapes, and to fill them with gradients or patterns. The chapter concluded with a discussion of general paths, used to construct shapes from straight lines and complex curves. In the next chapter, you will learn about exceptions, useful for handling errors during a program's execution. Handling errors in this way provides for more robust programs.
Summary

- Java's coordinate system is a scheme for identifying every point on the screen.

- A coordinate pair is composed of an x-coordinate (the horizontal coordinate) and a y-coordinate (the vertical coordinate).

- Text and shapes are displayed on the screen by specifying coordinates. The coordinates are used to indicate where graphics should be displayed on a screen.

- Coordinate units are measured in pixels. A pixel is a display monitor's smallest unit of resolution.

- A Java graphics context enables drawing on the screen.

- Class `Graphics` contains methods for drawing strings, lines, rectangles and other shapes. Methods are also included for font manipulation and color manipulation.

- A `Graphics` object manages a graphics context and draws pixels on the screen that represent text and other graphical object (e.g., lines, ellipses, rectangles and other polygons).

- Class `Graphics` is an abstract class. This contributes to Java's portability when Java is implemented on a platform, a subclass of `Graphics` is created that implements the drawing capabilities. This implementation is hidden from us by class `Graphics`, which supplies the interface that enables us to use graphics in a platform-independent manner.

- Class `JComponent` contains a `paintComponent` method that can be used to draw graphics in a Swing component.

- Method `paintComponent` takes a `Graphics` object as an argument. This object is passed to the `paintComponent` method by the system when a lightweight Swing component needs to be repainted.
Method `paintComponent` is seldom called directly by the programmer because drawing graphics is an event-driven process. When an application executes, the application container calls method `paintComponent`. For `paintComponent` to be called again, an event must occur.

- When a `JComponent` is displayed, its `paintComponent` method is called.
- Programmers call method `repaint` to update the graphics drawn on the Swing component.
- Class `Color` declares methods and constants for manipulating colors in a Java program.

Every color is created from a red, a green and a blue component. Together these components are called RGB values.

- The first RGB component specifies the amount of red, the second the amount of green and the third the amount of blue. The larger the RGB value, the greater the amount of that particular color.

- `Color` methods `getRed`, `getGreen` and `getBlue` return integer values from 0 to 255 representing the amount of red, green and blue, respectively.

- `Graphics` method `getColor` returns a `Color` object representing the current drawing color.

- `Graphics` method `setColor` sets the current drawing color.

- `Graphics` method `fillRect` draws a rectangle that is filled by the current color of the `Graphics` object.

- `Graphics` method `drawString` draws a `String` in the current color.

- The `JColorChooser` GUI component enables application users to select colors.

- Class `JColorChooser` provides the `static` convenience method `showDialog` that creates a `JColorChooser` object, attaches it to a dialog box and displays the
dialog.

- While the color chooser dialog is on the screen, the user cannot interact with the parent component. This type of dialog is called a modal dialog.

- Class `Font` contains methods and constants for manipulating fonts.

- Class `Font`'s constructor takes three arguments—the font name, font style and font size.

- A `Font`'s font style can be `Font.PLAIN`, `Font.ITALIC` or `Font.BOLD` (each is a static field of class `Font`). Font styles can be used in combination (e.g., `Font.ITALIC + Font.BOLD`).

- The font size is measured in points. A point is 1/72 of an inch.

- Graphics method `setFont` sets the current drawing font—the font in which text will be displayed.

- Font method `getStyle` returns an integer value representing the current Font's style.

- Font method `getSize` returns the font size in points.

- Font method `getName` returns the current font name as a string.

- Font method `getFamily` returns the name of the font family to which the current font belongs. The name of the font family is platform specific.

- Class `FontMetrics` contains methods for obtaining font information.

- Font metrics include height, descent (the amount a character dips below the baseline), ascent (the amount a character rises above the baseline) and leading (the difference between the descent of one line of text and the ascent of the line of text below it—that is, the interline spacing).

- Graphics methods `fillRoundRect` and `drawRoundRect` draw rectangles with rounded corners.

- Graphics methods `draw3DRect` and `fill3DRect` draw three-dimensional
- **Graphics methods** `drawOval` and `fillOval` draw ovals.

- An arc is drawn as a portion of an oval.

- Arcs sweep (i.e., move along a curve) from a starting angle by the number of degrees specified by their arc angle.

- **Graphics methods** `drawArc` and `fillArc` are used for drawing arcs.

- **Class** `Polygon` contains methods for creating polygons.

- Polygons are closed multisided shapes composed of straight line segments.

- Polylines are a sequence of connected points.

- **Graphics method** `drawPolyline` displays a series of connected lines.

- **Graphics methods** `drawPolygon` and `fillPolygon` are used to draw polygons.

- **Polygon method** `addPoint` of class `Polygon` adds pairs of x- and y-coordinates to the `Polygon`.

- The Java 2D API provides advanced two-dimensional graphics capabilities for programmers who require detailed and complex graphical manipulations.

- **Class** `Graphics2D`, which extends class `Graphics`, is used for drawing with the Java 2D API.

- The Java 2D API contains several classes for drawing shapes, including `Line2D.Double`, `Rectangle2D.Double`, `RoundRectangle2D.Double`, `Arc2D.Double` and `Ellipse2D.Double`.

- **Class** `GradientPaint` helps draw a shape in gradually changing colors called a gradient.
• Graphics2D method fill draws a filled Shape object an object that implements interface Shape.

• Class BasicStroke helps specify the drawing characteristics of lines.

• Graphics2D method draw is used to draw a Shape object.

• Classes GradientPaint and TexturePaint help specify the characteristics for filling shapes with colors or patterns.

• A general path is a shape constructed from straight lines and complex curves.

• A general path is represented with an object of class GeneralPath.

• GeneralPath method moveTo specifies the first point in a general path.

• GeneralPath method lineTo draws a line to the next point in the path. Each new call to lineTo draws a line from the previous point to the current point.

• GeneralPath method closePath draws a line from the last point to the point specified in the last call to moveTo. This completes the general path.

• Graphics2D method translate is used to move the drawing origin to a new location.

• Graphics2D method rotate is used to rotate the next displayed shape.
Terminology

acyclic gradient

addPoint method of class Polygon

arc

arc angle

ascent (font metrics)

baseline (font metrics)

BasicStroke class

BOLD constant of class Font

bounding rectangle

CAP_ROUND constant of class BasicStroke

clearRect method of class Graphics

closed polygons

closePath method of class GeneralPath

color chooser dialog

Color class

color manipulation

color swatches

complex curve
connected lines

coordinate system

createGraphics method of class BufferedImage
cyclic gradient
dashed lines
descent (font metrics)
draw method of class Graphics2D
draw3DRect method of class Graphics
drawArc method of class Graphics
drawLine method of class Graphics
drawOval method of class Graphics
drawPolygon method of class Graphics
drawPolyline method of class Graphics
drawRect method of class Graphics
drawRoundRect method of class Graphics
drawString method of class Graphics
fill method of class Graphics2D
fill pattern
fill texture
fill3DRect method of class Graphics
fillArc method of class Graphics

fillOval method of class Graphics

fillPolygon method of class Graphics

fillRect method of class Graphics

fillRoundRect method of class Graphics

text

font

Font class

font metric

FontMetrics class

general path

GeneralPath class

getAscent method of class FontMetrics

getBlue method of class Color

gsetColor method of class Graphics

getdescent method of class FontMetrics

getFamily method of class Font

g.getFont method of class Graphics

g.getFontMetrics method of class Graphics
getGreen method of class Color

getHeight method of class FontMetrics

getLeading method of class FontMetrics

getName method of class Font

getRed method of class Color

getSize method of class Font

getStyle method of class Font

gradient

GradientPaint class

Graphics class

graphics context

Graphics2D class

height (font metrics)

horizontal coordinate

isBold method of class Font

isItalic method of class Font

isPlain method of class Font

ITALIC constant of class Font

Java 2D API

JColorChooser class
JOIN_ROUND constant of class BasicStroke

leading (font metrics)

line join

lineTo method of class GeneralPath

modal dialog

moveTo method of class GeneralPath

oval

oval bounded by a rectangle

Paint object

paintComponent method of class JComponent

pixel ("picture element")

PLAIN constant of class Font

point (font size)

polygon

Polygon class

polylines

raised rectangle

repaint method of class JComponent

RGB value

rotate method of class Graphics2D
rounded rectangle

setBackground method of class Component

setColor method of class Graphics

setFont method of class Graphics

setPaint method of class Graphics2D

setStroke method of class Graphics2D

showDialog method of class JColorChooser

starting angle

Stroke object

sweep

TexturePaint class

three-dimensional rectangle

translate method of class Graphics2D

two-dimensional graphics

two-dimensional shapes

upper-left corner of a GUI component

upper-left x-coordinate

upper-left y-coordinate

vertical coordinate

x axis
x-coordinate

y axis

y-coordinate
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. In Java 2D, method _____ of class _____ sets the characteristics of a line used to draw a shape.
2. Class _____ helps specify the fill for a shape such that the fill gradually changes from one color to another.
3. The _____ method of class Graphics draws a line between two points.
4. RGB is short for _____, _____ and _____.
5. Font sizes are measured in units called _____.
6. Class _____ helps specify the fill for a shape using a pattern drawn in a Buffered-Image.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. The first two arguments of Graphics method drawOval specify the center coordinate of the oval.
2. In the Java coordinate system, x values increase from left to right.
3. Graphics method fillPolygon draws a filled polygon in the current color.
5. Graphics method getSize returns the size of the current font in centimeters.
6. Pixel coordinate (0, 0) is located at the exact center of the monitor.

Find the error(s) in each of the following and explain how to correct the error(s). Assume that g is a Graphics object.

1. g.setFont( "SansSerif" );
2. g.erase( x, y, w, h ); // clear rectangle at (x, y)
3. Font f = new Font( "Serif", Font.BOLDITALIC, 12 );
4. g.setColor( 255, 255, 0 ); // change color to yellow
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

12.1 a) setStroke, Graphics2D. b) GradientPaint. c) drawLine. d) red, green, blue. e) points. f) TexturePaint.

1. False. The first two arguments specify the upper-left corner of the bounding rectangle.
2. True.
3. True.

12.2 4. True.
5. False. Font sizes are measured in points.
6. False. The coordinate (0,0) corresponds to the upper-left corner of a GUI component on which drawing occurs.

12.3 1. The setFont method takes a Font object as an argument not a String.
2. The Graphics class does not have an erase method. The clearRect method should be used.
3. Font.BOLDITALIC is not a valid font style. To get a bold italic font, use Font.BOLD + Font.ITALIC.
4. Method setColor takes a Color object as an argument, not three integers.
Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Class _____ of the Java 2D API is used to draw ovals.

2. Methods draw and fill of class Graphics2D require an object of type _____ as their argument.

3. The three constants that specify font style are _____, _____ and _____.

4. Graphics2D method _____ sets the painting color for Java 2D shapes.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. Graphics method drawPolygon automatically connects the endpoints of the polygon.

2. Graphics method drawLine draws a line between two points.

3. Graphics method fillArc uses degrees to specify the angle.

4. In the Java coordinate system, values on the y-axis increase from left to right.

5. Graphics inherits directly from class Object.

6. Graphics is an abstract class.

7. The Font class inherits directly from class Graphics.

(Concentric Circles Using Method drawArc) Write an application that draws a series of eight concentric circles. The circles should be separated by 10 pixels. Use Graphics method drawArc.

(Concentric Circles Using Class Ellipse2D.Double) Modify your solution to Exercise 12.6 to draw the ovals by using class Ellipse2D.Double and method draw of class Graphics2D.

(Random Lines Using Class Line2D.Double) Modify your solution to Exercise 12.7 to draw random lines, in random colors and random line thicknesses. Use class Line2D.Double and method draw of class Graphics2D to draw the lines.

(Random Triangles) Write an application that displays randomly generated triangles in different colors. Each triangle should be filled with a different color. Use class GeneralPath and method fill of class Graphics2D to draw the triangles.
12.10 (Random Characters) Write an application that randomly draws characters in different font sizes and colors.

12.11 (Grid Using Method \texttt{drawLine}) Write an application that draws an 8-by-8 grid. Use \texttt{Graphics} method \texttt{drawLine}.

12.12 (Grid Using Class \texttt{Line2D.Double}) Modify your solution to Exercise 12.11 to draw the grid using instances of class \texttt{Line2D.Double} and method \texttt{draw} of class \texttt{Graphics2D}.

12.13 (Grid Using Method \texttt{drawRect}) Write an application that draws a 10-by-10 grid. Use the \texttt{Graphics} method \texttt{drawRect}.

12.14 (Grid Using Class \texttt{Rectangle2D.Double}) Modify your solution to Exercise 12.13 to draw the grid by using class \texttt{Rectangle2D.Double} and method \texttt{draw} of class \texttt{Graphics2D}.

12.15 (Drawing Tetrahedrons) Write an application that draws a tetrahedron (a three-dimensional shape with four triangular faces). Use class \texttt{GeneralPath} and method \texttt{draw} of class \texttt{Graphics2D}.

12.16 (Drawing Cubes) Write an application that draws a cube. Use class \texttt{GeneralPath} and method \texttt{draw} of class \texttt{Graphics2D}.

12.17 (Circles Using Class \texttt{Ellipse2D.Double}) Write an application that asks the user to input the radius of a circle as a floating-point number and draws the circle, as well as the values of the circle's diameter, circumference and area. Use the value 3.14159 for \( \pi \). [\textit{Note:} You may also use the predefined constant \texttt{Math.PI} for the value of \( \pi \). This constant is more precise than the value 3.14159. Class \texttt{Math} is declared in the \texttt{java.lang} package, so you do not need to import it.]

Use the following formulas (\( r \) is the radius):

\[
\begin{align*}
diameter &= 2r \\
circumference &= 2\pi r \\
area &= \pi r^2
\end{align*}
\]

The user should also be prompted for a set of coordinates in addition to the radius. Then draw the circle, and display the circle's diameter, circumference and area, using an \texttt{Ellipse2D.Double} object to represent the circle and method \texttt{draw} of class \texttt{Graphics2D} to display the circle.

12.18 (Screen Saver) Write an application that simulates a screen saver. The application should randomly draw lines using method \texttt{drawLine} of class \texttt{Graphics}. After drawing 100 lines, the application should clear itself and start drawing lines again. To allow the program to draw continuously, place a call to repaint as the last line in method \texttt{paintComponent}. Do you notice any problems with this on your system?

12.19 (Screen Saver Using Timer) Package \texttt{javax.swing} contains a class called
Timer that is capable of calling method actionPerformed of interface ActionListener at a fixed time interval (specified in milliseconds). Modify your solution to Exercise 12.18 to remove the call to repaint from method paintComponent. Declare your class to implement ActionListener. (The actionPerformed method should simply call repaint.) Declare an instance variable of type Timer called timer in your class. In the constructor for your class, write the following statements:

```
[Page 635]
timer = new Timer(1000, this);
timer.start();
```

This creates an instance of class Timer that will call this object's actionPerformed method every 1000 milliseconds (i.e., every second).

(Screen Saver for a Random Number of Lines) Modify your solution to Exercise 12.19 to enable the user to enter the number of random lines that should be drawn before the application clears itself and starts drawing lines again. Use a JTextField to obtain the value. The user should be able to type a new number into the JTextField at any time during the program's execution. Use an inner class to perform event handling for the JTextField.

(Screen Saver with Shapes) Modify your solution to Exercise 12.19 such that it uses random number generation to choose different shapes to display. Use methods of class Graphics.

(Screen Saver Using the Java 2D API) Modify your solution to Exercise 12.21 to use classes and drawing capabilities of the Java 2D API. Draw shapes like rectangles and ellipses, with randomly generated gradients. Use class GradientPaint to generate the gradient.

(Turtle Graphics) Modify your solution to Exercise 7.21 Turtle Graphics to add a graphical user interface using JTextFields and JButtons. Draw lines rather than asterisks (*). When the turtle graphics program specifies a move, translate the number of positions into a number of pixels on the screen by multiplying the number of positions by 10 (or any value you choose). Implement the drawing with Java 2D API features.

(Knight's Tour) Produce a graphical version of the Knight's Tour problem (Exercise 7.22, Exercise 7.23 and Exercise 7.26). As each move is made, the appropriate cell of the chessboard should be updated with the proper move number. If the result of the program is a full tour or a closed tour, the program should display an appropriate message. If you like, use class Timer (see Exercise 12.19) to help animate the Knight's Tour.

(Tortoise and Hare) Produce a graphical version of the Tortoise and Hare simulation (Exercise 7.28). Simulate the mountain by drawing an arc that extends from the bottom-left corner of the window to the top-right corner of the window. The tortoise and the hare should race
up the mountain. Implement the graphical output to actually print the tortoise and the hare on the arc for every move. \[\text{Note: Extend the length of the race from 70 to 300 to allow yourself a larger graphics area.}\]

(Drawing Spirals) Write an application that uses `Graphics` method `drawPolyline` to draw a spiral similar to the one shown in Fig. 12.33.

Figure 12.33. Spiral drawn using method `drawPolyline`.

(Pie Chart) Write a program that inputs four numbers and graphs them as a pie chart. Use class `Arc2D.Double` and method `fill` of class `Graphics2D` to perform the drawing. Draw each piece of the pie in a separate color.

(Selecting Shapes) Write an application that allows the user to select a shape from a `JComboBox` and draws it 20 times with random locations and dimensions in method `paintComponent`. The first item in the `JComboBox` should be the default shape that is displayed the first time `paintComponent` is called.

(Random Colors) Modify Exercise 12.28 to draw each of the 20 randomly sized shapes in a randomly selected color. Use all
13 predefined Color objects in an array of Colors.

(JColorChooser Dialog) Modify Exercise 12.28 to allow the user to select the color in which shapes should be drawn from a JColorChooser dialog.

(Optional) GUI and Graphics Case Study: Adding Java2D

Java2D introduces many new capabilities for creating unique and impressive graphics. We will add a small subset of these features to the drawing application you created in Exercise 11.18. In this version of the drawing application, you will enable the user to specify gradients for filling shapes and to change stroke characteristics for drawing lines and outlines of shapes. The user will be able to choose which colors compose the gradient and set the width and dash length of the stroke.

First, you must update the MyShape hierarchy to support Java2D functionality. Make the following changes in class MyShape:

1. Change abstract method draw's parameter type from Graphics to Graphics2D.
2. Change all variables of type Color to type Paint to enable support for gradients. [Note: Recall that class Color implements interface Paint.]
3. Add an instance variable of type Stroke in class MyShape and a Stroke parameter in the constructor to initialize the new instance variable. The default stroke should be an instance of class BasicStroke.

Classes MyLine, MyBoundedShape, MyOval and MyRect should each add a Stroke parameter to their constructors. In the draw methods, each shape should set the Paint and the Stroke before drawing or filling a shape. Since Graphics2D is a subclass of Graphics, we can continue to use Graphics methods drawLine, drawOval, fillOval, etc. to draw the shapes. When these methods are called, they will draw the appropriate shape using the specified Paint and Stroke settings.

Next, you will update the DrawPanel to handle the Java2D features. Change all Color variables to Paint variables. Declare an instance variable currentStroke of type Stroke and provide a set method for it. Update the calls to the individual shape constructors to include the Paint and Stroke arguments. In method paintComponent, cast the Graphics reference to type Graphics2D and use the Graphics2D reference in each call to MyShape method draw.

Next, make the new Java2D features accessible from the GUI. Create a JPanel of GUI components for setting the Java2D options. Add these components at the top of the DrawFrame below the panel that currently contains the standard shape controls (see Fig. 12.34). These GUI components should include:

1. A check box to specify whether to paint using a gradient
2. Two JButtons that each show a JColorChooser dialog to allow the user to choose the first and second color in the gradient. (These will replace the JComboBox used for choosing the color in Exercise 11.18.)
3. A text field for entering the Stroke width
4. A text field for entering the Stroke dash length
5. A check box for selecting whether to draw a dashed or solid line
If the user selects to draw with a gradient, set the `Paint` on the `DrawPanel` to be a gradient of the two colors chosen by the user. The expression

```java
new GradientPaint( 0, 0, color1, 50, 50, color2, true )
```

creates a `GradientPaint` that cycles diagonally from the upper-left to the bottom-right every 50 pixels. Variables `color1` and `color2` represent the colors chosen by the user. If the user does not select to use a gradient, then simply set the `Paint` on the `DrawPanel` to be the first `Color` chosen by the user.

For strokes, if the user chooses a solid line, then create the `Stroke` with the expression

```java
new BasicStroke( width, BasicStroke.CAP_ROUND, BasicStroke.JOIN_ROUND
```

where variable `width` is the width specified by the user in the line-width text field. If the user chooses a dashed line, then create the `Stroke` with the expression
new BasicStroke( width, BasicStroke.CAP_ROUND, BasicStroke.JOIN_ROUND, 10, dashes, 0 )

where width again is the width in the line-width field, and dashes is an array with one element whose value is the length specified in the dash-length field. The Panel and Stroke objects should be passed to the shape object's constructor when the shape is created in DrawPanel.
Chapter 13. Exception Handling

*It is common sense to take a method and try it. If it fails, admit it frankly and try another. But above all, try something.*

Franklin Delano Roosevelt

*O! throw away the worser part of it,*
*And live the purer with the other half.*

William Shakespeare

*If they're running and they don't look where they're going I have to come out from somewhere and catch them.*

Jerome David Salinger

*O infinite virtue! com'st thou smiling from the world's great snare uncaught?*

William Shakespeare

**OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will learn:

- How exception and error handling works.
- To use `try`, `throw` and `catch` to detect, indicate and handle exceptions, respectively.
- To use the `finally` block to release resources.
- How stack unwinding enables exceptions not caught in one scope to be caught in another scope.
- How stack traces help in debugging.
- How exceptions are arranged in an exception class hierarchy.
• To declare new exception classes.

• To create chained exceptions that maintain complete stack trace information.

Outline

13.1 Introduction

13.2 Exception-Handling Overview

13.3 Example: Divide By Zero Without Exception Handling

13.4 Example: Handling ArithmeticExceptions and InputMismatchExceptions

13.5 When to Use Exception Handling

13.6 Java Exception Hierarchy

13.7 finally block

13.8 Stack Unwinding

13.9 printStackTrace, getStackTrace and getMessage

13.10 Chained Exceptions

13.11 Declaring New Exception Types

13.12 Preconditions and Postconditions

13.13 Assertions

13.14 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises
Exercises
13.1. Introduction

In this chapter, we introduce exception handling. An exception is an indication of a problem that occurs during a program's execution. The name "exception" implies that the problem occurs infrequently if the "rule" is that a statement normally executes correctly, then the "exception to the rule" is that a problem occurs. Exception handling enables programmers to create applications that can resolve (or handle) exceptions. In many cases, handling an exception allows a program to continue executing as if no problem had been encountered. A more severe problem could prevent a program from continuing normal execution, instead requiring it to notify the user of the problem before terminating in a controlled manner. The features presented in this chapter enable programmers to write robust and fault-tolerant programs (i.e., programs that are able to deal with problems that may arise and continue executing). The style and details of Java exception handling are based in part on the Andrew Koenig's and Bjarne Stroustrup's paper, "Exception Handling for C++ (revised)."[1]


Error-Prevention Tip 13.1

Exception handling helps improve a program's fault tolerance.

You have already been briefly introduced to exceptions in earlier chapters. In Chapter 7 you learned that an ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException occurs when an attempt is made to access an element past the end of an array. Such a problem may occur if there is an "off by one" error in a for statement that manipulates an array. In Chapter 10, we introduced the ClassCastException, which occurs when an attempt is made to cast an object that does not have an is-a relationship with the type specified in the cast operator. Chapter 11 briefly mentioned the NullPointerException, which occurs whenever a null reference is used where an object is expected (for example, when an attempt is made to
attach a GUI component to a Container, but the GUI component has not yet been created). You have also used class Scanner throughout this text, which as you will see in this chapter also may cause exceptions.

The chapter begins with an overview of exception-handling concepts, then demonstrates basic exception-handling techniques. We show these techniques in action by handling an exception that occurs when a method attempts to divide an integer by zero. Next, we introduce several classes at the top of Java's class hierarchy for exception handling. As you will see, only classes that extend Throwable (package java.lang) directly or indirectly can be used with exception handling. We then discuss the chained exception feature that was introduced in J2SE 1.4. This feature allows programmers to wrap information about an exception that occurred in another exception object to provide more detailed information about a problem in a program. Next, we discuss additional exception-handling issues, such as how to handle exceptions that occur in a constructor. We introduce preconditions and postconditions, which users of the classes you create understand conditions that must be true when your methods are called and when those methods return. Finally, we present assertions, which programmers use at development time to help debug their code.
13.2. Exception-Handling Overview

Programs frequently test conditions to determine how program execution should proceed. Consider the following pseudocode:

```
Perform a task

If the preceding task did not execute correctly
    Perform error processing

Perform next task

If the preceding task did not execute correctly
    Perform error processing
```

In this pseudocode, we begin by performing a task; then we test whether that task executed correctly. If not, we perform error processing. Otherwise, we continue with the next task. Although this form of error handling works, intermixing program logic with error-handling logic can make programs difficult to read, modify, maintain and debug especially in large applications.

**Performance Tip 13.1**

If the potential problems occur infrequently, intermixing program and error-handling logic can degrade a program's performance, because the program must perform (potentially frequent) tests to determine whether the task executed correctly and the next task can be performed.

Exception handling enables programmers to remove error-handling code from the "main line" of the program's execution, improving program clarity and enhancing modifiability. Programmers can decide to handle any exceptions they choose, all exceptions of a certain type or all exceptions of a group of related types (i.e., exception types that are related through an
inheritance hierarchy). Such flexibility reduces the likelihood that errors will be overlooked, thus making programs more robust.

With programming languages that do not support exception handling, programmers often delay writing error-processing code or sometimes forget to include it. This results in less robust software products. Java enables programmers to deal with exception handling easily from the inception of a project.
13.3. Example: Divide By Zero Without Exception Handling

First we demonstrate what happens when errors arise in an application that does not use exception handling. Figure 13.1 prompts the user for two integers and passes them to method quotient, which calculates the quotient and returns an int result. In this example, we will see that exceptions are thrown (i.e., the exception occurs) when a method detects a problem and is unable to handle it.

The first of the three sample executions in Fig. 13.1 shows a successful division. In the second sample execution, the user enters the value 0 as the denominator. Notice that several lines of information are displayed in response to this invalid input. This information is known as the stack trace, which includes the name of the exception (java.lang.ArithmeticException) in a descriptive message that indicates the problem that occurred and the complete method-call stack (i.e., the call chain) at the time the exception occurred. The stack trace includes the path of execution that led to the exception method by method. This information helps in debugging a program. The first line specifies that an ArithmeticException has occurred. The text after the name of the exception, "/ by zero", indicates that this exception occurred as a result of an attempt to divide by zero. Java does not allow division by zero in integer arithmetic. [Note: Java does allow division by zero with floating-point values. Such a calculation results in the value infinity, which is represented in Java as a floating-point value (but actually displays as the string Infinity).] When division by zero in integer arithmetic occurs, Java throws an ArithmeticException. ArithmeticExceptions can arise from a number of different problems in arithmetic, so the extra data ("/ by zero") gives us more information about this specific exception.

Starting from the last line of the stack trace, we see that the exception was detected in line 22 of method main. Each line of the stack trace contains the class name and method (DivideByZeroNoException-Handling.main) followed by the file name and line number (DivideByZeroNoExceptionHandling.java:22). Moving up the stack trace, we see that the exception occurs in line 10, in method quotient. The top row of the call chain indicates the throw point the initial point at which the exception occurs. The throw point of this exception is in line 10 of method quotient.

In the third execution, the user enters the string "hello" as the denominator. Notice again that a stack trace is displayed. This informs us that an
InputMismatchException has occurred (package java.util). Our prior examples that read numeric values from the user assumed that the user would input a proper integer value. However, users sometimes make mistakes and input noninteger values. An InputMismatchException occurs when Scanner method nextInt receives a string that does not represent a valid integer. Starting from the end of the stack trace, we see that the exception was detected in line 20 of method main. Moving up the stack trace, we see that the exception occurs in method nextInt. Notice that in place of the file name and line number, we are provided with the text Unknown Source. This means that the JVM does not have access to the source code for where the exception occurred.

Notice that in the sample executions of Fig. 13.1 when exceptions occur and stack traces are displayed, the program also exits. This does not always occur in Java; sometimes a program may continue even though an exception has occurred and a stack trace has been printed. In such cases, the application may produce unexpected results. The next section demonstrates how to handle these exceptions and keep the program running successfully.

Figure 13.1. Integer division without exception handling.
(This item is displayed on page 642 in the print version)
In **Fig. 13.1** both types of exceptions were detected in method `main`. In the next example, we will see how to handle these exceptions to enable the program to run to normal completion.
13.4. Example: Handling `ArithmeticExceptions` and `InputMismatchExceptions`

The application in Fig. 13.2, which is based on Fig. 13.1, uses exception handling to process any `ArithmeticExceptions` and `InputMismatchExceptions` that might arise. The application still prompts the user for two integers and passes them to method `quotient`, which calculates the quotient and returns an `int` result. This version of the application uses exception handling so that if the user makes a mistake, the program catches and handles (i.e., deals with) the exception in this case, allowing the user to try to enter the input again.

**Figure 13.2. Handling `ArithmeticExceptions` and `InputMismatchExceptions`**

(This item is displayed on pages 643 - 644 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 13.2: DivideByZeroWithExceptionHandling.java
2 // An exception-handling example that checks for divide-by-zero.
3 import java.util.InputMismatchException;
4 import java.util.Scanner;
5
6 public class DivideByZeroWithExceptionHandling
7 {
8     // demonstrates throwing an exception when a divide-by-zero occurs
9     public static int quotient( int numerator, int denominator )
10         throws ArithmeticException
11     {
12         return numerator / denominator; // possible division by zero
13     } // end method quotient
14
15     public static void main( String args[] )
16     {
17         Scanner scanner = new Scanner( System.in ); // scanner for input
18         boolean continueLoop = true; // determines if more input is needed
19
20         do
21         {
22             try // read two numbers and calculate quotient
23             {
24                 System.out.print( "Please enter an integer numerator: " );
25                 int numerator = scanner.nextInt();
26                 System.out.print( "Please enter an integer denominator: " );
27                 int denominator = scanner.nextInt();
28
29                 int result = quotient( numerator, denominator );
30                 System.out.printf( "%Result: \%d / \%d = \%d\n", numerator,
31                     denominator, result );
```
Please enter an integer numerator: 100
Please enter an integer denominator: 7

Result: 100 / 7 = 14

Please enter an integer numerator: 100
Please enter an integer denominator: 0

Exception: java.lang.ArithmeticException: / by zero
Zero is an invalid denominator. Please try again.

Please enter an integer numerator: 100
Please enter an integer denominator: 7

Result: 100 / 7 = 14

Please enter an integer numerator: 100
Please enter an integer denominator: hello
Exception: java.util.InputMismatchException
You must enter integers. Please try again.

Please enter an integer numerator: 100
Please enter an integer denominator: 7

Result: 100 / 7 = 14

The first sample execution in Fig. 13.2 shows a successful execution that does not encounter any problems. In the second execution, the user enters a zero denominator and an ArithmeticException exception occurs. In the third execution, the user enters the string "hello" as the denominator, and an InputMismatchException occurs. For both exceptions, the user is informed of their mistake and asked to try again, then is prompted for two new integers. In each sample execution, the program runs successfully to completion.

Class InputMismatchException is imported in line 3. Class ArithmeticException does not need to be imported because it is located in package java.lang. Method main (lines 1549) creates a Scanner object at line 17. Line 18 creates the boolean variable continueLoop, which is true if the user has not yet entered valid input. Lines 2048 contain a do...while statement that repeatedly asks users for input until a valid input is received.

Enclosing Code in a try Block

Lines 2233 contain a try block, which encloses the code that might throw an exception and the code that should not execute if an exception occurs (i.e., if an exception occurs, the remaining code in the try block will be skipped). A try block consists of the keyword try followed by a block of code enclosed in curly braces ({}). [Note: The term "try block" sometimes refers only to the block of code that follows the try keyword (not including the try keyword itself). For simplicity, we use the term "try block" to refer to the block of code that follows the try keyword, as well as the try keyword.] The statements that read the integers from the keyboard (lines 25 and 27) each use method nextInt to read an int value. Method nextInt throws an InputMismatchException if the value read in
The division that can cause an `ArithmeticException` is not performed in the `try` block. Rather, the call to method `quotient` (line 29) invokes the code that attempts the division (line 12); the JVM throws an `ArithmeticException` object when the denominator is zero.

**Software Engineering Observation 13.1**

Exceptions may surface through explicitly mentioned code in a `try` block, through calls to other methods, through deeply nested method calls initiated by code in a `try` block or from the Java Virtual Machine as it executes Java bytecodes.

**Catching Exceptions**

The `try` block in this example is followed by two `catch` blocksone that handles an `InputMismatchException` (lines 3441) and one that handles an `ArithmeticException` (lines 4247). A `catch block` (also called a `catch clause` or `exception handler`) catches (i.e., receives) and handles an exception. A `catch` block begins with the keyword `catch` and is followed by a parameter in parentheses (called the exception parameter, discussed shortly) and a block of code enclosed in curly braces. [Note: The term "catch clause" is sometimes used to refer to the keyword `catch` followed by a block of code, where the term "catch block" refers to only the block of code following the `catch` keyword, but not including it. For simplicity, we use the term "catch block" to refer to the block of code following the `catch` keyword, as well as the keyword itself.]

At least one `catch` block or a `finally block` (discussed in **Section 13.7**) must immediately follow the `try` block. Each `catch` block specifies in parentheses an `exception parameter` that identifies the exception type the handler can process. When an exception occurs in a `try` block, the `catch` block that executes is the one whose type matches the type of the exception that occurred (i.e., the type in the `catch` block matches the thrown exception type exactly or is a superclass of it). The exception parameter's name enables the `catch` block to interact with a caught exception object.e.g., to implicitly invoke the caught exception's `toString` method (as in lines 37 and 44), which displays basic
information about the exception. Line 38 of the first `catch` block calls `Scanner.nextLine`. Because an `InputMismatchException` occurred, the call to method `nextInt` never successfully read in the user's data so we read that input with a call to method `nextLine`. We do not do anything with the input at this point, because we know that it is invalid. Each `catch` block displays an error message and asks the user to try again. After either `catch` block terminates, the user is prompted for input. We will soon take a deeper look at how this flow of control works in exception handling.

[Page 646]

**Common Programming Error 13.1**

> It is a syntax error to place code between a `try` block and its corresponding `catch` blocks.

**Common Programming Error 13.2**

> Each `catch` block can have only a single parameter specifying a comma-separated list of exception parameters is a syntax error.

**Common Programming Error 13.3**

> It is a compilation error to catch the same type in two different `catch` blocks in a single `try` statement.

An **uncaught exception** is an exception that occurs for which there are no matching `catch` blocks. You saw uncaught exceptions in the second and third
outputs of Fig. 13.1. Recall that when exceptions occurred in that example, the application terminated early (after displaying the exception's stack trace). This does not always occur as a result of uncaught exceptions. As you will learn in Chapter 23, Java uses a multithreaded model of program execution. Each thread is a parallel activity. One program can have many threads. If a program has only one thread, an uncaught exception will cause the program to terminate. If a program has multiple threads, an uncaught exception will terminate only the thread where the exception occurred. In such programs, however, certain threads may rely on others and if one thread terminates due to an uncaught exception, there may be adverse effects to the rest of the program.

**Termination Model of Exception Handling**

If an exception occurs in a try block (such as an InputMismatchException being thrown as a result of the code at line 25 of Fig. 13.2), the try block terminates immediately and program control transfers to the first of the following catch blocks in which the exception parameter's type matches the type of the thrown exception. In Fig. 13.2, the first catch block catches InputMismatchExceptions (which occur if invalid input is entered) and the second catch block catches ArithmeticExceptions (which occur if an attempt is made to divide by zero). After the exception is handled, program control does not return to the throw point because the try block has expired (which also causes any of its local variables to be lost). Rather control resumes after the last catch block. This is known as the **termination model of exception handling**. [Note: Some languages use the resumption model of exception handling, in which, after an exception is handled, control resumes just after the throw point.]

**Common Programming Error 13.4**

Logic errors can occur if you assume that after an exception is handled, control will return to the first statement after the throw point.

**Error-Prevention Tip 13.2**
With exception handling, a program can continue executing (rather than terminating) after dealing with a problem. This helps ensure the kind of robust applications that contribute to what is called mission-critical computing or business-critical computing.

Notice that we name our exception parameters (inputMismatchException and arithmeticException) based on their type. Java programmers often simply use the letter e as the name of their exception parameters.

Good Programming Practice 13.1

Using an exception parameter name that reflects the parameter's type promotes clarity by reminding the programmer of the type of exception being handled.

After executing a catch block, this program's flow of control proceeds to the first statement after the last catch block (line 48 in this case). The condition in the do...while statement is True (variable continueLoop contains its initial value of True), so control returns to the beginning of the loop and the user is once again prompted for input. This control statement will loop until valid input is entered. At that point, program control reaches line 32 which assigns false to variable continueLoop. The try block then terminates. If no exceptions are thrown in the try block, the catch blocks are skipped and control continues with the first statement after the catch blocks (or after the finally block, if one is present). Now the condition for the do...while loop is false, and method main ends.

The try block and its corresponding catch and/or finally blocks together form a try statement. It is important not to confuse the terms "try block" and "try statement"; the term "try block" refers to the keyword try followed by a block of code, while the term "try statement" includes the try block, as well as the following catch blocks and/or finally block.

As with any other block of code, when a try block terminates, local variables declared in the block go out of scope (and are destroyed). When a catch block terminates, local variables declared within the catch block (including the
exception parameter of that

```
catch
```
block) also go out of scope and are

destroyed. Any remaining

```
catch
```
blocks in the

```
try
```
statement are ignored and

execution resumes at the first line of code after the

```
try...catch
```
sequence this will be a

```
finally
```
block, if one is present.

## Using the `throws` Clause

Now let us examine method `quotient` (lines 913). The portion of the method declaration located at line 10 is known as a `throws clause`. A `throws` clause specifies the exceptions the method may throw. This clause appears after the method's parameter list and before the method's body. The clause contains a comma-separated list of the exceptions that the method will throw if a problem occurs. Such exceptions may be thrown by statements in the method's body or by methods called in the body. A method can throw exceptions of the classes listed in its `throws` clause or of their subclasses. We have added the `throws` clause to this application to indicate to the rest of the program that this method may throw an `ArithmeticException`. Clients of method `quotient` are thus informed that the method may throw an `ArithmeticException` and that the exception should be caught. You will learn more about the `throws` clause in

Section 13.6.

---

### Error-Prevention Tip 13.3

If you know that a method might throw an exception, include appropriate exception-handling code in your program to make it more robust.

### Error-Prevention Tip 13.4

Read the online API documentation for a method before using that method in a program. The documentation specifies the exceptions thrown by the method (if any) and indicates reasons why such exceptions may occur. Then provide for handling those exceptions in your program.
Error-Prevention Tip 13.5

Read the online API documentation for an exception class before writing exception-handling code for that type of exception. The documentation for an exception class typically contains potential reasons that such exceptions occur during program execution.

When line 12 executes, if the denominator is zero, the JVM throws an ArithmeticException object. This object will be caught by the catch block at lines 4247, which displays basic information about the exception by implicitly invoking the exception's toString method, then asks the user to try again.

If the denominator is not zero, method quotient performs the division and returns the result to the point of invocation of method quotient in the try block (line 29). Lines 3031 display the result of the calculation and line 32 sets continueLoop to false. In this case, the try block completes successfully, so the program skips the catch blocks, fails the condition at line 48 and method main completes execution normally.

Note that when quotient throws an ArithmeticException, quotient terminates and does not return a value, and quotient's local variables go out of scope (and the variables are destroyed). If quotient contained local variables that were references to objects and there are no other references to those object, would be marked for garbage collection. Also, when an exception occurs, the try block from which quotient was called terminates before lines 3032 can execute. Here, too, if local variables were created in the try block prior to the exception being thrown, these variables would go out of scope.

If an InputMismatchException is generated by lines 25 or 27, the Try block terminates and execution continues with the catch block at lines 3441. In this case, method quotient is not called. Then method main continues after the last catch block (line 48).
13.5. When to Use Exception Handling

Exception handling is designed to process **synchronous errors**, which occur when a statement executes. Common examples we will see throughout the book are out-of-range array indices, arithmetic overflow (i.e., a value outside the representable range of values), division by zero, invalid method parameters, thread interruption and unsuccessful memory allocation (due to lack of memory). Exception handling is not designed to process problems associated with **asynchronous events** (e.g., disk I/O completions, network message arrivals, mouse clicks and keystrokes), which occur in parallel with, and independent of, the program's flow of control.

**Software Engineering Observation 13.2**

Incorporate your exception-handling strategy into your system from the design process's inception. Including effective exception handling after a system has been implemented can be difficult.

**Software Engineering Observation 13.3**

Exception handling provides a single, uniform technique for processing problems. This helps programmers working on large projects understand each other's error-processing code.

**Software Engineering Observation 13.4**

Avoid using exception handling as an alternate form of flow of control. These "additional" exceptions can "get in the way" of genuine error-type exceptions.
Exception handling simplifies combining software components and enables them to work together effectively by enabling predefined components to communicate problems to application-specific components, which can then process the problems in an application-specific manner.
13.6. Java Exception Hierarchy

All Java exception classes inherit, either directly or indirectly, from class `Exception`, forming an inheritance hierarchy. Programmers can extend this hierarchy to create their own exception classes.

Figure 13.3 shows a small portion of the inheritance hierarchy for class `Throwable` (a subclass of `Object`), which is the superclass of class `Exception`. Only `Throwable` objects can be used with the exception-handling mechanism. Class `Throwable` has two subclasses: `Exception` and `Error`. Class `Exception` and its subclasses (for instance, `RuntimeException` (package `java.lang`) and `IOException` (package `java.io`) represent exceptional situations that can occur in a Java program and that can be caught by the application. Class `Error` and its subclasses (e.g., `OutOfMemoryError`) represent abnormal situations that could happen in the JVM. `Errors` happen infrequently and should not be caught by applications (it is usually not possible for applications to recover from `Errors`.)

[Note: The Java exception hierarchy is enormous, containing hundreds of classes. Information about Java's exception classes can be found throughout the Java API. The documentation for class `Throwable` can be found at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/lang/Throwable.html. From there, you can look at this class's subclasses to get more information about Java's Exceptions and Errors.]

---

Figure 13.3. Portion of class `Throwable`'s inheritance hierarchy.
(This item is displayed on page 649 in the print version)

[View full size image]
Java distinguishes between two categories of exceptions: **checked exceptions** and **unchecked exceptions**. This distinction is important, because the Java compiler enforces a **catch-or-declare requirement** for checked exceptions. An exception's type determines whether the exception is checked or unchecked. All exception types that are direct or indirect subclasses of class `RuntimeException` (package `java.lang`) are unchecked exceptions. This includes exceptions you have seen already, such as `ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException` and `ArithmeticException` (shown in Fig. 13.3). All classes that inherit from class `Exception` but not class `RuntimeException` are considered to be checked exceptions. Classes that inherit from class `Error` are considered to be unchecked. The compiler checks each method call and method declaration to determine whether the method throws checked exceptions. If so, the compiler ensures that the checked exception is caught or is declared in a `throws` clause. Recall from Section 13.4 that the `throws` clause specifies the exceptions a method throws. Such exceptions are not caught in the method's body. To satisfy the `catch` part of the catch-or-declare requirement, the code that generates the exception must be wrapped in a `try` block and must provide a `catch` handler for the checked-exception type (or one of its superclass types). To satisfy the `declare` part of the catch-or-declare requirement, the method containing the code that generates the exception must provide a `throws` clause containing the checked-exception type after its parameter list and before its method body. If the catch-or-declare requirement is not satisfied, the compiler will issue an error message indicating that the exception must be caught or declared. This forces programmers to think about the problems that may occur when a method that throws checked exceptions is called. Exception classes are defined to be checked when they are considered important enough to catch or declare.
Software Engineering Observation 13.6

Programmers are forced to deal with checked exceptions. This results in more robust code than would be created if programmers were able to simply ignore the exceptions.

Common Programming Error 13.5

A compilation error occurs if a method explicitly attempts to throw a checked exception (or calls another method that throws a checked exception) and that exception is not listed in that method’s throws clause.

Common Programming Error 13.6

If a subclass method overrides a superclass method, it is an error for the subclass method to list more exceptions in its throws clause than the overridden superclass method does. However, a subclass’s throws clause can contain a subset of a superclass's throws list.

Software Engineering Observation 13.7

If your method calls other methods that explicitly throw checked exceptions, those exceptions must be caught or declared in your method. If an exception can be handled meaningfully in a method, the method should catch the exception rather than declare it.
Unlike checked exceptions, the Java compiler does not check the code to determine whether an unchecked exception is caught or declared. Unchecked exceptions typically can be prevented by proper coding. For example, the unchecked `ArithmeticException` thrown by method `quotient` (lines 913) in Fig. 13.2 can be avoided if the method ensures that the denominator is not zero before attempting to perform the division. Unchecked exceptions are not required to be listed in a method's `throws` clause even if they are, it is not required that such exceptions be caught by an application.

**Software Engineering Observation 13.8**

Although the compiler does not enforce the catch-or-declare requirement for unchecked exceptions, provide appropriate exception-handling code when it is known that such exceptions might occur. For example, a program should process the `NumberFormatException` from `Integer` method `parseInt`, even though `NumberFormatException` (a subclass of `RuntimeException`) is an unchecked exception type. This makes your programs more robust.

Various exception classes can be derived from a common superclass. If a `catch` handler is written to catch exception objects of a superclass type, it can also catch all objects of that class's subclasses. This enables a `catch` block to handle related errors with a concise notation and allows for polymorphic processing of related exceptions. One could certainly catch each subclass type individually if those exceptions required different processing. Of course, catching related exceptions in one `catch` block makes sense only if the handling behavior is the same for all subclasses.

If there are multiple `catch` blocks that match a particular exception type, only the first matching `catch` block executes when an exception of that type occurs. We stated earlier that it is a compilation error to catch the same type in two different `catch` blocks associated with a particular `try` block. This occurs when both types are exactly the same. However, there may be several `catch` blocks that match an exception i.e., several `catch` blocks whose types are the same as the exception type or a superclass of that type. For instance, we could follow a `catch` block for type `ArithmeticException` with a `catch` block for type `Exception` both would match `ArithmeticExceptions`, but only the first matching `catch` block would execute.
Error-Prevention Tip 13.6

Catching subclass types individually is subject to error if you forget to test for one or more of the subclass types explicitly; catching the superclass guarantees that objects of all subclasses will be caught. Positioning a catch block for the superclass type after all other subclass catch blocks for subclasses of that superclass ensures that all subclass exceptions are eventually caught.

Common Programming Error 13.7

Placing a catch block for a superclass exception type before other catch blocks that catch subclass exception types prevents those blocks from executing, so a compilation error occurs.
13.7. **finally block**

Programs that obtain certain types of resources must return them to the system explicitly to avoid so-called **resource leaks**. In programming languages such as C and C++, the most common kind of resource leak is a memory leak. Java performs automatic garbage collection of memory no longer used by programs, thus avoiding most memory leaks. However, other types of resource leaks can occur. For example, files, database connections and network connections that are not closed properly might not be available for use in other programs.

**Error-Prevention Tip 13.7**

A subtle issue is that Java does not entirely eliminate memory leaks. Java will not garbage collect an object until there are no more references to it. Thus, memory leaks can occur, if programmers erroneously keep references to unwanted objects.

The **finally** block (which consists of the **finally** keyword, followed by code enclosed in curly braces) is optional, and is sometimes referred to as the **finally clause**. If it is present, it is placed after the last **catch** block, as in **Fig. 13.4**:

Java guarantees that a **finally** block (if one is present in a **try** statement) will execute whether or not an exception is thrown in the corresponding **try** block or any of its corresponding **catch** blocks. Java also guarantees that a **finally** block (if one is present) will execute if a **Try** block exits by using a **return**, **break** or **continue** statement. The **finally** block will **not** execute if the application exits early from a **try** block by calling method **System.exit**. This method, which we demonstrate in the next chapter, immediately terminates an application.

**Figure 13.4. Position of the **finally** block after the last **catch** block in a **TRy** statement.**
Because a `finally` block almost always executes, it typically contains resource-release code. Suppose a resource is allocated in a `try` block. If no exception occurs, the `catch` blocks are skipped and control proceeds to the `finally` block, which frees the resource. Control then proceeds to the first statement after the `finally` block. If an exception does occur in the `try` block, the program skips the rest of the `try` block. If the program catches the exception in one of the `catch` blocks, the program processes the exception, then the `finally` block releases the resource and control proceeds to the first statement after the `finally` block.

**Performance Tip 13.2**

*Always release each resource explicitly and at the earliest possible moment at which the resource is no longer needed. This makes resources immediately available to be reused by your program or by other programs, thus improving resource utilization. Because the `finally` block is guaranteed to execute whether or not an exception occurs in the corresponding `try` block, this block is an ideal place to release resources acquired in a `Try` block.*
Error-Prevention Tip 13.8

A finally block typically contains code to release resources acquired in its corresponding try block; this is an effective way to eliminate resource leaks. For example, the finally block should close any files opened in the try block.

If an exception that occurs in a try block cannot be caught by one of that try block's catch handlers, the program skips the rest of the try block and control proceeds to the finally block. Then the program passes the exception to the next outer try block normally in the calling method where an associated catch block might catch it. This process can occur through many levels of try blocks.

If a catch block throws an exception, the finally block still executes. Then the exception is passed to the next outer try block again, normally in the calling method.

The Java application of Fig. 13.5 demonstrates that the finally block executes even if an exception is not thrown in the corresponding try block. The program contains static methods main (lines 719), throwException (lines 2245) and doesNotThrowException (lines 4865). Methods throwException and doesNotThrowException are declared static, so main can call them directly.

Figure 13.5. try...catch...finally exception-handling mechanism.
(This item is displayed on pages 653 - 655 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 13.5: UsingExceptions.java
2 // Demonstration of the try...catch...finally exception handling
3 // mechanism.
4
5 public class UsingExceptions {
6     { public static void main( String args[] ) {
7         try
8             throwException(); // call method throwException
9         } // end try
10         catch ( Exception exception ) // exception thrown by throwException
11     }
12 }
```
System.err.println( "Exception handled in main" );

// end catch

doesNotThrowException();

// end main

// demonstrate try...catch...finally
public static void throwException() throws Exception
{
    try // throw an exception and immediately catch it
    {
        System.out.println( "Method throwException" );
        throw new Exception(); // generate exception
    } // end try
    catch ( Exception exception ) // catch exception thrown in try
    {
        System.err.println( "Exception handled in method throwException" );
        throw exception; // rethrow for further processing
    } // end catch
    finally // executes regardless of what occurs in try...catch
    {
        System.err.println( "Finally executed in throwException" );
    } // end finally

    // any code here would not be reached

} // end method throwException

// demonstrate finally when no exception occurs
public static void doesNotThrowException()
{
    try // try block does not throw an exception
    {
        System.out.println( "Method doesNotThrowException" );
    } // end try
    catch ( Exception exception ) // does not execute
    {
        System.err.println( exception );
    } // end catch
    finally // executes regardless of what occurs in try...catch
    {
        System.err.println( "Finally executed in doesNotThrowException" );
    } // end finally

    System.out.println( "End of method doesNotThrowException" );
} // end method doesNotThrowException

} // end class UsingExceptions

Method throwException
Exception handled in method throwException
Finally executed in throwException
Before we discuss the flow of control for this example, we would like to point out the use of the System.err to output data (lines 15, 3132, 40, 56 and 6061). By default, System.err.println, like System.out.println, displays data to the command prompt.

Both System.out and System.err are streams—a sequence of bytes. While System.out (known as the standard output stream) is used to display a program's output, System.err (known as the standard error stream) is used to display a program's errors. Output from these streams can be redirected (i.e., sent somewhere other than the command prompt such as a file). Using two different streams enables the programmer to easily separate error messages from other output. For instance, data output from System.err could be sent to a log file, while data output from System.out can be displayed on the screen. For simplicity, this chapter will not redirect output from System.err, but will display such messages to the command prompt. You will learn more about streams in Chapter 14, Files and Streams.

Throwing Exceptions Using the throw Statement

Method main (Fig. 13.5) begins executing, enters its try block and immediately calls method throwException (line 11). Method throwException throws an Exception (line 27), catches it (line 29) and rethrows it (line 33). The statement at line 27 is known as a throw statement. The throw statement is executed to indicate that an exception has occurred. So far, you have only caught exceptions thrown by called methods. Programmers can throw exceptions by using the throw statement. Just as with exceptions thrown by the Java API's methods, this indicates to client applications that an error has occurred. A throw statement specifies an object to be thrown. The operand of a throw can be of any class derived from class Throwable.
When `toString` is invoked on any `Throwable` object, its resulting string includes the descriptive string that was supplied to the constructor, or simply the class name if no string was supplied.

Software Engineering Observation 13.10

An object can be thrown without containing information about the problem that occurred. In this case, simple knowledge that an exception of a particular type occurred may provide sufficient information for the handler to process the problem correctly.

Software Engineering Observation 13.11

Exceptions can be thrown from constructors. When an error is detected in a constructor, an exception should be thrown rather than creating an improperly formed object.

Rethrowing Exceptions

Line 33 of Fig. 13.5 rethrows the exception. Exceptions are rethrown when a `catch` block, upon receiving an exception, decides either that it cannot process that exception or that it can only partially process it. Rethrowing an exception defers the exception handling (or perhaps a portion of it) to another `catch` block associated with an outer `try` statement. An exception is rethrown by using the
throw keyword, followed by a reference to the exception object that was just caught. Note that exceptions cannot be rethrown from a finally block, as the exception parameter from the catch block has expired.

When a rethrow occurs, the next enclosing try block detects the rethrown exception, and that try block's catch blocks attempt to handle the exception. In this case, the next enclosing try block is found at lines 912 in method main. Before the rethrown exception is handled, however, the finally block (lines 3841) executes. Then method main detects the rethrown exception in the try block and handles it in the catch block (lines 1316).

Next, main calls method doesNotThrowException (line 18). No exception is thrown in doesNotThrowException's try block (lines 5053), so the program skips the catch block (lines 5457), but the finally block (lines 5862) nevertheless executes. Control proceeds to the statement after the finally block (line 64). Then control returns to main and the program terminates.

Common Programming Error 13.8

If an exception has not been caught when control enters a finally block and the finally block throws an exception that is not caught in the finally block, the first exception will be lost and the exception from the finally block will be returned to the calling method.

Error-Prevention Tip 13.9

Avoid placing code that can throw an exception in a finally block. If such code is required, enclose the code in a try...catch within the finally block.

Common Programming Error 13.9

Assuming that an exception thrown from a catch block will be processed by that catch block or any other catch block associated with the same try
Java's exception-handling mechanism is intended to remove error-processing code from the main line of a program's code to improve program clarity. Do not place `try...catch...finally` around every statement that may throw an exception. This makes programs difficult to read. Rather, place one `try` block around a significant portion of your code, follow that `try` block with `catch` blocks that handle each possible exception and follow the `catch` blocks with a single `finally` block (if one is required).
13.8. Stack Unwinding

When an exception is thrown but not caught in a particular scope, the method-call stack is "unwound," and an attempt is made to catch the exception in the next outer try block. This process is called stack unwinding. Unwinding the method-call stack means that the method in which the exception was not caught terminates, all local variables in that method go out of scope and control returns to the statement that originally invoked that method. If a \texttt{Try} block encloses that statement, an attempt is made to catch the exception. If a \texttt{try} block does not enclose that statement, stack unwinding occurs again. If no \texttt{catch} block ever catches this exception and the exception is checked (as in the following example), compiling the program will result in an error. The program of Fig. 13.6 demonstrates stack unwinding.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{fig13_6.png}
\caption{Stack unwinding.}
\end{figure}

\begin{verbatim}
// Fig. 13.6: UsingExceptions.java
// Demonstration of stack unwinding.

public class UsingExceptions {

    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        try // call throwException to demonstrate stack unwinding
        {
            throwException();
        } // end try
        catch ( Exception exception ) // exception thrown in throwException
        {
            System.err.println( "Exception handled in main" );
        } // end catch
    } // end main

    // throwException throws exception that is not caught in this method
    public static void throwException() \texttt{throws Exception}
    {
        try // throw an exception and catch it in main
        {
            System.out.println( "Method throwException" );
            throw new Exception(); // generate exception
        } // end try
        catch ( RuntimeException runtimeException ) // catch incorrect type
        {
            System.err.println( "Exception handled in catch block" );
        } // end catch
    } // end method

} // end UsingExceptions
\end{verbatim}
When method `main` executes, line 10 in the `try` block calls method `throwException` (lines 19-35). In the `try` block of method `throwException` (lines 21-25), line 24 throws an `Exception`. This terminates the `try` block immediately, and control skips the `catch` block at line 26, because the type being caught (`RuntimeException`) is not an exact match with the thrown type (`Exception`) and is not a superclass of it. Method `throwException` terminates (but not until its `finally` block executes) and returns control to line 10—the point from which it was called in the program. Line 10 is in an enclosing `try` block. The exception has not yet been handled, so the `try` block terminates and an attempt is made to catch the exception at line 12. The type being caught (`Exception`) does match the thrown type. Consequently, the `catch` block processes the exception, and the program terminates at the end of `main`. If there were no matching `catch` blocks, a compilation error would occur. Remember that this is not always the case for unchecked exceptions, the application will compile, but run with unexpected results.
13.9. `printStackTrace`, `getStackTrace` and `getMessage`

Recall from Section 13.6 that exceptions derive from class `Throwable`. Class `Throwable` offers a `printStackTrace` method that outputs to the standard error stream the stack trace (discussed in Section 13.3). Often, this is helpful in testing and debugging. Class `Throwable` also provides a `getStackTrace` method that retrieves stack-trace information that might be printed by `printStackTrace`. Class `Throwable`'s `getMessage` method returns the descriptive string stored in an exception. The example in this section demonstrates these three methods.

**Error-Prevention Tip 13.10**

An exception that is not caught in an application causes Java’s default exception handler to run. This displays the name of the exception, a descriptive message that indicates the problem that occurred and a complete execution stack trace.

**Error-Prevention Tip 13.11**

`Throwable` method `toString` (inherited by all `Throwable` subclasses) returns a string containing the name of the exception's class and a descriptive message.

Figure 13.7 demonstrates `getMessage`, `printStackTrace` and `getStackTrace`. If we wanted to output the stack-trace information to streams other than the standard error stream, we could use the information returned from `getStackTrace`, and output this data to another stream. You will learn about sending data to other streams in Chapter 14, Files and Streams.
// Fig. 13.7: UsingExceptions.java
// Demonstrating getMessage and printStackTrace from class Exception.

public class UsingExceptions {
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        try
        {
            method1(); // call method1
        } // end try
        catch ( Exception exception ) // catch exception thrown in method1
        {
            System.err.printf("%s
\n", exception.getMessage());
            exception.printStackTrace(); // print exception stack trace
            // obtain the stack-trace information
            StackTraceElement[] traceElements = exception.getStackTrace();
            System.out.println("\nStack trace from getStackTrace:");
            System.out.println("Class\t\tFile\t\tLine\tMethod");
            // loop through traceElements to get exception description
            for ( StackTraceElement element : traceElements )
            {
                System.out.printf("%s\t", element.getClassName());
                System.out.printf("%s\t", element.getFileName());
                System.out.printf("%s\t", element.getLineNumber());
                System.out.printf("%s
", element.getMethodName());
            } // end for
        } // end catch
    } // end main

    // call method2; throw exceptions back to main
    public static void method1() throws Exception
    {
        method2();
    } // end method method1

    // call method3; throw exceptions back to method1
    public static void method2() throws Exception
    {
        method3();
    } // end method method2

    // throw Exception back to method2
    public static void method3() throws Exception
    {
        throw new Exception("Exception thrown in method3");
    } // end method method3
} // end class UsingExceptions
Exception thrown in method3
java.lang.Exception: Exception thrown in method3
    at UsingExceptions.method3(UsingExceptions.java:49)
    at UsingExceptions.method2(UsingExceptions.java:43)
    at UsingExceptions.method1(UsingExceptions.java:37)
    at UsingExceptions.main(UsingExceptions.java:10)

Stack trace from getStackTrace:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>File</th>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UsingExceptions</td>
<td>UsingExceptions.java</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>method3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UsingExceptions</td>
<td>UsingExceptions.java</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>method2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UsingExceptions</td>
<td>UsingExceptions.java</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>method1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UsingExceptions</td>
<td>UsingExceptions.java</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>main</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In main, the Try block (lines 811) calls method1 (declared at lines 3538). Next, method1 calls method2 (declared at lines 4144), which in turn calls method3 (declared at lines 4750). Line 49 of method3 throws an Exception object this is the throw point. Because throw statement at line 49 is not enclosed in a Try block, stack unwinding occurs method3 terminates at line 49, then returns control to the statement in method2 that invoked method3 (i.e., line 43). Because no try block encloses line 43, stack unwinding occurs again method2 terminates at line 43 and returns control to the statement in method1 that invoked method2 (i.e., line 37). Because no Try block encloses line 37, stack unwinding occurs one more time method1 terminates at line 37 and returns control to the statement in main that invoked method1 (i.e., line 10). The try block at lines 811 encloses this statement. The exception has not been handled, so the Try block terminates and the first matching catch block (lines 1231) catches and processes the exception.

Line 14 invokes the exception's getMessage method to get the exception description. Line 15 invokes the exception's printStackTrace method to output the stack trace that indicates where the exception occurred. Line 18 invokes the exception's getStackTrace method to obtain the stack-trace information as an array of StackTraceElement objects. Lines 2430 get each StackTraceElement in the array and invoke its methods className, fileName, lineNumber and methodName to get the class name, file name, line number and method name, respectively, for that StackTraceElement. Each StackTraceElement represents
one method call on the method-call stack.

The output in Fig. 13.7 shows that the stack-trace information printed by 
printStackTrace follows the pattern: 
className.methodName(fileName:lineNumber), where className, 
methodName and fileName indicate the names of the class, method and file in 
which the exception occurred, respectively, and the lineNumber indicates 
where in the file the exception occurred. You saw this in the output for Fig. 
13.1. Method getStackTrace enables custom processing of the exception 
information. Compare the output of printStackTrace with the output created from 
the StackTraceElements to see that both contain the same stack-trace information.

Software Engineering Observation 13.12

Never ignore an exception you catch. At least use printStackTrace to output 
an error message. This will inform users that a problem exists, so that they 
can take appropriate actions.
13.10. Chained Exceptions

Sometimes a catch block catches one exception type, then throws a new exception of a different type to indicate that a program-specific exception occurred. In earlier Java versions, there was no mechanism to wrap the original exception information with the new exception's information to provide a complete stack trace showing where the original problem occurred in the program. This made debugging such problems particularly difficult. J2SE 1.4 added chained exceptions to enable an exception object to maintain the complete stack-trace information. Figure 13.8 presents a mechanical example that demonstrates how chained exceptions work.

Figure 13.8. Chained exceptions.
(This item is displayed on pages 661 - 662 in the print version)

```java
public class UsingChainedExceptions {  
  public static void main( String args[] )  
  {  
    try  
    {  
      method1(); // call method1  
    } // end try  
    catch ( Exception exception ) // exceptions thrown from method1  
    {  
      exception.printStackTrace();  
    } // end catch  
  } // end main  

  // call method2; throw exceptions back to main  
  public static void method1() throws Exception {  
    try  
    {  
      method2(); // call method2  
    } // end try  
    catch ( Exception exception ) // exception thrown from method2  
    {  
      throw new Exception( "Exception thrown in method1", exception );  
    } // end try  
  } // end method method1  

  // call method3; throw exceptions back to method1  
  public static void method2() throws Exception {  
  } // end method method2
```
try {
    method3(); // call method3
} // end try
catch ( Exception exception ) // exception thrown from method3
{
    throw new Exception( "Exception thrown in method2", exception );
} // end catch
} // end method method2
// throw Exception back to method2
public static void method3() throws Exception
{
    throw new Exception( "Exception thrown in method3" );
} // end method method3
} // end class UsingChainedExceptions

java.lang.Exception: Exception thrown in method1
    at UsingChainedExceptions.method1(UsingChainedExceptions.java:27)
    at UsingChainedExceptions.main(UsingChainedExceptions.java:10)
Caused by: java.lang.Exception: Exception thrown in method2
    at UsingChainedExceptions.method2(UsingChainedExceptions.java:40)
    at UsingChainedExceptions.method1(UsingChainedExceptions.java:23)
... 1 more
Caused by: java.lang.Exception: Exception thrown in method3
    at UsingChainedExceptions.method3(UsingChainedExceptions.java:47)
    at UsingChainedExceptions.method2(UsingChainedExceptions.java:36)
... 2 more

The program consists of four methods: main (lines 616), method1 (lines 1929), method2 (lines 3242) and method3 (lines 4548). Line 10 in method main's try block calls method1. Line 23 in method1's try block calls method2. Line 36 in method2's try block calls method3. In method3, line 47 throws a new Exception. Because this statement is not in a try block, method3 terminates, and the exception is returned to the calling method (method2) at line 36. This statement is in a try block; therefore, the try block terminates and the exception is caught at lines 3841. Line 40 in the catch block throws a new exception. In this case, the Exception constructor with two arguments is called. The second argument represents the exception that was the original cause of the problem. In this
program, that exception occurred at line 47. Because an exception is thrown from the catch block, method2 terminates and returns the new exception to the calling method (method1) at line 23. Once again, this statement is in a try block, so the try block terminates and the exception is caught at lines 2528. Line 27 in the catch block throws a new exception and uses the exception that was caught as the second argument to the Exception constructor. Because an exception is thrown from the catch block, method1 terminates and returns the new exception to the calling method (main) at line 10. The try block in main terminates, and the exception is caught at lines 1215. Line 14 prints a stack trace.

Notice in the program output that the first three lines show the most recent exception that was thrown (i.e., the one from method1 at line 23). The next four lines indicate the exception that was thrown from method2 at line 40. Finally, the last four lines represent the exception that was thrown from method3 at line 47. Also notice that, as you read the output in reverse, it shows how many more chained exceptions remain.
13.11. Declaring New Exception Types

Most Java programmers use existing classes from the Java API, third-party vendors and freely available class libraries (usually downloadable from the Internet) to build Java applications. The methods of those classes typically are declared to throw appropriate exceptions when problems occur. Programmers write code that processes these existing exceptions to make programs more robust.

If you are a programmer who builds classes that other programmers will use in their programs, you might find it useful to declare your own exception classes that are specific to the problems that can occur when another programmer uses your reusable classes.

Software Engineering Observation 13.13

If possible, indicate exceptions from your methods by using existing exception classes, rather than creating new exception classes. The Java API contains many exception classes that might be suitable for the type of problem your method needs to indicate.

A new exception class must extend an existing exception class to ensure that the class can be used with the exception-handling mechanism. Like any other class, an exception class can contain fields and methods. However, a typical new exception class contains only two constructors— one that takes no arguments and passes a default exception message to the superclass constructor, and one that receives a customized exception message as a string and passes it to the superclass constructor.

Good Programming Practice 13.3

Associating each type of serious execution-time malfunction with an appropriately named Exception class improves program clarity.
When defining your own exception type, study the existing exception classes in the Java API and try to extend a related exception class. For example, if you are creating a new class to represent when a method attempts a division by zero, you might extend class ArithmeticException because division by zero occurs during arithmetic. If the existing classes are not appropriate superclasses for your new exception class, decide whether your new class should be a checked or an unchecked exception class. The new exception class should be a checked exception (i.e., extend Exception but not RuntimeException) if possible clients should be required to handle the exception. The client application should be able to reasonably recover from such an exception. The new exception class should extend RuntimeException if the client code should be able to ignore the exception (i.e., the exception is an unchecked exception).

In Chapter 17, Data Structures, we provide an example of a custom exception class. We declare a reusable class called List that is capable of storing a list of references to objects. Some operations typically performed on a List are not allowed if the List is empty, such as removing an item from the front or back of the list (i.e., no items can be removed, as the List does not currently contain any items). For this reason, some List methods throw exceptions of exception class EmptyListException.

Good Programming Practice 13.4

By convention, all exception-class names should end with the word Exception.
13.12. Preconditions and Postconditions

Programmers spend significant portions of their time on code maintenance and debugging. To facilitate these tasks and to improve the overall design, programmers generally specify the expected states before and after a method's execution. These states are called preconditions and postconditions, respectively.

A method's **precondition** is a condition that must be true when the method is invoked. Preconditions describe method parameters and any other expectations the method has about the current state of a program. If a user fails to meet the preconditions, then the method's behavior is undefined—it may throw an exception, proceed with an illegal value or attempt to recover from the error. However, you should never rely on or expect consistent behavior if the preconditions are not satisfied.

A method's **postcondition** of a method is a condition that is true after the method successfully returns. Postconditions describe the return value and any other side-effects the method may have. When calling a method, you may assume that a method fulfills all of its postconditions. If you are writing your own method, you should document all postconditions so others know what to expect when they call the method.

As an example, examine **String** method `charAt`, which has one `int` parameter: an index in the `String`. For a precondition, method `charAt` assumes that `index` is greater than or equal to zero and less than the length of the `String`. If the precondition is met, the postcondition states the method will return the character at the position in the `String` specified by the parameter `index`. Otherwise, the method throws an `IndexOutOfBoundsException`. We trust that method `charAt` satisfies its postcondition, provided that we meet the precondition. We do not need to be concerned with the details of how the method actually retrieves the character at the index. This allows the programmer to focus more on the overall design of the program rather than on the implementation details.

Some programmers state the preconditions and postconditions informally as part of the general method specification, while others prefer a more formal approach by explicitly defining them. When designing your own methods, you
should state the preconditions and postconditions in a comment before the method declaration in whichever manner you prefer. Stating the preconditions and postconditions before writing a method will also help guide you as you implement the method.
13.13. Assertions

When implementing and debugging a class, it is sometimes useful to state conditions that should be true at a particular point in a method. These conditions, called assertions, help ensure a program's validity by catching potential bugs and identifying possible logic errors during development. Preconditions and postconditions are two types of assertions. Preconditions are assertions about a program's state when a method is invoked, and postconditions are assertions about a program's state after a method finishes.

While assertions can be stated as comments to guide the programmer during development, Java includes two versions of the assert statement for validating assertions programatically. The assert statement evaluates a boolean expression and determines whether it is true or false. The first form of the assert statement is

```
assert expression;
```

This statement evaluates expression and throws an AssertionError if the expression is false. The second form is

```
assert expression1 : expression2;
```

This statement evaluates expression1 and throws an AssertionError with expression2 as the error message if expression1 is false.

You can use assertions to programmatically implement preconditions and postconditions or to verify any other intermediate states that help you ensure your code is working correctly. The example in Fig. 13.9 demonstrates the functionality of the assert statement. Line 11 prompts the user to enter a number between 0 and 10, then line 12 reads the number from the command line. The assert statement on line 15 determines whether the user entered a number within the valid range. If the user entered a number that is out of range, then the program reports an error. Otherwise, the program proceeds normally.
Figure 13.9. Checking with `assert` that a value is within range.

```java
// Fig. 13.9: AssertTest.java
// Demonstrates the assert statement
import java.util.Scanner;

public class AssertTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );
        System.out.print( "Enter a number between 0 and 10: " );
        int number = input.nextInt();

        // assert that the absolute value is >= 0
        assert ( number >= 0 && number <= 10 ) :
                   "bad number: " + number;
        System.out.printf( "You entered %d
", number );
    } // end main
} // end class AssertTest
```

Enter a number between 0 and 10: 5
You entered 5

Enter a number between 0 and 10: 50
Exception in thread "main" java.lang.AssertionError: bad number: 50
    at AssertTest.main(AssertTest.java:15)

Assertions are primarily used by the programmer for debugging and identifying logic errors in a application. By default, assertions are disabled when executing a program because they reduce performance and are unnecessary for the
program's user. To enable assertions at runtime, use the `-ea` command-line option when to the `java` command. To execute the program in Fig. 13.9 with assertions enabled, type

```
java -ea AssertTest
```

You should not encounter any `AssertionError` through normal execution of a properly written program. Such errors should only indicate bugs in the implementation. As a result, you should never catch an `AssertionError`. Rather, you should allow the program to terminate when the error occurs, so you can see the error message, then you should locate and fix the source of the problem. Since application users can choose not to enable assertions at runtime, you should not use the `assert` statement to indicate runtime problems in production code. Rather, you should use the exception mechanism for this purpose.

In this chapter, you learned how to use exception handling to deal with errors in an application. You learned that exception handling enables programmers to remove error-handling code from the "main line" of the program's execution. You saw exception handling in the context of a divide-by-zero example. You learned how to use try blocks to enclose code that may throw an exception, and how to use catch blocks to deal with exceptions that may arise. You learned about the termination model of exception handling, which dictates that after an exception is handled, program control does not return to the throw point. You learned the difference between checked and unchecked exceptions, and how to specify with the throws clause that exceptions occurring in a method will be thrown by that method to its caller. Next, you learned how to use the finally block to release resources whether or not an exception occurred. In that discussion, you also learned how to throw and rethrow exceptions. You then learned how to obtain information about an exception using methods printStackTrace, getStackTrace and getMessage. The chapter continued with a discussion of chained exceptions, which allow programmers to wrap original exception information with new exception information. Next, we overviewed how to create your own exception classes. We then introduced preconditions and postconditions to help programmers using your methods understand conditions that must be true with the method is called and when it returns. Finally, we discuss the assert statement and how it can be used to help you debug your programs. In the next chapter, you will learn about file processing, including how persistent data is stored and how to manipulate it.
An exception is an indication of a problem that occurs during a program's execution.

Exception handling enables programmers to create applications that can resolve exceptions.

Exception handling enables programmers to remove error-handling code from the "main line" of the program's execution, improving program clarity and enhancing modifiability.

Exceptions are thrown when a method detects a problem and is unable to handle it.

An exception's stack trace includes the name of the exception in a descriptive message that indicates the problem that occurred and the complete method-call stack (i.e., the call chain) at the time the exception occurred.

The point in the program at which an exception occurs is called the throw point.

A try block encloses the code that might throw an exception and the code that should not execute if that exception occurs.

Exceptions may surface through explicitly mentioned code in a try block, through calls to other methods or even through deeply nested method calls initiated by code in the try block.

A catch block begins with the keyword catch and an exception parameter followed by a block of code that catches (i.e., receives) and handles the exception. This code executes when the try block detects the exception.

An uncaught exception is an exception that occurs for which there are no matching catch blocks.

An uncaught exception will cause a program to terminate early if that
program contains only one thread. If the program contains more than one thread, only the thread where the exception occurred will terminate. The rest of the program will run, but may yield adverse effects.

- At least one catch block or a finally block must immediately follow the try block.

- Each catch block specifies in parentheses an exception parameter that identifies the exception type the handler can process. The exception parameter's name enables the catch block to interact with a caught exception object.

- If an exception occurs in a try block, the try block terminates immediately and program control transfers to the first of the following catch blocks whose exception parameter type matches the type of the thrown exception.

- After an exception is handled, program control does not return to the throw point because the try block has expired. This is known as the termination model of exception handling.

- If there are multiple matching catch blocks when an exception occurs, only the first is executed.

- After executing a catch block, this program's flow of control proceeds to the first statement after the last catch block.

- A throws clause specifies the exceptions the method throws, and appears after the method's parameter list and before the method body.

- The throws clause contains a comma-separated list of exceptions that the method will throw if a problem occurs when the method executes.

- Exception handling is designed to process synchronous errors, which occur when a statement executes.

- Exception handling is not designed to process problems associated with asynchronous events, which occur in parallel with, and independent of, the
program's flow of control.

- All Java exception classes inherit, either directly or indirectly, from class Exception. Because of this fact, Java's exception classes form a hierarchy. Programmers can extend this hierarchy to create their own exception classes.

- Class Throwable is the superclass of class Exception, and is therefore also the superclass of all exceptions. Only Throwable objects can be used with the exception-handling mechanism.

- Class Throwable has two subclasses: Exception and Error.

- Class Exception and its subclasses represent exceptional situations that could occur in a Java program and be caught by the application.

- Class Error and its subclasses represent exceptional situations that could happen in the Java runtime system. Errors happen infrequently, and typically should not be caught by an application.

- Java distinguishes between two categories of exceptions: checked and unchecked.

- Unlike checked exceptions, the Java compiler does not check the code to determine whether an unchecked exception is caught or declared. Unchecked exceptions typically can be prevented by proper coding.

- An exception's type determines whether the exception is checked or unchecked. All exception types that are direct or indirect subclasses of class RuntimeException are unchecked exceptions. All exception types that inherit from class Exception but not from RuntimeException are checked.

- Various exception classes can be derived from a common superclass. If a catch block is written to catch exception objects of a superclass type, it can also catch all objects of that class's subclasses. This allows for polymorphic processing of related exceptions.

- Programs that obtain certain types of resources must return them to the system explicitly to avoid so-called resource leaks. Resource-release code typically is placed in a finally block.
• The `finally` block is optional. If it is present, it is placed after the last `catch` block.

• Java guarantees that a provided `finally` block will execute whether or not an exception is thrown in the corresponding `try` block or any of its corresponding `catch` blocks. Java also guarantees that a `finally` block executes if a `Try` block exits by using a `return`, `break` or `continue` statement.

[Page 668]

• If an exception that occurs in the `Try` block cannot be caught by one of that `Try` block's associated `catch` handlers, the program skips the rest of the `Try` block and control proceeds to the `finally` block, which releases the resource. Then the program passes to the next outer `try` block normally in the calling method.

• If a `catch` block throws an exception, the `finally` block still executes. Then the exception is passed to the next outer `try` block normally in the calling method.

• Programmers can throw exceptions by using the `throw` statement.

• A `throw` statement specifies an object to be thrown. The operand of a `throw` can be of any class derived from class `Throwable`.

• Exceptions are rethrown when a `catch` block, upon receiving an exception, decides either that it cannot process that exception or that it can only partially process it. Rethrowing an exception defers the exception handling (or perhaps a portion of it) to another `catch` block.

• When a rethrow occurs, the next enclosing `Try` block detects the rethrown exception, and that `Try` block's `catch` blocks attempt to handle the exception.

• When an exception is thrown but not caught in a particular scope, the method-call stack is unwound, and an attempt is made to `catch` the exception in the next outer `try` statement. This process is called stack unwinding.

• Class `Throwable` offers a `printStackTrace` method that prints the method-call
stack. Often, this is helpful in testing and debugging.

- Class Throwable also provides a `getStackTrace` method that obtains stack-trace information printed by `printStackTrace`.

- Class Throwable's `getMessage` method returns the descriptive string stored in an exception.

- Method `getStackTrace` obtains the stack-trace information as an array of `StackTraceElement` objects. Each `StackTraceElement` represents one method call on the method-call stack.

- `StackTraceElement` methods `getClassName`, `getFileName`, `getLineNumber` and `getMethodName` get the class name, file name, line number and method name, respectively.

- Chained exceptions enable an exception object to maintain the complete stack-trace information, including information about previous exceptions that caused the current exception.

- A new exception class must extend an existing exception class to ensure that the class can be used with the exception-handling mechanism.

- A method's precondition is a condition that must be true when the method is invoked.

- A method's postcondition is a condition that is true after the method successfully returns.

- When designing your own methods, you should state the preconditions and postconditions in a comment before the method declaration.

- Within an application, the programmer may state conditions that they assumed to be true at a particular point. These conditions, called assertions, help ensure a program's validity by catching potential bugs and indentifying possible logic errors.

- Java includes two versions of an `assert` statement for validating assertions programatically.
To enable assertions at run time, use the `-ea` switch when running the `java` command.
Terminology

ArithmeticException class

assert statement

assertion

asynchronous event

catch an exception

catch block

catch clause

catch-or-declare requirement

chained exception

checked exception

constructor failure

enclosing try block

Error class

exception

Exception class

exception handler
exception handling

exception parameter

fault-tolerant program

finally block

finally clause

getClassName method of classStackTraceElement

getFileName method of classStackTraceElement

getLineNumber method of classStackTraceElement

getMessage method of classThrowable

getMethodName method of classStackTraceElement

getStackTrace method of classThrowable

InputMismatchException class

postcondition

precondition

printStackTrace method of classThrowable

release a resource

resource leak

resumption model of exception handling

rethrowing an exception

RuntimeException class
stack trace

StackTraceElement class

stack unwinding

standard error stream

standard output stream

synchronous error

System.err stream

termination model of exception handling

throw an exception

throw keyword

throw point

throw statement

Throwable class

throws clause

try block

Try statement

Try...catch...finally exception-handling mechanism

uncaught exception

unchecked exceptions
Self-Review Exercises

13.1 List five common examples of exceptions.

13.2 Give several reasons why exception-handling techniques should not be used for conventional program control.

13.3 Why are exceptions particularly appropriate for dealing with errors produced by methods of classes in the Java API?

13.4 What is a "resource leak"?

13.5 If no exceptions are thrown in a try block, where does control proceed to when the try block completes execution?

13.6 Give a key advantage of using catch(Exception exceptionName).

13.7 Should a conventional application catch Error objects? Explain.

13.8 What happens if no catch handler matches the type of a thrown object?

13.9 What happens if several catch blocks match the type of the thrown object?

13.10 Why would a programmer specify a superclass type as the type in a catch block?

13.11 What is the key reason for using finally blocks?

13.12 What happens when a catch block throws an Exception?

13.13 What does the statement throw exceptionReference do?

13.14 What happens to a local reference in a try block when that block throws an Exception?
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

13.1 Memory exhaustion, array index out of bounds, arithmetic overflow, division by zero, invalid method parameters.

(a) Exception handling is designed to handle infrequently occurring situations that often result in program termination, not situations that arise all the time. (b) Flow of control with conventional control structures is generally clearer and more efficient than with exceptions. (c) The "additional" exceptions can get in the way of genuine error-type exceptions. It becomes more difficult for the programmer to keep track of the larger number of exception cases.

13.3 It is unlikely that methods of classes in the Java API could perform error processing that would meet the unique needs of all users.

13.4 A "resource leak" occurs when an executing program does not properly release a resource when it is no longer needed.

13.5 The catch blocks for that try statement are skipped, and the program resumes execution after the last catch block. If there is a finally block, it is executed first; then the program resumes execution after the finally block.

13.6 The form catch( Exception exceptionName ) catches any type of exception thrown in a try block. An advantage is that no thrown Exception can slip by without being caught. The programmer can then decide to handle the exception or possibly rethrow it.

13.7 Errors are usually serious problems with the underlying Java system; most programs will not want to catch Errors because the program will not be able to recover from such problems.

This causes the search for a match to continue in the next enclosing try statement. If there is a finally block, it will be executed before the exception goes to the next enclosing try statement. If there are no enclosing try statements for which there are matching catch blocks, and the exception is checked, a compilation error occurs. If there are no enclosing try statements for which there are matching catch blocks and the exception is unchecked, a stack trace is printed and the current thread terminates early.

13.9 The first matching catch block after the try block is executed.

13.10 This enables a program to catch related types of exceptions and process them in a uniform manner. However, it is often useful to process the subclass types individually for more precise exception handling.

13.11 The finally block is the preferred means for releasing resources to prevent resource leaks.

13.12 First, control passes to the finally block if there is one. Then the exception will be processed by a catch block (if one exists) associated with an enclosing try block (if one exists).
It rethrows the exception for processing by an exception handler of an enclosing `try` statement, after the `finally` block of the current `try` statement executes.

The reference goes out of scope, and the reference count for the object is decremented. If the reference count becomes zero, the object is marked for garbage collection.
Exercises

13.15 List the various exceptional conditions that have occurred in programs throughout this text so far. List as many additional exceptional conditions as you can. For each of these, describe briefly how a program typically would handle the exception by using the exception-handling techniques discussed in this chapter. Some typical exceptions are division by zero, arithmetic overflow, array index out of bounds, etc.

13.16 Until this chapter, we have found that dealing with errors detected by constructors is a bit awkward. Explain why exception handling is an effective means for dealing with constructor failure.

(Catching Exceptions with Superclasses) Use inheritance to create an exception superclass (called ExceptionA) and exception subclasses ExceptionB and ExceptionC, where ExceptionB inherits from ExceptionA and ExceptionC inherits from ExceptionB. Write a program to demonstrate that the catch block for type ExceptionA catches exceptions of types ExceptionB and ExceptionC.

(Catching Exceptions Using Class Exception) Write a program that demonstrates how various exceptions are caught with

```java
catch ( Exception exception )
```

13.17

This time, define classes ExceptionA (which inherits from class Exception) and ExceptionB (which inherits from class ExceptionA). In your program, create try blocks that throw exceptions of types ExceptionA, ExceptionB, NullPointerException and IOException. All exceptions should be caught with catch blocks specifying type Exception.

13.18 (Order of catch Blocks) Write a program that shows that the order of catch blocks is important. If you try to catch a superclass exception type before a subclass type, the compiler should generate errors.

(Constructor Failure) Write a program that shows a constructor passing information about constructor failure to an exception handler. Define class SomeException, which throws an Exception in the constructor. You program should try to create an object of type SomeException, and catch the exception that is thrown from the constructor.

(Rethrowing Exceptions) Write a program that illustrates rethrowing an exception. Define methods someMethod and someMethod2. Method someMethod2 should initially throw an exception. Method someMethod should call someMethod2, catch the exception and rethrow it. Call someMethod from method main, and catch the rethrown exception. Print the stack trace of this exception.

(Catching Exceptions Using Outer Scopes) Write a program showing that a method with its own Try block does not have to catch every possible error generated within the try. Some exceptions can slip through to, and be handled in, other scopes.
Chapter 14. Files and Streams

I can only assume that a "Do Not File" document is filed in a "Do Not File" file.

Senator Frank Church Senate Intelligence Subcommittee Hearing, 1975

Consciousness ... does not appear to itself chopped up in bits. ... A "river" or a "stream" are the metaphors by which it is most naturally described.

William James

I read part of it all the way through.

Samuel Goldwyn

A great memory does not make a philosopher, any more than a dictionary can be called grammar.

John Henry, Cardinal Newman

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- To create, read, write and update files.
- To use class File to retrieve information about files and directories.
- The Java input/output stream class hierarchy.
- The differences between text files and binary files.
- Sequential-access and random-access file processing.
- To use classes Scanner and Formatter to process text files.
- To use the FileInputStream and FileOutputStream classes.
To use a `JFileChooser` dialog.

To use the `ObjectInputStream` and `ObjectOutputStream` classes.

To use class `RandomAccessFile`.

Outline

14.1 Introduction
14.2 Data Hierarchy
14.3 Files and Streams
14.4 Class `File`
14.5 Sequential-Access Text Files
  14.5.1 Creating a Sequential-Access Text File
  14.5.2 Reading Data from a Sequential-Access Text File
  14.5.3 Case Study: A Credit-Inquiry Program
  14.5.4 Updating Sequential-Access Files
14.6 Object Serialization
  14.6.1 Creating a Sequential-Access File Using Object Serialization
  14.6.2 Reading and Deserializing Data from a Sequential-Access File
14.7 Random-Access Files
  14.7.1 Creating a Random-Access File
  14.7.2 Writing Data Randomly to a Random-Access File
14.7.3 Reading Data Sequentially from a Random-Access File

14.7.4 Case Study: A Transaction-Processing Program

14.8 Additional java.io Classes

14.9 Opening Files with JFileChooser

14.10 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
14.1. Introduction

Storage of data in variables and arrays is temporary—the data is lost when a local variable goes out of scope or when the program terminates. Computers use files for long-term retention of large amounts of data, even after the programs that created the data terminate. You use files every day for tasks such as writing an essay or creating a spreadsheet. We refer to data maintained in files as persistent data because it exists beyond the duration of program execution. Computers store files on secondary storage devices such as hard disks, optical disks and magnetic tapes. In this chapter, we explain how Java programs create, update and process data files.

File processing is one of the most important capabilities a language must have to support commercial applications, which typically store and process massive amounts of persistent data. In this chapter, we discuss Java's powerful file-processing and stream input/output features. The term "stream" refers to ordered data that is read from or written to a file. We discuss streams in more detail in Section 14.3. File processing is a subset of Java's stream-processing capabilities, which enable a program to read and write data in memory, in files and over network connections. We have two goals in this chapter to introduce file-processing concepts (making the reader more comfortable with using files programmatically) and to provide the reader with sufficient stream-processing capabilities to support the networking features introduced in Chapter 24, Networking. Java provides substantial stream-processing capabilities far more than we can cover in one chapter. We discuss three forms of file processing: text-file processing, object serialization and random-access file processing.
write objects to and read objects from files (known as object serialization and deserialization). To demonstrate this, we recreate some of the sequential-access programs that used text files, this time by storing objects in binary files. We then consider random-access files, which enable us to directly and quickly access specific portions of a file. Understanding random-access files provides a foundation for understanding databases, discussed in Chapter 25, Accessing Databases with JDBC.
14.2. Data Hierarchy

Ultimately, a computer processes all data items as combinations of zeros and ones, because it is simple and economical for engineers to build electronic devices that can assume two stable states—one representing 0 and the other representing 1. It is remarkable that the impressive functions performed by computers involve only the most fundamental manipulations of 0s and 1s.

The smallest data item in a computer can assume the value 0 or the value 1. Such a data item is called a bit (short for "binary digit"; a digit that can assume one of two values). Computer circuitry performs various simple bit manipulations, such as examining the value of a bit, setting the value of a bit and reversing the value of a bit (from 1 to 0 or from 0 to 1).

It is cumbersome for programmers to work with data in the low-level form of bits. Instead, programmers prefer to work with data in such forms as decimal digits (09), letters (AZ and az), and special symbols (e.g., $, @, %, &, *, (, ), , +, ", :, ? and /). Digits, letters and special symbols are known as characters. The computer's character set is the set of all the characters used to write programs and represent data items. Computers process only 1s and 0s, so a computer's character set represents every character as a pattern of 1s and 0s. Characters in Java are Unicode characters composed of two bytes, each composed of eight bits. Java contains a data type, byte, that can be used to represent byte data. The Unicode character set contains characters for many of the world's languages. See Appendix F for more information on this character set. See Appendix B, ASCII Character Set for more information on the ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) character set, a subset of the Unicode character set that represents uppercase and lowercase letters, digits and various common special characters.

Just as characters are composed of bits, fields are composed of characters or bytes. A field is a group of characters or bytes that conveys meaning. For example, a field consisting of uppercase and lowercase letters can be used to represent a person's name.

Data items processed by computers form a data hierarchy that becomes larger and more complex in structure as we progress from bits to characters to fields, and so on.
Typically, several fields compose a **record** (implemented as a **class** in Java). In a payroll system, for example, the record for an employee might consist of the following fields (possible types for these fields are shown in parentheses):

- Employee identification number (**int**)
- Name (**String**)
- Address (**String**)
- Hourly pay rate (**double**)
- Number of exemptions claimed (**int**)
- Year-to-date earnings (**int** or **double**)
- Amount of taxes withheld (**int** or **double**)

Thus, a record is a group of related fields. In the preceding example, all the fields belong to the same employee. Of course, a company might have many employees and thus have a payroll record for each employee. A **file** is a group of related records. [*Note: More generally, a file contains arbitrary data in arbitrary formats. In some operating systems, a file is viewed as nothing more than a collection of bytes any organization of the bytes in a file (e.g., organizing the data into records) is a view created by the applications programmer.*] A company's payroll file normally contains one record for each employee. Thus, a payroll file for a small company might contain only 22 records, whereas one for a large company might contain 100,000 records. It is not unusual for a company to have many files, some containing billions, or even trillions, of characters of information. **Figure 14.1** illustrates a portion of the data hierarchy.

**Figure 14.1. Data hierarchy.**
(This item is displayed on page 676 in the print version)

[View full size image]
To facilitate the retrieval of specific records from a file, at least one field in each record is chosen as a **record key**. A record key identifies a record as belonging to a particular person or entity and is unique to each record. This field typically is used to search and sort records. In the payroll record described previously, the employee identification number normally would be chosen as the record key.

There are many ways to organize records in a file. The most common is called a **sequential file**, in which records are stored in order by the record-key field. In a payroll file, records are placed in ascending order by employee identification number.

Most businesses store data in many different files. For example, companies might have payroll files, accounts receivable files (listing money due from clients), accounts payable files (listing money due to suppliers), inventory files (listing facts about all the items handled by the business) and many others. Often, a group of related files is called a **database**. A collection of programs designed to create and manage databases is called a **database management system** (DBMS). We discuss this topic in Chapter 25, Accessing Databases with JDBC.
14.3. Files and Streams

Java views each file as a sequential stream of bytes (Fig. 14.2). Every operating system provides a mechanism to determine the end of a file, such as an end-of-file marker or a count of the total bytes in the file that is recorded in a system-maintained administrative data structure. A Java program processing a stream of bytes simply receives an indication from the operating system when the program reaches the end of the stream—the program does not need to know how the underlying platform represents files or streams. In some cases, the end-of-file indication occurs as an exception. In other cases, the indication is a return value from a method invoked on a stream-processing object.

Figure 14.2. Java's view of a file of \( n \) bytes.

File streams can be used to input and output data as either characters or bytes. Streams that input and output bytes to files are known as byte-based streams, storing data in its binary format. Streams that input and output characters to files are known as character-based streams, storing data as a sequence of characters. For instance, if the value 5 were being stored using a byte-based stream, it would be stored in the binary format of the numeric value 5, or \( 00110101 \) (this is the binary for the numeric value 53, which indicates the character 5 in the Unicode character sets). The difference between the numeric value 5 and the character 5 is that the numeric value can be used as an integer, whereas the character 5 is simply a character that can be used in a string of text, as in "Sarah Miller is 15 years old". Files that are created using
byte-based streams are referred to as **binary files**, while files created using character-based streams are referred to as **text files**. Text files can be read by text editors, while binary files are read by a program that converts the data to a human-readable format.

A Java program **opens** a file by creating an object and associating a stream of bytes or characters with it. The classes used to create these objects are discussed shortly. Java can also associate streams with different devices. In fact, Java creates three stream objects that are associated with devices when a Java program begins executing `System.in`, `System.out` and `System.err`. Object `System.in` (the **standard input stream object**) normally enables a program to input bytes from the keyboard; object `System.out` (the **standard output stream object**) normally enables a program to output data to the screen; and object `System.err` (the **standard error stream object**) normally enables a program to output error messages to the screen. Each of these streams can be **redirected**. For `System.in`, this capability enables the program to read bytes from a different source. For `System.out` and `System.err`, this capability enables the output to be sent to a different location, such as a file on disk. Class `System` provides methods `setIn`, `setOut` and `setErr` to redirect the standard input, output and error streams, respectively.

Java programs perform file processing by using classes from package `java.io`. This package includes definitions for stream classes, such as `FileInputStream` (for byte-based input from a file), `FileOutputStream` (for byte-based output to a file), `FileReader` (for character-based input from a file) and `FileWriter` (for character-based output to a file). Files are opened by creating objects of these stream classes, which inherit from classes `InputStream`, `OutputStream`, `Reader` and `Writer`, respectively (these classes will be discussed later in this chapter). Thus, the methods of these stream classes can all be applied to file streams as well.

Java contains classes that enable the programmer to perform input and output of objects or variables of primitive data types. The data will still be stored as bytes or characters behind the scenes, allowing the programmer to read or write data in the form of integers, strings, or other data types without having to worry about the details of converting such values to byte-format. To perform such input and output, objects of classes `ObjectInputStream` and `ObjectOutputStream` can be used together with the byte-based file stream classes `FileInputStream` and `FileOutputStream` (these classes will be discussed in more detail shortly). The complete hierarchy of classes in package `java.io` can be viewed in the online documentation at
Each indentation level in the hierarchy indicates that the indented class extends the class under which it is indented. For example, class InputStream is a subclass of Object. Click a class's name in the hierarchy to view the details of the class.

As you can see in the hierarchy, Java offers many classes for performing input/output operations. We use several of these classes in this chapter to implement file-processing programs that create and manipulate sequential-access files and random-access files (discussed in Section 14.7). We also include a detailed example on class File, which is useful for obtaining information about files and directories. In Chapter 24, Networking, we use stream classes extensively to implement networking applications. Several other classes in the java.io package that we do not use in this chapter are discussed briefly in Section 14.8.

In addition to the classes in this package, character-based input and output can be performed with classes Scanner and Formatter. Class Scanner is used extensively to input data from the keyboard. As we will see, this class can also read data from a file. Class Formatter enables formatted data to be output to the screen or to a file in a manner similar to System.out.printf. Chapter 28, Formatted Output, presents the details of formatted output with System.out.printf. All these features can be used to format text files as well.
14.4. Class File

This section presents class `File`, which is particularly useful for retrieving information about files or directories from disk. Objects of class `File` do not open files or provide any file-processing capabilities. However, `File` objects are used frequently with objects of other `java.io` classes to specify files or directories to manipulate.

Creating File Objects

Class `File` provides four constructors. The constructor

```
public File( String name )
```

specifies the `name` of a file or directory to associate with the `File` object. The `name` can contain `path information` as well as a file or directory name. A file or directory's path specifies its location on disk. The path includes some or all of the directories leading to the file or directory. An `absolute path` contains all the directories, starting with the `root directory`, that lead to a specific file or directory. Every file or directory on a particular disk drive has the same root directory in its path. A `relative path` normally starts from the directory in which the application began executing, and is therefore a path that is "relative" to the current directory.

The constructor

```
public File( String pathToName, String name )
```

uses argument `pathToName` (an absolute or relative path) to locate the file or directory specified by `name`.

The constructor

```
public File( File directory, String name )
```
uses an existing File object directory (an absolute or relative path) to locate the file or directory specified by name. Figure 14.3 lists some common File methods. The complete list can be viewed at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/io/File.html.

**Figure 14.3. File methods.**
(This item is displayed on page 679 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boolean canRead()</td>
<td>Returns true if a file is readable by the current application; false otherwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean canWrite()</td>
<td>Returns true if a file is writable by the current application; false otherwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean exists()</td>
<td>Returns true if the name specified as the argument to the File constructor is a file or directory in the specified path; false otherwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean isFile()</td>
<td>Returns true if the name specified as the argument to the File constructor is a file; false otherwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean isDirectory()</td>
<td>Returns true if the name specified as the argument to the File constructor is a directory; false otherwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean isAbsolute()</td>
<td>Returns true if the arguments specified to the File constructor indicate an absolute path to a file or directory; false otherwise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String getAbsolutePath()</td>
<td>Returns a string with the absolute path of the file or directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String getName()</td>
<td>Returns a string with the name of the file or directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String getPath()</td>
<td>Returns a string with the path of the file or directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String getParent()</td>
<td>Returns a string with the parent directory of the file or directory (i.e., the directory in which the file or directory can be found).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long length()</td>
<td>Returns the length of the file, in bytes. If the File object represents a directory, 0 is returned.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| long lastModified()  | Returns a platform-dependent representation of the time at which the file or directory was last modified. The value returned is useful only for comparison with other
The constructor

```java
public File( URI uri )
```

uses the given URI object to locate the file. A Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) is a more general form of the Uniform Resource Locators (URLs) that are used to locate Web sites. For example, `http://www.deitel.com/` is the URL for the Deitel & Associates' Web site. URIs for locating files vary across operating systems. On Windows platforms, the URI

```
file:/C:/data.txt
```

identifies the file `data.txt` stored in the root directory of the C: drive. On UNIX/Linux platforms, the URI

```
file:/home/student/data.txt
```

identifies the file `data.txt` stored in the home directory of the user `student`.

---

Error-Prevention Tip 14.1

Use `File` method `isFile` to determine whether a `File` object represents a file (not a directory) before attempting to open the file.
Demonstrating Class **File**

**Figure 14.4** demonstrates class **File**. The application prompts the user to enter a file name or directory name, then outputs information about the file name or directory name input.

**Figure 14.4.** **File** class used to obtain file and directory information.

```java
// Fig. 14.4: FileDemonstration.java
// Demonstrating the File class.
import java.io.File;
public class FileDemonstration {
    // display information about file user specifies
    public void analyzePath( String path ) {
        // create File object based on user input
        File name = new File( path );

        if ( name.exists() ) // if name exists, output information about it
            { // display file (or directory) information
                System.out.printf("%s %s
%s
%s
%s
%s%s
%s%s
%s%s
%s%s", name.getName(), " exists", ( name.isFile() ? "is a file" : "is not a file" ),
                ( name.isDirectory() ? "is a directory" :
                    "is not a directory" ),
                ( name.isAbsolute() ? "is absolute path" :
                    "is not absolute path" ), "Last modified: ",
                name.lastModified(), " Length: ", name.length(),
                "Path: ", name.getPath(), "Absolute path: ",
                name.getAbsolutePath(), "Parent: ", name.getParent() );

                if ( name.isDirectory() ) // output directory listing
                    { // end else
                        String directory[] = name.list();
                        System.out.println("\n\nDirectory contents:\n");

                        for ( String directoryName : directory )
                            System.out.printf("%s\n", directoryName );
                        // end else
                    } // end outer if
            } else // not file or directory, output error message
            { // end outer if
                System.out.printf("%s %s", path, "does not exist." );
            }
```

Figure 14.5. Testing class **FileDemonstration**.
(This item is displayed on page 681 in the print version)
The program begins by prompting the user for a file or directory (line 12 of Fig. 14.5). Line 13 inputs the file name or directory name and passes it to method `analyzePath` (lines 841 of Fig. 14.4). The method creates a new `File` object (line 11) and assigns its reference to `name`. Line 13 invokes `File` method `exists` to determine whether the name input by the user exists (either as a file or as a directory) on the disk. If the name input by the user does not exist, control proceeds to lines 3740 and displays a message to the screen containing the name the user typed, followed by "does not exist." Otherwise, the body of the `if` statement (lines 1336) executes. The program outputs the name of the file or directory (line 18), followed by the results of testing the `File` object with `isFile` (line 19), `isDirectory` (line 20) and `isAbsolute` (line 22). Next, the program displays the values returned by `lastModified` (line 24), `length` (line 24), `getPath` (line 25), `getAbsolutePath` (line 26) and `getParent` (line 26). If the `File` object represents a directory (line 28), the program obtains a list of the directory's contents as an array of `Strings` by using `File` method `list` (line 30) and displays the list on the screen.

The first output of this program demonstrates a `File` object associated with the `jfc` directory from the Java 2 Software Development Kit. The second output
demonstrates a `File` object associated with the `readme.txt` file from the Java 2D example that comes with the Java 2 Software Development Kit. In both cases, we specified an absolute path on our personal computer.

A **separator character** is used to separate directories and files in the path. On a Windows computer, the separator character is a backslash (`\`) character. On a UNIX workstation, it is a forward slash (`/`) character. Java processes both characters identically in a path name. For example, if we were to use the path

```
c:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.5.0\demo\jfc
```

which employs each separator character, Java still processes the path properly. When building strings that represent path information, use `File.pathSeparator` to obtain the local computer's proper separator character rather than explicitly using `/` or `\`. This constant returns a `String` consisting of one character—the proper separator for the system.

**Common Programming Error 14.1**

> Using `\` as a directory separator rather than `\` in a string literal is a logic error. A single `\` indicates that the `\` followed by the next character represents an escape sequence. Use `\` to insert a `\` in a string literal.
14.5. Sequential-Access Text Files

In this section, we create and manipulate sequential-access files. As mentioned earlier, these are files in which records are stored in order by the record-key field. We first demonstrate sequential-access files using text files, allowing the reader to quickly create and edit human-readable files. In the subsections of this chapter we discuss creating, writing data to, reading data from and updating sequential-access text files. We also include a credit-inquiry program that retrieves specific data from a file.

14.5.1. Creating a Sequential-Access Text File

Java imposes no structure on a file; notions such as a record do not exist as part of the Java language. Therefore, the programmer must structure files to meet the requirements of the intended application. In the following example, we see how to impose a record structure on a file.

The program in Fig. 14.6 Fig. 14.7 and Fig. 14.9 creates a simple sequential-access file that might be used in an accounts receivable system to help keep track of the amounts owed to a company by its credit clients. For each client, the program obtains from the user an account number, the client's name and the client's balance (i.e., the amount the client owes the company for goods and services received). The data obtained for each client constitutes a "record" for that client. The account number is used as the record key in this application; the file will be created and maintained in account number order. The program assumes that the user enters the records in account number order. In a comprehensive accounts receivable system (based on sequential-access files), a sorting capability would be provided so that the user could enter the records in any order. The records would then be sorted and written to the file.

Figure 14.6. AccountRecord maintains information for one account.

(This item is displayed on pages 683 - 684 in the print version)
public class AccountRecord
{
    private int account;
    private String firstName;
    private String lastName;
    private double balance;

    // no-argument constructor calls other constructor with default values
    public AccountRecord()
    {
        this ( 0, "", "", 0.0 ); // call four-argument constructor
    } // end no-argument AccountRecord constructor

    // initialize a record
    public AccountRecord( int acct, String first, String last, double bal )
    {  
        setAccount( acct );
        setFirstName( first );
        setLastName( last );
        setBalance( bal );
    } // end four-argument AccountRecord constructor

    // set account number
    public void setAccount( int acct )
    {
        account = acct;
    } // end method setAccount

    // get account number
    public int getAccount()
    {
        return account;
    } // end method getAccount

    // set first name
    public void setFirstName( String first )
    {
        firstName = first;
    } // end method setFirstName

    // get first name
    public String getFirstName()
    {
        return firstName;
    } // end method getFirstName

    // set last name
    public void setLastName( String last )
    {
        lastName = last;
    } // end method setLastName

    // get last name
    public String getLastName()
    {
        return lastName;
    } // end method getLastName
public class CreateTextFile {

    private Formatter output; // object used to output text to file

    // enable user to open file
    public void openFile() {
        try {
            output = new Formatter("clients.txt");
        } // end try
        catch (SecurityException securityException) {
            System.err.println("You do not have write access to this file.");
            System.exit(1);
        } // end catch
        catch (FileNotFoundException filesNotFoundException) {
            System.err.println("Error creating file.");
            System.exit(1);
        } // end catch
    } // end method openFile

    // add records to file
    public void addRecords() {
        // code to add records to file
    } // end method addRecords

    // close file
    public void closeFile() {
        // code to close file
    } // end method closeFile

    // close file and exit program
    public void closeAndExit() {
        closeFile();
        System.exit(0);
    } // end method closeAndExit

} // end class CreateTextFile

Figure 14.7. Creating a sequential text file.
(This item is displayed on pages 686 - 687 in the print version)
AccountRecord record = new AccountRecord();

Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);

System.out.printf("%s\n%s\n%s\n%s\n", "To terminate input, type the end-of-file indicator ", "when you are prompted to enter input.", "On UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X type <ctrl> d then press Enter", "On Windows type <ctrl> z then press Enter");

System.out.printf("%s\n", "Enter account number (> 0), first name, last name and balance.", "?");

while (input.hasNext()) // loop until end-of-file indicator
{
    try // output values to file
    {
        // retrieve data to be output
        record.setAccount(input.nextInt()); // read account number
        record.setFirstName(input.next()); // read first name
        record.setLastName(input.next()); // read last name
        record.setBalance(input.nextDouble()); // read balance

        if (record.getAccount() > 0)
        {
            // write new record
            output.format("%d %s %s %.2f\n", record.getAccount(), record.getFirstName(), record.getLastName(), record.getBalance());
        } // end if
        else
        {
            System.out.println("Account number must be greater than 0.");
        } // end else
    } // end try
    catch (FormatterClosedException formatterClosedException)
    {
        System.err.println("Error writing to file.");
        return;
    } // end catch
    catch (NoSuchElementException elementException)
    {
        System.err.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
        input.nextLine(); // discard input so user can try again
    } // end catch

    System.out.printf("%s %s\n%s", "Enter account number (>0),", "first name, last name and balance.", "?");
} // end while
} // end method addRecords

public void closeFile()
{
    if (output != null)
    {
        output.close();
    } // end method closeFile
Class **AccountRecord** (**Fig. 14.6**) encapsulates the client record information (i.e., account, first name, etc.) used by the examples in this chapter. The class **AccountRecord** is declared in package `com.deitel.jhtp6.ch14` (line 3), so that it can be imported into several examples. Class **AccountRecord** contains private data members `account`, `firstName`, `lastName` and `balance` (lines 710). This class also provides public `set` and `get` methods for accessing the private fields.

Compile class **AccountRecord** as follows:

```bash
javac -d c:\examples\ch14 com\deitel\jhtp6\ch14\AccountRecord.java
```

This places `AccountRecord.class` in its package directory structure and places the package in `c:\examples\ch14`. When you compile class **AccountRecord** (or any other classes that will be reused in this chapter), you should place them in a common directory (e.g., `c:\examples\ch14`). When you compile or execute classes that use **AccountRecord** (e.g., **CreateTextFile** in **Fig. 14.7**), you must specify the command-line argument `-classpath` to both `javac` and `java`, as in

```bash
javac -classpath .;c:\examples\ch14 CreateTextFile.java
java -classpath .;c:\examples\ch14 CreateTextFile
```

Note that the current directory (specified with `.`) is included in the classpath. This ensures that the compiler can locate other classes in the same directory as the class being compiled. The path separator used in the preceding commands should be the one that is appropriate for your platform for example, a semicolon (`;`) on Windows and a colon (`:`) on UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X.

Now let us examine class **CreateTextFile** (**Fig. 14.7**). Line 14 declares **Formatter** variable `output`. As discussed in Section 14.3, a **Formatter** object outputs formatted strings, using the same formatting capabilities as method...
A `Formatter` object can output to various locations, such as the screen or a file, as is done here. The `Formatter` object is instantiated in line 21 in method `openFile` (lines 1734). The constructor used in line 21 takes one argument a `String` containing the name of the file, including its path. If a path is not specified, as is the case here, the JVM assumes that the file is in the directory from which the program was executed. For text files, we use the `.txt` file extension. If the file does not exist, it will be created. If an existing file is opened, the contents of the file are truncated all the data in the file is discarded. At this point the file is open for writing, and the resulting `Formatter` object can be used to write data to the file. Lines 2328 handle the `SecurityException`, which occurs if the user does not have permission to write data to the file. Lines 2933 handle the `FileNotFoundException`, which occurs if the file does not exist and a new file cannot be created. This exception may also occur if there is an error opening the file. Note that in both exception handlers, we call `static` method `System.exit`, and pass the value `1`. This method terminates the application. An argument of `0` to method `exit` indicates successful program termination. A nonzero value, such as `1` in this example, normally indicates that an error has occurred. This value is passed to the command window that executed the program. The argument is useful if the program is executed from a `batch file` on Windows systems or a `shell script` on UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X systems. Batch files and shell scripts offer a convenient way of executing several programs in sequence. When the first program ends, the next program begins execution. It is possible to use the argument to method `exit` in a batch file or shell script to determine whether other programs should execute. For more information on batch files or shell scripts, see your operating system's documentation.

Method `addRecords` (lines 3791) prompts the user to enter the various fields for each record or to enter the end-of-file key sequence when data entry is complete. **Figure 14.8** lists the key combinations for entering end-of-file for various computer systems.

**Figure 14.8. End-of-file key combinations for various popular operating systems.**
(This item is displayed on page 688 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating system</th>
<th>Key combination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X</td>
<td><code>&lt;return&gt; &lt;ctrl&gt; d</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td><code>&lt;ctrl&gt; z</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Line 40 creates an `AccountRecord` object, which will be used to store the values of the current record entered by the user. Line 42 creates a `Scanner` object to read input from the user at the keyboard. Lines 44-48 and 50-52 prompt the user for input.

Line 54 uses `Scanner` method `hasNext` to determine whether the end-of-file key combination has been entered. The loop executes until `hasNext` encounters the end-of-file indicators.

Lines 59-62 read data from the user, storing the record information in the `AccountRecord` object. Each statement throws a `NoSuchElementException` (handled in lines 82-86) if the data is in the wrong format (e.g., a string when an `int` is expected) or if there is no more data to input. If the account number is greater than 0 (line 64), the record's information is written to `clients.txt` (lines 67-69) using method `format`. This method can perform identical formatting to the `System.out.printf` method used extensively in earlier chapters. This method outputs a formatted string to the output destination of the `Formatter` object, in this case the file `clients.txt`. The format string "%d %s %s %.2f\n" indicates that the current record will be stored as an integer (the account number) followed by a string (the first name), another string (the last name) and a floating-point value (the balance). Each piece of information is separated from the next by a space and the double value (the balance) is output with two digits to the right of the decimal point. The data in the text file can be viewed with a text editor, or retrieved later by a program designed to read the file (Section 14.5.2). When lines 67-69 execute, if the `Formatter` object is closed, a `FormatterClosedException` will be thrown (handled in lines 77-81). [Note: You can also output data to a text file using class `java.io.PrintWriter`, which also provides method `format` for outputting formatted data.]

Lines 94-98 declare method `closeFile`, which closes the `Formatter` and the underlying output file. Line 97 closes the object by simply calling method `close`. If method `close` is not called explicitly, the operating system normally will close the file when program execution terminates. This is an example of operating system "housekeeping."
Figure 14.9 runs the program. Line 8 creates a `CreateTextFile` object, which is then used to open, add records to and close the file (lines 10-12). The sample data for this application is shown in Fig. 14.10. In the sample execution for this program, the user enters information for five accounts, then enters end-of-file to signal that data entry is complete. The sample execution does not show how the data records actually appear in the file. In the next section to verify that the file has been created successfully, we present a program that reads the file and prints its contents. Because this is a text file, you can also verify the information by opening the file in a text editor.

**Figure 14.9. Testing the `CreateTextFile` class.**

(This item is displayed on page 689 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 14.9: CreateTextFileTest.java
// Testing the CreateTextFile class.

public class CreateTextFileTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        CreateTextFile application = new CreateTextFile();

        application.openFile();
        application.addRecords();
        application.closeFile();
    } // end main
} // end class CreateTextFileTest
```

To terminate input, type the end-of-file indicator when you are prompted to enter input.
On UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X type <ctrl> d then press Enter
On Windows type <ctrl> z then press Enter

Enter account number (> 0), first name, last name and balance.?
100 Bob Jones 24.98
Enter account number (> 0), first name, last name and balance.?
200 Steve Doe -345.67
Enter account number (> 0), first name, last name and balance.?
300 Pam White 0.00
Enter account number (> 0), first name, last name and balance.?
400 Sam Stone -42.16
Enter account number (> 0), first name, last name and balance.?
500 Sue Rich 224.62
Enter account number (> 0), first name, last name and balance.?
^Z
14.5.2. Reading Data from a Sequential-Access Text File

Data is stored in files so that it may be retrieved for processing when needed. Section 14.5.1 demonstrated how to create a file for sequential access. This section shows how to read data sequentially from a text file. In this section, we demonstrate how class `Scanner` can be used to input data from a file rather than the keyboard.

The application in Fig. 14.11 and Fig. 14.12 reads records from the file "clients. txt" created by the application of Section 14.5.1 and displays the record contents. Line 13 of Fig. 14.11 declares a `Scanner` that will be used to retrieve input from the file.

Figure 14.10. Sample data for the program in Fig. 14.7.

(This item is displayed on page 689 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 14.11. Sequential file reading using a `Scanner`.

(This item is displayed on pages 690 - 691 in the print version)
import java.io.File;  
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;  
import java.lang.IllegalStateException;  
import java.util.NoSuchElementException;  
import java.util.Scanner;  

public class ReadTextFile  
{  
    private Scanner input;  
    
    // enable user to open file  
    public void openFile()  
    {  
        try  
        {  
            input = new Scanner( new File( "clients.txt" ) );  
        } // end try  
        catch ( FileNotFoundException fileNotFoundException )  
        {  
            System.err.println( "Error opening file." );  
            System.exit( 1 );  
        } // end catch  
    } // end method openFile  

    // read record from file  
    public void readRecords()  
    {  
        // object to be written to screen  
        AccountRecord record = new AccountRecord();  

        System.out.printf( "%-10s%-12s%-12s%10s\n",  
                          "Account",  
                          "First Name",  
                          "Last Name",  
                          "Balance" );  

        try // read records from file using Scanner object  
            {  
                while ( input.hasNext() )  
                {  
                    record.setAccount( input.nextInt() ); // read account number  
                    record.setFirstName( input.next() ); // read first name  
                    record.setLastName( input.next() ); // read last name  
                    record.setBalance( input.nextDouble() ); // read balance  

                    System.out.printf( "%-10d%-12s%-12s%10.2f\n",  
                                        record.getAccount(),  
                                        record.getFirstName(),  
                                        record.getLastName(),  
                                        record.getBalance() );  
                } // end while  
            } // end try  
        catch ( NoSuchElementException elementException )  
        {  
            System.err.println( "File improperly formed." );  
            input.close();  
            System.exit( 1 );  
        } // end catch  
        catch ( IllegalStateException stateException )  
        {  
            System.err.println( "Error reading from file." );  
        }
Method `openFile` (lines 1627) opens the file for reading by instantiating a `Scanner` object in line 20. We pass a `File` object to the constructor, which specifies that the `Scanner` object will read from the file "clients.txt" located in the directory
from which the application executes. If the file cannot be found, a `FileNotFoundException` occurs. The exception is handled in lines 2226.

Method `readRecords` (lines 3064) reads and displays records from the file. Line 33 creates an `AccountRecord` object `record` to store the current record's information. Lines 3536 display headers for the columns in the application's output. Lines 4051 read data from the file until the end-of-file marker is reached (in which case, method `hasNext` will return `false` at line 40). Lines 4245 use `Scanner` methods `nextInt`, `next` and `nextDouble` to input an integer (the account number), two strings (the first and last names) and a double value (the balance). Each record is one line of data in the file. The values are stored in object `record`. If the information in the file is not properly formed (e.g., there is a last name where there should be a balance), a `NoSuchElementException` occurs when the record is input. This exception is handled in lines 5358. If the `Scanner` was closed before the data was input, an `IllegalStateException` occurs (handled in lines 5963). If no exceptions occur, the record's information is displayed on the screen (lines 4850). Note in the format string in line 48 that the account number, first name and last name are left justified, while the balance is right justified and output with two digits of precision. Each iteration of the loop inputs one line of text from the text file, which represents one record.

Lines 6771 define method `closeFile`, which closes the `Scanner`. Method `main` is defined in `Fig. 14.12`, in lines 613. Line 8 creates a `ReadTextFile` object, which is then used to open, add records to and close the file (lines 1012).

### 14.5.3. Case Study: A Credit-Inquiry Program

To retrieve data sequentially from a file, programs normally start reading from the beginning of the file and read all the data consecutively until the desired information is found. It might be necessary to process the file sequentially several times (from the beginning of the file) during the execution of a program. Class `Scanner` does not provide the ability to reposition to the beginning of the file. If it is necessary to read the file again, the program must close the file and reopen it.
The program in Fig. 14.13 allows a credit manager to obtain lists of customers with zero balances (i.e., customers who do not owe any money), customers with credit balances (i.e., customers to whom the company owes money) and customers with debit balances (i.e., customers who owe the company money for goods and services received). A credit balance is a negative amount, and a debit balance is a positive amount.

**Figure 14.13. Enumeration for menu options.**

```java
public enum MenuOption {
    ZERO_BALANCE(1),
    CREDIT_BALANCE(2),
    DEBIT_BALANCE(3),
    END(4);

    private final int value; // current menu option

    MenuOption(int valueOption) {
        value = valueOption;
    }

    public int getValue() {
        return value;
    }
}
```

**Figure 14.14. Credit-inquiry program.**

(This item is displayed on pages 693 - 695 in the print version)

```java
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.lang.IllegalStateException;
import java.util.NoSuchElementException;
import java.util.Scanner;
```
public class CreditInquiry{
     private MenuOption accountType;
     private Scanner input;
     private MenuOption choices[] = { MenuOption.ZERO_BALANCE,
          MenuOption.CREDIT_BALANCE, MenuOption.DEBIT_BALANCE,
          MenuOption.END };;

     // read records from file and display only records of appropriate type
     private void readRecords()
     {
         // object to be written to file
         AccountRecord record = new AccountRecord();

         try // read records
         {
             // open file to read from beginning
             input = new Scanner( new File( "clients.txt" ) );

             while ( input.hasNext() ) // input the values from the file
             {
                 record.setAccount( input.nextInt() ); // read account number
                 record.setFirstName( input.next() ); // read first name
                 record.setLastName( input.next() ); // read last name
                 record.setBalance( input.nextDouble() ); // read balance

                 // if proper account type, display record
                 if ( shouldDisplay( record.getBalance() ) )
                     System.out.printf( "%-10d%-12s%-12s%10.2f
", record.getAccount(), record.getFirstName(), record.getLastName(), record.getBalance() );
             } // end while
         } // end try
         catch ( NoSuchElementException elementException )
         {
             System.err.println( "File improperly formed." );
             input.close();
             System.exit( 1 );
         } // end catch
         catch ( IllegalStateException stateException )
         {
             System.err.println( "Error reading from file." );
             System.exit( 1 );
         } // end catch
         catch ( FileNotFoundException fileNotFoundException )
         {
             System.err.println( "File cannot be found." );
             System.exit( 1 );
         } // end catch
         finally
         {
             if ( input != null )
                 input.close(); // close the Scanner and the file
         } // end finally
     } // end method readRecords

     // use record type to determine if record should be displayed
     private boolean shouldDisplay( double balance )
     {
         if ( ( accountType == MenuOption.CREDIT_BALANCE )


&& ( balance < 0 ) )
    return true;

else if ( ( accountType == MenuOption.DEBIT_BALANCE )
    && ( balance > 0 ) )
    return true;

else if ( ( accountType == MenuOption.ZERO_BALANCE )
    && ( balance == 0 ) )
    return true;

    return false;
} // end method shouldDisplay

// obtain request from user
private MenuOption getRequest()
{
    Scanner textIn = new Scanner( System.in );
    int request = 1;

    // display request options
    System.out.printf( "Enter request
    1 - List accounts with zero balances
    2 - List accounts with credit balances
    3 - List accounts with debit balances
    4 - End of run" );

    try // attempt to input menu choice
    {
        do // input user request
        {
            System.out.print( "? ");
            request = textIn.nextInt();
        } while ( ( request < 1 ) || ( request > 4 ) );
    } // end try
    catch ( NoSuchElementException elementException )
    {
        System.err.println( "Invalid input." );
        System.exit( 1 );
    } // end catch

    return choices[ request - 1 ]; // return enum value for option
} // end method getRequest

public void processRequests()
{
    // get user's request (e.g., zero, credit or debit balance)
    accountType = getRequest();

    while ( accountType != MenuOption.END )
    {
        switch ( accountType )
        {
            case ZERO_BALANCE:
                System.out.println( "Accounts with zero balances:" );
                break;
            case CREDIT_BALANCE:
                System.out.println( "Accounts with credit balances:" );
                break;
            case DEBIT_BALANCE:
                System.out.println( "Accounts with debit balances:" );
                break;
        }
    } // end while
} // end method processRequests
We begin by creating an `enum` type (**Fig. 14.13**) to define the different menu options the user will have. The options and their values are listed in lines 7-10. Method `getValue` (lines 19-22) retrieves the value of a specific `enum` constant.

**Figure 14.14** contains the functionality for the credit-inquiry program, and **Fig. 14.15** contains the `main` method that executes the program. The program displays a text menu and allows the credit manager to enter one of three options to obtain credit information. Option 1 (`ZERO_BALANCE`) produces a list of accounts with zero balances. Option 2 (`CREDIT_BALANCE`) produces a list of accounts with credit balances. Option 3 (`DEBIT_BALANCE`) produces a list of accounts with debit balances. Option 4 (`END`) terminates program execution. A sample output is shown in **Fig. 14.16**.
The record information is collected by reading through the entire file and determining whether each record satisfies the criteria for the account type selected by the credit manager. Method `processRequests` (lines 116139 of Fig. 14.14) calls method `getrequest` to display the menu options (line 119) and stores the result in `MenuOption` variable `accountType`. Note that `getrequest` translates the number typed by the user into a `MenuOption` by using the number
to select a `MenuOption` from array `choices`. Lines 121138 loop until the user specifies that the program should terminate. The `switch` statement in lines 123134 displays a header for the current set of records to be output to the screen. Line 136 calls method `readRecords` (lines 2267), which loops through the file and reads every record.

Line 30 of method `readRecords` opens the file for reading with a `Scanner`. Note that the file will be opened for reading with a new `Scanner` object each time this method is called, so that we can again read from the beginning of the file. Lines 3437 read a record. Line 40 calls method `shouldDisplay` (lines 7085) to determine whether the current record satisfies the account type requested. If `shouldDisplay` returns `TRUE`, the program displays the account information. When the end-of-file marker is reached, the loop terminates and line 65 calls the `Scanner`'s `close` method to close the `Scanner` and the file. Notice that this occurs in a `finally` block, which will execute whether or not the file was successfully read. Once all the records have been read, control returns to method `processRequests` and `get_request` is again called (line 137) to retrieve the user's next menu option. **Figure 14.15** contains method `main`, and calls method `processRequests` in line 9.

### 14.5.4. Updating Sequential-Access Files

The data in many sequential files cannot be modified without the risk of destroying other data in the file. For example, if the name "White" needed to be changed to "Worthington," the old name cannot simply be overwritten because the new name requires more space. The record for `White` was written to the file as

```
300 Pam White 0.00
```

If the record is rewritten beginning at the same location in the file using the new name, the record would be

```
300 Pam Worthington 0.00
```
The new record is larger (has more characters) than the original record. The characters beyond the second "o" in "Worthington" would overwrite the beginning of the next sequential record in the file. The problem here is that fields in a text file and hence records can vary in size. For example, 7, 14,117, 2074 and 27383 are all ints stored in the same number of bytes (4) internally, but they are different-sized fields when displayed on the screen or written to a file as text.

Therefore, records in a sequential-access file are not usually updated in place. Instead, the entire file is usually rewritten. To make the preceding name change, the records before 300 Pam White 0.00 in a sequential-access file would be copied to a new file, the new record (which can be of a different size than the one it replaces) would be written and the records after 300 Pam White 0.00 would be copied to the new file. It is uneconomical just to update one record, but reasonable if a substantial portion of the records needs to be updated.
14.6. Object Serialization

In Section 14.5, we demonstrated how to write the individual fields of an AccountRecord object into a file as text, and how to read those fields from a file and place their values into an AccountRecord object in memory. In the examples, AccountRecord was used to aggregate the information for one record. When the instance variables for an AccountRecord were output to a disk file, certain information was lost, such as the type of each value. For instance, if the value "3" were read from a file, there is no way to tell if the value came from an `int`, a `String` or a `double`. We have only data, not type information, on a disk. If the program that is going to read this data "knows" what object type the data corresponds to, then the data is simply read into objects of that type. For example, in Section 14.5.2, we know that we are inputting an `int` (the account number), followed by two `Strings` (the first and last name) and a `double` (the balance). We also know that these values are separated by spaces, with only one record on each line. Sometimes we will not know exactly how the data is stored in a file. In such cases, we would like to read or write an entire object from a file. Java provides such a mechanism, called **object serialization**. A so-called serialized object is an object represented as a sequence of bytes that includes the object's data as well as information about the object's type and the types of data stored in the object. After a serialized object has been written into a file, it can be read from the file and deserialized—that is, the type information and bytes that represent the object and its data can be used to recreate the object in memory.

Classes `ObjectInputStream` and `ObjectOutputStream`, which respectively implement the `ObjectInput` and `ObjectOutput` interfaces, enable entire objects to be read from or written to a stream (possibly a file). To use serialization with files, we initialize `ObjectInputStream` and `ObjectOutputStream` objects with stream objects that read from and write to file objects of classes `FileInputStream` and `FileOutputStream`, respectively. Initializing stream objects with other stream objects in this manner is sometimes called **wrapping** the new stream object being created wraps the stream object specified as a constructor argument. To wrap a `FileInputStream` in an `ObjectInputStream`, for instance, we pass the `FileInputStream` object to the `ObjectInputStream`'s constructor.

The `ObjectOutput` interface contains method **writeObject**, which takes an `Object`
that implements interface Serializable (discussed shortly) as an argument and writes its information to an OutputStream. Correspondingly, the ObjectInput interface contains method readObject, which reads and returns a reference to an Object from an InputStream. After an object has been read, its reference can be cast to the object's actual type. As you will see in Chapter 24, Networking, applications that communicate via a network, such as the Internet, can also transmit entire objects across the network.

In this section, we create and manipulate sequential-access files using object serialization. Object serialization is performed with byte-based streams, so the sequential files created and manipulated will be binary files. Recall that binary files cannot be viewed in standard text editors. For this reason, we write a separate application that knows how to read and display serialized objects.

14.6.1. Creating a Sequential-Access File Using Object Serialization

We begin by creating and writing serialized objects to a sequential-access file. In this section, we reuse much of the code from Section 14.5, so we focus only on the new features.

Defining the AccountRecordSerializable Class

Let us begin by modifying our AccountRecord class so that objects of this class can be serialized. Class AccountRecordSerializable (Fig. 14.17) implements interface Serializable (line 7), which allows objects of AccountRecordSerializable to be serialized and deserialized with ObjectOutputStream and ObjectInputStreams. Interface Serializable is a tagging interface. Such an interface contains no methods. A class that implements Serializable is tagged as being a Serializable object. This is important because an ObjectOutputStream will not output an object unless it is a Serializable object, which is the case for any object of a class that implements Serializable.

---

Figure 14.17. AccountRecordSerializable class for serializable objects.

(This item is displayed on pages 699 - 700 in the print version)
// Fig. 14.17: AccountRecordSerializable.java
// A class that represents one record of information.
package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch14; // packaged for reuse

import java.io.Serializable;

public class AccountRecordSerializable implements Serializable {

private int account;
private String firstName;
private String lastName;
private double balance;

// no-argument constructor calls other constructor with default values
public AccountRecordSerializable() {
    this (0, "", "", 0.0);
} // end no-argument AccountRecordSerializable constructor

// four-argument constructor initializes a record
public AccountRecordSerializable(int acct, String first, String last, double bal) {
    setAccount(acct);
    setFirstName(first);
    setLastName(last);
    setBalance(bal);
} // end four-argument AccountRecordSerializable constructor

// set account number
public void setAccount(int acct) {
    account = acct;
} // end method setAccount

// get account number
public int getAccount() {
    return account;
} // end method getAccount

// set first name
public void setFirstName(String first) {
    firstName = first;
} // end method setFirstName

// get first name
public String getFirstName() {
    return firstName;
} // end method getFirstName

// set last name
public void setLastName(String last) {
    lastName = last;
} // end method setLastName

// get last name

In a class that implements `Serializable`, the programmer must ensure that every instance variable of the class is a `Serializable` type. Any instance variable that is not serializable must be declared `transient` to indicate that it is not `Serializable` and should be ignored during the serialization process. By default, all primitive-type variables are serializable. For variables of reference types, you must check the definition of the class (and possibly its superclasses) to ensure that the type is `Serializable`. By default, array objects are serializable. However, if the array contains references to other objects, those objects may or may not be serializable.

Class `AccountRecordSerializable` contains private data members `account`, `firstName`, `lastName` and `balance`. This class also provides public `get` and `set` methods for accessing the private fields.

Now let us discuss the code that creates the sequential-access file (Fig. 14.18, Fig. 14.19). We concentrate only on new concepts here. As stated in Section 14.3, a program can open a file by creating an object of stream class `FileInputStream` or `FileOutputStream`. In this example, the file is to be opened for output, so the program creates a `FileOutputStream` (line 21 of Fig. 14.18). The string argument that is passed to the `FileOutputStream`'s constructor represents the name and path of the file to be opened. Existing files that are opened for output in this manner are truncated. Note that the `.ser` file extension is used—we use this file extension for binary files that contain serialized objects.
// Fig. 14.18: CreateSequentialFile.java
// Writing objects sequentially to a file with class ObjectOutputStream.
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.ObjectOutputStream;
import java.util.NoSuchElementException;
import java.util.Scanner;

public class CreateSequentialFile {
    private ObjectOutputStream output; // outputs data to file
    // allow user to specify file name
    public void openFile() {
        try // open file
        {
            output = new ObjectOutputStream(new FileOutputStream("clients.ser"));
        } // end try
        catch (IOException ioException) {
            System.err.println("Error opening file.");
        } // end catch
    } // end method openFile

    // add records to file
    public void addRecords() {
        AccountRecordSerializable record; // object to be written to file
        int accountNumber = 0; // account number for record object
        String firstName; // first name for record object
        String lastName; // last name for record object
        double balance; // balance for record object

        Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);

        System.out.printf("%s
%s
%s
%s

", "To terminate input, type the end-of-file indicator ", "when you are prompted to enter input.", "On UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X type <ctrl> d then press Enter", "On Windows type <ctrl> z then press Enter");

        System.out.printf("%s
%s", "Enter account number (> 0), first name, last name and balance.", "?");

        while (input.hasNext()) // loop until end-of-file indicator
        {
            try // output values to file
            {
                accountNumber = input.nextInt();
                firstName = input.next();
                lastName = input.next();
                balance = input.nextDouble();

                record = new AccountRecordSerializable(accountNumber, firstName, lastName, balance);
                output.writeObject(record);
            } // end try
            catch (IOException e) {
                System.err.println("Error writing to file.");
            } // end catch
        } // end while
    } // end method addRecords

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        CreateSequentialFile sequentialFile = new CreateSequentialFile();
        sequentialFile.openFile();
        sequentialFile.addRecords();
    }
} // end class CreateSequentialFile
accountNumber = input.nextInt(); // read account number
firstName = input.next(); // read first name
lastName = input.next(); // read last name
balance = input.nextDouble(); // read balance

if ( accountNumber > 0 )
{
    // create new record
    record = new AccountRecordSerializable( accountNumber, firstName, lastName, balance );
    output.writeObject( record ); // output record
} // end if
else
{
    System.out.println( "Account number must be greater than 0." );
} // end else
} // end try
catch ( IOException ioException )
{
    System.err.println( "Error writing to file." );
    return;
} // end catch
catch ( NoSuchElementException elementException )
{
    System.err.println( "Invalid input. Please try again." );
    input.nextLine(); // discard input so user can try again
} // end catch

System.out.printf( "%s %s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%s
%
Common Programming Error 14.2

It is a logic error to open an existing file for output when, in fact, the user wishes to preserve the file.
Class `FileOutputStream` provides methods for writing byte arrays and individual bytes to a file. In this program we wish to write objects to a file—a capability not provided by `FileOutputStream`. For this reason, we wrap a `FileOutputStream` in an `ObjectOutputStream` by passing the new `FileOutputStream` object to the `ObjectOutputStream`'s constructor (lines 2021). The `ObjectOutputStream` object uses the `FileOutputStream` object to write objects into the file. Lines 2021 might throw an `IOException` if a problem occurs while opening the file (e.g., when a file is opened for writing on a drive with insufficient space or when a read-only file is opened for writing). If so, the program displays an error message (lines 2326). If no exception occurs, the file is open and variable `output` can be used to write objects to the file.

This program assumes that data is input correctly and in the proper record-number order. Method `addRecords` (lines 3086) performs the write operation. Lines 6263 create an `AccountRecordSerializable` object from the data entered by the user. Line 64 calls `ObjectOutputStream` method `writeObject` to write the record object to the output file. Note that only one statement is required to write the entire object.

Method `closeFile` (lines 89101) closes the file. Method `closeFile` calls `ObjectOutputStream` method `close` on `output` to close both the `ObjectOutputStream` and its underlying `FileOutputStream` (line 94). Note that the call to method `close` is contained in a `try` block. Method `close` throws an `IOException` if the file cannot be closed properly. In this case, it is important to notify the user that the information in the file might be corrupted. When using wrapped streams, closing the outermost stream also closes the underlying file.

In the sample execution for the program in Fig. 14.19, we entered information for five accounts—the same information shown in Fig. 14.10. The program does not show how the data records actually appear in the file. Remember that now we are using binary files, which are not humanly readable. To verify that the file has been created successfully, the next section presents a program to read the file's contents.

14.6.2. Reading and Deserializing Data from a Sequential-Access File
As discussed in Section 14.5.2, data is stored in files so that it may be retrieved for processing when needed. The preceding section showed how to create a file for sequential access using object serialization. In this section, we discuss how to read serialized data sequentially from a file.

The program in Fig. 14.20Fig. 14.21 reads records from a file created by the program in Section 14.6.1 and displays the contents. The program opens the file for input by creating a FileInputStream object (line 21). The name of the file to open is specified as an argument to the FileInputStream constructor. In Fig. 14.18, we wrote objects to the file, using an ObjectOutputStream object. Data must be read from the file in the same format in which it was written. Therefore, we use an ObjectInputStream wrapped around a FileInputStream in this program (lines 20-21) If no exceptions occur when opening the file, variable input can be used to read objects from the file.

Figure 14.20. Sequential file read using an ObjectInputStream.
(This item is displayed on pages 704 - 705 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 14.20: ReadSequentialFile.java
// This program reads a file of objects sequentially
// and displays each record.
import java.io.EOFException;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.ObjectInputStream;

public class ReadSequentialFile {
    private ObjectInputStream input;
    // enable user to select file to open
    public void openFile() {
        try // open file
        {
            input = new ObjectInputStream(new FileInputStream("clients.ser"));
        } // end try
        catch (IOException ioException) {
            System.err.println("Error opening file. ");
        } // end catch
    } // end method openFile
    // read record from file
```
public void readRecords()
{
    AccountRecordSerializable record;
    System.out.printf("%-10s%-12s%-12s%10s\n", "Account", "First Name", "Last Name", "Balance");

    try // input the values from the file
    {
        while ( true )
        {
            record = ( AccountRecordSerializable ) input.readObject();

            // display record contents
            System.out.printf("%-10d%-12s%-12s%10.2f\n", record.getAccount(), record.getFirstName(), record.getLastName(), record.getBalance());
        }
        // end while
    } // end try
    catch ( EOFException endOfFileException )
    {
        return; // end of file was reached
    } // end catch
    catch ( ClassNotFoundException classNotFoundException )
    {
        System.err.println("Unable to create object."");
    } // end catch
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
        System.err.println("Error during read from file." );
    } // end catch
} // end method readRecords

// close file and terminate application
public void closeFile()
{
    try // close file and exit
    {
        if ( input != null )
            input.close();
    } // end try
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
        System.err.println("Error closing file." );
        System.exit(1);
    } // end catch
} // end method closeFile

Figure 14.21. Testing class ReadSequentialFile.
The program reads records from the file in method `readRecords` (lines 3060). Line 40 calls `ObjectInputStream` method `readObject` to read an `Object` from the file. To use `AccountRecordSerializable`-specific methods, we downcast the returned `Object` to type `AccountRecordSerializable`. Method `readObject` throws an `EOFException` (processed at lines 4851) if an attempt is made to read beyond the end of the file. Method `readObject` throws a `ClassNotFoundException` if the class for the object being read cannot be located. This might occur if the file is accessed on a computer that does not have the class. Figure 14.21 contains method `main` (lines 613), which opens the file, calls method `readRecords` and closes the file.
14.7. Random-Access Files

So far, we have seen how to create and manipulate sequential-access files. Sequential-access files are inappropriate for so-called **instant-access applications**, in which the desired information must be located immediately. Some popular instant-access applications are airline-reservation systems, banking systems, point-of-sale systems, automated teller machines (ATMs) and other kinds of **transaction-processing systems** that require rapid access to specific data. The bank at which you have your account may have hundreds of thousands, or even millions, of other customers, but when you use an ATM, the bank determines in seconds whether your account has sufficient funds for the transaction. This kind of instant access is possible with **random-access files** and with databases (**Chapter 25**). A program can access individual records of a random-access file directly (and quickly) without searching through other records. Random-access files are sometimes called **direct-access files**.

Recall from **Section 14.5** that Java does not impose structure on a file, so an application that wants to use random-access files must specify the format of those files. Several techniques can be used to create random-access files. Perhaps the simplest is to require that all the records in a file be of the same fixed length. Using fixed-length records makes it easy for a program to calculate (as a function of the record size and the record key) the exact location of any record relative to the beginning of the file. We soon see how this capability facilitates direct access to specific records, even in large files.

**Figure 14.22** illustrates Java's view of a random-access file composed of fixed-length records. (Each record in this figure is 100 bytes long.) A random-access file is like a railroad train with many cars: some empty, some with contents.
A program can insert data in a random-access file without destroying the other data in the file. Similarly, a program can update or delete data stored previously without rewriting the entire file. In the following sections, we explain how to create a random-access file, enter data, read the data both sequentially and randomly, update the data and delete the data.

### 14.7.1. Creating a Random-Access File

A `RandomAccessFile` is useful for direct-access applications. With a sequential-access file, each successive input/output request reads or writes the next consecutive set of data in the file. With a random-access file, each successive input/output request could be directed to any part of the file perhaps a section widely separated from the part referenced in the previous request. Direct-access applications provide rapid access to specific data items in large files, but users often have to wait for answers. In many instances, however, answers must be made available quickly, to prevent people from becoming impatient and taking their business elsewhere.

`RandomAccessFile` objects have all the capabilities of classes `FileInputStream` and `FileOutputStream`, as well as the capabilities described by interfaces `DataInput` and `DataOutput`. These interfaces provide methods for reading and writing primitive-type values, `byte` arrays and strings. When a program associates an object of class `RandomAccessFile` with a file, the program reads or writes data, beginning at the location in the file specified by the `file-position pointer` (the byte number of the next byte in the file to be read or written to), and manipulates all the data as primitive types. When writing an `int` value, four bytes are output to the file. When reading a `double` value, eight bytes are input from the file. The size of the types is guaranteed, because Java has fixed representations and sizes for all primitive types, regardless of the computing platform.
Random-access file-processing programs rarely write a single field to a file. Normally they write one object at a time, as we show in the upcoming examples. Consider the following problem:

Create a transaction-processing program capable of storing up to 100 fixed-length records for a company that can have up to 100 customers. Each record should consist of an account number (that will be used as the record key), a last name, a first name and a balance. The program should be able to update an account, insert a new account and delete an account.

The next several sections introduce the techniques necessary to create this credit-processing program. Figure 14.23 contains the RandomAccessAccountRecord class that is used by the next four programs for both reading records from and writing records to a file. Class RandomAccessAccountRecord inherits our AccountRecord implementation (Fig. 14.6), which includes private fields account, lastName, firstName and balance as well as set and get methods for each field. We could inherit from either AccountRecord or AccountRecordSerializable. We do not use object serialization when processing random-access files in this chapter, so we inherit from class AccountRecord. Note that the class is in package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch14.

Figure 14.23. RandomAccessAccountRecord class used in random-access file programs.

(This item is displayed on pages 708 - 709 in the print version)
public RandomAccessAccountRecord( int account, String firstName, String lastName, double balance )
{
    super( account, firstName, lastName, balance );
} // end four-argument RandomAccessAccountRecord constructor

public void read( RandomAccessFile file ) throws IOException
{
    setAccount( file.readInt() );
    setFirstName( readName( file ) );
    setLastName( readName( file ) );
    setBalance( file.readDouble() );
} // end method read

private String readName( RandomAccessFile file ) throws IOException
{
    char name[] = new char[15], temp;
    for ( int count = 0; count < name.length; count++ )
    {
        temp = file.readChar();
        name[ count ] = temp;
    } // end for
    return new String( name ).replace( '\0', ' ' );
} // end method readName

public void write( RandomAccessFile file ) throws IOException
{
    file.writeInt( getAccount() );
    writeName( file, getFirstName() );
    writeName( file, getLastName() );
    file.writeDouble( getBalance() );
} // end method write

private void writeName( RandomAccessFile file, String name )
throws IOException
{
    StringBuffer buffer = null;
    if ( name != null )
        buffer = new StringBuffer( name );
    else
        buffer = new StringBuffer( 15 );
    buffer.setLength( 15 );
    file.writeChars( buffer.toString() );
} // end method writeName

} // end class RandomAccessAccountRecord
Finally, this example also introduces class **StringBuffer**, a class that allows us to dynamically manipulate strings. Class **String** provides many capabilities for processing strings. However, **String** objects are immutable—their character contents cannot be changed after they are created. Class **StringBuffer** provides features for creating and manipulating dynamic string information—that is, modifiable strings. Every **StringBuffer** is capable of storing a number of characters specified by its capacity. If the capacity of a **StringBuffer** is exceeded, the capacity is expanded to accommodate the additional characters. We use class **StringBuffer** to specify the size of a person’s first or last name. We discuss class **StringBuffer** in more detail in Section 14.8, as well as in Chapter 29, Strings, Characters and Regular Expressions.

---

Line 10 declares the constant **SIZE** to represent the size, in bytes, of a record. A **RandomAccessAccountRecord** contains an **int** (4 bytes), two strings that we restrict to 15 characters each (30 bytes for the first name, 30 bytes for the last name) for this example and a **double** (8 bytes), for a total of 72 bytes.

Method **read** (lines 2632) reads one record from the **RandomAccessFile** specified as its argument. **RandomAccessFile** methods **readInt** (line 28) and **readDouble** (line 31) read the **account** and **balance**, respectively. Lines 2930 call utility method **readName** (lines 3546) twice to obtain the first and last names. Method **readName** reads 15 characters from the **RandomAccessFile** and returns a **String**. If a name is shorter than 15 characters, the extra characters have the default value ‘\0’, the default for a **char**. Swing GUI components, such as **JTextFields**, cannot display null-byte characters instead, they display them as rectangles. Line 45 solves this problem by using **String** method **replace** to replace null bytes with spaces. Although our program does not use a GUI, we added this capability for those who wish to reuse this class in a GUI program.

Method **write** (lines 4955) outputs one record to the **RandomAccessFile** specified as its argument. This method uses **RandomAccessFile** method **writeInt** to output the integer **account**, method **writeChars** (called from utility method **writeName** in line 69) to output the **firstName** and **lastName** character arrays, and method **writeDouble** to output the **double balance**. [Note: To ensure that all the records in the **RandomAccessFile** are the same size, we write exactly 15 characters for the first name and exactly 15 for the last name.] Method **writeName** (lines 5870) performs the write operations for the first and last names. Lines 6366 create a **StringBuffer** that is initialized with either the **name** specified as an argument or with 15 to specify the size of the **StringBuffer** if name is **null**. Line 68 sets the
number of characters in the `StringBuffer`. If a name is longer than 15 characters, it will be truncated to 15 characters. If a name is smaller than 15 characters it will be set to have 15 characters, with null characters (`'\0'`) to fill the extra space.

**Figure 14.24** illustrates the process of opening a random-access file and writing data to the disk. This program writes 100 blank `RandomAccessAccountRecords`. Each `RandomAccessAccountRecord` object contains `0` for the account number, `null` for the last name, `null` for the first name and `0.0` for the balance. The file is initialized to create the proper amount of "empty" space in which the account data will be stored and to enable us to determine in subsequent programs whether each record is empty or contains data.

**Figure 14.24. Random-access file created sequentially.**

(This item is displayed on page 711 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 14.24: CreateRandomFile.java
2 // Creates random-access file by writing 100 empty records to disk.
3 import java.io.IOException;
4 import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
6 public class CreateRandomFile
7 {
8     private static final int NUMBER_RECORDS = 100;
9     // enable user to select file to open
10     public void createFile()
11     {
12         RandomAccessFile file = null;
13         try // open file for reading and writing
14         {
15             file = new RandomAccessFile( "clients.dat", "rw" );
16             RandomAccessAccountRecord blankRecord =
17                 new RandomAccessAccountRecord();
18             // write 100 blank records
19             for ( int count = 0 ; count < NUMBER_RECORDS ; count++ )
20                 blankRecord.write( file );
21             // display message that file was created
22             System.out.println( "Created file clients.dat." );
23             System.exit( 0 ); // terminate program
24         } // end try
25         catch ( IOException ioException )
26         {
27             System.err.println( "Error processing file." );
28         }
29     }
30 }
31```

System.exit(1);

finally {
    try {
        if (file != null)
            file.close(); // close file
    } catch (IOException ioException) {
        System.err.println("Error closing file.");
        System.exit(1);
    }
}

try {
    if (file != null)
        file.close(); // close file
} catch (IOException ioException) {
    System.err.println("Error closing file.");
    System.exit(1);
}

} // end finally

} // end method createFile

} // end class CreateRandomFile

Figure 14.25. Testing class CreateRandomFile.
(This item is displayed on page 712 in the print version)

public class CreateRandomFileTest {
  
  public static void main(String args[]) {
    CreateRandomFile application = new CreateRandomFile();
    application.createFile();
  }

  } // end class CreateRandomFileTest

Created file clients.dat.

Line 19 of Fig. 14.24 attempts to open a RandomAccessFile for use in this program. The RandomAccessFile constructor accepts two arguments—the file name and the file-open mode. The file-open mode for a RandomAccessFile is either "r" (to open the file for reading) or "rw" (to open the file for reading and writing). Once again, we have used a new file extension (.dat). We use this file...
If an IOException occurs while opening the file, the program displays a message and terminates. If the file opens properly, lines 2526 invoke RandomAccessAccountRecord method write 100 times. This method causes the fields of object blankRecord to be written to the file associated with RandomAccessFile object file. Then line 43 closes the file. The code for closing the file is placed in it's own try statement if an attempt to close the file generates an IOException, this exception is caught in lines 4549. Figure 14.25 begins the execution of the program with method main (lines 610). Line 8 creates a CreateRandomFile object and line 9 calls its createFile method to create the file of 100 blank records.

14.7.2. Writing Data Randomly to a Random-Access File

The application in Fig. 14.26 writes data to a file that is opened with the "rw" mode (for reading and writing). It uses RandomAccessFile method seek to position to the exact location in the file at which a record of information is stored. Method seek sets the file-position pointer to a specific location in the file relative to the beginning of the file, and RandomAccessAccountRecord method write outputs the data at the current position in the file. The program assumes that the user does not enter duplicate account numbers.

Figure 14.26. Writing data to a random-access file.
(This item is displayed on pages 712 - 714 in the print version)

```java
1 import java.io.File;
2 import java.io.IOException;
3 import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
4 import java.util.NoSuchElementException;
5 import java.util.Scanner;
```

extension for binary files that do not use object serialization.
```java
12  public class WriteRandomFile
13  {
14      private RandomAccessFile output;
15
16      private static final int NUMBER_RECORDS = 100;
17
18      // enable user to choose file to open
19      public void openFile()
20      {
21          try // open file
22          {
23              output = new RandomAccessFile( "clients.dat", "rw" );
24          } // end try
25          catch ( IOException ioException )
26          {
27              System.err.println( "File does not exist." );
28          } // end catch
29      } // end method openFile
30
31      // close file and terminate application
32      public void closeFile()
33      {
34          try // close file and exit
35          {
36              if ( output != null )
37                  output.close();
38          } // end try
39          catch ( IOException ioException )
40          {
41              System.err.println( "Error closing file." );
42              System.exit( 1 );
43          } // end catch
44      } // end method closeFile
45
46      // add records to file
47      public void addRecords()
48      {
49          // object to be written to file
50          RandomAccessAccountRecord record = new RandomAccessAccountRecord();
51
52          int accountNumber = 0; // account number for AccountRecord object
53          String firstName; // first name for AccountRecord object
54          String lastName; // last name for AccountRecord object
55          double balance; // balance for AccountRecord object
56
57          Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );
58
59          System.out.printf( "%s\n%s\n%s\n\n", 
60          "To terminate input, type the end-of-file indicator ", 
61          "when you are prompted to enter input.", 
62          "On UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X type <ctrl> d then press Enter", 
63          "On Windows type <ctrl> z then press Enter" );
64
65          System.out.printf( "%s %s\n", "Enter account number (1-100),", 
66          "first name, last name and balance.", "? " );
67
68          while ( input.hasNext() ) // loop until end-of-file indicator
69          {
70              try // output values to file
71                  {
72                  accountNumber = input.nextInt(); // read account number
```
Figure 14.27. Testing class WriteRandomFile.
(This item is displayed on page 715 in the print version)
The user enters values for the account number, first name, last name and balance. After each record is entered, the program stores the data in a RandomAccessAccountRecord object record (lines 7982 of Figure 14.26) and calls record's write method to output the data (line 86).

Lines 8485 call RandomAccessFile method seek to position the file-position pointer for object output to the byte location calculated by \((\text{accountNumber} - 1) \times \text{RandomAccessAccountRecord. SIZE}\). Account numbers in this program are in the range 1-100. We subtract one from the account number when calculating the byte location of the record. Thus, for record one, the file-position pointer is set to byte zero of the file. For record 100, the file-position pointer is set to skip the first 99 records in the file.

[Page 715]

14.7.3. Reading Data Sequentially from a Random-Access File

In the preceding sections, we created a random-access file and wrote data to it. In this section, we develop a program (Fig. 14.28 Fig. 14.29) that opens a
RandomAccessFile for reading with the "r" file-open mode (line 19 of Fig. 14.28), reads through the file sequentially and displays only those records containing data. The program produces an additional benefit. See whether you can determine what it is we reveal it at the end of this section.

Figure 14.28. Reading data sequentially from a random-access file.

(This item is displayed on pages 716 - 717 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 14.28: ReadRandomFile.java
// This program reads a random-access file sequentially and
// displays the contents one record at a time in text fields.
import java.io.EOFException;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
public class ReadRandomFile
{
    private RandomAccessFile input;

    // enable user to select file to open
    public void openFile()
    {
        try // open file
        {
            input = new RandomAccessFile( "clients.dat", "r" );
        } // end try
        catch ( IOException ioException )
        {
            System.err.println( "File does not exist." );
        } // end catch
    } // end method openFile

    // read and display records
    public void readRecords()
    {
        RandomAccessAccountRecord record = new RandomAccessAccountRecord();
        System.out.printf( "%-10s%-15s%-15s%10s
", "Account", "First Name", "Last Name", "Balance" );

        try // read a record and display
        {
            while ( true )
            {
                do
                {
                    record.read( input );
                } while ( record.getAccount() == 0 );
            } // end do-...while
            System.out.printf( "%-10d%-12s%-12s%10.2f\n",
```


Figure 14.29. Testing class ReadRandomFile.
(This item is displayed on page 717 in the print version)
Good Programming Practice 14.1

Open a file with the “r” file-open mode for input if the contents should not be modified. This practice prevents unintentional modification of the file’s contents. This is another example of the principle of least privilege.

The program reads records by invoking method `readRecords` (lines 2859). This method invokes class `RandomAccessAccountRecord`'s read method (line 41) to read one record's data into `RandomAccessAccountRecord` object `record`. Method `readRecords` reads from the file using two loops. The outer loop, a `while` statement, loops until an attempt is made to read past the end of the file. The inner loop, a `do...while` statement, is used to read records until one is encountered with a nonzero account number (zero is the account number for empty records). At this point, the record is displayed. When all the records have been read, the file is closed and the program terminates. Figure 14.29 contains method `main` and begins the execution of the program. Lines 911 open the file, call method `readRecords` and close the file.

What about that additional benefit we promised? If you examine the output, you will notice that the records are displayed in sorted order (by account number)! This ordering is a simple consequence of the way we stored these records in the file, using direct-access techniques. Sorting with direct-access techniques is blazingly fast. The speed is achieved by making the file large enough to hold every possible record that might be created, which enables the
program to insert a record between other records without having to reorganize the file. This configuration, of course, means that the file could be sparsely occupied most of the time, a waste of storage. So this situation is another example of the space/time trade-off. By using large amounts of space, we are able to develop a much faster sorting algorithm.

14.7.4. Case Study: A Transaction-Processing Program

We now present a substantial transaction-processing program (Fig. 14.33Fig. 14.36), using a random-access file to achieve instant-access processing. The program maintains a bank's account information: it displays existing accounts, updates accounts, adds new accounts and deletes accounts. We assume that the program in Fig. 14.24Fig. 14.25 has been executed to create a file, and that the program in Fig. 14.26Fig. 14.27 has been executed to insert initial data. The techniques used in this example were presented in the earlier RandomAccessFile examples.

The program has five options. Option 1 displays a list of all the accounts in the file, using the same techniques as in the preceding section. Choosing option 1 displays the information in Fig. 14.30.

Figure 14.30. Transaction processor displaying records.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account</th>
<th>First Name</th>
<th>Last Name</th>
<th>Balance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Nancy</td>
<td>Brown</td>
<td>-24.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Stacey</td>
<td>Dunn</td>
<td>314.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Doug</td>
<td>Barker</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>Dave</td>
<td>Smith</td>
<td>258.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>Sam</td>
<td>Stone</td>
<td>34.98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Option 2 is used to update an account. The application will only update an existing record, so the function first checks to see whether the record specified by the user is empty. The record is read from the file, then the account number is compared to 0. If it is 0, the record contains no information, and a
message is printed stating that the record is empty. Then, the menu choices are displayed. If the record contains information, the record's current information is displayed first. The user is then prompted for a change in the balance (either a charge or a payment), and the updated record is displayed. A typical output for option 2 is shown in Fig. 14.31.

**Figure 14.31. Transaction processor updating a record.**
(This item is displayed on page 719 in the print version)

![Image of updated record]

Enter account to update (1 - 100): 37
37        Doug           Barker              0.00
Enter charge (+) or payment (-): +87.99
37        Doug           Barker             87.99

Option 3 is used to add a new account to the file. The user is prompted to enter information for a new record. If the user enters an account number for an existing account, an error message is displayed indicating that the record already contains information, and the menu choices are printed again. If the account number entered does not correspond to an existing record (and all the data entered is valid), the new record is created and stored in the file. This code for this option uses the same process to add a new account as does the program in Fig. 14.26 Fig. 14.27. A typical output for option 3 is shown in Fig. 14.32.

![Image of inserted record]

**Figure 14.32. Transaction processor inserting a record.**

Enter account number, first name, last name and balance.
(Account number must be 1 - 100)
? 22 Sarah Johnston 247.45
Option 4 is used to delete a record from the file. Deletion is accomplished by asking the user for the account number and reinitializing the record (i.e., writing a blank record in its place). If the account contains no information, deleteRecord displays an error message stating that the account does not exist. Option 5 terminates program execution. The program is shown in Fig. 14.36. Figure 14.33 defines the enum type for the user's options. The options are listed in lines 711.

Figure 14.33. Transaction processor's menu options.

```java
// Fig. 14.33: MenuOption.java
// Defines an enum type for the credit inquiry program's options.

public enum MenuOption {
    PRINT(1),
    UPDATE(2),
    NEW(3),
    DELETE(4),
    END(5);

    private final int value; // current menu option

    MenuOption(int valueOption) {
        value = valueOption;
    }

    public int getValue() {
        return value;
    }

} // end enum MenuOption
```

Class FileEditor (Fig. 14.34) declares methods for manipulating records in a random-access file. This class uses all the techniques shown in the earlier
Method `getRecord` (lines 3145) reads the record with the given account number and stores its information in a `RandomAccessAccountRecord` object. Method `updateRecord` (lines 4864) modifies the record with the given account number, as long as the account number corresponds to a non-empty record. Method `newRecord` (lines 6783) adds a new record to the file using the provided account number, first name, last name and balance. Method `deleteRecord` (lines 86100) deletes the record with the given account number from the file, provided that the specified account exists. Method `readRecords` (lines 103136) displays all the currently existing records in the file.

Figure 14.34. **FileEditor** class that encapsulates the file-processing capabilities required in **Fig. 14.35**. (This item is displayed on pages 720 - 722 in the print version)

```java
import java.io.EOFException;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.util.Scanner;

public class FileEditor {
    RandomAccessFile file; // reference to the file
    Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );

    // open the file
    public FileEditor( String fileName ) throws IOException {
        file = new RandomAccessFile( fileName, "rw" );
    } // end FileEditor constructor

    // close the file
    public void closeFile() throws IOException {
        if ( file != null )
            file.close();
    } // end method closeFile

    // get a record from the file
    public RandomAccessAccountRecord getRecord( int accountNumber )
        throws IllegalArgumentException, NumberFormatException, IOException {
        RandomAccessAccountRecord record = new RandomAccessAccountRecord();
        if ( accountNumber < 1 || accountNumber > 100 )
            throw new IllegalArgumentException( "Out of range" );
```
// seek appropriate record in file
file.seek( ( accountNumber - 1 ) * RandomAccessAccountRecord.SIZE );

record.read( file );

return record;
} // end method getRecord

// update record in file
public void updateRecord( int accountNumber, double transaction )
throws IllegalArgumentException, IOException
{
    RandomAccessAccountRecord record = getRecord( accountNumber );

    if ( record.getAccount() == 0 )
        throw new IllegalArgumentException( "Account does not exist" );

    // seek appropriate record in file
    file.seek( ( accountNumber - 1 ) * RandomAccessAccountRecord.SIZE );

    record = new RandomAccessAccountRecord( accountNumber,
                                           firstName, lastName, balance + transaction );

    record.write( file ); // write updated record to file
} // end method updateRecord

// add record to file
public void newRecord( int accountNumber, String firstName,
                        String lastName, double balance )
throws IllegalArgumentException, IOException
{
    RandomAccessAccountRecord record = getRecord( accountNumber );

    if ( record.getAccount() != 0 )
        throw new IllegalArgumentException( "Account already exists" );

    // seek appropriate record in file
    file.seek( ( accountNumber - 1 ) * RandomAccessAccountRecord.SIZE );

    record = new RandomAccessAccountRecord( accountNumber,
                                           firstName, lastName, balance );

    record.write( file ); // write record to file
} // end method newRecord

// delete record from file
public void deleteRecord( int accountNumber )
throws IllegalArgumentException, IOException
{
    RandomAccessAccountRecord record = getRecord( accountNumber );

    if ( record.getAccount() == 0 )
        throw new IllegalArgumentException( "Account does not exist" );

    // seek appropriate record in file
    file.seek( ( accountNumber - 1 ) * RandomAccessAccountRecord.SIZE );

    // create a blank record to write to the file
    record = new RandomAccessAccountRecord();
Class `transactionProcessor` (**Fig. 14.35**) displays the menu for the application and manages the interactions with the `FileEditor` object that is created in the `openFile` method (lines 2034).

**Figure 14.35. Transaction-processing program.**
(This item is displayed on pages 723 - 726 in the print version)
// A transaction processing program using random-access files.
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.NoSuchElementException;
import java.util.Scanner;

public class TransactionProcessor {
    private FileEditor dataFile;
    private RandomAccessAccountRecord record;
    private MenuOption choices[] = {
        MenuOption.PRINT,
        MenuOption.UPDATE,
        MenuOption.NEW,
        MenuOption.DELETE,
        MenuOption.END
    };

    private Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );

    // get the file name and open the file
    private boolean openFile() {
        try // attempt to open file
        {
            // call the helper method to open the file
            dataFile = new FileEditor( "clients.dat" );
        } // end try
        catch ( IOException ioException )
        {
            System.err.println( "Error opening file." );
            return false;
        } // end catch

        return true;
    } // end method openFile

    // close file and terminate application
    private void closeFile() {
        try // close file
        {
            dataFile.closeFile();
        } // end try
        catch ( IOException ioException )
        {
            System.err.println( "Error closing file." );
            System.exit( 1 );
        } // end catch
    } // end method closeFile

    // create, update or delete the record
    private void performAction( MenuOption action ) {
        int accountNumber = 0; // account number of record
        String firstName; // first name for account
        String lastName; // last name for account
        double balance; // account balance
        double transaction; // amount to change in balance

        try // attempt to manipulate files based on option selected
        {
            switch ( action ) // switch based on option selected
            {
            }
case PRINT:
    System.out.println();
    dataFile.readRecords();
    break;

case NEW:
    System.out.printf("\n%s\n%s\n%s","Enter account number"," first name, last name and balance","(Account number must be 1 - 100) ","? ");

    accountNumber = input.nextInt(); // read account number
    firstName = input.next(); // read first name
    lastName = input.next(); // read last name
    balance = input.nextDouble(); // read balance

    dataFile.newRecord( accountNumber, firstName, lastName, balance ); // create new record
    break;

case UPDATE:
    System.out.print("Enter account to update ( 1 - 100 ): ");
    accountNumber = input.nextInt();
    record = dataFile.getRecord( accountNumber );

    if ( record.getAccount() == 0 )
        System.out.println( "Account does not exist. ");
    else
        {
            // display record contents
            System.out.printf("%-10d%-12s%-12s%10.2f\n\n",record.getAccount(),record.getFirstName(),record.getLastName(),record.getBalance());

            System.out.print("Enter charge (+) or payment (-): ");
            transaction = input.nextDouble();
            dataFile.updateRecord( accountNumber, // update record
                                transaction );

            // retrieve updated record
            record = dataFile.getRecord( accountNumber );

            // display updated record
            System.out.printf("%-10d%-12s%-12s%10.2f\n",record.getAccount(),record.getFirstName(),record.getLastName(),record.getBalance());
        } // end else
    break;

case DELETE:
    System.out.print("Enter an account to delete (1 - 100): ");
    accountNumber = input.nextInt();

    dataFile.deleteRecord( accountNumber ); // delete record
    break;

default:
    System.out.println( "Invalid action." );
    break;

} // end switch

} // end try

catch ( NumberFormatException format )
```java
    { System.err.println( "Bad input." ); } // end catch
    catch ( IllegalArgumentException badAccount )
    { System.err.println( badAccount.getMessage() ); } // end catch
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    { System.err.println( "Error writing to the file." ); } // end catch
    catch ( NoSuchElementException elementException )
    { System.err.println( "Invalid input. Please try again." );
      input.nextLine(); // discard input so user can try again
    } // end catch
  } // end method performAction

  // enable user to input menu choice
  private MenuOption enterChoice()
  {
    int menuChoice = 1;
    try
    {
      menuChoice = input.nextInt();
    }
    catch ( NoSuchElementException elementException )
    { System.err.println( "Invalid input." );
      System.exit( 1 );
    } // end catch
    return choices[ menuChoice - 1 ]; // return choice from user
  } // end enterChoice

  public void processRequests()
  {
    openFile();
    // get user's request
    MenuOption choice = enterChoice();
    while ( choice != MenuOption.END )
    {
      performAction (choice );
      choice = enterChoice();
    } // end while
    closeFile();
  } // end method processRequests
} // end class TransactionProcessor
```
Method `processRequests` (lines 166180) processes the choices entered by the user. If the user does not enter 5 (which ends the program), method `performAction` (lines 51140) is called. This method inputs information from the user and sends it to the appropriate method of class `FileEditor` (Fig. 14.34), which encapsulates the file-processing operations in this example. The method to call is determined by `performAction's MenuOption argument. Each option is handled in the `switch statement of lines 61121. Method `performAction also handles any exceptions that might be thrown from `FileEditor's methods.
14.8. Additional java.io Classes

We now introduce you to other useful classes in the java.io package. We overview additional interfaces and classes for byte-based input and output streams, and character-based input and output streams.

Interfaces and Classes for Byte-Based Input and Output

`InputStream` and `OutputStream` (subclasses of `Object`) are abstract classes that declare methods for performing byte-based input and output, respectively. We used concrete classes `FileInputStream` (a subclass of `InputStream`) and `FileOutputStream` (a subclass of `OutputStream`) to manipulate files in this chapter.

`Pipes` are synchronized communication channels between threads. We discuss threads in Chapter 23, Multithreading. Java provides `PipedOutputStream` (a subclass of `OutputStream`) and `PipedInputStream` (a subclass of `InputStream`) to establish pipes between two threads in a program. One thread sends data to another by writing to a `PipedOutputStream`. The target thread reads information from the pipe via a `PipedInputStream`.

A `FilterInputStream` filters an `InputStream`, and a `FilterOutputStream` filters an `OutputStream`. Filtering means simply that the filter stream provides additional functionality, such as aggregating data bytes into meaningful primitive-type units. `FilterInputStream` and `FilterOutputStream` are abstract classes, so some of their filtering capabilities are provided by their concrete subclasses.

A `PrintStream` (a subclass of `FilterOutputStream`) performs text output to the specified stream. Actually, we have been using `PrintStream` output throughout the text to this point. `System.out` and `System.err` are `PrintStream` objects.

Reading data as raw bytes is fast, but crude. Usually, programs read data as aggregates of bytes that form `ints`, `floats`, `doubles` and so on. Java programs can use several classes to input and output data in aggregate form.

Interface `DataInput` (discussed in Section 14.7.1) describes methods for reading primitive types from an input stream. Classes `DataInputStream` and `RandomAccessFile` each implement this interface to read sets of bytes and view them as primitive-type values. Interface `DataInput` includes methods `readLine` (for
byte arrays), readBoolean, readByte, readChar, readDouble, readFloat, readFully (for byte arrays), readInt, readLong, readShort, readUnsignedByte, readUnsignedShort, readUTF (for reading Unicode characters encoded by Java) discuss UTF encoding in Appendix F, Unicode®) and skipBytes.

Interface DataOutput (discussed in Section 14.7.1) describes a set of methods for writing primitive types to an output stream. Classes DataOutputStream (a subclass of FilterOutputStream) and RandomAccessFile each implement this interface to write primitive-type values as bytes. Interface DataOutput includes overloaded versions of method write (for a byte or for a byte array) and methods writeBoolean, writeByte, writeBytes, writeChar, writeChars (for Unicode Strings), writeDouble, writeFloat, writeInt, writeLong, writeShort and writeUTF (to output text modified for Unicode).

Buffering is an I/O-performance-enhancement technique. With a BufferedOutputStream (a subclass of class FilterOutputStream), each output statement does not necessarily result in an actual physical transfer of data to the output device (which is a slow operation compared to processor and main memory speeds). Rather, each output operation is directed to a region in memory called a buffer that is large enough to hold the data of many output operations. Then, actual transfer to the output device is performed in one large physical output operation each time the buffer fills. The output operations directed to the output buffer in memory are often called logical output operations. With a BufferedOutputStream, a partially filled buffer can be forced out to the device at any time by invoking the stream object's flush method.

Using buffering can greatly increase the efficiency of an application. Typical I/O operations are extremely slow compared with the speed of accessing computer memory. Buffering reduces the number of I/O operations by first combining smaller outputs together in memory. The number of actual physical I/O operations is small compared with the number of I/O requests issued by the program. Thus, the program that is using buffering is more efficient.

**Performance Tip 14.1**

Buffered I/O can yield significant performance improvements over unbuffered I/O.
With a **BufferedInputStream** (a subclass of class **FilterInputStream**), many "logical" chunks of data from a file are read as one large **physical input operation** into a memory buffer. As a program requests each new chunk of data, it is taken from the buffer. (This procedure is sometimes referred to as a **logical input operation**.) When the buffer is empty, the next actual physical input operation from the input device is performed to read in the next group of "logical" chunks of data. Thus, the number of actual physical input operations is small compared with the number of read requests issued by the program.

Earlier in the chapter we used class **StringBuffer**, which allows us to dynamically manipulate strings. It is important to note that class **StringBuffer** can be used to buffer output that will be displayed later to the screen or in a **JTextArea**. This increases the efficiency of a program just as with buffering, it is much faster to first combine all the program's output in a **StringBuffer** object and display the final output to a **JTextArea** or the screen, then to continually add text to a **JTextArea** or the screen. We discuss class **StringBuffer** in more detail in Chapter **29**, Strings, Characters and Regular Expressions.

Java stream I/O includes capabilities for inputting from **byte** arrays in memory and outputting to **byte** arrays in memory. A **ByteArrayInputStream** (a subclass of **InputStream**) reads from a **byte** array in memory. A **ByteArrayOutputStream** (a subclass of **OutputStream**) outputs to a **byte** array in memory. One use of **byte**-array I/O is data validation. A program can input an entire line at a time from the input stream into a **byte** array. Then a validation routine can scrutinize the contents of the **byte** array and correct the data if necessary. Finally, the program can proceed to input from the **byte** array, "knowing" that the input data is in the proper format. Outputting to a **byte** array is a nice way to take advantage of the powerful output-formatting capabilities of Java streams. For example, data can be stored in a **byte** array, using the same formatting that will be displayed at a later time, and the **byte** array can then be output to a disk file to preserve the screen image.

A **SequenceInputStream** (a subclass of **InputStream**) enables concatenation of several **InputStreams**, which means that the program sees the group as one continuous **InputStream**. When the program reaches the end of an input stream, that stream closes, and the next stream in the sequence opens.
Interfaces and Classes for Character-Based Input and Output

In addition to the byte-based streams, Java provides the Reader and Writer abstract classes, which are Unicode two-byte, character-based streams. Most of the byte-based streams have corresponding character-based concrete Reader or Writer classes.

Classes BufferedReader (a subclass of abstract class Reader) and BufferedWriter (a subclass of abstract class Writer) enable buffering for character-based streams. Remember that character-based streams use Unicode characters such streams can process data in any language that the Unicode character set represents.

Classes CharArrayReader and CharArrayWriter read and write, respectively, a stream of characters to a character array. A LineNumberReader (a subclass of BufferedReader) is a buffered character stream that keeps track of the number of lines read (i.e., a newline, a return or a carriage-return-line-feed combination). Keeping track of line numbers can be useful if the program needs to inform the reader of an error on a specific line.

Class FileReader (a subclass of InputStreamReader) and class FileWriter (a subclass of OutputStreamWriter) read characters from and write characters to a file, respectively. Class PipedReader and class PipedWriter implement piped-character streams that can be used to transfer information between threads. Class StringReader and StringWriter read characters from and write characters to Strings, respectively. A PrintWriter writes characters to a stream.
14.9. Opening Files with **JFileChooser**

We conclude this chapter by introducing class **JFileChooser**. We use this class to display a dialog (known as the **JFileChooser dialog**) that enables users of our program to easily select files. To demonstrate the **JFileChooser** dialog, we enhance the example in **Section 14.4**, as shown in **Fig. 14.37** and **Fig. 14.38**. The example now contains a graphical user interface, but still displays the same data as before. The constructor calls method **analyzePath** in line 34. This method then calls method **getFile** in line 68 to retrieve the **File** object.

**Figure 14.37. Demonstrating **JFileChooser**.**

(This item is displayed on pages 730 - 731 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 14.37: FileDemonstration.java
2 // Demonstrating the File class.
3 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
4 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
5 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
6 import java.io.File;
7 import javax.swing.JFileChooser;
8 import javax.swing.JFrame;
9 import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
10 import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
11 import javax.swing.JTextArea;
12 import javax.swing.JTextField;
13 public class FileDemonstration extends JFrame {
14   private JTextArea outputArea; // used for output
15   private JScrollPane scrollPane; // used to provide scrolling to output
16   // set up GUI
17   public FileDemonstration() {
18      super( "Testing class File" );
19      outputArea = new JTextArea();
20      // add outputArea to scrollPane
21      scrollPane = new JScrollPane( outputArea );
22      add( scrollPane, BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add scrollPane to GUI
23      setSize( 400, 400 ); // set GUI size
24      setVisible( true ); // display GUI
25      analyzePath(); // create and analyze File object
26   } // end FileDemonstration constructor
```
private File getFile()
{
    // display file dialog, so user can choose file to open
    JFileChooser fileChooser = new JFileChooser();
    fileChooser.setFileSelectionMode(
        JFileChooser.FILES_AND_DIRECTORIES);

    int result = fileChooser.showOpenDialog( this );

    // if user clicked Cancel button on dialog, return
    if ( result == JFileChooser.CANCEL_OPTION )
        System.exit( 1 );

    File fileName = fileChooser.getSelectedFile(); // get selected file

    // display error if invalid
    if ( ( fileName == null ) || ( fileName.getName().equals( "" ) ) )
    {
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( this, "Invalid File Name",
            "Invalid File Name", JOptionPane.ERROR_MESSAGE );
        System.exit( 1 );
    } // end if

    return fileName;
} // end method getFile

public void analyzePath()
{
    // create File object based on user input
    File name = getFile();

    if ( name.exists() ) // if name exists, output information about it
    {
        // display file (or directory) information
        outputArea.setText( String.format(
            "\n%s\n%ss\n%s%sn%
"does not exist.", "ERROR", JOptionPane.ERROR_MESSAGE);
}
} // end method analyzePath
} // end class FileDemonstration

Figure 14.38. Testing class FileDemonstration.
(This item is displayed on page 732 in the print version)

---

// Fig. 14.38: FileDemonstrationTest.java
// Testing the FileDemonstration class.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class FileDemonstrationTest {
    public static void main(String args[])
    {
        FileDemonstration application = new FileDemonstration();
        application.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
    }
} // end class FileDemonstrationTest

[View full size image]
Method getFile is defined in lines 3862 of Fig. 14.37. Line 41 creates a JFileChooser and assigns its reference to fileChooser. Lines 42-43 call method setFileSelectionMode to specify what the user can select from the fileChooser. For this program, we use JFileChooser static constant FILES_AND_DIRECTORIES to indicate that files and directories can be selected. Other static constants include FILES_ONLY and DIRECTORIES_ONLY.

Line 45 calls method showOpenDialog to display the JFileChooser dialog titled Open. Argument this specifies the JFileChooser dialog's parent window, which determines the position of the dialog on the screen. If null is passed, the dialog is displayed in the center of the screen otherwise, the dialog is centered over the application window (specified by the argument this). A JFileChooser dialog is a modal dialog that does not allow the user to interact with any other window in the program until the user closes the JFileChooser by clicking the Open or Cancel button. The user selects the drive, directory or file name, then clicks Open. Method showOpenDialog returns an integer specifying which button (Open
or Cancel) the user clicked to close the dialog. Line 48 tests whether the user clicked Cancel by comparing the result with static constant CANCEL_OPTION. If they are equal, the program terminates. Line 51 retrieves the file the user selected by calling JFileChooser method getSelectedFile. The program then displays information about the selected file or directory.
14.10. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned how to use file processing to manipulate persistent data. You learned that data is stored in computers as 0s and 1s, and that combinations of these values are used to form bytes, fields, records and eventually files. You were given an overview of the differences between character-based and byte-based streams, as well as an introduction to several file-processing classes provided by the java.io package. You used class File to retrieve information about a file or directory. Next, you learned how to use sequential-access file processing to manipulate records that are stored in order by the record-key field. In that discussion, you learned the differences between text-file processing and object serialization, and used serialization to store and retrieve entire objects. You then learned how to use random-access files to instantly retrieve and manipulate fixed-length records. The chapter concluded with an overview of other classes provided by the java.io package, and a small example of using a JFileChooser dialog to allow users to easily select files from a GUI. In the next chapter, you will learn the concept of recursion methods that call themselves. Defining methods in this manner sometimes leads to more intuitive programs.
Summary

- Data stored in variables and arrays is temporary; the data is lost when a local variable goes out of scope or when the program terminates. Computers use files for long-term retention of large amounts of data, even after the programs that created the data terminate.

- Persistent data maintained in files exists beyond the duration of program execution.

- Computers store files on secondary storage devices such as hard disks.

- The smallest data item in a computer can assume the value 0 or the value 1 and is called a bit. Ultimately, a computer processes all data items as combinations of zeros and ones.

- The computer's character set is the set of all characters used to write programs and represent data.

- Characters in Java are Unicode characters composed of two bytes, each composed of eight bits.

- Just as characters are composed of bits, fields are composed of characters or bytes. A field is a group of characters or bytes that conveys meaning.

- Data items processed by computers form a data hierarchy that becomes larger and more complex in structure as we progress from bits to characters to fields, and so on.

- Typically, several fields compose a record (implemented as a class in Java).

- A record is a group of related fields.

- A file is a group of related records.

- To facilitate the retrieval of specific records from a file, at least one field in each record is chosen as a record key. A record key identifies a record as
belonging to a particular person or entity and is unique to each record.

- There are many ways to organize records in a file. The most common is called a sequential file, in which records are stored in order by the record-key field.

- A group of related files is often called a database. A collection of programs designed to create and manage databases is called a database management system (DBMS).

- Java views each file as a sequential stream of bytes.

- Every operating system provides a mechanism to determine the end of a file, such as an end-of-file marker or a count of the total bytes in the file that is recorded in a system-maintained administrative data structure.

- Byte-based streams represent data in binary format.

- Character-based streams represent data as sequences of characters.

- Files that are created using byte-based streams are binary files. Files created using character-based streams are text files. Text files can be read by text editors, whereas binary files are read by a program that converts the data to a human-readable format.

- Java also can associate streams with different devices. Three stream objects are associated with devices when a Java program begins executing `System.in`, `System.out` and `System.err`.

- The `java.io` package includes definitions for stream classes, such as `FileInputStream` (for byte-based input from a file), `FileOutputStream` (for byte-based output to a file), `FileReader` (for character-based input from a file) and `FileWriter` (for character-based output to a file). Files are opened by creating objects of these stream classes.

- Class `File` is used to obtain information about files and directories.

- Character-based input and output can be performed with classes `Scanner`
and **Formatter**.

- **Class** **Formatter** enables formatted data to be output to the screen or to a file in a manner similar to `System.out.printf`.

- A file or directory's path specifies its location on disk.

- An absolute path contains all the directories, starting with the root directory, that lead to a specific file or directory. Every file or directory on a disk drive has the same root directory in its path.

- A relative path normally starts from the directory in which the application began executing.

- A separator character is used to separate directories and files in the path.

- Java imposes no structure on a file; notions such as a record do not exist as part of the Java language. The programmer must structure files to meet an application's requirements.

- To retrieve data sequentially from a file, programs normally start reading from the beginning of the file and read all the data consecutively until the desired information is found.

- Data in many sequential files cannot be modified without the risk of destroying other data in the file. Therefore, records in a sequential-access file are not usually updated in place. Instead, the entire file is usually rewritten.

- Java provides a mechanism called object serialization that enables entire objects to be written to or read from a stream.

- A serialized object is an object represented as a sequence of bytes that includes the object's data as well as information about the object's type and the types of data stored in the object.

- After a serialized object has been written into a file, it can be read from the file and deserialized—that is, the type information and bytes that represent the object and its data can be used to recreate the object in memory.
Classes `ObjectInputStream` and `ObjectOutputStream`, which respectively implement the `ObjectInput` and `ObjectOutput` interfaces, enable entire objects to be read from or written to a stream (possibly a file).

Only classes that implement interface `Serializable` can be serialized and deserialized with `ObjectOutputStream`s and `ObjectInputStream`s.

The `ObjectOutput` interface contains method `writeObject`, which takes an `Object` that implements interface `Serializable` as an argument and writes its information to an `OutputStream`.

The `ObjectInput` interface contains method `readObject`, which reads and returns a reference to an `Object` from an `InputStream`. After an object has been read, its reference can be cast to the object's actual type.

Instant record access is possible with random-access files and with databases. A program can access individual records of a random-access file directly (and quickly) without searching through other records. Random-access files are sometimes called direct-access files.

Several techniques can be used to create random-access files. Perhaps the simplest is to require that all the records in a file be of the same fixed length.

Using fixed-length records makes it easy for a program to calculate (as a function of the record size and the record key) the exact location of any record relative to the beginning of the file.

When a program associates an object of class `RandomAccessFile` with a file, the program reads or writes data, beginning at the location in the file specified by the file-position pointer, and manipulates all the data as primitive types.

`RandomAccessFile` method `seek` positions to the exact location in the file at which a record of information is stored. Method `seek` sets the file-position pointer to a specific location in the file relative to the beginning of the file.

Buffering is an I/O-performance-enhancement technique. With a
BufferedOutputStream, each output statement does not necessarily result in an actual physical transfer of data to the output device. Rather, each output operation is directed to a region in memory called a buffer that is large enough to hold the data of many output operations. Actual transfer to the output device is then performed in one large physical output operation each time the buffer fills.

- With a BufferedInputStream, many "logical" chunks of data from a file are read as one large physical input operation into a memory buffer. As a program requests each new chunk of data, it is taken from the buffer. When the buffer is empty, the next actual physical input operation from the input device is performed to read in the next group of "logical" chunks of data.

- Class JFileChooser is used to display a dialog that enables users of a program to easily select files from a GUI.
Terminology

**absolute path**

**ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) character set**

**batch file**

**binary file**

**bit (binary digit)**

**buffer**

**byte-based stream**

**byte data type**

**CANCEL_OPTION** constant of class `JFileChooser`

**canRead** method of class `File`

**canWrite** method of class `File`

**capacity**

**character-based stream**

**character set**

**-classpath** command line argument to `java`

**-classpath** command line argument to `javac`

**data hierarchy**
database

database management system (DBMS)

DataInput interface

DataInputStream class

DataOutput interface

DataOutputStream class

decimal digit

deserialized object

direct-access application

direct-access files

DIRECTORIES_ONLY constant of class JFileChooser

directory

directory name

disk

direct-access files

end-of-file marker

EndOfFileException

exists method of class File

exit method of class System

field

file
File class

file-open mode

file-position pointer

file processing

FileInputStream class

FileOutputStream class

FileReader class

FILES_AND_DIRECTORIES constant of class JFileChooser

FILES_ONLY constant of class JFileChooser

FileWriter class

fixed-length record

Formatter class

getAbsolutePath method of class File

getName method of class File

getParent method of class File

getPath method of class File

getSelectedFile method of class JFileChooser

InputStream class

instant-access application
IOException

isAbsolute  method of class  File

isDirectory  method of class  File

isFile  method of class  File

java.io  package

JFileChooser  class

JFileChooser  dialog

lastModified  method of class  File

length  method of class  File

list  method of class  File

logical input operations

logical output operations

memory buffer

NoSuchElementException

object serialization

ObjectInputStream  class

ObjectOutputStream  class

optical disk

OutputStream  class

parent directory

OutputStream  class
pathSeparator static field of class File

persistent data

physical input operation

physical output operation

PrintStream class

PrintWriter class

"r" RandomAccessFile open mode

random-access file

RandomAccessFile class

read-only file

readDouble method of class RandomAccessFile

Reader class

readInt method of class RandomAccessFile

readLine method of class BufferedReader

readObject method of class ObjectInputStream

readObject method of interface ObjectInput

record

record key

record size

relative path
root directory

"rw" RandomAccessFile open mode

secondary storage devices

seek method of class RandomAccessFile

sequential-access file

Serializable interface

serialized object

setErr method of class System

setIn method of class System

setOut method of class System

space/time trade-off

setSelectionMode of class JFileChooser

shell script

showOpenDialog of class JFileChooser

standard error stream object

stream object

stream of bytes

stream processing

System.err (standard error stream)

tagging interface
text file

transaction-processing program

Transient keyword

truncated

Unicode character set

URI (Uniform Resource Identifier)

wrapped byte array

wrapping of stream objects

writeBoolean method of interface DataOutput

writeByte method of interface DataOutput

writeBytes method of interface DataOutput

writeChar method of interface DataOutput

writeChars method of class RandomAccessFile

writeChars method of interface DataOutput

writeDouble method of class RandomAccessFile

writeDouble method of interface DataOutput

writeFloat method of interface DataOutput

writeInt method of class RandomAccessFile

writeInt method of interface DataOutput

writeLong method of interface DataOutput
**writeObject** method of class ObjectOutputStream

**writeObject** method of interface ObjectOutput

**Writer class**

**writeShort** method of interface DataOutput

**writeUTF** method of interface DataOutput
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Ultimately, all data items processed by a computer are reduced to combinations of _________ and _________.
2. The smallest data item a computer can process is called a(n)__________.
3. A(n)__________ can sometimes be viewed as a group of related records.
4. Digits, letters and special symbols are referred to as _________.
5. A group of related files is called a __________.
6. Object __________ normally enables a program to output error messages to the screen.
7. RandomAccessFile method __________ reads an integer from the specified stream.
8. RandomAccessFile method __________ sets the file-position pointer to a specific location in a file for input or output.

Determine which of the following statements are true and which are false. If false, explain why.

1. The programmer must explicitly create the stream objects System.in, System.out and System.err.
2. When reading data from a file using class Scanner, if the programmer wishes to read data in the file multiple times, the file must be closed and reopened to read from the beginning of the file. This moves the file-position pointer back to the beginning of the file.
3. Method exists of class File returns True if the name specified as the argument to the File constructor is a file or directory in the specified path.
4. It is not necessary to search all the records in a random-access file to find a record.
5. Binary files are human readable.
6. An absolute path contains all the directories, starting with the root directory, that lead to a specific file or directory.
7. Class Formatter contains method printf, which enables formatted data to be output to the screen or to a file.

Complete the following tasks, assuming that each applies to the same program:

1. Write a statement that opens file "oldmast.txt" for input use Scanner variable inOldMaster.
2. Write a statement that opens file "trans.txt" for input use Scanner variable inTransaction.
3. Write a statement that opens file "newmast.txt" for output (and creation) use formatter variable outNewMaster.
4. Write the statements needed to read a record from the file "oldmast.txt". The data read should be used to create an object of class AccountRecord use Scanner variable inOldMaster. Assume that class AccountRecord is the same as the AccountRecord class in Fig. 14.6.
5. Write the statements needed to read a record from the file "trans.txt". The record is an object of
class `transactionRecord`

use `Scanner` variable `inTransaction`. Assume that class `transactionRecord`
contains method `setAccount` (which takes an `int`) to set the account number and method `setAmount`
(which takes a `double`) to set the amount of the transaction.

6. Write a statement that outputs a record to the file "newmast.txt". The record is an object of type
`AccountRecord`

use `Formatter` variable `outNewMaster`.

Complete the following tasks, assuming that each applies to the same program:

1. Write a statement that opens file "oldmast.ser" for input
use `ObjectInputStream` variable `inOldMaster` to wrap a `FileInputStream` object.

2. Write a statement that opens file "trans.ser" for input
use `ObjectInputStream` variable `inTransaction` to wrap a `FileInputStream` object.

3. Write a statement that opens file "newmast.ser" for output (and creation)
use `ObjectOutputStream` variable `outNewMaster` to wrap a `FileOutputStream`.

4. Write a statement that reads a record from the file "oldmast.ser". The record is an object of class
`AccountRecordSerializable`
use `ObjectInputStream` variable `inOldMaster`. Assume class
`AccountRecordSerializable` is the same as the `AccountRecordSerializable` class in Fig. 14.17

5. Write a statement that reads a record from the file "trans.ser". The record is an object of class
`transactionRecord`
use `ObjectInputStream` variable `inTransaction`.

6. Write a statement that outputs a record to the file "newmast.ser". The record is an object of type
`AccountRecordSerializable`

use `ObjectOutputStream` variable `outNewMaster`.

Find the error in each block of code and show how to correct it.

1. Assume that account, company and amount are declared.

```java
ObjectOutputStream outputStream;
outputStream.writeInt( account );
outputStream.writeChars( company );
outputStream.writeDouble( amount );
```

2. The following statements should read a record from the file "payables.txt". The Scanner variable
`inPayable` should be used to refer to this file.

```java
Scanner inPayable = new Scanner( new File( "payables.txt" ) );
PayablesRecord record = ( PayablesRecord ) inPayable.readObject();
```
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

14.1  a) ones, zeros. b) bit. c) file. d) characters. e) database. f) System.err. g) readInt. h) seek.

1. False. These three streams are created for the programmer when a Java application begins executing.

2. True.

3. True.

4. True.

5. False. Text files are human readable.

6. True.

7. False. Class Formatter contains method format, which enables formatted data to be output to the screen or to a file.

14.2

1. Scanner inOldMaster = new Scanner( new File ( "oldmast.txt" ) );

2. Scanner inTransaction = new Scanner( new File( "trans.txt" ) );

3. Formatter outNewMaster = new Formatter( "newmast.txt" );

4. AccountRecord account = new AccountRecord();
   account.setAccount( inOldMaster.nextInt() );
   account.setFirstName( inOldMaster.next() );
   account.setLastName( inOldMaster.next() );
   account.setBalance( inOldMaster.nextDouble() );

14.3

5. TransactionRecord transaction = new Transaction();
   transaction.setAccount( inTransaction.nextInt() );
   transaction.setAmount( inTransaction.nextDouble() );

6. outNewMaster.format( "%d %s %s %.2f\n", account.getAccount(), account.getFirstName(), account.getLastName(), account.getBalance() );

14.4

1. ObjectInputStream inOldMaster = new ObjectInputStream( new FileInputStream( "oldmast.ser" ) );

2. ObjectInputStream inTransaction = new ObjectInputStream( new FileInputStream( "trans.ser" ) );

3. ObjectOutputStream outNewMaster = new ObjectOutputStream( new FileOutputStream( "newmast.ser" ) );

4. accountRecord = ( AccountRecordSerializable ) inOldMaster.readObject();

5. transactionRecord = ( TransactionRecord ) inTransaction.readObject();
6. `outNewMaster.writeObject( newAccountRecord );`

1. Error: The file has not been opened before the attempt is made to output data to the stream.
   
   Correction: Open a file for output by creating a new `ObjectOutputStream` object that wraps a `FileOutputStream` object.

2. Error: This example uses text files with a `Scanner`, there is no object serialization. As a result, method `readObject` cannot be used to read that data from the file. Each piece of data must be read separately, then used to create a `PayablesRecord` object.

   Correction: Use methods of `inPayable` to read each piece of the `PayablesRecord` object.
Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Computers store large amounts of data on secondary storage devices as __________.
2. A(n) __________ is composed of several fields.
3. To facilitate the retrieval of specific records from a file, one field in each record is chosen as a(n) __________.
4. Files that are created using byte-based streams are referred to as __________ files, while files created using character-based streams are referred to as __________ files.
5. The standard stream objects are __________, __________ and __________.

Determine which of the following statements are true and which are false. If false, explain why.

1. The impressive functions performed by computers essentially involve the manipulation of zeros and ones.
2. People specify programs and data items as characters. Computers then manipulate and process these characters as groups of zeros and ones.
3. Data items represented in computers form a data hierarchy in which data items become larger and more complex as we progress from fields to characters to bits and so on.
4. A record key identifies a record as belonging to a particular field.
5. Companies store all their information in a single file to facilitate computer processing of the information. When a program creates a file, the file is retained by the computer for future reference.

(File Matching) Self-Review Exercise 14.3 asks the reader to write a series of single statements. Actually, these statements form the core of an important type of file-processing program, namely, a file-matching program. In commercial data processing, it is common to have several files in each application system. In an accounts receivable system, for example, there is generally a master file containing detailed information about each customer, such as the customer's name, address, telephone number, outstanding balance, credit limit, discount terms, contract arrangements and possibly a condensed history of recent purchases and cash payments.

As transactions occur (i.e., sales are made and payments arrive in the mail), information about them is entered into a file. At the end of each business period (a month for some companies, a week for others, and a day in some cases), the file of transactions (called "trans.txt") is applied to the master file (called "oldmast.txt") to update each account's purchase and payment record. During an update, the master file is rewritten as the file "newmast.txt", which is then used at the end of the next business period to begin the updating process again.

File-matching programs must deal with certain problems that do not arise in single-file programs. For example, a match does not always occur. If a customer on the master file has not made any purchases or cash payments in the current business period, no record for this customer will appear on the transaction file. Similarly, a customer who did make some purchases or cash payments could have just moved to this community, and if so, the company may not have had a chance to create a master record.
Write a complete file-matching accounts receivable program. Use the account number on each file as the record key for matching purposes. Assume that each file is a sequential text file with records stored in increasing account-number order.

1. Define class `TransactionRecord`. Objects of this class contain an account number and amount for the transaction. Provide methods to modify and retrieve these values.

2. Modify class `AccountRecord` in Fig. 14.6 to include method `combine`, which takes a `transactionRecord` object and combines the balance of the `AccountRecord` object and the amount value of the `transactionRecord` object.

3. Write a program to create data for testing the program. Use the sample account data in Fig. 14.39 and Fig. 14.40. Run the program to create the files `Trans.txt` and `oldmast.txt`, to be used by your file-matching program.

**Figure 14.39. Sample data for master file.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Balance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Alan Jones</td>
<td>348.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Mary Smith</td>
<td>27.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>Sam Sharp</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>700</td>
<td>Suzy Green</td>
<td>14.22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 14.40. Sample data for transaction file.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account number</th>
<th>Transaction amount</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>27.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>62.11</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Create class `FileMatch` to perform the file-matching functionality. The class should contain methods that read `oldmast.txt` and `TRans.txt`. When a match occurs (i.e., records with the same account number appear in both the master file and the transaction file), add the dollar amount in the transaction record to the current balance in the master record, and write the "newmast.txt" record. (Assume that purchases are indicated by positive amounts in the transaction file and payments by negative amounts.) When there is a master record for a particular account, but no corresponding transaction record, merely write the master record to "newmast.txt". When there is a transaction record, but no corresponding master record, print to a log file the message "Unmatched transaction record for account number..." (fill in the account number from the transaction record). The log file should be a text file named "log.txt".

(File Matching with Multiple Transactions) It is possible (and actually common) to have several transaction records with the same record key. This situation occurs, for example, when a customer makes several purchases and cash payments during a business period. Rewrite your accounts receivable file-matching program from Exercise 14.8 to provide for the possibility of handling several transaction records with the same record key. Modify the test data of `CreateData.java` to include the additional transaction records in Fig. 14.41.

![Figure 14.41. Additional transaction records.](image)

(File Matching with Object Serialization) Recreate your solution for Exercise 14.9 using object serialization. Use the statements from Exercise 14.4 as your basis for this program. You may want to create applications to read the data stored in the .ser filesthe code in Section 14.7.3 can be modified for this purpose.

(Hardware Store Inventory) You are the owner of a hardware store and need to keep an inventory that can tell you what different tools you stock, how many of each you have on hand and the cost of each one. Write a program that initializes the random-access file "hardware.dat" to 100 empty records and lets you input the data concerning each tool, list all your tools, delete a record for a tool that you no longer have and update any information in the file. The tool identification number should be the record number.
Use the information in Fig. 14.42 to start your file.

**Figure 14.42. Data for Exercise 14.11.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Record number</th>
<th>Tool name</th>
<th>Quantity</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Sander</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>35.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Hammer</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>10.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Jigsaw</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>14.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Mower</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>79.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>Saw</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>89.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>Screwdriver</td>
<td>236</td>
<td>4.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Sledgehammer</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>19.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>Wrench</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>6.48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Telephone-Number Word Generator) Standard telephone keypads contain the digits zero through nine. The numbers two through nine each have three letters associated with them (Fig. 14.43). Many people find it difficult to memorize phone numbers, so they use the correspondence between digits and letters to develop seven-letter words that correspond to their phone numbers. For example, a person whose telephone number is 686-2377 might use the correspondence indicated in Fig. 14.43 to develop the seven-letter word "NUMBERS." Every seven-letter word corresponds to exactly one seven-digit telephone number. A restaurant wishing to increase its takeout business could surely do so with the number 825-3688 (i.e., "TAKEOUT").

**Figure 14.43. Telephone keypad digits and letters.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Digit</th>
<th>Letters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A B C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>D E F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>G H I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>J K L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>M N O</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Every seven-letter phone number corresponds to many different seven-letter words. Unfortunately, most of these words represent unrecognizable juxtapositions of letters. It is possible, however, that the owner of a barbershop would be pleased to know that the shop's telephone number, 424-7288, corresponds to "HAIRCUT." The owner of a liquor store would, no doubt, be delighted to find that the store's number, 233-7226, corresponds to "BEERCAN." A veterinarian with the phone number 738-2273 would be pleased to know that the number corresponds to the letters "PETCARE." An automotive dealership would be pleased to know that the dealership number, 639-2277, corresponds to "NEWCARS."

Write a program that, given a seven-digit number, uses a PrintStream object to write to a file every possible seven-letter word combination corresponding to that number. There are $2,187 (3^7)$ such combinations. Avoid phone numbers with the digits 0 and 1.

(Student Poll) Figure 7.8 contains an array of survey responses that is hard coded into the program. Suppose we wish to process survey results that are stored in a file. This exercise requires two separate programs. First, create an application that prompts the user for survey responses and outputs each response to a file. Use a Formatter to create a file called numbers.txt. Each integer should be written using method format. Then modify the program in Fig. 7.8 to read the survey responses from numbers.txt. The responses should be read from the file by using a Scanner. Method nextInt should be used to input one integer at a time from the file. The program should continue to read responses until it reaches the end of file. The results should be output to the text file "output.txt."

Modify Exercise 11.18 to allow the user to save a drawing into a file or load a prior drawing from a file using object serialization. Add buttons Load (to read objects from a file), Save (to write objects to a file) and Generate Shapes (to display a random set of shapes on the screen). Use an ObjectOutputStream to write to the file and an ObjectInputStream to read from the file. Write the array of MyShape objects using method writeObject (class ObjectOutputStream), and read the array using method readObject (ObjectInputStream). Note that the object-serialization mechanism can read or write entire arrays it is not necessary to manipulate each element of the array of MyShape objects individually. It is simply required that all the shapes be Serializable. For both the Load and Save buttons, use a JFileChooser to allow the user to select the file in which the shapes will be stored or from which they will be read. When the user first runs the program, no shapes should be displayed on the screen. The user can display shapes by opening a previously saved file of shapes or by clicking the Generate Shapes button. When the Generate Shapes button is clicked, the application should generate a random number of shapes up to a total of 15. Once there are shapes on the screen, users can save them to a file using the Save button.
Chapter 15. Recursion

*It's a poor sort of memory that only works backwards.*

Lewis Carroll, *Alice in Wonderland*

*We must learn to explore all the options and possibilities that confront us in a complex and rapidly changing world.*

James William Fulbright

*Push on keep moving.*

Thomas Morton

*O! thou hast damnable iteration, and art indeed able to corrupt a saint.*

William Shakespeare

*Life can only be understood backwards; but it must be lived forwards.*

Soren Kierkegaard

**OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will learn:

- The concept of recursion.
- How to write and use recursive methods.
- How to determine the base case and recursion step in a recursive algorithm.
- How recursive method calls are handled by the system.
- The differences between recursion and iteration, and when it is appropriate to use each.
15.1. Introduction

The programs we have discussed thus far are generally structured as methods that call one another in a disciplined, hierarchical manner. For some problems, however, it is useful to have a method call itself. Such a method is known as a **recursive method**. A recursive method can be called either directly, or indirectly through another method. Recursion is an important topic discussed at length in upper-level computer science courses. In this chapter, we consider recursion conceptually, then present several programs containing recursive methods. **Figure 15.1** summarizes the recursion examples and exercises in the book.

**Figure 15.1. Summary of the 32 recursion examples and exercises in this text.**

(This item is displayed on page 746 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Recursion examples and exercises in this book</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Factorial Method (<a href="#">Fig. 15.3</a> and <a href="#">Fig. 15.4</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fibonacci Method (<a href="#">Fig. 15.5</a> and <a href="#">Fig. 15.6</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>String Permutations (<a href="#">Fig. 15.12</a> and <a href="#">Fig. 15.13</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Towers of Hanoi (<a href="#">Fig. 15.15</a> and <a href="#">Fig. 15.16</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fractals (<a href="#">Fig. 15.23</a> and <a href="#">Fig. 15.24</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What Does This Code Do? (<a href="#">Exercise 15.7</a>, <a href="#">Exercise 15.12</a> and <a href="#">Exercise 15.13</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Find the Error in the Following Code (<a href="#">Exercise 15.8</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Raising an Integer to an Integer Power (<a href="#">Exercise 15.9</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Visualizing Recursion (<a href="#">Exercise 15.10</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Greatest Common Divisor (<a href="#">Exercise 15.11</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Determine Whether a String Is a Palindrome (<a href="#">Exercise 15.14</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eight Queens (<a href="#">Exercise 15.15</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Print an Array (<a href="#">Exercise 15.16</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Print an Array Backward (<a href="#">Exercise 15.17</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimum Value in an Array (<a href="#">Exercise 15.18</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Star Fractal (<a href="#">Exercise 15.19</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maze Traversal Using Recursive Backtracking (<a href="#">Exercise 15.20</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Generating Mazes Randomly (<a href="#">Exercise 15.21</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mazes of Any Size (<a href="#">Exercise 15.22</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time Needed to Calculate a Fibonacci Number (<a href="#">Exercise 15.23</a>)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 16      | Merge Sort ([Fig. 16.10](#) and [Fig. 16.11](#)) |
|         | Linear Search ([Exercise 16.8](#)) |
|         | Binary Search ([Exercise 16.9](#)) |
|         | Quicksort ([Exercise 16.10](#)) |

| 17      | Binary-Tree Insert ([Fig. 17.17](#)) |
|         | Preorder Traversal of a Binary Tree ([Fig. 17.17](#)) |
|         | Inorder Traversal of a Binary Tree ([Fig. 17.17](#)) |
Postorder Traversal of a Binary Tree (Fig. 17.17)
Print a Linked List Backward (Exercise 17.20)
Search a Linked List (Exercise 17.21)
15.2. Recursion Concepts

Recursive problem-solving approaches have a number of elements in common. When a recursive method is called to solve a problem, the method actually is capable of solving only the simplest case(s), or base case(s). If the method is called with a base case, the method returns a result. If the method is called with a more complex problem, the method typically divides the problem into two conceptual piecesa piece that the method knows how to do and a piece that the method does not know how to do. To make recursion feasible, the latter piece must resemble the original problem, but be a slightly simpler or smaller version of it. Because this new problem looks like the original problem, so the method calls a fresh copy of itself to work on the smaller problemthis is referred to as a recursive call and is also called the recursion step. The recursion step normally includes a return statement, because its result will be combined with the portion of the problem the method knew how to solve to form a result that will be passed back to the original caller. This concept of separating the problem into two smaller portions is a form of the divide-and-conquer approach introduced at the beginning of Chapter 6.

The recursion step executes while the original call to the method is still active (i.e., while it has not finished executing). The recursion step can result in many more recursive calls as the method divides each new subproblem into two conceptual pieces. For the recursion to eventually terminate, each time the method calls itself with a simpler version of the original problem, the sequence of smaller and smaller problems must converge on a base case. At that point, the method recognizes the base case and returns a result to the previous copy of the method. A sequence of returns ensues until the original method call returns the final result to the caller.

A recursive method may call another method, which may in turn make a call back to the recursive method. Such a process is known as an indirect recursive call or indirect recursion. For example, method A calls method B, which makes a call back to method A. This is still considered recursion, because the second call to method A is made while the first call to method A is activethat is, the first call to method A has not yet finished executing (because it is waiting on method B to return a result to i) and has not returned to method A's original caller.
To better understand the concept of recursion, let us look at an example of recursion that is quite common to computer users: the recursive definition of a directory on a computer. A computer normally stores related files in a directory. A directory can be empty, can contain files and/or can contain other directories (usually referred to as subdirectories). Each of these subdirectories, in turn, may also contain both files and directories. If we wanted to list each file in a directory (including all the files in the directory's subdirectories), we would need to create a method that first lists the initial directory's files, then makes recursive calls to list the files in each of that directory's subdirectories. The base case would occur when a directory is reached that does not contain any subdirectories. At this point, all the files in the original directory have been listed and no further recursive calls need to be made.
15.3. Example Using Recursion: Factorials

Let us write a recursive program to perform a popular mathematical calculation. Consider the factorial of a positive integer \( n \), written \( n! \) (and pronounced "\( n \) factorial"), which is the product

\[
n! = n \cdot (n-1) \cdot (n-2) \cdots 1
\]

with 1! equal to 1 and 0! defined to be 1. For example, 5! is the product \( 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 \), which is equal to 120.

The factorial of integer \( \text{number} \) (where \( \text{number} \geq 0 \)) can be calculated \textit{iteratively} (non-recursively) using a \texttt{for} statement as follows:

```java
factorial = 1;
for ( int counter = number; counter >= 1; counter-- )
    factorial *= counter;
```

A recursive declaration of the factorial method is arrived at by observing the following relationship:

\[
n! = n \cdot (n-1)!
\]

For example, 5! is clearly equal to \( 5 \cdot 4! \), as is shown by the following equations:

\[
5! = 5 \cdot 4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1 \\
5! = 5 \cdot (4 \cdot 3 \cdot 2 \cdot 1) \\
5! = 5 \cdot (4!)
\]

The evaluation of 5! would proceed as shown in \textbf{Fig. 15.2}. \textbf{Figure 15.2(a)} shows how the succession of recursive calls proceeds until 1! (the base case) is evaluated to be 1, which terminates the recursion. \textbf{Figure 15.2(b)} shows the values returned from each recursive call to its caller until the final value is
Figure 15.2. Recursive evaluation of 5!.
(This item is displayed on page 748 in the print version)

Figure 15.3 uses recursion to calculate and print the factorials of the integers from 0 to 10. The recursive method `factorial` (lines 713) first tests to determine whether a terminating condition (line 9) is `true`. If `number` is less than or equal to 1 (the base case), `factorial` returns 1, no further recursion is necessary and the method returns. If `number` is greater than 1, line 12 expresses the problem as the product of `number` and a recursive call to `factorial` evaluating the factorial of `number - 1`, which is a slightly simpler problem than the original calculation, `factorial( number )`.

```
1 // Fig. 15.3: FactorialCalculator.java
2 // Recursive factorial method.
```
public class FactorialCalculator {
    // recursive method factorial
    public long factorial(long number) {
        if (number <= 1) // test for base case
            return 1; // base cases: 0! = 1 and 1! = 1
        else // recursion step
            return number * factorial(number - 1);
    }
    // end method factorial

    // output factorials for values 0-10
    public void displayFactorials() {
        // calculate the factorials of 0 through 10
        for (int counter = 0; counter <= 10; counter++)
            System.out.printf("%d! = %d\n", counter, factorial(counter));
    }
    // end method displayFactorials
}

Method displayFactorials (lines 16-21) displays the factorials of 0-10. The call to method factorial occurs in line 20. Method factorial receives a parameter of type long and returns a result of type long. Figure 15.4 tests our factorial and displayFactorials methods by calling displayFactorials (line 10). As can be seen from the output of Fig. 15.4, factorial values become large quickly. We use type long (which can represent relatively large integers) so the program can calculate factorials greater than 12!. Unfortunately, the factorial method produces large values so quickly that factorial values soon exceed the maximum value that can be stored even in a long variable.

Figure 15.4. Testing the factorial method.
Due to the limitations of integral types, `float` or `double` variables may ultimately be needed to calculate factorials of larger numbers. This points to a weakness in most programming languages namely, that the languages are not easily extended to handle the unique application requirements. As we saw in Chapter 9, Java is an extensible language that allows us to create arbitrarily large integers if we wish. In fact, package `java.math` provides classes `BigInteger` and `BigDecimal` explicitly for arbitrary precision mathematical calculations that cannot be performed with primitive types. For more information on these classes visit, [java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/math/BigInteger.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/math/BigInteger.html) and [java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/math/BigDecimal.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/math/BigDecimal.html), respectively.
15.4. Example Using Recursion: Fibonacci Series

The Fibonacci series, 

0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, ...

begins with 0 and 1 and has the property that each subsequent Fibonacci number is the sum of the previous two Fibonacci numbers. This series occurs in nature and, in particular, describes a form of spiral. The ratio of successive Fibonacci numbers converges on a constant value of 1.618..., a number that has been called the golden ratio or the golden mean. Humans tend to find the golden mean aesthetically pleasing. Architects often design windows, rooms and buildings whose length and width are in the ratio of the golden mean. Postcards are often designed with a golden-mean length-to-width ratio.

The Fibonacci series may be defined recursively as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{fibonacci}(0) &= 0 \\
\text{fibonacci}(1) &= 1 \\
\text{fibonacci}(n) &= \text{fibonacci}(n - 1) + \text{fibonacci}(n - 2)
\end{align*}
\]

Note that there are two base cases for the Fibonacci calculation: fibonacci(0) is defined to be 0, and fibonacci(1) is defined to be 1. The program in Fig. 15.5 calculates the \(i\)th Fibonacci number recursively, using method fibonacci (lines 713). Method displayFibonacci (lines 1520) tests fibonacci, displaying the Fibonacci values of 010. The variable counter created in the for header in line 17 indicates which Fibonacci number to calculate for each iteration of the for statement. The value of counter is stored in variable number (line 7) for each call to method fibonacci. Fibonacci numbers tend to become large quickly. Therefore, we use type long as the parameter type and the return type of method fibonacci. Figure 15.6 calls method displayFibonacci (line 9) to calculate the Fibonacci values.
public class FibonacciCalculator
{
    public long fibonacci( long number )
    {
        if ( ( number == 0 ) || ( number == 1 ) ) // base cases
            return number;
        else // recursion step
            return fibonacci( number - 1 ) + fibonacci( number - 2 );
    } // end method fibonacci

    public void displayFibonacci()
    {
        for ( int counter = 0; counter <= 10; counter++ )
            System.out.printf( "Fibonacci of %d is: %d\n", counter, 
                fibonacci( counter ) );
    } // end method displayFibonacci
} // end class FibonacciCalculator

Figure 15.6. Testing the fibonacci method.

(This item is displayed on page 751 in the print version)

public class FibonacciTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        FibonacciCalculator fibonacciCalculator = 
            new FibonacciCalculator();
        fibonacciCalculator.displayFibonacci();
    } // end main
} // end class FibonacciTest

Fibonacci of 0 is: 0
Fibonacci of 1 is: 1
Fibonacci of 2 is: 1
Fibonacci of 3 is: 2
Fibonacci of 4 is: 3
Fibonacci of 5 is: 5
Fibonacci of 6 is: 8
Fibonacci of 7 is: 13
Fibonacci of 8 is: 21
Fibonacci of 9 is: 34
Fibonacci of 10 is: 55
The call to method `fibonacci` (line 19 of Fig. 15.5) from `displayFibonacci` is not a recursive call, but all subsequent calls to `fibonacci` performed from the body of `fibonacci` (line 12 of Fig. 15.5) are recursive, because at that point the calls are initiated by method `fibonacci` itself. Each time `fibonacci` is called, it immediately tests for the base cases `number` equal to 0 or `number` equal to 1 (line 9). If this condition is true, `fibonacci` simply returns `number` because `fibonacci(0)` is 0, and `fibonacci(1)` is 1. Interestingly, if `number` is greater than 1, the recursion step generates two recursive calls (line 12), each for a slightly simpler problem than the original call to `fibonacci`.

**Figure 15.7** shows how method `fibonacci` evaluates `fibonacci(3)`. Note that at the bottom of the figure, we are left with the values 1, 0 and 1 the results of evaluating the base cases. The first two return values (from left to right), 1 and 0, are returned as the values for the calls `fibonacci(1)` and `fibonacci(0)`. The sum 1 plus 0 is returned as the value of `fibonacci(2)`. This is added to the result (1) of the call to `fibonacci(1)`, producing the value 2. This final value is then returned as the value of `fibonacci(3)`.

**Figure 15.7.** Set of recursive calls for `fibonacci(3)`.
(This item is displayed on page 752 in the print version)
Figure 15.7 raises some interesting issues about the order in which Java compilers evaluate the operands of operators. This order is different from the order in which operators are applied to their operands—namely, the order dictated by the rules of operator precedence. From Figure 15.7, it appears that while \texttt{fibonacci(3)} is being evaluated, two recursive calls will be made \texttt{fibonacci(2)} and \texttt{fibonacci(1)}. But in what order will these calls be made? The Java language specifies that the order of evaluation of the operands is from left to right. Thus, the call \texttt{fibonacci(2)} is made first and the call \texttt{fibonacci(1)} is made second.

A word of caution is in order about recursive programs like the one we use here to generate Fibonacci numbers. Each invocation of the \texttt{fibonacci} method that does not match one of the base cases (0 or 1) results in two more recursive calls to the \texttt{fibonacci} method. Hence, this set of recursive calls rapidly gets out of hand. Calculating the Fibonacci value of 20 with the program in Fig. 15.5 requires 21,891 calls to the \texttt{fibonacci} method; calculating the Fibonacci value of 30 requires 2,692,537 calls! As you try to calculate larger Fibonacci values, you will notice that each consecutive Fibonacci number you use the application to calculate results in a substantial increase in calculation time and in the number of calls to the \texttt{fibonacci} method. For example, the Fibonacci value of 31 requires 4,356,617 calls, and the Fibonacci value of 32 requires 7,049,155 calls! As you can see, the number of calls to \texttt{fibonacci} increases quickly: 1,664,080 additional calls between Fibonacci values of 30 and 31 and 2,692,538 additional calls between Fibonacci values of 31 and 32! The difference in the number of calls made between Fibonacci values of 31 and 32 is more than 1.5 times the number of calls for Fibonacci values between 30 and 31. Problems of this nature can humble even the world's most powerful computers. [Note: In the field of complexity theory, computer scientists study how hard algorithms work to complete their tasks. Complexity issues are discussed in detail in the upper-level computer science curriculum course generally called "Algorithms." We introduce various complexity issues in Chapter 16, Searching and Sorting.] In the exercises, you will be asked to enhance the Fibonacci program of Fig. 15.5 such that it calculates the approximate amount of time required to perform the calculation. For this purpose, you will call static \texttt{System} method \texttt{currentTimeMillis}, which takes no arguments and returns the computer's current time in milliseconds.

\textbf{Performance Tip 15.1}
Avoid Fibonacci-style recursive programs, because they result in an exponential "explosion" of method calls.
15.5. Recursion and the Method Call Stack

In Chapter 6, the stack data structure was introduced in the context of understanding how Java performs method calls. We discussed both the method call stack (also known as the program execution stack) and activation records. In this section, we will use these concepts to demonstrate how the program execution stack handles recursive method calls.

Let us begin by returning to the Fibonacci example specifically, calling method `fibonacci` with the value 3, as in Fig. 15.7. To more easily demonstrate in what order the activation records for the method calls are placed on the stack, we have lettered the method calls, as shown in Fig. 15.8.

**Figure 15.8. Method calls made within the call `fibonacci (3)`.**

When the first method call (A) is made, an activation record is pushed onto the program execution stack which contains the value of the local variable `number` (3, in this case). The program execution stack, including the activation record for method call A, is illustrated in part a of Fig. 15.9. [Note: In an actual computer, the program execution stack and its activation records would be more complex than in Fig. 15.9, containing such information as where the method call is to return to when it has completed execution. We use a simplified stack to demonstrate how the program execution stack works.]
Within method call A, method calls B and E are made. The original method call has not yet completed, so its activation record remains on the stack. The first method call to be made from within A is method call B, so the activation record for method call B is pushed onto the stack on top of the activation record for method call A. Method call B must execute and complete before method call is made. Within method call B, method calls C and D will be made. Method call C is made first, and its activation record is pushed onto the stack (part b of Fig. 15.9). Method call E has not yet finished, and its activation record is still on the method call stack. When method call C executes, it does not make any further method calls, but simply returns the value 1. When this method returns, its activation record is popped off the top of the stack. The method call at the top of the stack is now B, which continues to execute by performing method call D. The activation record for method call D is pushed onto the stack (part c of Fig. 15.9). Method call D completes without making any more method calls, and returns the value 0. The activation record for this method call is then popped off the stack. Now, both method calls made from within method call B have returned. Method call B continues to execute, returning the value 1. Method call B completes and its activation record is popped off the stack. At this point, the activation record for method call A is at the top of the stack and the method continues its execution. This method makes method call E, whose activation record is now pushed onto the stack (part d of Fig. 15.9). Method call E completes and returns the value 1. The activation record for this method call is popped off the stack, and once again method call A continues to execute. At this point, method call A will not be making any other method calls, and can finish its execution, returning the value 2 to A's caller (Fib(3) = 2). A's
activation record is popped off the stack. Note that the current method executing is always the method whose activation record is at the top of the stack, and that the activation record for that method contains the values of the method's local variables.
15.6. Recursion vs. Iteration

In the preceding sections, we studied methods factorial and fibonacci, which can easily be implemented either recursively or iteratively. In this section, we compare the two approaches and discuss why the programmer might choose one approach over the other in a particular situation.

Both iteration and recursion are based on a control statement: Iteration uses a repetition statement (e.g., for, while or do...while), whereas recursion uses a selection statement (e.g., if, if...else or switch). Both iteration and recursion involve repetition: Iteration explicitly uses a repetition statement, whereas recursion achieves repetition through repeated method calls. Iteration and recursion each involve a termination test: Iteration terminates when the loop-continuation condition fails, whereas recursion terminates when a base case is reached. Iteration with counter-controlled repetition and recursion each gradually approach termination: Iteration keeps modifying a counter until the counter assumes a value that makes the loop-continuation condition fail, whereas recursion keeps producing simpler versions of the original problem until the base case is reached. Both iteration and recursion can occur infinitely: An infinite loop occurs with iteration if the loop-continuation test never becomes false, whereas infinite recursion occurs if the recursion step does not reduce the problem each time in a manner that converges on the base case, or if the base case is not tested.

To illustrate the differences between iteration and recursion, let us examine an iterative solution to the factorial problem (Fig. 15.10). Note that a repetition statement is used (lines 1213 of Fig. 15.10) rather than the selection statement of the recursive solution (lines 912 of Fig. 15.3). Note that both solutions use a termination test. In the recursive solution, line 9 tests for the base case. In the iterative solution, line 12 tests the loop-continuation condition if the test fails, the loop terminates. Finally, note that instead of producing simpler versions of the original problem, the iterative solution uses a counter that is modified until the loop-continuation condition becomes false.

Figure 15.10. Iterative factorial solution.
public class FactorialCalculator {

   public long factorial( long number ) {
       long result = 1;
       for ( long i = number; i >= 1; i-- )
           result *= i;
       return result;
   }

   public void displayFactorials() {
       // calculate the factorials of 0 through 10
       for ( int counter = 0; counter <= 10; counter++ )
           System.out.printf( "%d! = %d\n", counter, factorial( counter ) );
   }
}

Figure 15.11. Testing the iterative factorial solution.
(This item is displayed on page 756 in the print version)
Recursion has many negatives. It repeatedly invokes the mechanism, and consequently the overhead, of method calls. This repetition can be expensive in terms of both processor time and memory space. Each recursive call causes another copy of the method (actually, only the method's variables, stored in the activation record) to be created; this set of copies can consume considerable memory space. Since iteration occurs within a method, repeated method calls and extra memory assignment are avoided. So why choose recursion?

**Software Engineering Observation 15.1**

Any problem that can be solved recursively can also be solved iteratively (nonrecursively). A recursive approach is normally preferred over an iterative approach when the recursive approach more naturally mirrors the problem and results in a program that is easier to understand and debug. A recursive approach can often be implemented with fewer lines of code. Another reason to choose a recursive approach is that an iterative one might not be apparent.

**Performance Tip 15.2**

Avoid using recursion in situations requiring high performance. Recursive calls take time and consume additional memory.
Common Programming Error 15.2

Accidentally having a nonrecursive method call itself either directly or indirectly through another method can cause infinite recursion.
15.7. String Permutations

The example in this section provides a more in-depth walkthrough of how to solve a recursive problem, especially one that does not involve a simple mathematical formula. The problem we analyze in this section is creating the permutations of a string of text—all the different strings that can be created by rearranging the characters of the original string. Words created from these strings are known as anagrams. The permutations for the string "abc" are:

- abc
- acb
- bac
- bca
- cab
- cba

Such a program could come in handy if one wants to unscramble a string of characters, determine all the words that can be created from a string, or determine all the words that can be created from the characters associated with a telephone number.

We have already provided a few recursive solutions in this chapter, but we have not considered the flow of thought that results in a recursive solution. We do this now, in the context of string permutations. To begin, we look for a pattern that can be used to solve the problem. In the preceding list of permutations, note that two of the resulting permutations start with "a" ("abc" and "acb"), two with "b" ("bac" and "bca"), and two with "c" ("cab", "cba"). For each letter, permutations are provided that begin with that letter, followed by permutations of the remaining letters. If we were to begin with the letter "b", for example, we would have two permutations "bac" and "bca". These are determined by simply looking at the remaining two letters, "a" and "c", and seeing that there are only two permutations using these letters namely, "ac" and "ca". Note that we have now just determined all the permutations on the smaller string, "ac". To do this, we can use the same thought process as before, namely, determining all the permutations that start with the letter "a" followed by all the permutations that start with the letter "c". If we start with the letter...
"a", we have only one letter left, the letter "c". For a string with only one character, the string itself is the only permutation.

We now have the permutations of our substrings, but not the final permutations as shown above. To create these, we need to precede the permutations of the substrings with the characters that were removed to create the substring. For example, when determining the permutations of "bac", we divided the string into two strings ("b" and "ac"), and determined the permutations of the second string (in this case, "ac" and "ca"). We need our solution to precede "ac" and "ca" with the character that was removed to create this substring (namely, "b"). Our solution will need a way to keep track of these removed letters.

We have now found a way to break up our problem into two pieces: a single character from the original string, concatenated with all the permutations of the remaining charactersthe recursion step calculates all such permutations. The recursion step includes a recursive call for each letter in the string, with a different letter being used as the first letter of the permutation. Each call takes a different character from the string being permuted, and creates a substring of the remaining values, to be passed to the recursive call. For instance, if we are using the example of "abc", the first call to our recursive method results in three recursive callsone which determines all the permutations that begin with "a" (where the substring is "bc"), one which determines all the permutations that begin with "b" (where the substring is "ac") and one which determines all the permutations that begin with "c" (where the substring is "ab").

We have now discovered the recursion step for our program (determining the permutations of the various substrings) and our base case (a string with one letter will always have only one permutation, the letter itself). The next step is to ensure that the base case will be reached. Because our recursion step always calls with a string that is one character shorter than the string before it, we can be sure that we will always reach a string of one characterthe base case. Note that the base case also handles the situation where the user enters an empty string (i.e., one whose length is 0).

Now that we have determined our base case, the recursion step and that the base case will always be reached, we present the code for our solution (Fig. 15.12). Method permuteString (lines 738) takes two arguments. The first, beginningString, contains the characters that were removed from the string in previous calls and now need to precede the permutations that are being created. The second argument, endingString, contains the string that needs to be permuted (we call it endingString because for our final results it will be displayed after beginningString). When the method is called with the original
string, the first argument will be the empty string, as there are no characters from previous calls that need to be added to the solution. The base case occurs in lines 12-13, when the string being permuted contains only one character. In this case, we simply print the characters from previous calls (beginningString) followed by the character in endingString.

Figure 15.12. String permutations generated with a recursive method.

```
1 // Fig. 15.12: Permutation.java
2 // Recursive method to find all permutations of a String.
3
4 public class Permutation
5 {
6    // recursive declaration of method permuteString
7    private void permuteString(
8        String beginningString, String endingString )
9    {
10       // base case: if string to permute is length less than or equal to
11       // 1, just display this string concatenated with beginningString
12       if ( endingString.length() <= 1 )
13          System.out.println( beginningString + endingString );
14       else // recursion step: permute endingString
15          {
16             // for each character in endingString
17             for ( int i = 0; i < endingString.length(); i++ )
18                {
19                   try
20                      {
21                        // create new string to permute by eliminating the
22                        // character at index i
23                        String newString = endingString.substring( 0, i ) +
24                            endingString.substring( i + 1 );
25
26                        // recursive call with a new string to permute
27                        // and a beginning string to concatenate, which
28                        // includes the character at index i
29                        permuteString( beginningString +
30                           endingString.charAt( i ), newString );
31                      } end try
32                      catch ( StringIndexOutOfBoundsException exception )
33                          {
34                             exception.printStackTrace();
35                          } end catch
36                     } end for
37                } end else
38            } end method permuteString
39        } // end class Permutation
```
The recursion step occurs in lines 1437. The for statement makes a recursive call for each of the substrings. The current character being removed is the character returned from `endingString.charAt(i)`. Method `charAt` takes an integer argument and returns the character in the `String` at that index. As with arrays, the first element of a string is considered to be at position 0. The for statement iterates through each character in `endingString`, so that permutations will be created that begin with each letter in `endingString`.

To create the substring that needs to be permuted, the character at index `i` needs to be removed from the string that will be passed in the recursive call. To remove a character, we concatenate two substrings: the first substring contains all the characters that occur before the character being removed, and the second substring contains the portion of the string that occurs after the character being removed. For instance, to remove the character "s" from the word "recursion," we create the new string by concatenating the first substring, "recur", with "ion", resulting in "recurion." Lines 2324 create this substring using `String` method `substring`. Class `String` provides two `substring` methods to return a new `String` object created by copying part of an existing `String` object. The call in line 23 passes method `substring` two integers (0 and `i`). The first argument specifies the starting index in the original string from which characters are copied. The second argument specifies the index one beyond the last character to be copied (i.e., copy up to, but not including, that index in the string). The substring returned contains copies of the specified range of characters from the original string. Therefore, the method call in line 23 returns all the characters from the beginning of `endingString` up to, but not including, the character at index `i` (the character we are trying to remove). If the arguments are outside the bounds of the string, the program generates a `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException` (handled in lines 3235).

The method call in line 24 uses the `substring` method that takes one integer argument (`i+1`), which specifies the starting index in the original string from which characters are to be copied. The substring returned contains a copy of the characters from the starting index to the end of the string. Therefore, the method call in line 24 returns all the characters that occur after the character we are trying to remove. If the argument is outside the bounds of the string, the program generates a `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException` (also handled in lines 3235).

Lines 2930 perform the recursive call. The first argument passed is `beginningString` concatenated with `endingString.charAt(i)`. This way we combine
the characters isolated from previous calls (beginningString) with the character being isolated in this call. The second argument is newString, which is the substring to be permuted.

**Figure 15.13** tests our recursive method. Line 9 creates a Scanner object to read a string in from the keyboard. Line 10 creates a Permutation object with which to call method permuteString. The string is read in at line 13 and passed to method permuteString in line 16. Note that this call provides an empty string as the first argument and the string to permute as the second argument. Because we have not yet removed any characters from the string, beginningString (the first argument) should be an empty string. Some programmers may want to define method permuteString as private, and create another public method that takes only the string to permute. This method could then call permuteString with the empty string as the first argument and the string to permute as the second argument. This would ensure that the user does not enter something other than the empty string as the first argument to method permuteString.

**Figure 15.13. Testing the recursive method for permutations.**
(This item is displayed on page 760 in the print version)
The permutations will be printed to the command prompt. Note that if a string is entered with repeated characters (e.g., "hello"), each character is treated on its own, resulting in repeated permutations. One way to handle this problem is to store permutations as they are created when each new permutation is formed, check the previously created strings and add the new string only if it has not already appeared. Finally, note from the output that there are 24 permutations for the string "math". The number of unique permutations for a string with \( n \) unique characters is equal to the factorial of \( n \) (i.e., there are four characters in "math", resulting in 4! permutations, or 24 permutations).
15.8. Towers of Hanoi

In the preceding sections of this chapter, we studied methods that can be easily implemented both recursively and iteratively. In this section, we present a problem whose recursive solution demonstrates the elegance of recursion, and whose iterative solution may not be as apparent.

The **Towers of Hanoi** is one of the most famous classic problems every budding computer scientist must grapple with. Legend has it that in a temple in the Far East, priests are attempting to move a stack of golden disks from one diamond peg to another (Fig. 15.14). The initial stack has 64 disks threaded onto one peg and arranged from bottom to top by decreasing size. The priests are attempting to move the stack from one peg to another under the constraints that exactly one disk is moved at a time and at no time may a larger disk be placed above a smaller disk. Three pegs are provided, one being used for temporarily holding disks. Supposedly, the world will end when the priests complete their task, so there is little incentive for us to facilitate their efforts.

Let us assume that the priests are attempting to move the disks from peg 1 to peg 3. We wish to develop an algorithm that prints the precise sequence of peg-to-peg disk transfers.
If we were to approach this problem with conventional methods, we would rapidly find ourselves hopelessly knotted up in managing the disks. Instead, attacking this problem with recursion in mind allows the steps to be simple. Moving $n$ disks can be viewed in terms of moving only $n - 1$ disks (hence the recursion) as follows:

1. Move $n - 1$ disks from peg 1 to peg 2, using peg 3 as a temporary holding area.

2. Move the last disk (the largest) from peg 1 to peg 3.

3. Move the $n - 1$ disks from peg 2 to peg 3, using peg 1 as a temporary holding area.

The process ends when the last task involves moving $n = 1$ disk (i.e., the base case). This task is accomplished by simply moving the disk, without the need for a temporary holding area.

Figure 15.15 displays the precise instructions it will take to move the disks from the starting peg to the destination peg. In the constructor (lines 912), the number of disks to be moved ($\text{numDisks}$) is initialized. Method $\text{solveTowers}$ (lines 1534) solves the Towers of Hanoi puzzle given the total number of disks (in this case 3 ), the starting peg, the ending peg, and the temporary holding peg as parameters. The base case (lines 1923) occurs when only one disk needs to be moved from the starting peg to the ending peg. In the recursion step (lines 2733), line 27 moves $\text{disks - 1}$ disks from the first peg ($\text{sourcePeg}$) to the temporary holding peg ($\text{tempPeg}$). When all but one of the disks have been moved to the temporary peg, line 30 records the step to move one disk, the largest one, from the start peg to the destination peg. Line 33 finishes the rest of the moves by calling the method $\text{solveTowers}$ to recursively move $\text{disks - 1}$ disks from the temporary peg ($\text{tempPeg}$) back to the destination peg ($\text{destinationPeg}$), this time using the first peg ($\text{sourcePeg}$) as the temporary peg.
public class TowersOfHanoi

{  
    int numDisks; // number of disks to move

    public TowersOfHanoi( int disks )
    {
        numDisks = disks;
    } // end TowersOfHanoi constructor

    // recursively move disks through towers
    public void solveTowers( int disks, int sourcePeg, int destinationPeg, int tempPeg )
    {
        // base case -- only one disk to move
        if ( disks == 1 )
        {
            System.out.printf( "\n%d --> %d", sourcePeg, destinationPeg );
            return;
        } // end if

        // recursion step -- move disk to tempPeg, then to destinationPeg
        // move ( disks - 1 ) disks from sourcePeg to tempPeg recursively
        solveTowers( disks - 1, sourcePeg, tempPeg, destinationPeg );

        // move last disk from sourcePeg to destinationPeg
        System.out.printf( "\n%d --> %d", sourcePeg, destinationPeg );

        // move ( disks - 1 ) disks from tempPeg to destinationPeg
        solveTowers( disks - 1, tempPeg, destinationPeg, sourcePeg );
    } // end method solveTowers

} // end class TowersOfHanoi

Figure 15.16 tests our Towers of Hanoi solution. In the main method (lines 616), line 12 creates a TowersOfHanoi object, passing as a parameter the total number of disks to be moved from one peg to another. Line 15 calls the recursive solveTowers method which outputs the steps to the command prompt.

Figure 15.16. Testing the Towers of Hanoi solution.
```java
int tempPeg = 2;    // value 2 used to indicate tempPeg in output
int totalDisks = 3; // number of disks
TowersOfHanoi towersOfHanoi = new TowersOfHanoi( totalDisks );
// initial nonrecursive call: move all disks.
towersOfHanoi.solveTowers( totalDisks, startPeg, endPeg, tempPeg );
```
15.9. Fractals

A fractal is a geometric figure that often can be generated from a pattern repeated recursively an infinite number of times (Fig. 15.17). The figure is modified by applying the pattern to each segment of the original figure. Real geometric figures do not have their patterns repeated an infinite number of times, but after several repetitions appear as they would if repeated infinitely. We will look at a few such approximations in this section. [Note: We will refer to our geometric figures as fractals, even though they are approximations.] Although these figures had been studied before the 20th century, it was the Polish mathematician Benoit Mandelbrot who introduced the term "fractal" in the 1970s, along with the specifics of how a fractal is created and the practical applications of fractals. Mandelbrot's fractal geometry provides mathematical models for many complex forms found in nature, such as mountains, clouds and coastlines. Fractals have many uses in mathematics and science. Fractals can be used to better understand systems or patterns that appear in nature (e.g., ecosystems), in the human body (e.g., in the folds of the brain), or in the universe (e.g., galaxy clusters). Drawing fractals has become a popular art form. Fractals have a self-similar property when subdivided into parts, each resembles a reduced-size copy of the whole. Many fractals yield an exact copy of the original when a portion of the original image is magnified such a fractal is said to be strictly self similar. Links are provided in Section 15.12 for various Web sites that discuss and demonstrate fractals.

Figure 15.17. Koch Curve fractal.
As an example, let us look at a popular strictly self-similar fractal known as the **Koch Curve** (Fig. 15.17). This fractal is formed by removing the middle third of each line in the drawing and replacing it with two lines that form a point, such that if the middle third of the original line remained, an equilateral triangle would be formed. Formulas for creating fractals often involve removing all or part of the previous fractal image. This pattern has already been determined for this fractal in this section we focus not on how to determine what formulas are needed for a specific fractal, but how to use those formulas within a recursive solution. Most formulas can be used to create fractals, but not all fractals will resemble objects in nature.

We start with a straight line (Fig. 15.17, Part a) and apply the pattern, creating a triangle from the middle third (Fig. 15.17, Part b). We then apply the pattern again to each straight line, resulting in Fig. 15.17, Part c. Each time the pattern is applied, we say that the fractal is at a new **level**, or **depth** (sometimes the term **order** is also used). Fractals can be displayed at many levels—for instance, a fractal at level 3 has had three iterations of the pattern applied (Fig. 15.17, Part d). After only a few iterations, this fractal begins to look the same, like a portion of a snowflake (Fig. 15.17, Parts e and f). The
applications of the pattern are now too small for the human eye to see a difference. Since this is a strictly self-similar fractal, each portion of the fractal contains an exact copy of the fractal. In Part \( f \) of Fig. 15.17, for example, we have highlighted a portion of the fractal with a dashed red box. If the image in this box were increased in size, it would look exactly like the entire fractal of Part \( f \).

There is a similar fractal, the **Koch Snowflake**, which is the same as the Koch Curve but begins with a triangle rather than a line. The same pattern is applied to each side of the triangle, resulting in an image that looks like an enclosed snowflake. We have chosen to focus on the Koch Curve for simplicity. We will be moving on shortly to another fractal, but if the reader wishes to learn more about the Koch Curve and Koch Snowflake, see the links in Section 15.12.

We now demonstrate the use of recursion to draw fractals by writing a program to create a strictly self-similar fractal. We call this the "Lo fractal," named for Sin Han Lo, a Deitel & Associates colleague who created it. The fractal will eventually resemble one-half of a feather (see the outputs in Fig. 15.24). The base case, or fractal level of 0, begins as a line between two points, \( A \) and \( B \) (Fig. 15.18). To create the next higher level, we find the midpoint (\( C \)) of the line. To calculate the location of point \( C \), use the following formula: [Note: The \( x \) and \( y \) to the left of each letter refer to the \( x \)-coordinate and \( y \)-coordinate of that point, respectively. For instance, \( xA \) refers to the \( x \)-coordinate of point \( A \), while \( yC \) refers to the \( y \)-coordinate of point \( C \). In our diagrams we denote the point by its letter, followed by two numbers representing the \( x \)- and \( y \)-coordinates.]

\[
x_C = (x_A + x_B) / 2; \\
y_C = (y_A + y_B) / 2;
\]

**Figure 15.18'. "Lo fractal" at level 0.**
(This item is displayed on page 766 in the print version)
To create this fractal, we also must find a point \( D \) that lies left of segment \( AC \) and creates an isosceles right triangle \( ADC \). To calculate the location of point \( D \), use the following formulas:

\[
\begin{align*}
x_D &= x_A + (x_C - x_A) / 2 - (y_C - y_A) / 2; \\
y_D &= y_A + (y_C - y_A) / 2 + (x_C - x_A) / 2;
\end{align*}
\]

We continue the example in \textbf{Fig. 15.18} by moving on to the next level (from level 0 to level 1) as follows: First, add points \( C \) and \( D \) (as in \textbf{Fig. 15.19}). Then, remove the original line and add segments \( DA, DC \) and \( DB \). The remaining lines curve at an angle, causing our fractal to look like a feather. For the next level of the fractal, this algorithm is repeated on each of the three lines in level 1. For each line, the formulas above are applied, where the former point \( D \) is now considered to be point \( A \), while the other end of each line is considered to be point \( B \). \textbf{Figure 15.20} contains the line from level 0 (now a dashed line) and the three added lines from level 1. We have changed point \( D \) to be point \( A \), and the original points \( A, C \) and \( B \) to \( B_1, B_2 \) and \( B_3 \) (the numbers are used to differentiate the various points). The preceding formulas have been used to find the new points \( C \) and \( D \) on each line. These points are also numbered 13 to keep track of which point is associated with each line. The points \( C_1 \) and \( D_1 \), for instance, represent points \( C \) and \( D \) associated with the line formed from points \( A \) to \( B_1 \). To achieve level 2, the three lines in \textbf{Fig. 15.20} are removed and replaced with new lines from the \( C \) and \( D \) points just added. \textbf{Figure 15.21} shows the new lines (the lines from level 2 are shown as dashed lines for your convenience). \textbf{Figure 15.22} shows level 2 without the dashed lines from level 1. Once this process has been repeated several times, the fractal created will begin to look like one-half of a feather, as shown in the output of \textbf{Fig. 15.24}. We will discuss the code for this application shortly.
Figure 15.19. Determining points C and D for level 1 of "Lo fractal."

Figure 15.20. "Lo fractal" at level 1, with C and D points determined for level 2. [Note: The fractal at level 0 is included as a dashed line as a reminder of where the line was located in relation to the current fractal.]

(This item is displayed on page 767 in the print version)
Figure 15.21. "Lo fractal" at level 2, with dashed lines from level 1 provided.
(This item is displayed on page 767 in the print version)

Figure 15.22. "Lo fractal" at level 2.
(This item is displayed on page 768 in the print version)

Figure 15.23. Demonstrating the fractal user interface.
(This item is displayed on pages 768 - 770 in the print version)
public class Fractal extends JFrame {

    private final int WIDTH = 400; // define width of GUI
    private final int HEIGHT = 480; // define height of GUI
    private final int MIN_LEVEL = 0;
    private Color color = Color.BLUE;

    private JButton changeColorJButton, increaseLevelJButton, decreaseLevelJButton;
    private JLabel levelJLabel;
    private FractalJPanel drawSpace;
    private JPanel mainJPanel, controlJPanel;

    // set up GUI
    public Fractal() {
        super( "Fractal" );

        // set up control panel
        controlJPanel = new JPanel();
        controlJPanel.setLayout( new FlowLayout() );

        // set up color button and register listener
        changeColorJButton = new JButton( "Color" );
        controlJPanel.add( changeColorJButton );
        changeColorJButton.addActionListener( new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
        {
            // process changeColorJButton event
            public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
            {
                color = JColorChooser.showDialog( Fractal.this, "Choose a color", color );
                // set default color, if no color is returned
                if ( color == null )
                    color = Color.BLUE;
                drawSpace.setColor( color );
            } // end method actionPerformed
        } // end anonymous inner class
    } // end addActionListener

    // set up decrease level button to add to control panel and
    // register listener
    decreaseLevelJButton = new JButton( "Decrease Level" );
    controlJPanel.add( decreaseLevelJButton );
    decreaseLevelJButton.addActionListener( new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
{
    int level = drawSpace.getLevel();
    level--; // decrease level by one

    // modify level if possible
    if (level >= MIN_LEVEL)
    {
        levelJLabel.setText("Level: "+level);
        drawSpace.setLevel(level);
        repaint();
    } // end if
} // end method actionPerformed

// set up increase level button to add to control panel
// and register listener
increaseLevelJButton = new JButton("Increase Level");
controlJPanel.add(increaseLevelJButton);
increaseLevelJButton.addActionListener(new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
{
    // process increaseLevelJButton event
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        int level = drawSpace.getLevel();
        level++; // increase level by one

        // modify level if possible
        if (level >= MIN_LEVEL)
        {
            levelJLabel.setText("Level: "+level);
            drawSpace.setLevel(level);
            repaint();
        } // end if
    } // end method actionPerformed
} // end anonymous inner class
);

// set up levelJLabel to add to controlJPanel
levelJLabel = new JLabel("Level: 0");
controlJPanel.add(levelJLabel);

drawSpace = new FractalJPanel(0);

// create mainJPanel to contain controlJPanel and drawSpace
mainPanel = new JPanel();
mainPanel.add(controlJPanel);
mainPanel.add(drawSpace);
add(mainPanel); // add JPanel to JFrame
setSize(WIDTH, HEIGHT); // set size of JFrame
setVisible(true); // display JFrame
}

public static void main(String args[])
{
Fractal demo = new Fractal();
demo.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
}
} // end class Fractal

Figure 15.24. Drawing "Lo fractal" using recursion.
(This item is displayed on pages 771 - 773 in the print version)

1 // Fig. 15.24: FractalJPanel.java
2 // FractalJPanel demonstrates recursive drawing of a fractal.
3 import java.awt.Graphics;
4 import java.awt.Color;
5 import java.awt.Dimension;
6 import javax.swing.JPanel;
7
8 public class FractalJPanel extends JPanel
9 {
  private Color color; // stores color used to draw fractal
  private int level; // stores current level of fractal

  private final int WIDTH = 400; // defines width of JPanel
  private final int HEIGHT = 400; // defines height of JPanel

  // set the initial fractal level to the value specified
  // and set up JPanel specifications
  public FractalJPanel( int currentLevel )
  {
    color = Color.BLUE; // initialize drawing color to blue
    level = currentLevel; // set initial fractal level
    setBackground( Color.WHITE );
    setPreferredSize( new Dimension( WIDTH, HEIGHT ) );
  } // end FractalJPanel constructor

  // draw fractal recursively
  public void drawFractal( int level, int xA, int yA, int xB, int yB, Graphics g )
  {
    // base case: draw a line connecting two given points
    if ( level == 0 )
      g.drawLine( xA, yA, xB, yB );
    else // recursion step: determine new points, draw next level
    {
      // calculate midpoint between (xA, yA) and (xB, yB)
      int xC = ( xA + xB ) / 2;
      int yC = ( yA + yB ) / 2;

      // calculate the fourth point (xD, yD) which forms an
      // isosceles right triangle between (xA, yA) and (xC, yC)
      // where the right angle is at (xD, yD)
      int xD = xA + ( xC - xA ) / 2 - ( yC - yA ) / 2;
      int yD = yA + ( yC - yA ) / 2 + ( xC - xA ) / 2;

      // recursively draw the Fractal
      drawFractal( level - 1, xD, yD, xA, yA, g );
  }
drawFractal( level - 1, xD, yD, xC, yC, g );
drawFractal( level - 1, xD, yD, xB, yB, g );
} // end else
} // end method drawFractal

// start the drawing of fractal
public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
{
    super .paintComponent( g );

    // draw fractal pattern
    g.setColor( color );
    drawFractal( level, 100, 90, 290, 200, g );
} // end method paintComponent

// set the drawing color to c
public void setColor( Color c )
{
    color = c;
} // end method setColor

// set the new level of recursion
public void setLevel( int currentLevel )
{
    level = currentLevel;
} // end method setLevel

// returns level of recursion
public int getLevel()
{
    return level;
} // end method getLevel
} // end class FractalJPanel
The application in Fig. 15.23 defines the user interface for drawing this fractal (shown at the end of Fig. 15.24). The interface consists of three buttons one for the user to change the color of the fractal, one to increase the level of recursion and one to decrease the level of recursion. A JLabel will keep track of the current level of recursion, which is modified by calling method setLevel, to be discussed shortly. Lines 1516 specify constants WIDTH and HEIGHT to be 400 and 480 respectively for the size of the JFrame. The default color to draw the fractal will be blue (line 18). The user triggers an ActionEvent by clicking the Color button. The event handler for this button is registered in lines 3854. The method actionPerformed displays a JColorChooser. This dialog returns the selected Color object or blue (if the user presses Cancel or closes the dialog without pressing OK). Line 51 calls the setColor method in class FractalJPanel to update the color.

The event handler for the Decrease Level button is registered in lines 6078. In method actionPerformed, lines 6667 retrieve the current level of recursion and decrement it by 1. Line 70 checks to make sure that the level is greater than or equal to 0 (MIN_LEVEL). This is because the fractal is not defined for any recursion level lower than 0. The program allows the user to go up to any desired level, but it is important to note that at a certain point (level 10 and higher in this example) the rendering of the fractal becomes increasingly slower, as there is a lot of detail to be drawn. Lines 7274 reset the level label to reflect the change—the new level is set and the repaint method is called to update the image to show the fractal corresponding to the new level.

The Increase Level JButton works the same way as the Decrease Level JButton, except that the level is incremented rather than decremented to show more details of the fractal (lines 9091). When the application is first executed, the level will be set to 0, which will display a blue line between two points that were specified in the FractalJPanel class.

The FractalJPanel class in Fig. 15.24 specifies the dimensions of the drawing JPanel to be 400 by 400 (lines 1314). The FractalJPanel constructor (lines 1824) takes the current level as a parameter and assigns it to its instance variable level. Instance variable color is set to the default color blue. Lines 2223 change the background color of the JPanel to be white (for visibility of the colors used to draw the fractal), and set the new dimensions of the JPanel where the fractal
Lines 2750 define the recursive method that creates the fractal. This method takes six parameters: the level, four integers that specify the $x$ and $y$ coordinates of two points, and the Graphics object $g$. The base case for this method (line 31) occurs when level equals 0, at which time a line will be drawn between the two points given as parameters. Lines 3643 calculate $(x_C, y_C)$, the midpoint between $(x_A, y_A)$ and $(x_B, y_B)$, and $(x_D, y_D)$, the point that creates a right isosceles triangle with $(x_A, y_A)$ and $(x_C, y_C)$. Lines 4648 make three recursive calls on three different sets of points.

In method paintComponent, line 59 makes the first call to method drawFractal to start the drawing. This method call is not recursive, but all subsequent calls to drawFractal performed from the body of drawFractal are. Since the lines will not be drawn until the base case is reached, the distance between two points decreases on each recursive call. As the level of recursion increases, the fractal becomes smoother and more detailed. The shape of this fractal stabilizes as the level approaches 11. Fractals will stabilize at different levels based on the shape and size of the fractal.

Fig. 15.24 shows the development of the fractal from level zero to six. The last image shows the defining shape of the fractal at level 11. If we focus on one of the arms of this fractal, it would be identical to the whole image. This property defines the fractal to be strictly self-similar. See Section 15.12 for further resources on fractals.
15.10. Recursive Backtracking

In this chapter's examples, our recursive methods all have a similar architecture: if the base case is reached, return a result; if not, make one or more recursive calls. In this section we will explore a recursive method that is slightly more complex. This method finds a path through a maze, returning true if there is a possible solution to the maze. The solution involves moving through the maze one step at a time where moves can be made by going down, right, up or left (diagonal moves are not permitted). From the current location in the maze (starting with the entry point), the following steps are taken: A direction is chosen, the move is made in that direction and a recursive call is made to solve the remainder of the maze from the new location. When a dead end is reached (i.e., we cannot take any more steps forward without hitting a wall), we back up to the previous location and try to go in a different direction. If there is no other direction that can be taken, we back up again. This process continues until we find a point in the maze where a move can be made in another direction. Once such a location is found, we move in the new direction and continue with another recursive call to solve the rest of the maze.

To back up to the previous location in the maze, our recursive method simply returns false, moving up the method-call chain to the previous recursive call (which references the previous location in the maze). This process of using recursion to return to an earlier decision point is known as **recursive backtracking**. If one set of recursive calls does not result in a solution to the problem, the program backs up to the previous decision point and makes a different decision, often resulting in another set of recursive calls. In this example, the previous decision point is the previous location in the maze, and the decision to be made is the direction that the next move should take. One direction has led to a dead end, so the search continues with a different direction. Unlike our other recursive programs, which reached the base case and then returned all the way up the method-call chain to the original method call, the recursive backtracking solution to the maze problem uses recursion to return only part of the way up the method-call chain, then try a different direction. If the backtracking reaches the entry location of the maze and the paths in all directions have been attempted, the maze does not have a solution.
In the chapter exercises you are asked to implement recursive backtracking solutions to the maze problem (Exercise 15.20, Exercise 15.21 and Exercise 15.22) and the Eight Queens problem (Exercise 15.15), which attempts to find a way to place eight queens on an empty chessboard so that no queen is "attacking" any other (i.e., no two queens are in the same row, in the same column or along the same diagonal). See Section 15.12 for links to further information on recursive backtracking.
15.11. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned how to create recursive methods, i.e., methods that call themselves. You learned that recursive methods typically divide a problem into two conceptual pieces: a piece that the method knows how to do (the base case) and a piece that the method does not know how to do (the recursion step). The recursion step is a slightly simpler version of the original problem, and is performed by a recursive method call. You saw some popular recursion examples, including calculating factorials and producing values in the Fibonacci series. You learned how recursion works "under the hood," including the order in which recursive method calls are pushed on or popped off the program execution stack. Next, you learned the differences between recursive and iterative (non-recursive) methods. In that discussion, you learned that iterative solutions usually use a repetition statement, whereas recursive solutions usually use a selection statement. You learned how to solve more complex problems using recursion, including finding all permutations of a string and displaying fractals. The chapter concluded with an introduction to recursive backtracking, a technique for solving problems that involves backing up through recursive calls to try different possible solutions. In the next chapter, you will learn numerous techniques for sorting lists of data and searching for an item in a list of data, and under what circumstances each searching and sorting technique should be used.
15.12. Internet and Web Resources

Recursion Concepts

[Link to Chortle](chortle.ccsu.ctstateu.edu/cs151/cs151java.html) Provides links to files that discuss recursion in detail, using questions to guide the reader.

[Link to Wikipedia](en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Recursion) Article from Wikipedia (an online encyclopedia) provides the basics of recursion and several resources for students.

[Link to Cafe au Lait](www.cafeaulait.org/javatutorial.html) Provides a nice, brief introduction to recursion in Java, and also covers other Java topics.

Stacks

[Link to Normark](www.cs.auc.dk/~normark/eciu-recursion/html/recit-slide-implerec.html) Provides slides discussing the implementation of recursion using stacks.

[Link to Juniata](faculty.juniata.edu/kruse/cs2java/recurimpl.htm) Provides a detailed diagram of the program execution stack and discusses how the stack works.

Fractals

[Link to Rice](math.rice.edu/~lanius/frac/) Provides examples of other fractals, such as the Koch Snowflake,
Sierpinski gasket, and Jurassic Park fractals.

www.lifesmith.com/

Provides hundreds of colorful fractal images along with detailed explanation about the Mandelbrot and Julia sets, two common sets of fractals.

www.jracademy.com/~jtucek/math/fractals.html

Contains two AVI movies created by zooming in continuously on the fractals known as the Mandelbrot and Julia equation sets.

www.faqs.org/faqs/fractal-faq/

Provides answers to many questions about fractals.

spanky.triumf.ca/www/fractint/fractint.html

Contains links to download Fractint, a freeware program for generating fractals.

www.42explore.com/fractal.htm

Lists URLs on fractals and software tools that create fractals.

www.arcytech.org/java/fractals/koch.shtml

Provides a detailed introduction to the Koch Curve fractal and provides an applet demonstrating the fractal.

www.cs.ttu.edu/~denton/fractals/Koch.html

Introduces the Koch fractals, providing source code in Java.

library.thinkquest.org/26688/koch.html

Displays a Koch Curve applet and provides the source code.

Recursive Backtracking


Provides a brief introduction to recursive backtracking, including an example on planning a travel route.
Demonstrates recursive backtracking and walks through several examples.

Provides a program that uses recursive backtracking to solve a problem known as the Pentominos puzzle (described at the site).

Demonstrates using recursive backtracking to solve a scrambled squares puzzle.
Summary

- A recursive method is a method that calls itself directly or indirectly through another method.

- When a recursive method is called to solve a problem, the method actually is capable of solving only the simplest case(s), or base case(s). If the method is called with a base case, the method returns a result.

- If a recursive method is called with a more complex problem than a base case, the method typically divides the problem into two conceptual pieces— a piece that the method knows how to do and a piece that the method does not know how to do.

- To make recursion feasible, the piece that the method does not know how to do must resemble the original problem, but be a slightly simpler or smaller version of it. Because this new problem looks like the original problem, the method calls a fresh copy of itself to work on the smaller problem— this is called the recursion step.

- For recursion to eventually terminate, each time a method calls itself with a simpler version of the original problem, the sequence of smaller and smaller problems must converge on a base case. When, the method recognizes the base case, it returns a result to the previous copy of the method.

- A recursive call may be a call to another method, which in turn makes a call back to the original method. Such a process still results in a recursive call to the original method. This is known as an indirect recursive call or indirect recursion.

- Either omitting the base case or writing the recursion step incorrectly so that it does not converge on the base case can cause infinite recursion, eventually exhausting memory. This error is analogous to the problem of an infinite loop in an iterative (nonrecursive) solution.
The Fibonacci series begins with 0 and 1 and has the property that each subsequent Fibonacci number is the sum of the preceding two Fibonacci numbers.

The ratio of successive Fibonacci numbers converges on a constant value of 1.618..., a number that has been called the golden ratio or the golden mean.

Some recursive solutions, such as Fibonacci (which makes two calls per recursion step), result in an "explosion" of method calls.

The stack is a data structure whose data objects can be added or removed only at the top of the stack.

A stack is analogous to a pile of dishes. When a dish is placed on the pile, it is always placed at the top (referred to as pushing the dish onto the stack). Similarly, when a dish is removed from the pile, it is always removed from the top (referred to as popping the dish off the stack).

Stacks are known as last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structures: the last item pushed (inserted) on the stack is the first item popped (removed) from the stack.

Stacks have many interesting applications. For example, when a program calls a method, the called method must know how to return to its caller, so the return address of the calling method is pushed onto the program execution stack (sometimes referred to as the method call stack).

The program execution stack contains the memory for local variables on each invocation of a method during a program's execution. This data, stored as a portion of the program execution stack, is known as the activation record or stack frame of the method call.

If there are more recursive or nested method calls than can be stored on the program execution stack, an error known as a stack overflow occurs.

Both iteration and recursion are based on a control statement: Iteration uses a repetition statement, whereas recursion uses a selection statement.

Both iteration and recursion involve repetition: Iteration explicitly uses a repetition statement, whereas recursion achieves repetition through
repeated method calls.

- Iteration and recursion each involve a termination test: Iteration terminates when the loop-continuation condition fails, whereas recursion terminates when a base case is recognized.

- Iteration with counter-controlled repetition and recursion each gradually approach termination: Iteration keeps modifying a counter until the counter assumes a value that makes the loop-continuation condition fail, whereas recursion keeps producing simpler versions of the original problem until the base case is reached.

- Both iteration and recursion can occur infinitely: An infinite loop occurs with iteration if the loop-continuation test never becomes false, whereas infinite recursion occurs if the recursion step does not reduce the problem each time in a manner that converges on the base case.

- Recursion repeatedly invokes the mechanism, and consequently the overhead, of method calls.

- Any problem that can be solved recursively can also be solved iteratively.

- A recursive approach is normally preferred over an iterative approach when the recursive approach more naturally mirrors the problem and results in a program that is easier to understand and debug.

- A recursive approach can often be implemented with few lines of code, but a corresponding iterative approach might take a large amount of code. Another reason to choose a recursive solution is that an iterative solution might not be apparent.

- The permutations of a string are all the different strings that can be created by rearranging the characters of the original string.

- Method `charAt` of class `String` takes an integer argument and returns the character in the `String` at that index. As with arrays, the first element of a string is considered to be at position 0.
Class String provides two substring methods to enable a new String object to be created by copying part of an existing String object. Each method returns a new String object.

If method substring is passed two integer arguments, the first argument specifies the starting index from which characters are copied in the original string, and the second argument specifies the index one beyond the last character to be copied.

If method substring is passed one integer argument, the argument specifies the starting index in the original string from which characters are to be copied. The substring returned contains a copy of the characters from the starting index to the end of the string.

A fractal is a geometric figure that is generated from a pattern repeated recursively an infinite number of times. The figure grows by adding the pattern at different orientations and scaling to the original.

Fractals have a self-similar property when subdivided into parts, each is a reduced-size copy of the whole.

The process of using recursion to return to an earlier decision point is known as recursive backtracking. If one set of recursive calls does not result in a solution to the problem, the program backs up to the previous decision point and makes a different decision, often resulting in another set of recursive calls.
Terminology

activation record

anagram

backtracking

base case

charAt method of String

complexity theory

converge on a base case

Eight Queens problem

exhaustive recursion

factorial

Fibonacci series

fractal

fractal depth

fractal level

fractal order

golden mean

golden ratio

indirect recursion
infinite recursion

Koch Curve fractal

Koch Snowflake fractal

last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structures

level of a fractal

Maze Traversal problem

method call stack

palindrome

permutation

program execution stack

recursion overhead

recursion step

recursive backtracking

recursive call

recursive evaluation

recursive method

self-similar fractal

stack

stack frame
stack overflow

strictly self-similar fractal

substring method of String

termination test

Towers of Hanoi problem
Self-Review Exercises

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. A method that calls itself indirectly is not an example of recursion.

2. Recursion can be efficient in computation because of reduced memory space usage.

3. When a recursive method is called to solve a problem, the method actually is capable of solving only the simplest case(s), or base case(s).

4. To make recursion feasible, the recursion step in a recursive solution must resemble the original problem, but be a slightly larger version of it.

A __________ is needed to terminate recursion.

1. recursion step

2. break statement

3. void return type

4. base case

The first call to invoke a recursive method is __________.

1. not recursive

2. recursive

3. the recursion step

4. none of the above

Each time a fractal's pattern is applied, the fractal is said to be at a new __________.

1. width

2. height

3. level

4. volume

Iteration and recursion each involve a __________.

1. repetition statement

2. termination test

3. counter variable

4. None of the above
1. The ratio of successive Fibonacci numbers converges on a constant value of 1.618..., a number that has been called the __________ or the __________.

2. Data can be added or removed only from the __________ of the stack.

3. Stacks are known as _________ data structures—the last item pushed (inserted) on the stack is the first item popped (removed) from the stack.

4. The program execution stack contains the memory for local variables on each invocation of a method during a program's execution. This data, stored as a portion of the program execution stack, is known as the __________ or __________ of the method call.

5. If there are more recursive or nested method calls than can be stored on the program execution stack, an error known as a(n) _________ occurs.

6. Iteration normally uses a repetition statement, whereas recursion normally uses a(n) _________ statement.

7. Fractals have a(n) _________ property when subdivided into parts, each is a reduced-size copy of the whole.

8. The _________ of a string are all the different strings that can be created by rearranging the characters of the original string.

9. The program execution stack is also referred to as the _________ stack.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

15.1
a) False. A method that calls itself indirectly is an example of recursion—more specifically, an example of indirect recursion.
b) False. Recursion can be inefficient in computation because of multiple method calls and memory space usage.
c) True.
d) False. To make recursion feasible, the recursion step in a recursive solution must resemble the original problem, but be a slightly *smaller* version of it.

15.2 d

15.3 a

15.4 c

15.5 b

15.6 a) golden ratio, golden mean. b) top. c) last-in, first-out (LIFO). d) activation record, stack frame. e) stack overflow. f) selection. g) self-similar. h) permutations. i) method-call.
Exercises

What does the following code do?

```java
public int mystery(int a, int b) {
    if (b == 1)
        return a;
    else
        return a + mystery(a, b - 1);
} // end method mystery
```

Find the error(s) in the following recursive method, and explain how to correct it (them). This method should find the sum of the values from 0 to n.

```java
public int sum(int n) {
    if (n == 0)
        return 0;
    else
        return n + sum(n);
} // end method sum
```

(Recursive power Method) Write a recursive method `power(base, exponent)` that, when called, returns \(\text{base}^{\text{exponent}}\).

For example, `power(3, 4) = 3 * 3 * 3 * 3`. Assume that `exponent` is an integer greater than or equal to 1. [Hint: The recursion step should use the relationship \(\text{base}^{\text{exponent}} = \text{base} \cdot \text{base}^{\text{exponent} - 1}\)\] and the terminating condition occurs when `exponent` is equal to 1, because \(\text{base}^1 = \text{base}\).

Incorporate this method into a program that enables the user to enter the `base` and `exponent`.

(Visualizing Recursion) It is interesting to watch recursion "in action." Modify the factorial method in Fig. 15.3 to print its local variable and recursive-call parameter. For each recursive call, display the outputs on a separate line, and add a level of indentation. Do your utmost to make the outputs clear, interesting and meaningful. Your goal here is to design and implement an output format that makes it easier to understand recursion. You may want to add such display capabilities.
(Greatest Common Divisor) The greatest common divisor of integers $x$ and $y$ is the largest integer that evenly divides into both $x$ and $y$. Write a recursive method $\text{gcd}$ that returns the greatest common divisor of $x$ and $y$. The $\text{gcd}$ of $x$ and $y$ is defined recursively as follows:

If $y$ is equal to 0, then $\text{gcd}(x, y)$ is $x$; otherwise, $\text{gcd}(x, y)$ is $\text{gcd}(y, x \% y)$, where $\%$ is the remainder operator. Use this method to replace the one you wrote in the application of Exercise 6.27.

What does the following program do?

```java
// Exercise 15.12 Solution: MysteryClass.java
public class MysteryClass {
  public int mystery(int array2[], int size) {
    if (size == 1)
      return array2[0];
    else
      return array2[size - 1] + mystery(array2, size - 1);
  }
}
```

What does the following program do?

```java
// Exercise 15.12 Solution: MysteryTest.java
public class MysteryTest {
  public static void main(String args[]) {
    MysteryClass mysteryObject = new MysteryClass();
    int array[] = {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10};
    int result = mysteryObject.mystery(array, array.length);
    System.out.printf("Result is: %d\n", result);
  }
}
```

What does the following program do?

```java
// Exercise 15.13 Solution: SomeClass.java
public class SomeClass {
  public String someMethod(int array2[], int x, String output) {
    if (x < array2.length)
      return String.format("%s%d ", someMethod(array2, x + 1), array2[x]);
  }
}
```
11    else
12    return "";
13    } // end method someMethod
14 } // end class SomeClass

15.13
1    // Exercise 15.13 Solution: SomeClassTest.java
2    public class SomeClassTest
3    {
4        public static void main( String args[] )
5        {
6            SomeClass someClassObject = new SomeClass();
7            int array[] = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 };
8            String results =
9                someClassObject.someMethod( array, 0 );
10            System.out.println( results );
11        } // end main
12    } // end class SomeClassTest

(Palindromes) A palindrome is a string that is spelled the same way forwards and backwards. Some examples of palindromes are "radar," "able was i ere i saw elba" and (if spaces are ignored) "a man a plan a canal panama." Write a recursive method testPalindrome that returns boolean value true if the string stored in the array is a palindrome and false otherwise. The method should ignore spaces and punctuation in the string.

(Eight Queens) A puzzler for chess buffs is the Eight Queens problem, which asks the following: Is it possible to place eight queens on an empty chessboard so that no queen is "attacking" any other (i.e., no two queens are in the same row, in the same column or along the same diagonal)? For instance, if a queen is placed in the upper-left corner of the board, no other queens could be placed in any of the marked squares shown in Fig. 15.25. Solve the problem recursively. [Hint: Your solution should begin with the first column and look for a location in that column where a queen can be placed initially, place the queen in the first row. The solution should then recursively search the remaining columns. In the first few columns, there will be several locations where a queen may be placed. Take the first available location. If a column is reached with no possible location for a queen, the program should return to the previous column, and move the queen in that column to a new row. This continuous backing up and trying new alternatives is an example of recursive backtracking.]

15.15

Figure 15.25. Squares eliminated by placing a queen in the upper-left corner of a chessboard.
15.16 (Print an Array) Write a recursive method `printArray` that displays all the elements in an array of integers, separated by spaces.

15.17 (Print an Array Backwards) Write a recursive method `stringReverse` that takes a character array containing a string as an argument and prints the string backwards. [Hint: Use String method `toCharArray`, which takes no arguments, to get a char array containing the characters in the String.]

15.18 (Find the Minimum Value in an Array) Write a recursive method `recursiveMinimum` that determines the smallest element in an array of integers. The method should return when it receives an array of one element.

15.19 (Fractals) Repeat the fractal pattern in Section 15.9 to form a star. Begin with five lines, instead of one, where each line is a different arm of the star. Apply the "Lo fractal" pattern to each arm of the star.

15.19 (Maze Traversal Using Recursive Backtracking) The grid of #s and dots (.) in Fig. 15.26 is a two-dimensional array representation of a maze. The #s represent the walls of the maze, and the dots represent locations in the possible paths through the maze. Moves can be made only to a
Write a recursive method (mazeTraversal) to walk through mazes like the one in Fig. 15.26. The method should receive as arguments a 12-by-12 character array representing the maze and the current location in the maze (the first time this method is called, the current location should be the entry point of the maze). As mazeTraversal attempts to locate the exit, it should place the character \( x \) in each square in the path. There is a simple algorithm for walking through a maze that guarantees finding the exit (assuming there is an exit). If there is no exit, you will arrive at the starting location again. The algorithm for this method is as follows: From the current location in the maze, try to move one space in any of the possible directions (down, right, up or left). If it is possible to move in at least one direction, call mazeTraversal recursively, passing the new spot on the maze as the current spot. If it is not possible to go in any directions, "back up" to a previous location in the maze and try a new direction for that location. Program the method to display the maze after each move so the user can watch as the maze is solved. The final output...
of the maze should display only the path needed to solve the maze if going in a particular direction results in a dead end, the x's going in that direction should not be displayed. [Hint: To display only the final path, it may be helpful to mark off spots that result in a dead end with another character (such as '0').]

15.21 (Generating Mazes Randomly) Write a method `mazeGenerator` that takes as an argument a two-dimensional 12-by-12 character array and randomly produces a maze. The method should also provide the starting and ending locations of the maze. Test your method `mazeTraversal` from Exercise 15.20, using several randomly generated mazes.

15.22 (Mazes of Any Size) Generalize methods `mazeTraversal` and `mazeGenerator` of Exercise 15.20 and Exercise 15.21 to process mazes of any width and height.

15.23 (Time to Calculate Fibonacci Numbers) Enhance the Fibonacci program of Fig. 15.5 so that it calculates the approximate amount of time required to perform the calculation and the number of calls made to the recursive method. For this purpose, call static `System` method `currentTimeMillis`, which takes no arguments and returns the computer's current time in milliseconds. Call this method twice once before the call to `fibonacci` and once after the call to `fibonacci`. Save each of these values and calculate the difference in the times to determine how many milliseconds were required to perform the calculation. Then, add a variable to the `FibonacciCalculator` class, and use this variable to determine the number of calls made to method
fibonacci. Display your results.
Chapter 16. Searching and Sorting

*With sobs and tears he sorted out*

*Those of the largest size ...*

Lewis Carroll

*Attempt the end, and never stand to doubt;*

*Nothing's so hard, but search will find it out.*

Robert Herrick

*Tis in my memory lock'd, And you yourself shall keep the key of it.*

William Shakespeare

*It is an immutable law in business that words are words, explanations are explanations, promises are promises but only performance is reality.*

Harold S. Green

**OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will learn:

- To search for a given value in an array using linear search and binary search.
- To sort arrays using the iterative selection and insertion sort algorithms.
- To sort arrays using the recursive merge sort algorithm.
- To determine the efficiency of searching and sorting algorithms.
16.1 Introduction

16.2 Searching Algorithms

   16.2.1 Linear Search

   16.2.2 Binary Search

16.3 Sorting Algorithms

   16.3.1 Selection Sort

   16.3.2 Insertion Sort

   16.3.3 Merge Sort

16.4 Invariants

16.5 Wrap-up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
16.1. Introduction

Searching data involves determining whether a value (referred to as the search key) is present in the data and, if so, finding the value's location. Two popular search algorithms are the simple linear search and the faster but more complex binary search. Sorting places data in order, typically ascending or descending, based on one or more sort keys. A list of names could be sorted alphabetically, bank accounts could be sorted by account number, employee payroll records could be sorted by social security number, and so on. This chapter introduces two simple sorting algorithms, the selection sort and the insertion sort, along with the more efficient but more complex merge sort. Figure 16.1 summarizes the searching and sorting algorithms discussed in this book.

**Figure 16.1. Searching and sorting algorithms in this text.**
(This item is displayed on page 787 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Algorithm</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Searching Algorithms:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Linear Search</td>
<td>Section 16.2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Binary Search</td>
<td>Section 16.2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recursive Linear Search</td>
<td>Exercise 16.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recursive Binary Search</td>
<td>Exercise 16.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Linear search of a List</td>
<td>Exercise 17.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Binary tree search</td>
<td>Exercise 17.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>binarySearch method of class Collections</td>
<td>Fig. 19.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sorting Algorithms:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Selection Sort</td>
<td>Section 16.3.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algorithm</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insertion Sort</td>
<td>Section 16.3.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recursive Merge Sort</td>
<td>Section 16.3.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bubble Sort</td>
<td>Exercises 16.3 and 16.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bucket Sort</td>
<td>Exercise 16.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recursive Quicksort</td>
<td>Exercise 16.10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary tree sort</td>
<td>Section 17.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sort method of class Fig. 19.8 Collections SortedSet collection Fig. 19.11</td>
<td>Fig. 19.19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16.2. Searching Algorithms

Looking up a phone number, accessing a Web site and checking the definition of a word in a dictionary all involve searching large amounts of data. The next two sections discuss two common search algorithms—one that is easy to program yet relatively inefficient and one that is relatively efficient but more complex and difficult to program.

16.2.1. Linear Search

The linear search algorithm searches each element in an array sequentially. If the search key does not match an element in the array, the algorithm tests each element, and when the end of the array is reached, informs the user that the search key is not present. If the search key is in the array, the algorithm tests each element until it finds one that matches the search key and returns the index of that element.

As an example, consider an array containing the following values

\[ 34 \ 56 \ 2 \ 10 \ 77 \ 51 \ 93 \ 30 \ 5 \ 52 \]

and a program that is searching for 51. Using the linear search algorithm, the program first checks whether 34 matches the search key. It does not, so the algorithm checks whether 56 matches the search key. The program continues moving through the array sequentially, testing 2, then 10, then 77. When the program tests 51, which matches the search key, the program returns the index 5, which is the location of 51 in the array. If, after checking every array element, the program determines that the search key does not match any element in the array, the program returns a sentinel value (e.g. -1).

Figure 16.2 declares the LinearArray class. This class has two private instance variables—an array of ints named data, and a static Random object to fill the array with randomly generated ints. When an object of class LinearArray is instantiated, the constructor (lines 1219) creates and initializes the array data.
with random ints in the range 10-99. If there are duplicate values in the array, linear search returns the index of the first element in the array that matches the search key.

**Figure 16.2. LinearArray class.**
(This item is displayed on page 788 in the print version)

```java
// Fig 16.2: LinearArray.java
// Class that contains an array of random integers and a method
// that will search that array sequentially
import java.util.Random;

public class LinearArray
{
    private int[] data; // array of values
    private static Random generator = new Random();

    public LinearArray(int size)
    {
        data = new int[size]; // create space for array
        // fill array with random ints in range 10-99
        for (int i = 0; i < size; i++)
            data[i] = 10 + generator.nextInt(90);
    }

    public int linearSearch(int searchKey)
    {
        // loop through array sequentially
        for (int index = 0; index < data.length; index++)
            if (data[index] == searchKey)
                return index; // return index of integer
        return -1; // integer was not found
    }

    public String toString()
    {
        StringBuffer temporary = new StringBuffer();
        // iterate through array
        for (int element : data)
            temporary.append(element + " ");
        temporary.append("\n"); // add endline character
        return temporary.toString();
    }
}
```

---

1 // Fig 16.2: LinearArray.java
2 // Class that contains an array of random integers and a method
3 // that will search that array sequentially
4 import java.util.Random;
5
6 public class LinearArray
7 {
8    private int[] data; // array of values
9    private static Random generator = new Random();
10
11    // create array of given size and fill with random numbers
12    public LinearArray(int size)
13    {
14        data = new int[size]; // create space for array
15
16        // fill array with random ints in range 10-99
17        for (int i = 0; i < size; i++)
18            data[i] = 10 + generator.nextInt(90);
19    } // end LinearArray constructor
20
21    // perform a linear search on the data
22    public int linearSearch(int searchKey)
23    {
24        // loop through array sequentially
25        for (int index = 0; index < data.length; index++)
26            if (data[index] == searchKey)
27                return index; // return index of integer
28
29        return -1; // integer was not found
30    } // end method linearSearch
31
32    // method to output values in array
33    public String toString()
34    {
35        StringBuffer temporary = new StringBuffer();
36
37        // iterate through array
38        for (int element : data)
39            temporary.append(element + " ");
40
41        temporary.append("\n"); // add endline character
42        return temporary.toString();
43    } // end method toString
44} // end class LinearArray
Lines 2230 perform the linear search. The search key is passed to parameter searchKey. Lines 2527 loop through the elements in the array. Line 26 compares each element in the array with searchKey. If the values are equal, line 27 returns the index of the element. If the loop ends without finding the value, line 29 returns -1. Lines 3343 declare method toString, which returns a String representation of the array for printing.

Figure 16.3 creates a LinearArray object containing an array of 10 ints (line 16) and allows the user to search the array for specific elements. Lines 2022 prompt the user for the search key and store it in searchInt. Lines 2541 then loop until the searchInt is equal to -1. The array holds ints from 10-99 (line 18 of Fig. 16.2). Line 28 calls method linearSearch to determine whether searchInt is in the array. If searchInt is not in the array, linearSearch returns -1 and the program notifies the user (lines 3132). If searchInt is in the array, linearSearch returns the position of the element, which the program outputs in lines 3435. Lines 3840 retrieve the next integer from the user.

---

**Figure 16.3. LinearSearchTest class.**

(This item is displayed on pages 789 - 790 in the print version)
Efficiency of Linear Search

Searching algorithms all accomplish the same goal—finding an element that matches a given search key, if such an element does, in fact, exist. There are, however, a number of things that differentiate search algorithms from another. The major difference is the amount of effort they require to complete the search. One way to describe this effort is with Big O notation, which indicates the worst-case run time for an algorithm, that is, how hard an algorithm may have to work to solve a problem. For searching and sorting algorithms, this is particularly dependent on how many data elements there are.
Suppose an algorithm is designed to test whether the first element of an array is equal to the second element of the array. If the array has 10 elements, this algorithm requires one comparison. If the array has 1,000 elements, the algorithm still requires one comparison. In fact, the algorithm is completely independent of the number of elements in the array. This algorithm is said to have a **constant run time**, which is represented in Big O notation as \( O(1) \). An algorithm that is \( O(1) \) does not necessarily require only one comparison. \( O(1) \) just means that the number of comparisons is constant; it does not grow as the size of the array increases. An algorithm that tests whether the first element of an array is equal to any of the next three elements is still \( O(1) \) even though it requires three comparisons.

An algorithm that tests whether the first element of an array is equal to any of the other elements of the array will require at most \( n - 1 \) comparisons, where \( n \) is the number of elements in the array. If the array has 10 elements, this algorithm requires up to nine comparisons. If the array has 1,000 elements, this algorithm requires up to 999 comparisons. As \( n \) grows larger, the \( n \) part of the expression "dominates" and subtracting one becomes inconsequential. Big O is designed to highlight these dominant terms and ignore terms that become unimportant as \( n \) grows. For this reason, an algorithm that requires a total of \( n - 1 \) comparisons (such as the one we described earlier) is said to be \( O(n) \). An \( O(n) \) algorithm is referred to as having a **linear run time**. \( O(n) \) is often pronounced "on the order of \( n \)" or more simply "order \( n \)."

Now suppose you have an algorithm that tests whether any element of an array is duplicated elsewhere in the array. The first element must be compared with every other element in the array. The second element must be compared with every other element except the first (it was already compared to the first). The third element must be compared with every other element except the first two. In the end, this algorithm will end up making \( (n - 1) + (n - 2) + \ldots + 2 + 1 \) or \( n^2/2 \) comparisons. As \( n \) increases, the \( n^2 \) term dominates and the \( n \) term becomes inconsequential. Again, Big O notation highlights the \( n^2 \) term, leaving \( n^2/2 \). But as we will soon see, constant factors are omitted in Big O notation.

Big O is concerned with how an algorithm's run time grows in relation to the number of items processed. Suppose an algorithm requires \( n^2 \) comparisons. With four elements, the algorithm will require 16 comparisons; with eight
elements, the algorithm will require 64 comparisons. With this algorithm, doubling the number of elements quadruples the number of comparisons. Consider a similar algorithm requiring \( n^2/2 \) comparisons. With four elements, the algorithm will require eight comparisons; with eight elements, the algorithm will require 32 comparisons. Again, doubling the number of elements quadruples the number of comparisons. Both of these algorithms grow as the square of \( n \), so Big O ignores the constant and both algorithms are considered to be \( O(n^2) \), which is referred to as **quadratic run time** and pronounced "on the order of \( n \)-squared" or more simply "order \( n \)-squared."

When \( n \) is small, \( O(n^2) \) algorithms (running on today's billion-operation-per-second personal computers) will not noticeably affect performance. But as \( n \) grows you will start to notice the performance degradation. An \( O(n^2) \) algorithm running on a million-element array would require a trillion "operations" (where each could actually require several machine instructions to execute). This could require a few hours to execute. A billion-element array would require a quintillion operations, a number so large that the algorithm could take decades! \( O(n^2) \) algorithms, unfortunately, are easy to write, as you will see in this chapter. You will also see algorithms with more favorable Big O measures. These efficient algorithms often take a bit more cleverness and work to create, but their superior performance can be well worth the extra effort, especially as \( n \) gets large and as algorithms are compounded into larger programs.

The linear search algorithm runs in \( O(n) \) time. The worst case in this algorithm is that every element must be checked to determine whether the search item exists in the array. If the size of the array is doubled, the number of comparisons that the algorithm must perform is also doubled. Note that linear search can provide outstanding performance if the element matching the search key happens to be at or near the front of the array. But we seek algorithms that perform well, on average, across all searches, including those where the element matching the search key is near the end of the array.

Linear search is the easiest search algorithm to program, but it can be slow compared to other search algorithms. If a program needs to perform many searches on large arrays, it may be better to implement a different, more efficient algorithm, such as the binary search which we present in the next section.

**Performance Tip 16.1**
Sometimes the simplest algorithms perform poorly. Their virtue is that they are easy to program, test and debug. Sometimes more complex algorithms are required to realize maximum performance.

16.2.2. Binary Search

The **binary search algorithm** is more efficient than the linear search algorithm, but it requires that the array be sorted. The first iteration of this algorithm tests the middle element in the array. If this matches the search key, the algorithm ends. Assuming the array is sorted in ascending order, then if the search key is less than the middle element, the search key cannot match any element in the second half of the array and the algorithm continues with only the first half of the array (i.e., the first element up to, but not including the middle element). If the search key is greater than the middle element, the search key cannot match any element in the first half of the array and the algorithm continues with only the second half of the array (i.e., the element after the middle element through the last element). Each iteration tests the middle value of the remaining portion of the array. If the search key does not match the element, the algorithm eliminates half of the remaining elements. The algorithm ends either by finding an element that matches the search key or reducing the sub-array to zero size.

As an example consider the sorted 15-element array

\[
2 \ 3 \ 5 \ 10 \ 27 \ 30 \ 34 \ 51 \ 56 \ 65 \ 77 \ 81 \ 82 \ 93 \ 99
\]

and a search key of 65. A program implementing the binary search algorithm would first check whether 51 is the search key (because 51 is the middle element of the array). The search key (65) is larger than 51, so 51 is discarded along with the first half of the array (all elements smaller than 51.) Next, the algorithm checks whether 81 (the middle element of the remainder of the array) matches the search key. The search key (65) is smaller than 81, so 81 is discarded along with the elements larger than 81. After just two tests,
the algorithm has narrowed the number of values to check to three (56, 65 and 77). The algorithm then checks 65 (which indeed matches the search key), and returns the index of the array element containing 65. This algorithm required just three comparisons to determine whether the search key matched an element of the array. Using a linear search algorithm would have required 10 comparisons. 

[Note: In this example, we have chosen to use an array with 15 elements so that there will always be an obvious middle element in the array. With an even number of elements, the middle of the array lies between two elements. We implement the algorithm to chose the lower of those two elements.]

**Figure 16.4** declares class *BinaryArray*. This class is similar to *LinearArray* it has two private instance variables, a constructor, a search method (*binarySearch*), a remainingElements method and a toString method. Lines 1322 declare the constructor. After initializing the array with random ints from 1099 (lines 1819), line 21 calls the *Arrays.sort* method on the array *data*. Method *sort* is a static method of class *Arrays* that sorts the elements in an array in ascending order. Recall that the binary search algorithm will work only on a sorted array.

---

**Figure 16.4. BinaryArray class.**

(This item is displayed on pages 792 - 793 in the print version)

```java
// Fig 16.4: BinaryArray.java
// Class that contains an array of random integers and a method
// that uses binary search to find an integer.
import java.util.Random;
import java.util.Arrays;

public class BinaryArray
{
    private int[] data; // array of values
    private static Random generator = new Random();

    // create array of given size and fill with random integers
    public BinaryArray( int size )
    {
        data = new int[ size ]; // create space for array
        // fill array with random ints in range 10-99
        for ( int i = 0; i < size; i++ )
            data[ i ] = 10 + generator.nextInt( 90 );
```
Arrays.sort(data);

// end BinaryArray constructor

// perform int binary search on the data
public int binarySearch(int searchElement) {
    int low = 0; // low end of the search area
    int high = data.length - 1; // high end of the search area
    int middle = (low + high + 1) / 2; // middle element
    int location = -1; // return value; -1 if not found

    do { // loop to search for element
        // print remaining elements of array
        System.out.print(remainingElements(low, high));

        // output spaces for alignment
        for (int i = 0; i < middle; i++)
            System.out.print("   ");
        System.out.println("*"); // indicate current middle

        // if the element is found at the middle
        if (searchElement == data[middle])
            location = middle; // location is the current middle

        // middle element is too high
        else if (searchElement < data[middle])
            high = middle - 1; // eliminate the higher half

        // middle element is too low
        else
            low = middle + 1; // eliminate the lower half

        middle = (low + high + 1) / 2; // recalculate the middle
    } while ((low <= high) && (location == -1));

    return location; // return location of search key
} // end method binarySearch

// method to output certain values in array
public String remainingElements(int low, int high) {
    StringBuffer temporary = new StringBuffer();

    // output spaces for alignment
    for (int i = 0; i < low; i++)
        temporary.append("   ");

    // output elements left in array
    for (int i = low; i <= high; i++)
        temporary.append(data[i] + " ");

    temporary.append("\n");
    return temporary.toString();
} // end method remainingElements

// method to output values in array
public String toString() {
    return remainingElements(0, data.length - 1);
} // end method toString

} // end class BinaryArray
Lines 2556 declare method `binarySearch`. The search key is passed into parameter `searchElement` (line 25). Lines 2729 calculate the low end index, high end index and middle index of the portion of the array that the program is currently searching. At the beginning of the method, the low end is 0, the high end is the length of the array minus 1 and the middle is the average of these two values. Line 30 initializes the location of the element to -1, the value that will be returned if the element is not found. Lines 3253 loop until low is greater than high (this occurs when the element is not found) or location does not equal -1 (indicating that the search key was found). Line 43 tests whether the value in the middle element is equal to searchElement. If this is True, line 44 assigns middle to location. Then the loop terminates and location is returned to the caller. Each iteration of the loop tests a single value (line 43) and eliminates half of the remaining values in the array (line 48 or 50).

Lines 2644 of Fig. 16.5 loop until the user enters -1. For each other number the user enters, the program performs a binary search on the data to determine whether it matches an element in the array. The first line of output from this program is the array of ints, in increasing order. When the user instructs the program to search for 23, the program first tests the middle element, which is 42 (as indicated by *). The search key is less than 42, so the program eliminates the second half of the array and tests the middle element from the first half of the array. The search key is smaller than 34, so the program eliminates the second half of the array, leaving only three elements. Finally, the program checks 23 (which matches the search key) and returns the index 1.

Figure 16.5. **BinarySearchTest class.**
(This item is displayed on pages 794 - 795 in the print version)
Scanner input = new Scanner( System.in );

int searchInt; // search key
int position; // location of search key in array

// create array and output it
BinaryArray searchArray = new BinaryArray( 15 );
System.out.println( searchArray );

// get input from user
System.out.print( "Please enter an integer value (-1 to quit): " );
searchInt = input.nextInt(); // read an int from user
System.out.println();

// repeatedly input an integer; -1 terminates the program
while ( searchInt != -1 )
{
    // use binary search to try to find integer
    position = searchArray.binarySearch( searchInt );

    // return value of -1 indicates integer was not found
    if ( position == -1 )
        System.out.println( "The integer " + searchInt + " was not found.\n" );
    else
        System.out.println( "The integer " + searchInt + " was found in position " + position + ".\n" );

    // get input from user
    System.out.print( "Please enter an integer value (-1 to quit): " );
    searchInt = input.nextInt(); // read an int from user
    System.out.println();
} // end while
} // end main
} // end class BinarySearchTest

Please enter an integer value (-1 to quit): 23
13 23 24 34 35 36 38 42 47 51 68 74 75 85 97
  * 13 23 24 34 35 36 38
  * 13 23 24
  * The integer 23 was found in position 1.

Please enter an integer value (-1 to quit): 75
13 23 24 34 35 36 38 42 47 51 68 74 75 85 97
  * 47 51 68 74 75 85 97
The integer 75 was found in position 12.

Please enter an integer value (-1 to quit): 52

The integer 52 was not found.

Please enter an integer value (-1 to quit): -1

Efficiency of Binary Search

In the worst-case scenario, searching a sorted array of 1,023 elements will take only 10 comparisons when using a binary search. Repeatedly dividing 1,023 by 2 (because after each comparison, we are able to eliminate half of the array) and rounding down (because we also remove the middle element) yields the values 511, 255, 127, 63, 31, 15, 7, 3, 1 and 0. The number 1,023 ($2^{10}+1$) is divided by 2 only 10 times to get the value 0, which indicates that there are no more elements to test. Dividing by 2 is equivalent to one comparison in the binary-search algorithm. Thus, an array of 1,048,575 ($2^{20}+1$) elements takes a maximum of 20 comparisons to find the key, and an array of over one billion elements takes a maximum of 30 comparisons to find the key. This is a tremendous improvement in performance over the linear search. For a one-billion-element array, this is a difference between an average of 500 million comparisons for the linear search and a maximum of only 30 comparisons for the binary search! The maximum number of comparisons needed for the binary search of any sorted array is the exponent of the first power of 2 greater than the number of elements in the array which is represented as $\log_2 n$. All logarithms grow at roughly the same rate, so in big O notation the base can be omitted. This results in a big O of $O(\log n)$ for a
binary search which is also known as \textit{logarithmic run time}. 
16.3. Sorting Algorithms

Sorting data (i.e., placing the data into some particular order, such as ascending or descending) is one of the most important computing applications. A bank sorts all checks by account number so that it can prepare individual bank statements at the end of each month. Telephone companies sort their lists of accounts by last name and, further, by first name to make it easy to find phone numbers. Virtually every organization must sort some data, and often, massive amounts of it. Sorting data is an intriguing, computer-intensive problem that has attracted intense research efforts.

An important item to understand about sorting is that the end result—the sorted array—will be the same no matter which algorithm you use to sort the array. The choice of algorithm affects only the run time and memory use of the program. The rest of the chapter introduces three common sorting algorithms. The first two—selection sort and insertion sort—are simple algorithms to program, but are inefficient. The last algorithm—merge sort—is a much faster algorithm than selection sort and insertion sort, but is harder to program. We focus on sorting arrays of primitive type data, namely ints. It is possible to sort arrays of objects of classes as well. We discuss this in Section 19.6.1.

16.3.1. Selection Sort

Selection sort is a simple, but inefficient, sorting algorithm. The first iteration of the algorithm selects the smallest element in the array and swaps it with the first element. The second iteration selects the second-smallest item (which is the smallest item of the remaining elements) and swaps it with the second element. The algorithm continues until the last iteration selects the second-largest element and swaps it with the second-to-last index, leaving the largest element in the last index. After the $i$th iteration, the smallest $i$ items of the array will be sorted into increasing order in the first $i$ elements of the array.

As an example, consider the array

```
34  56  4  10  77  51  93  30  5  52
```
A program that implements selection sort first determines the smallest element (4) of this array which is contained in index 2. The program swaps 4 with 34, resulting in

```
4  56  34  10  77  51  93  30  5  52
```

The program then determines the smallest value of the remaining elements (all elements except 4), which is 5, contained in index 8. The program swaps 5 with 56, resulting in

```
4  5  34  10  77  51  93  30  56  52
```

On the third iteration, the program determines the next smallest value (10) and swaps it with 34.

```
4  5  10  34  77  51  93  30  56  52
```

The process continues until the array is fully sorted.

```
4  5  10  30  34  51  52  56  77  93
```

Note that after the first iteration, the smallest element is in the first position. After the second iteration, the two smallest elements are in order in the first two positions. After the third iteration, the three smallest elements are in order in the first three positions.

Figure 16.6 declares the SelectionSort class. This class has two private instance variables: an array of int s named data, and a static Random object to generate random integers to fill the array. When an object of class SelectionSort is instantiated, the constructor (lines 1219) creates and initializes the array data with random ints in the range 1099.
SelectionSort class.

(Figure 16.6: SelectionSort.java)

This item is displayed on pages 798 - 799 in the print version.)

1 // Fig 16.6: SelectionSort.java
2 // Class that creates an array filled with random integers.
3 // Provides a method to sort the array with selection sort.
4 import java.util.Random;

5 public class SelectionSort
6 {
7     private int[] data; // array of values
8     private static Random generator = new Random();
9
10     // create array of given size and fill with random integers
11     public SelectionSort(int size)
12     {
13         data = new int[size]; // create space for array
14
15         // fill array with random ints in range 10-99
16         for (int i = 0; i < size; i++)
17             data[i] = 10 + generator.nextInt(90);
18     } // end SelectionSort constructor

19     // sort array using selection sort
20     public void sort()
21     {
22         int smallest; // index of smallest element
23
24         // loop over data.length - 1 elements
25         for (int i = 0; i < data.length - 1; i++)
26         {
27             smallest = i; // first index of remaining array
28
29                 // loop to find index of smallest element
30                 for (int index = i + 1; index < data.length; index++)
31                     if (data[index] < data[smallest])
32                         smallest = index;
33
34             swap(i, smallest); // swap smallest element into position
35             printPass(i + 1, smallest); // output pass of algorithm
36         } // end outer for
37     } // end method sort

38     // helper method to swap values in two elements
39     public void swap(int first, int second)
40     {
41         int temporary = data[first]; // store first in temporary
42         data[first] = data[second]; // replace first with second
43         data[second] = temporary; // put temporary in second
44     } // end method swap

45     // print a pass of the algorithm
46     public void printPass(int pass, int index)
47     {
48         System.out.print(String.format("after pass %2d: ", pass));
49     } // output elements till selected item
Lines 2239 declare the `sort` method. Line 24 declares the variable `smallest`, which will store the index of the smallest element in the remaining array. Lines 2738 loop `data.length - 1` times. Line 29 initializes the index of the smallest element to the current item. Lines 3234 loop over the remaining elements in the array. For each of these elements, line 33 compares its value to the value of the smallest element. If the current element is smaller than the smallest element, line 34 assigns the current element's index to `smallest`. When this loop finishes, `smallest` will contain the index of the smallest element in the remaining array. Line 36 calls method `swap` (lines 4247) to place the smallest remaining element in the next spot in the array.

Line 9 of Fig. 16.7 creates a `SelectionSort` object with 10 elements. Line 12 implicitly call method `toString` to output the unsorted object. Line 14 calls method `sort` (lines 2239 of Fig. 16.6), which sorts the elements using selection sort. Then lines 1617 output the sorted object. The output of this program uses dashes to indicate the portion of the array that is sorted after each pass. An asterisk is placed next to the position of the element that was swapped with the smallest element on that pass. On each pass, the element next to the asterisk and the element above the rightmost set of dashes were the two
values that were swapped.

Figure 16.7. SelectionSortTest class.
(This item is displayed on pages 799 - 800 in the print version)

```
1 // Fig 16.7: SelectionSortTest.java
2 // Test the selection sort class.
3
4 public class SelectionSortTest
5 {
6    public static void main( String[] args )
7    {
8        // create object to perform selection sort
9            SelectionSort sortArray = new SelectionSort( 10 );
10       System.out.println( "Unsorted array:" );
11       System.out.println( sortArray ); // print unsorted array
12
13       sortArray.sort(); // sort array
14       System.out.println( "Sorted array:" );
15       System.out.println( sortArray ); // print sorted array
16    } // end main
17 } // end class SelectionSortTest
```

Unsorted array:
61 87 80 58 40 50 20 13 71 45

after pass 1: 13 87 80 58 40 50 20 61* 71 45
   --

after pass 2: 13 20 80 58 40 50 87* 61 71 45
   -- --

after pass 3: 13 20 40 58 80* 50 87 61 71 45
   -- -- --

after pass 4: 13 20 40 45 80 50 87 61 71 58*
   -- -- -- --

after pass 5: 13 20 40 45 50 80* 87 61 71 58
   -- -- -- -- --

after pass 6: 13 20 40 45 50 58 87 61 71 80*
   -- -- -- -- -- --

after pass 7: 13 20 40 45 50 58 61 87* 71 80
   -- -- -- -- -- -- --
Efficiency of Selection Sort

The selection sort algorithm runs in $O(n^2)$ time. The sort method in lines 2239 of Fig. 16.6, which implements the selection sort algorithm, contains two for loops. The outer for loop (lines 2738) iterates over the first $n$ elements in the array, swapping the smallest remaining item into its sorted position. The inner for loop (lines 3234) iterates over each item in the remaining array, searching for the smallest element. This loop executes $n$ times during the first iteration of the outer loop, $n - 1$ times during the second iteration, then $n - 2$, $n - 3$, ..., 3, 2, 1. This inner loop will iterate a total of $n(n - 1)/2$ or $(n^2 - n)/2$. In Big O notation, smaller terms drop out and constants are ignored, leaving a final Big O of $O(n^2)$.

16.3.2. Insertion Sort

Insertion sort is another simple, but inefficient, sorting algorithm. The first iteration of this algorithm takes the second element in the array and, if it is less than the first element, swaps it with the first element. The second iteration looks at the third element and inserts it into the correct position with respect to the first two elements, so all three elements are in order. At the $i$th iteration of this algorithm, the first $i$ elements in the original array will be sorted.
Consider as an example the following array [Note: This array is identical to the array used in the discussions of selection sort and merge sort.]

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccccc}
34 & 56 & 4 & 10 & 77 & 51 & 93 & 30 & 5 & 52 \\
\end{array}
\]

A program that implements the insertion sort algorithm will first look at the first two elements of the array, 34 and 56. These two elements are already in order, so the program continues (if they were out of order, the program would swap them).

In the next iteration, the program looks at the third value, 4. This value is less than 56, so the program stores 4 in a temporary variable and moves 56 one element to the right. The program then checks and determines that 4 is less than 34, so it moves 34 one element to the right. The program has now reached the beginning of the array, so it places 4 in the zeroth element. The array now is

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccccc}
4 & 34 & 56 & 10 & 77 & 51 & 93 & 30 & 5 & 52 \\
\end{array}
\]

In the next iteration, the program stores the value 10 in a temporary variable. Then the program compares 10 to 56 and moves 56 one element to the right because it is larger than 10. The program then compares 10 to 34, moving 34 right one element. When the program compares 10 to 4, it observes that 10 is larger than 4 and places 10 in element 1. The array now is

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccccc}
4 & 10 & 34 & 56 & 77 & 51 & 93 & 30 & 5 & 52 \\
\end{array}
\]

Using this algorithm, at the $i$th iteration, the first $i$ elements of the original array are sorted. They may not be in their final locations, however, because smaller values may be located later in the array.

**Figure 16.8** declares the `InsertionSort` class. Lines 2246 declare the `sort` method. Line 24 declares the variable `insert`, which holds the element you are going to insert while you move the other elements. Lines 2745 loop over `data.length - 1` items in the array. In each iteration, line 30 stores in `insert` the
value of the element that will be inserted into the sorted portion of the array. Line 33 declares and initializes the variable `moveItem`, which keeps track of where to insert the element. Lines 36-41 loop to locate the correct position where the element should be inserted. The loop will terminate either when the program reaches the front of the array or when it reaches an element that is less than the value to be inserted. Line 39 moves an element to the right, and line 40 decrements the position at which to insert the next element. After the loop ends, line 43 inserts the element into place.

Figure 16.9 is the same as Fig. 16.7 except that it creates and uses an `InsertionSort` object. The output of this program uses dashes to indicate the portion of the array that is sorted after each pass. An asterisk is placed next to the element that was inserted into place on that pass.

**Figure 16.8. InsertionSort class.**

(This item is displayed on pages 801 - 803 in the print version)

```java
// Fig 16.8: InsertionSort.java
// Class that creates an array filled with random integers.
// Provides a method to sort the array with insertion sort.
import java.util.Random;

public class InsertionSort {
    private int[] data; // array of values
    private static Random generator = new Random();

    // create array of given size and fill with random integers
    public InsertionSort(int size) {
        data = new int[size]; // create space for array

        // fill array with random ints in range 10-99
        for (int i = 0; i < size; i++)
            data[i] = 10 + generator.nextInt(90);
    }

    // sort array using insertion sort
    public void sort() {
        int insert; // temporary variable to hold element to insert

        // loop over data.length - 1 elements
        for (int next = 1; next < data.length; next++)
            // store value in current element
            insert = data[next];

            // initialize location to place element
            int moveItem = next;

            // search for place to put current element
```
while (moveItem > 0 && data[moveItem - 1] > insert) {
    // shift element right one slot
    data[moveItem] = data[moveItem - 1];
    moveItem--;
}  // end while

    data[moveItem] = insert; // place inserted element
    printPass(next, moveItem); // output pass of algorithm
}  // end for
}  // end method sort

    // print a pass of the algorithm
    public void printPass(int pass, int index) {
        System.out.print(String.format("after pass %2d: ", pass));

        // output elements till swapped item
        for (int i = 0; i < index; i++)
            System.out.print(data[i] + " ");

        System.out.print(data[index] + "* "); // indicate swap

        // finish outputting array
        for (int i = index + 1; i < data.length; i++)
            System.out.print(data[i] + " ");

        System.out.print("\n "); // for alignment

        // indicate amount of array that is sorted
        for (int i = 0; i <= pass; i++)
            System.out.print("-- ");
        System.out.println("\n "); // add endline
    }  // end method printPass

    // method to output values in array
    public String toString() {
        StringBuffer temporary = new StringBuffer();

        // iterate through array
        for (int element : data)
            temporary.append(element + " ");

        temporary.append("\n "); // add endline character
        return temporary.toString();
    }  // end method toString

}  // end class InsertionSort

Figure 16.9. InsertionSortTest class.
(This item is displayed on pages 803 - 804 in the print version)
public class InsertionSortTest {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        // create object to perform selection sort
        InsertionSort sortArray = new InsertionSort(10);

        System.out.println("Unsorted array:");
        System.out.println(sortArray); // print unsorted array
        sortArray.sort(); // sort array
        System.out.println("Sorted array:");
        System.out.println(sortArray); // print sorted array
    }
} // end class InsertionSortTest

Unsorted array:
40 17 45 82 62 32 30 44 93 10

after pass 1: 17* 40 45 82 62 32 30 44 93 10
    -- --

after pass 2: 17 40 45* 82 62 32 30 44 93 10
    -- -- --

after pass 3: 17 40 45 82* 62 32 30 44 93 10
    -- -- -- --

after pass 4: 17 40 45 62* 82 32 30 44 93 10
    -- -- -- -- --

after pass 5: 17 32* 40 45 62 82 30 44 93 10
    -- -- -- -- -- --

after pass 6: 17 30* 32 40 45 62 82 44 93 10
    -- -- -- -- -- -- --

after pass 7: 17 30 32* 40 45 62 82 44 93 10
    -- -- -- -- -- -- -- --

after pass 8: 17 30 32 40 44* 45 62 82 93* 10
    -- -- -- -- -- -- -- -- --

after pass 9: 10* 17 30 32 40 44 45 62 82 93
    -- -- -- -- -- -- -- -- -- -- --

Sorted array:
10 17 30 32 40 44 45 62 82 93
Efficiency of Insertion Sort

The insertion sort algorithm also runs in $O(n^2)$ time. Like selection sort, the implementation of insertion sort (lines 2246 of Fig. 16.8) contains two loops. The for loop (lines 2745) iterates data.length - 1 times, inserting an element into the appropriate position in the elements sorted so far. For the purposes of this application, data.length - 1 is equivalent to $n$ (as data.length is the size of the array). The while loop (lines 3641) iterates over the preceding elements in the array. In the worst case, this while loop will require $n$ 1 comparisons. Each individual loop runs in $O(n)$ time. In Big O notation, nested loops mean that you must multiply the number of comparisons. For each iteration of an outer loop, there will be a certain number of iterations of the inner loop. In this algorithm, for each $O(n)$ iterations of the outer loop, there will be $O(n)$ iterations of the inner loop. Multiplying these values results in a Big O of $O(n^2)$.

16.3.3. Merge Sort

Merge sort is an efficient sorting algorithm, but is conceptually more complex than selection sort and insertion sort. The merge sort algorithm sorts an array by splitting it into two equal-sized subarrays, sorting each subarray and then merging them into one larger array. With an odd number of elements, the algorithm creates the two subarrays such that one has one more element than the other.

The implementation of merge sort in this example is recursive. The base case is an array with one element. A one-element array is, of course, sorted, so merge sort immediately returns when it is called with a one-element array. The recursion step splits an array into two approximately equal pieces, recursively sorts them and then merges the two sorted arrays into one larger, sorted array.
Suppose the algorithm has already merged smaller arrays to create sorted arrays A:

4  10  34  56  77

and B:

5  30  51  52  93

Merge sort combines these two arrays into one larger, sorted array. The smallest element in A is 4 (located in the zeroth index of A). The smallest element in B is 5 (located in the zeroth index of B). In order to determine the smallest element in the larger array, the algorithm compares 4 and 5. The value from A is smaller, so 4 becomes the first element in the merged array. The algorithm continues by comparing 10 (the second element in A) to 5 (the first element in B). The value from B is smaller, so 5 becomes the second element in the larger array. The algorithm continues by comparing 10 to 30, with 10 becoming the third element in the array, and so on.

Lines 2225 of Fig. 16.10 declare the sort method. Line 24 calls method sortArray with 0 and data.length - 1 as the arguments. The arguments correspond to the beginning and ending indices of the array to be sorted. These values tell method sortArray to operate on the entire array.

Figure 16.10. MergeSort class.

(This item is displayed on pages 805 - 807 in the print version)

```java
// Figure 16.10: MergeSort.java
// Class that creates an array filled with random integers.
// Provides a method to sort the array with merge sort.
import java.util.Random;
public class MergeSort {
    private int[] data; // array of values
    private static Random generator = new Random();
    // create array of given size and fill with random integers
    public MergeSort( int size )
    {
        data = new int[ size ]; // create space for array
```
// fill array with random ints in range 10-99
for (int i = 0; i < size; i++)
    data[i] = 10 + generator.nextInt(90);

public void sort()
{
    sortArray(0, data.length - 1); // split entire array
}

private void sortArray(int low, int high)
{
    if ((high - low) >= 1) // if not base case
    {
        int middle1 = (low + high) / 2; // calculate middle of array
        int middle2 = middle1 + 1; // calculate next element over

        System.out.println("split: " + subarray(low, high));
        System.out.println("   " + subarray(low, middle1));
        System.out.println("   " + subarray(middle2, high));
        System.out.println();

        sortArray(low, middle1); // first half of array
        sortArray(middle2, high); // second half of array
    }
}

private void merge(int left, int middle1, int middle2, int right)
{
    int leftIndex = left; // index into left subarray
    int rightIndex = middle2; // index into right subarray
    int combinedIndex = left; // index into temporary working array
    int[] combined = new int[data.length]; // working array

    System.out.println("merge: " + subarray(left, middle1));
    System.out.println("   " + subarray(middle2, right));

    while (leftIndex <= middle1 && rightIndex <= right)
    {
        if (data[leftIndex] <= data[rightIndex])
            combined[combinedIndex++] = data[leftIndex++];
        else
            combined[combinedIndex++] = data[rightIndex++];
    }

    if (leftIndex == middle2)
Method `sortArray` is declared in lines 2849. Line 31 tests the base case. If the size of the array is 1, the array is already sorted, so the method simply returns immediately. If the size of the array is greater than 1, the method splits the array in two, recursively calls method `sortArray` to sort the two subarrays, then merges them. Line 43 recursively calls method `sortArray` on the first half of the array, and line 44 recursively calls method `sortArray` on the second half of the array. When these two method calls return, each half of the array has been sorted. Line 47 calls method `merge` (lines 5291) on the two halves of the array to combine the two sorted arrays into one larger sorted array.
Lines 6472 in method **merge** loop until the program reaches the end of either subarray. Line 68 tests which element at the beginning of the arrays is smaller. If the element in the left array is smaller, line 69 places it in position in the combined array. If the element in the right array is smaller, line 71 places it in position in the combined array. When the **while** loop has completed (line 72), one entire subarray is placed in the combined array, but the other subarray still contains data. Line 75 tests whether the left array has reached the end. If so, lines 7778 fill the combined array with the elements of the right array. If the left array has not reached the end, then the right array must have reached the end, and lines 8182 fill the combined array with the elements of the left array. Finally, lines 8586 copy the combined array into the original array. **Figure 16.11** creates and uses a **Merge-Sort** object. The output from this program displays the splits and merges performed by merge sort, showing the progress of the sort at each step of the algorithm.

**Figure 16.11. MergeSortTest class.**
(This item is displayed on pages 808 - 809 in the print version)

```java
1    // Figure 16.11: MergeSortTest.java
2    // Test the merge sort class.
3
4   public class MergeSortTest
5   {
6      public static void main( String[] args )
7      {
8         // create object to perform merge sort
9         MergeSort sortArray = new MergeSort( 10 );
10
11         // print unsorted array
12         System.out.println( "Unsorted:" + sortArray + "\n" );
13
14         sortArray.sort(); // sort array
15
16         // print sorted array
17         System.out.println( "Sorted: " + sortArray );
18      } // end main
19   } // end class MergeSortTest
```

Unsorted: 75 56 85 90 49 26 12 48 40 47  

split: 75 56 85 90 49 26 12 48 40 47  
    75 56 85 90 49  
        26 12 48 40 47
split:  75 56 85 90 49
   75 56 85
      90 49

split:  75 56 85
   75 56
     85

split:  75 56
   75
     56
merge:  75
     56
     56 75

merge:  56 75
     85
     56 75 85

split:       90 49
         90
            49

merge:       90
            49
          49 90

merge:      56 75 85
          49 90
        49 56 75 85 90

split:             26 12 48 40 47
                  26 12 48
                     40 47

split:             26 12 48
                  26 12
                     48

split:             26 12
                  26
                     12

merge:             26
                  12
                  12 26

merge:           12 26
                  48
                12 26 48

split:                40 47
                        40
Efficiency of Merge Sort

Merge sort is a far more efficient algorithm than either insertion sort or selection sort. Consider the first (nonrecursive) call to method `sortArray`. This results in two recursive calls to method `sortArray` with subarrays each approximately half the size of the original array, and a single call to method `merge`. This call to method `merge` requires, at worst, \( n/1 \) comparisons to fill the original array, which is \( O(n) \). (Recall that each element in the array can be chosen by comparing one element from each of the subarrays.) The two calls to method `sortArray` result in four more recursive calls to method `sortArray`, each with a subarray approximately a quarter the size of the original array along with two calls to method `merge`. These two calls to method `merge` each require, at worst, \( n/2 \) \( 1 \) comparisons for a total number of comparisons of \( O(n) \). This process continues, each call to `sortArray` generating two additional calls to `sortArray` and a call to `merge`, until the algorithm has split the array into one-element subarrays. At each level, \( O(n) \) comparisons are required to merge the subarrays. Each level splits the size of the arrays in half, so doubling the size of the array requires one more level. Quadrupling the size of the array requires two more levels. This pattern is logarithmic and results in \( \log_2 n \) levels. This results in a total efficiency of \( O(n \log n) \). Figure 16.12 summarizes many of the searching and sorting algorithms covered in this book and lists the
Big O for each of them. **Figure 16.13** lists the Big O values we have covered in this chapter along with a number of values for \( n \) to highlight the differences in the growth rates.

**Figure 16.12. Searching and sorting algorithms with Big O values.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Algorithm</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Big O</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Searching Algorithms:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linear Search</td>
<td>Section 16.2.1</td>
<td>( O(n) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary Search</td>
<td>Section 16.2.2</td>
<td>( O(\log n) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recursive Linear Search</td>
<td>Exercise 16.8</td>
<td>( O(n) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recursive Binary Search</td>
<td>Exercise 16.9</td>
<td>( O(\log n) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sorting Algorithms:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selection Sort</td>
<td>Section 16.3.1</td>
<td>( O(n^2) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insertion Sort</td>
<td>Section 16.3.2</td>
<td>( O(n^2) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merge Sort</td>
<td>Section 16.3.3</td>
<td>( O(n \log n) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bubble Sort</td>
<td>Exercises 16.3 and 16.4</td>
<td>( O(n^2) )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 16.13. Number of comparisons for common Big O notations.**

(This item is displayed on page 811 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( n = )</th>
<th>( O(\log n) )</th>
<th>( O(n) )</th>
<th>( O(n \log n) )</th>
<th>( O(n^2) )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>10^6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1000000</td>
<td>6000000</td>
<td>10^{12}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000,000,000</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1000000000</td>
<td>9000000000</td>
<td>10^{18}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16.4. Invariants

After writing an application, a programmer typically tests it thoroughly. Creating an exhaustive set of tests often is quite difficult, and it is always possible that a particular case remains untested. One technique that can help you test your programs thoroughly is to use invariants. An **invariant** is an assertion (see Section 13.13) that is true before and after the a portion of your code executes. Invariants are mathematical in nature and their concepts are more applicable to the theoretical side of computer science.

The most common type of invariant is a **loop invariant**. A loop invariant is an assertion that remains true

- before the execution of the loop,
- after every iteration of the loop body, and
- when the loop terminates.

A properly written loop invariant, can help you code a loop correctly. There are four steps to developing a loop from a loop invariant.

1. Set initial values for any loop control variables.
2. Determine the condition that causes the loop to terminate.
3. Modify the control variable(s) so the loop progresses toward termination.
4. Check that the invariant remains true at the end of each iteration.

As an example, we will examine method `linearSearch` from class `LinearArray` in Fig. 16.2. The invariant for the linear search algorithm is:

\[
\text{for all } k \text{ such that } 0 <= k \text{ and } k < \text{index} \\
\quad \text{data[ k ]} \neq \text{searchKey}
\]

For example, suppose `index` equals 3. If we pick any non-negative number less
than 3 such as 1 for the value of \( k \), the element in \( \text{data} \) at location \( k \) in the array does not equal the \( \text{searchKey} \). This invariant basically states that the portion of the array, called a \( \text{subarray} \), from the start of the array up to but not including the element at \( \text{index} \) does not contain the \( \text{searchKey} \). A subarray can have no elements, or it can encompass the entire array.

According to \( \text{Step 1} \), we must first initialize control variable \( \text{index} \). From the invariant, we see that if we set \( \text{index} \) to 0, then the subarray contains zero elements. Therefore, the invariant is true because a subarray with no elements cannot contain a value that matches the \( \text{searchKey} \).

The second step is to determine the condition that causes the loop to terminate. The loop should end after searching the entire array when \( \text{index} \) equals the length of the array. In this case, no element of array \( \text{data} \) matches the \( \text{searchKey} \). Once the \( \text{index} \) reaches the end of the array, the invariant remains true because no elements in the subarray (which in this case is the entire array) equal the \( \text{searchKey} \).

For the loop to proceed to the next element, we increment control variable \( \text{index} \). The last step is to ensure the invariant remains true after each iteration. The if statement (lines 2627 of \( \text{Fig. 16.2} \)) determines whether \( \text{data}[\text{index}] \) equals the \( \text{searchKey} \). If so, the method finishes and returns \( \text{index} \). Because \( \text{index} \) is the first occurrence of \( \text{searchKey} \) in \( \text{data} \), the invariant is still true because the subarray up to \( \text{index} \) does not contain the \( \text{searchKey} \).
16.5. Wrap-up

This chapter introduced searching and sorting data. We discussed two searching algorithms—linear search and binary search—and three sorting algorithms—selection sort, insertion sort, and merge sort. We also introduced Big-O notation, which helps you analyze the efficiency of an algorithm. You also learned about loop invariants, which must remain true before the loop begins executing, while the loop executes, and when the loop terminates. In the next chapter, you will learn about dynamic data structures that can grow or shrink at execution time.
Summary

- Searching data involves determining whether a search key is present in the data and, if so, finding its location.
- Sorting involves arranging data into order.
- The linear search algorithm searches each element in the array sequentially until it finds the correct element. If the element is not in the array, the algorithm tests each element in the array, and when the end of the array is reached, informs the user that the element is not present. If the element is in the array, linear search tests each item until it finds the correct item.
- A major difference among searching algorithms is the amount of effort they require in order to return a result.
- One way to describe the efficiency of an algorithm is with Big O notation ($O$), which indicates how hard an algorithm may have to work to solve a problem.
- For searching and sorting algorithms, Big O is often dependent on how many elements are in the data.
- An algorithm that is $O(1)$ does not necessarily require only one comparison. It just means that the number of comparisons does not grow as the size of the array increases.
- An $O(n)$ algorithm is referred to as having a linear run time.
- Big O is designed to highlight dominant factors and ignore terms that become unimportant with high $n$ values.
- Big O notation is concerned with the growth rate of algorithm run times, so constants are ignored.
- The linear search algorithm runs in $O(n)$ time.
The worst case in linear search is that every element must be checked to determine whether the search item exists. This occurs if the search key is the last element in the array or is not present.

The binary search algorithm is more efficient than the linear search algorithm, but it requires that the array be sorted.

The first iteration of binary search tests the middle element in the array. If this is the search key, the algorithm returns its location. If the search key is less than the middle element, binary search continues with the first half of the array. If the search key is greater than the middle element, binary search continues with the second half of the array. Each iteration of binary search tests the middle value of the remaining array and, if the element is not found, eliminates half of the remaining elements.

Binary search is a more efficient searching algorithm than linear search because binary search with each comparison eliminates from consideration half of the elements in the array.

Binary search runs in $O(\log n)$ time because each step removes half of the remaining elements.

If the size of the array is doubled, binary search requires only one extra comparison to complete successfully.

Selection sort is a simple, but inefficient, sorting algorithm.

The first iteration of selection sort selects the smallest element in the array and swaps it with the first element. The second iteration of selection sort selects the second-smallest item (which is the smallest remaining item) and swaps it with the second element. Selection sort continues until the last iteration selects the second-largest element and swaps it with the second-to-last index, leaving the largest element in the last index. At the $i$th iteration of selection sort, the smallest $i$ items of the whole array are sorted into the first $i$ indices.

The selection sort algorithm runs in $O(n^2)$ time.
• The first iteration of insertion sort takes the second element in the array and, if it is less than the first element, swaps it with the first element. The second iteration of insertion sort looks at the third element and inserts it in the correct position with respect to the first two elements. After the \(i\)th iteration of insertion sort, the first \(i\) elements in the original array are sorted.

• The insertion sort algorithm runs in \(O(n^2)\) time.

• Merge sort is a sorting algorithm that is faster, but more complex to implement, than selection sort and insertion sort.

• The merge sort algorithm sorts an array by splitting the array into two equal-sized subarrays, sorting each subarray recursively and merging the subarrays into one larger array.

• Merge sort's base case is an array with one element. A one-element array is already sorted, so merge sort immediately returns when it is called with a one-element array. The merge part of merge sort takes two sorted arrays (these could be one-element arrays) and combines them into one larger sorted array.

• Merge sort performs the merge by looking at the first element in each array, which is also the smallest element in the array. Merge sort takes the smallest of these and places it in the first element of the larger array. If there are still elements in the subarray, merge sort looks at the second element in that subarray (which is now the smallest element remaining) and compares it to the first element in the other subarray. Merge sort continues this process until the larger array is filled.

• In the worst case, the first call to merge sort has to make \(O(n)\) comparisons to fill the \(n\) slots in the final array.

• The merging portion of the merge sort algorithm is performed on two subarrays, each of approximately size \(n/2\). Creating each of these subarrays requires \(n/2\) 1 comparisons for each subarray, or \(O(n)\) comparisons total. This pattern continues as each level works on twice as many arrays, but each is half the size of the previous array.

• Similar to binary search, this halving results in \(\log n\) levels for a total efficiency of \(O(n \log n)\).
• An invariant is an assertion that is true before and after the execution of a portion of your code.

• A loop invariant is an assertion that is true before you begin executing the loop, during each iteration of the loop and after the loop terminates.
Terminology

**Big O notation**

**binary search**

**constant run time**

**insertion sort**

**invariant**

**linear run time**

**linear search**

**logarithmic run time**

**loop invariant**

**merge sort**

\( O(1) \)

\( O(\log n) \)

\( O(n \log n) \)

\( O(n) \)

\( O(n^2) \)

**search key**

**quadratic run time**

**searching**
selection sort

sorting
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

16.1 1. A selection sort application would take approximately _____ times as long to run on a 128-element array as on a 32-element array.

2. The efficiency of merge sort is _____.

16.2 What key aspect of both the binary search and the merge sort accounts for the logarithmic portion of their respective Big Os?

16.3 In what sense is the insertion sort superior to the merge sort? In what sense is the merge sort superior to the insertion sort?

16.4 In the text, we say that after the merge sort splits the array into two subarrays, it then sorts these two subarrays and merges them. Why might someone be puzzled by our statement that "it then sorts these two subarrays"?
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

16.1 a) 16, because an $O(n^2)$ algorithm takes 16 times as long to sort four times as much information. b) $O(n \log n)$.

Both of these algorithms incorporate "halving" somehow reducing something by half. The binary search 16.2 eliminates from consideration one half of the array after each comparison. The merge sort splits the array in half each time it is called.

16.3 The insertion sort is easier to understand and to program than the merge sort. The merge sort is far more efficient ($O(n \log n)$) than the insertion sort ($O(n^2)$).

16.4 In a sense, it does not really sort these two subarrays. It simply keeps splitting the original array in half until it provides a one-element subarray, which is, of course, sorted. It then builds up the original two subarrays by merging these one-element arrays to form larger subarrays which are then merged, and so on.
Exercises

(Bubble Sort) Implement bubble sortanother simple yet inefficient sorting technique. It is called bubble sort or sinking sort because smaller values gradually "bubble" their way to the top of the array (i.e., toward the first element) like air bubbles rising in water, while the larger values sink to the bottom (end) of the array. The technique uses nested loops to make several passes through the array. Each pass compares successive pairs of elements. If a pair is in increasing order (or the values are equal), the bubble sort leaves the values as they are. If a pair is in decreasing order, the bubble sort swaps their values in the array.

The first pass compares the first two elements of the array and swaps them if necessary. It then compares the second and third elements in the array. The end of this pass compares the last two elements in the array and swaps them if necessary. After one pass, the largest element will be in the last index. After two passes, the largest two elements will be in the last two indices. Explain why bubble sort is an $O(n^2)$ algorithm.

(Enhanced Bubble Sort) Make the following simple modifications to improve the performance of the bubble sort you developed in Exercise 16.5:

1. After the first pass, the largest number is guaranteed to be in the highest-numbered element of the array; after the second pass, the two highest numbers are "in place"; and so on. Instead of making nine comparisons on every pass, modify the bubble sort to make eight comparisons on the second pass, seven on the third pass, and so on.

2. The data in the array may already be in the proper order or near-proper order, so why make nine passes if fewer will suffice? Modify the sort to check at the end of each pass whether any swaps have been made. If none have been made, the data must already be in the proper order, so the program should terminate. If swaps have been made, at least one more pass is needed.

(Bucket Sort) A bucket sort begins with a one-dimensional array of positive integers to be sorted and a two-dimensional array of integers with rows indexed from 0 to 9 and columns indexed from 0 to $n - 1$, where $n$ is the number of values to be sorted. Each row of the two-dimensional array is referred to as a bucket. Write a class named BucketSort containing a method called sort that operates as follows:

1. Place each value of the one-dimensional array into a row of the bucket array, based on the value's "ones" (right-most) digit. For example, 97 is placed in row 7, 3 is placed in row 3 and 100 is placed in row 0. This procedure is called a distribution pass.

2. Loop through the bucket array row by row, and copy the values back to the original array. This procedure is called a gathering pass. The new order of the preceding values in the one-dimensional array is 100, 3 and 97.

3. Repeat this process for each subsequent digit position (tens, hundreds, thousands, etc.).

On the second (tens digit) pass, 100 is placed in row 0, 3 is placed in row 0 (because 3 has no tens digit) and 97 is placed in row 9. After the gathering pass, the order of the values in the one-dimensional array is 100, 3 and 97. On the third (hundreds digit) pass, 100 is placed in row 1, 3 is placed in row 0 and 97 is placed in row 0 (after the 3). After this last gathering pass, the original array is in sorted order.

Note that the two-dimensional array of buckets is 10 times the length of the integer array being sorted. This sorting technique provides better performance than a bubble sort, but requires much
more memory the bubble sort requires space for only one additional element of data. This comparison is an example of the spacetime trade-off: The bucket sort uses more memory than the bubble sort, but performs better. This version of the bucket sort requires copying all the data back to the original array on each pass. Another possibility is to create a second two-dimensional bucket array and repeatedly swap the data between the two bucket arrays.

(Recursive Linear Search) Modify Fig. 16.2 to use recursive method \texttt{recursiveLinearSearch} to perform a linear search of the array. The method should receive the search key and starting index as arguments. If the search key is found, return its index in the array; otherwise, return 1. Each call to the recursive method should check one index in the array.

(Recursive Binary Search) Modify Fig. 16.4 to use recursive method \texttt{recursiveBinarySearch} to perform a binary search of the array. The method should receive the search key, starting index and ending index as arguments. If the search key is found, return its index in the array. If the search key is not found, return 1.

(Quicksort) The recursive sorting technique called quicksort uses the following basic algorithm for a one-dimensional array of values:

1. **Partitioning Step:** Take the first element of the unsorted array and determine its final location in the sorted array (i.e., all values to the left of the element in the array are less than the element, and all values to the right of the element in the array are greater than the element; we show how to do this below). We now have one element in its proper location and two unsorted subarrays.

2. **Recursive Step:** Perform Step 1 on each unsorted subarray. Each time Step 1 is performed on a subarray, another element is placed in its final location of the sorted array, and two unsorted subarrays are created. When a subarray consists of one element, that element is in its final location (because a one-element array is already sorted).

The basic algorithm seems simple enough, but how do we determine the final position of the first element of each subarray? As an example, consider the following set of values (the element in bold is the partitioning element; it will be placed in its final location in the sorted array):

\begin{verbatim}
37 2 6 4 89 8 10 12 68 45
\end{verbatim}

Starting from the right-most element of the array, compare each element with 37 until an element less than 37 is found; then swap 37 and that element. The first element less than 37 is 12, so 37 and 12 are swapped. The new array is

\begin{verbatim}
12 2 6 4 89 8 10 37 68 45
\end{verbatim}

Element 12 is in italics to indicate that it was just swapped with 37.

16.10

Starting from the left of the array, but beginning with the element after 12, compare each element with 37 until an element greater than 37 is found then swap 37 and that element. The first element greater than 37 is 89, so 37 and 89 are swapped. The new array is

\begin{verbatim}
12 2 6 4 37 8 10 89 68 45
\end{verbatim}

Starting from the right, but beginning with the element before 89, compare each element with 37 until an element less than 37 is found then swap 37 and that element. The first element less than 37 is 10, so 37 and 10 are swapped. The new array is

\begin{verbatim}
12 2 6 4 37 8 10 89 68 45
\end{verbatim}

Starting from the left, but beginning with the element after 10, compare each element with 37 until an element greater than 37 is found then swap 37 and that element. There are no more elements greater than 37, so when we compare 37 with itself, we know that 37 has been placed in its final location of the
sorted array. Every value to the left of 37 is smaller than it, and every value to the right of 37 is larger than it.

Once the partition has been applied on the previous array, there are two unsorted subarrays. The subarray with values less than 37 contains 12, 2, 6, 4, 10 and 8. The subarray with values greater than 37 contains 89, 68 and 45. The sort continues recursively with both subarrays being partitioned in the same manner as the original array.

Based on the preceding discussion, write recursive method quickSortHelper to sort a one-dimensional integer array. The method should receive as arguments a starting index and an ending index on the original array being sorted.
Chapter 17. Data Structures

*Much that I bound, I could not free;*
*Much that I freed returned to me.*

Lee Wilson Dodd

*'Will you walk a little faster?' said a whiting to a snail,*
*'There's a porpoise close behind us, and he's treading on my tail.'*

Lewis Carroll

*There is always room at the top.*

Daniel Webster

*Push on keep moving.*

Thomas Morton

*I'll turn over a new leaf.*

Miguel de Cervantes

**OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will learn:

- To form linked data structures using references, self-referential classes and recursion.

- The type-wrapper classes that enable programs to process primitive data values as objects.

- To use autoboxing to convert a primitive value to an object of the corresponding type-wrapper class.

- To use auto-unboxing to convert an object of a type-wrapper class to a primitive value.
To create and manipulate dynamic data structures, such as linked lists, queues, stacks and binary trees.

Various important applications of linked data structures.

How to create reusable data structures with classes, inheritance and composition.

Outline

17.1 Introduction
17.2 Type-Wrapper Classes for Primitive Types
17.3 Autoboxing and Auto-Unboxing
17.4 Self-Referential Classes
17.5 Dynamic Memory Allocation
17.6 Linked Lists
17.7 Stacks
17.8 Queues
17.9 Trees
17.10 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises

Special Section: Building Your Own Compiler
17.1. Introduction

In previous chapters, we have studied fixed-size data structures such as one-dimensional and multidimensional arrays. This chapter introduces dynamic data structures that grow and shrink at execution time. Linked lists are collections of data items "linked up in a chain" insertions and deletions can be made anywhere in a linked list. Stacks are important in compilers and operating systems; insertions and deletions are made only at one end of a stack its top. Queues represent waiting lines; insertions are made at the back (also referred to as the tail) of a queue and deletions are made from the front (also referred to as the head). Binary trees facilitate high-speed searching and sorting of data, eliminating duplicate data items efficiently, representing file-system directories, compiling expressions into machine language and many other interesting applications.

We will discuss each of these major types of data structures and implement programs that create and manipulate them. We use classes, inheritance and composition to create and package these data structures for reusability and maintainability. In Chapter 19, Collections, we discuss Java's predefined classes that implement the data structures discussed in this chapter.

The examples presented here are practical programs that can be used in advanced courses and in industrial applications. The exercises include a rich collection of useful applications.

This chapter's examples manipulate primitive values for simplicity. However, most of the data-structure implementations in this chapter store only Objects. J2SE 5.0 has added a new feature, called boxing, that allows primitive values to be converted to and from objects for use in cases like this. The objects that represent primitive values are instances of Java's so-called type-wrapper classes in package java.lang. We discuss these classes and boxing in the next two sections, so we can use them in this chapter's examples.

We encourage you to attempt the major project described in the special section entitled Building Your Own Compiler. You have been using a Java compiler to translate your Java programs to bytecodes so that you could execute these programs on your computer. In this project, you will actually build your own compiler. It will read a file of statements written in a simple, yet powerful high-level language similar to early versions of the popular language BASIC. Your compiler will translate these statements into a file of Simpletron Machine Language (SML) instructions SML is the language you
learned in the Chapter 7 special section, Building Your Own Computer. Your Simpletron Simulator program will then execute the SML program produced by your compiler! Implementing this project by using an object-oriented approach will give you a wonderful opportunity to exercise most of what you have learned in this book. The special section carefully walks you through the specifications of the high-level language and describes the algorithms you will need to convert each high-level language statement into machine-language instructions. If you enjoy being challenged, you might attempt the many enhancements to both the compiler and the Simpletron Simulator suggested in the exercises.
17.2. Type-Wrapper Classes for Primitive Types

Each primitive type (listed in Appendix D, Primitive Types) has a corresponding **type-wrapper class** (in package java.lang). These classes are called Boolean, Byte, Character, Double, Float, Integer, Long and Short. Each type-wrapper class enables you to manipulate primitive-type values as objects. Many of the data structures that we develop or reuse in Chapters 17-19 manipulate and share Objects. These classes cannot manipulate variables of primitive types, but they can manipulate objects of the type-wrapper classes, because every class ultimately derives from Object.

Each of the numeric type-wrapper classes Byte, Short, Integer, Long, Float and Double extends class Number. Also, the type-wrapper classes are final classes, so you cannot extend them.

Primitive types do not have methods, so the methods related to a primitive type are located in the corresponding type-wrapper class (e.g., method parseInt, which converts a String to an int value, is located in class Integer). If you need to manipulate a primitive value in your program, first refer to the documentation for the type-wrapper classes—the method you need might already be declared.
17.3. Autoboxing and Auto-Unboxing

In versions of Java prior to J2SE 5.0, if you wanted to insert a primitive value into a data structure that could store only `Objects`, you had to create a new object of the corresponding type-wrapper class, then insert this object in the collection. Similarly, if you wanted to retrieve an object of a type-wrapper class from a collection and manipulate its primitive value, you had to invoke a method on the object to obtain its corresponding primitive-type value. For example, suppose you want to add an `int` to an array that stores only references to `Integer` objects. Prior to J2SE 5.0, you would be required to "wrap" an `int` value in an `Integer` object before adding the integer to the array and to "unwrap" the `int` value from the `Integer` object to retrieve the value from the array, as in

```java
Integer[] integerArray = new Integer[5]; // create integerArray

// assign Integer 10 to integerArray[0]
integerArray[0] = new Integer(10);

// get int value of Integer
int value = integerArray[0].intValue();
```

Notice that the `int` primitive value `10` is used to initialize an `Integer` object. This achieves the desired result but requires extra code and is cumbersome. We then need to invoke method `intValue` of class `Integer` to obtain the int value in the `Integer` object.

J2SE 5.0 simplifies converting between primitive-type values and type-wrapper objects, requiring no additional code on the part of the programmer. J2SE 5.0 introduces two new conversions: the boxing conversion and the unboxing conversion. A **boxing conversion** converts a value of a primitive type to an object of the corresponding type-wrapper class. An **unboxing conversion** converts an object of a type-wrapper class to a value of the corresponding primitive type. J2SE 5.0 allows these conversions to be performed automatically (called **autoboxing** and **auto-unboxing**). For example, the previous statements can be rewritten as
In this case, autoboxing occurs when assigning an `int` value (10) to `integerArray[0]`, because `integerArray` stores references to `Integer` objects, not `int` primitive values. Auto-unboxing occurs when assigning `integerArray[0]` to `int` variable `value`, because variable `value` stores an `int` value, not a reference to an `Integer` object. Autoboxing and auto-unboxing also occur in control statements—the condition of a control statement can evaluate to a primitive `boolean` type or a `Boolean` reference type. Many of this chapter's examples use these conversions to store primitive values in and retrieve them from data structures that store only references to `Objects`.
17.4. Self-Referential Classes

A **self-referential class** contains an instance variable that refers to another object of the same class type. For example, the declaration

```java
class Node {
    private int data;
    private Node nextNode; // reference to next linked node

    public Node( int data ) { /* constructor body */ }
    public void setData( int data ) { /* method body */ }
    public int getData() { /* method body */ }
    public void setNext( Node next ) { /* method body */ }
    public Node getNext() { /* method body */ }
} // end class Node
```

declares class `Node`, which has two private instance variables integer `data` and Node reference `nextNode`. Field `nextNode` references a `Node` object, an object of the same class being declared hence, the term "self-referential class." Field `nextNode` is a **link** "links" an object of type `Node` to another object of the same type. Type `Node` also has five methods: a constructor that receives an Integer to initialize `data`, a `setData` method to set the value of `data`, a `getData` method to return the value of `data`, a `setNext` method to set the value of `nextNode` and a `getNext` method to return a reference to the next node.

Programs can link self-referential objects together to form such useful data structures as lists, queues, stacks and trees. **Figure 17.1** illustrates two self-referential objects linked together to form a list. A backslash representing a null reference is placed in the link member of the second self-referential object to indicate that the link does not refer to another object. Note the backslash is illustrative; it does not correspond to the backslash character in Java. Normally, a null reference indicates the end of a data structure. There are other ways to represent the end of a data structure that are beyond the scope of this text.
Figure 17.1. Self-referential-class objects linked together.

[View full size image]
17.5. Dynamic Memory Allocation

Creating and maintaining dynamic data structures requires **dynamic memory allocation** the ability for a program to obtain more memory space at execution time to hold new nodes and to release space no longer needed. Remember that Java programs do not explicitly release dynamically allocated memory. Rather, Java performs automatic garbage collection of objects that are no longer referenced in a program.

The limit for dynamic memory allocation can be as large as the amount of available physical memory in the computer or the amount of available disk space in a virtual-memory system. Often, the limits are much smaller, because the computer's available memory must be shared among many applications.

The declaration and class-instance creation expression

```
Node nodeToAdd = new Node(10); // 10 is nodeToAdd's data
```

allocates the memory to store a `Node` object and returns a reference to the object, which is assigned to `nodeToAdd`. If insufficient memory is available, the expression throws an `OutOfMemoryError`.

The following sections discuss lists, stacks, queues and trees that all use dynamic memory allocation and self-referential classes to create dynamic data structures.
17.6. Linked Lists

A linked list is a linear collection (i.e., a sequence) of self-referential-class objects, called nodes, connected by reference links hence, the term "linked" list. Typically, a program accesses a linked list via a reference to the first node in the list. The program accesses each subsequent node via the link reference stored in the previous node. By convention, the link reference in the last node is set to null to mark the end of the list. Data is stored in a linked list dynamically the program creates each node as necessary. A node can contain data of any type, including references to objects of other classes. Stacks and queues are also linear data structures and, as we will see, are constrained versions of linked lists. Trees are non-linear data structures.

Lists of data can be stored in arrays, but linked lists provide several advantages. A linked list is appropriate when the number of data elements to be represented in the data structure is unpredictable. Linked lists are dynamic, so the length of a list can increase or decrease as necessary. The size of a "conventional" Java array, however, cannot be altered, because the array size is fixed at the time the program creates the array. "Conventional" arrays can become full. Linked lists become full only when the system has insufficient memory to satisfy dynamic storage allocation requests. Package java.util contains class LinkedList for implementing and manipulating linked lists that grow and shrink during program execution. We discuss class LinkedList in Chapter 19.

Performance Tip 17.1

An array can be declared to contain more elements than the number of items expected, but this wastes memory. Linked lists provide better memory utilization in these situations. Linked lists allow the program to adapt to storage needs at runtime.

Performance Tip 17.2
Insertion into a linked list is fast. Only two references have to be modified (after locating the insertion point). All existing node objects remain at their current locations in memory.

Linked lists can be maintained in sorted order simply by inserting each new element at the proper point in the list. (It does, of course, take time to locate the proper insertion point.) Existing list elements do not need to be moved.

**Performance Tip 17.3**

Insertion and deletion in a sorted array can be time consuming. All the elements following the inserted or deleted element must be shifted appropriately.

Linked list nodes normally are not stored contiguously in memory. Rather, they are logically contiguous. Figure 17.2 illustrates a linked list with several nodes. This diagram presents a **singly linked list**—each node contains one reference to the next node in the list. Often, linked lists are implemented as doubly linked lists—each node contains a reference to the next node in the list and a reference to the previous node in the list. Java’s `LinkedList` class is a doubly linked list implementation.

**Figure 17.2. Linked list graphical representation.**

[View full size image]
Performance Tip 17.4

Normally, the elements of an array are contiguous in memory. This allows immediate access to any array element, because its address can be calculated directly as its offset from the beginning of the array. Linked lists do not afford such immediate access to their elements; an element can be accessed only by traversing the list from the front (or from the back in a doubly linked list).

The program of Fig. 17.3Fig. 17.5 uses an object of our List class to manipulate a list of miscellaneous objects. The program consists of four classes ListNode (Fig. 17.3, lines 637), List (Fig. 17.3, lines 40147), EmptyListException (Fig. 17.4) and ListTest (Fig. 17.5). The List, ListNode and EmptyListException classes are placed in package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17, so they can be reused throughout this chapter. Encapsulated in each List object is a linked list of ListNode objects. [Note: Many of the classes in this chapter are declared in the package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17. Each such class should be compiled with the -d command-line option to javac. When compiling the classes that are not in this package and when running the programs, be sure to use the -classpath option to javac and java, respectively.]

Figure 17.3. ListNode and List class declarations.
(This item is displayed on pages 823 - 826 in the print version)

```java
1  // Fig. 17.3: List.java
2  // ListNode and List class definitions.
3 package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17;
4
5  // class to represent one node in a list
6 class ListNode
7 {  
8    // package access members; List can access these directly
9    Object data;
10    ListNode nextNode;
11
```
// constructor creates a ListNode that refers to object
ListNode( Object object )
{
     this ( object, null );
} // end ListNode one-argument constructor

// constructor creates ListNode that refers to
// Object and to next ListNode
ListNode( Object object, ListNode node )
{
     data = object;
     nextNode = node;
} // end ListNode two-argument constructor

// return reference to data in node
Object getObject()
{
     return data; // return Object in this node
} // end method getObject

// return reference to next node in list
ListNode getNext()
{
     return nextNode; // get next node
} // end method getNext

} // end class ListNode

// class List definition
public class List
{

private ListNode firstNode;
private ListNode lastNode;
private String name; // string like "list" used in printing

// constructor creates empty List with "list" as the name
public List()
{
     this ( "list" );
} // end List no-argument constructor

// constructor creates an empty List with a name
public List( String listName )
{
     name = listName;
     firstNode = lastNode = null;
} // end List one-argument constructor

// insert Object at front of List
public void insertAtFront( Object insertItem )
{
     if ( isEmpty() ) // firstNode and lastNode refer to same object
           firstNode = lastNode = new ListNode( insertItem );
     else // firstNode refers to new node
           firstNode = new ListNode( insertItem, firstNode );
} // end method insertAtFront

// insert Object at end of List
public void insertAtBack( Object insertItem )
{
     if ( isEmpty() ) // firstNode and lastNode refer to same Object
           firstNode = lastNode = new ListNode( insertItem );

else // lastNode's nextNode refers to new node
    lastNode = lastNode.nextNode = new ListNode( insertItem );
} // end method insertAtBack

// remove first node from List
public Object removeFromFront() throws EmptyListException {
    if ( isEmpty() ) // throw exception if List is empty
        throw new EmptyListException( name );

    Object removedItem = firstNode.data; // retrieve data being removed

    // update references firstNode and lastNode
    if ( firstNode == lastNode )
        firstNode = lastNode = null;
    else
        firstNode = firstNode.nextNode;

    return removedItem; // return removed node data
} // end method removeFromFront

// remove last node from List
public Object removeFromBack() throws EmptyListException {
    if ( isEmpty() ) // throw exception if List is empty
        throw new EmptyListException( name );

    Object removedItem = lastNode.data; // retrieve data being removed

    // update references firstNode and lastNode
    if ( firstNode == lastNode )
        firstNode = lastNode = null;
    else // locate new last node
    {
        ListNode current = firstNode;

        // loop while current node does not refer to lastNode
        while ( current.nextNode != lastNode )
            current = current.nextNode;

        lastNode = current; // current is new lastNode
        current.nextNode = null;
    } // end else

    return removedItem; // return removed node data
} // end method removeFromBack

// determine whether list is empty
public boolean isEmpty() {
    return firstNode == null; // return true if List is empty
} // end method isEmpty

// output List contents
public void print() {
    if ( isEmpty() )
    {
        System.out.printf( "Empty \n", name );
        return;
    } // end if
System.out.printf("The %s is: ", name);
ListNode current = firstNode;

// while not at end of list, output current node's data
while ( current != null )
{
    System.out.printf("%s ", current.data );
    current = current.nextNode;
} // end while
System.out.println("\n");
} // end method print
} // end class List

Figure 17.4. **EmptyListException class declaration.**
(This item is displayed on page 826 in the print version)

```java
public class EmptyListException extends RuntimeException
{
    // no-argument constructor
    public EmptyListException()
    {
        this("List"); // call other EmptyListException constructor
    } // end EmptyListException no-argument constructor

    // one-argument constructor
    public EmptyListException( String name )
    {
        super( name + " is empty" ); // call superclass constructor
    } // end EmptyListException one-argument constructor
} // end class EmptyListException
```

Figure 17.5. **Linked list manipulations.**
(This item is displayed on pages 827 - 828 in the print version)

```java
public class ListTest
{
    // Fig. 17.5: ListTest.java
    // ListTest class to demonstrate List capabilities.
    import com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.List;
    import com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.EmptyListException;
    public class ListTest
```
public static void main( String args[] )
{
    List list = new List(); // create the List container
    // insert integers in list
    list.insertAtFront( -1 );
    list.print();
    list.insertAtFront( 0 );
    list.print();
    list.insertAtBack( 1 );
    list.print();
    list.insertAtBack( 5 );
    list.print();

    // remove objects from list; print after each removal
    try
    {
        Object removedObject = list.removeFromFront();
        System.out.printf( "%s removed\n", removedObject );
        list.print();

        removedObject = list.removeFromFront();
        System.out.printf( "%s removed\n", removedObject );
        list.print();

        removedObject = list.removeFromBack();
        System.out.printf( "%s removed\n", removedObject );
        list.print();

        removedObject = list.removeFromBack();
        System.out.printf( "%s removed\n", removedObject );
        list.print();
    } // end try
    catch ( EmptyListException emptyListException )
    {
        emptyListException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
} // end main
} // end class ListTest

The list is: -1
The list is: 0 -1
The list is: 0 -1 1
The list is: 0 -1 1 5
0 removed
The list is: -1 1 5
-1 removed
The list is: 1 5
Class ListNode (Fig. 17.3, lines 637) declares package-access fields data and nextNode. The data field is an Object reference, so it can refer to any object. ListNode member nextNode stores a reference to the next ListNode object in the linked list (or null if the node is the last one in the list).

Lines 4243 of class List (Fig. 17.3, lines 40147) declare references to the first and last ListNodes in a List (firstNode and lastNode, respectively). The constructors (lines 4750 and 5357) initialize both references to null. The most important methods of class List are insertAtFront (lines 6066), insertAtBack (lines 6975), removeFromFront (lines 7892) and removeFromBack (lines 95118). Method isEmpty (lines 121124) is a predicate method that determines whether the list is empty (i.e., the reference to the first node of the list is null). Predicate methods typically test a condition and do not modify the object on which they are called. If the list is empty, method isEmpty returns True; otherwise, it returns false. Method print (lines 127146) displays the list's contents. A detailed discussion of List's methods follows Fig. 17.5.

Method main of class ListTest (Fig. 17.5) inserts objects at the beginning of the list using method insertAtFront, inserts objects at the end of the list using method insertAtBack, deletes objects from the front of the list using method removeFromFront and deletes objects from the end of the list using method removeFromBack. After each insert and remove operation, ListTest calls List method print to display the current list contents. If an attempt is made to remove an item from an empty list, an EmptyListException (Fig. 17.4) is thrown, so the method calls to removeFromFront and removeFromBack are placed in a try block that is followed by an appropriate exception handler. Notice in lines 13, 15, 17 and 19 that the application passes literal primitive int values to methods insertAtFront and insertAtBack, even though each of these methods was declared with a parameter of type Object (Fig. 17.3, lines 60 and 69). In this case, the JVM autoboxes each literal value in an Integer object and that object is actually
inserted into the list. This, of course, is allowed because \texttt{Object} is an indirect superclass of \texttt{Integer}.

Now we discuss each method of class \texttt{List} (\textit{Fig. 17.3}) in detail and provide diagrams showing the reference manipulations performed by methods \texttt{insertAtFront}, \texttt{insertAtBack}, \texttt{removeFromFront} and \texttt{removeFromBack}. Method \texttt{insertAtFront} (lines 6066 of \textit{Fig. 17.3}) places a new node at the front of the list. The steps are:

1. Call \texttt{isEmpty} to determine whether the list is empty (line 62).

   If the list is empty, assign \texttt{firstNode} and \texttt{lastNode} to the new \texttt{ListNode} that was initialized with \texttt{insertItem} (line 63). The \texttt{ListNode} constructor at lines 1316 calls the \texttt{ListNode} constructor at lines 2024 to set instance variable \texttt{data} to refer to the \texttt{insertItem} passed as an argument and to set reference \texttt{nextNode} to \texttt{null}, because this is the first and last node in the list.

2. If the list is not empty, the new node is "linked" into the list by setting \texttt{firstNode} to a new \texttt{ListNode} object and initializing that object with \texttt{insertItem} and \texttt{firstNode} (line 65). When the \texttt{ListNode} constructor (lines 2024) executes, it sets instance variable \texttt{data} to refer to the \texttt{insertItem} passed as an argument and performs the insertion by setting the \texttt{nextNode} reference of the new node to the \texttt{ListNode} passed as an argument, which previously was the first node.

In \textit{Fig. 17.6}, part (a) shows a list and a new node during the \texttt{insertAtFront} operation and before the program links the new node into the list. The dotted arrows in part (b) illustrate \textit{Step 3} of the \texttt{insertAtFront} operation that enables the node containing 12 to become the new first node in the list.

\textbf{Figure 17.6. Graphical representation of operation \texttt{insertAtFront}.}

(This item is displayed on page 829 in the print version)
Method insertAtBack (lines 6975 of Fig. 17.3) places a new node at the back of the list. The steps are:

1. Call isEmpty to determine whether the list is empty (line 71).

   If the list is empty, assign firstNode and lastNode to the new ListNode that was initialized with insertItem (line 72). The ListNode constructor at lines 1316 calls the constructor at lines 2024 to set instance variable data to refer to the insertItem passed as an argument and to set reference nextNode to null.

2. If the list is not empty, line 74 links the new node into the list by assigning to lastNode and lastNode.nextNode the reference to the new ListNode that was initialized with insertItem. ListNode's constructor (lines 1316), sets instance variable data to refer to the insertItem passed as an argument and sets reference nextNode to null, because this is the last node in the list.

In Fig. 17.7, part (a) shows a list and a new node during the insertAtBack operation and before the program links the new node into the list. The dotted arrows in part (b) illustrate Step 3 of method insertAtBack, which adds the new node to the end of a list that is not empty.

Figure 17.7. Graphical representation of operation
Method `removeFromFront` (lines 7892 of Fig. 17.3) removes the first node of the list and returns a reference to the removed data. The method throws an `EmptyListException` (lines 8081) if the list is empty when the program calls this method. Otherwise, the method returns a reference to the removed data. The steps are:

1. Assign `firstNode.data` (the data being removed from the list) to reference `removedItem` (line 83).

2. If `firstNode` and `lastNode` refer to the same object (line 86), the list has only one element at this time. So, the method sets `firstNode` and `lastNode` to `null` (line 87) to remove the node from the list (leaving the list empty).

3. If the list has more than one node, then the method leaves reference `lastNode` as is and assigns the value of `firstNode.nextNode` to `firstNode` (line 89). Thus, `firstNode` references the node that was previously the second node in the list.

4. Return the `removedItem` reference (line 91).
In Fig. 17.8, part (a) illustrates the list before the removal operation. The dashed lines and arrows in part (b) show the reference manipulations.

**Figure 17.8. Graphical representation of operation removeFromFront.**

Method `removeFromBack` (lines 95118 of Fig. 17.3) removes the last node of a list and returns a reference to the removed data. The method throws an `EmptyListException` (lines 9798) if the list is empty when the program calls this method. The steps are:

1. Assign `lastNode.data` (the data being removed from the list) to `removedItem`.

If the `firstNode` and `lastNode` refer to the same object (line 103), the list has only one element at this time. So, line 104 sets `firstNode` and `lastNode` to `null` to remove that node from the list (leaving the list empty).
3. If the list has more than one node, create the ListNode reference `current` and assign it `firstNode` (line 107).

Now "walk the list" with `current` until it references the node before the last node. The while loop (lines 110-111) assigns `current.nextNode` to `current` as long as `current.nextNode` (the next node in the list) is not `lastNode`.

After locating the second-to-last node, assign `current` to `lastNode` (line 113)
5. to update which node is last in the list.

Set the `current.nextNode` to `null` (line 114) to remove the last node from the list and terminate the list at the `current` node.

6. Return the `removedItem` reference (line 117).

In Fig. 17.9, part (a) illustrates the list before the removal operation. The dashed lines and arrows in part (b) show the reference manipulations.

**Figure 17.9. Graphical representation of operation `removeFromBack`.**

[View full size image]
Method print (lines 127146) first determines whether the list is empty (lines 129133). If so, print displays a message indicating that the list is empty and returns control to the calling method. Otherwise, print outputs the list's data. Line 136 creates ListNode current and initializes it with firstNode. While current is not null, there are more items in the list. Therefore, line 141 outputs a string representation of current.data. Line 142 moves to the next node in the list by assigning the value of reference current.nextNode to current. This printing algorithm is identical for linked lists, stacks and queues.
17.7. Stacks

A stack is a constrained version of a linked list: new nodes can be added to and removed from a stack only at the top. [Note: A stack does not have to be implemented using a linked list.] For this reason, a stack is referred to as a last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structure. The link member in the bottom (i.e., last) node of the stack is set to null to indicate the bottom of the stack.

The primary methods for manipulating a stack are push and pop. Method push adds a new node to the top of the stack. Method pop removes a node from the top of the stack and returns the data from the popped node.

Stacks have many interesting applications. For example, when a program calls a method, the called method must know how to return to its caller, so the return address of the calling method is pushed onto the program execution stack. If a series of method calls occurs, the successive return addresses are pushed onto the stack in last-in, first-out order so that each method can return to its caller. Stacks support recursive method calls in the same manner as they do conventional nonrecursive method calls.

The program execution stack also contains the memory for local variables on each invocation of a method during a program's execution. When the method returns to its caller, the memory for that method's local variables is popped off the stack, and those variables are no longer known to the program. If the local variable is a reference, the reference count for the object to which it referred is decremented by 1. If the reference count becomes zero, the object can be garbage collected.

Compilers use stacks to evaluate arithmetic expressions and generate machine-language code to process the expressions. The exercises in this chapter explore several applications of stacks, including using them to develop a complete working compiler. Also, package java.util contains class Stack (see Chapter 19) for implementing and manipulating stacks that can grow and shrink during program execution.

We take advantage of the close relationship between lists and stacks to implement a stack class by reusing a list class. We demonstrate two different forms of reusability. First, we implement the stack class by extending class List of Fig. 17.3. Then we implement an identically performing stack class through composition by including a reference to a List object as a private instance variable of a stack class. The list, stack and queue data structures in this
chapter are implemented to store Object references to encourage further reusability. Thus, any object type can be stored in a list, stack or queue.

Stack Class That Inherits from List

The application of Fig. 17.10 and Fig. 17.11 creates a stack class by extending class List of Fig. 17.3. We want the stack to have methods push, pop, isEmpty and print. Essentially, these are the methods insertAtFront, removeFromFront, isEmpty and print of class List. Of course, class List contains other methods (such as insertAtBack and removeFromBack) that we would rather not make accessible through the public interface to the stack class. It is important to remember that all methods in the public interface of class List class also are public methods of the subclass StackInheritance (Fig. 17.10). When we implement the stack's methods, we have each StackInheritance method call the appropriate List method method push calls insertAtFront and method pop calls removeFromFront. Clients of class StackInheritance can call methods isEmpty and print because they are inherited from List. Class StackInheritance is declared as part of package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17 for reuse purposes. Note that StackInheritance does not import List, because both classes are in the same package.

Figure 17.10. StackInheritance extends class List.
```java
21     { 
22         return removeFromFront(); 
23     } // end method pop 
24 } // end class StackInheritance

Figure 17.11. Stack manipulation program. 
(This item is displayed on pages 833 - 834 in the print version)

// Fig. 17.11: StackInheritanceTest.java 
// Class StackInheritanceTest. 
import com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.StackInheritance; 
import com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.EmptyListException; 

public class StackInheritanceTest 
{ 
    public static void main( String args[] ) 
    { 
        StackInheritance stack = new StackInheritance(); 

        // use push method 
        stack.push( -1 ); 
        stack.print(); 
        stack.push( 0 ); 
        stack.print(); 
        stack.push( 1 ); 
        stack.print(); 
        stack.push( 5 ); 
        stack.print(); 

        // remove items from stack 
        try 
        { 
            Object removedObject = null; 

            while ( true ) 
            { 
                removedObject = stack.pop(); // use pop method 
                System.out.printf("%s popped\n", removedObject ); 
                stack.print(); 
            } // end while 
        } // end try 
        catch ( EmptyListException emptyListException ) 
        { 
            emptyListException.printStackTrace(); 
        } // end catch 
    } // end main 
} // end class StackInheritanceTest
```

The stack is: -1
Class StackInheritanceTest's method main (Fig. 17.11) creates an object of class StackInheritance called stack (line 10). The program pushes integers onto the stack (lines 13, 15, 17 and 19). Once again, note that autoboxing is used here to insert Integer objects into the data structure. Lines 2732 pop the objects from the stack in an infinite while loop. If method pop is invoked on an empty stack, the method throws an EmptyListException. In this case, the program displays the exception's stack trace, which shows the methods on the program execution stack at the time the exception occurred. Note that the program uses method print (inherited from List) to output the contents of the stack.

Stack Class That Contains a Reference to a List

You can also implement a class by reusing a list class through composition. Figure 17.12 uses a private List (line 7) in class StackComposition's declaration. Composition enables us to hide the List methods that should not be in our stack's public interface. We provide public interface methods that use only the
required List methods. Implementing each stack method as a call to a List method is called **delegation** the stack method invoked **delegates** the call to the appropriate List method. In particular, StackComposition delegates calls to List methods `insertAtFront`, `removeFromFront`, `isEmpty` and `print`. In this example, we do not show class StackCompositionTest, because the only difference is that we change the type of the stack from StackInheritance to StackComposition (lines 3 and 10 of Fig. 17.11). The output is identical using either version of the stack.

**Figure 17.12.** StackComposition uses a composed List object.

```java
// Fig. 17.12: StackComposition.java
// Class StackComposition definition with composed List object.
package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17;

public class StackComposition {
    private List stackList;

    // no-argument constructor
    public StackComposition() {
        stackList = new List("stack");
    } // end StackComposition no-argument constructor

    // add object to stack
    public void push( Object object ) {
        stackList.insertAtFront( object );
    } // end method push

    // remove object from stack
    public Object pop() throws EmptyListException {
        return stackList.removeFromFront();
    } // end method pop

    // determine if stack is empty
    public boolean isEmpty() {
        return stackList.isEmpty();
    } // end method isEmpty

    // output stack contents
    public void print() {
        stackList.print();
    } // end method print
}
```
17.8. Queues

Another commonly used data structure is the queue. A queue is similar to a checkout line in a supermarket—the cashier services the person at the beginning of the line first. Other customers enter the line only at the end and wait for service. Queue nodes are removed only from the head (or front) of the queue and are inserted only at the tail (or end). For this reason, a queue is a **first-in, first-out (FIFO)** data structure. The insert and remove operations are known as **enqueue** and **dequeue**.

Queues have many uses in computer systems. Most computers have only a single processor, so only one application at a time can be serviced. Each application requiring processor time is placed in a queue. The application at the front of the queue is the next to receive service. Each application gradually advances to the front as the applications before it receive service.

Queues are also used to support **print spooling**. For example, a single printer might be shared by all users of a network. Many users can send print jobs to the printer, even when the printer is already busy. These print jobs are placed in a queue until the printer becomes available. A program called a **spooler** manages the queue to ensure that, as each print job completes, the next print job is sent to the printer.

Information packets also wait in queues in computer networks. Each time a packet arrives at a network node, it must be routed to the next node along the path to the packet's final destination. The routing node routes one packet at a time, so additional packets are enqueued until the router can route them.

A file server in a computer network handles file-access requests from many clients throughout the network. Servers have a limited capacity to service requests from clients. When that capacity is exceeded, client requests wait in queues.

**Figure 17.13** creates a queue class that contains an object of class **List** (**Fig. 17.3**). Class **Queue** (**Fig. 17.13**) provides methods **enqueue**, **dequeue**, **isEmpty** and **print**. Class **List** contains other methods (e.g., **insertAtFront** and **removeFromBack**) that we would rather not make accessible through the public interface of class **Queue**. By using composition, these methods in the public interface of class **List** are not accessible to clients of class **Queue**. Each method of class **Queue** calls an appropriate **List** method**enqueue** calls **List** method **insertAtBack**, method **dequeue** calls **List** method **removeFromFront**, method **isEmpty** calls **List** method **isEmpty**.
and method print calls List method print. For reuse purposes, class Queue is declared in package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.

Figure 17.13. **Queue uses class List.**
(This item is displayed on pages 836 - 837 in the print version)

```
1 // Fig. 17.13: Queue.java
2 // Class Queue.
3 package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17;
4
5 public class Queue
6 {
7    private List queueList;
8
9    // no-argument constructor
10   public Queue()
11     {
12       queueList = new List( "queue" );
13     } // end Queue no-argument constructor
14
15    // add object to queue
16   public void enqueue( Object object )
17     {
18       queueList.insertAtBack( object );
19     } // end method enqueue
20
21    // remove object from queue
22   public Object dequeue() throws EmptyListException
23     {
24       return queueList.removeFromFront();
25     } // end method dequeue
26
27    // determine if queue is empty
28   public boolean isEmpty()
29     {
30       return queueList.isEmpty();
31     } // end method isEmpty
32
33    // output queue contents
34   public void print()
35     {
36       queueList.print();
37     } // end method print
38 } // end class Queue
```

Class QueueTest (Fig. 17.14) method main creates an object of class Queue called queue. Lines 13, 15, 17 and 19 enqueue four integers, taking advantage of
autoboxing to insert `Integer` objects into the queue. Lines 2732 use an infinite
while loop to dequeue the objects in first-in, first-out order. When the queue is
empty, method dequeue throws an `EmptyListException`, and the program displays
the exception's stack trace.

Figure 17.14. Queue processing program.
(This item is displayed on pages 837 - 838 in the print version)

```
1 // Fig. 17.14: QueueTest.java
2 // Class QueueTest.
3 import com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.Queue;
4 import com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.EmptyListException;
5
6 public class QueueTest
7 {
8     public static void main( String args[] )
9     {
10         Queue queue = new Queue();
11
12         // use enqueue method
13         queue.enqueue( -1 );
14         queue.print();
15         queue.enqueue( 0 );
16         queue.print();
17         queue.enqueue( 1 );
18         queue.print();
19         queue.enqueue( 5 );
20         queue.print();
21
22         // remove objects from queue
23         try
24             {
25                 Object removedObject = null;
26
27                 while ( true )
28                     {
29                     removedObject = queue.dequeue(); // use dequeue method
30                     System.out.printf( "%s dequeued\n", removedObject );
31                     queue.print();
32                     } // end while
33             } // end try
34         catch ( EmptyListException emptyListException )
35             {
36                 emptyListException.printStackTrace();
37             } // end catch
38         } // end main
39     } // end class QueueTest
```

The queue is: -1
The queue is: -1 0
The queue is: -1 0 1
The queue is: -1 0 1 5
-1 dequeued
The queue is: 0 1 5
0 dequeued
The queue is: 1 5
1 dequeued
The queue is: 5
5 dequeued
Empty queue
com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.EmptyListException: queue is empty
    at com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.List.removeFromFront(List.java:81)
    at com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17.Queue.dequeue(Queue.java:24)
    at QueueTest.main(QueueTest.java:29)
17.9. Trees

Linked lists, stacks and queues are linear data structures (i.e., sequences). A tree is a nonlinear, two-dimensional data structure with special properties. Tree nodes contain two or more links. This section discusses binary trees (Fig. 17.15) trees whose nodes each contain two links (one or both of which may be null). The root node is the first node in a tree. Each link in the root node refers to a child. The left child is the first node in the left subtree (also known as the root node of the left subtree), and the right child is the first node in the right subtree (also known as the root node of the right subtree). The children of a specific node are called siblings. A node with no children is called a leaf node. Computer scientists normally draw trees from the root node down exactly the opposite of the way most trees grow in nature.

Figure 17.15. Binary tree graphical representation.

In our example, we create a special binary tree called a binary search tree. A binary search tree (with no duplicate node values) has the characteristic that the values in any left subtree are less than the value in that subtree's parent node, and the values in any right subtree are greater than the value in that subtree's parent node. Figure 17.16 illustrates a binary search tree with 12 integer values. Note that the shape of the binary search tree that corresponds
to a set of data can vary, depending on the order in which the values are inserted into the tree.

**Figure 17.16.** Binary search tree containing 12 values.

The application of Fig. 17.17 and Fig. 17.18 creates a binary search tree of integers and traverses it (i.e., walks through all its nodes) three ways using recursive **inorder, preorder** and **postorder traversals**. The program generates 10 random numbers and inserts each into the tree. Class `tree` is declared in package `com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17` for reuse purposes.

**Figure 17.17.** `treeNode` and `tree` class declarations for a binary search tree.

(This item is displayed on pages 840 - 842 in the print version)

```java
1  // Fig. 17.17: Tree.java
2  // Definition of class TreeNode and class Tree.
3  package com.deitel.jhtp6.ch17;
4  //
5  // class TreeNode definition
6  class TreeNode
7  {
8      // package access members
9      TreeNode leftNode; // left node
10     int data; // node value
11     TreeNode rightNode; // right node
12     // constructor initializes data and makes this a leaf node
13     public TreeNode( int nodeData )
14     {
15         data = nodeData;
16         leftNode = rightNode = null; // node has no children
17     } // end TreeNode no-argument constructor
18     // locate insertion point and insert new node; ignore duplicate values
```
public void insert( int insertValue )
{
    // insert in left subtree
    if ( insertValue < data )
    {
        // insert new TreeNode
        if ( leftNode == null )
            leftNode = new TreeNode( insertValue );
        else // continue traversing left subtree
            leftNode.insert( insertValue );
    } // end if
    else if ( insertValue > data ) // insert in right subtree
    {
        // insert new TreeNode
        if ( rightNode == null )
            rightNode = new TreeNode( insertValue );
        else // continue traversing right subtree
            rightNode.insert( insertValue );
    } // end else if
} // end method insert

// class Tree definition
public class Tree
{
    private TreeNode root;

    // constructor initializes an empty Tree of integers
    public Tree()
    {
        root = null;
    } // end Tree no-argument constructor

    // insert a new node in the binary search tree
    public void insertNode( int insertValue )
    {
        if ( root == null )
            root = new TreeNode( insertValue ); // create the root node here
        else
            root.insert( insertValue ); // call the insert method
    } // end method insertNode

    // begin preorder traversal
    public void preorderTraversal()
    {
        preorderHelper( root );
    } // end method preorderTraversal

    // recursive method to perform preorder traversal
    private void preorderHelper( TreeNode node )
    {
        if ( node == null )
            return;
        System.out.printf( "%d ", node.data ); // output node data
        preorderHelper( node.leftNode ); // traverse left subtree
        preorderHelper( node.rightNode ); // traverse right subtree
    } // end method preorderHelper

    // begin inorder traversal
    public void inorderTraversal()
    {
    } // end method inorderTraversal

Figure 17.18. Binary tree test program.
(This item is displayed on page 843 in the print version)
Let us walk through the binary tree program. Method `main` of class `TreeTest` (Fig. 17.18) begins by instantiating an empty `Tree` object and assigning its reference to variable `tree` (line 10). Lines 17-22 randomly generate 10 integers, each of which is inserted into the binary tree through a call to method `insertNode` (line 21). The program then performs preorder, inorder and postorder traversals (these will be explained shortly) of `tree` (lines 25, 28 and 31, respectively).

Class `tree` (Fig. 17.17, lines 44-113) has private field `root` (line 46) of type `TTreeNode` reference to the root node of the tree. `tree`'s constructor (lines 49-52) initializes `root` to `null` to indicate that the tree is empty. The class contains method `insertNode` (lines 55-61) to insert a new node in the tree and methods
Class `TTree`'s method `insertNode` (lines 5561) first determines whether the tree is empty. If so, line 58 allocates a new `TTreeNode`, initializes the node with the integer being inserted in the tree and assigns the new node to reference `root`. If the tree is not empty, line 60 calls `TTreeNode` method `insert` (lines 2141). This method uses recursion to determine the location for the new node in the tree and inserts the node at that location. A node can be inserted only as a leaf node in a binary search tree.

`TTreeNode` method `insert` compares the value to insert with the `data` value in the root node. If the insert value is less than the root node data (line 24), the program determines if the left subtree is empty (line 27). If so, line 28 allocates a new `treeNode`, initializes it with the integer being inserted and assigns the new node to reference `leftNode`. Otherwise, line 30 recursively calls `insert` for the left subtree to insert the value into the left subtree. If the insert value is greater than the root node data (line 32), the program determines if the right subtree is empty (line 35). If so, line 36 allocates a new `treeNode`, initializes it with the integer being inserted and assigns the new node to reference `rightNode`. Otherwise, line 38 recursively calls `insert` for the right subtree to insert the value in the right subtree. If the `insertValue` is already in the tree, it is simply ignored.

Methods `inorderTraversal`, `preorderTraversal` and `postorderTraversal` call tree helper methods `inorderHelper` (lines 8795), `preorderHelper` (lines 7078) and `postorderHelper` (lines 104112), respectively, to traverse the tree and print the node values. The helper methods in class `tree` enable the programmer to start a traversal without having to pass the `root` node to the method. Reference `root` is an implementation detail that a programmer should not be able to access. Methods `inorderTraversal`, `preorderTraversal` and `postorderTraversal` simply take the private `root` reference and pass it to the appropriate helper method to initiate a traversal of the tree. The base case for each helper method determines whether the reference it receives is `null` and, if so, returns immediately.
1. Traverse the left subtree with a call to `inorderHelper` (line 92).
2. Process the value in the node (line 93).
3. Traverse the right subtree with a call to `inorderHelper` (line 94).

The inorder traversal does not process the value in a node until the values in that node's left subtree are processed. The inorder traversal of the tree in Fig. 17.19 is

6 13 17 27 33 42 48

**Figure 17.19. Binary search tree with seven values.**

[View full size image]

Note that the inorder traversal of a binary search tree prints the node values in ascending order. The process of creating a binary search tree actually sorts the data; thus, it is called the **binary tree sort**.

Method `preorderHelper` (lines 7078) defines the steps for a preorder traversal:

1. Process the value in the node (line 75)
2. Traverse the left subtree with a call to `preorderHelper` (line 76).
3. Traverse the right subtree with a call to `preorderHelper` (line 77).
The preorder traversal processes the value in each node as the node is visited. After processing the value in a given node, the preorder traversal processes the values in the left subtree, then the values in the right subtree. The preorder traversal of the tree in Fig. 17.19 is

27 13 6 17 42 33 48

Method postorderHelper (lines 104-112) defines the steps for a postorder traversal:

1. Traverse the left subtree with a call to postorderHelper (line 109).
2. Traverse the right subtree with a call to postorderHelper (line 110).
3. Process the value in the node (line 111).

The postorder traversal processes the value in each node after the values of all that node's children are processed. The postorderTraversal of the tree in Fig. 17.19 is

6 17 13 33 48 42 27

The binary search tree facilitates duplicate elimination. While building a tree, the insertion operation recognizes attempts to insert a duplicate value, because a duplicate follows the same "go left" or "go right" decisions on each comparison as the original value did. Thus, the insertion operation eventually compares the duplicate with a node containing the same value. At this point, the insertion operation can decide to discard the duplicate value (as we do in this example).

Searching a binary tree for a value that matches a key value is fast, especially for tightly packed (or balanced) trees. In a tightly packed tree, each level contains about twice as many elements as the previous level. Figure 17.19 is a tightly packed binary tree. A tightly packed binary search tree with $n$ elements has $\log_2 n$ levels. Thus, at most $\log_2 n$ comparisons are required either to find a
match or to determine that no match exists. Searching a (tightly packed) 1000-element binary search tree requires at most 10 comparisons, because \(2^{10} > 1000\). Searching a (tightly packed) 1,000,000-element binary search tree requires at most 20 comparisons, because \(2^{20} > 1,000,000\).

The chapter exercises present algorithms for several other binary tree operations, such as deleting an item from a binary tree, printing a binary tree in a two-dimensional tree format and performing a **level-order traversal of a binary tree**. The level-order traversal visits the nodes of the tree row by row, starting at the root node level. On each level of the tree, a level-order traversal visits the nodes from left to right. Other binary tree exercises include allowing a binary search tree to contain duplicate values, inserting string values in a binary tree and determining how many levels are contained in a binary tree. **Chapter 19** continues our discussion of data structures by presenting the data structures in the Java API.
17.10. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned about type-wrapper classes, boxing and dynamic data structures that grow and shrink at execution time. You learned that each primitive type has a corresponding type-wrapper class in package java.lang. You also saw that Java can convert between primitive values and objects of the type-wrapper classes using J2SE 5.0's new feature called boxing.

You learned that linked lists are collections of data items that are "linked up in a chain." You also saw that an application can perform insertions and deletions anywhere in a linked list. You learned that the stack and queue data structures are constrained versions of lists. For stacks, you saw that insertions and deletions are made only at its top. For queues that represent waiting lines, you saw that insertions are made at the tail and deletions are made from the head. You also learned the binary tree data structure. You saw a binary search tree that facilitated high-speed searching and sorting of data and eliminating duplicate data items efficiently. Throughout the chapter, you learned how to create and package these data structures for reusability and maintainability.

In Chapter 18, Generics, we discuss J2SE 5.0's new feature called generics, which provides a mechanism for declaring classes and methods without specific type information so that the classes and methods can be used with many different reference types. Generics are used extensively in Java's built-in set of data structures, known as the Collections API. You will learn about collections in Chapter 19, Collections.
Summary

- Dynamic data structures can grow and shrink at execution time.
- Linked lists are collections of data items "linked up in a chain" insertions and deletions can be made anywhere in a linked list.
- Stacks are important in compilers and operating systems insertions and deletions are made only at one end of a stack, its top.
- Queues represent waiting lines; insertions are made at the tail of a queue and deletions are made from the head.
- Binary trees facilitate high-speed searching and sorting of data, eliminating duplicate data items efficiently, representing file-system directories and compiling expressions into machine language.
- Type-wrapper classes (e.g., Integer, Double, Boolean) enable programmers to manipulate primitive-type values as objects. Objects of these classes can be used in collections and data structures that can store only references to objects not primitive-type values.
- J2SE 5.0 introduces two new conversions, the boxing conversion and the unboxing conversion. A boxing conversion converts a value of a primitive type to an object of the corresponding type-wrapper class. An unboxing conversion converts an object of a type-wrapper class to a value of the corresponding primitive type.
- J2SE 5.0 performs boxing conversions and unboxing conversions automatically (called autoboxing and auto-unboxing).
- A self-referential class contains a reference that refers to another object of the same class type. Self-referential objects can be linked together to form dynamic data structures.
- The limit for dynamic memory allocation can be as large as the available physical memory in the computer or the amount of available disk space in a virtual-memory system. Often, the limits are much smaller because the
computer's available memory must be shared among many users.

- If no memory is available, an `OutOfMemoryError` is thrown.

- A linked list is accessed via a reference to the first node of the list. Each subsequent node is accessed via the link-reference member stored in the previous node.

- By convention, the link reference in the last node of a list is set to `null` to mark the end of the list.

- A node can contain data of any type, including objects of other classes.

- A linked list is appropriate when the number of data elements to be stored is unpredictable. Linked lists are dynamic, so the length of a list can increase or decrease as necessary.

- The size of a "conventional" Java array cannot be altered; it is fixed at creation time.

- Linked lists can be maintained in sorted order simply by inserting each new element at the proper point in the list.

- List nodes normally are not stored contiguously in memory. Rather, they are logically contiguous.

- A stack is a last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structure. The primary methods used to manipulate a stack are `push` and `pop`. Method `push` adds a new node to the top of the stack. Method `pop` removes a node from the top of the stack and returns the `data` object from the popped node.

- Stacks have many interesting applications. When a method call is made, the called method must know how to return to its caller, so the return address is pushed onto the program execution stack. If a series of method calls occurs, the successive return values are pushed onto the stack in last-in, first-out order so that each method can return to its caller. The program execution stack contains the space created for local variables on each invocation of a method. When the method returns to its caller, the space for that method's local variables is popped off the stack, and those variables are no longer available to the program.
• Stacks are used by compilers to evaluate arithmetic expressions and generate machine-language code to process the expressions.

• The technique of implementing each stack method as a call to a `List` method is called delegation—the stack method invoked delegates the call to the appropriate `List` method.

• A queue is similar to a checkout line in a supermarket—the first person in line is serviced first, and other customers enter the line only at the end and wait to be serviced.

• Queue nodes are removed only from the head of the queue and are inserted only at the tail. For this reason, a queue is referred to as a first-in, first-out (FIFO) data structure.

• The insert and remove operations for a queue are known as `enqueue` and `dequeue`.

• Queues have many uses in computer systems. Most computers have only a single processor, so only one application at a time can be serviced. Entries for the other applications are placed in a queue. The entry at the front of the queue is the next to receive service. Each entry gradually advances to the front of the queue as applications receive service.

• A tree is a nonlinear, two-dimensional data structure. Tree nodes contain two or more links.

• A binary tree is a tree whose nodes all contain two links. The root node is the first node in a tree.

• Each link in the root node refers to a child. The left child is the first node in the left subtree, and the right child is the first node in the right subtree.

• The children of a node are called siblings. A node with no children is called a leaf node.

• A binary search tree (with no duplicate node values) has the characteristic that the values in any left subtree are less than the value in the subtree's parent node, and the values in any right subtree are greater than the
value in the subtree's parent node. A node can be inserted only as a leaf node in a binary search tree.

- An inorder traversal of a binary search tree processes the node values in ascending order.

- In a preorder traversal, the value in each node is processed as the node is visited. Then the values in the left subtree are processed, and then the values in the right subtree.

- In a postorder traversal, the value in each node is processed after the values of its children.

- The binary search tree facilitates duplicate elimination. As the tree is created, attempts to insert a duplicate value are recognized, because a duplicate follows the same "go left" or "go right" decisions on each comparison as the original value did. Thus, the duplicate eventually is compared with a node containing the same value. The duplicate value can be discarded at this point.

- Searching a binary tree for a value that matches a key value is also fast, especially for tightly packed trees. In a tightly packed tree, each level contains about twice as many elements as the previous one. So a tightly packed binary search tree with \( n \) elements has \( \log_2 n \) levels, and thus at most \( \log_2 n \) comparisons would have to be made either to find a match or to determine that no match exists. Searching a (tightly packed) 1000-element binary search tree requires at most 10 comparisons, because \( 2^{10} > 1000 \). Searching a (tightly packed) 1,000,000-element binary search tree requires at most 20 comparisons, because \( 2^{20} > 1,000,000 \).
Terminology

autoboxing

auto-unboxing

balanced tree

binary search tree

binary tree

binary tree sort

Boolean class

boxing conversion

Byte class

Character class

child node

children of a node

delegate a method call

delete a node

dequeue

Double class
duplicate elimination

dynamic data structure

enqueue

**FIFO (first-in, first-out)**

**Float class**

head of a queue

inorder traversal of a binary tree

insert a node

**Integer class**

leaf node

left child

left subtree

**level-order traversal of a binary tree**

**LIFO (last-in, first-out)**

**linear data structure**

**linked list**

**Long class**

node

**nonlinear data structure**

**null reference**
packed tree

parent node

pop

postorder traversal of a binary tree

predicate method

preorder traversal of a binary tree

program execution stack

push

queue

recursive tree traversal algorithms

right child

right subtree

root node

self-referential class

Short class

stack

subtree

tail of a queue

top of a stack
traversal

tree

type-wrapper classes

unboxing conversion

visiting a node
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. A self-_________ class is used to form dynamic data structures that can grow and shrink at execution time.

2. A(n) __________ is a constrained version of a linked list in which nodes can be inserted and deleted only from the start of the list.

3. A method that does not alter a linked list, but simply looks at it to determine whether it is empty, is referred to as a(n) __________ method.

4. A queue is referred to as a(n) __________ data structure because the first nodes inserted are the first ones removed.

5. The reference to the next node in a linked list is referred to as a(n) __________.

6. Automatically reclaiming dynamically allocated memory in Java is called __________.

7. A(n) __________ is a constrained version of a linked list in which nodes can be inserted only at the end of the list and deleted only from the start of the list.

8. A(n) __________ is a nonlinear, two-dimensional data structure that contains nodes with two or more links.

9. A stack is referred to as a(n) __________ data structure because the last node inserted is the first node removed.

10. The nodes of a(n) __________ tree contain two link members.

11. The first node of a tree is the __________ node.

12. Each link in a tree node refers to a(n) __________ or __________ of that node.

13. A tree node that has no children is called a(n) __________ node.

14. The three traversal algorithms we mentioned in the text for binary search trees are __________, __________ and __________.

15. Assuming that myArray contains references to Double objects, __________ occurs when the statement "double number = myArray[0];" executes.

16. Assuming that myArray contains references to Double objects, __________ occurs when the statement "myArray[0] = 1.25;" executes.

17.2 What are the differences between a linked list and a stack?

17.3 What are the differences between a stack and a queue?

Perhaps a more appropriate title for this chapter would have been "Reusable Data Structures." Comment on how each of the following entities or concepts contributes to the reusability of data structures:
Manually provide the inorder, preorder and postorder traversals of the binary search tree of Fig. 17.20.

**Figure 17.20.** Binary search tree with 15 nodes.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

17.1 a) referential. b) stack. c) predicate. d) first-in, first-out (FIFO). e) link. f) garbage collection. g) queue. h) tree i) last-in, first-out (LIFO). j) binary. k) root. l) child or subtree. m) leaf. n) inorder, preorder, postorder. o) auto-unboxing. p) autoboxing.

17.2 It is possible to insert a node anywhere in a linked list and remove a node from anywhere in a linked list. Nodes in a stack may be inserted only at the top of the stack and removed only from the top.

17.3 A queue is a FIFO data structure that has references to both its head and its tail, so that nodes may be inserted at the tail and deleted from the head. A stack is a LIFO data structure that has a single reference to the top of the stack, where both insertion and deletion of nodes are performed.

17.4 1. Classes allow us to instantiate as many data structure objects of a certain type (i.e., class) as we wish.

2. Inheritance enables a subclass to reuse the functionality from a superclass. Public methods of a superclass can be accessed through a subclass to eliminate duplicate logic.

3. Composition enables a class to reuse code by storing an instance of another class in a field. Public methods of the member class can be called by methods in the composite class.

17.5 The inorder traversal is

11 18 19 28 32 40 44 49 69 71 72 83 92 97 99

The preorder traversal is

49 28 18 11 19 40 32 44 83 71 69 72 97 92 99

The postorder traversal is

11 19 18 32 44 40 28 69 72 71 92 99 97 83 49
Exercises

17.6 Write a program that concatenates two linked-list objects of characters. Class ListConcatenate should include a method concatenate that takes references to both list objects as arguments and concatenates the second list to the first list.

17.7 Write a program that merges two ordered-list objects of integers into a single ordered-list object of integers. Method merge of class ListMerge should receive references to each of the list objects to be merged and return a reference to the merged list object.

17.8 Write a program that inserts 25 random integers from 0 to 100 in order into a linked-list object. The program should calculate the sum of the elements and the floating-point average of the elements.

17.9 Write a program that creates a linked-list object of 10 characters, then creates a second list object containing a copy of the first list, but in reverse order.

17.10 Write a program that inputs a line of text and uses a stack object to print the words of the line in reverse order.
Write a program that uses a stack to determine whether a string is a palindrome (i.e., the string is spelled identically backward and forward). The program should ignore spaces and punctuation.

Stacks are used by compilers to help in the process of evaluating expressions and generating machine-language code. In this and the next exercise, we investigate how compilers evaluate arithmetic expressions consisting only of constants, operators and parentheses.

Humans generally write expressions like \(3 + 4\) and \(7 / 9\) in which the operator (+ or / here) is written between its operands—this is called **infix notation**. Computers "prefer" **postfix notation**, in which the operator is written to the right of its two operands. The preceding infix expressions would appear in postfix notation as \(3 4 +\) and \(7 9 /\), respectively.

To evaluate a complex infix expression, a compiler would first convert the expression to postfix notation and evaluate the postfix version. Each of these algorithms requires only a single left-to-right pass of the expression. Each algorithm uses a stack object in support of its operation, but each uses the stack for a different purpose.

In this exercise, you will write a Java version of the infix-to-postfix
17.12

conversion algorithm. In the next exercise, you will write a Java version of the postfix expression evaluation algorithm. In a later exercise, you will discover that code you write in this exercise can help you implement a complete working compiler.

Write class

InfixToPostfixConverter
to convert an ordinary infix arithmetic expression (assume a valid expression is entered) with single-digit integers such as

\[(6 + 2) \times 5 - 8 / 4\]

to a postfix expression. The postfix version of the preceding infix expression is (note that no parentheses are needed)

\[6 2 + 5 \times 8 4 / -\]

The program should read the expression into StringBuffer infix and use one of the stack classes implemented in this chapter to help create the postfix expression in StringBuffer postfix. The algorithm for creating a postfix expression is as follows:

1. Push a left parenthesis '(' on the stack.
2. Append a right parenthesis ')' to the end of infix.
3. While the stack is not empty, read
infix from left to right and do the following:

If the current character in \textit{infix} is a digit, append it to \textit{postfix}.

If the current character in \textit{infix} is a left parenthesis, push it onto the stack.

If the current character in \textit{infix} is an operator:

Pop operators (if there are any) at the top of the stack while they have equal or higher precedence than the current operator, and append the popped operators to \textit{postfix}.

Push the current character in \textit{infix} onto the stack.

If the current character in \textit{infix} is a right parenthesis:

Pop operators from the top of the stack and append them to \textit{postfix} until a left parenthesis is at the top of the stack.

Pop (and discard) the left parenthesis from the stack.

The following arithmetic operations are allowed in an expression:

+ addition

- subtraction

* multiplication

/ division

^ exponentiation
The stack should be maintained with stack nodes that each contain an instance variable and a reference to the next stack node. Some of the methods you may want to provide are as follows:

1. Method `convertToPostfix`, which converts the infix expression to postfix notation.

2. Method `isOperator`, which determines whether \( c \) is an operator.

3. Method `precedence`, which determines whether the precedence of \( \text{operator1} \) (from the infix expression) is less than, equal to or greater than the precedence of \( \text{operator2} \) (from the stack). The method returns `true` if \( \text{operator1} \) has lower precedence than \( \text{operator2} \). Otherwise, `false` is returned.

4. Method `stackTop` (this should be added to the stack class), which returns the top value of the stack without popping the stack.

Write class `PostfixEvaluator`, which evaluates a postfix expression such as

\[
6 \ 2 \ + \ 5 \ * \ 8 \ 4 \ / \ -
\]

The program should read a postfix expression consisting of digits and operators into a `StringBuffer`. Using modified versions of the stack methods implemented earlier in this chapter, the program should scan the expression and evaluate it (assume it is valid). The algorithm is as follows:

1. Append a right parenthesis `)`) to the end of the postfix expression. When the right-parenthesis character is encountered, no further processing is necessary.

2. When the right-parenthesis character has not been encountered, read the expression from left to right.
If the current character is a digit, do the following:

Push its integer value on the stack (the integer value of a digit character is its value in the computer's character set minus the value of ‘0’ in Unicode).

Otherwise, if the current character is an operator:

Pop the two top elements of the stack into variables $x$ and $y$.

Calculate $y$ operator $x$.

Push the result of the calculation onto the stack.

3. When the right parenthesis is encountered in the expression, pop the top value of the stack. This is the result of the postfix expression.

[Note: In b) above (based on the sample expression at the beginning of this exercise), if the operator is ‘/’, the top of the stack is 2 and the next element in the stack is 8, then pop 2 into $x$, pop 8 into $y$, evaluate $8 / 2$ and push the result, 4, back on the stack. This note also applies to operator ‘-’.] The arithmetic operations allowed in an expression are:

+  addition
-  subtraction
*  multiplication
/  division
^  exponentiation
%  remainder

The stack should be maintained with one of the stack classes introduced in this chapter. You may want to provide the following methods:

1. Method `evaluatePostfixExpression`, which evaluates the postfix expression.
2. Method `calculate`, which evaluates the expression $op1$ operator $op2$.
3. Method `push`, which pushes a value onto the stack.
4. Method `pop`, which pops a value off the stack.
5. Method `isEmpty`, which determines whether the stack is empty.
6. Method `printStack`, which prints the stack.
Modify the postfix evaluator program of Exercise 17.13 so that it can process integer operands larger than 9.

(Supermarket Simulation) Write a program that simulates a checkout line at a supermarket. The line is a queue object. Customers (i.e., customer objects) arrive in random integer intervals of from 1 to 4 minutes. Also, each customer is serviced in random integer intervals of from 1 to 4 minutes. Obviously, the rates need to be balanced. If the average arrival rate is larger than the average service rate, the queue will grow infinitely. Even with "balanced" rates, randomness can still cause long lines. Run the supermarket simulation for a 12-hour day (720 minutes), using the following algorithm:

1. Choose a random integer between 1 and 4 to determine the minute at which the first customer arrives.

2. At the first customer's arrival time, do the following:
   
   Determine customer's service time (random integer from 1 to 4).
   
   Begin servicing the customer.
   
   Schedule arrival time of next customer (random integer 1 to 4 added to the current time).

3. For each minute of the day, consider the following:
   
   If the next customer arrives, proceed as follows:
   
   Say so.
   
   Enqueue the customer.
   
   Schedule the arrival time of the next customer.
   
   If service was completed for the last customer, do the following:
   
   Say so.
   
   Dequeue next customer to be serviced.
   
   Determine customer's service completion time (random integer from 1 to 4 added to the current time).

Now run your simulation for 720 minutes and answer each of the following:

1. What is the maximum number of customers in the queue at any time?

2. What is the longest wait any one customer experiences?

3. What happens if the arrival interval is changed from 1 to 4 minutes to 1 to 3 minutes?

Modify Fig. 17.17 and Fig. 17.18 to allow the binary tree to contain duplicates.

Write a program based on the program of Fig. 17.17 and Fig. 17.18 that inputs a line of text, tokenizes the sentence into separate words (you might want to use the StreamTokenizer class from the java.io package), inserts the words in a binary search tree and prints the inorder, preorder and postorder traversals of the tree.
In this chapter, we saw that duplicate elimination is straightforward when creating a binary search tree. Describe how you would perform duplicate elimination when using only a one-dimensional array. Compare the performance of array-based duplicate elimination with the performance of binary-search-tree-based duplicate elimination.

17.18 Write a method `depth` that receives a binary tree and determines how many levels it has.

**(Recursively Print a List Backward)** Write a method `printListBackward` that recursively outputs the items in a linked list object in reverse order. Write a test program that creates a sorted list of integers and prints the list in reverse order.

**(Recursively Search a List)** Write a method `searchList` that recursively searches a linked list object for a specified value. Method `searchList` should return a reference to the value if it is found; otherwise, `null` should be returned. Use your method in a test program that creates a list of integers. The program should prompt the user for a value to locate in the list.

**(Binary Tree Delete)** In this exercise, we discuss deleting items from binary search trees. The deletion algorithm is not as straightforward as the insertion algorithm. Three cases are encountered when deleting an item: the item is contained in a leaf node (i.e., it has no children), the item is contained in a node that has one child or the item is contained in a node that has two children.

If the item to be deleted is contained in a leaf node, the node is deleted and the reference in the parent node is set to null.

If the item to be deleted is contained in a node with one child, the reference in the parent node is set to reference the child node and the node containing the data item is deleted. This causes the child node to take the place of the deleted node in the tree.

The last case is the most difficult. When a node with two children is deleted, another node in the tree must take its place. However, the reference in the parent node cannot simply be assigned to reference one of the children of the node to be deleted. In most cases, the resulting binary search tree would not embody the following characteristic of binary search trees (with no duplicate values): *The values in any left subtree are less than the value in the parent node, and the values in any right subtree are greater than the value in the parent node.*

Which node is used as a *replacement node* to maintain this characteristic? It is either the node containing the largest value in the tree less than the value in the node being deleted, or the node containing the smallest value in the tree greater than the value in the node being deleted. Let us consider the node with the smaller value. In a binary search tree, the largest value less than a parent's value is located in the left subtree of the parent node and is guaranteed to be contained in the rightmost node of the subtree. This node is located by walking down the left subtree to the right until the reference to the right child of the current node is null. We are now referencing the replacement node, which is either a leaf node or a node with one child to its left. If the replacement node is a leaf node, the steps to perform the deletion are as follows:
17.22 Store the reference to the node to be deleted in a temporary reference variable.

2. Set the reference in the parent of the node being deleted to reference the replacement node.

3. Set the reference in the parent of the replacement node to \texttt{null}.

4. Set the reference to the right subtree in the replacement node to reference the right subtree of the node to be deleted.

5. Set the reference to the left subtree in the replacement node to reference the left subtree of the node to be deleted.

The deletion steps for a replacement node with a left child are similar to those for a replacement node with no children, but the algorithm also must move the child into the replacement node's position in the tree. If the replacement node is a node with a left child, the steps to perform the deletion are as follows:

1. Store the reference to the node to be deleted in a temporary reference variable.

2. Set the reference in the parent of the node being deleted to reference the replacement node.

3. Set the reference in the parent of the replacement node reference to the left child of the replacement node.

4. Set the reference to the right subtree in the replacement node reference to the right subtree of the node to be deleted.

5. Set the reference to the left subtree in the replacement node to reference the left subtree of the node to be deleted.

Write method \texttt{deleteNode}, which takes as its argument the value to delete. Method \texttt{deleteNode} should locate in the tree the node containing the value to delete and use the algorithms discussed here to delete the node. If the value is not found in the tree, the method should print a message that indicates whether the value is deleted. Modify the program of \texttt{Fig. 17.17} and \texttt{Fig. 17.18} to use this method. After deleting an item, call the methods \texttt{inorderTraversal}, \texttt{preorderTraversal} and \texttt{postorderTraversal} to confirm that the delete operation was performed correctly.

\textit{(Binary Tree Search)} Write method \texttt{binaryTreeSearch}, which attempts to locate a specified value in a binary search tree object. The method should take as an argument a search key to be located. If the node containing the search key is found, the method should return a reference to that node; otherwise, it should return a null reference.

\textit{(Level-Order Binary Tree Traversal)} The program of \texttt{Fig. 17.17} and \texttt{Fig. 17.18} illustrated three recursive methods of traversing a binary tree in inorder, preorder and postorder traversals. This exercise presents the \textit{level-order traversal} of a binary tree, in which the node values are printed level-by-level, starting at the root node level. The nodes on each level are printed from left to right. The level-order traversal is not a recursive algorithm. It uses a queue object to control the output of the nodes. The algorithm is as follows:
1. Insert the root node in the queue.

2. While there are nodes left in the queue, do the following:
   - Get the next node in the queue.
   - Print the node's value.
   - If the reference to the left child of the node is not null:
     - Insert the left child node in the queue.
   - If the reference to the right child of the node is not null:
     - Insert the right child node in the queue.

Write method `levelOrder` to perform a level-order traversal of a binary tree object. Modify the program of Fig. 17.17 and Fig. 17.18 to use this method. [Note: You will also need to use queue-processing methods of Fig. 17.13 in this program.]

*(Printing Trees)* Write a recursive method `outputTree` to display a binary tree object on the screen. The method should output the tree row by row, with the top of the tree at the left of the screen and the bottom of the tree toward the right of the screen. Each row is output vertically. For example, the binary tree illustrated in Fig. 17.20 is output as shown in Fig. 17.21.

**Figure 17.21. Sample output of recursive method `outputTree`.**
(This item is displayed on page 855 in the print version)

Note that the rightmost leaf node appears at the top of the output in the rightmost column and the root node appears at the left of the output. Each
Method `outputTree` should receive an argument `totalSpaces` representing the number of spaces preceding the value to be output. (This variable should start at zero so that the root node is output at the left of the screen.) The method uses a modified inorder traversal to output the tree; it starts at the rightmost node in the tree and works back to the left. The algorithm is as follows:

While the reference to the current node is not null, perform the following:

- Recursively call `outputTree` with the right subtree of the current node and `totalSpaces + 5`.
- Use a `for` statement to count from 1 to `totalSpaces` and output spaces.
- Output the value in the current node.
- Set the reference to the current node to refer to the left subtree of the current node.
- Increment `totalSpaces` by 5.
Special Section: Building Your Own Compiler

In Exercise 7.34 and Exercise 7.35, we introduced Simpletron Machine Language (SML), and you implemented a Simpletron computer simulator to execute programs written in SML. In this section, we build a compiler that converts programs written in a high-level programming language to SML. This section "ties" together the entire programming process. You will write programs in this new high-level language, compile them on the compiler you build and run them on the simulator you built in Exercise 7.35. You should make every effort to implement your compiler in an object-oriented manner.

(The Simple Language) Before we begin building the compiler, we discuss a simple, yet powerful high-level language similar to early versions of the popular language BASIC. We call the language Simple. Every Simple statement consists of a line number and a Simple instruction. Line numbers must appear in ascending order. Each instruction begins with one of the following Simple commands: rem, input, let, print, goto, if/goto or end (see Fig. 17.22). All commands except end can be used repeatedly. Simple evaluates only integer expressions using the $+$, $-$, $*$ and $/$ operators. These operators have the same precedence as in Java. Parentheses can be used to change the order of evaluation of an expression.

Figure 17.22. Simple commands.
(This item is displayed on page 856 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command</th>
<th>Example statement</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rem</td>
<td>50 rem this is a remark</td>
<td>Any text following the command rem is for documentation purposes only and is ignored by the compiler.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>input</td>
<td>30 input x</td>
<td>Display a question mark to prompt the user to enter an integer. Read that integer from the keyboard and store the integer in x.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>80 let u = 4 * (j - 56)</td>
<td>Assign u the value of $4 \times (j - 56)$. Note that an arbitrarily complex expression can appear to the right of the equal sign.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>print</td>
<td>10 print w</td>
<td>Display the value of w.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goto</td>
<td>70 goto 45</td>
<td>Transfer program control to line 45.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if/goto</td>
<td>35 if i == z goto 80</td>
<td>Compare i and z for equality and transfer program control to line 80 if the condition is true; otherwise, continue execution with the next statement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end</td>
<td>99 end</td>
<td>Terminate program execution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Our Simple compiler recognizes only lowercase letters. All characters in a Simple file should be lowercase. (Uppercase letters result in a syntax error unless they appear in a rem statement, in which case they are ignored.) A variable name is a single letter. Simple does not allow descriptive variable names, so variables should be explained in remarks to indicate their use in a program. Simple uses only integer variables. Simple does not have variable declarations—merely mentioning a variable name in a program causes the variable to be declared and initialized to zero. The syntax of Simple does not allow string manipulation (reading a string, writing a string, comparing strings, etc.). If a string is encountered in a Simple program (after a command other than rem), the compiler generates a syntax error. The first version of our compiler assumes that Simple programs are entered correctly. Exercise 17.29 asks the reader to modify the compiler to perform syntax error checking.

Simple uses the conditional if/goto and unconditional goto statements to alter the flow of control during program execution. If the condition in the if/goto statement is true, control is transferred to a specific line of the program. The following relational and equality operators are valid in an if/goto statement: <, >, <=, >=, == or !=. The precedence of these operators is the same as in Java.

Let us now consider several programs that demonstrate Simple's features. The first program (Fig. 17.23) reads two integers from the keyboard, stores the values in variables a and b and computes and prints their sum (stored in variable c).

Figure 17.23. Simple program that determines the sum of two integers.

(This item is displayed on page 857 in the print version)

```
1  10 rem   determine and print the sum of two integers
2  15 rem
3  20 rem   input the two integers
4  30 input a
5  40 input b
6  45 rem
7  50 rem   add integers and store result in c
8  60 let c = a + b
9  65 rem
10  70 rem   print the result
11  80 print c
12  90 rem   terminate program execution
13  99 end
```

The program of Fig. 17.24 determines and prints the larger of two integers. The integers are input from the keyboard and stored in s and t. The if/goto statement tests the condition s >= t. If the condition is true, control is transferred to line 90 and s is output; otherwise, t is output and control is transferred to the end statement in line 99, where the program terminates.

Figure 17.24. Simple program that finds the larger of two integers.

(This item is displayed on page 857 in the print version)

```
1  10 rem   determine and print the larger of two integers
2  20 input s
```
3  30 input t
4  32 rem
5  35 rem   test if s >= t
6  40 if s >= t goto 90
7  45 rem
8  50 rem   t is greater than s, so print t
9  60 print t
10  70 goto 99
11  75 rem
12  80 rem   s is greater than or equal to t, so print s
13  90 print s
14  99 end

Simple does not provide a repetition statement (such as Java's for, while or do... while). However, Simple can simulate each of Java's repetition statements by using the if/goto and goto statements. Figure 17.25 uses a sentinel-controlled loop to calculate the squares of several integers. Each integer is input from the keyboard and stored in variable \( j \). If the value entered is the sentinel value \(-9999\), control is transferred to line 99, where the program terminates. Otherwise, \( k \) is assigned the square of \( j \), \( k \) is output to the screen and control is passed to line 20, where the next integer is input.

**Figure 17.25. Calculate the squares of several integers.**

(This item is displayed on page 857 in the print version)

1  10 rem   calculate the squares of several integers
2  20 input j
3  23 rem
4  25 rem   test for sentinel value
5  30 if j == -9999 goto 99
6  33 rem
7  35 rem   calculate square of \( j \) and assign result to \( k \)
8  40 let k = j * j
9  50 print k
10  53 rem
11  55 rem   loop to get next \( j \)
12  60 goto 20
13  99 end

Using the sample programs of Fig. 17.23 Fig. 17.25 as your guide, write a Simple program to accomplish each of the following:

1. Input three integers, determine their average and print the result.

2. Use a sentinel-controlled loop to input 10 integers and compute and print their sum.

3. Use a counter-controlled loop to input 7 integers, some positive and some negative, and compute and print their average.

4. Input a series of integers and determine and print the largest. The first integer input indicates how
5. Input 10 integers and print the smallest.

6. Calculate and print the sum of the even integers from 2 to 30.

7. Calculate and print the product of the odd integers from 1 to 9.

(Building A Compiler. Prerequisites: Complete Exercise 7.34, Exercise 7.35, Exercise 17.12, Exercise 17.13 and Exercise 17.26) Now that the Simple language has been presented (Exercise 17.26), we discuss how to build a Simple compiler. First, we consider the process by which a Simple program is converted to SML and executed by the Simpletron simulator (see Fig. 17.26). A file containing a Simple program is read by the compiler and converted to SML code. The SML code is output to a file on disk, in which SML instructions appear one per line. The SML file is then loaded into the Simpletron simulator, and the results are sent to a file on disk and to the screen. Note that the Simpletron program developed in Exercise 7.35 took its input from the keyboard. It must be modified to read from a file so it can run the programs produced by our compiler.

Figure 17.26. Writing, compiling and executing a Simple language program.

The Simple compiler performs two passes of the Simple program to convert it to SML. The first pass constructs a symbol table in which every line number, variable name and constant of the Simple program is stored with its type and corresponding location in the final SML code (the symbol table is discussed in detail below). The first pass also produces the corresponding SML instruction object(s) for each of the Simple statements. If the Simple program contains statements that transfer control to a line later in the program, the first pass results in an SML program containing some "unfinished" instructions. The second pass of the compiler locates and completes the unfinished instructions and outputs the SML program to a file.

First Pass
The compiler begins by reading one statement of the Simple program into memory. The line must be separated into its individual tokens (i.e., "pieces" of a statement) for processing and compilation. (The StreamTokenizer class from the java.io package can be used.) Recall that every statement begins with a line number followed by a command. As the compiler breaks a statement into tokens, if the token is a line number, a variable or a constant, it is placed in the symbol table. A line number is placed in the symbol table only if it is the first token in a statement. The symbolTable object is an array of tableEntry objects representing each symbol in the program. There is no restriction on the number of symbols that can appear in the program. Therefore, the symbolTable for a particular program could be large. Make it a 100-element array for now. You can increase or decrease its size once the program is working.

Each tableEntry object contains three fields. Field symbol is an integer containing the Unicode representation of a variable (remember that variable names are single characters), a line number or a constant. Field type is one of the following characters indicating the symbol's type: 'C' for constant, 'L' for line number or 'V' for variable. Field location contains the Simpletron memory location (00 to 99) to which the symbol refers. Simpletron memory is an array of 100 integers in which SML instructions and data are stored. For a line number, the location is the element in the Simpletron memory array at which the SML instructions for the Simple statement begin. For a variable or constant, the location is the element in the Simpletron memory array in which the variable or constant is stored. Variables and constants are allocated from the end of Simpletron's memory backward. The first variable or constant is stored at location 99, the next at location 98, etc.

The symbol table plays an integral part in converting Simple programs to SML. We learned in Chapter 7 that an SML instruction is a four-digit integer comprised of two parts: the operation code and the operand. The operation code is determined by commands in Simple. For example, the simple command input corresponds to SML operation code 10 (read), and the Simple command print corresponds to SML operation code 11 (write). The operand is a memory location containing the data on which the operation code performs its task (e.g., operation code 10 reads a value from the keyboard and stores it in the memory location specified by the operand). The compiler searches symbolTable to determine the Simpletron memory location for each symbol, so the corresponding location can be used to complete the SML instructions.

The compilation of each Simple statement is based on its command. For
example, after the line number in a \texttt{rem} statement is inserted in the symbol table, the remainder of the statement is ignored by the compiler, because a remark is for documentation purposes only. The \texttt{input}, \texttt{print}, \texttt{goto} and \texttt{end} statements correspond to the SML \texttt{read}, \texttt{write}, \texttt{branch} (to a specific location) and \texttt{halt} instructions. Statements containing these Simple commands are converted directly to SML. (\textit{Note:} A \texttt{goto} statement may contain an unresolved reference if the specified line number refers to a statement further into the Simple program file; this is sometimes called a forward reference.)

When a \texttt{goto} statement is compiled with an unresolved reference, the SML instruction must be \texttt{flagged} to indicate that the second pass of the compiler must complete the instruction. The flags are stored in a 100-element array \texttt{flags} of type \texttt{int} in which each element is initialized to \texttt{-1}. If the memory location to which a line number in the Simple program refers is not yet known (i.e., it is not in the symbol table), the line number is stored in array \texttt{flags} in the element with the same index as the incomplete instruction. The operand of the incomplete instruction is set to \texttt{00} temporarily. For example, an unconditional branch instruction (making a forward reference) is left as \texttt{+4000} until the second pass of the compiler. The second pass will be described shortly.

Compilation of \texttt{if/goto} and \texttt{let} statements is more complicated than for other statements; they are the only statements that produce more than one SML instruction. For an \texttt{if/goto} statement, the compiler produces code to test the condition and to branch to another line if necessary. The result of the branch could be an unresolved reference. Each of the relational and equality operators can be simulated by using SML's \texttt{branch zero} and \texttt{branch negative} instructions (or possibly a combination of both).

For a \texttt{let} statement, the compiler produces code to evaluate an arbitrarily complex arithmetic expression consisting of integer variables and/or constants. Expressions should separate each operand and operator with spaces. \textbf{Exercise 17.12} and \textbf{Exercise 17.13} presented the infix-to-postfix conversion algorithm and the postfix evaluation algorithm used by compilers to evaluate expressions. Before proceeding with your compiler, you should complete each of these exercises. When a compiler encounters an expression, it converts the expression from infix notation to postfix notation, then evaluates the postfix expression.

How is it that the compiler produces the machine language to evaluate an expression containing variables? The postfix evaluation algorithm contains a "hook" where the compiler can generate SML instructions rather than actually evaluating the expression. To enable this "hook" in the compiler, the postfix evaluation algorithm must be modified to search the symbol table for each
symbol it encounters (and possibly insert it), determine the symbol's corresponding memory location and push the memory location (instead of the symbol) onto the stack. When an operator is encountered in the postfix expression, the two memory locations at the top of the stack are popped, and machine language for effecting the operation is produced by using the memory locations as operands. The result of each subexpression is stored in a temporary location in memory and pushed back onto the stack so the evaluation of the postfix expression can continue. When postfix evaluation is complete, the memory location containing the result is the only location left on the stack. This is popped, and SML instructions are generated to assign the result to the variable at the left of the let statement.

---

Second Pass

The second pass of the compiler performs two tasks: Resolve any unresolved references and output the SML code to a file. Resolution of references occurs as follows:

1. Search the flags array for an unresolved reference (i.e., an element with a value other than -1).

2. Locate the object in array symbolTable containing the symbol stored in the flags array (be sure that the type of the symbol is 'L' for line number).

3. Insert the memory location from field location into the instruction with the unresolved reference (remember that an instruction containing an unresolved reference has operand 00).

4. Repeat Steps (a), (b) and (c) until the end of the flags array is reached.

After the resolution process is complete, the entire array containing the SML code is output to a disk file with one SML instruction per line. This file can be read by the Simpletron for execution (after the simulator is modified to read its input from a file). Compiling your first Simple program into an SML file and executing that file should give you a real sense of personal accomplishment.

A Complete Example
The following example illustrates the complete conversion of a Simple program to SML as it will be performed by the Simple compiler. Consider a Simple program that inputs an integer and sums the values from 1 to that integer. The program and the SML instructions produced by the first pass of the Simple compiler are illustrated in Fig. 17.27. The symbol table constructed by the first pass is shown in Fig. 17.28.

Figure 17.27. SML instructions produced after the compiler's first pass.
(This item is displayed on page 861 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple program</th>
<th>SML location and instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 rem sum 1 to x</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>rem ignored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 input x</td>
<td>00 +1099</td>
<td>read x into location 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 rem check y == x</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>rem ignored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 if y == x goto 60</td>
<td>01 +2098</td>
<td>load y (98) into accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>02 +3199</td>
<td>sub x (99) from accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>03 +4200</td>
<td>branch zero to unresolved location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 rem increment y</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>rem ignored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 let y = y + 1</td>
<td>04 +2098</td>
<td>load y into accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>05 +3097</td>
<td>add 1 (97) to accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>06 +2196</td>
<td>store in temporary location 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>07 +2096</td>
<td>load from temporary location 96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>08 +2198</td>
<td>store accumulator in y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 rem add y to total</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>rem ignored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 let t = t + y</td>
<td>09 +2095</td>
<td>load t (95) into accumulator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 +3098</td>
<td>add y to accumulator</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 17.28. Symbol table for program of Fig. 17.27.
(This item is displayed on page 862 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'x'</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'y'</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>09</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Most Simple statements convert directly to single SML instructions. The exceptions in this program are remarks, the *if/goto* statement in line 20 and the *let* statements. Remarks do not translate into machine language. However, the line number for a remark is placed in the symbol table in case the line number is referenced in a *goto* statement or an *if/goto* statement. Line 20 of the program specifies that, if the condition \( y == x \) is true, program control is transferred to line 60. Since line 60 appears later in the program, the first pass of the compiler has not as yet placed 60 in the symbol table. (Statement line numbers are placed in the symbol table only when they appear as the first token in a statement.) Therefore, it is not possible at this time to determine the operand of the SML *branch zero* instruction at location 03 in the array of SML instructions. The compiler places 60 in location 03 of the *flags* array to indicate that the second pass completes this instruction.

We must keep track of the next instruction location in the SML array because there is not a one-to-one correspondence between Simple statements and SML instructions. For example, the *if/goto* statement of line 20 compiles into three SML instructions. Each time an instruction is produced, we must increment the *instruction counter* to the next location in the SML array. Note that the size of Simpletron's memory could present a problem for Simple programs with many statements, variables and constants. It is conceivable that the compiler will run out of memory. To test for this case, your program should contain a *data counter* to keep track of the location at which the next variable or constant will be stored in the SML array. If the value of the instruction counter is larger than the value of the data counter, the SML array is full. In this case, the compilation process should terminate, and the compiler should print an error message indicating that it ran out of memory during compilation. This serves to emphasize that, although the programmer is freed from the burdens of managing memory by the compiler, the compiler itself must carefully
determine the placement of instructions and data in memory and must check for such errors as memory being exhausted during the compilation process.

### A Step-by-Step View of the Compilation Process

Let us now walk through the compilation process for the Simple program in **Fig. 17.27**. The compiler reads the first line of the program

```plaintext
5 rem sum 1 to x
```

The first token in the statement (the line number) is determined using the `StringTokenizer` class. (See Chapter 29 for a discussion of this class.) The token returned by the `StringTokenizer` is converted to an integer by using the static method `Integer.parseInt()`, so the symbol `5` can be located in the symbol table. If the symbol is not found, it is inserted in the symbol table.

We are at the beginning of the program and this is the first line, and no symbols are in the table yet. Therefore, `5` is inserted into the symbol table as type `L` (line number) and assigned the first location in the SML array (`00`). Although this line is a remark, a space in the symbol table is still allocated for the line number (in case it is referenced by a `goto` or an `if/goto`). No SML instruction is generated for a `rem` statement, so the instruction counter is not incremented.

```plaintext
10 input x
```

is tokenized next. The line number `10` is placed in the symbol table as type `L` and assigned the first location in the SML array (`00` because a remark began the program, so the instruction counter is currently `00`). The command `input` indicates that the next token is a variable (only a variable can appear in an `input` statement). `input` corresponds directly to an SML operation code; therefore, the compiler simply has to determine the location of `x` in the SML array. Symbol `x` is not found in the symbol table. So, it is inserted into the
symbol table as the Unicode representation of \( x \), given type \( V \) and assigned location 99 in the SML array (data storage begins at 99 and is allocated backward). SML code can now be generated for this statement. Operation code 10 (the SML read operation code) is multiplied by 100, and the location of \( x \) (as determined in the symbol table) is added to complete the instruction. The instruction is then stored in the SML array at location 00. The instruction counter is incremented by one, because a single SML instruction was produced.

The statement

\[
15 \quad \text{rem check } y == x
\]

is tokenized next. The symbol table is searched for line number 15 (which is not found). The line number is inserted as type \( L \) and assigned the next location in the array, 01. (Remember that \text{rem} statements do not produce code, so the instruction counter is not incremented.)

The statement

\[
20 \quad \text{if } y == x \quad \text{goto } 60
\]

is tokenized next. Line number 20 is inserted in the symbol table and given type \( L \) at the next location in the SML array 01. The command \text{if} indicates that a condition is to be evaluated. The variable \( y \) is not found in the symbol table, so it is inserted and given the type \( V \) and the SML location 98. Next, SML instructions are generated to evaluate the condition. There is no direct equivalent in SML for the \text{if/goto}; it must be simulated by performing a calculation using \( x \) and \( y \) and branching according to the result. If \( y \) is equal to \( x \), the result of subtracting \( x \) from \( y \) is zero, so the \text{branch zero} instruction can be used with the result of the calculation to simulate the \text{if/goto} statement. The first step requires that \( y \) be loaded (from SML location 98) into the accumulator. This produces the instruction 01 +2098. Next, \( x \) is subtracted from the accumulator. This produces the instruction 02 +3199. The value in the accumulator may be zero, positive or negative. The operator is \( == \), so we want to \text{branch zero}. First, the symbol table is searched for the branch location (60 in this case), which is not found. So, 60 is placed in the \text{flags} array at location
The instruction counter is incremented to 04.

The compiler proceeds to the statement

```
25 rem   increment y
```

The line number 25 is inserted in the symbol table as type L and assigned SML location 04. The instruction counter is not incremented.

When the statement

```
30 let y = y + 1
```

is tokenized, the line number 30 is inserted in the symbol table as type L and assigned SML location 04. Command let indicates that the line is an assignment statement. First, all the symbols on the line are inserted in the symbol table (if they are not already there). The integer 1 is added to the symbol table as type C and assigned SML location 97. Next, the right side of the assignment is converted from infix to postfix notation. Then the postfix expression (y 1 +) is evaluated. Symbol y is located in the symbol table, and its corresponding memory location is pushed onto the stack. Symbol 1 is also located in the symbol table, and its corresponding memory location is pushed onto the stack. When the operator + is encountered, the postfix evaluator pops the stack into the right operand of the operator and pops the stack again into the left operand of the operator, then produces the SML instructions

```
04 +2098 (load y)
05 +3097 (add 1)
```

The result of the expression is stored in a temporary location in memory (96) with instruction

```
06 +2196 (store temporary)
```

and the temporary location is pushed onto the stack. Now that the expression
has been evaluated, the result must be stored in \( y \) (i.e., the variable on the left side of \( = \)). So, the temporary location is loaded into the accumulator and the accumulator is stored in \( y \) with the instructions

\[
\begin{align*}
07 & \quad +2096 \quad (\text{load temporary}) \\
08 & \quad +2198 \quad (\text{store } y)
\end{align*}
\]

The reader should immediately notice that SML instructions appear to be redundant. We will discuss this issue shortly.

When the statement

\[
35 \quad \text{rem} \quad \text{add } y \text{ to total}
\]

is tokenized, line number 35 is inserted in the symbol table as type \( L \) and assigned location 09.

The statement

\[
40 \quad \text{let } t = t + y
\]

is similar to line 30. The variable \( t \) is inserted in the symbol table as type \( V \) and assigned SML location 95. The instructions follow the same logic and format as line 30, and the instructions 09 +2095, 10 +3098, 11 +2194, 12 +2094 and 13 +2195 are generated. Note that the result of \( t + y \) is assigned to temporary location 94 before being assigned to \( t \) (95). Once again, the reader should note that the instructions in memory locations 11 and 12 appear to be redundant. Again, we will discuss this shortly.

The statement

\[
45 \quad \text{rem} \quad \text{loop } y
\]
is a remark, so line 45 is added to the symbol table as type L and assigned SML location 14.

The statement

50 goto 20

transfers control to line 20. Line number 50 is inserted in the symbol table as type L and assigned SML location 14. The equivalent of goto in SML is the unconditional branch (40) instruction that transfers control to a specific SML location. The compiler searches the symbol table for line 20 and finds that it corresponds to SML location 01. The operation code (40) is multiplied by 100, and location 01 is added to it to produce the instruction 14 +4001.

The statement

55 rem output result

is a remark, so line 55 is inserted in the symbol table as type L and assigned SML location 15.

The statement

60 print t

is an output statement. Line number 60 is inserted in the symbol table as type L and assigned SML location 15. The equivalent of print in SML is operation code 11 (write). The location of t is determined from the symbol table and added to the result of the operation code multiplied by 100.

The statement

99 end

is the final line of the program. Line number 99 is stored in the symbol table as type L and assigned SML location 16. The end command produces the SML
instruction \( +4300 \) (43 is \textit{halt} in SML), which is written as the final instruction in the SML memory array.

This completes the first pass of the compiler. We now consider the second pass. The \texttt{flags} array is searched for values other than \texttt{-1}. Location \texttt{03} contains \texttt{60}, so the compiler knows that instruction \texttt{03} is incomplete. The compiler completes the instruction by searching the symbol table for \texttt{60}, determining its location and adding the location to the incomplete instruction. In this case, the search determines that line \texttt{60} corresponds to SML location \texttt{15}, so the completed instruction \texttt{03 +4215} is produced, replacing \texttt{03 +4200}. The Simple program has now been compiled successfully.

To build the compiler, you will have to perform each of the following tasks:

1. Modify the Simpletron simulator program you wrote in Exercise 7.35 to take its input from a file specified by the user (see Chapter 14). The simulator should output its results to a disk file in the same format as the screen output. Convert the simulator to be an object-oriented program. In particular, make each part of the hardware an object. Arrange the instruction types into a class hierarchy using inheritance. Then execute the program polymorphically simply by telling each instruction to execute itself with an \texttt{executeInstruction} message.

2. Modify the infix-to-postfix evaluation algorithm of Exercise 17.12 to process multidigit integer operands and single-letter variable name operands. [\textit{Hint}: Class \texttt{StringTokenizer} can be used to locate each constant and variable in an expression, and constants can be converted from strings to integers by using \texttt{Integer} class method \texttt{parseInt}.] [\textit{Note}: The data representation of the postfix expression must be altered to support variable names and integer constants.]

3. Modify the postfix evaluation algorithm to process multidigit integer operands and variable name operands. Also, the algorithm should now implement the "hook" discussed earlier so that SML instructions are produced rather than directly evaluating the expression. [\textit{Hint}: Class \texttt{StringTokenizer} can be used to locate each constant and variable in an expression, and constants can be converted from strings to integers by using \texttt{Integer} class method \texttt{parseInt}.] [\textit{Note}: The data representation of the postfix expression must be altered to support variable names and integer constants.]
4. Build the compiler. Incorporate parts b) and c) for evaluating expressions in let statements. Your program should contain a method that performs the first pass of the compiler and a method that performs the second pass of the compiler. Both methods can call other methods to accomplish their tasks. Make your compiler as object oriented as possible.

(Optimizing the Simple Compiler) When a program is compiled and converted into SML, a set of instructions is generated. Certain combinations of instructions often repeat themselves, usually in triplets called productions. A production normally consists of three instructions, such as load, add and store. For example, Fig. 17.29 illustrates five of the SML instructions that were produced in the compilation of the program in Fig. 17.27. The first three instructions are the production that adds 1 to y. Note that instructions 06 and 07 store the accumulator value in temporary location 96, then load the value back into the accumulator so instruction 08 can store the value in location 98. Often a production is followed by a load instruction for the same location that was just stored. This code can be optimized by eliminating the store instruction and the subsequent load instruction that operate on the same memory location, thus enabling the Simpletron to execute the program faster. Figure 17.30 illustrates the optimized SML for the program of Fig. 17.27. Note that there are four fewer instructions in the optimized codea memory-space savings of 25%.

**Figure 17.29. Unoptimized code from the program of Fig. 19.25.**

1 04 +2098 (load)
2 05 +3097 (add)
3 06 +2196 (store)
4 07 +2096 (load)
5 08 +2198 (store)

**Figure 17.30. Optimized code for the program of Fig. 17.27.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple program</th>
<th>SML location and instruction</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 rem sum 1 to x</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>rem ignored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 input x</td>
<td>00 +1099</td>
<td>read x into location 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 rem check y == x</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>rem ignored</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(Modifications to the Simple Compiler) Perform the following modifications to the Simple compiler. Some of these modifications might also require modifications to the Simpletron simulator program written in Exercise 7.35.

1. Allow the remainder operator (\%) to be used in \texttt{let} statements. Simpletron Machine Language must be modified to include a remainder instruction.

2. Allow exponentiation in a \texttt{let} statement using \texttt{^} as the exponentiation operator. Simpletron Machine Language must be modified to include an exponentiation instruction.

3. Allow the compiler to recognize uppercase and lowercase letters in Simple statements (e.g., 'A' is equivalent to 'a'). No modifications to the Simpletron simulator are required.
4. Allow input statements to read values for multiple variables such as input x, y. No modifications to the Simpletron simulator are required to perform this enhancement to the Simple compiler.

5. Allow the compiler to output multiple values from a single print statement, such as print a, b, c. No modifications to the Simpletron simulator are required to perform this enhancement.

6. Add syntax-checking capabilities to the compiler so error messages are output when syntax errors are encountered in a Simple program. No modifications to the Simpletron simulator are required.

7. Allow arrays of integers. No modifications to the Simpletron simulator are required to perform this enhancement.

8. Allow subroutines specified by the Simple commands gosub and return. Command gosub passes program control to a subroutine and command return passes control back to the statement after the gosub. This is similar to a method call in Java. The same subroutine can be called from many gosub commands distributed throughout a program. No modifications to the Simpletron simulator are required.

9. Allow repetition statements of the form

   for x = 2 to 10 step 2
   Simple statements
   next

   This for statement loops from 2 to 10 with an increment of 2. The next line marks the end of the body of the for line. No modifications to the Simpletron simulator are required.

10. Allow repetition statements of the form

    for x = 2 to 10
        Simple statements
    next

    This for statement loops from 2 to 10 with a default increment of 1. No modifications to the Simpletron simulator are required.

11. Allow the compiler to process string input and output. This requires the Simpletron simulator to be modified to process and store string values. [Hint: Each Simpletron word (i.e., memory location) can be divided into two groups, each holding a two-digit integer. Each two-digit integer represents the Unicode decimal equivalent of a character. Add a machine-language instruction that will print a string beginning at a certain Simpletron memory location. The first half of the Simpletron word at that location is a count of the number of characters in the string (i.e., the length of the string). Each succeeding half word contains one Unicode character expressed as two decimal digits. The machine-language instruction checks the length and prints the string by translating each two-digit number into its equivalent character.]

12. Allow the compiler to process floating-point values in addition to integers. The Simpletron Simulator must also be modified to process floating-point values.

   (A Simple Interpreter) An interpreter is a program that reads a high-level language program statement, determines the operation to be performed by the statement and executes the operation immediately. The high-level language program is not converted into machine language first. Interpreters execute more slowly than compilers do, because each statement encountered in the program being interpreted must first be deciphered at execution time. If statements are contained in a loop, the statements are deciphered each time they are encountered in the loop. Early versions of the BASIC programming language were implemented as interpreters. Most Java programs are run interpretively.

17.30

Write an interpreter for the Simple language discussed in Exercise 17.26. The program should use the
infix-to-postfix converter developed in Exercise 17.12 and the postfix evaluator developed in Exercise 17.13 to evaluate expressions in a `let` statement. The same restrictions placed on the Simple language in Exercise 17.26 should be adhered to in this program. Test the interpreter with the Simple programs written in Exercise 17.26. Compare the results of running these programs in the interpreter with the results of compiling the Simple programs and running them in the Simpletron simulator built in Exercise 7.35.

(Insert/Delete Anywhere in a Linked List) Our linked-list class allowed insertions and deletions at only the front and the back of the linked list. These capabilities were convenient for us when we used inheritance or composition to produce a stack class and a queue class with a minimal amount of code simply by reusing the list class. Linked lists are normally more general than those we provided. Modify the linked-list class we developed in this chapter to handle insertions and deletions anywhere in the list.

(Lists and Queues without Tail References) Our implementation of a linked list (Fig. 17.3) used both a `firstNode` and a `lastNode`. The `lastNode` was useful for the `insertAtBack` and `removeFromBack` methods of the `List` class. The `insertAtBack` method corresponds to the `enqueue` method of the `Queue` class.

Rewrite the `List` class so that it does not use a `lastNode`. Thus, any operations on the tail of a list must begin searching the list from the front. Does this affect our implementation of the `Queue` class (Fig. 17.13)?

(Performance of Binary Tree Sorting and Searching) One problem with the binary tree sort is that the order in which the data is inserted affects the shape of the tree; for the same collection of data, different orderings can yield binary trees of dramatically different shapes. The performance of the binary tree sorting and searching algorithms is sensitive to the shape of the binary tree. What shape would a binary tree have if its data were inserted in increasing order? in decreasing order? What shape should the tree have to achieve maximal searching performance?

(Indexed Lists) As presented in the text, linked lists must be searched sequentially. For large lists, this can result in poor performance. A common technique for improving list-searching performance is to create and maintain an index to the list. An index is a set of references to key places in the list. For example, an application that searches a large list of names could improve performance by creating an index with 26 entries one for each letter of the alphabet. A search operation for a last name beginning with 'Y' would then first search the index to determine where the 'Y' entries begin, then "jump into" the list at that point and search linearly until the desired name is found. This would be much faster than searching the linked list from the beginning. Use the `List` class of Fig. 17.3 as the basis of an `IndexedList` class.

Write a program that demonstrates the operation of indexed lists. Be sure to include methods `insertInIndexedList`, `searchIndexedList` and `deleteFromIndexedList`.

In Section 17.7, we created a stack class from class `List` with inheritance (Fig. 17.10) and with composition (Fig. 17.12). In Section 17.8 we created a queue class from class `List` with composition (Fig. 17.13). Create a queue class by inheriting from class `List`. What are the differences between this class and the one we created with composition?
Chapter 18. Generics

Every man of genius sees the world at a different angle from his fellows.

Havelock Ellis

...our special individuality, as distinguished from our generic humanity.

Oliver Wendell Holmes, Sr.

Born under one law, to another bound.

Lord Brooke

You deal in the raw material of opinion, and, if my convictions have any validity, opinion ultimately governs the world.

Woodrow Wilson

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

• To create generic methods that perform identical tasks on arguments of different types.

• To create a generic Stack class that can be used to store objects of any class or interface type.

• To understand how to overload generic methods with non-generic methods or with other generic methods.

• To understand raw types and how they help achieve backwards compatibility.

• To use wildcards when precise type information about a parameter is not required in the method body.

• The relationship between generics and inheritance.
Outline

18.1 Introduction

18.2 Motivation for Generic Methods

18.3 Generic Methods: Implementation and Compile-Time Translation

18.4 Additional Compile-Time Translation Issues:

18.5 Overloading Generic Methods

18.6 Generic Classes

18.7 Raw Types

18.8 Wildcards in Methods That Accept Type Parameters

18.9 Generics and Inheritance: Notes

18.10 Wrap-Up

18.11 Internet and Web Resources

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
18.1. Introduction

It would be nice if we could write a single `sort` method that could sort the elements in an `Integer` array, a `String` array or an array of any type that supports ordering (i.e., its elements can be compared). It would also be nice if we could write a single `Stack` class that could be used as a `Stack` of integers, a `Stack` of floating-point numbers, a `Stack` of `Strings` or a `Stack` of any other type. It would be even nicer if we could detect type mismatches at compile time known as `compile-time type safety`. For example, if a `Stack` stores only integers, attempting to push a `String` on to that `Stack` should issue a compile-time error.

This chapter discusses one of J2SE 5.0's new features `generics` which provides the means to create the general models mentioned above. **Generic methods** and **generic classes** enable programmers to specify, with a single method declaration, a set of related methods or, with a single class declaration, a set of related types, respectively. Generics also provide compile-time type safety that allows programmers to catch invalid types at compile time.

We might write a generic method for sorting an array of objects, then invoke the generic method with `Integer` arrays, `Double` arrays, `String` arrays and so on, to sort the array elements. The compiler could perform type checking to ensure that the array passed to the sorting method contains same type elements. We might write a single generic `Stack` class that manipulates a stack of objects, then instantiate `Stack` objects for a stack of `Integers`, a stack of `Doubles`, a stack of `Strings` and so on. The compiler could perform type checking to ensure that the `Stack` stores elements of the same type.

**Software Engineering Observation 18.1**

Generic methods and classes are among Java's most powerful capabilities for software reuse with compile-time type safety.

This chapter presents generic method and generic class examples. It also considers the relationships between generics and other Java features, such as overloading and inheritance. Chapter 19, Collections, presents an in-depth
treatment of the Java Collections Framework's generic methods and classes. A collection is a data structure that maintains references to many objects. The Java Collections Framework uses generics to allow programmers to specify the exact types of objects that a particular collection will store in a program.
18.2. Motivation for Generic Methods

Overloaded methods are often used to perform similar operations on different types of data. To motivate generic methods, let's begin with an example (Fig. 18.1) that contains three overloaded `printArray` methods (lines 714, lines 1724 and lines 2734). These methods print the string representations of the elements of an `Integer` array, a `Double` array and a `Character` array, respectively. Note that we could have used arrays of primitive types `int`, `double` and `char` in this example. We chose to use arrays of type `Integer`, `Double` and `Character` to set up our generic method example, because only reference types can be used with generic methods and classes.

**Figure 18.1. Printing array elements using overloaded methods.**

(This item is displayed on pages 871 - 872 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 18.1: OverloadedMethods.java
// Using overloaded methods to print array of different types.

public class OverloadedMethods

    // method printArray to print Integer array
    public static void printArray( Integer[] inputArray )
        {
            // display array elements
            for ( Integer element : inputArray )
                System.out.printf( "%s ", element );
            System.out.println();
        } // end method printArray

    // method printArray to print Double array
    public static void printArray( Double[] inputArray )
        {
            // display array elements
            for ( Double element : inputArray )
                System.out.printf( "%s ", element );
            System.out.println();
        } // end method printArray

    // method printArray to print Character array
    public static void printArray( Character[] inputArray )
        {
            // display array elements
            for ( Character element : inputArray )
                System.out.printf( "%s ", element );
        }
```
The program begins by declaring and initializing three arrays: six-element Integer array `integerArray` (line 39), seven-element Double array `doubleArray` (line 40) and five-element Character array `characterArray` (line 41). Then, lines 43-48 output the arrays.

When the compiler encounters a method call, it always attempts to locate a method declaration that has the same method name and parameters that match the argument types in the method call. In this example, each `printArray` call exactly matches one of the `printArray` method declarations. For example, line 44 calls `printArray` with `integerArray` as its argument. At compile time, the compiler determines argument `integerArray`'s type (i.e., `Integer[]`) and attempts...
to locate a method named \texttt{printArray} that specifies a single \texttt{Integer[]} parameter (lines 714) and sets up a call to that method. Similarly, when the compiler encounters the \texttt{printArray} call at line 46, it determines argument \texttt{doubleArray}'s type (i.e., \texttt{Double[]}), then attempts to locate a method named \texttt{printArray} that specifies a single \texttt{Double[]} parameter (lines 1724) and sets up a call to that method. Finally, when the compiler encounters the \texttt{printArray} call at line 48, it determines argument \texttt{characterArray}'s type (i.e., \texttt{Character[]}), then attempts to locate a method named \texttt{printArray} that specifies a single \texttt{Character[]} parameter (lines 2734) and sets up a call to that method.

Study each \texttt{printArray} method. Note that the array element type appears in two locations in each method the method header (lines 7, 17 and 27) and the for statement header (lines 10, 20 and 30). If we replace the element types in each method with a generic name by convention we'll use \texttt{E} to represent the "element" type then all three methods would look like the one in \textbf{Fig. 18.2}. It appears that if we can replace the array element type in each of the three methods with a single generic type, then we should be able to declare one \texttt{printArray} method that can display the string representations of the elements of any array that contains objects. Note that the format specifier \texttt{%s} can be used to output any object's string representation the object's \texttt{toString} method will be called implicitly. The method in \textbf{Fig. 18.2} is similar to the generic \texttt{printArray} method declaration we discuss in \textbf{Section 18.3}.

\textbf{Figure 18.2.} \texttt{printArray} method in which actual type names are replaced by convention with the generic name \texttt{E}.\hfill
(This item is displayed on page 873 in the print version)

```
1  public static void printArray( E[] inputArray )
2  {
3      // display array elements
4      for ( E element : inputArray )
5          System.out.printf( "%s ", element );
6  
7      System.out.println();
8  }  // end method printArray
```
18.3. Generic Methods: Implementation and Compile-Time Translation

If the operations performed by several overloaded methods are identical for each argument type, the overloaded methods can be more compactly and conveniently coded using a generic method. You can write a single generic method declaration that can be called with arguments of different types. Based on the types of the arguments passed to the generic method, the compiler handles each method call appropriately.

Figure 18.3 reimplements the application of Fig. 18.1 using a generic printArray method (lines 714). Note that the printArray method calls in lines 24, 26 and 28 are identical to those of Fig. 18.1 (lines 44, 46 and 48) and that the outputs of the two applications are identical. This dramatically demonstrates the expressive power of generics.

Figure 18.3. Printing array elements using generic method printArray.

(This item is displayed on page 874 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 18.3: GenericMethodTest.java
// Using generic methods to print array of different types.

public class GenericMethodTest {
    public static < E > void printArray( E[] inputArray ) {
        // display array elements
        for ( E element : inputArray )
            System.out.printf("%s ", element);
        System.out.println();
    }
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        // create arrays of Integer, Double and Character
        Integer[] intArray = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 };
        Double[] doubleArray = { 1.1, 2.2, 3.3, 4.4, 5.5, 6.6, 7.7 };
        Character[] charArray = { 'H', 'E', 'L', 'L', 'O' };
        System.out.println("Array integerArray contains:");
        printArray( integerArray ); // pass an Integer array
        System.out.println("\nArray doubleArray contains:");
        printArray( doubleArray ); // pass a Double array
    }
}
```
Line 7 begins method `printArray`'s declaration. All generic method declarations have a **type parameter section** delimited by **angle brackets** (`<` and `>`) that precedes the method's return type (`< E >` in this example). Each type parameter section contains one or more **type parameters** (also called **formal type parameters**), separated by commas. A type parameter, also known as a **type variable**, is an identifier that specifies a generic type name. The type parameters can be used to declare the return type, parameter types and local variable types in a generic method declaration, and act as placeholders for the types of the arguments passed to the generic method, which are known as **actual type arguments**. A generic method's body is declared like that of any other method. Note that type parameters can represent only reference types not primitive types (like `int`, `double` and `char`). Note, too, that the type parameter names throughout the method declaration must match those declared in the type parameter section. For example, line 10 declares `element` as type `E`, which matches the type parameter (`E`) declared in line 7. Also, a type parameter can be declared only once in the type parameter section but can appear more than once in the method's parameter list. For example, the type parameter name `E` appears twice in the following method's parameter list:

```java
public static < E > void printTwoArrays( E[] array1, E[] arr
```
Type parameter names need not be unique among different generic methods.

**Common Programming Error 18.1**

When declaring a generic method, failing to place a type parameter section before the return type of a method is a syntax error—the compiler will not understand the type parameter name when it is encountered in the method.

Method `printArray`'s type parameter section declares type parameter, \( E \), as the placeholder for the array element type that `printArray` will output. Note that \( E \) appears in the parameter list as the array element type (line 7). The `for` statement header (line 10) also uses \( E \) as the element type. These are the same two locations where the overloaded `printArray` methods of Fig. 18.1 specified `Integer`, `Double` or `Character` as the array element type. The remainder of `printArray` is identical to the versions presented in Fig. 18.1.

**Good Programming Practice 18.1**

It is recommended that type parameters be specified as individual capital letters. Typically, a type parameter that represents the type of an element in an array (or other collection) is named \( E \) for "element."

As in Fig. 18.1, the program begins by declaring and initializing six-element `Integer` array `integerArray` (line 19), seven-element `Double` array `doubleArray` (line 20) and five-element `Character` array `characterArray` (line 21). Then the program outputs each array by calling `printArray` (lines 24, 26 and 28) once with argument `integerArray`, once with argument `doubleArray` and once with argument `characterArray`. 
When the compiler encounters line 24, it first determines argument `integerArray`'s type (i.e., `Integer[]`) and attempts to locate a method named `printArray` that specifies a single `Integer[]` parameter. There is no such method in this example. Next, the compiler determines whether there is a generic method named `printArray` that specifies a single array parameter and uses a type parameter to represent the array element type. The compiler determines that method `printArray` (lines 714) is a match and sets up a call to the method. The same process is repeated for the calls to method `printArray` at lines 26 and 28.

**Common Programming Error 18.2**

> If the compiler cannot match a method call to a non-generic or a generic method declaration, a compilation error occurs.

**Common Programming Error 18.3**

> If the compiler does not find a method declaration that matches a method call exactly, but does find two or more generic methods that can satisfy the method call, a compilation error occurs.

In addition to setting up the method calls, the compiler also determines whether the operations in the method body can be applied to elements of the type stored in the array argument. The only operation performed on the array elements in this example is to output the string representation of the elements. Line 11 performs an implicit `toString` call on every `element`. To work with generics, every element of the array must be an object of a class or interface type. Since all objects have a `toString` method, the compiler is satisfied that line 11 performs a valid operation for any object in `printArray`'s array argument. The `toString` methods of classes `Integer`, `Double` and `Character` return the string representation of the underlying `int`, `double` or `char` value, respectively.

When the compiler translates generic method `printArray` into Java bytecodes, it
removes the type parameter section and replaces the type parameters with actual types. This process is known as erasure. By default all generic types are replaced with type Object. So the compiled version of method printArray appears as shown in Fig. 18.4 there is only one copy of this code that is used for all printArray calls in the example. This is quite different from other, similar mechanisms, such as C++'s templates in which a separate copy of the source code is generated and compiled for every type passed as an argument to the method. As we will discuss in Section 18.4, the translation and compilation of generics is a bit more involved than what we have discussed in this section.

Figure 18.4. Generic method printArray after erasure is performed by the compiler.
(This item is displayed on page 876 in the print version)

```
1 public static void printArray( Object[] inputArray )
2 {
3     // display array elements
4     for ( Object element : inputArray )
5         System.out.printf( "%s ", element );
6
7     System.out.println();
8 } // end method printArray
```

By declaring printArray as a generic method in Fig. 18.3, we eliminated the need for the overloaded methods of Fig. 18.1, saving 20 lines of code and creating a reusable method that can output the string representations of the elements in any array that contains objects. However, this particular example could have simply declared the printArray method as shown in Fig. 18.4 using an Object array as the parameter. This would have yielded the same results because any Object can be output as a String. In a generic method, the benefits become apparent when the method also uses a type parameter as the method's return type, as we demonstrate in the next section.
18.4. Additional Compile-Time Translation Issues: Methods That Use a Type Parameter as the Return Type

Let's consider a generic method example in which type parameters are used in the return type and in the parameter list (Fig. 18.5). The application uses a generic method `maximum` to determine and return the largest of its three arguments of the same type. Unfortunately, the relational operator `>` cannot be used with reference types. However, it is possible to compare two objects of the same class if that class implements the generic interface `Comparable< T >` (package `java.lang`). All the type-wrapper classes for primitive types implement this interface. Like generic classes, generic interfaces enable programmers to specify, with a single interface declaration, a set of related types. `Comparable< T >` objects have a `compareTo` method. For example, if we have two `Integer` objects, `integer1` and `integer2`, they can be compared with the expression:

```
integer1.compareTo( integer2 )
```

**Figure 18.5.** Generic method `maximum` with an upper bound on its type parameter.

(This item is displayed on page 877 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 18.5: MaximumTest.java
// Generic method maximum returns the largest of three objects.
public class MaximumTest {
   public static < T extends Comparable< T > > T maximum( T x, T y, T z ) {
      T max = x; // assume x is initially the largest
      if ( y.compareTo( max ) > 0 )
         max = y; // y is the largest so far
      if ( z.compareTo( max ) > 0 )
         max = z; // z is the largest
      return max; // returns the largest object
   } // end method maximum
   public static void main( String args[] ) {
```
It is the responsibility of the programmer who declares a class that implements \texttt{Comparable< T >} to declare method \texttt{compareTo} such that it compares the contents of two objects of that class and returns the results of the comparison. The method must return 0 if the objects are equal, -1 if \texttt{object1} is less than \texttt{object2} or 1 if \texttt{object1} is greater than \texttt{object2}. For example, class \texttt{Integer}'s \texttt{compareTo} method compares the \texttt{int} values stored in two \texttt{Integer} objects. A benefit of implementing interface \texttt{Comparable< T >} is that \texttt{Comparable< T >} objects can be used with the sorting and searching methods of class \texttt{Collections} (package \texttt{java.util}). We discuss those methods in \textbf{Chapter 19}, Collections. In this example, we'll use method \texttt{compareTo} in method \texttt{maximum} to help determine the largest value.

Generic method \texttt{maximum} (lines 718) uses type parameter \texttt{T} as the return type of the method (line 7), as the type of method parameters \texttt{x}, \texttt{y} and \texttt{z} (line 7), and as the type of local variable \texttt{max} (line 9). The type parameter section specifies that \texttt{T} extends \texttt{Comparable< T >} only objects of classes that implement interface \texttt{Comparable< T >} can be used with this method. In this case, \texttt{Comparable} is known as the \textbf{upper bound} of the type parameter. By default, \texttt{Object} is the upper bound. Note that type parameter declarations that \textbf{bound} the parameter always use keyword \texttt{extends} regardless of whether the type parameter extends a class or implements an interface. This type parameter is more restrictive than the type parameter specified for \texttt{printArray} in \textbf{Fig. 18.3}, which was able to output arrays containing any type of object. The restriction of using \texttt{Comparable< T >} objects is important because not all objects can be compared. However, \texttt{Comparable< T >}
objects are guaranteed to have a `compareTo` method.

Method `maximum` uses the same algorithm that we used in Section 6.4 to determine the largest of its three arguments. The method assumes that its first argument `(x)` is the largest and assigns it to local variable `max` (line 9). Next, the `if` statement at lines 1112 determines whether `y` is greater than `max`. The condition invokes `y`'s `compareTo` method with the expression `y.compareTo(max)`, which returns `-1`, `0` or `1`, to determine `y`'s relationship to `max`. If the return value of the `compareTo` is greater than `0`, then `y` is greater and is assigned to variable `max`. Similarly, the `if` statement at lines 1415 determines whether `z` is greater than `max`. If so, line 15 assigns `z` to `max`. Then, line 17 returns `max` to the caller.

In `main` (lines 2028), line 23 calls `maximum` with the integers 3, 4 and 5. When the compiler encounters this call, it first looks for a `maximum` method that takes three arguments of type `int`. There is no such method, so the compiler looks for a generic method that can be used and finds generic method `maximum`. However, recall that the arguments to a generic method must be of a reference type. So the compiler autoboxes the three `int` values as `Integer` objects and specifies that the three `Integer` objects will be passed to `maximum`. Note that class `Integer` (package `java.lang`) implements interface `Comparable<Integer>` such that method `compareTo` compares the `int` values in two `Integer` objects. Therefore, `Integer`s are valid arguments to method `maximum`. When the `Integer` representing the maximum is returned, we attempt to output it with the `%d` format specifier, which outputs an `int` primitive type value. So `maximum`'s return value is output as an `int` value.

A similar process occurs for the three `double` arguments passed to `maximum` in line 25. Each `double` is autoboxed as a `Double` object and passed to `maximum`. Again, this is allowed because class `Double` (package `java.lang`) implements the `Comparable<Double>` interface. The `Double` returned by `maximum` is output with the format specifier `%.1f`, which outputs a `double` primitive type value. So `maximum`'s return value is auto-unboxed and output as a `double`. The call to `maximum` in line 27 receives three `Strings`, which are also `Comparable<String>` objects. Note that we intentionally placed the largest value in a different position in each method call (lines 23, 25 and 27) to show that the generic method always finds the maximum value, regardless of its position in the argument list.
When the compiler translates generic method `maximum` into Java bytecodes, it uses erasure (introduced in Section 18.3) to replace the type parameters with actual types. In Fig. 18.3, all generic types were replaced with type `Object`. Actually, all type parameters are replaced with the upper bound of the type parameter unless specified otherwise, `Object` is the default upper bound. The upper bound of a type parameter is specified in the type parameter section. To indicate the upper bound, follow the type parameter's name with the keyword `extends` and the class or interface name that represents the upper bound. In method `maximum`'s type parameter section (Fig. 18.5), we specified the upper bound as type `Comparable< T >`. Thus, only `Comparable< T >` objects can be passed as arguments to `maximum`; anything that is not `Comparable< T >` will result in compilation errors. Figure 18.6 simulates the erasure of method maximum's types by showing the method's source code after the type parameter section is removed and type parameter `T` is replaced with the upper bound, `Comparable`, throughout the method declaration. Note that the erasure of `Comparable< T >` is simply `Comparable`.

**Figure 18.6.** Generic method `maximum` after erasure is performed by the compiler.

```java
1  public static  Comparable maximum(Comparable x, Comparable y, Comparable z) {
2     Comparable max = x; // assume x is initially the largest
3     if ( y.compareTo( max ) > 0 )
4         max = y; // y is the largest so far
5     if ( z.compareTo( max ) > 0 )
6         max = z; // z is the largest
7     return max; // returns the largest object
8 } // end method maximum
```

After erasure, the compiled version of method `maximum` specifies that it returns type `Comparable`. However, the calling method does not expect to receive a `Comparable`. Rather, the caller expects to receive an object of the same type that was passed to `maximum` an argument `Integer`, `Double` or `String` in this example. When the compiler replaces the type parameter information with the upper bound type in the method declaration, it also inserts explicit cast operations in front of each method call to ensure that the returned value is of the type expected by the caller. Thus, the call to `maximum` in line 23 (Fig. 18.5) is preceded by an `Integer` cast, as in
(Integer) maximum( 3, 4, 5 )

the call to maximum in line 25 is preceded by a Double cast, as in

(Double) maximum( 6.6, 8.8, 7.7 )

and the call to maximum in line 27 is preceded by a String cast, as in

(String) maximum( "pear", "apple", "orange" )

In each case, the type of the cast for the return value is inferred from the types of the method arguments in the particular method call because, according to the method declaration, the return type and the argument types match. Note that you cannot use a method that accepts Objects because class Object provides only an equality comparison. Also note that without generics, programmers are responsible for the casting operation.
18.5. Overloading Generic Methods

A generic method may be overloaded. A class can provide two or more generic methods that specify the same method name but different method parameters. For example, generic method `printArray` of Fig. 18.3 could be overloaded with another `printArray` generic method with the additional parameters `lowSubscript` and `highSubscript` to specify the portion of the array to output (see Exercise 18.5).

A generic method can also be overloaded by non-generic methods that have the same method name and number of parameters. When the compiler encounters a method call, it searches for the method declaration that most precisely matches the method name and the argument types specified in the call. For example, generic method `printArray` of Fig. 18.3 could be overloaded with a version that is specific to `Strings`, which outputs the `Strings` in neat, tabular format (see Exercise 18.6).

When the compiler encounters a method call, it performs a matching process to determine which method to invoke. The compiler tries to find and use a precise match in which the method names and argument types of the method call match those of a specific method declaration. If there is no such method, the compiler determines whether there is an inexact but applicable matching method.
18.6. Generic Classes

The concept of a data structure, such as a stack, can be understood independently of the element type it manipulates. Generic classes provide a means for describing the concept of a stack (or any other class) in a type-independent manner. We can then instantiate type-specific objects of the generic class. This capability provides a wonderful opportunity for software reusability.

Once you have a generic class, you can use a simple, concise notation to indicate the actual type(s) that should be used in place of the class's type parameter(s). At compilation time, the Java compiler ensures the type safety of your code and uses the erasure techniques described in Section 18.3 and Section 18.4 to enable your client code to interact with the generic class.

One generic Stack class, for example, could be the basis for creating many Stack classes (e.g., "Stack of Double," "Stack of Integer," "Stack of Character," "Stack of Employee," etc.). These classes are known as parameterized classes or parameterized types because they accept one or more parameters. Recall that type parameters represent only reference types, which means the Stack generic class cannot be instantiated with primitive types. However, we can instantiate a Stack that stores objects of Java's type-wrapper classes and allow Java to use autoboxing to convert the primitive values into objects. Autoboxing occurs when a value of a primitive type (e.g., int) is pushed onto a Stack that contains wrapper-class objects (e.g., Integer). Auto-unboxing occurs when an object of the wrapper class is popped off the Stack and assigned it to a primitive type variable.

Figure 18.7 presents a generic Stack class declaration. A generic class declaration looks like a non-generic class declaration, except that the class name is followed by a type parameter section (line 4). In this case, type parameter E represents the element type the Stack will manipulate. As with generic methods, the type parameter section of a generic class can have one or more type parameters separated by commas. (You will create a generic class with two type parameters in Exercise 18.8.) Type parameter E is used throughout the Stack class declaration to represent the element type. [ Note: This example implements a Stack as an array.]
Class Stack declares variable elements as an array of type E (line 8). This array will store the Stack's elements. We would like to create an array of type E to store the elements. However, the generics mechanism does not allow type parameters in array-creation expressions because the type parameter (in this
case, \( E \) is not available at runtime. To create an array with the appropriate type, line 22 in the one-argument constructor creates the array as an array of type \( \text{Object} \) and casts the reference returned by \( \text{new} \) to type \( E[] \). Any object could be stored in an \( \text{Object} \) array, but the compiler's type-checking mechanism ensures that only objects of the array variable's declared type can be assigned to the array via any array-access expression that uses variable \( \text{elements} \). Yet when this class is compiled using the \(-Xlint:unchecked\) option, e.g.,

```
javac -Xlint:unchecked Stack.java
```

the compiler issues the following warning message about line 22:

```
Stack.java:22: warning: [unchecked] unchecked cast
found    : java.lang.Object[
required: E[
    elements = ( E[] ) new Object[ size ]; // create array
```

The reason for this message is that the compiler cannot ensure with 100% certainty that an array of type \( \text{Object} \) will never contain objects of types other than \( E \). Assume that \( E \) represents type \( \text{Integer} \), so that array elements should store \( \text{Integer} \) objects. It is possible to assign variable \( \text{elements} \) to a variable of type \( \text{Object[]} \), as in

```
Object[] objectArray = elements;
```

Then any object can be placed into the array with an assignment statement like

```
objectArray[ 0 ] = "hello";
```

which places a \( \text{String} \) in an array that should contain only \( \text{Integer} \)s, which would lead to runtime problems when the \( \text{Stack} \) is manipulated. As long as you do not perform statements like those shown here, your \( \text{Stack} \) will contain objects of
Method `push` (lines 2734) first determines whether an attempt is being made to push an element onto a full `Stack`. If so, lines 3031 throw a `FullStackException`. Class `FullStackException` is declared in Fig. 18.8. If the `Stack` is not full, line 33 increments the top counter and places the argument in that location of array elements.

**Figure 18.8.** `FullStackException` class declaration.

```java
// Fig. 18.8: FullStackException.java
// Indicates a stack is full.
public class FullStackException extends RuntimeException
{
    // no-argument constructor
    public FullStackException()
    {
        this ("Stack is full");
    } // end no-argument FullStackException constructor

    // one-argument constructor
    public FullStackException( String exception )
    {
        super( exception );
    } // end one-argument FullStackException constructor
}

// end class FullStackException
```

Method `pop` (lines 3743) first determines whether an attempt is being made to pop an element from an empty `Stack`. If so, line 40 throws an `EmptyStackException`. Class `EmptyStackException` is declared in Fig. 18.9. Otherwise, line 42 returns the top element of the `Stack`, then postdecrements the `top` counter to indicate the position of the next top element.

**Figure 18.9.** `EmptyStackException` class declaration.

```java
// Fig. 18.9: EmptyStackException.java
// Indicates a stack is full.
public class EmptyStackException extends RuntimeException
{
    // no-argument constructor
    public EmptyStackException()
    {
    } // end no-argument EmptyStackException constructor
}
```

```java
// Fig. 18.9: EmptyStackException.java
// Indicates a stack is full.
public class EmptyStackException extends RuntimeException
{
    // no-argument constructor
    public EmptyStackException()
    {
    } // end no-argument EmptyStackException constructor
}
```
Classes `FullStackException` (Fig. 18.8) and `EmptyStackException` (Fig. 18.9) each provide the conventional no-argument constructor and one-argument constructor of exception classes (as discussed in Section 13.11). The no-argument constructor sets the default error message, and the one-argument constructor sets a custom exception message.

As with generic methods, when a generic class is compiled, the compiler performs erasure on the class's type parameters and replaces them with their upper bounds. For class `Stack` (Fig. 18.7), no upper bound is specified, so the default upper bound, `Object`, is used. The scope of a generic class's type parameter is the entire class. However, type parameters cannot be used in a class's static declarations.

Now, let's consider the test application (Fig. 18.10) that uses the `Stack` generic class. Lines 910 declare variables of type `Stack<Double>` (pronounced "Stack of Double") and `Stack<Integer>` (pronounced "Stack of Integer"). The types `Double` and `Integer` are known as the `Stack`'s type arguments. They are used by the compiler to replace the type parameters so that the compiler can perform type checking and insert cast operations as necessary. We'll discuss the cast operations in more detail shortly. Method `testStack` (called from `main`) instantiates objects `doubleStack` of size 5 (line 15) and `integerStack` of size 10 (line 16), then calls methods `testPushDouble` (lines 2544), `testPopDouble` (lines 4767), `testPushInteger` (lines 7089) and `testPopInteger` (lines 92112) to demonstrate the two `Stacks` in this example.

Figure 18.10. Generic class `Stack` test program.
(This item is displayed on pages 883 - 886 in the print version)
public class StackTest
{
    private double[] doubleElements = { 1.1, 2.2, 3.3, 4.4, 5.5, 6.6 };  
    private int[] integerElements = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 };  

    private Stack<Double> doubleStack; // stack stores Double objects  
    private Stack<Integer> integerStack; // stack stores Integer objects  

    // test Stack objects  
    public void testStacks()
    {
        doubleStack = new Stack<Double>(5); // Stack of Doubles  
        integerStack = new Stack<Integer>(10); // Stack of Integers

        testPushDouble(); // push double onto doubleStack  
        testPopDouble(); // pop from doubleStack  
        testPushInteger(); // push int onto intStack  
        testPopInteger(); // pop from intStack
    } // end method testStacks

    // test push method with double stack  
    public void testPushDouble()
    {
        try
        {
            System.out.println("
Pushing elements onto doubleStack"");  

            // push elements to Stack
            for (double element : doubleElements)  
            {
                System.out.printf("%.1f ", element);  
                doubleStack.push(element); // push onto doubleStack
            } // end for
        }
        catch (FullStackException fullStackException)
        {
            System.err.println();  
            fullStackException.printStackTrace();
        } // end catch FullStackException
    } // end method testPushDouble

    // test pop method with double stack  
    public void testPopDouble()
    {
        try
        {
            System.out.println("Popping elements from doubleStack");  

            double popValue; // store element removed from stack

            // remove all elements from Stack
            while (true)  
            {
                popValue = doubleStack.pop(); // pop from doubleStack  
                System.out.printf("%.1f ", popValue);
            } // end while
        }
        catch (EmptyStackException emptyStackException)
        {
            System.err.println();  
            emptyStackException.printStackTrace();
        } // end catch EmptyStackException
    } // end method testPopDouble
catch( EmptyStackException emptyStackException )
{
    System.err.println();
    emptyStackException.printStackTrace();
} // end catch EmptyStackException
} // end method testPopDouble

// test push method with integer stack
public void testPushInteger()
{
    // push elements to stack
    try
    {
        System.out.println( "\nPushing elements onto intStack" );
    
    // push elements to Stack
    for ( int element : integerElements )
    {
        System.out.printf("%d ", element );
        integerStack.push( element ); // push onto integerStack
    } // end for
    } // end try
    catch ( FullStackException fullStackException )
    {
        System.err.println();
        fullStackException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch FullStackException
} // end method testPushInteger

// test pop method with integer stack
public void testPopInteger()
{
    // pop elements from stack
    try
    {
        System.out.println( "\nPopping elements from intStack" );

        int popValue; // store element removed from stack

        // remove all elements from Stack
        while ( true )
        {
            popValue = integerStack.pop(); // pop from intStack
            System.out.printf("%d ", popValue );
        } // end while
    } // end try
    catch( EmptyStackException emptyStackException )
    {
        System.err.println();
        emptyStackException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch EmptyStackException
} // end method testPopInteger

public static void main( String args[] )
{
    StackTest application = new StackTest();
    application.testStacks();
} // end main
} // end class StackTest
Method `testPushDouble` (lines 2544) invokes method `push` to place the double values 1.1, 2.2, 3.3, 4.4 and 5.5 stored in array `doubleElements` onto `doubleStack`. The `for` loop terminates when the test program attempts to push a sixth value onto `doubleStack` (which is full, because `doubleStack` can store only five elements). In this case, the method throws a `FullStackException` (Fig. 18.8) to indicate that the `Stack` is full. Lines 3943 catch this exception and print the stack trace information. The stack trace indicates the exception that occurred and shows that `Stack` method `push` generated the exception at lines 3031 of the file `Stack.java` (Fig. 18.7). The trace also shows that method `push` was called by `StackTest` method `testPushDouble` at line 36 of `StackTest.java`, that method `testPushDouble` was called from method `testStacks` at line 18 of `StackTest.java` and...
that method testStacks was called from method main at line 117 of StackTest.java. This information enables you to determine the methods that were on the method-call stack at the time that the exception occurred. Because the program catches the exception, the Java runtime environment considers the exception to have been handled and the program can continue executing. Note that autoboxing occurs in line 36 when the program tries to push a primitive double value onto the doubleStack, which stores only Double objects.

Method testPopDouble (lines 4767) invokes Stack method pop in an infinite while loop to remove all the values from the stack. Note in the output that the values indeed pop off in last-in-first-out order (this, of course, is the defining characteristic of stacks). The while loop (lines 5761) continues until the stack is empty (i.e., until an EmptyStackException occurs), which causes the program to proceed to the catch block (lines 6266) and handle the exception, so the program can continue executing. When the test program attempts to pop a sixth value, the doubleStack is empty, so the pop throws an EmptyStackException. Auto-unboxing occurs in line 58 when the program assigns the Double object popped from the stack to a double primitive variable. Recall from Section 18.4 that the compiler inserts cast operations to ensure that the proper types are returned from generic methods. After erasure, Stack method pop returns type Object. However, the client code in method testPopDouble expects to receive a double when method pop returns. So the compiler inserts a Double cast, as in

\[
\text{popValue} = (\text{Double}) \text{doubleStack.pop();}
\]

to ensure that a reference of the appropriate type is returned, auto-unboxed and assigned to popValue.

Method testPushInteger (lines 7089) invokes Stack method push to place values onto integerStack until it is full. Method testPopInteger (lines 92112) invokes Stack method pop to remove values from integerStack until it is empty. Once again, note that the values pop off in last-in-first-out order. During the erasure process, the compiler recognizes that the client code in method testPopInteger expects to receive an int when method pop returns. So the compiler inserts an Integer cast, as in
popValue = ( Integer ) integerStack.pop();

to ensure that a reference of the appropriate type is returned, auto-unboxed and assigned to popValue.

Creating Generic Methods to Test Class `Stack< E >`

Note that the code in methods `testPushDouble` and `testPushInteger` is almost identical for pushing values onto a `Stack< Double >` or a `Stack< Integer >`, respectively, and the code in methods `testPopDouble` and `testPopInteger` is almost identical for popping values from a `Stack< Double >` or a `Stack< Integer >`, respectively. This presents another opportunity to use generic methods. **Figure 18.11** declares generic method `testPush` (lines 2646) to perform the same tasks as `testPushDouble` and `testPushInteger` in **Fig. 18.10** that is, push values onto a `Stack< T >`. Similarly, generic method `testPop` (lines 4969) performs the same tasks as `testPopDouble` and `testPopInteger` in **Fig. 18.10** that is, pop values off a `Stack< T >`. Note that the output of **Fig. 18.11** precisely matches the output of **Fig. 18.10**.

**Figure 18.11. Passing a generic type `Stack` to a generic method.**

(This item is displayed on pages 887 - 889 in the print version)

1    // Fig. 18.11: StackTest2.java
2    // Stack generic class test program.
3    
4    public class StackTest2
5    {
6       private Double[] doubleElements = { 1.1, 2.2, 3.3, 4.4, 5.5, 6.6 };
7       private Integer[] integerElements =
8       { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 };
9    
10       private Stack< Double > doubleStack; // stack stores Double objects
11       private Stack< Integer > integerStack; // stack stores Integer objects
12    
13       // test Stack objects
14       public void testStacks()
15       {
16          doubleStack = new Stack< Double >(5); // Stack of Doubles
17          integerStack = new Stack< Integer >(10); // Stack of Integers
18    
19          testPush( "doubleStack", doubleStack, doubleElements );
20          testPop( "doubleStack", doubleStack );
21          testPush( "integerStack", integerStack, integerElements );
Pushing elements onto doubleStack
The `testStacks` method (lines 1423) creates the `Stack< Double >` (line 16) and `Stack< Integer >` (line 17) objects. Lines 1922 invoke generic methods `testPush` and `testPop` to test the `Stack` objects. Recall that type parameters can represent only reference types. Therefore, to be able to pass arrays `doubleElements` and `integerElements` to generic method `testPush`, the arrays declared in lines 68 must be declared with the wrapper types `Double` and `Integer`. When these arrays are initialized with primitive values, the compiler autoboxes each primitive value.

Generic method `testPush` (lines 2646) uses type parameter `T` (specified at line 26) to represent the data type stored in the `Stack< T >`. The generic method
takes three arguments, a `String` that represents the name of the `Stack< T >` object for output purposes, a reference to an object of type `Stack< T >` and an array of type `T` the type of elements that will be pushed onto `Stack< T >`. Note that the compiler enforces consistency between the type of the `Stack` and the elements that will be pushed onto the `Stack` when `push` is invoked, which is the real value of the generic method call. Generic method `testPop` (lines 4969) takes two arguments, a `String` that represents the name of the `Stack< T >` object for output purposes and a reference to an object of type `Stack< T >`. 
18.7. Raw Types

The test programs for generic class Stack in Section 18.6 instantiate Stacks with type arguments Double and Integer. It is also possible to instantiate generic class Stack without specifying a type argument, as follows:

```java
Stack objectStack = new Stack( 5 ); // no type argument specified
```

In this case, the objectStack is said to have a raw type, which means that the compiler implicitly uses type Object throughout the generic class for each type argument. Thus the preceding statement creates a Stack that can store objects of any type. This is important for backwards compatibility with prior versions of Java. For example, the data structures of the Java Collections Framework (see Chapter 19, Collections) all stored references to Objects, but are now implemented as generic types.

A raw type Stack variable can be assigned a Stack that specifies a type argument, such as a Stack<Double> object, as follows:

```java
Stack rawTypeStack2 = new Stack< Double > ( 5 );
```

because type Double is a subclass of Object. This assignment is allowed because the elements in a Stack<Double> (i.e., Double objects) are certainly objectsclass Double is an indirect subclass of Object.

Similarly, a Stack variable that specifies a type argument in its declaration can be assigned a raw type Stack object, as in:

```java
Stack< Integer > integerStack = new Stack( 10 );
```

Although this assignment is permitted, it is unsafe because a Stack of raw type might store types other than Integer. In this case, the compiler issues a warning message which indicates the unsafe assignment.
The test program of Fig. 18.12 uses the notion of raw type. Line 14 instantiates generic class Stack with raw type, which indicates that rawTypeStack1 can hold objects of any type. Line 17 assigns a Stack< Double > to variable rawTypeStack2, which is declared as a Stack of raw type. Line 20 assigns a Stack of raw type to Stack< Integer > variable, which is legal but causes the compiler to issue a warning message (Fig. 18.13) indicating a potentially unsafe assignment again, this occurs because a Stack of raw type might store types other than Integer. Also, each of the calls to generic method testPush and testPop in lines 22–25 results in a compiler warning message (Fig. 18.13). These warnings occur because variables rawTypeStack1 and rawTypeStack2 are declared as Stacks of raw type, but methods testPush and testPop each expect a second argument that is a Stack with a specific type argument. The warnings indicate that the compiler cannot guarantee that the types manipulated by the stacks are the correct types, because we did not supply a variable declared with a type argument. Methods testPush (lines 31–51) and testPop (lines 54–74) are the same as in Fig. 18.11.

Figure 18.12. Raw type test program.
(This item is displayed on pages 891 - 893 in the print version)
Pushing elements onto rawTypeStack1
1.1 2.2 3.3 4.4 5.5 6.6
FullStackException: Stack is full, cannot push 6.6
at Stack.push(Stack.java:30)
at RawTypeTest.testPush(RawTypeTest.java:43)
at RawTypeTest.testStacks(RawTypeTest.java:22)
at RawTypeTest.main(RawTypeTest.java:79)

Popping elements from rawTypeStack1
5.5 4.4 3.3 2.2 1.1
EmptyStackException: Stack is empty, cannot pop
at Stack.pop(Stack.java:40)
at RawTypeTest.testPop(RawTypeTest.java:65)
at RawTypeTest.testStacks(RawTypeTest.java:23)
at RawTypeTest.main(RawTypeTest.java:79)

Pushing elements onto rawTypeStack2
1.1 2.2 3.3 4.4 5.5 6.6
FullStackException: Stack is full, cannot push 6.6
at Stack.push(Stack.java:30)
at RawTypeTest.testPush(RawTypeTest.java:43)
at RawTypeTest.testStacks(RawTypeTest.java:24)
at RawTypeTest.main(RawTypeTest.java:79)

Popping elements from rawTypeStack2
5.5 4.4 3.3 2.2 1.1
EmptyStackException: Stack is empty, cannot pop
at Stack.pop(Stack.java:40)
at RawTypeTest.testPop(RawTypeTest.java:65)
at RawTypeTest.testStacks(RawTypeTest.java:25)
at RawTypeTest.main(RawTypeTest.java:79)

Pushing elements onto integerStack
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11
FullStackException: Stack is full, cannot push 11
at Stack.push(Stack.java:30)
at RawTypeTest.testPush(RawTypeTest.java:43)
at RawTypeTest.testStacks(RawTypeTest.java:26)
at RawTypeTest.main(RawTypeTest.java:79)

Popping elements from integerStack
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
EmptyStackException: Stack is empty, cannot pop
at Stack.pop(Stack.java:40)
at RawTypeTest.testPop(RawTypeTest.java:65)
at RawTypeTest.testStacks(RawTypeTest.java:27)
at RawTypeTest.main(RawTypeTest.java:79)

Figure 18.13. Warning message from the compiler.
(This item is displayed on page 894 in the print version)
Figure 18.13 shows the warning messages generated by the compiler (compiled with the -Xlint:unchecked option) when the file RawTypeTest.java (Fig. 18.12) is compiled. The first warning is generated for line 20, which assigned a raw type Stack to a Stack< Integer > variable the compiler cannot ensure that all objects in the Stack will be Integer objects. The second warning is generated for line 22. Because the second method argument is a raw type Stack variable, the compiler determines the type argument for method testPush from the Double array passed as the third argument. In this case, Double is the type argument, so the compiler expects a Stack< Double > to be passed as the second argument. The warning occurs because the compiler cannot ensure that a raw type Stack contains only Double objects. The warning at line 24 occurs for the same reason, even though the actual Stack that rawTypeStack2 references is a Stack< Double >. The compiler cannot guarantee that the variable will always refer to the same Stack object, so it must use the variable's declared type to perform all
type checking. Lines 23 and 25 each generate warnings because method `testPop` expects as an argument a `Stack` for which a type argument has been specified. However, in each call to `testPop`, we pass a raw type `Stack` variable. Thus, the compiler indicates a warning because it cannot check the types used in the body of the method.
18.8. Wildcards in Methods That Accept Type Parameters

In this section, we introduce a powerful generics concept known as **wildcards**. For this purpose, we will also introduce a new data structure from package `java.util`. **Chapter 19**, Collections, discusses the Java Collections Framework, which provides many generic data structures and algorithms that manipulate the elements of those data structures. Perhaps the simplest of these data structures is class **ArrayList** a dynamically resizable, array-like data structure. As part of this discussion, you will learn how to create an **ArrayList**, add elements to it and traverse those elements using an enhanced **for** statement.

Before we introduce wildcards, let's consider an example that helps us motivate their use. Suppose that you would like to implement a generic method `sum` that totals the numbers in a collection, such as an **ArrayList**. You would begin by inserting the numbers in the collection. As you know, generic classes can be used only with class or interface types. So the numbers would be autoboxed as objects of the type-wrapper classes. For example, any **int** value would be autoboxed as an **Integer** object, and any **double** value would be autoboxed as a **Double** object. We'd like to be able to total all the numbers in the **ArrayList** regardless of their type. For this reason, we'll declare the **ArrayList** with the type argument **Number**, which is the superclass of both **Integer** and **Double**. In addition, method `sum` will receive a parameter of **ArrayList< Number >** and total its elements. **Figure 18.14** demonstrates totaling the elements of an **ArrayList** of **Numbers**.

**Figure 18.14. Totaling the numbers in an ArrayList< Number >.**

(This item is displayed on page 895 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 18.14: TotalNumbers.java
// Summing the elements of an ArrayList.
import java.util.ArrayList;

public class TotalNumbers
```
Line 11 declares and initializes an array of Numbers. Because the initializers are primitive values, Java autoboxes each primitive value as an object of its corresponding wrapper type. The int values 1 and 3 are autoboxed as Integer objects, and the double values 2.4 and 4.1 are autoboxed as Double objects. Line 12 declares and creates an ArrayList object that stores Numbers and assigns it to variable numberList. Note that we do not have to specify the size of the ArrayList because it will grow automatically as we insert objects.

Lines 14-15 traverse array numbers and place each element in numberList. Method add of class ArrayList appends an element to the end of the collection. Line 17 outputs the contents of the ArrayList as a String. This statement implicitly invokes the ArrayList's toString method, which returns a string of the form "[

numberList contains: [1, 2.4, 3, 4.1]
Total of the elements in numberList: 10.5

Method \texttt{sum} (lines 2332) receives an \texttt{ArrayList} of \texttt{Number}s and calculates the total of the \texttt{Number}s in the collection. The method uses \texttt{double} values to perform the calculations and returns the result as a \texttt{double}. Line 25 declares local variable \texttt{total} and initializes it to 0. Lines 2829 use the enhanced \texttt{for} statement, which is designed to work with both arrays and the collections of the Collections Framework, to total the elements of the \texttt{ArrayList}. The \texttt{for} statement assigns each \texttt{Number} in the \texttt{ArrayList} to variable \texttt{element}, then uses method \texttt{doubleValue} of class \texttt{Number} to obtain the \texttt{Number}'s underlying primitive value as a \texttt{double} value. The result is added to \texttt{total}. When the loop terminates, the method returns the \texttt{total}.

Implementing Method \texttt{sum} With a Wildcard Type Argument in Its Parameter

Recall that the purpose of method \texttt{sum} in \texttt{Fig. 18.14} was to total any type of \texttt{Numbers} stored in an \texttt{ArrayList}. We created an \texttt{ArrayList} of \texttt{Number}s that contained both \texttt{Integer} and \texttt{Double} objects. The output of \texttt{Fig. 18.14} demonstrates that method \texttt{sum} worked properly. Given that method \texttt{sum} can total the elements of an \texttt{ArrayList} of \texttt{Number}s, you might expect that the method would also work for \texttt{ArrayList}s that contain elements of only one numeric type, such as \texttt{ArrayList< Integer >}. So we modified class \texttt{TotalNumbers} to create an \texttt{ArrayList} of \texttt{Integer}s and pass it to method \texttt{sum}. When we compile the program, the compiler issues the following error message:

```
sum(java.util.ArrayList<java.lang.Number>) in TotalNumbers
```
it were, then every operation we could perform on `ArrayList< Number >` would also work on an `ArrayList< Integer >`. Consider the fact that you can add a `Double` object to an `ArrayList< Number >` because a `Double` is a `Number`, but you cannot add a `Double` object to an `ArrayList< Integer >` because a `Double` is not an `Integer`. Thus, the subtype relationship does not hold.

How do we create a more flexible version of method `sum` that can total the elements of any `ArrayList` that contains elements of any subclass of `Number`? This is where **wildcard type arguments** are important. Wildcards enable you to specify method parameters, return values, variables or fields, etc. that act as supertypes of parameterized types. In **Fig. 18.15**, method `sum`'s parameter is declared in line 50 with the type:

```
ArrayList< ? extends Number >
```

---

**Figure 18.15. Wildcard test program.**

(This item is displayed on pages 896 - 897 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 18.15: WildcardTest.java
2 // Wildcard test program.
3 import java.util.ArrayList;
4
5 public class WildcardTest
6 {
7     public static void main( String args[] )
8     {
9         // create, initialize and output ArrayList of Integers, then
10         // display total of the elements
11         Integer[] integers = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 };
12         ArrayList< Integer > integerList = new ArrayList< Integer >();
13
14         // insert elements in integerList
15         for ( Integer element : integers )
16             integerList.add( element );
17
18         System.out.printf( "integerList contains: %s\n", integerList );
19         System.out.printf( "Total of the elements in integerList: %.0f\n\n",
20             sum( integerList ) );
21
22         // create, initialize and output ArrayList of Doubles, then
23         // display total of the elements
24         Double[] doubles = { 1.1, 3.3, 5.5 };
25         ArrayList< Double > doubleList = new ArrayList< Double >();
26
27         // insert elements in doubleList
28         for ( Double element : doubles )
29             doubleList.add( element );
```
A wildcard type argument is denoted by a question mark ( ? ). A question mark by itself represents an "unknown type." In this case, the wildcard extends class Number, which means that the wildcard has an upper bound of Number. Thus, the unknown type argument must be either Number or a subclass of Number. With the parameter type shown here, method sum can receive an
ArrayList argument that contains any type of Number, such as ArrayList< Integer > (line 20), ArrayList< Double > (line 33) or ArrayList< Number > (line 46).

Lines 1120 create and initialize an ArrayList< Integer > called integerList, output its elements and total its elements by calling method sum (line 20). Lines 2433 perform the same operations for an ArrayList< Double > called doubleList. Lines 3746 perform the same operations for an ArrayList< Number > called numberList that contains both Integers and Doubles.

In method sum (lines 5059), although the ArrayList argument's element types are not directly known by the method, they are known to be at least of type Number because the wildcard was specified with the upper bound Number. For this reason, line 56 is allowed because all Number objects have a doubleValue method.

Although wildcards provide flexibility when passing parameterized types to a method, they also have some disadvantages. Because the wildcard (?) in the method's header (line 50) does not specify a type parameter name, you cannot use it as a type name throughout the method's body (i.e., you cannot replace Number with ? in line 55). If the wildcard is specified without an upper bound, then only the methods of type Object can be invoked on values of the wildcard type. Also, methods that use wildcards in their parameter's type arguments cannot be used to add elements to a collection referenced by the parameter.

Common Programming Error 18.4

Using a wildcard in a method's type parameter section or using a wildcard as an explicit type of a variable in the method body is a syntax error.
18.9. Generics and Inheritance: Notes

Generics can be used with inheritance in several ways:

- A generic class can be derived from a non-generic class. For example, the `Object` class is a direct or indirect superclass of every generic class.

- A generic class can be derived from another generic class. For example, generic class `Stack` (in package `java.util`) is a subclass of generic class `Vector` (in package `java.util`). We discuss these classes in Chapter 19, Collections.

- A non-generic class can be derived from a generic class. For example, non-generic class `Properties` (in package `java.util`) is a subclass of generic class `Hashtable` (in package `java.util`). We also discuss these classes in Chapter 19.

- Finally, a generic method in a subclass can override a generic method in a superclass if both methods have the same signatures.
18.10. Wrap-Up

This chapter introduced J2SE 5.0's new generics capability. You learned how to declare generic methods and classes. You learned how J2SE 5.0 achieves backwards compatibility via raw types. You also learned how to use wildcards in a generic method or a generic class. In the next chapter, we demonstrate the interfaces, classes and algorithms of the Java collections framework. As you will see, the collections presented all use the generics capabilities you learned here.
18.11. Internet and Web Resources

www.jcp.org/aboutJava/communityprocess/review/jsr014/


java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/pdf/generics-tutorial.pdf

The tutorial *Generics in the Java Programming Language* by Gilad Bracha (the specification lead for JSR-14 and a reviewer of this book) introduces generics concepts with sample code snippets.

today.java.net/pub/a/today/2003/12/02/explorations.html
today.java.net/pub/a/today/2004/01/15/wildcards.html

The articles *Explorations: Generics, Erasure, and Bridging* and *Explorations: Wildcards in the Generics Specification*, each by William Grosso, overview generics features and how to use wildcards.
Summary

- Generic methods enable programmers to specify, with a single method declaration, a set of related methods.

- Generic classes enable programmers to specify, with a single class declaration, a set of related types.

- Generic methods and classes are among Java's most powerful capabilities for software reuse with compile-time type safety.

- Overloaded methods are often used to perform similar operations on different types of data.

- When the compiler encounters a method call, it always attempts to locate a method declaration that has the same method name and parameters that match the argument types in the method call.

- If the operations performed by several overloaded methods are identical for each argument type, the overloaded methods can be more compactly and conveniently coded using a generic method. You can write a single generic method declaration, which can be called with arguments of different data types. Based on the types of the arguments passed to the generic method, the compiler handles each method call appropriately.

- All generic method declarations have a type parameter section delimited by angle brackets (< and >) that precedes the method's return type.

- Each type parameter section contains one or more type parameters (also called formal type parameters) separated by commas.

- A type parameter, also known as type variable, is an identifier that specifies a generic type name. The type parameters can be used as the return type, parameter types and local variable types in a generic method declaration, and act as placeholders for the types of the arguments passed to the generic method, which are known as actual type arguments. Type parameters can represent only reference types.
The names used for type parameters throughout the method declaration must match those declared in the type parameter section. The name of a type parameter can be declared only once in the type parameter section but can appear more than once in the method's parameter list. Type parameter names need not be unique among different generic methods.

When the compiler encounters a method call, it first determines the argument types and attempts to locate a method with the same name that specifies parameters that match the argument types. If there is no such method, the compiler determines whether there is an inexact but applicable match.

The relational operator \( \succ \) cannot be used with reference types. However, it is possible to compare two objects of the same class if that class implements the generic interface `Comparable` (package `java.lang`).

All the type-wrapping classes for primitive types implement `Comparable`. A benefit of implementing interface `Comparable` is that `Comparable` objects can be used with the sorting and searching methods of class `Collections` (package `java.util`).

When the compiler translates a generic method into Java bytecodes, it removes the type parameter section and replaces the type parameters with actual types. This process is known as erasure. By default each type parameter is replaced with its upper bound. By default, the upper bound is type `Object` unless specified otherwise in the type parameter section.

When the compiler performs erasure on a method that returns a type variable, it also inserts explicit cast operations in front of each method call to ensure that the returned value is of the type expected by the caller.

A generic method may be overloaded. A class can provide two or more generic methods that specify the same method name but different method
parameters. A generic method can also be overloaded by non-generic methods that have the same method name and number of parameters. When the compiler encounters a method call, it searches for the method declaration that most precisely matches the method name and the argument types specified in the call.

- When the compiler encounters a method call, it performs a matching process to determine which method to call. The compiler tries to find and use a precise match in which the method names and argument types of the method call match those of a specific method declaration. If this fails, the compiler determines whether a generic method is available that provides a precise match of the method name and argument types, and if so, uses that generic method.

- Generic classes provide a means for describing a class in a type-independent manner. We can then instantiate type-specific objects of the generic class.

- A generic class declaration looks like a non-generic class declaration, except that the class name is followed by a type parameter section. As with generic methods, the type parameter section of a generic class can have one or more type parameters separated by commas.

- When a generic class is compiled, the compiler performs erasure on the class's type parameters and replaces them with their upper bounds.

- Type parameters cannot be used in a class's static declarations.

- When instantiating an object of a generic class, the types specified in angle brackets after the class name are known as type arguments. They are used by the compiler to replace the type parameters so that the compiler can perform type checking and insert cast operations as necessary.

- It is possible to instantiate a generic class without specifying a type argument. In this case, the new object of the class is said to have a raw type, which means that the compiler implicitly uses type Object (or the type parameter's upper bound) throughout the generic class for each type argument.

- The Java Collections Framework provides many generic data structures and algorithms that manipulate the elements of those data structures.
Perhaps the simplest of the data structures is class `ArrayList`, a dynamically resizable, array-like data structure.

- **Class** `Number` is the superclass of both `Integer` and `Double`.

- **Method** `add` of class `ArrayList` appends an element to the end of the collection.

- **Method** `toString` of class `ArrayList` returns a string of the form `"[ elements ]"` in which `elements` is a comma-separated list of the elements' string representations.

- **Method** `doubleValue` of class `Number` obtains the `Number`'s underlying primitive value as a `double` value.

---

Wildcard type arguments enable you to specify method parameters, return values, variables, etc. that act as supertypes of parameterized types. A wildcard type argument is denoted by the question mark (`?`), which represents an "unknown type." A wildcard can also have an upper bound.

- Because a wildcard (`?`) is not a type parameter name, you cannot use it as a type name throughout a method's body.

- If a wildcard is specified without an upper bound, then only the methods of type `Object` can be invoked on values of the wildcard type.

- Methods that use wildcards as type arguments cannot be used to add elements to a collection referenced by the parameter.

- A generic class can be derived from a non-generic class. For example, `Object` is a direct or indirect superclass of every generic class.

- A generic class can be derived from another generic class.

- A non-generic class can be derived from a generic class.

- A generic method in a subclass can override a generic method in a superclass if both methods have the same signatures.
Terminology

? (wildcard type argument)

actual type arguments

add method of ArrayList

angle brackets (< and >)

ArrayList class

Comparable<T> interface

compareTo method of Comparable<T>

default upper bound (Object) of a type parameter

Double class

doubleValue method of Number

erasure

formal type parameter

generics

generic class

generic interface

generic method

Integer class

Java Collections Framework
overloaded a generic method

parameterized class

parameterized type

raw type

scope of a type parameter

toString method of ArrayList

type argument

type parameter

type parameter scope

type parameter section

type variable

upper bound of a type parameter

upper bound of a wildcard

wildcard (?)

wildcard as a type argument

wildcard without an upper bound
Self-Review Exercises

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. A generic method cannot have the same method name as a non-generic method.
2. All generic method declarations have a type parameter section that immediately precedes the method name.
3. A generic method can be overloaded by another generic method with the same method name but different method parameters.
4. A type parameter can be declared only once in the type parameter section but can appear more than once in the method's parameter list.
5. Type parameter names among different generic methods must be unique.
6. The scope of a generic class's type parameter is the entire class except its static members.

18.1

Fill in the blanks in each of the following:

1. ________ and ________ enable programmers to specify, with a single method declaration, a set of related methods, or with a single class declaration, a set of related types, respectively.
2. A type parameter section is delimited by ________.
3. The ________ of a generic method can be used to specify the types of the arguments to the method, to specify the return type of the method and to declare variables within the method.
4. The statement "Stack objectStack = new Stack();" indicates that objectStack stores ________.
5. In a generic class declaration, the class name is followed by a(n) ________.
6. The syntax ________ specifies that the upper bound of a wildcard is type E.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

18.1 a) False. Generic methods and non-generic methods can have same method name. A generic method can overload another generic method with the same method name but different method parameters. A generic method also can be overloaded by providing non-generic methods with the same method name and number of arguments. b) False. All generic method declarations have a type parameter section that immediately precedes the method’s return type. c) True. d) True. e) False. Type parameter names among different generic methods need not be unique. f) True.

18.2 a) Generic methods, generic classes. b) angle brackets (< and >). c) type parameters. d) a raw type. e) type parameter section. f) \( ? \text{ extends } E \).
Exercises

Explain the use of the following notation in a Java program:

18.3 public class Array< T > { }

Write a generic method `selectionSort` based on the sort program of Fig. 16.6 and Fig. 16.7. Write a test program that inputs, sorts and outputs an `Integer` array and a `Float` array. [Hint: Use `< T extends Comparable< T > >` in the type parameter section for method `selectionSort`, so that you can use method `compareTo` to compare the objects of two generic types `T`.]

Overload generic method `printArray` of Fig. 18.3 so that it takes two additional integer arguments, `lowSubscript` and `highSubscript`. A call to this method prints only the designated portion of the array. Validate `lowSubscript` and `highSubscript`. If either is out-of-range, or if `highSubscript` is less than or equal to `lowSubscript`, the overloaded `printArray` method should throw an `InvalidSubscriptException`; otherwise, `printArray` should return the number of elements printed. Then modify `main` to exercise both versions of `printArray` on arrays `integerArray`, `doubleArray` and `characterArray`. Test all capabilities of both versions of `printArray`.

Overload generic method `printArray` of Fig. 18.3 with a non-generic version that specifically prints an array of strings in neat, tabular format, as shown in the sample output that follows:

```
Array stringArray contains:
 one    two    three    four
 five   six    seven    eight
```

Write a simple generic version of method `isEqualTo` that compares its two arguments with the `equals` method and returns `true` if they are equal and `false` otherwise. Use this generic method in a program that calls `isEqualTo` with a variety of built-in types, such as `Object` or `Integer`. What result do you get when you attempt to run this program?

Write a generic class `Pair` which has two type parameters `F` and `S`, each represents the type of the first and second element of the pair respectively. Add `get` and `set` methods for the first and second elements of the pair. [Hint: The class header should be `public class Pair< F, S >`.

Convert classes `TreeNode` and `tree` from Fig. 17.17 into generic classes. To insert an object in a `tree`, the object must be compared to the objects in existing `treeNodes`. For this reason, classes `TreeNode` and `tree` should specify `Comparable< E >` as the upper bound of each class's type parameter. After modifying
18.9 classes TreeNode and tree, write a test application that creates three tree objects: one that stores Integers, one that stores Doubles, and one that stores Strings. Insert 10 values into each tree. Then output the preorder, inorder and postorder traversals for each tree.

18.10 Modify your test program from Exercise 18.9 to use a generic method named testTree to test the three Tree objects. The method should be called three times once for each Tree object.

18.11 How can generic methods be overloaded?

18.12 The compiler performs a matching process to determine which method to call when a method is invoked. Under what circumstances does an attempt to make a match result in a compile-time error?

18.13 ArrayList< Employee > workerList = new ArrayList< Employee >();
Chapter 19. Collections

I think this is the most extraordinary collection of talent, of human knowledge, that has ever been gathered together at the White House with the possible exception of when Thomas Jefferson dined alone.

John F. Kennedy

The shapes a bright container can contain!

Theodore Roethke

Journey over all the universe in a map.

Miguel de Cervantes

Not by age but by capacity is wisdom acquired.

Titus Maccius Plautus

It is a riddle wrapped in a mystery inside an enigma.

Winston Churchill

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- What collections are.

- To use class Arrays for array manipulations.

- To use the collections framework (prepackaged data structure) implementations.

- To use collections framework algorithms to manipulate (such as search, sort and fill) collections.

- To use the collections framework interfaces to program with collections polymorphically.
• To use iterators to "walk through" a collection.

• To use persistent hash tables manipulated with objects of class Properties.

• To use synchronization and modifiability wrappers.

Outline

19.1 Introduction

19.2 Collections Overview

19.3 Class Arrays

19.4 Interface Collection and Class Collections

19.5 Lists

  19.5.1 ArrayList and Iterator

  19.5.2 LinkedList

  19.5.3 Vector

19.6 Collections Algorithms

  19.6.1 Algorithm sort

  19.6.2 Algorithm shuffle

  19.6.3 Algorithms reverse, fill, copy, max and min

  19.6.4 Algorithm binarySearch

  19.6.5 Algorithms addAll, frequency and disjoint

19.7 Stack Class of Package java.util
19.8 Class `PriorityQueue` and `Interface Queue`

19.9 Sets

19.10 Maps

19.11 Properties Class

19.12 Synchronized Collections

19.13 Unmodifiable Collections

19.14 Abstract Implementations

19.15 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
19.1. Introduction

In Chapter 17, we discussed how to create and manipulate data structures. The discussion was "low level" in the sense that we painstakingly created each element of each data structure dynamically and modified the data structures by directly manipulating their elements and the references to their elements. In this chapter, we consider the Java collections framework, which contains prepackaged data structures, interfaces and algorithms for manipulating those data structures. Some examples of collections are the cards you hold in a card game, your favorite songs stored in your computer, the members of a sports team and the real-estate records in your local registry of deeds (which map book numbers and page numbers to property owners). In this chapter, we also discuss how generics (see Chapter 18) are used in the Java collections framework.

With collections, programmers use existing data structures, without concern for how they are implemented. This is a marvelous example of code reuse. Programmers can code faster and can expect excellent performance, maximizing execution speed and minimizing memory consumption. In this chapter, we discuss the collections framework interfaces that list the capabilities of each collection type, the implementation classes, the algorithms that process the collections, and the so-called iterators and enhanced for statement syntax that "walk through" collections. This chapter provides an introduction to the collections framework. For complete details, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/collections.

The Java collections framework provides ready-to-go, reusable componentry, you do not need to write your own collection classes, but you can if you wish to. The collections are standardized so that applications can share them easily without concern with for details of their implementation. The collections framework encourages further reusability. As new data structures and algorithms are developed that fit this framework, a large base of programmers will already be familiar with the interfaces and algorithms implemented by those data structures.
19.2. Collections Overview

A **collection** is a data structure actually, an object that can hold references to other objects. Usually, collections contain references to objects that are all of the same type. The collections framework interfaces declare the operations to be performed generically on various types of collections. Figure 19.1 lists some of the interfaces of the collections framework. Several implementations of these interfaces are provided within the framework. Programmers may also provide implementations specific to their own requirements.

![Figure 19.1. Some collection framework interfaces.](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interface</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collection</td>
<td>The root interface in the collections hierarchy from which interfaces Set, Queue and List are derived.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Set</td>
<td>A collection that does not contain duplicates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List</td>
<td>An ordered collection that can contain duplicate elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Map</td>
<td>Associates keys to values and cannot contain duplicate keys.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queue</td>
<td>Typically a first-in, first-out collection that models a waiting line; other orders can be specified.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The collections framework provides high-performance, high-quality implementations of common data structures and enables software reuse. These features minimize the amount of coding programmers need to do to create and manipulate collections. The classes and interfaces of the collections framework are members of package `java.util`. In the next section, we begin our discussion by examining the collections framework capabilities for array manipulation.

In earlier versions of Java, the classes in the collections framework stored and manipulated `Object` references. Thus, you could store any object in a collection. One inconvenient aspect of storing `Object` references occurs when retrieving them from a collection. A program normally has the need to process specific
types of objects. As a result, the Object references obtained from a collection typically need to be cast to an appropriate type to allow the program to process the objects correctly.

In J2SE 5.0, the collections framework has been enhanced with the generics capabilities we introduced in Chapter 18. This means that you can specify the exact type that will be stored in a collection. You also receive the benefits of compile-time type checking the compiler ensures that you are using appropriate types with your collection and, if not, issues compile-time error messages. Also, once you specify the type stored in a collection, any reference you retrieve from the collection will have the specified type. This eliminates the need for explicit type casts that can throw ClassCastException if the referenced object is not of the appropriate type. Programs that were implemented with prior java versions and that use collections can compile properly because the compiler automatically uses raw types when it encounters collections for which type arguments were not specified.
19.3. Class **Arrays**

Class **Arrays** provides static methods for manipulating arrays. In Chapter 7, our discussion of array manipulation was low level in the sense that we wrote the actual code to sort and search arrays. Class **Arrays** provides high-level methods, such as **sort** for sorting an array, **binarySearch** for searching a sorted array, **equals** for comparing arrays and **fill** for placing values into an array. These methods are overloaded for primitive-type arrays and **Object** arrays. In addition, methods **sort** and **binarySearch** are overloaded with generic versions that allow programmers to sort and search arrays containing objects of any type. **Figure 19.2** demonstrates methods **fill**, **sort**, **binarySearch** and **equals**. Method **main** (lines 6585) creates a **UsingArrays** object and invokes its methods.

**Figure 19.2. Arrays class methods.**
(This item is displayed on pages 908 - 909 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 19.2: UsingArrays.java
// Using Java arrays.
import java.util.Arrays;

public class UsingArrays
{
    private int intArray[] = { 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 };
    private double doubleArray[] = { 8.4, 9.3, 0.2, 7.9, 3.4 };
    private int filledIntArray[], intArrayCopy[];

    // constructor initializes arrays
    public UsingArrays()
    {
        filledIntArray = new int [10]; // create int array with 10 elements
        intArrayCopy = new int [intArray.length];

        Arrays.fill( filledIntArray, 7 ); // fill with 7s
        Arrays.sort( doubleArray ); // sort doubleArray ascending

        // copy array intArray into array intArrayCopy
        System.arraycopy( intArray, 0, intArrayCopy, 0, intArray.length );
    } // end UsingArrays constructor

    // output values in each array
    public void printArrays()
    {
        System.out.print( "doubleArray: ");
        for ( double doubleValue : doubleArray )
            System.out.print( doubleValue + "");
    }
}
```
System.out.printf("%.1f ", doubleValue);

for ( int intValue : intArray )
    System.out.printf("%d ", intValue);

System.out.printf("\nintArray: ");
for ( int intValue : intArray )
    System.out.printf("%d ", intValue);

System.out.printf("\nfilledIntArray: ");
for ( int intValue : filledIntArray )
    System.out.printf("%d ", intValue);

System.out.print("\nintArrayCopy: ");
for ( int intValue : intArrayCopy )
    System.out.printf("%d ", intValue);

System.out.println("\n");
} // end method printArrays

// find value in array intArray
public int searchForInt( int value )
{
    return Arrays.binarySearch( intArray, value );
} // end method searchForInt

// compare array contents
public void printEquality()
{
    boolean b = Arrays.equals( intArray, intArrayCopy );
    System.out.printf("intArray %s intArrayCopy\n", ( b ? "==" : "!=" ) );
    b = Arrays.equals( intArray, filledIntArray );
    System.out.printf("intArray %s filledIntArray\n", ( b ? "==" : "!=" ) );
} // end method printEquality

public static void main( String args[] )
{
    UsingArrays usingArrays = new UsingArrays();

    usingArrays.printArrays();
    usingArrays.printEquality();

    int location = usingArrays.searchForInt( 5 );
    if ( location >= 0 )
        System.out.printf( "Found 5 at element %d in intArray\n", location );
    else
        System.out.println( "5 not found in intArray" );

    location = usingArrays.searchForInt( 8763 );
    if ( location >= 0 )
        System.out.printf( "Found 8763 at element %d in intArray\n", location );
    else
        System.out.println( "8763 not found in intArray" );
} // end main
// end class UsingArrays
doubleArray: 0.2 3.4 7.9 8.4 9.3
intArray: 1 2 3 4 5 6
filledIntArray: 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7
intArrayCopy: 1 2 3 4 5 6

intArray == intArrayCopy
intArray != filledIntArray
Found 5 at element 4 in intArray
8763 not found in intArray

Line 17 calls static method fill of class Arrays to populate all 10 elements of filledIntArray with 7s. Overloaded versions of fill allow the programmer to populate a specific range of elements with the same value.

Line 18 sorts the elements of array doubleArray. The static method sort of class Arrays orders the array's elements in ascending order by default. We discuss how to sort in descending order later in the chapter. Overloaded versions of sort allow the programmer to sort a specific range of elements.

Lines 21-22 copy array intArray into array intArrayCopy. The first argument (intArray) passed to System method arraycopy is the array from which elements are to be copied. The second argument (0) is the index that specifies the starting point in the range of elements to copy from the array. This value can be any valid array index. The third argument (intArrayCopy) specifies the destination array that will store the copy. The fourth argument (0) specifies the index in the destination array where the first copied element should be stored. The last argument specifies the number of elements to copy from the array in the first argument. In this case, we copy all the elements in the array.

Line 50 calls static method binarySearch of class Arrays to perform a binary search on intArray, using value as the key. If value is found, binarySearch returns the index of the element; otherwise, binarySearch returns a negative value. The negative value returned is based on the search key's insertion point—the index where the key would be inserted in the array if we were performing an insert operation. After binarySearch determines the insertion point, it changes its sign to negative and subtracts 1 to obtain the return value. For example, in Fig. 19.2, the insertion point for the value 8763 is the element with index 6 in the array. Method binarySearch changes the insertion point to 6, subtracts 1 from it and returns the value 7. Subtracting 1 from the insertion point guarantees that...
method `binarySearch` returns positive values (>=0) if and only if the key is found. This return value is useful for inserting elements in a sorted array. Chapter 16, Searching and Sorting, discusses binary searching in detail.

Common Programming Error 19.1

Passing an unsorted array to `binarySearch` is a logic error; the value returned is undefined.

Lines 56 and 60 call static method `equals` of class `Arrays` to determine whether the elements of two arrays are equivalent. If the arrays contain the same elements in the same order, the method returns `true`; otherwise, it returns `false`. The equality of each element is compared using `Object` method `equals`. Many classes override method `equals` to perform the comparisons in a manner specific to those classes. For example, class `String` declares `equals` to compare the individual characters in the two `Strings` being compared. If method `equals` is not overridden, the original version of method `equals` inherited from class `Object` is used.
19.4. Interface **Collection** and Class **Collections**

Interface **Collection** is the root interface in the collection hierarchy from which interfaces **Set**, **Queue** and **List** are derived. Interface **Set** defines a collection that does not contain duplicates. Interface **Queue** defines a collection that represents a waiting line typically, insertions are made at the back of a queue and deletions are made from the front, though other orders can be specified. We discuss **Queue** and **Set** in **Section 19.8** and **Section 19.9**, respectively. Interface **Collection** contains **bulk operations** (i.e., operations performed on an entire collection) for adding, clearing, comparing and retaining objects (or elements) in a collection. A **Collection** can also be converted to an array. In addition, interface **Collection** provides a method that returns an **Iterator** object, which allows a program to walk through the collection and remove elements from the collection during the iteration. We discuss class **Iterator** in **Section 19.5.1**. Other methods of interface **Collection** enable a program to determine a collection's size and whether a collection is empty.

**Software Engineering Observation 19.1**

*Collection* is used commonly as a method parameter type to allow polymorphic processing of all objects that implement interface **Collection**.

**Software Engineering Observation 19.2**

*Most collection implementations provide a constructor that takes a Collection argument, thereby allowing a new collection to be constructed containing the elements of the specified collection.*

Class **Collections** provides static methods that manipulate collections
polymorphically. These methods implement algorithms for searching, sorting and so on. Chapter 16, Searching and Sorting, discussed and implemented various searching and sorting algorithms. Section 19.6 discusses more about the algorithms that are available in class Collections. We also cover the wrapper methods of class Collections that enable you to treat a collection as a synchronized collection (Section 19.12) or an unmodifiable collection (Section 19.13). Unmodifiable collections are useful when a client of a class needs to view the elements of a collection, but should not be allowed to modify the collection by adding and removing elements. Synchronized collections are for use with a powerful capability called multithreading (discussed in Chapter 23). Multithreading enables programs to perform operations in parallel. When two or more threads of a program share a collection, there is the potential for problems to occur. As a brief analogy, consider a traffic intersection. We cannot allow all cars access to one intersection at the same time if we did, accidents would occur. For this reason, traffic lights are provided at intersections to control access to the intersection. Similarly, we can synchronize access to a collection to ensure that only one thread manipulates the collection at a time. The synchronization wrapper methods of class collection return synchronized versions of collections that can be shared among threads in a program.
19.5. Lists

A List (sometimes called a sequence) is an ordered Collection that can contain duplicate elements. Like array indices, List indices are zero based (i.e., the first element's index is zero). In addition to the methods inherited from Collection, List provides methods for manipulating elements via their indices, manipulating a specified range of elements, searching for elements and getting a ListIterator to access the elements.

Interface List is implemented by several classes, including classes ArrayList, LinkedList and Vector. Autoboxing occurs when you add primitive-type values to objects of these classes, because they store only references to objects. Class ArrayList and Vector are resizable-array implementations of List. Class LinkedList is a linked-list implementation of interface List.

Class ArrayList's behavior and capabilities are similar to those of class Vector. The primary difference between Vector and ArrayList is that objects of class Vector are synchronized by default, whereas objects of class ArrayList are not. Also, class Vector is from Java 1.0, before the collections framework was added to Java. As such, Vector has several methods that are not part of interface List and are not implemented in class ArrayList, but perform identical tasks. For example, Vector methods addElement and add both append an element to a Vector, but only method add is specified in interface List and implemented by ArrayList. Unsynchronized collections provide better performance than synchronized ones. For this reason, ArrayList is typically preferred over Vector in programs that do not share a collection among threads.

**Performance Tip 19.1**

ArrayLists behave like Vectors without synchronization and therefore execute faster than Vectors because ArrayLists do not have the overhead of thread synchronization.

**Software Engineering Observation 19.3**
The following three subsections demonstrate the List and Collection capabilities with several examples. **Section 19.5.1** focuses on removing elements from an ArrayList with an Iterator. **Section 19.5.2** focuses on ListIterator and several List- and LinkedList-specific methods. **Section 19.5.3** introduces more List methods and several Vector-specific methods.

### 19.5.1. ArrayList and Iterator

**Figure 19.3** uses an ArrayList to demonstrate several Collection interface capabilities. The program places two Color arrays in ArrayLists and uses an Iterator to remove elements in the second ArrayList collection from the first ArrayList collection.

```java
// Fig. 19.3: CollectionTest.java
// Using the Collection interface.
import java.util.List;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Collection;
import java.util.Iterator;

public class CollectionTest {
    private static final String[] colors =
        { "MAGENTA", "RED", "WHITE", "BLUE", "CYAN" };
    private static final String[] removeColors =
        { "RED", "WHITE", "BLUE" };

    // create ArrayList, add Colors to it and manipulate it
    public CollectionTest() {
        List<String> list = new ArrayList<String>();
        List<String> removeList = new ArrayList<String>();
    }
}
```

(This item is displayed on pages 912 - 913 in the print version)
// add elements in colors array to list
for ( String color : colors )
    list.add( color );

// add elements in removeColors to removeList
for ( String color : removeColors )
    removeList.add( color );

System.out.println( "ArrayList: " );

// output list contents
for ( int count = 0; count < list.size(); count++ )
    System.out.printf( "%s ", list.get( count ) );

// remove colors contained in removeList
removeColors( list, removeList );

System.out.println( "\n\nArrayList after calling removeColors: " );

// output list contents
for ( String color : list )
    System.out.printf( "%s ", color );
} // end CollectionTest constructor

// remove colors specified in collection2 from collection1
private void removeColors(
    Collection< String > collection1, Collection< String > collection2 )
{
    // get iterator
    Iterator< String > iterator = collection1.iterator();

    // loop while collection has items
    while ( iterator.hasNext() )
    {
        // remove current Color
        iterator.remove();
    }
} // end method removeColors

public static void main( String args[] )
{
    new CollectionTest();
} // end main
} // end class CollectionTest

ArrayList:
MAGENTA RED WHITE BLUE CYAN

ArrayList after calling removeColors:
MAGENTA CYAN
Lines 1013 declare and initialize two `String` array variables, which are declared `final`, so they always refer to these arrays. Recall that it is good programing practice to declare constants with keywords `static` and `final`. Lines 1819 create `ArrayList` objects and assign their references to variables `list` and `removeList`, respectively. These two lists store `String` objects. Note that `ArrayList` is a generic class in J2SE 5.0, so we are able to specify a type argument (`String` in this case) to indicate the type of the elements in each list. Both `list` and `removeList` are collections of `String`. Lines 2223 populate `list` with `String` objects stored in array `colors`, and lines 2627 populate `removeList` with `String` objects stored in array `removeColors` using `List` method `add`. Lines 3233 output each element of `list`. Line 32 calls `List` method `size` to get the number of `ArrayList` elements. Line 33 uses `List` method `get` to retrieve individual element values. Lines 3233 could have used the enhanced `for` statement. Line 36 calls method `removeColors` (lines 4657), passing `list` and `removeList` as arguments. Method `removeColors` deletes `String` objects specified in `removeList` from the `list` collection. Lines 4142 print `list`'s elements after `removeColors` removes the `String` objects specified in `removeList` from the `list`.

Method `removeColors` declares two `Collection` parameters (line 47) that allow any collections containing strings to be passed as arguments to this method. The method accesses the elements of the first `Collection` (collection1) via an `Iterator`. Line 50 calls `Collection` method `iterator` to get an `Iterator` for the `Collection`. Note that interfaces `Collection` and `Iterator` are generic types. The loop-continuation condition (line 53) calls `Iterator` method `hasNext` to determine whether the `Collection` contains more elements. Method `hasNext` returns `true` if another element exists and `false` otherwise.

The `if` condition in line 55 calls `Iterator` method `next` to obtain a reference to the next element, then uses method `contains` of the second `Collection` (collection2) to determine whether `collection2` contains the element returned by `next`. If so, line 56 calls `Iterator` method `remove` to remove the element from the `Collection` collection1.

**Common Programming Error 19.2**

*If a collection is modified by one of its methods after an iterator is created for that collection, the iterator immediately becomes invalid any operations performed with the iterator after this point throw*
19.5.2. LinkedList

Figure 19.4 demonstrates operations on LinkedLists. The program creates two LinkedLists that contain Strings. The elements of one List are added to the other. Then all the Strings are converted to uppercase, and a range of elements is deleted.

Figure 19.4. Lists and ListIterators.
(This item is displayed on pages 914 - 915 in the print version)
list1.addAll(list2); // concatenate lists
list2 = null; // release resources
printList(list1); // print list1 elements

(convertToUppercaseStrings(list1)); // convert to upper case string
printList(list1); // print list1 elements

System.out.print("\nDeleting elements 4 to 6... ");
removeItems(list1, 4, 7); // remove items 4-7 from list
printList(list1); // print list1 elements
printReversedList(list1); // print list in reverse order
} // end ListTest constructor

// output List contents
public void printList(List<String> list)
{
    System.out.println("\nlist: ");
    for (String color : list)
        System.out.printf("%s ", color);
    System.out.println();
} // end method printList

// locate String objects and convert to uppercase
private void convertToUppercaseStrings(List<String> list)
{
    ListIterator<String> iterator = list.listIterator();
    while (iterator.hasNext())
    {
        String color = iterator.next(); // get item
        iterator.set(color.toUpperCase()); // convert to upper case
    } // end while
} // end method convertToUppercaseStrings

// obtain sublist and use clear method to delete sublist items
private void removeItems(List<String> list, int start, int end)
{
    list.subList(start, end).clear(); // remove items
} // end method removeItems

// print reversed list
private void printReversedList(List<String> list)
{
    ListIterator<String> iterator = list.listIterator(list.size());
    System.out.println("\nReversed List:" );
    // print list in reverse order
    while (iterator.hasPrevious())
        System.out.printf("%s ", iterator.previous());
} // end method printReversedList

public static void main(String args[])
{
    new ListTest();
} // end main
} // end class ListTest
Lines 1718 create LinkedLists list1 and list2 of type String. Note that LinkedList is a generic class that has one type parameter for which we specify the type argument String in this example. Lines 2126 call List method add to append elements from arrays colors and colors2 to the end of list1 and list2, respectively.

Line 28 calls List method addAll to append all elements of list2 to the end of list1. Line 29 sets list2 to null, so the LinkedList to which list2 referred can be garbage collected. Line 30 calls method printList (lines 4250) to output list list1's contents. Line 32 calls method convertToUppercaseStrings (lines 5362) to convert each String element to uppercase, then line 33 calls printList again to display the modified StringS. Line 36 calls method removeItems (lines 6568) to remove the elements starting at index 4 up to, but not including, index 7 of the list. Line 38 calls method printReversedList (lines 7180) to print the list in reverse order.

Method convertToUppercaseStrings (lines 5362) changes lowercase String elements in its List argument to uppercase StringS. Line 55 calls List method listIterator to get a bidirectional iterator (i.e., an iterator that can traverse a List backward or forward) for the List. Note that ListIterator is a generic class. In this example, the ListIterator contains String objects, because method listIterator is called on a List of Strings. The while condition (line 57) calls method hasNext to determine whether the List contains another element.
Line 59 gets the next String in the List. Line 60 calls String method toUpperCase to get an uppercase version of the String and calls ListIterator method set to replace the current String to which iterator refers with the String returned by method toUpperCase. Like method toUpperCase, String method toLowerCase returns a lowercase version of the String.

Method removeItems (lines 65-68) removes a range of items from the list. Line 67 calls List method subList to obtain a portion of the List (called a sublist). The sublist is simply another view into the List on which subList is called. Method subList takes two arguments—the beginning and the ending index for the sublist. The ending index is not part of the range of the sublist. In this example, we pass (in line 36) 4 for the beginning index and 7 for the ending index to subList. The sublist returned is the set of elements with indices 4 through 6. Next, the program calls List method clear on the sublist to remove the elements of the sublist from the List. Any changes made to a sublist are also made to the original List.

Method printReversedList (lines 71-80) prints the list backward. Line 73 calls List method listIterator with one argument that specifies the starting position (in our case, the last element in the list) to get a bidirectional iterator for the list. List method size returns the number of items in the List. The while condition (line 78) calls method hasPrevious to determine whether there are more elements while traversing the list backward. Line 79 gets the previous element from the list and outputs it to the standard output stream.

An important feature of the collections framework is the ability to manipulate the elements of one collection type (such as a set) through a different collection type (such as a list), regardless of the collection's internal implementation. The set of public methods through which collections are manipulated is called a view.

Class Arrays provides static method asList to view an array as a List collection (which encapsulates behavior similar to that of the linked lists created in Chapter 17). A List view allows the programmer to manipulate the array as if it were a list. This is useful for adding the elements in an array to a collection (e.g., a LinkedList) and for sorting array elements. The next example demonstrates how to create a LinkedList with a List view of an array, because we cannot pass the array to a LinkedList constructor. Sorting array elements with a List view is demonstrated in Fig. 19.9. Any modifications made through the List view change the array, and any modifications made to the array change the List view. The only operation permitted on the view returned by asList is set, which changes the value of the view and the backing array. Any
other attempts to change the view (such as adding or removing elements) result in an `UnsupportedOperationException`.

Figure 19.5 uses method `asList` to view an array as a `List` collection and uses method `toArray` of a `List` to get an array from a `LinkedList` collection. The program calls method `asList` to create a `List` view of an array, which is then used for creating a `LinkedList` object, adds a series of strings to a `LinkedList` and calls method `toArray` to obtain an array containing references to the strings. Notice that the instantiation of `LinkedList` (line 13) indicates that `LinkedList` is a generic class that accepts one type argument `String`, in this example.

**Figure 19.5. List method `toArray`.**

(This item is displayed on pages 917 - 918 in the print version)
Lines 1314 construct a `LinkedList` of `Strings` containing the elements of array `colors` and assigns the `LinkedList` reference to `links`. Note the use of `Arrays` method `asList` to return a view of the array as a `List`, then initialize the `LinkedList` with the `List`. Line 16 calls `LinkedList` method `addLast` to add "red" to the end of `links`. Lines 17-18 call `LinkedList` method `add` to add "pink" as the last element and "green" as the element at index 3 (i.e., the fourth element). Note that method `addLast` (line 16) is identical in function to method `add` (line 17). Line 19 calls `LinkedList` method `addFirst` to add "cyan" as the new first item in the `LinkedList`. The `add` operations are permitted because they operate on the `LinkedList` object, not the view returned by `asList`. [Note: When "cyan" is added as the first element, "green" becomes the fifth element in the `LinkedList`.

Line 22 calls `List` method `toArray` to get a `String` array from `links`. The array is a copy of the list's elements modifying the contents of the array does not modify the list. The method used to pass to `toArray` is of the same type that you would like method `toArray` to return. If the number of elements in the array is greater than or equal to the number of elements in the `LinkedList`, `toArray` copies the list's elements into its argument and returns that array. If the `LinkedList` has more elements than the number of elements in the array passed to `toArray`, `toArray` allocates a new array of the same type it receives as an argument, copies the list's elements into the new array and returns the new array.

**Common Programming Error 19.3**
Passing an array that contains data to `toArray` can cause logic errors. If the number of elements in the array is smaller than the number of elements in the list on which `toArray` is called, a new array is allocated to store the list's elements without preserving the array argument's elements. If the number of elements in the array is greater than the number of elements in the list, the elements of the array (starting at index zero) are overwritten with the list's elements. Array elements that are not overwritten retain their values.

### 19.5.3. Vector

Like `ArrayList`, class `Vector` provides the capabilities of array-like data structures that can resize themselves dynamically. Recall that class `ArrayList`'s behavior and capabilities are similar to those of class `Vector`, except that ArrayLists do not provide synchronization by default. We cover class `Vector` here primarily because it is the superclass of class `Stack`, which is presented in Section 19.7.

At any time, a `Vector` contains a number of elements that is less than or equal to its `capacity`. The capacity is the space that has been reserved for the `Vector`'s elements. If a `Vector` requires additional capacity, it grows by a `capacity increment` that you specify or by a default capacity increment. If you do not specify a capacity increment or specify one that is less than or equal to zero, the system will double the size of a `Vector` each time additional capacity is needed.

**Performance Tip 19.2**

Inserting an element into a `Vector` whose current size is less than its capacity is a relatively fast operation.

**Performance Tip 19.3**
Inserting an element into a Vector that needs to grow larger to accommodate the new element is a relatively slow operation.

Performance Tip 19.4

The default capacity increment doubles the size of the Vector. This may seem a waste of storage, but it is actually an efficient way for many VectorS to grow quickly to be "about the right size." This operation is much more efficient than growing the Vector each time by only as much space as it takes to hold a single element. The disadvantage is that the Vector might occupy more space than it requires. This is a classic example of the spacetime trade-off.

Performance Tip 19.5

If storage is at a premium, use Vector method trimToSize to trim a Vector's capacity to the Vector's exact size. This operation optimizes a Vector's use of storage. However, adding another element to the Vector will force the Vector to grow dynamically (again, a relatively slow operation)trimming leaves no room for growth.

Figure 19.6 demonstrates class Vector and several of its methods. For complete information on class Vector, please visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/Vector.html.

Figure 19.6. Vector class of package java.util.

(This item is displayed on pages 919 - 921 in the print version)
// Using the Vector class.
import java.util.Vector;
import java.util.NoSuchElementException;

public class VectorTest {
    private static final String colors[] = { "red", "white", "blue" };

    public VectorTest() {
        Vector<String> vector = new Vector<String>();
        printVector(vector); // print vector

        // add elements to the vector
        for (String color : colors) {
            vector.add(color);
        }
        printVector(vector); // print vector

        // output the first and last elements
        try {
            System.out.printf( "First element: %s\n", vector.firstElement() );
            System.out.printf( "Last element: %s\n", vector.lastElement() );
        } // end try
        // catch exception if vector is empty
        catch (NoSuchElementException exception) {
            exception.printStackTrace();
        } // end catch

        // does vector contain "red"?
        if (vector.contains("red")) {
            System.out.printf("\n\"red\" found at index %d\n\n",
                    vector.indexOf("red"));
        } else
            System.out.println("\n\"red\" not found\n");

        vector.remove("red"); // remove the string "red"
        printVector(vector); // print vector

        // does vector contain "red" after remove operation?
        if (vector.contains("red")) {
            System.out.printf("\n\"red\" found at index %d\n",
                    vector.indexOf("red"));
        } else
            System.out.println("\n\"red\" not found\n");

        // print the size and capacity of vector
        System.out.printf("\nSize: %d\nCapacity: %d",
                vector.size(),
                vector.capacity());
    } // end Vector constructor

    private void printVector(Vector<String> vectorToOutput) {
        if (vectorToOutput.isEmpty()) {
            System.out.print("vector is empty");
        } else {
            System.out.print("vector contains: ");
            
        }
    }
} // end VectorTest
The application's constructor creates a Vector (line 13) of type String with an initial capacity of 10 elements and capacity increment of zero (the defaults for a Vector). Note that Vector is a generic class, which takes one argument that specifies the type of the elements stored in the Vector. A capacity increment of zero indicates that this Vector will double in size each time it needs to grow to accommodate more elements. Class Vector provides three other constructors. The constructor that takes one integer argument creates an empty Vector with the initial capacity specified by that argument. The constructor that takes two arguments creates a Vector with the initial capacity specified by the first argument and the capacity increment specified by the second argument. Each time the Vector needs to grow, it will add space for the specified number
of elements in the capacity increment. The constructor that takes a `Collection` creates a copy of a collection's elements and stores them in the `Vector`.

Line 18 calls `Vector` method `add` to add objects (Strings in this program) to the end of the `Vector`. If necessary, the `Vector` increases its capacity to accommodate the new element. Class `Vector` also provides a method `add` that takes two arguments. This method takes an object and an integer and inserts the object at the specified index in the `Vector`. Method `set` will replace the element at a specified position in the `Vector` with a specified element. Method `insertElementAt` provides the same functionality as the method `add` that takes two arguments, except that the order of the parameters is reversed.

Line 25 calls `Vector` method `firstElement` to return a reference to the first element in the `Vector`. Line 26 calls `Vector` method `lastElement` to return a reference to the last element in the `Vector`. Each of these methods throws a `NoSuchElementException` if there are no elements in the `Vector` when the method is called.

Line 35 calls `Vector` method `contains` to determine whether the `Vector` contains "red". The method returns `true` if its argument is in the `Vector`; otherwise, the method returns `false`. Method `contains` uses `Object` method `equals` to determine whether the search key is equal to one of the `Vector`'s elements. Many classes override method `equals` to perform the comparisons in a manner specific to those classes. For example, class `String` declares `equals` to compare the individual characters in the two `Strings` being compared. If method `equals` is not overridden, the original version of method `equals` inherited from class `Object` is used.

**Common Programming Error 19.4**

*Without overriding method `equals`, the program performs comparisons using operator `==` to determine whether two references refer to the same object in memory.*
Line 37 calls Vector method **indexOf** to determine the index of the first location in the Vector that contains the argument. The method returns 1 if the argument is not found in the Vector. An overloaded version of this method takes a second argument specifying the index in the Vector at which the search should begin.

**Performance Tip 19.6**

Vector methods **contains** and **indexOf** perform linear searches of a Vector's contents. These searches are inefficient for large Vectors. If a program frequently searches for elements in a collection, consider using one of the Java Collection API's **Map** implementations (**Section 19.10**), which provide high-speed searching capabilities.

Line 41 calls Vector method **remove** to remove the first occurrence of its argument from the Vector. The method returns **true** if it finds the element in the Vector; otherwise, the method returns **false**. If the element is removed, all elements after that element in the Vector shift one position toward the beginning of the Vector to fill in the position of the removed element. Class Vector also provides method **removeAllElements** to remove every element from a Vector and method **removeElementAt** to remove the element at a specified index.

Lines 5354 use Vector methods **size** and **capacity** to determine the number of elements currently in the Vector and the number of elements that can be stored in the Vector without allocating more memory, respectively.

Line 59 calls Vector method **isEmpty** to determine whether the Vector is empty. The method returns **true** if there are no elements in the Vector; otherwise, the method returns **false**. Lines 6667 use the enhanced for statement to print out all elements in the vector.

Among the methods introduced in **Fig. 19.6**, firstElement, lastElement and capacity can be used only with Vector. Other methods (e.g., add, contains, indexOf, remove, size and isEmpty) are declared by List, which means that they can be used by any class that implements List, such as Vector.
19.6. Collections Algorithms

The collections framework provides several high-performance algorithms for manipulating collection elements. These algorithms are implemented as static methods of class `Collections` (Fig. 19.7). Algorithms `sort`, `binarySearch`, `reverse`, `shuffle`, `fill` and `copy` operate on `Lists`. Algorithms `min`, `max`, `addAll`, `frequency` and `disjoint` operate on `Collections`.

**Figure 19.7. Collections algorithms.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Algorithm</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>sort</code></td>
<td>Sorts the elements of a <code>List</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>binarySearch</code></td>
<td>Locates an object in a <code>List</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>reverse</code></td>
<td>Reverses the elements of a <code>List</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>shuffle</code></td>
<td>Randomly orders a <code>List</code>'s elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>fill</code></td>
<td>Sets every <code>List</code> element to refer to a specified object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>copy</code></td>
<td>Copies references from one <code>List</code> into another.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>min</code></td>
<td>Returns the smallest element in a <code>Collection</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>max</code></td>
<td>Returns the largest element in a <code>Collection</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>addAll</code></td>
<td>Appends all elements in an array to a collection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>frequency</code></td>
<td>Calculates how many elements in the collection are equal to the specified element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>disjoint</code></td>
<td>Determines whether two collections have no elements in common.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The collections framework algorithms are polymorphic. That is, each algorithm can operate on objects that implement specific interfaces, regardless of the underlying implementations.

19.6.1. Algorithm sort

Algorithm sort sorts the elements of a List, which must implement the Comparable interface. The order is determined by the natural order of the elements' type as implemented by its class's compareTo method. Method compareTo is declared in interface Comparable and is sometimes called the natural comparison method. The sort call may specify as a second argument a Comparator object that determines an alternative ordering of the elements.

Sorting in Ascending Order

Figure 19.8 uses algorithm sort to order the elements of a List in ascending order (line 20). Recall that List is a generic type and accepts one type argument that specifies the list element type. Line 15 declares list as a List of String. Note that lines 18 and 23 each use an implicit call to the list's toString method to output the list contents in the format shown on the second and fourth lines of the output.

Figure 19.8. Collections method sort.
(This item is displayed on page 924 in the print version)
private static final String suits[] =
    { "Hearts", "Diamonds", "Clubs", "Spades" };

// display array elements
public void printElements()
{
    List<String> list = Arrays.asList(suits); // create List

    // output list
    System.out.printf( "Unsorted array elements:\n%s\n", list );

    Collections.sort( list ); // sort ArrayList

    // output list
    System.out.printf( "Sorted array elements:\n%s\n", list );
} // end method printElements

public static void main( String args[] )
{
    Sort1 sort1 = new Sort1();
    sort1.printElements();
} // end main

// end class Sort1

Unsorted array elements:
[Hearts, Diamonds, Clubs, Spades]
Sorted array elements:
[Clubs, Diamonds, Hearts, Spades]

Sorting in Descending Order

Figure 19.9 sorts the same list of strings used in Fig. 19.8 in descending order. The example introduces the Comparator interface, which is used for sorting a Collection's elements in a different order. Line 21 calls Collections's method sort to order the List in descending order. The static Collections method reverseOrder returns a Comparator object that orders the collection's elements in reverse order.

Figure 19.9. Collections method sort with a Comparator object.

(This item is displayed on pages 924 - 925 in the print version)
// Fig. 19.9: Sort2.java
// Using a Comparator object with algorithm sort.
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.Collections;

public class Sort2 {
  private static final String suits[] =
    { "Hearts", "Diamonds", "Clubs", "Spades" };

  // output List elements
  public void printElements() {
    List list = Arrays.asList( suits ); // create List

    // output List elements
    System.out.printf( "Unsorted array elements:
%s
", list );

    // sort in descending order using a comparator
    Collections.sort( list, Collections.reverseOrder() );

    // output List elements
    System.out.printf( "Sorted list elements:
%s
", list );
  }

  public static void main( String args[] ) {
    Sort2 sort2 = new Sort2();
    sort2.printElements();
  }
}

Unsorted array elements:
[Hearts, Diamonds, Clubs, Spades]
Sorted list elements:
[Spades, Hearts, Diamonds, Clubs]
implements interface Comparator to compare two Time2 objects. Class Time2, declared in Fig. 8.5, represents times with hours, minutes and seconds.

**Figure 19.10. Custom Comparator class that compares two Time2 objects.**

(This item is displayed on page 926 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 19.10: TimeComparator.java
// Custom Comparator class that compares two Time2 objects.
import java.util.Comparator;

public class TimeComparator implements Comparator<Time2> {
    public int compare(Time2 time1, Time2 time2) {
        int hourCompare = time1.getHour() - time2.getHour(); // compare hour
        // test the hour first
        if (hourCompare != 0) return hourCompare;

        int minuteCompare =
            time1.getMinute() - time2.getMinute(); // compare minute
        // then test the minute
        if (minuteCompare != 0) return minuteCompare;

        int secondCompare =
            time1.getSecond() - time2.getSecond(); // compare second
        // return result of comparing seconds
        return secondCompare; // return result of comparing seconds
    }
}
```

Class TimeComparator implements interface Comparator, a generic type that takes one argument (in this case Time2). Method compare (lines 7-26) performs comparisons between Time2 objects. Line 9 compares the two hours of the Time2 objects. If the hours are different (line 12), then we return this value. If this value is positive, then the first hour is greater than the second and the first time is greater than the second. If this value is negative, then the first hour is less than the second and the first time is less than the second. If this value is zero, the hours are the same and we must test the minutes (and maybe the seconds) to determine which time is greater.

**Figure 19.11** sorts a list using the custom Comparator class TimeComparator. Line 11
creates an ArrayList of Time2 objects. Recall that both ArrayList and List are generic types and accept a type argument that specifies the element type of the collection. Lines 13-17 create five Time2 objects and add them to this list. Line 23 calls method sort, passing it an object of our TimeComparator class (Fig. 19.10).

**Figure 19.11.** Collections method sort with a custom Comparator object.

(This item is displayed on pages 926 - 927 in the print version)
19.6.2. Algorithm shuffle

Algorithm shuffle randomly orders a List's elements. In Chapter 7, we presented a card shuffling and dealing simulation that used a loop to shuffle a deck of cards. In Fig. 19.12, we use algorithm shuffle to shuffle a deck of Card objects that might be used in a card game simulator.

Figure 19.12. Card shuffling and dealing with Collections method shuffle.

(This item is displayed on pages 927 - 929 in the print version)

```
1 // Fig. 19.12: DeckOfCards.java
2 // Using algorithm shuffle.
3 import java.util.List;
4 import java.util.Arrays;
5 import java.util.Collections;
6
7 // class to represent a Card in a deck of cards
8 class Card
9 {
10     public static enum Face { Ace, Deuce, Three, Four, Five, Six,
11         Seven, Eight, Nine, Ten, Jack, Queen, King };  
12     public static enum Suit { Clubs, Diamonds, Hearts, Spades };  
13
14     private final Face face; // face of card
15     private final Suit suit; // suit of card
16
17     // two-argument constructor
18     public Card( Face cardFace, Suit cardSuit )
19     {
20         face = cardFace; // initialize face of card
21         suit = cardSuit; // initialize suit of card
22     } // end two-argument Card constructor
23
24     // return face of the card
25     public Face getFace()
26     {
27         return face;
28     } // end method getFace
```
public Suit getSuit()
{
    return suit;
} // end method getSuit

public String toString()
{
    return String.format("%s of %s", face, suit);
} // end method toString

private List<Card> list; // declare List that will store Cards

public DeckOfCards()
{
    Card[] deck = new Card[52];
    int count = 0; // number of cards

    for (Card.Suit suit : Card.Suit.values())
    {
        for (Card.Face face : Card.Face.values())
        {
            deck[count] = new Card(face, suit);
            count++;
        } // end for
    } // end for

    list = Arrays.asList(deck); // get List
    Collections.shuffle(list); // shuffle deck
} // end DeckOfCards constructor

public static void main( String args[] )
{
    DeckOfCards cards = new DeckOfCards();
    cards.printCards();
} // end main

King of Diamonds    Jack of Spades
Four of Diamonds    Six of Clubs
Class `Card` (lines 841) represents a card in a deck of cards. Each `Card` has a face and a suit. Lines 1012 declare two enum types `Face` and `Suit` which represent the face and the suit of the card, respectively. Method `toString` (lines 3740) returns a `String` containing the face and suit of the `Card` separated by the string " of ". When an enum constant is converted to a string, the constant's identifier is used as the string representation. Normally we would use all uppercase letters for enum constants. In this example, we chose to use capital letters for only the first letter of each enum constant because we want the card to be displayed with initial capital letters for the face and the suit (e.g., "Ace of Spades").

Lines 5562 populate the `deck` array with cards that have unique face and suit combinations. Both `Face` and `Suit` are public static enum types of class `Card`. To use these enum types outside of class `Card`, you must qualify each enum's type name with the name of the class in which it resides (i.e., `Card` and a dot (.) separator. Hence, lines 55 and 57 use `Card.Suit` and `Card.Face` to declare the
control variables of the for statements. Recall that method values of an enum type returns an array that contains all the constants of the enum type. Lines 5562 use enhanced for statements to construct 52 new Cards.

The shuffling occurs in line 65, which calls static method shuffle of class Collections to shuffle the elements of the array. Method shuffle requires a List argument, so we must obtain a List view of the array before we can shuffle it. Line 64 invokes static method asList of class Arrays to get a List view of the deck array.

Method printCards (lines 6975) displays the deck of cards in two columns. In each iteration of the loop, lines 7374 output a card left justified in a 20-character field followed by either a newline or an empty string based on the number of cards output so far. If the number of cards is even, a newline is output; otherwise, a tab is output.

19.6.3. Algorithms reverse, fill, copy, max and min

Class Collections provides algorithms for reversing, filling and copying Lists. Algorithm reverse reverses the order of the elements in a List, and algorithm fill overwrites elements in a List with a specified value. The fill operation is useful for reinitializing a List. Algorithm copy takes two arguments a destination List and a source List. Each source List element is copied to the destination List. The destination List must be at least as long as the source List; otherwise, an IndexOutOfBoundsException occurs. If the destination List is longer, the elements not overwritten are unchanged.

Each of the algorithms we have seen so far operates on Lists. Algorithms min and max each operate on any Collection. Algorithm min returns the smallest element in a Collection, and algorithm max returns the largest element in a Collection. Both of these algorithms can be called with a Comparator object as a second argument to perform custom comparisons of objects, such as the TimeComparator in Fig. 19.11. Figure 19.13 demonstrates the use of algorithms reverse, fill, copy, min and max. Note that the generic type List is declared to store Characters.

Figure 19.13. Collections methods reverse, fill, copy, max
// Fig. 19.13: Algorithms1.java
// Using algorithms reverse, fill, copy, min and max.
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.Collections;

public class Algorithms1 {
    private Character[] letters = { 'P', 'C', 'M' }
    private Character[] lettersCopy;
    private List<Character> list;
    private List<Character> copyList;

    // create a List and manipulate it with methods from Collections
    public Algorithms1() {
        list = Arrays.asList( letters ); // get List
        lettersCopy = new Character[3];
        copyList = Arrays.asList( lettersCopy ); // list view of lettersCopy

        System.out.println( "Initial list: " );
        output( list );

        Collections.reverse( list ); // reverse order
        System.out.println( "\nAfter calling reverse: " );
        output( list );

        Collections.copy( copyList, list ); // copy List
        System.out.println( "\nAfter copying: " );
        output( copyList );

        Collections.fill( list, 'R' ); // fill list with Rs
        System.out.println( "\nAfter calling fill: " );
        output( list );
    } // end Algorithms1 constructor

    // output List information
    private void output( List<Character> listRef ) {
        System.out.print( "The list is: " );
        for ( Character element : listRef )
            System.out.printf( "%s ", element );
        System.out.printf( "\nMax: %s", Collections.max( listRef ) );
        System.out.printf( " Min: %s\n", Collections.min( listRef ) );
    } // end method output

    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        new Algorithms1();
    } // end main
} // end class Algorithms1
Line 24 calls Collections method reverse to reverse the order of list. Method reverse takes one List argument. In this case, list is a List view of array letters. Array letters now has its elements in reverse order. Line 28 copies the elements of list into copyList, using Collections method copy. Changes to copyList do not change letters, because copyList is a separate List that is not a List view for letters. Method copy requires two List arguments. Line 32 calls Collections method fill to place the string "R" in each element of list. Because list is a List view of letters, this operation changes each element in letters to "R". Method fill requires a List for the first argument and an Object for the second argument. Lines 4546 call Collections methods max and min to find the largest and the smallest element of the collection, respectively. Recall that a List is a Collection, so lines 4546 can pass a List to methods max and min.

19.6.4. Algorithm binarySearch
In Section 16.2.2, we studied the high-speed binary-search algorithm. This algorithm is built into the Java collections framework as a static method of class Collections. The binarySearch algorithm locates an object in a List (i.e., a LinkedList, a Vector or an ArrayList). If the object is found, its index is returned. If the object is not found, binarySearch returns a negative value. Algorithm binarySearch determines this negative value by first calculating the insertion point and making its sign negative. Then, binarySearch subtracts 1 from the insertion point to obtain the return value, which guarantees that method binarySearch returns positive numbers (>=0) if and only if the object is found. If multiple elements in the list match the search key, there is no guarantee which one will be located first. Figure 19.14 uses the binarySearch algorithm to search for a series of strings in an ArrayList.

**Figure 19.14.** Collections method binarySearch.

(This item is displayed on pages 932 - 933 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 19.14: BinarySearchTest.java
2 // Using algorithm binarySearch.
3 import java.util.List;
4 import java.util.Arrays;
5 import java.util.Collections;
6 import java.util.ArrayList;
7
8 public class BinarySearchTest
9 {
10    private static final String colors[] = { "red", "white",
11       "blue", "black", "yellow", "purple", "tan", "pink" };
12    private List<String> list; // ArrayList reference
13
14    // create, sort and output list
15    public BinarySearchTest()
16    {
17        list = new ArrayList<String>( Arrays.asList( colors ) );
18        Collections.sort( list ); // sort the ArrayList
19        System.out.printf( "Sorted ArrayList: %s\n", list );
20    } // end BinarySearchTest constructor
21
22    // search list for various values
23    private void search()
24    {
25        printSearchResults( colors[3] ); // first item
26        printSearchResults( colors[0] ); // middle item
27        printSearchResults( colors[7] ); // last item
28        printSearchResults( "aqua" ); // below lowest
29        printSearchResults( "gray" ); // does not exist
30        printSearchResults( "teal" ); // does not exist
31    } // end method search
32
33    // perform searches and display search result
34    private void printSearchResults( String key )
```
Recall that both `List` and `ArrayList` are generic types (lines 12 and 17). `Collections` method `binarySearch` expects the list's elements to be sorted in ascending order, so line 18 in the constructor sorts the list with `Collections.sort`. If the list's elements are not sorted, the result is undefined. Line 19 outputs the sorted list. Method `search` (lines 2331) is called from `main` to
perform the searches. Each search calls method printSearchResults (lines 3445) to perform the search and output the results. Line 39 calls Collections method binarySearch to search list for the specified key. Method binarySearch takes a List as the first argument and an Object as the second argument. Lines 4144 output the results of the search. An overloaded version of binarySearch takes a Comparator object as its third argument, which specifies how binarySearch should compare elements.

19.6.5. Algorithms **addAll, frequency** and **disjoint**

Among others, J2SE 5.0 includes three new algorithms in class Collections, namely **addAll**, **frequency** and **disjoint**. Algorithm **addAll** takes two arguments a Collection into which to insert the new element(s) and an array that provides elements to be inserted. Algorithm **frequency** takes two arguments a Collection to be searched and an Object to be searched for in the collection. Method **frequency** returns the number of times that the second argument appears in the collection. Algorithm **disjoint** takes two Collections and returns true if they have no elements in common. Figure 19.15 demonstrates the use of algorithms **addAll**, **frequency** and **disjoint**.

**Figure 19.15.** Collections method **addAll, frequency** and **disjoint**.

(This item is displayed on pages 934 - 935 in the print version)
Before addAll, vector contains:  
black red green  

After addAll, vector contains:  
black red green red white yellow blue  

Frequency of red in vector: 2  
list and vector have elements in common
Line 19 initializes `list` with elements in array `colors`, and lines 20-22 add Strings "black", "red" and "green" to `vector`. Line 31 invokes method `addAll` to add elements in array `colors` to `vector`. Line 40 gets the frequency of String "red" in Collection `vector` using method `frequency`. Note that lines 41-42 use the new `printf` method to print the frequency. Line 45 invokes method `disjoint` to test whether Collections `list` and `vector` have elements in common.
19.7. **Stack Class of Package java.util**

In Chapter 17, Data Structures, we learned how to build fundamental data structures, including linked lists, stacks, queues and trees. In a world of software reuse, rather than building data structures as we need them, we can often take advantage of existing data structures. In this section, we investigate class **Stack** in the Java utilities package (**java.util**).

Section 19.5.3 discussed class **Vector**, which implements a dynamically resizable array. Class **Stack** extends class **Vector** to implement a stack data structure. Autoboxing occurs when you add a primitive type to a **Stack**, because class **Stack** stores only references to objects. Figure 19.16 demonstrates several **Stack** methods. For the details of class **Stack**, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/Stack.html.

**Figure 19.16. Stack class of package java.util.**

(This item is displayed on pages 936 - 937 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 19.16: StackTest.java
2 // Program to test java.util.Stack.
3 import java.util.Stack;
4 import java.util.EmptyStackException;
5
6 public class StackTest
7 {
8    public StackTest()
9    {
10       Stack< Number > stack = new Stack< Number >();
11
12        // create numbers to store in the stack
13        Long longNumber = 12L;
14        Integer intNumber = 34567;
15        Float floatNumber = 1.0F;
16        Double doubleNumber = 1234.5678;
17
18        // use push method
19        stack.push( longNumber ); // push a long
20        printStack( stack );
21        stack.push( intNumber ); // push an int
22        printStack( stack );
23        stack.push( floatNumber ); // push a float
24        printStack( stack );
25        stack.push( doubleNumber ); // push a double
26        printStack( stack );
27
28        // remove items from stack
```

[Page 935 (continued)]
try
{
    Number removedObject = null;
    // pop elements from stack
    while (true)
    {
        removedObject = stack.pop(); // use pop method
        System.out.printf("%s popped\n", removedObject);
        printStack(stack);
    } // end while
} // end try
catch (EmptyStackException emptyStackException)
{
    emptyStackException.printStackTrace();
} // end catch
} // end StackTest constructor

private void printStack(Stack<Number> stack)
{
    if (stack.isEmpty())
        System.out.print("stack is empty\n\n");
    else // stack is not empty
    {
        System.out.print("stack contains: ");
        // iterate through the elements
        for (Number number : stack)
            System.out.printf("%s ", number);
        System.out.print("(top) \n\n");
    } // end else
} // end method printStack

public static void main(String args[])
{
    new StackTest();
} // end main
} // end class StackTest

stack contains: 12 (top)
stack contains: 12 34567 (top)
stack contains: 12 34567 1.0 (top)
stack contains: 12 34567 1.0 1234.5678 (top)
1234.5678 popped
stack contains: 12 34567 1.0 (top)
1.0 popped
stack contains: 12 34567 (top)
34567 popped
Line 10 of the constructor creates an empty Stack of type Number. Class Number (in package java.lang) is the superclass of most wrapper classes (e.g., Integer, Double) for the primitive types. By creating a Stack of Number, objects of any class that extends the Number class can be pushed onto the stack. Lines 19, 21, 23 and 25 each call Stack method push to add objects to the top of the stack. Note the literals 12L (line 13) and 1.0F (line 15). Any integer literal that has the suffix L is a long value. An integer literal without a suffix is an int value. Similarly, any floating-point literal that has the suffix F is a float value. A floating-point literal without a suffix is a double value. You can learn more about numeric literals in the Java Language Specification at java.sun.com/docs/books/jls/second_edition/html/expressions.doc.html#22412

An infinite loop (lines 3439) calls Stack method pop to remove the top element of the stack. The method returns a Number reference to the removed element. If there are no elements in the Stack, method pop throws an EmptyStackException, which terminates the loop. Class Stack also declares method peek. This method returns the top element of the stack without popping the element off the stack.

Line 49 calls Stack method isEmpty (inherited by Stack from class Vector) to determine whether the stack is empty. If it is empty, the method returns true; otherwise, the method returns false.
Method `printStack` (lines 4761) uses the enhanced `for` statement to iterate through the elements in the stack. The current top of the stack (the last value pushed onto the stack) is the first value printed. Because class `Stack` extends class `Vector`, the entire `public` interface of class `Vector` is available to clients of class `Stack`.

**Error-Prevention Tip 19.1**

*Because `Stack` extends `Vector`, all `public Vector` methods can be called on `Stack` objects, even if the methods do not represent conventional stack operations. For example, `Vector` method `add` can be used to insert an element anywhere in a stack an operation that could "corrupt" the stack. When manipulating a `Stack`, only methods `push` and `pop` should be used to add elements to and remove elements from the `Stack`, respectively.*
19.8. Class **PriorityQueue** and Interface **Queue**

In [Section 17.8](#), we introduced the queue data structure and created our own implementation of it. In this section we investigate interface **Queue** and class **PriorityQueue** in the Java utilities package (java.util). Queue, a new collection interface introduced in J2SE 5.0, extends interface Collection and provides additional operations for inserting, removing and inspecting elements in a queue. PriorityQueue, one of the classes that implements the Queue interface, orders elements by their natural ordering as specified by Comparable elements' compareTo method or by a Comparator object that is supplied through the constructor.

Class PriorityQueue provides functionality that enables insertions in sorted order into the underlying data structure and deletions from the front of the underlying data structure. When adding elements to a PriorityQueue, the elements are inserted in priority order such that the highest-priority element (i.e., the largest value) will be the first element removed from the PriorityQueue.

The common PriorityQueue operations are offer to insert an element at the appropriate location based on priority order, poll to remove the highest-priority element of the priority queue (i.e., the head of the queue), peek to get a reference to the highest-priority element of the priority queue (without removing that element), clear to remove all elements in the priority queue and size to get the number of elements in the priority queue. [Figure 19.17](#) demonstrates the PriorityQueue class.

**Figure 19.17. PriorityQueue test program.**

(This item is displayed on page 939 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 19.17: PriorityQueueTest.java
2 // Standard library class PriorityQueue test program.
3 import java.util.PriorityQueue;
4
5 public class PriorityQueueTest {
6    public static void main( String args[] )
7    {
8        // queue of capacity 11
9        PriorityQueue< Double > queue = new PriorityQueue< Double >();
10    }
11```

[Page 938 (continued)]: #
Polling from queue: 3.2 5.4 9.8

Line 10 creates a `PriorityQueue` that stores `Doubles` with an initial capacity of 11 elements and orders the elements according to the object's natural ordering (the defaults for a `PriorityQueue`). Note that `PriorityQueue` is a generic class and that line 10 instantiates a `PriorityQueue` with a type argument `Double`. Class `PriorityQueue` provides five additional constructors. One of these takes an `int` and a `Comparator` object to create a `PriorityQueue` with the initial capacity specified by the `int` and the ordering by the `Comparator`. Lines 13-15 use method `offer` to add elements to the priority queue. Method `offer` throws a `NullPointerException` if the program attempts to add a `null` object to the queue. The loop in lines 20-24 use method `size` to determine whether the priority queue is empty (line 20). While there are more elements, line 22 uses `PriorityQueue` method `peek` to retrieve the highest-priority element in the queue for output (without actually removing the element from the queue). Line 23 removes the highest-priority element in the queue with method `poll`.
19.9. **Sets**

A **Set** is a **Collection** that contains unique elements (i.e., no duplicate elements). The collections framework contains several **Set** implementations, including **HashSet** and **TreeSet**. **HashSet** stores its elements in a hash table, and **TreeSet** stores its elements in a tree. The concept of hash tables is presented in **Section 19.10**. **Figure 19.18** uses a **HashSet** to remove duplicate strings from a **List**. Recall that both **List** and **Collection** are generic types, so line 18 creates a **List** that contains **String** objects, and line 24 passes a **Collection** of **Strings** to method **printNonDuplicates**.

**Figure 19.18. HashSet used to remove duplicate values from array of strings.**

(This item is displayed on page 940 in the print version)

```java
1  // Fig. 19.18: SetTest.java
2  // Using a HashSet to remove duplicates.
3  import java.util.List;
4  import java.util.Arrays;
5  import java.util.HashSet;
6  import java.util.Set;
7  import java.util.Collection;
8
9  public class SetTest
10  {
11    private static final String colors[] = { "red", "white", "blue",
12                                            "green", "gray", "orange", "tan", "white", "cyan",
13                                            "peach", "gray", "orange" };
14
15    // create and output ArrayList
16    public SetTest()
17    {
18      List< String > list = Arrays.asList( colors );
19      System.out.printf( "ArrayList: %s\n", list );
20      printNonDuplicates( list );
21    } // end SetTest constructor
22
23    // create set from array to eliminate duplicates
24    private void printNonDuplicates( Collection< String > collection )
25    {
26      // create a HashSet
27      Set< String > set = new HashSet< String >( collection );
28      System.out.println( "\nNonduplicates are: " );
29      for ( String s : set )
30        System.out.printf( "%s\n", s );
31    }
```

System.out.printf("%s ", s);

System.out.println();

} // end method printNonDuplicates

public static void main( String args[] )
{
    new SetTest();
} // end main

} // end class SetTest

ArrayList: [red, white, blue, green, gray, orange, tan, white, cyan, peach, gray, orange]

Nonduplicates are:
red cyan white tan gray green orange blue peach

Method printNonDuplicates (lines 2435), which is called from the constructor, takes a Collection argument. Line 27 constructs a HashSet from the Collection argument. Note that both Set and HashSet are generic types. By definition, Sets do not contain any duplicates, so when the HashSet is constructed, it removes any duplicates in the Collection. Lines 3132 output elements in the Set.

Sorted Sets

The collections framework also includes interface SortedSet (which extends Set) for sets that maintain their elements in sorted order (e.g., numbers are in ascending order) or an order specified by a Comparator. Class TreeSet implements SortedSet. The program in Fig. 19.19 places strings into a TreeSet. The strings are sorted as they are added to the TreeSet. This example also demonstrates range-view methods, which enable a program to view a portion of a collection.
// Fig. 19.19: SortedSetTest.java
// Using TreeSet and SortedSet.
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.SortedSet;
import java.util.TreeSet;

public class SortedSetTest {
    private static final String names[] = {"yellow", "green",
        "black", "tan", "grey", "white", "orange", "red", "green"};

    // create a sorted set with TreeSet, then manipulate it
    public SortedSetTest() {
        // create TreeSet
        SortedSet<String> tree =
            new TreeSet<String>(Arrays.asList(names));

        System.out.println("
            sorted set: ");
        printSet(tree); // output contents of tree

        // get headSet based on "orange"
        System.out.print("headSet ("orange"): ");
        printSet(tree.headSet("orange"));

        // get tailSet based upon "orange"
        System.out.print("tailSet ("orange"): ");
        printSet(tree.tailSet("orange"));

        // get first and last elements
        System.out.printf("first: %s\n", tree.first());
        System.out.printf("last : %s\n", tree.last());
    }

    // output set
    private void printSet(SortedSet<String> set) {
        for (String s : set)
            System.out.printf("%s ", s);
        System.out.println();
    }

    public static void main(String args[]) {
        new SortedSetTest();
    }
}

sorted set:
Lines 1617 of the constructor create a `TreeSet` of `String` that contains the elements of array `names` and assigns the `SortedSet` to the reference `tree`. Both `SortedSet` and `TreeSet` are generic types. Line 20 outputs the initial set of strings using method `printSet` (lines 3642), which we discuss momentarily. Line 24 calls `treeSet` method `headSet` to get a subset of the `TreeSet` in which every element is less than "orange". The view returned from `headSet` is then output with `printSet`. If any changes are made to the subset, they will also be made to the original `treeSet` because the subset returned by `headSet` is a view of the `TreeSet`.

Line 28 calls `treeSet` method `tailSet` to get a subset in which each element is greater than or equal to "orange". The view returned by `tailSet` is then output. Any changes made through the `tailSet` view are made to the original `treeSet`. Lines 3132 call `SortedSet` methods `first` and `last` to get the smallest and largest elements of the set, respectively.

Method `printSet` (lines 3642) accepts a `SortedSet` as an argument and prints it. Lines 3839 print each element of the `SortedSet` using the enhanced `for` statement.
19.10. Maps

Maps associate keys to values and cannot contain duplicate keys (i.e., each key can map to only one value; this is called one-to-one mapping). Maps differ from Sets in that Maps contain keys and values, whereas Sets contain only values. Three of the several classes that implement interface Map are Hashtable, HashMap and TreeMap. Hashtables and HashMaps store elements in hash tables, and TreeMap's store elements in trees. This section discusses hash tables and provides an example that uses a HashMap to store key/value pairs. Interface SortedMap extends Map and maintains its keys in sorted order either the elements' natural order or an order specified by a Comparator. Class TreeMap implements SortedMap.

Map Implementation with Hash Tables

Object-oriented programming languages facilitate creating new types. When a program creates objects of new or existing types, it may need to store and retrieve them efficiently. Storing and retrieving information with arrays is efficient if some aspect of your data directly matches a numerical key value and if the keys are unique and tightly packed. If you have 100 employees with nine-digit Social Security numbers and you want to store and retrieve employee data by using the Social Security number as a key, the task would require an array with one billion elements, because there are one billion unique nine-digit numbers (000,000,000999,999,999). This is impractical for virtually all applications that use Social Security numbers as keys. A program that had an array that large could achieve high performance for both storing and retrieving employee records by simply using the Social Security number as the array index.

There are numerous applications that have this problem, namely, that either the keys are of the wrong type (e.g., not positive integers that correspond to array subscripts) or they are of the right type, but sparsely spread over a huge range. What is needed is a high-speed scheme for converting keys such as Social Security numbers, inventory part numbers and the like into unique array indices. Then, when an application needs to store something, the scheme
could convert the application's key rapidly into an index, and the record of information could be stored at that slot in the array. Retrieval is accomplished the same way: Once the application has a key for which it wants to retrieve a data record, the application simply applies the conversion to the key this produces the array index where the data is stored and retrieved.

The scheme we describe here is the basis of a technique called hashing. Why the name? When we convert a key into an array index, we literally scramble the bits, forming a kind of "mishmashed," or hashed, number. The number actually has no real significance beyond its usefulness in storing and retrieving a particular data record.

A glitch in the scheme is called a collision this occurs when two different keys "hash into" the same cell (or element) in the array. We cannot store two values in the same space, so we need to find an alternative home for all values beyond the first that hash to a particular array index. There are many schemes for doing this. One is to "hash again" (i.e., to apply another hashing transformation to the key to provide a next candidate cell in the array). The hashing process is designed to distribute the values throughout the table, so the assumption is that an available cell will be found with just a few hashes.

Another scheme uses one hash to locate the first candidate cell. If that cell is occupied, successive cells are searched in order until an available cell is found. Retrieval works the same way: The key is hashed once to determine the initial location and check whether it contains the desired data. If it does, the search is finished. If it does not, successive cells are searched linearly until the desired data is found.

The most popular solution to hash-table collisions is to have each cell of the table be a hash "bucket," typically a linked list of all the key-value pairs that hash to that cell. This is the solution that Java's Hashtable and HashMap classes (from package java.util) implement. Both Hashtable and HashMap implement the Map interface. The primary differences between them are that HashMap is unsynchronized (multiple threads can modify a HashMap concurrently), and allows null keys and null values.

A hash table's load factor affects the performance of hashing schemes. The load factor is the ratio of the number of occupied cells in the hash table to the total number of cells in the hash table. The closer this ratio gets to 1.0, the greater the chance of collisions.

Performance Tip 19.7
The load factor in a hash table is a classic example of a memory-space/execution-time trade-off: By increasing the load factor, we get better memory utilization, but the program runs slower, due to increased hashing collisions. By decreasing the load factor, we get better program speed, because of reduced hashing collisions, but we get poorer memory utilization, because a larger portion of the hash table remains empty.

Hash tables are complex to program. Computer science students study hashing schemes in courses called "Data Structures" and "Algorithms." Java provides classes `Hashtable` and `HashMap` to enable programmers to use hashing without having to implement hash table mechanisms. This concept is profoundly important in our study of object-oriented programming. As discussed in earlier chapters, classes encapsulate and hide complexity (i.e., implementation details) and offer user-friendly interfaces. Properly crafting classes to exhibit such behavior is one of the most valued skills in the field of object-oriented programming. **Figure 19.20** uses a `HashMap` to count the number of occurrences of each word in a string.

**Figure 19.20. HashMaps and Maps.**

(This item is displayed on pages 944 - 945 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 19.20: WordTypeCount.java
2 // Program counts the number of occurrences of each word in a string
3 import java.util.StringTokenizer;
4 import java.util.Map;
5 import java.util.HashMap;
6 import java.util.Set;
7 import java.util.TreeSet;
8 import java.util.Scanner;
9
10 public class WordTypeCount
11 {
12     private Map< String, Integer > map;
13     private Scanner scanner;
14
15     public WordTypeCount()
16     {
17         map = new HashMap< String, Integer >(); // create HashMap
18         scanner = new Scanner( System.in ); // create scanner
19         createMap(); // create map based on user input
20         displayMap(); // display map content
21     } // end WordTypeCount constructor
```
public class WordTypeCount {

    // create map from user input
    private void createMap()
    {
        System.out.println( "Enter a string:" ); // prompt for user input
        String input = scanner.nextLine();

        // create Stringtokenizer for input
        Stringtokenizer tokenizer = new Stringtokenizer( input );

        // processing input text
        while ( tokenizer.hasMoreTokens() ) // while more input
        {
            String word = tokenizer.nextToken().toLowerCase(); // get word

            // if the map contains the word
            if ( map.containsKey( word ) ) // is word in map
            {
                int count = map.get( word ); // get current count
                map.put( word, count + 1 ); // increment count
            } // end if
            else
                map.put( word, 1 ); // add new word with a count of 1 to map
        } // end while
    } // end method createMap

    // display map content
    private void displayMap()
    {
        Set< String > keys = map.keySet(); // get keys

        // sort keys
        TreeSet< String > sortedKeys = new TreeSet< String >( keys );

        System.out.println( "Map contains:
Key		Value" );

        // generate output for each key in map
        for ( String key : sortedKeys )
            System.out.println( "%-10s%10s", key, map.get( key ) );

        System.out.println( "\nsize:%d\nisEmpty:%b\n", map.size(), map.isEmpty() );
    } // end method displayMap

    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        new WordTypeCount();
    } // end main
} // end class WordTypeCount

Enter a string:
To be or not to be: that is the question
Whether 'tis nobler to suffer
Map contains:
Key                 Value
'tis                  1
be                    1
Line 17 creates an empty `HashMap` with a default initial capacity (16 elements) and a default load factor (0.75); these defaults are built into the implementation of `HashMap`. When the number of occupied slots in the `HashMap` becomes greater than the capacity times the load factor, the capacity is doubled automatically. Note that `HashMap` is a generic class that takes two type arguments. The first type argument specifies the type of key (i.e., `String`), and the second type argument specifies the type of value (i.e., `Integer`). Recall that the type arguments passed to a generic class must be reference types, hence the second type argument is `Integer`, not `int`. Line 18 creates a `Scanner` that reads user input from the standard input stream. Line 19 calls method `createMap` (lines 2446), which uses a `map` to store the number of occurrences of each word in the sentence. Line 27 invokes method `nextLine` of `scanner` to obtain the user input, and line 30 creates a `StringTokenizer` to break the input string into its component individual words. This `StringTokenizer` constructor takes a string argument and creates a `StringTokenizer` for that string and will use the whitespace to separate the string. The condition in the `while` statement in lines 3345 uses `StringTokenizer` method `hasMoreTokens` to determine whether there are more tokens in the string being tokenized. If so, line 35 converts the next token to lowercase letters. The next token is obtained with a call to `StringTokenizer` method `nextToken` that returns a `String`. [Note: Section 29.6 discusses class `StringTokenizer` in detail.] Then line 38 calls `Map` method `containsKey` to determine whether the word is in the map (and thus has
Method `displayMap` (lines 4964) displays all the entries in the map. It uses `HashMap` method `keySet` (line 51) to get a set of the keys. The keys have type `String` in the `map`, so method `keySet` returns a generic type `Set` with type parameter specified to be `String`. Line 54 creates a `treeSet` of the keys, in which the keys are sorted. The loop in lines 59-60 accesses each key and its value in the map. Line 60 displays each key and its value using format specifier `%s` to left justify each key and format specifier `%10s` to right justify each value. Note that the keys are displayed in ascending order. Line 63 calls `Map` method `size` to get the number of key-value pairs in the `Map`. Line 64 calls `isEmpty`, which returns a `boolean` indicating whether the `Map` is empty.
19.11. **Properties Class**

A **Properties** object is a persistent **Hashtable** that normally stores key-value pairs of strings assuming that you use methods **setProperty** and **getProperty** to manipulate the table rather than inherited **Hashtable** methods **put** and **get**. By "persistent," we mean that the **Properties** object can be written to an output stream (possibly a file) and read back in through an input stream. In fact, most objects in Java can be output and input with Java's object serialization, presented in **Chapter 14**. A common use of **Properties** objects in prior versions of Java was to maintain application-configuration data or user preferences for applications. [*Note: The Preferences API (package java.util.prefs), introduced in Java 1.4, is meant to replace the use of class Properties, but is beyond the scope of this book. To learn more, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/lang/preferences.html.*]

Class **Properties** extends class **Hashtable**. **Figure 19.21** demonstrates several methods of class **Properties**.

**Figure 19.21. Properties class of package java.util.**

(This item is displayed on pages 947 - 949 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 19.21: PropertiesTest.java
// Demonstrates class Properties of the java.util package.
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.Properties;
import java.util.Set;

public class PropertiesTest {
    private Properties table;

    // set up GUI to test Properties table
    public PropertiesTest() {
        table = new Properties(); // create Properties table
        // set properties
        table.setProperty( "color", "blue" );
        table.setProperty( "width", "200" );
        System.out.println( "After setting properties" );
        listProperties(); // display property values
    }
}
```
table.setProperty("color", "red");

System.out.println("After replacing properties");
listProperties(); // display property values

saveProperties(); // save properties

System.out.println("After clearing properties");
listProperties(); // display property values

loadProperties(); // load properties

// get value of property color
Object value = table.getProperty("color");

// check if value is in table
if (value != null)
    System.out.printf("Property color's value is %s\n", value);
else
    System.out.println("Property color is not in table");
}
// end PropertiesTest constructor

// save properties to a file
public void saveProperties()
{
    // save contents of table
    try
    {
        FileOutputStream output = new FileOutputStream("props.dat");
        table.store(output, "Sample Properties"); // save properties
        output.close();
        System.out.println("After saving properties");
        listProperties();
    } // end try
    catch (IOException ioException)
    {
        ioException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
// end method saveProperties

// load properties from a file
public void loadProperties()
{
    // load contents of table
    try
    {
        FileInputStream input = new FileInputStream("props.dat");
        table.load(input); // load properties
        input.close();
        System.out.println("After loading properties");
        listProperties(); // display property values
    } // end try
    catch (IOException ioException)
    {
        ioException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
// end method loadProperties
public void listProperties()
{
    Set<Object> keys = table.keySet(); // get property names

    // output name/value pairs
    for (Object key : keys)
    {
        System.out.printf("%s	%s
", key, table.getProperty((String) key));
    } // end for

    System.out.println();
} // end method listProperties

public static void main(String args[])
{
    new PropertiesTest();
} // end main

} // end class PropertiesTest

After setting properties
color   blue
width   200

After replacing properties
color   red
width   200

After saving properties
color   red
width   200

After clearing properties

After loading properties
color   red
width   200

Property color's value is red

Line 16 uses the no-argument constructor to create an empty Properties table.
with no default properties. Class `Properties` also provides an overloaded constructor that receives a reference to a `Properties` object containing default property values. Lines 19 and 20 each call `Properties` method `setProperty` to store a value for the specified key. If the key does not exist in the `table`, `setProperty` returns `null`; otherwise, it returns the previous value for that key.

Line 41 calls `Properties` method `getProperty` to locate the value associated with the specified key. If the key is not found in this `Properties` object, `getProperty` returns `null`. An overloaded version of this method receives a second argument that specifies the default value to return if `getProperty` cannot locate the key.

Line 57 calls `Properties` method `store` to save the contents of the `Properties` object to the `OutputStream` object specified as the first argument (in this case, `FileOutputStream output`). The second argument, a `String`, is a description of the object. Class `Properties` also provides method `list`, which takes a `PrintStream` argument. This method is useful for displaying the list of properties.

[Page 949]

Line 75 calls `Properties` method `load` to restore the contents of the `Properties` object from the `InputStream` specified as the first argument (in this case, a `FileInputStream`). Line 89 calls `Properties` method `keySet` to obtain a `Set` of the property names. Line 94 obtains the value of a property by passing a key to method `getProperty`. 
19.12. Synchronized Collections

In **Chapter 23**, we discuss multithreading. The collections in the collections framework are unsynchronized by default, so they can operate efficiently when multithreading is not required. Because they are unsynchronized, however, concurrent access to a `Collection` by multiple threads could cause indeterminate results or fatal errors. To prevent potential threading problems, synchronization wrappers are used for collections that might be accessed by multiple threads. A **wrapper** object receives method calls, adds thread synchronization (to prevent concurrent access to the collection) and delegates the calls to the wrapped collection object. The Collections API provides a set of static methods for wrapping collections as synchronized versions. Method headers for the synchronization wrappers are listed in **Fig. 19.22**. Details about these methods are available at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/Collections.html. All these methods take a generic type and return a synchronized view of the generic type. For example, the following code creates a synchronized `List` (`list2`) that stores `String` objects:

```java
List< String > list1 = new ArrayList< String >();
List< String > list2 = Collections.synchronizedList( list1 );
```

**Figure 19.22. Synchronization wrapper methods.**

```markdown
**public static method headers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Return Type</th>
<th>Method Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt; T &gt; Collection&lt; T &gt;</code></td>
<td><code>synchronizedCollection( Collection&lt; T &gt; c )</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt; T &gt; List&lt; T &gt;</code></td>
<td><code>synchronizedList( List&lt; T &gt; aList )</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt; T &gt; Set&lt; T &gt;</code></td>
<td><code>synchronizedSet( Set&lt; T &gt; s )</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt; T &gt; SortedSet&lt; T &gt;</code></td>
<td><code>synchronizedSortedSet( SortedSet&lt; T &gt; s )</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt; K, V &gt; Map&lt; K, V &gt;</code></td>
<td><code>synchronizedMap( Map&lt; K, V &gt; m )</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt; K, V &gt; SortedMap&lt; K, V &gt;</code></td>
<td><code>synchronizedSortedMap( SortedMap&lt; K, V &gt; m )</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
19.13. Unmodifiable Collections

The Collections API provides a set of static methods that create unmodifiable wrappers for collections. Unmodifiable wrappers throw UnsupportedOperationException if attempts are made to modify the collection. Headers for these methods are listed in Fig. 19.23. Details about these methods are available at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/Collections.html. All these methods take a generic type and return an unmodifiable view of the generic type. For example, the following code creates an unmodifiable List (list2) that stores String objects:

```java
List< String > list1 = new ArrayList< String >();
List< String > list2 = Collections.unmodifiableList( list1 );
```

**Figure 19.23. Unmodifiable wrapper methods.**
(This item is displayed on page 951 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>public static method headers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt; T &gt; Collection&lt; T &gt; unmodifiableCollection( Collection&lt; T &gt; c )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; T &gt; List&lt; T &gt; unmodifiableList( List&lt; T &gt; aList )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; T &gt; Set&lt; T &gt; unmodifiableSet( Set&lt; T &gt; s )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; T &gt; SortedSet&lt; T &gt; unmodifiableSortedSet( SortedSet&lt; T &gt; s )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; K, V &gt; Map&lt; K, V &gt; unmodifiableMap( Map&lt; K, V &gt; m )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; K, V &gt; SortedMap&lt; K, V &gt; unmodifiableSortedMap( SortedMap&lt; K, V &gt; m )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Software Engineering Observation 19.5

You can use an unmodifiable wrapper to create a collection that offers read-only access to others, while allowing readwrite access to yourself. You do this simply by giving others a reference to the unmodifiable wrapper while
retaining for yourself a reference to the original collection.

The collections framework provides various abstract implementations of Collection interfaces from which the programmer can quickly "flesh out" complete customized implementations. These abstract implementations include a thin Collection implementation called an AbstractCollection, a thin List implementation that allows random access to its elements called an AbstractList, a thin Map implementation called an AbstractMap, a thin List implementation that allows sequential access to its elements called an AbstractSequentialList, a thin Set implementation called an AbstractSet and a thin Queue implementation called AbstractQueue. You can learn more about these classes at java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/package-summary.html.

To write a custom implementation, you can extend the abstract implementation class that best meets your needs, and implement each of the class's abstract methods. Then, if your collection is to be modifiable, override any concrete methods that prevent modification.
19.15. Wrap-Up

This chapter introduced the Java collections framework. You learned how to use class `Arrays` to perform array manipulations. You learned the collection hierarchy and how to use the collections framework interfaces to program with collections polymorphically. You also learned several predefined algorithms for manipulating collections. In the next chapter, we introduce Java applets, which are Java programs that typically execute in a Web browser. We start with sample applets that come with the JDK, then show you how to write and execute your own applets.
Summary

- The Java collections framework gives the programmer access to prepackaged data structures as well as to algorithms for manipulating them.

- A collection is an object that can hold references to other objects. The collection interfaces declare the operations that can be performed on each type of collection.

- The classes and interfaces of the collections framework are in package java.util.

- Class Arrays provides static methods for manipulating arrays, including sort for sorting an array, binarySearch for searching a sorted array, equals for comparing arrays and fill for placing items in an array.

- Arrays method asList returns a List view of an array, which enables a program to manipulate the array as if it were a List. Any modifications made through the List view change the array, and any modifications to the array change the List view.

- Method size gets the number of items in a List, and method get returns a List element.

- Interface Collection is the root interface in the collection hierarchy from which interfaces Set and List are derived. Interface Collection contains bulk operations for adding, clearing, comparing and retaining objects in a collection. Interface Collection provides a method iterator for getting an Iterator.

- Class Collections provides static methods for manipulating collections. Many of the methods are implementations of polymorphic algorithms for searching, sorting and so on.
• A List is an ordered Collection that can contain duplicate elements.

• Interface List is implemented by classes ArrayList, LinkedList and Vector. Class ArrayList is a resizable-array implementation of a List. A LinkedList is a linked-list implementation of a List.

• Iterator method hasNext determines whether a Collection contains another element. Method next returns a reference to the next object in the Collection and advances the Iterator.

• Method subList returns a view of a portion of a List. Any changes made to this view are also made to the List.

• Method clear removes elements from a List.

• Method toArray returns the contents of a collection as an array.

• Class Vector manages dynamically resizable arrays. At any time, a Vector contains a number of elements that is less than or equal to its capacity. If a Vector needs to grow, it grows by its capacity increment. If no capacity increment is specified, Java doubles the size of the Vector each time additional capacity is required. The default capacity is 10 elements.

• Vector method add adds its argument to the end of the Vector. Method insertElementAt inserts an element at the specified position. Method set sets the element at a specific position.

• Vector method remove removes the first occurrence of its argument from the Vector. Method removeAllElements removes every element from the Vector. Method removeElementAt removes the element at the specified index.

• Vector method firstElement returns a reference to the first element. Method lastElement returns a reference to the last element.

• Vector method contains determines whether the Vector contains the searchKey specified as an argument. Vector method indexOf gets the index of the first location of its argument. The method returns 1 if the argument is not found in the Vector.

• Vector method isEmpty determines whether the Vector is empty. Methods size
and capacity determine the number of elements currently in the Vector and the number of elements that can be stored in the Vector without allocating more memory, respectively.

- Algorithms sort, binarySearch, reverse, shuffle, fill and copy operate on Lists. Algorithms min and max operate on Collections. Algorithm reverse reverses the elements of a List, fill sets every List element to a specified Object, and copy copies elements from one List into another List. Algorithm sort sorts the elements of a List.

- Algorithms addAll appends all the elements in an array to a collection, frequency calculates how many elements in the collection are equal to the specified element, and disjoint determines whether two collections have elements in common.

- Algorithms min and max find the smallest and largest items in a collection.

- The Comparator interface provides a means of sorting a Collection's elements in an order other than their natural order.

- Collections method reverseOrder returns a Comparator object that can be used with sort to sort elements of a collection in reverse order.

[Page 953]

- Algorithm shuffle randomly orders the elements of a List.

- Algorithm binarySearch locates an Object in a sorted List.

- Class Stack extends Vector. Stack method push adds its argument to the top of the stack. Method pop removes the top element of the stack. Method peek returns a reference to the top element without removing it. Stack method empty determines whether the stack is empty.

- Queue, a new collection interface introduced in J2SE 5.0, extends interface Collection and provides additional operations for inserting, removing and inspecting elements in a queue.

- PriorityQueue, one of the Queue implementations, orders elements by their natural ordering (i.e., the implementation of the compareTo method) or by a
Comparator object that is supplied through the constructor.

- The common PriorityQueue operations are offer to insert an element at the appropriate location based on priority order, poll to remove the highest-priority element of the priority queue (i.e., the head of the queue), peek to get a reference to the highest-priority element of the priority queue, clear to remove all elements in the priority queue and size to get the number of elements in the priority queue.

- A Set is a Collection that contains no duplicate elements. HashSet stores its elements in a hash table. TreeSet stores its elements in a tree.

- Interface SortedSet extends Set and represents a set that maintains its elements in sorted order. Class TreeSet implements SortedSet.

- TreeSet method headSet gets a view of a TreeSet that is less than a specified element. Method tailSet gets a view that is greater than or equal to a specified element. Any changes made to the view are made to the TreeSet.

- Maps map keys to values and cannot contain duplicate keys. Maps differ from Sets in that Maps contain both keys and values, whereas Sets contain only values. HashMaps store elements in a hash table, and treeMaps store elements in a tree.

- Hashtables and HashMaps store elements in hash tables, and treeMaps store elements in trees.

- HashMap is a generic class that takes two type arguments. The first type argument specifies the type of key, and the second type argument specifies the type of value.

- HashMap method put adds a key and a value into a HashMap. Method get locates the value associated with the specified key. Method isEmpty determines whether the map is empty.

- HashMap method keySet returns a set of the keys. Map methods size and isEmpty returns the number of key-value pairs in the Map and a boolean indicating whether the Map is empty, respectively.

- Interface SortedMap extends Map and represents a map that maintains its
keys in sorted order. Class TreeMap implements SortedMap.

- A Properties object is a persistent Hashtable object. Class Properties extends Hashtable.

- The Properties no-argument constructor creates an empty Properties table with no default properties. There is also an overloaded constructor that is passed a reference to a default Properties object containing default property values.

- Properties method setProperty specifies the value associated with the key argument. Properties method getProperty locates the value of the key specified as an argument. Method store saves the contents of the Properties object to the OutputStream object specified as the first argument. Method load restores the contents of the Properties object from the InputStream object specified as the argument.

[Page 954]

- Collections from the collections framework are unsynchronized. Synchronization wrappers are provided for collections that can be accessed by multiple threads.

- The Collections API provides a set of public static methods for converting collections to unmodifiable versions. Unmodifiable wrappers throw UnsupportedOperationException if attempts are made to modify the collection.

- The collections framework provides various abstract implementations of collection interfaces from which the programmer can quickly flesh out complete customized implementations.
Terminology

AbstractCollection class

AbstractList class

AbstractMap class

AbstractQueue class

AbstractSequentialList class

AbstractSet class

add method of List

add method of Vector

addAll method of Collections

addFirst method of List

addLast method of List

algorithms in Collections

ArrayList

array

arrays as collections

asList method of Arrays

bidirectional iterator

binarySearch method of Arrays
binarySearch method of Collections

capacity increment of a Vector

capacity method of Vector

clear method of List

clear method of PriorityQueue

collection

Collection interface

Collections class

collections framework

collections placed in arrays

collision in hashing

contains method of Vector

containsKey method of HashMap

Comparable interface

Comparator interface

compareTo method of Comparable

copy method of Collections

delete an element from a collection

disjoint method of Collections

duplicate elements
fill method of Arrays

fill method of Collections

firstElement method of Vector

frequency method of Collections

get method of HashMap

getProperty method of class Properties

hashing

HashMap class

HashSet class

Hashtable class

hasMoreTokens method of StringTokenizer

hasNext method of Iterator

hasPrevious method of ListIterator

insert an element into a collection

indexOf method of Vector

isEmpty method of Map

isEmpty method of Vector

iterate through container elements

iterator

Iterator interface
key in HashMap

keySet method of HashMap

key/value pair

lastElement method of Vector

lexicographical comparison

LinkedList class

List interface

ListIterator interface

load factor in hashing

map

Map collection interface

mapping keys to values

mappings

max method of Collections

min method of Collections

modifiable collections

natural comparison method

natural ordering

next method of Iterator

nextToken method of StringTokenizer
NoSuchElementException class

offer method of PriorityQueue

one-to-one mapping

ordered collection

ordering

peek method of PriorityQueue

peek method of Stack

poll method of PriorityQueue

pop method of Stack

PriorityQueue class

Properties class

put method of HashMap

Queue interface

range-view methods

removeAllElements method of Vector

removeElement method of Vector

removeElementAt method of Vector

reverse method of Collections
reverseOrder method of Collections

sequence

Set interface

shuffle method of Collections

size method of List

size method of PriorityQueue

sort a List

sort method of Arrays

sort method of Collections

SortedMap collection interface

SortedSet collection interface

stable sort

Stack class

StringTokenizer class

synchronization wrappers

TReeMap class

treeSet class

unmodifiable collections

view

view an array as a List
wrapper class
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. A(n) __________ is used to walk through a collection and can remove elements from the collection during the iteration.

2. An element in a List can be accessed by using the element's __________.

3. Lists are sometimes called __________.

4. Java classes __________ and __________ provide the capabilities of array-like data structures that can resize themselves dynamically.

5. If you do not specify a capacity increment, the system will __________ the size of the Vector each time additional capacity is needed.

6. You can use a(n) __________ to create a collection that offers only read-only access to others while allowing readwrite access to yourself.

7. __________ can be used to create stacks, queues, trees and deques (double-ended queues).

8. Algorithm __________ of Collections determines whether two collections have elements in common.

Determine whether each statement is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. Values of primitive types may be stored directly in a Vector.

2. A Set can contain duplicate values.

3. A Map can contain duplicate keys.

4. A LinkedList can contain duplicate values.

5. Collections is an interface.

6. Iterators can remove elements.

7. With hashing, as the load factor increases, the chance of collisions decreases.

8. A PriorityQueue permits null elements.
**Answers to Self-Review Exercises**

19.1  
\begin{itemize}
\item a) Iterator. b) index. c) sequences. d) ArrayList, Vector. e) double. f) unmodifiable wrapper. g) LinkedLists. h) disjoint.
\end{itemize}

19.2  
\begin{enumerate}
\item False; a Vector stores only objects. Autoboxing occurs when adding a primitive type to the Vector, which means the primitive type is converted to its corresponding type-wraper class.
\item False. A Set cannot contain duplicate values.
\item False. A Map cannot contain duplicate keys.
\item True.
\item False. Collections is a class; Collection is an interface.
\item True.
\item False. With hashing, as the load factor increases, there are fewer available slots relative to the total number of slots, so the chance of selecting an occupied slot (a collision) with a hashing operation increases.
\item False. A NullPointerException is thrown if the program attempts to add null to a PriorityQueue.
\end{enumerate}
Exercises

Define each of the following terms:

1. Collection
2. Collections
3. Comparator
4. List
5. load factor
6. collision
7. spacetime trade-off in hashing
8. HashMap

Explain briefly the operation of each of the following methods of class Vector:

1. add
2. insertElementAt
3. set
4. remove
5. removeAllElements
6. removeElementAt
7. firstElement
8. lastElement
9. isEmpty
10. contains
11. indexOf
12. size
13. capacity

Explain why inserting additional elements into a Vector object whose current size is less than its capacity is a relatively fast operation and why inserting additional elements into a Vector object whose current size is at capacity is a relatively slow operation.

By extending class Vector, Java's designers were able to create class Stack quickly. What are the negative aspects of this use of inheritance, particularly for class Stack?
Briefly answer the following questions:

1. What is the primary difference between a Set and a Map?

19.7 2. Can a two-dimensional array be passed to Arrays method asList? If yes, how would an individual element be accessed?

3. What happens when you add a primitive type (e.g., double) value to a collection?

4. Can you print all the elements in a collection without using an Iterator? If yes, how?

[Page 957]

Explain briefly the operation of each of the following Iterator-related methods:

19.8 1. iterator

2. hasNext

3. next

Explain briefly the operation of each of the following methods of class HashMap:

19.9 1. put

2. get

3. isEmpty

4. containsKey

5. keySet

Determine whether each of the following statements is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. Elements in a Collection must be sorted in ascending order before a binarySearch may be performed.

19.10 2. Method first gets the first element in a TreeSet.

3. A List created with Arrays method asList is resizable.

4. Class Arrays provides static method sort for sorting array elements.

Explain the operation of each of the following methods of the Properties class:

19.11 1. load

2. store

3. getProperty

4. list

19.12 Rewrite lines 1726 in Fig. 19.4 to be more concise by using the asList method and the LinkedList constructor that takes a Collection argument.

19.13 Write a program that reads in a series of first names and stores them in a LinkedList. Do not store
duplicate names. Allow the user to search for a first name.

Modify the program of Fig. 19.20 to count the number of occurrences of each letter rather than of each word. For example, the string "HELLO THERE" contains two Hs, three Es, two Ls, one O, one T and one R. Display the results.

Use a HashMap to create a reusable class for choosing one of the 13 predefined colors in class Color. The names of the colors should be used as keys, and the predefined Color objects should be used as values. Place this class in a package that can be imported into any Java program. Use your new class in an application that allows the user to select a color and draw a shape in that color.

Write a program that determines and prints the number of duplicate words in a sentence. Treat uppercase and lowercase letters the same. Ignore punctuation.

Rewrite your solution to Exercise 17.8 to use a LinkedList collection.

Rewrite your solution to Exercise 17.9 to use a LinkedList collection.

Write a program that takes a whole number input from a user and determines whether it is prime. If the number is not prime, display the unique prime factors of the number. Remember that a prime number's factors are only 1 and the prime number itself. Every number that is not prime has a unique prime factorization. For example, consider the number 54. The prime factors of 54 are 2, 3, 3 and 3. When the values are multiplied together, the result is 54. For the number 54, the prime factors output should be 2 and 3. Use Sets as part of your solution.

Write a program that uses a StringTokenizer to tokenize a line of text input by the user and places each token in a TreeSet. Print the elements of the TreeSet. [Note: This should cause the elements to be printed in ascending sorted order.]

The output of Fig. 19.17 (PriorityQueueTest) shows that PriorityQueue orders Double elements in ascending order. Rewrite Fig. 19.17 so that it orders Double elements in descending order (i.e., 9.8 should be the highest-priority element rather than 3.2).
Chapter 20. Introduction to Java Applets

Observe due measure, for right timing is in all things the most important factor.

George Wilhelp Friedrich Hegel

Painting is only a bridge linking the painter's mind with that of the viewer.

Eugene Delacroix

The direction in which education starts a man will determine his future in life.

Plato

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- To differentiate between applets and applications.
- To observe some of Java's exciting capabilities through the JDK's demonstration applets.
- To write simple applets.
- To write a simple HyperText Markup Language (HTML) document to load an applet into an applet container and execute the applet.
- Five methods that are called automatically by an applet container during an applet's life cycle.

Outline

20.1 Introduction
Sample Applets Provided with the JDK

Simple Java Applet: Drawing a String

Executing an Applet in the appletviewer

Executing an Applet in a Web Browser

Applet Life-Cycle Methods

Initializing an Instance Variable with Method init

Sandbox Security Model

Internet and Web Resources

Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
20.1. Introduction

*Note:* This chapter and its exercises are intentionally small and simple for readers who wish to learn about applets after reading only the first few chapters of the book possibly just **Chapters 2** and **3**. We present more complex applets in **Chapter 20**, Multimedia: Applets and Applications, **Chapter 23**, Multithreading and **Chapter 24**, Networking.

This chapter introduces **applets** Java programs that can be embedded in **HyperText Markup Language (HTML) documents** (i.e., Web pages). When a browser loads a Web page containing an applet, the applet downloads into the Web browser and executes.

The browser that executes an applet is generically known as the **applet container**. The JDK includes the **appletviewer** applet container for testing applets as you develop them and before you embed them in Web pages. We typically demonstrate applets using the **appletviewer**. If you would like to execute your applets in a Web browser, be aware that some Web browsers do not support J2SE 5.0 by default. You can visit [java.com](http://java.com) and click the **Get It Now** button to install the J2SE Runtime Environment (JRE) 5.0 for your browser. Several popular browsers are supported.
20.2. Sample Applets Provided with the JDK

Let's consider several demonstration applets provided with the JDK. Each sample applet comes with its source code. Some programmers find it interesting to read this source code to learn new and exciting Java features.

The demonstration programs provided with the JDK are located in a directory called demo. For Windows, the default location of the JDK 5.0's demo directory is

C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.5.0\demo

On UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X, the default location is the directory in which you install the JDK followed by jdk1.5.0/demo for example,

/usr/local/jdk1.5.0/demo

For other platforms, there will be a similar directory (or folder) structure. This chapter assumes that the JDK is installed in C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.5.0\demo on Windows or in your home directory in ~/.jdk1.5.0 on UNIX/Linux/Max OS X. You may need to update the locations specified here to reflect your chosen installation directory and disk drive, or a different version of the JDK.

---

If you are using a Java development tool that does not come with the Sun Java demos, you can download the JDK (with the demos) from the Sun Microsystems Java Web site

java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/

**TicTacToe Applet**

The TicTacToe demonstration applet allows you to play Tic-Tac-Toe against the computer. To execute this applet, open a command window and change
directories to the JDK's demo directory.

The demo directory contains several subdirectories. You can list them by issuing the dir command on Windows or the ls command on UNIX/Linux/Max OS X. We discuss sample programs in the applets and jfc directories. The applets directory contains several demonstration applets. The jfc (Java Foundation Classes) directory contains applets and applications that demonstrate Java's graphics and GUI features.

Change directories to the applets directory and list its contents to see the directory names for the demonstration applets. Figure 20.1 provides a brief description of each sample applet. If your browser supports J2SE 5.0, you can test these applets by opening the site java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/relnotes/demos.html in your browser and clicking the link to each applet. We will demonstrate three of these applets by using the appletviewer command in a command window.

Figure 20.1. The examples from the applets directory.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Animator</td>
<td>Performs one of four separate animations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ArcTest</td>
<td>Demonstrates drawing arcs. You can interact with the applet to change attributes of the arc that is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BarChart</td>
<td>Draws a simple bar chart.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blink</td>
<td>Displays blinking text in different colors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CardTest</td>
<td>Demonstrates several GUI components and layouts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clock</td>
<td>Draws a clock with rotating hands, the current date and the current time. The clock updates once per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DitherTest</td>
<td>Demonstrates drawing with a graphics technique known as dithering that allows gradual transformation from one color to another.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DrawTest</td>
<td>Allows the user mouse to draw lines and points in different colors by dragging the mouse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fractal</td>
<td>Draws a fractal. Fractals typically require complex calculations to determine how they are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GraphicsTest</td>
<td>Draws shapes to illustrate graphics capabilities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Draws a graph consisting of many nodes (represented as rectangles) connected by lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drag a node to see the other nodes in the graph adjust on the screen and demonstrate complex graphical interactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GraphLayout</td>
<td>Demonstrates an image with hot spots. Positioning the mouse pointer over certain areas of the image highlights the area and displays a message in the lower-left corner of the applet container window. Position over the mouth in the image to hear the applet say &quot;hi.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImageMap</td>
<td>Moves a rectangle randomly around the screen. Try to catch it by clicking it with the mouse!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demonstrates an image with hot spots. Positioning the mouse pointer over certain areas of the image highlights the area and displays a message in the lower-left corner of the applet container window. Position over the mouth in the image to hear the applet say &quot;hi.&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JumpingBox</td>
<td>Presents a three-dimensional view of several chemical molecules. Drag the mouse to view the molecule from different angles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NervousText</td>
<td>Draws text that jumps around the applet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SimpleGraph</td>
<td>Draws a complex curve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SortDemo</td>
<td>Compares three sorting techniques. Sorting (described in <a href="#">Chapter 16</a>) arranges information in orderlike alphabetizing words. When you execute this example from a command window, three appletviewer windows appear. When you execute this example in a browser, the three demos appear side-by-side. Click in each demo to start the sort. Note that the sorts all operate at different speeds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SpreadSheet</td>
<td>Demonstrates a simple spreadsheet of rows and columns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TicTacToe</td>
<td>Allows the user to play Tic-Tac-Toe against the computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WireFrame</td>
<td>Draws a three-dimensional shape as a wire frame. Drag the mouse to view the shape from different angles.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Change directories to subdirectory TicTacToe, where you will find the HTML document example1.html that is used to execute the applet. In the command window, type the command

```
appletviewer example1.html
```

and press *Enter*. This executes the appletviewer applet container, which loads the HTML document example1.html specified as its command-line argument. The appletviewer determines from the document which applet to load and executes the applet. *Figure 20.2* shows several screen captures of playing Tic-Tac-Toe with this applet.

---

**Figure 20.2. TicTacToe applet sample execution.**

(This item is displayed on page 962 in the print version)

---

You are player X. To interact with the applet, point the mouse at the square where you want to place an X and click the mouse button. The applet plays a sound and places an X in the square if the square is open. If the square is occupied, this is an invalid move and the applet plays a different sound indicating that you cannot make the specified move. After you make a valid move, the applet responds by making its own move.

To play again, click the appletviewer's Applet menu and select the Reload menu item (Fig. 20.3). To terminate the appletviewer, click the appletviewer's Applet menu and select the Quit menu item.
DrawTest Applet

The DrawTest applet allows you to draw lines and points in different colors. In the command window, change directories to directory applets, then to subdirectory DrawTest. You can move up the directory tree incrementally toward demo by issuing the command "cd .." in the command window. The DrawTest directory contains the example1.html document that is used to execute the applet. In the command window, type the command

appletviewer example1.html

and press Enter. The appletviewer loads example1.html, determines from the document which applet to load and executes the applet. Figure 20.4 shows a screen capture after some lines and points have been drawn.
By default the applet allows you to draw black lines by dragging the mouse across the applet. When you drag the mouse, note that the start point of the line always remains in the same place and the end point of the line follows the mouse pointer around the applet. The line is not permanent until you release the mouse button.

Select a color by clicking one of the radio buttons at the bottom of the applet. You can select from red, green, blue, pink, orange and black. Change the shape to draw from Lines to Points by selecting Points from the combo box. To start a new drawing, select Reload from the appletviewer's Applet menu.

Java2D Applet

The Java2D applet demonstrates many features of the Java 2D API (which we introduced in Chapter 12). Change directories to the jfc directory in the JDK's demo directory, then change to the Java2D directory. In the command window,
type the command

appletviewer Java2Demo.html

and press Enter. The appletviewer loads Java2Demo.html, determines from the
document which applet to load and executes the applet. Figure 20.5 shows a
screen capture of one of this applet's many demonstrations of Java's two-
dimensional graphics capabilities.

Figure 20.5. Java2D applet sample execution.
(This item is displayed on page 964 in the print version)

[View full size image]

At the top of the applet are tabs that look like file folders in a filing cabinet.
This demo provides 12 tabs with Java 2D API features demonstrated on each
tab. To change to a different part of the demo, simply click a different tab.
Also, try changing the options in the upper-right corner of the applet. Some of these affect the speed with which the applet draws the graphics. For example, click the checkbox to the left of the word **Anti-Aliasing** to turn off anti-aliasing (a graphics technique for producing smoother on-screen graphics in which the edges of the graphic are blurred). When this feature is turned off, the animation speed increases for the animated shapes at the bottom of the demo (**Fig. 20.5**). This performance increase occurs because shapes that are not anti-aliased are less complex to draw.
20.3. Simple Java Applet: Drawing a String

Every Java applet is a graphical user interface on which you can place GUI components using the techniques introduced in Chapter 11 or draw using the techniques demonstrated in Chapter 12. In this chapter, we will demonstrate drawing on an applet. Examples in Chapters 21, 23 and 24 demonstrate building an applet's graphical user interface.

Now let's build an applet of our own. We begin with a simple applet (Fig. 20.6) that draws "Welcome to Java Programming!" on the applet. Figure 20.7 shows this applet executing in two applet containersthe appletviewer and the Microsoft Internet Explorer Web browser. At the end of this section, you will learn how to execute the applet in a Web browser.

Figure 20.6. Applet that draws a string.
(This item is displayed on page 965 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 20.6: WelcomeApplet.java
// A first applet in Java.
import java.awt.Graphics;  // program uses class Graphics
import javax.swing.JApplet;  // program uses class JApplet

public class WelcomeApplet extends JApplet
{
    // draw text on applet's background
    public void paint( Graphics g )
    {
        // call superclass version of method paint
        super.paint( g );

        // draw a String at x-coordinate 25 and y-coordinate 25
        g.drawString( "Welcome to Java Programming!", 25, 25 );
    } // end method paint
} // end class WelcomeApplet
```

Figure 20.7. Sample outputs of the WelcomeApplet in Fig. 20.6.
(This item is displayed on page 965 in the print version)
Creating the Applet Class

Line 3 imports class Graphics to enable the applet to draw graphics, such as lines, rectangles, ovals and strings of characters. Class JApplet (imported at line 4) from package javax.swing is used to create applets. As with applications, every Java applet contains at least one public class declaration. An applet container can create only objects of classes that are public and extend JApplet (or the Applet class from early versions of Java). For this reason, class WelcomeApplet (lines 617) extends JApplet.

An applet container expects every Java applet to have methods named init, start, paint, stop and destroy, each of which is declared in class JApplet. Each new applet class you create inherits default implementations of these methods from class JApplet. These methods can be overridden (redefined) to perform tasks that are specific to your applet. Section 20.4 discusses each of these methods in more detail.
When an applet container loads class `WelcomeApplet`, the container creates an object of type `WelcomeApplet`, then calls three of the applet's methods. In sequence, these three methods are `init`, `start` and `paint`. If you do not declare these methods in your applet, the applet container calls the inherited versions. The superclass methods `init` and `start` have empty bodies, so they do not perform any tasks. The superclass method `paint` does not draw anything on the applet.

You might wonder why it is necessary to inherit methods `init`, `start` and `paint` if their default implementations do not perform tasks. Some applets do not use all three of these methods. However, the applet container does not know that. Thus, it expects every applet to have these methods, so that it can provide a consistent start-up sequence for each applet. This is similar to applications' always starting execution with `main`. Inheriting the "default" versions of these methods guarantees that the applet container can execute each applet uniformly. Also, inheriting default implementations of these methods allows the programmer to concentrate on defining only the methods required for a particular applet.

**Overriding Method `paint` for Drawing**

To enable our applet to draw, class `WelcomeApplet` overrides method `paint` (lines 916) by placing statements in the body of `paint` that draw a message on the screen. Method `paint` receives a parameter of type `Graphics` (called `g` by convention), which is used to draw graphics on the applet. You do not call method `paint` explicitly in an applet. Rather, the applet container calls `paint` to tell the applet when to draw, and the applet container is responsible for passing a `Graphics` object as an argument.

Line 12 calls the superclass version of method `paint` that was inherited from `JApplet`. This statement should be the first statement in every applet's `paint` method. Omitting it can cause subtle drawing errors in applets that combine drawing and GUI components.

Line 15 uses `Graphics` method `drawString` to draw `Welcome to Java Programming!` on the applet. The method receives as arguments the `String` to draw and the `x-y` coordinates at which the bottom-left corner of the `String` should appear in the drawing area. When line 15 executes, it draws the `String` on the applet at the coordinates 25 and 25.
20.3.1. Executing an Applet in the appletviewer

As with application classes, you must compile an applet class before it can execute. After creating class `WelcomeApplet` and saving it in the file `WelcomeApplet.java`, open a command window, change to the directory in which you saved the applet class declaration and compile class `WelcomeApplet`.

Recall that applets are embedded in Web pages for execution in an applet container (appletviewer or a browser). Before you can execute the applet, you must create an HTML (HyperText Markup Language) document that specifies which applet to execute in the applet container. Typically, an HTML document ends with an `.html` or `.htm` file-name extension. Figure 20.8 shows a simple HTML document `WelcomeApplet.html` that loads the applet defined in Fig. 20.6 into an applet container. [Note: If you are interested in learning more about HTML, the CD that accompanies this book contains three chapters from our book Internet and World Wide Web How to Program, Third Edition that introduce the current version of HTML (known as XHTML) and the Web page formatting capability known as Cascading Style Sheets (CSS).]

---

`WelcomeApplet.html` loads `WelcomeApplet` (Fig. 20.6) into an applet container.

```html
<html>
  <applet code = "WelcomeApplet.class" width = "300" height = "45">
    ...
  </applet>
</html>
```

Most HTML elements are delimited by pairs of tags. For example, lines 1 and 4 of Fig. 20.8 indicate the beginning and the end, respectively, of the HTML document. All HTML tags begin with a left angle bracket, `<`, and end with a right angle bracket, `>`. Lines 23 specify an applet element that tells the applet container to load a specific applet and defines the size of the applet's display area (its width and height in pixels) in the applet container. Normally, the applet and its corresponding HTML document are stored in the same directory on disk. Typically, a browser loads an HTML document from a computer (other than your own) connected to the Internet. However, HTML
documents also can reside on your computer (as you saw in Section 20.2). When an applet container encounters an HTML document that contains an applet, the applet container automatically loads the applet's .class file (or files) from the same directory on the computer in which the HTML document resides.

The applet element has several attributes. The first attribute in line 2, `code = "WelcomeApplet.class"`, indicates that the file `WelcomeApplet.class` contains the compiled applet class. The second and third attributes in line 2 indicate the `width` (300) and the `height` (45) of the applet in pixels. The `</applet>` tag (line 3) terminates the applet element that began at line 2. The `</html>` tag (line 4) terminates the HTML document.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 20.1**

To ensure that it can be viewed properly on most computer screens, an applet should generally be less than 1024 pixels wide and 768 pixels tall—dimensions supported by most computer screens.

**Common Programming Error 20.1**

Forgetting the ending `<applet>` tag prevents the applet from executing in some applet containers. The `appletviewer` terminates without indicating an error. Some Web browsers simply ignore the incomplete applet element.

**Error-Prevention Tip 20.1**

If you receive a `MissingResourceException` error message when loading an applet into the `appletviewer` or a browser, check the `<applet>` tag in the HTML document carefully for syntax errors, such as commas (, ) between the attributes.
The **appletviewer** understands only the `<applet>` and `</applet>` HTML tags and ignores all other tags in the document. The **appletviewer** is an ideal place to test an applet and ensure that it executes properly. Once the applet's execution is verified, you can add its HTML tags to a Web page that others can view in their Web browsers.

To execute *WelcomeApplet* in the **appletviewer**, open a command window, change to the directory containing your applet and HTML document, then type

```
appletviewer WelcomeApplet.html
```

**Error-Prevention Tip 20.2**

*Test your applets in the **appletviewer** applet container before executing them in a Web browser. Browsers often save a copy of an applet in memory until all the browser’s windows are closed. If you change an applet, recompile it, then reload it in your browser, the browser may still execute the original version of the applet. Close all your browser windows to remove the old applet from memory. Open a new browser window and load the applet to see your changes.*

**Error-Prevention Tip 20.3**

*Test your applets in every Web browser in which they will execute to ensure that they operate correctly.*

20.3.2. Executing an Applet in a Web Browser
The sample program executions in Fig. 20.6 demonstrate WelcomeApplet executing in the appletviewer and in Microsoft Internet Explorer Web browser. To execute an applet in Internet Explorer, perform the following steps:

1. Select **Open...** from the **File** menu.
2. In the dialog box that appears, click the **Browse...** button.
   3. In the dialog box that appears, locate the directory containing the HTML document for the applet you wish to execute.
4. Select the HTML document.
5. Click the **Open** button.
6. Click the **OK** button.

[Note: The steps for executing applets in other Web browsers are similar.]

If your applet executes in the appletviewer, but does not execute in your Web browser, Java may not be installed and configured for your browser. In this case, visit the Web site java.com and click the **Get It Now** button to install Java for your browser. In Internet Explorer, if this does not fix the problem, you might need to manually configure Internet Explorer to use J2SE 5.0. To do so, click the **Tools** menu and select **Internet Options...**, then click the **Advanced** tab in the window that appears. Locate the option "Use JRE v1.5.0 for <applet> (requires restart)" and ensure that it is checked, then click **OK**. Close all your browser windows before attempting to execute another applet in the browser.
20.4. Applet Life-Cycle Methods

Now that you have created an applet, let's consider the five applet methods that are called by the applet container from the time the applet is loaded into the browser to the time that the applet is terminated by the browser. These methods correspond to various aspects of an applet's life cycle. Figure 20.9 lists these methods, which are inherited into your applet classes from class JApplet. The table specifies when each method gets called and explains its purpose. Other than method paint, these methods have empty bodies by default. If you would like to declare any of these methods in your applets and have the applet container call them, you must use the method headers shown in Fig. 20.9. If you modify the method headers (e.g., by changing the method names or by providing additional parameters), the applet container will not call your methods. Instead, it will call the superclass methods inherited from JApplet.

### Figure 20.9. JApplet life cycle methods that are called by an applet container during an applet's execution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>When the method is called and its purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>public void init()</td>
<td>Called once by the applet container when an applet is loaded for execution. This method initializes an applet. Typical actions performed here are initializing fields, creating GUI components, loading sounds to play, loading images to display (see Chapter 20, Multimedia: Applets and Applications) and creating threads (see Chapter 23, Multithreading).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public void start()</td>
<td>Called by the applet container after method init completes execution. In addition, if the user browses to another Web site and later returns to the applet's HTML page, method start is called again. The method performs any tasks that must be completed when the applet is loaded for the first time and that must be performed every time the applet's HTML page is revisited. Actions performed here might include starting an animation (see Chapter 21) or starting other threads of execution (see Chapter 23).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
public void paint(Graphics g)

Called by the applet container after methods init and start. Method paint is also called when the applet needs to be repainted. For example, if the user covers the applet with another open window on the screen and later uncovers the applet, the paint method is called. Typical actions performed here involve drawing with the Graphics object $g$ that is passed to the paint method by the applet container.

public void stop()

This method is called by the applet container when the user leaves the applet’s Web page by browsing to another Web page. Since it is possible that the user might return to the Web page containing the applet, method stop performs tasks that might be required to suspend the applet's execution, so that the applet does not use computer processing time when it is not displayed on the screen. Typical actions performed here would stop the execution of animations and threads.

public void destroy()

This method is called by the applet container when the applet is being removed from memory. This occurs when the user exits the browsing session by closing all the browser windows and may also occur at the browser's discretion when the user has browsed to other Web pages. The method performs any tasks that are required to clean up resources allocated to the applet.

[Page 970]

Common Programming Error 20.2

Declaring methods init, start, paint, stop or destroy with method headers that differ from those shown in Figure 20.9 results in methods that will not be called by the applet container. The code specified in your versions of the methods will not execute.
20.5. Initializing an Instance Variable with Method init

Our next applet (Fig. 20.10) computes the sum of two values input by the user and displays the result by drawing a `String` inside a rectangle on the applet. The sum is stored in an instance variable of class `AdditionApplet`, so it can be used in both method `init` and method `paint`. The HTML document to load this applet into the `appletviewer` is shown in Fig. 20.11.

Figure 20.10. Adding `double` values.
(This item is displayed on pages 970 - 971 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 20.10: AdditionApplet.java
// Adding two floating-point numbers.
import java.awt.Graphics; // program uses class Graphics
import javax.swing.JApplet; // program uses class JApplet
import javax.swing.JOptionPane; // program uses class JOptionPane

public class AdditionApplet extends JApplet
{
    private double sum; // sum of values entered by user

    // initialize applet by obtaining values from user
    public void init()
    {
        String firstNumber; // first string entered by user
        String secondNumber; // second string entered by user

        double number1; // first number to add
        double number2; // second number to add

        // obtain first number from user
        firstNumber = JOptionPane.showInputDialog( "Enter first floating-point value" );

        // obtain second number from user
        secondNumber = JOptionPane.showInputDialog( "Enter second floating-point value" );

        // convert numbers from type String to type double
        number1 = Double.parseDouble(firstNumber);
        number2 = Double.parseDouble(secondNumber);

        sum = number1 + number2; // add numbers
    } // end method init

    // draw results in a rectangle on applet's background
    public void paint( Graphics g )
    {
        super.paint( g ); // call superclass version of method paint
    }
}
```
The applet requests that the user enter two floating-point numbers. Line 9 (Fig. 20.10) declares instance variable sum of type double. The applet contains two methods init (lines 1233) and paint (lines 3646). When an applet container loads this applet, the container creates an instance of class AdditionApplet and calls its init methodthis occurs only once during an applet's execution. Method init normally initializes the applet's fields (if they need to be initialized to values other than their defaults) and performs other tasks that should occur only once when the applet begins execution. The first line of init always
appears as shown in line 12, which indicates that \texttt{init} is a public method that receives no arguments and returns no information when it completes.

[Page 971]

Lines 1430 declare variables to store the values entered by the user, obtain the user input and convert the \texttt{Strings} entered by the user to \texttt{double} values by using \texttt{Double} method \texttt{parseDouble}.

[Page 972]

The assignment statement at line 32 sums the values stored in variables \texttt{number1} and \texttt{number2}, and assigns the result to instance variable \texttt{sum}. At this point, the applet's \texttt{init} method returns program control to the applet container, which then calls the applet's \texttt{start} method. We did not declare \texttt{start} in this applet, so the one inherited from class \texttt{JApplet} is called here. You will see typical uses of method \texttt{start} in Chapters 21 and 23.

Next, the applet container calls the applet's \texttt{paint} method. In this example, method \texttt{paint} draws a rectangle (line 42) in which the result of the addition will appear. Line 45 calls the \texttt{Graphics} object's \texttt{drawString} method to display the results. The statement concatenates the value of instance variable \texttt{sum} to the String "The sum is" and displays the concatenated String.

**Software Engineering Observation 20.1**

\begin{quote}
The only statements that should be placed in an applet's \texttt{init} method are those that should execute only once when the applet is initialized.
\end{quote}
20.6. Sandbox Security Model

It would be dangerous to allow applets, which are typically downloaded from the Internet, to read and write files on a client computer or access other system resources. For example, what would happen if you downloaded a malicious applet? The Java platform uses the sandbox security model to prevent code that is downloaded to your local computer from accessing local system resources, such as files. Code executing in the "sandbox" is not allowed to "play outside the sandbox." For information on security and applets, visit developer.java.sun.com/developer/technicalArticles/Security/Signed

For information on the Java 2 Platform security model, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/security/spec/security-spec.doc1.html
20.7. Internet and Web Resources

If you have access to the Internet, a large number of Java applet resources are available to you. The best place to start is at the source—the Sun Microsystems Java Web site, java.sun.com. The Web page java.sun.com/applets contains several Java applet resources, including free applets that you can use on your own Web site, the demonstration applets from the JDK and other applets (many of which you can download). In a section entitled "Applets at Work," you can read about the uses of applets in industry.

If you do not have Java installed and configured for your browser, you can visit java.com and click the Get It Now button to download and install Java in your browser. Instructions are provided for various versions of Windows, Linux, Solaris and Mac OS.

The Sun Microsystems Java Web site java.sun.com includes technical support, discussion forums, technical articles, resources, announcements of new Java features and early access to new Java technologies.

For various free online tutorials, visit the site java.sun.com/learning

Another useful Web site is JARS originally called the Java Applet Rating Service. The JARS site www.jars.com originally was a large Java repository for applets. It rated every applet registered at the site as top 1%, top 5% or top 25%, so you could view the
best applets on the Web. Early in the development of the Java language, having your applet rated here was a great way to demonstrate your Java programming abilities. JARS is now an all-around resource for Java programmers.

The resources listed in this section provide hyperlinks to many other Java-related Web sites. If you have Internet access, spend some time browsing these sites, executing applets and reading the source code for the applets when it is available. This will help you to rapidly expand your Java knowledge.
20.8. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned the fundamentals of Java applets. You leaned basic HTML concepts that allowed you to embed an applet in a Web page and execute the applet in an applet container such as the `appletviewer` or a Web browser. In addition, you learned the five methods that are called automatically by the applet container during an applet's life cycle. In the next chapter, you will see several additional applets as we present basic multimedia capabilities. In Chapter 23, Multithreading, you will see an applet with `start` and `stop` methods that are used to control multiple threads of execution. In Chapter 24, Networking, we demonstrate how to customize an applet via parameters that are specified in an `applet` HTML element.
Summary

- Applets are Java programs that can be embedded in HyperText Markup Language (HTML) documents.

- When a browser loads a Web page containing an applet, the applet downloads into the Web browser and executes.

- The browser that executes an applet is generically known as the applet container. The JDK includes the appletviewer applet container for testing applets before you embed them in a Web page.

- To reexecute an applet in the appletviewer, click the appletviewer's Applet menu and select the Reload menu item.

- To terminate the appletviewer, select Quit from the appletviewer's Applet menu.

Every Java applet is a graphical user interface on which you can place GUI components or draw.

- Class JApplet from package javax.swing is used to create applets.

- An applet container can create only objects of classes that are public and extend JApplet (or the Applet class from early versions of Java).

- An applet container expects every Java applet to have methods named init, start, paint, stop and destroy, each of which is declared in class JApplet. Each new applet class you create inherits default implementations of these methods from class JApplet.

- When an applet container loads an applet, the container creates an object of the applet's type, then calls the applet's init, start and paint methods. If you do not declare these methods in your applet, the applet container calls the inherited versions.
The superclass methods `init` and `start` have empty bodies, so they do not perform any tasks. The superclass method `paint` does not draw anything on the applet.

To enable an applet to draw, override its method `paint`. You do not call method `paint` explicitly in an applet. Rather, the applet container calls `paint` to tell the applet when to draw, and the applet container is responsible for passing a `Graphics` object as an argument.

The first statement in method `paint` should be a call to the superclass version of method `paint`. Omitting this can cause subtle drawing errors in applets that combine drawing and GUI components.

Before you can execute an applet, you must create an HTML (HyperText Markup Language) document that specifies which applet to execute in the applet container. Typically, an HTML document ends with an "html" or "htm" file-name extension.

Most HTML elements are delimited by pairs of `tags`. All HTML tags begin with a left angle bracket, `<`, and end with a right angle bracket, `>.

An `<applet>` element tells the applet container to load a specific applet and defines the size of the applet's display area (its width and height in pixels) in the applet container.

Normally, an applet and its corresponding HTML document are stored in the same directory.

Typically, a browser loads an HTML document from a computer (other than your own) connected to the Internet.

When an applet container encounters an HTML document that contains an applet, the applet container automatically loads the applet's `.class` file(s) from the same directory on the computer in which the HTML document resides.

The `appletviewer` understands only the `<applet>` and `</applet>` HTML tags and ignores all other tags in the document.

The `appletviewer` is an ideal place to test an applet and ensure that it
executes properly. Once the applet's execution is verified, you can add its HTML tags to a Web page that others can view in their Web browsers.

- There are five applet methods that are called by the applet container from the time the applet is loaded into the browser to the time that the applet is terminated by the browser. These methods correspond to various aspects of an applet's life cycle.

- Method `init` is called once by the applet container when an applet is loaded for execution. This method initializes the applet.

- Method `start` is called by the applet container after method `init` completes execution. In addition, if the user browses to another Web site and later returns to the applet's HTML page, method `start` is called again.

- Method `paint` is called by the applet container after methods `init` and `start`. Method `paint` is also called when the applet needs to be repainted.

- Method `stop` is called by the applet container when the user leaves the applet's Web page by browsing to another Web page.

- Method `destroy` is called by the applet container when the applet is being removed from memory. This occurs when the user exits the browsing session by closing all the browser windows and may also occur at the browser's discretion when the user has browsed to other Web pages.
Terminology

applet

applet container

applet HTML element

Applet menu in appletviewer

<applet> tag

appletviewer

attribute

demo directory of the JDK

height of an applet

.htm file name extension

HTML element

.html file name extension

HyperText Markup Language (HTML)

init method of JApplet

JApplet class

left angle bracket (<)

paint method of JApplet

parseDouble method of Double
**Quit** menu item in *appletviewer*

**Reload** menu item in *appletviewer*

right angle bracket (>)

**start** method of *JApplet*

**stop** method of *JApplet*

**tag**

**width of an applet**
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following:

1. Java applets begin execution with a series of three method calls: __________, __________ and __________.

2. The __________ method is invoked for an applet each time the user of a browser leaves an HTML page on which the applet resides.

3. Every applet should extend class __________.

4. The __________ or a browser can be used to execute a Java applet.

5. The __________ method is called each time the user of a browser revisits the HTML page on which an applet resides.

6. To load an applet into a browser, you must first define a(n) __________ file.

7. The __________ method is called once when an applet begins execution.

8. The __________ method is invoked to draw on an applet.

9. The __________ method is invoked for an applet when the browser removes it from memory.

10. The __________ and __________ HTML tags specify that an applet should be loaded into an applet container and executed.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

20.1  a) init, start, paint. b) stop. c) JApplet (or Applet). d) appletviewer. e) start. f) HTML. g) init. h) paint. i) destroy. j) <applet>, </applet>. 
Exercises

20.2 Write an applet that asks the user to enter two floating-point numbers, obtains the two numbers from the user and draws their sum, product (multiplication), difference and quotient (division). Use the techniques shown in Fig. 20.10.

20.3 Write an applet that asks the user to enter two floating-point numbers, obtains the numbers from the user and displays the two numbers first and then the larger number followed by the words "is larger" as a string on the applet. If the numbers are equal, the applet should print the message "These numbers are equal". Use the techniques shown in Fig. 20.10.

20.4 Write an applet that inputs three floating-point numbers from the user and displays the sum, average, product, smallest and largest of these numbers as strings on the applet. Use the techniques shown in Fig. 20.10.

20.5 Write an applet that asks the user to input the radius of a circle as a floating-point number and draws the circle's diameter, circumference and area. Use the value 3.14159 for \( \pi \). Use the techniques shown in Fig. 20.10. [Note: You may also use the predefined constant \( \text{Math.PI} \) for the value of \( \pi \). This constant is more precise than the value 3.14159. Class \( \text{Math} \) is defined in the \text{java.lang} package, so you do not need to import it.] Use the following formulas (\( r \) is the radius):

- Diameter: \( 2r \)
- Circumference: \( 2\pi r \)
- Area: \( \pi r^2 \)
20.6 Write an applet that reads five integers, determines which are the largest and smallest integers in the group and prints them. Use only the programming techniques you learned in this chapter and Chapter 2. Draw the results on the applet.

Write an applet that draws a checkerboard pattern as follows:

```
* * * * * *
* * * * * *
* * * * * *
* * * * * *
* * * * * *
```

20.7 Write an applet that draws rectangles of different sizes and locations.

20.8 Write an applet that draws rectangles of different sizes and locations.

Write an applet that allows the user to input values for the arguments required by method `drawRect`, then draws a rectangle using the four input values.

20.9 Class `Graphics` contains method `drawOval`, which takes as arguments the same four arguments as method `drawRect`. The arguments for method `drawOval` specify the "bounding box for the oval" the sides of the bounding box are the boundaries of the oval. Write a Java applet that draws an oval and a rectangle with the same four arguments. The oval will touch the rectangle at the center of each side.

20.10 Modify the solution to Exercise 20.10 to output ovals of different shapes and sizes.

Write an applet that allows the user to input the four arguments required by method `drawOval`, then draws an oval using the four input values.
Chapter 21. Multimedia: Applets and Applications

_The wheel that squeaks the loudest ... gets the grease._

John Billings (Henry Wheeler Shaw)

_We'll use a signal I have tried and found far-reaching and easy to yell. Waa-hoo!_

Zane Grey

_There is a natural hootchy-kootchy motion to a goldfish._

Walt Disney

_Between the motion and the act falls the shadow._

Thomas Stearns Eliot

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- How to get and display images.
- To create animations from sequences of images.
- To create image maps.
- To get, play, loop and stop sounds, using an AudioClip.
- To play video using interface Player.

Outline

21.1 Introduction

21.2 Loading, Displaying and Scaling Images
21.3 Animating a Series of Images

21.4 Image Maps

21.5 Loading and Playing Audio Clips

21.6 Playing Video and Other Media with Java Media Framework

21.7 Wrap-Up

21.8 Internet and Web Resources

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises

Special Section: Challenging Multimedia Projects
21.1. Introduction

Welcome to what may be the largest revolution in the history of the computer industry. Those who entered the field decades ago were interested in using computers primarily to perform arithmetic calculations at high speed. As the computer field evolved, we began to realize that the data-manipulation capabilities of computers are equally important. The "sizzle" of Java is multimedia—the use of sound, images, graphics and video to make applications "come alive." Although most multimedia in Java applications is two-dimensional, Java programmers already can use the Java 3D API to create substantial 3D graphics applications (Sun provides an online tutorial for the Java 3D API at java.sun.com/developer/onlineTraining/java3d).

Multimedia programming offers many new challenges. The field is already enormous and is growing rapidly. People are rushing to equip their computers for multimedia. Most new computers sold today are "multimedia ready," with CD-RW and DVD drives, audio boards and special video capabilities. Economical desktop and laptop computers are so powerful that they can store and play DVD-quality sound and video, and we expect to see further advances in the kinds of programmable multimedia capabilities available through programming languages. One thing that we have learned is to plan for the "impossible" in the computer and communications fields, the "impossible" has repeatedly become reality.

Among users who want graphics, many now want three-dimensional, high-resolution, color graphics. True three-dimensional imaging may become available within the next decade. Imagine having high-resolution, "theater-in-the-round," three-dimensional television. Sporting and entertainment events will seem to take place on your living room floor! Medical students worldwide will see operations being performed thousands of miles away, as if they were occurring in the same room. People will be able to learn how to drive with extremely realistic driving simulators in their homes before they get behind the wheel. The possibilities are exciting and endless.

Multimedia demands extraordinary computing power. Until recently, affordable computers with that kind of power were not available. Today's ultrapowerful processors, like the SPARC Ultra 5 from Sun Microsystems, the Pentium and Itanium 2 from Intel, the PowerPC G5 from IBM and Apple, and the processors from MIPS/Silicon Graphics (among others) make effective multimedia possible. The computer and communications industries will be primary beneficiaries of the multimedia revolution. Users will be willing to pay for the...
We need programming languages that make creating multimedia applications easy. Most programming languages do not incorporate such capabilities. However, Java, through its class libraries, provides extensive multimedia facilities that enable you to start developing powerful multimedia applications immediately.

This chapter presents several examples of interesting multimedia features that you will need to build useful applications, including:

1. the basics of manipulating images.
2. creating smooth animations.
3. playing audio files with the AudioClip interface.
4. creating image maps that can sense when the cursor is over them, even without a mouse click.
5. playing video files using the Player interface.

The exercises for this chapter suggest dozens of challenging and interesting projects. When we were creating these exercises, the ideas just kept flowing. Multimedia leverages creativity in ways that we did not experience with "conventional" computer capabilities. [Note: Java's multimedia capabilities go far beyond those presented in this chapter. They include the Java Media Framework (JMF) API (for adding audio and video media to an application), Java Sound API (for playing, recording and modifying audio), Java 3D API (for creating and modifying 3D graphics), Java Advanced Imaging API (for image-processing capabilities, such as cropping and scaling), Java Speech API (for inputting voice commands from the user or outputting voice commands to the user), Java 2D API (for creating and modifying 2D graphics, covered in Chapter 12) and Java Image I/O API (for reading from and outputting images to files). Section 21.8 provides Web links for each of these APIs.]
21.2. Loading, Displaying and Scaling Images

Java's multimedia capabilities include graphics, images, animations, sounds and video. We begin our discussion with images. We will use a few different images in this chapter. Developers can create such images with any image software, such as Adobe® Photoshop™, Jasc® Paint Shop Pro™ or Microsoft® Paint.

The applet of Fig. 21.1 demonstrates loading an Image (package java.awt) and loading an ImageIcon (package javax.swing). Both classes are used to load and display images. The applet displays the Image in its original size and scaled to a larger size, using two versions of Graphics method drawImage. The applet also draws the ImageIcon, using the icon's method paintIcon. Class ImageIcon implements interface Serializable, which allows ImageIcon objects to be easily written to a file or sent across the Internet. Class ImageIcon is also easier to use than Image, because its constructor can receive arguments of several different formats, including a byte array containing the bytes of an image, an Image already loaded in memory, and a String or a URL object, which both can be used to represent the location of the image. A URL object represents a Uniform Resource Locator that serves as a pointer to a resource on the World Wide Web, on your computer or on any networked machine. A URL object is more often used when accessing data over the Internet, while a simple string is more often used when accessing data on the current machine. Using an URL object also enables the programmer to access information from the Web, such as searching for information from a database or through a search engine.

Figure 21.1. Loading and displaying an image in an applet.
(This item is displayed on pages 980 - 981 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 21.1: LoadImageAndScale.java
// Load an image and display it in its original size and twice its
// original size. Load and display the same image as an ImageIcon.
import java.awt.Graphics;
import java.awt.Image;
import javax.swing.ImageIcon;
import javax.swing.JApplet;
```
public class LoadImageAndScale extends JApplet
{
    private Image image1;  // create Image object
    private ImageIcon image2; // create ImageIcon object

    // load image when applet is loaded
    public void init()
    {
        image1 = getImage( getDocumentBase(), "redflowers.png" );
        image2 = new ImageIcon( "yellowflowers.png" );
    } // end method init

    // display image
    public void paint( Graphics g )
    {
        super.paint( g );
        g.drawImage( image1, 0, 0, this ); // draw original image
        g.drawImage( image1, 0, 120, getWidth(), getHeight() - 120, this );
        // draw icon using its paintIcon method
        image2.paintIcon( this, g, 180, 0 );
    } // end method paint
} // end class LoadImageAndScale

Lines 11 and 12 declare an `Image` reference and an `ImageIcon` reference,
respectively. Class \texttt{Image} is an \texttt{abstract} class as the applet cannot create an object of class \texttt{Image} directly. Rather, we must call a method that causes the applet container to load and return the \texttt{Image} for use in the program. Class \texttt{Applet} (the direct superclass of \texttt{JApplet}) provides method \texttt{getImage} (line 17, in method \texttt{init}) that loads an \texttt{Image} into an applet. This version of \texttt{getImage} takes two arguments: the location of the image file and the file name of the image. In the first argument, \texttt{Applet} method \texttt{getDocumentBase} returns a \texttt{URL} representing the location of the image on the Internet (or on your computer if the applet was loaded from your computer). Method \texttt{getDocumentBase} returns the location of the HTML file as an object of class \texttt{URL}. The second argument specifies an image file name. The two arguments together specify the unique name and path of the file being loaded (in this case, the file \texttt{redflowers.png} stored in the same directory as the HTML file that invoked the applet). Java supports several image formats, including \texttt{Graphics Interchange Format (GIF)}, \texttt{Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG)} and \texttt{Portable Network Graphics (PNG)}. File names for these types end with \texttt{.gif}, \texttt{.jpg} (or \texttt{.jpeg}) and \texttt{.png}, respectively.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Portability Tip 21.1}
\end{center}

\begin{quote}
Class \texttt{Image} is an \texttt{abstract} class as a result, programs cannot instantiate class \texttt{Image} to create objects. To achieve platform independence, the Java implementation on each platform provides its own subclass of \texttt{Image} to store image information.
\end{quote}

Line 17 begins loading the image from the local computer (or downloading it from the Internet). When the image is required by the program, it is loaded in a separate thread of execution. Remember that a thread is a parallel activity, and that threads will be discussed in detail in \texttt{Chapter 23}, Multithreading. By using a separate thread to load an image, the program can continue execution while the image loads. \textit{Note:} If the requested file is not available, method \texttt{getImage} does not throw an exception. An \texttt{Image} object is returned, but when this \texttt{Image} is displayed using method \texttt{drawImage}, nothing will be displayed.\]

Class \texttt{ImageIcon} is not an \texttt{abstract} class as a program can create an \texttt{ImageIcon} object. At line 18, in method \texttt{init} creates an \texttt{ImageIcon} object that loads \texttt{yellowflowers.png}.
Class `ImageIcon` provides several constructors that enable programs to initialize `ImageIcon` objects with images from the local computer or stored on the Internet.

The applet's `paint` method (lines 2233) displays the images. Line 26 uses `Graphics` method `drawImage` to display an `Image`. Method `drawImage` accepts four arguments. The first is a reference to the `Image` object to display (`image1`). The second and third are the `x`-and `y`-coordinates at which to display the image on the applet; the coordinates specify the location of the upper-left corner of the image. The last argument is a reference to an `ImageObserver`—an interface implemented by class `Component`. Since class `JApplet` indirectly extends `Component`, all `JApplets` are `ImageObservers`. This argument is important when displaying large images that require a long time to download from the Internet. It is possible that a program will attempt to display the image before it has downloaded completely. The `ImageObserver` receives notifications as the `Image` is loaded and updates the image on the screen if the image was not complete when it was displayed. When executing this applet, watch carefully as pieces of the image display while the image loads. [Note: On faster computers, you might not notice this effect.]

Line 29 uses another version of `Graphics` method `drawImage` to output a scaled version of the image. The fourth and fifth arguments specify the `width` and `height` of the image for display purposes. Method `drawImage` scales the image to fit the specified width and height. In this example, the fourth argument indicates that the width of the scaled image should be the width of the applet, and the fifth argument indicates that the height should be 120 pixels less than the height of the applet. The width and height of the applet are determined by calling methods `getWidth` and `getHeight` (inherited from class `Component`).

Line 32 uses `ImageIcon` method `paintIcon` to display the image. The method requires four arguments—a reference to the `Component` on which to display the image, a reference to the `Graphics` object that will render the image, the `x`-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the image and the `y`-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the image.
21.3. Animating a Series of Images

The next example demonstrates animating a series of images that are stored in an array of ImageIcon. The animation presented in Fig. 21.2 Fig. 21.3 is implemented using a subclass of JPanel called LogoAnimatorJPanel (Fig. 21.2) that can be attached to an application window or a JApplet. Class LogoAnimator (Fig. 21.3) declares a main method (lines 820 of Fig. 21.3) to execute the animation as an application. Method main declares an instance of class JFrame and attaches a LogoAnimatorJPanel object to the JFrame to display the animation.

Figure 21.2. Animating a series of images.
(This item is displayed on pages 983 - 984 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 21.2: LogoAnimatorJPanel.java
// Animation of a series of images.
import java.awt.Dimension;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.Graphics;
import javax.swing.ImageIcon;
import javax.swing.JPanel;
import javax.swing.Timer;

public class LogoAnimatorJPanel extends JPanel {
    private final static String IMAGE_NAME = "deitel"; // base image name
    protected ImageIcon images[]; // array of images
    private final int TOTAL_IMAGES = 30; // number of images
    private int currentImage = 0; // current image index
    private final int ANIMATION_DELAY = 50; // millisecond delay
    private int width; // image width
    private int height; // image height
    private Timer animationTimer; // Timer drives animation

    // constructor initializes LogoAnimatorJPanel by loading images
    public LogoAnimatorJPanel() {
        images = new ImageIcon[TOTAL_IMAGES];
        // load 30 images
        for (int count = 0; count < images.length; count++) {
            images[count] = new ImageIcon(getClass().getResource("images/" + IMAGE_NAME + count + ".gif"));
        }
        // this example assumes all images have the same width and height
        width = images[0].getIconWidth(); // get icon width
        height = images[0].getIconHeight(); // get icon height
    }
```
// end LogoAnimatorJPanel constructor

// display current image
public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
{
    super.paintComponent( g ); // call superclass paintComponent

    images[ currentImage ].paintIcon( this, g, 0, 0 );

    // set next image to be drawn only if timer is running
    if ( animationTimer.isRunning() )
        currentImage = ( currentImage + 1 ) % TOTAL_IMAGES;
}

// start animation, or restart if window is redisplayed
public void startAnimation()
{
    if ( animationTimer == null )
    {
        currentImage = 0; // display first image

        // create timer
        animationTimer =
            new Timer( ANIMATION_DELAY, new TimerHandler() );

        animationTimer.start(); // start timer
    } // end if

    else // animationTimer already exists, restart animation
    {
        if ( ! animationTimer.isRunning() )
            animationTimer.restart();
    } // end else

} // end method startAnimation

// stop animation timer
public void stopAnimation()
{
    animationTimer.stop();
} // end method stopAnimation

// return minimum size of animation
public Dimension getMinimumSize()
{
    return getPreferredSize();
} // end method getMinimumSize

// return preferred size of animation
public Dimension getPreferredSize()
{
    return new Dimension( width, height );
} // end method getPreferredSize

// inner class to handle action events from Timer
private class TimerHandler implements ActionListener
{
    // respond to Timer's event
    public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent actionEvent )
    {
        repaint(); // repaint animator
    } // end method actionPerformed
} // end class TimerHandler
Class LogoAnimatorJPanel (Fig. 21.2) maintains an array of ImageIcon objects that are loaded in the constructor (lines 24-36). Lines 29-31 create each ImageIcon object and store the animation's 30 images in array `images`. The constructor argument uses string concatenation to assemble the file name from the pieces "images/", \(\text{IMAGE_NAME}\), \(\text{count}\) and ".gif". Each image in the animation is in a file called \(\text{deitel#}.gif\), where \(\#\) is a value in the range 0-29 specified by the loop's control variable.
After the `LogoAnimatorJPanel` constructor loads the images, method `main` of Fig. 21.3 sets up the window in which the animation will appear (lines 12-17), and line 19 calls the `LogoAnimatorJPanel`'s `startAnimation` method (declared at lines 5168 of Fig. 21.2). This method starts the program's animation for the first time or restarts the animation that the program stopped previously. [Note: This method is called when the program is first run, to begin the animation. Although we provide the functionality for this method to restart the animation if it has been stopped, the example does not call the method for this purpose. We have added the functionality, however, should the reader choose to add GUI components that enable the user to start and stop the animation.] For example, to make an animation "browser friendly" in an applet, the animation should stop when the user switches Web pages. If the user returns to the Web page with the animation, method `startAnimation` can be called to restart the animation. The animation is driven by an instance of class `Timer` (from package `javax.swing`). A `Timer` generates `ActionEvents` at a fixed interval in milliseconds (normally specified as an argument to the `Timer`'s constructor) and notifies all its `ActionListeners` each time an `ActionEvent` occurs. Line 53 determines whether the `Timer` reference `animationTimer` is null. If it is, method `startAnimation` is being called for the first time, and a `Timer` needs to be created so that the animation can begin. Line 55 sets `currentImage` to 0, which indicates that the animation should begin with the image in the first element of array `images`. Lines 58-59 assign a new `Timer` object to `animationTimer`. The `Timer` constructor receives two arguments: the delay in milliseconds (`ANIMATION_DELAY` is 50, as specified in line 17) and the `ActionListener` that will respond to the `Timer`'s `ActionEvents`. For the second argument, an object of class `TimerHandler` is created. This class, which implements `ActionListener`, is declared in lines 89-96. Line 61 starts the `Timer` object. Once started, `animationTimer` will generate an `ActionEvent` every 50 milliseconds. Each time an `ActionEvent` is generated, the `Timer`'s event handler `actionPerformed` (lines 92-95) is called. Line 94 calls `LogoAnimatorJPanel`'s repaint method to schedule a call to `LogoAnimatorJPanel`'s `paintComponent` method (lines 3948). Remember that any subclass of `JComponent` that draws should do so in its `paintComponent` method. Recall from Chapter 11 that the first statement in any `paintComponent` method should be a call to the superclass's `paintComponent` method, to ensure that Swing components are displayed correctly.
If the animation was started earlier, then our Timer has been created and the condition in line 53 will evaluate to false. The program will continue with lines 6566, which restart the animation that the program stopped previously. The if condition at line 65 uses Timer method isRunning to determine whether the Timer is running (i.e., generating events). If it is not running, line 66 calls Timer method restart to indicate that the Timer should start generating events again. Once this occurs, method actionPerformed (the Timer's event handler) is again called at regular intervals. Each time, a call is made to method repaint (line 94), causing method paintComponent to be called and the next image to be displayed.

Line 43 paints the ImageIcon stored at element currentImage in the array. Lines 4647 determine whether the animationTimer is running and, if so, prepare for the next image to be displayed by incrementing currentImage by 1. The remainder calculation ensures that the value of currentImage is set to 0 (to repeat the animation sequence) when it is incremented past 29 (the last element index in the array). The if statement ensures that the same image will be displayed if paintComponent is called while the Timer is stopped. This could be useful if a GUI is provided that enables the user to start and stop the animation. For example, if the animation is stopped and the user covers it with another window, then uncovers it, method paintComponent will be called. In this case, we do not want the animation to show the next image (because the animation has been stopped). We simply want the window to display the same image until the animation is restarted.

Method stopAnimation (lines 7174) stops the animation by calling Timer method stop to indicate that the Timer should stop generating events. This prevents actionPerformed from calling repaint to initiate the painting of the next image in the array. [Note: Just as with restarting the animation, this example defines but does not use method stopAnimation. We have provided this method for demonstration purposes, or if the user wishes to modify this example so that it enables the user to stop and restart the animation.]

Software Engineering Observation 21.1
When creating an animation for use in an applet, provide a mechanism for disabling the animation when the user browses a new Web page different from the one on which the animation applet resides.

Remember that by extending class JPanel, we are creating a new GUI component. Thus, we must ensure that our new component works like other components for layout purposes. Layout managers often use a GUI component's `getPreferredSize` method (inherited from class `java.awt.Component`) to determine the preferred width and height of the component when laying it out as part of a GUI. If a new component has a preferred width and height, it should override method `getPreferredSize` (lines 8386) to return that width and height as an object of class `Dimension` (package `java.awt`). The `Dimension` class represents the width and height of a GUI component. In this example, the images are 160 pixels wide and 80 pixels tall, so method `getPreferredSize` returns a `Dimension` object containing the numbers 160 and 80 (determined at lines 3435).

**Look-and-Feel Observation 21.1**

The default size of a `JPanel` object is 10 pixels wide and 10 pixels tall.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 21.2**

When subclassing `JPanel` (or any other `JComponent`), override method `getPreferredSize` if the new component is to have a specific preferred width and height.
Lines 7780 override method \texttt{getMinimumSize}. This method determines the minimum width and height of the component. As with method \texttt{getPreferredSize}, new components should override method \texttt{getMinimumSize} (also inherited from class Component). Method \texttt{getMinimumSize} simply calls \texttt{getPreferredSize} (a common programming practice) to indicate that the minimum size and preferred size are the same. Some layout managers ignore the dimensions specified by these methods. For example, a \texttt{BorderLayout's NORTH} and \texttt{SOUTH} regions use only the component's preferred height.

\textbf{Look-and-Feel Observation 21.3}

\begin{quote}
If a new GUI component has a minimum width and height (i.e., smaller dimensions would render the component ineffective on the display), override method \texttt{getMinimumSize} to return the minimum width and height as an instance of class \texttt{Dimension}.
\end{quote}

\textbf{Look-and-Feel Observation 21.4}

\begin{quote}
For many GUI components, method \texttt{getMinimumSize} is implemented to return the result of a call to the component's \texttt{getPreferredSize} method.
\end{quote}
21.4. Image Maps

Image maps are commonly used to create interactive Web pages. An image map is an image with hot areas that the user can click to accomplish a task, such as loading a different Web page into a browser. When the user positions the mouse pointer over a hot area, normally a descriptive message appears in the status area of the browser or in a tool tip.

Figure 21.4 loads an image containing several of the programming tip icons used in this book. The program allows the user to position the mouse pointer over an icon to display a descriptive message associated with it. Event handler mouseMoved (lines 3943) takes the mouse coordinates and passes them to method translateLocation (lines 5869). Method translateLocation tests the coordinates to determine the icon over which the mouse was positioned when the mouseMoved event occurred. The method then returns a message indicating what the icon represents. This message is displayed in the applet container's status bar using method showStatus of class Applet.

Figure 21.4. Image map.
(This item is displayed on pages 988 - 990 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 21.4: ImageMap.java
2 // Demonstrating an image map.
3 import java.awt.event.MouseAdapter;
4 import java.awt.event.MouseEvent;
5 import java.awt.event.MouseMotionAdapter;
6 import java.awt.Graphics;
7 import javax.swing.ImageIcon;
8 import javax.swing.JApplet;
9
10 public class ImageMap extends JApplet
11 {
12    private ImageIcon mapImage;
13
14    private static final String captions[] = {
15        "Common Programming Error",
16        "Good Programming Practice", "Graphical User Interface Tip",
17        "Performance Tip", "Portability Tip",
18        "Software Engineering Observation", "Error-Prevention Tip" }
19;
20
21    // sets up mouse listeners
22    public void init()
23    {
24        addMouseListener(
25            new MouseAdapter() // anonymous inner class
26        )
27    }
28    }
29```

{ // indicate when mouse pointer exits applet area
    public void mouseExited( MouseEvent event )
    {
        showStatus( "Pointer outside applet" );
    } // end method mouseExited
} // end anonymous inner class

}; // end call to addMouseListener

// display mapImage
public void paint( Graphics g )
{
    super.paint( g );
    mapImage.paintIcon( this, g, 0, 0 );
} // end method paint

// return String translateLocation( int x, int y )
{
    // if coordinates outside image, return immediately
    if ( x >= mapImage.getIconWidth() || y >= mapImage.getIconHeight() )
        return "";

    // determine icon number (0 - 6)
    double iconWidth = ( double ) mapImage.getIconWidth() / 7.0;
    int iconNumber = ( int )( ( double ) x / iconWidth );

    return captions[ iconNumber ]; // return appropriate icon caption
} // end method translateLocation

} // end class ImageMap
Pointer outside applet
Common Programming Error
Good Programming Practice
Graphical User Interface Tip
Performance Tip
Portability Tip
Software Engineering Observation
Error Prevention Tip
Clicking in the applet of Fig. 21.4 will not cause any action. In Chapter 24, Networking, we discuss the techniques required to load another Web page into a browser via URLs and the AppletContext interface. Using those techniques, this applet could associate each icon with a URL that the browser would display when the user clicks the icon.
21.5. Loading and Playing Audio Clips

Java programs can manipulate and play audio clips. Users can capture their own audio clips, and many clips are available in software products and over the Internet. Your system needs to be equipped with audio hardware (speakers and a sound card) to be able to play the audio clips.

Java provides several mechanisms for playing sounds in an applet. The two simplest are the Applet's `play` method and the `play` method of the `AudioClip` interface. Additional audio capabilities are available in the Java Media Framework and Java Sound APIs. If you would like to play a sound once in a program, the Applet method `play` loads the sound and plays it once; the sound is marked for garbage collection after it plays. The Applet method `play` has two versions:

```
public void play( URL location, String soundFileName );
public void play( URL soundURL );
```

The first version loads the audio clip stored in file `soundFileName` from `location` and plays the sound. The first argument is normally a call to the applet's `getDocumentBase` or `getCodeBase` method. Method `getDocumentBase` returns the location of the HTML file that loaded the applet. (If the applet is in a package, the method returns the location of the package or the JAR file containing the package.) Method `getCodeBase` indicates the location of the applet's .class file. The second version of method `play` takes a URL that contains the location and the file name of the audio clip. The statement

```
play( getDocumentBase(), "hi.au" );
```

loads the audio clip in file hi.au and plays the clip once.
The **sound engine** that plays the audio clips supports several audio file formats, including **Sun Audio file format** (.au extension), **Windows Wave file format** (.wav extension), **Macintosh AIFF file format** (.aif or .aiff extensions) and **Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) file format** (.mid or .rmi extensions). The Java Media Framework (JMF) and Java Sound APIs support additional formats.

The program of Fig. 21.5 demonstrates loading and playing an AudioClip (package java.applet). This technique is more flexible than Applet method play. An applet can use an AudioClip to store audio for repeated use throughout a program's execution.

**Figure 21.5. Loading and playing an AudioClip.**
(This item is displayed on pages 991 - 992 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 21.5: LoadAudioAndPlay.java
// Load an audio clip and play it.
import java.applet.AudioClip;
import java.awt.event.ItemListener;
import java.awt.event.ItemEvent;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import java.awt.FlowLayout;
import javax.swing.JApplet;
import javax.swing.JButton;
import javax.swing.JComboBox;

public class LoadAudioAndPlay extends JApplet {
  private AudioClip sound1, sound2, currentSound;
  private JButton playJButton, loopJButton, stopJButton;
  private JComboBox soundJComboBox;

  // load the image when the applet begins executing
  public void init() {
    setLayout( new FlowLayout() );
    String choices[] = { "Welcome", "Hi" };  
    soundJComboBox = new JComboBox( choices ); // create JComboBox
    soundJComboBox.addItemListener(  
      new ItemListener() // anonymous inner class
      {  
        public void itemStateChanged( ItemEvent e )
        {  
          // stop sound and change to sound to user's selection
          public void itemStateChanged( ItemEvent e )
        }
      }
    );
  }
}
```
currentSound.stop();
currentSound = soundJComboBox.getSelectedIndex() == 0 ?
    sound1 : sound2;
} // end method itemStateChanged
} // end anonymous inner class
}); // end addItemListener method call

add( soundJComboBox ); // add JComboBox to applet

// set up button event handler and buttons
ButtonHandler handler = new ButtonHandler();

// create Play JButton
playJButton = new JButton( "Play" );
playJButton.addActionListener( handler );
add( playJButton );

// create Loop JButton
loopJButton = new JButton( "Loop" );
loopJButton.addActionListener( handler );
add( loopJButton );

// create Stop JButton
stopJButton = new JButton( "Stop" );
stopJButton.addActionListener( handler );
add( stopJButton );

// load sounds and set currentSound
sound1 = getAudioClip( getDocumentBase(), "welcome.wav" );
sound2 = getAudioClip( getDocumentBase(), "hi.au" );
currentSound = sound1;
} // end method init

// stop the sound when the user switches Web pages
public void stop()
{
    currentSound.stop(); // stop AudioClip
} // end method stop

// private inner class to handle button events
private class ButtonHandler implements ActionListener
{
    // process play, loop and stop button events
    public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent actionEvent )
    {
        if ( actionEvent.getSource() == playJButton )
            currentSound.play(); // play AudioClip once
        else if ( actionEvent.getSource() == loopJButton )
            currentSound.loop(); // play AudioClip continuously
        else if ( actionEvent.getSource() == stopJButton )
            currentSound.stop(); // stop AudioClip
    } // end method actionPerformed
} // end class ButtonHandler

} // end class LoadAudioAndPlay
Applet method **getAudioClip** has two forms that take the same arguments as method **play** described previously. Method **getAudioClip** returns a reference to an **AudioClip**. An **AudioClip** has three methods **play**, **loop** and **stop**. As mentioned earlier, method **play** plays the audio clip once. Method **loop** continuously loops through the audio clip in the background. Method **stop** terminates an audio clip that is currently playing. In the program, each of these methods is associated with a button on the applet.

Lines 6263 in the applet's **init** method use **getAudioClip** to load two audio files a Windows Wave file (**welcome.wav**) and a Sun Audio file (**hi.au**). The user can select which audio clip to play from the **JComboBox soundJComboBox**. Note that the applet's **stop** method is overridden at lines 6871. When the user switches Web pages, the applet container calls the applet's **stop** method. This enables the applet to stop playing the audio clip. Otherwise, it continues to play in the background even if the applet is not displayed in the browser. This is not necessarily a problem, but it can be annoying to the user if the audio clip is looping. The **stop** method is provided here as a convenience to the user.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 21.5**

> When playing audio clips in an applet or application, provide a mechanism for the user to disable the audio.
21.6. Playing Video and Other Media with Java Media Framework

A simple video can concisely and effectively convey a great deal of information. Recognizing the value of bringing extensible multimedia capabilities to Java, Sun Microsystems, Intel and Silicon Graphics worked together to produce the multimedia API Java Media Framework (JMF), discussed briefly in Section 21.1. Using the JMF API, programmers can create Java applications that play, edit, stream and capture many popular media types. While the features of JMF are quite extensive, this section briefly introduces some popular media formats and demonstrates playing video using the JMF API.

IBM and Sun developed the latest JMF specification version 2.0. Sun also provides a reference implementation of the JMF specification JMF 2.1.1e that supports media file types such as Microsoft Audio/Video Interleave (.avi), Macromedia Flash 2 movies (.swf), Future Splash (.spl), MPEG Layer 3 Audio (.mp3), Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI; .mid or .rmi extensions), MPEG-1 videos (.mpeg, .mpg), QuickTime (.mov), Sun Audio file format (.au extension), and Macintosh AIFF file format (.aif or .aiff extension). You have already seen some of these files types.

Currently, JMF is available as an extension separate from the Java 2 Software Development Kit. The most recent JMF implementation (2.1.1e) can be downloaded from:

http://java.sun.com/products/java-media/jmf/2.1.1/download.html

You need to accept the license agreement prior to downloading.

The JMF Web site provides versions of the JMF that take advantage of the performance features of certain platforms. For example, the JMF Windows Performance Pack provides extensive media and device support for Java programs running on Microsoft Windows platforms (Windows 95/98/NT 4.0/2000/XP). JMF's official Web site (java.sun.com/products/java-media/jmf) provides continually updated support, information and resources for JMF programmers.
Once the file finishes downloading, open it and follow the on-screen instructions to install the program. Leave all options at their defaults. You may need to restart your computer to finish the installation.

Creating a Simple Media Player

The JMF offers several mechanisms for playing media. The simplest mechanism is using objects that implement interface **Player** declared in package `javax.media`. Package `javax.media` and its subpackages contain the classes that compose the Java Media Framework. To play a media clip you must first create a **URL** object that refers to it. Then pass the **URL** as an argument to static method `createRealizedPlayer` of class `Manager` to obtain a **Player** for the media clip. Class `Manager` declares utility methods for accessing system resources to play and to manipulate media. **Figure 21.6** declares a **JPanel** that demonstrates some of these methods.

**Figure 21.6. JPanel that plays a media file from a URL.**
(This item is displayed on page 995 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 21.6: MediaPanel.java
// A JPanel that plays media from a URL
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.Component;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.URL;
import javax.media.CannotRealizeException;
import javax.media.Manager;
import javax.media.NoPlayerException;
import javax.media.Player;
import javax.swing.JPanel;

public class MediaPanel extends JPanel {
    public MediaPanel( URL mediaURL ) {
       .setLayout( new BorderLayout() ); // use a BorderLayout
        // Use lightweight components for Swing compatibility
        Manager.setHint( Manager.LIGHTWEIGHT_RENDERER, true );
        try {
            // create a player to play the media specified in the URL
            Player mediaPlayer = Manager.createRealizedPlayer( mediaURL );
            // get the components for the video and the playback controls
            Component video = mediaPlayer.getVisualComponent();
        }
    }
}
```
Component controls = mediaPlayer.getControlPanelComponent();
if ( video != null )
    add( video, BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add video component
if ( controls != null )
    add( controls, BorderLayout.SOUTH ); // add controls
mediaPlayer.start(); // start playing the media clip
// end try
catch ( NoPlayerException noPlayerException )
    System.err.println( "No media player found" );
} // end catch
catch ( CannotRealizeException cannotRealizeException )
    System.err.println( "Could not realize media player" );
} // end catch
catch ( IOException iOException )
    System.err.println( "Error reading from the source" );
} // end MediaPanel constructor
// end class MediaPanel

The constructor (lines 1551) sets up the JPanel to play the media file specified as a URL parameter to the constructor. MediaPanel uses a BorderLayout (line 17). Line 20 invokes static method setHint to set the flag Manager. LIGHTWEIGHT_RENDER to True. This instructs the Manager to use a lightweight renderer that is compatible with lightweight Swing components, as opposed to the default heavyweight renderer. Inside the try block (lines 2238), line 25 invokes static method createRealizedPlayer of class Manager to create and realize a Player that plays the media file. When a Player realizes, it identifies the system resources it needs to play the media. Depending on the file, realizing can be a resource-consuming and time-consuming process. Method createRealizedPlayer throws three checked exceptions, NoPlayerException, CannotRealizeException and IOException. A NoPlayerException indicates that the system could not find a player that can play the file format. A CannotRealizeException indicates that the system could not properly identify the resources a media file needs. An IOException indicates that there was an error while reading the file. These exceptions are handled in the catch block in lines 3950.

Line 28 invokes method getVisualComponent of Player to get a Component that displays the visual (generally video) aspect of the media file. Line 29 invokes method getControlPanelComponent of Player to get a Component that provides playback and media controls. These components are assigned to local variables
Video and control, respectively. The if statements in lines 31-32 and lines 34-35 add the video and the controls if they exist. The video Component is added to the CENTER region (line 32), so it fills any available space on the JPanel. The controls Component, which is added to the SOUTH region, typically provides the following controls:

1. A positioning slider to jump to certain points in the media clip.
2. A pause button.
3. A volume button that provides volume control by right clicking and a mute function by left clicking.
4. A media properties button that provides detailed media information by left clicking and frame rate control by right clicking.

Line 37 calls Player method start to begin playing the media file. Lines 39-50 handle the various exceptions that createRealizedPlayer throws.

The application in Fig. 21.7 displays a JFileChooser dialog for the user to choose a media file. It then creates a MediaPanel that plays the selected file and creates a JFrame to display the MediaPanel.

Figure 21.7. Test application that creates a MediaPanel from a user-selected file.
(This item is displayed on pages 996 - 997 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 21.7: MediaTest.java
// A simple media player
import java.io.File;
import java.net.MalformedURLException;
import java.net.URL;
import javax.swing.JFileChooser;
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class MediaTest {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        // launch the application
        // create a file chooser
        JFileChooser fileChooser = new JFileChooser();
        // show open file dialog
    }
}```
int result = fileChooser.showOpenDialog( null );

if ( result == JFileChooser.APPROVE_OPTION ) // user chose a file
{
    URL mediaURL = null;

    try
    {
        // get the file as URL
        mediaURL = fileChooser.getSelectedFile().toURL();
    } // end try
    catch ( MalformedURLException malformedURLException )
    {
        System.err.println( "Could not create URL for the file" );
    } // end catch

    if ( mediaURL != null ) // only display if there is a valid URL
    {
        JFrame mediaTest = new JFrame( "Media Tester" );
        mediaTest.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        MediaPanel mediaPanel = new MediaPanel( mediaURL );
        mediaTest.add( mediaPanel );
        mediaTest.setSize( 300, 300 );
        mediaTest.setVisible( true );
    } // end inner if
} // end outer if
} // end main
} // end class MediaTest

[View full size image]
Method `main` (lines 1246) assigns a new `JFileChooser` to local variable `fileChooser` (line 15), shows an open file dialog (line 18) and assigns the return value to `result`. Line 20 checks `result` to determine whether the user chose a file. To create a `Player` to play the selected media file, you must convert the `File` object returned by `JFileChooser` to a `URL` object. Method `toURL` of class `File` returns a `URL` that points to the `File` on the system, possibly throwing a `MalformedURLException` if it cannot create a `URL` object for the `File`. The `try` statement (lines 2432) creates a `URL` for the selected file and assigns it to `mediaURL`. The `if` statement in lines
3444 checks that mediaURL is not null and creates the GUI components to play the media.
21.7. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned how to make applications more exciting by including sound, images, graphics and video. We introduced Java's multimedia capabilities, including the Java Media Framework API, Java Sound API and Java 3D API. You used classes `Image` and `ImageIcon` to display and manipulate images stored in files, and you learned about the different image formats supported by Java. You created animation by displaying a series of images in a specific order. You used image maps to make an application more interactive. You then learned how to load audio clips, and how to play them either once or in a continuous loop. The chapter concluded with a demonstration of loading and playing video. In the next chapter, you will continue your study of GUI concepts, building on the techniques you learned in Chapter 11.
21.8. Internet and Web Resources

www.nasa.gov/multimedia/highlights/index.html

The NASA Multimedia Gallery contains a wide variety of images, audio clips and video clips that you can download and use to test your Java multimedia programs.

sunsite.tus.ac.jp/multimed

The Sunsite Japan Multimedia Collection also provides a wide variety of images, audio clips and video clips that you can download for educational purposes.


The Australian National Botanic Gardens Web site provides links to the sounds of many animals. Try, for example, the Common Birds link under the "Animals in the Gardens" section.

www.thefreesite.com

TheFreeSite.com has links to free sounds and clip art.

www.soundcentral.com

SoundCentral provides audio clips in WAV, AU, AIFF and MIDI formats.

www.animationfactory.com

The Animation Factory provides thousands of free GIF animations for personal use.

www.clipart.com

ClipArt.com is a subscription-based service for images and sounds.

www.pngart.com

PNGART.com provides over 50,000 free images in PNG format.

java.sun.com/developer/techDocs/hi/repository

The Java look and feel Graphics Repository provides images designed for use in
a Swing GUI, including toolbar button images.

www.freebyte.com/graphicprograms

This guide contains links to several free graphics software programs. The software can be used to modify images and draw graphics.

graphicssoft.about.com/od/pixelbasedfreewin

This site provides links for free graphics programs designed for use on Windows machines.

Java Multimedia API References

java.sun.com/products/java-media/jmf

This is the Java Media Framework (JMF) API home page. Here you can download the latest Sun implementation of the JMF. The site also contains the documentation for the JMF.

java.sun.com/products/java-media/sound

The Java Sound API home page. Java Sound provides capabilities for playing and recording audio.

java.sun.com/products/java-media/3D

The Java 3D API home page. This API can be used to produce three-dimensional images typical of today's video games.

java.sun.com/developer/onlineTraining/java3d

This site provides a Java 3D API tutorial.

java.sun.com/products/java-media/jai

The Java Advanced Imaging API home page. This API provides image-processing capabilities, such as contrast enhancement, cropping, scaling and geometric warping.

java.sun.com/products/java-media/speech
The *Java Speech API* enables programs to perform speech synthesis and speech recognition.

[freetts.sourceforge.net/docs/index.php](http://freetts.sourceforge.net/docs/index.php)

*FreeTTS* is an implementation of the Java Speech API.

[java.sun.com/products/java-media/2D](http://java.sun.com/products/java-media/2D)

This is the *Java 2D API* home page. This API (introduced in Chapter 12) provides complex two-dimensional graphics capabilities.

[java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.2/docs/guide/imageio](http://java.sun.com/j2se/1.4.2/docs/guide/imageio)

This site contains a guide to the *Java Image I/O API*, which enables programs to load and save images using formats that are not currently supported by the Java APIs.
Summary

- **Applet method getImage** loads an **Image**.

- **Applet method getDocumentBase** returns the location of the applet's HTML file on the Internet as an object of class **URL**.

- Java supports several image formats, including Graphics Interchange Format (GIF), Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) and Portable Network Graphics (PNG). The file names for these types end with `.gif`, `.jpg` (or `.jpeg`) and `.png`, respectively.

- **Class ImageIcon** provides constructors that allow an **ImageIcon** object to be initialized with an image from the local computer or stored on a Web server on the Internet.

- **Graphics method drawImage** accepts four arguments: a reference to the **Image** object in which the image is stored, the x- and y-coordinates where the image should be displayed and a reference to an **ImageObserver** object.

- Another version of **Graphics method drawImage** outputs a scaled image. The fourth and fifth arguments specify the width and height of the image for display purposes.

- **Interface ImageObserver** is implemented by class **Component**. **ImageObservers** receive notifications as an **Image** is loaded and update the image on the screen if it was not complete when it was displayed.

- **ImageIcon method paintIcon** displays the **ImageIcon's** image. The method requires four arguments: a reference to the **Component** on which the image will be displayed, a reference to the Graphics object used to render the image, the x-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the image and the y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the image.

- A **URL** object represents a Uniform Resource Locator, which is as a pointer to a resource on the World Wide Web, on your computer or on any networked machine.
Timer objects generate ActionEvents at fixed intervals in milliseconds. The Timer constructor receives two arguments: the delay in milliseconds and the ActionListener. Timer method start indicates that the Timer should start generating events. Timer method stop indicates that the Timer should stop generating events. Timer method restart indicates that the Timer should start generating events again.

An image map is an image that has hot areas that the user can click to accomplish a task, such as loading a different Web page into a browser.

Applet method play has two forms:

```java
public void play( URL location, String soundFileName );
public void play( URL soundURL );
```

One version loads the audio clip stored in file soundFileName from location and plays the sound. The other version takes a URL that contains the location and the file name of the audio clip.

Applet method getDocumentBase indicates the location of the HTML file that loaded the applet. Method getCodeBase indicates where the .class file for an applet is located.

The sound engine that plays audio clips supports several audio file formats, including Sun Audio file format (.au extension), Windows Wave file format (.wav extension), Macintosh AIFF file format (.aif or .aiff extension) and Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) file format (.mid or .rmi extensions). The Java Media Framework (JMF) supports additional formats.

Applet method getAudioClip has two forms that take the same arguments as the play method. Method getAudioClip returns a reference to an AudioClip. AudioClips have three methods: play, loop and stop. Method play plays the audio clip once. Method loop continuously loops the audio clip. Method stop terminates an audio clip that is currently playing.

Sun Microsystems, Intel and Silicon Graphics worked together to produce the Java Media Framework (JMF).

Package javax.media and its subpackages contain the classes that compose
Class `Manager` declares utility methods for accessing system resources to play and to manipulate media.

Method `toURL` of class `File` returns a `URL` that points to the `File` on the system.
Terminology

.aif file extension

.aiff file extension

.au file extension

audio clip

AudioClip interface

.avi file extension

CannotRealizePlayerException exception

createRealizedPlayer method of class Manager

Dimension class

drawImage method of class Graphics

Future Splash (.spl) files

getAudioClip method of class Applet

getCodeBase method of class Applet

getControlPanelComponent method of interface Player

getDocumentBase method of class Applet

getImage method of class Applet

getMinimumSize method of class Component
getPreferredSize method of class Component

getVisualComponent method of interface Player

gif file extension

Graphics class

Graphics Interchange Format (GIF)

hot area

Image class

image map

ImageIcon class

ImageObserver interface

Java 3D API

Java Advanced Imaging API

Java Image I/O API

Java Media Framework (JMF) API

Java Sound API

Java Speech API

javax.media package

Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG)

.jpeg file extension

.jpg file extension
constant of class Manager

loop method of interface AudioClip

Macintosh AIFF file format (.aif or .aiff extension)

Macromedia Flash 2 movies (.swf)

Manager class

Microsoft Audio/Video Interleave (.avi) file

.mid file extension

.mov file extension

.mp3 file extension

.mpeg file extension

MPEG Layer 3 Audio (.mp3) files

MPEG-1 videos (.mpeg, .mpg)

.mpq file extension

multimedia

Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) file format (.mid or .rmi extension)

NoPlayerException exception

paintIcon method of class ImageIcon

play method of class Applet
Player interface

Portable Network Graphics (PNG)

QuickTime (.mov) files

.rmi file extension

setHint method of class Manager

showStatus method of class Applet

sound

sound engine

.spl file extension

start method of interface Player

stop method of class Timer

stop method of interface AudioClip

Sun Audio file format (.au extension)

.swf file extension

toURL method of class File

URL class

video

.wav file extension
Windows Wave file format (\texttt{.wav} extension)
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Applet method __________ loads an image into an applet.
2. Graphics method __________ displays an image on an applet.
3. Java provides two mechanisms for playing sounds in an applet the Applet's play method and the play method of the __________ interface.
4. A(n) __________ is an image that has hot areas that the user can click to accomplish a task such as loading a Web page.
5. Method __________ of class ImageIcon displays the ImageIcon's image.
6. Java supports several image formats, including __________, __________ and __________.

Determine whether each of the following statements is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. A sound is marked for garbage collection after it plays.
2. Class ImageIcon provides constructors that allow an ImageIcon object to be initialized only with an image from the local computer.
3. Method play of class AudioClip continuously loops an audio clip.
4. The Java Image I/O API is used for adding 3D graphics to a Java application.
5. Applet method getDocumentBase returns, as an object of class URL, the location on the Internet of the HTML file that invoked the applet.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises


21.2 a) True. b) False. ImageIcon can load images from the Internet as well. c) False. Method play of class AudioClip plays an audio clip once. Method loop of class AudioClip continuously loops an audio clip. d) False. The Java 3D API is used for creating and modifying 3D graphics. The Java Image I/O API is used for reading from and outputting images to files. e) True.
Exercises

21.3 Describe how to make an animation "browser friendly."

21.4 Describe the Java methods for playing and manipulating audio clips.

21.5 Explain how image maps are used. List several examples of their use.

(Randomly Erasing an Image) Suppose an image is displayed in a rectangular screen area. One way to erase the image is simply to set every pixel to the same color immediately, but this is a dull visual effect. Write a Java program that displays an image and then erases it by using random-number generation to select individual pixels to erase. After most of the image is erased, erase all the remaining pixels at once. You can draw individual pixels as a line that starts and ends at the same coordinates. You might try several variants of this problem. For example, you might display lines randomly or display shapes randomly to erase regions of the screen.

(Text Flasher) Create a Java program that repeatedly flashes text on the screen. Do this by alternating the text with a plain background-color image. Allow the user to control the "blink speed" and the background color or pattern. You will need to use methods `getDelay` and `setDelay` of class `Timer`. These methods are used to retrieve and set the interval in milliseconds between `ActionEvents`, respectively.

21.8 (Image Flasher) Create a Java program that repeatedly flashes an image on the screen. Do this by alternating the image with a plain background-color image.

21.9 (Digital Clock) Implement a program that displays a digital clock on the screen.

(Calling Attention to an Image) If you want to emphasize an image, you might place a row of simulated light bulbs around it. You can let the light bulbs flash in unison or fire on and off in sequence one after the other.

21.11 (Image Zooming) Create a program that enables you to zoom in on or out from an image.
Special Section: Challenging Multimedia Projects

The preceding exercises are keyed to the text and designed to test the reader's understanding of fundamental multimedia concepts. This section includes a collection of advanced multimedia projects. The reader should find these problems challenging, yet entertaining. The problems vary considerably in difficulty. Some require an hour or two of program writing and implementation. Others are useful for lab assignments that might require two or three weeks of study and implementation. Some are challenging term projects. [Note to Instructors: Solutions are not provided for these exercises.]

21.12 (Animation) Create a general-purpose Java animation program. It should allow the user to specify the sequence of frames to be displayed, the speed at which the images are displayed, audios to be played while the animation is running and so on.

21.13 (Limericks) Modify the limerick-writing program you wrote in Exercise 10.10 to sing the limericks your program creates.

21.14 (Random Interimage Transition) This provides a nice visual effect. If you are displaying one image in a given area on the screen and you would like to transition to another image in the same area, store the new screen image in an off-screen buffer and randomly copy pixels from it to the display area, overlaying the pixels already at those locations. When the vast majority of the pixels have been copied, copy the entire new image to the display area to be sure you are displaying the complete new image. To implement this program, you may need to use the PixelGrabber and MemoryImageSource classes (see the Java API documentation for descriptions of these classes). You might try several variants of this problem. For example, try selecting all the pixels in a randomly selected straight line or shape in the new image, and overlay them above the corresponding positions of the old image.

21.15 (Background Audio) Add background audio to one of your favorite applications by using the loop method of class AudioClip to play the sound in the background while you interact with your application in the normal way.

21.16 (Scrolling Marquee Sign) Create a Java program that scrolls dotted characters from right to left (or from left to right if that is appropriate for your language) across a marquee-like display sign. As an option, display the text in a continuous loop, so that after the text disappears at one end, it reappears at the other.

21.17 (Scrolling Image Marquee) Create a Java program that scrolls an image across a marquee screen.

21.18 (Analog Clock) Create a Java program that displays an analog clock with hour, minute and second hands that move appropriately as the time changes.
21.19 (Dynamic Audio and Graphical Kaleidoscope) Write a kaleidoscope program that displays reflected graphics to simulate the popular children's toy. Incorporate audio effects that "mirror" your program's dynamically changing graphics.

21.20 (Automatic Jigsaw Puzzle Generator) Create a Java jigsaw puzzle generator and manipulator. The user specifies an image. Your program loads and displays the image, then breaks it into randomly selected shapes and shuffles them. The user then uses the mouse to move the pieces around to solve the puzzle. Add appropriate audio sounds as the pieces are moved around and snapped back into place. You might keep tabs on each piece and where it really belong then use audio effects to help the user get the pieces into the correct positions.

21.21 (Maze Generator and Walker) Develop a multimedia-based maze generator and traverser program based on the maze programs you wrote in Exercise 15.20 Exercise 15.22. Let the user customize the maze by specifying the number of rows and columns and by indicating the level of difficulty. Have an animated mouse walk the maze. Use audio to dramatize the movement of your mouse character.

21.22 (One-Armed Bandit) Develop a multimedia simulation of a "one-armed bandit." Have three spinning wheels. Place images of various fruits and symbols on each wheel. Use true random-number generation to simulate the spinning of each wheel and the stopping of each wheel on a symbol.

21.23 (Horse Race) Create a Java simulation of a horse race. Have multiple contenders. Use audios for a race announcer. Play the appropriate audios to indicate the correct status of each contender throughout the race. Use audios to announce the final results. You might try to simulate the kinds of horse-racing games that are often played at carnivals. The players take turns at the mouse and have to perform some skill-oriented manipulation with it to advance their horses.

21.24 (Shuffleboard) Develop a multimedia-based simulation of the game of shuffleboard. Use appropriate audio and visual effects.

21.25 (Game of Pool) Create a multimedia-based simulation of the game of pool. Each player takes turns using the mouse to position a pool cue and hit it against the ball at the appropriate angle to try to make other balls fall into the pockets. Your program should keep score.

21.26 (Artist) Design a Java art program that will give an artist a great variety of capabilities to draw, use images and use animations to create a dynamic multimedia art display.

21.27 (Fireworks Designer) Create a Java program that someone might use to create a fireworks display. Create a variety of fireworks demonstrations. Then orchestrate the firing of the fireworks for maximum effect.

21.28 (Floor Planner) Develop a Java program that will help someone arrange furniture in a home. Add features that enable the person to achieve the best possible arrangement.

21.29 (Crossword) Crossword puzzles are among the most popular pastimes. Develop a multimedia-based crossword-puzzle program. Your program should enable the player to place and erase words easily. Tie your program to a large computerized dictionary. Your program also should be able to suggest words on which letters have already been filled in. Provide other features that will make the crossword-puzzle enthusiast's job easier.
(15 Puzzle) Write a multimedia-based Java program that enables the user to play the game of 15. The game is played on a 4-by-4 board for a total of 16 slots. One slot is empty, the others are occupied by 15 tiles numbered 1 through 15. Any tile next to the currently empty slot can be moved into that slot by clicking on the tile. Your program should create the board with the tiles out of order. The goal is to arrange the tiles into sequential order, row by row.

(Reaction Time/Reaction Precision Tester) Create a Java program that moves a randomly created shape around the screen. The user moves the mouse to catch and click on the shape. The shape's speed and size can be varied. Keep statistics on how much time the user typically takes to catch a shape of a given size. The user will probably have more difficulty catching faster-moving, smaller shapes.

(Calendar/Tickler File) Using both audio and images, create a general-purpose calendar and "tickler" file. For example, the program should sing "Happy Birthday" when you use it on your birthday. Have the program display images and play audios associated with important events. Also, have the program remind you in advance of these important events. It would be nice, for example, to have the program give you a week's notice so you can pick up an appropriate greeting card for that special person.

(Rotating Images) Create a Java program that lets you rotate an image through some number of degrees (out of a maximum of 360 degrees). The program should let you specify that you want to spin the image continuously. It should let you adjust the spin speed dynamically.

(Coloring Black-and-White Photographs and Images) Create a Java program that lets you paint a black-and-white photograph with color. Provide a color palette for selecting colors. Your program should let you apply different colors to different regions of the image.

(Multimedia-Based Simpletron Simulator) Modify the Simpletron simulator that you developed in the exercises in the previous chapters (Exercise 7.34, Exercise 7.36, and Exercise 17.26, Exercise 17.30) to include multimedia features. Add computer-like sounds to indicate that the Simpletron is executing instructions. Add a breaking-glass sound when a fatal error occurs. Use flashing lights to indicate which cells of memory or which registers are currently being manipulated. Use other multimedia techniques, as appropriate, to make your Simpletron simulator more valuable to its users as an educational tool.
An actor entering through the door, you've got nothing. But if he enters through the window, you've got a situation.

Billy Wilder

...the force of events wakes slumberous talents.

Edward Hoagland

You and I would see more interesting photography if they would stop worrying, and instead, apply horsesense to the problem of recording the look and feel of their own era.

Jessie Tarbox Beals

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- To create and manipulate sliders, menus, pop-up menus and windows.
- To change the look-and-feel of a GUI, using Swing's pluggable look-and-feel.
- To create a multiple-document interface with `JDesktopPane` and `JInternalFrame`.
- To use additional layout managers.

Outline

22.1 Introduction

22.2 JSlider

22.3 Windows: Additional Notes

22.4 Using Menus with Frames
22.5 JPopupMenu

22.6 Pluggable Look-and-Feel

22.7 JDesktopPane and JInternalFrame

22.8 JTabbedPane

22.9 Layout Managers: BoxLayout and GridBagLayout

22.10 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
22.1. Introduction

In this chapter, we continue our study of GUIs. We discuss additional components and layout managers and lay the groundwork for building more complex GUIs.

We begin our discussion with menus that enable the user to effectively perform tasks in the program. The look-and-feel of a Swing GUI can be uniform across all platforms on which a Java program executes, or the GUI can be customized by using Swing's pluggable look-and-feel (PLAF). We provide an example that illustrates how to change between Swing's default metal look-and-feel (which looks and behaves the same across platforms), a look-and-feel that simulates Motif (a popular UNIX look-and-feel) and one that simulates Microsoft's Windows look-and-feel.

Many of today's applications use a multiple-document interface (MDI) a main window (often called the parent window) containing other windows (often called child windows) to manage several open documents in parallel. For example, many e-mail programs allow you to have several e-mail windows open at the same time so that you can compose or read multiple e-mail messages. We demonstrate Swing's classes for creating multiple-document interfaces. The chapter finishes with a series of examples discussing additional layout managers for organizing graphical user interfaces.

Swing is a large and complex topic. There are many more GUI components and capabilities than can be presented here. Several more Swing GUI components are introduced in the remaining chapters of this book as they are needed. Our book Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program discusses other, more advanced Swing components and capabilities.
22.2. JSlider

JSliders enable the user to select from a range of integer values. Class JSlider inherits from JComponent. Figure 22.1 shows a horizontal JSlider with tick marks and the thumb that allows the user to select a value. JSliders can be customized to display major tick marks, minor tick marks and labels for the tick marks. They also support snap-to ticks, which cause the thumb to snap to the closest tick mark when it is positioned between two tick marks.

Figure 22.1. JSlider component with horizontal orientation.

Most Swing GUI components support user interactions through the mouse and the keyboard. For example, if a JSlider has the focus (i.e., it is the currently selected GUI component in the user interface), the left arrow key and right arrow key cause the thumb of the JSlider to decrease or increase by 1, respectively. The down arrow key and up arrow key also cause the thumb of the JSlider to decrease or increase by 1 tick, respectively. The PgDn (page down) key and PgUp (page up) key cause the thumb of the JSlider to decrease or increase by block increments of one-tenth of the range of values, respectively. The Home key moves the thumb to the minimum value of the JSlider, and the End key moves the thumb to the maximum value of the JSlider.

JSliders have either a horizontal orientation or a vertical orientation. For a horizontal JSlider, the minimum value is at the left end of the JSlider and the maximum is at the right end. For a vertical JSlider, the minimum value is at the bottom and the maximum is at the top. The minimum and maximum value positions on a JSlider can be reversed by invoking JSlider method setInverted with boolean argument true. The relative position of the thumb indicates the current value of the JSlider.
The program in Fig. 22.2, Fig. 22.3 and Fig. 22.4 allows the user to size a circle drawn on a subclass of JPanel called OvalPanel (Fig. 22.2). The user specifies the diameter of the circle with a horizontal JSlider. Class OvalPanel is a subclass of JPanel that knows how to draw a circle on itself, using its own instance variable diameter to determine the diameter of the circle. The diameter is used as the width and height of the bounding box in which the circle is displayed. The diameter value is set when the user interacts with the JSlider. The event handler calls method setDiameter in class OvalPanel to set the diameter and calls repaint to draw the new circle. The repaint call results in a call to OvalPanel's paintComponent method.

Figure 22.2. JPanel subclass for drawing circles of a specified diameter.
(This item is displayed on page 1008 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 22.2: OvalPanel.java
// A customized JPanel class.
import java.awt.Graphics;
import java.awt.Dimension;
import javax.swing.JPanel;

public class OvalPanel extends JPanel
{
    private int diameter = 10; // default diameter of 10

    // draw an oval of the specified diameter
    public void paintComponent(Graphics g)
    {
        super.paintComponent(g);
        g.fillOval(10, 10, diameter, diameter); // draw circle
    } // end method paintComponent

    // validate and set diameter, then repaint
    public void setDiameter(int newDiameter)
    {
        // if diameter invalid, default to 10
        diameter = (newDiameter >= 0 ? newDiameter : 10);
        repaint(); // repaint panel
    } // end method setDiameter

    // used by layout manager to determine preferred size
    public Dimension getPreferredSize()
    {
        return new Dimension(200, 200);
    } // end method getPreferredSize

    // used by layout manager to determine minimum size
    public Dimension getMinimumSize()
    {
        return getPreferredSize();
    }
```
Figure 22.3. **JSlider** value used to determine the diameter of a circle.

(This item is displayed on page 1009 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 22.3: SliderFrame.java
// Using JSliders to size an oval.
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.Color;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JSlider;
import javax.swing.SwingConstants;
import javax.swing.event.ChangeListener;
import javax.swing.event.ChangeEvent;

class SliderFrame extends JFrame {
    private JSlider diameterJSlider; // slider to select diameter
    private OvalPanel myPanel; // panel to draw circle

    // no-argument constructor
    public SliderFrame() {
        super ("Slider Demo");

        myPanel = new OvalPanel(); // create panel to draw circle
        myPanel.setBackground( Color.YELLOW ); // set background to yellow

        // set up JSlider to control diameter value
        diameterJSlider =
            new JSlider( SwingConstants.HORIZONTAL, 0, 200, 10 );
        diameterJSlider.setMajorTickSpacing( 10 ); // create tick every 10
        diameterJSlider.setPaintTicks( true ); // paint ticks on slider

        // register JSlider event listener
        diameterJSlider.addChangeListener(
            new ChangeListener() // anonymous inner class
            {
                // handle change in slider value
                public void stateChanged( ChangeEvent e )
                {
                    myPanel.setDiameter( diameterJSlider.getValue() );
                } // end method stateChanged
            }); // end call to addChangeListener

        add( diameterJSlider, BorderLayout.SOUTH ); // add slider to frame
        add( myPanel, BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add panel to frame
    } // end SliderFrame constructor
} // end class SliderFrame
```
Figure 22.4. Test class for SliderFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 1010 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 22.4: SliderDemo.java
// Testing SliderFrame.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class SliderDemo
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        SliderFrame sliderFrame = new SliderFrame();
        sliderFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        sliderFrame.setSize( 220, 270 ); // set frame size
        sliderFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class SliderDemo
```

Class OvalPanel (Fig. 22.2) contains a paintComponent method (lines 1217) that draws a filled oval (a circle in this example), a setDiameter method (lines 2025) that changes the circle's diameter and repaints the OvalPanel, a getPreferredSize method (lines 2831) that returns the preferred width and height of an OvalPanel and a getMinimumSize method (lines 3437) that returns an OvalPanel's minimum width and height.
Look-and-Feel Observation 22.1

If a new GUI component has a minimum width and height (i.e., smaller dimensions would render the component ineffective on the display), override method `getMinimumSize` to return the minimum width and height as an instance of class `Dimension`.

Software Engineering Observation 22.1

For many GUI components, method `getMinimumSize` is implemented to return the result of a call to the component's `getPreferredSize` method.

Class `SliderFrame` (Fig. 22.3) creates the `JSlider` that controls the diameter of the circle. Class `SliderFrame`'s constructor (lines 1745) creates `OvalPanel` object `myPanel` (line 21) and sets its background color (line 22). Lines 2526 create `JSlider` object `diameter-Slider` to control the diameter of the circle drawn on the `OvalPanel`. The `JSlider` constructor takes four arguments. The first argument specifies the orientation of `diameterSlider`, which is `HORIZONTAL` (a constant in interface `SwingConstants`). The second and third arguments indicate the minimum and maximum integer values in the range of values for this `JSlider`. The last argument indicates that the initial value of the `JSlider` (i.e., where the thumb is displayed) should be 10.

Lines 2728 customize the appearance of the `JSlider`. Method `setMajorTickSpacing` indicates that each major-tick mark represents 10 values in the range of values supported by the `JSlider`. Method `setPaintTicks` with a `true` argument indicates that the tick marks should be displayed (they are not displayed by default). For other methods that are used to customize a `JSlider`'s appearance, see the `JSlider` on-line documentation (java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/javax/swing/JSlider.html).
JSliders generate **ChangeEvent**s (package `javax.swing.event`) in response to user interactions. An object of a class that implements interface `ChangeListener` (package `javax.swing.event`) and declares method `stateChanged` can respond to ChangeEvents. Lines 3141 register a `ChangeListener` to handle `diameterSlider`'s events. When method `stateChanged` (lines 3639) is called in response to a user interaction, line 38 calls `myPanel`'s `setDiameter` method and passes the current value of the `JSlider` as an argument. `JSlider` method `getValue` returns the current thumb position.
22.3. Windows: Additional Notes

In this section, we discuss several important JFrame issues. A JFrame is a window with a title bar and a border. Class JFrame is a subclass of java.awt.Frame (which is a subclass of java.awt.Window). As such, JFrame is one of the few Swing GUI components that is not a lightweight GUI component. When you display a window from a Java program, the window is provided by the local platform's windowing toolkit, and therefore the window will look like every other window displayed on that platform. When a Java application executes on a Macintosh and displays a window, the window's title bar and borders will look like those of other Macintosh applications. When a Java application executes on a Microsoft Windows system and displays a window, the window's title bar and borders will look like those of other Microsoft Windows applications. And when a Java application executes on a Unix platform and displays a window, the window's title bar and borders will look like other Unix applications on that platform.

Class JFrame supports three operations when the user closes the window. By default, a window is hidden (i.e., removed from the screen) when the user closes it. This can be controlled with JFrame method setDefaultCloseOperation. Interface WindowConstants (package javax.swing), which class JFrame implements, declares three constants for use with this method: DISPOSE_ON_CLOSE, DO NOTHING ON CLOSE and HIDE ON CLOSE (the default). Some platforms allow only a limited number of windows to be displayed on the screen. Thus, a window is a valuable resource that should be given back to the system when it is no longer needed. Class Window (an indirect superclass of JFrame) declares method dispose for this purpose. When a Window is no longer needed in an application, you should explicitly dispose of it. This can be done by calling the Window's dispose method or by calling method setDefaultCloseOperation with the argument WindowConstants.DISPOSE_ON_CLOSE. Terminating an application will return window resources to the system. Setting the default close operation to DO NOTHING ON CLOSE indicates that the program will determine what to do when the user indicates that the window should be closed.

[Page 1011]

Good Programming Practice 22.1
Windows are an expensive system resource. Return them to the system when they are no longer needed.

By default, a window is not displayed on the screen until the program invokes the window's `setVisible` method (inherited from class `java.awt.Component`) with a `true` argument. A window's size should be set with a call to method `setSize` (inherited from class `java.awt.Component`). The position of a window when it appears on the screen is specified with method `setLocation` (inherited from class `java.awt.Component`).

**Common Programming Error 22.1**

Forgetting to call method `setVisible` on a window is a runtime logic error—the window is not displayed.

**Common Programming Error 22.2**

Forgetting to call the `setSize` method on a window is a runtime logic error—only the title bar appears.

When the user manipulates the window, this action generates window events. Event listeners are registered for window events with `Window` method `addWindowListener`. Interface `WindowListener` provides seven window-event-handling methods: `window-Activated` (called when the user makes a window the active window), `windowClosed` (called after the window is closed), `windowClosing` (called when the user initiates closing of the window), `windowDeactivated` (called when the user makes another window the active window), `windowDeiconified` (called when the user restores a window from...
being minimized), **windowIconified** (called when the user minimizes a window) and **windowOpened** (called when a program first displays a window on the screen).
22.4. Using Menus with Frames

Menus are an integral part of GUIs. Menus allow the user to perform actions without unnecessarily cluttering a GUI with extra components. In Swing GUIs, menus can be attached only to objects of the classes that provide method `setJMenuBar`. Two such classes are JFrame and JApplet. The classes used to declare menus are JMenuBar, JMenu, JMenuItem, JCheckBoxMenuItem and class JRadioButtonMenuItem.

---

Look-and-Feel Observation 22.2

Menus simplify GUIs because components can be hidden within them. These components will only be visible when the user looks for them by selecting the menu.

Class JMenuBar (a subclass of JComponent) contains the methods necessary to manage a menu bar, which is a container for menus. Class JMenu (a subclass of javax.swing.JMenuItem) contains the methods necessary for managing menus. Menus contain menu items and are added to menu bars or to other menus as submenus. When a menu is clicked, it expands to show its list of menu items.

Class JMenuItem (a subclass of javax.swing.AbstractButton) contains the methods necessary to manage menu items. A menu item is a GUI component inside a menu that, when selected, causes an action event. A menu item can be used to initiate an action or it can be a submenu that provides more menu items from which the user can select. Submenus are useful for grouping related menu items in a menu.

Class JCheckBoxMenuItem (a subclass of javax.swing.JMenuItem) contains the methods necessary to manage menu items that can be toggled on or off. When a JCheckBoxMenuItem is selected, a check appears to the left of the menu item. When the JCheckBoxMenuItem is selected again, the check is removed.
Class **JRadioButtonMenuItem** (a subclass of javax.swing.JMenuItem) contains the methods necessary to manage menu items that can be toggled on or off like JCheckBoxMenuItems. When multiple JRadioButtonMenuItems are maintained as part of a ButtonGroup, only one item in the group can be selected at a given time. When a JRadioButtonMenuItem is selected, a filled circle appears to the left of the menu item. When another JRadioButtonMenuItem is selected, the filled circle of the previously selected menu item is removed.

The application in **Fig. 22.5** and **Fig. 22.6** demonstrates various menu items. The application also demonstrates how to specify special characters called mnemonics that can provide quick access to a menu or menu item from the keyboard. Mnemonics can be used with all subclasses of javax.swing.AbstractButton.

---

**Figure 22.5. JMenus and mnemonics.**
(This item is displayed on pages 1012 - 1016 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 22.5: MenuFrame.java
// Demonstrating menus.
import java.awt.Color;
import java.awt.Font;
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import java.awt.event.ItemListener;
import java.awt.event.ItemEvent;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JRadioButtonMenuItem;
import javax.swing.JCheckBoxMenuItem;
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
import javax.swing.JLabel;
import javax.swing.SwingConstants;
import javax.swing.ButtonGroup;
import javax.swing.JMenu;
import javax.swing.JMenuItem;
import javax.swing.JMenuBar;

public class MenuFrame extends JFrame {

    private final Color colorValues[] = {
        Color.BLACK, Color.BLUE, Color.RED, Color.GREEN
    };
    private JRadioButtonMenuItem colorItems[]; // color menu items
    private JRadioButtonMenuItem fonts[]; // font menu items
    private JCheckBoxMenuItem styleItems[]; // font style menu items
    private JLabel displayJLabel; // displays sample text
    private ButtonGroup fontButtonGroup; // manages font menu items
    private ButtonGroup colorButtonGroup; // manages color menu items
```
private int style; // used to create style for font

// no-argument constructor set up GUI
public MenuFrame()
{
    super ( "Using JMenus" );

    JMenu fileMenu = new JMenu( "File" ); // create file menu
    fileMenu.setMnemonic ( 'F' ); // set mnemonic to F

    // create About... menu item
    JMenuItem aboutItem = new JMenuItem( "About..." );
    aboutItem.setMnemonic( 'A' ); // set mnemonic to A
    fileMenu.add( aboutItem ); // add about item to file menu
    aboutItem.addActionListener(
        new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
        {
            // display message dialog when user selects About...
            public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
            {
                JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( MenuFrame.this,
                    "This is an example\nof using menus",
                    "About", JOptionPane.PLAIN_MESSAGE );
            } // end method actionPerformed
        } // end anonymous inner class
    ); // end call to addActionListener

    JMenuItem exitItem = new JMenuItem( "Exit" ); // create exit item
    exitItem.setMnemonic( 'x' ); // set mnemonic to x
    fileMenu.add( exitItem ); // add exit item to file menu
    exitItem.addActionListener(
        new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
        {
            // terminate application when user clicks exitItem
            public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
            {
                System.exit( 0 ); // exit application
            } // end method actionPerformed
        } // end anonymous inner class
    ); // end call to addActionListener

    JMenuBar bar = new JMenuBar(); // create menu bar
    setJMenuBar( bar ); // add menu bar to application
    bar.add( fileMenu ); // add file menu to menu bar

    JMenu formatMenu = new JMenu( "Format" ); // create format menu
    formatMenu.setMnemonic( 'r' ); // set mnemonic to r

    // array listing string colors
    String colors[] = { "Black", "Blue", "Red", "Green" };

    JMenu colorMenu = new JMenu( "Color" ); // create color menu
    colorMenu.setMnemonic( 'C' ); // set mnemonic to C

    // create radiobutton menu items for colors
    colorItems = new JRadioButtonMenuItem[ colors.length ];
    colorButtonGroup = new ButtonGroup(); // manages colors
    ItemHandler itemHandler = new ItemHandler(); // handler for colors
// create color radio button menu items
for ( int count = 0 ; count < colors.length; count++ )
{
    colorItems[ count ] =
        new JRadioButtonMenuItem( colors[ count ] ); // create item
    colorMenu.add( colorItems[ count ] ); // add item to color menu
    colorButtonGroup.add( colorItems[ count ] ); // add to group
    colorItems[ count ].addActionListener( itemHandler );
}
// end for

colorItems[ 0 ].setSelected( true ); // select first Color item

formatMenu.add( colorMenu ); // add color menu to format menu
formatMenu.addSeparator(); // add separator in menu

// array listing font names
String fontNames[] = { "Serif", "Monospaced", "SansSerif" };
JMenu fontMenu = new JMenu( "Font" ); // create font menu
fontMenu.setMnemonic( 'n' ); // set mnemonic to n

// create radiobutton menu items for font names
fonts = new JRadioButtonMenuItem[ fontNames.length ];
fontButtonGroup = new ButtonGroup(); // manages font names

// create Font radio button menu items
for ( int count = 0 ; count < fonts.length; count++ )
{
    fonts[ count ] = new JRadioButtonMenuItem( fontNames[ count ] );
    fontMenu.add( fonts[ count ] ); // add font to font menu
    fontButtonGroup.add( fonts[ count ] ); // add to button group
    fonts[ count ].addActionListener( itemHandler ); // add handler
}
// end for

fonts[ 0 ].setSelected( true ); // select first Font menu item
fontMenu.addSeparator(); // add separator bar to font menu

String styleNames[] = { "Bold", "Italic" }; // names of styles
styleItems = new JCheckBoxMenuItem[ styleNames.length ];
StyleHandler styleHandler = new StyleHandler(); // style handler

// create style checkbox menu items
for ( int count = 0 ; count < styleNames.length; count++ )
{
    styleItems[ count ] =
        new JCheckBoxMenuItem( styleNames[ count ] ); // for style
    fontMenu.add( styleItems[ count ] ); // add to font menu
    styleItems[ count ].addItemListener( styleHandler ); // handler
}
// end for

fontMenu.add( fontMenu ); // add Font menu to Format menu
bar.add( fontMenu ); // add Format menu to menu bar

// set up label to display text
displayJLabel = new JLabel( "Sample Text", SwingConstants.CENTER );
displayJLabel.setForeground( colorValues[ 0 ] );
displayJLabel.setFont( new Font( "Serif", Font.PLAIN, 72 ) );
getContentPane().setBackground( Color.CYAN ); // set background
add( displayJLabel, BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add displayJLabel
// end MenuFrame constructor
private class ItemHandler implements ActionListener
{
    // process color and font selections
    public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event)
    {
        // process color selection
        for (int count = 0; count < colorItems.length; count++)
        {
            if (colorItems[count].isSelected())
            {
                displayJLabel.setForeground(colorValues[count]);
                break;
            }
        }
        // end for

        // process font selection
        for (int count = 0; count < fonts.length; count++)
        {
            if (event.getSource() == fonts[count])
            {
                displayJLabel.setFont(new Font(fonts[count].getText(), style, 72));
            }
        }
        // end for

        repaint(); // redraw application
    }
    // end method actionPerformed

    // end class ItemHandler

    // inner class to handle item events from check box menu items
    private class StyleHandler implements ItemListener
    {
        // process font style selections
        public void itemStateChanged(ItemEvent e)
        {
            style = 0; // initialize style

            // check for bold selection
            if (styleItems[0].isSelected())
            {
                style += Font.BOLD; // add bold to style
            }

            // check for italic selection
            if (styleItems[1].isSelected())
            {
                style += Font.ITALIC; // add italic to style
            }

            displayJLabel.setFont(new Font(displayJLabel.getFont().getName(), style, 72));
            repaint(); // redraw application
        }
        // end method itemStateChanged

        // end class StyleHandler
    }
    // end class MenuFrame

---

Figure 22.6. Test class for MenuFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 1017 in the print version)
1 // Fig. 22.6: MenuTest.java
2 // Testing MenuFrame.
3 import javax.swing.JFrame;
4
5 public class MenuTest
6 {
7    public static void main( String args[] )
8    {
9        MenuFrame menuFrame = new MenuFrame(); // create MenuFrame
10        menuFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
11        menuFrame.setSize( 500, 200 ); // set frame size
12        menuFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
13    } // end main
14 } // end class MenuTest

Class MenuFrame (Fig. 22.5) declares the GUI components and event handling for the menu items. Most of the code in this application appears in the class's constructor (lines 34151).

Lines 3876 set up the File menu and attach it to the menu bar. The File menu contains an About... menu item that displays a message dialog when the menu item is selected and an Exit menu item that can be selected to terminate the application.

Line 38 creates a JMenu and passes to the constructor the string "File" as the
name of the menu. Line 39 uses JMenu method `setMnemonic` (inherited from class `AbstractButton`) to indicate that `F` is the mnemonic for this menu. Pressing the `Alt` key and the letter `F` opens the menu, just as clicking the menu name with the mouse would. In the GUI, the mnemonic character in the menu's name is displayed with an underline. (See the screen captures in Fig. 22.6)

**Look-and-Feel Observation 22.3**

Mnemonics provide quick access to menu commands and button commands through the keyboard.

**Look-and-Feel Observation 22.4**

Different mnemonics should be used for each button or menu item. Normally, the first letter in the label on the menu item or button is used as the mnemonic. If several buttons or menu items start with the same letter, choose the next most prominent letter in the name (e.g., `x` is commonly chosen for a button or menu item called `Exit`).

Lines 4243 create `JMenuItem aboutItem` with the text "About..." and set its mnemonic to the letter `A`. This menu item is added to `fileMenu` at line 44 with `JMenu` method `add`. To access the `About...` menu item through the keyboard, press the `Alt` key and letter `F` to open the `File` menu, then press `A` to select the `About...` menu item. Lines 4756 create an `ActionListener` to process `aboutItem`'s action event. Lines 5254 display a message dialog box. In most prior uses of `showMessageDialog`, the first argument was `null`. The purpose of the first argument is to specify the parent window that helps determine where the dialog box will be displayed. If the parent window is specified as `null`, the dialog box appears in the center of the screen. Otherwise, it appears centered over the specified parent window. In this example, the program specifies the parent window with `MenuTest.this` the this reference of the `MenuTest` object. When using the `this`
reference in an inner class, specifying this by itself refers to the inner-class object. To reference the outer-class object's this reference, qualify this with the outer-class name and a dot (.)

Dialog boxes are typically modal. A **modal dialog box** does not allow any other window in the application to be accessed until the dialog box is dismissed. The dialogs displayed with class JOptionPane are modal dialogs. Class JDialog can be used to create your own modal or nonmodal dialogs.

Lines 5972 create menu item exitItem, set its mnemonic to x, add it to fileMenu and register an ActionListener that terminates the application when the user selects exitItem.

Lines 7476 create the JMenuBar, attach it to the application window with JFrame method setJMenuBar and use JMenuBar method add to attach the fileMenu to the menu bar.

**Common Programming Error 22.3**

*Forgetting to set the menu bar with JFrame method setJMenuBar results in the menu bar not being displayed on the JFrame.*

**Look-and-Feel Observation 22.5**

*Menus appear left to right in the order that they are added to a JMenuBar.*

Lines 7879 create menu formatMenu and set its mnemonic to r. (F is not used because that is the File menu's mnemonic.)

Lines 8485 create menu colorMenu (this will be a submenu in the Format menu)
and set its mnemonic to C. Line 88 creates JRadioButtonMenuItem array colorItems, which refers to the menu items in colorMenu. Line 89 creates ButtonGroup colorGroup, which will ensure that only one of the menu items in the Color submenu is selected at a time. Line 90 creates an instance of inner class ItemHandler (declared at lines 154181) that responds to selections from the Color and Font submenus (discussed shortly). The for statement at lines 93100 creates each JRadioButtonMenuItem in array colorItems, adds each menu item to colorMenu and to colorGroup and registers the ActionListener for each menu item.

Line 102 invokes AbstractButton method setSelected to select the first element in array colorItems. Line 104 adds colorMenu as a submenu of formatMenu. Line 105 invokes JMenuItem method addSeparator to add a horizontal separator line to the menu.

Look-and-Feel Observation 22.6

A submenu is created by adding a menu as a menu item in another menu. When the mouse is positioned over a submenu (or the submenu's mnemonic is pressed), the submenu expands to show its menu items.

Look-and-Feel Observation 22.7

Separators can be added to a menu to group menu items logically.

Look-and-Feel Observation 22.8

Any lightweight GUI component (i.e., a component that is a subclass of JComponent) can be added to a JMenuItem or to a JMenuBar.
Lines 108126 create the **Font** submenu and several **JRadioButtonMenuItem**s and select the first element of **JRadioButtonMenuItem** array **fonts**. Line 129 creates a **JCheckBoxMenuItem** array to represent the menu items for specifying bold and italic styles for the fonts. Line 130 creates an instance of inner class **StyleHandler** (declared at lines 184203) to respond to the **JCheckBoxMenuItem** events. The for statement at lines 133139 creates each **JCheckBoxMenuItem**, adds each menu item to **fontMenu** and registers the **ItemListener** for each menu item. Line 141 adds **fontMenu** as a submenu of **formatMenu**. Line 142 adds the **formatMenu** to bar (the menu bar).

Lines 145147 create a **JLabel** for which the **Format** menu items control the font, font color and font style. The initial foreground color is set to the first element of array **colorValues** (**Color.BLACK**) by invoking **JComponent** method **setForeground**, and the initial font is set to **Serif** with **PLAIN** style and 72-point size. Line 149 sets the background color of the window's content pane to cyan, and line 150 attaches the **JLabel** to the **CENTER** of the content pane's **BorderLayout**.

**ItemHandler** method **actionPerformed** (lines 157180) uses two for statements to determine which font or color menu item generated the event and sets the font or color of the **JLabel** **displayLabel**, respectively. The if condition at line 162 uses **AbstractButton** method **isSelected** to determine the selected **JRadioButtonMenuItem**. The if condition at line 172 invokes the event object's **getSource** method to get a reference to the **JRadioButtonMenuItem** that generated the event. Line 175 invokes **AbstractButton** method **getText** to obtain the name of the font from the menu item.

The program calls **StyleHandler** method **itemStateChanged** (lines 187202) if the user selects a **JCheckBoxMenuItem** in the **fontMenu**. Lines 192 and 196 determine whether either or both of the **JCheckBoxMenuItems** are selected and use their combined state to determine the new style of the font.
22.5. \texttt{JPopupMenu}

Many of today's computer applications provide so-called \textit{context-sensitive pop-up menus}. In Swing, such menus are created with class \texttt{JPopupMenu} (a subclass of \texttt{JComponent}). These menus provide options that are specific to the component for which the \textit{popup trigger event} was generated. On most systems, the pop-up trigger event occurs when the user presses and releases the right mouse button.

\textbf{Look-and-Feel Observation 22.9}

\begin{quote}
The pop-up trigger event is platform specific. On most platforms that use a mouse with multiple buttons, the pop-up trigger event occurs when the user clicks the right mouse button on a component that supports a pop-up menu.
\end{quote}

The application in \texttt{Figure 22.7} and \texttt{Fig. 22.8} creates a \texttt{JPopupMenu} that allows the user to select one of three colors and change the background color of the window. When the user clicks the right mouse button on the \texttt{PopupTest} window's background, a \texttt{JPopupMenu} containing colors appears. If the user clicks a \texttt{JRadioButtonMenuItem} for a color, \texttt{ItemHandler} method \texttt{actionPerformed} changes the background color of the window's content pane.

\textbf{Figure 22.7. \texttt{JPopupMenu} for selecting colors.}

\begin{verbatim}
1 // Fig. 22.7: PopupFrame.java
2 // Demonstrating JPopups.
3 import java.awt.Color;
4 import java.awt.event.MouseAdapter;
5 import java.awt.event.MouseEvent;
6 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
7 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
8 import javax.swing.JFrame;
9 import javax.swing.JRadioButtonMenuItem;
10 import javax.swing.JPopupMenu;
11 import javax.swing.ButtonGroup;
\end{verbatim}
public class PopupFrame extends JFrame {
  private JRadioButtonMenuItem items[]; // holds items for colors
  private final Color colorValues[] = {
    Color.BLUE, Color.YELLOW, Color.RED }; // colors to be used
  private JPopupMenu popupMenu; // allows user to select color

  // no-argument constructor sets up GUI
  public PopupFrame()
  {
    super( "Using JPopupMenu" );
    ItemHandler handler = new ItemHandler(); // handler for menu items
    String colors[] = { "Blue", "Yellow", "Red" }; // array of colors
    ButtonGroup colorGroup = new ButtonGroup(); // manages color items
    popupMenu = new JPopupMenu(); // create pop-up menu
    items = new JRadioButtonMenuItem[ 3 ]; // items for selecting color
    // construct menu item, add to popup menu, enable event handling
    for ( int count = 0; count < items.length; count++ )
    {
      items[ count ] = new JRadioButtonMenuItem( colors[ count ] );
      popupMenu.add( items[ count ] ); // add item to pop-up menu
      colorGroup.add( items[ count ] ); // add item to button group
      items[ count ].addActionListener( handler ); // add handler
    } // end for
    setBackground( Color.WHITE ); // set background to white
    // declare a MouseListener for the window to display pop-up menu
    addMouseListener( new MouseAdapter() // anonymous inner class
    {
      // handle mouse press event
      public void mousePressed( MouseEvent event )
      {
        checkForTriggerEvent( event ); // check for trigger
      } // end method mousePressed

      // handle mouse release event
      public void mouseReleased( MouseEvent event )
      {
        checkForTriggerEvent( event ); // check for trigger
      } // end method mouseReleased

      // determine whether event should trigger popup menu
      private void checkForTriggerEvent( MouseEvent event )
      {
        if ( event.isPopupTrigger() )
        {
          popupMenu.show( event.getComponent(), event.getX(), event.getY() );
        } // end method checkForTriggerEvent
      } // end anonymous inner class
    } // end call to addMouseListener
  } // end PopupFrame constructor

  // private inner class to handle menu item events
  private class ItemHandler implements ActionListener
  {
Figure 22.8. Test class for **PopupFrame**.
(This item is displayed on page 1022 in the print version)
Line 25 of the PopupFrame constructor (lines 2169) creates an instance of class ItemHandler (declared in lines 7287) that will process the item events from the menu items in the pop-up menu. Line 29 creates the JPopupMenu. The for statement (lines 3339) creates a JRadioButtonMenuItem object (line 35), adds it to popupMenu (line 36), adds it to ButtonGroup colorGroup (line 37) to maintain one selected JRadioButtonMenuItem at a time and registers its ActionListener (line 38). Line 41 sets the initial background to white by invoking method setBackground.

Lines 4468 register a MouseListener to handle the mouse events of the application window. Methods mousePressed (lines 4952) and mouseReleased (lines 5558) check for the pop-up trigger event. Each method calls private utility method checkForTriggerEvent (lines 6166) to determine whether the pop-up trigger event occurred. If it did, MouseEvent method isPopupTrigger returns True, and JPopupMenu method show displays the JPopupMenu. The first argument to method show specifies the origin component, whose position helps determine where the JPopupMenu will appear on the screen. The last two arguments are the x-y coordinates (measured from the origin component's upper-left corner) at which the JPopupMenu is to appear.

[Page 1022]

**Look-and-Feel Observation 22.10**

Displaying a JPopupMenu for the pop-up trigger event of multiple GUI components requires registering mouse-event handlers for each of those GUI components.

When the user selects a menu item from the pop-up menu, class ItemHandler's method actionPerformed (lines 7586) determines which JRadioButtonMenuItem the user selected and sets the background color of the window's content pane.
22.6. Pluggable Look-and-Feel

A program that uses Java's Abstract Window Toolkit GUI components (package java.awt) takes on the look-and-feel of the platform on which the program executes. A Java application running on a Macintosh looks like other applications running on a Macintosh. A Java application running on Microsoft Windows looks like other applications running on Microsoft Windows. A Java application running on a UNIX platform looks like other applications running on that UNIX platform. This is sometimes desirable, because it allows users of the application on each platform to use GUI components with which they are already familiar. However, it also introduces interesting portability issues.

---

Portability Tip 22.1

GUI components look different on different platforms and may require different amounts of space to display. This could change their layout and alignments.

Portability Tip 22.2

GUI components on different platforms have different default functionality (e.g., some platforms allow a button with the focus to be "pressed" with the space bar, and some do not).

Swing's lightweight GUI components eliminate many of these issues by providing uniform functionality across platforms and by defining a uniform cross-platform look-and-feel (known as the metal look-and-feel). Swing also provides the flexibility to customize the look-and-feel to appear as a Microsoft Windows-style look-and-feel (on Window systems), a Motif-style (UNIX) look-
and-feel (across all platforms) or a Macintosh look-and-feel (Mac systems).

The application in Fig. 22.9 and Fig. 22.10 demonstrates how to change the look-and-feel of a Swing GUI. The application creates several GUI components, so you can see the change in the look-and-feel of several GUI components at the same time. The first output window shows the standard metal look-and-feel, the second shows the Motif look-and-feel, and the third shows the Windows look-and-feel.

Figure 22.9. Look-and-feel of a Swing-based GUI.  
(This item is displayed on pages 1023 - 1025 in the print version)

```java
1  // Fig. 22.9: LookAndFeelFrame.java
2  // Changing the look and feel.
3  import java.awt.GridLayout;
4  import java.awt.BorderLayout;
5  import java.awt.event.ItemListener;
6  import java.awt.event.ItemEvent;
7  import javax.swing.JFrame;
8  import javax.swing.UIManager;
9  import javax.swing.JRadioButton;
10 import javax.swing.ButtonGroup;
11 import javax.swing.JButton;
12 import javax.swing.JLabel;
13 import javax.swing.JComboBox;
14 import javax.swing.JPanel;
15 import javax.swing.SwingConstants;
16 import javax.swing.SwingUtilities;
17
18  public classLookAndFeelFrame extends JFrame
19  {
20      // string names of look and feels
21      private final String strings[] = { "Metal", "Motif", "Windows" };  
22  private UIManager.LookAndFeelInfo looks[]; // look and feels
23  private JRadioButton radio[]; // radio buttons to select look and feel
24  private ButtonGroup group; // group for radio buttons
25  private JButton button; // displays look of button
26  private JLabel label; // displays look of label
27  private JComboBox comboBox; // displays look of combo box
28
29  // set up GUI
30  public LookAndFeelFrame()
31  {
32      super( "Look and Feel Demo" );
33
34         JPanel northPanel = new JPanel(); // create north panel
35         northPanel.setLayout( new GridLayout( 3, 1, 0, 5 ) );
36
37         label = new JLabel( "This is a Metal look-and-feel",  
            SwingConstants.CENTER ); // create label
38         northPanel.add( label ); // add label to panel
39
40         button = new JButton( "JButton" ); // create button
```

```
northPanel.add( button ); // add button to panel

comboBox = new JComboBox( strings ); // create combobox
northPanel.add( comboBox ); // add combobox to panel

// create array for radio buttons
radio = new JRadioButton[ strings.length ];

JPanel southPanel = new JPanel(); // create south panel
southPanel.setLayout( new GridLayout( 1, radio.length ) );

group = new ButtonGroup(); // button group for look and feels
ItemHandler handler = new ItemHandler(); // look and feel handler

for ( int count = 0; count < radio.length; count++ )
{
    radio[ count ] = new JRadioButton( strings[ count ] );
    radio[ count ].addItemListener( handler ); // add handler
group.add( radio[ count ] ); // add radiobutton to group
    southPanel.add( radio[ count ] ); // add radiobutton to panel
} // end for

add( northPanel, BorderLayout.NORTH ); // add north panel
add( southPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH ); // add south panel

// get installed look-and-feel information
looks = UIManager.getInstalledLookAndFeels();
radio[ 0 ].setSelected( true ); // set default selection

add( northPanel, BorderLayout.NORTH ); // add north panel
add( southPanel, BorderLayout.SOUTH ); // add south panel

// use UIManager to change look-and-feel of GUI
private void changeTheLookAndFeel( int value )
{
    try // change look and feel
    {
        // set look and feel for this application
        UIManager.setLookAndFeel( looks[ value ].getClassName() );

        // update components in this application
        SwingUtilities.updateComponentTreeUI( this );
    } // end try
    catch ( Exception exception )
    {
        exception.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
} // end method changeTheLookAndFeel

// private inner class to handle radio button events
private class ItemHandler implements ItemListener
{
    public void itemStateChanged( ItemEvent event )
    {
        for ( int count = 0; count < radio.length; count++ )
        {
            if ( radio[ count ].isSelected() )
            {
                label.setText( String.format( "This is a %s look-and-feel", strings[ count ] ) );
                comboBox.setSelectedIndex( count ); // set combobox index
                changeTheLookAndFeel( count ); // change look and feel
```
Figure 22.10. Test class for **LookAndFeelFrame**.
(This item is displayed on page 1026 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 22.10: LookAndFeelDemo.java
// Changing the look and feel.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class LookAndFeelDemo {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        LookAndFeelFrame lookAndFeelFrame = new LookAndFeelFrame();
        lookAndFeelFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        lookAndFeelFrame.setSize( 300, 200 ); // set frame size
        lookAndFeelFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    }
}
```

**Figure 22.10. Test class for LookAndFeelFrame.**
(This item is displayed on page 1026 in the print version)
All the GUI components and event handling in this example have been covered before, so we concentrate on the mechanism for changing the look-and-feel in this example. Class `UIManager` (package `javax.swing`) contains nested class `LookAndFeelInfo` (a public static class) that maintains information about a look-and-feel. Line 22 declares an array of type `UIManager.LookAndFeelInfo` (note the syntax used to identify the inner class `LookAndFeelInfo`). Line 68 uses `UIManager` static method `getInstalledLookAndFeels` to get the array of `UIManager.LookAndFeelInfo` objects that describe each look-and-feel available on your system.

Performance Tip 22.1

Each look-and-feel is represented by a Java class. `UIManager` method `getInstalledLookAndFeels` does not load each class. Rather, it provides the names of the available look-and-feel classes so that a choice can be made (presumably once at program start-up). This reduces the overhead of having to load all the look-and-feel classes even if the program will not use some of them.

Our utility method `changeTheLookAndFeel` (lines 7387) is called by the event handler for the `JRadioButtons` at the bottom of the user interface. The event handler (declared in private inner class `ItemHandler` at lines 90106) passes an integer representing the element in array `looks` that should be used to change the look-and-feel. Line 78 invokes static method `setLookAndFeel` of `UIManager` to change the look-and-feel. Method `getClassName` of class `UIManager.LookAndFeelInfo` determines the name of the look-and-feel class that corresponds to the `UIManager.LookAndFeelInfo` object. If the look-and-feel class is not already loaded, it will be loaded as part of the call to `setLookAndFeel`. Line 81 invokes static method `updateComponentTreeUI` of class `SwingUtilities` (package `javax.swing`) to change the look-and-feel of every GUI component attached to its argument (this instance of our application class `LookAndFeelDemo`) to the new look-and-feel.
22.7. **JDesktopPane and JInternalFrame**

Many of today's applications use a **multiple-document interface (MDI)**, a main window (called the **parent window**) containing other windows (called **child windows**), to manage several open **documents** that are being processed in parallel. For example, many e-mail programs allow you to have several windows open at the same time, so you can compose or read multiple e-mail messages simultaneously. Similarly, many word processors allow the user to open multiple documents in separate windows, making it possible to switch between them without having to close one to open another. The application in Fig. 22.11 and Fig. 22.12 demonstrates Swing's **JDesktopPane** and **JInternalFrame** classes for implementing multiple-document interfaces.

---

**Figure 22.11. Multiple-document interface.**
(This item is displayed on pages 1027 - 1028 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 22.11: DesktopFrame.java
// Demonstrating JDesktopPane.
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.Dimension;
import java.awt.Graphics;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import java.util.Random;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JDesktopPane;
import javax.swing.JMenuBar;
import javax.swing.JMenu;
import javax.swing.JMenuItem;
import javax.swing.JInternalFrame;
import javax.swing.JPanel;
import javax.swing.ImageIcon;

public class DesktopFrame extends JFrame {
    private JDesktopPane theDesktop;
    // set up GUI
    public DesktopFrame() {
        super( "Using a JDesktopPane" );
    }
```
JMenuBar bar = new JMenuBar(); // create menu bar
JMenu addMenu = new JMenu( "Add" ); // create Add menu
JMenuItem newFrame = new JMenuItem( "Internal Frame" );

addMenu.add( newFrame ); // add new frame item to Add menu
bar.add( addMenu ); // add Add menu to menu bar
setJMenuBar( bar ); // set menu bar for this application

theDesktop = new JDesktopPane(); // create desktop pane
add( theDesktop ); // add desktop pane to frame

// set up listener for newFrame menu item
newFrame.addActionListener(
        new ActionListener() // anonymous inner class
        {
            public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
            {
                // display new internal window
                JInternalFrame frame = new JInternalFrame(
                        "Internal Frame", true, true, true, true);

                MyJPanel panel = new MyJPanel(); // create new panel
                frame.add( panel, BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add panel
                frame.pack(); // set internal frame to size of contents

                theDesktop.add( frame ); // attach internal frame
                frame.setVisible( true ); // show internal frame
            } // end method actionPerformed
        } // end anonymous inner class
) // end call to addActionListener
} // end DesktopFrame constructor

// class to display an ImageIcon on a panel
class MyJPanel extends JPanel
{
    private static Random generator = new Random();
    private ImageIcon picture; // image to be displayed
    private String[] images = { "yellowflowers.png", "purpleflowers.png", "redflowers.png", "redflowers2.png", "lavenderflowers.png" };

    // load image
    public MyJPanel()
    {
        int randomNumber = generator.nextInt( 5 );
        picture = new ImageIcon( images[ randomNumber ] ); // set icon
    } // end MyJPanel constructor

    // display ImageIcon on panel
    public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
    {
        super.paintComponent( g );
        picture.paintIcon( this, g, 0, 0 ); // display icon
    } // end method paintComponent

    // return image dimensions
    public Dimension getPreferredSize()
    {
        return new Dimension( picture.getIconWidth(), picture.getIconHeight() );
    } // end method getPreferredSize
} // end class MyJPanel
Figure 22.12. Test class for **DesktopFrame**.
(This item is displayed on pages 1029 - 1030 in the print version)
Lines 2733 create a JMenuBar, a JMenu and a JMenuItem, add the JMenuItem to the JMenu, add the JMenu to the JMenuBar and set the JMenuBar for the application window. When the user selects the JMenuItem newFrame, the application creates and displays a new JInternalFrame object containing an image.

Line 35 assigns JDesktopPane (package javax.swing) variable theDesktop a new JDesktopPane object that will be used to manage the JInternalFrame child windows. Line 36 adds the JDesktopPane to the JFrame. By default, the JDesktopPane is added to the center of the content pane's BorderLayout, so the JDesktopPane expands to fill the entire application window.

Lines 3958 register an ActionListener to handle the event when the user selects the newFrame menu item. When the event occurs, method actionPerformed (lines 4456) creates a JInternalFrame object in lines 4748. The JInternalFrame constructor used here takes five arguments, a string for the title bar of the internal window, a boolean indicating whether the internal frame can be resized
by the user, a boolean indicating whether the internal frame can be closed by the user, a boolean indicating whether the internal frame can be maximized by the user and a boolean indicating whether the internal frame can be minimized by the user. For each of the boolean arguments, a true value indicates that the operation should be allowed (as is the case here).

As with JFrames and JApplets, a JInternalFrame has a content pane to which GUI components can be attached. Line 50 creates an instance of our class MyJPanel (declared at lines 6390) that is added to the JInternalFrame at line 51.

Line 52 uses JInternalFrame method pack to set the size of the child window. Method pack uses the preferred sizes of the components to determine the window's size. Class MyJPanel declares method getPreferredSize (lines 8589) to specify the panel's preferred size for use by the pack method. Line 54 adds the JInternalFrame to the JDesktopPane, and line 55 displays the JInternalFrame.

Classes JInternalFrame and JDesktopPane provide many methods for managing child windows. See the JInternalFrame and JDesktopPane online API documentation for complete lists of these methods:

java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/javax/swing/JInternalFrame.html
java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/javax/swing/JDesktopPane.html
22.8. JTabbedPane

A JTabbedPane arranges GUI components into layers in which only one layer is visible at a time. Users access each layer via a tabsimilar to folders in a file cabinet. When the user clicks a tab, the appropriate layer is displayed. The tabs appear at the top by default but also can be positioned at the left, right or bottom of the JTabbedPane. Any component can be placed on a tab. If the component is a container, such as a panel, it can use any layout manager to lay out several components on the tab. Class JTabbedPane is a subclass of JComponent. The application in Fig. 22.13 and Fig. 22.14 creates one tabbed pane with three tabs. Each tab displays one of the JPanel panel1, panel2 or panel3.

Figure 22.13. JTabbedPane used to organize GUI components.

```java
// Fig. 22.13: JTabbedPaneFrame.java
// Demonstrating JTabbedPane.
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.Color;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JTabbedPane;
import javax.swing.JLabel;
import javax.swing.JPanel;
import javax.swing.JButton;
import javax.swing.SwingConstants;

public class JTabbedPaneFrame extends JFrame
{
    // set up GUI
    public JTabbedPaneFrame()
    {
        super( "JTabbedPane Demo " );

        JTabbedPane tabbedPane = new JTabbedPane(); // create JTabbedPane

        // set up panel1 and add it to JTabbedPane
        JLabel label1 = new JLabel( "panel one", SwingConstants.CENTER );
        JPanel panel1 = new JPanel(); // create first panel
        panel1.add( label1 ); // add label to panel
        tabbedPane.addTab( "Tab One", null, panel1, "First Panel" );

        // set up panel2 and add it to JTabbedPane
        JLabel label2 = new JLabel( "panel two", SwingConstants.CENTER );
        JPanel panel2 = new JPanel(); // create second panel
        panel2.setBackground( Color.YELLOW ); // set background to yellow
        panel2.add( label2 ); // add label to panel
        tabbedPane.addTab( "Tab Two", null, panel2, "Second Panel" );

        // set up panel3 and add it to JTabbedPane
        JLabel label3 = new JLabel( "panel three", SwingConstants.CENTER );
        JPanel panel3 = new JPanel(); // create third panel
        panel3.add( label3 ); // add label to panel
        tabbedPane.addTab( "Tab Three", null, panel3, "Third Panel" );

        getContentPane().add( tabbedPane, BorderLayout.CENTER );
        setSize( 500, 300 );
        setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        setVisible( true );
    }
}
```
Figure 22.14. Test class for `JTabbedPaneFrame`.

```java
// Fig. 22.14: JTabbedPaneDemo.java
// Demonstrating JTabbedPane.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class JTabbedPaneDemo
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        JTabbedPaneFrame tabbedPaneFrame = new JTabbedPaneFrame();
        tabbedPaneFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        tabbedPaneFrame.setSize( 250, 200 ); // set frame size
        tabbedPaneFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class JTabbedPaneDemo
```
The constructor (lines 1546) builds the GUI. Line 19 creates an empty JTabbedPane with default settings that is, tabs across the top. If the tabs do not fit on one line, they will wrap to form additional lines of tabs. Next the constructor creates the JPanels panel1, panel2 and panel3 and their GUI components. As we set up each panel, we add it to tabbedPane, using JTabbedPane method addTab with four arguments. The first argument is a string that specifies the title of the tab. The second argument is an Icon reference that specifies an icon to display on the tab. If the Icon is a null reference, no image is displayed. The third argument is a Component reference that represents the GUI component to display when the user clicks the tab. The last argument is a string that specifies the tool tip for the tab. For example, line 25 adds JPanel panel1 to tabbedPane with title "Tab One" and the tool tip "First Panel". JPanels panel2 and panel3 are added to tabbedPane at lines 32 and 43. To view a tab, click it with the mouse or use the arrow keys to cycle through the tab=. 
22.9. Layout Managers: BoxLayout and GridBagLayout

In Chapter 11, we introduced three layout managers: FlowLayout, BorderLayout and GridLayout. This section presents two additional layout managers (summarized in Fig. 22.15). We discuss these layout managers in the examples that follow.

**Figure 22.15. Additional layout managers.**
(This item is displayed on page 1033 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Layout Manager</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BoxLayout</td>
<td>A layout manager that allows GUI components to be arranged left-to-right or top-to-bottom in a container. Class Box declares a container with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BoxLayout as its default layout manager and provides static methods to create a Box with a horizontal or vertical BoxLayout.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GridBagLayout</td>
<td>A layout manager similar to GridLayout, but unlike it in that components can vary in size and can be added in any order.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BoxLayout Layout Manager**

The BoxLayout layout manager (in package javax.swing) arranges GUI components horizontally along a container's x-axis or vertically along its y-axis. The application in Fig. 22.16 and Fig. 22.17 demonstrates BoxLayout and the container class Box that uses BoxLayout as its default layout manager.

**Figure 22.16. BoxLayout layout manager.**
(This item is displayed on pages 1033 - 1034 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 22.16: BoxLayoutFrame.java
2 // Demonstrating BoxLayout.
```
import java.awt.Dimension;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.Box;
import javax.swing.JButton;
import javax.swing.BoxLayout;
import javax.swing.JPanel;
import javax.swing.JTabbedPane;

public class BoxLayoutFrame extends JFrame {
    public BoxLayoutFrame() {
        super( "Demonstrating BoxLayout" );

        // create Box containers with BoxLayout
        Box horizontal1 = Box.createHorizontalBox();
        Box vertical1 = Box.createVerticalBox();
        Box horizontal2 = Box.createHorizontalBox();
        Box vertical2 = Box.createVerticalBox();

        final int SIZE = 3; // number of buttons on each Box

        // add buttons to Box horizontal1
        for ( int count = 0; count < SIZE; count++ )
            horizontal1.add( new JButton( "Button " + count ) );

        // create strut and add buttons to Box vertical1
        for ( int count = 0; count < SIZE; count++ )
            { vertical1.add( Box.createVerticalStrut( 25 ) );
                vertical1.add( new JButton( "Button " + count ) );
            }

        // create horizontal glue and add buttons to Box horizontal2
        for ( int count = 0; count < SIZE; count++ )
            { horizontal2.add( Box.createHorizontalGlue() );
                horizontal2.add( new JButton( "Button " + count ) );
            }

        // create rigid area and add buttons to Box vertical2
        for ( int count = 0; count < SIZE; count++ )
            { vertical2.add( Box.createRigidArea( new Dimension( 12, 8 ) ) );
                vertical2.add( new JButton( "Button " + count ) );
            }

        // create vertical glue and add buttons to panel
        JPanel panel = new JPanel();
        panel.setLayout( new BoxLayout( panel, BoxLayout.Y_AXIS ) );

        for ( int count = 0; count < SIZE; count++ )
            { panel.add( Box.createGlue() );
                panel.add( new JButton( "Button " + count ) );
            }

        // create a JTabbedPane
        JTabbedPane tabs = new JTabbedPane( JTabbedPane.TOP, JTabbedPane.SCROLL_TAB_LAYOUT );
        tabs.addPanel( "Horizontal Box Layout", horizontal1 );
        tabs.addPanel( "Vertical Box Layout", vertical1 );
        tabs.addPanel( "Horizontal Glue Box Layout", horizontal2 );
        tabs.addPanel( "Vertical Rigid Area Box Layout", vertical2 );

        // set up GUI
        setTitle( "Demonstrating BoxLayout" );
        setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        setPreferredSize( new Dimension( 300, 200 ) );
        setSize( 300, 200 );
        setLocationRelativeTo( null );
        setVisible( true );
        add( panel );
        add( tabs );
    }
}

// place each container on tabbed pane
tabs.addTab( "Horizontal Box", horizontal1 );
tabs.addTab( "Vertical Box with Struts", vertical1 );
tabs.addTab( "Horizontal Box with Glue", horizontal2 );
tabs.addTab( "Vertical Box with Rigid Areas", vertical2 );
tabs.addTab( "Vertical Box with Glue", panel );

add( tabs ); // place tabbed pane on frame
} // end BoxLayoutFrame constructor
} // end class BoxLayoutFrame

Figure 22.17. Test class for **BoxLayoutFrame**.
(This item is displayed on pages 1035 - 1036 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 22.17: BoxLayoutDemo.java
// Demonstrating BoxLayout.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class BoxLayoutDemo
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        BoxLayoutFrame boxLayoutFrame = new BoxLayoutFrame();
        boxLayoutFrame.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        boxLayoutFrame.setSize( 400, 220 ); // set frame size
        boxLayoutFrame.setVisible( true ); // display frame
    } // end main
} // end class BoxLayoutDemo
```
Lines 1922 create `Box` containers. References `horizontal1` and `horizontal2` are initialized with static `Box` method `createHorizontalBox`, which returns a `Box` container with a horizontal `BoxLayout` in which GUI components are arranged left-to-right. Variables `vertical1` and `vertical2` are initialized with static `Box` method `createVerticalBox`, which returns references to `Box` containers with a
vertical `BoxLayout` in which GUI components are arranged top-to-bottom.

The `for` statement at lines 2728 adds three `JButtons` to `horizontal1`. The `for` statement at lines 3135 adds three `JButtons` to `vertical1`. Before adding each button, line 33 adds a `vertical strut` to the container with static `BoxLayout` method `createVerticalStrut`. A vertical strut is an invisible GUI component that has a fixed pixel height and is used to guarantee a fixed amount of space between GUI components. The `int` argument to method `createVerticalStrut` determines the height of the strut in pixels. When the container is resized, the distance between GUI components separated by struts does not change. Class `BoxLayout` also declares method `createHorizontalStrut` for horizontal `BoxLayouts`.

The `for` statement at lines 3842 adds three `JButtons` to `horizontal2`. Before adding each button, line 40 adds `horizontal glue` to the container with static `BoxLayout` method `createHorizontalGlue`. Horizontal glue is an invisible GUI component that can be used between fixed-size GUI components to occupy additional space. Normally, extra space appears to the right of the last horizontal GUI component or below the last vertical one in a `BoxLayout`. Glue allows the extra space to be placed between GUI components. When the container is resized, components separated by glue components remain the same size, but the glue stretches or contracts to occupy the space between them. Class `BoxLayout` also declares method `createVerticalGlue` for vertical `BoxLayouts`.

The `for` statement at lines 4549 adds three `JButtons` to `vertical2`. Before each button is added, line 47 adds a `rigid area` to the container with static `BoxLayout` method `createRigidArea`. A rigid area is an invisible GUI component that always has a fixed pixel width and height. The argument to method `createRigidArea` is a `Dimension` object that specifies the area's width and height.

Lines 5253 create a `JPanel` object and set its layout to a `BoxLayout` in the conventional manner, using `Container` method `setLayout`. The `BoxLayout` constructor receives a reference to the container for which it controls the layout and a constant indicating whether the layout is horizontal (`BoxLayout.X_AXIS`) or vertical (`BoxLayout.Y_AXIS`).

The `for` statement at lines 5559 adds three `JButtons` to `panel`. Before adding each button, line 57 adds a glue component to the container with static `BoxLayout` method `create-Glue`. This component expands or contracts based on the size of the
Lines 6263 create a `JTabbedPane` to display the five containers in this program. The argument `JTabbedPane.TOP` sent to the constructor indicates that the tabs should appear. The argument `JTabbedPane.SCROLL_TAB_LAYOUT` specifies that the tabs should scroll if there are too many tabs to fit on one line.

The Box containers and the `JPanel` are attached to the `JTabbedPane` at lines 6670. Try executing the application. When the window appears, resize the window to see how the glue components, strut components and rigid area affect the layout on each tab.

---

**GridBagLayout Layout Manager**

The most complex and most powerful of the predefined layout managers is `GridBagLayout` (in package `java.awt`). This layout is similar to `GridLayout` in that it arranges components in a grid. However, `GridBagLayout` is more flexible. The components can vary in size (i.e., they can occupy multiple rows and columns) and can be added in any order.

The first step in using `GridBagLayout` is determining the appearance of the GUI. For this step you need only a piece of paper. Draw the GUI and then draw a grid over it, dividing the components into rows and columns. The initial row and column numbers should be 0, so that the `GridBagLayout` layout manager can use the row and column number to properly place the components in the grid. Figure 22.18 demonstrates drawing the lines for the rows and columns over a GUI.

**Figure 22.18. Designing a GUI that will use GridBagLayout.**

[View full size image]
A **GridBagConstraints** object describes how a component is placed in a **GridBagLayout**. Several **GridBagConstraints** fields are summarized in [Fig. 22.19](#).

**Figure 22.19.** **GridBagConstraints** fields.
(This item is displayed on page 1038 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>GridBagConstraints field</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>anchor</td>
<td>Specifies the relative position (<strong>NORTH</strong>, <strong>NORTHEAST</strong>, <strong>EAST</strong>, <strong>SOUTHEAST</strong>, <strong>SOUTH</strong>, <strong>SOUTHWEST</strong>, <strong>WEST</strong>, <strong>NORTHWEST</strong>, <strong>CENTER</strong>) of the component in an area that it does not fill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fill</td>
<td>Resizes the component in specified direction (<strong>NONE</strong>, <strong>HORIZONTAL</strong>, <strong>VERTICAL</strong>, <strong>BOTH</strong>) when the display area is larger than the component.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gridx</td>
<td>The column in which the component will be placed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gridy</td>
<td>The row in which the component will be placed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gridwidth</td>
<td>The number of columns the component occupies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gridheight</td>
<td>The number of rows the component occupies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weightx</td>
<td>The amount of extra space to allocate horizontally. The grid slot can become wider when extra space is available.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weighty</td>
<td>The amount of extra space to allocate vertically. The grid slot can become taller when extra space is available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**GridBagConstraints** field **anchor** specifies the relative position of the component in an area that it does not fill. The variable **anchor** is assigned one of the following **GridBagConstraints** constants: **NORTH**, **NORTHEAST**, **EAST**, **SOUTHEAST**, **SOUTH**, **SOUTHWEST**, **WEST**, **NORTHWEST** or **CENTER**. The default value is **CENTER**.

**GridBagConstraints** field **fill** defines how the component grows if the area in which it can be displayed is larger than the component. The variable **fill** is assigned one of the following **GridBagConstraints** constants: **NONE**, **VERTICAL**, **HORIZONTAL** or **BOTH**. The default value is **NONE**, which indicates that the component will not grow in either direction. **VERTICAL** indicates that it will grow vertically. **HORIZONTAL** indicates that the component will grow horizontally. **BOTH** indicates that it will grow in both directions.

Variables **gridx** and **gridy** specify where the upper-left corner of the component is placed in the grid. Variable **gridx** corresponds to the column, and variable **gridy** corresponds to the row. In **Fig. 22.18**, the **JComboBox** (displaying "Iron") has a **gridx** value of 1 and a **gridy** value of 2.

Variable **gridwidth** specifies the number of columns a component occupies. The **JComboBox** occupies two columns. Variable **gridheight** specifies the number of rows a component occupies. The **JTextArea** on the left side of **Fig. 22.18** occupies three rows.

Variable **weightx** specifies how to distribute extra horizontal space to grid slots in a **GridBagLayout** when the container is resized. A zero value indicates that the grid slot does not grow horizontally on its own. However, if the component spans a column containing a component with nonzero **weightx** value, the component with zero **weightx** value will grow horizontally in the same proportion as the other component(s) in the same column. This is because each component must be maintained in the same row and column in which it was originally placed.

[Page 1038]

Variable **weighty** specifies how to distribute extra vertical space to grid slots in a **GridBagLayout** when the container is resized. A zero value indicates that the grid slot does not grow vertically on its own. However, if the component spans a row containing a component with nonzero **weighty** value, the component with zero **weighty** value grows vertically in the same proportion as the other component(s) in the same row.
In Fig. 22.18, the effects of \texttt{weighty} and \texttt{weightx} cannot easily be seen until the container is resized and additional space becomes available. Components with larger weight values occupy more of the additional space than those with smaller weight values.

Components should be given nonzero positive weight values otherwise they will "huddle" together in the middle of the container. Figure 22.20 shows the GUI of Fig. 22.18 with all weights set to zero.

**Figure 22.20.** \texttt{GridLayout} with the weights set to zero.
(This item is displayed on page 1039 in the print version)

The application in Fig. 22.21 and Fig. 22.22 uses the \texttt{GridLayout} layout manager to arrange the components of the GUI in Fig. 22.18. The application does nothing except demonstrate how to use \texttt{GridLayout}.

**Figure 22.21.** \texttt{GridLayout} layout manager.
(This item is displayed on pages 1039 - 1040 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 22.21: GridBagFrame.java
// Demonstrating GridBagLayout.
import java.awt.GridBagLayout;
import java.awt.GridBagConstraints;
import java.awt.Component;
```
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JTextArea;
import javax.swing.JTextField;
import javax.swing.JButton;
import javax.swing.JComboBox;

public class GridBagFrame extends JFrame {
    private GridBagLayout layout; // layout of this frame
    private GridBagConstraints constraints; // constraints of this layout

    // set up GUI
    public GridBagFrame() {
        super( "GridBagLayout" );
        layout = new GridBagLayout();
        setLayout( layout ); // set frame layout
        constraints = new GridBagConstraints(); // instantiate constraints

        // create GUI components
        JTextArea textArea1 = new JTextArea( "TextArea1", 5, 10 );
        JTextArea textArea2 = new JTextArea( "TextArea2", 2, 2 );

        String names[] = { "Iron", "Steel", "Brass" };
        JComboBox comboBox = new JComboBox( names );

        JTextField textField = new JTextField( "TextField" );
        JButton button1 = new JButton( "Button 1" );
        JButton button2 = new JButton( "Button 2" );
        JButton button3 = new JButton( "Button 3" );

        // weightx and weighty for textArea1 are both 0: the default
        // anchor for all components is CENTER: the default
        constraints.fill = GridBagConstraints.BOTH;
        addComponent( textArea1, 0, 0, 1, 3 );

        // weightx and weighty for button1 are both 0: the default
        constraints.fill = GridBagConstraints.HORIZONTAL;
        addComponent( button1, 0, 1, 2, 1 );

        // weightx and weighty for comboBox are both 0: the default
        // fill is HORIZONTAL
        addComponent( comboBox, 2, 1, 2, 1 );

        // button2
        constraints.weightx = 1000; // can grow wider
        constraints.weighty = 1; // can grow taller
        constraints.fill = GridBagConstraints.BOTH;
        addComponent( button2, 1, 1, 1, 1 );

        // fill is BOTH for button3
        constraints.weightx = 0;
        constraints.weighty = 0;
        addComponent( button3, 1, 2, 1, 1 );

        // weightx and weighty for textField are both 0, fill is BOTH
        addComponent( textField, 3, 0, 2, 1 );

        // weightx and weighty for textArea2 are both 0, fill is BOTH
        addComponent( textArea2, 3, 2, 1, 1 );
    } // end GridBagFrame constructor
private void addComponent( Component component, int row, int column, int width, int height ) {

    constraints.gridx = column; // set gridx
    constraints.gridy = row; // set gridy
    constraints.gridwidth = width; // set gridwidth
    constraints.gridheight = height; // set gridheight
    layout.setConstraints( component, constraints ); // set constraints
    add( component ); // add component
} // end method addComponent

} // end class GridBagFrame

Figure 22.22. Test class for GridBagFrame.
(This item is displayed on page 1041 in the print version)
The GUI consists of three JButton, two JTextAreas, a JComboBox and a JTextField. The layout manager for the content pane is GridBagLayout. Lines 2122 create the GridBagLayout object and set the layout manager for the JFrame to layout. Line 23 creates the GridBagConstraints object used to determine the location and size of each component in the grid. Lines 2635 create each GUI component that will be added to the content pane.

Lines 3940 configure JTextArea textArea1 and add it to the content pane. The values for weightx and weighty values are not specified in constraints, so each has the value zero by default. Thus, the JTextArea will not resize itself even if space
is available. However, it spans multiple rows, so the vertical size is subject to the weighty values of JButton button2 and button3. When either button is resized vertically based on its weighty value, the JTextArea is also resized.

Line 39 sets variable fill in constraints to GridBagConstraints.BOTH, causing the JTextArea to always fill its entire allocated area in the grid. An anchor value is not specified in constraints, so the default CENTER is used. We do not use variable anchor in this application, so all the components will use the default. Line 40 calls our utility method addComponent (declared at lines 6978). The JTextArea object, the row, the column, the number of columns to span and the number of rows to span are passed as arguments.

JButton button1 is the next component added (lines 4344). By default, the weightx and weighty values are still zero. The fill variable is set to HORIZONTAL the component will always fill its area in the horizontal direction. The vertical direction is not filled. The weighty value is zero, so the button will become taller only if another component in the same row has a nonzero weighty value. JButton button1 is located at row 0, column 1. One row and two columns are occupied.

 JComboBox comboBox is the next component added (line 48). By default, the weightx and weighty values are zero, and the fill variable is set to HORIZONTAL. The JComboBox button will grow only in the horizontal direction. Note that the weightx, weighty and fill variables retain the values set in constraints until they are changed. The JComboBox button is placed at row 2, column 1. One row and two columns are occupied.

JButton button2 is the next component added (lines 5154). It is given a weightx value of 1000 and a weighty value of 1. The area occupied by the button is capable of growing in the vertical and horizontal directions. The fill variable is set to BOTH, which specifies that the button will always fill the entire area. When the window is resized, button2 will grow. The button is placed at row 1, column 1. One row and one column are occupied.

JButton button3 is added next (lines 5759). Both the weightx value and weighty value are set to zero, and the value of fill is BOTH. JButton button3 will grow if the window is resized it is affected by the weight values of button2. Note that the weightx value for button2 is much larger than that for button3. When resizing occurs, button2 will occupy a larger percentage of the new space. The button is
placed at row 1, column 2. One row and one column are occupied.

Both the JTextField textField (line 62) and JTextArea textArea2 (line 65) have a weightx value of 0 and a weighty value of 0. The value of fill is BOTH. The JTextField is placed at row 3, column 0, and the JTextArea at row 3, column 2. The JTextField occupies one row and two columns, the JTextArea one row and one column.

Method addComponent's parameters are a Component reference component and integers row, column, width and height. Lines 7273 set the GridBagConstraints variables gridx and gridy. The gridx variable is assigned the column in which the Component will be placed, and the gridy value is assigned the row in which the Component will be placed. Lines 7475 set the GridBagConstraints variables gridwidth and gridheight. The gridwidth variable specifies the number of columns the Component will span in the grid, and the gridheight variable specifies the number of rows the Component will span in the grid. Line 76 sets the GridBagConstraints for a component in the GridBagLayout. Method setConstraints of class GridBagLayout takes a Component argument and a GridBagConstraints argument. Line 77 adds the component to the JFrame.

When you execute this application, try resizing the window to see how the constraints for each GUI component affect its position and size in the window.

GridBagConstraints Constants RELATIVE and REMAINDER

Instead of gridx and gridy, a variation of GridBagLayout uses GridBagConstraints constants RELATIVE and REMAINDER. RELATIVE specifies that the next-to-last component in a particular row should be placed to the right of the previous component in the row. REMAINDER specifies that a component is the last component in a row. Any component that is not the second-to-last or last component on a row must specify values for GridBagConstraints variables gridwidth and gridheight. The application in Fig. 22.23 and Fig. 22.24 arranges components in GridBagLayout, using these constants.

Figure 22.23. GridBagConstraints constants RELATIVE and REMAINDER.
public class GridBagFrame2 extends JFrame {
    private GridBagLayout layout; // layout of this frame
    private GridBagConstraints constraints; // constraints of this layout

    // set up GUI
    public GridBagFrame2() {
        super( "GridBagLayout" );
        layout = new GridBagLayout();
        setLayout( layout ); // set frame layout
        constraints = new GridBagConstraints(); // instantiate constraints

        // create GUI components
        String metals[] = { "Copper", "Aluminum", "Silver" };
        JComboBox comboBox = new JComboBox( metals );

        JTextField textField = new JTextField( "TextField" );

        String fonts[] = { "Serif", "Monospaced" };
        JList list = new JList( fonts );

        String names[] = { "zero", "one", "two", "three", "four" };
        JButton buttons[] = new JButton[ names.length ];

        for ( int count = 0; count < buttons.length; count++ )
            buttons[ count ] = new JButton( names[ count ] );

        // define GUI component constraints for textField
        constraints.weightx = 1;
        constraints.weighty = 1;
        constraints.fill = GridBagConstraints.BOTH;
        constraints.gridwidth = GridBagConstraints.REMAINDER;
        addComponent( textField );

        // buttons[0] -- weightx and weighty are 1; fill is BOTH
        constraints.gridwidth = 1;
        addComponent( buttons[ 0 ] );

        // buttons[1] -- weightx and weighty are 1; fill is BOTH
        constraints.gridwidth = GridBagConstraints.RELATIVE;
        addComponent( buttons[ 1 ] );

        // buttons[2] -- weightx and weighty are 1; fill is BOTH
        constraints.gridwidth = GridBagConstraints.REMAINDER;
    }
}
```java
// add a component to the container
private void addComponent( Component component )
{
    layout.setConstraints( component, constraints );
    add( component ); // add component
}
```

**Figure 22.24. Test class for GridBagDemo2.**
(This item is displayed on page 1045 in the print version)
Lines 2122 create a `GridBagLayout` and use it to set the `JFrame`'s layout manager. The components that are placed in `GridBagLayout` are created in lines 2738—

- a `JComboBox`
- a `JTextField`
- a `JList`
- five `JButtons`

The `JTextField` is added first (lines 4145). The `weightx` and `weighty` values are set to 1. The `fill` variable is set to `BOTH`. Line 44 specifies that the `JTextField` is the last component on the line. The `JTextField` is added to the content pane with a call to our utility method `addComponent` (declared at lines 7983). Method `addComponent` takes a `Component` argument and uses `GridBagLayout` method `setConstraints` to set the constraints for the `Component`. Method `add` attaches the component to the content pane.

`JButton buttons[0]` (lines 4849) has `weightx` and `weighty` values of 1. The `fill` variable is `BOTH`. Because `buttons[0]` is not one of the last two components on the row, it is given a `gridwidth` of 1 and so will occupy one column. The `JButton` is added to the content pane with a call to utility method `addComponent`. 
JButton buttons[ 1 ] (lines 5253) has weightx and weighty values of 1. The fill variable is BOTH. Line 52 specifies that the JButton is to be placed relative to the previous component. The JButton is added to the JFrame with a call to addComponent.

JButton buttons[ 2 ] (lines 5657) has weightx and weighty values of 1. The fill variable is BOTH. This JButton is the last component on the line, so REMAINDER is used. The JButton is added to the content pane with a call to addComponent.

The JComboBox (lines 6062) has a weightx of 1 and a weighty of 0. The JComboBox will not grow in the vertical direction. The JComboBox is the only component on the line, so REMAINDER is used. The JComboBox is added to the content pane with a call to addComponent.

JButton buttons[ 3 ] (lines 6567) has weightx and weighty values of 1. The fill variable is BOTH. This JButton is the only component on the line, so REMAINDER is used. The JButton is added to the content pane with a call to addComponent.

JButton buttons[ 4 ] (lines 7071) has weightx and weighty values of 1. The fill variable is BOTH. This JButton is the next-to-last component on the line, so RELATIVE is used. The JButton is added to the content pane with a call to addComponent.

The JList (lines 7475) has weightx and weighty values of 1. The fill variable is BOTH. The JList is added to the content pane with a call to addComponent.
22.10. Wrap-Up

This chapter completes our introduction to GUI. In this chapter, you learned about more advanced GUI topics, such as menus, sliders, pop-up menus and the multiple-document interface. All these components can be added to existing applications to make them easier to use and understand. In the next chapter, you will learn about multithreading, a powerful capability that allows applications to use threads to perform multiple tasks at once.
Summary

- **JSliders** enable the user to select from a range of integer values. **JSliders** can display major tick marks, minor tick marks and labels for the tick marks. They also support snap-to ticks, where positioning the thumb between two tick marks causes the thumb to snap to the closest tick mark.

- If a **JSlider** has the focus, the left and right arrow keys cause the thumb of the **JSlider** to decrease or increase by 1. The down and up arrow keys also cause the thumb of the **JSlider** to decrease or increase by 1, respectively. The *PgDn* (page down) *key* and *PgUp* (page up) *key* cause the thumb of the **JSlider** to decrease or increase by block increments of one-tenth of the range of values, respectively. The *Home key* moves the thumb to the minimum value of the **JSlider**, and the *End key* moves it to the maximum value.

- **JSliders** have either horizontal or vertical orientation. For a horizontal **JSlider**, the minimum value is at the extreme left and the maximum value is at the extreme right. For a vertical **JSlider**, the minimum value is at the extreme bottom and the maximum value is at the extreme top. The position of the thumb indicates the current value of the **JSlider**. Method `getPageValue` of class **JSlider** returns the current thumb position.

- Method `setMajorTickSpacing` of class **JSlider** sets the spacing for tick marks on a **JSlider**. Method `setPaintTicks` with a `TRUE` argument indicates that the tick marks should be displayed.

- **JSliders** generate **ChangeEvent**s when the user interacts with a **JSlider**. A **ChangeListener** declares method `stateChanged` that can respond to **ChangeEvent**s.

- Every window generates window events when the user manipulates it. Interface **WindowListener** provides seven window-event-handling methods: `windowActivated`, `windowClosed`, `windowClosing`, `windowDeactivated`, `windowDeiconified`, `windowIconified` and `windowOpened`.

- Menus are an integral part of GUIs. Menus allow the user to perform actions without unnecessarily cluttering a graphical user interface with extra GUI components. In Swing GUIs, menus can be attached only to...
objects of classes with method `setJMenuBar` (e.g., `JFrame` and `JApplet`).

- The classes used to declare menus are `JMenuBar`, `JMenuItem`, `JMenu`, `JCheckBoxMenuItem` and `JRadioButtonMenuItem`.

- A `JMenuBar` is a container for menus. A `JMenuItem` is a GUI component inside a menu that, when selected, causes an action to be performed. A `JMenu` contains menu items and can be added to a `JMenuBar` or to other `JMenus` as submenus.

- When a menu is clicked, it expands to show its list of menu items. `JMenu` method `addSeparator` adds a separator line to a menu.

- When a `JCheckBoxMenuItem` is selected, a check appears to the left of the menu item. When the `JCheckBoxMenuItem` is selected again, the check is removed.

- When multiple `JRadioButtonMenuItems` are maintained as part of a `ButtonGroup`, only one item in the group can be selected at a given time. When an item is selected, a filled circle appears to its left. When another `JRadioButtonMenuItem` is selected, the filled circle to the left of the previously selected item is removed.

- `AbstractButton` method `setMnemonic` specifies the mnemonic for an `AbstractButton`. Mnemonic characters are normally displayed with an underline.

- A modal dialog box does not allow access to any other window in the application until the dialog is dismissed. The dialogs displayed with class `JOptionPane` are modal dialogs. Class `JDialog` can be used to create your own modal or nonmodal dialogs.

- Context-sensitive pop-up menus are created with class `JPopupMenu`. On most systems, the popup trigger event occurs when the user presses and releases the right mouse button. `MouseEvent` method `isPopupTrigger` returns `true` if the pop-up trigger event occurred.

- `JPopupMenu` method `show` displays a `JPopupMenu`. The first argument specifies the origin component, which helps determine where the `JPopupMenu` will appear.
The last two arguments are the coordinates from the origin component's upper-left corner, at which the `JPopupMenu` appears.

- **Class** `UIManager` contains nested class `LookAndFeelInfo` that maintains information about a look-and-feel.

  - `UIManager` static method `getInstalledLookAndFeels` gets an array of `UIManagerLookAndFeelInfo` objects that describe the available look-and-feels.

  - `UIManager` static method `setLookAndFeel` changes the look-and-feel.

  - `SwingUtilities` static method `updateComponentTreeUI` changes the look-and-feel of every component attached to its `Component` argument to the new look-and-feel.

- Many of today's applications use a multiple-document interface (MDI) to manage several open documents that are being processed in parallel. Swing's `JDesktopPane` and `JInternalFrame` classes provide support for creating multiple-document interfaces.

- A `JTabbedPane` arranges GUI components into layers in which only one layer is visible at a time. Users access each layer via a tab similar to those on folders in a file cabinet. When the user clicks a tab, the appropriate layer is displayed.

- `BoxLayout` is a layout manager that allows GUI components to be arranged left-to-right or top-to-bottom in a container.

- Class `Box` declares a container with `BoxLayout` as its default layout manager and provides static methods to create a `Box` with a horizontal or vertical `BoxLayout`.

- `GridBagLayout` is a layout manager similar to `GridLayout`. It differs in that each component size can vary, and components can be added in any order.

- A `GridBagConstraints` object specifies how a component is placed in a `GridBagLayout`. Method `setConstraints` of class `GridBagLayout` takes a `Component` argument and a `GridBagConstraints` argument and sets the constraints of the `Component`. 
Terminology

**add** method of class JMenuBar

**addWindowListener** method of class Window

**anchor** field of class GridBagConstraints

**border**

**BOTH** constant of class GridBagConstraints

**Box** class

**BoxLayout** class

**CENTER** constant of class GridBagConstraints

**ChangeEvent** class

**ChangeListener** interface

**child window**

**context-sensitive pop-up menu**

**createGlue** method of class Box

**createHorizontalBox** method of class Box

**createHorizontalGlue** method of class Box

**createHorizontalStrut** method of class Box

**createRigidArea** method of class Box
createVerticalBox method of class Box

createVerticalGlue method of class Box

createVerticalStrut method of class Box

Dimension class

dispose method of class Window

document

EAST constant of class GridBagConstraints

class

getClassName method of class

UIManagerLookAndFeel

getInstalledLookAndFeels method of class UIManager

getPreferredSize method of class Component

gSelectedText method of class

JTextComponent

gValue method of class

JSlider

GridBagConstraints class

GridBagConstraints class

GridLayout class

gridheight field of class GridBagConstraints

gridwidth field of class GridBagConstraints

gridx field of class GridBagConstraints

gridy field of class GridBagConstraints
horizontal glue

isPopupTrigger method of class MouseEvent

isSelected method of class AbstractButton

JCheckBoxMenuItem class

JDesktopPane class

JDialog class

JFrame class

JInternalFrame class

JMenu class

JMenuBar class

JMenuItem class

JRadioButtonMenuItem class

JSlider class

JTabbedPane class

line wrapping

LookAndFeelInfo nested class of class UIManager

menu

menu bar

menu item
metal look-and-feel

minor tick marks of JSlider

mnemonic

modal dialog box

multiple document interface (MDI)

NONE constant of class GridBagConstraints

NORTH constant of class GridBagConstraints

NORTHEAST constant of class GridBagConstraints

NORTHWEST constant of class GridBagConstraints

opaque

origin component

pack method of class Window

paintComponent method of class JComponent

parent window

parent window for a dialog box

pluggable look and feel (PLAF)

pop-up trigger event

RELATIVE constant of class GridBagConstraints

REMAINDER constant of class GridBagConstraints

rigid area
scrollbar policies

**selected text**

**separator line in a menu**

`setConstraints` **method of class** `GridBagLayout`

`setDefaultCloseOperation` **method of class** `JFrame`

`setInverted` **method of class** `JSlider`

`setJMenuBar` **method of class** `JFrame`

`setLocation` **method of class** `Component`

`setLookAndFeel` **method of class** `UIManager`

`setMajorTickSpacing` **method of class** `JSlider`

`setMnemonic` **method of class** `AbstractButton`

`setOpaque` **method of class** `JComponent`

`setPaintTicks` **method of class** `JSlider`

`setSelected` **method of class** `AbstractButton`

`setVerticalScrollBarPolicy` **method of class** `JSlider`

---

**shortcut key**

`show` **method of class** `JPopupMenu`

**snap-to ticks for** `JSlider`
SOUTH constant of class GridBagConstraints

SOUTHEAST constant of class GridBagConstraints

SOUTHWEST constant of class GridBagConstraints

stateChanged method of interface ChangeListener

submenu

SwingUtilities class

thumb of JSlider

tick marks on JSlider

title bar

transparency of a JComponent

UIManager class

updateComponentTreeUI method of class SwingUtilities

VERTICAL constant of class GridBagConstraints

vertical strut

weightx field of class GridBagConstraints

weighty field of class GridBagConstraints

WEST constant of class GridBagConstraints

window
window events

windowActivated method of interface

WindowListener

WindowClosing method of interface

WindowListener

WindowConstants interface

WindowDeactivated method of interface

WindowListener

WindowDeiconified method of interface

WindowListener

WindowIconified method of interface

WindowListener

WindowListener interface

WindowOpened method of interface

WindowListener

X_AXIS constant of class Box

Y_AXIS constant of class Box
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. The _____ class is used to create a menu object.
2. The _____ method of class JMenu places a separator bar in a menu.
3. JSlider events are handled by the _____ method of interface _____.
4. The GridBagConstraints instance variable _____ is set to CENTER by default.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. When the programmer creates a JFrame, a minimum of one menu must be created and added to the JFrame.
2. The variable fill belongs to the GridBagLayout class.
3. Drawing on a GUI component is performed with respect to the (0, 0) upper-left corner coordinate of the component.
4. The default layout for a Box is BoxLayout.

Find the error(s) in each of the following and explain how to correct the error(s).

1. JMenubar b;
2. mySlider = JSlider( 1000, 222, 100, 450 );
3. gbc.fill = GridBagConstraints.NORTHWEST; // set fill
4. // override to paint on a customized Swing component
   public void paintComponent( Graphics g )
   {
      g.drawString( "HELLO", 50, 50 );
   } // end method paintComponent
5. // create a JFrame and display it
   JFrame f = new JFrame( "A Window" );
   f.setVisible( true );
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

22.1  a) JMenu. b) addSeparator. c) stateChanged, ChangeListener. d) anchor.

1. False. A JFrame does not require any menus.

2. False. The variable fill belongs to the GridBagConstraints class.

22.2

3. True.

4. True.

1. JMenubar should be JMenuBar.

2. The first argument to the constructor should be either SwingConstants.HORIZONTAL or SwingConstants.VERTICAL, and the keyword new must be used after the = operator.

22.3

3. The constant should be either BOTH, HORIZONTAL, VERTICAL or NONE.

4. paintcomponent should be paintComponent, and the method should call super.paint-Component( g ) as its first statement.

5. The JFrame's setSize method must also be called to establish the size of the window.
Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. A JMenuItem that is a JMenu is called a(n) _____

2. Method _____ attaches a JMenuBar to a JFrame.

3. Container _____ class has a default BoxLayout.

4. A(n) _____ manages a set of child windows declared with class JInternalFrame.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. Menus require a JMenuBar object so they can be attached to a JFrame.

2. BoxLayout is the default layout manager for a JFrame.

3. Method setEditable is a JTextComponent method.

4. Class JFrame directly extends class Container.

5. JApplets can contain menus.

Find the error(s) in each of the following. Explain how to correct the error(s).

1. x.add( new JMenuItem( "Submenu Color" ) ); // create submenu

2. container.setLayout( m = new GridBagLayout() );

Write a program that displays a circle of random size and calculates and displays the area, radius, diameter and circumference. Use the following equations: diameter = 2 \( \pi \) radius, area = \( \pi \) radius\(^2\), circumference = 2 \( \pi \) radius. Use the constant Math.PI for pi (\( \pi \)). All drawing should be done on a subclass of JPanel, and the results of the calculations should be displayed in a read-only JTextArea.

Enhance the program in Exercise 22.7 by allowing the user to alter the radius with a JSlider. The program should work for all radii in the range from 100 to 200. As the radius changes, the diameter, area and circumference should be updated and displayed. The initial radius should be 150. Use the equations from Exercise 22.7. All drawing should be done on a subclass of JPanel, and the results of the calculations should be displayed in a read-only JTextArea.

Explore the effects of varying the weightx and weighty values of the program in Fig. 22.21. What happens when a slot has a nonzero weight but is not allowed to fill the whole area (i.e., the fill value is not BOTH)?

Write a program that uses the paintComponent method to draw the current value of a JSlider on a subclass of JPanel. In addition, provide a JTextField where a specific value can be entered. The JTextField should display the current value of the JSlider at all times. A JLabel should be used to identify the JTextField. The JSlider methods setValue and getValue should be used. [Note: The setValue method is a public method that does not return a value and takes one integer argument, the JSlider value, which determines the position of the thumb.]
22.11 Modify the program in Fig. 22.13 by adding a minimum of two new tabs.

Declare a subclass of JPanel called MyColorChooser that provides three JSlider objects and three JTextField objects. Each JSlider represents the values from 0 to 255 for the red, green and blue parts of a color.

22.12 Use these values as the arguments to the Color constructor to create a new Color object. Display the current value of each JSlider in the corresponding JTextField. When the user changes the value of the JSlider, the JTextField should be changed accordingly. Use your new GUI component as part of an application that displays the current Color value by drawing a filled rectangle.

Modify the MyColorChooser class of Exercise 22.12 to allow the user to enter an integer value into a JTextField to set the red, green or blue value. When the user presses Enter in the JTextField, the corresponding JSlider should be set to the appropriate value.

Modify the application in Exercise 22.13 to draw the current color as a rectangle on an instance of a subclass of JPanel which provides its own paintComponent method to draw the rectangle and provides set methods to set the red, green and blue values for the current color. When any set method is invoked, the drawing panel should automatically repaint itself.

Modify the application in Exercise 22.14 to allow the user to drag the mouse across the drawing panel (a subclass of JPanel) to draw a shape in the current color. Enable the user to choose what shape to draw.

Modify the application in Exercise 22.15 to provide the user with the ability to terminate the application by clicking the close box on the window that is displayed and by selecting Exit from a File menu. Use the techniques shown in Fig. 22.5.

(Complete Drawing Application) Using the techniques developed in this chapter and Chapter 11, create a complete drawing application. The program should use the GUI components from Chapter 11 and Chapter 22 to enable the user to select the shape, color and fill characteristics. Each shape should be stored in an array of MyShape objects, where MyShape is the superclass in your hierarchy of shape classes. Use a JDesktopPane and JInternalFrames to allow the user to create multiple separate drawings in separate child windows. Create the user interface as a separate child window containing all the GUI components that allow the user to determine the characteristics of the shape to be drawn. The user can then click in any JInternalFrame to draw the shape.
Chapter 23. Multithreading

_Do not block the way of inquiry._

Charles Sanders Peirce

_A person with one watch knows what time it is; a person with two watches is never sure._

Proverb

_Learn to labor and to wait._

Henry Wadsworth Longfellow

_The most general definition of beauty...Multeity in Unity._

Samuel Taylor Coleridge

_The world is moving so fast these days that the man who says it can't be done is generally interrupted by someone doing it._

Elbert Hubbard

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- What threads are and why they are useful.
- How threads enable you to manage concurrent activities.
- The life cycle of a thread.
- Thread priorities and scheduling.
- To create and execute Runnables.
- Thread synchronization.
What producer/consumer relationships are and how they are implemented with multithreading.

To display output from multiple threads in a Swing GUI.

About Callable and Future.

Outline

23.1 Introduction

23.2 Thread States: Life Cycle of a Thread

23.3 Thread Priorities and Thread Scheduling

23.4 Creating and Executing Threads

23.5 Thread Synchronization

23.6 Producer/Consumer Relationship without Synchronization

23.7 Producer/Consumer Relationship with Synchronization

23.8 Producer/Consumer Relationship: Circular Buffer

23.9 Producer/Consumer Relationship: ArrayBlockingQueue

23.10 Multithreading with GUI

23.11 Other Classes and Interfaces in java.util.concurrent

23.12 Monitors and Monitor Locks

23.13 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises
Exercises
23.1. Introduction

It would be nice if we could perform one action at a time and perform it well, but that is usually difficult to do. The human body performs a great variety of operations in parallel, as we will say throughout this chapter, concurrently. Respiration, blood circulation, digestion, thinking and walking, for example, can occur concurrently. All the senses—sight, touch, smell, taste and hearing—can be employed at once. Computers, too, can perform operations concurrently. It is common for personal computers to compile a program, send a file to a printer and receive electronic mail messages over a network concurrently. Only computers that have multiple processors can truly execute operations concurrently. Operating systems on single-processor computers use various techniques to simulate concurrency, but on such computers only a single operation can execute at once.

Most programming languages do not enable programmers to specify concurrent activities. Rather, the languages generally provide control statements that only enable programmers to perform one action at a time, proceeding to the next action after the previous one has finished. Historically, concurrency has been implemented with operating system primitives available only to experienced systems programmers.

The Ada programming language, developed by the United States Department of Defense, made concurrency primitives widely available to defense contractors building military command-and-control systems. However, Ada has not been widely used in academia and commercial industry.

Java makes concurrency available to the applications programmer through its APIs. The programmer specifies that applications contain threads of execution, where each thread designates a portion of a program that may execute concurrently with other threads. This capability, called multithreading, gives the Java programmer powerful capabilities not available in the core C and C++ languages on which Java is based.

Performance Tip 23.1

A problem with single-threaded applications is that lengthy activities must complete before other activities can begin. In a multithreaded application,
threads can be distributed across multiple processors (if they are available) so that multiple tasks are performed concurrently and the application can operate more efficiently. Multithreading can also increase performance on single-processor systems that simulate concurrency when one thread cannot proceed, another can use the processor.

Portability Tip 23.1

Unlike languages that do not have built-in multithreading capabilities (such as C and C++) and must therefore make nonportable calls to operating system multithreading primitives, Java includes multithreading primitives as part of the language itself and as part of its libraries. This facilitates manipulating threads in a portable manner across platforms.

We will discuss many applications of concurrent programming. For example, when programs download large files, such as audio clips or video clips, over the Internet, users may not want to wait until an entire lengthy clip downloads before starting the playback. To solve this problem, we can put multiple threads to work—one thread downloads the clip, and another plays it. These activities proceed concurrently. To avoid choppy playback, we synchronize the threads so that the player thread does not begin until there is a sufficient amount of the clip in memory to keep the player thread busy.

Another example of multithreading is Java's garbage collection. C and C++ require the programmer to reclaim dynamically allocated memory explicitly. Java provides a garbage-collector thread that reclaims memory which is no longer needed.

Writing multithreaded programs can be tricky. Although the human mind can perform functions concurrently, people find it difficult to jump between parallel trains of thought. To see why multithreading can be difficult to program and understand, try the following experiment: Open three books to page 1, and try reading the books concurrently. Read a few words from the first book, then read a few words from the second book, then read a few words from the third book, then loop back and read the next few words from the first book, and so on. After this experiment, you will appreciate the challenges of
multithreadingswitching between books, reading briefly, remembering your place in each book, moving the book you are reading closer so you can see it and pushing books you are not reading asideand, amid all this chaos, trying to comprehend the content of the books!

Programming concurrent applications is a difficult and error-prone undertaking. Even some of the simplest concurrent applications are beyond the capability of beginner programmers. If you find that you must use synchronization in a program, you should follow some simple guidelines. First, use existing classes from the Java API (such as the ArrayBlockingQueue class discussed in Section 23.9, Producer/Consumer Relationship: ArrayBlockingQueue) that manage synchronization for you. The classes in the Java API have been fully tested and debugged and help you avoid common traps and pitfalls. Second, if you find that you need more custom functionality than that provided in the Java APIs, you should use the synchronized keyword and Object methods wait, notify and notifyAll (discussed in Section 23.12, Monitors and Monitor Locks). Finally, if you need even more complex capabilities, then you should use the Lock and Condition interfaces that are introduced in Section 23.5, Thread Synchronization).

The Lock and Condition interfaces are advanced tools and should be used only by advanced programmers who are familiar with the common traps and pitfalls of concurrent programming with synchronization. We explain these topics in this chapter for a number of reasons. For one, they provide a solid basis for understanding how concurrent applications synchronize access to shared memory. Even, if an application does not use these tools explicitly, the concepts are still important to understand. We have also discussed these topics to highlight the new concurrency features introduced by J2SE 5.0. Finally, by showing you the complexity involved in using these low-level features, we hope to impress upon you the importance of using prepackaged concurrent capabilities whenever possible.
23.2. Thread States: Life Cycle of a Thread

At any time, a thread is said to be in one of several thread states that are illustrated in the UML state diagram in Fig. 23.1. A few of the terms in the diagram are defined in later sections.

Figure 23.1. Thread life-cycle UML state diagram.

A new thread begins its life cycle in the new state. It remains in this state until the program starts the thread, which places the thread in the runnable state. A thread in this state is considered to be executing its task.

Sometimes a thread transitions to the waiting state while the thread waits for another thread to perform a task. Once in this state, a thread transitions back to the runnable state only when another thread signals the waiting thread to continue executing.

A runnable thread can enter the timed waiting state for a specified interval of time. A thread in this state transitions back to the runnable state when that time interval expires or when the event it is waiting for occurs. Timed waiting threads cannot use a processor, even if one is available. A thread can transition to the timed waiting state if it provides an optional wait interval...
when it is waiting for another thread to perform a task. Such a thread will return to the *Runnable* state when it is signaled by another thread or when the timed interval expires whichever comes first. Another way to place a thread in the *timed waiting* state is to put the thread to sleep. A *sleeping thread* remains in the *timed waiting* state for a designated period of time (called a *sleep interval*) at which point it returns to the *Runnable* state. Threads sleep when they momentarily do not have work to perform. For example, a word processor may contain a thread that periodically writes a copy of the current document to disk for recovery purposes. If the thread did not sleep between successive backups, it would require a loop in which it continually tests whether it should write a copy of the document to disk. This loop would consume processor time without performing productive work, thus reducing system performance. In this case, it is more efficient for the thread to specify a sleep interval (equal to the period between successive backups) and enter the *timed waiting* state. This thread is returned to the *Runnable* state when its sleep interval expires, at which point it writes a copy of the document to disk and reenters the *timed waiting* state.

A *Runnable* thread enters the *terminated* state when it completes its task or otherwise terminates (perhaps due to an error condition). In the UML state diagram in Fig. 23.1, the *terminated* state is followed by the UML final state (the bull's-eye symbol) to indicate the end of the state transitions.

At the operating-system level, Java's *Runnable* state actually encompasses two separate states (Fig. 23.2). The operating system hides these two states from the Java Virtual Machine (JVM), which only sees the *Runnable* state. When a thread first transitions to the *Runnable* state from the *New* state, the thread is in the *Ready* state. A *Ready* thread enters the *Running* state (i.e., begins executing) when the operating system assigns the thread to a processor also known as *dispatching the thread*. In most operating systems, each thread is given a small amount of processor time called a *quantum* or *timeslice* with which to perform its task. When the thread's quantum expires, the thread returns to the *Ready* state and the operating system assigns another thread to the processor (see Section 23.3). Transitions between these states are handled solely by the operating system. The JVM does not "see" these two states; it simply views a thread as being in the *Runnable* state and leaves it up to the operating system to transition threads between the *Ready* and *Running* states. The process that an operating system uses to decide which thread to dispatch is known as *thread scheduling* and is dependent on thread priorities (discussed in the next section).
Figure 23.2. Operating system's internal view of Java's runnable state.
23.3. Thread Priorities and Thread Scheduling

Every Java thread has a priority that helps the operating system determine the order in which threads are scheduled. Java priorities are in the range between MIN_PRIORITY (a constant of 1) and MAX_PRIORITY (a constant of 10). Informally, threads with higher priority are more important to a program and should be allocated processor time before lower-priority threads. However, thread priorities cannot guarantee the order in which threads execute. By default, every thread is given priority NORM_PRIORITY (a constant of 5). Each new thread inherits the priority of the thread that created it.

Note: These constants (MAX_PRIORITY, MIN_PRIORITY and NORM_PRIORITY) are declared in the Thread class. It is recommended that you do not explicitly create and use Thread objects to implement concurrency, but rather use the Runnable interface (which is described in Section 23.4). The Thread class does contain some static methods that are useful, as you will see later in this chapter.

Most Java platforms support timeslicing, which enables threads of equal priority to share a processor. Without timeslicing, each thread in a set of equal-priority threads runs to completion (unless it leaves the runnable state and enters the waiting or timed waiting state, or gets interrupted by a higher-priority thread) before other threads of equal priority get a chance to execute. With timeslicing, even if the thread has not finished executing when the quantum expires, the processor is taken away from that thread and given to the next thread of equal priority, if one is available.

The job of an operating system's thread scheduler is to determine which thread runs next. One simple implementation of the thread scheduler keeps the highest-priority thread running at all times and, if there is more than one highest-priority thread, ensures that all such threads execute for a quantum each in round-robin fashion. Figure 23.3 illustrates a multi-level priority queue for threads. In the figure, assuming a single-processor computer, threads A and B each execute for a quantum in round-robin fashion until both threads complete execution. This means that A gets a quantum of time to run. Then B gets a quantum. Then A gets another quantum. Then B gets another quantum. This continues until one thread completes. The processor then devotes all its power to the thread that remains (unless another thread of that
priority becomes ready). Next, thread \( C \) runs to completion (assuming that no higher-priority threads arrive). Threads \( D, E \) and \( F \) each execute for a quantum in round-robin fashion until they all complete execution (again assuming that no higher-priority threads arrive). This process continues until all threads run to completion.

**Figure 23.3. Thread-priority scheduling.**
(This item is displayed on page 1058 in the print version)

[View full size image]

**Portability Tip 23.2**
Thread scheduling is platform dependent; an application that uses multithreading could behave differently on separate Java implementations.

When a higher-priority thread enters the *ready* state, the operating system generally preempts the currently *running* thread (an operation known as **preemptive scheduling**). Depending on the operating system, higher-priority threads could postpone possibly indefinitely the execution of lower-priority threads. Such **indefinite postponement** often is referred to more colorfully as **starvation**.

**Portability Tip 23.3**

When designing applets and applications that use threads, you must consider the threading capabilities of all the platforms on which the applets and applications will execute.

J2SE 5.0 provides higher-level concurrency utilities to hide some complexity and make multithreaded programs less error prone (though they are still certainly complex). Thread priorities are still used behind the scenes to interact with the operating system, but most programmers who use J2SE 5.0 multithreading will not be concerned with setting and adjusting thread priorities. You can learn more about priorities and threading at [java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/lang/Thread.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/lang/Thread.html).
23.4. Creating and Executing Threads

In J2SE 5.0, the preferred means of creating a multithreaded application is to implement the `Runnable` interface (package `java.lang`) and use built-in methods and classes to create Threads that execute the `Runnable` objects. The `Runnable` interface declares a single method named `run`. Runnables are executed by an object of a class that implements the `Executor` interface (package `java.util.concurrent`). This interface declares a single method named `execute`. An `Executor` object typically creates and manages a group of threads called a thread pool. These threads execute the `Runnable` objects passed to the `execute` method. The `Executor` assigns each `Runnable` to one of the available threads in the thread pool. If there are no available threads in the thread pool, the `Executor` creates a new thread or waits for a thread to become available and assigns that thread the `Runnable` that was passed to method `execute`. Depending on the `Executor` type, there may be a limit to the number of threads that can be created. Interface `ExecutorService` (package `java.util.concurrent`) is a subinterface of `Executor` that declares a number of other methods for managing the life cycle of the `Executor`. An object that implements the `ExecutorService` interface can be created using static methods declared in class `Executors` (package `java.util.concurrent`). We use these interfaces and methods in the next application, which executes three threads.

Class `PrintTask` (Fig. 23.4) implements `Runnable` (line 5), so that each `PrintTask` object can execute concurrently. Variable `sleepTime` (line 7) stores a random integer value (line 17) chosen when the `PrintTask` constructor executes. Each thread running a `PrintTask` object sleeps for the amount of time specified by the corresponding `PrintTask` object's `sleepTime`, then outputs its name.

Figure 23.4. Threads sleeping and awakening.

(This item is displayed on page 1060 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 23.4: PrintTask.java
2 // PrintTask class sleeps for a random time from 0 to 5 seconds
3 import java.util.Random;
4
5 class PrintTask implements Runnable
```
When a `PrintTask` is assigned to a processor for the first time, its `run` method (lines 2138) begins execution. Lines 2526 display a message indicating the name of the currently executing thread and stating that the thread is going to sleep for a certain number of milliseconds. Line 26 uses the `threadName` field which was initialized at line 14 with the `PrintTask` constructor's argument. Line 28 invokes static method `sleep` of class `Thread` to place the thread into the `timed waiting` state. At this point, the thread loses the processor, and the system allows another thread to execute. When the thread awakens, it reenters the `runnable` state. When the `PrintTask` is assigned to a processor again, line 37 outputs the thread's name in a message that indicates the thread is done sleeping then method `run` terminates. Note that the `catch` at lines 3134 is required because method `sleep` might throw an `InterruptedException`, which is a checked exception. Such an exception occurs if a sleeping thread's `interrupt` method is called. Most programmers do not directly manipulate `Thread` objects, so `InterruptedExceptions` are unlikely to
Figure 23.5 creates three threads of execution using the PrintTask class. Method main (lines 828) creates and names three PrintTask objects (lines 1113). Line 18 creates a new ExecutorService. This line uses the newFixedThreadPool method of class Executors, which creates a pool consisting of a fixed number of Threads as indicated by the method's argument (in this case, 3). These Threads are used by threadExecutor to execute the Runnables. If method execute is called and all the threads in the ExecutorService are being used, the Runnable will be placed in a queue and assigned to the first thread that completes its previous task. Executors method newCachedThreadPool returns an ExecutorService that creates new threads as they are needed by the application.

Figure 23.5. Creates three PrintTasks and executes them. (This item is displayed on page 1061 in the print version)

```java
public class RunnableTester
{
    public static void main( String[] args )
    {
        // create and name each runnable
        PrintTask task1 = new PrintTask( "thread1" );
        PrintTask task2 = new PrintTask( "thread2" );
        PrintTask task3 = new PrintTask( "thread3" );

        System.out.println( "Starting threads" );

        // create ExecutorService to manage threads
        ExecutorService threadExecutor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool( 3 );

        // start threads and place in runnable state
        threadExecutor.execute( task1 ); // start task1
        threadExecutor.execute( task2 ); // start task2
        threadExecutor.execute( task3 ); // start task3

        threadExecutor.shutdown(); // shutdown worker threads

        System.out.println( "Threads started, main ends\n" );
    }
} // end class RunnableTester
```

Starting threads
Threads started, main ends
thread1 going to sleep for 1217 milliseconds
thread2 going to sleep for 3989 milliseconds
thread3 going to sleep for 662 milliseconds
thread3 done sleeping
thread1 done sleeping
thread2 done sleeping

Starting threads
thread1 going to sleep for 314 milliseconds
thread2 going to sleep for 1990 milliseconds
Threads started, main ends

thread3 going to sleep for 3016 milliseconds
thread1 done sleeping
thread2 done sleeping
thread3 done sleeping

Lines 2123 invoke the ExecutorService's execute method. This method creates a new Thread inside the ExecutorService to run the Runnable passed to it as an argument (in this case a PrintTask) and transitions that Thread from the new state to the runnable state. Method execute returns immediately from each invocation the program does not wait for each PrintTask to finish. Line 25 calls ExecutorService method shutdown, which will end each Thread in threadExecutor as soon as each finishes executing its Runnable. Line 27 outputs a message indicating that the threads were started. [Note: Line 18 creates the ExecutorService using method newFixedThreadPool and the argument 3. This program executes only three Runnables, so a new Thread will be created by the ExecutorService for each Runnable. If the program executed more than three Runnables, additional Threads would not be created, but rather an existing Thread would be reused when it completed the Runnable assigned to it.]
The code in method `main` executes in the **main thread**. This thread is created by the JVM and executes the `main` method. The code in the `run` method of `PrintTask` (lines 2138 of **Fig. 23.4**) executes in the threads created by the `ExecutorService`. When method `main` terminates (line 28), the program itself continues running because there are still threads that are alive (i.e., the threads started by `tHreadExecutor` that have not yet reached the `terminated` state). The program will not terminate until its last thread completes execution.

The sample outputs for this program show each thread's name and sleep time as the thread goes to sleep. The thread with the shortest sleep time normally awakens first, indicates that it is done sleeping and terminates. In **Section 23.8**, we discuss multithreading issues that could prevent the thread with the shortest sleep time from awakening first. In the first output, the main thread terminates before any of the other threads output their names and sleep times. This shows that the main thread runs to completion before any of the other threads get a chance to run. In the second output, the first two threads output their names and sleep times before the main thread terminates. This shows that the operating system allowed other threads to execute before the main thread terminated. This is an example of the round-robin scheduling we discussed in **Section 23.3**.
23.5. Thread Synchronization

Often, multiple threads of execution manipulate a shared object in memory. When multiple threads share an object and that object is modified by one or more of the threads, indeterminate results may occur (as we will soon see in the chapter examples) unless the shared object is managed properly. If one thread is in the process of updating a shared object and another thread tries to update it too, it is possible that part of the object will reflect the information from one thread while another part of the object reflects information from a different thread. When this happens, the program's behavior cannot be trusted. Sometimes the program will produce the correct results, but other times it will produce incorrect results. In either case there will be no error message to indicate that the shared object was manipulated incorrectly.

The problem can be solved by giving one thread at a time exclusive access to code that manipulates the shared object. During that time, other threads desiring to manipulate the object are kept waiting. When the thread with exclusive access to the object finishes manipulating it, one of the threads that was kept waiting is allowed to proceed. In this fashion, each thread accessing the shared object excludes all other threads from doing so simultaneously. This is called **mutual exclusion**. Mutual exclusion allows the programmer to perform **thread synchronization**, which coordinates access to shared data by multiple concurrent threads.

Java uses **locks** to perform synchronization. Any object can contain an object that implements the **Lock** interface (package `java.util.concurrent.locks`). A thread calls the **Lock**'s **lock** method to **obtain the lock**. Once a **Lock** has been obtained by one thread, the **Lock** object will not allow another thread to obtain the lock until the first thread releases the **Lock** (by calling the **Lock**'s **unlock** method). If there are several threads trying to call method **lock** on the same **Lock** object at the same time, only one thread may obtain the lock at a time; all other threads attempting to obtain the **Lock** contained in the same object are placed in the **waiting** state for that lock. When a thread calls method **unlock**, the lock on the object is released and the highest-priority waiting thread attempting to lock the object proceeds. Class **ReentrantLock** (package `java.util.concurrent.locks`) is a basic implementation of the **Lock** interface. The constructor for a **ReentrantLock** takes a **boolean** argument that specifies whether the lock has a **fairness policy**. If this is set to **true**, the **ReentrantLock**'s fairness policy states that the longest-waiting thread will acquire the lock when it is available. If this is set to **false**, there is no guarantee as to which waiting
thread will acquire the lock when it is available.

Performance Tip 23.2

Using a Lock with a fairness policy helps avoid indefinite postponement, but can also dramatically reduce the overall efficiency of a program. Because of the large decrease in performance, fair locks are only necessary in extreme circumstances.

If a thread that owns the lock on an object determines that it cannot continue with its task until some condition is satisfied, the thread can wait on a condition variable. This removes the thread from contention for the processor, places it in a wait queue for the condition variable and releases the lock on the object. Condition variables must be associated with a Lock and are created by calling Lock method newCondition, which returns an object that implements the Condition interface (package java.util.concurrent.locks). To wait on a condition variable, the thread can call the Condition's await method. This immediately releases the associated Lock and places the thread in the waiting state for that Condition. Other threads can then try to obtain the Lock. When a runnable thread completes a task and determines that the waiting thread can now continue, the runnable thread can call Condition method signal to allow a thread in that Condition's waiting state to return to the runnable state. At this point, the thread that transitioned from the waiting state to the runnable state can attempt to reacquire the Lock on the object. Even if it is able to reacquire the Lock, the thread still might not be able to perform its task at this time in which case the thread can call method await to release the Lock and reenter the waiting state. If multiple threads are in a Condition's waiting state when signal is called, the default implementation of Condition signals the longest-waiting thread to move to the runnable state. If a thread calls Condition method signalAll, then all the threads waiting for that condition move to the runnable state and become eligible to reacquire the Lock. Only one of those threads can obtain the Lock on the object at a time or other threads that attempt to acquire the same Lock will wait until the Lock becomes available again. If the Lock was created with a fairness policy, the longest-waiting thread will then acquire the Lock. When a thread is finished with a shared object, it must call
**Common Programming Error 23.1**

*Deadlock* occurs when a waiting thread (let us call this thread1) cannot proceed because it is waiting (either directly or indirectly) for another thread (let us call this thread2) to proceed, while simultaneously thread2 cannot proceed because it is waiting (either directly or indirectly) for thread1 to proceed. Two threads are waiting for each other, so the actions that would enable each thread to continue execution never occur.

**Error-Prevention Tip 23.1**

When multiple threads manipulate a shared object using locks, ensure that if one thread calls method *await* to enter the waiting state for a condition variable, a separate thread eventually will call *Condition* method *signal* to transition the thread waiting on the *condition* variable back to the runnable state. If multiple threads may be waiting on the condition variable, a separate thread can call *Condition* method *signalAll* as a safeguard to ensure that all the waiting threads have another opportunity to perform their tasks. If this is not done, indefinite postponement or deadlock could occur.

**Software Engineering Observation 23.1**

The locking that occurs with the execution of the *lock* and *unlock* methods could lead to deadlock if the locks are never released. Calls to method *unlock* should be placed in *finally* blocks to ensure that locks are released and avoid these kinds of deadlocks.
Performance Tip 23.3

Synchronization to achieve correctness in multithreaded programs can make programs run more slowly, as a result of thread overhead and the frequent transition of threads between the waiting and runnable states. There is not much to say, however, for highly efficient yet incorrect multithreaded programs!

Common Programming Error 23.2

It is an error if a thread issues an `await`, a `signal`, or a `signalAll` on a condition variable without having acquired the lock for that condition variable. This causes an `IllegalMonitorStateException`. 
23.6. Producer/Consumer Relationship without Synchronization

In a **producer/consumer relationship**, the **producer** portion of an application generates data and stores it in a shared object, and the **consumer** portion of an application reads data from the shared object. One example of a common producer/consumer relationship is print spooling. A word processor spools data to a buffer (typically a file) and that data is subsequently consumed by the printer as it prints the document. Similarly, an application that copies data onto compact discs places data in a fixed-size buffer that is emptied as the CD-RW drive burns the data onto the compact disc.

In a multithreaded producer/consumer relationship, a **producer thread** generates data and places it in a shared object called a **buffer**. A **consumer thread** reads data from the buffer. If the producer waiting to put the next data into the buffer determines that the consumer has not yet read the previous data from the buffer, the producer thread should call **await** so that the consumer can read the data before further updates otherwise the consumer never sees the previous data and that data is lost to the application. When the consumer thread reads the data, it should call **signal** to allow a waiting producer to store the next value. If a consumer thread finds the buffer empty or finds that the previous data has already been read, the consumer should call **await** otherwise the consumer might read old data again from the buffer. When the producer places the next data into the buffer, the producer should call **signal** to allow the consumer thread to proceed, so that the consumer can read the new data.

Let us consider how logic errors can arise if we do not synchronize access among multiple threads manipulating shared data. Our next example (**Fig. 23.6**) implements a producer/consumer relationship in which a producer thread writes the numbers 1 through 10 into a shared buffer a memory location shared between two threads (a single **int** variable called **buffer** in line 6 of **Fig. 23.9** in this example). The consumer thread reads this data from the shared buffer and displays the data. The program's output shows the values that the producer writes (produces) into the shared buffer and the values that the consumer reads (consumes) from the shared buffer.

**Figure 23.6.** **Buffer** interface used in producer/consumer examples.
Each value the producer thread writes to the shared buffer must be consumed exactly once by the consumer thread. However, the threads in this example are not synchronized. Therefore, data can be lost if the producer places new data into the shared buffer before the consumer consumes the previous data. Also, data can be incorrectly duplicated if the consumer consumes data again before the producer produces the next value. To show these possibilities, the consumer thread in the following example keeps a total of all the values it reads. The producer thread produces values from 1 through 10. If the consumer reads each value produced once and only once, the total will be 55. However, if you execute this program several times, you will see that the total is not always 55 (as shown in the outputs in Fig. 23.10). To emphasize the point, the producer and consumer threads in the example each sleep for random intervals of up to three seconds between performing their tasks. Thus, we do not know exactly when the producer thread will attempt to write a new value, nor do we know when the consumer thread will attempt to read a value.

The program consists of interface Buffer (Fig. 23.6) and four classes Producer (Fig. 23.7), Consumer (Fig. 23.8), UnsynchronizedBuffer (Fig. 23.9) and SharedBufferTest (Fig. 23.10). Interface Buffer declares methods set and get that a Buffer must implement to enable the Producer thread to place a value in the Buffer and the Consumer thread to retrieve a value from the Buffer. We will see the implementation of this interface in Fig. 23.9.

Figure 23.7. **Producer** represents the producer thread in a producer/consumer relationship.
public class Producer implements Runnable
{
    private static Random generator = new Random();
    private Buffer sharedLocation; // reference to shared object

    // constructor
    public Producer( Buffer shared )
    {
        sharedLocation = shared;
    } // end Producer constructor

    // store values from 1 to 10 in sharedLocation
    public void run()
    {
        int sum = 0;

        for ( int count = 1; count <= 10; count++ )
        {
            try // sleep 0 to 3 seconds, then place value in Buffer
            {
                Thread.sleep( generator.nextInt( 3000 ) ); // sleep thread
                sharedLocation.set( count ); // set value in buffer
                sum += count; // increment sum of values
                System.out.printf( "\t%2d\n", sum );
            }
            catch ( InterruptedException exception )
            {
                exception.printStackTrace();
            } // end catch
        } // end for

        System.out.printf( "
%s
%s
", "Producer done producing.", "Terminating Producer." );
    } // end method run
} // end class Producer

Figure 23.8. Consumer represents the consumer thread in a producer/consumer relationship.
(This item is displayed on page 1067 in the print version)
private Buffer sharedLocation; // reference to shared object

// constructor
public Consumer( Buffer shared )
{
    sharedLocation = shared;
} // end Consumer constructor

// read sharedLocation's value four times and sum the values
public void run()
{
    int sum = 0;

    for ( int count = 1; count <= 10; count++ )
    {
        // sleep 0 to 3 seconds, read value from buffer and add to sum
        try
        {
            Thread.sleep( generator.nextInt( 3000 ) );
            sum += sharedLocation.get();
            System.out.printf( "%t\t\t%2d\n", sum );
        } // end try
        // if sleeping thread interrupted, print stack trace
        catch ( InterruptedException exception )
        {
            exception.printStackTrace();
        } // end catch
    } // end for

    System.out.printf( "\n%7s %d.%7s\n
" ,
        "Consumer read values totaling", sum, "Terminating Consumer." );
} // end method run

// Fig. 23.9. UnsynchronizedBuffer maintains the shared integer that is accessed by a producer thread and a consumer thread via methods set and get.

// Fig. 23.9: UnsynchronizedBuffer.java
// UnsynchronizedBuffer represents a single shared integer.
public class UnsynchronizedBuffer implements Buffer
{
    private int buffer = -1; // shared by producer and consumer threads

    // place value into buffer
    public void set( int value )
    {
        System.out.printf( "Producer writes\t%2d", value );
        buffer = value;
    } // end method set
Figure 23.10. **SharedBufferTest** sets up a producer/consumer application that uses an unsynchronized buffer.

(This item is displayed on pages 1069 - 1071 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Produced</th>
<th>Consumed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Produced</td>
<td>Consumed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Consumer read values totaling 19.
Terminating Consumer.

Producer writes 7 28
Producer writes 8 36
Producer writes 9 45
Producer writes 10 55
Class **Producer** ([Fig. 23.7](#)) implements the **Runnable** interface, allowing it to be executed in a separate thread. The constructor (lines 1114) initializes `Buffer` reference `sharedLocation` with an object created in `main` (line 14 of **Fig. 23.10**) and passed to the constructor in the parameter `shared`. As we will see, this is an `UnsynchronizedBuffer` object that implements interface `Buffer` without synchronizing access to the shared object. The **Producer** thread in this program executes the tasks specified in method `run` (lines 1739). Each iteration of the loop (lines 2135) invokes `sleep` (line 25) to place the **Producer** thread into the *timed waiting* state for a random time interval between 0 and 3 seconds. When the thread awakens, line 26 passes the value of control variable `count` to the `Buffer` object's `set` method to set the shared buffer's value. Line 27 keeps a total of all the values produced so far and line 28 outputs that value. When the loop completes, lines 3738 display a message indicating that the thread has finished producing data and is terminating. Next, method `run` terminates which indicates that the **Producer** completed its task. It is important to note that any method called from a thread's `run` method (e.g., `Buffer` method `set`) executes as part of that thread of execution. In fact, each thread has its own method call stack. This fact becomes important in **Section 23.7** when we add synchronization to the producer/consumer relationship.

Class **Consumer** ([Fig. 23.8](#)) also implements interface **Runnable**, allowing the **Consumer** to be executed concurrently with the **Producer**. The constructor (lines 1114) initializes `Buffer` reference `sharedLocation` with an object that implements the `Buffer` interface created in `main` (**Fig. 23.10**) and passed to the constructor as the parameter `shared`. As we will see, this is the same `UnsynchronizedBuffer` object that is used to initialize the **Producer** object, thus, the two threads share the same object. The **Consumer** thread in this program performs the tasks specified in method `run` (lines 1739). The loop at lines 2135 loops ten times. Each iteration of the loop invokes `sleep` (line 26) to put the **Consumer** thread into the *timed waiting* state for between 0 and 3 seconds. Next, line 27 uses the `Buffer` object's `get` method to retrieve the value in the shared buffer, then adds the value to variable `sum`. Line 28 displays the total of all the values consumed so far. When the loop completes, lines 3738 display a line indicating the sum of the consumed values. Then method `run` terminates, which indicates
that the Consumer completed its task. Once both threads enter the *terminated* state, the program ends.

**Note:** We use method `sleep` in method `run` of the Producer and Consumer classes to emphasize the fact that in multithreaded applications, it is unpredictable when each thread will perform its task and for how long it will perform the task when it has a processor. Normally, these thread-scheduling issues are the job of the computer's operating system and therefore beyond the control of the Java developer. In this program, our thread's tasks are quite simple: for the Producer, write the values 1 to 10 to the buffer, and for the Consumer, read 10 values from the buffer and add each value to variable `sum`. Without the `sleep` method call, and if the Producer executes first, given today's phenomenally fast processors, the Producer would likely complete its task before the Consumer gets a chance to execute. If the Consumer executes first, it would likely consume -1 ten times, then terminate before the Producer could produce the first real value.

Class `UnsynchronizedBuffer` ([Fig. 23.9](#)) implements interface `Buffer` (line 4). An object of this class is shared between the Producer and the Consumer. Line 6 declares instance variable `buffer` and initializes it with the value `-1`. This value is used to demonstrate the case in which the Consumer attempts to consume a value before the Producer ever places a value in `buffer`. Methods `set` (lines 9-13) and `get` (lines 16-20) do not synchronize access to field `buffer`. Method `set` simply assigns its argument to `buffer` (line 12), and method `get` simply returns the value of `buffer` (line 19).

Class `SharedBufferTest` contains method `main` (lines 832), which launches the application. Line 11 creates an `ExecutorService` with two threadsthose to execute the Producer and one to execute the Consumer. Line 14 creates an `UnsynchronizedBuffer` object and assigns its reference to `Buffer` variable `sharedLocation`. This object stores the data that will be shared between the Producer and Consumer threads. Lines 23-24 create and execute the Producer and Consumer. Note that the Producer and Consumer constructors are each passed the same `Buffer` object (`sharedLocation`), so each object is initialized with a reference to the same `Buffer`. These lines also implicitly launch the threads and call each Runnable's `run` method. Finally, line 31 calls method `shutdown` so that the
application can terminate when the Producer and Consumer threads complete their tasks. When method `main` terminates (line 32), the main thread of execution enters the `terminated` state.

Recall from the overview of this example that we would like the Producer thread to execute first and every value produced by the Producer to be consumed exactly once by the Consumer. However, when we study the first output of Fig. 23.10, we see that the Producer writes a value three times before the Consumer reads its first value (3). Therefore, the values 1 and 2 are lost. Later, the values 5, 6, and 9 are lost, while 7 and 8 are read twice and 10 is read four times. So the first output produced an incorrect total of 77, instead of a correct total of 55. In the second output, note that the Consumer reads before the Producer ever writes a value. Also note that the Consumer has already read five times before the Producer writes the value 2. Meanwhile, the values 5, 7, 8, 9, and 10 are all lost. An incorrect output of 19 is produced. (Lines in the output where the Producer or Consumer has acted out of order are highlighted.) This example clearly demonstrates that access to a shared object by concurrent threads must be controlled carefully, for otherwise a program may produce incorrect results.

To solve the problems of lost and duplicated data, Section 23.7 presents an example in which we use a Lock and Condition methods `await` and `signal` to synchronize access to the code that manipulates the shared object, guaranteeing that each and every value will be processed once and only once. When a thread acquires a lock, no other threads can acquire that same lock until the original thread releases it.
23.7. Producer/Consumer Relationship with Synchronization

The application in Fig. 23.11 and Fig. 23.12 demonstrates a producer and a consumer accessing a shared buffer with synchronization. In this case, the consumer correctly consumes only after the producer produces a value, and the producer correctly produces a new value only after the consumer consumes the previous value produced. We reuse interface Buffer (Fig. 23.6) and use classes Producer (Fig. 23.7 modified to remove line 28) and Consumer (Fig. 23.8 modified to remove line 28) from the example in Section 23.6. This approach enables us to demonstrate that the threads accessing the shared object are unaware that they are being synchronized. The code that performs the synchronization is placed in the set and get methods of class SynchronizedBuffer (Fig. 23.11), which implements interface Buffer (line 7). Thus, the Producer's and Consumer's run methods simply call the shared object's set and get methods, as in the example in Section 23.6.

---

Figure 23.11. SynchronizedBuffer synchronizes access to a shared integer.

(This item is displayed on pages 1071 - 1073 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 23.11: SynchronizedBuffer.java
// SynchronizedBuffer synchronizes access to a single shared integer.
import java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock;
import java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock;
import java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition;

public class SynchronizedBuffer implements Buffer {
    // Lock to control synchronization with this buffer
    private Lock accessLock = new ReentrantLock();

    // conditions to control reading and writing
    private Condition canWrite = accessLock.newCondition();
    private Condition canRead = accessLock.newCondition();

    private int buffer = -1; // shared by producer and consumer threads
    private boolean occupied = false; // whether buffer is occupied

    // place int value into buffer
```
public void set(int value) {
    accessLock.lock(); // lock this object

    // output thread information and buffer information, then wait
    try {
        // while buffer is not empty, place thread in waiting state
        while (occupied) {
            System.out.println("Producer tries to write. ");
            displayState("Buffer full. Producer waits.");
            canWrite.await(); // wait until buffer is empty
        } // end while

        buffer = value; // set new buffer value

        // indicate producer cannot store another value
        // until consumer retrieves current buffer value
        occupied = true;

        displayState("Producer writes " + buffer);

        // signal thread waiting to read from buffer
        canRead.signal();
    } // end try
    catch (InterruptedException exception) {
        exception.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
    finally {
        accessLock.unlock(); // unlock this object
    } // end finally
} // end method set

// return value from buffer
public int get() {
    int readValue = 0; // initialize value read from buffer
    accessLock.lock(); // lock this object

    // output thread information and buffer information, then wait
    try {
        // while no data to read, place thread in waiting state
        while (!occupied) {
            System.out.println("Consumer tries to read. ");
            displayState("Buffer empty. Consumer waits.");
            canRead.await(); // wait until buffer is full
        } // end while

        // indicate that producer can store another value
        // because consumer just retrieved buffer value
        occupied = false;

        readValue = buffer; // retrieve value from buffer
        displayState("Consumer reads " + readValue);

        // signal thread waiting for buffer to be empty
    } // end try
    catch (InterruptedException exception) {
        exception.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
} // end method get
Figure 23.12. **SharedBufferTest2** sets up a producer/consumer application that uses a synchronized buffer.

(This item is displayed on pages 1075 - 1076 in the print version)
```java
{      
   exception.printStackTrace(); 
} // end catch

application.shutdown(); } // end main

} // end class SharedBufferTest2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Buffer</th>
<th>Occupied</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer tries to write.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer full. Producer waits.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer tries to write.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer full. Producer waits.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer tries to read.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer empty. Consumer waits.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer tries to read.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer empty. Consumer waits.</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
Class `SynchronizedBuffer` (Fig. 23.11) contains five fields. Line 10 creates a new object of type `ReentrantLock` and assigns its reference to `Lock` variable `accessLock`. The `ReentrantLock` is created without the fairness policy because only a single Producer or Consumer will be waiting to acquire the `Lock` in this example. Lines 1314 create two `Conditions` using `Lock` method `newCondition`. Condition `canWrite` contains a queue for threads waiting while the buffer is full (i.e., there is data in the buffer that the Consumer has not read yet). If the buffer is full, the Producer calls method `await` on this `Condition`. When the Consumer reads data from a full buffer, it calls method `signal` on this `Condition`. Condition `canRead` contains a queue for threads waiting while the buffer is empty (i.e., there is no data in the buffer for the Consumer to read). If the buffer is empty, the Consumer calls method `await` on this `Condition`. When the Producer writes to the empty buffer, it calls method `signal` on this `Condition`. The `int buffer` (line 16) holds the shared data, and the `boolean` variable `occupied` (line 17) keeps track of whether the buffer currently holds data (that the Consumer should read) or not.

Line 22 in method `set` calls the `lock` method of the `SynchronizedBuffer`'s `accessLock`. If the lock is available (i.e., no other thread has acquired this lock), method `lock` will return immediately (this thread now owns the lock) and the thread will continue. If the lock is unavailable (i.e., the lock is held by another thread), this method will wait until the lock is released by the other thread. After the lock is acquired, the `try` block in lines 2545 executes. Line 28 tests `occupied` to determine whether the buffer is full. If it is, lines 3031 output that
the thread will wait. Line 32 calls `Condition` method `await` on the `canWrite` condition variable which will temporarily release the `SynchronizedBuffer`'s lock and wait for a signal from the `Consumer` that the buffer is available for writing. When the buffer is available for writing, the method proceeds, writing to the buffer (line 35), setting `occupied` to `true` (line 39) and outputting that the producer wrote a value. Line 44 calls `Condition` method `signal` on condition variable `canRead` to notify the waiting `Consumer` that the buffer has new data to be read. Line 52 calls method `unlock` within a `finally` block to release the lock and allow the `Consumer` to proceed.

Common Programming Error 23.3

![Image]

*Place calls to `lock` method `unlock` in a `finally` block. If an exception is thrown, `unlock` must still be called or deadlock could occur.*

Line 60 of method `get` (lines 5794) calls method `lock` to acquire the lock for this object. This method will wait until the lock is available. Once the lock is acquired, line 66 tests whether `occupied` is `false`, indicating that the buffer has no data. If the buffer is empty, line 70 calls method `await` on condition variable `canRead`. Recall that method `signal` is called on variable `canRead` in the `set` method (line 44). When the condition variable is signaled, the `get` method continues. Line 75 sets `occupied` to `false`, line 77 stores the value of `buffer` in `readValue` and line 78 outputs the `readValue`. Then line 81 signals the condition variable `canWrite`. This will awaken the `Producer` if it is indeed waiting for the buffer to be emptied. Line 90 calls method `unlock` in a `finally` block to release the lock, and line 93 returns the value of the buffer to the calling method.

Software Engineering Observation 23.2

![Image]

*Always invoke method `await` in a loop that tests an appropriate condition. It is possible that a thread will reenter the runnable state before the condition it was waiting on is satisfied. Testing the condition again ensures that the thread will not erroneously execute if it was signaled early.*
Common Programming Error 23.4

Forgetting to signal a thread that is waiting for a condition is a logic error. The thread will remain in the waiting state, which will prevent the thread from doing any further work. Such waiting can lead to indefinite postponement or deadlock.

Class SharedBufferTest2 (Fig. 23.12) is similar to class SharedBufferTest (Fig. 23.10). SharedBufferTest2 contains method main (lines 830), which launches the application. Line 11 creates an ExecutorService with two threads to run the Producer and Consumer. Line 14 creates a SynchronizedBuffer object and assigns its reference to Buffer variable sharedLocation. This object stores the data that will be shared between the Producer and Consumer threads. Lines 16-17 display the column heads for the output. Lines 21-22 execute a Producer and a Consumer. Finally, line 29 calls method shutdown to end the application when the Producer and Consumer complete their tasks. When method main ends (line 30), the main thread of execution terminates.

Study the outputs in Fig. 23.12. Observe that every integer produced is consumed exactly once and no values are lost, and no values are consumed more than once. The synchronization and condition variables ensure that the Producer and Consumer cannot perform their tasks unless it is their turn. The Producer must go first, the Consumer must wait if the Producer has not produced since the Consumer last consumed, and the Producer must wait if the Consumer has not yet consumed the value that the Producer most recently produced. Execute this program several times to confirm that every integer produced is consumed exactly once. In the sample output, note the lines indicating when the Producer and Consumer must wait to perform their respective tasks.
23.8. Producer/Consumer Relationship: Circular Buffer

The program in Section 23.7 uses thread synchronization to guarantee that two threads manipulate data in a shared buffer correctly. However, the application may not perform optimally. If the two threads operate at different speeds, one of the threads will spend more (or most) of its time waiting. For example, in the program in Section 23.7 we shared a single integer variable between the two threads. If the producer thread produces values faster than the consumer can consume them, then the producer thread waits for the consumer, because there are no other locations in memory in which to place the next value. Similarly, if the consumer consumes values faster than the producer produces them, the consumer waits until the producer places the next value in the shared location in memory. Even when we have threads that operate at the same relative speeds, those threads may occasionally become "out of sync" over a period of time, causing one of them to wait for the other. We cannot make assumptions about the relative speeds of concurrent threads interactions that occur with the operating system, the network, the user and other components can cause the threads to operate at different speeds. When this happens, threads wait. When threads wait excessively, programs become less efficient, user-interactive programs become less responsive and applications suffer longer delays.

To minimize the amount of waiting time for threads that share resources and operate at the same average speeds, we can implement a circular buffer that provides extra buffer space into which the producer can place values and from which the consumer can retrieve those values. Let us assume that the buffer is implemented as an array. The producer and consumer work from the beginning of the array. When either thread reaches the end of the array, it simply returns to the first element of the array to perform its next task. If the producer temporarily produces values faster than the consumer can consume them, the producer can write additional values into the extra buffer space (if any are available). This capability enables the producer to perform its task even though the consumer is not ready to receive the current value being produced. Similarly, if the consumer consumes faster than the producer produces new values, the consumer can read additional values (if there are any) from the buffer. This enables the consumer to keep busy even though the producer is not ready to produce additional values.
Note that the circular buffer would be inappropriate if the producer and the consumer operate consistently at different speeds. If the consumer always executes faster than the producer, then a buffer containing one location is enough. Additional locations would waste memory. If the producer always executes faster, only a buffer with an infinite number of locations would be able to absorb the extra production.

The key to using a circular buffer with a producer and consumer that operate at about the same speed is to provide it with enough locations to handle the anticipated "extra" production. If, over a period of time, we determine that the producer often produces as many as three more values than the consumer can consume, we can provide a buffer of at least three cells to handle the extra production. We do not want the buffer to be too small, because that would cause threads to wait longer. On the other hand, we do not want the buffer to be too large, because that would waste memory.

**Performance Tip 23.4**

> Even when using a circular buffer, it is possible that a producer thread could fill the buffer, which would force the producer thread to wait until a consumer consumes a value to free an element in the buffer. Similarly, if the buffer is empty at any given time, the consumer thread must wait until the producer produces another value. The key to using a circular buffer is to optimize the buffer size to minimize the amount of thread wait time.

The program in Fig. 23.13 and Fig. 23.14 demonstrates a producer and a consumer accessing a circular buffer (in this case, a shared array of three cells) with synchronization. In this version of the producer/consumer relationship, the consumer consumes a value only when the array is not empty and the producer produces a value only when the array is not full. The statements that created and started the thread objects in the main method of class SharedBufferTest2 (Fig. 23.12) now appear in class CircularBufferTest (Fig. 23.14).

**Figure 23.13.** *CircularBuffer* synchronizes access to a circular buffer containing three slots.

(This item is displayed on pages 1078 - 1080 in the print version)
import java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock;
import java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock;
import java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition;

public class CircularBuffer implements Buffer
{
    // Lock to control synchronization with this buffer
    private Lock accessLock = new ReentrantLock();

    // conditions to control reading and writing
    private Condition canWrite = accessLock.newCondition();
    private Condition canRead = accessLock.newCondition();

    private int[] buffer = { -1, -1, -1 };  

    private int occupiedBuffers = 0;  // count number of buffers used
    private int writeIndex = 0;  // index to write next value
    private int readIndex = 0;  // index to read next value

    // place value into buffer
    public void set(int value)
    {
        accessLock.lock();  // lock this object

        try
        {
            // while no empty locations, place thread in waiting state
            while (occupiedBuffers == buffer.length)
            {
                System.out.printf("All buffers full. Producer waits.\n");
                canWrite.await();  // await until a buffer element is free
            }

            buffer[writeIndex] = value;  // set new buffer value

            // update circular write index
            writeIndex = (writeIndex + 1) % buffer.length;

            occupiedBuffers++;  // one more buffer element is full
            displayState("Producer writes " + buffer[writeIndex]);
            canRead.signal();  // signal threads waiting to read from buffer
        }
        catch (InterruptedException exception)
        {
            exception.printStackTrace();
        }
        finally
        {
            accessLock.unlock();  // unlock this object
        }
    }

    // return value from buffer
    public int get()
    {
        int readValue = 0;  // initialize value read from buffer
        accessLock.lock();  // lock this object

        try
        {
            try
            {
                readValue = buffer[readIndex];  // read value from buffer
                displayState("Reader reads " + readValue);
            }
            catch (InterruptedException exception)
            {
                exception.printStackTrace();
            }
            finally
            {
                canRead.signal();  // signal threads that can read
            }
        }
        catch (InterruptedException exception)
        {
            exception.printStackTrace();
        }
        finally
        {
            accessLock.unlock();  // unlock this object
        }

        return readValue;
    }
}
// wait until buffer has data, then read value
try {
// while no data to read, place thread in waiting state
while (occupiedBuffers == 0) {
    System.out.printf("All buffers empty. Consumer waits.\n");
    canRead.await(); // await until a buffer element is filled
} // end while

readValue = buffer[readIndex]; // read value from buffer

// update circular read index
readIndex = (readIndex + 1) % buffer.length;

occupiedBuffers--; // one more buffer element is empty
displayState("Consumer reads "+readValue);
canWrite.signal(); // signal threads waiting to write to buffer
} // end try

// if waiting thread interrupted, print stack trace
catch (InterruptedException exception) {
    exception.printStackTrace();
} // end catch

finally {
    accessLock.unlock(); // unlock this object
} // end finally

return readValue;
} // end method get

// display current operation and buffer state
public void displayState( String operation ) {
// output operation and number of occupied buffers
System.out.printf("%s%s%d)\n$s", operation,
    " (buffers occupied: ", occupiedBuffers, "buffers: ");

for ( int value : buffer )
    System.out.printf("%2d ", value); // output values in buffer

System.out.print("\n   ");
for ( int i = 0; i < buffer.length; i++ )
    System.out.print("---- ");

System.out.print("\n   ");
for ( int i = 0; i < buffer.length; i++ )
{
    if ( i == writeIndex && i == readIndex )
        System.out.print( " WR"); // both write and read index
    else if ( i == writeIndex )
        System.out.print( " W   "); // just write index
    else if ( i == readIndex )
        System.out.print( "  R  "); // just read index
    else
        System.out.print( "     "); // neither index
} // end for

System.out.println("\n");
} // end method displayState
Figure 23.14. **CircularBufferTest** sets up a producer/consumer application and instantiates producer and consumer threads.

(This item is displayed on pages 1081 - 1084 in the print version)
Producer writes 2 (buffers occupied: 1)
buffers:  1  2  -1
---- ---- ----
    R    W
Consumer reads 2 (buffers occupied: 0)
buffers:  1  2  -1
---- ---- ----
        WR
Producer writes 3 (buffers occupied: 1)
buffers:  1  2  3
---- ---- ----
    W    R
Consumer reads 3 (buffers occupied: 0)
buffers:  1  2  3
---- ---- ----
        WR
Producer writes 4 (buffers occupied: 1)
buffers:  4  2  3
---- ---- ----
    R    W
Producer writes 5 (buffers occupied: 2)
buffers:  4  5  3
---- ---- ----
    R    W
Consumer reads 4 (buffers occupied: 1)
buffers:  4  5  3
---- ---- ----
    R    W
Producer writes 6 (buffers occupied: 2)
buffers:  4  5  6
---- ---- ----
    W    R
Producer writes 7 (buffers occupied: 3)
buffers:  7  5  6
---- ---- ----
        WR
Consumer reads 5 (buffers occupied: 2)
buffers:  7  5  6
---- ---- ----
    W    R
Producer writes 8 (buffers occupied: 3)
buffers:  7  8  6
---- ---- ----
        WR
The significant changes to the example in Section 23.7 occur in CircularBuffer (Fig. 23.13), which replaces SynchronizedBuffer (Fig. 23.11). Line 10 creates a new ReentrantLock object and assigns its reference to Lock variable accessLock. The
ReentrantLock is created without a fairness policy because we have only two threads in this example and only one will ever be waiting. Lines 13–14 create two Conditions using Lock method newCondition. Condition canWrite contains a queue for threads waiting while the buffer is full. If the buffer is full, the Producer calls method await on this Condition. When the Consumer frees space in a full buffer, it calls method signal on this Condition. Condition canRead contains a queue for threads waiting while the buffer is empty. If the buffer is empty, the Consumer calls method await on this Condition. When the Producer writes to the buffer, it calls method signal on this Condition. Array buffer (line 16) is a three-element integer array that represents the circular buffer. Variable occupiedBuffers (line 18) counts the number of elements in buffer that are filled with data available to be read. When occupiedBuffers is 0, there is no data in the circular buffer and the Consumer must wait when occupiedBuffers is 3 (the size of the circular buffer), the circular buffer is full and the Producer must wait. Variable writeIndex (line 19) indicates the next location in which a value can be placed by a Producer. Variable readIndex (line 20) indicates the position from which the next value can be read by a Consumer.

CircularBuffer method set (lines 23–54) performs the same tasks that it did in Fig. 23.11, with a few modifications. The while loop at lines 31–35 determines whether the Producer must wait (i.e., all buffers are full). If so, line 33 indicates that the Producer is waiting to perform its task. Then line 34 invokes Condition method await to place the Producer thread in the waiting state on the canWrite condition variable. When execution eventually continues at line 37 after the while loop, the value written by the Producer is placed in the circular buffer at location writeIndex. Then line 40 updates writeIndex for the next call to CircularBuffer method set. This line is the key to the circularity of the buffer. When writeIndex is incremented past the end of the buffer, this line sets it to 0. Line 42 increments occupiedBuffers, because there is now at least one value in the buffer that the Consumer can read. Next, line 43 invokes method displayState to update the output with the value produced, the number of occupied buffers, the contents of the buffers and the current writeIndex and readIndex. Line 44 invokes Condition method signal to indicate that a Consumer thread waiting on the canRead condition variable (if there is a waiting thread) should transition to the runnable state. Line 52 releases accessLock by calling method unlock inside a finally block.

Method get (lines 57–92) of class CircularBuffer also performs the same tasks as it did in Fig. 23.11, with a few minor modifications. The while loop at lines 66–70
determines whether the Consumer must wait (i.e., all buffers are empty). If the Consumer thread must wait, line 68 updates the output to indicate that the Consumer is waiting to perform its task. Then line 69 invokes Condition method await to place the current thread in the waiting state on the canRead condition variable. When execution eventually continues at line 72 after a signal call from the Producer, readValue is assigned the value at location readIndex in the circular buffer. Then line 75 updates readIndex for the next call to CircularBuffer method get. This line and line 40 create the circular effect of the buffer. Line 77 decrements the occupiedBuffers, because there is at least one open position in the buffer in which the Producer thread can place a value. Line 78 invokes method displayState to update the output with the consumed value, the number of occupied buffers, the contents of the buffers and the current writeIndex and readIndex. Line 79 invokes Condition method signal to transition the thread waiting to write into the CircularBuffer object into the runnable state. Line 88 releases accessLock inside a finally block to guarantee that the lock is released. Then line 91 returns the consumed value to the calling method.

Method displayState (lines 95122) outputs the state of the application. Lines 101102 output the current buffers. Line 102 uses method printf with a %2d format specifier to print the contents of each buffer with a leading space if it is a single digit. Lines 109119 output the current writeIndex and readIndex with the letters W and R respectively.

Class CircularBufferTest (Fig. 23.14) contains the main method that launches the application. Line 11 creates the ExecutorService with two threads, and line 14 creates a CircularBuffer object and assigns its reference to Buffer variable sharedLocation. Lines 1819 execute the Producer and Consumer. Line 26 calls method shutdown to end the application when the Producer and Consumer complete their tasks.

[Page 1084]

Each time the Producer writes a value or the Consumer reads a value, the program outputs the action performed (a read or a write) along with the contents of the buffer and the location of the write index and read index. In this output, the Producer first writes the value 1. The buffer then contains the value 1 in the first slot and the value -1 (the default value) in the other two slots. The write index is updated to the second slot, while the read index stays at the first slot. Next, the Consumer reads 1. The buffer contains the same values, but the read index has been updated to the second slot. The Consumer then tries to read again, but the buffer is empty and the Consumer is forced to wait. Note that only once in this execution of the program was it necessary for either thread to wait.
23.9. Producer/Consumer Relationship: ArrayBlockingQueue

J2SE 5.0 includes a fully-implemented circular buffer class named ArrayBlockingQueue in package java.util.concurrent, which implements the BlockingQueue interface. The BlockingQueue interface implements the Queue interface, discussed in Chapter 19 and declares methods put and take, the blocking equivalents of Queue methods offer and poll, respectively. This means that method put will place an element at the end of the BlockingQueue, waiting if the queue is full. Method take will remove an element from the head of the BlockingQueue, waiting if the queue is empty. Class ArrayBlockingQueue implements the BlockingQueue interface using an array. This makes the data structure fixed size, meaning that it will not expand to accommodate extra elements. Class ArrayBlockingQueue encapsulates all the functionality of our circular buffer class (Fig. 23.13).

The program in Fig. 23.15 demonstrates a Producer and a Consumer accessing a circular buffer (in this case, an ArrayBlockingQueue) with synchronization. Class BlockingBuffer implements interface Buffer (Fig. 23.15) and contains an ArrayBlockingQueue instance variable that stores Integer objects (line 7). By choosing to implement Buffer, our application can reuse the Producer (Fig. 23.7) and Consumer (Fig. 23.8) classes.

---

```java
// Fig. 23.15: BlockingBuffer.java
// Class synchronizes access to a blocking buffer.
import java.util.concurrent.ArrayBlockingQueue;

public class BlockingBuffer implements Buffer {
    private ArrayBlockingQueue<Integer> buffer;

    public BlockingBuffer() {
        buffer = new ArrayBlockingQueue<Integer>(3);
    } // end BlockingBuffer constructor
```

---
public void set( int value )
{
    try
    {
        buffer.put( value ); // place value in circular buffer
        System.out.printf( "%s%2d\t%s%d\n", "Producer writes ", value,
                           "Buffers occupied: ", buffer.size() );
    } // end try
    catch ( Exception exception )
    {
        exception.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
} // end method set

// return value from buffer
public int get()
{
    int readValue = 0; // initialize value read from buffer
    try
    {
        readValue = buffer.take(); // remove value from circular buffer
        System.out.printf( "%s %2d\t%s%d\n", "Consumer reads ", readValue,
                           "Buffers occupied: ", buffer.size() );
    } // end try
    catch ( Exception exception )
    {
        exception.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
    return readValue;
} // end method get
// end class BlockingBuffer

Figure 23.16. BlockingBufferTest sets up a producer/consumer application using a blocking circular buffer.

(This item is displayed on pages 1086 - 1087 in the print version)
// create BlockingBuffer to store ints
Buffer sharedLocation = new BlockingBuffer();

try // try to start producer and consumer
{
    application.execute( new Producer( sharedLocation ) );
    application.execute( new Consumer( sharedLocation ) );
} // end try

Catch ( Exception exception )
{
    exception.printStackTrace();
} // end catch

application.shutdown();
} // end main
} // end class BlockingBufferTest

Producer writes 1 Buffers occupied: 1
Consumer reads  1 Buffers occupied: 0
Producer writes 2 Buffers occupied: 1
Consumer reads  2 Buffers occupied: 0
Producer writes 3 Buffers occupied: 1
Consumer reads  3 Buffers occupied: 0
Producer writes 4 Buffers occupied: 1
Consumer reads  4 Buffers occupied: 0
Producer writes 5 Buffers occupied: 1
Consumer reads  5 Buffers occupied: 0
Producer writes 6 Buffers occupied: 1
Consumer reads  6 Buffers occupied: 0
Producer writes 7 Buffers occupied: 1
Producer writes 8 Buffers occupied: 2
Consumer reads  7 Buffers occupied: 1
Producer writes 9 Buffers occupied: 2
Consumer reads  8 Buffers occupied: 1
Producer writes 10 Buffers occupied: 2

Producer done producing.
Terminating Producer.
Consumer reads  9 Buffers occupied: 1
Consumer reads 10 Buffers occupied: 0

Consumer read values totaling 55.
Terminating Consumer.
Line 19 in method `set` (lines 1527) calls method put on the `ArrayBlockingQueue`. This method call will block until there is room in `buffer` to place `value`. Method `get` (lines 3046) of class `BlockingBuffer` calls method `take` (line 36) on the `ArrayBlockingQueue`. Again, this method call will block until there is an element in `buffer` to remove. Note that neither of these methods requires a `Lock` or `Condition` object. The `ArrayBlockingQueue` handles all of the synchronization for you. The amount of code in this program is greatly decreased from the previous circular buffer (from 123 lines to 47 lines) and is much easier to understand. This is an excellent example of encapsulation and software reuse.

Class `BlockingBufferTest` (Fig. 23.16) contains the `main` method that launches the application. Line 11 creates the `ExecutorService`, and line 14 creates a `BlockingBuffer` object and assigns its reference to `Buffer` variable `sharedLocation`. Lines 18-19 execute the `Producer` and `Consumer` R unnables. Line 26 calls method `shutdown` to end the application when the `Producer` and `Consumer` finish.

In our prior synchronization examples, the output statements in the `Buffer's` `set` and `get` methods that indicated what the `Producer` was writing or the `Consumer` was reading were always executed while the `Buffer's` lock was held by the thread calling `set` or `get`. This guaranteed the order in which the output would be displayed. If the `Consumer` had the lock, the `Producer` could not execute the `set` method; therefore, it was not possible for the `Producer` to output out of turn. The reverse was also true. In Fig. 23.15, methods `set` and `get` no longer use locks; all locking is handled by the `ArrayBlockingQueue`. Because this class is from the Java API, we cannot modify it to perform output from its `put` and `take` methods. For these reasons, it is possible that the `Producer` and `Consumer` output statements in this example could print out of order. Even though the `ArrayBlockingQueue` is properly synchronizing access to the data, the output statements are no longer synchronized.
23.10. Multithreading with GUI

This program uses separate threads to modify the content displayed in a Swing GUI. The nature of multithreaded programming prevents the programmer from knowing exactly when a thread will execute. Swing components are not thread safe if multiple threads manipulate a Swing GUI component, the results may not be correct. All interactions with Swing GUI components should be performed as part of the event-dispatching thread (also known as the event-handling thread). Class SwingUtilities (package javax.swing) provides static method invokeLater to help with this process. Method invokeLater specifies GUI processing statements to execute later as part of the event-dispatching thread. Method invokeLater receives as its argument an object that implements interface Runnable. The method places the Runnable as an event into the event-dispatching thread's queue of events. These events are processed in the order they appear in the queue. Because only one thread handles these events, it can be guaranteed that the GUI will be updated properly.

Our next example (Fig. 23.17) demonstrates this concept. When this program calls invokeLater, the GUI component update will be queued for execution in the event-dispatching thread. The Runnable's run method will then be invoked as part of the event-dispatching thread to perform the output and ensure that the GUI component is updated in a thread-safe manner. This example also demonstrates how to suspend a thread (i.e., temporarily prevent it from executing) and how to resume a suspended thread.

Figure 23.17. RunnableObject outputs a random uppercase letter on a JLabel. Allows user to suspend and resume execution.

(This item is displayed on pages 1088 - 1090 in the print version)

```
1 // Fig. 23.17: RunnableObject.java
2 // Runnable that writes a random character to a JLabel
3 import java.util.Random;
4 import java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition;
5 import java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock;
```
public class RunnableObject implements Runnable
{
    private static Random generator = new Random(); // for random letters
    private Lock lockObject; // application lock; passed in to constructor
    private Condition suspend; // used to suspend and resume thread
    private boolean suspended = false; // true if thread suspended
    private JLabel output; // JLabel for output

    public RunnableObject( Lock theLock, JLabel label )
    {
        lockObject = theLock; // store the Lock for the application
        suspend = lockObject.newCondition(); // create new Condition
        output = label; // store JLabel for outputting character
    }

    // place random characters in GUI
    public void run()
    {
        // get name of executing thread
        final String threadName = Thread.currentThread().getName();

        while ( true ) // infinite loop; will be terminated from outside
        {
            try
            {
                // sleep for up to 1 second
                Thread.sleep( generator.nextInt( 1000 ) );

                lockObject.lock(); // obtain the lock
                try
                {
                    while ( suspended ) // loop until not suspended
                    {
                        suspend.await(); // suspend thread execution
                    } // end while
                } // end try
                finally
                {
                    lockObject.unlock(); // unlock the lock
                } // end finally
            } // end try
            // if thread interrupted during wait/sleep
            catch ( InterruptedException exception )
            {
                exception.printStackTrace(); // print stack trace
            } // end catch

            // display character on corresponding JLabel
            SwingUtilities.invokeLater(
            new Runnable()
            {
                // pick random character and display it
                public void run()
                {
                    // select random uppercase letter
                    char displayChar =
                    ( char ) ( generator.nextInt( 26 ) + 65 );
Class RunnableObject (Fig. 23.17) implements interface Runnable's run method (lines 2674). Line 29 uses static Thread method currentThread to determine the currently executing thread and Thread method getName to return the name of that thread. Every executing thread has a default name that includes the number of the thread (see the output of Fig. 23.18). Lines 3173 are an infinite loop. [Note: In earlier chapters we have said that infinite loops are bad programming because the application will not terminate. In this case, the infinite loop is in a separate thread from the main thread. When the application window is closed in this example, all the threads created by the main thread are closed as well, including threads (such as this one) that are executing infinite loops.] In each iteration of the loop, the thread sleeps for a random interval from 0 to 1 seconds (line 36).

Figure 23.18. RandomCharacters creates a JFrame with three RunnableObjects and three JCheckBoxes to allow the user to suspend and resume threads.

(This item is displayed on pages 1091 - 1093 in the print version)
public class RandomCharacters extends JFrame implements ActionListener {

    private final static int SIZE = 3; // number of threads
    private JCheckBox checkboxes[]; // array of JCheckBoxes
    private Lock lockObject = new ReentrantLock( true ); // single lock

    // array of RunnableObjects to display random characters
    private RunnableObject[] randomCharacters =
        new RunnableObject[ SIZE ];

    // set up GUI and arrays
    public RandomCharacters() {
        checkboxes = new JCheckBox[ SIZE ]; // allocate space for array
        setLayout( new GridLayout( SIZE, 2, 5, 5 ) ); // set layout

        // create new thread pool with SIZE threads
        ExecutorService runner = Executors.newFixedThreadPool( SIZE );

        // loop SIZE times
        for ( int count = 0; count < SIZE; count++ ) {
            JLabel outputJLabel = new JLabel(); // create JLabel
            outputJLabel.setBackground( Color.GREEN ); // set color
            outputJLabel.setOpaque( true ); // set JLabel to be opaque
            add( outputJLabel ); // add JLabel to JFrame

            // create JCheckBox to control suspend/resume state
            checkboxes[ count ] = new JCheckBox( "Suspended" );

            // add listener which executes when JCheckBox is clicked
            checkboxes[ count ].addActionListener( this );
            add( checkboxes[ count ] ); // add JCheckBox to JFrame

            // create a new RunnableObject
            randomCharacters[ count ] =
                new RunnableObject( lockObject, outputJLabel );

            // execute RunnableObject
            runner.execute( randomCharacters[ count ] );
        } // end for

        setSize( 275, 90 ); // set size of window
        setVisible( true ); // show window
When the thread awakens, line 38 acquires the Lock on this application. Lines 41-44 loop while the boolean variable suspended is True. Line 43 calls method await on Condition suspend to temporarily release the Lock and place this thread into the waiting state. When this thread is signaled, it reacquires the Lock, moves back to the runnable state and releases the Lock (line 48). When suspended is false, the thread should resume execution. If suspended is still true, the loop executes again.

[Page 1090]

Lines 58-72 call SwingUtilities method invokeLater. Lines 59-71 declare an anonymous inner class that implements the Runnable interface, and lines 62-70 declare method run. The method call to invokeLater places this Runnable object in a
queue to be executed by the event-dispatching thread. Lines 65-66 create a random uppercase character. Line 69 calls method `setText` on the `JLabel` output to display the thread name and the random character on the `JLabel` in the application window.

When the user clicks the `JCheckBox` to the right of a particular `JLabel`, the corresponding thread should be suspended (temporarily prevented from executing) or resumed (allowed to continue executing). Suspending and resuming of a thread can be implemented by using thread synchronization and `Condition` methods `await` and `signal`. Lines 77-96 declare method `toggle`, which will change the suspended/resumed state of the current thread. Line 79 reverses the value of `boolean` variable `suspended`. Line 82 changes the background color of the `JLabel` by calling method `setBackground`. If the thread is suspended, the background color will be `Color.RED`, whereas if the thread is running, the background color will be `Color.GREEN`. Method `toggle` is called from the event handler in **Fig. 23.18**, so its tasks will be performed in the event-dispatch thread thus, there is no need to use `invokeLater` for line 82. Line 84 acquires the `Lock` for this application. Line 87 then tests whether the thread was just resumed. If this is true, line 89 calls method `signal` on `Condition suspend`. This method call will alert a thread that was placed in the `waiting` state by the `await` method call in line 43. Line 94 releases the `Lock` on this application inside a `finally` block.

Note that the `if` statement in line 87 does not have an associated `else`. If this condition fails, it means that the thread has just been suspended. When this happens, a thread executing at line 38 will enter the `while` loop and line 43 will suspend the thread with a call to method `await`.

Class `RandomCharacters` (**Fig. 23.18**) displays three `JLabel`s and three `JCheckBox`es. A separate thread of execution is associated with each `JLabel` and `JCheckBox` pair. Each thread randomly displays letters from the alphabet in its corresponding `JLabel` object. Line 33 creates a new `ExecutorService` with method `newFixedThreadPool`. Lines 36-56 iterate three times. Lines 38-41 create and customize the `JLabel`. Line 44 creates the `JCheckBox`, and line 47 adds an `ActionListener` for each `JCheckBox` (this will be discussed later.) Lines 51-52 create a new `RunnableObject` implements the `Runnable` interface. Line 55 executes the `RunnableObject` with one of the threads of execution created in `runner` in line 33.

If the user clicks the `Suspended` checkbox next to a particular `JLabel`, the program invokes method `actionPerformed` (lines 65-74) to determine which
checkbox generated the event. Lines 6873 determine which checkbox generated the event. Line 71 checks whether the source of the event is the JCheckBox in the current index. If it is, line 72 calls method `toggle` (lines 7592 of Fig. 23.17) on that RunnableObject.
23.11. Other Classes and Interfaces in `java.util.concurrent`

The `Runnable` interface provides only the most basic functionality for multithreaded programming. In fact, this interface has several limitations. Suppose a `Runnable` encounters a problem and tries to throw a checked exception. The `run` method is not declared to throw any exceptions, so the problem must be handled within the `Runnable`; the exception cannot be passed to the calling thread. Now suppose a `Runnable` is performing a long calculation and the application wants to retrieve the result of that calculation. The `run` method cannot return a value, so the application must use shared data to pass the value back to the calling thread. This also involves the overhead of synchronizing access to the data. The developers of the new concurrency APIs in J2SE 5.0 recognized these limitations and created a new interface to fix them. The `Callable` interface (package `java.util.concurrent`) declares a single method named `call`. This interface is designed to be similar to the `Runnable` interface allowing an action to be performed concurrently in a separate thread but the `call` method allows the thread to return a value or to throw a checked exception.

An application that creates a `Callable` likely wants to run the `Callable` concurrently with other `Runnable` and `Callable` instances. The `ExecutorService` interface provides method `submit`, which will execute a `Callable` passed in as its argument. The `submit` method returns an object of type `Future` (package `java.util.concurrent`), which is an interface that represents the executing `Callable`. The `Future` interface declares method `get` to return the result of the `Callable` and provides other methods to manage a `Callable`'s execution.
23.12. Monitors and Monitor Locks

Another way to perform synchronization is to use Java's built-in monitors. Every object has a monitor. The monitor allows one thread at a time to execute inside a synchronized statement on the object. This is accomplished by acquiring a lock on the object when the program enters the synchronized statement. These statements are declared using the synchronized keyword with the form

```java
synchronized (object)
{
    statements
} // end synchronized statement
```

where `object` is the object whose monitor lock will be acquired. If there are several synchronized statements trying to execute on an object at the same time, only one of them may be active on the object at once all the other threads attempting to enter a synchronized statement on the same object are placed in the blocked state.

The blocked state is not included in Fig. 23.1, but it transitions to and from the runnable state. When a runnable thread must wait to enter a synchronized statement, it transitions to the blocked state. When the blocked thread enters the synchronized statement, it transitions to the runnable state.

When a synchronized statement finishes executing, the monitor lock on the object is released and the highest-priority blocked thread attempting to enter a synchronized statement proceeds. Java also allows synchronized methods. A synchronized method is equivalent to a synchronized statement enclosing the entire body of a method.

If a thread obtains the monitor lock on an object and then determines that it cannot continue with its task on that object until some condition is satisfied, the thread can call Object method `wait`, releasing the monitor lock on the object. The thread releases the monitor lock on the object and waits in the waiting state while the other threads try to enter the object's synchronized

...
statement(s). When a thread executing a synchronized statement completes or satisfies the condition on which another thread may be waiting, it can call Object method notify to allow a waiting thread to transition to the blocked state again. At this point, the thread that transitioned from the wait state to the blocked state can attempt to reacquire the monitor lock on the object. Even if the thread is able to reacquire the monitor lock, it still might not be able to perform its task at this time in which case the thread will reenter the waiting state and release the monitor lock. If a thread calls notifyAll, then all the threads waiting for the monitor lock become eligible to reacquire the lock (that is, they all transition to the blocked state). Remember that only one thread at a time can obtain the monitor lock on the object other threads that attempt to acquire the same monitor lock will be blocked until the monitor lock becomes available again (i.e., until no other thread is executing in a synchronized statement on that object). Methods wait, notify and notifyAll are inherited by all classes from class Object.

Software Engineering Observation 23.3

The locking that occurs with the execution of synchronized methods could lead to deadlock if the locks are never released. When exceptions occur, Java’s exception mechanism coordinates with Java’s synchronization mechanism to release locks and avoid these kinds of deadlocks.

Common Programming Error 23.5

It is an error if a thread issues a wait, a notify or a notifyAll on an object without having acquired a lock for it. This causes an IllegalMonitorStateException.

The application in Fig. 23.19 and Fig. 23.20 demonstrates a producer and a consumer accessing a shared buffer with synchronization. In this case, the consumer consumes only after the producer produces a value, and the producer produces a new value only after the consumer consumes the value produced previously. In this example, we reuse interface Buffer (Fig. 23.6) and
classes Producer (Fig. 23.7) and Consumer (Fig. 23.8) from the example in Section 23.6. The code that performs the synchronization is placed in the set and get methods of class SynchronizedBuffer (Fig. 23.19), which implements interface Buffer (line 4). Thus, the Producer's and Consumer's run methods simply call the shared object's set and get methods, as in the example in Section 23.6.

Figure 23.19. Synchronizes access to shared data using Object methods wait and notify.

(This item is displayed on pages 1095 - 1096 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 23.19: SynchronizedBuffer.java
// SynchronizedBuffer synchronizes access to a single shared integer.

public class SynchronizedBuffer implements Buffer {
    private int buffer = -1; // shared by producer and consumer threads
    private boolean occupied = false; // count of occupied buffers

    // place value into buffer
    public synchronized void set(int value) {
        // while there are no empty locations, place thread in waiting state
        while (occupied) {
            // output thread information and buffer information, then wait
            try {
                System.out.println("Producer tries to write.");
                displayState("Buffer full. Producer waits.");
                wait();
            } // end try
            catch (InterruptedException exception) {
                exception.printStackTrace();
            } // end catch
        } // end while

        buffer = value; // set new buffer value

        // indicate producer cannot store another value
        // until consumer retrieves current buffer value
        occupied = true;

        displayState("Producer writes " + buffer);
        notify(); // tell waiting thread to enter runnable state
    } // end method set; releases lock on SynchronizedBuffer

    // return value from buffer
    public synchronized int get() {
        // while no data to read, place thread in waiting state
        while (!occupied)
```
try {
    System.out.println( "Consumer tries to read." );
    displayState( "Buffer empty. Consumer waits." );
    wait();
} catch ( InterruptedException exception ) {
    exception.printStackTrace();
} // end catch
} // end while

// indicate that producer can store another value
// because consumer just retrieved buffer value
occupied = false;

int readValue = buffer; // store value in buffer
displayState( "Consumer reads " + readValue );
notify(); // tell waiting thread to enter runnable state
return readValue;
} // end method get; releases lock on SynchronizedBuffer

// display current operation and buffer state
public void displayState( String operation ) {
    System.out.printf( "%-40s%d		%b

", operation, buffer, occupied );
} // end method displayState

} // end class SynchronizedBuffer

Figure 23.20. SharedBufferTest2 sets up a producer/consumer application that uses a synchronized buffer.
(This item is displayed on pages 1098 - 1100 in the print version)
Buffer sharedLocation = new SynchronizedBuffer();

System.out.printf("%-40s\t%-40s\n", "Operation", "Buffer", "Occupied", "---------", "--------");

try // try to start producer and consumer
{
    application.execute( new Producer( sharedLocation ) );
    application.execute( new Consumer( sharedLocation ) );
} // end try

try ( Exception exception )
{
    exception.printStackTrace();
} // end catch

application.shutdown();

} // end main

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operation</th>
<th>Buffer</th>
<th>Occupied</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consumer tries to read.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer empty. Consumer waits.</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer tries to read.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer empty. Consumer waits.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer tries to read.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer empty. Consumer waits.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer tries to read.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffer empty. Consumer waits.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Producer writes 5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>true</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumer reads 5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>false</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## SynchronizedBuffer (Fig. 23.19)

The `SynchronizedBuffer` class contains two fields: `buffer` (line 6) and `occupied` (line 7). Method `set` (lines 1037) and method `get` (lines 4068) are declared as `synchronized` methods by adding the `synchronized` keyword between the method modifier and the return type. This ensures that only one thread can call any of these methods at a time on a particular `SynchronizedBuffer` object. Field `occupied` is used in conditional expressions to determine whether it is the producer's or the consumer's turn to perform a task. If `occupied` is `false`, `buffer` is empty and the consumer is blocked until a value is available. Conversely, if `occupied` is `true`, the producer is blocked to prevent buffer overflow.
producer can call method `set` to place a value into variable `buffer`. This condition also means that the consumer cannot call `SynchronizedBuffer's get` method to read the value of `buffer` because it is empty. If `occupied` is `true`, the consumer can call `SynchronizedBuffer's get` method to read a value from variable `buffer`, because the variable contains new information. This condition also means that the producer cannot call `SynchronizedBuffer's set` method to place a value into `buffer`, because the buffer is currently full.

When the `Producer` thread's `run` method invokes synchronized method `set`, the thread attempts to acquire the monitor lock on the `SynchronizedBuffer` object. If the monitor lock is available, the `Producer` thread acquires the lock. Then the while loop at lines 1326 determines whether `occupied` is `true`. If so, the buffer is full, so line 18 outputs a message indicating that the `Producer` thread is trying to write a value, and line 19 invokes method `displayState` (lines 7175) to output another message indicating that the buffer is full and that the `Producer` thread is in the `waiting` state. Line 20 invokes method `wait` (inherited from `Object` by `SynchronizedBuffer`) to place the thread that called method `set` (i.e., the `Producer` thread) in the `waiting` state for the `SynchronizedBuffer` object. The call to `wait` causes the calling thread to release the lock on the `SynchronizedBuffer` object. This is important because the thread cannot currently perform its task and because other threads should be allowed to access the object at this time to allow the condition (`occupied`) to change. Now another thread can attempt to acquire the `SynchronizedBuffer` object's lock and invoke the object's `set` or `get` method.

The producer thread remains in the `waiting` state until the thread is notified by another thread that it may proceed at which point the producer thread returns to the `blocked` state and attempts to reacquire the lock on the `SynchronizedBuffer` object. If the lock is available, the producer thread reacquires the lock, and method `set` continues executing with the next statement after `wait`. Because `wait` is called in a loop (lines 1326), the loop-continuation condition is tested again to determine whether the thread can proceed with its execution. If not, `wait` is invoked again otherwise, method `set` continues with the next statement after the loop.

Line 28 in method `set` assigns value to `buffer`. Line 32 sets `occupied` to `true` to indicate that the `buffer` now contains a value (i.e., a consumer can read the value, and a producer cannot yet put another value there). Line 34 invokes method `displayState` to output a line to the console window indicating that the producer is writing a new value into the `buffer`. Line 36 invokes method `notify`
Methods `get` and `set` are implemented similarly. When the Consumer thread's `run` method invokes synchronized method `get`, the thread attempts to acquire the monitor lock on the SynchronizedBuffer object. If the lock is available, the Consumer thread acquires it. Then the while loop at lines 4356 determines whether `occupied` is `false`. If so, the buffer is empty, so line 48 outputs a message indicating that the Consumer thread is trying to read a value, and line 49 invokes method `displayState` to output another message indicating that the buffer is empty and that the Consumer thread is waiting. Line 50 invokes method `wait` to place the thread that called method `get` (i.e., the Consumer thread) in the `waiting` state for the SynchronizedBuffer object. Again, the call to `wait` causes the calling thread to release the lock on the SynchronizedBuffer object, so another thread can attempt to acquire the SynchronizedBuffer object's lock and invoke the object's `set` or `get` method. If the lock on the SynchronizedBuffer is not available (e.g., if the ProducerThread has not yet returned from method `set`), the ConsumerThread is blocked until the lock becomes available.

The consumer thread object remains in the `waiting` state until the thread is notified by another thread that it may proceed at which point the consumer thread returns to the `blocked` state and attempts to reacquire the lock on the SynchronizedBuffer object. If the lock is available, the consumer thread reacquires the lock and method `get` continues executing with the next statement after `wait`. Because `wait` is called in a loop (lines 4356), the loop-continuation condition is tested again to determine whether the thread can proceed with its execution. If not, `wait` is invoked again otherwise, method `get` continues with the next statement after the loop. Line 60 sets `occupied` to `false` to indicate that buffer is now empty (i.e., a consumer cannot read the value, but a producer can place another value into buffer), line 63 calls method `displayState` to indicate that the consumer is reading and line 65 invokes method `notify`. If there are any threads in the `blocked` state for the lock on this SynchronizedBuffer object, one of them enters the `Runnable` state, indicating that the thread can now attempt to reacquire the lock and continue performing its task. Method `notify` returns immediately, then method `get` returns the value of buffer to its caller. Invoking method `notify` works correctly in this program because only one thread waits on the `condition` object.
thread calls method set at any time (the \texttt{ProducerThread}). Programs that have multiple threads waiting on a condition should invoke \texttt{notifyAll} to ensure that multiple threads receive notifications properly. When method \texttt{get} returns, the lock on the \texttt{SynchronizedBuffer} object is implicitly released.

\begin{figure}[!h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{fig23.20.png}
\caption{SharedBufferTest2 (Fig. 23.20) is identical to class \texttt{SharedBufferTest} (Fig. 23.12). Study the outputs in Fig. 23.20. Observe that every integer produced is consumed exactly once: no values are lost, and no values are consumed more than once. The synchronization and condition variable ensure that the producer and consumer cannot perform their tasks unless it is their turn. The producer must go first, the consumer must wait if the producer has not produced since the consumer last consumed, and the producer must wait if the consumer has not yet consumed the value that the producer most recently produced. Execute this program several times to confirm that every integer produced is consumed exactly once. In the sample output, note the lines indicating when the producer and consumer must wait to perform their respective tasks.}
\end{figure}
23.13. Wrap-Up

This chapter presented Java's new concurrency API and demonstrated the powerful technique of thread synchronization. Multithreading is an advanced topic that is the subject of many books. We use the multithreading techniques introduced here again in Chapter 24, Networking, to help build multithreaded servers that can interact with multiple clients concurrently.
Summary

- Computers perform operations concurrently, such as compiling programs, sending files to a printer and receiving electronic mail messages over a network.

- Programming languages generally provide a set of control statements that only enable programmers to perform one action at a time.

- Historically, concurrency has been implemented as operating-system primitives available only to experienced systems programmers.

- Java makes concurrency available to the applications programmer. The programmer specifies that applications contain threads of execution; each thread designating a portion of a program that may execute concurrently with other threads. This capability is called multithreading.

- A new thread begins its life cycle in the new state. It remains in the new state until the program starts the thread, which places the thread in the runnable state.

- A runnable thread enters the terminated state when it completes its task or otherwise terminates.

- Sometimes a thread transitions to the waiting state while it waits for another thread to perform a task. Once in this state, a thread transitions back to the runnable state only when another thread signals the waiting thread to continue executing.

- A runnable thread can enter the timed waiting state for a specified interval of time. A thread in this state transitions back to the runnable state when that time interval expires. A thread can transition to the timed waiting state if it provides an optional wait interval when it is waiting for another thread to perform a task. Such a thread will return to the runnable state when it is signaled by another thread or when the timed interval expires; whichever comes first. Another way to place a thread in the timed
At the operating system level, the *runnable* state actually encompasses two separate states. When a thread first transitions to the *runnable* state from the *new* state, the thread is in the *ready* state. A *ready* thread enters the *running* state (i.e., begins executing) when the operating system assigns the thread to a processor. When the thread's quantum expires, the thread returns to the *ready* state, and the operating system assigns to the processor another thread.

Every Java thread has a priority in the range between `MIN_PRIORITY` (1) and `MAX_PRIORITY` (10). By default, each thread is given priority `NORM_PRIORITY` (5).

Most Java platforms support timeslicing. Without timeslicing, each thread in a set of equal-priority threads runs to completion before other equal priority threads get a chance to execute. With timeslicing, each thread receives a brief burst of processor time, or quantum, during which the thread can execute. When the quantum expires, even if the thread has not finished executing, the processor is taken away from it and given to the next thread of equal priority, if one is available.

The thread scheduler determines which thread runs next. One simple implementation will keep the highest-priority thread running at all times. If there is more than one highest-priority thread, the scheduler ensures that all such threads execute for a quantum each in round-robin fashion.

Multithreading in Java is accomplished by implementing the `Runnable` interface, which declares a single method named `run`.

`Runnables` are executed using a class that implements the `Executor` interface, which declares a single method named `execute`.

Interface `ExecutorService` is a subinterface of `Executor` that declares several methods for managing the life cycle of the `Executor`. An object that implements the `ExecutorService` interface can be created using static methods declared in class `Executors`.

`ExecutorService` method `shutdown` ends each thread in an `ExecutorService` as soon as it finishes executing its `Runnable`.

When multiple threads share an object, indeterminate results may occur
unless the shared object is synchronization properly. Mutual exclusion allows the programmer to perform such thread synchronization.

- Once a **Lock** has been obtained by a thread (by calling the **lock** method), the **Lock** object will not allow another thread to obtain the lock until the first thread releases the **Lock** (by calling the **unlock** method). When a thread calls method **unlock**, the lock on the object is released and the highest-priority waiting thread attempting to lock the object proceeds.

- Once a thread obtains the lock on an object, if the thread determines that it cannot continue with its task until some condition is satisfied, the thread can wait on a condition variable, thus removing it from contention for the processor and releasing the lock on the object. Condition variables are created by calling **Lock** method **newCondition**, which returns a **Condition** object.

- A thread can call method **await** on a **Condition** object to release the associated **Lock** and place that thread in the **waiting** state while other threads try to obtain the **Lock**. When another thread satisfies the condition on which the first thread is **waiting**, that thread can call **Condition** method **signal** to allow the waiting thread to transition to the **runnable** state again. If a thread calls **Condition** method **signalAll**, then all the threads waiting for the lock become eligible to reacquire the lock. Only one of those threads can obtain the lock on the object at a time; other threads that attempt to acquire the same lock will have to wait until the lock becomes available again.

---

[Page 1102]

- In a producer/consumer relationship, the producer portion of an application generates data and stores it in a shared object, and the consumer portion of an application reads data from the shared object. In a multithreaded producer/consumer relationship, a producer thread generates data and places it in a shared object called a buffer. A consumer thread reads data from the buffer.

- To minimize the amount of waiting time for threads that share resources and operate at the same average speeds, use a circular buffer that provides extra buffer space into which the producer can place values and from which the consumer can retrieve those values.

- The **BlockingQueue** interface declares methods **put** and **take**, which are the
blocking equivalents of Queue methods offer and remove, respectively. This means that method put will place an element at the end of the BlockingQueue, waiting if the queue is full. Method take will remove an element from the head of the BlockingQueue, waiting if the queue is empty. Class ArrayBlockingQueue implements the BlockingQueue interface using an array. This makes the data structure fixed size, meaning that it will not expand to accommodate extra elements.

- Swing components are not thread safe if multiple threads manipulate a Swing GUI component, the results may not be correct. All interactions with Swing GUI components should be performed in the event-dispatch thread. Class SwingUtilities provides static method invokeLater to help with this process. Method invokeLater receives as its argument an object that implements interface Runnable and performs the GUI updates.

- The Callable interface declares a single method named call which allows the user to return a value or throw a checked exception. The ExecutorService interface provides method submit which will execute a Callable passed in as its argument. The submit method returns an object of type Future which is an interface that represents the executing Callable. The Future interface declares method get to return the result of the Callable and provides other methods to manage the execution of the Callable.

- An object's monitor allows one thread at a time to execute inside a synchronized statement on that object.

- When a runnable thread must wait to enter a synchronized statement, it transitions to the blocked state. When the blocked thread enters the synchronized statement, it transitions to the runnable state.

- Java also allows synchronized methods which is equivalent to a synchronized statement that encloses the entire body of the method.

- Once a thread obtains the monitor lock on an object, if the thread determines that it cannot continue with its task on that object until some condition is satisfied, the thread can call Object method wait, releasing the monitor lock on the object.

- When a thread executing a synchronized statement completes or satisfies the condition on which another thread may be waiting, the thread can call Object method notify to allow a waiting thread to transition to the blocked
state again.

- If a thread calls `notifyAll`, then all threads waiting for the monitor lock become eligible to reacquire the lock (that is, they all transition to the *blocked* state).
Terminology

ArrayBlockingQueue class

await method of interface Condition

blocked state

BlockingQueue interface

buffer

call method of interface Callable

Callable interface

circular buffer

concurrency

concurrent programming

Condition interface

condition variable

consumer

consumer thread

deadlock

dispatching a thread
event-dispatching thread

`execute` method of interface `Executor`

`Executor` interface

`Executors` class

`ExecutorService` interface

`fairness policy of a lock`

`Future` interface

`garbage collection`

`garbage-collector thread`

`get` method of interface `Future`

`IllegalMonitorStateException` class

`indefinite postponement`

`interrupt` method of class `Thread`

`InterruptedException` class

`invokeLater` method of class `SwingUtilities`

`Lock` interface

`lock` method of interface `Lock`

`main thread`

`memory leak`

`monitor`
multithreading
mutual exclusion

new state

newCachedThreadPool method of class Executors

newCondition method of interface Lock

newFixedThreadPool method of class Executors

obtain the lock

notify method of class Object

notifyAll method of class Object

parallel operations

preemptive scheduling

priority of a thread

producer

producer thread

producer/consumer relationship

put method of interface BlockingQueue

quantum

ready state

ReentrantLock class

resume a thread
round-robin scheduling

run method of interface Runnable

Runnable interface

runnable state

running state

shutdown method of class ExecutorService

signal method of class Condition

signalAll method of class Condition

sleep interval

sleep method of class Thread

sleeping thread

starvation

submit method of class ExecutorService

suspend a thread

SwingUtilities class

synchronization

synchronized keyword

synchronized method

synchronized statement

take method of interface BlockingQueue
terminated state

thread

$\text{THRead}$ class

thread pool

thread scheduler

thread scheduling

thread state

thread synchronization

$\text{timed waiting state}$

timeslice

unlock method of interface $\text{Lock}$

wait method of class $\text{Object}$

waiting state
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. C and C++ are ___________ -threaded languages, whereas Java is a(n) ___________ -threaded language.

2. A thread enters the terminated state when ___________.

3. To pause for a designated number of milliseconds and resume execution, a thread should call method ___________.

4. Method ___________ of class Condition moves a single thread in an object's waiting state to the runnable state.

5. Method ___________ of class Condition moves every thread in an object's waiting state to the runnable state.

6. A(n) ___________ thread enters the ___________ state when it completes its task or otherwise terminates.

23.1

7. A runnable thread can enter the ___________ state for a specified interval of time.

8. At the operating-system level, the runnable state actually encompasses two separate states, ___________ and ___________.

9. Runnables are executed using a class that implements the ___________ interface.

10. ExecutorService method ___________ ends each thread in an ExecutorService as soon as it finishes executing its current Runnable, if any.

11. A thread can call method ___________ on a Condition object to release the associated Lock and place that thread in the ___________ state.

12. In a(n) ___________ relationship, the ___________ portion of an application generates data and stores it in a shared object, and the ___________ portion of an application reads data from the shared object.

13. To minimize the amount of waiting time for threads that share resources and operate at the same average speeds, use a(n) ___________.

14. Class ___________ implements the BlockingQueue interface using an array.

15. The keyword ___________ indicates that only one thread at a time should execute on an object.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. A thread is not runnable if it is dead.

2. In Java, a higher-priority runnable thread should preempt threads of lower priority.

3. Some operating systems use timeslicing with threads. Therefore, they can enable threads to preempt threads of the same priority.

4. When the thread's quantum expires, the thread returns to the running state as the operating
system assigns the thread to a processor.

5. Without timeslicing, each thread in a set of equal-priority threads runs to completion before other threads of equal priority get a chance to execute.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

23.1 a) single, multi. b) its run method ends. c) Thread.sleep. d) signal. e) signalAll. f) runnable, terminated. g) timed waiting. h) ready, running. i) Executor. j) shutdown. k) await, waiting. l) producer/consumer, producer, consumer. m) circular buffer. n) ArrayBlockingQueue. o) synchronized.

23.2 a) True. b) True. c) False. Timeslicing allows a thread to execute until its timeslice (or quantum) expires. Then other threads of equal priority can execute. d) False. When a thread's quantum expires, the thread returns to the ready state and the operating system assigns to the processor another thread. e) True.
State whether each of the following is \textit{true} or \textit{false}. If \textit{false}, explain why.

1. Method \texttt{sleep} does not consume processor time while a thread sleeps.

2. Using a \texttt{Lock} guarantees that deadlock cannot occur.

3. Once a \texttt{Lock} has been obtained by a thread, the \texttt{Lock} object will not allow another thread to obtain the lock until the first thread releases it.

4. Swing components are thread safe.

Define each of the following terms.

1. thread

2. multithreading

3. \textit{Runnable} state

4. \textit{Timed waiting} state

5. preemptive scheduling

6. \texttt{Runnable} interface

7. \textit{signal} method of class \texttt{Condition}

8. producer/consumer relationship

9. quantum

Discuss each of the following terms in the context of Java's threading mechanisms:

1. \texttt{Lock}

2. producer

3. consumer

4. \texttt{await}

5. \texttt{signal}

6. \texttt{Condition}

Two problems that can occur in systems like Java, that allow threads to wait, are deadlock, in which one or more threads will wait forever for an event that cannot occur, and indefinite postponement, in which one or more threads will be delayed for some unpredictably long time. Give an example of how each of these problems can occur in a multithreaded Java program.
Discuss the difference between `Condition` method `await` with no arguments and `Condition` method `await` with a time-interval argument. In particular, what states do threads enter, and how can those threads return to the runnable state?

Name three threads that are created automatically by the Java virtual machine and discuss the purpose of each thread.

Write a program that bounces a blue ball inside a `JPanel`. The ball should begin moving with a `mousePressed` event. When the ball hits the edge of the `JPanel`, it should bounce off the edge and continue in the opposite direction. The ball should be updated using a `Runnable`.

Modify the program in Exercise 23.10 to add a new ball each time the user clicks the mouse. Provide for a minimum of 20 balls. Randomly choose the color for each new ball.

Modify the program in Exercise 23.11 to add shadows. As a ball moves, draw a solid black oval at the bottom of the `JPanel`. You may consider adding a 3-D effect by increasing or decreasing the size of each ball when it hits the edge of the `JPanel`.

Modify the program in Exercise 23.11 or Exercise 23.12 to bounce the balls off each other when they collide. A collision should occur between two balls when the distance between the centers of those two balls is less than the sum of the two balls' radii.
Chapter 24. Networking

If the presence of electricity can be made visible in any part of a circuit, I see no reason why intelligence may not be transmitted instantaneously by electricity.

Samuel F. B. Morse

Protocol is everything.

Francois Giuliani

What networks of railroads, highways and canals were in another age, the networks of telecommunications, information and computerization ... are today.

Bruno Kreisky

The port is near, the bells I hear, the people all exulting.

Walt Whitman

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- To understand Java networking with URLs, sockets and datagrams.

- To implement Java networking applications by using sockets and datagrams.

- To understand how to implement Java clients and servers that communicate with one another.

- To understand how to implement network-based collaborative applications.

- To construct a multithreaded server.
24.1. Introduction

There is much excitement about the Internet and the World Wide Web. The Internet ties the information world together. The World Wide Web makes the Internet easy to use and gives it the flair and sizzle of multimedia. Organizations see the Internet and the Web as crucial to their information-systems strategies. Java provides a number of built-in networking capabilities that make it easy to develop Internet-based and Web-based applications. Java can enable programs to search the world for information and to collaborate with programs running on other computers internationally, nationally or just within an organization. Java can enable applets and applications to communicate with one another (subject to security constraints).

Networking is a massive and complex topic. Computer science and computer engineering students will typically take a full-semester, upper-level course in computer networking and continue with further study at the graduate level. Java is often used as an implementation vehicle in computer networking courses. In *Java How to Program, Sixth Edition*, we introduce a portion of Java's networking concepts and capabilities. We discuss more advanced networking capabilities in our book *Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program*.

Java's fundamental networking capabilities are declared by classes and interfaces of package `java.net`, through which Java offers *stream-based communications* that enable applications to view networking as streams of data. The classes and interfaces of package `java.net` also offer *packet-based communications* for transmitting individual *packets* of information commonly used to transmit audio and video over the Internet. In this chapter, we show how to create and manipulate sockets and how to communicate with packets and streams of data.

Our discussion of networking focuses on both sides of the *client-server relationship*. The *client* requests that some action be performed, and the *server* performs the action and responds to the client. A common implementation of the request-response model is between Web browsers and Web servers. When a user selects a Web site to browse through a browser (the client application), a request is sent to the appropriate Web server (the server application). The server normally responds to the client by sending an appropriate HTML Web page.
We introduce Java's **socket-based communications**, which enable applications to view networking as if it were file I/Oa program can read from a **socket** or write to a socket as simply as reading from a file or writing to a file. The socket is simply a software construct that represents one endpoint of a connection. We show how to create and manipulate stream sockets and datagram sockets.

With **stream sockets**, a process establishes a **connection** to another process. While the connection is in place, data flows between the processes in continuous **streams**. Stream sockets are said to provide a **connection-oriented service**. The protocol used for transmission is the popular **TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)**.

With **datagram sockets**, individual **packets** of information are transmitted. This is not appropriate for everyday programmers, because the protocol used **UDP**, the **User Datagram Protocol** is a **connectionless service**, and thus does not guarantee that packets arrive in any particular order. With UDP, packets can even be lost or duplicated. Significant extra programming is required on the programmer's part to deal with these problems (if the programmer chooses to do so). UDP is most appropriate for network applications that do not require the error checking and reliability of TCP. Stream sockets and the TCP protocol will be more desirable for the vast majority of Java programmers.

**Performance Tip 24.1**

Connectionless services generally offer greater performance but less reliability than connection-oriented services.

**Portability Tip 24.1**

TCP, UDP and related protocols enable a great variety of heterogeneous computer systems (i.e., computer systems with different processors and different operating systems) to intercommunicate.
The chapter includes a case study in which we implement a client/server chat application similar to the instant-messaging services popular on the Web today. The application incorporates many networking techniques introduced in this chapter. It also introduces **multicasting**, in which a server can **publish** information and clients can **subscribe** to that information. Each time the server publishes more information, all subscribers receive it. Throughout the examples of this chapter, we will see that many of the networking details are handled by the Java APIs.
24.2. Manipulating URLs

The Internet offers many protocols. The Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), which forms the basis of the World Wide Web, uses URIs (Uniform Resource Identifiers) to identify data on the Internet. URIs that specify the locations of documents are called URLs (Uniform Resource Locators). Common URLs refer to files or directories and can reference objects that perform complex tasks, such as database lookups and Internet searches. If you know the HTTP URL of a publicly available HTML document anywhere on the Web, you can access it through HTTP.

Java makes it easy to manipulate URLs. When you use a URL that refers to the exact location of a resource (e.g., a Web page) as an argument to the showDocument method of interface AppletContext, the browser in which the applet is executing will display that resource. The applet in Fig. 24.1 and Fig. 24.2 demonstrates simple networking capabilities. It enables the user to select a Web page from a JList and causes the browser to display the corresponding page. In this example, the networking is performed by the browser.

Figure 24.1. HTML document to load SiteSelector applet.

```html
<html>
<title>Site Selector</title>
<body>
<applet code = "SiteSelector.class" width = "300" height = "75">
  <param name = "title0" value = "Java Home Page">
  <param name = "location0" value = "http://java.sun.com/">
  <param name = "title1" value = "Deitel">
  <param name = "location1" value = "http://www.deitel.com/">
  <param name = "title2" value = "JGuru">
  <param name = "location2" value = "http://www.jGuru.com/">
  <param name = "title3" value = "JavaWorld">
  <param name = "location3" value = "http://www.javaworld.com/">
</applet>
</body>
</html>
```
public class SiteSelector extends JApplet {
    private HashMap< Object, URL > sites; // site names and URLs
    private ArrayList< String > siteNames; // site names
    private JList siteChooser; // list of sites to choose from

    // read HTML parameters and set up GUI
    public void init() {
        sites = new HashMap< Object, URL >(); // create HashMap
        siteNames = new ArrayList< String >(); // create ArrayList

        // obtain parameters from HTML document
        getSitesFromHTMLParameters();

        // create GUI components and layout interface
        add( new JLabel( "Choose a site to browse" ), BorderLayout.NORTH );

        siteChooser = new JList( siteNames.toArray() ); // populate JList
        siteChooser.addListSelectionListener(
            new ListSelectionListener() // anonymous inner class
               {
                   // go to site user selected
                   public void valueChanged( ListSelectionEvent event )
                   {
                       // get selected site name
                       Object object = siteChooser.getSelectedValue();

                       // use site name to locate corresponding URL
                       URL newDocument = sites.get( object );

                       // get applet container
                       AppletContext browser = getAppletContext();

                       // tell applet container to change pages
                       browser.showDocument( newDocument );
                   } // end method valueChanged
               } // end anonymous inner class
        ); // end call to addListSelectionListener
    }

    // method to obtain sites from HTML document
    private void getSitesFromHTMLParameters() {
        // TODO: implement
    }

} // end class SiteSelector
add( new JScrollPane( siteChooser ), BorderLayout.CENTER );
} // end method init

// obtain parameters from HTML document
private void get Sites From HTML Parameters()
{
String title; // site title
String location; // location of site
URL url; // URL of location
int counter = 0; // count number of sites

title = getParameter( "title" + counter ); // get first site title

// loop until no more parameters in HTML document
while ( title != null )
{
    // obtain site location
    location = getParameter( "location" + counter );

    try // place title/URL in HashMap and title in ArrayList
    {
        url = new URL( location ); // convert location to URL
        sites.put( title, url ); // put title/URL in HashMap
        siteNames.add( title ); // put title in ArrayList
    } // end try
    catch ( MalformedURLException urlException )
    {
        urlException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch

counter++;
    title = getParameter( "title" + counter ); // get next site title
} // end while
} // end class SiteSelector

[View full size image]
This applet takes advantage of **applet parameters** specified in the HTML document that invokes the applet. When browsing the World Wide Web, you will often come across applets that are in the public domain—you can use them free of charge on your own Web pages (normally in exchange for crediting the applet's creator). Many applets can be customized via parameters supplied from the HTML file that invokes the applet. For example, **Fig. 24.1** contains the HTML that invokes the applet SiteSelector in **Fig. 24.2**.

The HTML document contains eight parameters specified with the **param** tag; these lines must appear between the starting and ending **applet** tags. The applet can read these values and use them to customize itself. Any number of **param** tags can appear between the starting and ending **applet** tags. Each parameter has a **name** and a **value**. Applet method **getParameter** retrieves the **value** associated with a specific parameter name and returns it as a string. The argument passed to **getParameter** is a string containing the name of the
parameter in the `<param>` element. In this example, parameters represent the title and location of each Web site the user can select. Parameters specified for this applet are named `<title##>`, where the value of `##` starts at 0 and increments by 1 for each new title. Each title should have a corresponding location parameter of the form `<location##>`, where the value of `##` starts at 0 and increments by 1 for each new location. The statement

```java
String title = getParameter( "title0" );
```

gets the value associated with parameter "title0" and assigns it to reference `title`. If there is no `param` tag containing the specified parameter, `getParameter` returns `null`.

The applet (Fig. 24.2) obtains from the HTML document (Fig. 24.1) the choices that will be displayed in the applet's `JList`. Class `SiteSelector` uses a `HashMap` (package `java.util`) to store the Web site names and URLs. In this example, the `key` is the string in the `JList` that represents the Web site name, and the `value` is a `URL` object that stores the location of the Web site to display in the browser.

Class `SiteSelector` also contains an `ArrayList` (package `java.util`) in which the site names are placed so that they can be used to initialize the `JList` (one version of the `JList` constructor receives an array of `Object`s which is returned by `ArrayList`'s `toArray` method). An `ArrayList` is a dynamically resizable array of references. Class `ArrayList` provides method `add` to add a new element to the end of the `ArrayList`. (We provide discussions of classes `ArrayList` and `HashMap` in Chapter 19.)

Lines 2526 in the applet's `init` method (lines 2357) create a `HashMap` object and an `ArrayList` object. Line 29 calls our utility method `getSitesFromHTMLParameters` (declared at lines 6089) to obtain the HTML parameters from the HTML document that invoked the applet.

In method `getSitesFromHTMLParameters`, line 67 uses `Applet` method `getParameter` to obtain a Web site title. If the `title` is not `null`, the loop at lines 7088 begins executing. Line 73 uses `Applet` method `getParameter` to obtain the Web site location. Line 77 uses the `location` as the value of a new `URL` object. The `URL`
constructor determines whether its argument represents a valid URL. If not, the URL constructor throws a **MalformedURLException**. Note that the URL constructor must be called in a **Try** block. If the URL constructor generates a **MalformedURLException**, the call to **printStackTrace** (line 83) causes the program to output a stack trace to the Java console. On Windows machines, the Java console can be viewed by right clicking the Java icon in the notification area of the taskbar. Then the program attempts to obtain the next Web site title. The program does not add the site for the invalid URL to the **HashMap**, so the title will not be displayed in the **JList**.

For a proper **URL**, line 78 places the **title** and **URL** into the **HashMap**, and line 79 adds the **title** to the **ArrayList**. Line 87 gets the next title from the HTML document. When the call to **getParameter** at line 87 returns **null**, the loop terminates.

When method **getSitesFromHTMLParameters** returns to **init**, lines 3256 construct the applet's GUI. Line 32 adds the **JLabel** "Choose a site to browse" to the NORTH of the JFrame's **BorderLayout**. Line 34 creates **JList siteChooser** to allow the user to select a Webpage to view. Lines 3554 register a **ListSelectionListener** to handle the siteChooser's events. Line 56 adds **siteChooser** to the CENTER of the JFrame's **BorderLayout**.

When the user selects one of the Web sites listed in **siteChooser**, the program calls method **valueChanged** (lines 3952). Line 42 obtains the selected site name from the **JList**. Line 45 passes the selected site name (the key) to **HashMap** method **get**, which locates and returns a reference to the corresponding **URL** object (the value) that is assigned to reference **newDocument**.

Line 48 uses **Applet** method **getAppletContext** to get a reference to an **AppletContext** object that represents the applet container. Line 51 uses the **AppletContext** reference **browser** to invoke method **showDocument**, which receives a **URL** object as an argument and passes it to the **AppletContext** (i.e., the browser). The browser displays in the current browser window the World Wide Web resource associated with that **URL**. In this example, all the resources are HTML documents.

For programmers familiar with **HTML frames**, there is a second version of **AppletContext** method **showDocument** that enables an applet to specify the so-called **target frame** in which to display the Web resource. This second version takes two arguments a **URL** object specifying the resource to display and a string
representing the target frame. There are some special target frames that can be used as the second argument. The target frame _blank results in a new Web browser window to display the content from the specified URL. The target frame _self specifies that the content from the specified URL should be displayed in the same frame as the applet (the applet's HTML page is replaced in this case). The target frame _top specifies that the browser should remove the current frames in the browser window, then display the content from the specified URL in the current window. [Note: If you are interested in learning more about HTML, the CD that accompanies this book contains three chapters from our book Internet and World Wide Web How to Program, Third Edition that introduce the current version of HTML (known as XHTML) and the Web page formatting capability known as Cascading Style Sheets (CSS).]

Error-Prevention Tip 24.1

The applet in Fig. 24.2 must be run from a Web browser, such as Mozilla or Microsoft Internet Explorer, to see the results of displaying another Web page. The appletviewer is capable only of executing appletsit ignores all other HTML tags. If the Web sites in the program contained Java applets, only those applets would appear in the appletviewer when the user selected a Web site. Each applet would execute in a separate appletviewer window.
24.3. Reading a File on a Web Server

Our next example once again hides the networking details from us. The application in Fig. 24.3 uses Swing GUI component JEditorPane (from package javax.swing) to display the contents of a file on a Web server. The user inputs a URL in the JTextField at the top of the window, and the application displays the corresponding document (if it exists) in the JEditorPane. Class JEditorPane is able to render both plain text and HTML-formatted text, as illustrated in the two screen captures (Fig. 24.4), so this application acts as a simple Web browser. The application also demonstrates how to process HyperlinkEvents when the user clicks a hyperlink in the HTML document. The techniques shown in this example can also be used in applets. However, an applet is allowed to read files only on the server from which it was downloaded.

Figure 24.3. Reading a file by opening a connection through a URL.

(This item is displayed on pages 1114 - 1115 in the print version)

```java
public class ReadServerFile extends JFrame {

    private JTextField enterField; // JTextField to enter site name
    private JEditorPane contentsArea; // to display Web site

    // set up GUI
    public ReadServerFile() {
        super( "Simple Web Browser" );
        // create enterField and register its listener
        enterField = new JTextField( "Enter file URL here" );

```
enterField.addActionListener(
    new ActionListener() {
        public void actionPerformed(ActionEvent event) {
            getThePage(event.getActionCommand());
        } // end method actionPerformed
    } // end inner class
); // end call to addActionListener

add(enterField, BorderLayout.NORTH);

contentsArea = new JEditorPane(); // create contentsArea
contentsArea.setEditable(false);
contentsArea.addHyperlinkListener(
    new HyperlinkListener() {
        public void hyperlinkUpdate(HyperlinkEvent event) {
            if (event.getEventType() == HyperlinkEvent.EventType.ACTIVATED) {
                getThePage(event.getURL().toString());
            } // end method hyperlinkUpdate
        } // end inner class
    } // end call to addHyperlinkListener
);

add(new JScrollPane(contentsArea), BorderLayout.CENTER);
setSize(400, 300); // set size of window
setVisible(true); // show window

private void getThePage(String location) {
    try // load document and display location
    {
        contentsArea.setPage(location); // set the page
        enterField.setText(location); // set the text
    } // end try
    catch (IOException ioException) {
        JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(this, "Error retrieving specified URL", "Bad URL",
            JOptionPane.ERROR_MESSAGE);
    } // end catch
} // end method getThePage

// Fig. 24.4: ReadServerFileTest.java

Figure 24.4. Test class for ReadServerFile.
(This item is displayed on pages 1115 - 1116 in the print version)
The application class `ReadServerFileTest` contains `JTextField` `enterField`, in which the user enters the URL of the file to read and `JEditorPane` `contentsArea` to display the
contents of the file. When the user presses the Enter key in enterField, the application calls method actionPerformed (lines 3134). Line 33 uses ActionEvent method getActionCommand to get the string the user input in the JTextField and passes the string to utility method getThePage (lines 6174).

Line 65 invokes JEditorPane method setPage to download the document specified by location and display it in the JEditorPane. If there is an error downloading the document, method setPage throws an IOException. Also, if an invalid URL is specified, a MalformedURLException (a subclass of IOException) occurs. If the document loads successfully, line 66 displays the current location in enterField.

Typically, an HTML document contains hyperlinks text, images or GUI components which, when clicked, provide quick access to another document on the Web. If a JEditorPane contains an HTML document and the user clicks a hyperlink, the JEditorPane generates a HyperlinkEvent (package javax.swing.event) and notifies all registered HyperlinkListeners (package javax.swing.event) of that event. Lines 4253 register a HyperlinkListener to handle HyperlinkEvents. When a HyperlinkEvent occurs, the program calls method hyperlinkUpdate (lines 4651). Lines 4849 use HyperlinkEvent method getEventType to determine the type of the HyperlinkEvent. Class HyperlinkEvent contains a public nested class called EventType that declares three static EventType objects, which represent the hyperlink event types. ACTIVATED indicates that the user clicked a hyperlink to change Web pages, ENTERED indicates that the user moved the mouse over a hyperlink and EXITED indicates that the user moved the mouse away from a hyperlink. If a hyperlink was ACTIVATED, line 50 uses HyperlinkEvent method getUrl to obtain the URL represented by the hyperlink. Method toString converts the returned URL to a string that can be passed to utility method getThePage.
24.4. Establishing a Simple Server Using Stream Sockets

The two examples discussed so far use high-level Java networking capabilities to communicate between applications. In the examples, it was not the Java programmer's responsibility to establish the connection between a client and a server. The first program relied on the Web browser to communicate with a Web server. The second program relied on a JEditorPane to perform the connection. This section begins our discussion of creating your own applications that can communicate with one another.

Establishing a simple server in Java requires five steps. **Step 1** is to create a ServerSocket object. A call to the `ServerSocket` constructor, such as

```
ServerSocket server = new ServerSocket( portNumber, queueLength );
```

registers an available TCP port number and specifies a maximum number of clients that can wait to connect to the server (i.e., the queue length). The port number is used by clients to locate the server application on the server computer. This is often called the handshake point. If the queue is full, the server refuses client connections. The constructor establishes the port where the server waits for connections from clients—a process known as binding the server to the port. Each client will ask to connect to the server on this port. Only one application at a time can be bound to a specific port on the server.

**Software Engineering Observation 24.1**

Port numbers can be between 0 and 65,535. Most operating systems reserve port numbers below 1024 for system services (e.g., e-mail and World Wide Web servers). Generally, these ports should not be specified as connection ports in user programs. In fact, some operating systems require special access privileges to bind to port numbers below 1024.

Programs manage each client connection with a Socket object. In **Step 2**, the server listens indefinitely (or blocks) for an attempt by a client to connect. To listen for a client connection, the program calls `ServerSocket` method accept, as
Socket connection = server.accept();

which returns a Socket when a connection with a client is established. The Socket allows the server to interact with the client. The interactions with the client actually occur at a different server port from the handshake point. This allows the port specified in Step 1 to be used again in a multithreaded server to accept another client connection. We demonstrate this concept in Section 24.8.

Step 3 is to get the OutputStream and InputStream objects that enable the server to communicate with the client by sending and receiving bytes. The server sends information to the client via an OutputStream and receives information from the client via an InputStream. The server invokes method getOutputStream on the Socket to get a reference to the Socket's OutputStream and invokes method getInputStream on the Socket to get a reference to the Socket's InputStream.

The stream objects can be used to send or receive individual bytes or sequences of bytes with the OutputStream's method write and the InputStream's method read, respectively. Often it is useful to send or receive values of primitive types (e.g., int and double) or Serializable objects (e.g., Strings or other serializable types) rather than sending bytes. In this case, we can use the techniques discussed in Chapter 14 to wrap other stream types (e.g., ObjectOutputStream and ObjectInputStream) around the OutputStream and InputStream associated with the Socket. For example,

```java
ObjectInputStream input =
    new ObjectInputStream( connection.getInputStream() );

ObjectOutputStream output =
    new ObjectOutputStream( connection.getOutputStream() );
```

The beauty of establishing these relationships is that whatever the server writes to the ObjectOutputStream is sent via the OutputStream and is available at the client's InputStream, and whatever the client writes to its OutputStream (with a corresponding ObjectOutputStream) is available via the server's InputStream. The transmission of the data over the network is seamless and is handled
Step 4 is the processing phase, in which the server and the client communicate via the `OutputStream` and `InputStream` objects. In Step 5, when the transmission is complete, the server closes the connection by invoking the `close` method on the streams and on the `Socket`.

**Software Engineering Observation 24.2**

> With sockets, network I/O appears to Java programs to be similar to sequential file I/O. Sockets hide much of the complexity of network programming from the programmer.

**Software Engineering Observation 24.3**

> With Java's multithreading, we can create multithreaded servers that can manage many simultaneous connections with many clients. This multithreaded-server architecture is precisely what popular network servers use.

**Software Engineering Observation 24.4**

> A multithreaded server can take the `Socket` returned by each call to `accept` and create a new thread that manages network I/O across that `Socket`. Alternatively, a multithreaded server can maintain a pool of threads (a set of already existing threads) ready to manage network I/O across the new `Sockets` as they are created. See Chapter 23 for more information on multithreading.
Performance Tip 24.2

In high-performance systems in which memory is abundant, a multithreaded server can be implemented to create a pool of threads that can be assigned quickly to handle network I/O across each new Socket as it is created. Thus, when the server receives a connection, it need not incur the overhead of thread creation. When the connection is closed, the thread is returned to the pool for reuse.
24.5. Establishing a Simple Client Using Stream Sockets

Establishing a simple client in Java requires four steps. In Step 1, we create a `Socket` to connect to the server. The `Socket` constructor establishes the connection to the server. For example, the statement

```
Socket connection = new Socket(serverAddress, port);
```

uses the `Socket` constructor with two arguments—the server's address (`serverAddress`) and the `port` number. If the connection attempt is successful, this statement returns a `Socket`. A connection attempt that fails throws an instance of a subclass of `IOException`, so many programs simply catch `IOException`. An `UnknownHostException` occurs specifically when the system is unable to resolve the server address specified in the call to the `Socket` constructor to a corresponding IP address.

In Step 2, the client uses `Socket` methods `getInputStream` and `getOutputStream` to obtain references to the `Socket`'s `InputStream` and `OutputStream`. As we mentioned in the preceding section, we can use the techniques of Chapter 14 to wrap other stream types around the `InputStream` and `OutputStream` associated with the `Socket`. If the server is sending information in the form of actual types, the client should receive the information in the same format. Thus, if the server sends values with an `ObjectOutputStream`, the client should read those values with an `ObjectInputStream`.

Step 3 is the processing phase in which the client and the server communicate via the `InputStream` and `OutputStream` objects. In Step 4, the client closes the connection when the transmission is complete by invoking the `close` method on the streams and on the `Socket`. The client must determine when the server is finished sending information so that it can call `close` to close the `Socket` connection. For example, the `InputStream` method `read` returns the value 1 when it detects end-of-stream (also called EOFend-of-file). If an `ObjectInputStream` is used to read information from the server, an `EOFException` occurs when the client attempts to read a value from a stream on which end-of-stream is detected.
24.6. Client/Server Interaction with Stream Socket Connections

Figure 24.5 and Fig. 24.7 use stream sockets to demonstrate a simple client/server chat application. The server waits for a client connection attempt. When a client connects to the server, the server application sends the client a String object (recall that Strings are Serializable objects) indicating that the connection was successful. Then the client displays the message. The client and server applications each provide textfields that allow the user to type a message and send it to the other application. When the client or the server sends the string "TERMINATE", the connection terminates. Then the server waits for the next client to connect. The declaration of class Server appears in Fig. 24.5. The declaration of class Client appears in Fig. 24.7. The screen captures showing the execution between the client and the server are shown as part of Fig. 24.7.

---

Figure 24.5. Server portion of a client/server stream-socket connection.

(This item is displayed on pages 1120 - 1123 in the print version)

```java
1   // Fig. 24.5: Server.java
2   // Set up a Server that will receive a connection from a client, send
3   // a string to the client, and close the connection.
4 import java.io.EOFException;
5 import java.io.IOException;
6 import java.io.ObjectInputStream;
7 import java.io.ObjectOutputStream;
8 import java.net.ServerSocket;
9 import java.net.Socket;
10 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
11 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
12 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
13 import javax.swing.JFrame;
14 import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
15 import javax.swing.JTextArea;
16 import javax.swing.JTextField;
17 import javax.swing.SwingUtilities;
18
19 public class Server extends JFrame {
20   {
21       private JTextField enterField; // inputs message from user
```
private JTextArea displayArea; // display information to user
private ObjectOutputStream output; // output stream to client
private ObjectInputStream input; // input stream from client
private ServerSocket server; // server socket
private Socket connection; // connection to client
private int counter = 1; // counter of number of connections

// set up GUI
public Server()
{
    super ( "Server" );

    enterField = new JTextField(); // create enterField
    enterField.setEditable( false );
    enterField.addActionListener( new ActionListener()
    {
        // send message to client
        public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
        {
            sendData( event.getActionCommand() );
            enterField.setText( "" );
        } // end method actionPerformed
    } // end anonymous inner class
); // end call to addActionListener

    add( enterField, BorderLayout.NORTH );

    displayArea = new JTextArea(); // create displayArea
    add( new JScrollPane( displayArea ), BorderLayout.CENTER );

    setSize( 300, 150 ); // set size of window
    setVisible( true ); // show window
} // end Server constructor

// set up and run server
public void runServer()
{
    try // set up server to receive connections; process connections
    {
        server = new ServerSocket( 12345, 100 ); // create ServerSocket

        while ( true )
        {
            try
            {
                waitForConnection(); // wait for a connection
                getStreams(); // get input & output streams
                processConnection(); // process connection
            } // end try
            catch ( EOFException eofException )
            {
                displayMessage( "\nServer terminated connection" );
            } // end catch
            finally
            {
                closeConnection(); // close connection
                counter++;
            } // end finally
        } // end while
    } // end try
} // end runServer()
catch ( IOException ioException )
{
    ioException.printStackTrace();
} // end catch
} // end method runServer

// wait for connection to arrive, then display connection info
private void waitForConnection() throws IOException
{
    displayMessage( "Waiting for connection\n" );
    connection = server.accept(); // allow server to accept connection
    displayMessage( "Connection " + counter + " received from: " +
                    connection.getInetAddress().getHostName() );
} // end method waitForConnection

// get streams to send and receive data
private void getStreams() throws IOException
{
    // set up output stream for objects
    output = new ObjectOutputStream( connection.getOutputStream() );
    output.flush(); // flush output buffer to send header information

    // set up input stream for objects
    input = new ObjectInputStream( connection.getInputStream() );

displayMessage( "\nGot I/O streams\n" );
} // end method getStreams

// process connection with client
private void processConnection() throws IOException
{
    String message = "Connection successful";
    sendData( message ); // send connection successful message

    // enable enterField so server user can send messages
    setTextFieldEditable( true );

    do // process messages sent from client
    { try // read message and display it
        {
            message = ( String ) input.readObject(); // read new message
            displayMessage( "\n" + message ); // display message
        } // end try
        catch ( ClassNotFoundException classNotFoundException )
        {
            displayMessage( "\nUnknown object type received" );
        } // end catch
    } while ( !message.equals( "CLIENT>>> TERMINATE" ) );
} // end method processConnection

// close streams and socket
private void closeConnection()
{
    displayMessage( "\nTerminating connection\n" );
    setTextFieldEditable( false ); // disable enterField

    try
    {
        output.close(); // close output stream
    } // end try
} // end method closeConnection
input.close(); // close input stream
connection.close(); // close socket

    } // end try
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
        ioException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
} // end method closeConnection

// send message to client
private void sendData( String message )
{
    try // send object to client
    {
        output.writeObject( "SERVER>>> " + message );
        output.flush(); // flush output to client
        displayMessage( "\nSERVER>>> " + message );
    } // end try
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
        displayArea.append( "\nError writing object" );
    } // end catch
} // end method sendData

// manipulates displayArea in the event-dispatch thread
private void displayMessage( final String messageToDisplay )
{
    SwingUtilities.invokeLater( new Runnable()
    {
        public void run() // updates displayArea
        {
            displayArea.append( messageToDisplay ); // append message
        } // end method run
    } // end anonymous inner class
); // end call to SwingUtilities.invokeLater
} // end method displayMessage

// manipulates enterField in the event-dispatch thread
private void setTextFieldEditable( final boolean editable )
{
    SwingUtilities.invokeLater( new Runnable()
    {
        public void run() // sets enterField's editability
        {
            enterField.setEditable( editable );
        } // end method run
    } // end inner class
); // end call to SwingUtilities.invokeLater
} // end method setTextFieldEditable
} // end class Server
Server's constructor (lines 3055) creates the server's GUI, which contains a JTextField and a JTextArea. Server displays its output in the JTextArea. When the main method (lines 712 of Fig. 24.6) executes, it creates a Server object, specifies the window's default close operation and calls method runServer (declared at lines 5887).

**Figure 24.6. Test class for Server.**
(This item is displayed on page 1124 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 24.6: ServerTest.java
2 // Test the Server application.
3 import javax.swing.JFrame;
4
5 public class ServerTest
6 {
7    public static void main( String args[] )
8    {
9        Server application = new Server(); // create server
10        application.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
11        application.runServer(); // run server application
12    } // end main
13 } // end class ServerTest
```

Method runServer sets up the server to receive a connection and processes one connection at a time. Line 62 creates a ServerSocket called server to wait for connections. The ServerSocket listens for a connection from a client at port 12345. The second argument to the constructor is the number of connections that can wait in a queue to connect to the server (100 in this example). If the queue is full when a client attempts to connect, the server refuses the connection.

**Common Programming Error 24.1**

Specifying a port that is already in use or specifying an invalid port number when creating a ServerSocket results in a BindException.
Line 68 calls method `waitForConnection` (declared at lines 9096) to wait for a client connection. After the connection is established, line 69 calls method `getStreams` (declared at lines 99109) to obtain references to the streams for the connection. Line 70 calls method `processConnection` (declared at lines 112133) to send the initial connection message to the client and to process all messages received from the client. The `finally` block (lines 7680) terminates the client connection by calling method `closeConnection` (lines 136151) even if an exception occurs. Method `displayMessage` (lines 169180) is called from these methods to use the event-dispatch thread to display messages in the application's JTextArea.

In method `waitForConnection` (lines 9096), line 93 uses `ServerSocket` method `accept` to wait for a connection from a client. When a connection occurs, the resulting `Socket` is assigned to `connection`. Method `accept` blocks until a connection is received (i.e., the thread in which `accept` is called stops executing until a client connects). Lines 9495 output the host name of the computer that made the connection. `Socket` method `getInetAddress` returns an `InetAddress` (package java.net) containing information about the client computer. `InetAddress` method `getHostName` returns the host name of the client computer. For example, there is a special IP address (127.0.0.1) and host name (localhost) that is useful for testing networking applications on your local computer (this is also known as the loopback address). If `getHostName` is called on an `InetAddress` containing 127.0.0.1, the corresponding host name returned by the method would be `localhost`.

Method `getStreams` (lines 99109) obtains references to the `Socket`'s streams and uses them to initialize an `ObjectOutputStream` (line 102) and an `ObjectInputStream` (line 106), respectively. Note the call to `ObjectOutputStream` method `flush` at line 103. This statement causes the `ObjectOutputStream` on the server to send a stream header to the corresponding client's `ObjectInputStream`. The stream header contains such information as the version of object serialization being used to send objects. This information is required by the `ObjectInputStream` so that it can prepare to receive those objects correctly.

Software Engineering Observation 24.5

*When using an `ObjectOutputStream` and `ObjectInputStream` to send and receive*
data over a network connection, always create the `ObjectOutputStream` first and flush the stream so that the client's `ObjectInputStream` can prepare to receive the data. This is required only for networking applications that communicate using `ObjectOutputStream` and `ObjectInputStream`.

Performance Tip 24.3

A computer's input and output components are typically much slower than its memory. Output buffers typically are used to increase the efficiency of an application by sending larger amounts of data fewer times, thus reducing the number of times an application accesses the computer's input and output components.

Line 114 of method `processConnection` (lines 112133) calls method `sendData` to send "SERVER>>> Connection successful" as a string to the client. The loop at lines 120132 executes until the server receives the message "CLIENT>>> TERMINATE". Line 124 uses `ObjectInputStream` method `readObject` to read a `String` from the client. Line 125 invokes method `displayMessage` to append the message to the `JTextArea`. When the transmission is complete, method `processConnection` returns, and the program calls method `closeConnection` (lines 136151) to close the streams associated with the `Socket` and close the `Socket`. Then the server waits for the next connection attempt from a client by continuing with line 68 at the beginning of the while loop.

When the user of the server application enters a string in the textfield and presses the Enter key, the program calls method `actionPerformed` (lines 4044), which reads the string from the textfield and calls utility method `sendData` (lines 154166) to send the string to the client. Method `sendData` writes the object, flushes the output buffer and appends the same string to the textarea in the server window. It is not necessary to invoke `displayMessage` to modify the textarea here, because method `sendData` is called from an event handler thus, `sendData` executes as part of the event-dispatch thread.

Note that `Server` receives a connection, processes it, closes it and waits for the next connection. A more likely scenario would be a `Server` that receives a
connection, sets it up to be processed as a separate thread of execution, then immediately waits for new connections. The separate threads that process existing connections can continue to execute while the Server concentrates on new connection requests. This makes the server more efficient, because multiple client requests can be processed concurrently. We demonstrate a multithreaded server in Section 24.8.

Client Class

Like class Server, class Client's (Fig. 24.7) constructor (lines 2956) creates the GUI of the application (a JTextField and a JTextArea). Client displays its output in the textarea. When method main (lines 719 of Fig. 24.8) executes, it creates an instance of class Client, specifies the window's default close operation and calls method runClient (declared at lines 5979). In this example, you can execute the client from any computer on the Internet and specify the IP address or host name of the server computer as a commandline argument to the program. For example, the command

```
java Client 192.168.1.15
```

attempts to connect to the Server on the computer with IP address 192.168.1.15.

Figure 24.7. Client portion of a stream-socket connection between client and server.
(This item is displayed on pages 1126 - 1129 in the print version)

```
1  // Fig. 24.7: Client.java
2  // Client that reads and displays information sent from a Server.
3  import java.io.EOFException;
4  import java.io.IOException;
5  import java.io.ObjectInputStream;
6  import java.io.ObjectOutputStream;
7  import java.net.InetAddress;
8  import java.net.Socket;
9  import java.awt.BorderLayout;
10 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
11 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
12 import javax.swing.JFrame;
```
import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
import javax.swing.JTextArea;
import javax.swing.JTextField;
import javax.swing.SwingUtilities;

public class Client extends JFrame {

    private JTextField enterField; // enters information from user
    private JTextArea displayArea; // display information to user
    private ObjectOutputStream output; // output stream to server
    private ObjectInputStream input; // input stream from server
    private String message = ""; // message from server
    private String chatServer; // host server for this application
    private Socket client; // socket to communicate with server

    // initialize chatServer and set up GUI
    public Client( String host ) {
        super( "Client" );
        chatServer = host; // set server to which this client connects
        enterField = new JTextField(); // create enterField
        enterField.setEditable( false );
        enterField.addActionListener( new ActionListener()
            {
                // send message to server
                public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
                    {
                        sendData( event.getActionCommand() );
                        enterField.setText( "" );
                    } // end method actionPerformed
            } // end anonymous inner class
        ); // end call to addActionListener
        add( enterField, BorderLayout.NORTH );
        displayArea = new JTextArea(); // create displayArea
        add( new JScrollPane( displayArea ), BorderLayout.CENTER );
        setSize( 300, 150 ); // set size of window
        setVisible( true ); // show window
    } // end Client constructor

    // connect to server and process messages from server
    public void runClient() {
        try { // connect to server, get streams, process connection
            connectToServer(); // create a Socket to make connection
            getStreams(); // get the input and output streams
            processConnection(); // process connection
        } // end try
        catch ( EOFException eofException ) {
            displayMessage( "\nClient terminated connection" );
        } // end catch
        catch ( IOException ioException ) {
            ioException.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
}
} // end catch
finally
{
    closeConnection(); // close connection
} // end finally
} // end method runClient

// connect to server
private void connectToServer() throws IOException
{
    displayMessage("Attempting connection\n");

    // create Socket to make connection to server
    client = new Socket( InetAddress.getByName( chatServer ), 12345 );

    // display connection information
    displayMessage("Connected to: " +
        client.getInetAddress().getHostName() );
} // end method connectToServer

// get streams to send and receive data
private void getStreams() throws IOException
{
    // set up output stream for objects
    output = new ObjectOutputStream( client.getOutputStream() );
    output.flush(); // flush output buffer to send header information

    // set up input stream for objects
    input = new ObjectInputStream( client.getInputStream() );

    displayMessage("\nGot I/O streams\n");
} // end method getStreams

// process connection with server
private void processConnection() throws IOException
{
    // enable enterField so client user can send messages
    setTextFieldEditable( true );

    do // process messages sent from server
    {
        try // read message and display it
        {
            message = ( String ) input.readObject(); // read new message
            displayMessage("\n" + message ); // display message
        } // end try
        catch ( ClassNotFoundException classNotFoundException )
        {
            displayMessage("\nUnknown object type received" );
        } // end catch
        while ( !message.equals("SERVER>>> TERMINATE") );
    } // end method processConnection

    // close streams and socket
private void closeConnection()
{
    displayMessage("\nClosing connection" );
    setTextFieldEditable( false ); // disable enterField
    try
Figure 24.8. Class that tests the Client.
// Fig. 24.8: ClientTest.java
// Test the Client class.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class ClientTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        Client application; // declare client application

        // if no command line args
        if ( args.length == 0 )
            application = new Client( "127.0.0.1" ); // connect to localhost
        else
            application = new Client( args[0] ); // use args to connect

        application.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
        application.runClient(); // run client application
    } // end main
} // end class ClientTest

[View full size image]
Client method `runClient` (lines 5979) sets up the connection to the server, processes messages received from the server and closes the connection when communication is complete. Line 63 calls method `connectToServer` (declared at lines 8292) to perform the connection. After connecting, line 64 calls method `getStreams` (declared at lines 95105) to obtain references to the `Socket`'s stream objects. Then line 65 calls method `processConnection` (declared at lines 108126) to receive and display messages sent from the server. The `finally` block (lines 7578) calls `closeConnection` (lines 129144) to close the streams and the `Socket` even if an exception has occurred. Method `displayMessage` (lines 162173) is called from these methods to use the event-dispatch thread to display messages in the application's textarea.

Method `connectToServer` (lines 8292) creates a `Socket` called `client` (line 87) to
establish a connection. The method passes two arguments to the `Socket` constructor—the IP address of the server computer and the port number (12345) where the server application is awaiting client connections. In the first argument, `InetAddress` static method `getByName` returns an `InetAddress` object containing the IP address specified as a command-line argument to the application (or `127.0.0.1` if no command-line arguments are specified). Method `getByName` can receive a string containing either the actual IP address or the host name of the server. The first argument also could have been written other ways. For the localhost address `127.0.0.1`, the first argument could be

```java
InetAddress.getByName( "localhost" )
```

or

```java
InetAddress.getLocalHost()
```

Also, there are versions of the `Socket` constructor that receive a string for the IP address or host name. The first argument could have been specified as "127.0.0.1" or "localhost". We chose to demonstrate the client/server relationship by connecting between applications executing on the same computer (`localhost`). Normally, this first argument would be the IP address of another computer. The `InetAddress` object for another computer can be obtained by specifying the computer’s IP address or host name as the argument to `InetAddress` method `getByName`. The `Socket` constructor’s second argument is the server port number. This must match the port number at which the server is waiting for connections (called the handshake point). Once the connection is made, lines 9091 display a message in the text area indicating the name of the server computer to which the client has connected.

The `Client` uses an `ObjectOutputStream` to send data to the server and an `ObjectInputStream` to receive data from the server. Method `getStreams` (lines 95105) creates the `ObjectOutputStream` and `ObjectInputStream` objects that use the streams associated with the `client` socket.

Method `processConnection` (lines 108126) contains a loop that executes until the client receives the message "SERVER>>> TERMINATE". Line 117 reads a `String` object
from the server. Line 118 invokes `displayMessage` to append the message to the textarea.

When the transmission is complete, method `closeConnection` (lines 129-144) closes the streams and the `Socket`.

When the user of the client application enters a string in the textfield and presses the `Enter` key, the program calls method `actionPerformed` (lines 41-45) to read the string and invoke utility method `sendData` (147-159) to send the string to the server. Method `sendData` writes the object, flushes the output buffer and appends the same string to the `JTextArea` in the client window. Once again, it is not necessary to invoke utility method `displayMessage` to modify the textarea here, because method `sendData` is called from an event handler.
24.7. Connectionless Client/Server Interaction with Datagrams

We have been discussing connection-oriented, streams-based transmission. Now we consider connectionless transmission with datagrams.

Connection-oriented transmission is like the telephone system in which you dial and are given a connection to the telephone of the person with whom you wish to communicate. The connection is maintained for the duration of your phone call, even when you are not talking.

Connectionless transmission with datagrams is more like the way mail is carried via the postal service. If a large message will not fit in one envelope, you break it into separate message pieces that you place in separate, sequentially numbered envelopes. Each of the letters is then mailed at the same time. The letters could arrive in order, out of order or not at all (the last case is rare, but it does happen). The person at the receiving end reassembles the message pieces into sequential order before attempting to make sense of the message. If your message is small enough to fit in one envelope, you need not worry about the "out-of-sequence" problem, but it is still possible that your message might not arrive. One difference between datagrams and postal mail is that duplicates of datagrams can arrive at the receiving computer.

Figure 24.9 use datagrams to send packets of information via the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) between a client application and a server application. In the Client application (Fig. 24.11), the user types a message into a textfield and presses Enter. The program converts the message into a byte array and places it in a datagram packet that is sent to the server. The Server (Fig. 24.9) receives the packet and displays the information in it, then echoes the packet back to the client. Upon receiving the packet, the client displays the information it contains.
import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.DatagramPacket;
import java.net.DatagramSocket;
import java.net.SocketException;
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
import javax.swing.JTextArea;
import javax.swing.SwingUtilities;

public class Server extends JFrame {

    private JTextArea displayArea; // displays packets received
    private DatagramSocket socket; // socket to connect to client

    // set up GUI and DatagramSocket
    public Server() {
        super( "Server" );
        displayArea = new JTextArea(); // create displayArea
        add( new JScrollPane( displayArea ), BorderLayout.CENTER );
        setSize( 400, 300 ); // set size of window
        setVisible( true ); // show window

        try // create DatagramSocket for sending and receiving packets
            {
            socket = new DatagramSocket( 5000 ); // create DatagramSocket
        } // end try
        catch ( SocketException socketException )
        {
            socketException.printStackTrace();
            System.exit( 1 );
        } // end catch
    } // end Server constructor

    // wait for packets to arrive, display data and echo packet to client
    public void waitForPackets() {
        while ( true ) {
            try // receive packet, display contents, return copy to client
                {
                byte data[] = new byte[ 100 ]; // set up packet
                DatagramPacket receivePacket =
                    new DatagramPacket( data, data.length );

                socket.receive( receivePacket ); // wait to receive packet

                displayMessage( "\nPacket received:" +
                    "\nFrom host: " + receivePacket.getAddress() +
                    "\nHost port: " + receivePacket.getPort() +
                    "\nLength: " + receivePacket.getLength() +
                    "\nContaining:\n\t" + new String( receivePacket.getData(), 0, receivePacket.getLength() ));

                sendPacketToClient( receivePacket ); // send packet to client
            } // end try
        } // end while
    } // end waitForPackets()
catch ( IOException ioException )
{
    displayMessage( ioException.toString() + "\n");
    ioException.printStackTrace();
} // end catch
// end while
} // end method waitForPackets

// echo packet to client
private void sendPacketToClient( DatagramPacket receivePacket )
throws IOException
{
    displayMessage( "\n\nEcho data to client...");

    // create packet to send
    DatagramPacket sendPacket = new DatagramPacket( receivePacket.getData(), receivePacket.getLength(),
receivePacket.getAddress(), receivePacket.getPort() );
    socket.send( sendPacket ); // send packet to client
displayMessage( "Packet sent\n");
} // end method sendPacketToClient

// manipulates displayArea in the event-dispatch thread
private void displayMessage( final String messageToDisplay )
{
    SwingUtilities.invokeLater( new Runnable()
    {
        public void run() // updates displayArea
        {
            displayArea.append( messageToDisplay ); // display message
        } // end method run
    } ); // end call to SwingUtilities.invokeLater
} // end class Server

Figure 24.10. Class that tests the Server.
(This item is displayed on pages 1134 - 1135 in the print version)
Server window after packet of data is received from Client

Figure 24.11. Client side of connectionless client/server computing with datagrams.
(This item is displayed on pages 1135 - 1137 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 24.11: Client.java
// Client that sends and receives packets to/from a server.
import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.DatagramPacket;
import java.net.DatagramSocket;
import java.net.InetAddress;
import java.net.SocketException;
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
import javax.swing.JTextArea;
import javax.swing.JTextField;
import javax.swing.SwingUtilities;

public class Client extends JFrame {
    private JTextField enterField; // for entering messages
    private JTextArea displayArea; // for displaying messages
    private DatagramSocket socket; // socket to connect to server

    // set up GUI and DatagramSocket
    public Client() {
        super( "Client" );
    }
```

```java
enterField = new JTextField( "Type message here" );
enterField.addActionListener(
    new ActionListener()
    {
        public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
        {
            try // create and send packet
            {
                // get message from textfield
                String message = event.getActionCommand();
                displayArea.append( "\nSending packet containing: " +
                    message + "\n" );

                byte data[] = message.getBytes(); // convert to bytes

                // create sendPacket
                DatagramPacket sendPacket = new DatagramPacket( data,
                    data.length, InetAddress.getLocalHost(), 5000 );

                socket.send( sendPacket ); // send packet
                displayArea.append( "Packet sent\n" );
                displayArea.setCaretPosition(
                    displayArea.getText().length() );
            } // end try
            catch ( IOException ioException )
            {
                displayMessage( ioException.toString() + "\n" );
                ioException.printStackTrace();
            } // end catch
        } // end actionPerformed
    } // end inner class
); // end call to addActionListener

add( enterField, BorderLayout.NORTH );

displayArea = new JTextArea();
add( new JScrollPane( displayArea ), BorderLayout.CENTER );

setSize( 400, 300 ); // set window size
setVisible( true ); // show window

try // create DatagramSocket for sending and receiving packets
{
    socket = new DatagramSocket();
} // end try
catch ( SocketException socketException )
{
    socketException.printStackTrace();
    System.exit( 1 );
} // end catch
} // end Client constructor

// wait for packets to arrive from Server, display packet contents
public void waitForPackets()
{
    while ( true )
    {
        try // receive packet and display contents
        {
            byte data[] = new byte[ 100 ]; // set up packet
            DatagramPacket receivePacket = new DatagramPacket(
```
data, data.length );

socket.receive( receivePacket ); // wait for packet

// display packet contents
displayMessage( "\nPacket received:"

"\nFrom host: " + receivePacket.getAddress() +
"\nHost port: " + receivePacket.getPort() +
"\nLength: " + receivePacket.getLength() +
"\nContaining:\n" + new String( receivePacket.getData(),

0, receivePacket.getLength() ) );

} // end try

catch ( IOException exception )
{
    displayMessage( exception.toString() + "\n" );
    exception.printStackTrace();
}

} // end while

// manipulates displayArea in the event-dispatch thread
private void displayMessage( final String messageToDisplay )
{
    SwingUtilities.invokeLater( new Runnable()
    {
        public void run() // updates displayArea
        {
            displayArea.append( messageToDisplay );
        }
    } // end inner class
    ); // end call to SwingUtilities.invokeLater
}

} // end class Client


Figure 24.12. Class that tests the Client.
(This item is displayed on pages 1137 - 1138 in the print version)
Server Class

Class Server (Fig. 24.9) declares two DatagramPackets that the server uses to send and receive information and one DatagramSocket that sends and receives the packets. The Server constructor (lines 1937) creates the graphical user interface in which the packets of information will be displayed. Line 30 creates the DatagramSocket in a Try block. Line 30 uses the DatagramSocket constructor that takes an integer port number argument (5000 in this example) to bind the server to a port where it can receive packets from clients. Clients sending packets to this Server specify the same port number in the packets they send. A SocketException is thrown if the DatagramSocket constructor fails to bind the DatagramSocket to the specified port.

Common Programming Error 24.2

Specifying a port that is already in use or specifying an invalid port number when creating a DatagramSocket results in a SocketException.
Server method `waitForPackets` (lines 4068) uses an infinite loop to wait for packets to arrive at the Server. Lines 4748 create a `DatagramPacket` in which a received packet of information can be stored. The `DatagramPacket` constructor for this purpose receives two arguments: a `byte` array in which the data will be stored and the length of the array. Line 50 uses `DatagramSocket` method `receive` to wait for a packet to arrive at the Server. Method `receive` blocks until a packet arrives, then stores the packet in its `DatagramPacket` argument. The method throws an `IOException` if an error occurs while receiving a packet.

When a packet arrives, lines 5358 call method `displayMessage` (declared at lines 8697) to append the packet's contents to the textarea. `DatagramPacket` method `getAddress` (line 54) returns an `InetAddress` object containing the host name of the computer from which the packet was sent. Method `getPort` (line 55) returns an integer specifying the port number through which the host computer sent the packet. Method `getLength` (line 56) returns an integer representing the number of bytes of data sent. Method `getData` (line 57) returns a `byte` array containing the data. Lines 5758 initialize a `String` object using a three-argument constructor that takes a `byte` array, the offset and the length. This `String` is then appended to the text to display.

After displaying a packet, line 60 calls method `sendPacketToClient` (declared at lines 7183) to create a new packet and send it to the client. Lines 7779 create a `DatagramPacket` and pass four arguments to its constructor. The first argument specifies the `byte` array to send. The second argument specifies the number of bytes to send. The third argument specifies the client computer's Internet address, to which the packet will be sent. The fourth argument specifies the port where the client is waiting to receive packets. Line 81 sends the packet over the network. Method `send` of `DatagramSocket` throws an `IOException` if an error occurs while sending a packet.

---

**Client Class**

Class `Client` ([Fig. 24.11](#)) works similarly to class `Server`, except that the `Client` sends packets only when the user types a message in a textfield and presses the `Enter` key. When this occurs, the program calls method `actionPerformed` (lines 3257), which converts the string the user entered into a `byte` array (line 41). Lines 4445 create a `DatagramPacket` and initialize it with the `byte` array, the length of the string that was entered by the user, the IP address to which the packet...
is to be sent (InetAddress.getLocalHost() in this example) and the port number at which the Server is waiting for packets (5000 in this example). Line 47 sends the packet. Note that the client in this example must know that the server is receiving packets at port 5000 otherwise, the server will not receive the packets.

Note that the DatagramSocket constructor call (line 71) in this application does not specify any arguments. This no-argument constructor allows the computer to select the next available port number for the DatagramSocket. The client does not need a specific port number, because the server receives the client's port number as part of each DatagramPacket sent by the client. Thus, the server can send packets back to the same computer and port number from which it receives a packet of information.

Client method waitForPackets (lines 81107) uses an infinite loop to wait for packets from the server. Line 91 blocks until a packet arrives. This does not prevent the user from sending a packet, because the GUI events are handled in the event-dispatch thread. It only prevents the while loop from continuing until a packet arrives at the Client. When a packet arrives, line 91 stores it in receivePacket, and lines 9499 call method displayMessage (declared at lines 110121) to display the packet's contents in the textarea.
24.8. Client/Server Tic-Tac-Toe Using a Multithreaded Server

In this section, we present the popular game Tic-Tac-Toe implemented by using client/server techniques with stream sockets. The program consists of a TicTacToeServer application (Fig. 24.13) that allows two TicTacToeClient applications (Fig. 24.15) to connect to the server and play Tic-Tac-Toe. Sample outputs are shown in Fig. 24.17.

Figure 24.13. Server side of client/server Tic-Tac-Toe program.
(This item is displayed on pages 1140 - 1145 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 24.13: TicTacToeServer.java
// This class maintains a game of Tic-Tac-Toe for two clients.
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.net.ServerSocket;
import java.net.Socket;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.Formatter;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;
import java.util.concurrent.locks.Lock;
import java.util.concurrent.locks.ReentrantLock;
import java.util.concurrent.locks.Condition;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JTextArea;
import javax.swing.SwingUtilities;

public class TicTacToeServer extends JFrame {
    public TicTacToeServer() {

        private String[] board = new String[9]; // tic-tac-toe board
        private JTextArea outputArea; // for outputting moves
        private Player[] players; // array of Players
        private ServerSocket server; // server socket to connect with clients
        private int currentPlayer; // keeps track of player with current move
        private final static int PLAYER_X = 0; // constant for first player
        private final static int PLAYER_O = 1; // constant for second player
        private final static String[] MARKS = {"X", "O"}; // array of marks
        private ExecutorService runGame; // will run players
        private Lock gameLock; // to lock game for synchronization
        private Condition otherPlayerConnected; // to wait for other player
        private Condition otherPlayerTurn; // to wait for other player's turn

        // set up tic-tac-toe server and GUI that displays messages
        public TicTacToeServer()
```

```java
```
super ("Tic-Tac-Toe Server"); // set title of window

// create ExecutorService with a thread for each player
runGame = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(2);
gameLock = new ReentrantLock(); // create lock for game

// condition variable for both players being connected
otherPlayerConnected = gameLock.newCondition();

// condition variable for the other player's turn
otherPlayerTurn = gameLock.newCondition();

for (int i = 0; i < 9; i++)
    board[i] = new String(" "); // create tic-tac-toe board

try
{
    server = new ServerSocket(12345, 2); // set up ServerSocket
}
// end try
catch (IOException ioException)
{

    ioException.printStackTrace();
    System.exit(1);
}
// end catch

outputArea = new JTextArea(); // create JTextArea for output
add(outputArea, BorderLayout.CENTER);

outputArea.setText("Server awaiting connections\n");

setSize(300, 300); // set size of window
setVisible(true); // show window

} // end TicTacToeServer constructor

// wait for two connections so game can be played
public void execute()
{
    // wait for each client to connect
    for (int i = 0; i < players.length; i++)
    {
        try // wait for connection, create Player, start runnable
        {
            players[i] = new Player(server.accept(), i);
            runGame.execute(players[i]); // execute player runnable
        }
        // end try
        catch (IOException ioException)
        {
            ioException.printStackTrace();
            System.exit(1);
        }
        // end catch
    }
    // end for

    gameLock.lock(); // lock game to signal player X's thread

    try
    {
        players[PLAYER_X].setSuspended(false); // resume player X
        otherPlayerConnected.signal(); // wake up player X's thread
    }
    // end try

    finally
gameLock.unlock(); // unlock game after signalling player X
} // end finally

// display message in outputArea
private void displayMessage( final String messageToDisplay )
{
    // display message from event-dispatch thread of execution
    SwingUtilities.invokeLater(
        new Runnable()
        {
            public void run() // updates outputArea
            {
                outputArea.append( messageToDisplay ); // add message
            } // end method run
        } // end inner class
    ); // end call to SwingUtilities.invokeLater
} // end method displayMessage

// determine if move is valid
public boolean validateAndMove( int location, int player )
{
    // while not current player, must wait for turn
    while ( player != currentPlayer )
    {
        try
        {
            otherPlayerTurn.await(); // wait for player's turn
        } // end try
        catch ( InterruptedException exception )
        {
            exception.printStackTrace();
        } // end catch
        finally
        {
            gameLock.unlock(); // unlock game after waiting
        } // end finally
    } // end while

    // if location not occupied, make move
    if ( !isOccupied( location ) )
    {
        board[ location ] = MARKS[ currentPlayer ]; // set move on board
        currentPlayer = ( currentPlayer + 1 ) % 2; // change player

        // let new current player know that move occurred
        players[ currentPlayer ].otherPlayerMoved( location );

        gameLock.lock(); // lock game to signal other player to go
        try
        {
            otherPlayerTurn.signal(); // signal other player to continue
        } // end try
        finally
        {
            gameLock.unlock(); // unlock game after signaling
        } // end finally
    return true; // notify player that move was valid
} // end if
else // move was not valid
    return false; // notify player that move was invalid
} // end method validateAndMove

// determine whether location is occupied
public boolean isOccupied( int location )
{
    if ( board[ location ].equals( MARKS[ PLAYER_X ] ) ||
        board [ location ].equals( MARKS[ PLAYER_O ] ) )
        return true; // location is occupied
    else
        return false; // location is not occupied
} // end method isOccupied

// place code in this method to determine whether game over
public boolean isGameOver()
{
    return false; // this is left as an exercise
} // end method isGameOver

// private inner class Player manages each Player as a runnable
private class Player implements Runnable
{
    private Socket connection; // connection to client
    private Scanner input; // input from client
    private Formatter output; // output to client
    private int playerNumber; // tracks which player this is
    private String mark; // mark for this player
    private boolean suspended = true; // whether thread is suspended

    // set up Player thread
    public Player( Socket socket, int number )
    {
        playerNumber = number; // store this player's number
        mark = MARKS[ playerNumber ]; // specify player's mark
        connection = socket; // store socket for client

        try // obtain streams from Socket
        {
            input = new Scanner( connection.getInputStream() );
            output = new Formatter( connection.getOutputStream() );
        } // end try
        catch ( IOException ioException )
        {
            ioException.printStackTrace();
            System.exit( 1 );
        } // end catch
    } // end Player constructor

    // send message that other player moved
    public void otherPlayerMoved( int location )
    {
        output.format( "Opponent moved\n" );
        output.format( "%d\n", location ); // send location of move
        output.flush(); // flush output
    } // end method otherPlayerMoved

    // control thread's execution
public void run()
{
    // send client its mark (X or O), process messages from client
    try
    {
        displayMessage( "Player " + mark + " connected\n" );
        output.format("%s
", mark ); // send player's mark
        output.flush(); // flush output

        // if player X, wait for another player to arrive
        if ( playerNumber == PLAYER_X )
        {
            output.format("%s
%s
", "Player X connected", "Waiting for another player\n");
            output.flush(); // flush output

            gameLock.lock(); // lock game to wait for second player

            try
            {
                while( suspended )
                {
                    otherPlayerConnected.await(); // wait for player O
                } // end while
            } // end try
            catch ( InterruptedException exception )
            {
                exception.printStackTrace();
            } // end catch
            finally
            {
                gameLock.unlock(); // unlock game after second player
            } // end finally
        } // end if
        else // move was invalid
        {
            output.format( "Player O connected, please wait\n" );
            output.flush(); // flush output
        } // end else

        // while game not over
        while ( !isGameOver() )
        {
            int location = 0; // initialize move location

            if ( input.hasNext() )
                location = input.nextInt(); // get move location

            // check for valid move
            if ( validateAndMove( location, playerNumber ) )
            {
                displayMessage( "\nlocation: " + location );
                output.format("Valid move.\n" ); // notify client
                output.flush(); // flush output
            } // end if
            else // move was invalid
            {

        } // end while ( !isGameOver() )
    } // end try
} // end run()
output.format("Invalid move, try again\n");
output.flush(); // flush output
}

try {
    connection.close(); // close connection to client
} catch (IOException ioException) {
    ioException.printStackTrace();
    System.exit(1);
}

} // end finally

} // end method run

// set whether or not thread is suspended
public void setSuspended(boolean status) {
    suspended = status; // set value of suspended
} // end method setSuspended

} // end class Player

} // end class TicTacToeServer

Figure 24.14. Class that tests Tic-Tac-Toe server.
(This item is displayed on page 1146 in the print version)

public class TicTacToeServerTest {
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        TicTacToeServer application = new TicTacToeServer();
        application.setDefaultCloseOperation(JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE);
        application.execute();
    } // end main
} // end class TicTacToeServerTest
Figure 24.15. Client side of client/server Tic-Tac-Toe program.

(This item is displayed on pages 1147 - 1152 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 24.15: TicTacToeClient.java
// Client that let a user play Tic-Tac-Toe with another across a network.
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.Dimension;
import java.awt.Graphics;
import java.awt.GridLayout;
import java.awt.event.MouseAdapter;
import java.awt.event.MouseEvent;
import java.net.Socket;
import java.net.InetAddress;
import java.io.IOException;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JPanel;
import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
import javax.swing JTextArea;
import javax.swing.JTextField;
import javax.swing.SwingUtilities;
import java.util.Formatter;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;

public class TicTacToeClient extends JFrame implements Runnable {
    private JTextField idField; // textfield to display player's mark
    private JTextArea displayArea; // JTextArea to display output
    private JPanel boardPanel; // panel for tic-tac-toe board
    
    public TicTacToeClient() {
        // constructor code
    }

    public void run() {
        // run method code
    }
}
```
private JPanel panel2; // panel to hold board
private Square board[][]; // tic-tac-toe board
private Square currentSquare; // current square
private Socket connection; // connection to server
private Scanner input; // input from server
private Formatter output; // output to server
private String ticTacToeHost; // host name for server
private String myMark; // this client's mark
private boolean myTurn; // determines which client's turn it is
private final String X_MARK = "X"; // mark for first client
private final String O_MARK = "O"; // mark for second client

// set up user-interface and board
public TicTacToeClient( String host )
{
    ticTacToeHost = host; // set name of server
displayArea = new JTextArea( 4, 30 ); // set up JTextArea
displayArea.setEditable( false );
add( new JScrollPane( displayArea ), BorderLayout.SOUTH );

boardPanel = new JPanel(); // set up panel for squares in board
boardPanel.setLayout( new GridLayout( 3, 3, 0, 0 ) );

board = new Square[ 3 ][ 3 ]; // create board

// loop over the rows in the board
for ( int row = 0; row < board.length; row++ )
{
    // loop over the columns in the board
    for ( int column = 0; column < board[ row ].length; column++ )
    {
        // create square
        board[ row ][ column ] = new Square( ' ', row * 3 + column );
        boardPanel.add( board[ row ][ column ] ); // add square
    }
}

idField = new JTextField(); // set up textfield
idField.setEditable( false );
add( idField, BorderLayout.NORTH );

panel2 = new JPanel(); // set up panel to contain boardPanel
panel2.add( boardPanel, BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add board panel
add( panel2, BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add container panel

setSize( 300, 225 ); // set size of window
setVisible( true ); // show window

startClient();
} // end TicTacToeClient constructor

// start the client thread
public void startClient()
{
    try // connect to server, get streams and start outputThread
    {
        // make connection to server
        connection = new Socket( InetAddress.getByName( ticTacToeHost ), 12345 );

        // get streams for input and output
```java
input = new Scanner( connection.getInputStream() );
output = new Formatter( connection.getOutputStream() );
}
// end try

try
{
  ioException.printStackTrace();
}
// end catch

// create and start worker thread for this client
ExecutorService worker = Executors.newFixedThreadPool( 1 );
worker.execute( this ); // execute client
// end method startClient

// control thread that allows continuous update of displayArea
public void run()
{
  myMark = input.nextLine(); // get player's mark (X or O)

  SwingUtilities.invokeLater( new Runnable()
  {
    public void run()
    {
      // display player's mark
      idField.setText( "You are player \"" + myMark + \""");
    } // end method run
  } // end anonymous inner class
  ); // end call to SwingUtilities.invokeLater

  myTurn = ( myMark.equals( X_MARK ) ); // determine if client's turn

  // receive messages sent to client and output them
  while ( true )
  {
    if ( input.hasNextLine() )
      processMessage( input.nextLine() );
  } // end while

  // process messages received by client
  private void processMessage( String message )
  {
    // valid move occurred
    if ( message.equals( "Valid move." ) )
    {
      displayMessage( "Valid move, please wait.\n" );
      setMark( currentSquare, myMark ); // set mark in square
    } // end if

    else if ( message.equals( "Invalid move, try again" ) )
    {
      displayMessage( message + "\n" ); // display invalid move
      myTurn = true; // still this client's turn
    } // end else if

    else if ( message.equals( "Opponent moved" ) )
    {
      int location = input.nextInt(); // get move location
      input.nextLine(); // skip newline after int location
      int row = location / 3; // calculate row
      int column = location % 3; // calculate column

      setMark( board[ row ][ column ],
```
( myMark.equals( X_MARK ) ? O_MARK : X_MARK ) ); // mark move
displayMessage( "Opponent moved. Your turn.\n" );
myTurn = true; // now this client's turn
} // end else if
else
displayMessage( message + "\n" ); // display the message
} // end method processMessage

// manipulate outputArea in event-dispatch thread
private void displayMessage( final String messageToDisplay )
{
    SwingUtilities.invokeLater( new Runnable()
    {
        public void run()
        {
            displayArea.append( messageToDisplay ); // updates output
        } // end method run
    } // end inner class
}; // end call to SwingUtilities.invokeLater
} // end method displayMessage

// utility method to set mark on board in event-dispatch thread
private void setMark( final Square squareToMark, final String mark )
{
    SwingUtilities.invokeLater( new Runnable()
    {
        public void run()
        {
            squareToMark.setMark( mark ); // set mark in square
        } // end method run
    } // end anonymous inner class
}; // end call to SwingUtilities.invokeLater
} // end method setMark

// send message to server indicating clicked square
public void sendClickedSquare( int location )
{
    // if it is my turn
    if ( myTurn )
    {
        output.format( "%d\n", location ); // send location to server
        output.flush();
        myTurn = false; // not my turn anymore
    } // end if
} // end method sendClickedSquare

// set current Square
public void setCurrentSquare( Square square )
{
    currentSquare = square; // set current square to argument
} // end method setCurrentSquare

// private inner class for the squares on the board
private class Square extends JPanel
{
    private String mark; // mark to be drawn in this square
    private int location; // location of square

    public Square( String squareMark, int squareLocation )
Figure 24.16. Test class for Tic-Tac-Toe client.
(This item is displayed on page 1153 in the print version)
```java
// Fig. 24.16: TicTacToeClientTest.java
// Tests the TicTacToeClient class.
import javax.swing.JFrame;

public class TicTacToeClientTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        TicTacToeClient application; // declare client application
        // if no command line args
        if ( args.length == 0 )
            application = new TicTacToeClient( "127.0.0.1" ); // localhost
        else
            application = new TicTacToeClient( args[ 0 ] ); // use args
        application.setDefaultCloseOperation( JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE );
    } // end main
} // end class TicTacToeClientTest
```

Figure 24.17. Sample outputs from the client/server Tic-Tac-Toe program.
(This item is displayed on pages 1153 - 1154 in the print version)
TicTacToeServer Class

As the TicTacToeServer receives each client connection, it creates an instance of inner-class Player (lines 182301 of Fig. 24.13) to process the client in a
separate thread. These threads enable the clients to play the game independently. The first client to connect to the server is player X and the second is player O. Player X makes the first move. The server maintains the information about the board so it can determine whether a player's move is valid or invalid.

We begin with a discussion of the server side of the Tic-Tac-Toe game. When the TicTacToeServer application executes, the main method (lines 712 of Fig. 24.14) creates a TicTacToeServer object called application. The constructor (lines 3469 of Fig. 24.13) attempts to set up a ServerSocket. If successful, the program displays the server window, then main invokes the TicTacToeServer method execute (lines 72100). Method execute loops twice, blocking at line 79 each time while waiting for a client connection. When a client connects, line 79 creates a new Player object to manage the connection as a separate thread, and line 80 executes the Player in the runGame thread pool.

When the TicTacToeServer creates a Player, the Player constructor (lines 192208) receives the Socket object representing the connection to the client and gets the associated input and output streams. Line 201 creates a Formatter (see Chapter 28) by wrapping it around the output stream of the socket. The Player's run method (lines 219297) controls the information that is sent to and received from the client. First, it passes to the client the character that the client will place on the board when a move is made (line 225). Line 226 calls Formatter method flush to force this output to the client. Line 241 suspends player X's thread as it starts executing, because player X can move only after player O connects.

After player O connects, the game can be played, and the run method begins executing its while statement (lines 264283). Each iteration of this loop reads an integer (line 269) representing the location where the client wants to place a mark, and line 272 invokes the TicTacToeServer method validateAndMove (declared at lines 118163) to check the move. If the move is valid, line 275 sends a message to the client to this effect. If not, line 280 sends a message indicating that the move was invalid. The program maintains board locations as numbers from 0 to 8 (0 through 2 for the first row, 3 through 5 for the second row and 6 through 8 for the third row).
Method `validateAndMove` (lines 118163 in class `TicTacToeServer`) allows only one player at a time to move, thereby preventing them from modifying the state information of the game simultaneously. If the `Player` attempting to validate a move is not the current player (i.e., the one allowed to make a move), it is placed in a `wait` state until its turn to move. If the position for the move being validated is already occupied on the board, `validMove` returns `false`. Otherwise, the server places a mark for the player in its local representation of the board (line 142), notifies the other `Player` object (line 146) that a move has been made (so that the client can be sent a message), invokes method `signal` (line 152) so that the waiting `Player` (if there is one) can validate a move and returns `true` (line 159) to indicate that the move is valid.

**TicTacToeClient Class**

Each `TicTacToeClient` application (Fig. 24.15) maintains its own GUI version of the Tic-Tac-Toe board on which it displays the state of the game. The clients can place a mark only in an empty square on the board. Inner class `Square` (lines 205262 of Fig. 24.15) implements each of the nine squares on the board. When a `TicTacToeClient` begins execution, it creates a `JTextArea` in which messages from the server and a representation of the board using nine `Square` objects are displayed. The `startClient` method (lines 80100) opens a connection to the server and gets the associated input and output streams from the `Socket` object. Lines 8586 make a connection to the server. Class `TicTacToeClient` implements interface `Runnable` so that a separate thread can read messages from the server. This approach enables the user to interact with the board (in the event-dispatch thread) while waiting for messages from the server. After establishing the connection to the server, line 99 executes the client with the `worker ExecutorService`. The `run` method (lines 103124) controls the separate thread of execution. The method first reads the mark character (X or O) from the server (line 105), then loops continuously (lines 121125) and reads messages from the server (line 124). Each message is passed to the `processMessage` method (lines 129156) for processing.

If the message received is "Valid move.", lines 134135 display the message "Valid move, please wait." and call method `setMark` (lines 173184) to set the client's mark in the current square (the one in which the user clicked) using
SwingUtilities method invokeLater to ensure that the GUI updates occur in the event-dispatch thread. If the message received is "Invalid move, try again.", line 139 displays the message so that the user can click a different square. If the message received is "Opponent moved.", line 145 reads an integer from the server indicating where the opponent moved, and lines 149-150 place a mark in that square of the board (again using SwingUtilities method invokeLater to ensure that the GUI updates occur in the event-dispatch thread). If any other message is received, line 155 simply displays the message. Figure 24.17 shows sample screen captures of two applications interacting via the TicTacToeServer.
24.9. Security and the Network

As much as we look forward to writing a great variety of powerful network-based applications, our efforts may be limited because of security concerns. Many Web browsers, such as Mozilla and Microsoft Internet Explorer, by default prohibit Java applets from doing file processing on the machines on which they execute. Think about it. A Java applet is designed to be sent to your browser via an HTML document that could be downloaded from any Web server in the world. Often you will know very little about the sources of Java applets that will execute on your system. To allow these applets free rein with your files could be disastrous.

A more subtle situation occurs with limiting the machines to which executing applets can make network connections. To build truly collaborative applications, we would ideally like to have our applets communicate with machines almost anywhere. The Java security manager in a Web browser often restricts an applet so that it can communicate only with the machine from which it was originally downloaded.

These restrictions may seem too strict. However, the Java Security API now provides capabilities for digitally signed applets that will enable browsers to determine whether an applet is downloaded from a trusted source. A trusted applet can be given additional access to the computer on which it is executing. The features of the Java Security API and additional networking capabilities are discussed in our text Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program.
24.10. Case Study: DeitelMessenger Server and Client

Chat rooms have become common on the Internet. They provide a central location where users can chat with each other via short text messages. Each participant can see all messages that the other users post, and each user can post messages. This section presents our capstone networking case study, which integrates many of the Java networking, multithreading and Swing GUI features we have learned thus far to build an online chat system. We also introduce multicasting, which enables an application to send DatagramPackets to groups of clients. After reading this section, you will be able to build more significant networking applications.

24.10.1. DeitelMessengerServer and Supporting Classes

DeitelMessengerServer (Fig. 24.18) is the heart of the online chat system. This class appears in package com.deitel.messengersockets.server. Chat clients can participate in a chat by connecting to the DeitelMessengerServer. Method startServer (lines 2053) launches DeitelMessengerServer. Lines 2829 create a ServerSocket to accept incoming network connections. Recall that the ServerSocket constructor takes as its first argument the port on which the server should listen for incoming connections. Recall that the ServerSocket constructor takes as its first argument the port on which the server should listen for incoming connections. Interface SocketMessengerConstants (Fig. 24.20) declares the port number as the constant SERVER_PORT to ensure that the server and the clients use the correct port number.

Figure 24.18. DeitelMessengerServer for managing a chat room.

(This item is displayed on pages 1155 - 1156 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 24.18: DeitelMessengerServer.java
// DeitelMessengerServer is a multi-threaded, socket- and
// packet-based chat server.
package com.deitel.messengersockets.server;

import java.net.ServerSocket;
import java.net.Socket;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;

// Fig. 24.18: DeitelMessengerServer.java
// DeitelMessengerServer is a multi-threaded, socket- and
// packet-based chat server.
package com.deitel.messengersockets.server;

import java.net.ServerSocket;
import java.net.Socket;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;
```
import com.deitel.messenger.MessageListener;
import static com.deitel.messengersockets.SocketMessengerConstants.*;

public class DeitelMessengerServer implements MessageListener {
  private ExecutorService serverExecutor; // executor for server

  // start chat server
  public void startServer() {
    // create executor for server runnables
    serverExecutor = Executors.newCachedThreadPool();

    try // create server and manage new clients
    {
      // create ServerSocket for incoming connections
      ServerSocket serverSocket = new ServerSocket( SERVER_PORT, 100 );

      System.out.printf("%s%d%s", "Server listening on port ",
                         SERVER_PORT, " ... ");

      // listen for clients constantly
      while ( true )
      {
        // accept new client connection
        Socket clientSocket = serverSocket.accept();

        // create MessageReceiver for receiving messages from client
        serverExecutor.execute( new MessageReceiver( this, clientSocket ) );

        // print connection information
        System.out.println( "Connection received from: " +
                            clientSocket.getInetAddress() );
      } // end while
    } // end try
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
      ioException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
  } // end method startServer

  // when new message is received, broadcast message to clients
  public void messageReceived( String from, String message )
  {
    // create String containing entire message
    String completeMessage = from + MESSAGE_SEPARATOR + message;

    // create and start MulticastSender to broadcast messages
    serverExecutor.execute( new MulticastSender( completeMessage.getBytes() ) );
  } // end method messageReceived

  // end class DeitelMessengerServer

Lines 35-47 listen continuously for new client connections. Line 38 invokes ServerSocket method accept to wait for and accept a new client connection. Lines
create and start a new `MessageReceiver` for the client. Class `MessageReceiver` (Fig. 24.22) of package `com.deitel.messenger.sockets.server` implements `Runnable` and listens for incoming messages from a client. The first argument to the `MessageReceiver` constructor is a `MessageListener` (Fig. 24.21), to which messages from the client should be delivered. Class `DeitelMessengerServer` implements interface `MessageListener` (line 15) of package `com.deitel.messenger` and therefore can pass the `this` reference to the `MessageReceiver` constructor.

When each `MessageReceiver` receives a new message from a client, the `MessageReceiver` passes the message to a `MessageListener` through method `messageReceived` (lines 5664). Line 59 concatenates the `from` string with the separator `>>>` and the message body. Lines 6263 create and start a new `MulticastSender` to deliver `completeMessage` to all clients. Class `MulticastSender` (Fig. 24.23) of package `com.deitel.messenger.sockets.server` uses multicasting as an efficient mechanism for sending one message to multiple clients. We discuss the details of multicasting shortly. Method `main` (lines 711 of Fig. 24.19) creates a new `DeitelMessengerServer` instance and starts the server.

---

**Figure 24.19. Test class for DeitelMessengerServer.**

```java
// Fig. 24.19: DeitelMessengerServerTest.java
// Test the DeitelMessengerServer class.
package com.deitel.messenger.sockets.server;

public class DeitelMessengerServerTest {
    public static void main ( String args[] ) {
        DeitelMessengerServer application = new DeitelMessengerServer();
        application.startServer(); // start server
    } // end main
} // end class DeitelMessengerServerTest
```

Server listening on port 12345 ...
Connection received from: /127.0.0.1
Connection received from: /127.0.0.1
Connection received from: /127.0.0.1
Interface `SocketMessengerConstants` (Fig. 24.20) declares constants for use in the various classes that make up the Deitel messenger system. Classes can access these static constants by using a static import as shown in Fig. 24.22.

**Figure 24.20.** `SocketMessengerConstants` declares constants for use in the `DeitelMessengerServer` and `DeitelMessenger`.

```java
// Fig. 24.20: SocketMessengerConstants.java
// SocketMessengerConstants defines constants for the port numbers
// and multicast address in DeitelMessenger
package com.deitel.messenger.sockets;

public interface SocketMessengerConstants {
  // address for multicast datagrams
  public static final String MULTICAST_ADDRESS = "239.0.0.1";

  // port for listening for multicast datagrams
  public static final int MULTICAST_LISTENING_PORT = 5555;

  // port for sending multicast datagrams
  public static final int MULTICAST_SENDING_PORT = 5554;

  // port for Socket connections to DeitelMessengerServer
  public static final int SERVER_PORT = 12345;

  // String that indicates disconnect
  public static final String DISCONNECT_STRING = "DISCONNECT";

  // String that separates the user name from the message body
  public static final String MESSAGE_SEPARATOR = ">>>";

  // message size (in bytes)
  public static final int MESSAGE_SIZE = 512;
}
```

Line 9 declares the `String` constant `MULTICAST_ADDRESS`, which contains the address to which a `MulticastSender` (Fig. 24.23) should send messages. This address is one of the addresses reserved for multicast, which we describe in the discussion of Fig. 24.23. Line 12 declares the integer constant `MULTICAST_LISTENING_PORT` the port on which clients should listen for new messages. Line 15 declares the integer constant `MULTICAST_SENDING_PORT` the port to which a
MulticastSender should post new messages at the MULTICAST_ADDRESS. Line 18 declares the integer constant SERVER_PORT the port on which DeitelMessengerServer listens for incoming client connections. Line 21 declares String constant DISCONNECT_STRING, which is the String that a client sends to DeitelMessengerServer when the user wishes to leave the chat room. Line 24 declares String constant MESSAGE_SEPARATOR, which separates the user name from the message body. Line 27 specifies the maximum message size in bytes.

Many different classes in the Deitel messenger system receive messages. For example, DeitelMessengerServer receives messages from clients and delivers them to all chat room participants. As we will see, the user interface for each client also receives messages and displays them to the users. Each class that receives messages implements interface MessageListener (Fig. 24.21). The interface (from package com.deitel.messenger) declares method messageReceived, which allows an implementing class to receive chat messages. Method messageReceived takes two string arguments representing the name of the sender and the message body, respectively.

**Figure 24.21. MessageListener interface that declares method messageReceived for receiving new chat messages.**

```
1 // Fig. 24.21: MessageListener.java
2 // MessageListener is an interface for classes that wish to
3 // receive new chat messages.
4 package com.deitel.messenger;
5
6 public interface MessageListener
7 {
8     // receive new chat message
9     public void messageReceived( String from, String message );
10 } // end interface MessageListener
```

DeitelMessengerServer uses instances of class MessageReceiver (Fig. 24.22) from package com.deitel.messengersockets.server to listen for new messages from each client. Class MessageReceiver implements interface Runnable. This enables DeitelMessengerServer to create an object of class MessageReceiver to run in a separate thread for each client, so that messages from multiple clients can be handled concurrently. When DeitelMessengerServer receives a new client connection, DeitelMessengerServer creates a new MessageReceiver for the client, then continues listening for new client connections. The MessageReceiver listens for messages from a single client and passes them back to the DeitelMessengerServer...
Figure 24.22. **MessageReceiver** for listening for new messages from **DeitelMessengerServer** clients in separate threads.

(This item is displayed on pages 1159 - 1161 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 24.22: MessageReceiver.java
// MessageReceiver is a Runnable that listens for messages from a
// particular client and delivers messages to a MessageListener.
public class MessageReceiver implements Runnable {

    private BufferedReader input; // input stream
    private MessageListener messageListener; // message listener
    private boolean keepListening = true; // when false, ends runnable

    // MessageReceiver constructor
    public MessageReceiver( MessageListener listener, Socket clientSocket ) {
        // set listener to which new messages should be sent
        messageListener = listener;

        try {
            // set timeout for reading from client
            clientSocket.setSoTimeout( 5000 ); // five seconds

            // create BufferedReader for reading incoming messages
            input = new BufferedReader( new InputStreamReader( clientSocket.getInputStream() ) );
        }
        catch ( IOException ioException ) {
            ioException.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    // listen for new messages and deliver them to MessageListener
    public void run() {
    }
```
String message; // String for incoming messages

// listen for messages until stopped
while ( keepListening )
{
    try
    {
        message = input.readLine(); // read message from client
    } // end try
    catch ( SocketTimeoutException socketTimeoutException )
    {
        continue; // continue to next iteration to keep listening
    } // end catch
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
        ioException.printStackTrace();
        break;
    } // end catch

    // ensure non-null message
    if ( message != null )
    {
        // tokenize message to retrieve user name and message body
        StringTokenizer tokenizer = new StringTokenizer(
            message, MESSAGE_SEPARATOR);

        // ignore messages that do not contain a user
        // name and message body
        if ( tokenizer.countTokens() == 2 )
        {
            // send message to MessageListener
            messageListener.messageReceived(
                tokenizer.nextToken(), // user name
                tokenizer.nextToken()); // message body
        } else
        {
            // if disconnect message received, stop listening
            if ( message.equalsIgnoreCase(
                    MESSAGE_SEPARATOR + DISCONNECT_STRING) )
                stopListening();
        } // end else
    } // end if
    try
    {
        input.close(); // close BufferedReader (also closes Socket)
    } // end try
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
        ioException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
    } // end method run

    // stop listening for incoming messages
    public void stopListening()
    {
        keepListening = false;
    } // end method stopListening
} // end class MessageReceiver
The `MessageReceiver` constructor (lines 2341) takes a `MessageListener` as its first argument. The `MessageReceiver` will deliver new messages to this listener by invoking its `messageReceived` method. The `MessageReceiver` constructor's `Socket` argument is the connection to a particular client. Line 26 sets the `MessageListener` to which the `MessageReceiver` should deliver new messages. Line 31 invokes `Socket` method `setSoTimeout` with an integer argument of 5000 milliseconds. Reading data from a `Socket` is a **blocking call** the current thread does not execute until the read operation completes. Method `setSoTimeout` specifies that if no data is received in the given number of milliseconds, the `Socket` should issue a `SocketTimeoutException`, which the current thread can catch, then continue executing. This technique prevents the current thread from dead-locking if no more data is available from the `Socket`. Lines 3435 create a new `BufferedReader` for the `clientSocket`'s `InputStream`. The `MessageReceiver` uses this `BufferedReader` to read new messages from the client.

Method `run` (lines 4499) listens continuously for new messages from the client. Lines 4989 loop as long as the `boolean` variable `keepListening` is `true`. Line 53 invokes `BufferedReader` method `readLine` to read a line of text from the client. If more than 5000 milliseconds pass without any data being read, method `readLine` throws an `InterruptedIOException`, which indicates that the time-out set on line 31 has expired. Line 57 uses a `continue` statement to go to the next iteration of the **while** loop to continue listening for messages. Lines 5963 catch an `IOException`, which indicates a more severe problem from method `readLine`. In this case, line 61 prints a stack trace to aid in debugging the application, and line 62 uses keyword `break` to terminate the loop.

When sending a message to the server, the client separates the user's name from the message body with `MESSAGE_SEPARATOR` declared in interface `SocketMessengerConstants`. If no exceptions are thrown when reading data from the client and the message is not null (line 66), lines 6970 create a new `StringTokenizer` that uses delimiter `MESSAGE_SEPARATOR` to separate each message into two tokens—the sender's user name and the message. Line 74 checks for the proper number of tokens (using `StringTokenizer` method `countTokens`), and lines 7779 invoke method `messageReceived` of interface `MessageListener` to deliver the new message to the registered `MessageListener`. If the `StringTokenizer` does not produce two tokens, lines 8485 check the message to see whether it matches the constant `DISCONNECT_STRING`, which would indicate that the user wishes to leave the chat room. Line 84 uses `String` method `equalsIgnoreCase` to test whether the input `String` equals the disconnect string. This method is
Method `stopListening` (lines 102105) sets boolean variable `keepListening` to `false`. This causes the `while` loop condition that starts at line 49 to fail and causes the `MessageReceiver` to close the client `Socket` (line 93). Then method `run` returns, which terminates the `MessageReceiver`'s execution.

MulticastSender (Fig. 24.23) delivers `DatagramPacket`s containing chat messages to a group of clients. Multicast is an efficient way to send data to many clients without the overhead of broadcasting it to every host on the Internet. To understand multicast, let us look at a real-world analogy: the relationship between a magazine's publisher and its subscribers. The publisher produces a magazine and provides it to a distributor. Customers obtain a subscription and begin receiving the magazine in the mail from the distributor. This communication is quite different from a television broadcast. When a television station produces a television show, the station broadcasts the show throughout a geographical region or perhaps throughout the world by using satellites. Broadcasting a show for 1,000,000 viewers costs no more than broadcasting one for 100 viewers; the signal carrying the broadcast reaches a wide area. However, printing and delivering a magazine to 1,000,000 readers would be much more expensive than for 100 readers. Most publishers could not stay in business if they had to broadcast their magazines to everyone, so they multicast them to a group of subscribers instead.

Figure 24.23. MulticastSender for delivering outgoing messages to a multicast group via `DatagramPackets`.

(This item is displayed on pages 1162 - 1163 in the print version)
public class MulticastSender implements Runnable
{
  private byte[] messageBytes; // message data

  public MulticastSender( byte[] bytes )
  {
    messageBytes = bytes; // create the message
  } // end MulticastSender constructor

  // deliver message to MULTICAST_ADDRESS over DatagramSocket
  public void run()
  {
    try // deliver message
    {
      // create DatagramSocket for sending message
      DatagramSocket socket =
        new DatagramSocket( MULTICAST_SENDING_PORT );

      // use InetAddress reserved for multicast group
      InetAddress group = InetAddress.getByName( MULTICAST_ADDRESS );

      // create DatagramPacket containing message
      DatagramPacket packet = new DatagramPacket( messageBytes,
                                                messageBytes.length, group,
                                                MULTICAST_LISTENING_PORT );

      socket.send( packet ); // send packet to multicast group
      socket.close(); // close socket
    } // end try
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
      ioException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
  } // end method run
} // end class MulticastSender


Using multicast, an application can "publish" DatagramPacket s to "subscriber" applications by sending them to a multicast address, which is an IP address reserved for multicast. Multicast addresses are in the range from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255. Addresses starting with 239 are reserved for intranets, so we use one of these (239.0.0.1) in our case study. Clients that wish to receive these DatagramPacket s can connect to the appropriate multicast address to join the group of subscribersthe multicast group. When an application sends a DatagramPacket to the multicast address, each client in the group receives it. Multicast DatagramPacket s, like unicast DatagramPacket s (Fig. 24.7), are not reliable packets are not guaranteed to reach any destination or arrive in any particular order.
Class `MulticastSender` implements interface `Runnable` to enable `DeitelMessengerServer` to send multicast messages in a separate thread. The `DeitelMessengerServer` creates a `MulticastSender` with the contents of the message and starts the thread. The `MulticastSender` constructor (lines 1619) takes as an argument an array of `bytes` containing the message.

Method `run` (lines 2244) delivers the message to the multicast address. Lines 2728 create a new `DatagramSocket`. Recall from Section 24.7 that we use `DatagramSocket` to send `unicast` `DatagramPacket` packets sent from one host directly to another host. Multicast `DatagramPacket`s are sent the same way, except that the address to which they are sent is a multicast address. Line 31 create an `InetAddress` object for the multicast address, which is declared as a constant in interface `SocketMessengerConstants`. Lines 3435 create the `DatagramPacket` containing the message. The first argument to the `DatagramPacket` constructor is the `byte` array containing the message. The second argument is the length of the `byte` array. The third argument specifies the `InetAddress` to which the packet should be sent, and the last specifies the port number at which the packet should be delivered to the multicast address. Line 37 sends the packet with `DatagramSocket` method `send`. All clients listening to the multicast address on the proper port will receive this `DatagramPacket`. Line 38 closes the `DatagramSocket`, and the run method returns, terminating the `MulticastSender`.

---

**Executing the `DeitelMessengerServerTest`**

To execute the `DeitelMessengerServerTest`, open a Command Prompt window and change directories to the location in which package `com.deitel.messenger.sockets.server` resides (i.e., the directory in which `com` is located). Then type

```java
java com.deitel.messenger.sockets.server.DeitelMessengerServ
```

to execute the server.

**24.10.2. DeitelMessenger Client and Supporting Classes**
The client for the DeitelMessengerServer has several components. A class that implements interface MessageManager (Fig. 24.24) manages communication with the server. A Runnable subclass listens for messages at DeitelMessengerServer's multicast address. Another Runnable subclass sends messages from the client to the server. A JFrame subclass provides the client's GUI.

Figure 24.24. MessageManager interface that declares methods for communicating with a DeitelMessengerServer.

```java
// Fig. 24.24: MessageManager.java
// MessageManager is an interface for objects capable of managing
// communications with a message server.
package com.deitel.messenger;

public interface MessageManager {
  // connect to message server and route incoming messages
  // to given MessageListener
  public void connect( MessageListener listener );

  // disconnect from message server and stop routing
  // incoming messages to given MessageListener
  public void disconnect( MessageListener listener );

  // send message to message server
  public void sendMessage( String from, String message );
}
```

Interface MessageManager (Fig. 24.24) declares methods for managing communication with DeitelMessengerServer. We declare this interface to abstract the base functionality a client needs to interact with a chat server from the underlying communication mechanism. This abstraction enables us to provide MessageManager implementations that use other network protocols to implement the communication details. For example, if we wanted to connect to a different chat server that did not use multicast DatagramPacket s, we could implement the MessageManager interface with the appropriate network protocols for this alternative messaging server. We would not need to modify any other code in the client, because the client's other components refer only to interface MessageManager, not a particular MessageManager implementation. Similarly, MessageManager methods refer to other components of the client only through interface MessageListener, so other client components can change without requiring changes in the MessageManager or its implementations. Method connect (line 10) connects a MessageManager to DeitelMessengerServer and routes incoming
messages to the appropriate MessageListener. Method disconnect (line 14) disconnects a MessageManager from the DeitelMessengerServer and stops delivering messages to the given MessageListener. Method sendMessage (line 17) sends a new message to DeitelMessengerServer.

Class SocketMessageManager (Fig. 24.25) implements MessageManager (line 18), using Sockets and MulticastSockets to communicate with DeitelMessengerServer and receive incoming messages. Line 20 declares the Socket used to connect to and send messages to DeitelMessengerServer. Line 22 declares a PacketReceiver (Fig. 24.27) that listens for new incoming messages. The connected flag (line 23) indicates whether the SocketMessageManager is currently connected to DeitelMessengerServer.

**Figure 24.25.** SocketMessageManager implementation of interface MessageManager for communicating via Sockets and multicast DatagramPackets.

(This item is displayed on pages 1165 - 1167 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 24.25: SocketMessageManager.java
// SocketMessageManager communicates with a DeitelMessengerServer using Sockets and MulticastSockets.
package com.deitel.messenger.sockets.client;

import java.net.InetAddress;
import java.net.Socket;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Future;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicBoolean;
import java.util.concurrent.ThreadPoolExecutor;
import java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit;
import java.util.concurrent.TimeoutException;
import java.io.Serializable;
import java.net.SocketException;
import com.deitel.messenger.MessageListener;
import com.deitel.messenger.MessageManager;
import static com.deitel.messenger.sockets.SocketMessengerConstants.*;

public class SocketMessageManager implements MessageManager {
    private Socket clientSocket; // Socket for outgoing messages
    private String serverAddress; // DeitelMessengerServer address
    private PacketReceiver receiver; // receives multicast messages
    private boolean connected = false; // connection status
    private ExecutorService serverExecutor; // executor for server

    private Future<?> serverFuture;

    // Constructor
    public SocketMessageManager(String serverAddress) {
        this.serverAddress = serverAddress;
    }

    // Connect to server
    public void connect() {
        // Implementation
    }

    // Disconnect from server
    public void disconnect() {
        // Implementation
    }

    // Send a message
    public void sendMessage(String message) {
        // Implementation
    }

    // Listen for incoming messages
    public void listen() {
        // Implementation
    }
}
```
public SocketMessageManager( String address )
{
    serverAddress = address; // store server address
    serverExecutor = Executors.newCachedThreadPool();
} // end SocketMessageManager constructor

// connect to server and send messages to given MessageListener
public void connect( MessageListener listener )
{
    if ( connected )
        return; // if already connected, return immediately

    try // open Socket connection to DeitelMessengerServer
    {
        clientSocket = new Socket(
            InetAddress.getByName( serverAddress ), SERVER_PORT );

        // create runnable for receiving incoming messages
        receiver = new PacketReceiver( listener );
        serverExecutor.execute( receiver ); // execute runnable
        connected = true; // update connected flag
    } // end try
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
        ioException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
} // end method connect

// disconnect from server and unregister given MessageListener
public void disconnect( MessageListener listener )
{
    if ( !connected )
        return; // if not connected, return immediately

    try // stop listener and disconnect from server
    {
        // notify server that client is disconnecting
        Runnable disconnecter = new MessageSender( clientSocket, "",
            DISCONNECT_STRING );
        Future disconnecting = serverExecutor.submit( disconnecter ); // wait for disconnect message to be sent
        receiver.stopListening(); // stop receiver
        clientSocket.close(); // close outgoing Socket
    } // end try
    catch ( ExecutionException exception )
    {
        exception.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
    catch ( InterruptedException exception )
    {
        exception.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
    catch ( IOException ioException )
    {
        ioException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
    connected = false; // update connected flag
} // end method disconnect

// send message to server
public void sendMessage( String from, String message )
{
    if ( !connected )
        return; // if not connected, return immediately

    // create and start new MessageSender to deliver message
    serverExecutor.execute(
        new MessageSender( clientSocket, from, message) );
} // end method sendMessage

The SocketMessageManager constructor (lines 26-30) receives the address of the DeitelMessengerServer to which SocketMessageManager should connect. Method connect (lines 33-52) connects SocketMessageManager to DeitelMessengerServer. If it was connected previously, line 36 returns from method connect. Lines 40-41 create a new Socket to communicate with the server. Line 41 creates an InetAddress object for the server's address and uses the constant SERVER_PORT to specify the port on which the client should connect. Line 44 creates a new PacketReceiver, which listens for incoming multicast messages from the server, and line 45 executes the Runnable. Line 46 updates boolean variable connected to indicate that SocketMessageManager is connected to the server.

Method disconnect (lines 55-84) terminates the SocketMessageManager's connection to the server. If SocketMessageManager is not connected, line 58 returns from method disconnect. Lines 63-64 create a new MessageSender (Fig. 24.26) to send DISCONNECT_STRING to DeitelMessengerServer. Class MessageSender delivers a message to DeitelMessengerServer over the SocketMessageManager's Socket connection. Line 65 starts the MessageSender to deliver the message using method submit of the ExecutorService. This method returns a Future which represents the executing Runnable. Line 66 invokes Future method get to wait for the disconnect message to be delivered and the Runnable to terminate. Once the disconnect message has been delivered, line 67 invokes PacketReceiver method stopListening to stop receiving incoming chat messages. Line 68 closes the Socket connection to DeitelMessengerServer.

Figure 24.26. MessageSender for delivering outgoing messages to DeitelMessengerServer.

(This item is displayed on page 1168 in the print version)
Method `sendMessage` (lines 8795) sends an outgoing message to the server. If `SocketMessageManager` is not connected, line 90 returns from method `sendMessage`. Lines 9394 create and start a new `MessageSender` (Fig. 24.26) to deliver the new message in a separate thread of execution.

Class `MessageSender` (Fig. 24.26), which implements `Runnable`, delivers outgoing messages to the server in a separate thread of execution. `MessageSender`'s constructor (lines 1622) takes as arguments the `Socket` over which to send the message, the `userName` from whom the message came and the message. Line 21 concatenates these arguments to build `messageToSend`. Constant `MESSAGE_SEPARATOR` enables the message recipient to parse the message into two parts: the sending user's name and the message body by using a `StringTokenizer`. 

```java
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.Formatter;
import java.net.Socket;

import static com.deitel.messenger.sockets.SocketMessengerConstants.*;

public class MessageSender implements Runnable {
    private Socket clientSocket; // Socket over which to send message
    private String messageToSend; // message to send

    public MessageSender( Socket socket, String userName, String message ) {
        clientSocket = socket; // store socket for client

        // build message to be sent
        messageToSend = userName + MESSAGE_SEPARATOR + message;
    } // end MessageSender constructor

    // send message and end
    public void run() {
        try // send message and flush PrintWriter
        {
            Formatter output =
                new Formatter( clientSocket.getOutputStream() );
            output.format( "%s\n", messageToSend ); // send message
            output.flush(); // flush output
        } // end try
        catch ( IOException ioException ) {
            ioException.printStackTrace();
        } // end catch
    } // end method run

} // end class MessageSender
```
Method `run` (lines 2538) delivers the complete message to the server, using the `Socket` provided to the `MessageSender` constructor. Lines 2930 create a new `Formatter` for the `clientSocket`'s `OutputStream`. Line 31 invokes `Formatter` method `format` to send the message. Line 32 invokes method `flush` of class `Formatter` to ensure that the message is sent immediately. Note that class `MessageSender` does not close the `clientSocket`. Class `SocketMessageManager` uses a new object of class `MessageSender` for each message the client sends, so the `clientSocket` must remain open until the user disconnects from `DeitelMessengerServer`.

Class `PacketReceiver` (Fig. 24.27) implements interface `Runnable` to enable `SocketMessageManager` to listen for incoming messages in a separate thread of execution. Line 18 declares the `MessageListener` to which `PacketReceiver` will deliver incoming messages. Line 19 declares a `MulticastSocket` for receiving multicast `DatagramPackets`. Line 20 declares an `InetAddress` reference for the multicast address to which `DeitelMessengerServer` posts new chat messages. The `MulticastSocket` connects to this `InetAddress` to listen for incoming chat messages.

**Figure 24.27.** `PacketReceiver` for listening for new multicast messages from `DeitelMessengerServer` in a separate thread.

(This item is displayed on pages 1169 - 1171 in the print version)

```java
package com.deitel.messenger.sockets.client;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.InetAddress;
import java.net.MulticastSocket;
import java.net.DatagramPacket;
import java.net.SocketTimeoutException;
import java.util.StringTokenizer;
import com.deitel.messenger.MessageListener;
import static com.deitel.messenger.sockets.SocketMessengerConstants.*;

public class PacketReceiver implements Runnable {
    private MessageListener messageListener; // receives messages
    private MulticastSocket multicastSocket; // receive broadcast messages
    private InetAddress multicastGroup; // InetAddress of multicast group
    private boolean keepListening = true; // terminates PacketReceiver

    public PacketReceiver( MessageListener listener )
```
try // connect MulticastSocket to multicast address and port
{
    // create new MulticastSocket
    multicastSocket = new MulticastSocket(
        MULTICAST_LISTENING_PORT);

    // use InetAddress to get multicast group
    multicastGroup = InetAddress.getByName( MULTICAST_ADDRESS );

    // join multicast group to receive messages
    multicastSocket.joinGroup( multicastGroup );

    // set 5 second timeout when waiting for new packets
    multicastSocket.setSoTimeout( 5000 );
}

// listen for messages from multicast group
public void run()
{
    // listen for messages until stopped
    while ( keepListening )
    {
        // create buffer for incoming message
        byte[] buffer = new byte[ MESSAGE_SIZE ];

        // create DatagramPacket for incoming message
        DatagramPacket packet = new DatagramPacket( buffer,
            MESSAGE_SIZE );

        try // receive new DatagramPacket (blocking call)
        {
            multicastSocket.receive( packet );
        } // end try
        catch ( SocketTimeoutException socketTimeoutException )
        {
            continue; // continue to next iteration to keep listening
        } // end catch
        catch ( IOException ioException )
        {
            ioException.printStackTrace();
        } // end catch

        // put message data in a String
        String message = new String( packet.getData() );

        message = message.trim(); // trim whitespace from message

        // tokenize message to retrieve user name and message body
        StringTokenizer tokenizer = new StringTokenizer( message, MESSAGE_SEPARATOR );

        // ignore messages that do not contain a user
if (tokenizer.countTokens() == 2)
    {
        // send message to MessageListener
        messageListener.messageReceived(
            tokenizer.nextToken(), // user name
            tokenizer.nextToken()); // message body
    } // end if
} // end while

try
{
    multicastSocket.leaveGroup( multicastGroup ); // leave group
    multicastSocket.close(); // close MulticastSocket
} // end try

public void stopListening()
{
    keepListening = false;
} // end method stopListening

The `PacketReceiver` constructor (lines 2346) takes as an argument the `MessageListener` to which the `PacketReceiver` is to deliver incoming messages. Recall that interface `MessageListener` declares method `messageReceived`. When the `PacketReceiver` receives a new chat message over the `MulticastSocket`, `PacketReceiver` invokes `messageReceived` to deliver the new message to the `MessageListener`.

Lines 3031 create a new `MulticastSocket` and pass to the `MulticastSocket` constructor the constant `MULTICAST_LISTENING_PORT` from interface `SocketMessengerConstants`. This argument specifies the port on which the `MulticastSocket` will listen for incoming chat messages. Line 34 creates an `InetAddress` object for the `MULTICAST_ADDRESS`, to which `DeitelMessengerServer` multicasts new chat messages. Line 37 invokes `MulticastSocket` method `joinGroup` to register the `MulticastSocket` to receive messages sent to `MULTICAST_ADDRESS`. Line 40 invokes `MulticastSocket` method `setSoTimeout` to specify that if no data is received in 5000 milliseconds, the `MulticastSocket` should issue an `InterruptedIOException`, which the current thread can catch, then continue executing. This approach prevents `PacketReceiver` from blocking indefinitely when waiting for incoming data. Also, if the `MulticastSocket` never timed out, the
Method `run` (lines 49104) listens for incoming multicast messages. Lines 5859 create a `DatagramPacket` to store the incoming message. Line 63 invokes `MulticastSocket` method `receive` to read an incoming packet from the multicast address. If 5000 milliseconds pass without receipt of a packet, method `receive` throws an `InterruptedIOException`, because we previously set a 5000-millisecond time-out (line 40). Line 67 uses `continue` to proceed to the next loop iteration to listen for incoming messages. For other `IOExceptions`, line 72 breaks the while loop to terminate the `PacketReceiver`.

Line 76 invokes `DatagramPacket` method `getData` to retrieve the message data. Line 78 invokes method `trim` of class `String` to remove extra white space from the end of the message. Recall that `DatagramPacket`s are of a fixed size 512 bytes in this example, so if the message is shorter than 512 bytes, there will be extra white space after it. Lines 8182 create a ` StringTokenizer` to separate the message body from the name of the user who sent the message. Line 86 checks for the correct number of tokens. Lines 8991 invoke method `messageReceived` of interface `MessageListener` to deliver the incoming message to the `PacketReceiver`'s `MessageListener`.

If the program invokes method `stopListening` (lines 107110), the while loop in method `run` (lines 49104) terminates. Line 97 invokes `MulticastSocket` method `leaveGroup` to stop receiving messages from the multicast address. Line 98 invokes `MulticastSocket` method `close` to close the `MulticastSocket`. When method `run` completes execution, the `PacketReceiver` terminates.

Class `ClientGUI` (Fig. 24.28) extends class `JFrame` to create a GUI for a user to send and receive chat messages. The GUI consists of a `JTextArea` for displaying incoming messages (line 31), a `JTextArea` for entering new messages (line 32), `JButtons` and `JMenuItems` for connecting to and disconnecting from the server (lines 3336) and a `JButton` for sending messages (line 37). The GUI also contains a `JLabel` that displays whether the client is connected or disconnected (line 38).
ClientGUI subclass of JFrame for presenting a GUI for viewing and sending chat messages.

(This item is displayed on pages 1172 - 1177 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 24.28: ClientGUI.java
2 // ClientGUI provides a user interface for sending and receiving
3 // messages to and from the DeitelMessengerServer.
4 package com.deitel.messenger;

5 import java.awt.BorderLayout;
6 import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
7 import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
8 import java.awt.event.WindowAdapter;
9 import java.awt.event.WindowEvent;
10 import javax.swing.Box;
11 import javax.swing.BoxLayout;
12 import javax.swing.Icon;
13 import javax.swing.ImageIcon;
14 import javax.swing.JButton;
15 import javax.swing.JFrame;
16 import javax.swing.JLabel;
17 import javax.swing.JMenu;
18 import javax.swing.JMenuBar;
19 import javax.swing.JMenuItem;
20 import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
21 import javax.swing.JPanel;
22 import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
23 import javax.swing.JTextArea;
24 import javax.swing.SwingUtilities;
25 import javax.swing.border.BevelBorder;

28 public class ClientGUI extends JFrame {
29 {
30     private JMenu serverMenu; // for connecting/disconnecting server
31     private JTextArea messageArea; // displays messages
32     private JTextArea inputArea; // inputs messages
33     private JButton connectButton; // button for connecting
34     private JMenuItem connectMenuItem; // menu item for connecting
35     private JButton disconnectButton; // button for disconnecting
36     private JMenuItem disconnectMenuItem; // menu item for disconnecting
37     private JButton sendButton; // sends messages
38     private JLabel statusBar; // label for connection status
39     private String userName; // userName to add to outgoing messages
40     private MessageManager messageManager; // communicates with server
41     private MessageListener messageListener; // receives incoming messages

43 // ClientGUI constructor
44 public ClientGUI( MessageManager manager ) {
45 {
46     super ( "Deitel Messenger" );
47     messageManager = manager; // set the MessageManager
48     // create MyMessageListener for receiving messages
49     messageListener  = new MyMessageListener();
50     serverMenu = new JMenu ( "Server" ); // create Server JMenu
```
serverMenu.setMnemonic( 'S' ); // set mnemonic for server menu
JMenuBar menuBar = new JMenuBar(); // create JMenuBar
menuBar.add( serverMenu ); // add server menu to menu bar
setJMenuBar( menuBar ); // add JMenuBar to application

// create ImageIcon for connect buttons
Icon connectIcon = new ImageIcon(
    lus().getResource( "images/Connect.gif" ) );

// create connectButton and connectMenuItem
connectButton = new JButton( "Connect", connectIcon );
connectMenuItem = new JMenuItem( "Connect", connectIcon );
connectMenuItem.setMnemonic( 'C' );

// create ConnectListener for connect buttons
ActionListener connectListener = new ConnectListener();
connectButton.addActionListener( connectListener );
connectMenuItem.addActionListener( connectListener );

// create ImageIcon for disconnect buttons
Icon disconnectIcon = new ImageIcon(
    getClass().getResource( "images/Disconnect.gif" ) );

// create disconnectButton and disconnectMenuItem
disconnectButton = new JButton( "Disconnect", disconnectIcon );
disconnectMenuItem = new JMenuItem( "Disconnect", disconnectIcon );
disconnectMenuItem.setMnemonic( 'D' );

disconnectButton.setEnabled( false );
disconnectMenuItem.setEnabled( false );

// create DisconnectListener for disconnect buttons
ActionListener disconnectListener = new DisconnectListener();
disconnectButton.addActionListener( disconnectListener );
disconnectMenuItem.addActionListener( disconnectListener );

// add connect and disconnect JMenuItems to fileMenu
serverMenu.add( connectMenuItem );
serverMenu.add( disconnectMenuItem );

// add connect and disconnect JButtons to buttonPanel
JPanel buttonPanel = new JPanel();
buttonPanel.add( connectButton );
buttonPanel.add( disconnectButton );

messageArea = new JTextArea(); // displays messages
messageArea.setEditable( false ); // disable editing
messageArea.setWrapStyleWord( true ); // set wrap style to word
messageArea.setLineWrap( true ); // enable line wrapping

// put messageArea in JScrollPane to enable scrolling
JPanel messagePanel = new JPanel();
messagePanel.setLayout( new BorderLayout( 10, 10 ) );
messagePanel.add( new JScrollPane( messageArea ),
    BorderLayout.CENTER );

inputArea = new JTextArea( 4, 20 ); // for entering new messages
inputArea.setWrapStyleWord( true ); // set wrap style to word
inputArea.setLineWrap( true ); // enable line wrapping
inputArea.setEditable( false ); // disable editing
// create Icon for sendButton
Icon sendIcon = new ImageIcon(
    getClass().getResource( "images/Send.gif" ) );

sendButton = new JButton( "Send", sendIcon ); // create send button
sendButton.setEnabled( false ); // disable send button
sendButton.addActionListener(
    new ActionListener()
    {
        // send new message when user activates sendButton
        public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
        {
            messageManager.sendMessage( userName,
                inputArea.getText() ); // send message
            inputArea.setText( "" ); // clear inputArea
        } // end method actionPerformed
    } // end anonymous inner class
); // end call to addActionListener

Box box = new Box( BoxLayout.X_AXIS ); // create new box for layout
box.add( new JScrollPane( inputArea ) ); // add input area to box
box.add( sendButton ); // add send button to box
messagePanel.add( box, BorderLayout.SOUTH ); // add box to panel

// create JLabel for statusBar with a recessed border
statusBar = new JLabel( "Not Connected" );
statusBar.setBorder( new BevelBorder( BevelBorder.LOWERED ) );

add( buttonPanel, BorderLayout.NORTH ); // add button panel
add( messagePanel, BorderLayout.CENTER ); // add message panel
add( statusBar, BorderLayout.SOUTH ); // add status bar

// add WindowListener to disconnect when user quits
addWindowListener ( new WindowAdapter ()
    {
        // disconnect from server and exit application
        public void windowClosing ( WindowEvent event )
        {
            messageManager.disconnect( messageListener );
            System.exit( 0 );
        } // end method windowClosing
    } // end anonymous inner class
); // end call to addWindowListener

// ConnectListener listens for user requests to connect to server
private class ConnectListener implements ActionListener
{
    // connect to server and enable/disable GUI components
    public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
    {
        // connect to server and route messages to messageListener
        messageManager.connect( messageListener );

        // prompt for userName
        userName = JOptionPane.showInputDialog(
            ClientGUI.this, "Enter user name:" );

        messageArea.setText( "" ); // clear messageArea
176  connectButton.setEnabled( false ); // disable connect
177  connectMenuItem.setEnabled( false ); // disable connect
178  disconnectButton.setEnabled( true ); // enable disconnect
179  disconnectMenuItem.setEnabled( true ); // enable disconnect
180  sendButton.setEnabled( true ); // enable send button
181  inputArea.setEditable( true ); // enable editing for input area
182  inputArea.requestFocus(); // set focus to input area
183  statusBar.setText( "Connected: " + userName ); // set text
184 } // end method actionPerformed
185 } // end ConnectListener inner class
186
187 // DisconnectListener listens for user requests to disconnect
188 // from DeitelMessengerServer
189 private class DisconnectListener implements ActionListener
190 {
191     // disconnect from server and enable/disable GUI components
192     public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
193     {
194         // disconnect from server and stop routing messages
195         messageManager.disconnect( messageListener );
196         sendButton.setEnabled( false ); // disable send button
197         disconnectButton.setEnabled( false ); // disable disconnect
198         disconnectMenuItem.setEnabled( false ); // disable disconnect
199         inputArea.setEditable( false ); // disable editing
200         connectButton.setEnabled( true ); // enable connect
201         connectMenuItem.setEnabled( true ); // enable connect
202         statusBar.setText( "Not Connected" ); // set status bar text
203     } // end method actionPerformed
204 } // end DisconnectListener inner class
205
206 // MyMessageListener listens for new messages from MessageManager and
207 // displays messages in messageArea using MessageDisplayer.
208 private class MyMessageListener implements MessageListener
209 {
210     // when received, display new messages in messageArea
211     public void messageReceived( String from, String message )
212     {
213         // append message using MessageDisplayer
214         SwingUtilities.invokeLater(
215             new MessageDisplayer( from, message ) );
216     } // end method messageReceived
217 } // end MyMessageListener inner class
218
219 // Displays new message by appending message to JTextArea. Should
220 // be executed only in Event thread; modifies live Swing component
221 private class MessageDisplayer implements Runnable
222 {
223     private String fromUser; // user from which message came
224     private String messageBody; // body of message
225
226     // MessageDisplayer constructor
227     public MessageDisplayer( String from, String body )
228     {
229         fromUser = from; // store originating user
230         messageBody = body; // store message body
231     } // end MessageDisplayer constructor
232
233     // display new message in messageArea
234     public void run()
235     {
236         // append new message

ClientGUI uses a MessageManager (line 40) to handle all communication with the chat server. Recall that MessageManager is an interface that enables ClientGUI to use any MessageManager implementation. Class ClientGUI also uses a MessageListener (line 41) to receive incoming messages from the MessageManager.

The ClientGUI constructor (lines 44160) takes as an argument the MessageManager for communicating with DeitelMessengerServer. Line 48 sets the ClientGUI's MessageManager. Line 51 creates an instance of MyMessageListener, which implements interface MessageListener. Lines 5357 create a Server menu that contains JMenuItems for connecting to and disconnecting from the chat server. Lines 6061 create an ImageIcon for connectButton and connectMenuItem.

Lines 6465 create connectButton and connectMenuItem, each with the label "Connect" and the Icon connectIcon. Line 66 invokes method setMnemonic to set the mnemonic character for keyboard access to connectMenuItem. Line 69 creates an instance of inner class ConnectListener (declared at lines 163185), which implements interface ActionListener to handle ActionEvents from connectButton and connectMenuItem. Lines 7071 add connectListener as an ActionListener for connectButton and connectMenuItem.

Lines 7475 create an ImageIcon for the disconnectButton and disconnectMenuItem components. Lines 7879 create disconnectButton and disconnectMenuItem, each with the label "Disconnect" and the Icon disconnectIcon. Line 80 invokes method setMnemonic to enable keyboard access to disconnectMenuItem. Lines 8384 invoke method setEnabled with a false argument on disconnectButton and disconnectMenuItem to disable these components. This prevents the user from attempting to disconnect from the server because the client is not yet connected. Line 87 creates an instance of inner class DisconnectListener (declared at lines 189204), which implements interface ActionListener to handle ActionEvents from disconnectButton and disconnectMenuItem. Lines 8889 add disconnectListener as an ActionListener for disconnectButton and disconnectMenuItem.

Lines 9293 add connectMenuItem and disconnectMenuItem to menu Server. Lines 9698 create a JPanel and add connectButton and disconnectButton to it. Line 100 creates the textarea messageArea, in which the client displays incoming messages. Line 101 invokes method setEditable with a false argument, to disable editing. Lines
invoke JTextArea methods setWrapStyleWord and setLineWrap to enable word wrapping in messageArea. If a message is longer than messageArea's width, the messageArea will wrap the text after the last word that fits on each line, making longer messages easier to read. Lines 106109 create a JPanel for the messageArea and add the messageArea to the JPanel in a JScrollPane.

Line 111 creates the inputArea JTextArea for entering new messages. Lines 112113 enable word and line wrapping, and line 114 disables editing the inputArea. When the client connects to the chat server, ConnectListener enables the inputArea to allow the user to type new messages.

Lines 117118 create an ImageIcon for sendButton. Line 120 creates sendButton, which the user can click to send a message. Line 121 disables sendButton the ConnectListener enables the sendButton when the client connects to the chat server. Lines 122133 add an ActionListener to sendButton. Lines 128129 invoke method sendMessage of interface MessageManager with the userName and inputArea text as arguments. This statement sends the user's name and message as a new chat message to DeitelMessengerServer. Line 130 clears the inputArea for the next message.

Lines 135138 use a horizontal Box container to arrange components inputArea and sendButton. Line 136 places inputArea in a JScrollPane to enable scrolling of long messages. Line 138 adds the Box containing inputArea and sendButton to the SOUTH region of messagePanel. Line 141 creates the statusBar JLabel. This label displays whether the client is connected to or disconnected from the chat server. Line 142 invokes method setBorder of class JLabel and creates a new BevelBorder of type BevelBorder.LOWERED. This border makes the label appear recessed, as is common with status bars in many applications. Lines 144146 add buttonPanel, messagePanel and statusBar to the ClientGUI.

Lines 149159 add a WindowListener to the ClientGUI. Line 155 invokes method disconnect of interface MessageManager to disconnect from the chat server in case the user quits while still connected. Then line 156 terminates the application.

Inner class ConnectListener (lines 163185) handles events from connectButton and connectMenuItem. Line 169 invokes MessageManager method connect to connect to the chat server. Line 169 passes as an argument to method connect the MessageListener to which new messages should be delivered. Lines 172173 prompt the user for a user name, and line 175 clears the messageArea. Lines 176181 enable the components for disconnecting from the server and for...
sending messages and disable the components for connecting to the server. Line 182 invokes inputArea's **requestFocus** method (inherited from class Component) to place the text-input cursor in the inputArea so that the user can immediately begin typing a message.

Inner class DisconnectListener (lines 189204) handles events from disconnectButton and disconnectMenuI      Item. Line 195 invokes MessageManager method disconnect to disconnect from the chat server. Lines 196201 disable the components for sending messages and the components for disconnecting, then enable the components for connecting to the chat server.

Inner class MyMessageListener (lines 208217) implements interface MessageListener to receive incoming messages from the MessageManager. When a new message is received, the MessageManager invokes method messageReceived (lines 211216) with the user name of the sender and the message body. Lines 214215 invoke SwingUtilities method invokeLater with a MessageDisplayer object that appends the new message to messageArea. Recall, from **Chapter 23**, that Swing components should be accessed only from the event-dispatch thread. Method messageReceived is invoked by the PacketReceiver in class SocketMessageManager and therefore cannot append the message text to messageArea directly, as this would occur in PacketReceiver, not the event-dispatch thread.

---

Inner class MessageDisplayer (lines 221239) implements interface Runnable to provide a thread-safe way to append text to the messageArea. The MessageDisplayer constructor (lines 227231) takes as arguments the user name and the message to send. Method run (lines 234238) appends the user name, " > " and messageBody to messageArea.

Class DeitelMessenger (Fig. 24.29) launches the client for the DeitelMessengerServer. Lines 1520 create a new SocketMessageManager to connect to the DeitelMessengerServer with the IP address specified as a command-line argument to the application (or localhost, if no address is provided). Lines 2326 create a ClientGUI for the MessageManager, set the ClientGUI size and make the ClientGUI visible.

**Figure 24.29.** DeitelMessenger application for participating in a DeitelMessengerServer chat session.

(This item is displayed on pages 1179 - 1180 in the print version)
// Fig. 24.29: DeitelMessenger.java
// DeitelMessenger is a chat application that uses a ClientGUI
// and SocketMessageManager to communicate with DeitelMessengerServer.
package com.deitel.messenger.sockets.client;

import com.deitel.messenger.MessageManager;
import com.deitel.messenger.ClientGUI;

public class DeitelMessenger
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        MessageManager messageManager; // declare MessageManager
        if ( args.length == 0 )
            // connect to localhost
            messageManager = new SocketMessageManager("localhost");
        else
            // connect using command-line arg
            messageManager = new SocketMessageManager(args[0]);

        // create GUI for SocketMessageManager
        ClientGUI clientGUI = new ClientGUI(messageManager);
        clientGUI.setSize(300,400); // set window size
        clientGUI.setResizable(false); // disable resizing
        clientGUI.setVisible(true); // show window
    }
} // end class DeitelMessenger
Executing the **DeitelMessenger** Client Application

To execute the **DeitelMessenger** client, open a command window and change directories to the location in which package `com.deitel.messenger.sockets.client` resides (i.e., the directory in which `com` is located). Then type
to execute the client and connect to the DeitelMessengerServer running on your local computer. If the server resides on another computer, follow the preceding command with the hostname or IP address of that computer. The preceding command is equivalent to

```java
java com.deitel.messengersockets.client.DeitelMessenger localhost
```

or

```java
java com.deitel.messengersockets.client.DeitelMessenger 127.0.0.1
```

**Deitel Messenger Case Study Summary**

The Deitel messenger case study is a significant application that uses many intermediate Java features, such as networking with Sockets, DatagramPackets and MulticastSockets, multithreading and Swing GUI. The case study also demonstrates good software engineering practices by separating interface from implementation, enabling developers to build MessageManagers for different network protocols and MessageListeners that provide different user interfaces. You should now be able to apply these techniques to your own, more complex, Java projects.
24.11. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you have learned the basics of network programming in Java. You learned two different methods of sending data over a network: streams-based networking using TCP/IP and datagrams-based networking using UDP. You also learned about multicasting, which allows you to send data to multiple clients with a single command. In the next chapter, you will learn basic database concepts, how to interact with data in a database using SQL and how to use JDBC to allow Java applications to manipulate database data.
Summary

- Java provides stream sockets and datagram sockets. With stream sockets, a process establishes a connection to another process. While the connection is in place, data flows between the processes in streams. Stream sockets are said to provide a connection-oriented service. The protocol used for transmission is the popular TCP (Transmission Control Protocol).

- With datagram sockets, individual packets of information are transmitted. UDP (User Datagram Protocol) is a connectionless service that does not guarantee that packets will not be lost, duplicated or arrive out of sequence. Extra programming is required on the programmer's part to deal with these problems.

- The HTTP protocol (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) that forms the basis of the Web uses URIs (Uniform Resource Identifiers) to locate data on the Internet. Common URIs represent files or directories and can represent complex tasks such as database lookups and Internet searches. A URI that represents a document is called a URL (Uniform Resource Locator).

- Web browsers often restrict an applet so that it can communicate only with the machine from which it was originally downloaded.

  Applet method `getAppletContext` returns a reference to an `AppletContext` object that represents the applet's environment (i.e., the browser in which the applet is executing). `AppletContext` method `showDocument` receives a URL as an argument and passes it to the `AppletContext` (i.e., the browser), which displays the Web resource associated with that URL. A second version of `showDocument` enables an applet to specify the target frame in which to display a Web resource. Special target frames include `_blank` (display in a new Web browser window), `_self` (display in the same frame as the applet) and `_top` (remove the current frames, then display in the current window).

  JEditorPane method `setPage` downloads the document specified by its argument and displays it in the JEditorPane.
Typically, an HTML document contains hyperlinks, images or GUI components that, when clicked, link to another document on the Web. If an HTML document is displayed in a `JEditorPane` and the user clicks a hyperlink, the `JEditorPane` generates a `HyperlinkEvent` and notifies all registered `HyperlinkListener`ss of the event.

- The `HyperlinkEvent` method `getEventType` determines the event type. `HyperlinkEvent` contains nested class `EventType`, which declares three hyperlink event types: `ACTIVATED` (hyperlink clicked), `ENTERED` (mouse over a hyperlink) and `EXITED` (mouse moved away from a hyperlink). `HyperlinkEvent` method `getURL` obtains the URL represented by the hyperlink.

- Stream-based connections are managed with `Socket` objects.

- A `ServerSocket` object establishes the port where a server waits for connections from clients. The second argument to the `ServerSocket` constructor is the number of connections that can wait in a queue to connect to the server. If the queue of clients is full, client connections are refused. The `ServerSocket` method `accept` waits indefinitely (i.e., blocks) for a connection from a client and returns a `Socket` object when a connection is established.

- `Socket` methods `getOutputStream` and `getInputStream` get references to a `Socket`'s `OutputStream` and `InputStream`, respectively. `Socket` method `close` terminates a connection.

- A server name and port number are specified when creating a `Socket` object to enable it to connect a client to the server. A failed connection attempt throws an `IOException`.

- `InetAddress` method `getByName` returns an `InetAddress` object containing the host name of the computer for which the host name or IP address is specified as an argument. `InetAddress` method `getLocalHost` returns an `InetAddress` object containing the host name of the local computer executing the program.

- Connection-oriented transmission is like the telephone system—when you dial and are given a connection to the telephone of the person with whom you wish to communicate. The connection is maintained for the duration of your phone call, even when you are not talking.
Connectionless transmission with datagrams is similar to mail carried via the postal service. A large message that will not fit in one envelope can be broken into separate message pieces that are placed in separate, sequentially numbered envelopes. All the letters are then mailed at once. They could arrive in order, out of order or not at all.

DatagramPacket objects store packets of data that are to be sent or that are received by an application. DatagramSockets send and receive DatagramPackets.

The DatagramSocket constructor that takes no arguments binds the application to a port chosen by the computer on which the program executes. The DatagramSocket constructor that takes an integer port number argument binds the application to the specified port. If a DatagramSocket constructor fails to bind the application to a port, a SocketException occurs. DatagramSocket method receive blocks (waits) until a packet arrives, then stores the packet in its argument.

DatagramPacket method getAddress returns an InetAddress object containing information about the host computer from which the packet was sent. Method getPort returns an integer specifying the port number through which the host computer sent the DatagramPacket. Method getLength returns an integer representing the number of bytes of data in a DatagramPacket. Method getData returns a byte array containing the data in a DatagramPacket.

The DatagramPacket constructor for a packet to be sent takes four arguments: the byte array to be sent, the number of bytes to be sent, the client address to which the packet will be sent and the port number where the client is waiting to receive packets.

DatagramSocket method send sends a DatagramPacket out over the network.

If an error occurs when receiving or sending a DatagramPacket, an IOException occurs.

Reading data from a Socket is a blocking call: the current thread is put in the blocked state while it waits for the read operation to complete. Method setSoTimeout specifies that if no data is received in the given number of milliseconds, the Socket is to issue an InterruptedIOException, which the
current thread can catch, then continue executing. This prevents the current thread from blocking indefinitely if no more data is available from the Socket.

- Multicast is an efficient way to send data to many clients without the overhead of broadcasting it to every host on the Internet. Using multicast, an application can "publish" DatagramPacketS to be delivered to subscriber applications. An application multicasts DatagramPacketS by sending them to a multicast addressan IP address in the range from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255, reserved for multicast.

- Clients that wish to receive DatagramPacketS can join the multicast group that will receive the DatagramPacketS published to the multicast address.

- Multicast DatagramPacketS are not reliablepackets are not guaranteed to reach any destination or to arrive in any particular order.

- The MulticastSocket constructor takes as an argument the port to which the MulticastSocket connects to receive incoming DatagramPacketS.

- Method joinGroup of class MulticastSocket takes as an argument the InetAddress of the multicast group to join. Method receive of class MulticastSocket reads an incoming DatagramPacket from a multicast address.
Terminology

**accept** method of class `ServerSocket`

**ACTIVATED** constant of nested class `EventType`

**applet parameter**

**AppletContext** interface

**BevelBorder** class

**binding the server to the port**

**_blank** target frame

**block**

**border of a GUI component**

**class loader**

**client**

**client-server relationship**

**client/server chat**

**close** method of class `MulticastSocket`

**close** method of class `Socket`

**connection**

**connection-oriented service**

**connection-oriented, streams-based transmission**
connectionless service

connectionless transmission

datagram packet

datagram socket

DatagramPacket class

DatagramSocket class

echoes a packet back to the client

ENTERED constant of nested class EventType

EventType nested class of HyperlinkEvent

EXITED constant of nested class EventType

getAddress method of class DatagramPacket

getAppletContext method of class Applet

getByName method of class InetAddress

getDataType method of class DatagramPacket

getEventType method of class HyperlinkEvent

getHostName method of class InetAddress

getInetAddress method of class Socket

getInputStream method of class Socket

getLength method of class DatagramPacket

getLocalHost method of class InetAddress
**getOutputStream** method of class **Socket**

**getParameter** method of class **Applet**

**getPort** method of class **DatagramPacket**

**getResource** method of class **Class**

**getURL** method of class **HyperlinkEvent**

**handshake point**

**HTML frame**

**hyperlink**

**HyperlinkEvent class**

**HyperlinkListener interface**

**hyperlinkUpdate method of interface** **HyperlinkListener**

**HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP)**

**InetAddress class**

**java.net package**

**JEditorPane class**

**joinGroup method of class** **MulticastSocket**

**leaveGroup method of class** **MulticastSocket**

**loopback address**

**LOWERED constant of class** **BevelBorder**
MalformedURLException

multicast

multicast address

multicast group

MulticastSocket class

packet

packet-based communications

param tag

port

port number

publish

queue length

receive method of class DatagramSocket

receive method of class MulticastSocket

register a port

_self target frame

send method of class DatagramSocket

server

ServerSocket class

setBorder method of class JComponent
setPage method of class JEditorPane

setSoTimeout method of class MulticastSocket

setSoTimeOut method of class Socket

setWrapStyleWord method of class JTextArea

showDocument method of class AppletContext

socket

socket-based communication

Socket class

SocketException class

stream header

stream socket

stream-based communications

streams

streams-based transmission

submit method of interface ExecutorService

subscribe

target frame

TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)

_top target frame

trusted source
UDP (User Datagram Protocol)

unicast

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI)

UnknownHostException class

User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

World Wide Web Consortium (W3C)
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Exception __________ occurs when an input/output error occurs when closing a socket.

2. Exception __________ occurs when a host name indicated by a client cannot be resolved to an address.

3. If a `DatagramSocket` constructor fails to set up a `DatagramSocket` properly, an exception of type __________ occurs.

4. Many of Java's networking classes are contained in package __________.

5. Class __________ binds the application to a port for datagram transmission.

6. An object of class __________ contains an IP address.

7. The two types of sockets we discussed in this chapter are __________ and __________.

8. The acronym URL stands for __________.

9. The acronym URI stands for __________.

10. The key protocol that forms the basis of the World Wide Web is __________.

11. `AppletContext` method __________ receives a `URL` object as an argument and displays in a browser the World Wide Web resource associated with that `URL`.

12. Method `getLocalHost` returns a(n) __________ object containing the local host name of the computer on which the program is executing.

13. `MulticastSocket` method __________ subscribes a `MulticastSocket` to a multicast group.

14. The `URL` constructor determines whether its string argument is a valid URL. If so, the `URL` object is initialized with that location. If not, a(n) __________ exception occurs.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. Multicast broadcasts `DatagramPacket`s to every host on the Internet.

2. UDP is a connection-oriented protocol.

3. With stream sockets a process establishes a connection to another process.

4. A server waits at a port for connections from a client.

5. Datagram packet transmission over a network is reliable: packets are guaranteed to arrive in sequence.

6. For security reasons, many Web browsers, such as Mozilla, allow Java applets to do file processing only on the machines on which they execute.

7. Web browsers often restrict an applet so that it can only communicate with the machine from which it was originally downloaded.
8. IP addresses from 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255 are reserved for multicast.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

24.1 a) IOException. b) UnknownHostException. c) SocketException. d) java.net. e) DatagramSocket. f) InetAddress. g) stream sockets, datagram sockets. h) Uniform Resource Locator. i) Uniform Resource Identifier. j) HTTP. k) showDocument. l) InetAddress. m) joinGroup. n) MalformedURLException.

24.2 a) False; multicast sends DatagramPacket s only to hosts that have joined the multicast group. b) False; UDP is a connectionless protocol and TCP is a connection-oriented protocol. c) True. d) True. e) False; packets can be lost, arrive out of order or be duplicated. f) False; most browsers prevent applets from doing file processing on the client machine. g) True. h) True.
Exercises

24.3 Distinguish between connection-oriented and connectionless network services.

24.4 How does a client determine the host name of the client computer?

24.5 Under what circumstances would a `SocketException` be thrown?

24.6 How can a client get a line of text from a server?

24.7 Describe how a client connects to a server.

24.8 Describe how a server sends data to a client.

24.9 Describe how to prepare a server to receive a stream-based connection request from a single client.

24.10 How does a server listen for streams-based socket connections at a port?

24.11 What determines how many connect requests from clients can wait in a queue to connect to a server?

24.12 As described in the text, what reasons might cause a server to refuse a connection request from a client?

24.13 Use a socket connection to allow a client to specify a file name and have the server send the contents of the file or indicate that the file does not exist.

Modify Exercise 24.13 to allow the client to modify the contents of the file and send the file back to the server for storage. The user can edit the file in a `JTextArea`, then click a `save changes` button to send the file back to the server.

24.15 Modify the program in Fig. 24.2 to allow users to add their own sites to the list and remove sites from the list.

Multithreaded servers are quite popular today, especially because of the increasing use of multiprocessing servers. Modify the simple server application presented in Section 24.6 to be a multithreaded server. Then use several client applications and have each of them connect to the server simultaneously. Use an `ArrayList` to store the client threads. `ArrayList` provides several methods of use in this exercise. Method `size` determines the number of elements in an `ArrayList`. Method `get` returns the element in the location specified by its argument. Method `add` places its argument at the end of the `ArrayList`. Method `remove` deletes its argument from the `ArrayList`. 
(Checkers Game) In the text, we presented a Tic-Tac-Toe program controlled by a multithreaded server. Develop a checkers program modeled after the Tic-Tac-Toe program. The two users should alternate making moves. Your program should mediate the players' moves, determining whose turn it is and allowing only valid moves. The players themselves will determine when the game is over.

(Chess Game) Develop a chess-playing program modeled after the checkers program in the Exercise 24.17.

(Blackjack Game) Develop a blackjack card game program in which the server application deals cards to each of the client applets. The server should deal additional cards (as per the rules of the game) to each player as requested.

(Poker Game) Develop a poker card game in which the server application deals cards to each of the client applets. The server should deal additional cards (as per the rules of the game) to each player as requested.

(Modifications to the Multithreaded Tic-Tac-Toe Program) The programs in Fig. 24.13 and Fig. 24.15 implemented a multithreaded, client/server version of the game of Tic-Tac-Toe. Our goal in developing this game was to demonstrate a multithreaded server that could process multiple connections from clients at the same time. The server in the example is really a mediator between the two client applets—it makes sure that each move is valid and that each client moves in the proper order. The server does not determine who won or lost or whether there was a draw. Also, there is no capability to allow a new game to be played or to terminate an existing game.

The following is a list of suggested modifications to Fig. 24.13 and Fig. 24.15:

1. Modify the TicTacToeServer class to test for a win, loss or draw on each move in the game. Send a message to each client applet that indicates the result of the game when the game is over.

2. Modify the TicTacToeClient class to display a button that when clicked allows the client to play another game. The button should be enabled only when a game completes. Note that both class TicTacToeClient and class TicTacToeServer must be modified to reset the board and all state information. Also, the other TicTacToeClient should be notified that a new game is about to begin so that its board and state can be reset.

3. Modify the TicTacToeClient class to provide a button that allows a client to terminate the program at any time. When the user clicks the button, the server and the other client should be notified. The server should then wait for a connection from another client so that a new game can begin.

4. Modify the TicTacToeClient class and the TicTacToeServer class so that the winner of a game can choose game piece X or O for the next game. Remember: X always goes first.

5. If you would like to be ambitious, allow a client to play against the server while the server waits for a connection from another client.

(3-D Multithreaded Tic-Tac-Toe) Modify the multithreaded, client/server Tic-Tac-Toe program to implement a three-dimensional 4-by-4-by-4 version of the game. Implement the server application to mediate between the two clients. Display the three-dimensional board as four boards containing four rows and four columns each. If you would like to be ambitious, try the following modifications:

1. Draw the board in a three-dimensional manner.

2. Allow the server to test for a win, loss or draw. Beware! There are many possible ways to win on a 4-by-4-by-4 board!
Perhaps the most famous of all coding schemes is the Morse code, developed by Samuel Morse in 1832 for use with the telegraph system. The Morse code assigns a series of dots and dashes to each letter of the alphabet, each digit, and a few special characters (e.g., period, comma, colon and semicolon). In sound-oriented systems, the dot represents a short sound and the dash represents a long sound. Other representations of dots and dashes are used with light-oriented systems and signal-flag systems. Separation between words is indicated by a space or, simply, the absence of a dot or dash. In a sound-oriented system, a space is indicated by a short time during which no sound is transmitted. The international version of the Morse code appears in Fig. 24.30.

**Figure 24.30.** The letters of the alphabet as expressed in international Morse code.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>.-</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>-...</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>..-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>-.-.</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>...-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>-..</td>
<td>W</td>
<td>.--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-..-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>..-.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>-.-..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>--.</td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>---..</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>….</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>..</td>
<td>Digits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>-.--</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>.----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>-.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>.--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-...</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>...-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>.</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>.....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-.----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>.--.</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>--.--</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>---..</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Write a client/server application in which two clients can send Morse code messages to each other through a multithreaded server application. The client application should allow the user to type English-language phrases in a JTextArea. When the user sends the message, the client application encodes the text into Morse code and sends the coded message through the server to the other client. Use one blank between each Morse-coded letter and three blanks between each Morse-coded word. When messages are received, they should be decoded and displayed as normal characters and as Morse code. The client should have one JTextField for typing and one JTextArea for displaying the other client's messages.
Chapter 25. Accessing Databases with JDBC

*It is a capital mistake to theorize before one has data.*

Arthur Conan Doyle

*Now go, write it before them in a table, and note it in a book, that it may be for the time to come for ever and ever.*

The Holy Bible, Isaiah 30:8

*Get your facts first, and then you can distort them as much as you please.*

Mark Twain

*I like two kinds of men: domestic and foreign.*

Mae West

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- Relational database concepts.
- To use Structured Query Language (SQL) to retrieve data from and manipulate data in a database.
- To use the JDBC™ API of package java.sql to access databases.

[Page 1190]

Outline

25.1 Introduction

25.2 Relational Databases

25.3 Relational Database Overview: The books Database
25.4 SQL

25.4.1 Basic SELECT Query

25.4.2 WHERE Clause

25.4.3 ORDER BY Clause

25.4.4 Merging Data from Multiple Tables: INNER JOIN

25.4.5 INSERT Statement

25.4.6 UPDATE Statement

25.4.7 DELETE Statement

25.5 Instructions to install MySQL and MySQL Connector/J

25.6 Instructions on Setting MySQL User Account

25.7 Creating Database books in MySQL

25.8 Manipulating Databases with JDBC

25.8.1 Connecting to and Querying a Database

25.8.2 Querying the books Database

25.9 Stored Procedures

25.10 RowSet Interface

25.11 Wrap-Up

25.12 Internet and Web Resources

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises
25.1. Introduction

A database is an organized collection of data. There are many different strategies for organizing data to facilitate easy access and manipulation. A database management system (DBMS) provides mechanisms for storing, organizing, retrieving and modifying data for many users. Database management systems allow for the access and storage of data without concern for the internal representation of data.

Today's most popular database systems are relational databases. A language called SQL pronounced "sequel," or as its individual letters is the international standard language used almost universally with relational databases to perform queries (i.e., to request information that satisfies given criteria) and to manipulate data. [Note: As you learn about SQL, you will see some authors writing "a SQL statement" (which assumes the pronunciation "sequel") and others writing "an SQL statement" (which assumes that the individual letters are pronounced). In this book we pronounce SQL as "sequel." Thus the article preceding SQL is "a," as in "a SQL statement."]

Some popular relational database management systems (RDBMSs) are Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, Sybase, IBM DB2, Informix, PostgreSQL and MySQL. In this chapter, we present examples using MySQL, which is located on the CD that accompanies this book and can also be downloaded from dev.mysql.com/downloads/mysql/4.0.html. MySQL is open source and is available for both Windows and Linux. [Note: We discuss basic MySQL features required to execute the examples in this chapter. Please refer to the detailed MySQL documentation for complete information on using MySQL.]

Java programs communicate with databases and manipulate their data using the JDBC™ API. A JDBC driver enables Java applications to connect to a database in a particular DBMS and allows programmers to manipulate that database using the JDBC API. JDBC is almost always used with a relational database. However, it can be used with any table-based data source.

Software Engineering Observation 25.1

The separation of the JDBC API from particular database drivers enables
developers to change the underlying database without modifying the Java code that accesses the database.

Most popular database management systems now provide JDBC drivers. There are also many third-party JDBC drivers available. In this chapter, we introduce JDBC and use it to manipulate a MySQL database. The techniques demonstrated here can also be used to manipulate other databases that have JDBC drivers. Check your system's documentation to determine whether your DBMS comes with a JDBC driver. If not, many third-party vendors provide JDBC drivers for a wide variety of databases.

For more information on JDBC, visit

java.sun.com/products/jdbc

This site contains information concerning JDBC, including the JDBC specification, JDBC FAQs, a learning resource center and software downloads. For a list of available JDBC drivers, visit

servlet.java.sun.com/products/jdbc/drivers/

This site provides a search engine to help you locate drivers appropriate to your DBMS.
25.2. Relational Databases

A relational database is a logical representation of data that allows the data to be accessed without consideration of its physical structure. A relational database stores data in tables. Figure 25.1 illustrates a sample table that might be used in a personnel system. The table name is Employee, and its primary purpose is to store the attributes of an employee. Tables are composed of rows, and rows are composed of columns in which values are stored. This table consists of six rows. The Number column of each row in this table is the table’s primary key— a column (or group of columns) in a table with a unique value that cannot be duplicated in other rows. This guarantees that each row can be identified by its primary key. Good examples of primary key columns are a Social Security number, an employee ID number and a part number in an inventory system, as values in each of these columns are guaranteed to be unique. The rows in Fig. 25.1 are displayed in order by primary key. In this case, the rows are listed in increasing order, but we could also use decreasing order. Rows in tables are not guaranteed to be stored in any particular order. As we will demonstrate in an upcoming example, programs can specify ordering criteria when requesting data from a database.

Figure 25.1. Employee table sample data.
(This item is displayed on page 1192 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Department</th>
<th>Salary</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23603</td>
<td>Jones</td>
<td>413</td>
<td>1100</td>
<td>New Jersey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24568</td>
<td>Kerwin</td>
<td>413</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>New Jersey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34589</td>
<td>Larson</td>
<td>642</td>
<td>1800</td>
<td>Los Angeles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35761</td>
<td>Myers</td>
<td>611</td>
<td>1400</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47132</td>
<td>Neumann</td>
<td>413</td>
<td>9000</td>
<td>New Jersey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78321</td>
<td>Stephens</td>
<td>611</td>
<td>8500</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each column represents a different data attribute. Rows are normally unique
(by primary key) within a table, but particular column values may be duplicated between rows. For example, three different rows in the Employee table's Department column contain number 413.

Different users of a database are often interested in different data and different relationships among the data. Most users require only subsets of the rows and columns. To obtain these subsets, we use queries to specify which data to select from a table. Programmers use SQL to define complex queries that select data from a table. For example, we might select data from the Employee table to create a result that shows where each department is located. This result is shown in Fig. 25.2. SQL queries are discussed in Section 25.4.

**Figure 25.2. Result of selecting distinct Department and Location data from table Employee.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Department</th>
<th>Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>New Jersey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611</td>
<td>Orlando</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>642</td>
<td>Los Angeles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25.3. Relational Database Overview: The books Database

This section overviews relational databases in the context of a sample books database we created for this chapter. Before we discuss SQL, we overview the tables of the books database. We use this database to introduce various database concepts, including how to use SQL to obtain information from the database and to manipulate the data. We provide a script to create the database. You can find the script in the examples directory for this chapter on the CD that accompanies this book. Section 25.5 explains how to use this script.

The database consists of four tables: authors, publishers, authorISBN and titles. The authors table (described in Fig. 25.3) consists of three columns that maintain each author's unique ID number, first name and last name. Figure 25.4 contains sample data from the authors table of the books database.

---

**Figure 25.3. authors table from books.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authorID</td>
<td>Author's ID number in the database. In the books database, this integer column is defined as autoincremented. For each row inserted in this table, the authorID value is increased by 1 automatically to ensure that each row has a unique authorID. This column represents the table's primary key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>firstName</td>
<td>Author's first name (a string).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lastName</td>
<td>Author's last name (a string).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Figure 25.4. Sample data from the authors table.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>firstName</th>
<th>lastName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The publishers table (described in Fig. 25.5) consists of two columns representing each publisher's unique ID and name. Figure 25.6 contains the data from the publishers table of the books database. The titles table (described in Fig. 25.7) consists of seven columns that maintain general information about each book in the database, including the ISBN, title, edition number, copyright year, publisher's ID number, name of a file containing an image of the book cover and price. The publisherID column is a foreign key a column in this table that matches the primary key column in another table (i.e., publisherID in the publishers table). Foreign keys are specified when creating a table. The foreign key helps maintain the Rule of Referential Integrity: Every foreign key value must appear as another table's primary key value. This enables the DBMS to determine whether the publisherID value for a particular book is valid. Foreign keys also allow related data in multiple tables to be selected from those tables for analytic purposesthis is known as joining the data. There is a one-to-many relationship between a primary key and a corresponding foreign key (e.g., one publisher can publish many books). This means that a foreign key can appear many times in its own table, but can only appear once (as the primary key) in another table. Figure 25.8 contains sample data from the titles table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>publisherID</td>
<td>The publisher's ID number in the database. This autoincremented integer is the table's primary key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publisherName</td>
<td>The name of the publisher (a string).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Figure 25.6. Data from the publishers table.
(This item is displayed on page 1193 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>publisherID</th>
<th>publisherName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Prentice Hall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Prentice Hall PTG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Figure 25.7. titles table from books.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>title</td>
<td>Title of the book (a string).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>copyright</td>
<td>Copyright year of the book (a string).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publisherID</td>
<td>Publisher's ID number (an integer). A foreign key that relates this table to the publishers table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imageFile</td>
<td>Name of the file containing the book's cover image (a string).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>price</td>
<td>Suggested retail price of the book (a real number). [Note: The prices shown in Fig. 25.8 are for example purposes only.]  [ Fig. 25.8 ]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Figure 25.8. Sample data from the titles table of books.
(This item is displayed on page 1195 in the print version)
The *authorISBN* table (described in *Fig. 25.9*) consists of two columns that maintain each ISBN and the corresponding author's ID number. This table associates authors with their books. Both columns are foreign keys that represent the relationship between the tables *authors* and *titles*: one row in table *authors* may be associated with many rows in table *titles*, and vice versa. *Figure 25.10* contains sample data from the *authorISBN* table of the *books* database. [Note: To save space, we have split the contents of this table into two columns, each containing the *authorID* and *isbn* columns.]

![Table](image File)

*Figure 25.9. authorISBN table from books.*
(This item is displayed on page 1195 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authorID</td>
<td>The author's ID number, a foreign key to the <em>authors</em> table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isbn</td>
<td>The ISBN for a book, a foreign key to the <em>titles</em> table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 25.10. Sample data from the authorISBN table of books. (This item is displayed on page 1195 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>isbn</th>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>isbn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0130895725</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0139163050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0130895725</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0130829293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0132261197</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0130284173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0130895717</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0130284181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0135289106</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0130895601</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 25.11 is an entity-relationship (ER) diagram for the books database. This diagram shows the tables in the database and the relationships among them. The first compartment in each box contains the table's name. The names in green are primary keys. A table's primary key uniquely identifies each row in the table. Every row must have a value in the primary key, and the value of the key must be unique in the table. This is known as the Rule of Entity Integrity.

Figure 25.11. Table relationships in books. (This item is displayed on page 1196 in the print version)

[View full size image]
Common Programming Error 25.1

Not providing a value for every column in a primary key breaks the Rule of Entity Integrity and causes the DBMS to report an error.

Common Programming Error 25.2

Providing the same value for the primary key in multiple rows causes the DBMS to report an error.

The lines connecting the tables in Fig. 25.11 represent the relationships between the tables. Consider the line between the publishers and titles tables. On the publishers end of the line, there is a 1, and on the titles end, there is an infinity symbol (∞), indicating a one-to-many relationship in which every publisher in the publishers table can have an arbitrary number of books in the titles table. Note that the relationship line links the publisherID column in the publishers table (i.e., its primary key) to the publisherID column in table titles (i.e., its foreign key). The publisherID column in the titles table is a foreign key.

Common Programming Error 25.3

Providing a foreign-key value that does not appear as a primary-key value in another table breaks the Rule of Referential Integrity and causes the DBMS to report an error.
The line between the `authorISBN` and `authors` tables indicates that for each author in the `authors` table, there can be an arbitrary number of ISBNs for books written by that author in the `authorISBN` table. The `authorID` column in the `authorISBN` table is a foreign key matching the `authorID` column (the primary key) of the `authors` table. Note again that the line between the tables links the foreign key in table `authorISBN` to the corresponding primary key in table `authors`. The `authorISBN` table associates rows in the `titles` and `authors` tables.

Finally, the line between the `titles` and `authorISBN` tables illustrates a one-to-many relationship; a title can be written by any number of authors. In fact, the sole purpose of the `authorISBN` table is to provide a many-to-many relationship between the `authors` and `titles` tables—an author can write any number of books and a book can have any number of authors.
25.4. SQL

We now provide an overview of SQL in the context of our *books* sample database. You will be able to use the SQL discussed here in the examples later in the chapter.

The SQL keywords listed in Fig. 25.12 are discussed in the context of complete SQL queries and statements in the next several subsections. Other SQL keywords are beyond the scope of this text. To learn other keywords, you could refer to the SQL reference guide supplied by the vendor of the RDBMS you are using. [Note: For more information on SQL, please refer to the Internet and Web resources in Section 25.12 and the Recommended Readings at the end of this chapter.]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SQL keyword</strong></th>
<th><strong>Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SELECT</strong></td>
<td>Retrieves data from one or more tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FROM</strong></td>
<td>Tables involved in the query. Required in every <strong>SELECT</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>WHERE</strong></td>
<td>Criteria for selection that determine the rows to be retrieved, deleted or updated. Optional in a SQL query or a SQL statement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GROUP BY</strong></td>
<td>Criteria for grouping rows. Optional in a <strong>SELECT</strong> query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ORDER BY</strong></td>
<td>Criteria for ordering rows. Optional in a <strong>SELECT</strong> query.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INNER JOIN</strong></td>
<td>Merge rows from multiple tables.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INSERT</strong></td>
<td>Insert rows into a specified table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>UPDATE</strong></td>
<td>Update rows in a specified table.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DELETE</strong></td>
<td>Delete rows from a specified table.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25.4.1. Basic **SELECT** Query

Let us consider several SQL queries that extract information from database books. A SQL query "selects" rows and columns from one or more tables in a database. Such selections are performed by queries with the **SELECT** keyword. The basic form of a **SELECT** query is

\[
\text{SELECT } * \text{ FROM } \text{tableName}
\]

in which the asterisk (*) indicates that all columns from the \textit{tableName} table should be retrieved. For example, to retrieve all the data in the \textit{authors} table, use

\[
\text{SELECT } * \text{ FROM } \text{authors}
\]

Most programs do not require all the data in a table. To retrieve only specific columns from a table, replace the asterisk (*) with a comma-separated list of the column names. For example, to retrieve only the columns \textit{authorID} and \textit{lastName} for all rows in the \textit{authors} table, use the query

\[
\text{SELECT } \text{authorID}, \text{lastName} \text{ FROM } \text{authors}
\]

This query returns the data listed in **Fig. 25.13**.

**Figure 25.13. Sample \textit{authorID} and \textit{lastName} data from the \textit{authors} table.**

(This item is displayed on page 1198 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>lastName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Software Engineering Observation 25.2

For most queries, the asterisk (*) should not be used to specify column names. In general, programmers process results by knowing in advance the order of the columns in the result for example selecting `authorID` and `lastName` from table authors ensures that the columns will appear in the result with `authorID` as the first column and `lastName` as the second column. Programs typically process result columns by specifying the column number in the result (starting from number 1 for the first column). Selecting columns by name also avoids returning unneeded columns and protects against changes in the actual order of the columns in the table(s).

Common Programming Error 25.4

If a programmer assumes that the columns are always returned in the same order from a query that uses the asterisk (*), the program may process the result incorrectly. If the column order in the table(s) changes or if additional columns are added at a later time, the order of the columns in the result would change accordingly.

25.4.2. WHERE Clause

In most cases, it is necessary to locate rows in a database that satisfy certain selection criteria. Only rows that satisfy the selection criteria (formally called predicates) are selected. SQL uses the optional WHERE clause in a query to
specify the selection criteria for the query. The basic form of a query with selection criteria is

\[
\text{SELECT columnName1, columnName2, ... FROM tableName WHERE criteria}
\]

For example, to select the title, editionNumber and copyright columns from table titles for which the copyright date is greater than 2002, use the query

\[
\text{SELECT title, editionNumber, copyright FROM titles WHERE copyright > 2002}
\]

Figure 25.14 shows the result of the preceding query. The WHERE clause criteria can contain the operators $<$, $>$, $<=$, $=>$, $=$, $<>$ and LIKE. Operator LIKE is used for pattern matching with wildcard characters percent (%) and underscore (_). Pattern matching allows SQL to search for strings that match a given pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>title</th>
<th>editionNumber</th>
<th>copyright</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Complete C++ Training Course</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Java How to Program</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C How to Program</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet and World Wide Web How to Program</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Java How to Program</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C# How to Program</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
zero or more characters at the percent character's position in the pattern. For example, the following query locates the rows of all the authors whose last name starts with the letter D:

```sql
SELECT authorID, firstName, lastName
FROM authors
WHERE lastName LIKE 'D%'
```

The preceding query selects the two rows shown in Fig. 25.15, because two of the four authors in our database have a last name starting with the letter D (followed by zero or more characters). The % in the WHERE clause's LIKE pattern indicates that any number of characters can appear after the letter D in the lastName column. Note that the pattern string is surrounded by single-quote characters.

**Figure 25.15. Authors whose last name starts with D from the authors table.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>firstName</th>
<th>lastName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Portability Tip 25.1**

See the documentation for your database system to determine whether SQL is case sensitive on your system and to determine the syntax for SQL keywords (i.e., should they be all uppercase letters, all lowercase letters or some combination of the two?).

**Portability Tip 25.2**
Read your database system’s documentation carefully to determine whether your system supports the LIKE operator.

**Portability Tip 25.3**

Some databases use the * character in place of the % character in a pattern.

An underscore (_) in the pattern string indicates a single wildcard character at that position in the pattern. For example, the following query locates the rows of all the authors whose last names start with any character (specified by _), followed by the letter i, followed by any number of additional characters (specified by %):

```
SELECT authorID, firstName, lastName
FROM authors
WHERE lastName LIKE '_i%'
```

The preceding query produces the row shown in Fig. 25.16, because only one author in our database has a last name that contains the letter i as its second letter.

**Figure 25.16.** The only author from the authors table whose last name contains i as the second letter.

(This item is displayed on page 1200 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>firstName</th>
<th>lastName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tem</td>
<td>Nieto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Portability Tip 25.4

Some database systems use the ? character in place of the _ character in a pattern.

25.4.3. ORDER BY Clause

The rows in the result of a query can be sorted into ascending or descending order by using the optional ORDER BY clause. The basic form of a query with an ORDER BY clause is

```sql
SELECT columnName1, columnName2, ... FROM tableName ORDER BY column ASC
```

```sql
SELECT columnName1, columnName2, ... FROM tableName ORDER BY column DESC
```

where ASC specifies ascending order (lowest to highest), DESC specifies descending order (highest to lowest) and column specifies the column on which the sort is based. For example, to obtain the list of authors in ascending order by last name (Fig. 25.17), use the query

```sql
SELECT authorID, firstName, lastName FROM authors ORDER BY lastName ASC
```

Figure 25.17. Sample data from table authors in ascending order by lastName.
Note that the default sorting order is ascending, so `ASC` is optional. To obtain the same list of authors in descending order by last name (Fig. 25.18), use the query

```
SELECT authorID, firstName, lastName
FROM authors
ORDER BY lastName DESC
```

**Figure 25.18. Sample data from table authors in descending order by lastName.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>firstName</th>
<th>lastName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sean</td>
<td>Santry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tem</td>
<td>Nieto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
where `sortingOrder` is either `ASC` or `DESC`. Note that the `sortingOrder` does not have to be identical for each column. The query

```
SELECT authorID, firstName, lastName
FROM authors
ORDER BY lastName, firstName
```

sorts all the rows in ascending order by last name, then by first name. If any rows have the same last name value, they are returned sorted by first name (Fig. 25.19).

**Figure 25.19. Sample data from authors in ascending order by lastName and firstName.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>firstName</th>
<th>lastName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tem</td>
<td>Nieto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sean</td>
<td>Santry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `WHERE` and `ORDER BY` clauses can be combined in one query. For example, the query

```
SELECT isbn, title, editionNumber, copyright, price
FROM titles
WHERE title LIKE '%How to Program'
ORDER BY title ASC
```

returns the `isbn`, `title`, `editionNumber`, `copyright` and `price` of each book in the `titles` table that has a `title` ending with "How to Program" and sorts them in ascending order by `title`. A portion of the query results are shown in Fig. 25.20.

**Figure 25.20. Sampling of books from table titles whose**
25.4.4. Merging Data from Multiple Tables: **INNER JOIN**

Database designers often split related data into separate tables to ensure that a database does not store data redundantly. For example, the *books* database has tables *authors* and *titles*. We use an *authorISBN* table to store the relationship data between authors and their corresponding titles. If we did not separate this information into individual tables, we would need to include author information with each entry in the *titles* table. This would result in the database storing duplicate author information for authors who wrote multiple books. Often, it is necessary to merge data from multiple tables into a single result. Referred to as joining the tables, this is specified by an **INNER JOIN** operator in the query. An **INNER JOIN** merges rows from two tables by matching
values in columns that are common to the tables. The basic form of an INNER JOIN is:

```
SELECT columnName1, columnName2,...
FROM table1
INNER JOIN table2
  ON table1.columnName = table2.columnName
```

The ON clause of the INNER JOIN specifies the columns from each table that are compared to determine which rows are merged. For example, the following query produces a list of authors accompanied by the ISBNs for books written by each author:

```
SELECT firstName, lastName, isbn
FROM authors
INNER JOIN authorISBN
  ON authors.authorID = authorISBN.authorID
ORDER BY lastName, firstName
```

The query merges data from the firstName and lastName columns from table authors with the isbn column from table authorISBN, sorting the result in ascending order by lastName and firstName. Note the use of the syntax tableName.columnName in the ON clause. This syntax (called a qualified name) specifies the columns from each table that should be compared to join the tables. The "tableName." syntax is required if the columns have the same name in both tables. The same syntax can be used in any query to distinguish columns in different tables that have the same name. In some systems, table names qualified with the database name can be used to perform cross-database queries.

**Software Engineering Observation 25.3**

*If a SQL statement includes columns from multiple tables that have the same name, the statement must precede those column names with their table names and a dot (e.g., authors.authorID).*
Common Programming Error 25.5

In a query, failure to qualify names for columns that have the same name in two or more tables is an error.

As always, the query can contain an \texttt{ORDER BY} clause. \textbf{Figure 25.21} depicts a portion of the results of the preceding query, ordered by \texttt{lastName} and \texttt{firstName}.

\textit{Note: To save space, we split the result of the query into two columns, each containing the \texttt{firstName}, \texttt{lastName} and \texttt{isbn} columns.}

\textbf{Figure 25.21. Sampling of authors and ISBNs for the books they have written in ascending order by \texttt{lastName} and \texttt{firstName}.}

\begin{tabular}{llllll}
\hline
\texttt{firstName} & \texttt{lastName} & \texttt{isbn} & \texttt{firstName} & \texttt{lastName} & \texttt{isbn} \\
\hline
Harvey & Deitel & 0130895601 & Paul & Deitel & 0130895717 \\
Harvey & Deitel & 0130284181 & Paul & Deitel & 0132261197 \\
Harvey & Deitel & 0134569555 & Paul & Deitel & 0130895725 \\
Harvey & Deitel & 0139163050 & Paul & Deitel & 0130829293 \\
Harvey & Deitel & 0135289106 & Paul & Deitel & 0134569555 \\
Harvey & Deitel & 0130895717 & Paul & Deitel & 0130829277 \\
Harvey & Deitel & 0130284173 & Tem & Nieto & 0130161438 \\
Harvey & Deitel & 0130829293 & Tem & Nieto & 013028419x \\
Paul & Deitel & 0130852473 & Sean & Santry & 0130895601 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
25.4.5. **INSERT** Statement

The **INSERT** statement inserts a row into a table. The basic form of this statement is

```
INSERT INTO tableName ( columnName1, columnName2, ..., columnNameN )
VALUES ( value1, value2, ..., valueN )
```

where `tableName` is the table in which to insert the row. The `tableName` is followed by a comma-separated list of column names in parentheses (this list is not required if the **INSERT** operation specifies a value for every column of the table in the correct order). The list of column names is followed by the SQL keyword **VALUES** and a comma-separated list of values in parentheses. The values specified here must match the columns specified after the table name in both order and type (e.g., if `columnName1` is supposed to be the `firstName` column, then `value1` should be a string in single quotes representing the first name). Always explicitly list the columns when inserting rows. If the order of the columns changes in the table, using only **VALUES** may cause an error. The **INSERT** statement

```
INSERT INTO authors (firstName, lastName)
VALUES ( 'Sue', 'Smith' )
```

inserts a row into the `authors` table. The statement indicates that values are provided for the `firstName` and `lastName` columns. The corresponding values are 'Sue' and 'Smith'. We do not specify an `authorID` in this example because `authorID` is an **autoincremented column** in the `authors` table. For every row added to this table, MySQL assigns a unique `authorID` value that is the next value in the autoincremented sequence (i.e., 1, 2, 3 and so on). In this case, Sue Smith would be assigned `authorID` number 5. **Figure 25.22** shows the `authors` table after the **INSERT** operation. [Note: Not every database management system supports autoincremented columns. Check the documentation for your DBMS for alternatives to autoincremented columns.]
Figure 25.22. Sample data from table Authors after an INSERT operation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>firstName</th>
<th>lastName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tem</td>
<td>Nieto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sean</td>
<td>Santry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>Smith</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Common Programming Error 25.6

It is an error to specify a value for an autoincrement column.

Common Programming Error 25.7

SQL uses the single-quote (') character as a delimiter for strings. To specify a string containing a single quote (e.g., O'Malley) in a SQL statement, the string must have two single quotes in the position where the single-quote character appears in the string (e.g., 'O''Malley'). The first of the two single-quote characters acts as an escape character for the second. Not escaping singlequote characters in a string that is part of a SQL statement is a SQL syntax error.

25.4.6. UPDATE Statement
An **UPDATE** statement modifies data in a table. The basic form of the **UPDATE** statement is

```sql
UPDATE tableName
SET columnName1 = value1, columnName2 = value2, ..., columnNameN = valueN
WHERE criteria
```

where `tableName` is the table to update. The `tableName` is followed by keyword **SET** and a comma-separated list of column name-value pairs in the format `columnName = value`. The optional **WHERE** clause provides criteria that determine which rows to update. Though not required, the **WHERE** clause is typically used, unless a change is to be made to every row. The **UPDATE** statement

```sql
UPDATE authors
SET lastName = 'Jones'
WHERE lastName = 'Smith' AND firstName = 'Sue'
```

updates a row in the `authors` table. The statement indicates that `lastName` will be assigned the value `Jones` for the row in which `lastName` is equal to `Smith` and `firstName` is equal to `Sue`. [Note: If there are multiple rows with the first name "Sue" and the last name "Smith," this statement will modify all such rows to have the last name "Jones." ] If we know the `authorID` in advance of the **UPDATE** operation (possibly because we searched for it previously), the **WHERE** clause could be simplified as follows:

```sql
WHERE AuthorID = 5
```

**Figure 25.23** shows the `authors` table after the **UPDATE** operation has taken place.

**Figure 25.23. Sample data from table authors after an **UPDATE** operation.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>firstName</th>
<th>lastName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 25.4.7. **DELETE** Statement

A SQL **DELETE** statement removes rows from a table. The basic form of a **DELETE** statement is

```sql
DELETE FROM tableName WHERE criteria
```

where *tableName* is the table from which to delete. The optional **WHERE** clause specifies the criteria used to determine which rows to delete. The **DELETE** statement

```sql
DELETE FROM authors
    WHERE lastName = 'Jones' AND firstName = 'Sue'
```

deletes the row for Sue Jones in the *authors* table. If we know the *authorID* in advance of the **DELETE** operation, the **WHERE** clause can be simplified as follows:

```sql
WHERE authorID = 5
```

**Figure 25.24** shows the *authors* table after the **DELETE** operation has taken place.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Harvey</th>
<th>Deitel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tem</td>
<td>Nieto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sean</td>
<td>Santry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25.5. Instructions to install MySQL and MySQL Connector/J

The CD that accompanies this book includes MySQL 4.0.20 an open-source database management system. MySQL executes on many platforms, including Windows, Solaris, Linux, and Macintosh. Complete information about MySQL is available from

www.mysql.com/products/mysql/

To install MySQL:

1. Insert the CD into the CD drive (the D: drive on our system), and change directories to D: \ software \ MySQL \ mysql-4.0.20c-win.

2. Double click SETUP.EXE to start the MySQL installer. Follow the instructions to install MySQL in the C: \ mysql directory, which is the default directory.

Instructions for installing MySQL can also be found in Chapter 2 of the MySQL Manual at dev.mysql.com/doc/mysql/en/index.html.

To use MySQL with JDBC, you also need to install MySQL Connector/J a JDBC driver that allows programs to access MySQL databases via JDBC. MySQL Connector/J is on the CD that accompanies this book and can also be downloaded from

www.mysql.com/products/connector/j/

At the time of this writing, the current stable release of MySQL Connector/J is 3.0.14. To install MySQL Connector/J:


2. Open mysql-connector-java-3.0.14-production.zip with a file extractor, such as WinZip, which can be downloaded from www.winzip.com. Extract its content to the C:\ drive. This will create a directory named mysql-connector-java-3.0.14-production. The documentation for MySQL Connector/J is in connector-j-en.pdf in the docs subdirectory of mysql-connector-java-3.0.14-production, or you can view it online at dev.mysql.com/doc/connector/j/en/index.html.
25.6. Instructions on Setting MySQL User Account

For the examples in the book to execute correctly, you need to set up a user account that allows users to create, delete and modify a database. After MySQL is installed, follow the steps below to set up a user account (these steps assume MySQL is installed in its default installation directory):

1. Open a **Command Prompt** and start the database server by executing the `C:\mysql\bin\mysqld` script.

2. Open another **Command Prompt** and change to the `C:\mysql\bin` directory. To start the MySQL monitor so you can set up a user account, execute the command

   ```
   C:\mysql\bin>mysql -h localhost -u root
   ```

3. For our examples, we set up a user account on the local computer (localhost) with the username set "jhtp6" and the password "jhtp6". To do this, execute the following commands in the **Command Prompt** created in Step 2:

   ```
   mysql> USE mysql;
   mysql> INSERT INTO user SET Host='localhost', User='jhtp6', Password=PASSWORD('jhtp6'), Select_priv='Y', InsertPriv='Y', UpdatePriv='Y', DeletePriv='Y', CreatePriv='Y', DropPriv='Y', ReferencesPriv='Y', ExecutePriv='Y';
   mysql> FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
   mysql> exit;
   ```
25.7. Creating Database books in MySQL

For each MySQL database we discuss in this book, we provide a SQL script that will set up the database and its tables. These scripts can be executed with a command-line tool called `mysql` that is part of the MySQL installation. In the examples directory for this chapter on the CD that accompanies this book, you will find the SQL script `books.sql`.

To create the books database:

1. Open a **Command Prompt** and change to the `C:\mysql\bin` directory. [*Note: If you installed MySQL on a directory other than C:\mysql, replace C:\mysql with your MySQL installation directory.*]

2. Start the database server by executing the command

   ```bash
   C:\mysql\bin>mysqld
   ```

3. Copy the SQL script `books.sql` to the `C:\mysql\bin` directory. [*Note: If you installed MySQL on a directory other than C:\mysql, replace C:\mysql with your MySQL installation directory.*]

4. Open a new **Command Prompt** and change to the `C:\mysql\bin` directory. [*Note: If you installed MySQL on a directory other than C:\mysql, replace C:\mysql with your MySQL installation directory.*]

5. Create the books database by executing the command

   ```bash
   C:\mysql\bin>mysql -h localhost -u jhtp6 -p < books.sql
   ```

When the above command is executed, you are prompted for entering the password, which is `jhtp6`. After completing this task, a new directory named `books` will be created in the `C:\mysql\data` directory. This new directory contains the `books` database. You are now ready to proceed to the first JDBC example.
25.8. Manipulating Databases with JDBC

In this section, we present two examples. The first example introduces how to connect to a database and query the database. The second example demonstrates how to display the result of the query in a JTable.

25.8.1. Connecting to and Querying a Database

The example of Fig. 25.25 performs a simple query on the books database that retrieves the entire authors table and displays the data. The program illustrates connecting to the database, querying the database and processing the result. The following discussion presents the key JDBC aspects of the program. [Note: Section 25.5 demonstrates how to start the MySQL server, how to prepare the MySQL database and how to create the books database. The steps in Section 25.5 must be performed before executing the program of Fig. 25.25.]

Figure 25.25. Displaying the authors table from the books database.

(This item is displayed on pages 1208 - 1209 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 25.25: DisplayAuthors.java
2 // Displaying the contents of the authors table.
3 import java.sql.Connection;
4 import java.sql.Statement;
5 import java.sql.DriverManager;
6 import java.sql.ResultSet;
7 import java.sql.ResultSetMetaData;
8 import java.sql.SQLException;
9
10 public class DisplayAuthors {
11   {
12     // JDBC driver name and database URL
13     static final String JDBC_DRIVER = "com.mysql.jdbc.Driver";
14     static final String DATABASE_URL = "jdbc:mysql://localhost/books";
15
16     // launch the application
17     public static void main( String args[] )
18     {
19         Connection connection = null; // manages connection
```
Statement statement = null;  // query statement

// connect to database books and query database
try
{
    Class.forName( JDBC_DRIVER );  // load database driver class

    // establish connection to database
    connection =
        DriverManager.getConnection( DATABASE_URL, "jhtp6", "jhtp6" );

    // create Statement for querying database
    statement = connection.createStatement();

    // query database
    ResultSet resultSet = statement.executeQuery(
        "SELECT authorID, firstName, lastName FROM authors" );

    // process query results
    ResultSetMetaData metaData = resultSet.getMetaData();
    int numberOfColumns = metaData.getColumnCount();
    System.out.println( "Authors Table of Books Database:" );
    for ( int i = 1; i <= numberOfColumns; i++ )
    {
        System.out.printf( "%-8s\t", metaData.getColumnName( i ) );
    }
    System.out.println();
    while ( resultSet.next() )
    {
        for ( int i = 1; i <= numberOfColumns; i++ )
        {
            System.out.printf( "%-8s\t", resultSet.getObject( i ) );
        }
        System.out.println();
    }
}  // end try
catch ( SQLException sqlException )
{
    sqlException.printStackTrace();
    System.exit( 1 );
}  // end catch
catch ( ClassNotFoundException classNotFound )
{
    classNotFound.printStackTrace();
    System.exit( 1 );
}  // end catch
finally  // ensure statement and connection are closed properly
{
    try
    {
        statement.close();
        connection.close();
    }  // end try
    catch ( Exception exception )
    {
        exception.printStackTrace();
        System.exit( 1 );
    }  // end catch
}  // end finally
}  // end main
}  // end class DisplayAuthors
Lines 38 import the JDBC interfaces and classes from package `java.sql` used in this program. Line 13 declares a `String` constant that contains the MySQL JDBC driver's class name. The program will use this value to load the proper driver into memory. Line 14 declares a string constant for the database URL. This identifies the name of the database to connect to, as well as information about the protocol used by the JDBC driver (discussed shortly). Method `main` (lines 1776) connects to the books database, queries the database, displays the result of the query and closes the database connection.

The program must load the database driver before connecting to the database. Line 25 uses `static` method `forName` of class `Class` to load the class for the database driver. This line throws a checked exception of type `java.lang.ClassNotFoundException` if the class loader cannot locate the driver class. To avoid this exception, you need to include the `mysql-connector-java-3.0.14-production-bin.jar` (in the `C:\mysql-connector-java-3.0.14-production` directory) in your program's classpath when you execute the program, as in:

```
java -classpath c:\mysql-connector-java-3.0.14-production\mysql-3.0.14-production-bin.jar;. DisplayAuthors
```

In the above command, notice the period (.) before `DisplayAuthors`. If this period is missing, the JVM will not find the `DisplayAuthors` class file. You may also copy the `mysql-connector-java-3.0.14-production-bin.jar` file to the JRE's `lib\ext` directory, e.g., `C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.5.0\jre\lib\ext`. After doing so, you could run the
JDBC supports four categories of drivers: **JDBC-to-ODBC bridge driver** (Type 1), **Native-API, partly Java driver** (Type 2), **Pure Java client to server driver** (Type 3) and **Pure Java driver** (Type 4). A description of each driver type is shown in **Fig. 25.26**. The MySQL driver `com.mysql.jdbc.Driver` is a Type-4 driver.

**Figure 25.26. JDBC driver types.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The JDBC-to-ODBC bridge driver connects Java programs to Microsoft ODBC (Open Database Connectivity) data sources. The Java 2 Software Development Kit from Sun Microsystems, Inc. includes the JDBC-to-ODBC Bridge driver (<code>sun.jdbc.odbc.JdbcOdbcDriver</code>). This driver typically requires the ODBC driver on the client computer and normally requires configuration of ODBC data sources. The Bridge driver was introduced primarily for development purposes, before other types of drivers were available, and should not be used for production applications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Native-API, partly Java drivers enable JDBC programs to use database-specific APIs (normally written in C or C++) that allow client programs to access databases via the Java Native Interface (JNI). JNI is a bridge between a JVM and code written and compiled in a platform-specific language such as C or C++. Such code is known as native code. JNI enables Java applications to interact with native code. A Type 2 driver translates JDBC into database-specific calls. Type 2 drivers were introduced for reasons similar to the Type 1 ODBC bridge driver.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Pure Java client to server drivers take JDBC requests and translate them into a network protocol that is not database specific. These requests are sent to a server, which translates the database requests into a database-specific protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Pure Java drivers implement database-specific network protocols, so that Java programs can connect directly to a database.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Software Engineering Observation 25.4
Most major database vendors provide their own JDBC database drivers, and many third-party vendors provide JDBC drivers as well. For more information on JDBC drivers, visit the Sun Microsystems JDBC Web site, servlet.java.sun.com/products/jdbc/drivers.

Software Engineering Observation 25.5

On the Microsoft Windows platform, most databases support access via Open Database Connectivity (ODBC). ODBC is a technology developed by Microsoft to allow generic access to disparate database systems on the Windows platform (and some UNIX platforms). The JDBC-to-ODBC Bridge allows any Java program to access any ODBC data source. The driver is class JdbcOdbcDriver in package sun.jdbc.odbc.

Lines 2829 of Fig. 25.25 creates a Connection object (package java.sql) referenced by connection. An object that implements interface Connection manages the connection between the Java program and the database. Connection objects enable programs to create SQL statements that access databases. The program initializes Connection with the result of a call to static method getConnection of class DriverManager (package java.sql), which attempts to connect to the database specified by its URL. Method getConnection takes three argumentsa String that specifies the database URL, a String that specifies the username and a String that specifies the password. The username and password are set in Section 25.6. If you used different username and password, you need to replace the username (second argument) and password (third argument) passed to method getConnection in line 29. The URL locates the database (possibly on a network or in the local file system of the computer). The URL jdbc:mysql://localhost/books specifies the protocol for communication (jdbc), the subprotocol for communication (mysql) and the location of the database (//localhost/books, where localhost is the name of the MySQL server host and books is the database name). The subprotocol mysql indicates that the program uses a MySQL-specific subprotocol to connect to the MySQL database. If the DriverManager cannot connect to the database, method getConnection throws a SQLException (package java.sql). Figure 25.27 lists the JDBC driver names and database URL formats of several popular RDBMSs.
### Software Engineering Observation 25.6

Most database management systems require the user to log in before accessing the database contents. `DriverManager` method `getConnection` is overloaded with versions that enable the program to supply the user name and password to gain access.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RDBMS</th>
<th>JDBC driver name</th>
<th>Database URL format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MySQL</td>
<td><code>com.mysql.jdbc.Driver</code></td>
<td><code>jdbc:mysql://hostname/databaseName</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORACLE</td>
<td><code>oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver</code></td>
<td><code>jdbc:oracle:thin:@hostname:portNumber:databaseName</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB2</td>
<td><code>COM.ibm.db2.jdbc.net.DB2Driver</code></td>
<td><code>jdbc:db2:hostname:portnumber/databaseName</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sybase</td>
<td><code>com.sybase.jdbc_SYbDriver</code></td>
<td><code>jdbc:sybase:Tds:hostname:portnumber/databaseName</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Line 32 invokes `Connection` method `createStatement` to obtain an object that implements interface `Statement` (package `java.sql`). The program uses the `Statement` object to submit SQL to the database.

Lines 3536 use the `Statement` object's `executeQuery` method to submit a query that selects all the author information from table `authors`. This method returns an object that implements interface `ResultSet` and contains the result of the query. The `ResultSet` methods enable the program to manipulate the query result.

Lines 3952 process the `ResultSet`. Line 39 obtains the `metadata` for the `ResultSet` as a `ResultSetMetaData` (package `java.sql`) object. The metadata describes the `ResultSet`'s contents. Programs can use metadata
programmatically to obtain information about the ResultSet's column names and types. Line 40 uses ResultSetMetaData method getColumnCount to retrieve the number of columns in the ResultSet. Lines 42-43 display the column names.

**Software Engineering Observation 25.7**

> Metadata enables programs to process ResultSet contents dynamically when detailed information about the ResultSet is not known in advance.

Lines 47-52 display the data in each ResultSet row. Before processing the ResultSet, the program positions the ResultSet cursor to the first row in the ResultSet with method `next` (line 47). The cursor points to the current row. Method `next` returns a boolean value `true` if it is able to position to the next row; otherwise the method returns `false`.

**Common Programming Error 25.8**

> Initially, a ResultSet cursor is positioned before the first row. Attempting to access a ResultSet's contents before positioning the ResultSet cursor to the first row with method `next` causes a SQLException.

If there are rows in the ResultSet, line 50 extracts the contents of one column in the current row. When processing a ResultSet, it is possible to extract each column of the ResultSet as a specific Java type. In fact, ResultSetMetaData method `getColumnType` returns a constant integer from class `Types` (package `java.sql`) indicating the type of a specified column. Programs can use these values in a switch statement to invoke ResultSet methods that return the column values as appropriate Java types. If the type of a column is `Types.INT`, ResultSet method `getInt` returns the column value as an `int`. ResultSet `get` methods typically receive as an argument either a `column number` (as an `int`) or a `column name` (as a `String`) indicating which column's value to obtain. Visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/jdbc/getstart/GettingStartedTOC.fm.html
for detailed mappings of SQL data types to Java types and to determine the appropriate ResultSet method to call for each SQL data type.

Performance Tip 25.1

If a query specifies the exact columns to select from the database, the ResultSet contains the columns in the specified order. In this case, using the column number to obtain the column’s value is more efficient than using the column name. The column number provides direct access to the specified column. Using the column name requires a linear search of the column names to locate the appropriate column.

For simplicity, this example treats each value as an Object. The program retrieves each column value with ResultSet method getObject (line 50) and prints the String representation of the Object. Note that, unlike array indices, which start at 0, ResultSet column numbers start at 1. The finally block (lines 6476) closes the Statement (line 68) and the database Connection (line 69).

Common Programming Error 25.9

Specifying column number 0 when obtaining values from a ResultSet causes a SQLException.

Common Programming Error 25.10

Attempting to manipulate a ResultSet after closing the Statement that created the ResultSet causes a SQLException. The program discards the ResultSet when the corresponding Statement is closed.
Each Statement object can open only one ResultSet object at a time. When a Statement returns a new ResultSet, the Statement closes the prior ResultSet. To use multiple ResultSets in parallel, separate Statement objects must return the ResultSets.

25.8.2. Querying the books Database

The next example (Fig. 25.28 and Fig. 25.31) allows the user to enter any query into the program. The example displays the result of a query in a JTable, using a TableCellModel object to provide the ResultSet data to the JTable. Class ResultSetTableModel (Fig. 25.28) performs the connection to the database and maintains the ResultSet. Class DisplayQueryResults (Fig. 25.31) creates the GUI and specifies an instance of class ResultSetTableModel to provide data for the JTable.

Figure 25.28. ResultSetTableModel enables a JTable to display the contents of a ResultSet.

(This item is displayed on pages 1214 - 1217 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 25.28: ResultSetTableModel.java
// A TableModel that supplies ResultSet data to a JTable.
import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.Statement;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.sql.ResultSet;
import java.sql.ResultSetMetaData;
import java.sql.SQLException;
import javax.swing.table.AbstractTableModel;

// ResultSet rows and columns are counted from 1 and JTable
// rows and columns are counted from 0. When processing
// ResultSet rows or columns for use in a JTable, it is
// necessary to add 1 to the row or column number to manipulate
// the appropriate ResultSet column (i.e., JTable column 0 is
```
public class ResultSetTableModel extends AbstractTableModel
{
    private Connection connection;
    private Statement statement;
    private ResultSet resultSet;
    private ResultSetMetaData metaData;
    private int numberOfRows;

    // keep track of database connection status
    private boolean connectedToDatabase = false;

    // constructor initializes resultSet and obtains its meta data object;
    // determines number of rows
    public ResultSetTableModel( String driver, String url,
                                String username, String password, String query )
        throws SQLException, ClassNotFoundException
    {
        // load database driver class
        Class.forName( driver );

        // connect to database
        connection = DriverManager.getConnection( url, username, password );

        // create Statement to query database
        statement = connection.createStatement(
            ResultSet.TYPE_SCROLL_INSENSITIVE,
            ResultSet.CONCUR_READ_ONLY);

        // update database connection status
        connectedToDatabase = true;

        // set query and execute it
        setQuery( query );
    }

    // get class that represents column type
    public Class getColumnClass( int column )
        throws IllegalStateException
    {
        // ensure database connection is available
        if ( !connectedToDatabase )
            throw new IllegalStateException( "Not Connected to Database" );

        // determine Java class of column
        try
        {
            String className = metaData.getColumnClassName( column + 1 );

            // return Class object that represents className
            return Class.forName( className );
        } // end try
        catch ( Exception exception )
        {
            exception.printStackTrace();
        } // end catch

        return Object.class; // if problems occur above, assume type Object
    }

    // get number of columns in ResultSet
    public int getColumnCount() throws IllegalStateException
    {
// ensure database connection is available
if ( !connectedToDatabase )
    throw new IllegalStateException( "Not Connected to Database" );

// determine number of columns
try {
    return metaData.getColumnCount();
} // end try
catch ( SQLException sqlException ) {
    sqlException.printStackTrace();
} // end catch

return 0; // if problems occur above, return 0 for number of columns

// get name of a particular column in ResultSet
public String getColumnName( int column ) throws IllegalStateException {
    // ensure database connection is available
    if ( !connectedToDatabase )
        throw new IllegalStateException( "Not Connected to Database" );

    // determine column name
    try {
        return metaData.getColumnName( column + 1 );
    } // end try
    catch ( SQLException sqlException ) {
        sqlException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch

    return ""; // if problems, return empty string for column name
} // end method getColumnName

// return number of rows in ResultSet
public int getRowCount() throws IllegalStateException {
    // ensure database connection is available
    if ( !connectedToDatabase )
        throw new IllegalStateException( "Not Connected to Database" );

    return numberOfRows;
} // end method getRowCount

// obtain value in particular row and column
public Object getValueAt( int row, int column ) throws IllegalStateException {
    // ensure database connection is available
    if ( !connectedToDatabase )
        throw new IllegalStateException( "Not Connected to Database" );

    // obtain a value at specified ResultSet row and column
    try {
        resultSet.absolute( row + 1 );
        return resultSet.getObject( column + 1 );
    } // end try
    catch ( SQLException sqlException ) {
        sqlException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch

    return null; // if problems occur above, return null for value
} // end method getValueAt
Class ResultSetTableModel (Fig. 25.28) extends class AbstractTableModel (package javax.swing.table), which implements interface TableModel. Class
ResultSetTableModel overridesTableModel methods getColumnClass, getColumnCount, getColumnName, getRowCount and getValueAt. The default implementations ofTableModel methods isCellEditable and setValueAt (provided byAbstractTableModel) are not overridden, because this example does not support editing theJTable cells. The default implementations ofTableModel methods addTableModelListener and removeTableModelListener (provided byAbstractTableModel) are not overridden, because the implementations of these methods inAbstractTableModel properly add and remove event listeners.

The ResultSetTableModel constructor (lines 3050) accepts five String argumentsthe driver class name, the URL of the database, the username, the password and the default query to perform. The constructor throws any exceptions that occur in its body back to the application that created the ResultSetTableModel object, so that the application can determine how to handle the exception (e.g., report an error and terminate the application). Line 35 loads the database driver. Line 38 establishes a connection to the database. Lines 4143 invokeConnection method createStatement to create a Statement object. This example uses a version ofmethod createStatement that takes two arguments: the result set type and the result set concurrency. The result set type (Fig. 25.29) specifies whether the ResultSet's cursor is able to scroll in both directions or forward only and whether the ResultSet is sensitive to changes. ResultSets that are sensitive to changes immediately after they are made with methods of interface ResultSet. If a ResultSet is insensitive to changes, the query that produced the ResultSet must be executed again to reflect any changes made. The result set concurrency (Fig. 25.30) specifies whether the ResultSet can be updated with ResultSet's update methods. This example uses a ResultSet that is scrollable, insensitive to changes and read only. Line 49 invokes ResultSetTableModel method setQuery (lines 148167) to perform the default query.

---

Portability Tip 25.5

Some JDBC drivers do not support scrollable ResultSets. In such cases, the driver typically returns a ResultSet in which the cursor can move only forward. For more information, see your database driver documentation.
Portability Tip 25.6

Some JDBC drivers do not support updatable `ResultSet`. In such cases, the driver typically returns a read-only `ResultSet`. For more information, see your database driver documentation.

Common Programming Error 25.11

Attempting to update a `ResultSet` when the database driver does not support updatable `ResultSets` causes `SQLExceptions`.

Figure 25.29. `ResultSet` constants for specifying `ResultSet` type.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>ResultSet</code> static type constant</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>TYPE_FORWARD_ONLY</code></td>
<td>Specifies that a <code>ResultSet</code>'s cursor can move only in the forward direction (i.e., from the first row to the last row in the <code>ResultSet</code>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>TYPE_SCROLL_INSENSITIVE</code></td>
<td>Specifies that a <code>ResultSet</code>'s cursor can scroll in either direction and that the changes made to the <code>ResultSet</code> during <code>ResultSet</code> processing are not reflected in the <code>ResultSet</code> unless the program queries the database again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>TYPE_SCROLL_SENSITIVE</code></td>
<td>Specifies that a <code>ResultSet</code>'s cursor can scroll in either direction and that the changes made to the <code>ResultSet</code> during <code>ResultSet</code> processing are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 25.30. ResultSet constants for specifying result properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ResultSet static concurrency constant</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CONCUR_READ_ONLY</td>
<td>Specifies that a ResultSet cannot be updated (i.e., changes to the ResultSet contents cannot be reflected in the database with ResultSet's update methods).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONCUR_UPDATABLE</td>
<td>Specifies that a ResultSet can be updated (i.e., changes to the ResultSet contents can be reflected in the database with ResultSet's update methods).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Common Programming Error 25.12

Attempting to move the cursor backwards through a ResultSet when the database driver does not support backwards scrolling causes a SQLException.

Method getColumnClass (lines 5373) returns a Class object that represents the superclass of all objects in a particular column. The JTable uses this information to configure the default cell renderer and cell editor for that column in the JTable. Line 62 uses ResultSetMetaData method getColumnClassName to obtain the fully qualified class name for the specified column. Line 65 loads the class and returns the corresponding Class object. If an exception occurs, the catch in lines 6770 prints a stack trace and line 72 returns Object.class the Class instance that represents class Object as the default type. [Note: Line 62 uses the argument column + 1. Like arrays, JTable row and column numbers are counted from 0. However, ResultSet row and column numbers are counted from 1. Thus, when
processing ResultSet rows or columns for use in a JTable, it is necessary to add 1 to the row or column number to manipulate the appropriate ResultSet row or column.]

Method getColumnCount (lines 7693) returns the number of columns in the model's underlying ResultSet. Line 85 uses ResultSetMetaData method getColumnCount to obtain the number of columns in the ResultSet. If an exception occurs, the catch in lines 8790 prints a stack trace and line 92 returns 0 as the default number of columns.

Method getColumnName (lines 96113) returns the name of the column in the model's underlying ResultSet. Line 105 uses ResultSetMetaData method getColumnName to obtain the column name from the ResultSet. If an exception occurs, the catch in lines 107110 prints a stack trace and line 112 returns the empty string as the default column name.

Method getRowCount (lines 116123) returns the number of rows in the model's underlying ResultSet. When method setQuery (lines 148167) performs a query, it stores the number of rows in variable numberOfRows.

Method getValueAt (lines 126145) returns the Object in a particular row and column of the model's underlying ResultSet. Line 136 uses ResultSet method absolute to position the ResultSet cursor at a specific row. Line 137 uses ResultSet method getObject to obtain the Object in a specific column of the current row. If an exception occurs, the catch in lines 139142 prints a stack trace and line 144 returns an empty string as the default value.

Method setQuery (lines 148167) executes the query it receives as an argument to obtain a new ResultSet (line 156). Line 159 gets the ResultSetMetaData for the new ResultSet. Line 162 uses ResultSet method last to position the ResultSet cursor at the last row in the ResultSet. Line 163 uses ResultSet method getRow to obtain the row number for the current row in the ResultSet. Line 166 invokes method fireTableStructureChanged (inherited from class AbstractTableModel) to notify any JTable using this ResultSetTableModel object as its model that the structure of the model has changed. This causes the JTable to repopulate its rows and columns with the new ResultSet data. Method setQuery throws any exceptions that occur in its body back to the application that invoked setQuery.

Method disconnectFromDatabase (lines 170189) implements an appropriate termination method for class ResultSetTableModel. A class designer should provide a public method that clients of the class must invoke explicitly to free resources that an object has used. In this case, method disconnectFromDatabase closes the
database statement and connection (lines 178179), which are considered limited resources. Clients of the ResultSetTableModel class should always invoke this method when the instance of this class is no longer needed. Before releasing resources, line 172 verifies whether the connection is already terminated. If so, the method simply returns. In addition, note that each other method in the class throws an IllegalStateException if the boolean field connectedToDatabase is false. Method disconnectFromDatabase sets connectedToDatabase to false (line 184) to ensure that clients do not use an instance of ResultSetTableModel after that instance has already been terminated. IllegalStateException is an exception from the Java libraries that is appropriate for indicating this error condition.

The DisplayQueryResults (Fig. 25.31) constructor (lines 34140) creates a ResultSetTableModel object and the GUI for the application. Lines 2225 and 28 declare the database driver class name, database URL, username, password and default query that are passed to the ResultSetTableModel constructor to make the initial connection to the database and perform the default query. Line 64 creates the JTable object and passes a ResultSetTableModel object to the JTable constructor, which then registers the JTable as a listener forTableModelEvents generated by the ResultSetTableModel. Lines 71110 register an event handler for the submitButton that the user clicks to submit a query to the database. When the user clicks the button, method actionPerformed (lines 76108) invokes ResultSetTableModel method setQuery to execute the new query. If the user's query fails (e.g., because of a syntax error in the user's input), lines 9394 execute the default query. If the default query also fails, there could be a more serious error, so line 103 ensures that the database connection is closed and line 105 exits the program. The screen captures in Fig. 25.31 show the results of two queries. The first screen capture shows the default query that retrieves all the data from table authors of database books. The second screen capture shows a query that selects each author's first name and last name from the authors table and combines that information with the title and edition number from the titles table. Try entering your own queries in the text area and clicking the Submit Query button to execute the query.
```java
// Fig. 25.31: DisplayQueryResults.java
// Display the contents of the Authors table in the
// Books database.
import java.awt.BorderLayout;
import java.awt.event.ActionListener;
import java.awt.event.ActionEvent;
import java.awt.event.WindowAdapter;
import java.awt.event.WindowEvent;
import java.sql.SQLException;
import javax.swing.JFrame;
import javax.swing.JTextArea;
import javax.swing.JScrollPane;
import javax.swing.ScrollPaneConstants;
import javax.swing.JTable;
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
import javax.swing.JButton;
import javax.swing.Box;

public class DisplayQueryResults extends JFrame {
    // JDBC driver and database URL
    static final String JDBC_DRIVER = "com.mysql.jdbc.Driver";
    static final String DATABASE_URL = "jdbc:mysql://localhost/books";
    static final String USERNAME = "jhtp6";
    static final String PASSWORD = "jhtp6";

    // default query selects all rows from authors table
    static final String DEFAULT_QUERY = "SELECT * FROM authors";

    private ResultSetTableModel tableModel;
    private JTextArea queryArea;

    // create ResultSetTableModel and GUI
    public DisplayQueryResults() {
        super("Displaying Query Results");
    }

    // create ResultSetTableModel and display database table
    try {
        // create TableModel for results of query SELECT * FROM authors
        tableModel = new ResultSetTableModel( JDBC_DRIVER, DATABASE_URL,
                                              USERNAME, PASSWORD, DEFAULT_QUERY );

        // set up JTextArea in which user types queries
        queryArea = new JTextArea( DEFAULT_QUERY, 3, 100 );
        queryArea.setWrapStyleWord( true );
        queryArea.setLineWrap( true );
        JScrollPane scrollPane = new JScrollPane(queryArea,
                                                  ScrollPaneConstants.VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_AS_NEEDED,
                                                  ScrollPaneConstants.HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_NEVER );
```

Figure 25.31. **DisplayQueryResults** for querying database books.

(This item is displayed on pages 1220 - 1223 in the print version)
// set up JButton for submitting queries
JButton submitButton = new JButton( "Submit Query" );

// create Box to manage placement of queryArea and
// submitButton in GUI
Box box = Box.createHorizontalBox();
box.add( scrollPane );
box.add( submitButton );

// create JTable delegate for tableModel
JTable resultTable = new JTable( tableModel );

// place GUI components on content pane
add( box, BorderLayout. NORTH );
add( new JScrollPane( resultTable ), BorderLayout. CENTER );

// create event listener for submitButton
submitButton.addActionListener(
    new ActionListener()
    {
        // pass query to table model
        public void actionPerformed( ActionEvent event )
        {
            // perform a new query
            try
            {
                tableModel.setQuery( queryArea.getText() );
            } // end try
            catch ( SQLException sqlException )
            {
                JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( null, sqlException.getMessage(), "Database error", JOptionPane.ERROR_MESSAGE );
            }

            // try to recover from invalid user query
            // by executing default query
            try
            {
                tableModel.setQuery( DEFAULT_QUERY );
                queryArea.setText( DEFAULT_QUERY );
            } // end try
            catch ( SQLException sqlException2 )
            {
                JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( null, sqlException2.getMessage(), "Database error", JOptionPane.ERROR_MESSAGE );
            }

            // ensure database connection is closed
            tableModel.disconnectFromDatabase();

            System.exit( 1 ); // terminate application
        } // end actionPerformed
    } // end ActionListener inner class
); // end call to addActionListener

setSize( 500, 250 ); // set window size
setVisible( true ); // display window
} // end try
catch ( ClassNotFoundException classNotFound )
{
    JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( null,
            "MySQL driver not found", "Driver not found",
            JOptionPane.ERROR_MESSAGE );
}

System.exit( 1 ); // terminate application
} // end catch
catch ( SQLException sqlException )
{
    JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( null, sqlException.getMessage(),
            "Database error", JOptionPane.ERROR_MESSAGE );

// ensure database connection is closed
tableModel.disconnectFromDatabase();

System.exit( 1 ); // terminate application
} // end catch

// dispose of window when user quits application (this overrides
// the default of HIDE_ON_CLOSE)
setDefaultCloseOperation( DISPOSE_ON_CLOSE );

// ensure database connection is closed when user quits application
addWindowListener("}

new WindowAdapter()
{
    // disconnect from database and exit when window has closed
    public void windowClosed( WindowEvent event )
    {
        tableModel.disconnectFromDatabase();
        System.exit( 0 );
    } // end method windowClosed
} // end WindowAdapter inner class
}; // end call to addWindowListener
} // end DisplayQueryResults constructor

// execute application
public static void main(String args[])
{
    new DisplayQueryResults();
} // end main
} // end class DisplayQueryResults
### Displaying Query Results

**SELECT * FROM authors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>authorID</th>
<th>firstName</th>
<th>lastName</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>Deitel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tem</td>
<td>Nieto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sean</td>
<td>Santry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SELECT authors.lastName, authors.firstName, titles.title, titles.editionNumber FROM titles INNER JOIN (authorISBN INNER JOIN authors ON authorISBN.authorID = authors.authorID) ON titles.isbn = authorISBN.isbn**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lastName</th>
<th>firstName</th>
<th>title</th>
<th>editionNumber</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deitel</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>Internet and Web Programming</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deitel</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>Java How to Program</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deitel</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>Java How to Program</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deitel</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>C How to Program</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deitel</td>
<td>Paul</td>
<td>C How to Program</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deitel</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>Visual Basic 6 How to Program</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nieto</td>
<td>Tem</td>
<td>Visual Basic 6 How to Program</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deitel</td>
<td>Harvey</td>
<td>C++ How to Program</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25.9. Stored Procedures

Many database management systems can store individual SQL statements or sets of SQL statements in a database, so that programs accessing that database can invoke them. Such named collections of SQL are called **stored procedures**. JDBC enables programs to invoke stored procedures using objects that implement interface **CallableStatement**. CallableStatements can receive arguments specified with the methods inherited from interface **PreparedStatement**. In addition, CallableStatements can specify **output parameters** in which a stored procedure can place return values. Interface **CallableStatement** includes methods to specify which parameters in a stored procedure are output parameters. The interface also includes methods to obtain the values of output parameters returned from a stored procedure.

**Portability Tip 25.7**

> Although the syntax for creating stored procedures differs across database management systems, interface **CallableStatement** provides a uniform interface for specifying input and output parameters for stored procedures and for invoking stored procedures.

**Portability Tip 25.8**

> According to the Java API documentation for interface **CallableStatement**, for maximum portability between database systems, programs should process the update counts or **ResultSets** returned from a **CallableStatement** before obtaining the values of any output parameters.
25.10. RowSet Interface

In the previous examples, you learned how to query a database by explicitly establishing a Connection to the database, preparing a Statement for querying the database and executing the query. In this section, we demonstrate the RowSet interface, which configures the database connection and prepares query statements automatically. Interface RowSet provides several set methods that allow the programmer to specify the properties needed to establish a connection (such as the database URL, user name and password of the database) and create a Statement (such as a query). Interface RowSet also provides several get methods that return these properties.

RowSet is part of the javax.sql package. Although part of Java 2 Standard Edition, the classes and interfaces of package javax.sql are most frequently used in the context of the Java 2 Platform Enterprise Edition (J2EE). J2EE is used in industry to build substantial distributed applications that often process database data. J2EE is beyond the scope of this book. You can learn more about J2EE by visiting java.sun.com/j2ee/.

There are two types of RowSet objects: connected and disconnected. A connected RowSet object connects to the database once and remains connected until the application terminates. A disconnected RowSet object connects to the database, executes a query to retrieve the data from the database and then closes the connection. A program may change the data in a disconnected RowSet while it is disconnected. Modified data can be updated in the database after a disconnected RowSet reestablishes the connection with the database.

J2SE 5.0 package javax.sql.rowset contains two subinterfaces of RowSet: JdbcRowSet and CachedRowSet. JdbcRowSet, a connected RowSet, acts as a wrapper around a ResultSet object, and allows programmers to scroll through and update the rows in the ResultSet. Recall that by default, a ResultSet object is non-scrollable and read only; you must explicitly set the result-set type constant to TYPE_SCROLL_INSENSITIVE and set the result-set concurrency constant to CONCUR_UPDATABLE to make a ResultSet object scrollable and updatable. A JdbcRowSet object is scrollable and updatable by default. CachedRowSet, a disconnected RowSet, caches the data of a ResultSet in memory and disconnects from the database. Like JdbcRowSet, a CachedRowSet object is scrollable and updatable by default. A
CachedRowSet object is also serializable, so it can be passed between Java applications through a network, such as the Internet. However, CachedRowSet has a limitation—the amount of data that can be stored in memory is limited. Besides JdbcRowSet and CachedRowSet, package javax.sql.rowset contains three other subinterfaces of RowSet. For details of these interfaces, visit java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/jdbc/getstart/rowsetImpl.html.

**Figure 25.32** reimplements the example of **Fig. 25.25** using a RowSet. Rather than establish the connection and create a Statement explicitly, **Fig. 25.32** uses a JdbcRowSet object to create a Connection and a Statement automatically.

**Figure 25.32. Displaying the authors table using JdbcRowSet.**
(This item is displayed on pages 1225 - 1226 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 25.32: JdbcRowSetTest.java
// Displaying the contents of the authors table using JdbcRowSet.
import java.sql.ResultSetMetaData;
import java.sql.SQLException;
import javax.sql.rowset.JdbcRowSet;
import com.sun.rowset.JdbcRowSetImpl; // Sun's JdbcRowSet implementation

public class JdbcRowSetTest
{
    // JDBC driver name and database URL
    static final String JDBC_DRIVER = "com.mysql.jdbc.Driver";
    static final String DATABASE_URL = "jdbc:mysql://localhost/books";
    static final String USERNAME = "jhtp6";
    static final String PASSWORD = "jhtp6";

    // constructor connects to database, queries database, processes
    // results and displays results in window
    public JdbcRowSetTest()
    {
        // connect to database books and query database
        try
        {
            Class.forName( JDBC_DRIVER ); // load database driver class

            // specify properties of JdbcRowSet
            JdbcRowSet rowSet = new JdbcRowSetImpl();
            rowSet.setUrl( DATABASE_URL ); // set database URL
            rowSet.setUsername( USERNAME ); // set username
            rowSet.setPassword( PASSWORD ); // set password
            rowSet.setCommand( "SELECT * FROM authors" ); // set query
            rowSet.execute(); // execute query

            // process query results
            ResultSetMetaData metaData = rowSet.getMetaData();
            int numberOfColumns = metaData.getColumnCount();
            System.out.println( "Authors Table of Books Database:" );

            // display rowset header
```

1 // Fig. 25.32: JdbcRowSetTest.java
2 // Displaying the contents of the authors table using JdbcRowSet.
3 import java.sql.ResultSetMetaData;
4 import java.sql.SQLException;
5 import javax.sql.rowset.JdbcRowSet;
6 import com.sun.rowset.JdbcRowSetImpl; // Sun's JdbcRowSet implementation
7
8 public class JdbcRowSetTest
9 {
10    // JDBC driver name and database URL
11    static final String JDBC_DRIVER = "com.mysql.jdbc.Driver";
12    static final String DATABASE_URL = "jdbc:mysql://localhost/books";
13    static final String USERNAME = "jhtp6";
14    static final String PASSWORD = "jhtp6";
15
16    // constructor connects to database, queries database, processes
17    // results and displays results in window
18    public JdbcRowSetTest()
19    {
20        // connect to database books and query database
21        try
22        {
23            Class.forName( JDBC_DRIVER ); // load database driver class
24
25            // specify properties of JdbcRowSet
26            JdbcRowSet rowSet = new JdbcRowSetImpl();
27            rowSet.setUrl( DATABASE_URL ); // set database URL
28            rowSet.setUsername( USERNAME ); // set username
29            rowSet.setPassword( PASSWORD ); // set password
30            rowSet.setCommand( "SELECT * FROM authors" ); // set query
31            rowSet.execute(); // execute query
32
33            // process query results
34            ResultSetMetaData metaData = rowSet.getMetaData();
35            int numberOfColumns = metaData.getColumnCount();
36            System.out.println( "Authors Table of Books Database:" );
37
38            // display rowset header
```
for ( int i = 1; i <= numberOfColumns; i++ )
    System.out.printf( "%-8s\t", metaData.getColumnName( i ) );
System.out.println();

// display each row
while ( rowSet.next() )
{
    for ( int i = 1; i <= numberOfColumns; i++ )
        System.out.printf( "%-8s\t", rowSet.getObject( i ) );
    System.out.println();
} // end while
} // end try
catch ( SQLException sqlException )
{
    sqlException.printStackTrace();
    System.exit( 1 );
} // end catch
catch ( ClassNotFoundException classNotFound )
{
    classNotFound.printStackTrace();
    System.exit( 1 );
} // end catch
} // end DisplayAuthors constructor

// launch the application
public static void main( String args[] )
{
    JdbcRowSetTest window = new JdbcRowSetTest();
} // end main
} // end class JdbcRowSetTest

Authors Table of Books Database:
authorID    firstName   lastName
1            Harvey      Deitel
2            Paul        Deitel
3            Tem         Nieto
4            Sean        Santry

Line 26 uses Sun's reference implementation of the JdbcRowSet interface, JdbcRowSetImpl from package com.sun.rowset, to create a JdbcRowSet object. Package com.sun.rowset provides implementations of the interfaces in package javax.sql.rowset. We used class JdbcRowSetImpl here to demonstrate the capability of the JdbcRowSet interface. Some databases may provide their own RowSet.
implementations.

Line 27 invokes JdbcRowSet method `setUrl` to specify the database URL, which is then used by the DriverManager to establish a connection. Line 28 invokes JdbcRowSet method `setUsername` to specify the username, which is then used by the DriverManager to establish a connection. Line 29 invokes JdbcRowSet method `setPassword` to specify the password, which is then used by the DriverManager to establish a connection. Line 30 invokes JdbcRowSet method `setCommand` to specify the SQL query. Line 31 invokes JdbcRowSet method `execute` to execute the SQL query. Method `execute` performs four actions: it establishes a Connection, prepares the query Statement, executes the query and stores the ResultSet returned by query. The Connection, Statement and ResultSet are encapsulated in the JdbcRowSet object. The remaining code is almost identical to Fig. 25.25, except that line 34 obtains a ResultSetMetaData object from the JdbcRowSet, line 44 uses the JdbcRowSet's `next` method to get the next row of the result, and line 47 uses the JdbcRowSet's `getObject` method to obtain a column's value. Note that the output of this application is exactly the same as that of Fig. 25.25.

In this chapter, you learned basic database concepts, how to interact with data in a database using SQL and how to use JDBC to allow Java applications to manipulate database data. You learned the explicit steps for obtaining a Connection to the database, creating a Statement to interact with the database's data, executing the statement and processing the results. Finally you saw how to use a RowSet to simplify the process of connecting to a database and creating statements. In the next chapter, you will learn about servlets, which are Java programs that enhance a Web Server's capabilities. Servlets sometimes use JDBC to interact with databases on behalf of users who make requests via Web browsers.
25.11. Wrap-Up

This chapter introduced the SQL and the JDBC API. You learned basic SQL to retrieve data from and update data in a database. You examined the contents of a sample database and learned how to set it up for use with the MySQL database management system. You also learned how to access and manipulate the MySQL database via the JDBC API. Then, you learned the new RowSet interface introduced in J2SE 5.0. In the next chapter, we demonstrate how to build Web applications using Java servlets. We also introduce the concept of a three-tier application, in which an application is divided into three pieces that can reside on the same computer or can be distributed among separate computers across a network, such as the Internet.
25.12. Internet and Web Resources

java.sun.com/products/jdbc
Sun Microsystems, Inc.'s JDBC home page.

java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/jdbc/index.html
The Java Tutorial 's JDBC track.

industry.java.sun.com/products/jdbc/drivers
Sun Microsystems search engine for locating JDBC drivers.

www.sql.org
This SQL portal provides links to many resources, including SQL syntax, tips, tutorials, books, magazines, discussion groups, companies with SQL services, SQL consultants and free software.

java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/jdbc/index.html
Sun Microsystems JDBC API documentation.

java.sun.com/products/jdbc/faq.html
Sun Microsystems FAQs on JDBC.

www.jguru.com/faq/JDBC
The JGuru JDBC FAQs.

www.mysql.com
This site is the MySQL database home page. You can download the latest versions of MySQL and MySQL Connector/J and access their online documentation.

www.mysql.com/products/mysql
Introduction to the MySQL database server and links to its documentation and download sites.


MySQL reference manual.


MySQL Connector/J documentation, including the installation instructions and examples.

java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/jdbc/getstart/rowsetImpl.html

Overviews the RowSet interface and its subinterfaces. This site also discusses the reference implementations of these interfaces from Sun and their usage.

developer.java.sun.com/developer/Books/JDBCTutorial/chapter5.html

Chapter 5 (RowSet Tutorial) of the book *The JDBC 2.0 API Tutorial and Reference, Second Edition*. 
Recommended Readings


"JDBC API Documentation." <java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/jdbc/index.html>.


Winston, A. "A Distributed Database Primer." UNIXWorld, April 1988, 5463.
Summary

- A database is an integrated collection of data. A database management system (DBMS) provides mechanisms for storing, organizing, retrieving and modifying data for many users.

- Today's most popular database management systems are relational database systems.

- SQL is the international standard language used almost universally with relational database systems to perform queries and manipulate data.

- Programs connect to, and interact with, relational databases via an interface software that facilitates communications between a database management system and a program.

- Java programmers communicate with databases and manipulate their data using the JDBC API. A JDBC driver enables Java applications to connect to a database in a particular DBMS and allows programmers to retrieve and manipulate database data.

- A relational database stores data in tables. Tables are composed of rows and rows are composed of columns in which values are stored.

- A primary key provides a unique value that cannot be duplicated in other rows of the same table.

- Each column of a table represents a different attribute.

- The primary key can be composed of more than one column.

- SQL provides a rich set of language constructs that enable programmers to define complex queries to retrieve data from a database.

- Every column in a primary key must have a value, and the value of the primary key must be unique. This is known as the Rule of Entity Integrity.
A one-to-many relationship between tables indicates that a row in one table can have many related rows in a separate table.

A foreign key is a column in a table that matches the primary key column in another table.

The foreign key helps maintain the Rule of Referential Integrity: Every foreign key value must appear as another table's primary key value. Foreign keys enable information from multiple tables to be joined together. There is a one-to-many relationship between a primary key and its corresponding foreign key.

The basic form of a query is

```
SELECT * FROM tableName
```

where the asterisk (*) indicates that all columns from `tableName` should be selected, and `tableName` specifies the table in the database from which rows will be retrieved.

To retrieve specific columns from a table, replace the asterisk (*) with a comma-separated list of column names.

Programmers process query results by knowing in advance the order of the columns in the result. Specifying columns explicitly guarantees that they are always returned in the specified order, even if the actual order in the table(s) is different.

The optional `WHERE` clause in a query specifies the selection criteria for the query. The basic form of a query with selection criteria is

```
SELECT columnName1, columnName2, ... FROM tableName WHERE criteria
```

The `WHERE` clause can contain operators `<`, `>`, `<=`, `>=`, `=`, `<>` and `LIKE`. Operator `LIKE` is used for string pattern matching with wildcard characters percent (`%`) and underscore (`_`).
A percent character (\%) in a pattern indicates that a string matching the pattern can have zero or more characters at the percent character's location in the pattern.

An underscore (_\) in the pattern string indicates a single character at that position in the pattern.

The result of a query can be sorted in ascending or descending order using the optional ORDER BY clause. The simplest form of an ORDER BY clause is

```sql
SELECT columnName1, columnName2, ... FROM tableName ORDER BY column ASC
```

```sql
SELECT columnName1, columnName2, ... FROM tableName ORDER BY column DESC
```

where ASC specifies ascending order, DESC specifies descending order and column specifies the column on which the sort is based. The default sorting order is ascending, so ASC is optional.

Multiple columns can be used for ordering purposes with an ORDER BY clause of the form

```sql
ORDER BY column1 sortingOrder, column2 sortingOrder, ...
```

The WHERE and ORDER BY clauses can be combined in one query. If used, ORDER BY must be the last clause in the query.

An INNER JOIN merges rows from two tables by matching values in columns that are common to the tables. The basic form for the INNER JOIN operator is:

```sql
SELECT columnName1, columnName2,...
FROM table1
INNER JOIN table2
ON table1.columnName = table2.columnName
```

The ON clause specifies the columns from each table that are compared to determine which rows are joined. If a SQL statement uses columns with
the same name from multiple tables, the column names must be fully qualified by prefixing them with their table names and a dot (.)

- An INSERT statement inserts a new row into a table. The basic form of this statement is

  INSERT INTO tableName ( columnName1, columnName2, ..., columnNameN )
  VALUES ( value1, value2, ..., valueN )

  where tableName is the table in which to insert the row. The tableName is followed by a comma-separated list of column names in parentheses. The list of column names is followed by the SQL keyword VALUES and a comma-separated list of values in parentheses.

- SQL uses single quotes (') as the delimiter for strings. To specify a string containing a single quote in SQL, the single quote must be escaped with another single quote.

- An UPDATE statement modifies data in a table. The basic form of an UPDATE statement is

  UPDATE tableName
  SET columnName1 = value1, columnName2 = value2, ..., columnNameN = valueN
  WHERE criteria

  where tableName is the table in which to update data. The tableName is followed by keyword SET and a comma-separated list of column name/value pairs in the format columnName = value. The optional WHERE clause criteria determines which rows to update.

- A DELETE statement removes rows from a table. The simplest form for a DELETE statement is

  DELETE FROM tableName WHERE criteria

  where tableName is the table from which to delete a row (or rows). The
optional WHERE criteria determines which rows to delete.

- Package java.sql contains classes and interfaces for accessing relational databases in Java.

- A program must load a JDBC driver class before the program can connect to a database.

- JDBC supports four categories of drivers: JDBC-to-ODBC bridge driver (Type 1), Native-API, partly Java driver (Type 2), Pure Java client to server driver (Type 3) and Pure Java driver (Type 4).

- An object that implements interface Connection manages the Connection between a Java program and a database. Connection objects enable programs to create SQL statements that access data.

- Method getConnection of class DriverManager attempts to connect to a database specified by its URL argument. The URL helps the program locate the database. The URL includes the protocol for communication, the subprotocol for communication and the name of the database.

- Connection method createStatement creates an object of type Statement. The program uses the Statement object to submit SQL statements to the database.

- Statement method executeQuery executes a query and returns an object that implements interface ResultSet containing the query result. ResultSet methods enable a program to manipulate query results.

- A ResultSetMetaData object describes a ResultSet's contents. Programs can use metadata programmatically to obtain information about the ResultSet column names and types.

- ResultSetMetaData method getColumnCount retrieves the number of ResultSet columns.

- ResultSet method next positions the ResultSet cursor to the next row in the ResultSet. The cursor points to the current row. Method next returns boolean value True if it is able to position to the next row; otherwise, the method returns false. This method must be called to begin processing a ResultSet.
When processing `ResultSets`, it is possible to extract each column of the `ResultSet` as a specific Java type. `ResultSetMetaData method` `getColumnType` returns a constant integer from class `Types` (package `java.sql`) indicating the type of the data for a specific column.

`ResultSet get` methods typically receive as an argument either a column number (as an `int`) or a column name (as a `String`) indicating which column's value to obtain.

Each `Statement` object can open only one `ResultSet` object at a time. When a `Statement` returns a new `ResultSet`, the `Statement` closes the prior `ResultSet`.

`Connection method` `createStatement` has an overloaded version that takes two arguments: the result type and the result concurrency. The result type specifies whether the `ResultSet`'s cursor is able to scroll in both directions or forward only and whether the `ResultSet` is sensitive to changes. The result concurrency specifies whether the `ResultSet` can be updated with `ResultSet`'s update methods.

Some JDBC drivers do not support scrollable or updatable `ResultSets`.

`TableModel method` `getColumnClass` returns a `Class` object that represents the superclass of all objects in a particular column. `JTable` uses this information to set up the default cell renderer and cell editor for that column in a `JTable`.

`ResultSetMetaData method` `getColumnClassName` obtains the fully qualified class name of the specified column.

`TableModel method` `getColumnCount` returns the number of columns in the model's underlying `ResultSet`.

`TableModel method` `getColumnName` returns the name of the column in the model's underlying `ResultSet`. 
• ResultSetMetaData method getColumn_Name obtains the column name from the ResultSet.

•TableModel method getRowCount returns the number of rows in the model's underlying ResultSet.

•TableModel method getValueAt returns the Object at a particular row and column of the model's underlying ResultSet.

•ResultSet method absolute positions the ResultSet cursor at a specific row.

•AbstractTableModel method fireTableStructureChanged notifies any JTable using a particular TableModel object as its model that the data in the model has changed.

•JDBC enables programs to invoke stored procedures using objects that implement interface CallableStatement.

•CallableStatement can specify input parameters, like PreparedStatement. In addition, CallableStatement can specify output parameters in which a stored procedure can place return values.

•Interface RowSet configures the database connection and executes the query automatically.

•There are two types of RowSets: connected and disconnected.

•A connected RowSet connects to the database once and remains connected until the application terminates.

•A disconnected RowSet connects to the database, executes a query to retrieve the data from the database and then closes the connection.

•JdbcRowSet, a connected RowSet, acts as a wrapper for a ResultSet object, and allows programmers to scroll and update the rows in the ResultSet. Unlike a ResultSet object, a JdbcRowSet object is scrollable and updatable by default.

•CachedRowSet, a disconnected RowSet, caches the data of a ResultSet in memory. Like JdbcRowSet, a CachedRowSet object is scrollable and updatable. A CachedRowSet object is also serializable, so it can be passed between Java
applications through a network, such as the Internet.
Terminology

% SQL wildcard character

_ SQL wildcard character

absolute method of ResultSet

AbstractTableModel class

addTableModelListener method of TableModel

CachedRowSet interface

CallableStatement interface

close method of Connection

close method of Statement

com.mysql.jdbc.Driver

column

connect to a database

connected RowSet

Connection interface

createStatement method of Connection

database
DELETE SQL statement

deleterow method of ResultSet

disconnected RowSet

DriverManager class

execute method of JdbcRowSet

execute method of Statement

executeQuery method of Statement

executeUpdate method of Statement

fireTableStructureChanged method of AbstractTableModel

foreign key

getColumnClass method of TableModel

getColumnClassName method of ResultSetMetaData

getColumnCount method of ResultSetMetaData

getColumnCount method of TableModel

getColumnName method of ResultSetMetaData

getColumnName method of TableModel

getColumnType method of ResultSetMetaData

getConnection method of DriverManager

getMetaData method of ResultSet

getMoreResults method of Statement
**getObject method of ResultSet**

**getResultSet method of Statement**

**getRow method of ResultSet**

**getRowCount method ofTableModel**

**getUpdateCount method of Statement**

**getValueAt method ofTableModel**

**INNER JOIN SQL operator**

**INSERT SQL statement**

**insertRow method of ResultSet**

**java.sql package**

**javax.sql package**

**javax.sql.rowset package**

**javax.swing.table package**

**Java Native Interface (JNI)**

**JDBC**

**JDBC driver**

**JdbcRowSet interface**

**JdbcRowSetImpl class**

**join**

**last method of ResultSet**
metadata

moveToCurrentRow method of ResultSet

moveToInsertRow method of ResultSet

MySQL Connector/J

MySQL database

native code

next method of ResultSet

ON clause

one-to-many relationship

ORDER BY clause

ordering rows

output parameter

pattern matching

primary key

query a database

relational database

removeTableModelListener method

result

ResultSet interface

ResultSetMetaData interface
Rule of Entity Integrity

Rule of Referential Integrity

**SELECT** SQL keyword

selection criteria

`setCommand` method of `JdbcRowSet`

`setPassword` method of `JdbcRowSet`

`setString` method of `PreparedStatement`

`setUsername` method of `JdbcRowSet`

`setUrl` method of `JdbcRowSet`

**SQL (Structured Query Language)**

**SQL script**

`SQLException` class

`Statement` interface

**stored procedure**

`sun.jdbc.odbc.JdbcOdbcDriver`

`TableModel` interface

`TableModelEvent` class

**table**

**Type 1 (JDBC-to-ODBC bridge) driver**
Type 2 (Native-API, partly Java) driver

Type 3 (Pure Java client to server) driver

Type 4 (Pure Java) driver

Types class

updatable ResultSet

UPDATE SQL statement

updateRow method of ResultSet

WHERE clause of a SQL statement
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. The international standard database language is __________.
2. A table in a database consists of __________ and __________.
3. Statement objects return SQL query results as __________ objects.
4. The __________ uniquely identifies each row in a table.
5. SQL keyword __________ is followed by the selection criteria that specify the rows to select in a query.
6. SQL keywords __________ specify the order in which rows are sorted in a query.
7. Merging rows from multiple database tables is called __________ the tables.
8. A(n) __________ is an organized collection of data.
9. A(n) __________ is a set of columns whose values match the primary key values of another table.
10. A(n) __________ object is used to obtain a Connection to a database.
11. Interface __________ helps manage the connection between a Java program and a database.
12. A(n) __________ object is used to submit a query to a database.
13. Unlike a ResultSet object, __________ and __________ objects are scrollable and updatable by default.
14. __________, a disconnected RowSet, caches the data of a ResultSet in memory.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

25.1  a) SQL. b) rows, columns. c) ResultSet. d) primary key. e) WHERE. f) ORDER BY. g) joining. h) database. i) foreign key. j) DriverManager. k) Connection. l) Statement. m) JdbcRowSet, CachedRowSet n) CachedRowSet.
Exercises

Using the techniques shown in this chapter, define a complete query application for the books database. Provide the following predefined queries:

1. Select all authors from the authors table.
2. Select all publishers from the publishers table.
3. Select a specific author and list all books for that author. Include the title, year and ISBN. Order the information alphabetically by the author's last name and first name.
4. Select a specific publisher and list all books published by that publisher. Include the title, year and ISBN. Order the information alphabetically by title.
5. Provide any other queries you feel are appropriate.

Display a JComboBox with appropriate names for each predefined query. Also allow users to supply their own queries.

Define a complete data manipulation application for the books database. The user should be able to edit existing data and add new data to the database (obeying referential and entity integrity constraints). Allow the user to edit the database in the following ways:

1. Add a new author.
2. Edit the existing information for an author.
3. Add a new title for an author. (Remember that the book must have an entry in the authorISBN table.) Be sure to specify the publisher of the title.
4. Add a new publisher.
5. Edit the existing information for a publisher.
6. Add a new entry in the authorISBN table to link authors with titles.

In Section 10.7, we introduced an employee-payroll hierarchy to calculate each employee's payroll. In this exercise, we provide a database of employees that corresponds to the employee payroll hierarchy. (A SQL script to create the employees database is provided with the examples for this chapter on the CD that accompanies this text and on our Web site, www.deitel.com.) Write an application that allows the user to:

1. Add employees to the Employee table.
2. Add payroll information to the appropriate table for each new employee. For example, for a salaried employee add the payroll
information to the `salariedEmployees` table.

Figure 25.33 is the entity-relationship diagram for the `employees` database.

Figure 25.33. Table relationships in `employees`.

Modify Exercise 25.4 to provide a `JComboBox` and a `JTextArea` to allow the user to perform a query that is either selected from the `JComboBox` or defined in the `JTextArea`. Sample predefined queries are:

1. Select all employees working in Department SALES.
2. Select hourly employees working over 30 hours.
3. Select all commission employees in descending order of the commission rate.

Modify Exercise 25.5 to perform the following tasks:
1. Increase base salary by 10% for all base plus commission employees.

2. If the employee's birthday is in the current month, add a $100 bonus.

3. For all commission employees with gross sales over $10,000, add a $100 bonus.
Chapter 26. Servlets

*A fair request should be followed by the deed in silence.*

Dante Alighieri

*The longest part of the journey is said to be the passing of the gate.*

Marcus Terentius Varro

*If nominated, I will not accept; if elected, I will not serve.*

General William T. Sherman

*Friends share all things.*

Pythagoras

**OBJECTIVES**

In this chapter you will learn:

- How servlets can be used to extend a Web server's functionality.
- The servlet life cycle.
- To execute servlets with the Apache Tomcat server.
- To be able to respond to HTTP requests from an `HttpServlet`.
- To be able to redirect requests to static and dynamic Web resources.
- To use JDBC from a servlet.

Outline

26.1 Introduction
26.2 Servlet Overview and Architecture

26.2.1 Interface Servlet and the Servlet Life Cycle

26.2.2 HttpServlet Class

26.2.3 HttpServletRequest Interface

26.2.4 HttpServletResponse Interface

26.3 Setting Up the Apache Tomcat Server

26.4 Handling HTTP get Requests

26.4.1 Deploying a Web Application

26.5 Handling HTTP get Requests Containing Data

26.6 Handling HTTP post Requests

26.7 Redirecting Requests to Other Resources

26.8 Multitier Applications: Using JDBC from a Servlet

26.9 Welcome Files

26.10 Wrap-Up

26.11 Internet and Web Resources

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
26.1. Introduction

Chapter 24 presented Java's fundamental networking capabilities from package java.net, which offers both socket-and packet-based communication. Higher-level views of networking are provided by classes and interfaces in the java.rmi packages (five packages) for Remote Method Invocation (RMI) and the org.omg packages (seven packages) for Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA). The RMI packages allow Java objects running on separate JVMs (normally on separate computers) to communicate via remote method calls. Such calls appear to invoke methods on an object in the same program, but actually have built-in networking (based on the capabilities of package java.net) that communicates the method calls to another object on a separate computer. The CORBA packages provide functionality similar to that of the RMI packages. A key difference between RMI and CORBA is that RMI can only be used between Java objects, whereas CORBA can be used between any two applications that understand CORBA including applications written in other programming languages. [Note: Remote Method Invocation over the Internet Inter-Orb Protocol (RMI-IIOP) enables the integration of Java with non-Java distributed objects by using CORBA IIOP.] In Chapter 13 of our book Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program, we present Java's RMI capabilities. Chapters 2627 of Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program discuss the basic CORBA concepts and present a case study that implements a distributed system in CORBA.

Client-Server Relationship

Our discussion in this chapter continues the focus in Chapter 24 the client-server relationship. The client requests that some action be performed and the server performs the action and responds to the client. This request-response model of communication is the foundation for the highest-level views of networking in Java servlets and JavaServer Pages (JSP). A servlet extends the functionality of a server, such as a Web server that serves Web pages to a user's browser using the HTTP protocol. Packages javax.servlet and javax.servlet.http provide the classes and interfaces to define servlets. Packages javax.servlet.jsp and javax.servlet.jsp.tagext provide the classes and interfaces that extend the servlet capabilities for JavaServer Pages. Using special syntax, JSP allows Web-page implementors to create pages that encapsulate Java functionality and even to write scriptlets of actual Java code.
A common implementation of the request-response model is between Web browsers and Web servers. When a user selects a Web site to browse through the browser (the client application), a request is sent to the appropriate Web server (the server application). The server normally responds to the client by sending the appropriate XHTML Web page. [Note: If you are not familiar with XHTML and CSS, refer to the PDF documents Introduction to XHTML: Part 1, Introduction to XHTML: Part 2 and Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) on the CD that accompanies this book. For the purposes of this chapter and Chapter 27, JavaServer Pages (JSP), we assume you already know XHTML.] Servlets are effective for developing Web-based solutions that help provide secure access to a Web site, interact with databases on behalf of a client, dynamically generate custom XHTML documents to be displayed by browsers and maintain unique session information for each client.

This chapter continues our networking discussions by discussing servlets that enhance the functionality of Web servers—the most common form of servlet. Chapter 27, JavaServer Pages (JSP), discusses JSPs, which are translated into servlets. JSPs are a convenient and powerful way to implement the request-response mechanism of the Web without getting into the lower-level details of servlets. Together, servlets and JSPs form the Web components of the Java 2 Enterprise Edition (J2EE) that run on a J2EE server.

**Thin Clients**

Many developers feel that servlets are the right solution for database-intensive applications that communicate with so-called thin clients applications that provide presentation but do not process data, thus requiring fewer computing resources. The server is responsible for database access. Clients connect to the server using standard protocols available on most client platforms. Thus, the presentation-logic code for generating dynamic content can be written once and reside on the server for access by clients, to allow programmers to create efficient thin clients.

In this chapter, our servlet examples demonstrate the Web's request-response mechanism (primarily with get and post requests), redirecting requests to other resources and interacting with databases through JDBC. We placed this chapter after our discussion of JDBC and databases intentionally, so that we can build
multitier, client-server applications that access databases.

Apache Jakarta Project and the Tomcat Server

Sun Microsystems, through the **Java Community Process**, is responsible for the development of the servlet and JavaServer Pages specifications. The reference implementation of both these standards is developed by the **Apache Software Foundation** ([www.apache.org](http://www.apache.org)) as part of the **Jakarta Project** ([jakarta.apache.org](http://jakarta.apache.org)). As stated on the Jakarta Project's home page, "The goal of the Jakarta Project is to provide commercial-quality server solutions based on the Java Platform that are developed in an open and cooperative fashion."

There are many subprojects under the Jakarta project to help commercial server-side developers. The servlet and JSP part of the Jakarta Project is called **Tomcat**. This is the official reference implementation of the JSP and servlet standards. We use Tomcat to demonstrate the servlets in this chapter. The most recent implementation of Tomcat at the time of this writing was version 5.0.25. For your convenience, Tomcat 5.0.25 is included on the CD that accompanies this book. However, the most recent version always can be downloaded from the Apache Group's Web site. To execute the servlets in this chapter, you must install Tomcat or an equivalent servlet and JavaServer Pages implementation. We discuss the setup and configuration of Tomcat in **Section 26.3** and **Section 26.4.1**, after we introduce our first example.

In our directions for testing each of the examples in this chapter, we indicate that you should copy files into specific Tomcat directories. All the example files for this chapter are located on the CD that accompanies this book and on our Web site, [www.deitel.com](http://www.deitel.com). At the end of **Section 26.11**, we provide a list of Internet specifications (as discussed in the Servlet 2.4 Specification) for technologies related to servlet development. Each is listed with its RFC (Request for Comments) number. An RFC is a document that describes standard protocols, mechanisms and procedures for Internet development. We provide the URL of a Web site that allows you to locate each specification for your review.
26.2. Servlet Overview and Architecture

This section overviews Java servlet technology, discussing at a high level the servlet-related classes, methods and exceptions. The next several sections present examples in which we build multitier client-server systems using servlet and JDBC technology.

The Internet offers many protocols. The HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol) that forms the basis of the World Wide Web uses URLs (Uniform Resource Locators) to locate resources on the Internet. Common URLs represent files or directories and can represent complex tasks such as database lookups and Internet searches. For more information on URL formats, visit [www.w3.org/Addressing](http://www.w3.org/Addressing). For more information on the HTTP protocol, visit [www.w3.org/Protocols/HTTP](http://www.w3.org/Protocols/HTTP). For information on a variety of World Wide Web topics, visit the World Wide Web Consortium's Web site [www.w3.org](http://www.w3.org).

JavaServer Pages technology, an extension of servlet technology, simplifies the process of creating pages by separating presentation from content. Normally, JSPs are used when most of the content sent to the client is static text and markup, and only a small portion of the content is generated dynamically with Java code. Servlets commonly are used when a small portion of the content sent to the client is static text or markup. In fact, some servlets do not produce content. Rather, they perform a task on behalf of the client, then invoke other servlets or JSPs to provide a response. Note that in most cases servlet and JSP technologies are interchangeable. The server that executes a servlet is referred to as the **servlet container** or **servlet engine**.

The servlets in this chapter demonstrate communication between clients and servers via the HTTP protocol (Fig. 26.1). A client sends an HTTP request to the server. The servlet container receives the request and directs it to be processed by the appropriate servlet. The servlet does its processing, which may include interacting with a database or other server-side components, such as other servlets or JSPs. The servlet returns its results to the client normally in the form of an HTML, XHTML or XML (Extensible Markup Language, which is used to exchange structured data on the Web) document to display in a browser. Other data formats, such as images and binary data, can also be returned.

Figure 26.1. Servlet architecture.

26.2.1. Interface Servlet and the Servlet Life Cycle

Architecturally, all servlets must implement the Servlet interface of package javax.servlet. The methods of interface Servlet are invoked by the servlet container. This interface declares five methods described in Fig. 26.2. You can view the details of the Servlet interface online at java.sun.com/j2ee/1.4/docs/api/javax/servlet/Servlet.html.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>void init(ServletConfig config)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The servlet container calls this method once during a servlet's execution cycle to initialize the servlet. The `ServletConfig` argument is supplied by the servlet container that executes the servlet.

```java
ServletConfig getServletConfig()
```

This method returns a reference to an object that implements interface `ServletConfig`. This object provides access to the servlet's configuration information, such as its initialization parameters and `ServletContext`, which provides the servlet with access to its environment (i.e., the servlet container in which the servlet executes).

```java
String getServletInfo()
```

This method is defined by a servlet programmer to return a string containing servlet information, such as the servlet's author and version.

```java
void service( ServletRequest request, ServletResponse response )
```

The servlet container calls this method to respond to a client request to the servlet.

```java
void destroy()
```

This "cleanup" method is called when a servlet is terminated by its servlet container. Resources used by the servlet, such as open files or open database connections, should be deallocated here.

**Software Engineering Observation 26.1**

_`Servlets implement the Servlet interface of package javax.servlet._

A servlet's life cycle begins when the servlet container loads it into
memory, in response to the first request for the servlet. Before the servlet can handle that request, the container invokes the servlet's init method. After init completes execution, the servlet can respond to its first request. All requests are handled by a servlet's service method, which receives the request, processes it and sends a response to the client. During a servlet's life cycle, method service is called once per request. Each new request is typically handled in a separate thread of execution (managed by the servlet container) in which method service executes. When the servlet container terminates the servlet (e.g., when the servlet container needs more memory or when it is shut down), the servlet's destroy method is called to release servlet resources.

The servlet packages define two abstract classes that implement interface Servlet class GenericServlet (from the package javax.servlet) and class HttpServlet (from the package javax.servlet.http). These classes provide default implementations of some Servlet methods. Most servlets extend either GenericServlet or HttpServlet and override some or all of their methods. The GenericServlet is a protocol-independent servlet, while the HttpServlet uses the HTTP protocol to exchange the information between the server and the client. The HttpServletRequest is used on the Web. If your servlets need to implement protocols other than HTTP, they may extend GenericServlet. To extend GenericServlet, the servlet must override the abstract method service. To extend HttpServlet, the servlet must override at least one method declared in class HttpServlet.

The examples in this chapter all extend class HttpServlet, which defines enhanced processing capabilities for servlets that extend a Web server's functionality. The key method in every servlet is service, which accepts both a ServletRequest object and a ServletResponse object. These objects provide access to input and output streams that allow the servlet to read data from and send data to the client. These streams can be either byte based or character based. If problems occur during the execution of a servlet, either ServletException or IOExceptions are thrown to indicate the problem.

26.2.2. HttpServlet Class
Servlets typically extend class `HttpServlet`, which overrides method `service` to distinguish between the typical requests received from a client Web browser. The two most common HTTP request types (also known as request methods) are `get` and `post`. A `get` request gets (or retrieves) information from a server. Such requests often retrieve an HTML document or an image. A `post` request posts (or sends) data to a server, such as authentication information or data from a form that gathers user input. Usually, `post` requests are used to post a message to a news group or a discussion forum, pass user input to a data-handling process and store or update the data on a server.

Class `HttpServlet` defines methods `doGet` and `doPost` to respond to `get` and `post` requests from a client, respectively. These methods are called by method `service`, which is called by the servlet container when a request arrives at the server. Method `service` first determines the request type, then calls the appropriate method for handling such a request. Methods of class `HttpServlet` that respond to the other request types are shown in Fig. 26.3. For more details about these methods, visit java.sun.com/j2ee/1.4/docs/api/javax/servlet/http/HttpServlet.html. Each method accepts parameters of type `HttpServletRequest` and `HttpServletResponse` and returns `void`. These methods are not frequently used.

**Figure 26.3. HttpServlet class’s other methods.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>doDelete</code></td>
<td>Called in response to an HTTP <code>delete</code> request. Such a request is normally used to delete a file from a server. This may not be available on some servers because of its inherent security risks (e.g., the client could delete a file that is critical to the execution of the server or an application).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>doHead</code></td>
<td>Called in response to an HTTP <code>head</code> request. Such a request is normally used when the client wants only the response’s headers, such as its content type and content length. By overriding this method, the servlet does not compute the response body, thus improving performance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>doOptions</code></td>
<td>Called in response to an HTTP <code>options</code> request. This returns information to the client indicating the HTTP options supported by the server, such as the HTTP version (1.0 or 1.1) and the request methods the server supports.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>doPut</code></td>
<td>Called in response to an HTTP <code>put</code> request. Such a request is normally used to store a file on the server. This may not be available on some servers because of its inherent security risks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Software Engineering Observation 26.2

Do not override method `service` in an `HttpServlet` subclass. Doing so prevents the servlet from distinguishing between request types.

Methods `doGet` and `doPost` accept as arguments an `HttpServletRequest` object and an `HttpServletResponse` object that enable interaction between the client and the server. The methods of `HttpServletRequest` allow access to the data supplied as part of the request. The `HttpServletResponse` methods make it easy to return the servlet's results to the Web client. Interfaces `HttpServletRequest` and `HttpServletResponse` are discussed in the next two sections.

### 26.2.3. `HttpServletRequest` Interface

Every call to `doGet` or `doPost` for an `HttpServlet` receives an object that implements interface `HttpServletRequest`. The servlet container creates an `HttpServletRequest` object and passes it to the servlet's `service` method (which, in turn, passes it to `doGet` or `doPost`). This object contains the client's request and provides methods that enable the servlet to process the request. Some methods are from interface `ServletRequest` the interface that `HttpServletRequest` extends. A few key methods used in this chapter are presented in Fig. 26.4. You can view a
You can also install Tomcat (discussed in Section 26.3) and view the documentation on your local computer.

**Figure 26.4. HttpServletRequest methods.**
(This item is displayed on page 1244 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>String getParameter( String name )</td>
<td>Obtains the value of a parameter sent to the servlet as part of a get or post request. The name argument represents the parameter name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enumeration getParameterNames()</td>
<td>Returns the names of all the parameters sent to the servlet as part of a post request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String[] getParameterValues( String name )</td>
<td>For a parameter with multiple values, this method returns an array of strings containing the values for a specified servlet parameter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cookie[] getCookies()</td>
<td>Returns an array of Cookie objects stored on the client by the server. Cookie objects can be used to uniquely identify clients to the servlet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HttpSession getSession( boolean create )</td>
<td>Returns an HttpSession object associated with the client's current browsing session. This method can create an HttpSession object (True argument) if one does not already exist for the client. HttpSession objects and Cookies are used in similar ways for uniquely identifying clients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String getLocalName()</td>
<td>Gets the host name on which the request was received.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>String getLocalAddr()</td>
<td>Gets the Internet Protocol (IP) address on which...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
26.2.4. **HttpServletResponse Interface**

Every call to `doGet` or `doPost` for an `HttpServlet` receives an object that implements the `HttpServletResponse` interface. The servlet container creates an `HttpServletResponse` object and passes it to the servlet's service method (which, in turn, passes it to `doGet` or `doPost`). This object provides methods that enable the servlet to formulate the response to the client. Some of these are from interface `ServletResponse`, the interface that `HttpServletResponse` extends. A few key methods used in this chapter are presented in **Fig. 26.5**. You can view a complete list of `HttpServletResponse` methods online at [java.sun.com/j2ee/1.4/docs/api/javax/servlet/http/HttpServletResponse.html](http://java.sun.com/j2ee/1.4/docs/api/javax/servlet/http/HttpServletResponse.html). You can also view the documentation on your local computer through Tomcat.

**Figure 26.5. HttpServletResponse methods.**
(This item is displayed on page 1245 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>void addCookie( Cookie cookie )</code></td>
<td>Used to add a <code>Cookie</code> to the header of the response to the client. The <code>Cookie</code>'s maximum age and whether <code>Cookies</code> are enabled on the client determine whether <code>Cookies</code> are stored on the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>ServletOutputStream getOutputStream()</code></td>
<td>Obtains a byte-based output stream for sending binary data to the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>PrintWriter getWriter()</code></td>
<td>Obtains a character-based output stream for sending text data (usually HTML).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
void setContentType( String type )

Specifies the content type of the response to the browser. The content type helps the browser determine how to display the data (or possibly what other application to execute to process the data). The content type is also known as MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension) type of the data. For examples, content type "text/html" indicates that the response is an HTML document, so the browser displays the HTML page; content type "image/gif" indicates that the response is an image, so the browser displays the image. For a complete list of content types, visit www.isi.edu/in-notes/iana/assignments/mediatypes/mediatypes.

String getContentType()

Gets the content type of the response.
26.3. Setting Up the Apache Tomcat Server

Tomcat is a fully functional implementation of servlets and JavaServer Pages (JSP). It includes a Web server, so it can be used as a standalone test container for servlets and JSPs. Tomcat can also be specified as the handler for JSP and servlet requests received by popular Web servers such as the Apache Software Foundation's Apache HTTP server or Microsoft's Internet Information Services (IIS). Tomcat is also integrated into the Java 2 Enterprise Edition reference implementation from Sun Microsystems.

The most recent release of Tomcat at the time of printing (version 5.0.25) can be downloaded from

apache.towardex.com/jakarta/tomcat-5/v5.0.25/bin/

where there are several archive files. The complete Tomcat implementation is contained in the files that begin with the name jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25. Apache provides zip, exe, tar and compressed tar files.

Following the steps below to install Tomcat:

1. Download jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25.zip (or the version appropriate for your system) to your hard disk.

2. Use a file extractor tool (such as WinZip, available at www.winzip.com) to extract the content of jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25.zip to the C:\ drive. This will create a directory named jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25.

For Tomcat to work correctly, you must define environment variables JAVA_HOME and CATALINA_HOME. JAVA_HOME should point to the directory containing your Java installation (ours is C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.5.0), and CATALINA_HOME should point to the directory that contains Tomcat (ours is C:\jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25). To define these variables on Windows,

1. Right click on the My Computer icon on your desktop and select Properties from the menu. The System Properties dialog appears.
2. Select the Advanced tab at the top of the System Properties dialog. Click the Environment Variables button to display the Environment Variables dialog.

3. Click the New button under the User variables box. This will cause the Edit User Variable dialog to appear.

4. Enter JAVA_HOME for Variable name and C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.5.0 for Variable value. Click the OK button to complete the setting of the JAVA_HOME variable. This will return to the Environment Variables dialog.

5. Click the New button under the User variables box. This will cause the Edit User Variable dialog to appear.

6. Enter CATALINA_HOME for Variable name and C:\jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25 for Variable value. Click the OK button to complete the setting of the CATALINA_HOME variable. This will return to the Environment Variables dialog.

7. Click the OK buttons to close the Environment Variables and System Properties dialogs.

Error-Prevention Tip 26.1

On some platforms you may need to restart your computer for the new environment variables to take effect.

After setting the environment variables, you can start the Tomcat server. In a command prompt (or shell), change to the bin directory in jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25. In this directory are the files startup.bat, shutdown.bat, startup.sh and shutdown.sh, for starting and stopping the Tomcat server on Windows and UNIX/Linux/Mac OS X, respectively. To start the server, type startup

This launches the Tomcat server, which executes on TCP port 8080 to prevent
conflicts with standard Web servers that typically execute on TCP port 80. 

**Note:** If port 8080 is already in use by another application, you can change the port number for Tomcat by modifying the file `server.xml`, which is located in the Tomcat installation directory's `conf` directory. To do so, edit line 92 of `server.xml` (which contains the text `<Connector port="8080">`) and replace "8080" with the port number you want to use.] To verify that Tomcat is executing and can respond to requests, open your Web browser and enter the URL

http://localhost:8080/

[**Note**: If you changed the port number, use the new port number you specified.] This should display the Tomcat documentation home page (Fig. 26.6). The host `localhost` indicates to the Web browser that it should request the home page from the Tomcat server on the local computer.

**Figure 26.6. Tomcat documentation home page. Copyright © 2000-2004 The Apache Software Foundation ([http://www.apache.org/](http://www.apache.org/)). All rights reserved.**

(This item is displayed on page 1247 in the print version)
Error-Prevention Tip 26.2

If the host name localhost does not work on your computer, substitute the IP address 127.0.0.1 instead.

To shut down the Tomcat server, issue the command

```
shutdown
```

from the command prompt (or shell) that starts the Tomcat server.
26.4. Handling HTTP get Requests

The primary purpose of an HTTP get request is to retrieve the content of a specified URL normally an HTML or XHTML document. The servlet in Fig. 26.7 and the XHTML document in Fig. 26.8 demonstrate a servlet that handles HTTP get requests. When the user clicks the Get HTML Document button (Fig. 26.8), a get request is sent to the servlet WelcomeServlet (Fig. 26.7). The servlet responds to the request by dynamically generating an XHTML document for the client that displays "Welcome to Servlets!". Figure 26.7 shows the WelcomeServlet source code. Figure 26.8 shows the XHTML document the client loads to access the servlet and shows screen captures of the client's browser window before and after the servlet interaction. [Note: Section 26.3 discusses how to set up and configure Tomcat to execute this example.]

Figure 26.7. WelcomeServlet that responds to a simple HTTP get request.

(This item is displayed on page 1248 in the print version)

```
// Fig. 26.7: WelcomeServlet.java
// A simple servlet to process get requests.
import javax.servlet.ServletException;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.PrintWriter;

public class WelcomeServlet extends HttpServlet {
    // process "get" requests from clients
    protected void doGet( HttpServletRequest request,
                          HttpServletResponse response )
                   throws ServletException, IOException {
        response.setContentType( "text/html" );
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();

        // send XHTML page to client
        out.println( "<?xml version = "1.0"?>" );
    }
}
```
Figure 26.8. HTML document in which the form's action invokes WelcomeServlet tHRough the alias welcome1 specified in web.xml.

(This item is displayed on page 1250 in the print version)
Lines 36 import various classes in the `javax.servlet` and `javax.servlet.http` packages. We use several data types from these packages in the example. Package `javax.servlet.http` provides superclass `HttpServlet` for servlets that handle HTTP `get` requests and HTTP `post` requests. This class implements interface `javax.servlet.Servlet` and adds methods that support HTTP protocol requests. Class `WelcomeServlet` extends `HttpServlet` (line 10) for this reason.

Superclass `HttpServlet` provides method `doGet` to respond to `get` requests. Its default functionality is to indicate a "Method not supported" error. Typically, this error is indicated in Internet Explorer and in Netscape with a Web page that states "HTTP status 405." Lines 1344 override method `doGet` to provide custom `get` request processing. Method `doGet` accepts two arguments: an `HttpServletRequest` object and an `HttpServletResponse` object (both from package `javax.servlet.http`). The `HttpServletRequest` object represents the client's request, and the `HttpServletResponse` object represents the server's response to the client. If method `doGet` is unable to handle a client's request, it throws an exception of type `javax.servlet.ServletException`. If `doGet` encounters an error during stream processing (reading from the client or writing to the client), it throws a `java.io.IOException`.
To demonstrate a response to a `get` request, our servlet creates an XHTML document containing the text "Welcome to Servlets!" The text of the XHTML document is the response to the client. The response is sent to the client through the `PrintWriter` object obtained from the `HttpServletResponse` object.

Line 17 uses the `response` object's `setContentType` method to specify the content type of the data to be sent as the response to the client. This enables the client browser to understand and handle the content. The content type is also known as the **MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension)** type of the data. In this example, the content type is `text/html` to indicate to the browser that the response is an XHTML document. The browser knows that it must read the XHTML tags, format the document accordingly and display it in the browser window.

Line 18 uses the `response` object's `getWriter` method to obtain a reference to the `PrintWriter` object that enables the servlet to send content to the client. [Note: If the response is binary data, such as an image, method `getOutputStream` is used to obtain a reference to a `ServletOutputStream` object.]

Lines 23-42 create the XHTML document by writing strings with the `out` object's `println` method. This method outputs a newline character after its `String` argument. When rendering the Web page, the browser does not use the newline character. Rather, the newline character appears in the XHTML source that you can see by selecting `Source` from the `View` menu in Internet Explorer or `Page Source` from the `View` menu in Netscape. Line 43 closes the output stream, flushes the output buffer and sends the information to the client.

The XHTML document in **Fig. 26.8** provides a `form` that invokes the servlet defined in **Fig. 26.7**. The `form`'s `action` attribute (`/jhttp6/welcome1`) specifies the URL path that invokes the servlet, and the `form`'s `method` attribute indicates that the browser sends a `get` request to the server, which results in a call to the servlet's `doGet` method. The URL specified as the `action` in this example is discussed in detail in **Section 26.4.1** after we show how to set up and configure the Apache Tomcat server to execute the servlet in **Fig. 26.7**.

Note that the sample screen captures show a URL containing the server name `localhost` a well-known server host name on most computers that support TCP/IP-based networking protocols such as HTTP. We often use `localhost` to demonstrate networking programs on the local computer, so that readers without a network connection can still learn network programming concepts.
In this example, \texttt{localhost} indicates that the server on which the servlet is installed is running on the local machine. The server host name is followed by \texttt{:8080}, specifying the TCP port number at which the Tomcat server listens for requests from clients. Web browsers assume TCP port 80 by default as the server port at which clients make requests, but the Tomcat server listens for client requests at TCP port 8080. This allows Tomcat to execute on the same computer as a standard Web server application without affecting the Web server's ability to handle requests. If we do not explicitly specify the port number in the URL, the servlet will not receive our request and an error message will be displayed in the browser.

\textbf{Software Engineering Observation 26.3}

\textit{The Tomcat documentation specifies how to integrate Tomcat with popular Web server applications such as the Apache HTTP Server and Microsoft's IIS.}

Ports in this case are not physical hardware ports to which you attach cables; they are logical locations named with integer values that allow clients to request different services on the same server. The port number specifies the logical location where a server waits for and receives connections from clients; this is also called the handshake point. A client connecting to a server to request a service must specify the port number for that service; otherwise, the request cannot be processed. Port numbers are positive integers with values up to 65,535, and there are separate sets of these numbers for both the TCP and UDP protocols. Many operating systems reserve port numbers below 1024 for system services (such as e-mail and World Wide Web servers). Generally, these ports should not be specified as connection ports in your own server programs. In fact, some operating systems require special access privileges to use port numbers below 1024.

With so many ports from which to choose, how does a client know which port to use when requesting a service? The term \textbf{well-known port number} is often used when describing popular services on the Internet, such as Web servers and e-mail servers. All Web browsers know 80 as the well-known port on a Web server where requests for HTML documents are made. So when you type a URL into a Web browser, the browser by default connects to port 80 on
The client can access the servlet only if it is installed on a server that can respond to servlet requests. In some cases, servlet support is built directly into the Web server, and no special configuration is required to handle servlet requests. In other cases, it is necessary to integrate a servlet container with a Web server (as can be done with Tomcat and the Apache or IIS Web servers). Web servers that support servlets normally have an installation procedure for servlets. If you intend to execute your servlet as part of a Web server, please refer to your server's documentation on how to install a servlet. For our examples, we demonstrate servlets with the Apache Tomcat server. **Section 26.3** discusses the setup and configuration of Tomcat for use with this chapter. **Section 26.4.1** discusses the deployment of the servlet in **Fig. 26.7**.

### 26.4.1. Deploying a Web Application

JSPs, servlets and their supporting files are deployed as part of Web applications. Normally, Web applications are deployed in the webapps subdirectory of jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25. A Web application has a well-known directory structure in which all the files that are part of the application reside. This structure can be created by the server administrator in the webapps directory, or the entire directory structure can be archived in a Web application archive file. Such an archive is known as a **WAR file** and ends with the .war file extension. Such files are typically placed in the webapps directory. When the Tomcat server begins execution, it extracts the WAR file's contents into the appropriate webapps subdirectory structure. For simplicity as we teach servlets and JavaServer Pages, we create the already expanded directory structure for all the examples in this chapter.

The Web application directory structure contains a context root the top-level directory for an entire Web application and several subdirectories. These are described in **Fig. 26.9**.

**Figure 26.9. Web application standard directories.**

(This item is displayed on page 1252 in the print version)
This is the root directory for the Web application. All the JSPs, HTML documents, servlets and supporting files such as images and class files reside in this directory or its subdirectories. The name of this directory is specified by the Web application creator. To provide structure in a Web application, subdirectories can be placed in the context root. For example, if your application uses many images, you might place an images subdirectory in this directory. The examples of this chapter use jhtp6 as the context root.

WEB-INF

This directory contains the Web application deployment descriptor (web.xml).

WEB-INF/classes

This directory contains the servlet class files and other supporting class files used in a Web application. If the classes are part of a package, the complete package directory structure would begin here.

WEB-INF/lib

This directory contains Java archive (JAR) files. The JAR files can contain servlet class files and other supporting class files used in a Web application.

Common Programming Error 26.1

Using "servlet" or "servlets" as a context root may prevent a servlet from working correctly on some servers.

Configuring the context root for a Web application in Tomcat requires creating a subdirectory in the webapps directory. When Tomcat begins execution, it creates a context root for each subdirectory of webapps, using each subdirectory's name as a context root name. To test the examples in this chapter, create the directory jhtp6 in Tomcat's webapps directory.

After configuring the context root, we must configure our Web application to handle the requests. This configuration occurs in a deployment descriptor, which is stored in a file called web.xml. This specifies various configuration parameters, such as the name used to invoke the servlet (i.e., its alias), a description of the servlet, the servlet's fully qualified class name and a servlet
mapping (i.e., the path or paths that cause the servlet container to invoke the servlet). You must create the web.xml file for this example. Many Java Web application deployment tools create the web.xml file for you. The one for the first example in this chapter is shown in Fig. 26.10. We will enhance this file as we add other servlets to the Web application throughout this chapter.

**Figure 26.10. Deployment descriptor (web.xml) for the jhttp6 Web application.**

(This item is displayed on page 1253 in the print version)

```xml
<web-app xmlns="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/j2ee"
         xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xsi:schemaLocation="http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/j2ee
http://java.sun.com/xml/ns/j2ee/web-app_2_4.xsd"
         version="2.4">

  <!-- General description of your Web application -->
  <display-name>
    Java How to Program JSP
    and Servlet Chapter Examples
  </display-name>

  <description>
    This is the Web application in which we
    demonstrate our JSP and Servlet examples.
  </description>

  <!-- Servlet definitions -->
  <servlet>
    <servlet-name>welcome1</servlet-name>

    <description>
      A simple servlet that handles an HTTP get request.
    </description>

    <servlet-class>
      WelcomeServlet
    </servlet-class>
  </servlet>

  <!-- Servlet mappings -->
  <servlet-mapping>
    <servlet-name>welcome1</servlet-name>

    <url-pattern>/welcome1</url-pattern>
  </servlet-mapping>

</web-app>
```
Element `web-app` (lines 137) defines the configuration of each servlet in the Web application and the servlet mapping for each servlet. Element `display-name` (lines 811) specifies a name that can be displayed to the administrator of the server on which the Web application is installed. Element `description` (lines 1316) specifies a description of the Web application that might be displayed to the server administrator.

Element `servlet` (lines 1929) describes a servlet. Element `servlet-name` (line 20) is the name we chose for the servlet (`welcome1`). Element `description` (lines 2224) specifies a description for this particular servlet. Again, this can be displayed to the server administrator. Element `servlet-class` (lines 2628) specifies the compiled servlet's fully qualified class name. Thus, the servlet `welcome1` is defined by class `WelcomeServlet`.

Element `servlet-mapping` (lines 3235) specifies `servlet-name` and `url-pattern` elements. The `URL pattern` helps the server determine which requests are sent to the servlet (`welcome1`). Our Web application will be installed as part of the `jhttp6` context root discussed in Section 26.4.1. Thus, the relative URL we supply to the browser to invoke the servlet in this example is

```
/jhttp6/welcome1
```

where `/jhttp6` specifies the context root that helps the server determine which Web application handles the request and `/welcome1` specifies the URL pattern that is mapped to servlet `welcome1` to handle the request. Note that the server on which the servlet resides is not specified here, although this can be done as follows:

```
http://localhost:8080/jhttp6/welcome1
```

If the explicit server and port number are not specified as part of the URL, the browser assumes that the form handler (i.e., the value of the `action` attribute of the `form` element in HTML) resides at the same server and port number from which the browser downloaded the Web page containing the `form`.

There are several URL pattern formats that can be used. The `/welcome1` URL
pattern requires an exact match of the pattern. You can also specify **path mappings**, **extension mappings** and a **default servlet** for a Web application. A path mapping begins with a `/` and ends with a `/*`. For example, the URL pattern

```
/jhtp6/example/*
```

indicates that any URL path beginning with `/jhtp6/example/` will be sent to the servlet that has the preceding URL pattern. An extension mapping begins with `*.` and ends with a file-name extension. For example, the URL pattern

```
*.jsp
```

indicates that any request for a file with extension `.jsp` will be sent to the servlet that handles JSP requests. In fact, servers with JSP containers have an implicit mapping of the `.jsp` extension to a servlet that handles JSP requests. The URL pattern `/` represents the default servlet for a Web application. This is similar to the default document of a Web server. For example, if you type the URL [www.deitel.com](http://www.deitel.com) into your Web browser, the document you receive from our Web server is the default document `index.html`. If the URL pattern matches the default servlet for a Web application, that servlet is invoked to return a default response to the client. This can be useful for personalizing Web content to specific users. To compile your servlet, you will need to use `javac`'s `-classpath` option to specify the name and location of the file `servlet-api.jar`, which is located in Tomcat's `common\libs` directory. Finally, we are ready to place our files into the appropriate directories to complete the deployment of our first servlet for testing. We have three files to place: `WelcomeServlet.html`, `WelcomeServlet.class` and `web.xml`. In your `jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25\webapps\jhtp6` directory, the context root for our Web application create subdirectories named `servlets` and `WEB-INF`. We place our HTML files for this servlets chapter in the `servlets` directory. Copy the `WelcomeServlet.html` file into the `servlets` directory. In the `WEB-INF` directory, create the subdirectory `classes`, then copy the `web.xml` file into the `WEB-INF` directory, and copy the `WelcomeServlet.class` file into the `classes` directory. Thus, the directory and file structure under the `webapps` directory should be as shown in Fig. 26.11 (file names are in italics). After the files are placed in the proper directories, start the Tomcat server, open your browser and type the following URL
Figure 26.11. Web application directory and file structure for WelcomeServlet.

WelcomeServlet Web application directory and file structure

```
jhtp6
   servlets
      WelcomeServlet.html
WEB-INF
   web.xml
   classes
      WelcomeServlet.class
```

to load WelcomeServlet.html into the Web browser. Then click the Get HTML Document button to invoke the servlet. You should see the results shown in Fig. 26.8. You can try this servlet from several different Web browsers to demonstrate that the results are the same across Web browsers.

Common Programming Error 26.2

Not placing a servlet or other class files in the appropriate directory structure prevents the server from locating those classes properly. This results in an error response to the client Web browser.

Actually, the HTML file in Fig. 26.8 was not necessary to invoke this servlet. A get request can be sent to a server simply by typing the URL in a browser exactly as you do when you request a Web page in the browser. In this example, you can type
in the **Address** or **Location** field of your browser to invoke the servlet directly.

**Error-Prevention Tip 26.3**

You can test a servlet that handles HTTP get requests by typing the URL that invokes the servlet directly into your browser's **Address** or **Location** field because get is the default HTTP method when browsing.
26.5. Handling HTTP \texttt{get} Requests Containing Data

When requesting a document or resource from a Web server, it is possible to supply data as part of the request. The servlet \texttt{WelcomeServlet2} in \textbf{Fig. 26.12} responds to an HTTP \texttt{get} request that contains a name supplied by the user. The servlet uses the name as part of the response to the client.

\textbf{Figure 26.12.} \texttt{WelcomeServlet2} responds to a \texttt{get} request containing data.

(This item is displayed on page 1256 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 26.12: WelcomeServlet2.java
// Processing HTTP get requests containing data.
import javax.servlet.ServletException;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.PrintWriter;

public class WelcomeServlet2 extends HttpServlet
{
    // process "get" request from client
    protected void doGet( HttpServletRequest request,
        HttpServletResponse response )
        throws ServletException, IOException
    {
        String firstName = request.getParameter( "firstname" );

        response.setContentType( "text/html" );
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();

        // send XHTML document to client
        // start XHTML document
        out.println( "<?xml version = "1.0"?>" );

        out.printf( "%s%s", "<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC" ,
                   " \"-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN\"",
                   " \"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd\"">" );

        out.println( "<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">" );

        // head section of document
        out.println( "<head>");
        out.println( "<title>Processing get requests with data</title>");
        out.println( "</head>");
```
Parameters are passed as name-value pairs in a get request. Line 17 demonstrates how to obtain information that was passed to the servlet as part of the client request. The request object's getParameter method accepts the parameter name as an argument and returns the corresponding String value, or null if the parameter is not part of the request. Note that parameter names are case sensitive and must match exactly. Line 41 uses the result of line 17 as part of the response to the client.

The WelcomeServlet2.html document (Fig. 26.13) provides a form in which the user can input a name in the text input element firstname (line 16) and click the Submit button to invoke WelcomeServlet2. When the user presses the Submit button, the values of the input elements are placed in name-value pairs as part of the request to the server. In the second screen capture in Fig. 26.13, note that the browser appended

?firstname=Jon

to the end of the action URL. The ? separates the query string (i.e., the data passed as part of the get request) from the rest of the URL in a get request. The name-value pairs are passed with the name and the value separated by =. If there is more than one name-value pair, each pair is separated by &.

Figure 26.13. HTML document in which the form's action invokes WelcomeServlet2 through the alias welcome2 specified in web.xml.

(This item is displayed on page 1257 in the print version)
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<title>Processing get requests with data</title>
</head>
<body>
<form action="/jhtp6/welcome2" method="get">
<p><label>Type your first name and press the Submit button
<br /></label>
<input type="text" name="firstname" /> <input type="submit" value="Submit" />
</p></form>
</body>
</html>

Once again, we use our jhtp6 context root to demonstrate the servlet of Fig. 26.12. Place WelcomeServlet2.html in the servlets directory created in Section 26.4.1. Place WelcomeServlet2.class in the classes subdirectory of WEB-INF in the jhtp6 context root. Remember that classes in a package must be placed in the appropriate package directory structure. Then edit the web.xml deployment descriptor in the WEB-INF directory to include the information specified in Fig. 26.14. This table contains the information for the servlet and servlet-mapping elements that you will add to the web.xml deployment descriptor. You should not type the italic text into the deployment descriptor. Restart Tomcat and type the following URL in your Web browser:
Type your name in the text field of the Web page, then click **Submit** to invoke the servlet. Once again, note that the **get** request could have been typed directly into the browser's **Address** or **Location** field as follows:

http://localhost:8080/jhttp6/welcome2?firstname=Jon

---

**Error-Prevention Tip 26.4**
If an error occurs during the servlet invocation, the log files in the \texttt{logs} directory of the Tomcat installation can help you determine the error and debug the problem.

\section*{Software Engineering Observation 26.4}

A \texttt{get} request is limited to standard characters, which means that you cannot submit any special characters via a \texttt{get} request. The length of the URL in a \texttt{get} request is limited. For example, the maximum URL length in Internet Explorer is 2,083 characters. Some Web servers might restrict this even more.

\section*{Good Programming Practice 26.1}

A \texttt{get} request should not be used for sending sensitive data (e.g., a password) because the form data is placed in a query string that is appended to the request URL as plain text and can be intercepted.
26.6. Handling HTTP post Requests

An HTTP post request is frequently used to send data from an HTML form to a server-side form handler that processes the data. For example, when you respond to a Web-based survey, a post request normally supplies the information you type in the form to the Web server.

Browsers often cache (save on disk) Web pages so they can quickly reload them. If there are no changes between the last version stored in the cache and the current version on the Web, this helps speed up your browsing experience. The browser first asks the server whether the document has changed or expired since the date the file was cached. If not, the browser loads the document from the cache. Thus, the browser minimizes the amount of data that must be downloaded for you to view a Web page. Browsers typically do not cache the server's response to a post request, because the next post might not return the same result. For example, in a survey, many users could visit the same Web page and respond to a question. The survey results could then be displayed for the user. Each new response changes the overall results of the survey.

When you use a Web-based search engine, the browser normally supplies the information you specify in an HTML form to the search engine with a get request. The search engine performs the search, then returns the results to you as a Web page. Such pages are often cached by the browser in case you perform the same search again. As with post requests, get requests can supply parameters as part of the request to the Web server.

The WelcomeServlet3 servlet in Fig. 26.15 is identical to the servlet in Fig. 26.12, except that it defines a doPost method (lines 1348) rather than a doGet method to respond to post requests. The default functionality of doPost is to indicate a "Method not supported" error. We override this method to provide custom post request processing. Method doPost accepts the same two arguments as doGet—an object that implements interface HttpServletRequest to represent the client's request and an object that implements interface HttpServletResponse to represent the servlet's response. As with doGet, method doPost throws a ServletException if it is unable to handle a client's request and throws an IOException if a problem occurs during stream processing.
Figure 26.15. WelcomeServlet3 responds to a post request containing data.

(This item is displayed on pages 1259 - 1260 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 26.15: WelcomeServlet3.java
// Processing post requests containing data.
public class WelcomeServlet3 extends HttpServlet
{
    // process "post" request from client
    protected void doPost(HttpServletRequest request,
                          HttpServletResponse response)
                        throws ServletException, IOException
    {
        String firstName = request.getParameter("firstname");
        response.setContentType("text/html");
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();
        // send XHTML page to client
        out.println("<?xml version = "1.0"?>");
        out.printf("%s%s%s",
                   "<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC",
                   "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"",
                   "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
        out.println("<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">");
        out.println("<head>");
        out.println("<title>Processing post requests with data</title>");
        out.println("</head>");
        // body section of document
        out.println("<body>");
        out.println("<h1>Hello " + firstName + ",<br/>");
        out.println("Welcome to Servlets!</h1>");
        out.println("</body>");
        // end XHTML document
        out.println("</html>");
        out.close(); // close stream to complete the page
    }
}
```
WelcomeServlet3.html (Fig. 26.16) provides a form (lines 1319) in which the user can input a name in the text input element firstname (line 16), then click the Submit button to invoke WelcomeServlet3. When the user presses the Submit button, the values of the input elements are sent to the server as part of the request. However, note that the values are not appended to the request URL. The form's method in this example is post, but note that a post request cannot be typed into the browser's Address or Location field, and users cannot bookmark post requests in their browsers.

We use our jhttp6 context root to demonstrate the servlet in Fig. 26.15. Place WelcomeServlet3.html in the servlets directory created in Section 26.4.1. Place WelcomeServlet3.class in the classes subdirectory of WEB-INF in the jhttp6 context root. Then, using the information specified in Fig. 26.17, edit the web.xml deployment descriptor in the WEB-INF directory. Restart Tomcat and type the following URL in your Web browser:


Type your name in the text field of the Web page, then click Submit to invoke the servlet.

Figure 26.16. HTML document in which the form's action invokes WelcomeServlet3 through the alias welcome3 specified in web.xml.

(This item is displayed on pages 1260 - 1261 in the print version)
### Figure 26.17. Deployment descriptor information for servlet `WelcomeServlet3`.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Descriptor element</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>servlet</code> element</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>servlet-name</code></td>
<td><code>welcome3</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Handling HTTP post requests with data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>description</th>
<th>servlet-class</th>
<th>welcome3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>WelcomeServlet3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
26.7. Redirecting Requests to Other Resources

Sometimes it is useful to redirect a request to a different resource. For example, a servlet could determine the type of the client browser and redirect the request to a Web page that was designed specifically for that browser. This technique is also used to redirect browsers to an error page when handling a request fails. The RedirectServlet in Fig. 26.18 receives a page parameter as part of a get request, then uses that parameter to redirect the request to a different resource.

Figure 26.18. Redirecting requests to other resources.
(This item is displayed on pages 1262 - 1263 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 26.18: RedirectServlet.java
// Redirecting a user to a different Web page.
import javax.servlet.ServletException;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.PrintWriter;

public class RedirectServlet extends HttpServlet {

    // process "get" request from client
    protected void doGet( HttpServletRequest request,
                          HttpServletResponse response )
                      throws ServletException, IOException {
        String location = request.getParameter( "page" );
        if ( location != null ) {
            if ( location.equals( "deitel" ) )
                response.sendRedirect( "http://www.deitel.com" );
            else if ( location.equals( "welcome1" ) )
                response.sendRedirect( "welcome1" );

        } // end if
        // code that executes only if this servlet
        // does not redirect the user to another page
        response.setContentType( "text/html" );
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();

        // start XHTML document
```
Line 17 obtains the page parameter from the request. If the value is not null, the nested if... else if statement at lines 21-24 determines whether the value is either "deitel" or "welcome1". If the value is "deitel," the response object's sendRedirect method (line 22) redirects the request to www.deitel.com. If the value is "welcome1," line 24 redirects the request to the servlet of Fig. 26.7. Note that line 24 does not explicitly specify the context root for our Web application. When a servlet uses a relative path to reference another static or dynamic resource, the servlet assumes the same context root as the one that invoked the servlet unless a complete URL is specified for the resource. So line 24 actually is requesting the resource located at

http://localhost:8080/jhtp6/welcome1

Similarly, line 51 is actually requesting the resource located at
Software Engineering Observation 26.5

Using relative paths to reference resources in the same context root makes your Web application more flexible. For example, you can change the context root without making changes to the static and dynamic resources in the application.

Once method `sendRedirect` executes, processing of the original request by the `RedirectServlet` terminates. If method `sendRedirect` is not called, the remainder of method `doGet` outputs a Web page indicating that an invalid request was made. The page allows the user to try again by returning to the XHTML document of Fig. 26.19. Note that one of the redirects is sent to a static XHTML Web page and the other is sent to a servlet.

Figure 26.19. `RedirectServlet.html` document to demonstrate redirecting requests to other resources.

(This item is displayed on page 1264 in the print version)

```xml
<?xml version = "1.0" ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
<!-- Fig. 26.19: RedirectServlet.html -->
<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<title>Redirecting a Request to Another Site</title>
</head>
<body>
<p>Click a link to be redirected to the appropriate page</p>
<p>
<a href = "/jhtp6/redirect?page=deitel">www.deitel.com</a><br />
<a href = "/jhtp6/redirect?page=welcome1">Welcome servlet</a>
</p>
</body>
```
RedirectServlet.html (Fig. 26.19) provides two links (lines 1516 and 1718) that allow the user to invoke the servlet RedirectServlet. Each link specifies a page parameter as part of the URL. To demonstrate passing an invalid page, you can type the URL into your browser with no value for the page parameter.

We use our jhtp6 context root to demonstrate the servlet of Fig. 26.18. Place RedirectServlet.html in the servlets directory created in Section 26.4.1. Place Redirect-Servlet.class in the classes subdirectory of WEB-INF in the jhtp6 context root. Then, edit the web.xml deployment descriptor in the WEB-INF directory to include the information specified in Fig. 26.20. Restart Tomcat, and type the following URL in your Web browser:


Click a link in the Web page to invoke the servlet.
When redirecting requests, the request parameters from the original request are passed as parameters to the new request. Additional request parameters can also be passed. For example, the URL passed to `sendRedirect` could contain name-value pairs. New parameters are added to the existing parameters. A new parameter with the same name as an existing parameter takes precedence over the original value. However, all the values are still passed. In this case, the complete set of values for a given parameter name can be obtained by calling method `getParameterValues` from interface `HttpServletRequest`. This method accepts the parameter name as an argument and returns an array of strings containing the parameter values in most-recent-to-least-recent-order.
26.8. Multitier Applications: Using JDBC from a Servlet

Servlets can communicate with databases via JDBC (Chapter 25). Many of today's applications are **three-tier distributed applications**, consisting of a **user interface**, **business logic** and a **database**. The user interface in such an application is often created using HTML or XHTML (as shown in this chapter). HTML and XHTML are preferred in systems where portability is a concern. Using the networking provided by the browser, the user interface can communicate with the middle-tier business logic. The middle tier can then access the database to manipulate the data. The three tiers can reside on separate computers that are connected to a network.

In multitier architectures, Web servers often are used in the middle tier. Server-side components, such as servlets, execute in an application server alongside the Web server. These components provide the business logic that manipulates data from databases and communicates with client Web browsers. Servlets, through JDBC, can interact with popular database systems. Developers use SQL for queries, and JDBC drivers handle the specifics of interacting with each database system.

The SurveyServlet in Fig. 26.21 and the Survey.html document in Fig. 26.22 implement portions of a three-tier distributed application. The middle tier is Survey-Servlet, which handles requests from the client browser and provides access to the third tier a MySQL database accessed via JDBC. The servlet in this example allows users to vote for their favorite animals. When the servlet receives a post request from the Web browser, the servlet uses JDBC to update the total number of votes for that animal in the database and returns a dynamically generated XHTML document containing the survey results to the client.

---

Figure 26.21. Multitier Web-based survey using XHTML, servlets and JDBC.

(This item is displayed on pages 1266 - 1268 in the print version)
package com.deitel.jhtp6.servlets;

import java.io.PrintWriter;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.sql.Statement;
import java.sql.ResultSet;
import java.sql.SQLException;
import javax.servlet.ServletConfig;
import javax.servlet.ServletException;
import javax.servlet.UnavailableException;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServlet;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest;
import javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse;

public class SurveyServlet extends HttpServlet {
    private Connection connection;
    private Statement statement;

    // set up database connection and create SQL statement
    public void init(ServletConfig config) throws ServletException {
        try {
            Class.forName(config.getInitParameter("databaseDriver"));
            connection = DriverManager.getConnection(config.getInitParameter("databaseName"));
            config.getInitParameter("username"),
            config.getInitParameter("password") ;
            // create Statement to query database
            statement = connection.createStatement();
        } // end try
        // for any exception throw an UnavailableException to
        // indicate that the servlet is not currently available
        catch (Exception exception) {
            exception.printStackTrace();
            throw new UnavailableException(exception.getMessage());
        } // end catch
    } // end method init

    // process survey response
    protected void doPost(HttpServletRequest request, HttpServletResponse response) throws ServletException, IOException {
        // set up response to client
        response.setContentType("text/html");
        PrintWriter out = response.getWriter();

        // start XHTML document
        out.println("<?xml version = "1.0"?>");
        out.printf("%s%s%s","<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC" ,
                " "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"",
                " "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">");
    }
}
out.println("<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">

// head section of document
out.println("<head>");

// read current survey response
int value =
    Integer.parseInt( request.getParameter("animal"));
String sql;

// attempt to process a vote and display current results
try
{
    // update total for current survey response
    sql = "UPDATE surveyresults SET votes = votes + 1 " +
    "WHERE id = " + value;
    statement.executeUpdate(sql);

    // get total of all survey responses
    sql = "SELECT sum( votes ) FROM surveyresults";
    ResultSet totalRS = statement.executeQuery(sql);
    totalRS.next(); // position to first record
    int total = totalRS.getInt(1);

    // get results
    sql = "SELECT surveyoption, votes, id FROM surveyresults " +
    "ORDER BY id";
    ResultSet resultsRS = statement.executeQuery(sql);
    out.println("<title>Thank you!</title>");
    out.println("</head>");
    out.println("<body>");
    out.println("<p>Thank you for participating.</p>
    out.println("<br />Results:<p>
    out.println("<pre>");

    // process results
    int votes;
    while ( resultsRS.next() )
    {
        out.print(resultsRS.getString(1));
        out.print(":");
        votes = resultsRS.getInt(2);
        out.printf("%.2f", (double) votes / total * 100);
        out.print("% responses: ");
        out.println(votes);
    } // end while
    resultsRS.close();

    out.print("Total responses: ");
    out.print(total);

    // end XHTML document
    out.println("</pre></body></html>");
    out.close();
} // end try

// if database exception occurs, return error page
catch ( SQLException sqlException )
{
surveyException.printStackTrace();
out.println( "<title>Error</title>" );
out.println( "</head>" );
out.println( "<body><p>Database error occurred. " );
out.println( "Try again later.</p></body></html>" );
out.close();
} // end method doPost
// close SQL statements and database when servlet terminates
public void destroy()
{
    // attempt to close statements and database connection
    try
    {
        statement.close();
        connection.close();
    } // end try

    // handle database exceptions by returning error to client
    catch ( SQLException sqlException )
    {
        sqlException.printStackTrace();
    } // end catch
} // end method destroy
} // end class SurveyServlet

Figure 26.22. Survey.html document that allows users to submit survey responses to SurveyServlet.
(This item is displayed on pages 1270 - 1271 in the print version)
Lines 21 and 22 begin by declaring a `Connection` to manage the database
connection and a `Statement` for updating the vote count for an animal, totaling all the votes and obtaining the complete survey results.

Servlets are initialized by method `init`, which we override in `SurveyServlet` (lines 2546). Method `init` is called exactly once in a servlet's life cycle, before any client requests are accepted. The method takes `ServletConfig` argument and throws a `Servlet-Exception`. The argument provides the servlet with information about its **initialization parameters** (i.e., parameters not associated with a request, but passed to the servlet for initializing the servlet). These parameters are specified in the `web.xml` deployment descriptor file as part of a `servlet` element. Each parameter appears in an `init-param` element of the following form:

```xml
<init-param>
  <param-name>parameter name</param-name>
  <param-value>parameter value</param-value>
</init-param>
```

Servlets can obtain initialization parameter values by invoking `ServletConfig` method `getInitParameter`, which receives a string representing the `param-name` of the parameter and returns the `param-value` as a string.

In this example, the servlet's `init` method (lines 2546) performs the connection to the MySQL database. Line 30 loads the driver (`com.mysql.jdbc.Driver`, which is specified in the initialization parameter "databaseDriver"). Lines 3134 attempt to open a connection to the `animalsurvey` database. The database name, username and password are specified in the initialization parameters "databaseName", "username" and "password", respectively. The database contains one table (`surveyresults`) that consists of three fields: a unique integer to identify each record (`id`), a string representing the survey option (`surveyoption`) and an integer representing the number of votes for a survey option (`votes`). [Note: The examples folder for this chapter contains the SQL script `animalsurvey.sql` with which you can create the `animalsurvey` database for this example. For information on executing the SQL script, please refer to Chapter 25.]

When a user submits a survey response, method `doPost` (lines 49132) handles the request. Lines 7172 obtain the survey response, then lines 76121 attempt
to process it. Lines 7980 specify an update statement to increment the votes value for the record with the specified ID and update the database. Lines 8587 execute the query specified in line 84 to retrieve the total number of votes received using SQL's built-in sum function to total all the votes in the surveyresults table. Then lines 92120 execute the query specified in lines 9091 to obtain the data in the table and process the ResultSet to create the survey summary for the client. When the servlet container terminates the servlet, method destroy (lines 135148) closes the Statement, then closes the database connection. Figure 26.22 shows survey.html, which invokes SurveyServlet through alias animalsurvey when the user submits the form.

We use our jhtp6 context root to demonstrate the servlet of Fig. 26.21. Place Survey.html in the servlets directory created previously. Place SurveyServlet.class (with the complete package structure) in the classes subdirectory of WEB-INF in the jhtp6 context root. Then, edit the web.xml deployment descriptor in the WEB-INF directory to include the information specified in Fig. 26.23. This program cannot execute in Tomcat unless the Web application has access to the JAR file that contains the MySQL database driver and its supporting classes. This JAR file (mysql-connector-java-3.0.14-production-bin.jar) can be found in your MySQL Connector's installation directory. Place a copy of this file in the WEB-INF subdirectory lib to make its contents available to the Web application. Please refer to Chapter 25 for more information on how to configure MySQL.

![Figure 26.23. Deployment descriptor information for servlet SurveyServlet.](image)

(This item is displayed on page 1272 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Descriptor element</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>servlet element</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servlet-name</td>
<td>animalsurvey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>description</td>
<td>Connecting to a database from a servlet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>servlet-class</td>
<td>com.deitel.jhtp6.servlets.SurveyServlet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>init-param</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>param-name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


databaseDriver
	param-value

com.mysql.jdbc.Driver

init-param

  param-name
databaseName
databaseName

  param-value
jdbc:mysql://localhost/animalsurvey

init-param

  param-name
username

  param-value
jhtp6

init-param

  param-name
password

  param-value
After copying these files, type the following URL in your Web browser:


Select an animal and press the Submit button to invoke the servlet. [Note: The MySQL database server should be running when the servlet is invoked.]
26.9. Welcome Files

Web application developers can specify an ordered list of **welcome files** to be loaded when the request URL is not mapped to a servlet. These files are typically HTML or JSP documents. Welcome files are defined using the **welcome-file-list** element in the deployment descriptor. Element **welcome-file-list** contains one or more **welcome-file** elements. Each **welcome-file** element specifies the partial URL of a welcome file without a leading or trailing `/`. For example, the following **welcome-file-list** element indicates that `index.html` and `index.htm` are the welcome files.

```xml
<welcome-file-list>
  <welcome-file>index.html</welcome-file>
  <welcome-file>index.htm</welcome-file>
</welcome-file-list>
```

To specify the welcome files for the **jhtp6** context root, insert the preceding **welcome-file-list** element after the last **servlet-mapping** element in the **web.xml** deployment descriptor. When the URL **http://localhost:8080/jhtp6/** is requested, the Web server appends each welcome file in the order specified in the deployment descriptor to the request URL, such as

```
```

and checks whether the resource is valid. The servlet container sends the request to the first matching welcome file. For example, if `index.html` exists in the **jhtp6** directory, the servlet container sends the request to the **http://localhost:8080/jhtp6/index.html**. If no matching welcome file is found, the servlet container returns a response indicating that the resource is not available.
Figure 26.24 is the index.html that provides links (lines 1524) to test all the examples demonstrated in this chapter. Copy this file to C:\jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25\webapps\jhtp6 and restart the Tomcat server. To test the welcome file, type the following URL in your Web browser:

**Figure 26.24. Welcome file index.html.**

(This item is displayed on page 1273 in the print version)

```xml
<?xml version = "1.0" ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
<!-- Fig. 26.24: index.html -->
<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<title>Welcome File</title>
</head>
<body>
<p>Click a link to test each example demonstrated in this chapter</p>
<p>
<a href = "/jhtp6/servlets/WelcomeServlet.html">WelcomeServlet</a><br />
<a href = "/jhtp6/servlets/WelcomeServlet2.html">WelcomeServlet2</a><br />
<a href = "/jhtp6/servlets/WelcomeServlet3.html">WelcomeServlet3</a><br />
<a href = "/jhtp6/servlets/RedirectServlet.html">RedirectServlet</a><br />
<a href = "/jhtp6/servlets/Survey.html">SurveyServlet</a><br />
</p>
</body>
</html>
```

[View full size image]
The `index.html` page is loaded. Click a link to test the corresponding servlet example.
26.10. Wrap-Up

This chapter continued our networking discussions by presenting servlets that enhance the functionality of Web servers. You learned the architecture and life cycle of servlets. You learned how to respond to HTTP requests by using an HttpServlet. You also learned how to redirect requests to a static or dynamic Web resource. You executed the sample servlets with the Apache Tomcat server. You then built a multitier Web application that uses JDBC to access and manipulate a database from a servlet. In the next chapter, we introduce JavaServer Pages, an extension of servlet technology. We demonstrate several JSP components: implicit objects, scripting elements, standard actions and directives. We also discuss how to use CachedRowSets to access a MySQL database from a JavaBean object, then access the JavaBean object from a JSP page.
26.11. Internet and Web Resources

This section lists a variety of servlet resources available on the Internet and provides a brief description of each.

java.sun.com/products/servlet/index.html

The servlet page at the Sun Microsystems, Java Web site provides access to the latest servlet information and servlet resources.

jakarta.apache.org

This is the Apache Project's home page for the Jakarta Project.

jakarta.apache.org/tomcat/index.html

Home page for the Tomcat servlets and JavaServer Pages reference implementation.

www.servlets.com

This Web site provides news, tools and documents for servlets and JSP technologies. It also links to the book Java Servlet Programming published by O'Reilly.

theserverside.com

TheServerSide.com is dedicated to information and resources for J2EE.

www.javacorporate.com/expresso/frame.jsp

Home of the open-source Expresso Framework, which includes a library of extensible servlet components to help speed Web application development.

www.servlet.com/srvdev.jhtml

ServletInc's Servlet Developers Forum provides resources for server-side Java developers and information about Web servers that support servlet technologies.

www.coolservlets.com

Provides free open-source Java servlets.
www.cetus-links.org/oo_java_servlets.html
Provides a list of links to resources on servlets and other technologies.

www.javaskyline.com

Java Skyline is an online magazine for servlet developers.

www.rfc-editor.org

The RFC Editor provides a search engine for RFCs (Requests for Comments). Many of these RFCs provide details of Web-related technologies. RFCs of interest to servlet developers include URI in WWW (RFC 1630), URI: generic syntax (RFC 2396), HTTP State Management Mechanism (RFC 2109), Use and Interpretation of HTTP Version Numbers (RFC 2145), Hyper Text Coffee Pot Control Protocol (RFC 2324), HTTP/1.1 (RFC 2616) and HTTP Authentication: Basic and Digest Authentication (RFC 2617).
Summary

- The classes and interfaces used to define servlets are found in packages `javax.servlet` and `javax.servlet.http`.

- URLs represent files or directories and can represent complex tasks, such as database lookups and Internet searches.

- JavaServer Pages technology, an extension of servlet technology, simplifies the process of creating pages by separating presentation from content.

- Servlets are normally executed by the servlet container component of a Web application server.

- All servlets must implement the `Servlet` interface. The methods of interface `Servlet` are invoked automatically by the servlet container.

- A servlet's life cycle begins when the servlet container loads the servlet into memory normally in response to the first request to that servlet. Before the servlet can handle the first request, the servlet container invokes the servlet's `init` method. After `init` completes execution, the servlet can respond to its first request. All requests are handled by a servlet's `service` method, which may be called many times during the servlet's life cycle. When the servlet container terminates the servlet, the servlet's `destroy` method is called to release servlet resources.

- The key method in every servlet is method `service`, which receives both a `ServletRequest` object and a `ServletResponse` object. These objects provide access to input and output streams that allow the servlet to read data from and send data to the client. Commonly, this method should not be overridden.

- Servlets typically extend class `HttpServlet`, which overrides method `service` to distinguish between the typical requests received from a client Web browser. The two most common HTTP request types (also known as request methods) are `get` and `post`.

- Class `HttpServlet` defines methods `doGet` and `doPost` to respond to `get` and `post`
requests from a client, respectively.

- **Methods** `doGet` and `doPost` receive as arguments an `HttpServletRequest` object and an `HttpServletResponse` object that enable interaction between the client and the server.

- A response is sent to the client through a `PrintWriter` object returned by the `getWriter` method of the `HttpServletResponse` object.

- The `HttpServletResponse` object's `setContentType` method specifies the content type of the response to the client. This enables the client browser to understand and handle the content.

- The server `localhost` (IP address `127.0.0.1`) is a well-known host name on computers that support TCP/IP-based networking protocols such as HTTP. This host name can be used to test TCP/IP applications on the local computer.

- The Tomcat server awaits requests from clients on port 8080. This port number must be specified as part of the URL to request a servlet running in Tomcat.

- Tomcat is a fully functional implementation of the JSP and servlet standards. It includes a Web server, so it can be used as a standalone test container for JSPs and servlets.

- JSPs, servlets and their supporting files are deployed as part of Web applications. In Tomcat, Web applications are deployed in the `webapps` subdirectory of the Tomcat installation.

- A Web application has a well-known directory structure in which all the files that are part of the application reside. This directory structure can be set up by the Tomcat server administrator in the `webapps` directory, or the entire directory structure can be archived in a Web application archive file (i.e., `.war` file).

- WAR files are typically placed in the `webapps` directory. When the Tomcat server begins execution, it extracts the contents of the WAR file into the appropriate `webapps` subdirectory structure.
The Web application directory structure is separated into a context root—the top-level directory for an entire Web application—and several subdirectories. The context root is the root directory for the Web application.

All the JSPs, HTML documents, servlets and supporting files such as images and class files reside in the root directory or its subdirectories.

The **WEB-INF** directory contains the Web application deployment descriptor (**web.xml**), which is required to deploy a Web application.

The **WEB-INF/classes** directory contains the servlet class files and other supporting class files used in a Web application.

The **WEB-INF/lib** directory contains Java archive (JAR) files that may include servlet class files and other supporting class files used in a Web application.

Tomcat uses the directory names in the **webapps** subdirectory as the context names.

**HTTP** **get** requests can be typed directly into your browser's Address or Location field.

Parameters are passed as name-value pairs in a **get** request. A **?** separates the URL from the data passed as part of a **get** request. Name-value pairs are passed with the name and the value separated by **=**. Two or more name-value pairs are separated by **&**.

Method **getParameter** of **HttpServletRequest** receives the parameter name as an argument and returns the corresponding **String** value, or **null** if the parameter is not part of the request.

An **HTTP** **post** request is often used to post data from a Web-page form to a server-side form handler that processes the data. **HTTP** **post** requests are commonly used for passing sensitive data.

Method **doPost** receives the same two arguments as **doGet** an object that implements interface **HttpServletRequest** to represent the client's request and
an object that implements interface HttpServletResponse to represent the servlet's response.

- Method sendMessage of HttpServletResponse redirects a request to the specified URL.

- When a servlet uses a relative path to reference another static or dynamic resource, the servlet assumes the same context root unless a complete URL is specified for the resource.

- Once method sendMessage executes, processing of the request by the servlet that called sendMessage terminates.

- When redirecting requests, the request parameters from the original request are passed as parameters to the new request. Additional request parameters can also be passed. New parameters are added to the existing request parameters. If a new parameter has the same name as an existing parameter, the new parameter value takes precedence over the original value. However, all the values are still passed.

- The complete set of values for a given request-parameter name can be obtained by calling method getParameterValues of HttpServletRequest, which receives the parameter name as an argument and returns an array of Strings containing the parameter values in order from the most recently to the least recently added.

- Many of today's applications are three-tier distributed applications, consisting of a user interface, business logic and database access.

- In multitier architectures, Web servers are often used in the middle tier. Server-side components, such as servlets, execute in an application server alongside the Web server. These components provide the business logic that manipulates data from databases and communicates with client Web browsers.

- Servlet method init takes a ServletConfig argument, which provides the servlet with information about its initialization parameters specified in a servlet element in the deployment descriptor. Each parameter appears in an init-param element with child elements param-name and param-value.
• Web application developers can specify an ordered list of welcome files to be loaded when the request URL is not mapped to a servlet. These files are typically HTML or JSP documents.

• Welcome files are defined using the `<welcome-file-list>` element in the deployment descriptor.

• Element `<welcome-file-list>` contains one or more `<welcome-file>` elements. Each `<welcome-file>` element specifies the partial URL of a welcome file without a leading or trailing `/`. 
Terminology

Apache Tomcat server

business logic

cache a Web page

CATALINA_HOME environment variable

context root

deploy a Web application

deployment descriptor

destroy method of Servlet

doGet method of HttpServlet

doPost method of HttpServlet

GenericServlet class from javax.servlet

get request

getCookies method of HttpServletRequest

getOutputStream method of HttpServletResponse

getParameter method of HttpServletRequest

getParameterNames method of HttpServletRequest

getParameterValues method of HttpServletRequest

getWriter method of HttpServletResponse
host name

HTTP header

HTTP (Hypertext Transfer Protocol)

HTTP request

HttpServlet interface

HttpServletRequest interface

HttpServletResponse interface

init method of Servlet

initialization parameter

Jakarta project

JAVA_HOME environment variable

javax.servlet package

javax.servlet.http package

localhost (127.0.0.1)

MIME type

port

post request

put request

redirect a request

request method
request parameter

sendRedirect method of HttpServletResponse

service method of Servlet

servlet

servlet container

ServletRequest interface

ServletResponse interface

setContentType method of HttpServletResponse

text/html MIME type

thin client

three-tier distributed application

trace request

URL pattern

WAR (Web application archive) file

Web application
Web application deployment descriptor (web.xml)

webapps directory

WEB-INF directory

WEB-INF/classes directory

WEB-INF/lib directory

welcome file

welcome-file element

welcome-file-list element

well-known port number
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Classes `HttpServlet` and `GenericServlet` implement the__________interface.

2. Class `HttpServlet` defines the methods__________and__________to respond to get and post requests from a client.

3. `HttpServletResponse` method__________obtains a character-based output stream that enables text data to be sent to the client.

4. The form attribute__________specifies the server-side form handler, i.e., the program that handles the request.

5. __________is the well-known host name that refers to your own computer.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. Servlets usually are used on the client side of a networking application.

2. Servlet methods are executed by the servlet container.

3. The two most common HTTP requests are `get` and `put`.

4. The well-known port number on a Web server where requests for HTML documents are made is 8080.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

26.1 a) Servlet. b) doGet, doPost. c) getWriter. d) action. e) localhost.

1. False. Servlets are usually used on the server side.

2. True.

3. False. The two most common HTTP request types are get and post. The put request type is often not allowed for security reasons.

4. False. The well-known port number on a Web server where requests for HTML documents are made is 80. Port 8080 is the Tomcat servlet container's default port.
**Exercises**

26.3 Create a servlet that displays the current date and time.

Create a HTML form with three input fields: first name, last name and e-mail. Use the *get* method to pass these values to a servlet. Notice how data is attached to the URL. In the servlet, verify all input fields are non-null and display them back to the client.

26.5 Create a Web application for dynamic FAQs. The application should obtain the information to create the dynamic FAQ Web page from a database that consists of a *topics* table and an *faq* table. The *topics* table has two fields—a unique integer ID for each topic (*topicID*) and a name for each topic (*topicName*). The *faq* table has three fields—the *topicID* (a foreign key), a string representing the question (*question*) and the answer to the question (*answer*). When the servlet is invoked, it should read the data from the database and return a dynamically created Web page containing each question and answer, sorted by topic. [Note: The *examples* folder for this chapter contains the SQL script *faq.sql* with which you can create the *faq* database for this example. For information on executing the SQL script, please refer to Chapter 25.] In the servlet’s *init* method, create a *CachedRowSet* and set the database URL for the *CachedRowSet*. Sun’s reference implementation of *CachedRowSet* is named *CachedRowSetImpl* and is located in the package `com.sun.rowset`.

Modify the Web application in Exercise 26.5 so that the initial request to the servlet returns a Web page of topics in the FAQ database. Then, the user can link to another servlet that returns only the frequently asked questions for a particular topic.

26.7 Modify the Web application in Fig. 26.21 to allow the user to see the survey results without responding to the survey.

Recall that the Web application in Fig. 26.21 implements a Web-based survey. Write a Web application that can be used generically with any survey of the appropriate form—i.e., a question followed by a set of possible answers. Your Web application should have three servlets. The first is called to dynamically generate a list of survey names. When the user selects a survey, the second servlet should dynamically generate a form containing the survey options. When the user chooses an option, the third servlet should update the database and return the survey results. The *survey* database for this exercise has two tables—*surveyCategory* and *surveyResult*. Table *surveyCategory* has three fields—a unique integer ID for each survey category (*id*), a string representing the survey name (*name*) and a string representing the survey question (*question*). Table *surveyResult* has three fields—an integer ID (a foreign key) that identifies the survey category (*id*), a string representing the survey option (*surveyOption*) and an integer representing the total votes that option has received so far (*voteCount*). [Note: The *examples* folder for this chapter contains the SQL script *survey.sql* with which you can create the *survey* database for this example. For information on executing the SQL script, refer to Chapter 25. The sample database contains sample data for three surveys—Animals, Fruits and Sports.]

26.9 Write a Web application that consists of a servlet (*DirectoryServlet*) and several Web documents. Document *index.html* should be the first document the user sees. In it, you should have a series of links for other Web pages in your site. When clicked, each link should invoke the servlet with a *get* request that contains a *page* parameter. The servlet should obtain parameter *page* and redirect the request to the appropriate document.
Chapter 27. JavaServer Pages (JSP)

If it's a good script, I'll do it and if it's a bad script and they pay me enough, I'll do it.

George Burns

A fair request should be followed by the deed in silence.

Dante Alighieri

Talent is a question of quantity. Talent does not write one page: it writes three hundred.

Jules Renard

Every action must be due to one or other of seven causes: chance, nature, compulsion, habit, reasoning, anger, or appetite.

Aristotle

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

What JSPs are.

The differences between servlets and JSPs.

To create and deploy JavaServer Pages.

To use JSP’s implicit objects and scriptlets to create dynamic Web pages.

To specify global JSP information with directives.

To use actions to manipulate JavaBeans in a JSP, to include resources dynamically and to forward requests to other JSPs.
Outline

27.1 Introduction
27.2 JavaServer Pages Overview
27.3 First JSP Example
27.4 Implicit Objects
27.5 Scripting
   27.5.1 Scripting Components
   27.5.2 Scripting Example
27.6 Standard Actions
   27.6.1 <jsp:include> Action
   27.6.2 <jsp:forward> Action
   27.6.3 <jsp:useBean> Action
27.7 Directives
   27.7.1 page Directive
   27.7.2 include Directive
27.8 Case Study: Guest Book
27.9 Wrap-Up
27.10 Internet and Web Resources

Summary
Terminology
Self-Review Exercises
Answers to Self-Review Exercises
27.1. Introduction

In Chapter 26, you learned how to generate dynamic Web pages with servlets. You probably have already noticed in our examples that most of the code in our servlets generated output that consisted of the HTML elements that composed the response to the client. Only a small portion of the code dealt with the business logic. Generating responses from servlets requires that Web application developers be familiar with Java. However, many people involved in Web application development, such as Web site designers, do not know Java. It is difficult for people who are not Java programmers to implement, maintain and extend a Web application that consists of primarily of servlets. The solution to this problem is JavaServer Pages (JSP), an extension of servlet technology that separates the presentation from the business logic. This lets Java programmers and Web-site designers focus on their strengths—writing Java code and designing Web pages, respectively.

JavaServer Pages simplify the delivery of dynamic Web content. They enable Web application programmers to create dynamic content by reusing predefined components and by interacting with components using server-side scripting. JavaServer Page programmers can use special software components called JavaBeans and custom tag libraries that encapsulate complex, dynamic functionality. A JavaBean is a reusable component that follows certain conventions for class design that are discussed in the JavaBeans specification, which is available at java.sun.com/products/javabeans/glasgow/index.html. Custom-tag libraries are a powerful feature of JSP that allows Java developers to hide complex code for database access and other useful services for dynamic Web pages in custom tags. Web sites use these custom tags like any other Web page element to take advantage of the more complex functionality hidden by the tag. Thus, Web-page designers who are not familiar with Java can enhance Web pages with powerful dynamic content and processing capabilities.

The classes and interfaces that are specific to JavaServer Pages programming are located in packages javax.servlet.jsp and javax.servlet.jsp.tagext. We discuss many of these classes and interfaces throughout this chapter as we present JSP fundamentals. For complete JSP details, see the JavaServer Pages 2.0 specification, which can be downloaded from java.sun.com/products/jsp/download.html. We also include other JSP resources
in Section 27.10.
27.2. JavaServer Pages Overview

There are four key components to JSPs: directives, actions, scripting elements and tag libraries. **Directives** are messages to the **JSP container**, the server component that executes JSPs that enable the programmer to specify page settings, to include content from other resources and to specify custom tag libraries for use in a **JSP**. **Actions** encapsulate functionality in predefined tags that programmers can embed in a JSP. Actions often are performed based on the information sent to the server as part of a particular client request. They also can create Java objects for use in JSP scriptlets. **Scripting elements** enable programmers to insert Java code that interacts with components in a JSP (and possibly other Web application components) to perform request processing. **Scriptlets**, one kind of scripting element, contain code fragments that describe the action to be performed in response to a user request. **Tag libraries** are part of the **tag extension mechanism** that enables programmers to create custom tags. Such tags enable Web page designers to manipulate JSP content without prior Java knowledge. These JSP component types are discussed in detail in subsequent sections.

In some ways, JavaServer Pages look like standard XHTML or XML documents. In fact, JSPs normally include XHTML or XML markup. Such markup is known as **fixed-template data** or **fixed-template text**. Fixed-template data often helps a programmer decide whether to use a servlet or a JSP. Programmers tend to use JSPs when most of the content sent to the client is fixed-template data and little or none of the content is generated dynamically with Java code. Programmers typically use servlets when only a small portion of the content sent to the client is fixed-template data. In fact, some servlets do not produce content. Rather, they perform a task on behalf of the client, then invoke other servlets or JSPs to provide a response. Note that in most cases servlet and JSP technologies are interchangeable. As with servlets, JSPs normally execute as part of a Web server.

**Software Engineering Observation 27.1**

*Literal text in a JSP becomes string literals in the servlet that represents the translated JSP.*
When a JSP-enabled server receives the first request for a JSP, the JSP container translates the JSP into a Java servlet that handles the current request and future requests to the JSP. Literal text in a JSP becomes string literals in the servlet that represents the translated JSP. Any errors that occur in compiling the new servlet result in translation-time errors. The JSP container places the Java statements that implement the JSP's response in method _jspService at translation time. If the new servlet compiles properly, the JSP container invokes method _jspService to process the request. The JSP may respond directly or may invoke other Web application components to assist in processing the request. Any errors that occur during request processing are known as request-time errors.

Performance Tip 27.1

Some JSP containers translate JSPs to servlets at installation time. This eliminates the translation overhead for the first client that requests each JSP.

Overall, the request-response mechanism and the JSP life cycle are the same as those of a servlet. JSPs can override methods jspInit and jspDestroy (similar to servlet methods init and destroy), which the JSP container invokes when initializing and terminating a JSP, respectively. JSP programmers can define these methods using JSP declarations part of the JSP scripting mechanism.
27.3. First JSP Example

We begin our introduction to JavaServer Pages with a simple example, clock.jsp (Fig. 27.1), in which the current date and time are inserted into a Web page using a JSP expression.

Figure 27.1. JSP expression inserting the date and time into a Web page.
(This item is displayed on pages 1283 - 1284 in the print version)

```
<?xml version = "1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
 "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">

<!-- Fig. 27.1: clock.jsp -->
<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<meta http-equiv = "refresh" content = "60" />
<title>A Simple JSP Example</title>
<style type = "text/css">
.big { font-family: helvetica, arial, sans-serif;
        font-weight: bold;
        font-size: 2em; }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<p class = "big">Simple JSP Example</p>
<table style = "border: 6px outset;">
<tr>
<td style = "background-color: black;">
<p class = "big" style = "color: cyan;">
<!-- JSP expression to insert date/time -->
<%= new java.util.Date() %>
</p>
</td>
</tr>
</table>
</body>
</html>
```
As you can see, most of clock.jsp consists of XHTML markup. [Note: We assume that the reader already knows XHTML and Cascading Style Sheets (CSS). For those who are not familiar with XHTML and CSS, we have included three chapters from our book Internet & World Wide Web How to Program, Third Edition as PDF documents on the CD that accompanies this bookIntroduction to XHTML: Part 1, Introduction to XHTML: Part 2 and Cascading Style Sheets (CSS).] In cases like this, JSPs are easier to implement than servlets. In a servlet that performs the same task as this JSP, each line of XHTML markup typically is a separate Java statement that outputs the string representing the markup as part of the response to the client. Writing code to output markup can often lead to errors. Most JSP editors provide syntax coloring to help programmers check that their markup follows proper syntax.

Software Engineering Observation 27.2

JavaServer Pages are easier to implement than servlets when the response to
The JSP in Fig. 27.1 generates an XHTML document that displays the current date and time. The key line in this JSP (line 24) is the expression

```jsp
<%= new java.util.Date() %>
```

JSP expressions are delimited by `<%=` and `%>`. The preceding expression creates a new instance of class `Date` (package `java.util`). By default, a `Date` object is initialized with the current date and time. When the client requests this JSP, the preceding expression inserts the `String` representation of the date and time in the response to the client. [Note: Because the client of a JSP could be anywhere in the world, the JSP should return the date in the client locale's format. However, the JSP executes on the server, so the server's locale determines the `String` representation of the `Date`. In Fig. 27.10, clock2.jsp determines the client's locale, then uses a `DateFormat` (package `java.text`) object to format the date using that locale.]

**Software Engineering Observation 27.3**

We use the XHTML `meta` element in line 9 to set a refresh interval of 60 seconds for the document. This causes the browser to request `clock.jsp` every 60 seconds. For each request to `clock.jsp`, the JSP container reevaluates the expression in line 24, creating a new `Date` object with the server's current date and time.
As in Chapter 26, we use Apache Tomcat to test our JSPs in the jhtp6 Web application we created previously. For details on creating and configuring the jhtp6 Web application, review Section 26.3 and Section 26.4.1. To test clock.jsp, create a new directory called jsp in the jhtp6 subdirectory of Tomcat's webapps directory. Next, copy clock.jsp into the jsp directory. Open your Web browser and enter the following URL to test clock.jsp:

http://localhost:8080/jhtp6/jsp/clock.jsp

When you first invoke the JSP, you may notice a brief delay as Tomcat translates the JSP into a servlet and invokes the servlet to respond to your request. [Note: It is not necessary to create a directory named jsp in a Web application. We use this directory to separate the examples in this chapter from the servlet examples in Chapter 26.]
27.4. Implicit Objects

Implicit objects provide access to many servlet capabilities in the context of a JavaServer Page. Implicit objects have four scopes: application, page, request and session. The JSP container owns objects with application scope. Any JSP can manipulate such objects. Objects with page scope exist only in the page that defines them. Each page has its own instances of the page-scope implicit objects. Objects with request scope exist for the duration of the request. For example, a JSP can partially process a request, then forward it to a servlet or another JSP for further processing. Request-scope objects go out of scope when request processing completes with a response to the client. Objects with session scope exist for the client's entire browsing session. Figure 27.2 describes the JSP implicit objects and their scopes. This chapter demonstrates several of these objects.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Implicit object</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Application Scope</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>application</td>
<td>A javax.servlet.ServletContext object that represents the container in which the JSP executes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Page Scope</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>config</td>
<td>A javax.servlet.ServletConfig object that represents the JSP configuration options. As with servlets, configuration options can be specified in a Web application descriptor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exception</td>
<td>A java.lang.Throwable object that represents an exception that is passed to a JSP error page. This object is available only in a JSP error page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>out</td>
<td>A javax.servlet.jsp.JspWriter object that writes text as part of the response to a request. This object is used implicitly with JSP expressions and actions that insert string content in a response.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>page</td>
<td>An Object that represents the this reference for the current JSP instance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A `javax.servlet.jsp.PageContext` object that provides JSP programmers with access to the implicit objects discussed in this table.

An object that represents the response to the client and is normally an instance of a class that implements `HttpServletResponse` (package `javax.servlet.http`). If a protocol other than HTTP is used, this object is an instance of a class that implements `javax.servlet.ServletResponse`.

**Request Scope**

An object that represents the client request and is normally an instance of a class that implements `HttpServletRequest` (package `javax.servlet.http`). If a protocol other than HTTP is used, this object is an instance of a subclass of `javax.servlet.ServletRequest`.

**Session Scope**

A `javax.servlet.http.HttpSession` object that represents the client session information if such a session has been created. This object is available only in pages that participate in a session.

Note that many of the implicit objects extend classes or implement interfaces discussed in [Chapter 26](#). Thus, JSPs can use the same methods that servlets use to interact with such objects, as described in [Chapter 26](#). Most of the examples in this chapter use one or more of the implicit objects in [Fig. 27.2](#).
27.5. Scripting

JavaServer Pages often present dynamically generated content as part of an XHTML document that is sent to the client in response to a request. In some cases, the content is static but is output only if certain conditions are met during a request (e.g., providing values in a form that submits a request). JSP programmers can insert Java code and logic in a JSP using scripting.

27.5.1. Scripting Components

The JSP scripting components include scriptlets, comments, expressions, declarations and escape sequences. This section describes each of these scripting components. Many of these are demonstrated in Fig. 27.4 at the end of Section 27.5.2.

Scriptlets are blocks of code delimited by `<%` and `%>`. They contain Java statements that the container places in method `_jspService` at translation time.

JSPs support three comment styles: JSP comments, XHTML comments and scripting-language comments. **JSP comments** are delimited by `<!--` and `-->`. These can be placed throughout a JSP, but not inside scriptlets. **XHTML comments** are delimited with `<!--` and `-->`. These, too, can be placed throughout a JSP, but not inside scriptlets. Scripting language comments are currently Java comments, because Java currently is the only JSP scripting language. Scriptlets can use Java's end-of-line `//` comments and traditional comments (delimited by `/*` and `*/`). JSP comments and scripting-language comments are ignored and do not appear in the response to a client. When clients view the source code of a JSP response, they will see only the XHTML comments in the source code. The different comment styles are useful for separating comments that the user should be able to see from those that document logic processed on the server.

**Common Programming Error 27.1**

*Placing a JSP comment or XHTML comment inside a scriptlet is a...*
As we discussed in Section 27.3, JSP expressions are delimited by `<%=` and `%>` and contain a Java expression that is evaluated when a client requests the JSP containing the expression. The container converts the result of a JSP expression to a `String` object, then outputs the `String` as part of the response to the client.

Declarations, delimited by `<%!` and `%>`, enable a JSP programmer to define variables and methods for use in a JSP. Variables become instance variables of the servlet class that represents the translated JSP. Similarly, methods become members of the class that represents the translated JSP. Declarations of variables and methods in a JSP use Java syntax. Thus, a variable declaration must end with a semicolon, as in

```
<%! int counter = 0; %>
```

**Software Engineering Observation 27.4**

*JSPs should not store client state information in instance variables. Rather, they should use the JSP implicit `session` object. For more information on how to use the `session` object, visit Sun's J2EE tutorial at java.sun.com/j2ee/1.4/docs/tutorial/doc/index.html.*

Special characters or character sequences that the JSP container normally uses to delimit JSP code can be included in a JSP as literal characters in scripting elements, fixed template data and attribute values using escape sequences. Figure 27.3 shows the literal character or characters and the corresponding escape sequences and discusses where to use the escape sequences.

**Figure 27.3. JSP escape sequences.**
27.5.2. Scripting Example

Figure 27.4 demonstrates responding to **get** requests with basic scripting capabilities. The JSP enables the user to input a first name, then outputs that name in the response. Using scripting, the JSP determines whether a `firstName` parameter was passed as part of the request. If not, the JSP returns an XHTML document containing a `form` through which the user can input a first name. Otherwise, the JSP obtains the `firstName` value and uses it as part of an XHTML document that welcomes the user to JavaServer Pages.

```xml
<?xml version = "1.0" ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
"http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
<!-- Fig. 27.4: welcome.jsp -->
```
<!-- JSP that processes a "get" request containing data. -->
<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<title>Processing "get" requests with data</title>
</head>
<body>
<!-- begin scriptlet -->
String name = request.getParameter( "firstName" );
if ( name != null ) {

<!-- end scriptlet to insert fixed template data --%>
<h1>
Hello <%= name %>, <br />
Welcome to JavaServer Pages!
</h1>

<!-- continue scriptlet -->
} // end if
else {

<!-- end scriptlet to insert fixed template data --%>
<form action = "welcome.jsp" method = "get">
<p>Type your first name and press Submit</p>
<input type = "text" name = "firstName" />
<input type = "submit" value = "Submit" />
</form>

<!-- continue scriptlet -->
} // end else

<!-- end scriptlet -->
</body>
</html>
Note that most of the code in Fig. 27.4 is XHTML markup (i.e., fixed-template data). Throughout the body element (lines 1650) are several scriptlets (lines 1723, 3035 and 4549) and a JSP expression (line 26). Note that three JSP comment styles appear in this JSP (at line 5, line 17 and line 23).

The scriptlets define an if...else statement that determines whether the JSP received a value for the first name as part of the request. Line 19 uses method getParameter of JSP implicit object request (an HttpServletRequest object) to obtain the value for parameter firstName and assigns the result to variable name. Line 21 determines whether or not name is null. If it is not null, a value for the first name was passed to the JSP as part of the request. If this condition is true, the scriptlet terminates temporarily so that the fixedtemplate data at lines 2528 can be output. The JSP expression in line 26 outputs the value of variable name (i.e., the first name passed to the JSP as a request parameter). The scriptlet continues at lines 3035 with the closing brace of the if statement's body and the beginning of the else part of the if...else statement. If the condition at line 21 is false, lines 2528 are not output. Instead, lines 3743 output a form element. The user can type a first name in the form and press the Submit button to request the JSP again and execute the if statement's body (lines 2528).

Software Engineering Observation 27.5
Scriptlets, expressions and fixed-template data can be intermixed in a JSP to create different responses based on the information in a request.

Error-Prevention Tip 27.1

It is sometimes difficult to debug errors in a JSP, because the line numbers reported by a JSP container normally refer to the servlet that represents the translated JSP, not the original JSP line numbers. Program development environments enable JSPs to be compiled in the environment, so you can see syntax error messages. These messages include the statement in the servlet that represents the translated JSP, which can be helpful in determining the error.

Error-Prevention Tip 27.2

Many JSP containers store the source code for the servlets that represent the translated JSPs. For example, the Tomcat installation directory contains a subdirectory called work in which you can find the source code for the servlets translated by Tomcat. Recall from Chapter 26 that the log files located in the logs subdirectory of the Tomcat installation directory are also helpful for determining the errors.

Error-Prevention Tip 27.3

Always put the closing brace for the if statement and the else statement in the same scriptlet.
To test Fig. 27.4 in Tomcat, copy welcome.jsp into the jsp directory created in Section 27.3. Then, open your Web browser and enter the following URL:

http://localhost:8080/jhtp6/jsp/welcome.jsp

[Page 1291]

When you first execute the JSP, it displays the form in which you can enter your first name, because the preceding URL does not pass a firstName parameter to the JSP. After you submit your first name, your browser should appear as shown in the second screen capture of Fig. 27.4. [Note: As with servlets, it is possible to pass get request arguments as part of the URL. The following URL supplies the firstName parameter to welcome.jsp.]

http://localhost:8080/jhtp6/jsp/welcome.jsp?firstName=Paul
27.6. Standard Actions

We continue our JSP discussion with the JSP standard actions (Fig. 27.5). These actions provide JSP implementors with access to several of the most common tasks performed in a JSP, such as including content from other resources, forwarding requests to other resources and interacting with JavaBean software components. JSP containers process actions at request time. Actions are delimited by `<jsp:action>` and `</jsp:action>`, where `action` is the standard action name. In cases where nothing appears between the starting and ending tags, the XML empty element syntax `<jsp:action/>` can be used. Figure 27.5 summarizes the JSP standard actions, which we use in the next several subsections.

**Figure 27.5. JSP standard actions.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;jsp:include&gt;</code></td>
<td>Dynamically includes another resource in a JSP. As the JSP executes, the referenced resource is included and processed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;jsp:forward&gt;</code></td>
<td>Forwards request processing to another JSP, servlet or static page. This action terminates the current JSP's execution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;jsp:plugin&gt;</code></td>
<td>Allows a plug-in component to be added to a page in the form of a browser-specific object or embed HTML element. In the case of a Java applet, this action enables the browser to download and install the Java Plug-in, if it is not already installed on the client computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;jsp:param&gt;</code></td>
<td>Used with the <code>include</code>, <code>forward</code> and <code>plugin</code> actions to specify additional name-value pairs of information for use by these actions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**JavaBean Manipulation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;jsp:useBean&gt;</code></td>
<td>Specifies that the JSP uses a JavaBean instance (i.e., an object of the class that declares the JavaBean). This action specifies the scope of the object and assigns it an ID (i.e., a variable name) that scripting components can use to manipulate the bean.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sets a property in the specified JavaBean</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
27.6.1. **<jsp:include> Action**

JavaServer Pages support two include mechanisms—the `<jsp:include>` action and the include directive. Action `<jsp:include>` enables dynamic content to be included in a JavaServer Page at request time. If the included resource changes between requests, the next request to the JSP containing the `<jsp:include>` action includes the resource's new content. On the other hand, the include directive copies the content into the JSP once, at JSP translation time. If the included resource changes, the new content will not be reflected in the JSP that used the include directive, unless that JSP is recompiled, which normally would occur only if a new version of the JSP is installed. Figure 27.6 describes the attributes of action `<jsp:include>.

**Figure 27.6. Action `<jsp:include>` attributes.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>page</td>
<td>Specifies the relative URI path of the resource to include. The resource must be part of the same Web application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flush</td>
<td>Specifies whether the implicit object <code>out</code> should be flushed before the <code>include</code> is performed. If <code>true</code>, the <code>JspWriter out</code> is flushed prior to the inclusion, hence you could no longer forward to another page later on. The default value is <code>false</code>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Software Engineering Observation 27.6
According to the JavaServer Pages 2.0 specification, a JSP container is allowed to determine whether a resource included with the `include` directive has changed. If so, the container can recompile the JSP that included the resource. However, the specification does not provide a mechanism to indicate a change in an included resource to the container.

**Performance Tip 27.2**

The `<jsp:include>` action is more flexible than the `include` directive, but requires more overhead when page contents change frequently. Use the `<jsp:include>` action only when dynamic content is necessary.

**Common Programming Error 27.2**

Specifying in a `<jsp:include>` action a page that is not part of the same Web application is a request-time error—the `<jsp:include>` action will not include any content.

The next example demonstrates action `<jsp:include>` using four XHTML and JSP resources that represent both static and dynamic content. JavaServer Page `include.jsp` (Fig. 27.7) includes three other resources: `banner.html` (Fig. 27.8), `toc.html` (Fig. 27.9) and `clock2.jsp` (Fig. 27.10). JavaServer Page `include.jsp` creates an XHTML document containing a table in which `banner.html` spans two columns across the top of the table, `toc.html` is the left column of the second row and `clock2.jsp` is the right column of the second row. Figure 27.7 uses three `<jsp:include>` actions (lines 3839, 45 and 4950) as the content in the elements of the table. Using two XHTML documents and a JSP in Fig. 27.7 demonstrates that JSPs can include both static and dynamic content. The output window in Fig. 27.7 demonstrates the result of one request to `include.jsp`. 
<?xml version = "1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
 "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">

<!-- Fig. 27.7: include.jsp -->
<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
 <head>
  <title>Using jsp:include</title>
  <style type = "text/css">
   body
   {
    font-family: tahoma, helvetica, arial, sans-serif;
   }
   table, tr, td
   {
    font-size: .9em;
    border: 3px groove;
    padding: 5px;
    background-color: #dddddd;
   }
  </style>
 </head>
 <body>
  <table>
   <tr>
    <td style = "width: 160px; text-align: center">
     <img src = "images/logotiny.png"
          width = "140" height = "93"
          alt = "Deitel & Associates, Inc. Logo" />
    </td>
    <td>
     <jsp:include page = "banner.html" flush = "true" />
    </td>
   </tr>
   <tr>
    <td style = "vertical-align: top">
     <jsp:include page = "toc.html" flush = "true" />
    </td>
   </tr>
   <tr>
    <td style = "width: 160px">
     <jsp:include page = "toc.html" flush = "true" />
    </td>
   </tr>
   <tr>
    <td style = "vertical-align: top">
     <jsp:include page = "clock2.jsp" flush = "true" />
    </td>
   </tr>
  </table>
</html>
Figure 27.8. Banner (banner.html) to include across the top of the XHTML document created by Fig. 27.7.

(This item is displayed on page 1295 in the print version)

```
<!-- Fig. 27.8: banner.html -->
<!-- banner to include in another document -->
<div style = "width: 580px">
<p>
Java(TM), C, C++, Visual Basic(R), Object Technology, and Internet and World Wide Web Programming Training On-Site Seminars Delivered Worldwide:
</p>
<a href = "mailto:deitel@deitel.com">deitel@deitel.com</a>
<br />
978.461.5880
12 Clock Tower Place, Suite 200, Maynard, MA 01754
```
Figure 27.9. Table of contents (*toc.html*) to include down the left side of the XHTML document created by **Fig. 27.7**.
(This item is displayed on pages 1295 - 1296 in the print version)

```html
<!-- Fig. 27.9: toc.html -->
<!-- contents to include in another document -->
<p><a href = "http://www.deitel.com/books/downloads.html">Downloads/Resources</a></p>
<p><a href = "http://www.deitel.com/intro.html">Who we are</a></p>
<p>Send questions or comments about this site to</p>
<p><a href = "mailto:deitel@deitel.com">deitel@deitel.com</a></p>
<p>Copyright 1995-2005 by Deitel & Associates, Inc.</p>
<p>All Rights Reserved.</p>
```

Figure 27.10. JSP **clock2.jsp** to include as the main content in the XHTML document created by **Fig. 27.7**.
(This item is displayed on page 1296 in the print version)
Figure 27.10 (clock2.jsp) demonstrates how to determine the client's `Locale` (package `java.util`) and uses that `Locale` to format a `Date` with a `DateFormat` (package `java.text`) object. Line 14 invokes the `request` object's `getLocale` method, which returns the client's `Locale`. Lines 17-20 invoke `DateFormat` static method `getDateTimeInstance` to obtain a `DateFormat` object. The first two arguments indicate that the date and time formats should each be `LONG` format (other options are `FULL`, `MEDIUM`, `SHORT` and `DEFAULT`, see [java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/text/DateFormat.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/text/DateFormat.html) for details of these formats). The third argument specifies the `Locale` for which the `DateFormat` object should format the date. Line 25 invokes the `DateFormat` object's `format` method to produce a `String` representation of the `Date`. The `DateFormat` object formats this `String` for the `Locale` specified in line 20. [Note: This example works for Western languages that use the ISO-8859-1 character set. For other languages, the JSP must specify the proper character set using the JSP page directive (Section 27.7.1). At the site [java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/intl/encoding.doc.html](http://java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/intl/encoding.doc.html), Sun provides a list of character encodings. The response's content type defines
To test Fig. 27.7 in Tomcat, copy `banner.html`, `toc.html`, `clock2.jsp`, `include.jsp` and the `images` directory into the `jsp` directory created in Section 27.3. Open your Web browser and enter the following URL:

```
http://localhost:8080/jhttp6/jsp/include.jsp
```

27.6.2. `<jsp:forward>` Action

Action `<jsp:forward>` enables a JSP to forward request processing to a different resource, such as an error page. Request processing by the original JSP terminates as soon as the JSP forwards the request. Action `<jsp:forward>` has only a page attribute that specifies the relative URL of the resource (in the same Web application) to which the request should be forwarded.

**Software Engineering Observation 27.7**

*When using the `<jsp:forward>` action, the resource to which the request will be forwarded must be in the same context (Web application) as the JSP that originally received the request.*

JavaServer Page `forward1.jsp` (Fig. 27.11) is a modified version of `welcome.jsp` (Fig. 27.4). The primary difference is in lines 2023, in which JavaServer Page `forward1.jsp` forwards the request to JavaServer Page `forward2.jsp` (Fig. 27.12). Note the `<jsp:param>` action in lines 2122. This action adds a request parameter representing the date and time at which the initial request was received to the request object that is forwarded to `forward2.jsp`. 

---
Figure 27.11. JSP `forward1.jsp` receives a `firstName` parameter, adds a date to the request parameters and forwards the request to `forward2.jsp` for further processing.

(This item is displayed on pages 1297 - 1298 in the print version)

```xml
<?xml version = "1.0" ?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
 "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">

<!-- Fig. 27.11: forward1.jsp -->
<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<title>Forward request to another JSP</title>
</head>
<body>

<!-- begin scriptlet -->
String name = request.getParameter( "firstName" );
if ( name != null ) {
%>
<jsp:forward page = "forward2.jsp">
    <jsp:param name = "date"
        value = "<%= new java.util.Date() %>">
</jsp:forward>
%
} // end if
else {
%>
<form action = "forward1.jsp" method = "get">
    <p>Type your first name and press Submit</p>
    <input type = "text" name = "firstName" />
    <input type = "submit" value = "Submit" />
</form>
%
} // end else
%-- end scriptlet --%>
</body>
</html> <!-- end XHTML document -->
Figure 27.12. JSP forward2.jsp receives a request (from forward1.jsp in this example) and uses the request parameters as part of the response to the client.

(This item is displayed on pages 1298 - 1299 in the print version)

```xml
<?xml version = "1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN" "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">
<!-- Fig. 27.12: forward2.jsp -->
<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<title>Processing a forwarded request</title>
<style type = "text/css">
.big
  {
    font-family: tahoma, helvetica, arial, sans-serif;
    font-weight: bold;
    font-size: 2em;
  }
</style>
</head>
<body>
<p class = "big">
  Hello <%= request.getParameter( "firstName" ) %>, <br />
  Your request was received <br /> and forwarded at
</p>
<table style = "border: 6px outset;">
  <tr>
    <td style = "background-color: black;">
```

```
```
The `<jsp:param>` action specifies name-value pairs of information that are passed to the `<jsp:include>`, `<jsp:forward>` and `<jsp:plugin>` actions. Every `<jsp:param>` action has two required attributes `name` and `value`. If a `<jsp:param>` action specifies a parameter that already exists in the request, the new value for the parameter takes precedence over the original one. All the values for that parameter can be obtained by using the JSP implicit object `request`'s `getParameterValues` method, which returns an array of `Strings`.

JSP forward2.jsp uses the name specified in the `<jsp:param>` action ("date") to obtain the date and time. It also uses the `firstName` parameter originally passed to forward1.jsp to obtain the user's first name. The JSP expressions in Fig. 27.12 (lines 21 and 28) insert the request parameter values in the response to the client. The screen capture in Fig. 27.11 shows the initial interaction with the client. The screen capture in Fig. 27.12 shows the results returned to the client.
To test Fig. 27.11 and Fig. 27.12 in Tomcat, copy forward1.jsp and forward2.jsp into the jsp directory created in Section 27.3. Open your Web browser and enter the following URL to test forward1.jsp:

http://localhost:8080/jhtp6/jsp/forward1.jsp

27.6.3. `<jsp:useBean>` Action

Action `<jsp:useBean>` enables a JSP to manipulate a Java object. This action creates a Java object or locates an existing object for use in the JSP. Figure 27.13 summarizes action `<jsp:useBean>`'s attributes. If attributes class and beanName are not specified, the JSP container attempts to locate an existing object of the type specified in attribute type. Like JSP implicit objects, objects specified with action `<jsp:useBean>` have a scope page, request, session or application that indicates where they can be used in a Web application. Objects with page scope are accessible only by the page in which they are defined. Multiple JSP pages can potentially access objects in other scopes. For example, all JSPs that process a single request can access an object in request scope.

**Figure 27.13. Attributes of the `<jsp:useBean>` action.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>id</td>
<td>The name used to manipulate the Java object with actions <code>&lt;jsp:set-Property&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;jsp:getProperty&gt;</code>. A variable of this name is also declared for use in JSP scripting elements. The name specified here is case sensitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scope</td>
<td>The scope in which the Java object is accessible page, request, session or application. The default scope is page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>The fully qualified class name of the Java object.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beanName</td>
<td>The name of a JavaBean that can be used with method <code>instantiate</code> of class <code>java.beans.Beans</code> to load a JavaBean into memory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The type of the JavaBean. This can be the same type as the class attribute, a superclass of that type or an interface implemented by that type. The default value is the same as for attribute class. A ClassCastException occurs if the Java object is not of the type specified with attribute type.

Common Programming Error 27.3

One or both of the <jsp:useBean> attributes class and type must be specified otherwise, a translation-time error occurs.

Many Web sites place rotating advertisements on their Web pages. Each visit to one of these pages typically results in a different advertisement being displayed in the user’s Web browser. Typically, clicking an advertisement takes you to the Web site of the company that placed the advertisement. Our first example of <jsp:useBean> demonstrates a simple advertisement rotator bean that cycles through a list of five advertisements. In this example, the advertisements are covers for some of our books. Clicking a cover takes you to the Amazon.com Web site, where you can read about and possibly order the book.

The Rotator bean (Fig. 27.14) has three methods: getImage, getLink and nextAd. Method getImage returns the image file name for the book-cover image. Method getLink returns the hyperlink to the book at Amazon.com. Method nextAd updates the Rotator so that the next calls to getImage and getLink will return information for a different advertisement. Methods getImage and getLink each represent a read-only JavaBean property image and link, respectively. These are read-only properties because no set methods are provided to change their values. Rotator keeps track of the current advertisement with its selectedIndex variable, which is updated by invoking method nextAd.
Figure 27.14. Rotator bean that maintains a set of advertisements.

(This item is displayed on page 1301 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 27.14: Rotator.java
// A JavaBean that rotates advertisements.
package com.deitel.jhtp6.jsp.beans;

public class Rotator {

    private String images[] = {
        "images/advjHTP1.jpg",
        "images/cppHTTP4.jpg",
        "images/iw3HTTP2.jpg",
        "images/jwsFEP1.jpg",
        "images/vbnetHTTP2.jpg"};

    private String links[] = {
        "http://www.amazon.com/exec/obidos/ASIN/0130895601/"
            + "deitelassociatin",
        "http://www.amazon.com/exec/obidos/ASIN/0130384747/"
            + "deitelassociatin",
        "http://www.amazon.com/exec/obidos/ASIN/0130308978/"
            + "deitelassociatin",
        "http://www.amazon.com/exec/obidos/ASIN/0130461342/"
            + "deitelassociatin",
        "http://www.amazon.com/exec/obidos/ASIN/0130293636/"
            + "deitelassociatin"};

    private int selectedIndex = 0;

    // returns image file name for current ad
    public String getImage() {
        return images[selectedIndex];
    }

    // returns the URL for ad's corresponding Web site
    public String getLink() {
        return links[selectedIndex];
    }

    // update selectedIndex so next calls to getImage and
    // getLink return a different advertisement
    public void nextAd() {
        selectedIndex = (selectedIndex + 1) % images.length;
    }

} // end class Rotator
```

JavaBeans were originally intended to be manipulated visually in visual

development environments (often called **builder tools** or IDEs). Builder tools that support beans provide programmers with tremendous flexibility by allowing them to reuse and integrate existing disparate components that, in many cases, were never intended to be used together. These components can be linked together to create applets, applications or even new beans for reuse by others.

When used in an IDE, JavaBeans usually adhere to the following coding conventions:

1. implement the `Serializable` interface
2. provide a `public` no-argument constructor
3. provide `get` and/or `set` methods for properties (which are normally implemented as fields).

When used on the server side, such as within a JSP or a servlet, JavaBeans are less restricted. For example, the `Rotator` bean does not implement the `Serializable` interface because there is no need to save and load the `Rotator` bean as a file. Recall that by default, if the programmer does not explicitly add constructors to a class, a `public` no-argument constructor is generated automatically. Also note that in the Rotator bean, properties `image` and `link` are read only because they provide only `get` methods.

Lines 78 of JavaServer Page `adrotator.jsp` (Fig. 27.15) obtain a reference to an instance of class `Rotator`. The `id` for the bean is `rotator`. The JSP uses this name to manipulate the bean. The scope of the object is `session`, so that every client will see the same sequence of ads during their browsing sessions. When `adrotator.jsp` receives a request from a new client, the JSP container creates the bean and stores it in that client's `session` (an `HttpSession` object). In each request to this JSP, line 19 uses the `rotator` reference created in line 7 to invoke the `Rotator` bean's `nextAd` method. Thus, each request will receive the next advertisement selected by the `Rotator` bean. Lines 2429 define a hyperlink to the Amazon.com site for a particular book. Lines 2425 introduce action `<jsp:getProperty>` to obtain the value of the `Rotator` bean's `link` property. Action `<jsp:getProperty>` has two attributes `name` and `property` that specify the bean object to manipulate and the property to get. If the JavaBean object uses standard JavaBean naming conventions, the method used to obtain the `link` property value from the bean should be `getLink`. Action `<jsp:getProperty>` invokes `getLink` on the bean referenced with `rotator`, converts the return value into a `String` and outputs the `String` as part of the response to the client. The `link` property becomes the value of the hyperlink's `href` attribute. The hyperlink is
Figure 27.15. JSP adrotator.jsp uses a Rotator bean to display a different advertisement on each request for the page.

(This item is displayed on pages 1302 - 1303 in the print version)
The link and image properties can also be obtained with JSP expressions. For example, action `<jsp:getProperty>` in lines 2425 can be replaced with the expression

```jsp
<%= rotator.getLink() %>
```

Similarly, action `<jsp:getProperty>` in lines 2728 can be replaced with the expression

```jsp
<%= rotator.getImage() %>
```

The benefit of using actions is that someone who is unfamiliar with Java can be told the name of a property and the name of a bean, and it is the action's responsibility to invoke the appropriate methods. The Java programmer's job is
To create a bean that supports the capabilities required by the page designer.

To test adrotator.jsp in Tomcat, copy adrotator.jsp into the jsp directory created in Section 27.3. You should have copied the images directory into the jsp directory when you tested Fig. 27.7. If not, you must copy the images directory there now. Copy Rotator.class into the jhttp6 Web application's WEBINF/classes/com/deitel/jhttp6/jsp/beans directory in Tomcat. [Note: This example will work only if the proper package directory structure for Rotator is defined in the classes directory. Rotator is declared in package com.deitel.jhttp6.jsp.beans.]

Open your Web browser and enter the following URL to test adrotator.jsp:

http://localhost:8080/jhttp6/jsp/adrotator.jsp

Try reloading this JSP several times in your browser to see the advertisement change with each request.

Action <jsp:setProperty> sets JavaBean property values and is particularly useful for mapping request parameter values to JavaBean properties. Request parameters can be used to set properties of primitive types boolean, byte, char, short, int, long, float and double and java.lang types String, Boolean, Byte, Character, Short, Integer, Long, Float, and Double. Figure 27.16 summarizes the <jsp:setProperty> attributes.

---

**Figure 27.16. Attributes of the <jsp:setProperty> action.**

(This item is displayed on page 1305 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>The ID of the JavaBean for which a property (or properties) will be set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>property</td>
<td>The name of the property to set. Specifying &quot;*&quot; for this attribute specifies that the JSP should match the request parameters to the properties of the bean. For each request parameter that matches (i.e., the name of the request parameter is identical to the bean's property name), the corresponding property in the bean is set to the value of the parameter. If the value of the request parameter is &quot;&quot;, the property value in the bean remains unchanged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>param</td>
<td>If request parameter names do not match bean property names, this attribute can be used to specify which request parameter should be used to obtain the value for a specific bean property. This attribute is optional. If this attribute is omitted, the request parameter names must match the bean property names.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The value to assign to a bean property. The value typically is the result of a JSP expression. This attribute is particularly useful for setting bean properties that cannot be set using request parameters. This attribute is optional. If this attribute is omitted, the JavaBean property must be of a type that can be set using request parameters.

Software Engineering Observation 27.8

Action `<jsp:setProperty>` can use request-parameter values to set JavaBean properties of the following types: Strings, primitive types (`Boolean`, `byte`, `char`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `float` and `double`) and type-wrapper classes (`Boolean`, `Byte`, `Character`, `Short`, `Integer`, `Long`, `Float` and `Double`). See Fig. 27.22 for an example.

Common Programming Error 27.4

Conversion errors occur if you use action `<jsp:setProperty>`'s `value` attribute to set JavaBean property types that cannot be set with request parameters.
27.7. Directives

Directives are messages to the JSP container that enable the programmer to specify page settings (e.g., the error page to invoke if an error occurs), to include content from other resources and to specify custom-tag libraries for use in a JSP. Directives (delimited by `<%@` and `%>`) are processed at translation time. Thus, directives do not produce any immediate output, because they are processed before the JSP accepts any requests. Figure 27.17 summarizes the three directive types. These directives are discussed in the next several subsections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Directive</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>page</td>
<td>Defines page settings for the JSP container to process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>include</td>
<td>Causes the JSP container to perform a translation-time insertion of another resource's content. As the JSP is translated into a servlet and compiled, the referenced file replaces the <code>include</code> directive and is translated as if it were originally part of the JSP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>taglib</td>
<td>Allows programmers to use new tags from tag libraries that encapsulate more complex functionality and simplify the coding of a JSP.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

27.7.1. page Directive

The page directive specifies global settings for the JSP in the JSP container. There can be many page directives, provided that there is only one occurrence of each attribute. The only exception is the import attribute, which can be used repeatedly to import Java packages used in the JSP. Figure 27.18 summarizes the attributes of the page directive.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>language</td>
<td>The scripting language used in the JSP. Currently, the only valid value for this attribute is java.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extends</td>
<td>Specifies the class from which the translated JSP can inherit. This attribute must be a fully qualified class name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>import</td>
<td>Specifies a comma-separated list of fully qualified type names and/or packages that will be used in the current JSP. When the scripting language is java, the default import list is java.lang.<em>, javax.servlet.</em>, javax.servlet.jsp.<em>, and javax.servlet.http.</em>. If multiple import properties are specified, the package names are placed in a list by the container.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>session</td>
<td>Specifies whether the page participates in a session. The values for this attribute are true (participates in a session—the default) or false (does not participate in a session). When the page is part of a session, implicit object session is available for use in the page. Otherwise, session is not available, and using session in the scripting code results in a translation-time error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buffer</td>
<td>Specifies the size of the output buffer used with the implicit object out. The value of this attribute can be none for no buffering or a value such as 8kb (the default buffer size). The JSP specification indicates that the buffer used must be at least the size specified.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autoFlush</td>
<td>When set to true (the default), this attribute indicates that the output buffer used with implicit object out should be flushed automatically when the buffer fills. If set to false, an exception occurs if the buffer overflows. This attribute’s value must be true if the buffer attribute is set to none.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isThreadSafe</td>
<td>Specifies whether the page is thread safe. If true (the default), the page is considered to be thread safe, and it can process multiple requests at the same time. If false, the servlet that represents the page implements interface java.lang.SingleThreadModel and only one request can be processed by that JSP at a time. The JSP standard allows multiple instances of a JSP to exist for JSPs that are not thread safe. This enables the container to handle requests more efficiently. However, this does not guarantee that resources shared across JSP instances are accessed in a thread-safe manner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>info</td>
<td>Specifies an information string that describes the page. This string is returned by the getServletInfo method of the servlet that represents the translated JSP. This method can be invoked through the JSP’s implicit page object.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
errorPage

Any exceptions in the current page that are not caught are sent to the error page for processing. The error-page implicit object `exception` references the original exception.

`isErrorPage`

Specifies whether the current page is an error page that will be invoked in response to an error on another page. If the attribute value is `true`, the implicit object `exception` is created and references the original exception that occurred. If `false` (the default), any use of the `exception` object in the page results in a translation-time error.

`contentType`

Specifies the MIME type of the data in the response to the client. The default type is `text/html`.

`pageEncoding`

Specifies the character encoding of the JSP page. The default value is ISO-8859-1.

`isELIgnored`

Specifies whether JSP container should evaluate expressions that use the **Expression Language (EL)** a new feature in JSP 2.0 that allows JSP authors to create scriptless JSP pages. EL is typically used with JSP tag libraries, which are beyond the scope of this book. An EL expression has the form `${exp}`. If the attribute value is `true`, the EL expressions are ignored, which means that the JSP container does not evaluate the expressions at translation time. If `false`, the EL expressions are evaluated by the JSP container. For more information on EL, visit [java.sun.com/developer/EJTechTips/2004/tt0126.html](http://java.sun.com/developer/EJTechTips/2004/tt0126.html)

Common Programming Error 27.5

Providing multiple `page` directives with one or more repeated attributes in common is a JSP translation-time error, unless the values for all repeated attributes are identical. Also, providing a `page` directive with an attribute or value that is not recognized is a JSP translation-time error.

Software Engineering Observation 27.9
According to the JSP specification, section 1.10.1, the `extends` attribute "should not be used without careful consideration as it restricts the ability of the JSP container to provide specialized superclasses that may improve on the quality of rendered service." Remember that a Java class can extend exactly one other class. If your JSP specifies an explicit superclass, the JSP container cannot translate your JSP into a subclass of one of the container application’s own enhanced servlet classes.

Common Programming Error 27.6

Using JSP implicit object `session` in a JSP that does not have its `page` directive attribute `session` set to `true` is a translation-time error.

27.7.2. `include` Directive

The `include` directive includes the content of another resource once, at JSP translation time. The `include` directive has only one attribute `file` that specifies the URL of the resource to include. The difference between directive `include` and action `<jsp:include>` is noticeable only if the included content changes. For example, if the definition of an XHTML document changes after it is included with directive `include`, future invocations of the JSP will show the original content of the XHTML document, not the new content. In contrast, action `<jsp:include>` is processed in each request to the JSP. Therefore, changes to included content would be apparent in the next request to the JSP that uses action `<jsp:include>`.

JSP `includeDirective.jsp` (Fig. 27.19) reimplements `include.jsp` (Fig. 27.7) using `include` directives. To test `includeDirective.jsp` in Tomcat, copy it into the `jsp` directory created in Section 27.3. Open your Web browser and enter the
Figure 27.19. JSP `includeDirective.jsp` demonstrates including content at translation time with directive include.

(This item is displayed on pages 1308 - 1309 in the print version)

```
<?xml version = "1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE html PUBLIC "-//W3C//DTD XHTML 1.0 Strict//EN"
  "http://www.w3.org/TR/xhtml1/DTD/xhtml1-strict.dtd">

<!-- Fig. 27.19: includeDirective.jsp -->
<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
  <title>Using the include directive</title>
  <style type = "text/css">
    body
    {
      font-family: tahoma, helvetica, arial, sans-serif;
    }
    table, tr, td
    {
      font-size: .9em;
      border: 3px groove;
      padding: 5px;
      background-color: #dddddd;
    }
  </style>
</head>
<body>
<table>
  <tr>
    <td style = "width: 160px; text-align: center">
      <img src = "images/logotiny.png"
           width = "140" height = "93"
           alt = "Deitel & Associates, Inc. Logo" />
    </td>
    <td>
      <%-- include banner.html in this JSP --%>
      <@include file = "banner.html" %>
    </td>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <%-- include toc.html in this JSP --%>
    <@include file = "toc.html" %>
  </tr>
  <tr>
    <%-- include clock2.jsp in this JSP --%>
    <@include file = "clock2.jsp" %>
  </tr>
</table>
```
27.8. Case Study: Guest Book

Our next example is a guest book that enables users to place their first name, last name and e-mail address into a guest-book database. After submitting their information, users see a Web page containing all the users in the guest book. Each e-mail address is displayed as a hyperlink that makes it possible to send an e-mail message to the person whose address it is. The example demonstrates action `<jsp:setProperty>`, the JSP page directive, JSP error pages, and using JDBC from a JSP.

The guest-book example consists of JavaBeans `GuestBean` (Fig. 27.20) and `GuestDataBean` (Fig. 27.21), and JSPs `guestBookLogin.jsp` (Fig. 27.22), `guestBookView.jsp` (Fig. 27.23) and `guestBookErrorPage.jsp` (Fig. 27.24). Sample outputs from this example are shown in Fig. 27.25. JavaBean `GuestBean` (Fig. 27.20) defines three guest properties `firstName`, `lastName` and `email`. Each property has `set` and `get` methods to manipulate the property.

---

Figure 27.20. **GuestBean** stores information for one guest.
(This item is displayed on page 1310 in the print version)

```
1  // Fig. 27.20: GuestBean.java
2  // JavaBean to store data for a guest in the guest book.
3  package com.deitel.jhtp6.jsp.beans;
4  
5  public class GuestBean
6  {
7      private String firstName;
8      private String lastName;
9      private String email;
10    
11      // set the guest's first name
12      public void setFirstName( String name )
13      {
14          firstName = name;
15      } // end method setFirstName
16    
17      // get the guest's first name
18      public String getFirstName()
```
Figure 27.21. GuestDataBean performs database access on behalf of guestBookLogin.jsp.

(This item is displayed on pages 1311 - 1312 in the print version)
// specify properties of CachedRowSet
rowSet = new CachedRowSetImpl();
rowSet.setUrl( "jdbc:mysql://localhost/guestbook" );
rowSet.setUsername( "jhtp6" );
rowSet.setPassword( "jhtp6" );

// obtain list of titles
rowSet.setCommand( /*"SELECT firstName, lastName, email FROM guests"*/ );
rowSet.execute();
}

// obtain list of titles
rowSet.setCommand("SELECT firstName, lastName, email FROM guests");
rowSet.execute();
}

// return an ArrayList of GuestBeans
public ArrayList< GuestBean > getGuestList() throws SQLException
{
    ArrayList< GuestBean > guestList = new ArrayList< GuestBean >();
    rowSet.beforeFirst(); // move cursor before the first row
    while ( rowSet.next() )
    {
        GuestBean guest = new GuestBean();
        guest.setFirstName( rowSet.getString(1) );
        guest.setLastName( rowSet.getString(2) );
        guest.setEmail( rowSet.getString(3) );
        guestList.add( guest );
    }
    return guestList;
}

// insert a guest in guestbook database
public void addGuest( GuestBean guest ) throws SQLException
{
    rowSet.moveToInsertRow(); // move cursor to the insert row
    rowSet.updateString(1, guest.getFirstName() );
    rowSet.updateString(2, guest.getLastName() );
    rowSet.updateString(3, guest.getEmail() );
    rowSet.insertRow(); // insert row to rowSet
    rowSet.moveToCurrentRow(); // move cursor to the current row
    rowSet.acceptChanges(); // propagate changes to database
}

// end class GuestDataBean

Figure 27.22. JSP guestBookLogin.jsp enables the user to submit a first name, a last name and an e-mail address to be placed in the guest book.
(This item is displayed on pages 1313 - 1315 in the print version)
<!-- Fig. 27.22: guestBookLogin.jsp --

<%@ page errorPage = "guestBookErrorPage.jsp" %>

<%-- beans used in this JSP --%>
<jsp:useBean id = "guest" scope = "page"
    class = "com.deitel.jhtp6.jsp.beans.GuestBean" />
<jsp:useBean id = "guestData" scope = "request"
    class = "com.deitel.jhtp6.jsp.beans.GuestDataBean" />

<html xmlns = "http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
    <title>Guest Book Login</title>
    <style type = "text/css">
        body
        {
            font-family: tahoma, helvetica, arial, sans-serif;
        }
        table, tr, td
        {
            font-size: .9em;
            border: 3px groove;
            padding: 5px;
            background-color: #dddddd;
        }
    </style>
</head>
<body>

<jsp:setProperty name = "guest" property = "*" />

<!-- start scriptlet --%>
    if ( guest.getFirstName() == null ||
        guest.getLastName() == null ||
        guest.getEmail() == null ) {
        // end scriptlet to insert fixed template data --%>

<%-- end scriptlet to insert fixed template data --%>
    <form method = "post" action = "guestBookLogin.jsp">
        <p>Enter your first name, last name and email address to register in our guest book.</p>
        <table>
            <tr>
                <td>First name</td>
                <td>
                    <input type = "text" name = "firstName" />
                </td>
            </tr>
            <tr>
                <td>Last name</td>
                <td>
                    <input type = "text" name = "lastName" />
                </td>
            </tr>
            <tr>
                <td>Email</td>
                <td>
                    <input type = "text" name = "email" />
                </td>
            </tr>
        </table>
    </form>
</body>
</html>
Figure 27.23. JSP guestBookView.jsp displays the contents of the guest book.
(This item is displayed on pages 1316 - 1317 in the print version)
Figure 27.24. JSP guestBookErrorPage.jsp responds to exceptions in guestBookLogin.jsp and guestBookView.jsp.
(This item is displayed on pages 1317 - 1318 in the print version)
<html xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml">
<head>
<title>Error!</title>
<style type="text/css">
.bigRed
{
  font-size: 2em;
  color: red;
  font-weight: bold;
}
</style>
</head>
<body>
<p class="bigRed">
  // scriptlet to determine exception type
  // and output beginning of error message

  if ( exception instanceof SQLException )
  {
  }

  A SQLException

  }
  // end if

  else if ( exception instanceof ClassNotFoundException )
  {
  }

  A ClassNotFoundException

  }
  // end else if

  else
  {
  }

  An exception

  }
  // end else

  } // end scriptlet to insert fixed template data --%

  } // end scriptlet to determine exception type

  } // end if

</p>
<p class="bigRed">
  The error message was: <br />
  <%= exception.getMessage() %>
</p>
<p class="bigRed">Please try again later</p>
</body>
</html>
Figure 27.25. JSP guest book sample output windows.
(This item is displayed on pages 1319 - 1320 in the print version)
JavaBean GuestDataBean (Fig. 27.21) connects to the guestbook database and provides methods getGuestList and addGuest to manipulate the database. The guestbook database has a single table (guests) containing three columns (firstName, lastName and email). Each column stores String values. We provide a SQL script (guestbook.sql) with this example that can be used with the MySQL DBMS to create the guestbook database. For further details on creating a database with MySQL, refer back to Section 25.7.

GuestDataBean constructor (lines 1629) loads the MySQL database driver, creates a CachedRowSet object using Sun's reference implementation CachedRowSetImpl and sets the properties of the CachedRowSet. Recall that CachedRowSet objects are
disconnected rowsets, hence the database connection is automatically closed after the query is executed. Line 23 invokes method **setUrl** (from interface **RowSet**) to set the **CachedRowSet**'s database URL property. Line 24 invokes method **setUsername** (from interface **RowSet**) to set the **CachedRowSet**'s database username property. Line 25 invokes method **setPassword** (from interface **RowSet**) to set the **CachedRowSet**'s database password property. Lines 28-29 invoke method **setCommand** (from interface **RowSet**) to set the **CachedRowSet**'s command property. Line 30 invokes method **execute** (from interface **RowSet**) to execute the query specified by the command property.

**GuestDataBean** method **getGuestList** (lines 34-53) returns an **ArrayList** of **GuestBean** objects representing the guests in the database. Line 38 invokes method **beforeFirst** (from interface **ResultSet**) to move the **CachedRowSet**'s cursor before the first row. Lines 41-50 create the **GuestBean** objects for each row in the **CachedRowSet**.

**GuestDataBean** method **addGuest** (lines 56-67) receives a **GuestBean** as an argument and uses the **GuestBean**'s properties as the arguments to insert a row to the **CachedRowSet**, which in turn propagates the changes to the underlying database. Recall from **Chapter 25** that a **CachedRowSet** is scrollable and updatable by default. Line 58 invokes the **CachedRowSet**'s **moveToInsertRow** method to remember the current row position and move the cursor to the **insert row** a special row in an updatable result set that allows programmers to insert new rows to the result set. Lines 61-63 invoke the **CachedRowSet**'s **updateString** method to update the column values. Method **updateString** takes two arguments: an **int** that specifies the column index and a **String** that specifies the column value. Line 64 invokes the **CachedRowSet**'s **insertRow** method to insert the row into the rowset. Line 65 invokes the **CachedRowSet**'s **moveToCurrentRow** method to move the cursor back to the current row the position before method **moveToInsertRow** was called. Line 66 invokes the **CachedRowSet**'s **acceptChanges** method to propagates the changes in the rowset to the underlying database.

Note that the **GuestDataBean**'s constructor, **getGuestList** method and **addGuest** method do not process potential exceptions. In the constructor, line 19 can throw a **ClassNotFoundException**, and the other statements can throw **SQLExceptions**. Similarly, **SQLExceptions** can be thrown from the bodies of methods **getGuestList** and **addGuest**. In this example, we purposely let any exceptions that occur get passed back to the JSP that invokes the **GuestDataBean**'s constructor or methods. This enables us to demonstrate JSP error pages. A JSP can include scriptlets
that catch potential exceptions and process them. Exceptions that are not caught can be forwarded to a JSP error page for handling.

JavaServer Page guestBookLogin.jsp (Fig. 27.22) is a modified version of forward1.jsp (Fig. 27.11) that displays a form in which users can enter their first name, last name and e-mail address. When the user submits the form, guestBookLogin.jsp is requested again, so it can ensure that all the data values were entered. If they were not, the guestBookLogin.jsp responds with the form again, so the user can fill in missing field(s). If the user supplies all three pieces of information, guestBookLogin.jsp forwards the request to guestBookView.jsp, which displays the guest-book contents.

Line 8 of guestBookLogin.jsp uses the page directive, which defines information that is globally available in a JSP. In this case, the page directive's errorPage attribute is set to guestBookErrorPage.jsp (Fig. 27.24), indicating that all uncaught exceptions are forwarded to guestBookErrorPage.jsp for processing.

Lines 11-14 define two <jsp:useBean> actions. Lines 11-12 create an instance of GuestBean called guest. This bean has page scope and exists for use only in this page. Lines 13-14 create an instance of GuestDataBean called guestData. This bean has request scope and exists for use in this page and any other page that helps process a single client request. Thus, when guestBookLogin.jsp forwards a request to guestBookView.jsp, the same GuestDataBean instance is still available for use in guestBookView.jsp.

Line 34 demonstrates setting a property of the GuestBean called guest with a request parameter value. The input elements in lines 48, 54 and 60 have the same names as the GuestBean properties. So we use action <jsp:setProperty>'s ability to match request parameters to properties by specifying "*" for attribute property. You can set the properties individually by replacing line 34 with the following lines:

```jsp
<jsp:setProperty name = "guest" property = "firstName" param = "firstName" />

<jsp:setProperty name = "guest" property = "lastName" param = "lastName" />

<jsp:setProperty name = "guest" property = "email" param = "email" />
```
If the request parameters had names that differed from GuestBean's properties, the param attribute in each of the preceding <jsp:setProperty> actions could be changed to the appropriate request parameter name. Or you could make a call to the set method directly, like this:

```jsp
<% guest.setFirstName( request.getParameter( "firstName" ) );
```

JavaServer Page guestBookView.jsp (Fig. 27.23) outputs an XHTML document containing the guest-book entries in tabular format. Lines 810 define three page directives. Line 8 specifies that the error page for this JSP is guestBookErrorPage.jsp. Line 9 indicates that classes from package java.util are used in this JSP, and line 10 indicates that classes from our package com.deitel.jhtp6.jsp.beans are also used.

Lines 1314 specify a <jsp:useBean> action that declares a reference to a GuestDataBean object. If a GuestDataBean object already exists, the action returns a reference to the existing object. Otherwise, the action creates a GuestDataBean for use in this JSP. Lines 4553 define a scriptlet that gets the guest list from the GuestDataBean and begins a loop to output the entries. Lines 5461 combine fixed template text with JSP expressions to create rows in the table of guest-book data that will be displayed on the client. The scriptlet at lines 6264 terminates the loop that begins at line 50.

JavaServer Page guestBookErrorPage.jsp (Fig. 27.24) outputs an XHTML document containing an error message based on the type of exception that causes this error page to be invoked. Lines 810 define several page directives. Line 8 sets page directive attribute isErrorPage. Setting this attribute to True makes the JSP an error page and enables access to the JSP implicit object exception that refers to an exception object indicating the problem that occurred.

Lines 2652 define scriptlets that determine the type of exception that occurred and begin outputting an appropriate error message with fixed template data. The actual error message from the exception is output at line 60.
Figure 27.25 shows sample interactions between the user and the JSPs in the guest book example. In the first two rows of output, separate users entered their first name, last name and e-mail. In each case, the current contents of the guest book are returned and displayed for the user. In the final interaction, a third user specified an e-mail address that already existed in the database. The e-mail address is the primary key in the guests table of the guestbook database, so its values must be unique. Thus, the database prevents the new record from being inserted, and an exception occurs. The exception is forwarded to guestBookErrorPage.jsp for processing, which results in the last screen capture.

To test the guest book in Tomcat, copy guestBookLogin.jsp, guestBookView.jsp and guestBookErrorPage.jsp into the jsp directory created in Section 27.3. Copy GuestBean.class and GuestDataBean.class into the jhttp6 Web application's WEBINF\classes\com\deitel\jhtp6\beans directory in Tomcat. [Note: This example will work only if the proper package directory structure for GuestBean and GuestDataBean is defined in the classes directory. These classes are declared in package com.deitel.jhtp6.jsp.beans.] Create the database by running the guestbook.sql script included with this example on the CD that accompanies this book. For further details on creating a database with MySQL, refer back to Section 25.7. Open your Web browser and enter the following URL to test guestBookLogin.jsp:

http://localhost:8080/jhttp6/jsp/guestBookLogin.jsp
27.9. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned several JSP components: implicit objects, scripting elements, standard actions and directives. You saw JSP examples that use these components to separate presentation from business logic and learned that logic can be placed in a JSP via scripting elements. You also learned how to use the `CachedRowSet` to manipulate a MySQL database in a JavaBean object, then access the JavaBean object in a JSP page. In the next chapter, we summarize how to display formatted output with various format characters and flags. We also demonstrate how to format output with class `Formatter`. 
27.10. Internet and Web Resources

java.sun.com/products/jsp
The home page for information about JavaServer Pages at the Sun Microsystems Java site.

java.sun.com/products/servlet
The home page for information about servlets at the Sun Microsystems Java site.

java.sun.com/j2ee
The home page for the Java 2 Enterprise Edition at the Sun Microsystems Java site.

www.w3.org
The World Wide Web Consortium home page. This site provides information about current and developing Internet and Web standards, such as XHTML, XML and CSS.

jsptags.com
This site includes tutorials, tag libraries, software and other resources for JSP programmers.

jspinsider.com
This Web programming site concentrates on resources for JSP programmers. It includes software, tutorials, articles, sample code, references and links to other JSP and Web programming resources.
Summary

- JavaServer Pages (JSPs) are an extension of servlet technology.
- JSPs enable Web application programmers to create dynamic content by reusing predefined components and by interacting with components using server-side scripting.
- JSP programmers can create custom tag libraries that enable Web page designers who are not familiar with Java to enhance their Web pages with powerful dynamic content and processing capabilities.
- Classes and interfaces specific to JavaServer Pages programming are located in packages `javax.servlet.jsp` and `javax.servlet.jsp.tagext`.
- There are four key components to JSPs: directives, actions, scriptlets and tag libraries.
- Directives specify global information that is not associated with a particular JSP request.
- Actions encapsulate functionality in predefined tags that programmers can embed in a JSP.
- Scriptlets enable programmers to insert Java code that interacts with components in a JSP (and possibly other Web application components) to perform request processing.
- Tag libraries are part of the tag extension mechanism that enables programmers to create new tags that encapsulate complex Java functionality.
- JSPs normally include XHTML or XML markup. Such markup is known as fixed-template data or fixed-template text.
Programmers tend to use JSPs when most of the content sent to the client is fixed-template data and only a small portion of the content is generated dynamically with Java code.

Programmers use servlets when a small portion of the content is fixed-template data.

The request/response mechanism and life cycle of a JSP are the same as those of a servlet.

JSPs can define methods `jspInit` and `jspDestroy` that are invoked when the container initializes a JSP and when the container terminates a JSP, respectively.

Implicit objects provide programmers with servlet capabilities in the context of a JavaServer Page.

Implicit objects have four scopes: application, page, request and session.

Objects with application scope are part of the JSP and servlet container application. Objects with page scope exist only as part of the page in which they are used. Each page has its own instances of the page-scope implicit objects. Objects in request scope exist for the duration of the request. Request-scope objects go out of scope when request processing completes with a response to the client. Objects in session scope exist for the client's entire browsing session.

JSP scripting components include scriptlets, comments, expressions, declarations and escape sequences.

JSP comments are delimited by `<%@--` and `--%>`.

XHTML comments are delimited by `<![--` and `-->`.

Java's end-of-line comments (`//`) and traditional comments (delimited by `/*` and `*/`) can be used inside scriptlets.

JSP comments and scripting-language comments are ignored and do not appear in a response.
• A JSP expression, delimited by `<%=` and `%>`, contains a Java expression that is evaluated when a client requests the JSP containing the expression. The container converts the result of a JSP expression to a `String` object, then outputs the `String` as part of the response to the client.

• Declarations, delimited by `<%!` and `%>`, enable a JSP programmer to declare variables and methods. Variables become instance variables of the class that represents the translated JSP. Similarly, methods become members of the class that represents the translated JSP.

• Special characters or character sequences that the JSP container normally uses to delimit JSP code can be included in a JSP as literal characters in scripting elements, fixed-template data and attribute values by using escape sequences.

• JavaServer Pages support two include mechanismsthe `<jsp:include>` action and the `include` directive.

• Action `<jsp:include>` enables dynamic content to be included in a JSP. If the included resource changes between requests, the next request to that JSP includes the new content of the included resource.

• The `include` directive is processed once, at JSP translation time, and causes the content to be copied into the JSP. If the included resource changes, the new content will not be reflected in the JSP that used the include directive unless that JSP is recompiled.

• Action `<jsp:forward>` enables a JSP to forward the processing of a request to a different resource. Processing of the request by the original JSP terminates as soon as the request is forwarded.

• Action `<jsp:param>` specifies name-value pairs of information that are passed to the `include`, `forward` and `plugin` actions. Every `<jsp:param>` action has two required attributes `name` and `value`. If a `param` action specifies a parameter that already exists in the request, the new value for the parameter takes precedence over the original value. All the values for that parameter can be obtained with the JSP implicit object `request's getParameterValues` method, which returns an array of `Strings`.
• **Action** `<jsp:useBean>` enables a JSP to manipulate a Java object. This action can be used to create a Java object for use in the JSP or to locate an existing object.

• Like JSP implicit objects, objects specified with action `<jsp:useBean>` have `page`, `request`, `session` or `application` scope that indicates where they can be used in a Web application.

• **Action** `<jsp:getProperty>` obtains the value of a JavaBean's property. Action `<jsp:getProperty>` has two attributes `name` and `property` that specify the bean object to manipulate and the property to get.

• JavaBean property values can be set with action `<jsp:setProperty>`. Request parameters can be used to set properties of primitive types `boolean`, `byte`, `char`, `short`, `int`, `long`, `float` and `double` and `java.lang` types `String`, `Boolean`, `Byte`, `Character`, `Short`, `Integer`, `Long`, `Float` and `Double`.

• The `page` directive defines information that is globally available in a JSP. Directives are delimited by `<%@` and `%>`. The `page` directive's `errorPage` attribute indicates where all uncaught exceptions are forwarded for processing.

• **Action** `<jsp:setProperty>` has the ability to match request parameters to properties of the same name in a bean by specifying "*" for attribute `property`.

• Attribute `import` of the `page` directive enables programmers to specify Java classes and packages that are used in the context of a JSP.

• If the attribute `isErrorPage` of the `page` directive is set to `true`, the JSP is an error page. This condition enables access to the JSP implicit object `exception` that refers to an exception object indicating the problem that occurred.

• Directives are messages to the JSP container that enable the programmer to specify page settings (e.g., the error page), to include content from other resources and to specify custom tag libraries that can be used in a JSP. Directives are processed at the time a JSP is translated into a servlet and compiled. Thus, they do not produce any immediate output.

• The `page directive` specifies global settings for a JSP in the JSP container.
There can be many page directives, provided that there is only one occurrence of each attribute. The exception to this rule is the import attribute, which can be used repeatedly to import Java packages.
Terminology

\>` escape sequence for `>

<!-- and --> XHTML comment delimiters

<%-- and --> JSP comment delimiters

<% and %> scriptlet delimiters

<%! and %> declaration delimiters

<%== and %> JSP expression delimiters

<%@ and %> directive delimiters

<\% escape sequence for <%

${exp}

acceptChanges method of CachedRowSet

autoFlush attribute of page directive

beanName attribute of `<jsp:useBean>` action

beforeFirst method of CachedRowSet

buffer attribute of page directive

class attribute of `<jsp:useBean>` action

comment

config implicit object
contentType attribute of page directive

dynamic content

error page

errorPage attribute of page directive

execute method of CachedRowSet

expression

Expression Language

extends attribute of page directive

file attribute of include directive

fixed-template data

fixed-template text

flush attribute of <jsp:include> action

forward a request

getParameterValues method of request object

id attribute of <jsp:useBean> action

implicit object

implicit object scopes

import attribute of page directive
include a resource

include directive

info attribute of page directive

insertRow method of CachedRowSet

isErrorPage attribute of page directive

isThreadSafe attribute of page directive

JavaBean

JavaServer Pages (JSPs)

javax.servlet.jsp package

javax.servlet.jsp.tagext package

JSP action

<jsp:forward> action

<jsp:getProperty> action

<jsp:include> action

<jsp:param> action

<jsp:setProperty> action

<jsp:useBean> action

jspDestroy method

jspInit method

_jjspService method
JspWriter (package javax.servlet.jsp)

language attribute of page directive

match request parameters

meta element

moveToCurrentRow method of CachedRowSet

moveToInsertRow method of CachedRowSet

name attribute of <jsp:param>

name attribute of <jsp:setProperty>

name-value pair

out implicit object

page attribute of <jsp:forward>

page attribute of <jsp:include>

page directive

page implicit object

page scope

param attribute of <jsp:setProperty>

property attribute of <jsp:setProperty>

refresh interval

request implicit object

request scope
request-time error

response implicit object

scope attribute of <jsp:useBean>

scope of a bean

scripting element

scriptlet

setCommand method of CachedRowSet

setPassword method of CachedRowSet

setUrl method of CachedRowSet

setUsername method of CachedRowSet

specify attributes of a custom tag

standard actions

translation-time error

type attribute of <jsp:plugin>

type attribute of <jsp:useBean>

updateString method of CachedRowSet

value attribute of <jsp:param>

value attribute of <jsp:setProperty>
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following statements:

1. Action ________ has the ability to match request parameters to properties of the same name in a bean by specifying "*" for attribute property.

2. There are four key components to JSPs: __________, __________, __________ and __________.

3. The implicit objects have four scopes: __________, __________, __________ and __________.

4. The ________ directive is processed once at JSP translation time and causes content to be copied into the JSP.

5. Classes and interfaces specific to JavaServer Pages programming are located in packages __________ and __________.

6. JSPs normally execute as part of a Web server that is referred to as the __________.

7. JSP scripting components include __________, __________, __________, __________ and __________.

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

1. An object with page scope exists in every JSP of a particular Web application.
2. Directives specify global information that is not associated with a particular JSP request.
3. Action <jsp:include> is evaluated once at page translation time.
4. Like XHTML comments, JSP comments and script-language comments appear in the response to the client.
5. Objects with application scope are part of a particular Web application.
6. Each page has its own instances of the page-scope implicit objects.
7. Action <jsp:setProperty> has the ability to match request parameters to properties of the same name in a bean by specifying "*" for attribute property.
8. Objects with session scope exist for the client's entire browsing session.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

27.1  a) `<jsp:setProperty>`. b) directives, actions, scripting elements, tag libraries. c) application, page, request, session. d) `include`. e) `javax.servlet.jsp`, `javax.servlet.jsp.tagext`. f) JSP container. g) scriptlets, comments, expressions, declarations, escape sequences.

27.2  a) False. Objects with page scope exist only as part of the page in which they are used. b) True. c) False. Action `<jsp:include>` enables dynamic content to be included in a JavaServer Page. d) False. JSP comments and script-language comments are ignored and do not appear in the response. e) False. Objects with application scope are part of the JSP container application. f) True. g) True. h) True.
Exercises

27.3 Write a JSP page to output the string "Hello world!" ten times.

27.4 Modify Exercise 26.6 to run as a JSP page.

27.5 Rewrite Figure 27.15 to provide a form that allow users to select a book title and view the book's cover. Use a JSP expression instead of the `getProperty` JSP tag.

27.6 Create a JSP- and JDBC-based address book. Use the guest-book example of Fig. 27.20 through Fig. 27.24 as a guide. Your address book should allow the user to insert entries and search for entries.

27.7 Reimplement the Web application of Fig. 26.21 (favorite animal survey) using JSPs. [Note: If you are not familiar with XHTML and CSS, refer to the chapters from our book Internet & World Wide Web HTP, 3/e] Introduction to XHTML: Part 1, Introduction to XHTML: Part 2 and Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), which are included as PDF documents on the CD that accompanies this book.]

27.8 Modify your solution to Exercise 27.7 to allow the user to see the survey results without responding to the survey. [Note: If you are not familiar with XHTML and CSS, refer to the chapters from our book Internet & World Wide Web HTP, 3/e] Introduction to XHTML: Part 1, Introduction to XHTML: Part 2 and Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), which are included as PDF documents on the CD that accompanies this book.]

[Page 1325 (continued)]
All the news that's fit to print.

Adolph S. Ochs

What mad pursuit? What struggle to escape?

John Keats

Remove not the landmark on the boundary of the fields.

Amenehope

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

- To understand input and output streams.
- To use `printf` formatting.
- To print with field widths and precisions.
- To use formatting flags in the `printf` format string.
- To print with an argument index.
- To output literals and escape sequences.
- To format output with class `Formatter`.

Outline

28.1 Introduction

28.2 Streams
28.3 Formatting Output with printf

28.4 Printing Integers

28.5 Printing Floating-Point Numbers

28.6 Printing Strings and Characters

28.7 Printing Dates and Times

28.8 Other Conversion Characters

28.9 Printing with Field Widths and Precisions

28.10 Using Flags in the printf Format String

28.11 Printing with Argument Indices

28.12 Printing Literals and Escape Sequences

28.13 Formatting Output with Class Formatter

28.14 Wrap-Up

Summary

Terminology

Self-Review Exercises

Answers to Self-Review Exercises

Exercises
28.1. Introduction

An important part of the solution to any problem is the presentation of the results. In this chapter, we discuss the formatting features of method `printf` and class `Formatter` (package `java.util`). Method `printf` formats and outputs data to the standard output stream `System.out`. Class `Formatter` formats and outputs data to a specified destination, such as a string or a file output stream.

Many features of `printf` were discussed earlier in the text. This chapter summarizes those features and introduces others, such as displaying date and time data in various formats, reordering output based on the index of the argument and displaying numbers and strings with various flags.
28.2. Streams

Input and output are usually performed with streams, which are sequences of bytes. In input operations, the bytes flow from a device (e.g., a keyboard, a disk drive, a network connection) to main memory. In output operations, bytes flow from main memory to a device (e.g., a display screen, a printer, a disk drive, a network connection, etc.).

When program execution begins, three streams are connected to the program automatically. Normally, the standard input stream is connected to the keyboard, and the standard output stream is connected to the screen. A third stream, the standard error stream (System.err), is typically connected to the screen and is used to output error messages to the screen so they can be viewed immediately even when the standard output stream is writing into a file. Operating systems typically allow these streams to be redirected to other devices. Streams are discussed in detail in Chapter 14, Files and Streams, and Chapter 24, Networking.
28.3. Formatting Output with \texttt{printf}

Precise output formatting is accomplished with \texttt{printf}. [\textit{Note: J2SE 5.0 borrowed this feature from the C programming language.}] Method \texttt{printf} can perform the following formatting capabilities, each of which is discussed in this chapter:

1. Rounding floating-point values to an indicated number of decimal places.

2. Aligning a column of numbers with decimal points appearing one above the other.

3. Right justification and left justification of outputs.

4. Inserting literal characters at precise locations in a line of output.

5. Representing floating-point numbers in exponential format.

6. Representing integers in octal and hexadecimal format. (See Appendix E, Number Systems, for more information on octal and hexadecimal values.)

7. Displaying all types of data with fixed-size field widths and precisions.

8. Displaying dates and times in various formats.

Every call to \texttt{printf} supplies as the first argument a \textbf{format string} that describes the output format. The format string may consist of \textbf{fixed text} and \textbf{format specifiers}. Fixed text is output by \texttt{printf} just as it would be output by \texttt{System.out} methods \texttt{print} or \texttt{println}. Each format specifier is a placeholder for a value and specifies the type of data to output. Format specifiers also may include optional formatting information.

In the simplest form, each format specifier begins with a percent sign (\%) and is followed by a \textbf{conversion character} that represents the data type of the value to output. For example, the format specifier \%s is a placeholder for a string, and the format specifier \%d is a placeholder for an \texttt{int} value. The optional formatting information is specified between the percent sign and the conversion character. The optional formatting information includes an argument index, flags, field width and precision. We define each of these and show examples of them throughout this chapter.
28.4. Printing Integers

An integer is a whole number, such as 776, 0 or 52, that contains no decimal point. Integer values are displayed in one of several formats. Figure 28.1 describes the integral conversion characters.

**Figure 28.1. Integer conversion characters.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion character</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>Display a decimal (base 10) integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>Display an octal (base 8) integer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>x or X</td>
<td>Display a hexadecimal (base 16) integer. X causes the digits 09 and the letters AF to be displayed and x causes the digits 09 and af to be displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 28.2 prints an integer using each of the integral conversions. In lines 910, note that the plus sign is not displayed by default, but the minus sign is. Later in this chapter (Fig. 28.14) we will see how to force plus signs to print.

**Figure 28.2. Using integer conversion characters.**

```java
1 // Fig. 28.2: IntegerConversionTest.java
2 // Using the integral conversion characters.
3
4 public class IntegerConversionTest
5 {
6   public static void main( String args[] )
7   {
8       System.out.printf( "%d\n", 26 );
9       System.out.printf( "%d\n", +26 );
10      System.out.printf( "%d\n", -26 );
11      System.out.printf( "%o\n", 26 );
12      System.out.printf( "%x\n", 26 );
```
The `printf` method has the form

```java
printf( format-string, argument-list );
```

where `format-string` describes the output format, and `argument-list` contains the values that correspond to each format specifier in `format-string`. There can be many format specifiers in one format string.

Each format string in lines 8-10 specifies that `printf` should output a decimal integer (`%d`) followed by a newline character. At the format specifier's position, `printf` substitutes the value of the first argument after the format string. If the format string contained multiple format specifiers, at each subsequent format specifier's position, `printf` would substitute the value of the next argument in the argument list. The `%o` format specifier in line 11 outputs the integer in octal format. The `%x` format specifier in line 12 outputs the integer in hexadecimal format. The `%X` format specifier in line 13 outputs the integer in hexadecimal format with capital letters.
28.5. Printing Floating-Point Numbers

A floating-point value contains a decimal point, as in 33.5, 0.0 or -657.983. Floating-point values are displayed in one of several formats. Figure 28.3 describes the floating-point conversions. The conversion character e and E displays floating-point values in computerized scientific notation (also called exponential notation). Exponential notation is the computer equivalent of the scientific notation used in mathematics. For example, the value 150.4582 is represented in scientific notation in mathematics as

\[ 1.504582 \times 10^2 \]

Figure 28.3. Floating-point conversion characters.
(This item is displayed on page 1330 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion character</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>e or E</td>
<td>Display a floating-point value in exponential notation. When conversion character g is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>Display a floating-point value in decimal format.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g or G</td>
<td>Display a floating-point value in either the floating-point format f or the exponential format e based on the magnitude of the value. If the magnitude is less than 10(^3), or greater than or equal to 10(^7), the floating-point value is printed with e (or E). Otherwise, the value is printed in format f. When conversion character g is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a or A</td>
<td>Display a floating-point number in hexadecimal format. When conversion character A is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and is represented in exponential notation as

\[1.504582 \times 10^{2}\]

in Java. This notation indicates that 1.504582 is multiplied by \(10^{2}\) raised to the second power (e\(^{+2}\)). The e stands for "exponent."

Values printed with the conversion characters \(e, E\) and \(f\) are output with six digits of precision to the right of the decimal point by default (e.g., \(1.045921\)) other precisions must be specified explicitly. For values printed with the conversion character \(g\), the precision represents the total number of digits displayed, excluding the exponent. The default is six digits (e.g., \(1234567.89\) is displayed as \(1.23457 \times 10^{7}\)). **Conversion character \(f\)** always prints at least one digit to the left of the decimal point. Conversion character \(e\) and \(E\) print lowercase \(e\) and uppercase \(E\) preceding the exponent and always print exactly one digit to the left of the decimal point. Rounding occurs if the value being formatted has more significant digits than the precision.

**Conversion character \(g\) (or \(G\))** prints in either \(e\) (E) or \(f\) format, depending on the floating-point value. For example, the values \(0.0000875, 8750000.0, 8.75, 87.50\) and \(875.0\) are printed as \(8.750000 \times 10^{-5}, 8.750000 \times 10^{7}, 8.750000, 8750000.0\) with the conversion character \(g\). The value \(0.0000875\) uses \(e\) notation because the magnitude is less than \(10^{-3}\). The value \(8750000.0\) uses \(e\) notation because the magnitude is greater than \(10^{7}\). **Figure 28.4** demonstrates each of the floating-point conversion characters.

**Figure 28.4. Using floating-point conversion characters.**
(This item is displayed on page 1331 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 28.4: FloatingNumberTest.java
2 // Using floating-point conversion characters.
3 public class FloatingNumberTest
4 {
5     public static void main( String args[] )
6     {
7         System.out.printf( "%e\n", 12345678.9 );
8         System.out.printf( "%e\n", +12345678.9 );
9         System.out.printf( "%e\n", -12345678.9 );
10        System.out.printf( "%E\n", 12345678.9 );
11        System.out.printf( "%E\n", 12345678.9 );
12        System.out.printf( "%f\n", 12345678.9 );
13        System.out.printf( "%g\n", 12345678.9 );
14        System.out.printf( "%G\n", 12345678.9 );
```
15 } // end main
16 } // end class FloatingNumberTest

1.234568e+07
1.234568e+07
-1.234568e+07
1.234568E+07
12345678.900000
1.23457e+07
1.23457E+07
28.6. Printing Strings and Characters

The `c` and `s` conversion characters are used to print individual characters and strings, respectively. Conversion character `s` can also print objects with the results of implicit calls to method `toString`. Conversion character `c` and `C` requires a `char` argument. Conversion character `s` and `S` can take a `String` or any `Object` (this includes all subclasses of `Object`) as an argument. When an object is passed to the conversion character `s`, the program implicitly uses the object's `toString` method to obtain the `String` representation of the object. When conversion characters `c` and `s` are used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters. The program shown in Fig. 28.5 displays characters, strings and objects with conversion characters `c` and `s`. Note that autoboxing occurs at line 10 when an `int` constant is assigned to an `Integer` object. Line 15 associates an object argument to the conversion character `s`, which implicitly invokes the `toString` method to get the integer value. Note that you can also output an object using the `%d` format specifier. In this case, the `int` value in the object will be unboxed and output.

```java
// Fig. 28.5: CharStringConversion.java
// Using character and string conversion characters.
public class CharStringConversion
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        char character = 'A'; // initialize char
        String string = "This is also a string"; // String object
        Integer integer = 1234; // initialize integer (autoboxing)

        System.out.printf("%c
", character);
        System.out.printf("%s
", "This is also a string");
        System.out.printf("%s
", string);
        System.out.printf("%s
", string);
        System.out.printf("%s
", integer); // implicit call to toString
    } // end main
} // end class CharStringConversion
```

Figure 28.5. Using character and string conversion characters.
(This item is displayed on page 1332 in the print version)
This is a string
This is also a string
THIS IS ALSO A STRING
1234

**Common Programming Error 28.1**

*Using %c to print a string causes an Illegal FormatConversionException: a string cannot be converted to a character.*
28.7. Printing Dates and Times

With the conversion character `t` or `T`, we can print dates and times in various formats. Conversion character `t` or `T` is always followed by a conversion suffix character that specifies the date and/or time format. When conversion character `T` is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters. Figure 28.6 lists the common conversion suffix characters for formatting date and time compositions that display both the date and the time. Figure 28.7 lists the common conversion suffix characters for formatting dates. Figure 28.8 lists the common conversion suffix characters for formatting times. To view the complete list of conversion suffix characters, visit the Web site java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/Formatter.html.

**Figure 28.6. Date and time composition conversion suffix characters.**

(This item is displayed on page 1332 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion suffix character</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>C</code></td>
<td>Display date and time formatted as day month date hour:minute:second time-zone year with three characters for day and month, two digits for date, hour, minute and second and four digits for year for example, Wed Mar 03 16:30:25 GMT-05:00 2004. The 24-hour clock is used. In this example, GMT-05:00 is the time zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>F</code></td>
<td>Display date formatted as year-month-date with four digits for the year and two digits each for the month and the date (e.g., 2004-05-04).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>D</code></td>
<td>Display date formatted as month/day/year with two digits each for the month, day and year (e.g., 03/03/04).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>R</code></td>
<td>Display time formatted as hour:minute with two digits each for the hour and minute (e.g., 16:30). The 24-hour clock is used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>T</code></td>
<td>Display time formatted as hour:minute:second with two digits for the hour, minute and second (e.g., 16:30:25). The 24-hour clock is used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Figure 28.7. Date formatting conversion suffix characters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion suffix character</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Display full name of the day of the week (e.g., <em>Wednesday</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Display the three-character short name of the day of the week (e.g., <em>Wed</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Display full name of the month (e.g., <em>March</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>Display the three-character short name of the month (e.g., <em>Mar</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>Display the day of the month with two digits, padding with leading zeros as necessary (e.g., <em>03</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Display the month with two digits, padding with leading zeros as necessary (e.g., <em>07</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>Display the day of month without leading zeros (e.g., <em>3</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Display the year with four digits (e.g., <em>2004</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>Display the last two digits of the year with leading zeros as necessary (e.g., <em>04</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>Display the day of the year with three digits, padding with leading zeros as necessary (e.g., <em>016</em>).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Figure 28.8. Time formatting conversion suffix characters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion suffix character</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Display 24-hour time format (e.g., <em>14:30</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Display the three-character short name of the hour (e.g., <em>pm</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>Display the three-character short name of the minute (e.g., <em>min</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>Display the three-character short name of the second (e.g., <em>sec</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>Display the day of the week (e.g., <em>Sunday</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>Display the month with two digits, padding with leading zeros as necessary (e.g., <em>07</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>Display the second with two digits, padding with leading zeros as necessary (e.g., <em>04</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>Display the two digits of the day of the month (e.g., <em>16</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y</td>
<td>Display the year with four digits (e.g., <em>2004</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>Display the time zone (e.g., <em>PST</em>).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Display hour in 24-hour clock with a leading zero as necessary (e.g., 16).

Display hour in 12-hour clock with a leading zero as necessary (e.g., 04).

Display hour in 24-hour clock without leading zeros (e.g., 16).

Display hour in 12-hour clock without leading zeros (e.g., 4).

Display minute with a leading zero as necessary (e.g., 06).

Display second with a leading zero as necessary (e.g., 05).

Display the abbreviation for the time zone (e.g., GMT-05:00, stands for Eastern Standard Time, which is 5 hours behind Greenwich Mean Time).

Display morning or afternoon marker in lower case (e.g., pm).

Display morning or afternoon marker in upper case (e.g., PM).

**Figure 28.9** uses the conversion character \texttt{t} together with the conversion suffix characters to display dates and times in various formats. Conversion character \texttt{t} requires the corresponding argument to be of type \texttt{long}, \texttt{Long}, \texttt{Calendar} or \texttt{Date} (both in package \texttt{java.util}) objects of each of these classes can represent dates and times. Class \texttt{Calendar} is the preferred class for this purpose because some constructors and methods in class \texttt{Date} are replaced by those in class \texttt{Calendar}. Line 10 invokes static method \texttt{getInstance} of \texttt{Calendar} to obtain a calendar with the current date and time. Lines 1317, 2022 and 2526 use this \texttt{Calendar} object in \texttt{printf} statements as the value to be formatted with conversion character \texttt{t}. Note that lines 2022 and 2526 use the optional argument index ("1$") to indicate that all format specifiers in the format string use the first argument after the format string in the argument list. You will learn more about argument indices in **Section 28.11**. Using the argument index eliminates the need to repeatedly list the same argument.
Figure 28.9. Formatting dates and times with conversion character \texttt{t}.

```java
1 // Fig. 28.9: DateTimeTest.java
2 // Formatting dates and times with conversion character t and T.
3 import java.util.Calendar;
4
5 public class DateTimeTest
6 {
7    public static void main( String args[] )
8    {
9        // get current date and time
10       Calendar dateTime = Calendar.getInstance();
11
12        // printing with conversion characters for date/time compositions
13       System.out.printf( "%tc\n", dateTime );
14       System.out.printf( "%tF\n", dateTime );
15       System.out.printf( "%tD\n", dateTime );
16       System.out.printf( "%tr\n", dateTime );
17       System.out.printf( "%tT\n", dateTime );
18
19        // printing with conversion characters for date
20       System.out.printf( "%1$tA, %1$TB %1$td, %1$tY\n", dateTime );
21       System.out.printf( "%1$TA, %1$TB %1$Td, %1$tY\n", dateTime );
22       System.out.printf( "%1$ta, %1$tb %1$te, %1$ty\n", dateTime );
23
24        // printing with conversion characters for time
25       System.out.printf( "%1$tH:%1$tM:%1$tS\n", dateTime );
26       System.out.printf( "%1$tZ %1$tI:%1$tM:%1$tS %tP", dateTime );
27    } // end main
28 } // end class DateTimeTest
```

Tue Jun 29 11:17:21 GMT-05:00 2004
2004-06-29
06/29/04
11:17:21 AM
11:17:21
Tuesday, June 29, 2004
TUESDAY, JUNE 29, 2004
Tue, Jun 29, 04
11:17:21
GMT-05:00 11:17:21 AM
28.8. Other Conversion Characters

The remaining conversion characters are `b`, `B`, `h`, `H`, `%` and `n`. These are described in Fig. 28.10.

**Figure 28.10. Other conversion specifiers.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion character</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>b</code> or <code>B</code></td>
<td>Print &quot;true&quot; or &quot;false&quot; for the value of a <code>boolean</code> or <code>Boolean</code>. These conversion characters can also format the value of any reference. If the reference is non-null, &quot;true&quot; is output; otherwise, &quot;false&quot; is output. When conversion character <code>B</code> is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>h</code> or <code>H</code></td>
<td>Print the string representation of an object's hash code value in hexadecimal format. If the corresponding argument is a <code>null</code> reference, &quot;null&quot; is printed. When conversion character <code>H</code> is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>%</code></td>
<td>Print the percent character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>n</code></td>
<td>Print the platformspecific line separator (e.g., \r\n on Windows or \n on UNIX/LINUX).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lines 910 of Fig. 28.11 use `%b` to print the value of boolean values `false` and `true`. Line 11 associates a `String` to `%b`, which returns `true` because it is not `null`. Line 12 associates a `null` object to `%B`, which displays `FALSE` because `test` is `null`. Lines 1314 use `%h` to print the string representations of the hash code values for strings "hello" and "Hello". These values could be used to store or locate the strings in a `Hashtable` or `HashMap` (both discussed in Chapter 19, Collections). Note that the hash code values for these two strings differ because one string starts with a lowercase letter and the other starts with an uppercase letter. Line 15 uses `%H` to print `null` in uppercase letters. The last two `printf` statements (lines 1617) use `%%` to print the `%` character in a string and `\n` to print a platformspecific line separator.
public class OtherConversion
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        Object test = null;
        System.out.printf("%b\n", false);
        System.out.printf("%b\n", true);
        System.out.printf("%b\n", "Test ");
        System.out.printf("%B\n", test);
        System.out.printf("Hashcode of "hello" is %h\n", "hello");
        System.out.printf("Hashcode of "Hello" is %h\n", "Hello");
        System.out.printf("Hashcode of null is %H\n", test);
        System.out.printf("Printing a % in a format string\n");
        System.out.printf("Printing a new line %n next line starts here");
    }
}

Common Programming Error 28.2

Trying to print a literal percent character using % rather than %% in the format string might cause a difficult-to-detect logic error. When % appears in a format string, it must be followed by a conversion character in the string. The single percent could accidentally be followed by a legitimate conversion character, thus causing a logic error.
28.9. Printing with Field Widths and Precisions

The exact size of a field in which data is printed is specified by a field width. If the field width is larger than the data being printed, the data will be right justified within that field by default. (We demonstrate left justification in Section 28.10) The programmer inserts an integer representing the field width between the percent sign (%) and the conversion character (e.g., %4d) in the format specifier. Figure 28.12 prints two groups of five numbers each, right justifying those numbers that contain fewer digits than the field width. Note that the field width is increased to print values wider than the field and that the minus sign for a negative value uses one character position in the field. Also, if no field width is specified, the data prints in exactly as many positions as it needs. Field widths can be used with all format specifiers except the line separator (%n).

---

Figure 28.12. Right justifying integers in fields.
(This item is displayed on page 1337 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 28.12: FieldWidthTest.java
// Right justifying integers in fields.

public class FieldWidthTest {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        System.out.printf("%4d\n", 1);
        System.out.printf("%4d\n", 12);
        System.out.printf("%4d\n", 123);
        System.out.printf("%4d\n", 1234);
        System.out.printf("%4d\n\n", 12345); // data too large
        System.out.printf("%4d\n", -1);
        System.out.printf("%4d\n", -12);
        System.out.printf("%4d\n", -123);
        System.out.printf("%4d\n", -1234); // data too large
        System.out.printf("%4d\n", -12345); // data too large
    } // end main
} // end class RightJustifyTest
```
Common Programming Error 28.3

Not providing a sufficiently large field width to handle a value to be printed can offset other data being printed and produce confusing outputs. Know your data!

Method printf also provides the ability to specify the precision with which data is printed. Precision has different meanings for different types. When used with floating-point conversion characters e and f, the precision is the number of digits that appear after the decimal point. When used with conversion character g, the precision is the maximum number of significant digits to be printed. When used with conversion character s, the precision is the maximum number of characters to be written from the string. To use precision, place between the percent sign and the conversion specifier a decimal point (.) followed by an integer representing the precision. Figure 28.13 demonstrates the use of precision in format strings. Note that when a floating-point value is printed with a precision smaller than the original number of decimal places in the value, the value is rounded. Also note that the format specifier %.3g indicates that the total number of digits used to display the floating-point value is 3. Because the value has three digits to the left of the decimal point, the value is rounded to the ones position.
The field width and the precision can be combined by placing the field width, followed by a decimal point, followed by a precision between the percent sign and the conversion character, as in the statement

```java
printf( "%9.3f", 123.456789 );
```

which displays 123.457 with three digits to the right of the decimal point right justified in a nine-digit field; this number will be preceded in its field by two blanks.
28.10. Using Flags in the printf Format String

Various flags may be used with method `printf` to supplement its output formatting capabilities. Seven flags are available for use in format strings (Fig. 28.14).

**Figure 28.14. Format string flags.**

(This item is displayed on page 1338 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Flag</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>-</code> (minus sign)</td>
<td>Left justify the output within the specified field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>+</code> (plus sign)</td>
<td>Display a plus sign preceding positive values and a minus sign preceding negative values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>space</code></td>
<td>Print a space before a positive value not printed with the <code>+</code> flag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>#</code></td>
<td>Prefix <code>0</code> to the output value when used with the octal conversion character <code>o</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>0x</code></td>
<td>Prefix <code>0x</code> to the output value when used with the hexadecimal conversion character <code>x</code>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>0</code> (zero)</td>
<td>Pad a field with leading zeros.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>,</code> (comma)</td>
<td>Use the locale-specific thousands separator (i.e., <code>,</code> for U.S. locale) to display decimal and floating-point numbers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>(</code></td>
<td>Enclose negative numbers in parentheses.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To use a flag in a format string, place the flag immediately to the right of the percent sign. Several flags may be used in the same format specifier. Figure 28.15 demonstrates right justification and left justification of a string, an integer, a character and a floating-point number. Note that line 9 serves as a counting mechanism for the screen output.
**Figure 28.15.** Right justifying and left justifying values.

```
1 // Fig. 28.15: MinusFlagTest.java
2 // Right justifying and left justifying values.
3
4 public class MinusFlagTest
5 {
6    public static void main( String args[] )
7    {
8        System.out.println( "Columns:" );
9        System.out.println( "0123456789012345678901234567890123456789\n" );
10       System.out.printf( "%10s%10d%10c%10f\n\n", "hello", 7, 'a', 1.23 );
11       System.out.printf( "%-10s%-10d%-10c%-10f\n", "hello", 7, 'a', 1.23 );
12    } // end main
13 } // end class MinusFlagTest
```

Columns:
0123456789012345678901234567890123456789

hello         7         a  1.230000
hello     7         a         1.230000

**Figure 28.16** prints a positive number and a negative number, each with and without the + flag. Note that the minus sign is displayed in both cases, but the plus sign is displayed only when the + flag is used.

**Figure 28.16.** Printing numbers with and without the + flag.

```
1 // Fig. 28.16: PlusFlagTest.java
2 // Printing numbers with and without the + flag.
3
4 public class PlusFlagTest
5 {
```
Figure 28.17 prefixes a space to the positive number with the space flag. This is useful for aligning positive and negative numbers with the same number of digits. Note that the value -547 is not preceded by a space in the output because of its minus sign. Figure 28.18 uses the # flag to prefix 0 to the octal value and 0x to the hexadecimal value.

**Figure 28.17. Using the space flag to print a space before non-negative values.**

(This item is displayed on page 1340 in the print version)
Figure 28.18. Using the # flag with conversion characters o and x.

(This item is displayed on page 1340 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 28.18: PoundFlagTest.java
// Using the # flag with conversion characters o and x.

public class PoundFlagTest
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        int c = 31; // initialize c
        System.out.printf( "%#o\n", c );
        System.out.printf( "%#x\n", c );
    } // end main
} // end class PoundFlagTest
```

037
0x1f

Figure 28.19 combines the + flag, the 0 flag and the space flag to print 452 in a field of width 9 with a + sign and leading zeros, next prints 452 in a field of width 9 using only the 0 flag, then prints 452 in a field of width 9 using only the space flag.

Figure 28.19. Printing with the 0 (zero) flag fills in leading zeros.

(This item is displayed on pages 1340 - 1341 in the print version)
Figure 28.20 use the comma (,) flag to display a decimal and a floating-point number with the thousands separator. Figure 28.21 encloses negative numbers in parentheses using the ( flag. Note that the value 50 is not enclosed in parentheses in the output because it is a positive number.

Figure 28.20. Using the comma (,) flag to display number with thousands separator.

(This item is displayed on page 1341 in the print version)
Figure 28.21. Using the ( flag to place parentheses around negative numbers.

(This item is displayed on page 1341 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 28.21: ParenthesesFlagTest.java
// Using the ( flag to place parentheses around negative numbers.

public class ParenthesesFlagTest {
  public static void main( String args[] )
  {
    System.out.printf( "%(d\n", 50 );
    System.out.printf( "%(d\n", -50 );
    System.out.printf( "%(1e\n", -50.0 );
  } // end main
} // end class ParenthesesFlagTest
```
28.11. Printing with Argument Indices

An argument index is an optional decimal integer followed by a $ sign that indicates the position of the argument in the argument list. For example, lines 2021 and 2425 in Fig. 28.9 use argument index "$1$" to indicate that all format specifiers use the first argument in the argument list. Argument indices enable programmers to reorder the output so that the arguments in the argument list are not necessarily in the order of their corresponding format specifiers. Argument indices also help avoid duplicating arguments. Figure 28.22 demonstrates how to print arguments in the argument list in reverse order using the argument index.

Figure 28.22. Reordering output with argument indices.

```java
1   // Fig. 28.22: ArgumentIndexTest
2   // Reordering output with argument indices.
3
4   public class ArgumentIndexTest
5   {
6      public static void main( String args[] )
7      {
8         System.out.printf(
9            "Parameter list without reordering: %s %s %s %s\n",
10            "first", "second", "third", "fourth" );
11         System.out.printf(
12            "Parameter list after reordering: %4$s %3$s %2$s %1$s\n",
13            "first", "second", "third", "fourth" );
14      } // end main
15 } // end class ArgumentIndexTest
```

Parameter list without reordering: first second third fourth
Parameter list after reordering: fourth third second first
28.12. Printing Literals and Escape Sequences

Most literal characters to be printed in a `printf` statement can simply be included in the format string. However, there are several "problem" characters, such as the quotation mark (""), that delimits the format string itself. Various control characters, such as newline and tab, must be represented by escape sequences. An escape sequence is represented by a backslash (\), followed by an escape character. **Figure 28.23** lists the escape sequences and the actions they cause.

![Escape sequences](https://example.com/escape_sequences.png)

**Figure 28.23. Escape sequences.**
(This item is displayed on page 1343 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Escape sequence</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>'</code> (single quote)</td>
<td>Output the single quote (’) character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&quot;</code> (double quote)</td>
<td>Output the double quote (&quot;) character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\</code> (backslash)</td>
<td>Output the backslash () character.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\b</code> (backspace)</td>
<td>Move the cursor back one position on the current line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\f</code> (new page or form feed)</td>
<td>Move the cursor to the start of the next logical page.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\n</code> (newline)</td>
<td>Move the cursor to the beginning of the next line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\r</code> (carriage return)</td>
<td>Move the cursor to the beginning of the current line.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>\t</code> (horizontal tab)</td>
<td>Move the cursor to the next horizontal tab position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Common Programming Error 28.4**

*Attempting to print as literal data in a `printf` statement a double quote or*
backslash character without preceding that character with a backslash to form a proper escape sequence might result in a syntax error.
28.13. Formatting Output with Class Formatter

So far, we have discussed displaying formatted output to the standard output stream. What should we do if we want to send formatted outputs to other output streams or devices, such as a JTextArea or a file? The solution relies on class Formatter (in package java.util), which provides the same formatting capabilities as printf. Formatter is a utility class that enables programmers to output formatted data to a specified destination, such as a file on disk. By default, a Formatter creates a string in memory. Figure 28.24 demonstrates how to use a Formatter to build a formatted string, which is then displayed in a message dialog.

Figure 28.24. Formatting output with class Formatter.

```java
// Fig. Fig. 28.24: FormatterTest.java
// Format string with class Formatter.
import java.util.Formatter;
import javax.swing.JOptionPane;
public class FormatterTest {
  public static void main( String args[] )
  {
    // create Formatter and format output
    Formatter formatter = new Formatter();
    formatter.format( "%d = %#o = %#X", 10, 10, 10 );
    // display output in JOptionPane
    JOptionPane.showMessageDialog( null, formatter.toString() );
  } // end main
} // end class FormatterTest
```
Line 11 creates a `Formatter` object using the default constructor, so this object will build a string in memory. Other constructors are provided to allow you to specify the destination to which the formatted data should be output. For details, see `java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/ docs/api/java/util/Formatter.html`.

[Page 1344]

Line 12 invokes method `format` to format the output. Like `printf`, method `format` takes a format string and an argument list. The difference is that `printf` sends the formatted output directly to the standard output stream, while `format` sends the formatted output to the destination specified by its constructor (a string in memory in this program). Line 15 invokes the `Formatter`'s `toString` method to get the formatted data as a string, which is then displayed in a message dialog.

**String static Method format**

Note that class `String` also provides a static convenience method named `format` that enables you to create a string in memory without the need to first create a `Formatter` object. Lines 11-12 and line 15 in Fig. 28.24 could have been replaced by

```java
String s = String.format("%d = %#o = %#^x", 10, 10, 10);
JOptionPane.showMessageDialog(null, s);
```

This chapter summarized how to display formatted output with various format characters and flags. We displayed decimal numbers using format characters \texttt{d}, \texttt{o}, \texttt{x}, and \texttt{X}. We displayed floating-point numbers using format characters \texttt{e}, \texttt{E}, \texttt{f}, \texttt{g} and \texttt{G}. We displayed date and time in various format using format characters \texttt{t} and \texttt{T} and their conversion suffix characters. You learned how to display output with field widths and precisions. We introduced the flags \texttt{+}, \texttt{-}, \texttt{space}, \texttt{#}, \texttt{0}, comma and \texttt{)} that are used together with the format characters to produce output. We also demonstrated how to format output with class \texttt{Formatter}. In the next chapter, we discuss the \texttt{String} class's methods for manipulating strings. We also introduce regular expressions and demonstrate how to validate user input with regular expressions.
Summary

- Input and output are usually performed with streams, which are sequences of bytes. In input operations, the bytes flow from a device to main memory. In output operations, bytes flow from main memory to a device.

- Normally, the standard input stream is connected to the keyboard, and the standard output stream is connected to the computer screen.

- The `printf` format string describes the formats in which the output values appear. The format specifier consists of argument index, flags, field widths, precisions and conversion characters.

- Integers are printed with the conversion characters `d` for decimal integers, `o` for integers in octal form and `x` (or `X`) for integers in hexadecimal form. When the conversion character `x` is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.

- Floating-point values are printed with the conversion characters `e` (or `E`) for exponential notation, `f` for regular floating-point notation, and `g` (or `G`) for either `e` (or `E`) notation or `f` notation. When the `g` conversion specifier is indicated, the `e` conversion character is used if the value is less than $10^3$ or greater than or equal to $10^7$; otherwise, the `f` conversion character is used. When the conversion characters `E` and `G` are used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.

- The conversion character `c` prints a character.

- The conversion character `s` (or `S`) prints a string of characters. When the conversion character `s` is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.

- The conversion character `t` (or `T`) followed by a conversion suffix character prints the date and time in various forms. When the conversion character `T` is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.
• Conversion character \texttt{t} (or \texttt{T}) requires the argument to be of type \texttt{long}, \texttt{Long}, \texttt{Calendar} or \texttt{Date}.

• Conversion character \texttt{b} (or \texttt{B}) outputs the string representation of a \texttt{boolean} or \texttt{Boolean}. These conversion characters also output "true" for non-null references and "false" for null references. When conversion character \texttt{B} is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.

• Conversion character \texttt{h} (or \texttt{H}) returns \texttt{null} for a null reference and a \texttt{String} representation of the hash code value (in base 16) of the object. Hash codes are used to store and retrieve objects in \texttt{Hashtables} and \texttt{HashMaps}. When conversion character \texttt{H} is used, the output is displayed in uppercase letters.

• The conversion character \texttt{n} prints the platform-specific line separator.

• The conversion character \texttt{8} is used to display a literal \texttt{8}.

• If the field width is larger than the object being printed, the object is right justified in the field by default.

• Field widths can be used with all conversion characters except the line-separator conversion.

• Precision used with floating-point conversion characters \texttt{e} and \texttt{f} indicates the number of digits that appear after the decimal point. Precision used with floating-point conversion character \texttt{g} indicates the number of significant digits to appear.

• Precision used with conversion character \texttt{s} indicates the number of characters to be printed.

• The field width and the precision can be combined by placing the field width, followed by a decimal point, followed by the precision between the percent sign and the conversion character.

• The - flag left justifies its argument in a field.

• The + flag prints a plus sign for positive values and a minus sign for negative values.
The space flag prints a space preceding a positive value. The space flag and the + flag cannot be used together in an integral conversion character.

The # flag prefixes 0 to octal values and 0x to hexadecimal values.

The 0 flag prints leading zeros for a value that does not occupy its entire field.

The comma (,) flag uses the locale-specific thousands separator (i.e., ',,' for U.S. locale) to display integer and floating-point numbers.

The ( flag encloses a negative number in parentheses.

An argument index is an optional decimal integer followed by a $ sign that indicates the position of the argument in the argument list.

Argument indices enable programmers to reorder the output so that the arguments in the argument list are not necessarily in the order of their corresponding format specifiers. Argument indices also help avoid duplicating arguments.

Class Formatter (in package java.util) provides the same formatting capabilities as printf. Formatter is a utility class that enables programmers to print formatted output to various destinations, including GUI components, files and other output streams.

Class Formatter's method format outputs formatted data to the destination specified by the Formatter constructor.

The static method format of class String formats data and returns the formatted data as a String.
Terminology

# flag

% conversion character

+ flag

+ (plus) flag

- (minus) flag

, (comma) flag

0 (zero) flag

A conversion suffix character

a conversion suffix character

alignment

argument index

b conversion character

b conversion character

b conversion suffix character

b conversion suffix character

c conversion character

c conversion suffix character
conversion character

d conversion character

D conversion suffix character

e conversion character

E conversion character

E conversion suffix character

e conversion suffix character

exponential floating-point format

f conversion character

F conversion suffix character

field width

flag

floating-point

floating-point number conversion

format method of Formatter

format method of String

format specifier

format string

Formatter class

g conversion character

G conversion character
hexadecimal format

integer conversion

octal format

precision

printf method

redirect a stream
right justification

rounding

s conversion character

s conversion character

s conversion suffix character

scientific notation

space flag

standard error stream

standard input stream

standard output stream

stream

StringBuilder class

t conversion character

T conversion character

T conversion suffix character

toString method of Formatter

x conversion character

y conversion suffix character

y conversion suffix character

z conversion suffix character
Self-Review Exercises

Fill in the blanks in each of the following:

1. All input and output is dealt with in the form of __________.
2. The __________ stream is normally connected to the keyboard.
3. The __________ stream is normally connected to the computer screen.
4. System.out's __________ method can be used to format text that is displayed on the standard output.
5. The conversion character __________ may be used to output a decimal integer.
6. The conversion characters __________ and __________ are used to display integers in octal and hexadecimal form, respectively.
7. The conversion character __________ is used to display a floating-point value in exponential notation.
8. The conversion characters e and f are displayed with __________ digits of precision to the right of the decimal point if no precision is specified.
9. The conversion characters __________ and __________ are used to print strings and characters, respectively.
10. The conversion character __________ and conversion suffix character __________ are used to print time for the 24-hour clock as hour:minute:second.
11. The __________ flag causes output to be left justified in a field.
12. The __________ flag causes values to be displayed with either a plus sign or a minus sign.
13. The argument index __________ corresponds to the second argument in the argument list.
14. Class __________ has the same capability as printf, but allows programmers to print formatted output to various destinations besides the standard output stream.

Find the error in each of the following and explain how it can be corrected.

1. The following statement should print the character 'c'.
   System.out.printf("%c\n", "c");
2. The following statement should print 9.375%.
   System.out.printf("%.3f\%", 9.375);
3. The following statement should print the third argument in the argument list.
   System.out.printf("%2$s\n", "Mon", "Tue", "Wed", "Thu", "Fri");
4. System.out.printf(""A string in quotes"" );
5. `System.out.printf("%d %d", 12, 20);
6. System.out.printf("%s\n", 'Richard');

Write a statement for each of the following:

1. Print 1234 right justified in a 10 digit field.
2. Print 123.456789 in exponential notation with a sign (+ or -) and 3 digits of precision.
3. Print 100 in octal form preceded by 0.
4. Given a Calendar object calendar, print a date formatted as month/day/year (each with two digits).
5. Given a Calendar object calendar, print a time for the 24-hour clock as hour:minute:second (each with two digits) using argument index and conversion suffix characters for formatting time.
6. Print 3.333333 with a sign (+ or -) in a field of 20 characters with a precision of 3.
Answers to Self-Review Exercises

28.1  a) Streams. b) Standard input. c) Standard output. d) printf. e) d, f) o, x or x, g) e or E. h) 6. i) s or S, c or C. j) t, T. k) (minus). l) + (plus). m) 28. n) Formatter.

1. Error: Conversion character c expects an argument of primitive type char.
   Correction: To print the character 'c', change "c" to 'c'.
2. Error: Trying to print the literal character % without using the format specifier %.
   Correction: Use % to print a literal % character.
3. Error: Argument index does not start with 0, e.g., the first argument is $1$.
   Correction: To print the third argument use $3$.
4. Error: Trying to print the literal character " without using the \" escape sequence.
   Correction: Replace each quote in the inner set of quotes with ".

28.2

5. Error: The format string is not enclosed in double quotes.
   Correction: Enclose %d %d in double quotes.
6. Error: The string to be printed is enclosed in single quotes.
   Correction: Use double quotes instead of single quotes to represent a string.

28.3

1. System.out.printf("%10d\n", 1234 );
2. System.out.printf("%+.3e\n", 123.456789 );
3. System.out.printf("%#o\n", 100 );
4. System.out.printf("%tD\n", calendar );
5. System.out.printf("%1$tH:%1$tM:%1$tS\n", calendar );
6. System.out.printf("%+20.3f\n", 3.333333 );
Exercises

Write statement(s) for each of the following:

1. Print integer 40000 right justified in a 15-digit field.

2. Print 200 with and without a sign.

3. Print 100 in hexadecimal form preceded by 0x.

4. Print 1.234 with three digits of precision in a nine-digit field with preceding zeros.

Show what is printed by each of the following statements. If a statement is incorrect, indicate why.

1. System.out.printf("%-10d\n", 10000);

2. System.out.printf("%c\n", "This is a string");

3. System.out.printf("%8.3f\n", 1024.987654);

4. System.out.printf("%#o\n%#X\n", 17, 17);

5. System.out.printf("% d\n%+d\n", 1000000, 1000000);

6. System.out.printf("%10.2e\n", 444.93738);

7. System.out.printf("%d\n", 10.987);

Find the error(s) in each of the following program segments. Show the corrected statement.

1. System.out.printf("%s\n", 'Happy Birthday');

2. System.out.printf("%c\n", 'Hello');

3. System.out.printf("%c\n", "This is a string");

4. The following statement should print "Bon Voyage" with the double quotes:
   System.out.printf(""%s"", "Bon Voyage");

5. The following statement should print "Today is Friday":
   System.out.printf("Today is %s\n", "Monday", "Friday");

6. System.out.printf('Enter your name: ');

7. System.out.printf(%f, 123.456);

8. The following statement should print the current time in the format "hh:mm:ss":
   Calendar dateTime = Calendar.getInstance();
   System.out.printf("%1$tk:1%tl:%1$tS\n", dateTime);

(Printing Dates and Times) Write a program that prints dates and times in the following forms:

GMT-05:00 04/30/04 09:55:09 AM
Write a program to test the results of printing the integer value 12345 and the floating-point value 1.2345 in various size fields.

(Rounding Numbers) Write a program that prints the value 100.453627 rounded to the nearest digit, tenth, hundredth, thousandth and ten thousandth.

Write a program that inputs a word from the keyboard and determines the length of the word. Print the word using twice the length as the field width.

(Converting Fahrenheit Temperature to Celsius) Write a program that converts integer Fahrenheit temperatures from 0 to 212 degrees to floating-point Celsius temperatures with three digits of precision. Use the formula

\[ \text{celsius} = \frac{5.0}{9.0} \times (\text{fahrenheit} - 32); \]

Write a program to test all the escape sequences in Fig. 28.23. For the escape sequences that move the cursor, print a character before and after the escape sequence so that it is clear where the cursor has moved.

Write a program that uses the conversion character \( g \) to output the value 9876.12345. Print the value with precisions ranging from 1 to 9.
Chapter 29. Strings, Characters and Regular Expressions

The chief defect of Henry King Was chewing little bits of string.

Hilaire Belloc

Vigorous writing is concise. A sentence should contain no unnecessary words, a paragraph no unnecessary sentences.

William Strunk, Jr.

I have made this letter longer than usual, because I lack the time to make it short.

Blaise Pascal

OBJECTIVES

In this chapter you will learn:

• To create and manipulate immutable character string objects of class `String`.

• To create and manipulate mutable character string objects of class `StringBuffer`.

• To create and manipulate objects of class `Character`.

• To use a `StringTokenizer` object to break a `String` object into tokens.

• To use regular expressions to validate `String` data entered into an application.

Outline

29.1 Introduction

29.2 Fundamentals of Characters and Strings
29.3 Class String

- 29.3.1 String Constructors
- 29.3.2 String Methods `length`, `charAt` and `getChars`
- 29.3.3 Comparing Strings
- 29.3.4 Locating Characters and Substrings in Strings
- 29.3.5 Extracting Substrings from Strings
- 29.3.6 Concatenating Strings
- 29.3.7 Miscellaneous String Methods
- 29.3.8 String Method `valueOf`

29.4 Class StringBuffer

- 29.4.1 StringBuffer Constructors
- 29.4.2 StringBuffer Methods `length`, `capacity`, `setLength` and `ensureCapacity`
- 29.4.3 StringBuffer Methods `charAt`, `setCharAt`, `getChars` and `reverse`
- 29.4.4 StringBuffer append Methods
- 29.4.5 StringBuffer Insertion and Deletion Methods

29.5 Class Character

29.6 Class StringTokenizer

29.7 Regular Expressions, Class `Pattern` and Class `Matcher`

29.8 Wrap-Up

Summary
29.1. Introduction

This chapter introduces Java's string- and character-processing capabilities. The techniques discussed here are appropriate for validating program input, displaying information to users and other text-based manipulations. The techniques are also appropriate for developing text editors, word processors, page-layout software, computerized typesetting systems and other kinds of text-processing software. We have already presented several string-processing capabilities in earlier chapters. This chapter discusses in detail the capabilities of class `String`, class `StringBuffer` and class `Character` from the `java.lang` package and class `StringTokenizer` from the `java.util` package. These classes provide the foundation for string and character manipulation in Java.

The chapter also discusses regular expressions that provide applications with the capability to validate input. The functionality is located in the `String` class along with classes `Matcher` and `Pattern` located in the `java.util.regex` package.
29.2. Fundamentals of Characters and Strings

Characters are the fundamental building blocks of Java source programs. Every program is composed of a sequence of characters that when grouped together meaningfully are interpreted by the computer as a series of instructions used to accomplish a task. A program may contain character literals. A character literal is an integer value represented as a character in single quotes. For example, 'z' represents the integer value of z, and '
' represents the integer value of newline. The value of a character literal is the integer value of the character in the Unicode character set. Appendix B presents the integer equivalents of the characters in the ASCII character set, which is a subset of Unicode (discussed in Appendix F). For detailed information on Unicode, visit www.unicode.org.

Recall from Section 2.2 that a string is a sequence of characters treated as a single unit. A string may include letters, digits and various special characters, such as +, -, *, / and $. A string is an object of class String. String literals (stored in memory as String objects) are written as a sequence of characters in double quotation marks, as in:

"John Q. Doe" (a name)

"9999 Main Street" (a street address)

"Waltham, Massachusetts" (a city and state)

"(201) 555-1212" (a telephone number)

A string may be assigned to a String reference. The declaration

```java
String color = "blue";
```

initializes String reference color to refer to a String object that contains the string "blue".
Performance Tip 29.1

Java treats all string literals with the same contents as a single `String` object that has many references to it. This conserves memory.
29.3. Class **String**

Class **String** is used to represent strings in Java. The next several subsections cover many of class **String**'s capabilities.

### 29.3.1. **String Constructors**

Class **String** provides constructors for initializing **String** objects in a variety of ways. Four of the constructors are demonstrated in the main method of **Fig. 29.1**.

**Figure 29.1. String class constructors.**

(This item is displayed on page 1353 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 29.1: StringConstructors.java
2 // String class constructors.
3
4 public class StringConstructors
5 {
6    public static void main( String args[] )
7    {
8        char charArray[] = { 'b', 'i', 'r', 't', 'h', ' ', 'd', 'a', 'y' };
9        String s = new String( "hello" );
10
11        // use String constructors
12        String s1 = new String();
13        String s2 = new String( s );
14        String s3 = new String( charArray );
15        String s4 = new String( charArray, 6, 3 );
16
17        System.out.printf(
18            "s1 = %s
s2 = %s
s3 = %s
s4 = %s\n",
19            s1, s2, s3, s4 ); // display strings
20    } // end main
21 } // end class StringConstructors
```

s1 =
s2 = hello
s3 = birth day
s4 = day
Line 12 instantiates a new `String` object using class `String`'s no-argument constructor and assigns its reference to `s1`. The new `String` object contains no characters (the **empty string**) and has a length of 0.

Line 13 instantiates a new `String` object using class `String`'s constructor that takes a `String` object as an argument and assigns its reference to `s2`. The new `String` object contains the same sequence of characters as the `String` object that is passed as an argument to the constructor.

**Software Engineering Observation 29.1**

*It is not necessary to copy an existing `String` object. `String` objects are **immutable**: their character contents cannot be changed after they are created, because class `String` does not provide any methods that allow the contents of a `String` object to be modified.*

Line 14 instantiates a new `String` object and assigns its reference to `s3` using class `String`'s constructor that takes a `char` array as an argument. The new `String` object contains a copy of the characters in the array.

Line 15 instantiates a new `String` object and assigns its reference to `s4` using class `String`'s constructor that takes a `char` array and two integers as arguments. The second argument specifies the starting position (the offset) from which characters in the array are accessed. Remember that the first character is at position 0. The third argument specifies the number of characters (the count) to access in the array. The new `String` object contains a string formed from the accessed characters. If the offset or the count specified as an argument results in accessing an element outside the bounds of the character array, a `String-IndexOutOfBoundsException` is thrown. We discussed exceptions in detail in [Chapter 13](#).
Common Programming Error 29.1

Attempting to access a character that is outside the bounds of a string (i.e., an index less than 0 or an index greater than or equal to the string’s length) results in a `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException`.

29.3.2. String Methods length, charAt and getChars

String methods `length`, `charAt` and `getChars` return the length of a string, obtain the character at a specific location in a string and retrieve a set of characters from a string as a char array, respectively. The application in Fig. 29.2 demonstrates each of these methods.

```
public class StringMiscellaneous {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {

        String s1 = "hello there";
        char charArray[] = new char[ 5 ];

        System.out.printf( "s1: %s", s1 );

        System.out.printf( "Length of s1: %d", s1.length() );

        System.out.print( "The string reversed is: " );

        for ( int count = s1.length() - 1; count >= 0; count-- )
            System.out.printf( "%s ", s1.charAt( count ) );

        System.out.println();

        s1.getChars( 0, 5, charArray, 0 );
    }
}
```

Figure 29.2. String class character-manipulation methods.
System.out.print( "\nThe character array is: " );
for ( char character : charArray )
    System.out.print( character );
System.out.println();
}
// end main
// end class StringMiscellaneous

s1: hello there
Length of s1: 11
The string reversed is: e r e h t   o l l e h
The character array is: hello

Line 15 uses String method length to determine the number of characters in string s1. Like arrays, strings always know their own length. However, unlike arrays, you cannot access a String's length via a length field instead you must call the String's length method.

The for statement at lines 20-21 print the characters of the string s1 in reverse order (and separated by spaces). String method charAt (line 21) returns the character at a specific position in the string. Method charAt receives an integer argument that is used as the index and returns the character at that position. Like arrays, the first element of a string is at position 0.

Line 24 uses String method getChars to copy the characters of a string into a character array. The first argument is the starting index in the string from which characters are to be copied. The second argument is the index that is one past the last character to be copied from the string. The third argument is the character array into which the characters are to be copied. The last argument is the starting index where the copied characters are placed in the target character array. Next, line 28 prints the char array contents one character at a time.

29.3.3. Comparing Strings
Chapter 7 discussed sorting and searching arrays. Frequently, the information being sorted or searched consists of strings that must be compared to place them into the proper order or to determine whether a string appears in an array (or other collection). Class `String` provides several methods for comparing strings; these are demonstrated in the next two examples.

To understand what it means for one string to be greater than or less than another string, consider the process of alphabetizing a series of last names. You would, no doubt, place "Jones" before "Smith" because the first letter of "Jones" comes before the first letter of "Smith" in the alphabet. But the alphabet is more than just a list of 26 letters; it is an ordered set of characters. Each letter occurs in a specific position within the set. Z is more than just a letter of the alphabet; it is specifically the twenty-sixth letter of the alphabet.

How does the computer know that one letter comes before another? All characters are represented in the computer as numeric codes (see Appendix B). When the computer compares two strings, it actually compares the numeric codes of the characters in the strings.

Figure 29.3 demonstrates `String` methods `equals`, `equalsIgnoreCase`, `compareTo` and `regionMatches` and using the equality operator `==` to compare `String` objects.

```java
1 // Fig. 29.3: StringCompare.java
2 // String methods equals, equalsIgnoreCase, compareTo and regionMatches.
3
4 public class StringCompare
5 {
6    public static void main( String args[] )
7    {
8        String s1 = new String( "hello" ); // s1 is a copy of "hello"
9        String s2 = "goodbye";
10       String s3 = "Happy Birthday";
11       String s4 = "happy birthday";
12
13       System.out.printf(
14           "s1 = %s
s2 = %s
s3 = %s
s4 = %s

15       // test for equality
16       if ( s1 equals( "hello" ) ) // true
17           System.out.println( "s1 equals \"hello\"" );
18       else
19           System.out.println( "s1 does not equal \"hello\"" );
20
21       // test for equality with ==
22       if ( s1 == "hello" ) // false; they are not the same object
23```
System.out.println( "s1 is the same object as "hello\"");
else
  System.out.println( "s1 is not the same object as "hello\"");

// test for equality (ignore case)
if ( s3.equalsIgnoreCase( s4 ) ) // true
  System.out.printf( "%s equals %s with case ignored\n", s3, s4 );
else
  System.out.println( "s3 does not equal s4" );

// test compareTo
System.out.printf( "\ns1.compareTo( s2 ) is %d", s1.compareTo( s2 ) );
System.out.printf( "\ns2.compareTo( s1 ) is %d", s2.compareTo( s1 ) );
System.out.printf( "\ns1.compareTo( s1 ) is %d", s1.compareTo( s1 ) );
System.out.printf( "\ns3.compareTo( s4 ) is %d", s3.compareTo( s4 ) );
System.out.printf( "\ns4.compareTo( s3 ) is %d\n\n", s4.compareTo( s3 ) );

// test regionMatches (case sensitive)
if ( s3.regionMatches( 0, s4, 0, 5 ) )
  System.out.println( "First 5 characters of s3 and s4 match" );
else
  System.out.println( "First 5 characters of s3 and s4 do not match" );

// test regionMatches (ignore case)
if ( s3.regionMatches( true, 0, s4, 0, 5 ) )
  System.out.println( "First 5 characters of s3 and s4 match" );
else
  System.out.println( "First 5 characters of s3 and s4 do not match" );

} // end main
} // end class StringCompare

s1 = hello
s2 = goodbye
s3 = Happy Birthday
s4 = happy birthday

s1 equals "hello"
s1 is not the same object as "hello"
Happy Birthday equals happy birthday with case ignored

s1.compareTo( s2 ) is 1
s2.compareTo( s1 ) is -1
s1.compareTo( s1 ) is 0
s3.compareTo( s4 ) is -32
s4.compareTo( s3 ) is 32

First 5 characters of s3 and s4 do not match
First 5 characters of s3 and s4 match
The condition at line 17 uses method `equals` to compare string `s1` and the string literal "hello" for equality. Method `equals` (a method of class `Object` overridden in `String`) tests any two objects for equality—the strings contained in the two objects are identical. The method returns `true` if the contents of the objects are equal, and `false` otherwise. The preceding condition is `true` because string `s1` was initialized with the string literal "hello". Method `equals` uses a **lexicographical comparison** it compares the integer Unicode values (see Appendix F, Unicode, for more information) that represent each character in each string. Thus, if the string "hello" is compared with the string "HELLO", the result is `false`, because the integer representation of a lowercase letter is different from that of the corresponding uppercase letter.

The condition at line 23 uses the equality operator `==` to compare string `s1` for equality with the string literal "hello". Operator `==` has different functionality when it is used to compare references than when it is used to compare values of primitive types. When primitive-type values are compared with `==`, the result is `true` if both values are identical. When references are compared with `==`, the result is `true` if both references refer to the same object in memory. To compare the actual contents (or state information) of objects for equality, a method must be invoked. In the case of `Strings`, that method is `equals`. The preceding condition evaluates to `false` at line 23 because the reference `s1` was initialized with the statement

```java
s1 = new String( "hello" );
```

which creates a new `String` object with a copy of string literal "hello" and assigns the new object to variable `s1`. If `s1` had been initialized with the statement

```java
s1 = "hello";
```
which directly assigns the string literal "hello" to variable s1, the condition would be True. Remember that Java treats all string literal objects with the same contents as one String object to which there can be many references. Thus, lines 8, 17 and 23 all refer to the same String object "hello" in memory.

**Common Programming Error 29.2**

Comparing references with == can lead to logic errors, because == compares the references to determine whether they refer to the same object, not whether two objects have the same contents. When two identical (but separate) objects are compared with ==, the result will be false. When comparing objects to determine whether they have the same contents, use method equals.

If you are sorting Strings, you may compare them for equality with method equalsIgnoreCase, which ignores whether the letters in each string are uppercase or lowercase when performing the comparison. Thus, the string "hello" and the string "HELLO" compare as equal. Line 29 uses String method equalsIgnoreCase to compare string s3 "Happy Birthday" for equality with string s4 "happy birthday". The result of this comparison is true because the comparison ignores case sensitivity.

Lines 35-44 use method compareTo to compare strings. Method compareTo is declared in the Comparable interface and implemented in the String class. Line 36 compares string s1 to string s2. Method compareTo returns 0 if the strings are equal, a negative number if the string that invokes compareTo is less than the string that is passed as an argument and a positive number if the string that invokes compareTo is greater than the string that is passed as an argument. Method compareTo uses a lexicographical comparison—it compares the numeric values of corresponding characters in each string. (For more information on the exact value returned by the compareTo method, see java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/lang/String.html.)

The condition at line 47 uses String method regionMatches to compare portions of two strings for equality. The first argument is the starting index in the string that invokes the method. The second argument is a comparison string. The
third argument is the starting index in the comparison string. The last argument is the number of characters to compare between the two strings. The method returns True only if the specified number of characters are lexicographically equal.

Finally, the condition at line 54 uses a five-argument version of String method regionMatches to compare portions of two strings for equality. When the first argument is true, the method ignores the case of the characters being compared. The remaining arguments are identical to those described for the four-argument regionMatches method.

The second example in this section (Fig. 29.4) demonstrates String methods startsWith and endsWith. Method main creates array strings containing the strings "started", "starting", "ended" and "ending". The remainder of method main consists of three for statements that test the elements of the array to determine whether they start with or end with a particular set of characters.

Figure 29.4. String class startsWith and endsWith methods.  
(This item is displayed on page 1359 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 29.4: StringStartEnd.java
2 // String methods startsWith and endsWith.
3
4 public class StringStartEnd
5 {
6     public static void main( String args[] )
7     {
8         String strings[] = { "started", "starting", "ended", "ending" };
9
10        // test method startsWith
11        for ( String string : strings )
12        {
13            if ( string.startsWith( "st" ) )
14                System.out.printf( "\"%s\" starts with \"st\"\n", string );
15        } // end for
16
17        System.out.println();
18
19        // test method startsWith starting from position 2 of string
20        for ( String string : strings )
21        {
22            if ( string.startsWith( "art", 2 ) )
23                System.out.printf( "\"%s\" starts with \"art\" at position 2\n", string );
24        } // end for
25
26        System.out.println();
27
28        // test method endsWith
```
The first for statement (lines 1115) uses the version of method `startsWith` that takes a `String` argument. The condition in the if statement (line 13) determines whether each `String` in the array starts with the characters "st". If so, the method returns true and the application prints that `String`. Otherwise, the method returns `false` and nothing happens.

The second for statement (lines 2025) uses the `startsWith` method that takes a `String` and an integer as arguments. The integer specifies the index at which the comparison should begin in the string. The condition in the if statement (line 22) determines whether each `String` in the array has the characters "art" beginning with the third character in each string. If so, the method returns `true` and the application prints the `String`.

The third for statement (lines 3034) uses method `endsWith`, which takes a `String` argument. The condition at line 32 determines whether each `String` in the array ends with the characters "ed". If so, the method returns true and the application prints the `String`.

29.3.4. Locating Characters and Substrings in Strings
Often it is useful to search for a character or set of characters in a string. For example, if you are creating your own word processor, you might want to provide a capability for searching through documents. Figure 29.5 demonstrates the many versions of String methods `indexOf` and `lastIndexOf` that search for a specified character or substring in a string. All the searches in this example are performed on the string `letters` (initialized with "abcdefghijklmabcdefghijklm") in method `main`. Lines 11-16 use method `indexOf` to locate the first occurrence of a character in a string. If method `indexOf` finds the character, it returns the character's index in the string otherwise, `indexOf` returns 1. There are two versions of `indexOf` that search for characters in a string. The expression in line 12 uses the version of method `indexOf` that takes an integer representation of the character to find. The expression at line 14 uses another version of method `indexOf`, which takes two integer arguments: the character and the starting index at which the search of the string should begin.

```java
// Fig. 29.5: StringIndexMethods.java
// String searching methods indexOf and lastIndexOf.

public class StringIndexMethods {

    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        String letters = "abcdefghijklmabcdefghijklm";

        // test indexOf to locate a character in a string
        System.out.printf("'c' is located at index %d\n", letters.indexOf( 'c' ) );
        System.out.printf("'a' is located at index %d\n", letters.indexOf( 'a', 1 ) );
        System.out.printf("'$' is located at index %d\n", letters.indexOf( '$' ) );

        // test lastIndexOf to find a character in a string
        System.out.printf("Last 'c' is located at index %d\n", letters.lastIndexOf( 'c' ) );
        System.out.printf("Last 'a' is located at index %d\n", letters.lastIndexOf( 'a', 25 ) );
        System.out.printf("Last '$' is located at index %d\n", letters.lastIndexOf( '$' ) );

        // test indexOf to locate a substring in a string
        System.out.printf("'def' is located at index %d\n", letters.indexOf( "def" ) );
    }
}
```

**Figure 29.5. String class searching methods.**
(This item is displayed on pages 1360 - 1361 in the print version)
The statements at lines 19-24 use method `lastIndexOf` to locate the last occurrence of a character in a string. Method `lastIndexOf` performs the search from the end of the string toward the beginning of the string. If method `lastIndexOf` finds the character, it returns the index of the character in the string otherwise, `lastIndexOf` returns 1. There are two versions of `lastIndexOf` that search for characters in a string. The expression at line 20 uses the version of method `lastIndexOf` that takes the integer representation of the character. The expression at line 22 uses the version of method `lastIndexOf` that takes two integer arguments—the integer representation of the character and the index from which to begin searching backward.
Lines 2740 demonstrate versions of methods `indexOf` and `lastIndexOf` that each take a `String` as the first argument. These versions of the methods perform identically to those described earlier except that they search for sequences of characters (or substrings) that are specified by their `String` arguments. If the substring is found, these methods return the index in the string of the first character in the substring.

### 29.3.5. Extracting Substrings from Strings

Class `String` provides two `substring` methods to enable a new `String` object to be created by copying part of an existing `String` object. Each method returns a new `String` object. Both methods are demonstrated in Fig. 29.6.

**Figure 29.6. String class `substring` methods.**

```java
public class SubString {
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        String letters = abcdefghijklmabcdefghijklm;

        // test substring methods
        System.out.printf("Substring from index 20 to end is \"%s\"\n", letters.substring(20));
        System.out.printf("%s \"%s\"\n", "Substring from index 3 up to, but not including 6 is",
                         letters.substring(3, 6));
    }
}
```

Substring from index 20 to end is "hijklm"
Substring from index 3 up to, but not including 6 is "def"
The expression `letters.substring( 20 )` at line 12 uses the `substring` method that takes one integer argument. The argument specifies the starting index in the original string `letters` from which characters are to be copied. The substring returned contains a copy of the characters from the starting index to the end of the string. Specifying an index outside the bounds of the string causes a `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException`.

The expression `letters.substring( 3, 6 )` at line 15 uses the `substring` method that takes two integer arguments. The first argument specifies the starting index from which characters are copied in the original string. The second argument specifies the index one beyond the last character to be copied (i.e., copy up to, but not including, that index in the string). The substring returned contains a copy of the specified characters from the original string. Specifying an index outside the bounds of the string causes a `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException`.

29.3.6. Concatenating Strings

`String` method `concat` ([Fig. 29.7](#)) concatenates two `String` objects and returns a new `String` object containing the characters from both original strings. The expression `s1.concat( s2 )` at line 13 forms a string by appending the characters in string `s2` to the characters in string `s1`. The original `Strings` to which `s1` and `s2` refer are not modified.

**Figure 29.7.** `String` method `concat`.

```java
// Fig. 29.7: StringConcatenation.java
// String concat method.

public class StringConcatenation {  
  
    public static void main( String args[] )  
    {  
      String s1 = new String( "Happy " );  
      String s2 = new String( "Birthday" );  
      System.out.printf( "s1 = %s
s2 = %s

" , s1, s2 );  
      System.out.printf( "Result of s1.concat( s2 ) = %s", s1.concat( s2 ) );
    }
}
```
29.3.7. Miscellaneous String Methods

Class String provides several methods that return modified copies of strings or that return character arrays. These methods are demonstrated in the application in Fig. 29.8.

**Figure 29.8. String methods replace, toLowerCase, toUpperCase, trim and toCharArray.**

(This item is displayed on page 1363 in the print version)
Line 16 uses `String` method `replace` to return a new `String` object in which every occurrence in string `s1` of character 'l' (lowercase l) is replaced with character 'L'. Method `replace` leaves the original string unchanged. If there are no occurrences of the first argument in the string, method `replace` returns the original string.

Line 19 uses `String` method `toUpperCase` to generate a new `String` object with uppercase letters where corresponding lowercase letters exist in `s1`. The
method returns a new String object containing the converted string and leaves the original string unchanged. If there are no characters to convert, method toUpperCase returns the original string.

Line 20 uses String method toLowerCase to return a new String object with lowercase letters where corresponding uppercase letters exist in s2. The original string remains unchanged. If there are no characters in the original string to convert, toLowerCase returns the original string.

Line 23 uses String method trim to generate a new String object that removes all whitespace characters that appear at the beginning or end of the string on which trim operates. The method returns a new String object containing the string without leading or trailing white space. The original string remains unchanged.

Line 26 uses String method toCharArray to create a new character array containing a copy of the characters in string s1. Lines 29-30 output each char in the array.

29.3.8. String Method valueOf

As we have seen, every object in Java has a toString method that enables a program to obtain the object's string representation. Unfortunately, this technique cannot be used with primitive types because they do not have methods. Class String provides static methods that take an argument of any type and convert the argument to a String object. Figure 29.9 demonstrates the String class valueOf methods.

Figure 29.9. String class valueOf methods.  
(This item is displayed on page 1365 in the print version)
The expression `String.valueOf( charArray )` at line 18 uses the character array `charArray` to create a new `String` object. The expression `String.valueOf( charArray, 3, 3 )` at line 20 uses a portion of the character array `charArray` to create a new `String` object. The second argument specifies the starting index from which the characters are used. The third argument specifies the number of characters to be used.

There are seven other versions of method `valueOf`, which take arguments of type `boolean`, `char`, `int`, `long`, `float`, `double` and `Object`, respectively. These are demonstrated in lines 21-30. Note that the version of `valueOf` that takes an `Object` as an argument can do so because all `Objects` can be converted to Strings.
[Note: Lines 1314 use literal values 1000000L and 2.5f as the initial values of long variable longValue and float variable floatValue, respectively. By default, Java treats integer literals as type int and floating-point literals as type double. Appending the letter L to the literal 1000000 and appending letter f to the literal 2.5 indicates to the compiler that 1000000 should be treated as a long and that 2.5 should be treated as a float. An uppercase L or lowercase l can be used to denote a variable of type long and an uppercase F or lowercase f can be used to denote a variable of type float.]
29.4. Class `StringBuffer`

Once a `String` object is created, its contents can never change. We now discuss the features of class `StringBuffer` for creating and manipulating dynamic string information—that is, modifiable strings. Every `StringBuffer` is capable of storing a number of characters specified by its capacity. If the capacity of a `StringBuffer` is exceeded, the capacity is automatically expanded to accommodate the additional characters. Class `StringBuffer` is also used to implement operators `+` and `+=` for `String` concatenation.

---

**Performance Tip 29.2**

Java can perform certain optimizations involving `String` objects (such as sharing one `String` object among multiple references) because it knows these objects will not change. `Strings` (not `StringBuffers`) should be used if the data will not change.

---

**Performance Tip 29.3**

In programs that frequently perform string concatenation, or other string modifications, it is more efficient to implement the modifications with class `StringBuffer` (covered in Section 29.4.1).

---

29.4.1. `StringBuffer` Constructors
Class `StringBuffer` provides four constructors. Three of these constructors are demonstrated in Fig. 29.10. Line 8 uses the no-argument `StringBuffer` constructor to create a `StringBuffer` with no characters in it and an initial capacity of 16 characters (the default for a `StringBuffer`). Line 9 uses the `StringBuffer` constructor that takes an integer argument to create a `StringBuffer` with no characters in it and the initial capacity specified by the integer argument (i.e., 10). Line 10 uses the `StringBuffer` constructor that takes a `String` argument (in this case, a string literal) to create a `StringBuffer` containing the characters in the `String` argument. The initial capacity is the number of characters in the `String` argument plus 16.

**Figure 29.10. StringBuffer class constructors.**

```java
// Fig. 29.10: StringBufferConstructors.java
// StringBuffer constructors.

public class StringBufferConstructors {
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        StringBuffer buffer1 = new StringBuffer();
        StringBuffer buffer2 = new StringBuffer(10);
        StringBuffer buffer3 = new StringBuffer("hello");

        System.out.printf("buffer1 = ", buffer1.toString());
        System.out.printf("buffer2 = ", buffer2.toString());
        System.out.printf("buffer3 = ", buffer3.toString());
    }
}
```

The statements on lines 12-14 use `StringBuffer` method `toString` to output the `StringBuffer` with the `printf` method. In Section 29.4.4, we discuss how Java uses `StringBuffer` objects to implement the `+` and `+=` operators for string concatenation.
29.4.2. StringBuffer Methods length, capacity, setLength and ensureCapacity

Class StringBuffer provides methods **length** and **capacity** to return the number of characters currently in a StringBuffer and the number of characters that can be stored in a StringBuffer without allocating more memory, respectively. Method **ensureCapacity** guarantees that a StringBuffer has at least the specified capacity. Method **setLength** increases or decreases the length of a StringBuffer. The application in **Fig. 29.11** demonstrates these methods.

**Figure 29.11. StringBuffer methods length and capacity.**
(This item is displayed on page 1367 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 29.11: StringBufferCapLen.java
// StringBuffer length, setLength, capacity and ensureCapacity methods.

public class StringBufferCapLen {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        StringBuffer buffer = new StringBuffer( "Hello, how are you?" );

        System.out.printf( "buffer = %s
length = %d
capacity = %d

", buffer.toString(), buffer.length(), buffer.capacity() );

        buffer.ensureCapacity( 75 );
        System.out.printf( "New capacity = %d
", buffer.capacity() );

        buffer.setLength( 10 );
        System.out.printf( "New length = %d
buf = %s
", buffer.length(), buffer.toString() );
    } // end main
} // end class StringBufferCapLen
```

buffer = Hello, how are you?
length = 19
capacity = 35

New capacity = 75

New length = 10
buf = Hello, how
The application contains one `StringBuffer` called `buffer`. Line 8 uses the `StringBuffer` constructor that takes a `String` argument to initialize the `StringBuffer` with "Hello, how are you?". Lines 10-11 print the contents, length and capacity of the `StringBuffer`. Note in the output window that the capacity of the `StringBuffer` is initially 35. Recall that the `StringBuffer` constructor that takes a `String` argument initializes the capacity to the length of the string passed as an argument plus 16.

Line 13 uses method `ensureCapacity` to expand the capacity of the `StringBuffer` to a minimum of 75 characters. Actually, if the original capacity is less than the argument, the method ensures a capacity that is the greater of the number specified as an argument and twice the original capacity plus 2. The `StringBuffer`'s current capacity remains unchanged if it is more than the specified capacity.

**Performance Tip 29.4**

_Dynamically increasing the capacity of a `StringBuffer` can take a relatively long time. Executing a large number of these operations can degrade the performance of an application. If a `StringBuffer` is going to increase greatly in size, possibly multiple times, setting its capacity high at the beginning will increase performance._

Line 16 uses method `setLength` to set the length of the `StringBuffer` to 10. If the specified length is less than the current number of characters in the `StringBuffer`, the buffer is truncated to the specified length (i.e., the characters in the `StringBuffer` after the specified length are discarded). If the specified length is greater than the number of characters currently in the `StringBuffer`, null characters (characters with the numeric representation 0) are appended to the `StringBuffer` until the total number of characters in the `StringBuffer` is equal to the specified length. See **Section 14.7.1** for more details.
29.4.3. StringBuffer Methods charAt, setCharAt, getChars and reverse

Class StringBuffer provides methods charAt, setCharAt, getChars and reverse to manipulate the characters in a StringBuffer. Each of these methods is demonstrated in Fig. 29.12.

Figure 29.12. StringBuffer class character-manipulation methods.

```java
1  // Fig. 29.12: StringBufferChars.java
2  // StringBuffer methods charAt, setCharAt, getChars and reverse.
3  public class StringBufferChars
4  {
5      public static void main( String args[] )
6      {
7          StringBuffer buffer = new StringBuffer( "hello there" );
8          System.out.printf( "buffer = %s\n", buffer.toString() );
9          System.out.printf( "Character at 0: %s\nCharacter at 4: %s\n\n", buffer.charAt( 0 ), buffer.charAt( 4 ) );
10         char charArray[] = new char[ buffer.length() ];
11         buffer.getChars( 0, buffer.length(), charArray, 0 );
12         System.out.print( "The characters are: " );
13         for ( char character : charArray )
14             System.out.print( character );
15         buffer.setCharAt( 0, 'H' );
16         buffer.setCharAt( 6, 'T' );
17         System.out.printf( "
\n\nbuf = %s", buffer.toString() );
18         buffer.reverse();
19         System.out.printf( "\n\nbuf = %s\n", buffer.toString() );
20     } // end main
21  } // end class StringBufferChars
```

buffer = hello there
Character at 0: h
Character at 4: o
Method `charAt` (line 12) takes an integer argument and returns the character in the `StringBuffer` at that index. Method `getChars` (line 15) copies characters from a `StringBuffer` into the character array passed as an argument. This method takes four arguments—the starting index from which characters should be copied in the `StringBuffer`, the index one past the last character to be copied from the `StringBuffer`, the character array into which the characters are to be copied and the starting location in the character array where the first character should be placed. Method `setCharAt` (lines 21 and 22) takes an integer and a character argument and sets the character at the specified position in the `StringBuffer`. Method `reverse` (line 25) reverses the contents of the `StringBuffer`.

**Common Programming Error 29.3**

Attempting to access a character that is outside the bounds of a `StringBuffer` (i.e., with an index less than 0 or greater than or equal to the `StringBuffer`'s length) results in a `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException`.

29.4.4. **StringBuffer append Methods**

Class `StringBuffer` provides overloaded `append` methods to allow values of various types to be appended to the end of a `StringBuffer`. Versions are provided for each of the primitive types and for character arrays, `Strings`, `Objects`, `StringBuffers` and `CharSequences`. (Remember that method `toString` produces a
string representation of any Object.) Each of the methods takes its argument, converts it to a string and appends it to the StringBuffer. The append methods are demonstrated in Fig. 29.13.

**Figure 29.13. StringBuffer class append methods.**

(This item is displayed on pages 1370 - 1371 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 29.13: StringBufferAppend.java
// StringBuffer append methods.

public class StringBufferAppend
{
    public static void main( String args[] )
    {
        Object objectRef = "hello";
        String string = "goodbye";
        char charArray[] = { 'a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e', 'f'};
        boolean booleanValue = true;
        char characterValue = 'Z';
        int integerValue = 7;
        long longValue = 10000000000L;
        float floatValue = 2.5f; // f suffix indicates 2.5 is a float
        double doubleValue = 33.333;

        StringBuffer lastBuffer = new StringBuffer( "last StringBuffer" );
        StringBuffer buffer = new StringBuffer();

        buffer.append( objectRef );
        buffer.append( string ); // each of these contains new line
        buffer.append( "\n" );
        buffer.append( charArray );
        buffer.append( "\n" );
        buffer.append( charArray, 0, 3 );
        buffer.append( "\n" );
        buffer.append( booleanValue );
        buffer.append( "\n" );
        buffer.append( characterValue );
        buffer.append( "\n" );
        buffer.append( integerValue );
        buffer.append( "\n" );
        buffer.append( longValue );
        buffer.append( "\n" );
        buffer.append( floatValue );
        buffer.append( "\n" );
        buffer.append( doubleValue );
        buffer.append( "\n" );
        buffer.append( lastBuffer

        System.out.printf( "buffer contains %s\n", buffer.toString() );
    } // end main
} // end StringBufferAppend
```
Actually, `StringBuffers` and the append methods are used by the compiler to implement the `+` and `+=` operators for `String` concatenation. For example, assuming the declarations

```java
String string1 = "hello";
String string2 = "BC";
int value = 22;
```

the statement

```java
String s = string1 + string2 + value;
```

concatenates "hello", "BC" and 22. The concatenation is performed as follows:

```java
new StringBuffer().append("hello").append("BC").append(22).toString();
```

First, Java creates an empty `StringBuffer`, then appends to the `StringBuffer` the string "hello", the string "BC" and the integer 22. Next, `StringBuffer`'s method `toString` converts the `StringBuffer` to a `String` object to be assigned to `String s`. The statement

```java
new StringBuffer().append("hello").append("BC").append(22).toString();
```
is performed as follows:

```java
s += "!";

s = new StringBuffer().append(s).append("!").toString();
```

First, Java creates an empty `StringBuffer`, then appends to the `StringBuffer` the current contents of `s` followed by `"!"`. Next, `StringBuffer`'s method `toString` converts the `StringBuffer` to a string representation and the result is assigned to `s`.

---

29.4.5. `StringBuffer` Insertion and Deletion Methods

Class `StringBuffer` provides overloaded `insert` methods to allow values of various types to be inserted at any position in a `StringBuffer`. Versions are provided for each of the primitive types and for character arrays, `Strings`, `Objects` and `CharSequences`. Each of the methods takes its second argument, converts it to a string and inserts it immediately preceding the index specified by the first argument. The index specified by the first argument must be greater than or equal to `0` and less than the length of the `StringBuffer` otherwise, a `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException` occurs. Class `StringBuffer` also provides methods `delete` and `deleteCharAt` for deleting characters at any position in a `StringBuffer`. Method `delete` takes two arguments: the starting index and the index one past the end of the characters to delete. All characters beginning at the starting index up to but not including the ending index are deleted. Method `deleteCharAt` takes one argument: the index of the character to delete. Invalid indices cause both methods to throw a `StringIndexOutOfBoundsException`. Methods `insert`, `delete` and `deleteCharAt` are demonstrated in Fig. 29.14.

**Figure 29.14.** `StringBuffer` methods `insert` and `delete`.  
(This item is displayed on pages 1371 - 1372 in the print version)
```java
public class StringBufferInsert {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        Object objectRef = "hello";
        String string = "goodbye";
        char charArray[] = { 'a', 'b', 'c', 'd', 'e', 'f' };
        boolean booleanValue = true;
        char characterValue = 'K';
        int integerValue = 7;
        long longValue = 1000000;
        float floatValue = 2.5f; // f suffix indicates that 2.5 is a float
        double doubleValue = 33.333;

        StringBuffer buffer = new StringBuffer();

        buffer.insert( 0, objectRef );
        buffer.insert( 0, "  "); // each of these contains two spaces
        buffer.insert( 0, string );
        buffer.insert( 0, "  ");
        buffer.insert( 0, charArray );
        buffer.insert( 0, "  ");
        buffer.insert( 0, charArray, 3, 3 );
        buffer.insert( 0, "  ");
        buffer.insert( 0, booleanValue );
        buffer.insert( 0, "  ");
        buffer.insert( 0, characterValue );
        buffer.insert( 0, "  ");
        buffer.insert( 0, integerValue );
        buffer.insert( 0, "  ");
        buffer.insert( 0, longValue );
        buffer.insert( 0, "  ");
        buffer.insert( 0, floatValue );
        buffer.insert( 0, "  ");
        buffer.insert( 0, doubleValue );

        System.out.printf( "buffer after inserts:
%s

", buffer.toString() );

        buffer.deleteCharAt( 10 ); // delete 5 in 2.5
        buffer.delete( 2, 6 ); // delete .333 in 33.333

        System.out.printf( "buffer after deletes:
%s
", buffer.toString() );
    }
}
```

buffer after inserts:
33.333 2.5 10000000 7 K true def abcdef goodbye hello

buffer after deletes:
33 2. 10000000 7 K true def abcdef goodbye hello
29.5. Class Character

Recall from Chapter 17 that Java provides eight type-wrapper classes `Boolean`, `Character`, `Double`, `Float`, `Byte`, `Short`, `Integer` and `Long` that enable primitive-type values to be treated as objects. In this section, we present class `Character` the type-wrapper class for primitive type `char`.

Most `Character` methods are static methods designed to be convenience methods for processing individual char values. These methods take at least a character argument and perform either a test or a manipulation of the character. Class `Character` also contains a constructor that receives a char argument to initialize a `Character` object. Most of the methods of class `Character` are presented in the next three examples. For more information on class `Character` (and all the type-wrapper classes), see the `java.lang` package in the Java API documentation.

Figure 29.15 demonstrates some static methods that test characters to determine whether they are a specific character type and the static methods that perform case conversions on characters. You can enter any character and apply the methods to the character.

**Figure 29.15.** `Character` class static methods for testing characters and converting character case.

(This item is displayed on pages 1373 - 1374 in the print version)

```java
1 // Fig. 29.15: StaticCharMethods.java
2 // Static Character testing methods and case conversion methods.
3 import java.util.Scanner;
4 
5 public class StaticCharMethods
6 {
7    public static void main( String args[] )
8    {
9        Scanner scanner = new Scanner( System.in ); // create scanner
10       System.out.println( "Enter a character and press Enter" );
11       String input = scanner.next();
12       char c = input.charAt( 0 ); // get input character
13 
14        // display character info
15       System.out.printf( "is defined: %b\n", Character.isDefined( c ) );
16       System.out.printf( "is digit: %b\n", Character.isDigit( c ) );
```
Enter a character and press Enter
A
is defined: true
is digit: false
is first character in a Java identifier: true
is part of a Java identifier: true
is letter: true
is letter or digit: true
is lower case: false
is upper case: true
to upper case: A
to lower case: a

Enter a character and press Enter
8
is defined: true
is digit: true
is first character in a Java identifier: false
is part of a Java identifier: true
is letter: false
is letter or digit: true
is lower case: false
is upper case: false
to upper case: 8
to lower case: 8
Enter a character and press Enter
$ is defined: true
is digit: false
is first character in a Java identifier: true
is part of a Java identifier: true
is letter: false
is letter or digit: false
is lower case: false
is upper case: false
to upper case: $
to lower case: $

Line 15 uses Character method **isDefined** to determine whether character $c$ is defined in the Unicode character set. If so, the method returns **true**, and otherwise, it returns **false**. Line 16 uses Character method **isDigit** to determine whether character $c$ is a defined Unicode digit. If so, the method returns **true**, and otherwise, it returns **false**.

Line 18 uses Character method **isJavaIdentifierStart** to determine whether $c$ is a character that can be the first character of an identifier in Java that is, a letter, an underscore (_) or a dollar sign ($). If so, the method returns **true**, and otherwise, it returns **false**. Line 20 uses Character method **isJavaIdentifierPart** to determine whether character $c$ is a character that can be used in an identifier in Java that is, a digit, a letter, an underscore (_) or a dollar sign ($). If so, the method returns **true**, and otherwise, it returns **false**.

Line 21 uses Character method **isLetter** to determine whether character $c$ is a letter. If so, the method returns **true**, and otherwise, it returns **false**. Line 23 uses Character method **isLetterOrDigit** to determine whether character $c$ is a letter or a digit. If so, the method returns **true**, and otherwise, it returns **false**.

Line 25 uses Character method **isLowerCase** to determine whether character $c$ is a lowercase letter. If so, the method returns **true**, and otherwise, it returns **false**.
false. Line 27 uses Character method `isUpperCase` to determine whether character `c` is an uppercase letter. If so, the method returns `true`, and otherwise, it returns `false`.

Line 29 uses Character method `toUpperCase` to convert the character `c` to its uppercase equivalent. The method returns the converted character if the character has an uppercase equivalent, and otherwise, the method returns its original argument. Line 31 uses Character method `toLowerCase` to convert the character `c` to its lowercase equivalent. The method returns the converted character if the character has a lowercase equivalent, and otherwise, the method returns its original argument.

Figure 29.16 demonstrates static Character methods `digit` and `forDigit`, which convert characters to digits and digits to characters, respectively, in different number systems. Common number systems include decimal (base 10), octal (base 8), hexadecimal (base 16) and binary (base 2). The base of a number is also known as its `radix`. For more information on conversions between number systems, see Appendix E.

**Figure 29.16.** Character class static conversion methods.

(This item is displayed on pages 1375 - 1376 in the print version)
case 1: // convert digit to character
    System.out.println( "Enter a digit:" );
    int digit = scanner.nextInt();
    System.out.printf( "Convert digit to character: %s\n", Character.forDigit( digit, radix ));
    break;

case 2: // convert character to digit
    System.out.println( "Enter a character:" );
    char character = scanner.next().charAt( 0 );
    System.out.printf( "Convert character to digit: %s\n", Character.digit( character, radix ));
    break;

} // end switch
} // end main
} // end class StaticCharMethods2

Please enter a radix:
16
Please choose one:
1 -- Convert digit to character
2 -- Convert character to digit
2
Enter a character:
A
Convert character to digit: 10

Please enter a radix:
16
Please choose one:
1 -- Convert digit to character
2 -- Convert character to digit
1
Enter a digit:
13
Convert digit to character: d

Line 28 uses method forDigit to convert the integer digit into a character in the
number system specified by the integer \textit{radix} (the base of the number). For example, the decimal integer 13 in base 16 (the \textit{radix}) has the character value 'd'. Note that lowercase letters represent the same value as uppercase letters in number systems. Line 35 uses method \texttt{digit} to convert the character \texttt{c} into an integer in the number system specified by the integer \textit{radix} (the base of the number). For example, the character 'A' is the base 16 (the \textit{radix}) representation of the base 10 value 10. The radix must be between 2 and 36, inclusive.

The application in \textbf{Fig. 29.17} demonstrates the constructor and several non-static methods of class \texttt{Character\charValue}, \texttt{toString} and \texttt{equals}. Lines 89 instantiate two \texttt{Character} objects and pass character literals to the constructor to initialize those objects. Line 12 uses \texttt{Character} method \texttt{charValue} to return the char value stored in \texttt{Character} object \texttt{c1}. Line 12 returns a string representation of \texttt{Character} object \texttt{c2} using method \texttt{toString}. The condition in the \texttt{if... else} statement at lines 1417 uses method \texttt{equals} to determine whether the object \texttt{c1} has the same contents as the object \texttt{c2} (i.e., the characters inside each object are equal).

**Figure 29.17. Character class non-static methods.**
(This item is displayed on page 1377 in the print version)
c1 = A
c2 = a

c1 and c2 are not equal
29.6. Class StringTokenizer

When you read a sentence, your mind breaks the sentence into tokens—individual words and punctuation marks, each of which conveys meaning to you. Compilers also perform tokenization. They break up statements into individual pieces like keywords, identifiers, operators and other elements of a programming language. In this section, we study Java's StringTokenizer class (from package java.util), which breaks a string into its component tokens. Tokens are separated from one another by delimiters, typically whitespace characters such as space, tab, newline and carriage return. Other characters can also be used as delimiters to separate tokens. The application in Fig. 29.18 demonstrates class StringTokenizer.

Figure 29.18. StringTokenizer object used to tokenize strings. (This item is displayed on page 1378 in the print version)

```java
// Fig. 29.18: TokenTest.java
// StringTokenizer class.
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.StringTokenizer;

public class TokenTest {
    // execute application
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        // get sentence
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner( System.in );
        System.out.println( "Enter a sentence and press Enter" );
        String sentence = scanner.nextLine();

        // process user sentence
        StringTokenizer tokens = new StringTokenizer( sentence );
        System.out.printf( "Number of elements: %d
The tokens are:
", tokens.countTokens() );
        while ( tokens.hasMoreTokens() )
            System.out.println( tokens.nextToken() );
    }
    // end main
}
// end class TokenTest
```
When the user presses the *Enter* key, the input sentence is stored in `String` variable `sentence`. Line 17 creates an instance of class `StringTokenizer` using `String` `sentence`. This `StringTokenizer` constructor takes a string argument and creates a `StringTokenizer` for it, and will use the default delimiter string `"\t\n\r\f"` consisting of a space, a tab, a carriage return and a newline for tokenization. There are two other constructors for class `StringTokenizer`. In the version that takes two `String` arguments, the second `String` is the delimiter string. In the version that takes three arguments, the second `String` is the delimiter string and the third argument (a `boolean`) determines whether the delimiters are also returned as tokens (only if the argument is `true`). This is useful if you need to know what the delimiters are.

Line 19 uses `StringTokenizer` method `countTokens` to determine the number of tokens in the string to be tokenized. The condition in the `while` statement at lines 2122 uses `StringTokenizer` method `hasMoreTokens` to determine whether there are more tokens in the string being tokenized. If so, line 22 prints the next token in the `String`. The next token is obtained with a call to `StringTokenizer` method `nextToken`, which returns a `String`. The token is output using `println`, so subsequent tokens appear on separate lines.

If you would like to change the delimiter string while tokenizing a string, you may do so by specifying a new delimiter string in a `nextToken` call as follows:

```java
tokens.nextToken( newDelimiterString );
```
This feature is not demonstrated in **Fig. 29.18**.
Regular expressions are sequences of characters and symbols that define a set of strings. They are useful for validating input and ensuring that data is in a particular format. For example, a ZIP code must consist of five digits, and a last name must contain only letters, spaces, apostrophes and hyphens. One application of regular expressions is to facilitate the construction of a compiler. Often, a large and complex regular expression is used to validate the syntax of a program. If the program code does not match the regular expression, the compiler knows that there is a syntax error within the code.

Class String provides several methods for performing regular-expression operations, the simplest of which is the matching operation. String method matches receives a string that specifies the regular expression and matches the contents of the String object on which it is called to the regular expression. The method returns a boolean indicating whether the match succeeded.

A regular expression consists of literal characters and special symbols. Figure 29.19 specifies some predefined character classes that can be used with regular expressions. A character class is an escape sequence that represents a group of characters. A digit is any numeric character. A word character is any letter (uppercase or lowercase), any digit or the underscore character. A whitespace character is a space, a tab, a carriage return, a newline or a form feed. Each character class matches a single character in the string we are attempting to match with the regular expression.

**Figure 29.19. Predefined character classes.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Matches</th>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Matches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\d</td>
<td>any digit</td>
<td>\D</td>
<td>any non-digit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\w</td>
<td>any word character</td>
<td>\W</td>
<td>any non-word character</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\s</td>
<td>any whitespace</td>
<td>\S</td>
<td>any non-whitespace</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Regular expressions are not limited to these predefined character classes. The expressions employ various operators and other forms of notation to match complex patterns. We examine several of these techniques in the application in Fig. 29.20 and Fig. 29.21 which validates user input via regular expressions. [Note: This application is not designed to match all possible valid user input.]

Figure 29.20. Validating user information using regular expressions.
(This item is displayed on page 1380 in the print version)
// validate phone
public static boolean validatePhone( String phone )
{
    return phone.matches( "[1-9]\d{2}-[1-9]\d{2}-\d{4}" );
} // end method validatePhone
} // end class ValidateInput

Figure 29.21. Inputs and validates data from user using the ValidateInput class.
(This item is displayed on pages 1381 - 1382 in the print version)
```java
else
    System.out.println("Valid input. Thank you.");
}
// end main
}
// end class Validate

Please enter first name: Jane
Please enter last name: Doe
Please enter address: 123 Some Street
Please enter city: Some City
Please enter state: SS
Please enter zip: 123
Please enter phone: 123-456-7890

Validate Result:
Invalid zip code

Please enter first name: Jane
Please enter last name: Doe
Please enter address: 123 Some Street
Please enter city: Some City
Please enter state: SS
Please enter zip: 12345
Please enter phone: 123-456-7890

Validate Result:
Valid input. Thank you.
Figure 29.20 validates user input. Line 9 validates the first name. To match a set of characters that does not have a predefined character class, use square brackets, [ ]. For example, the pattern "[aeiou]" matches a single character that is a vowel. Ranges of characters can be represented by placing a dash ( - ) between two characters. In the example, "[A-Z]" matches a single uppercase letter. If the first character in the brackets is "^", the expression accepts any character other than those indicated. However, it is important to note that "[^z]" is not the same as "[A-Y]", which matches uppercase letters AY "[^z]" matches any character other than capital Z, including lowercase letters and non-letters such as the newline character. Ranges in character classes are determined by the letters' integer values. In this example, "[A-Za-z]" matches all uppercase and lowercase letters. The range "[A-z]" matches all letters and also matches those characters (such as % and 6) with an integer value between uppercase Z and lowercase a (for more information on integer values of characters see Appendix B, ASCII Character Set). Like predefined character classes, character classes delimited by square brackets match a single character in the search object.

In line 9, the asterisk after the second character class indicates that any number of letters can be matched. In general, when the regular-expression operator "*" appears in a regular expression, the application attempts to match zero or more occurrences of the subexpression immediately preceding the "*". Operator "+" attempts to match one or ore occurrences of the subexpression immediately preceding "+". So both "A*" and "A+" will match "AAA", but only "A*" will match an empty string.

If method validateFirstName returns True (line 29), the application attempts to validate the last name (line 31) by calling validateLastName (lines 1316 of Fig. 29.20). The regular expression to validate the last name matches any number of letters split by spaces, apostrophes or hyphens.

Line 33 validates the address by calling method validateAddress (lines 1923 of Fig. 29.20). The first character class matches any digit one or more times
Note that two `\` characters are used because `\` normally starts an escape sequence in a string. So `\d` in a Java string represents the regular expression pattern `\d`. Then we match one or more whitespace characters (`\s+`). The character "|" allows a match of the expression to its left or to its right. For example, "Hi (John|Jane)" matches both "Hi John" and "Hi Jane". The parentheses are used to group parts of the regular expression. In this example, the left side of `|` matches a single word, and the right side matches two words separated by any amount of white space. So the address must contain a number followed by one or two words. Therefore, "10 Broadway" and "10 Main Street" are both valid addresses in this example. The city (line 2629 of Fig. 29.20) and state (line 3235 of Fig. 29.20) methods also match any word of at least one character or, alternatively, any two words of at least one character if the words are separated by a single space. This means both Waltham and West Newton would match.

The asterisk (*) and plus (+) are formally called quantifiers. Figure 29.22 lists all the quantifiers. We have already discussed how the asterisk (*) and plus (+) quantifiers work. All quantifiers affect only the subexpression immediately preceding the quantifier. Quantifier question mark (?) matches zero or one occurrences of the expression that it quantifies. A set of braces containing one number (`{n}`) matches exactly `n` occurrences of the expression it quantifies. We demonstrate this quantifier to validate the zip code in Fig. 29.20 at line 40. Including a comma after the number enclosed in braces matches at least `n` occurrences of the quantified expression. The set of braces containing two numbers (`{n, m}`), matches between `n` and `m` occurrences of the expression that it qualifies. Quantifiers may be applied to patterns enclosed in parentheses to create more complex regular expressions.

**Figure 29.22. Quantifiers used in regular expressions.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantifier</th>
<th>Matches</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>Matches zero or more occurrences of the pattern.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>Matches one or more occurrences of the pattern.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>Matches zero or one occurrences of the pattern.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>{ n }</code></td>
<td>Matches exactly <code>n</code> occurrences.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
All of the quantifiers are **greedy**. This means that they will match as many occurrences as they can as long as the match is still successful. However, if any of these quantifiers is followed by a question mark (\(?\)), the quantifier becomes **reluctant** (sometimes called **lazy**). It then will match as few occurrences as possible as long as the match is still successful.

The zip code (line 40 in **Fig. 29.20**) matches a digit five times. This regular expression uses the digit character class and a quantifier with the digit 5 between braces. The phone number (line 46 in **Fig. 29.20**) matches three digits (the first one cannot be zero) followed by a dash followed by three more digits (again the first one cannot be zero) followed by four more digits.

**String** Method **matches** checks whether an entire string conforms to a regular expression. For example, we want to accept "Smith" as a last name, but not "9@Smith#". If only a substring matches the regular expression, method **matches** returns **false**.

### Replacing Substrings and Splitting Strings

Sometimes it is useful to replace parts of a string or to split a string into pieces. For this purpose, class **String** provides methods **replaceAll**, **replaceFirst** and **split**. These methods are demonstrated in **Fig. 29.23**.

**Figure 29.23. Methods replaceFirst, replaceAll and split.**

(This item is displayed on pages 1384 - 1385 in the print version)
10 System.out.printf( "Original String 1: %s\n", firstString );
11
12 // replace '*' with '^'
13 firstString = firstString.replaceAll( "\*", "^" );
14
15 System.out.printf( "^ substituted for *: %s\n", firstString );
16
17 // replace 'stars' with 'carets'
18 firstString = firstString.replaceAll( "stars", "carets" );
19
20 System.out.printf( ""carets" substituted for "stars": %s\n", firstString );
21
22 // replace words with 'word'
23 System.out.printf( "Every word replaced by "word": %s\n", firstString.replaceAll( "\w+", "word" ) );
24
25 System.out.printf( "Original String 2: %s\n", secondString );
26
27 // replace first three digits with 'digit'
28 for ( int i = 0; i < 3; i++ )
29     secondString = secondString.replaceFirst( "\d", "digit" );
30
31 System.out.printf( "First 3 digits replaced by "digit" : %s\n", secondString );
32
33 String output = "String split at commas: [";
34
35 String[] results = secondString.split( ",\s*" ); // split on commas
36
37 for ( String string : results )
38     output += "\"" + string + "\", "; // output results
39
40 // remove the extra comma and add a bracket
41 output = output.substring( 0, output.length() - 2 ) + "]";
42 System.out.println( output );
43 } // end main
44 } // end class RegexSubstitution

Original String 1: This sentence ends in 5 stars *****
^ substituted for *: This sentence ends in 5 stars ^^^^^
"carets" substituted for "stars": This sentence ends in 5 carets ^^^^^
Every word replaced by "word": word word word word word word ^^^^^

Original String 2: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8
First 3 digits replaced by "digit" : digit, digit, digit, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8
String split at commas: ["digit", "digit", "digit", "4", "5", "6", "7", "8"]
Method `replaceAll` replaces text in a string with new text (the second argument) wherever the original string matches a regular expression (the first argument). Line 14 replaces every instance of `"*"` in `firstString` with `"^"`. Note that the regular expression ("\*\") precedes character `*` with two backslashes, \. Normally, `*` is a quantifier indicating that a regular expression should match any number of occurrences of a preceding pattern. However, in line 14, we want to find all occurrences of the literal character `*` to do this, we must escape character `*` with character \. By escaping a special regular-expression character with a \, we instruct the regular-expression matching engine to find the actual character, as opposed to what it represents in a regular expression. Since the expression is stored in a Java string and \ is a special character in Java strings, we must include an additional \. So the Java string "\*" represents the regular-expression pattern \ which matches a single `*` character in the search string. In line 19, every match for the regular expression "stars" in `firstString` is replaced with "carets".

Method `replaceFirst` (line 32) replaces the first occurrence of a pattern match. Java Strings are immutable, therefore method `replaceFirst` returns a new string in which the appropriate characters have been replaced. This line takes the original string and replaces it with the string returned by `replaceFirst`. By iterating three times we replace the first three instances of a digit (\d) in `secondString` with the text "digit".

Method `split` divides a string into several substrings. The original string is broken in any location that matches a specified regular expression. Method `split` returns an array of strings containing the substrings between matches for the regular expression. In line 38, we use method `split` to tokenize a string of comma-separated integers. The argument is the regular expression that locates the delimiter. In this case, we use the regular expression ",\s*" to separate the substrings wherever a comma occurs. By matching any whitespace characters, we eliminate extra spaces from the resulting substrings. Note that the commas and whitespace are not returned as part of the substrings. Again, note that the Java string ",\s*" represents the regular expression ,\s*.

Classes `Pattern` and `Matcher`
In addition to the regular-expression capabilities of class `String`, Java provides other classes in package `java.util.regex` that help developers manipulate regular expressions. Class `Pattern` represents a regular expression. Class `Matcher` contains both a regular-expression pattern and a `CharSequence` in which to search for the pattern.

`CharSequence` is an interface that allows read access to a sequence of characters. The interface requires that the methods `charAt`, `length`, `subSequence` and `toString` be declared. Both `String` and `StringBuffer` implement interface `CharSequence`, so an instance of either of these classes can be used with class `Matcher`.

**Common Programming Error 29.4**

A regular expression can be tested against an object of any class that implements interface `CharSequence`, but the regular expression must be a `String`. Attempting to create a regular expression as a `StringBuffer` is an error.

If a regular expression will be used only once, static `Pattern` method `matches` can be used. This method takes a string that specifies the regular expression and a `CharSequence` on which to perform the match. This method returns a `boolean` indicating whether the search object (the second argument) matches the regular expression.

If a regular expression will be used more than once, it is more efficient to use static `Pattern` method `compile` to create a specific `Pattern` object for that regular expression. This method receives a string representing the pattern and returns a new `Pattern` object, which can then be used to call method `matcher`. This method receives a `CharSequence` to search and returns a `Matcher` object.

`Matcher` provides method `matches`, which performs the same task as `Pattern` method `matches`, but receives no arguments—the search pattern and search object are encapsulated in the `Matcher` object. Class `Matcher` provides other methods, including `find`, `lookingAt`, `replaceFirst` and `replaceAll.`
**Figure 29.24** presents a simple example that employs regular expressions. This program matches birthdays against a regular expression. The expression only matches birthdays that do not occur in April and that belong to people whose names begin with "J".

Lines 11-12 create a Pattern by invoking static Pattern method compile. The dot character "." in the regular expression (line 12) matches any single character except a new-line character.

**Figure 29.24. Regular expressions checking birthdays.**

```java
// Fig. 29.24: RegexMatches.java
// Demonstrating Classes Pattern and Matcher.
import java.util.regex.Matcher;
import java.util.regex.Pattern;

public class RegexMatches {
    public static void main( String args[] ) {
        // create regular expression
        Pattern expression = Pattern.compile( "J.*\d{0-35-9}-\d\d-\d\d" );

        String string1 = "Jane's Birthday is 05-12-75
        Dave's Birthday is 11-04-68
        John's Birthday is 04-28-73
        Joe's Birthday is 12-17-77";

        // match regular expression to string and print matches
        Matcher matcher = expression.matcher( string1 );

        while ( matcher.find() )
            System.out.println( matcher.group() );
    } // end main
} // end class RegexMatches
```

Jane's Birthday is 05-12-75
Joe's Birthday is 12-17-77
Line 20 creates the `Matcher` object for the compiled regular expression and the matching sequence (`string1`). Lines 22-23 use a `while` loop to iterate through the string. Line 22 uses `Matcher` method `find` to attempt to match a piece of the search object to the search pattern. Each call to this method starts at the point where the last call ended, so multiple matches can be found. `Matcher` method `lookingAt` performs the same way, except that it always starts from the beginning of the search object and will always find the first match if there is one.

**Common Programming Error 29.5**

Method `matches` (from class `String, Pattern or Matcher`) will return `true` only if the entire search object matches the regular expression. Methods `find` and `lookingAt` (from class `Matcher`) will return `true` if a portion of the search object matches the regular expression.

Line 23 uses `Matcher` method `group`, which returns the string from the search object that matches the search pattern. The string that is returned is the one that was last matched by a call to `find` or `lookingAt`. The output in **Fig. 29.24** shows the two matches that were found in `string1`.

**Regular Expression Web Resources**

This section presents several of Java's regular-expression capabilities. The following Web sites provide more information on regular expressions.

- [developer.java.sun.com/developer/technicalArticles/releases/1.4regex](http://developer.java.sun.com/developer/technicalArticles/releases/1.4regex)
  Thoroughly describes Java's regular-expression capabilities.
- [java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/extra/regex/index.html](http://java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/extra/regex/index.html)
  This tutorial explains how to use Java's regular-expression API.
This page is the javadoc overview of package java.util.regex.
29.8. Wrap-Up

In this chapter, you learned about more `String` methods for selecting portions of strings and manipulating strings. You also learned about the `Character` class and some of the methods it declares to handle characters. The chapter also discussed the capabilities of the `StringBuffer` class for creating strings. The end of the chapter discussed regular expressions which provide a powerful capability to search and match portions of strings that fit a particular pattern.
Summary

- A character literal's value is its integer value in the Unicode character set. Strings can include letters, digits and special characters such as +, -, *, / and $. A string in Java is an object of class String. String literals are often referred to as String objects and are written in double quotes in a program.

- String objects are immutable: their character contents cannot be changed after they are created.

- String method length returns the number of characters in a String.

- String method charAt returns the character at a specific position.

- String method equals tests any two objects for equality. The method returns true if the contents of the Strings are equal, false otherwise. Method equals uses a lexicographical comparison for Strings.

- When primitive-type values are compared with ==, the result is true if both values are identical. When references are compared with ==, the result is true if both references refer to the same object in memory.

- Java treats all string literals with the same contents as a single String object.

- String method equalsIgnoreCase performs a case-insensitive string comparison.

- String method compareTo uses a lexicographical comparison and returns 0 if the strings it is comparing are equal, a negative number if the string compareTo is invoked on is less than the String that is passed as an argument and a positive number if the string that compareTo is invoked on is greater than the string that is passed as an argument.

- String method regionMatches compares portions of two strings for equality.
• **String** method `startsWith` determines whether a string starts with the characters specified as an argument. **String** method `endsWith` determines whether a string ends with the characters specified as an argument.

• **String** method `indexOf` locates the first occurrence of a character or a substring in a string. **String** method `lastIndexOf` locates the last occurrence of a character or a substring in a string.

• **String** method `substring` copies and returns part of an existing string object.

• **String** method `concat` concatenates two string objects and returns a new string object containing the characters from both original strings.

• **String** method `replace` returns a new string object that replaces every occurrence in a **String** of its first character argument with its second character argument.

• **String** method `toUpperCase` returns a new string with uppercase letters in the positions where the original string had lowercase letters. **String** method `toLowerCase` returns a new string with lowercase letters in the positions where the original **String** had uppercase letters.

• **String** method `trim` returns a new string object in which all whitespace characters (e.g., spaces, newlines and tabs) have been removed from the beginning and end of a string.

• **String** method `toCharArray` returns a char array containing a copy of the string's characters.

• **String** class static method `valueOf` returns its argument converted to a string.

• Class **StringBuffer** provides constructors that enable **StringBuffers** to be initialized with no characters and an initial capacity of 16 characters, with no characters and an initial capacity specified in the integer argument, or with a copy of the characters of the **String** argument and an initial capacity that is the number of characters in the **String** argument plus 16.

• **StringBuffer** method `length` returns the number of characters currently stored in a **StringBuffer**. **StringBuffer** method `capacity` returns the number of
characters that can be stored in a `StringBuffer` without allocating more memory.

- `StringBuffer` method `ensureCapacity` ensures that a `StringBuffer` has at least the specified capacity. `StringBuffer` method `setLength` increases or decreases the length of a `StringBuffer`.

- `StringBuffer` method `charAt` returns the character at the specified index. `StringBuffer` method `setCharAt` sets the character at the specified position. `StringBuffer` method `getChars` copies characters in the `StringBuffer` into the character array passed as an argument.

- Class `StringBuffer` provides overloaded append methods to add primitive-type, character array, `String`, `Object` and `CharSequence` values to the end of a `StringBuffer`. `StringBuffers` and the append methods are used by the Java compiler to implement the `+` and `+=` concatenation operators.

- Class `StringBuffer` provides overloaded `insert` methods to insert primitive-type, character array, `String`, `Object` and `CharSequence` values at any position in a `StringBuffer`.

- Class `Character` provides a constructor that takes a `char` argument.

[Page 1389]

- `Character` method `isDefined` determines whether a character is defined in the Unicode character set. If so, the method returns `true` otherwise, it returns `false`.

- `Character` method `isDigit` determines whether a character is a defined Unicode digit. If so, the method returns `true` otherwise, it returns `false`.

- `Character` method `isJavaIdentifierStart` determines whether a character can be used as the first character of an identifier in Java [i.e., a letter, an underscore `_` or a dollar sign `$`]. If so, the method returns `true` otherwise, it returns `false`.

- `Character` method `isJavaIdentifierPart` determines whether a character can be used in an identifier in Java [i.e., a digit, a letter, an underscore `_` or a dollar sign `$`]. Character method `isLetter` determines whether a
character is a letter. Character method isLetterOrDigit determines whether a character is a letter or a digit. In each case, if so, the method returns true otherwise, it returns false.

• Character method isLowerCase determines whether a character is a lowercase letter. Character method isUpperCase determines whether a character is an uppercase letter. In both cases, if so, the method returns true otherwise, false.

• Character method toUpperCase converts a character to its uppercase equivalent. Character method toLowerCase converts a character to its lowercase equivalent.

• Character method digit converts its character argument into an integer in the number system specified by its integer argument radix. Character method forDigit converts its integer argument digit into a character in the number system specified by its integer argument radix.

• Character method charValue returns the char stored in a Character object. Character method toString returns a String representation of a Character.

• StringTokenizer's default constructor creates a StringTokenizer for its string argument that will use the default delimiter string "\t\n\r\f", consisting of a space, a tab, a newline and a carriage return for tokenization.

• StringTokenizer method countTokens returns the number of tokens in a string to be tokenized.

• StringTokenizer method hasMoreTokens determines whether there are more tokens in the string being tokenized.

• StringTokenizer method nextToken returns a String with the next token.

• Regular expressions are sequences of characters and symbols that define a set of strings. They are useful for validating input and ensuring that data is in a particular format.

• String method matches receives a string that specifies the regular expression and matches the contents of the String object on which it is called to the regular expression. The method returns a boolean indicating whether the
A character class is an escape sequence that represents a group of characters. Each character class matches a single character in the string we are attempting to match with the regular expression.

A word character (\w) is any letter (uppercase or lowercase), any digit or the underscore character.

A whitespace character (\s) is a space, a tab, a carriage return, a newline or a form feed.

A digit (\d) is any numeric character.

To match a set of characters that does not have a predefined character class, use square brackets, [ ]. Ranges of characters can be represented by placing a dash (-) between two characters. If the first character in the brackets is "^", the expression accepts any character other than those indicated.

When the regular expression operator "*" appears in a regular expression, the program attempts to match zero or more occurrences of the subexpression immediately preceding the "*".

Operator "+" attempts to match one or more occurrences of the subexpression preceding it.

The character "|" allows a match of the expression to its left or to its right.

The parentheses () are used to group parts of the regular expression.

The asterisk (*) and plus (+) are formally called quantifiers.

All quantifiers affect only the subexpression immediately preceding the quantifier.

Quantifier question mark (?) matches zero or one occurrences of the expression that it quantifies.
A set of braces containing one number (\{n\}) matches exactly \(n\) occurrences of the expression it quantifies.

Including a comma after the number enclosed in braces matches at least \(n\) occurrences of the quantified expression.

A set of braces containing two numbers (\{n, m\}) matches between \(n\) and \(m\) occurrences of the expression that it qualifies.

All of the quantifiers are greedy, which means that they will match as many occurrences as they can as long as the match is successful.

If any of these quantifiers is followed by a question mark (\?), the quantifier becomes reluctant, matching as few occurrences as possible as long as the match is successful.

**string** method `replaceAll` replaces text in a string with new text (the second argument) wherever the original string matches a regular expression (the first argument).

Escaping a special regular-expression character with a `\` instructs the regular-expression matching engine to find the actual character, as opposed to what it represents in a regular expression.

**string** method `replaceFirst` replaces the first occurrence of a pattern match. Java Strings are immutable, therefore method `replaceFirst` returns a new string in which the appropriate characters have been replaced.

**string** method `split` divides a string into several substrings. The original string is broken in any location that matches a specified regular expression. Method `split` returns an array of strings containing the substrings between matches for the regular expression.

**Class** `Pattern` represents a regular expression.

**Class** `Matcher` contains both a regular-expression pattern and a `CharSequence` in which to search for the pattern.

`CharSequence` is an interface that allows read access to a sequence of characters. Both `String` and `StringBuffer` implement interface `CharSequence`, so
an instance of either of these classes can be used with class Matcher.

- If a regular expression will be used only once, static Pattern method matches takes a string that specifies the regular expression and a CharSequence on which to perform the match. This method returns a boolean indicating whether the search object matches the regular expression.

- If a regular expression will be used more than once, it is more efficient to use static Pattern method compile to create a specific Pattern object for that regular expression. This method receives a string representing the pattern and returns a new Pattern object.

- Pattern method matcher receives a CharSequence to search and returns a Matcher object.

- Matcher method matches performs the same task as Pattern method matches, but receives no arguments.

- Matcher method find attempts to match a piece of the search object to the search pattern. Each call to this method starts at the point where the last call ended, so multiple matches can be found.

- Matcher method lookingAt performs the same as find, except that it always starts from the beginning of the search object and will always find the first match if there is one.

- Matcher method group returns the string from the search object that matches the search pattern. The string that is returned is the one that was last matched by a call to find or lookingAt.
Terminology

append method of class StringBuffer

capacity method of class StringBuffer

character literal

charAt method of class StringBuffer

CharSequence interface

charValue method of class Character

concat method of class String

delete method of class StringBuffer

deleteCharAt method of class String

delimiter for tokens

digit method of class Character

empty string

endsWith method of class String

ensureCapacity method of class StringBuffer

find method of class Matcher

forDigit method of class Character

getChars method of class String
matcher method of class Pattern

matches method of class Matcher

matches method of class Pattern

matches method of class String

nextToken method of class StringTokenizer

Pattern class

predefined character class

quantifier for regular expression

radix

regionMatches method of class String

regular expressions

reluctant quantifier

replaceAll method of class String

replaceFirst method of class String

reverse method of class StringBuffer

setCharAt method of class StringBuffer

special character

split method of class String

startsWith method of class String

string literal
StringIndexOutOfBoundsException class

token of a String

toLowerCase method of class Character

toUpperCase method of class Character

trim method of class StringBuffer

Unicode character set

valueOf method of class String

word character
Self-Review Exercises

State whether each of the following is true or false. If false, explain why.

29.1 1. When String objects are compared using ==, the result is true if the Strings contain the same values.

2. A String can be modified after it is created.

For each of the following, write a single statement that performs the indicated task:

29.2 1. Compare the string in s1 to the string in s2 for equality of contents.

2. Append the string s2 to the string s1, using +=.

3. Determine the length of the string in s1.
1. False. String objects that are compared using operator `==` are compared to determine whether they are the same object in memory.

2. False. String objects are immutable and cannot be modified after they are created. StringBuffer objects can be modified after they are created.

1. \texttt{s1.equals(s2)}

2. \texttt{s1 += s2;}

3. \texttt{s1.length()}
Exercises

29.3 Write an application that uses `String` method `compareTo` to compare two strings input by the user. Output whether the first string is less than, equal to or greater than the second.

29.4 Write an application that uses `String` method `regionMatches` to compare two strings input by the user. The application should input the number of characters to be compared and the starting index of the comparison. The application should state whether the strings are equal. Ignore the case of the characters when performing the comparison.

29.5 Write an application that uses random-number generation to create sentences. Use four arrays of strings called `article`, `noun`, `verb` and `preposition`. Create a sentence by selecting a word at random from each array in the following order: `article`, `noun`, `verb`, `preposition`, `article` and `noun`. As each word is picked, concatenate it to the previous words in the sentence. The words should be separated by spaces. When the final sentence is output, it should start with a capital letter and end with a period. The application should generate 20 sentences and output them to a text area.

The article array should contain the articles "the", "a", "one", "some" and "any"; the noun array should contain the nouns "boy", "girl", "dog", "town" and "car"; the verb array should contain the verbs "drove", "jumped", "ran", "walked" and "skipped"; the preposition array should contain the prepositions "to", "from", "over", "under" and "on".

After the preceding application is written, modify it to produce a short story consisting of several of these sentences. (How about the possibility of a random term-paper writer?)

29.6 *(Limericks)* A limerick is a humorous five-line verse in which the first and second lines rhyme with the fifth, and the third line rhymes with the fourth. Using techniques similar to those developed in Exercise 29.5, write a Java application that produces random limericks. Polishing this application to produce good limericks is a challenging problem, but the result will be worth the effort!

29.7 *(Pig Latin)* Write an application that encodes English-language phrases into pig Latin. Pig Latin is a form of coded language. There are many different ways to form pig Latin phrases. For simplicity, use the following algorithm:

To form a pig Latin phrase from an English-language phrase, tokenize the phrase into words with an object of class `StringTokenizer`. To translate each English word into a pig Latin word, place the first letter of the English word at the end of the word and add the letters "ay." Thus, the word "jump" becomes "umpjay," the word "the" becomes "hetay," and the word "computer" becomes "omputercay." Blanks between words remain as blanks. Assume the following: The English phrase consists of words separated by blanks, there are no punctuation marks and all words have two or more letters. Method `printLatinWord` should display each word. Each token returned from `nextToken` is passed to method `printLatinWord` to print the pig Latin word. Enable the user to input the sentence. Keep a running display of all the converted sentences in a text area.

Write an application that inputs a telephone number as a string in the form `(555) 555-5555`. The application should use an object of class `StringTokenizer` to extract the area code as a token, the first three digits of the phone number as a token and the last four digits of the phone number as a token. The seven digits of the phone number should be concatenated into one string. Both the area code and the phone number should be printed. Remember that you will have to change delimiter characters during the tokenization process.
29.9 Write an application that inputs a line of text, tokenizes the line with an object of class `StringTokenizer` and outputs the tokens in reverse order. Use space characters as delimiters.

Use the string-comparison methods discussed in this chapter and the techniques for sorting arrays developed in Chapter 16 to write an application that alphabetizes a list of strings. Allow the user to enter the strings in a text field. Display the results in a text area.

29.11 Write an application that inputs a line of text and outputs the text twice once in all uppercase letters and once in all lowercase letters.

29.12 Write an application that inputs a line of text and a search character and uses `String` method `indexOf` to determine the number of occurrences of the character in the text.

Write an application based on the application in Exercise 29.12 that inputs a line of text and uses `String` method `indexOf` to determine the total number of occurrences of each letter of the alphabet in the text. Uppercase and lowercase letters should be counted together. Store the totals for each letter in an array, and print the values in tabular format after the totals have been determined.

29.14 Write an application that reads a line of text, tokenizes the line using space characters as delimiters and outputs only those words beginning with the letter "b".

29.15 Write an application that reads a line of text, tokenizes it using space characters as delimiters and outputs only those words ending with the letters "ED".

Write an application that inputs an integer code for a character and displays the corresponding character. Modify this application so that it generates all possible three-digit codes in the range from 000 to 255 and attempts to print the corresponding characters.

29.17 Write your own versions of `String` search methods `indexOf` and `lastIndexOf`.

Write an application that reads a five-letter word from the user and produces every possible three-letter string that can be derived from the letters of the five-letter word. For example, the three-letter words produced from the word "bathe" include "ate," "bat," "bet," "tab," "hat," "the" and "tea."
Special Section: Advanced String-Manipulation Exercises

The preceding exercises are keyed to the text and designed to test your understanding of fundamental string-manipulation concepts. This section includes a collection of intermediate and advanced string-manipulation exercises. You should find these problems challenging, yet entertaining. The problems vary considerably in difficulty. Some require an hour or two of application writing and implementation. Others are useful for lab assignments that might require two or three weeks of study and implementation. Some are challenging term projects.

(Text Analysis) The availability of computers with string-manipulation capabilities has resulted in some rather interesting approaches to analyzing the writings of great authors. Much attention has been focused on whether William Shakespeare ever lived. Some scholars believe there is substantial evidence indicating that Christopher Marlowe actually penned the masterpieces attributed to Shakespeare. Researchers have used computers to find similarities in the writings of these two authors. This exercise examines three methods for analyzing texts with a computer.

1. Write an application that reads a line of text from the keyboard and prints a table indicating the number of occurrences of each letter of the alphabet in the text. For example, the phrase
   
   To be, or not to be: that is the question:
   
   contains one "a," two "b's," no "c's," and so on.

2. Write an application that reads a line of text and prints a table indicating the number of one-letter words, two-letter words, three-letter words, and so on, appearing in the text. For example, Fig. 29.25 shows the counts for the phrase

   **Figure 29.25. Word-length counts for the string "Whether 'tis nobler in the mind to suffer".**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word length</th>
<th>Occurrences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29.19
3. Write an application that reads a line of text and prints a table indicating the number of occurrences of each different word in the text. The first version of your application should include the words in the table in the same order in which they appear in the text. For example, the lines

```
To be, or not to be: that is the question:
Whether 'tis nobler in the mind to suffer
```

contain the word "to" three times, the word "be" two times, the word "or" once, and so on. A more interesting (and useful) printout should then be attempted in which the words are sorted alphabetically.

(Printing Dates in Various Formats) Dates are printed in several common formats. Two of the more common formats are

```
04/25/1955 and April 25, 1955
```

Write an application that reads a date in the first format and prints it in the second format.

(Check Protection) Computers are frequently employed in check-writing systems, such as payroll and accounts payable applications. There are many strange stories about weekly paychecks being printed (by mistake) for amounts in excess of $1 million. Incorrect amounts are printed by computerized check-writing systems because of human error or machine failure. Systems designers build controls into their systems to prevent such erroneous checks from being issued.

Another serious problem is the intentional alteration of a check amount by someone who plans to cash a check fraudulently. To prevent a dollar amount from being altered, some computerized check-writing systems employ a technique called check protection. Checks designed for imprinting by computer contain a fixed number of spaces in which the computer may print an amount. Suppose a paycheck contains eight blank spaces in which the computer is supposed to print the amount of a weekly paycheck. If the amount is large, then all eight of the spaces will be filled. For example,
29.21
On the other hand, if the amount is less than $1000, then several of the spaces would ordinarily be left blank. For example,

\[
\begin{align*}
99.87 \\
------ \\
12345678
\end{align*}
\]

contains three blank spaces. If a check is printed with blank spaces, it is easier for someone to alter the amount of the check. To prevent a check from being altered, many check-writing systems insert *leading asterisks* to protect the amount as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
***99.87 \\
------ \\
12345678
\end{align*}
\]

Write an application that inputs a dollar amount to be printed on a check, then prints the amount in check-protected format with leading asterisks if necessary. Assume that nine spaces are available for printing the amount.

*(Writing the Word Equivalent of a Check Amount)* Continuing the discussion in Exercise 29.21, we reiterate the importance of designing check-writing systems to prevent alteration of check amounts. One common security method requires that the check amount be written in numbers and spelled out in words as well. Even if someone is able to alter the numerical amount of the check, it is extremely difficult to change the amount in words. Write an application that inputs a numeric check amount and writes the word equivalent of the amount. For example, the amount 112.43 should be written as

ONE hundred TWELVE and 43/100

*(Morse Code)* Perhaps the most famous of all coding schemes is the Morse code, developed by Samuel Morse in 1832 for use with the telegraph system. The Morse code assigns a series of dots and dashes to each letter of the alphabet, each digit, and a few special characters (e.g., period, comma, colon, semicolon). In sound-oriented systems, the dot represents a short sound and the dash represents a long sound. Other representations of dots and dashes are used with light-oriented systems and signal-flag systems. Separation between words is indicated by a space or, simply, the absence of a dot or dash. In a sound-oriented system, a space is indicated by a short time during which no sound is transmitted. The international version of the Morse code appears in Fig. 29.26.

**Figure 29.26. The letters of the alphabet as expressed in international Morse code.**

(This item is displayed on page 1396 in the print version)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Character</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>-.</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>-...</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>..-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Write an application that reads an English-language phrase and encodes it into Morse code. Also write an application that reads a phrase in Morse code and converts it into the English-language equivalent. Use one blank between each Morse-coded letter and three blanks between each Morse-coded word.

*(Metric Conversion Application)* Write an application that will assist the user with metric conversions. Your application should allow the user to specify the names of the units as strings (i.e., centimeters, liters, grams, etc., for the metric system and inches, quarts, pounds, etc., for the English system) and should respond to simple questions, such as

"How many inches are in 2 meters?"
"How many liters are in 10 quarts?"
Your application should recognize invalid conversions. For example, the question

"How many feet are in 5 kilograms?"

is not meaningful because "feet" is a unit of length, whereas "kilograms" is a unit of mass.
(Project: A Spelling Checker) Many popular word-processing software packages have built-in spell checkers. In this project, you are asked to develop your own spell-checker utility. We make suggestions to help get you started. You should then consider adding more capabilities. Use a computerized dictionary (if you have access to one) as a source of words.

Why do we type so many words with incorrect spellings? In some cases, it is because we simply do not know the correct spelling, so we make a best guess. In some cases, it is because we transpose two letters (e.g., "defualt" instead of "default"). Sometimes we double-type a letter accidentally (e.g., "hanndy" instead of "handy"). Sometimes we type a nearby key instead of the one we intended (e.g., "biryhday" instead of "birthday"), and so on.

Design and implement a spell-checker application in Java. Your application should maintain an array `wordList` of strings. Enable the user to enter these strings. [Note: In Chapter 14, we have introduced file processing. With this capability, you can obtain the words for the spell checker from a computerized dictionary stored in a file.]

Your application should ask a user to enter a word. The application should then look up that word in the `wordList` array. If the word is in the array, your application should print "Word is spelled correctly." If the word is not in the array, your application should print "word is not spelled correctly." Then your application should try to locate other words in `wordList` that might be the word the user intended to type. For example, you can try all possible single transpositions of adjacent letters to discover that the word "default" is a direct match to a word in `wordList`. Of course, this implies that your application will check all other single transpositions, such as "edfault," "dfeault," "deafult," "defalut" and "defautl." When you find a new word that matches one in `wordList`, print it in a message, such as

Did you mean "default"?

Implement other tests, such as replacing each double letter with a single letter, and any other tests you can develop to improve the value of your spell checker.

(Project: A Crossword Puzzle Generator) Most people have worked a crossword puzzle, but few have ever attempted to generate one. Generating a crossword puzzle is suggested here as a string-manipulation project requiring substantial sophistication and effort.

There are many issues the programmer must resolve to get even the simplest crossword-puzzle-generator application working. For example, how do you represent the grid of a crossword puzzle inside the computer? Should you use a series of strings or two-dimensional arrays?

The programmer needs a source of words (i.e., a computerized dictionary) that can be directly referenced by the application. In what form should these words be stored to facilitate the complex manipulations required by the application?

If you are really ambitious, you will want to generate the clues portion of the puzzle, in which the brief hints for each across word and each down word are printed. Merely printing a version of the blank puzzle itself is not a simple problem.
Section A.1. Operator Precedence
## A.1. Operator Precedence

Operators are shown in decreasing order of precedence from top to bottom (Fig. A.1).

**Figure A.1. Operator precedence chart.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operator</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Associativity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>++</td>
<td>unary postfix increment</td>
<td>right to left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--</td>
<td>unary postfix decrement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>++</td>
<td>unary prefix increment</td>
<td>right to left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--</td>
<td>unary prefix decrement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>unary plus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>unary minus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
<td>unary logical negation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~</td>
<td>unary bitwise complement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( type )</td>
<td>unary cast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*</td>
<td>multiplication</td>
<td>left to right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/</td>
<td>division</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>remainder</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>addition or string concatenation</td>
<td>left to right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>subtraction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;&lt;</td>
<td>left shift</td>
<td>left to right</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
signed right shift

unsigned right shift

less than

less than or equal to

greater than

greater than or equal to

instanceof
type comparison

is equal to

is not equal to

bitwise AND

boolean logical AND

bitwise exclusive OR

boolean logical exclusive OR

bitwise inclusive OR

boolean logical inclusive OR

conditional AND

conditional OR

conditional

assignment

addition assignment

subtraction assignment

multiplication assignment

division assignment
remainder assignment

bitwise AND assignment

bitwise exclusive OR assignment

bitwise inclusive OR assignment

bitwise left shift assignment

bitwise signed-right-shift assignment

bitwise unsigned-right-shift assignment
The digits at the left of the table are the left digits of the decimal equivalent (0127) of the character code, and the digits at the top of the table are the right digits of the character code. For example, the character code for "F" is 70, and the character code for "&" is 38.

Most users of this book are interested in the ASCII character set used to represent English characters on many computers. The ASCII character set is a subset of the Unicode character set used by Java to represent characters from most of the world's languages. For more information on the Unicode character set, see Appendix F.
## Appendix C. Keywords and Reserved Words

### Figure C.1. Java keywords.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Java Keywords</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abstract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>byte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>char</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>double</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>else</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>implements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>import</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instanceof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>native</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>package</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>static</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strictfp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>super</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>switch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>synchronized</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>void</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volatile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>while</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>const</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Keywords that are not currently used

Java also contains the reserved words `true` and `false`, which are boolean literals, and `null`, which is the literal that represents a reference to nothing. Like keywords, these reserved words cannot be used as identifiers.
## Appendix D. Primitive Types

### Figure D.1. Java primitive types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Size in bits</th>
<th>Values</th>
<th>Standard</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>boolean</td>
<td></td>
<td>true or false</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: A boolean's representation is specific to the Java Virtual Machine on each platform.*

| char   | 16           | 'u0000' to 'uFFFF' (0 to 65535)              | (ISO Unicode character set) |

| byte   | 8            | 128 to +127 (2^7 to 2^7 1)                  |                        |

| short  | 16           | 32,768 to +32,767 (2^{15} to 2^{15} 1)      |                        |

| int    | 32           | 2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647 (2^{31} to 2^{31} 1) |                        |

| long   | 64           | 9,223,372,036,854,775,808 to +9,223,372,036,854,775,807 (2^{63} to 2^{63} 1) |                        |

**Negative range:**
- 3.4028234663852886E+38 to 1.40129846432481707e45
- 1.40129846432481707e45 to 3.4028234663852886E+38

**Positive range:**
- 1.7976931348623157E+308 to 4.94065645841246544e324
- 4.94065645841246544e324 to 1.7976931348623157E+308

For more information on IEEE 754 visit grouper.ieee.org/groups/754/. For more information on Unicode, see Appendix F, Unicode®.
Here are only numbers ratified.

William Shakespeare

Nature has some sort of arithmetic-geometrical coordinate system, because nature has all kinds of models. What we experience of nature is in models, and all of nature's models are so beautiful.

It struck me that nature's system must be a real beauty, because in chemistry we find that the associations are always in beautiful whole numbersthere are no fractions.

Richard Buckminster Fuller

Appendix E (pages 14031415) is located on the CD that accompanies this book in printable Adobe Acrobat PDF format. You can download Adobe Reader from

www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

In the index, page references for all the CD appendices appear in red. Defining occurrences of terms in the CD appendices appear in **bold red.**]
Appendix F. (On CD) Unicode®

Appendix F (pages 1416-1426) is located on the CD that accompanies this book in printable Adobe® Acrobat PDF format. You can download Adobe® Reader® from 

www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

In the index, page references for all the CD appendices appear in red. Defining occurrences of terms in the CD appendices appear in **bold red.**
Appendix G. Using the Java API Documentation

Section G.1. Introduction

Section G.2. Navigating the Java API
G.1. Introduction

The Java class library contains thousands of predefined classes and interfaces that programmers can use to write their own applications. These classes are grouped into packages based on their functionality. For example, the classes and interfaces used for file processing are grouped into the `java.io` package, and the classes and interfaces for networking applications are grouped into the `java.net` package. The Java API documentation lists the public and protected members of each class and the public members of each interface in the Java class library. The documentation overviews all the classes and interfaces, summarizes their members (i.e., the fields, constructors and methods of classes, and the fields and methods of interfaces) and provides detailed descriptions of each member. Most Java programmers rely on this documentation when writing programs. Normally, programmers would search the API to find the following:

1. The package that contains a particular class or interface.
2. Relationships between a particular class or interface and other classes and interfaces.
3. Class or interface constants normally declared as `public static final` fields.
4. Constructors to determine how an object of the class can be initialized.
5. The methods of a class to determine whether they are `static` or `non-static`, the number and types of the arguments you need to pass, the return types and any exceptions that might be thrown from the method.

In addition, programmers often rely on the documentation to discover classes and interfaces that they have not used before. For this reason, we demonstrate the documentation with classes you know and classes you may not have studied yet. We show how to use the documentation to locate the information you need to use a class or interface effectively.

[Note: Sun Microsystems has renamed the Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition version 1.5.0 to Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition version 5.0. However, they decided not to replace the occurrences of 1.5.0 with 5.0 in the documentation. Although the URLs that represent the documentation on Sun's Java Web site work with 5.0 in the URL, these URLs are redirected to ones that replace the 5.0 with 1.5.0. For this reason, all URLs in this appendix are listed with 1.5.0]
G.2. Navigating the Java API

The Java API documentation can be downloaded to your local hard disk or viewed on line. To download the Java API documentation, go to java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/download.jsp and locate the DOWNLOAD link in the J2SE v 1.5.0 Documentation section. You will be asked to accept a license agreement. To do this, click Accept, then click Continue. Click the Java(TM) 2 SDK, Standard Edition Documentation 1.5.0, English link to begin the download. After downloading the file, you can use a ZIP file-extraction program, such as WinZip (www.winzip.com), to extract the files. If you are using Windows, extract the contents to your jdk1.5.0 directory or the directory where you installed Java. (See the Before You Begin section of this book for information on installing Java.) To view the API documentation on your local hard disk in Microsoft Windows, open C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.5.0\docs\api\index.html page in your browser. To view the API documentation on line, go to java.sun.com/j2se/1.5.0/docs/api/index.html (Fig. G.1).

Figure G.1. Java API overview. (Courtesy of Sun Microsystems, Inc.)
Frames in the API Documentation's index.html Page

The API documentation is divided into three frames (see Fig. G.1). The upper-left frame lists all of the Java API's packages in alphabetical order. The lower-left frame initially lists the Java API's classes and interfaces in alphabetical order. Interface names are displayed in italic. When you click a specific package in the upper-left frame, the lower-left frame lists the classes and interfaces of the selected package. The right frame initially provides a brief description of each package of the Java API specification; read this overview to become familiar with the general capabilities of the Java APIs. If you select a class or interface in the lower-left frame, the right frame displays information about that class or interface.

Important Links in the index.html Page

At the top of the right frame (Fig. G.1), there are four links: **Tree**, **Deprecated**, **Index**, and **Help**. The **Tree** link displays the hierarchy of all packages and classes. The **Deprecated** link lists portions of the API that should no longer be used. The **Index** link lists fields, methods, classes, and interfaces. The **Help** link describes how the API is organized.
Index and Help. The Tree link displays the hierarchy of all packages, classes, and interfaces in a tree structure. The Deprecated link displays interfaces, classes, exceptions, fields, constructors and methods that should no longer be used. The Index link displays classes, interfaces, fields, constructors and methods in alphabetical order. The Help link describes how the API documentation is organized. You should probably begin by reading the Help page.

Viewing the Index Page

If you do not know the name of the class you are looking for, but you do know the name of a method or field, you can use the documentation's index to locate the class. The Index link is located near the upper-right corner of the right frame. The index page (Fig. G.2) displays fields, constructors, methods, interfaces and classes in alphabetical order. For example, if you are looking for Scanner method hasNextInt, but do not know the class name, you can click the H link to go to the alphabetical listing of all items in the Java API that begin with "h". Scroll to method hasNextInt (Fig. G.3). Once there, each method named hasNextInt is listed with the package name and class to which the method belongs. From there, you can click the class name to view the class's complete details, or you can click the method name to view the method's details.
Figure G.3. Scroll to method `hasNextInt`. (Courtesy of Sun Microsystems, Inc.)
Viewing a Specific Package

When you click the package name in the upper-left frame, all classes and interfaces from that package are displayed in the lower-left frame and are divided into five subsections: Interfaces, Classes, Enums, Exceptions and Errors each listed alphabetically. For example, when you click `javax.swing` in the upper-left frame, the contents of package `javax.swing` are displayed in the lower-left frame (Fig. G.4). You can click the package name in the lower-left frame to get an overview of the package. If you think that a package contains several classes that could be useful in your application, the package overview can be especially helpful.

Figure G.4. Clicking a package name in the upper-left frame to view all classes and interfaces declared in this package.
(Courtesy of Sun Microsystems, Inc.)
(This item is displayed on page 1431 in the print version)
Viewing the Details of a Class

When you click a class name or interface name in the lower-left frame, the right frame displays the details of that class or interface. First you will see the class's package name followed by a hierarchy that shows the class's relationship to other classes. You will also see a list of the interfaces implemented by the class and the class's known subclasses. Figure G.5 shows the beginning of the documentation page for class JButton from the javax.swing package. The page first shows the package name in which the class appears. This is followed by the class hierarchy that leads to class JButton, the interfaces class JButton implements and the subclasses of class JButton. The bottom of the right frame shows the beginning of class JButton's description. Note that when you look at the documentation for an interface, the right frame does not display a hierarchy for that interface. Instead, the right frame lists the interface's superinterfaces, known subinterfaces and known implementing classes.

[Page 1431]

Figure G.5. Clicking a class name to view detailed information about the class. (Courtesy of Sun Microsystems, Inc.)
(This item is displayed on page 1432 in the print version)
Summary Sections in a Class’s Documentation Page

Other parts of each API page are listed below. Each part is presented only if the class contains or inherits the items specified. Class members shown in the summary sections are public unless they are explicitly marked as protected. A class’s private members are not shown in the documentation, because they cannot be used directly in your programs.

1. The **Nested Class Summary** section summarizes the class’s public and protected nested classes—i.e., classes that are defined inside the class. Unless explicitly specified, these classes are public and non-static.

2. The **Field Summary** section summarizes the class’s public and protected fields. Unless explicitly specified, these fields are public and non-static. Figure G.6 shows the Field Summary section of class Color.
The **Constructor Summary** section summarizes the class's constructors. Constructors are not inherited, so this section appears in the documentation for a class only if the class declares one or more constructors. **Figure G.7** shows the **Constructor Summary** section of class **JButton**.

**Figure G.7. Constructor Summary section of class JButton.**  
(Courtesy of Sun Microsystems, Inc.)  
(This item is displayed on page 1433 in the print version)
4. The **Method Summary** section summarizes the class's public and protected methods. Unless explicitly specified, these methods are public and non-static. **Figure G.8** shows the **Method Summary** section of class **BufferedInputStream**.

**Figure G.8. Method Summary section of class BufferedInputStream.** *(Courtesy of Sun Microsystems, Inc.)*

(This item is displayed on page 1434 in the print version)

Note that the summary sections typically provide only a one-sentence description of a class member. Additional details are presented in the detail sections discussed next.
After the summary sections are detail sections that normally provide more discussion of particular class members. There is not a detail section for nested classes. When you click the link in the Nested Class Summary for a particular nested class, a documentation page describing that nested class is displayed. The detail sections are described below.

1. The **Field Detail** section provides the declaration of each field. It also discusses each field, including the field's modifiers and meaning. Figure G.9 shows the Field Detail section of class **Color**.

   ![Figure G.9. Field Detail section of class Color](http://java.sun.com/docs/api/index.html)

   (This item is displayed on page 1435 in the print version)

2. The **Constructor Detail** section provides the first line of each constructor's declaration and discusses the constructors. The discussion includes the modifiers of each constructor, a description of each constructor, each constructor's parameters and any exceptions thrown by each constructor. Figure G.10 shows the Constructor Detail section of class **JButton**.

   ![Figure G.10. Constructor Detail section of class JButton](http://java.sun.com/docs/api/index.html)

   (This item is displayed on page 1435 in the print version)
3. The **Method Detail** section provides the first line of each method. The discussion of each method includes its modifiers, a more complete method description, the method's parameters, the method's return type and any exceptions thrown by the method. *Figure G.11* shows the **Method Detail** section of class `BufferedInputStream`. The method details show you other methods that might be of interest (labeled as **See Also**). If the method overrides a method of the superclass, the name of the superclass method and the name of the superclass are provided so you can link to the method or superclass for more information.

**Figure G.11. Method Detail section of class `BufferedInputStream`.**
*(Courtesy of Sun Microsystems, Inc.)*
*(This item is displayed on page 1436 in the print version)*

[View full size image]
As you look through the documentation, you will notice that there are often links to other fields, methods, nested-classes and top-level classes. These links enable you to jump from the class you are looking at to another relevant portion of the documentation.
Appendix H. (On CD) Creating Documentation with javadoc

Appendix H (pages 14371448) is located on the CD that accompanies this book in printable Adobe® Acrobat PDF format. You can download Adobe® Reader® from

www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

In the index, page references for all the CD appendices appear in red. Defining occurrences of terms in the CD appendices appear in **bold red.**]
Appendix I. (On CD) Bit Manipulation

Appendix I (pages 1449-1463) is located on the CD that accompanies this book in printable Adobe® Acrobat PDF format. You can download Adobe® Reader® from

www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

In the index, page references for all the CD appendices appear in red. Defining occurrences of terms in the CD appendices appear in bold red.]
Appendix J. (On CD) ATM Case Study Code

Appendix J (pages 14641488) is located on the CD that accompanies this book in printable Adobe® Acrobat PDF format. You can download Adobe® Reader® from

www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

In the index, page references for all the CD appendices appear in red. Defining occurrences of terms in the CD appendices appear in **bold red**.]
Appendix K. (On CD) Labeled break and continue Statements

Appendix K (pages 1489-1491) is located on the CD that accompanies this book in printable Adobe® Acrobat PDF format. You can download Adobe® Reader® from

www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

In the index, page references for all the CD appendices appear in red. Defining occurrences of terms in the CD appendices appear in bold red.}
Appendix L (On CD) UML 2: Additional Diagram Types

Appendix L (pages 1492-1493) is located on the CD that accompanies this book in printable Adobe® Acrobat PDF format. You can download Adobe® Reader® from

www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

In the index, page references for all the CD appendices appear in red. Defining occurrences of terms in the CD appendices appear in **bold red.**
Appendix M (On CD) Design Patterns

Appendix M (pages 14941514) is located on the CD that accompanies this book in printable Adobe® Acrobat PDF format. You can download Adobe® Reader® from

www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

In the index, page references for all the CD appendices appear in red. Defining occurrences of terms in the CD appendices appear in **bold red.**]
Appendix N. Using the Debugger

And so shall I catch the fly.
William Shakespeare

We are built to make mistakes, coded for error.
Lewis Thomas

What we anticipate seldom occurs; what we least expect generally happens.
Bejamin Disraeli

He can run but he can't hide.
Joe Louis

It is one thing to show a man that he is in error, and another to put him in possession of truth.
John Locke

Appendix N (pages 15151531) is located on the CD that accompanies this book in printable Adobe® Acrobat PDF format. You can download Adobe® Reader® from www.adobe.com/products/acrobat/readstep2.html

In the index, page references for all the CD appendices appear in red. Defining occurrences of terms in the CD appendices appear in **bold red**.]
End User License Agreements

Prentice Hall License Agreement and Limited Warranty

Apache Tomcat License Agreement

JCreator™ License Agreement

jEdit License Agreement

jGRASP™ License Agreement

NetBeans™ License Agreement

MySQL® Open Source License
Prentice Hall License Agreement and Limited Warranty

READ THE FOLLOWING TERMS AND CONDITIONS CAREFULLY BEFORE OPENING THIS SOFTWARE PACKAGE. THIS LEGAL DOCUMENT IS AN AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU AND PRENTICE-HALL, INC. (THE "COMPANY"). BY OPENING THIS SEALED SOFTWARE PACKAGE, YOU ARE AGREEING TO BE BOUND BY THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS, DO NOT OPEN THE SOFTWARE PACKAGE. PROMPTLY RETURN THE UNOPENED SOFTWARE PACKAGE AND ALL ACCOMPANYING ITEMS TO THE PLACE YOU OBTAINED THEM FOR A FULL REFUND OF ANY SUMS YOU HAVE PAID.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE: In consideration of your purchase of this book, and your agreement to abide by the terms and conditions of this Agreement, the Company grants to you a nonexclusive right to use and display the copy of the enclosed software program (hereinafter the "SOFTWARE") on a single computer (i.e., with a single CPU) at a single location so long as you comply with the terms of this Agreement. The Company reserves all rights not expressly granted to you under this Agreement.

2. OWNERSHIP OF SOFTWARE: You own only the magnetic or physical media (the enclosed media) on which the SOFTWARE is recorded or fixed, but the Company and the software developers retain all the rights, title, and ownership to the SOFTWARE recorded on the original media copy(ies) and all subsequent copies of the SOFTWARE, regardless of the form or media on which the original or other copies may exist. This license is not a sale of the original SOFTWARE or any copy to you.

3. COPY RESTRICTIONS: This SOFTWARE and the accompanying printed materials and user manual (the "Documentation") are the subject of copyright. The individual programs on the media are copyrighted by the authors of each program. Some of the programs on the media include separate licensing agreements. If you intend to use one of these programs, you must read and follow its accompanying license agreement. You may not copy the Documentation or the SOFTWARE, except that you may make a single copy of the SOFTWARE for backup or archival purposes only. You may be held legally responsible for any copying or copyright infringement which is caused or encouraged by your failure to abide by the terms of this restriction.

4. USE RESTRICTIONS: You may not network the SOFTWARE or otherwise use it on more than one computer or computer terminal at the same time. You
may physically transfer the SOFTWARE from one computer to another provided that the SOFTWARE is used on only one computer at a time. You may not distribute copies of the SOFTWARE or Documentation to others. You may not reverse engineer, disassemble, decompile, modify, adapt, translate, or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE or the Documentation without the prior written consent of the Company.

5. TRANSFER RESTRICTIONS: The enclosed SOFTWARE is licensed only to you and may not be transferred to any one else without the prior written consent of the Company. Any unauthorized transfer of the SOFTWARE shall result in the immediate termination of this Agreement.

6. TERMINATION: This license is effective until terminated. This license will terminate automatically without notice from the Company and become null and void if you fail to comply with any provisions or limitations of this license. Upon termination, you shall destroy the Documentation and all copies of the SOFTWARE. All provisions of this Agreement as to warranties, limitation of liability, remedies or damages, and our ownership rights shall survive termination.

7. MISCELLANEOUS: This Agreement shall be construed in accordance with the laws of the United States of America and the State of New York and shall benefit the Company, its affiliates, and assignees.

8. LIMITED WARRANTY AND DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: The Company warrants that the SOFTWARE, when properly used in accordance with the Documentation, will operate in substantial conformity with the description of the SOFTWARE set forth in the Documentation. The Company does not warrant that the SOFTWARE will meet your requirements or that the operation of the SOFTWARE will be uninterrupted or error-free. The Company warrants that the media on which the SOFTWARE is delivered shall be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use for a period of thirty (30) days from the date of your purchase. Your only remedy and the Company's only obligation under these limited warranties is, at the Company's option, return of the warranted item for a refund of any amounts paid by you or replacement of the item. Any replacement of SOFTWARE or media under the warranties shall not extend the original warranty period. The limited warranty set forth above shall not apply to any SOFTWARE which the Company determines in good faith has been subject to misuse, neglect, improper installation, repair, alteration, or damage by you. EXCEPT FOR THE EXPRESSED WARRANTIES SET FORTH ABOVE, THE COMPANY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. EXCEPT FOR THE EXPRESS WARRANTY SET FORTH
IN NO EVENT, SHALL THE COMPANY OR ITS EMPLOYEES, AGENTS, SUPPLIERS, OR CONTRACTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE LICENSE GRANTED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, OR FOR LOSS OF USE, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF INCOME OR PROFIT, OR OTHER LOSSES, SUSTAINED AS A RESULT OF INJURY TO ANY PERSON, OR LOSS OF OR DAMAGE TO PROPERTY, OR CLAIMS OF THIRD PARTIES, EVEN IF THE COMPANY OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE OF THE COMPANY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN NO EVENT SHALL LIABILITY OF THE COMPANY FOR DAMAGES WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE EXCEED THE AMOUNTS ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU, IF ANY, FOR THE SOFTWARE.

SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE LIMITATION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS MAY NOT ALWAYS APPLY. THE WARRANTIES IN THIS AGREEMENT GIVE YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS AND YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS WHICH VARY IN ACCORDANCE WITH LOCAL LAW.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

YOU ACKNOWLEDGE THAT YOU HAVE READ THIS AGREEMENT, UNDERSTAND IT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY ITS TERMS AND CONDITIONS. YOU ALSO AGREE THAT THIS AGREEMENT IS THE COMPLETE AND EXCLUSIVE STATEMENT OF THE AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU AND THE COMPANY AND SUPERSEDES ALL PROPOSALS OR PRIOR AGREEMENTS, ORAL, OR WRITTEN, AND ANY OTHER COMMUNICATIONS BETWEEN YOU AND THE COMPANY OR ANY REPRESENTATIVE OF THE COMPANY RELATING TO THE SUBJECT MATTER OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Should you have any questions concerning this Agreement or if you wish to contact the Company for any reason, please contact in writing at the address below.
Apache Tomcat License Agreement

Version 2.0, January 2004

http://www.apache.org/licenses/

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

1. Definitions.

"License" shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.

"Licensor" shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.

"Legal Entity" shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50%) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.

"You" (or "Your") shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.

"Source" form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.

"Object" form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.

"Work" shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix below).
"Derivative Works" shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

"Contribution" shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."

"Contributor" shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.

2. Grant of Copyright License.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.


Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a
Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

4. Redistribution

You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:

a. You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and

b. You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and

c. You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and

d. If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works that You distribute, alongside or as an addendum to the NOTICE text from the Work, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

5. Submission of Contributions
Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.

6. Trademarks

This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.

7. Disclaimer of Warranty

Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.

8. Limitation of Liability.

In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability.

While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You
agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any such warranty or additional liability.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Appendix: How to apply the Apache License to your work

To apply the Apache License to your work, attach the following boilerplate notice, with the fields enclosed by brackets "[]" replaced with your own identifying information. (Don't include the brackets!) The text should be enclosed in the appropriate comment syntax for the file format. We also recommend that a file or class name and description of purpose be included on the same "printed page" as the copyright notice for easier identification within third-party archives.

Copyright [yyyy] [name of copyright owner]

Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License.

You may obtain a copy of the License at http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0

Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, software distributed under the License is distributed on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied.

See the License for the specific language governing permissions and limitations under the License.
JCreator™ License Agreement

END-USER LICENSE AGREEMENT FOR JCREATOR NOTICE TO ALL USERS:
CAREFULLY READ THE FOLLOWING LEGAL AGREEMENT, FOR THE LICENSE OF
SPECIFIED SOFTWARE BY XINOX SOFTWARE. BY INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE,
YOU (EITHER AN INDIVIDUAL OR A SINGLE ENTITY) CONSENT TO BE BOUND
BY AND BECOME A PARTY TO THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO
ALL OF THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, CLICK THE BUTTON THAT
INDICATES THAT YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT AND
DO NOT INSTALL THE SOFTWARE.

1. DEFINITIONS
(a) "the Software" means the JCreator software program supplied by Xinox
Software herewith, which may also include documentation, associated media,
printed materials, and online and electronic documentation.

(b) "User" means an individual end-user of the Software, being either faculty,
staff, or an enrolled student in the case of a university or full-time staff in the
case of a public institution or industrial firm.

(c) "Licensee" is a User who has paid the license fee in full and who has been
registered with Xinox Software.

(d) "Xinox Software" or "Company" means Xinox Software and its suppliers
and licensors, if any.

(e) "Evaluation Period" means a version of the Software, so identified, to be
used to review and evaluate the Software, only. See section 4.1 for more
details.

(f) "Private/Academic Version" means a version of the Software, so identified,
for private(home) use or use by students and faculty of educational
institutions, only. Private/Academic Versions may not be used for, or
distributed to any party for, any commercial purpose. See section 4.2 for more
details.

2. GENERAL
This End-User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you and Xinox Software for the Xinox Software products identified above, which may include computer software and associated media, electronic documentation and printed materials ("The Software"). By installing, copying, distributing or otherwise using The Software you agree to be bound by the terms of this EULA. If you do not agree to the terms of this EULA, you must not install, use or distribute The Software, and you must destroy all copies of The Software that you have. The Software is protected by copyright laws and international copyright treaties, as well as other intellectual property laws and treaties. The Software is licensed, not sold and always remains the property of Xinox Software.

Xinox Software will supply the Licensee with a single copy of the Software and Documents in electronic format, using a distribution mechanism decided on by Xinox Software. Xinox Software also will additionally supply the Licensee with a serial number and registration key. The Licensee agrees to restrict distribution of the registration key only to staff members with a need to know for purposes of configuring the Software or recording registration information for the usual business records of the Licensee, and will make all reasonable efforts to prevent duplication and any form of publication of the registration material.

If you have not paid the registration fee for the Software, you are hereby granted an evaluation license to use the Software as described in section 4.1.

3. LICENSE GRANT

Subject to the payment of the applicable license fees, and subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, Xinox Software hereby grants to you a non-exclusive, non-transferable right to use the Software and the accompanying documentation (the "Documentation"). Except as set forth below, you may only install one copy of the Software on one computer, workstation or other electronic device for which the Software was designed (each, a "Client Device"). If the Software is licensed as a suite or bundle with more than one specified Software product, this license applies to all such specified Software products, subject to any restrictions or usage terms specified on the applicable price list or product packaging that apply to any of such Software products individually.

(a) Use. The Software is licensed as a single product; more than one user may not use it on more than one Client Device or at a time, except as set forth in this Section 3. The Software is "in use" on a Client Device when it is loaded into the temporary memory (i.e., random-access memory or RAM) or installed into the permanent memory (e.g., hard disk, CD-ROM, or other storage device)
of that Client Device. This license authorizes you to make one copy of the Software solely for backup or archival purposes, provided that the copy you make contains all of the Software's proprietary notices.

(b) Multiple Client Devices. A licensed user is also granted a license to install the Software on more than one Client Device, for the sole use of that user.

(c) Server-Mode. You may use the Software on a Client Device as a server ("Server") within a multiuser or networked environment, on a single physical site, ("Server-Mode") only if such use is permitted in the applicable price list or product packaging for the Software. A separate license is required for each Client Device or "seat" that may connect to the Server at any time, regardless of whether such licensed Client Devices or seats are concurrently connected to, accessing or using the Software. Use of software or hardware that reduces the number of Client Devices or seats directly accessing or utilizing the Software (e.g., "multiplexing" or "pooling" software or hardware) does not reduce the number of licenses required (i.e., the required number of licenses would equal the number of distinct inputs to the multiplexing or pooling software or hardware "front end"). If the number of Client Devices or seats that can connect to the Software can exceed the number of licenses you have obtained, and then you must have a reasonable mechanism in place to ensure that your use of the Software does not exceed the use limits specified for the licenses you have obtained. This license authorizes you to make or download one copy of the Documentation for each Client Device or seat that is licensed, provided that each such copy contains all of the Documentation's proprietary notices.

(d) Volume Licenses. If the Software is licensed with volume license terms specified in the applicable price list or product packaging for the Software, you may make, use and install as many additional copies of the Software on the number of Client Devices as the volume license authorizes. You must have a reasonable mechanism in place to ensure that the number of Client Devices on which the Software has been installed does not exceed the number of licenses you have obtained. This license authorizes you to make or download one copy of the Documentation for each additional copy authorized by the volume license, provided that each such copy contains all of the Documentation's proprietary notices.

(e) Site Licenses. If the Software is licensed with site license terms, you may make, use and install unlimited copies of the Software within the organization site. This excludes Client Devices outside the organization, such as the home-
computers of the students and staff members. This license authorizes you to make or download one copy of the Documentation for each copy authorized by the site license, provided that each such copy contains all of the Documentation’s proprietary notices.

4. LICENSE RESTRICTIONS

(a) Sublicense, sell, assign, transfer, pledge, distribute, rent or remove any proprietary notices on the Software except as expressly permitted in this Agreement.

(b) Use, copy, adapt, disassemble, decompile, reverse engineer or modify the Software, in whole or in part, except as expressly permitted in this Agreement.

(c) Take any action designed to unlock or bypass any Company-implemented restrictions on usage, access to, or number of installations of the Software; or.

(d) Use the Software if you fail to pay any license fee due and the Company notifies you that your license is terminated.

(e) Disclose to third parties, or publish your registration details via electronic or other means.

IF YOU DO ANY OF THE FOREGOING, YOUR RIGHTS UNDER THIS LICENSE WILL AUTOMATICALLY TERMINATE. SUCH TERMINATION SHALL BE IN ADDITION TO AND NOT IN LIEU OF ANY CRIMINAL, CIVIL OR OTHER REMEDIES AVAILABLE TO XINOX SOFTWARE.

4.1 RESTRICTED USE DURING EVALUATION PERIOD

You have a nonexclusive, nontransferable license to load and execute the unregistered copy of the Software for a period of thirty (30) days. (the "Evaluation Period"). The unregistered copy of the Software may be used for evaluation and testing purposes only and not for general commercial use. Customer must pay a license fee for the Software to obtain the right to use the Software for general commercial use and(or) for unlimited period. The unregistered copy of Software contains a feature that will automatically disable the Software in thirty (30) days. If you agree to this License Agreement and pay the license fee, Xinox Software will deactivate this feature. Xinox Software will have no liability to you if the Software is disabled by this feature. You may not disable, destroy, or remove this feature of the Software, and any attempt to do so will terminate your license and rights under this Agreement.

4.2 RESTRICTED USE PRIVATE/ACADEMIC LICENSE
Subject to the terms of this EULA, use the Software for non-commercial purposes only including conducting academic research or providing educational services. You certify that use is directly related to teaching, private non-commercial development or that use is strictly for non-commercial research by students or and faculty members, where the results of such research or development are not intended primarily for the benefit of a third party. (The private/academic version contains the same methodology as the Professional Edition; the only difference is the license.)

5. UPDATES

You are entitled to download revisions and upgrades (maintenance releases) to the Software as and when Xinox Software publishes it via its web site or through other online services. Xinox Software may charge an upgrade fee for new releases which contain significant enhancements.

6. DISTRIBUTION

You are hereby licensed to make as many copies of the installation package for the Software as you wish; give exact copies of the original installation package for the Software to anyone; and distribute the original installation package for the Software in its unmodified form via electronic or other means. The Software must be clearly identified as a freeware or shareware version where described. You are specifically prohibited from charging, or requesting donations, for any such copies, however made; and from distributing The Software including documentation with other products (commercial or otherwise) without prior written permission from Xinox Software. You are also prohibited from distributing components of The Software other than the complete original installation package.

7. OWNERSHIP

The foregoing license gives you limited license to use the Software. Xinox Software and its suppliers retain all right, title and interest, including all copyrights, in and to the Software and all copies thereof. All rights not specifically granted in this EULA, including Federal and International Copyrights, are reserved by Xinox Software and its suppliers. All title, including but not limited to copyrights, in and to The Software and any copies thereof are owned by Xinox Software. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of The Software is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not expressly granted are reserved by Xinox Software.
8. WARRANTY AND DISCLAIMER

LIMITED WARRANTY TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, XINOX SOFTWARE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT, WITH REGARD TO THE SOFTWARE, AND THE PROVISION OF OR FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES. XINOX SOFTWARE DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS OR THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY, AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU, THE USER.

9. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

LIMITATIONS OF REMEDIES AND LIABILITY TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL XINOX SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL OR OTHER DAMAGES WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF INFORMATION, OR ANY OTHER PECUNIARY LOSS) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE PRODUCT OR THE PROVISION OF OR FAILURE TO PROVIDE SUPPORT SERVICES, EVEN IF XINOX SOFTWARE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, THE ABOVE LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

10. HIGH RISK ACTIVITIES

The Software is not fault-tolerant and is not designed, manufactured or intended for use or resale as online control equipment in hazardous environments requiring fail-safe performance, such as in the operation of nuclear facilities, aircraft navigation or communication systems, air traffic control, direct life support machines, or weapons systems, in which the failure of the Software could lead directly to death, personal injury, or severe physical or environmental damage ("High Risk Activities"). Accordingly, Xinox Software and its suppliers and licensors specifically disclaim any express or implied warranty of fitness for High Risk Activities. You agree that Xinox Software and its suppliers and licensors will not be liable for any claims or damages arising from the use of the Software in such applications.
11. TERMINATION

Without prejudice to any other rights, Xinox Software may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA. In such event, you must destroy all copies of The Software.

12. MISCELLANEOUS

This license is governed by Dutch Law and is subject to exclusive jurisdiction of the Dutch courts. This license constitutes the complete and exclusive statement of our agreement with you and supercedes all proposals, representations, understandings and prior agreements whether oral or written and all communications with you relating thereto.
jEdit License Agreement

jEdit is released under the terms of the GNU General Public License, and developed by Slava Pestov and others.

GNU General Public License

Version 2, June 1991
Copyright (C) 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA
Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

Preamble

The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish), that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the
software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification follow. TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND MODIFICATION 0. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you".

Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

1. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and
appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and
disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and
to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program
a copy of this License along with the Program.

You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may
at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

2. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it,
thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such
modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you
also meet all of these conditions:

a) You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that
you changed the files and the date of any change.

b) You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in
part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed
as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.

c) If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run,
you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most
ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate
copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that
you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under
these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License.
(Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such
an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an
announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable
sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably
considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License,
and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as
separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole
which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be
on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to
the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it.

Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to
work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to
control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program.
In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

3. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:

a) Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

b) Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

c) Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable.

If distribution of executable or object code is made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

4. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or
rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

5. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

6. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

7. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program.

If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances.

It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice.
This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

8. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

9. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns.

Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

10. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

No Warranty

11. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY
AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

12. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer to where the full notice is found.

one line to give the program's name and an idea of what it does.
Copyright (C) yyyy name of author

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of

[Page EULA-11]
You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) year name of author
Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type 'show w'. This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type 'show c' for details.

The hypothetical commands 'show w' and 'show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than 'show w' and 'show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program 'Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.

signature of Ty Coon, 1 April 1989
Ty Coon, President of Vice

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Library General Public License instead of this License.
jGRASP™ License Agreement

Software License for jGRASP Version 1.7.0

Copyright 1999-2004 Auburn University

Section 1. License Grant.

Auburn University grants to you a non-exclusive and non-transferable license to use jGRASP and the associated documentation provided in jgrasp/help, collectively "jGRASP". jGRASP may be installed for use on a single computer or on a local area network. The "wedge" source code provided in the jgrasp/src directory is free of license restrictions. It may be used or modified for any purpose. jGRASP is a Trademark of Auburn University.

Section 2. Restrictions

Distribution of jGRASP is not permitted without written permission (see Supplements), except that it may be distributed internally within a single organization. Distribution of components of jGRASP separately from the whole is not permitted, except that the complete associated documentation provided in jgrasp/help may be distributed separately. Reverse engineering of jGRASP is not permitted. Any use of image files, icons, or executable components of jGRASP separately from the whole is prohibited.

Section 3. Disclaimer of Warranty

jGRASP is licensed "as is". There are no express or implied warranties, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. Auburn University makes no warranty with respect to the accuracy or completeness of information obtained through the use of this program. Auburn University does not warrant that jGRASP will meet all of your requirements or that its operation will be uninterrupted or error free or that any defect within jGRASP will be corrected. No oral or written information, representation, or advice given by Auburn University or an authorized representative of Auburn University shall create a warranty. Auburn University and its agents shall in no event be held liable to the user for any damages, including direct, indirect, incidental, or consequential damages, lost profits, lost savings, or other such damages arising out of the installation, use, improper use, or inability to use jGRASP, even if Auburn University has been advised of the possibility of such damages, or any claim by
Supplements

Distribution for Educational Purposes - Publishers may distribute the jGRASP software and the jGRASP Handbook (Tutorials and Reference) on CDs that accompany their textbooks provided that (1) the title "jGRASP(TM) 1.7.0 copyright 1999-2004 Auburn University" is included on each CD label, (2) descriptions of the CD indicate that jGRASP is included on the CD, and (3) a list of the textbooks that include jGRASP is provided to Auburn University (crossATengDOTauburnDOTedu). Permission to distribute jGRASP for educational purposes covers all CDs created prior to December 31, 2004 for inclusion in textbooks. While it is anticipated that distribution of jGRASP for educational purposes will remain royalty free, this supplement of the jGRASP license will be re-evaluated on an annual basis.

For additional information, contact James H. Cross II, Computer Science and Software Engineering, 107 Dunstan Hall, Auburn University, AL 36849 (334-844-6315, crossATengDOTauburnDOTedu).
NetBeans™ License Agreement

Netbeans IDE and Netbeans Platform are based on software from netbeans.org, developed under Sun Public License (SPL). For more information visit www.netbeans.org.

SUN PUBLIC LICENSE

SUN PUBLIC LICENSE Version 1.0

1.0.1. "Commercial Use" means distribution or otherwise making the Covered Code available to a third party.

1.1. "Contributor" means each entity that creates or contributes to the creation of Modifications.

1.2. "Contributor Version" means the combination of the Original Code, prior Modifications used by a Contributor, and the Modifications made by that particular Contributor.

1.3. "Covered Code" means the Original Code or Modifications or the combination of the Original Code and Modifications, in each case including portions thereof and corresponding documentation released with the source code.

1.4. "Electronic Distribution Mechanism" means a mechanism generally accepted in the software development community for the electronic transfer of data.

1.5. "Executable" means Covered Code in any form other than Source Code.

1.6. "Initial Developer" means the individual or entity identified as the Initial Developer in the Source Code notice required by Exhibit A.

1.7. "Larger Work" means a work which combines Covered Code or portions thereof with code not governed by the terms of this License.

1.8. "License" means this document.

1.8.1. "Licensable" means having the right to grant, to the maximum extent possible, whether at the time of the initial grant or subsequently acquired, any and all of the rights conveyed herein.
1.9. "Modifications" means any addition to or deletion from the substance or structure of either the Original Code or any previous Modifications. When Covered Code is released as a series of files, a Modification is:

A. Any addition to or deletion from the contents of a file containing Original Code or previous Modifications.

B. Any new file that contains any part of the Original Code or previous Modifications.

1.10. "Original Code" means Source Code of computer software code which is described in the Source Code notice required by Exhibit A as Original Code, and which, at the time of its release under this License is not already Covered Code governed by this License.

1.10.1. "Patent Claims" means any patent claim(s), now owned or hereafter acquired, including without limitation, method, process, and apparatus claims, in any patent Licensable by grantor.

1.11. "Source Code" means the preferred form of the Covered Code for making modifications to it, including all modules it contains, plus any associated documentation, interface definition files, scripts used to control compilation and installation of an Executable, or source code differential comparisons against either the Original Code or another well known, available Covered Code of the Contributor's choice. The Source Code can be in a compressed or archival form, provided the appropriate decompression or de-archiving software is widely available for no charge.

1.12. "You" (or "Your") means an individual or a legal entity exercising rights under, and complying with all of the terms of, this License or a future version of this License issued under section 6.1. For legal entities, "You" includes any entity which controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with You. For purposes of this definition, "control" means (a) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (b) ownership of more than fifty percent (50%) of the outstanding shares or beneficial ownership of such entity.

2. Source Code License.

2.1 The Initial Developer Grant.

The Initial Developer hereby grants You a world-wide, royalty-free, non-
exclusive license, subject to third party intellectual property claims:

(a) under intellectual property rights (other than patent or trademark) Licensable by Initial Developer to use, reproduce, modify, display, perform, sublicense and distribute the Original Code (or portions thereof) with or without Modifications, and/or as part of a Larger Work; and

(b) under Patent Claims infringed by the making, using or selling of Original Code, to make, have made, use, practice, sell, and offer for sale, and/or otherwise dispose of the Original Code (or portions thereof).

(c) the licenses granted in this Section 2.1(a) and (b) are effective on the date Initial Developer first distributes Original Code under the terms of this License.

(d) Notwithstanding Section 2.1(b) above, no patent license is granted: 1) for code that You delete from the Original Code; 2) separate from the Original Code; or 3) for infringements caused by: i) the modification of the Original Code or ii) the combination of the Original Code with other software or devices.

2.2. Contributor Grant.

Subject to third party intellectual property claims, each Contributor hereby grants You a world-wide, royalty-free, non-exclusive license

(a) under intellectual property rights (other than patent or trademark) Licensable by Contributor, to use, reproduce, modify, display, perform, sublicense and distribute the Modifications created by such Contributor (or portions thereof) either on an unmodified basis, with other Modifications, as Covered Code and/or as part of a Larger Work; and

(b) under Patent Claims infringed by the making, using, or selling of Modifications made by that Contributor either alone and/or in combination with its Contributor Version (or portions of such combination), to make, use, sell, offer for sale, have made, and/or otherwise dispose of: 1) Modifications made by that Contributor (or portions thereof); and 2) the combination of Modifications made by that Contributor with its Contributor Version (or portions of such combination).

(c) the licenses granted in Sections 2.2(a) and 2.2(b) are effective on the date Contributor first makes Commercial Use of the Covered Code.

(d) notwithstanding Section 2.2(b) above, no patent license is granted: 1) for any code that Contributor has deleted from the Contributor Version; 2) separate from the Contributor Version; 3) for infringements caused by: i) third
party modifications of Contributor Version or ii) the combination of Modifications made by that Contributor with other software (except as part of the Contributor Version) or other devices; or 4) under Patent Claims infringed by Covered Code in the absence of Modifications made by that Contributor.

3. Distribution Obligations.

3.1. Application of License.

The Modifications which You create or to which You contribute are governed by the terms of this License, including without limitation Section 2.2. The Source Code version of Covered Code may be distributed only under the terms of this License or a future version of this License released under section 6.1, and You must include a copy of this License with every copy of the Source Code You distribute. You may not offer or impose any terms on any Source Code version that alters or restricts the applicable version of this License or the recipients' rights hereunder. However, You may include an additional document offering the additional rights described in Section 3.5.

3.2. Availability of Source Code.

Any Modification which You create or to which You contribute must be made available in Source Code form under the terms of this License either on the same media as an Executable version or via an accepted Electronic Distribution Mechanism to anyone to whom you made an Executable version available; and if made available via Electronic Distribution Mechanism, must remain available for at least twelve (12) months after the date it initially became available, or at least six (6) months after a subsequent version of that particular Modification has been made available to such recipients. You are responsible for ensuring that the Source Code version remains available even if the Electronic Distribution Mechanism is maintained by a third party.

3.3. Description of Modifications.

You must cause all Covered Code to which You contribute to contain a file documenting the changes You made to create that Covered Code and the date of any change. You must include a prominent statement that the Modification is derived, directly or indirectly, from Original Code provided by the Initial Developer and including the name of the Initial Developer in (a) the Source Code, and (b) in any notice in an Executable version or related documentation in which You describe the origin or ownership of the Covered Code.

(a) Third Party Claims.

If Contributor has knowledge that a license under a third party's intellectual property rights is required to exercise the rights granted by such Contributor under Sections 2.1 or 2.2, Contributor must include a text file with the Source Code distribution titled "LEGAL" which describes the claim and the party making the claim in sufficient detail that a recipient will know whom to contact. If Contributor obtains such knowledge after the Modification is made available as described in Section 3.2, Contributor shall promptly modify the LEGAL file in all copies Contributor makes available thereafter and shall take other steps (such as notifying appropriate mailing lists or newsgroups) reasonably calculated to inform those who received the Covered Code that new knowledge has been obtained.

(b) Contributor APIs.

If Contributor's Modifications include an application programming interface ("API") and Contributor has knowledge of patent licenses which are reasonably necessary to implement that API, Contributor must also include this information in the LEGAL file.

(c) Representations.

Contributor represents that, except as disclosed pursuant to Section 3.4(a) above, Contributor believes that Contributor's Modifications are Contributor's original creation(s) and/or Contributor has sufficient rights to grant the rights conveyed by this License.

3.5. Required Notices.

You must duplicate the notice in Exhibit A in each file of the Source Code. If it is not possible to put such notice in a particular Source Code file due to its structure, then You must include such notice in a location (such as a relevant directory) where a user would be likely to look for such a notice. If You created one or more Modification(s) You may add your name as a Contributor to the notice described in Exhibit A. You must also duplicate this License in any documentation for the Source Code where You describe recipients' rights or ownership rights relating to Covered Code. You may choose to offer, and to charge a fee for, warranty, support, indemnity or liability obligations to one or more recipients of Covered Code. However, You may do so only on Your own behalf, and not on behalf of the Initial Developer or any Contributor. You must make it absolutely clear than any such warranty, support, indemnity or liability
obligation is offered by You alone, and You hereby agree to indemnify the Initial Developer and every Contributor for any liability incurred by the Initial Developer or such Contributor as a result of warranty, support, indemnity or liability terms You offer.

3.6. Distribution of Executable Versions.

You may distribute Covered Code in Executable form only if the requirements of Section 3.1-3.5 have been met for that Covered Code, and if You include a notice stating that the Source Code version of the Covered Code is available under the terms of this License, including a description of how and where You have fulfilled the obligations of Section 3.2. The notice must be conspicuously included in any notice in an Executable version, related documentation or collateral in which You describe recipients' rights relating to the Covered Code. You may distribute the Executable version of Covered Code or ownership rights under a license of Your choice, which may contain terms different from this License, provided that You are in compliance with the terms of this License and that the license for the Executable version does not attempt to limit or alter the recipient's rights in the Source Code version from the rights set forth in this License. If You distribute the Executable version under a different license, You must make it absolutely clear that any terms which differ from this License are offered by You alone, not by the Initial Developer or any Contributor. You hereby agree to indemnify the Initial Developer and every Contributor for any liability incurred by the Initial Developer or such Contributor as a result of any such terms You offer.

3.7. Larger Works.

You may create a Larger Work by combining Covered Code with other code not governed by the terms of this License and distribute the Larger Work as a single product. In such a case, You must make sure the requirements of this License are fulfilled for the Covered Code.

4. Inability to Comply Due to Statute or Regulation.

If it is impossible for You to comply with any of the terms of this License with respect to some or all of the Covered Code due to statute, judicial order, or regulation then You must: (a) comply with the terms of this License to the maximum extent possible; and (b) describe the limitations and the code they affect. Such description must be included in the LEGAL file described in Section 3.4 and must be included with all distributions of the Source Code. Except to
the extent prohibited by statute or regulation, such description must be sufficiently detailed for a recipient of ordinary skill to be able to understand it.

5. Application of this License.

This License applies to code to which the Initial Developer has attached the notice in Exhibit A and to related Covered Code.

6. Versions of the License.

6.1. New Versions.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. ("Sun") may publish revised and/or new versions of the License from time to time. Each version will be given a distinguishing version number.

6.2. Effect of New Versions.

Once Covered Code has been published under a particular version of the License, You may always continue to use it under the terms of that version. You may also choose to use such Covered Code under the terms of any subsequent version of the License published by Sun. No one other than Sun has the right to modify the terms applicable to Covered Code created under this License.

6.3. Derivative Works.

If You create or use a modified version of this License (which you may only do in order to apply it to code which is not already Covered Code governed by this License), You must: (a) rename Your license so that the phrases "Sun," "Sun Public License," or "SPL" or any confusingly similar phrase do not appear in your license (except to note that your license differs from this License) and (b) otherwise make it clear that Your version of the license contains terms which differ from the Sun Public License. (Filling in the name of the Initial Developer, Original Code or Contributor in the notice described in Exhibit A shall not of themselves be deemed to be modifications of this License.)

7. DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY.

COVERED CODE IS PROVIDED UNDER THIS LICENSE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES THAT THE COVERED CODE IS FREE OF DEFECTS, MERCHANTABLE, FIT FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE
OF THE COVERED CODE IS WITH YOU. SHOULD ANY COVERED CODE PROVE DEFECTIVE IN ANY RESPECT, YOU (NOT THE INITIAL DEVELOPER OR ANY OTHER CONTRIBUTOR) ASSUME THE COST OF ANY NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY CONSTITUTES AN ESSENTIAL PART OF THIS LICENSE. NO USE OF ANY COVERED CODE IS AUTHORIZED HEREUNDER EXCEPT UNDER THIS DISCLAIMER.

8. TERMINATION.

8.1. This License and the rights granted hereunder will terminate automatically if You fail to comply with terms herein and fail to cure such breach within 30 days of becoming aware of the breach. All sublicenses to the Covered Code which are properly granted shall survive any termination of this License. Provisions which, by their nature, must remain in effect beyond the termination of this License shall survive.

8.2. If You initiate litigation by asserting a patent infringement claim (excluding declaratory judgment actions) against Initial Developer or a Contributor (the Initial Developer or Contributor against whom You file such action is referred to as "Participant") alleging that:

(a) such Participant's Contributor Version directly or indirectly infringes any patent, then any and all rights granted by such Participant to You under Sections 2.1 and/or 2.2 of this License shall, upon 60 days notice from Participant terminate prospectively, unless if within 60 days after receipt of notice You either: (i) agree in writing to pay Participant a mutually agreeable reasonable royalty for Your past and future use of Modifications made by such Participant, or (ii) withdraw Your litigation claim with respect to the Contributor Version against such Participant. If within 60 days of notice, a reasonable royalty and payment arrangement are not mutually agreed upon in writing by the parties or the litigation claim is not withdrawn, the rights granted by Participant to You under Sections 2.1 and/or 2.2 automatically terminate at the expiration of the 60 day notice period specified above.

(b) any software, hardware, or device, other than such Participant's Contributor Version, directly or indirectly infringes any patent, then any rights granted to You by such Participant under Sections 2.1(b) and 2.2(b) are revoked effective as of the date You first made, used, sold, distributed, or had made, Modifications made by that Participant.

8.3. If You assert a patent infringement claim against Participant alleging that
such Participant's Contributor Version directly or indirectly infringes any patent
where such claim is resolved (such as by license or settlement) prior to the
initiation of patent infringement litigation, then the reasonable value of the
licenses granted by such Participant under Sections 2.1 or 2.2 shall be
taken into account in determining the amount or value of any payment or license.

8.4. In the event of termination under Sections 8.1 or 8.2 above, all end user license agreements (excluding distributors and resellers) which have been validly granted by You or any distributor hereunder prior to termination shall survive termination.

9. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY.

UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES AND UNDER NO LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER Torts (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT, OR OTHERWISE, SHALL YOU, THE INITIAL DEVELOPER, ANY OTHER CONTRIBUTOR, OR ANY DISTRIBUTOR OF COVERED CODE, OR ANY SUPPLIER OF ANY OF SUCH PARTIES, BE LIABLE TO ANY PERSON FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, COMPUTER FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, EVEN IF SUCH PARTY SHALL HAVE BEEN INFORMED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THIS LIMITATION OF LIABILITY SHALL NOT APPLY TO LIABILITY FOR DEATH OR PERSONAL INJURY RESULTING FROM SUCH PARTY'S NEGLIGENCE TO THE EXTENT APPLICABLE LAW PROHIBITS SUCH LIMITATION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THIS EXCLUSION AND LIMITATION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

10. U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS.


11. MISCELLANEOUS.

This License represents the complete agreement concerning subject matter hereof. If any provision of this License is held to be unenforceable, such provision shall be reformed only to the extent necessary to make it
enforceable. This License shall be governed by California law provisions (except to the extent applicable law, if any, provides otherwise), excluding its conflict-of-law provisions. With respect to disputes in which at least one party is a citizen of, or an entity chartered or registered to do business in the United States of America, any litigation relating to this License shall be subject to the jurisdiction of the Federal Courts of the Northern District of California, with venue lying in Santa Clara County, California, with the losing party responsible for costs, including without limitation, court costs and reasonable attorneys' fees and expenses. The application of the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods is expressly excluded. Any law or regulation which provides that the language of a contract shall be construed against the drafter shall not apply to this License.

12. RESPONSIBILITY FOR CLAIMS.

As between Initial Developer and the Contributors, each party is responsible for claims and damages arising, directly or indirectly, out of its utilization of rights under this License and You agree to work with Initial Developer and Contributors to distribute such responsibility on an equitable basis. Nothing herein is intended or shall be deemed to constitute any admission of liability.

13. MULTIPLE-LICENSED CODE.

Initial Developer may designate portions of the Covered Code as "Multiple-Licensed". "Multiple-Licensed" means that the Initial Developer permits you to utilize portions of the Covered Code under your choice of the alternative licenses, if any, specified by the Initial Developer in the file described in Exhibit A.

Exhibit A - Sun Public License Notice.

The contents of this file are subject to the Sun Public License Version 1.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. A copy of the License is available at http://www.sun.com/

The Original Code is _______________. The Initial Developer of the Original Code is ______________.

Portions created by ______________ are Copyright (C) ______________. All Rights Reserved.

Contributor(s): ___________________________________________________________________.
Alternatively, the contents of this file may be used under the terms of the __________ license (the "[__________] License"), in which case the provisions of [__________] License are applicable instead of those above. If you wish to allow use of your version of this file only under the terms of the [__________] License and not to allow others to use your version of this file under the SPL, indicate your decision by deleting the provisions above and replace them with the notice and other provisions required by the [__________] License. If you do not delete the provisions above, a recipient may use your version of this file under either the SPL or the [__________] License.

[NOTE: The text of this Exhibit A may differ slightly from the text of the notices in the Source Code files of the Original Code. You should use the text of this Exhibit A rather than the text found in the Original Code Source Code for Your Modifications.]
MySQL® Open Source License

Our software is 100% GPL (General Public License); if yours is 100% GPL compliant, then you have no obligation to pay us for the licenses. This is a great opportunity for the open source community and those of you who are developing open source software.

The formal terms of the GPL license can be found in the GNU General Public License section of the MySQL Reference Manual. Please note that the General Public License can be restrictive, so if it doesn't meet your needs, you are better served by our Commercial License.

Specifically:

• MySQL is free use for those who are 100%GPL. If your application is licensed under GPL or compatible OSI license approved by MySQL AB, you are free to ship any GPL software of MySQL AB with your application ('application' means any type of software application, system, tool or utility). You do not need a separate signed agreement with MySQL AB, because the GPL license is sufficient. We do, however, recommend you contact us as there usually are good opportunities for partnership and co-marketing.

• Under the Open Source License, you must release the complete source code for the application that is built on MySQL. You do not need to release the source code for components that are generally installed on the operating system on which your application runs, such as system header files or libraries.

• Free use for those who never copy, modify or distribute. As long as you never distribute (internally or externally) the MySQL Software in any way, you are free to use it for powering your application, irrespective of whether your application is under GPL license or not.

• You are allowed to modify MySQL Software source code any way you like as long as the distributed derivative work is licensed under the GPL as well.

• You are allowed to copy MySQL binaries and source code, but when you do so, the copies will fall under the GPL license.

• Optional GPL License Exception for PHP. As a special exception, MySQL AB gives permission to distribute derivative works that are formed with GPL-
licensed MySQL software and with software licensed under version 3.0 of the PHP license. You must obey the GNU General Public License in all respects for all of the code used other than code licensed under version 3.0 of the PHP license.

- FOSS Exception. We have created a which enables Free and Open Source software ("FOSS") to be able to include the GPL-licensed MySQL client libraries despite the fact that not all open source licenses are compatible with the GPL.

**Non-Profits, Academic Institutions, and Private Individuals**

If you represent a non-profit organization or an academic institution, we recommend you publish your application as an open source / free software project using the GPL license. Thereby, you are free to use MySQL software free of charge under the GPL license. We believe that if you have strong reasons to not publish your application in accordance with the GPL, you should purchase commercial licenses. Note that non-profits can apply for free commercial licenses, which will be liberally granted.

[Page EULA-18]

If you are a private individual you are free to use MySQL software for your personal applications as long as you do not distribute them. If you distribute them, you must make a decision between the Commercial License and the GPL.

Please note that even if you ship a free demo version of your own application, the above rules apply.

**Recommendations**

Please note that MySQL AB can only give advice on which license is right for you. The final judgment, of course can be made only by a court of law. With that said, we recommend the commercial license to all commercial and government organizations. This frees you from the broad and strict requirements of the GPL license.

To all free software enthusiasts we recommend our products under the GPL license. We believe that MySQL AB is one of the world's largest companies that offers all its software under the GPL license.

To anyone in doubt, we recommend the commercial license. It is never wrong. Thanks to our costeffective way of producing software, we are able to sell our commercial licenses at prices well under the industry average.
Older Versions

Note that some older versions of the MySQL database server (prior to 3.23.19) are using the . See the documentation for the specific version for more information.

When in Doubt

If you have any questions on MySQL licensing, feel free to contact us:

USA and Canada: + 1-425-743-5635 or
Germany, Austria, and Switzerland: +49-(0)7022-9256-30 or
Scandinavia (Sweden, Norway, and Denmark): +46 730 234 111
France: +33 (0)1.43.077.099 or
Finland: +358 (0)9 2517 5553
Spain, Portugal, and Latin America: +1 (425) 373-3434 or

OSI = Open Source Initiative,
GPL = GNU General Public License,
Version 4.1, 12 March 2004

G GNU General Public License

Version 2, June 1991
Copyright © 1989, 1991 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this license document, but changing it is not allowed.

23.4 Preamble The licenses for most software are designed to take away your freedom to share and change it. By contrast, the GNU General Public License is intended to guarantee your freedom to share and change free software--to make sure the software is free for all its users. This General Public License applies to most of the Free Software Foundation's software and to any other program whose authors commit to using it. (Some other Free Software Foundation software is covered by the GNU Library General Public License instead.) You can apply it to your programs, too.

When we speak of free software, we are referring to freedom, not price. Our General Public Licenses are designed to make sure that you have the freedom
to distribute copies of free software (and charge for this service if you wish),
that you receive source code or can get it if you want it, that you can change
the software or use pieces of it in new free programs; and that you know you
can do these things.

To protect your rights, we need to make restrictions that forbid anyone to deny
you these rights or to ask you to surrender the rights. These restrictions
translate to certain responsibilities for you if you distribute copies of the
software, or if you modify it.

For example, if you distribute copies of such a program, whether gratis or for a
fee, you must give the recipients all the rights that you have. You must make
sure that they, too, receive or can get the source code. And you must show
them these terms so they know their rights.

We protect your rights with two steps: (1) copyright the software, and (2) offer
you this license which gives you legal permission to copy, distribute and/or
modify the software.

Also, for each author's protection and ours, we want to make certain that
everyone understands that there is no warranty for this free software. If the
software is modified by someone else and passed on, we want its recipients to
know that what they have is not the original, so that any problems introduced
by others will not reflect on the original authors' reputations.

Finally, any free program is threatened constantly by software patents. We
wish to avoid the danger that redistributors of a free program will individually
obtain patent licenses, in effect making the program proprietary. To prevent
this, we have made it clear that any patent must be licensed for everyone's
free use or not licensed at all.

The precise terms and conditions for copying, distribution and modification
follow.

23.5 TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR COPYING, DISTRIBUTION AND
MODIFICATION

1. This License applies to any program or other work which contains a notice
placed by the copyright holder saying it may be distributed under the terms of
this General Public License. The "Program", below, refers to any such program
or work, and a "work based on the Program" means either the Program or any
derivative work under copyright law: that is to say, a work containing the
Program or a portion of it, either verbatim or with modifications and/or translated into another language. (Hereinafter, translation is included without limitation in the term "modification".) Each licensee is addressed as "you". Activities other than copying, distribution and modification are not covered by this License; they are outside its scope. The act of running the Program is not restricted, and the output from the Program is covered only if its contents constitute a work based on the Program (independent of having been made by running the Program). Whether that is true depends on what the Program does.

2. You may copy and distribute verbatim copies of the Program's source code as you receive it, in any medium, provided that you conspicuously and appropriately publish on each copy an appropriate copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty; keep intact all the notices that refer to this License and to the absence of any warranty; and give any other recipients of the Program a copy of this License along with the Program. You may charge a fee for the physical act of transferring a copy, and you may at your option offer warranty protection in exchange for a fee.

3. You may modify your copy or copies of the Program or any portion of it, thus forming a work based on the Program, and copy and distribute such modifications or work under the terms of Section 1 above, provided that you also meet all of these conditions:

1. You must cause the modified files to carry prominent notices stating that you changed the files and the date of any change.

2. You must cause any work that you distribute or publish, that in whole or in part contains or is derived from the Program or any part thereof, to be licensed as a whole at no charge to all third parties under the terms of this License.

3. If the modified program normally reads commands interactively when run, you must cause it, when started running for such interactive use in the most ordinary way, to print or display an announcement including an appropriate copyright notice and a notice that there is no warranty (or else, saying that you provide a warranty) and that users may redistribute the program under these conditions, and telling the user how to view a copy of this License. (Exception: if the Program itself is interactive but does not normally print such an announcement, your work based on the Program is not required to print an announcement.)

These requirements apply to the modified work as a whole. If identifiable sections of that work are not derived from the Program, and can be reasonably considered independent and separate works in themselves, then this License,
and its terms, do not apply to those sections when you distribute them as separate works. But when you distribute the same sections as part of a whole which is a work based on the Program, the distribution of the whole must be on the terms of this License, whose permissions for other licensees extend to the entire whole, and thus to each and every part regardless of who wrote it. Thus, it is not the intent of this section to claim rights or contest your rights to work written entirely by you; rather, the intent is to exercise the right to control the distribution of derivative or collective works based on the Program. In addition, mere aggregation of another work not based on the Program with the Program (or with a work based on the Program) on a volume of a storage or distribution medium does not bring the other work under the scope of this License.

4. You may copy and distribute the Program (or a work based on it, under Section 2) in object code or executable form under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above provided that you also do one of the following:

1. Accompany it with the complete corresponding machine-readable source code, which must be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

2. Accompany it with a written offer, valid for at least three years, to give any third-party, for a charge no more than your cost of physically performing source distribution, a complete machine-readable copy of the corresponding source code, to be distributed under the terms of Sections 1 and 2 above on a medium customarily used for software interchange; or,

3. Accompany it with the information you received as to the offer to distribute corresponding source code. (This alternative is allowed only for noncommercial distribution and only if you received the program in object code or executable form with such an offer, in accord with Subsection b above.)

The source code for a work means the preferred form of the work for making modifications to it. For an executable work, complete source code means all the source code for all modules it contains, plus any associated interface definition files, plus the scripts used to control compilation and installation of the executable. However, as a special exception, the source code distributed need not include anything that is normally distributed (in either source or binary form) with the major components (compiler, kernel, and so on) of the operating system on which the executable runs, unless that component itself accompanies the executable. If distribution of executable or object code is
made by offering access to copy from a designated place, then offering equivalent access to copy the source code from the same place counts as distribution of the source code, even though third parties are not compelled to copy the source along with the object code.

5. You may not copy, modify, sublicense, or distribute the Program except as expressly provided under this License. Any attempt otherwise to copy, modify, sublicense or distribute the Program is void, and will automatically terminate your rights under this License. However, parties who have received copies, or rights, from you under this License will not have their licenses terminated so long as such parties remain in full compliance.

6. You are not required to accept this License, since you have not signed it. However, nothing else grants you permission to modify or distribute the Program or its derivative works. These actions are prohibited by law if you do not accept this License. Therefore, by modifying or distributing the Program (or any work based on the Program), you indicate your acceptance of this License to do so, and all its terms and conditions for copying, distributing or modifying the Program or works based on it.

7. Each time you redistribute the Program (or any work based on the Program), the recipient automatically receives a license from the original licensor to copy, distribute or modify the Program subject to these terms and conditions. You may not impose any further restrictions on the recipients' exercise of the rights granted herein. You are not responsible for enforcing compliance by third parties to this License.

8. If, as a consequence of a court judgment or allegation of patent infringement or for any other reason (not limited to patent issues), conditions are imposed on you (whether by court order, agreement or otherwise) that contradict the conditions of this License, they do not excuse you from the conditions of this License. If you cannot distribute so as to satisfy simultaneously your obligations under this License and any other pertinent obligations, then as a consequence you may not distribute the Program at all. For example, if a patent license would not permit royalty-free redistribution of the Program by all those who receive copies directly or indirectly through you, then the only way you could satisfy both it and this License would be to refrain entirely from distribution of the Program. If any portion of this section is held invalid or unenforceable under any particular circumstance, the balance of the section is intended to apply and the section as a whole is intended to apply in other circumstances. It is not the purpose of this section to induce you to infringe any patents or other property right claims or to contest validity of any such claims; this section has the sole purpose of protecting the integrity of the free software distribution system, which is implemented by public license
practices. Many people have made generous contributions to the wide range of software distributed through that system in reliance on consistent application of that system; it is up to the author/donor to decide if he or she is willing to distribute software through any other system and a licensee cannot impose that choice. This section is intended to make thoroughly clear what is believed to be a consequence of the rest of this License.

9. If the distribution and/or use of the Program is restricted in certain countries either by patents or by copyrighted interfaces, the original copyright holder who places the Program under this License may add an explicit geographical distribution limitation excluding those countries, so that distribution is permitted only in or among countries not thus excluded. In such case, this License incorporates the limitation as if written in the body of this License.

10. The Free Software Foundation may publish revised and/or new versions of the General Public License from time to time. Such new versions will be similar in spirit to the present version, but may differ in detail to address new problems or concerns. Each version is given a distinguishing version number. If the Program specifies a version number of this License which applies to it and "any later version", you have the option of following the terms and conditions either of that version or of any later version published by the Free Software Foundation. If the Program does not specify a version number of this License, you may choose any version ever published by the Free Software Foundation.

11. If you wish to incorporate parts of the Program into other free programs whose distribution conditions are different, write to the author to ask for permission. For software which is copyrighted by the Free Software Foundation, write to the Free Software Foundation; we sometimes make exceptions for this. Our decision will be guided by the two goals of preserving the free status of all derivatives of our free software and of promoting the sharing and reuse of software generally.

[Page EULA-21]

23.6 NO WARRANTY

12. BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/ OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF
MERCHANDABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE
RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH
YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF
ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

13. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN
WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY
MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE
LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL,
INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR
INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF
DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY
YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH
ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN
 ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

23.7 END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

23.8 How to Apply These Terms to Your New Programs

If you develop a new program, and you want it to be of the greatest possible
use to the public, the best way to achieve this is to make it free software
which everyone can redistribute and change under these terms.

To do so, attach the following notices to the program. It is safest to attach
them to the start of each source file to most effectively convey the exclusion of
warranty; and each file should have at least the "copyright" line and a pointer
to where the full notice is found.

one line to give the program's name and a brief idea of what it does.

Copyright (C) yyyy name of author

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by
the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or
(at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
MERCHANDABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the
GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place - Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307, USA.

Also add information on how to contact you by electronic and paper mail.

If the program is interactive, make it output a short notice like this when it starts in an interactive mode:

Gnomovision version 69, Copyright (C) 19 yy name of author
Gnomovision comes with ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY; for details type 'show w'
This is free software, and you are welcome to redistribute it under certain conditions; type 'show c' for details.

The hypothetical commands 'show w' and 'show c' should show the appropriate parts of the General Public License. Of course, the commands you use may be called something other than 'show w' and 'show c'; they could even be mouse-clicks or menu items--whatever suits your program.

You should also get your employer (if you work as a programmer) or your school, if any, to sign a "copyright disclaimer" for the program, if necessary. Here is a sample; alter the names:

Yoyodyne, Inc., hereby disclaims all copyright interest in the program

'Gnomovision' (which makes passes at compilers) written by James Hacker.

signature of Ty Coon, 1 April 1989
Ty Coon, President of Vice

This General Public License does not permit incorporating your program into proprietary programs. If your program is a subroutine library, you may consider it more useful to permit linking proprietary applications with the library. If this is what you want to do, use the GNU Library General Public License instead of this License.
License Agreement and Limited Warranty

Using the CD-ROM

Contents of the CD-ROM

Software and Hardware System Requirements
License Agreement and Limited Warranty

The software is distributed on an "AS IS" basis, without warranty. Neither the authors, the software developers, nor Prentice Hall make any representation, or warranty, either express or implied, with respect to the software programs, their quality, accuracy, or fitness for a specific purpose. Therefore, neither the authors, the software developers, nor Prentice Hall shall have any liability to you or any other person or entity with respect to any liability, loss, or damage caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by the programs contained on the media. This includes, but is not limited to, interruption of service, loss of data, loss of classroom time, loss of consulting or anticipatory profits, or consequential damages from the use of these programs. If the media itself is defective, you may return it for a replacement. Use of this software is subject to the Binary Code License terms and conditions at the back of this book. Read the licenses carefully. By opening this package, you are agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of these licenses. If you do not agree, do not open the package.

Please refer to end-user license agreements on the CD-ROM for further details.
Using the CD-ROM

The interface to the contents of this CD is designed to start automatically through the `AUTORUN.EXE` file. If a startup screen does not pop up automatically when you insert the CD into your computer, double click on the welcome.htm file to launch the Student CD or refer to the file `readme.txt` on the CD.
Contents of the CD-ROM

- Java™ 2 Platform Development Kit, Standard Edition Version 5.0
- BlueJ Version 1.3.5
- JCreator™ LE Version 3.10 (Windows Only)
- jEdit Version 4.1
- jGRASP Version 1.7.0
- NetBeans™ IDE Version 3.6
- Live code examples from the book *Small Java™ How to Program, 6th Edition*
- Web Resources -- Links to internet sites mentioned in the book *Small Java™ How to Program, 6th Edition*
- MySQL® Version 4.0.20
- MySQL® Connector/J Version 3.0.14
- Apache Tomcat Version 5.0.25
- Additional material (in the Adobe® Acrobat® PDF format) not included in the book
Software and Hardware System Requirements

- 500 MHz (minimum) Pentium III or faster processor


- One of the following Linux distributions: Red Hat 9.0, SuSE 8.2, or TurboLinux 8.0

- 256 MB of RAM (minimum), 512 MB of RAM (recommended)

- CD-ROM drive

- Internet connection

- Web browser, Adobe® Acrobat® Reader® and a Zip decompression utility
Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [V] [W] [X] [Y] [Z]

\!, logical NOT 2nd

truth table

!=, not equals 2nd

# character

# flag 2nd

${exp}$

% conversion character

% SQL wildcard character

%% format specifier

%, remainder 2nd

%> escape sequence for %>

%b format specifier

%c format specifier

%d format specifier 2nd 3rd

%f format specifier 2nd

%o octal format specifier

%s format specifier 2nd

&&, conditional AND 2nd

truth table

&, boolean logical AND 2nd

&=, bitwise AND assignment operator

(flag)

(double) cast

*

* wildcard in a file name

*, multiplication 2nd

+ flag

++, preincrement/postincrement

+, addition 2nd

+, string concatenation
+=, addition assignment operator 2nd
+=, string concatenation assignment operator
, (comma) formatting flag
, format flag
- flag
-, subtraction 2nd
--, predecrement/postdecrement
-author option
-classpath command line argument
to javac 2nd
-d compiler option
-d option
-g command line option to javac
-link option
.aif file extension 2nd
.aiff file extension 2nd
.au file extension 2nd
.avi file extension
.class file 2nd
extension
separate one for every class
.gif
.gif file extension
.htm file name extension
.html file name extension
.java extension
.java file name extension 2nd
.jpeg
.jpeg file extension
.jpg
.jpg file extension
.mid file extension
.mov file extension
.mp3 file extension
.mpeg file extension
.mpg file extension
.NET platform
.png
to determine whether two references refer to the same object
==, is equal to
>, greater than
>=, greater than or equal to
>>, signed right shift
>>> , signed right shift assignment operator
>>>>, unsigned right shift
>>>>, unsigned right shift assignment operator
?, wildcard type argument
?:, ternary conditional operator 2nd
@author javadoc tag
@deprecated javadoc tag
@param javadoc tag
@return javadoc tag
@see javadoc tag
@since javadoc tag
@throws javadoc tag
@version javadoc tag
\", double-quote escape sequence
\", double-quote-character escape sequence escape sequence
\', single-quote-character escape sequence
\, escape character
\\, backslash-character escape sequence
\b, escape sequence
\f, form-feed escape sequence
\n, newline escape sequence 2nd 3rd
\r, carriage-return escape sequence 2nd
\t, horizontal tab escape sequence 2nd
^, boolean logical exclusive OR 2nd
 ^=, bitwise exclusive OR assignment operator
SQL wildcard character
_jspService method
_self target frame
_top target frame
{, left brace
{@link} javadoc tag
|, boolean logical inclusive OR
|=, bitwise inclusive OR assignment operator
||, conditional OR
  truth table
}, right brace
~, bitwise complement
abbreviating assignment expressions
abnormally terminate a program
abs method of Math
absolute method of ResultSet
absolute path 2nd 3rd
absolute value
abstract class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
abstract data type (ADT) 2nd 3rd
Abstract Factory design pattern 2nd 3rd
abstract implementation
abstract keyword
abstract method 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
abstract superclass 2nd
Abstract Window Toolkit (AWT) 2nd 3rd
AbstractButton class 2nd 3rd 4th
    addItemListener method
    isSelected method
    setMnemonic method
    setRolloverIcon method
    setSelected method
AbstractCollection class
AbstractList class
AbstractMap class
AbstractQueue class
AbstractSequentialList class
AbstractSet class
AbstractTableModel class 2nd
    fireTableStructureChanged method
accept method of ServerSocket 2nd
acceptChanges method of Cached-RowSet
accept modifier 2nd 3rd

private 2nd 3rd
protected 2nd 3rd
public 2nd

access shared data
accessibility heuristic
accessor method
Account class (ATM case study) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th
Account class with an instance variable of type double
AccountRecord class for serializable objects
AccountRecord maintains information for one account
AccountRecord.java
AccountRecordSerializable.java
Accounts Payable System Modification exercise
accounts receivable file
accumulator register 2nd
acquire a lock on an object
action 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
action expression in the UML 2nd 3rd 4th
action key
action of an object
action oriented
action state in the UML 2nd 3rd
action state symbol
action/decision model of programming 2nd
ActionEvent class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th

    getActionCommand method 2nd
ActionListener class
ActionListener interface

    actionPerformed method 2nd 3rd 4th
actionPerformed method of ActionListener 2nd 3rd 4th
ACTIVATED constant of nested class EventType
activation in a UML sequence diagram
activation record 2nd
activity
activity diagram 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
do...while statement
for statement
if statement
if...else statement
in the UML 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
sequence statement
switch statement
while statement
activity in the UML 2nd 3rd
actor in use case in the UML
actual type arguments
acyclic gradient
Ada Lovelace 2nd
Ada programming language 2nd
adapter class
Adapter classes used to implement event handlers
Adapter design pattern 2nd 3rd
add method
   ArrayList 2nd
   ButtonGroup
   JFrame 2nd 3rd
   JMenu
   JMenuBar
   LinkedList
   List
   Vector
addActionListener method of JTextField
addAll method
   Collections 2nd
   List
addCookie method of HttpServletResponse
addFirst method of LinkedList
Adding double values
addItemListener method of AbstractButton
addition program that displays the sum of two numbers
addKeyListener method of Component
addLast method of LinkedList
addListSelectionListener method of JList
addMouseListener method of Component
addMouseMotionListener method of Component
addPoint method of Polygon 2nd
addSeparator method of JMenu
addTab method of JTabbedPane
addTableModelListener method ofTableModel
addWindowListener method of Window
"administrative" section of the computer
ADT (abstract data type)
Advanced Java 2 Platform How to Program 2nd 3rd 4th
aggregation
Airline Reservation System
algebraic notation
algorithm 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
  binary search
  bubble sort 2nd
  bucket sort
  insertion sort
  linear search
  merge sort
  quicksort
  recursive binary search
  recursive linear search
  selection sort
algorithm in Java Collections Framework
aligning decimal points in output
allclasses-frame.html generated by javadoc
alphabetizing
ALU
anagram
Analog Clock exercise
Analysis stage of the software life cycle
Analytical Engine

Anchor field of GridBagConstraints
AND 2nd
and method of BitSet
angle brackets (< and >)
animated shape
animating a series of images 2nd
animation 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Animation exercise
animation speed
Animator applet
anonymous inner class 2nd 3rd
ANSI C standard document
anti-aliasing
Apache HTTP Server 2nd
Apache Software Foundation 2nd
Apache Tomcat server
apache.towardex.com/jakarta/tomcat-5/v5.0.24/bin/
API
API (application programming interface)
API links
  Deprecated
  Help
  Index
  Tree
append method of StringBuffer
Apple Computer, Inc. 2nd
applet 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
applet .class file
Applet class
  getAudioClip method
  getCodeBase method
  getDocumentBase method
  getImage method
getParameter method
play method
showStatus method
applet container 2nd
applet display area
applet HTML element
applet parameter
Applet that draws a string
AppletContext interface
showDocument method
applets directory
JDK sample applets
applets in the public domain
appletviewer

Applet menu
Quit menu item
Reload menu item

appletviewer applet container 2nd
application 2nd 3rd

command-line arguments
application implicit object
application programming interface (API) 2nd
application scope 2nd
application servers
arc 2nd
arc angle
arc width and arc height for rounded rectangles
Arc2D class

CHORD constant
OPEN constant
PIE constant

Arc2D.Double class 2nd
architectural patterns 2nd 3rd
archive files
Arcs displayed with drawArc and fillArc
ArcsJPanel.java
ArcTest applet
area of a circle
args parameter
argument index 2nd 3rd
argument list
argument promotion
argument to a method 2nd
arithmetic and logic unit (ALU)
arithmetic calculation
arithmetic mean
arithmetic operators
arithmetic overflow 2nd
ArithmeticException class 2nd
array 2nd 3rd 4th
array length field
pass an array element to a method
pass an array to a method
array initializer
for multidimensional array
nested
array of one-dimensional arrays 2nd
array-access expression
in the context of generics
array-creation expression
ArrayBlockingQueue class
arraycopy method of System
ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException
ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException class 2nd
ArrayList class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
add method 2nd
toString method
Arrays class
asList method 2nd 3rd
binarySearch method
equals method
fill method
sort method
Arrays class methods
arrow
arrow key
arrowhead in a UML sequence diagram 2nd
Artist exercise
ascending order
ASC in SQL 2nd
ascent
ASCII (American Standard Code for Information Interchange) character set 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
asList method of Arrays 2nd 3rd
assembler
assembly language
assert keyword
assert statement
assertion
assign a value to a variable
assigning superclass and subclass references to superclass and subclass variables
assignment operator, = 2nd 3rd
assignment operators
assignment statement
associate
left to right
right to left 2nd
association (in the UML) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
name
associativity of operators 2nd 3rd
left to right
right to left 2nd
asterisk (*)
asynchronous call
asynchronous event
ATM (automated teller machine) case study 2nd
ATM class (ATM case study) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th 12th 13th 14th
ATM system 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
attribute 2nd 3rd 4th

   compartment in a class diagram
   declaration in the UML 2nd
   in the UML 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th 12th
   name in the UML

audio clip 2nd 3rd
AudioClip interface
   loop method
   play method
   stop method

Australian National Botanic Gardens Web site

Author: note
authorISBN table of books database 2nd
authors table of books database 2nd
auto-unboxing
autobox an int
autoboxing 2nd
autoFlush attribute of page directive
autoincremented
autoincremented column
automated teller machine (ATM) 2nd 3rd
   user interface
automatic garbage collection
Automatic Jigsaw Puzzle Generator exercise
automatic scrolling
average 2nd 3rd
await method of Condition 2nd 3rd
AWT (Abstract Window Toolkit)
   components
AWTEvent class
B conversion character
b conversion character
B programming language
Babbage, Charles
Background Audio exercise
background color 2nd
backslash, (\) 2nd 3rd
backtracking
BalanceInquiry class (ATM case study) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th 12th 13th 14th 15th 16th 17th 18th
Balking design pattern 2nd
bandwidth
BankDatabase class (ATM case study) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th
Banner (banner.html) to include across the top of the XHTML document created by Fig. 27.8
bar chart 2nd 3rd 4th
  printing program
bar of asterisks 2nd
BarChart applet
base case 2nd 3rd 4th
base class
base of a number
baseline of the font
BasePlusCommissionEmployee class derived from CommissionEmployee
BasePlusCommissionEmployee class represents an employee that receives a base salary in addition to a commission
BasePlusCommissionEmployee3 inherits protected instance variables from CommissionEmployee2
BasePlusCommissionEmployee4 class that extends CommissionEmployee3, which provides only private instance variables
BASIC (Beginner's All-Purpose Symbolic Instruction Code) 2nd
Basic Latin block
BasicStroke class 2nd 3rd
  CAP_ROUND constant
  JOIN_ROUND constant
batch file
batch processing
BCPL programming language
beanName attribute of  
<jsp:useBean> action
beforeFirst method of CachedRowSet
Beginner’s All-Purpose Symbolic Instruction Code (BASIC)
behavior 2nd 3rd
behavior of the system 2nd 3rd 4th
behavioral design patterns 2nd 3rd 4th
behaviors in the UML
Bell Laboratories
BevelBorder class
  LOWERED constant
bidirectional iterator
bidirectional navigability in the UML
Big O notation 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
BigDecimal class 2nd
BigInteger class
binary
binary (base 2) number system
binary arithmetic operators
binary digit (bit)
binary file
binary integer
binary operator 2nd 3rd
binary search
  algorithm 2nd 3rd
tree 2nd
  tree containing 12 values
binary tree 2nd
delete
  graphical representation
search
sort
Binary-tree test program
**binarySearch** method
  of **Arrays**
  of **Collections** 2nd 3rd
**BindException** class
binding a server to a port 2nd
bit (binary digit)
**BitSet** class
  **and** method
  **clear** method
  **equals** method
  **get** method
  **or** method
  **set** method
  **size** method
  **toString** method
  **xor** method
Bitwise AND, bitwise inclusive OR, bitwise exclusive OR and bitwise complement operators
bitwise assignment operators
  &= (bitwise AND)
  <<= (left shift)
  >>= (signed right shift)
  >>>= (unsigned right shift)
  ^= (bitwise exclusive OR)
  |= (bitwise inclusive OR)
bitwise complement (~) 2nd
bitwise exclusive OR (^) 2nd
bitwise exclusive OR operator, ^
bitwise operators
Bitwise shift operations
Blackjack game
Blink applet

blink speed

block 2nd 3rd 4th 5th

block increment of a JSlider

block until connection received

blocked state

blocking call

blocking indefinitely

BlockingQueue interface

  put method 2nd

  take method 2nd

body

  of a class declaration

  of a loop

  of a method

  of an if statement

Bohm, C. 2nd

Boolean constant of Font 2nd

Booch, Grady 2nd

book-title capitalization 2nd

books database

  table relationships

boolean

  primitive type

  promotions

Boolean attribute in the UML

Boolean class

boolean expression

boolean expression

boolean logical AND, & 2nd

boolean logical exclusive OR, ^ 2nd

  truth table

boolean logical inclusive OR, | 2nd

boolean primitive type 2nd

border of a GUI component
BorderLayout class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
CENTER constant 2nd 3rd
EAST constant 2nd 3rd
NORTH constant 2nd 3rd
SOUTH constant 2nd 3rd
WEST constant 2nd 3rd
BOTH constant of GridBagConstraints
bounding box for an oval
bounding rectangle 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Box class 2nd 3rd
createGlue method
createHorizontalBox method 2nd
createHorizontalGlue method
createHorizontalStrut method
createRigidArea method
createVerticalBox method
createVerticalGlue method
createVerticalStrut method
X_AXIS constant
Y_AXIS constant
boxing
boxing conversion
BoxLayout class 2nd 3rd
BoxLayout layout manager
braces ({ } and {} ) 2nd 3rd 4th
braces not required
braces, {} braille screen reader
branch
branch in the UML
break
break statement 2nd 3rd 4th
Bridge design pattern 2nd 3rd
brightness
brittle software
browser

browser friendly

browsing

brute force 2nd

Knight's Tour

bubble sort 2nd

improving performance

bucket sort

buffer 2nd 3rd

buffer attribute of page directive

buffer empty

BufferedImage class

  createGraphics method

  TYPE_INT_RGB constant

BufferedInputStream class

BufferedOutputStream class 2nd

  flush method

BufferedReader class 2nd

  readLine method

BufferedWriter class

Builder design pattern

building block appearance

building block approach to creating programs 2nd

building blocks

Building Your Own Compiler 2nd

Building Your Own Computer

built-in type

bulk operation

business logic tier

business software

business-critical computing

button

button label

ButtonGroup class 2nd 3rd

  add method

byte

Byte class
byte keyword
byte primitive type 2nd 3rd
promotions
byte-based stream
ByteArrayInputStream class
ByteArrayOutputStream class
bytecode 2nd 3rd
bytecode verifier
Index

[SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [V] [W] [X] [Y] [Z]

C programming language
C# programming language
C++
cache
CachedRowSet interface 2nd
  acceptChanges method
  beforeFirst method
  execute method
  insertRow method
  moveToCurrentRow method
  moveToInsertRow method
  setCommand method
  setPassword method
  setUrl method
  setUsername method
  updateString method
Calculating values to be placed into elements of an array
calculations 2nd 3rd
Calendar class
  getInstance method
Calendar/Tickler File exercise
call method of Callable
call-by-reference
call-by-value
Callable interface
  call method
Calling Attention to an Image exercise
calling method (caller) 2nd 3rd
Cancel button

CANCEL_OPTION constant of JFileChooser

CannotRealizePlayerException exception

canRead method of File
canWrite method of File

CAP_ROUND constant of BasicStroke

capacity
capacity increment of a Vector

capacity method

    of StringBuffer

    of Vector
capacity of a StringBuffer

Caps Lock key
card games
card shuffling and dealing

    with Collections method shuffle

CardTest applet
caretaker object
carriage return
carry bit

Cartesian coordinates
case

case sensitive
case sensitivity of Java commands

CashDispenser class (ATM case study)
casino

cast

    downcast
cast operator

catalina_home environment variable

catch

    block
catch clause

    keyword

catch an exception
catch superclass exception type
catch-or-declare requirement
Catching Exceptions Using Class Exception exercise
Catching Exceptions Using Outer Scopes exercise
Catching Exceptions with Superclasses exercise
cd to change directories
ceil method of Math
Celsius 2nd
equivalent of a Fahrenheit temperature
CENTER constant of BorderLayout 2nd
CENTER constant of FlowLayout
CENTER constant of GridBagConstraints
center mouse button click
centered
central processing unit (CPU)
Chain-of-Responsibility design pattern 2nd 3rd
chained exception 2nd
change directories
ChangeEvent class
ChangeListener interface
stateChanged method
changing look-and-feel of a Swing-based GUI
char
array
keyword
primitive type 2nd
promotions
char keyword
character 2nd
constant
literal
set 2nd 3rd
string
Character class 2nd 3rd
charValue method
digit method
forDigit method
isDefined method
isDigit method
isJavaIdentifierPart method
isJavaIdentifierStart method
isLetter method
isLetterOrDigit method
isLowerCase method
isUpperCase method
non-static methods
static conversion methods
static methods for testing characters and converting character case
toLowerCase method
toUpperCase method
character-based stream
CharArrayReader class
CharArrayWriter class
charAt method of String 2nd
of StringBuffer
CharSequence interface
charValue method of Character
check box
check protection exercise
checkbox
checkbox label
checked exception
checkerboard pattern
exercise
Checkers game
Checking with assert that a value is within range
Chess game
chess-playing program
child
Choosing colors with JColorChooser

Circles Using Class Ellipse2D.Double exercise

circular buffer
circumference 2nd 3rd

CJK Unified Ideographs block

clarity 2nd
class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th
class

    class keyword
    constructor
declaration 2nd 3rd
declare a method
    file
    get method
    instance variable 2nd 3rd
    instantiating an object
    name 2nd 3rd 4th
    set method

user defined

    class attribute of <jsp:useBean> action
    class average
    class cannot extend a final class
    Class class 2nd 3rd 4th
        forName method
        getName method 2nd
        getResource method

Class declaration with one method
Class declaration with one method that has a parameter

class diagram

    for the ATM system model 2nd
in the UML 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th

class hierarchy 2nd
class instance creation expression 2nd
class keyword 2nd
class library 2nd 3rd 4th
class loader 2nd 3rd
class member
class method
class variable 2nd
class-average problem 2nd 3rd"class-wide" information
ClassCastException class

classes

AbstractButton 2nd 3rd 4th
AbstractCollection
AbstractList
AbstractMap
AbstractQueue
AbstractSequentialList
AbstractSet
AbstractTableModel 2nd
ActionEvent 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
ActionListener
Applet
Arc2D
Arc2D.Double
ArithmeticException
ArrayBlockingQueue
ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException
ArrayList 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Arrays
AWTEvent
BasicStroke 2nd 3rd
BevelBorder
BigDecimal
BigInteger
BindException
Boolean
BorderLayout
Box
BoxLayout
BufferedImage
BufferedInputStream
BufferedOutputStream
BufferedReader
BufferedWriter
ButtonGroup
Byte
ByteArrayInputStream
ByteArrayOutputStream
Calendar
ChangeEvent
Character
CharArrayReader
CharArrayWriter
Class
ClassCastException
ClassNotFoundException
Collections
Color
Component
ComponentAdapter
ComponentListener
Container
Line2D 2nd
Line2D.Double
LineNumberReader
LinkedList
ListSelectionEvent
ListSelectionModel
Locale
Long
MalformedURLException
Manager
Matcher 2nd
Math
MemoryImageSource
MouseAdapter 2nd
MouseEvent 2nd 3rd
MouseMotionAdapter 2nd
MouseWheelEvent
MulticastSocket 2nd
NullPointerException
Number
ObjectInputStream 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
ObjectOutputStream
OutputStream 2nd 3rd
OutputStreamWriter
Pattern 2nd
PipedInputStream
PipedOutputStream
PipedReader
PipedWriter
PixelGrabber
Point
Polygon
PrintStream
PrintWriter
PriorityQueue
Properties
Random
RandomAccessFile
Reader
Rectangle2D
Rectangle2D.Double
ReentrantLock
RoundRectangle2D
RoundRectangle2D.Double
RuntimeException
Scanner
ServerSocket
ServletException
ServletOutputStream
Short
Socket
SocketException
SocketTimeoutException
SQLException
Stack
StackTraceElement
String
StringBuilder
StringIndexOutOfBoundsException
StringReader
StringTokenizer
StringWriter
SwingUtilities
SystemColor
TableModelEvent
TexturePaint
Thread
Throwable
Timer
TreeMap
TreeSet
Types
UIManager
UnknownHostException
UnsupportedOperationException
URL
Vector
Window
WindowAdapter
Writer

classes
Object
ClassName
this
ClassNotFoundException
class
classpath
CLASSPATH
environment variable

method
clear
of BitSet
of List
of PriorityQueue
clearRect
method of Graphics

click a button
click a tab
click count
click the mouse
click the scroll arrows
clicking the close box
client
client code
client computer
client connect to server
client connection
client object
client of a class 2nd 3rd 4th
client of an object
Client portion of a stream-socket connection between a client and a server
Client side of client/server Tic-Tac-Toe program
Client side of connectionless client/server computing with datagrams
client tier
client-server
application
chat
computing
relationship 2nd
ClientGUI subclass of JFrame for presenting a GUI for viewing and sending chat messages
clock 2nd
Clock applet
clone method of Object
Cloneable interface
cloning objects
deep copy
shallow copy
close a window 2nd
close method
of Formatter
of MulticastSocket
of ObjectOutputStream
of Socket
closed polygons
closed tour 2nd
closePath method of GeneralPath

COBOL (COmmon Business Oriented Language) code attribute of <applet> tag
code reuse 2nd
code value 2nd 3rd
coin tossing 2nd
collaboration 2nd 3rd
collaboration diagram in the UML 2nd
collaboration in the UML
collaborative applications
collection
collection hierarchy
collection implementation
Collection interface 2nd 3rd 4th
contains method

demonstrated via an ArrayList object
iterator method
collections
synchronized collection
unmodifiable collection
Collections class 2nd
addAll method 2nd
binarySearch method 2nd 3rd
copy method 2nd 3rd
disjoint method 2nd
fill method 2nd
frequency method 2nd
max method 2nd
min method 2nd
reverse method 2nd
reverseOrder method
shuffle method 2nd 3rd
sort method
wrapper methods
collections framework
Collections method `addAll`, `frequency` and `disjoint`
Collections method `binarySearch`
Collections method `sort`
Collections method `sort with a Comparator object`
Collections methods `addAll`, `frequency` and `disjoint`
Collections methods `reverse`, `fill`, `copy`, `max` and `min`
collision in a hashtable

**color**
Color changed for drawing
Color chooser dialog
Color class 2nd
  getBlue method 2nd 3rd
  getColor method
  getGreen method 2nd 3rd
  getRed method 2nd 3rd
  setColor method

**Color constant** 2nd 3rd
color manipulation
color swatches
Color.BLACK
Color.BLUE
Color.CYAN
Color.DARK_GRAY
Color.GRAY
Color.GREEN
Color.LIGHT_GRAY
Color.MAGENTA
Color.ORANGE
Color.PINK
Color.RED
Color.WHITE
Color.YELLOW

**Coloring Black-and-White Photographs and Images exercise**
ColorJPanel.java
colors
column 2nd 3rd
column number in a result set
columns of a two-dimensional array
com.mysql.jdbc.Driver
com.sun.rowset package
combo box 2nd
comma (,)
comma (, formatting flag
comma in an argument list
comma-separated list
  of arguments 2nd
  of parameters
command button
Command design pattern 2nd 3rd
command line
Command Prompt
command prompt
command window 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
command-and-control software system 2nd
command-line argument 2nd 3rd
comment 2nd 3rd
  end-of-line (single-line), // 2nd 3rd
    Javadoc
      multiple line
        single line 2nd 3rd
commercial applications
commercial data processing
commission 2nd
CommissionEmployee class derived from Employee
CommissionEmployee class represents an employee paid a percentage of gross sales
CommissionEmployee class test program
CommissionEmployee2 with protected instance variables
CommissionEmployee3 class uses methods to manipulate its private instance variables
CommissionEmployee4's constructor outputs text
Common Object Request Broker Architecture (CORBA)
Common Programming Error
communication diagram in the UML 2nd 3rd
Comparable interface 2nd 3rd 4th
compareTo method
Comparable<T> interface
   compareTo method
Comparator interface
Comparator object 2nd 3rd 4th
   in sort
compareTo method
   of Comparable 2nd
   of Comparable<T>
   of String 2nd
comparing String objects
comparison operator
compilation error 2nd
compilation process
compile 2nd
compile a program
compile method of Pattern
compile-time error 2nd
compile-time type safety
compiled applet class
compiler
compiler error
compiler options
   -d
compiling an application with multiple classes
Complex
complex curve
complex number
Complex Numbers (exercise)
complexity theory
component 2nd 3rd
Component class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th
   addKeyListener method
   addMouseListener method
   addMouseMotionListener method
getMinimumSize method 2nd
getPreferredSize method 2nd
repaint method
requestFocus method
setBackground method
setFont method
setLocation method
setSize method
setVisible method 2nd

component in the UML
group of an array
ComponentAdapter class
ComponentListener interface 2nd
Composite design pattern 2nd 3rd
composite structure diagram in the UML
composition 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Composition demonstration
Compound
compound assignment operators 2nd
compound interest 2nd 3rd

calculations with for
computation
computer
computer dump
computer network
computer program 2nd
computer programmer 2nd
computer simulator
computer-assisted instruction (CAI) 2nd
computerized scientific notation
computers in education
Computing the sum of the elements of an array
concat method of String
concatenate strings
concatenation
Concentric Circles Using Class Ellipse2D.Double exercise
Concentric Circles Using Method drawArc exercise
course class
course subclass
concurrency
design patterns 2nd
concurrent access to a Collection by multiple threads
concurrent operations
concurrent programming
concurrent threads
condition 2nd
Condition interface 2nd
await method 2nd
signal method 2nd
signalAll method
condition variable
conditional AND, &&
conditional expression 2nd
conditional operator, ?: 2nd
conditional OR, ||
truth table
config implicit object
confusing the equality operator == with the assignment operator =
connect to a database
connect to server 2nd
connected lines
connected RowSet
connection 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
connection between client and server terminates
connection between Java program and database
Connection interface 2nd 3rd 4th
createStatement method 2nd
connection port
connection-oriented service
connection-oriented, streams-based transmission
connectionless service 2nd
connectionless transmission
consistent state
console window
constant
constant (declare in an interface)
constant integral expression
constant run time
constant variable

declare
must be initialized

counts

Math.PI

constructor
naming
parameter list
constructor call order
Constructor Detail section in API
constructor failure
Constructor failure exercise
Constructor Summary section in API
Constructor used to initialize GradeBook objects
constructors cannot specify a return type
consume memory
consumed
consumer
consumer electronic device
consumer thread
container class
Container class
setLayout method
validate method
container for menus
ContainerAdapter class
ContainerListener interface
contains method

of Collection
of Vector
containsKey method of Map
content pane 2nd
setBackgroundColor method
contentType attribute of page directive
context root 2nd 3rd
context-sensitive popup menu
continue
continue statement 2nd 3rd
  terminating a single iteration of a for statement
control statement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
  nesting 2nd
control variable 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
control-statement
  stacking 2nd
controller (in MVC architecture)
controlling expression of a switch
controls
converge on a base case
conversion character
% 
A 
a
B 
b
C 
C 
c 
d
E 
e 
E 
e 
e 
f
G 
g
conversion suffix character
convert
  a binary number to decimal
  a hexadecimal number to decimal
  an integral value to a floating-point value
  an octal number to decimal
  between number systems
Cookie class 2nd
countToken method of Collections 2nd 3rd
copying objects
  deep copy
  shallow copy
Copying selected text from one text area to another
Copying the Book Examples from the CD-ROM (box)
CORBA Packages
core package
correct in a mathematical sense
cos method of Math
cosine
counter 2nd 3rd 4th
counter-controlled repetition 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th
  with the for repetition statement
  with the while repetition statement
countTokens of StringTokenizer
coupling 2nd
CPU
craps (casino game) 2nd 3rd 4th
create a package
create a reusable class
create a Socket
create an object of a class
create new classes from existing class declarations
createGlue method of Box
createGraphics method of BufferedImage
createHorizontalBox method of Box 2nd
createHorizontalGlue method of Box
createHorizontalStrut method of Box
CreateRandomFile.java
CreateRandomFileTest.java
createRealizedPlayer method of Manager
createRigidArea method of Box
CreateSequentialFile.java
CreateSequentialFileTest.java
createStatement method of Connection 2nd
CreateTextFile.java
CreateTextFileTest.java
createVerticalBox method of Box
createVerticalGlue method of Box
createVerticalStrut method of Box
Creating a GradeBook object and passing a String to its displayMessage method
Creating a sequential text file
Creating an object of GradeBook and calling its displayMessage method
creating and initializing an array
Creating and manipulating a GradeBook object
creational design patterns 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Credit inquiry program
credit limit on a charge account
CreditInquiry.java
CreditInquiryTest.java
cross-platform GUI development
Crossword exercise
crossword puzzle generator
cte.rockhurst.edu/burgerk/research/scramble/paper.pdf
ctrl key
Ctrl key 2nd
currentThread method of Thread
cursor 2nd
curve 2nd
Custom Comparator class that compares two Time2 objects
custom drawing area
custom tag
custom-tag library
customized subclass of JPanel
cyclic gradient
dangling-else problem 2nd
dashed lines
data
data abstraction
data entry
data hiding
data hierarchy 2nd
data in support of actions
data integrity
data representation
data structure 2nd 3rd 4th
database 2nd 3rd 4th
   access
table
tier
database management system (DBMS) 2nd
datagram
   packet 2nd
   socket 2nd
datagram packet
DatagramPacket class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
  getAddress method
  getData method
  getLength method
  getPort method
DatagramSocket class
  receive method
  send method 2nd
DataInput interface
DataInputStream class
DataOutput interface

  writeBoolean method
  writeByte method
  writeBytes method
  writeChar method
  writeChars method
  writeDouble method
  writeFloat method
  writeInt method
  writeLong method
  writeShort method
  writeUTF method

DataOutputStream class
date
Date and Time Class (exercise)
date and time compositions
Date class
  declaration
  exercise
date formatting
DateFormat class
DB2
DBCS (double byte character set)
De Morgan's Laws
deadlock 2nd 3rd 4th
dealing
debug
debugger
  -g compiler option
  breakpoint
  clear command
  cont command
defined
exit command
inserting breakpoints
jdb command
logic error
next command
print command 2nd
run command 2nd
set command 2nd
step command
step up command
step up command
stop command 2nd
suspending program execution
unwatch command 2nd
watch command
decimal (base 10) number system
decimal digit
decimal integer
decimal integer formatting
decimal point
decision 2nd 3rd 4th
decision in the UML
decision symbol
declaration 2nd 3rd
class 2nd
import 2nd
method
declare a constant variable
declare a method of a class
declare constants with interfaces
Decorator design pattern 2nd 3rd 4th
decrement
decrement operator, --
decrypt
dedicated drawing area
deep copy
deeply nested statement
DEFAULT
default capacity increment
default case
default case in a switch 2nd
default constructor 2nd 3rd
of an anonymous inner class
default exception handler
default keyword
default layout of the content pane
default package
default servlet
default upper bound (Object) of a type parameter
default value 2nd
define a custom drawing area
definite repetition
degree
Deitel Buzz Online newsletter
deitel@deitel.com
DeitelMessenger application for participating in a DeitelMessengerServer chat session
DeitelMessengerServer application for managing a chat room
delegation
delegation event model
delete method of StringBuffer
delete request
DELETE SQL statement 2nd
deleteCharAt method of String
deleting an item from a binary tree
delimiter for tokens
delimiter string
demo directory
Demonstrating the fractal user interface
demonstration applets
Department of Defense (DOD)
dependent condition
deploy a Web application

deployment descriptor

description element

init-param element

servlet element

servlet-class element

servlet-mapping element

servlet-name element

url-pattern element

web-app element

welcome-file element

welcome-file-list element

Deployment descriptor (web.xml) for the jhttp6 Web application

Deposit class (ATM case study)

DepositSlot class (ATM case study)

Deprecated link in API

Deprecated note

deprecated-list.html generated by javadoc

dequeue operation of queue

derived class

descending order

descending sort (DESC)

descent

description element

descriptive words and phrases

deserialized object

design pattern

design process

design specification

destroy method

of JApplet

of Servlet

Determining points C and D for level 1 of "Lo fractal"
dialog
dialog box 2nd 3rd
Dialog font
DialogInput font
diameter 2nd 3rd
diamond 2nd
diamond symbol
dice game
Dice Rolling
Die-rolling program using arrays instead of switch
digit 2nd 3rd 4th
digit method of Character
Digital Clock exercise
digitally signed applets
digits reversed
Dimension class 2nd
dir command on Windows
direct superclass 2nd
direct-access application
direct-access files
directive 2nd 3rd
DIRECTORIES_ONLY constant of JFileChooser
directory 2nd
directory name
directory separator
directory tree
disconnected RowSet
discussion forums
disjoint method of Collections 2nd
disk 2nd 3rd
drive
I/O completion
space
dismiss a dialog
dispatch
   a thread
   an event
display a line of text
display area
display monitor 2nd
display output
display-name element 2nd
Displaying multiple lines with method System.out.printf
Displaying Text in a Dialog Box
Displaying the authors table from the books database
Displaying the authors table using JdbcRowSet
Displaying three styles of labels
DisplayQueryResults for querying database books
dispose method of Window
DISPOSE_ON_CLOSE constant of WindowConstants
distance between values (random numbers)
distributed client/server application
distributed computing
dithering
DitherTest applet
divide by zero 2nd 3rd
divide-and-conquer approach 2nd 3rd
DivideByZeroNoExceptionHandling.java
DivideByZeroWithExceptionHandling.java
division 2nd
division by zero is undefined
do...while repetition statement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
document 2nd
document a program
doDelete method of HttpServlet
doGet method of HttpServlet 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
doHead method of HttpServlet
dollar signs ($)
doOptions method of HttpServlet
doPost method of HttpServlet

doPut method of HttpServlet

dot (.) separator

dotTrace method of HttpServlet

dotted line in the UML

Double class

parseDouble method

double equals, ==

double primitive type

doncast

doncasting

download Java

java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/download.jsp

drag the scroll box

dragging the mouse to highlight

draw arc

draw complex curve

draw graphics

draw lines and points

draw method of Graphics2D

draw rectangle

draw shapes

draw3DRect method of Graphics

drawArc method of Graphics

drawArcs.java

drawImage method of Graphics

Drawing "Lo fractal" using recursion

Drawing a rainbow
Drawing a smiley face
drawing color
Drawing Cubes exercise
Drawing lines from the corners
Drawing lines, rectangles and ovals
drawing on the screen
Drawing rectangles and ovals
Drawing Spirals exercise
Drawing Tetrahedrons exercise
drawLine method of Graphics 2nd
drawOval method of Graphics 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
drawPolygon method of Graphics 2nd
drawPolyline method of Graphics
drawRect method of Graphics 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
drawRoundRect method of Graphics
drawString method of Graphics 2nd 3rd
DrawTest applet 2nd
DriverManager class
getConnection method
drop-down list 2nd
dummy value
Duplicate Elimination
duplicate elimination
duplicate key
duplicate of datagram
duplicate values
Dynamic Audio and Graphical Kaleidoscope exercise
dynamic binding
dynamic content 2nd 3rd
dynamic data structure
dynamic memory allocation
dynamically resizable array 2nd
Index

SYMBOL [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [V] [W] [X] [Y] [Z]

EAST constant of BorderLayout 2nd
EAST constant of GridBagConstraints
echo character of JPasswordField
echoes a packet back to the client
edit a program
Edit menu
editor
editor program
efficiency of
  binary search
  bubble sort
  insertion sort
  linear search
  merge sort
  selection sort
efficient (Unicode design principle)
Eight Queens
  Brute Force Approaches
Eight Queens exercise
EL expression
  ${exp}$
element of an array 2nd
element of chance
elided UML diagram
eliminate resource leaks
Ellipse2D class
Ellipse2D.Double class 2nd
Ellipse2D.Float class
elipsis (... ) in a method parameter list
else
   keyword
emacs
e-mail
embed HTML element
Employee abstract superclass
Employee class hierarchy test program
Employee class that implements Payable
Employee class with references to other objects
employee identification number
empty set
empty statement (a semicolon, ;)
empty statement (semicolon by itself) 2nd 3rd
empty string
empty string ""
EmptyListException class
EmptyStackException class
declaration
en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Recursion
encapsulation 2nd 3rd
enclosing try block
encrypt
end cap
End key
"end of data entry"
end-of-file (EOF)
   indicator
   marker
end-of-line (single-line) comment, // 2nd 3rd
end-of-stream
EndOfFileException
endsWith method of String
English-like abbreviations
enhanced for statement
Enhanced Rectangle Class (exercise)
Enhancing Class Date (exercise)
Enhancing Class Time3 (exercise)
enqueue
enqueue operation of queue
ensureCapacity method of StringBuffer
Enter (or Return) key
ENTERED constant of nested class EventType
Enetering Text in a Dialog Box
entity-relationship diagram
entry point
enum
  constant
  constructor
  declaration
    EnumSet class
  keyword 2nd
  values method
enumeration
 enumeration constant
EnumSet class
  range method
environment variable
    CLASSPATH
    PATH
EOF (end-of-file)
equal likelihood
Equality and relational operators
equality operator == to compare String objects
equals method of Arrays
equals method of BitSet
equals method of Object
equals method of String
equalsIgnoreCase method of String 2nd 3rd
erasure 2nd 3rd
Error class
Error-Prevention Tip
error-processing code
errorPage attribute of page directive 2nd 3rd
escape character 2nd
Euler

evaluating expressions

event

event classes

event driven

event handler

event handling

event source

event ID

event listener

database accelerator class

database interface

database event

database event registration
database event source

database event-dispatching thread
database event-driven process
database event-handling thread

EventListenerList class

EventObject class

call method

event type

eventType nested class

ACTIVATED constant

ENTERED constant

EXITED constant

eventType nested class of HyperlinkEvent

examination-results problem

Examples

Account class with an instance variable of type double

AccountRecord class for serializable objects

AccountRecord maintains information for one account

AccountRecord.java
AccountRecordSerializable.java
Adapter classes used to implement event handlers

Adding `double` values
Addition program that displays the sum of two numbers

Animating a series of images
Applet that draws a string

ArcsJPanel.java

Arrays class methods
Assigning superclass and subclass references to superclass and subclass variables

Banner ([banner.html](#)) to include across the top of the XHTML document created by Fig. 27.8

Bar chart printing program

`BasePlusCommissionEmployee` class derived from `CommissionEmployee`

`BasePlusCommissionEmployee` class represents an employee that receives a base salary in addition to a commission

`BasePlusCommissionEmployee` test program

`BasePlusCommissionEmployee3` inherits protected instance variables from `CommissionEmployee2`

`BasePlusCommissionEmployee4` class that extends `CommissionEmployee3`, which provides only `private` instance variables

Binary-tree test program

Bitwise AND, bitwise inclusive OR, bitwise exclusive OR and bitwise complement operators

Bitwise shift operations

`BorderLayout` containing five buttons

`BoxLayout` layout manager

`break` statement exiting a `for` statement

Calculating values to be placed into elements of an array

Card Shuffling and Dealing

Card shuffling and dealing example with `Collections method shuffle`

Chained exceptions
Character class non-static methods
Character class static conversion methods
Character class static methods for testing characters and converting character case
Checking with assert that a value is within range
Choosing colors with JColorChooser
Class declaration with one method
Class declaration with one method that has a parameter
Client portion of a stream-socket connection between a client and a server
Client side of client/server Tic-Tac-Toe program
Client side of connectionless client/server computing with datagrams
ClientGUI subclass of JFrame for presenting a GUI for viewing and sending chat messages
Collection interface demonstrated via an ArrayList object
Collections method addAll, frequency and disjoint
Collections method binarySearch
Collections method sort
Collections method sort with a Comparator object
Collections methods reverse, fill, copy, max and min
Color changed for drawing
ColorJPanel.java
Command buttons and action events
CommissionEmployee class derived from Employee
CommissionEmployee class represents an employee paid a percentage of gross sales
CommissionEmployee class test program
CommissionEmployee2 with protected instance variables
CommissionEmployee3 class uses methods to manipulate its private instance variables
CommissionEmployee4's constructor outputs text
Composition demonstration
Compound-interest calculations with for
Computing the sum of the elements of an array
Constructor call order
Constructor used to initialize GradeBook objects
continue statement terminating an iteration of a for statement
Copying selected text from one text area to another
Copying the Examples folder
Counter-controlled repetition
Counter-controlled repetition with the for repetition statement
Counter-controlled repetition with the while repetition statement
CreateRandomFile.java
CreateRandomFileTest.java
CreateSequentialFile.java
CreateSequentialFileTest.java
CreateTextFile.java
CreateTextFileTest.java
Creating a GradeBook object and passing a String to its displayMessage method
Creating a sequential text file
Creating an object of GradeBook and calling its displayMessage method
Creating and manipulating a GradeBook object
Credit inquiry program
CreditInquiry.java
CreditInquiryTest.java
Custom Comparator class that compares two Time2 objects
Date class declaration
DeitelMessenger application for participating in a DeitelMessengerServer chat session
DeitelMessengerServer application for managing a chat room
Demonstrating the fractal user interface
Deployment descriptor (web.xml) for the jhttp6 Web application
Determining points c and d for level 1 of "Lo fractal"
Die-rolling program using arrays instead of switch
Displaying multiple lines with method System.out.printf
Displaying Text in a Dialog Box
Displaying the authors table from the books database
Displaying the authors table using JdbcRowSet
Displaying three styles of labels
DisplayQueryResults for querying database books
DivideByZeroNoExceptionHandling.java
DivideByZeroWithExceptionHandling.java
do...while repetition statement
DrawArcs.java
Drawing "Lo fractal" using recursion
drawing a rainbow
drawing a smiley face
Drawing lines from the corners
Drawing lines, rectangles and ovals
Drawing rectangles and ovals
DrawPolygons.java
Employee abstract superclass
Employee class hierarchy test program
Employee class that implements Payable
Employee class with references to other objects
EmptyListException class
EmptyStackException class declaration
Entering Text in a Dialog Box
Equality and relational operators
Exception-handling example with divide by zero
Factorial calculations with a recursive method
FactorialCalculator.java
FactorialCalculator.java (Iterative)
FactorialTest.java
FactorialTest.java (Iterative)
Fibonacci numbers generated with a recursive method
FibonacciCalculator.java
FibonacciTest.java
File class used to obtain file and directory information
FileDemonstration.java 2nd
FileDemonstrationTest.java 2nd
FileEditor class that encapsulates file-processing capabilities
FileEditor.java
final variable INCREMENT must be initialized
final variable initialized with a constructor argument 2nd
FlowLayout allows components to flow over multiple lines
Font metrics
FontJPanel.java
Fonts.java
Formatting date and time with conversion character \textit{t}
Formatting output with class 	exttt{Formatter}
forward2.jsp
Fractal.java
FractalJPanel.java
FullStackException class declaration
Generic class \texttt{Stack} declaration
Generic class \texttt{Stack} test program
Generic method \texttt{maximum} after erasure is performed by the compiler
Generic method \texttt{maximum} with an upper bound on its type parameter
Generic method \texttt{printArray} after erasure is performed by the compiler
GradeBook class that contains a \texttt{courseName} instance variable
GradeBook class using a two-dimensional array to store grades
GradeBook class using an array to store test grades
GradeBook class with a constructor that receives a course name
Graphics method \texttt{setFont} changes the drawing font
GridBagConstraints constants RELATIVE and REMAINDER
GridBagLayout layout manager
GridLayout containing six buttons
GuestBean stores information for one guest
GuestDataBean performs database access on behalf of guestBookLogin.jsp
HashSet used to remove duplicate values from an array of strings
HourlyEmployee class derived from Employee
HTML document in which the form's action invokes WelcomeServlet through the alias welcome1 specified in web.xml
HTML document in which the form's action invokes WelcomeServlet2 through the alias welcome2 specified in web.xml
HTML document in which the form's action invokes WelcomeServlet3 through the alias welcome3 specified in web.xml
HTML document to load SiteSelector applet
Image map
ImageMap.java
include.jsp
Inheritance examples 2nd
Inheritance hierarchy for university CommunityMembers
Initializing an array using commandline arguments
Initializing the elements of an array to zero
Initializing the elements of an array with an array initializer
Initializing two-dimensional arrays
Input data from user and validates it using the ValidateInput class
Inputting and outputting floating-point numbers with Account objects
Invoice class that implements Payable
Iterative factorial solution
Java program that uses Unicode encoding
Java2D general paths
Java2D shapes
JCheckBox buttons and item events
JColorChooser dialog
JComboBox that displays a list of image names
JLabels with text and icons
JList that allows multiple selections
JList that displays a list of colors
JMenus and mnemonics
JPanel subclass for drawing circles of a specified diameter
JPanel with five JButtons in a GridLayout attached to the SOUTH region of a BorderLayout
JPopupMenu for selecting colors
JRadioButton and ButtonGroups
JSlider value used to determine the diameter of a circle
JSP adrotator.jsp uses a Rotator bean to display a different advertisement on each request for the page
JSP clock2.jsp to include as the main content in the XHTML document created by Fig. 27.10
JSP expression inserting the date and time into a Web page
JSP forward1.jsp receives a firstName parameter, adds a date to the request parameters and forwards the request to forward2.jsp for further processing
JSP forward2.jsp receives a request (from forward1.jsp in this example) and uses the request parameters as part of the response to the client
JSP guestBookErrorPage.jsp responds to exceptions in guest-BookLogin.jsp and guestBookView.jsp
JSP guestBookLogin.jsp enables the user to submit a first name, a last name and an e-mail address to be placed in the guest book
JSP guestBookView.jsp displays the contents of the guest book
JSP includesDirective.jsp demonstrates including content at translation time with directive include
JTabbedPane used to organize GUI components
JTextField and JPasswordField
Key event handling
Koch Curve fractal
Labeled break statement exiting a nested for statement
Labeled continue statement terminating a nested for statement
Left, center and right mouse-button clicks
Left-justifying strings in a field
LinesRectsOvals.java
LinesRectsOvalsJPanel.java
Linked list manipulations
List method toArray
ListNode and List class declarations
Lists and ListIterators
"Lo fractal" at level 0
"Lo fractal" at level 1, with C and D points determined for level 2
"Lo fractal" at level 2
"Lo fractal" at level 2, dashed lines from level 1 provided
LoadAudioAndPlay.java
LoadImageAndScale.java
Loading a document from a URL into a browser
Loading and displaying an image in an applet
Loading and playing an AudioClip
Logical operators
LogoAnimator.java
LogoAnimatorJPanel.java
Look-and-feel of a Swing-based GUI
MenuOption.java 2nd
MessageListener interface that declares method messageReceived for receiving new chat messages
MessageManager interface that declares methods for communicating with a DeitelMessengerServer
MessageReceiver for listening for new messages from DeitelMessengerServer clients in separate threads
MessageSender for delivering outgoing messages to DeitelMessengerServer
Method calls made within the call `fibonacci(3)`
Method calls on the program execution stack
Methods `replaceFirst, replaceAll` and `split`

`Metrics.java`
`MetricsJPanel.java`
`MulticastSender` for delivering outgoing messages to a multicast group via `DatagramPackets`

Multiple document interface
Multitier Web-based survey using XHTML, servlets and JDBC
Nested-control statements: Examination-results problem
Overloaded constructors used to initialize `Time2` objects
Overloaded method declarations 2nd
Overloaded method declarations with identical parameter lists cause compilation errors
Package-access members of a class are accessible by other classes in the same package
`PacketReceiver` for listening for new multicast messages from `DeitelMessengerServer` in a separate thread

Passing a generic type `Stack` to a generic method
Passing arrays and individual array elements to methods
`Payable` interface declaration
`Payable` interface test program processing `Invoices` and `Employees` polymorphically

`Permutation.java`
`PermutationTest.java`

Poll analysis program

`Polygons` displayed with `drawPolygon` and `fillPolygon`

`PolygonsJPanel.java`

Predefined character classes
Preincrementing and postincrementing

`printArray` method in which actual type names are replaced by convention with the generic name `E`
Printing a line of text with multiple statements
Printing array elements using generic method `printArray`
Printing array elements using overloaded methods
Printing multiple lines of text with a single statement
Printing positive and negative numbers with and without the `+` flag
Printing the bits in an integer
PriorityQueue test program
Private members of `Time1` are not accessible
private superclass members cannot be accessed in subclass
Programmer-declared method `maximum` that has three `double` parameters
Properties class of package `java.util`
protected superclass members inherited into subclass
`BasePlusCommissionEmployee3`
Quantifiers used regular expressions
Queue processing program
QueueInheritance extends class List
Random access file created sequentially
RandomAccessAccountRecord class used in the random-access file programs
RandomAccessAccountRecord.java
Raw type test program
Reading a file by opening a connection through a URL
Reading data sequentially from a random-access file
ReadRandomFile.java
ReadRandomFileTest.java
ReadSequentialFile.java
ReadSequentialFileTest.java
ReadTextFile.java
ReadTextFileTest.java
Recursive evaluation of 5!
Redirecting requests to other resources
RedirectServlet.html document to demonstrate redirecting requests to
other resources

- Regular expressions checking birthdays
- Reordering output with argument index
- `ResultSetTableModel` enables a `JTable` to display the contents of a `ResultSet`
- Right-justifying integers in a field
- Rolling a six-sided die 6000 times
- `Rotator` bean that maintains a set of advertisements
- `SalariedEmployee` class derived from `Employee`
- `SalariedEmployee` class that implements interface `Payable`
- `getPaymentAmount`
- `Scope` class demonstrates field and local variable scopes
- `Scope` class demonstrating scopes of a field and local variables
- Scripting a JavaServer Page: `welcome.jsp`
- Sentinel-controlled repetition
- Sequential file created using `ObjectOutputStream`
- Sequential file read using an `ObjectInputStream`
- Sequential file reading using a `Scanner`
- Server portion of a client/server stream-socket connection
- Server side of client/server Tic-Tac-Toe program
- Server side of connectionless client/server computing with datagrams
- Set of recursive calls for `fibonacci(3)`
- `Shapes.java`
- `Shapes2.java`
- `Shapes2JPanel.java`
- `ShapesJPanel.java`
- Shifted and scaled random integers
- `ShowColors.java`
- `ShowColors2.java`
- `ShowColors2JFrame.java`
- Sieve of Eratosthenes, using a `BitSet`
- `SocketMessageManager` implementation of `MessageManager` for
communicating via Sockets and multicast DatagramPackets

Squares eliminated by placing a queen in the upper-left corner of a chessboard

Stack class of package java.util

Stack manipulation program

StackComposition uses a composed List object

StackInheritance extends class List

static class variable used maintain a count of the number of Employee objects in memory

Static import Math methods.

static member demonstration

String class character-manipulation methods

String class constructors

String class searching methods

String class startsWith and endsWith methods

String class substring methods

String class valueOf methods

String comparisons

String method concat

String methods replace, toLowerCase, toUpperCase, trim and toCharArray

String permutations generated with a recursive method

StringBuffer class append methods

StringBuffer class character-manipulation methods

StringBuffer class constructors

StringBuffer method length and capacity

StringBuffer methods insert and delete

StringTokenizer object used to tokenize strings

Summary of the 32 recursion examples and exercises in this text

Summing integers with the for statement

Superclass private instance variables are accessible to a subclass via public or protected methods inherited by the subclass
Survey.html document that allows users to submit survey responses to SurveyServlet

switch statement testing multiple input values

Table of contents (toc.html) to include down the left side of the XHTML document created by Fig. 27.10

Testing the factorial method
Testing the fibonacci method
Testing the iterative factorial solution
Testing the recursive method for permutations
Testing the Towers of Hanoi solution

Text-printing program

this used implicitly and explicitly to refer to members of an object

Throwable methods getMessage, getStackTrace and printStackTrace

Timel abstract data type implementation as a class

Timel class declaration maintains the time in 24-hour format

Timel object used in a program

Timel object used in an application

Time2 class with overloaded constructors

Towers of Hanoi for the case with four disks

TowersOfHanoi.java

TowersOfHanoiTest.java

Transaction-processing program

TransactionProcessor.java

TransactionProcessorTest.java

TreeNode and Tree class declarations for a binary search tree

try-catch-finally exception-handling mechanism

Two-dimensional array representation of a maze

Using an object to store a shape

Using floating-point conversion characters

Using integer conversion characters

Using SortedSets and TreeSet

Using the # flag with conversion characters o and x
Using the \( ( \) flag to place parentheses around negative numbers
Using the \( , \) flag to display number with thousands separator
Using the \( 0 \) (zero) flag
Using the character and string conversion characters
Using the enhanced \( \texttt{for} \) statement to total integers in an array
Using the space flag to print a space before non-negative values
Using variable-length argument lists

UsingChainedExceptions.java
UsingExceptions.java 2nd 3rd

Utility class that displays bit representation of an integer
Validating user information using regular expressions

Vector class of package java.util
Welcome file index.html
WelcomeServlet that responds to a simple HTTP get request
WelcomeServlet2 responds to a get request containing data
WelcomeServlet3 responds to a post request containing data

Wildcard test program

WriteRandomFile.java
WriteRandomFileTest.java
Writing data to a random-access file

exception 2nd
Exception class
exception handler
exception handling
exception implicit object 2nd 3rd
exception parameter
Exception-handling example with divide by zero

Exceptions
  ArrayIndexOutOfBoundsException
  CannotRealizePlayerException
  NoPlayerException
execute
eexecute an applet in a Web browser 2nd
execute method of CachedRowSet of Executor of JdbcRowSet
executeQuery method of Statement
executing an application execution stack
execution-time error Executor interface
execute method Executors class
newCachedThreadPool method
newFixedThreadPool method ExecutorService interface 2nd
shutdown method
submit method 2nd

Exercises

15 Puzzle
Accounts Payable System Modification
Airline Reservation System
Analog Clock
Animation
Artist
Automatic Jigsaw Puzzle Generator
Background Audio
Blackjack game
Calendar/Tickler File
Calling Attention to an Image
Card Shuffling and Dealing
Catching Exceptions Using Class Exception
Catching Exceptions Using Outer Scopes
Catching Exceptions with Superclasses
check protection
Checkers game
Chess game
Circles Using Class Ellipse2D.Double
Coloring Black-and-White Photographs and Images
Complex Numbers
Computer Simulator
computer-assisted instruction (CAI) 2nd
computing factorials
Concentric Circles Using Class Ellipse2D.Double
Concentric Circles Using Method drawArc
Constructor Failure
Converting Temperature
Crossword
crossword puzzle generator
Date and Time Class
Date Class
De Morgan's Laws
Dice Rolling
Digital Clock
Drawing Cubes
Drawing Spirals
Drawing Tetrahedrons
Duplicate Elimination
Dynamic Audio and Graphical Kaleidoscope
Eight Queens 2nd
Eight Queens Brute Force Approaches
Enhanced Rectangle Class
Enhancing Class Date
Enhancing Class Time3
Fibonacci Series
File Matching
File Matching with Multiple Transactions
File Matching with Object Serialization
Find the Minimum Value in an Array
Fireworks Designer
Floor Planner
Fractals
Game of Craps
Game of Pool
Generating Mazes Randomly
Greatest Common Divisor
Grid Using Class `Line2D.Double`
Grid Using Class `Rectangle2D.Double`
Grid Using Method `drawLine`
Grid Using Method `drawRect`
"guess the number" game
Hardware Store Inventory
Horse Race
`HugeInteger` Class
Image Flasher
Image Zooming
`JColorChooser` Dialog
Knight's Tour 2nd
Knight's Tour Brute Force Approach
Knight's Tour Closed Tour Test
Limericks 2nd
Machine Language Programming
Maze Generator and Walker
Maze Traversal Using Recursive Backtracking
Mazes of Any Size
Metric Conversion Program
Modifying the Internal Data Representation of a Class
Morse Code
Multimedia-Based Simpletron Simulator
One-Armed Bandit
Order of catch Blocks
Palindromes
Payroll System Modification
perfect number
Pie Chart
Pig Latin
Poker game
Print an Array
Print an Array Backwards
Printing Dates and Times
Printing Dates in Various Formats
Pythagorean Triples
Random Characters
Random Colors
Random Interimage Transition
Random Lines Using Class Line2D.Double
Random Triangles
Randomly Erasing an Image
Rational Numbers
Reaction Time/Reaction Precision Tester
Rectangle Class
Recursive power Method
Rethrowing Exceptions
Returning Error Indicators from Methods
Rotating Images
Rounding Numbers
Sales Commissions
SavingsAccount Class
Screen Saver
Screen Saver for Random Number of Lines
Screen Saver Using the Java2D API
Screen Saver Using Timer
Screen Saver with Shapes
Scrolling Image Marquee
Scrolling Marquee Sign
Selecting Shapes
Set of Integers
Shape Hierarchy
Shift Right
Shuffleboard
Sieve of Eratosthenes
Spelling Checker project
Student Poll
Telephone-Number Word Generator exercise
Text analysis
Text Flasher
"The Twelve Days of Christmas" Song
Tic-Tac-Toe
Time to Calculate Fibonacci Numbers
Tortoise and the Hare
Tortoise and the Hare Simulation
Total Sales
Turtle Graphics 2nd
Visualizing Recursion
Writing the Word Equivalent of a Check Amount
exists method of File
exit debugger command
exit method of System 2nd
exit point
of a control statement
EXITED constant of nested class EventType
exiting a for statement
exp method of Math
expanded submenu
explicit conversion
exponential format
exponential method
exponential notation
exponentiation
exponentiation operator
expression 2nd 3rd
Expression Language (EL) expressions
extend a class
extending a class
extends
extends attribute of page directive
extends keyword 2nd 3rd
extensibility
extensible language 2nd 3rd
eXtensible Markup Language (XML)
extension mapping
extensions mechanism (extending Java with additional class libraries)
external event
Facade design pattern 2nd 3rd
facade object
factorial 2nd 3rd
Factorial calculations with a recursive method
factorial method
FactorialCalculator.java
FactorialCalculator.java (Iterative)
FactorialTest.java
FactorialTest.java (Iterative)
factory
factory method
Factory Method design pattern 2nd 3rd
faculty.juniata.edu/kruse/cs2java/recurimpl.htm
Fahrenheit 2nd
Fahrenheit equivalent of a Celsius temperature
fairness policy of a lock
false keyword 2nd 3rd 4th
fatal error 2nd 3rd
fault tolerant
fault-tolerant program
fetch
fibonacci method
Fibonacci numbers generated with a recursive method
Fibonacci Series
Fibonacci series 2nd 3rd
defined recursively
FibonacciCalculator.java
FibonacciTest.java
field 2nd 3rd
Field Detail section in API
field of a class 2nd
Field Summary section in API
field width 2nd 3rd
FIFO (first-in, first-out)
file
file attribute of include directive
File class
canRead method
canWrite method
exists method
File methods
getAbsolutePath method
getName method
getParent method
getPath method
isAbsolute method
isDirectory method
isFile method 2nd
lastModified method
length method
list method
toURL method
used to obtain file and directory information
file extensions
.aif 2nd
.aiff 2nd
.au 2nd
.avi
.class
.gif
.jpeg
.jpg
.mid 2nd
file folder

file matching

exercise

program

with Multiple Transactions exercise

with Object Serialization exercise

File methods

file name

file processing 2nd

file server

file-open mode

file-position pointer 2nd

File.pathSeparator

FileDemonstration.java 2nd

FileDemonstrationTest.java 2nd

FileEditor class that encapsulates file-processing capabilities

FileEditor.java

FileInputStream class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th

FileNotFoundException class

FileOutputStream class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th

FileReader class 2nd

FILES_AND_DIRECTORIES constant of JFileChooser

FILES_ONLY constant of JFileChooser

FileWriter class 2nd

filing cabinet

fill method
of Arrays
of Collections 2nd
of Graphics2D 2nd 3rd 4th
fill method of Arrays
fill pattern
fill texture
fill with color
fill3DRect method of Graphics 2nd
fillArc method of Graphics 2nd 3rd
filled rectangle
filled shapes
filled three-dimensional rectangle
filled-in shape
fillOval method of Graphics 2nd 3rd 4th
fillPolygon method of Graphics 2nd 3rd
fillRect method of Graphics 2nd 3rd 4th
fillRoundRect method of Graphics
filter
filter stream
FilterInputStream class
FilterOutputStream class
final
class
keyword 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
local variable
variable
variable initialized with a constructor argument 2nd
variable must be initialized
final state in the UML 2nd 3rd
final value
finalize method 2nd 3rd
of Object
finally
block 2nd 3rd
clause 2nd 3rd
keyword

find method of Matcher 2nd
Find the Minimum Value in an Array exercise
fireTableStructureChanged method of AbstractTableModel
Fireworks Designer exercise
first method of SortedSet
first pass
first refinement 2nd
first request to a servlet
first-in, first-out (FIFO) data structure 2nd
firstElement method of Vector
five-pointed star
fixed template text
fixed text
  in a format string 2nd
fixed-length record
flag
flags 2nd
float

  literal suffix F
Float class
float primitive type 2nd 3rd 4th
  promotions
floating-point constant
floating-point conversion specifiers
floating-point literal
  double by default
floating-point number 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th
  division
double precision
double primitive type
float primitive type
  single precision
floor method of Math
Floor Planner exercise
flow of control 2nd
flow of control in the if...else statement
FlowLayout allows components to flow over multiple lines
FlowLayout class 2nd
  CENTER constant
  LEFT constant
  RIGHT constant
  setAlignment method
flush attribute of <jsp:include> action
flush method
  of BufferedOutputStream
  of ObjectOutputStream
flush the output buffer
Flyweight design pattern
focus
focus for a GUI application 2nd
FocusAdapter class
FocusListener interface
font
  manipulation
  name
  size
  style
Font class 2nd 3rd
  BOLD constant 2nd
  getFamily method 2nd
  getName method 2nd
  getSize method 2nd
  getStyle method 2nd
  isBold method 2nd
  isItalic method 2nd
  isPlain method 2nd
  ITALIC constant 2nd
  PLAIN constant 2nd
font information
font manipulation
font metrics
   ascent
   descent
   height
   leading
font style

FontJPanel.java
FontMetrics class 2nd 3rd
   getAscent method
   getDescent method
   getFontMetrics method
   getHeight method
   getLeading method

Fonts.java
for repetition statement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th
activity diagram
example
header

forDigit method of Character
foreign key
form element of a Web page
formal parameter
formal type parameter
format method
   of Formatter 2nd
   of String 2nd 3rd
format specifier 2nd
   %%
   %.2f for floating-point numbers with precision
   %B
   %b
   %b for boolean values
format string 2nd 3rd
formatted output

%f format specifier
, (comma) formatting flag
0 flag 2nd
(minus sign) formatting flag
aligning decimal points in output
boolean values
comma (,) formatting flag
conversion character
date and time compositions
date and time conversion suffix characters
dates
exponential format
field width 2nd
floating-point numbers
inserting literal characters
integers in hexadecimal format
integers in octal format
left justification
left justify
minus sign () formatting flag
precision 2nd
right justification
right justify
rounding
times
Formatter class 2nd 3rd 4th
   close method
   format method 2nd
   toString method
FormatterClosedException

formatting
display formatted data
Formatting date and time with conversion character t
Formatting output with class Formatter
formulating algorithms
forName method of
FORTRAN (FORmula TRANslator)
forward a request 2nd
fractal
depth
exercises
Koch Curve
Koch Snowflake
level
order
self-similar property
strictly self-similar fractal
Fractal applet
Fractal.java
FractalJPanel.java
fragile software
FreeTTS
freetts.sourceforge.net/docs/index.php
frequency method of Collections 2nd
FROM SQL clause
FULL date format
full tour
FullStackException class declaration
fully qualified class name 2nd 3rd
function 2nd
function key
Future interface
get method
Future Splash (.spl) files
Index

SYMBOL [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [V] [W] [X] [Y] [Z]

Game of Craps
Game of Pool exercise
game playing
Gamma, Erich
"Gang of Four" 2nd 3rd 4th
garbage collection
garbage collector 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th

thread
gc method of System
GCD (greatest common divisor)
general class average problem
general path
generalities
generalization in the UML
GeneralPath class 2nd 3rd

closePath method

lineTo method

moveTo method

Generating Mazes Randomly exercise
generic class 2nd

Stack declaration

Stack test program
generic interface
generic method 2nd 3rd

Generic method maximum

after erasure is performed by the compiler

with an upper bound on its type parameter

Generic method printArray after erasure is performed by the compiler
generics 2nd
? (wildcard type argument)
actual type arguments
angle brackets (< and >)
bound parameter
default upper bound (Object) of a type parameter
erasure
formal type parameter
method
parameterized class
parameterized type
scope of a type parameter
type parameter
type parameter section
type variable
upper bound of a type parameter 2nd
upper bound of a wildcard
wildcard type argument
wildcard without an upper bound
wildcards 2nd 3rd
GenericServlet class
get a value
get method 2nd 3rd
get method
of BitSet
of Future
of List
of Map
get request 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th
getAbsolutePath method of File
getActionCommand method of ActionEvent 2nd
getAddress method of DatagramPacket
getAscent method of FontMetrics
getAudioClip method of Applet
getBlue method of Color
getByName method of InetAddress
getChars method of String
getChars method of StringBuffer
getClassName method of StackTraceElement
getClassName method of UIManager.LookAndFeelInfo
getClickCount method of MouseEvent
getCodeBase method of Applet
color method of Color
getColumnClass method of TableModel
getColumnClassName method of ResultSetMetaData
getColumnCount method of ResultSetMetaData
getColumnCount method of TableModel
getColumnCount method of ResultSetMetaData
getColumnCount method of TableModel
getColumnType method of ResultSetMetaData
getConnection method of DriverManager
getContentPane method of JFrame
getContentType method of HttpServletResponse
getControlPanelComponent method of Player
getCookies method of HttpServletRequest
getData method of DatagramPacket
generateDateTimeInstance method of DateFormat
getDelay method of Timer
getDescent method of FontMetrics
getDocumentBase method of Applet
generateEventType method of HyperlinkEvent
getFamily method of Font
getFileName method of StackTraceElement
getFont method of Graphics
getFontMetrics method of FontMetrics
setFontMetrics method of Graphics
green method of Color 2nd 3rd
getHeigh method
getHeight method of FontMetrics
getHostName method of InetAddress
setIcon method of JLabel
generate method of Applet
getInetAddress method of Socket
genInitParameter method of ServletConfig
getInputStream method of Socket 2nd
getInstalledLookAndFeels method of UIManager
getInstance method of Calendar
getInt method of ResultSet
getKeyChar method of KeyEvent
getKeyCode method of KeyEvent
getKeyModifiersText method of KeyEvent
getKeyText method of KeyEvent
getLeading method of FontMetrics
getLength method of DatagramPacket
getLineNumber method of StackTraceElement
getLocalAddr method of HttpServletRequest
getLocale method of request
getLocalHost method of InetAddress 2nd
getLocalName method of HttpServletRequest
getLocalPort method of HttpServletRequest
getMessage method of Throwable
getMethod method of StackTraceElement
getMinimumSize method of Component 2nd
getModifiers method of InputEvent
getName method of 2nd
getName method of File
getName method of Font 2nd
getName method of Thread
getObject method of ResultSet 2nd
getOutputStream method of HttpServletRequest
getOutputStream method of HttpServletResponse
getOutputStream method of HttpServletResponse
getOutputStream method of Socket
getX method of MouseEvent
getY method of MouseEvent
GIF (Graphics Interchange Format) 2nd
glass pane
glyph
golden mean
golden ratio
Good Programming Practices
Gosling, James
goto elimination
goto statement
GradeBook class that contains a courseName instance variable
GradeBook class using a two-dimensional array to store grades
GradeBook class using an array to store test grades
GradeBook class with a constructor that receives a course name
gradient
GradientPaint class 2nd 3rd
Grand, Mark
graph
graph information
graphical representation of a linked list
graphical user interface (GUI) 2nd 3rd 4th

clearRect method
draw3DRect method 2nd
drawArc method 2nd
drawImage method
drawLine method
drawOval method 2nd 3rd
drawPolygon method 2nd
drawPolyline method
drawRect method 2nd 3rd 4th
drawRoundRect method
drawString method 2nd 3rd
c foll3DRect method 2nd
fillArc method
fillOval method 2nd 3rd
fillPolygon method 2nd 3rd
fillRect method 2nd 3rd
fillRoundRect method
getColor method
g.getFont method 2nd
g.getFontMetrics method
setColor method 2nd 3rd
setFont method

graphics context
graphics demo
graphics in a platform-independent manner
Graphics Interchange Format (GIF) 2nd
Graphics methodsetFont changes the drawing font
Graphics2D class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
draw method
t fill method 2nd 3rd 4th
rotate method
setPaint method
setStroke method
translate method

graphicssoft.about.com/od/pixelbasedfreewin
GraphicsTest applet
GraphLayout applet
greatest common divisor (GCD) 2nd
Greatest Common Divisor exercise
greedy quantifier

g grid
g grid for GridBagLayout layout manager
Grid Using Class Line2D.Double exercise
Grid Using Class Rectangle2D.Double exercise
Grid Using Method drawLine exercise
Grid Using Method drawRect exercise
GridBagConstraints class 2nd
  anchor field
  BOTH constant
  CENTER constant
  EAST constant
  gridheight field
  gridwidth field
  gridx field
  gridy field
  HORIZONTAL constant
  instance variables
  NONE constant
  NORTH constant
  NORTHEAST constant
  NORTHWEST constant
  RELATIVE constant
  REMAINDER constant
  SOUTH constant
  SOUTHEAST constant
  SOUTHWEST constant
  VERTICAL constant
  weightx field
  weighty field
  WEST constant
GridBagConstraints constants RELATIVE and REMAINDER
GridBagLayout class 2nd 3rd 4th
  setConstraints method
GridBagLayout layout manager
gridheight field of GridBagConstraints
GridLayout class 2nd
GridLayout containing six buttons
gridwidth field of GridBagConstraints
gidx field of GridBagConstraints
gidy field of GridBagConstraints
gross pay
GROUP BY
group method of Matcher
grouper.ieee.org/groups/754/
guard condition 2nd 3rd
guard condition in the UML
Guarded Suspension design pattern 2nd
"guess the number" game 2nd
GuestBean stores information for one guest
GUI (Graphical User Interface)
  component 2nd 3rd
design tool
Index

[S SYMBOL] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [V] [W] [X] [Y] [Z]

h conversion character
h conversion character
half word
handle an exception
handshake point 2nd 3rd
hardcopy printer
hardware 2nd 3rd
Hardware Store Inventory exercise
has-a relationship 2nd 3rd
hash bucket
hash table 2nd
hash table collision
hash table collisions
hashCode method of Object
hashing
HashMap class 2nd
   keySet method
HashMaps and Maps
HashSet class
HashSet used to remove duplicate values from an array of strings
Hashtable class 2nd 3rd
hasMoreTokens method of StringTokenizer 2nd
hasNext method
   of Iterator 2nd
   of Scanner 2nd
hasPrevious method of ListIterator
head of a queue 2nd
head request
headSet method of TreeSet
heavyweight components
height
height of a rectangle in pixels
height of an applet in pixels
Helm, Richard
Help link in API
helpdoc.html generated by javadoc
helper method 2nd
heuristic
hexadecimal (base 16) number system 2nd 3rd
hexadecimal integer
"hidden" fields
hide a dialog
hide implementation details 2nd 3rd 4th
hierarchical boss method/worker method relationship
high-level language
Hiragana block
Home key
HORIZONTAL constant of GridBagConstraints
horizontal coordinate 2nd
horizontal gap space
horizontal glue
horizontal JSlider component
horizontal scrollbar policy
horizontal tab
HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_ALWAYS constant of JScrollPane
HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_AS_NEEDED constant of JScrollPane
HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_NEVER constant of JScrollPane
Horse Race exercise
host name 2nd
hot area
hot spot (image map)
hot spots in bytecode
HourlyEmployee class derived from Employee
HTML (HyperText markup Language) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th
applet element
document 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
form element
HTML document in which the form's action invokes WelcomeServlet through the alias welcome1 specified in web.xml
HTML document in which the form's action invokes WelcomeServlet2 through the alias welcome2 specified in web.xml
HTML document in which the form's action invokes WelcomeServlet3 through the alias welcome3 specified in web.xml
HTML document to load SiteSelector applet
HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) 2nd authentication information request
request type
httpd.apache.org/
HttpServlet class 2nd 3rd
doDelete method
doGet method
doHead method
doOptions method
doPost method
doPut method
doTrace method
HttpServletRequest interface 2nd 3rd 4th
cookies method
getLocalAddr method
getLocalName method
getLocalPort method
getParameter method
getParameterNames method
getParameterValues method
getSession method
HttpServletResponse interface 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
addCookie method
getContentType method
getOutputStream method
getWriter method
setContentType method
HttpSession interface
hue
HugeInteger Class
exercise
hybrid language
hyperlink 2nd 3rd 4th
HyperlinkEvent class
EventType nested class
getEventType method
getURL method
HyperlinkListener interface
hyperlinkUpdate method
hyperlinkUpdate method of HyperlinkListener
HyperText Markup Language (HTML) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th
HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP) 2nd
hypotenuse of a right triangle
Index

I/O performance enhancement
IBM Corporation 2nd 3rd
IBM Personal Computer
IBM WebSphere application server
icon
Icon interface
id attribute of <jsp:useBean> action
IDE
identifier 2nd
IEEE 754 floating point
if single-selection statement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th
    activity diagram
if...else double-selection statement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
    activity diagram
ignoring element zero
IllegalMonitorStateException
IllegalMonitorStateException class
IllegalStateException
image 2nd 3rd 4th
Image class 2nd
Image Flasher exercise
image map 2nd 3rd 4th
Image Zooming exercise
ImageIcon class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
    paintIcon method 2nd
ImageMap applet
ImageMap.java
ImageObserver interface
imaginary part
immutable 2nd 3rd
immutable String object
implement
   an interface 2nd 3rd
   multiple interfaces
implementation inheritance
implementation of a function
implementation phase
implementation process 2nd
implementation-dependent code
implements 2nd
implements keyword
implicit conversion
implicit object
   scope of
import attribute of page directive 2nd
import declaration 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
improve performance of bubble sort
include a resource
include directive 2nd 3rd
include.jsp
increment 2nd
   a control variable
   expression
   of a for statement
increment and decrement operators
increment operator, ++
indefinite postponement 2nd 3rd
indefinite repetition
indentation 2nd 3rd
   indent size
independent software vendor
independent software vendor (ISV)
index (subscript)
Index (subscript)
Index link in API
index of a JComboBox
index zero
Index_CD-all.html generated by javadoc
indexed lists
indexOf method of String
indexOf method of Vector
IOException class
indirect recursion
indirect recursive call
indirect superclass 2nd
industry.java.sun.com/products/jdbc/drivers
InetAddress class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
getByName method
getHostName method
getLocalHost method 2nd
infinite loop 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
infinite recursion 2nd 3rd
infinite series
infix notation
infix-to-postfix conversion algorithm
info attribute of page directive
information hiding 2nd 3rd
information tier
inherit
inherit interface
inheritance 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th
text
extends keyword 2nd
hierarchy 2nd
hierarchy for university CommunityMembers
implementation vs. interface inheritance
multiple
single
init method
of JApplet 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
of Servlet 2nd 3rd
init-param element
initial capacity of a Vector
initial state 2nd
initial state in the UML 2nd
initial value of an attribute
initial value of control variable
initialization
initialization at the beginning of each repetition
initialization parameter
initialization phase
initialize a variable in a declaration
initialize an applet
initialize applet's instance variables
initializer list
Initializing an array using command-line arguments
Initializing the elements of an array to zero
Initializing the elements of an array with an array initializer
Initializing two-dimensional arrays
initializing two-dimensional arrays in declarations
initiate an action
inlining method calls
inner class 2nd 3rd 4th
anonymous
can access the members of its top-level class
object of
relationship between an inner class and its top-level class
INNER JOIN SQL clause 2nd
innermost square brackets
inorder traversal
input data from the keyboard
Input data from user and validates it using the ValidateInput class
input device
input dialog 2nd 3rd
input/output
input/output operation
input/output operations
input/output package
InputEvent class 2nd 3rd
getModifiers method
isAltDown method 2nd
isControlDown method
isMetaDown method 2nd
isShiftDown method
InputMismatchException class 2nd
InputStream class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
InputStreamReader class
Inputting and outputting floating-point numbers with Account objects
insert an item into a container object
insert method of StringBuffer
insert row
INSERT SQL statement 2nd 3rd
insertElementAt method of Vector
inserting literal characters in the output
insertion point 2nd 3rd
insertion sort algorithm 2nd
insertRow method of CachedRowSet
instance (non-static) method
instance of a class
instance variable 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
instanceof operator 2nd
instant-access applications
instantiate
instantiating an object of a class
instruction execution cycle
int keyword
int primitive type 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
promotions
integer
division 2nd
mathematics
quotient
value
integer array
Integer class

parseInt method

toBinaryString method

integer conversion characters

integerPower method

integers

suffix L

integral expression

integrated development environment

Intel

intelligent consumer electronic device

interaction diagram in the UML

interaction overview diagram in the UML

interactions among objects

interest rate

interface

declaration

inheritance

tagging interface

interface keyword

interfaces

KeyListener

AppletContext

AudioClip

BlockingQueue

CachedRowSet

Callable

CallableStatement

ChangeListener

CharSequence

Cloneable

Collection

Comparable
Comparator
ComponentListener
Condition
Connection
ContainerListener
DataInput
DataOutput
ExecutorService
FocusListener
Future
HttpSession
HyperlinkListener
Icon
ImageObserver
ItemListener
Iterator
JdbcRowSet
KeyListener
List
ListIterator
ListSelectionListener
Lock
Map
MouseListener
MouseMotionListener
MouseWheelListener
ObjectInput
ObjectOutput
Interpreter design pattern
interrupt method of Thread
InterruptedException class
InterruptedException class 2nd
intersection of two sets
invariant
Invoice class that implements Payable
invoke a method 2nd
invokeLater method of SwingUtilities
IOException 2nd
IP address of the server
is-a relationship 2nd
isAbsolute method of File
isActionKey method of KeyEvent
isAltDown method of InputEvent 2nd
isBold method of Font 2nd
isControlDown method of InputEvent
isDefined method of Character
isDigit method of Character
isDirectory method of File
isELIgnored attribute of page directive
isEmpty method of Map
isEmpty method of Stack
isEmpty method of Vector
isEmpty method of Vector
isErrorPage attribute of page directive 2nd
isFile method of File 2nd
isItalic method of Font 2nd
isJavaIdentifierPart method of Character
isJavaIdentifierStart method of Character
isLetter method of Character
isLetterOrDigit method of Character
isLowerCase method of Character
isMetaDown method of InputEvent 2nd
isMetaDown method of MouseEvent
isPlain method of Font 2nd
isPopupTrigger method of MouseEvent
isRunning method of Timer
isSelected method of AbstractButton
isSelected method of JCheckBox
isShiftDown method of InputEvent
isThreadSafe attribute of page directive
isUpperCase method of Character
ITALIC constant of Font 2nd
ItemEvent class 2nd
    getStateChange method
ItemListener interface 2nd
        itemStateChanged method 2nd
itemStateChanged method of ItemListener 2nd
iterating (looping)
iteration
    of a loop 2nd 3rd
Iterative factorial solution
iterative model
iteratively
iterator 2nd
    class
Iterator
design pattern 2nd 3rd
Iterator interface
    hasNext method
next method
remove method
iterator method of Collection
Index

J2SE (Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition)
J2SE Development Kit (JDK) 2nd 3rd
J2SE Runtime Environment (JRE) 5.0
Jacobson, Ivar 2nd
Jacopini, G. 2nd
Jakarta project
jakarta-tomcat-5.0.25
jakarta.apache.org
JApplet class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
  destroy method
  init method 2nd 3rd 4th
  paint method 2nd 3rd 4th
  start method 2nd
  stop method

JARS
JARS site
java

Java
  download
  installation instructions 2nd
java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/api/java/util/Random.html
java.sun.com/j2se/5.0/docs/guide/extensions

Java 2
Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition
Java 2 Platform, Micro Edition
Java 2 Platform, Standard Edition (J2SE)
Java 2D (java.sun.com/products/java-media/2D/index.html)
Java 2D API 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Java 2D shapes
Java 3D API 2nd 3rd
Java Abstract Window Toolkit Event package
Java Abstract Window Toolkit Package (AWT)
Java Advanced Imaging API 2nd
Java API 2nd
Java API documentation 2nd 3rd 4th
Java API interfaces
Java applet
Java Applet Package
Java Applet Rating Service
Java Application Programming Interface (Java API) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Java application that uses Unicode encoding
Java class libraries
Java class library
Java Collections Framework
Java compiler
Java debugger
Java development environment
Java discussion forums
Java fonts
  Dialog
  DialogInput
  Monospaced 2nd
  SansSerif 2nd
  Serif 2nd
Java Foundation Classes (JFC)
Java HotSpot compiler
Java Image I/O API 2nd
Java Input/Output package
Java interpreter
Java keywords
Java Language Package
Java look and feel Graphics Repository
Java Media Framework (JMF) API 2nd 3rd
Java Native Interface (JNI)
Java Networking package
Java Plug-in
Java Security API
Java Sound API 2nd
Java Speech API 2nd
Java Swing Event Package
Java Swing GUI Components Package
Java Text Package
Java Utilities Package
Java Virtual Machine (JVM) 2nd 3rd
java.applet package
java.awt package 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th
java.awt.color package
java.awt.event package 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
java.awt.font package
java.awt.geom package
java.awt.image package
java.awt.image.renderable package
java.awt.print package
java.com
java.io package 2nd
java.lang package 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
imported in every Java program
java.net package 2nd
java.rmi package
java.sql package 2nd
java.sun.com 2nd 3rd 4th
java.sun.com/applets
java.sun.com/developer/onlineTraining/java3d 2nd
java.sun.com/developer/techDocs/hi/repository
java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/java/javaOO/final.html
java.sun.com/docs/books/tutorial/jdbc/index.html
java.sun.com/j2ee
java.sun.com/j2ee/1.4/docs/api/javax/servlet/http/HttpServletRequest.html
java.sun.com/j2ee/1.4/docs/api/javax/servlet/http/HttpServletResponse.html
java.sun.com/j2ee/j2sdkee/techdocs/api/javax/swing/JOptionPane.html
Java's view of a file of $n$ bytes
Java2D API
Java2D applet
Java2D directory
Java2D general paths
Java2D shapes
JAVA_HOME environment variable
JavaBean
javac compiler 2nd
Javadoc comment
javadoc options
  -author
  -d
  -link
javadoc tags
  @author
  @deprecated
  @param
  @return
  @see
  @since
  @throws
  @version
  {@link}
javadoc Tool Home Page at java.sun.com/j2se/javadoc
javadoc utility program
JavaServer Pages (JSP) 2nd
JavaServer Pages 1.1 specification
javax.media package
javax.servlet package 2nd 3rd 4th
javax.servlet.http package 2nd 3rd
javax.servlet.jsp package 2nd 3rd
javax.servlet.jsp.tagext package
javax.sql.rowset package
javax.swing    package  2nd  3rd  4th  5th  6th  7th  8th  9th  10th  11th  12th  13th  14th  15th
javax.swing.event    package  2nd  3rd  4th  5th
javax.swing.table    package

JButton     class  2nd  3rd  4th
JCheckBox     buttons and item events
JCheckBox     class  2nd
    isSelected    method
JCheckBoxMenuItem     class  2nd  3rd
JColorChooser
JColorChooser     class  2nd
    showDialog    method
JColorChooser     dialog
JColorChooser     Dialog exercise
JComboBox     class  2nd  3rd
    getSelectedIndex    method
    setMaximumRowCount    method
JComboBox     that displays a list of image names
JComponent     class  2nd  3rd  4th  5th  6th  7th  8th  9th  10th  11th
    getPreferredSize    method
    listenerList    field
    paintComponent    method  2nd  3rd  4th
    repaint    method
    setBorder    method
    setForeground    method
    setOpaque    method  2nd
    setToolTipText    method

jdbc    command
JDBC
    API  2nd  3rd  4th  5th
driver  2nd
JDBC driver type  2nd
    JDBC-to-ODBC bridge driver
    Native-API, partly Java driver
    Pure Java client to server driver
Pure Java driver
JDBC Web site
JDBC-Net pure Java driver (Type 3)
JDBC-to-ODBC bridge driver (Type 1) 2nd
jdbc:db2j:books
jdbc:mysql://localhost/books
JdbcOdbcDriver
JdbcRowSet interface
  execute method
  setCommand method
  setPassword method
  setUrl method
  setUsername method
JdbcRowSetImpl class
JDesktopPane class 2nd
JDialog class
JDK (J2SE Development Kit) 2nd
demo directory 2nd
JEditorPane class
  setPage method
JFC (Java Foundation Classes)
JFileChooser class
  CANCEL_OPTION constant
  FILES_AND_DIRECTORIES constant
  FILES_ONLY constant
  getSelectedFile method
  setFileSelectionMode method
  showOpenDialog method
JFileChooser dialog
JFrame class 2nd
  add method
  EXIT_ON_CLOSE
  getContentPane method
  setDefaultCloseOperation method
  setDefaultCloseOperation method 2nd
setJMenuBar method 2nd
setSize method
setVisible method
JFrame.EXIT_ON_CLOSE 2nd
Jigsaw Web server
JInternalFrame class 2nd
JIT compiler
JLabel class 2nd 3rd
getIcon method
getText method
setHorizontalAlignment method
setHorizontalTextPosition method
setIcon method 2nd
setText method
setVerticalAlignment method
setVerticalTextPosition method
JLabels with text and icons
JList class 2nd
addListSelectionListener method
getSelected Index method
getSelectedValues method
setFixedCellHeight method
setFixedCellWidth method
setListData method
setSelectionMode method
setVisibleRowCount method
JList that allows multiple selections
JList that displays a list of colors
JMenu class 2nd 3rd 4th
add method
addSeparator method
JMenuBar class 2nd 3rd 4th
add method
JMenuItem class 2nd 3rd
JMenu and mnemonics
JMF (Java Media Framework) API 2nd 3rd 4th
JNI (Java Native Interface) job
Johnson, Ralph
JOIN_ROUND constant of BasicStroke
joinGroup method of MulticastSocket
joining database tables
Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) 2nd
JOptionPane class 2nd 3rd 4th
constants for message dialogs
PLAIN_MESSAGE constant
showInputDialog method
showMessageDialog method
JOptionPane constants for message dialogs
JOptionPane.QUESTION_MESSAGE
JOptionPane.ERROR_MESSAGE
JOptionPane.INFORMATION_MESSAGE
JOptionPane.PLAIN_MESSAGE
JOptionPane.WARNING_MESSAGE
JPanel class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th
JPanel subclass for drawing circles of a specified diameter
JPanel with five JButtons in a GridLayout attached to the SOUTH region of a BorderLayout
JPasswordField class 2nd
getPassword method
JPEG (Joint Photographic Experts Group) 2nd
JPopupMenu class 2nd
show method
JRadioButton class 2nd 3rd
JRadioButtonMenuItem class 2nd 3rd 4th
JRadioButtons and ButtonGroups
JScrollPane class 2nd 3rd 4th
HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_ALWAYS constant
HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_AS_NEEDED constant
HORIZONTAL_SCROLLBAR_NEVER constant
setHorizontalScrollBarPolicy method
VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_ALWAYS constant
VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_AS_NEEDED constant
VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_NEVER constant
JScrollPane scrollbar policies
JSlider class 2nd
  block increment
  major tick marks
  minor tick marks
  setInverted method
  setMajorTickSpacing method
  setPaintTicks method
  setVerticalScrollBarPolicy method
  snap-to ticks
  thumb
  tick marks
JSlider value used to determine the diameter of a circle
JSP 2nd 3rd
  comment
  container 2nd
  declaration 2nd
  directive
  error page
  escape sequence 2nd
  expression 2nd
  expression delimiters <%= and %>
  implicit object
  life cycle
  scriptlet
  standard action
JSP action

`<jsp:forward>`
`<jsp:include>`
`<jsp:useBean>`

JSP component

`action`
`directive`
`scripting element`
`tag library`

JSP directive

`include`
`page`

JSP expression inserting the date and time into a Web page

`<jsp:forward>`
`<jsp:forward>`

JSP `forward1.jsp` receives a `firstName` parameter, adds a date to the request parameters and forwards the request to `forward2.jsp` for further processing.

JSP `guestBookErrorPage.jsp` responds to exceptions in `guestBookLogin.jsp` and `guestBookView.jsp`.

JSP `guestBookLogin.jsp` enables the user to submit a first name, a last name and an e-mail address to be placed in the guest book.

JSP `guestBookView.jsp` displays the contents of the guest book.

JSP `includeDirective.jsp` demonstrates including content at translation time.

with directive `include`

jspDestroy method
jspInit method
jspInsider.com
jspTags.com

JspWriter class

JTabbedPane class

addTab method

SCROLL_TAB_LAYOUT constant

TOP constant

JTabbedPane used to organize GUI components

JTable class
TextArea class 2nd 3rd
setLineWrap method 2nd
setWrapStyleWord method

TextComponent class 2nd 3rd
gSelectedText method
gText method
setEditable method
setText method

TextField class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
addActionListener method

TextFields and PasswordFields
ToggleButton class
JumpingBox applet
just-in-time (JIT) compiler
Kelvin temperature scale
key constant
key event 2nd
Key event handling
key value
key/value pair
KeyAdapter class
keyboard 2nd 3rd 4th
KeyEvent class 2nd
   getKeyChar method
   getKeyCode method
   getKeyModifiersText method
   getKeyText method
   isActionKey method
KeyListener interface 2nd 3rd 4th
   keyPressed method 2nd
   keyReleased method
   keyTyped method
Keypad class (ATM case study) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th
keyPressed method of KeyListener 2nd
keyReleased method of KeyListener
keySet method of HashMap
keySet method of Properties
keyTyped method of KeyListener
keyword 2nd 3rd
   abstract
   boolean 2nd
   catch
char
class 2nd
enum
extends 2nd
false 2nd
final 2nd 3rd
finally
float 2nd
if 2nd
implements
instanceof
interface
new 2nd 3rd
null 2nd 3rd
private 2nd
public 2nd 3rd 4th
reserved but not used by Java
return 2nd 3rd
static
super 2nd
synchronized
table of keywords and reserved words
this 2nd 3rd
throw
ttrue 2nd
try
void 2nd
KIS ("keep it simple")
Knight's Tour 2nd
   Brute Force Approach
   Closed Tour Test
Knight's Tour exercise
Koch Curve fractal
Koch Snowflake fractal
Koenig, Andrew
Index

[S] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [V] [W] [X] [Y] [Z]

Label
label 2nd 3rd
label in a switch 2nd
labeled break statement
  exiting a nested for statement
labeled continue statement
  terminating a single iteration of a labeled-for statement
labels for tick marks
Lady Ada Lovelace 2nd
language attribute of page directive
language package
last method of ResultSet
last method of SortedSet
last-in first-out (LIFO) order
last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structure
last-in-first-out (LIFO) 2nd
lastElement method of Vector
lastIndexOf method of String
lastModified method of File
late binding
Layers architecture pattern 2nd
layout
layout manager 2nd 3rd 4th
  BorderLayout
  FlowLayout
layoutContainer method of LayoutManager
LayoutManager interface 2nd
  layoutManager method
LayoutManager2 interface
lazy quantifier
Lea, Doug
leading
leaf
leaf node
leaf node in a binary search tree
leaveGroup method of MulticastSocket
left brace, { 2nd 3rd
left child
LEFT constant of FlowLayout
left justification
left justified 2nd 3rd
left justify output
left shift (<<) 2nd
left subtree 2nd 3rd
Left, center and right mouse-button clicks
left-justifying strings in a field
left-mouse-button click
left-to-right evaluation 2nd
length field of an array
length method of File
length method of String
length method of StringBuffer
letter
level of indentation
level-order binary tree traversal 2nd
levels of nesting
lexicographical comparison 2nd
library classes
library.thinkquest.org/26688/koch.html
life cycle of a thread 2nd
lifeline of an object in a UML sequence diagram
LIFO (last-in, first-out) 2nd
LIFO (last-in-first-out) order
lightweight GUI component order
LIGHTWEIGHT_RENDER constant of Manager
LIKE SQL clause 2nd 3rd
Limericks
Limericks exercise
line 2nd 3rd
line join
line wrapping
Line2D class 2nd
Line2D.Double class 2nd
linear collection
linear data structure
linear run time
linear search algorithm 2nd 3rd
LineNumberReader class
LinesRectsOvals.java
LinesRectsOvalsJPanel.java
lineTo method of GeneralPath
link 2nd 3rd
linked list 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
  graphical representation
  manipulations
LinkedList class 2nd 3rd 4th
  add method
  addFirst method
  addLast method
Linux 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
list
List interface 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
  add method
  addAll method
  clear method
  get method
  listIterator method
  size method 2nd
  subList method
  toArray method
list method of File 2nd
list method of Properties
List method toArray
listen for events
listenerList field of JComponent
ListIterator interface
  hasPrevious method
  set method
listIterator method of List
ListNode and List class declarations
Lists and ListIterators
Lists and Queues without Tail References
ListSelectionEvent class
ListSelectionListener interface
  valueChanged method
ListSelectionModel class
  MULTIPLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION constant
  SINGLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION constant
  SINGLE_SELECTION constant
literals
  floating point
live-code approach
"Lo fractal"
  at level 0
  at level 1, with C and D points determined for level 2
  at level 2
  at level 2, dashed lines from level 1 provided
load another Web page into a browser
load factor
load method of Properties
load/store operations
LoadAudioAndPlay.java
LoadImageAndScale.java
loading
loading a document from a URL into a browser
Loading and displaying an image in an applet
Loading and playing an AudioClip
local area network (LAN)
local variable 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
locale
Locale class
localhost (127.0.0.1)
localhost (127.0.0.1) address
localization
location (0, 0)
location in computer's memory
location of an image on the Internet
lock an object
Lock interface
   lock method 2nd
   newCondition method 2nd
   unlock method 2nd
lock method of Lock 2nd
locks
log method of Math
logarithm
logarithmic run time
logic error 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
logical complement operator, !
logical decision
logical input operations
logical negation, !
logical negation, or logical NOT (!) operator truth table
logical operators 2nd 3rd
logical output operations
logical unit
Logo language
LogoAnimator.java
LogoAnimatorJPanel.java
long
   literal suffix L
Long class
LONG date format
long keyword 2nd
long promotions
look and feel
Look and Feel Observations
look-and-feel 2nd 3rd
Look-and-feel of a Swing-based GUI
look-and-feel of an application
LookAndFeelInfo nested class of UIManager
lookingAt method of Matcher 2nd
loop 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
  body 2nd
  continuation condition
  counter
  infinite 2nd
  invariant 2nd
  nested within a loop
  statement 2nd
loop method of AudioClip
loop-continuation condition 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th
loopback address
Lord Byron 2nd
Lovelace, Ada 2nd
lowercase letter
lowercase letters
LOWERED constant of BevelBorder
lowered rectangle
ls command on UNIX
m-by-n array
Mac OS X 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
machine dependent
machine language
machine language programming
Macintosh
Macintosh AIFF file format (.aif or extension) 2nd
Macintosh look-and-feel
Macromedia Flash 2 movies
Macromedia Flash 2 movies (.swf)
magnetic tape
main method 2nd 3rd 4th
main thread
maintainability
major tick marks of JSlider
make your point (game of craps)
making decisions
MalformedURLException class
Manager class
  createRealizedPlayer method
  LIGHTWEIGHT_RENDER constant
  setHint method
Mandelbrot, Benoit
"manufacturing" section of the computer
many-to-one relationship
Map interface 2nd 3rd
  containsKey method
  get method
  isEmpty method
put method
size method
mappings of SQL types to Java types
mark an object for garbage collection 2nd 3rd
mask
master file
match request parameters
Matcher class 2nd
  find method 2nd
  group method
  lookingAt method 2nd
  matches method
  replaceAll method
  replaceFirst method
matcher method of Pattern
matches method of Matcher
matches method of Pattern
matches method of String
matching catch block
Math class
  abs method
  ceil method
  cos method
  E constant
  exp method
  floor method
  log method
  max method
  min method
  PI constant 2nd
  pow method 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
  random method 2nd
  sqrt method 2nd 3rd
tan method
math.hws.edu/xJava/PentominosSolver
Math.PI constant
math.rice.edu/~lanius/frac/
mathematical computations
max algorithm
max method of Collections
max method of Math
maximize a window
maximum
maximum method
Maze Generator and Walker exercise
Maze Traversal Using Recursive Backtracking exercise
Mazes of Any Size exercise
MBCS (multi-byte character set)
MDI (Multiple Document Interface)
mean
Mediator design pattern
MEDIUM
Memento design pattern
memento object
memory
memory buffer
memory consumption
memory leak
memory location
memory unit
memory utilization
memory-space/execution-time trade-off
MemoryImageSource class
menu
menu bar
menu item
MenuOption.java
merge in the UML
Merge records from Tables
merge sort algorithm
merge symbol in the UML
merge two arrays
message 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th
message (send to an object)
message dialog 2nd 3rd
message in the UML 2nd 3rd 4th
message passing in the UML
MessageListener interface that declares method messageReceived for receiving new chat messages
MessageManager interface that declares methods for communicating with a DeitelMessengerServer
MessageReceiver for listening for new messages from DeitelMessengerServer clients in separate threads
MessageSender for delivering outgoing messages to DeitelMessengerServer
meta element
Meta key
metadata
metal look-and-feel 2nd
method 2nd 3rd 4th
  declaration
  parameter
  parameter list
  return type
  static
method call 2nd 3rd
method call stack
Method calls made within the call fibonacci(3)
Method calls on the program execution stack
method declaration
Method Detail section in API
method header
method overloading
method parameter list
Method Summary section in API
methods called automatically during applet's execution
methods implicitly final
Methods replaceFirst, replaceAll and split
Metric Conversion Program
Microsoft
Microsoft Audio/Video Interleave (.avi) file
Microsoft Audio/Video Interleave files
Microsoft Internet Explorer 2nd
Microsoft Internet Information Services (IIS)
Microsoft SQL Server
Microsoft Windows 2nd 3rd
Microsoft Windows-style look-and-feel
middle mouse button
middle tier 2nd
middle-tier business logic
MIDI (Musical Instrument Digital Interface) file format (.mid or .rmi extension)
2nd
mileage obtained by automobiles
MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extension) type 2nd
min algorithm
min method of Collections 2nd
min method of Math
minimize a window 2nd 3rd
minimize internal frame
minor tick marks of JSlider
minus sign (−) indicating private visibility in the UML
minus sign () formatting flag
mission-critical computing
mnemonic 2nd 3rd 4th
modal dialog
modal dialog box
model (in MVC architecture)
model of a software system 2nd 3rd
Model-View-Controller (MVC) 2nd 3rd
modifier key
Modifying the Internal Data Representation of a Class (exercise)
modularizing a program with methods
module
modules in Java
modulus operator (%)
MoleculeViewer applet
monetary calculations
monitor
Monospaced Java font 2nd
Morse code
Morse Code
Morse code
Motif look and feel
Motif-style (UNIX) look-and-feel 2nd
mouse 2nd 3rd 4th
mouse button
mouse click
mouse event 2nd 3rd
mouse event handling
mouse wheel
mouse-button click
MouseAdapter class 2nd
mouseClicked method of MouseListener 2nd
mouseDragged method of MouseMotionListener 2nd
mouseEntered method of MouseListener
MouseEvent class 2nd 3rd
  getClickCount method
  getPoint method
  getX method
  getY method
  isAltDown method
  isMetaDown method
  isPopupTrigger method
mouseExited method of MouseListener
MouseInputListener interface 2nd
MouseListener interface 2nd 3rd 4th
  mouseClicked method 2nd
  mouseEntered method
  mouseExited method
  mousePressed method 2nd
  mouseReleased method 2nd
MouseMotionAdapter class
MouseMotionListener interface
    mouseDragged method
    mouseMoved method
mouseMoved method of MouseMotionListener
mousePressed method
mousePressed method of MouseAdapter
mousePressed method of MouseListener
mouseReleased method of MouseListener
MouseWheelEvent class
MouseWheelListener interface
    mouseWheelMoved method
mouseWheelMoved method of MouseWheelListener
moveTo method of GeneralPath
moveToCurrentRow method of CachedRowSet
moveToInsertRow method of CachedRowSet
Mozilla
MPEG Layer 3 Audio (.mp3) files
MPEG-1 videos
MPEG-1 videos (.mpeg, .mpg)
MS-DOS prompt
multibutton mouse
multibyte character set (MBCS)
multicast 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
multicast address
multicast group
MulticastSendingThread for delivering outgoing messages to a multicast group via DatagramPackets
MulticastSocket class
    close method
    joinGroup method
    leaveGroup method
    receive method
    setSoTimeout method
multidimensional array 2nd
multilevel priority queue
multimedia
Multimedia-Based Simpletron Simulator exercise
multiple class declarations
  in one source-code file
multiple document interface (MDI) 2nd 3rd
multiple inheritance
multiple-line comment
multiple-selection list 2nd 3rd 4th
multiple-selection statement
MULTIPLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION constant of ListSelectionModel 2nd
multiplication, * 2nd
multiplicative operators: *, / and %
multiplicity
multiprocessor
multiprogramming
multitasking
multithreaded server 2nd
multithreaded Tic-Tac-Toe Program
multithreading 2nd 3rd 4th
multitier architecture
multitier client-server application 2nd
Multitier Web-based survey using XHTML, servlets and JDBC
multitier Web-based survey using XHTML, servlets and JDBC
Musical Instrument Digital Interface (MIDI) file format (.*mid or .rmi extension) 2nd
mutator method
mutual exclusion
mutually exclusive options
MVC (Model-View-Controller)
MyShape hierarchy
MyShape hierarchy with MyBounded-Shape
MySQL 2nd
MySQL Connector/J
MySQL database
n conversion character
name
name attribute of <jsp:param> action
name attribute of <jsp:setProperty> action
name collision
name conflict
name of a param
name-value pair
named constant
NASA Multimedia Gallery
native code
native keyword
Native-API, partly Java driver (Type 2)
Native-Protocol pure Java driver (Type 4)
natural comparison method
natural language of a computer
natural logarithm
navigability arrow in the UML
negative arc angles
negative degree
NervousText applet
nested array initializer
nested building block
nested class 2nd

relationship between an inner class and its top-level class
Nested Class Summary section in API
nested control statements 2nd 3rd 4th 5th

Examination-results problem
nested for statement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
nested if...else selection statement 2nd
nested message in the UML
nested parentheses
nesting 2nd
nesting rule
Netscape
network message arrival
Networked Morse Code
networking
networking package
new keyword 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
new Scanner(System.in) expression
new state
newCachedThreadPool method of Executors
newCondition method of Lock 2nd
newFixedThreadPool method of Executors
newline escape sequence, \n 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
next method
  of Iterator
  of ResultSet
  of Scanner
nextDouble method of Scanner
nextInt method of Random 2nd
nextLine method of Scanner 2nd
nextToken method of StringTokenizer 2nd
no-argument constructor 2nd 3rd
node 2nd 3rd
non-primitive types
non-static class member
NONE constant of GridBagConstraints
nonfatal logic error
nonfatal runtime error
nonlinear data structures
NoPlayerException exception
NORTH constant of BorderLayout 2nd
NORTH constant of GridBagConstraints
NORTHEAST constant of GridBagConstraints
NORTHWEST constant of GridBagConstraints
NoSuchElementException
note
Notepad
notify method of Object
notifyAll method of Object
noun phrase in requirements document
null
null keyword
NullPointerException class
Num Lock key
Number class
doubleValue method
number systems
numeric classes
Index

SYMBOL [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [V] [W] [X] [Y] [Z]

O(1)
O(log n)
O(n log n) time
O(n) time
O(n²) time
object (or instance) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Object class 2nd 3rd 4th
  clone method
  equals method
  finalize method
  getClass method 2nd 3rd
  hashCode method
  notify method 2nd 3rd
  notifyAll method 2nd
  toString method 2nd
  wait method 2nd
object HTML element
Object Management Group (OMG)
object of a derived class
object of a derived class is instantiated
object orientation
object serialization 2nd 3rd
object-oriented analysis and design (OOAD) 2nd
object-oriented design (OOD) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
object-oriented language
object-oriented programming
object-oriented programming (OOP) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th
ObjectInput interface
readObject method
ObjectInputStream class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
ObjectOutput interface
writeObject method
ObjectOutputStream class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
close method
flush method
Observable class
Observer design pattern 2nd 3rd
Observer interface
observer object
obtain the lock
ocating
octal integer
octal number system (base 8) 2nd
ODBC data source
off-by-one error
offer method of PriorityQueue
OK button
OMG (Object Management Group)
ON clause
on-line training courses
one statement per line
one-, two- or three-button mouse
One-Armed Bandit exercise
one-to-many relationship
one-to-one mapping
one-to-one relationship
one's complement 2nd
ones position
OOAD (object-oriented analysis and design)
OOD (object-oriented design) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th
OOP (object-oriented programming) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
opaque Swing GUI components
open a file
OPEN constant of Arc2D
operand 2nd
operands of a binary operator
operating system
operation code
operation compartment in a class diagram
operation in the UML 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th
operation parameter in the UML 2nd 3rd
operations of an abstract data type
operator
operator precedence 2nd
operator precedence chart
Operator Precedence Chart Appendix
rules
operators
!, logical NOT 2nd
&&, conditional AND 2nd
&, boolean logical AND 2nd
++, prefix increment/postfix increment
++, preincrement/postincrement
+=, addition assignment operator 2nd
--, predecrement/postdecrement
--, prefix decrement/postfix decrement
= 2nd
?:, ternary conditional operator 2nd
^, boolean logical exclusive OR 2nd
arithmetic
binary 2nd
boolean logical AND, & 2nd
boolean logical exclusive OR, ^ 2nd
boolean logical inclusive OR, |
cast
compound assignment 2nd
conditional AND, && 2nd
conditional operator, ??: 2nd
conditional OR, || 2nd 3rd
decrement operator, --
increment and decrement
increment, ++
logical complement, !
logical negation, !
logical operators 2nd 3rd
multiplicative: *, / and %
postfix decrement
postfix increment
prefix decrement
prefix increment
remainder
remainder, %
subtraction, -
|, boolean logical inclusive OR 2nd
||, conditional OR 2nd

optical disk
optimized code
optimizing compiler
Optimizing the Simple Compiler
optional package
options request
or method of BitSet
Oracle Corporation 2nd
order
ORDER BY SQL clause 2nd 3rd
order in which actions should execute
Order of catch Blocks exercise
order of exception handlers
ordering of records
org.omg package
origin component
originator object
out implicit object
out-of-bounds array index 2nd
OutOfMemoryError
output 2nd
output cursor 2nd
output device
output unit
OutputStream class 2nd 3rd 4th
OutputStreamWriter class
outside the bounds of an array
oval 2nd 3rd
oval bounded by a rectangle
oval filled with gradually changing colors
overflow
overflow error
overload a method
overloaded constructors
Overloaded constructors used to initialize Time2 objects
overloaded method
overloaded method declarations 2nd
overloading generic methods
override a superclass method 2nd
package 2nd 3rd
package access
package access members of a class
package declaration
package directory names
package directory structure
package keyword
package name 2nd
Package-access members of a class are accessible by other classes in the same package
package-access methods
package-list generated by javadoc
packages

  java.applet
  java.awt 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
  java.awt.color
  java.awt.event 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
  java.awt.font
  java.awt.geom
  java.awt.image
  java.awt.image.renderable
  java.awt.print
  java.io 2nd
  java.lang 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
  java.net 2nd
  java.rmi
  java.sql 2nd
org.omg

document of the Java API

PacketReceiver for listening for new multicast messages from DeitelMessengerServer in a separate thread

page attribute of <jsp:forward> action

page attribute of <jsp:include> action

page directive 2nd 3rd 4th

autoFlush attribute

buffer attribute

contentType attribute

errorPage attribute 2nd

extends attribute

import attribute 2nd

info attribute

isELIgnored attribute

isErrorPage attribute 2nd
isThreadSafe attribute
language attribute
pageEncoding attribute
session attribute

Page Down key
page implicit object
page layout software
page scope 2nd 3rd

Page Up key
pageContext implicit object
pageEncoding attribute of page directive
paint method of JApplet 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Paint object
paintComponent method of JComponent 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
paintIcon method of ImageIcon 2nd

palindrome 2nd
Palindromes exercise
panel
parallel activities
parallel operations
param attribute of <jsp:setProperty> action
param tag
parameter 2nd
parameter in the UML 2nd 3rd
parameter list 2nd
parameterized class
parameterized type

Parameters: note
parent directory
parent node 2nd
parent window 2nd
  for a dialog box
  specified as null
parentheses 2nd
  nested
  redundant
unnecessary

parseDouble method of Double 2nd

parseInt method of Integer 2nd 3rd 4th

partition step in quicksort

Pascal, Blaise

pass an array element to a method

pass an array to a method

pass-by-reference

pass-by-value 2nd

Passing a generic type Stack to a generic method

Passing arrays and individual array elements to methods

passing options to a program

password

PATH environment variable

path information

path mapping

pathSeparator static field of File

pattern

Pattern class 2nd

compile method

matcher method

matches method

pattern matching

pattern of 1 s and 0 s

Payable interface declaration

Payable interface hierarchy UML class diagram

Payable interface test program processing Invoices and Employees

polymorphically

payroll file

Payroll System Modification exercise

peek method of PriorityQueue

peek method of Stack

percent (%) SQL wildcard character

perfect number (exercise)

perform a calculation

perform a task

perform an action
performance of binary tree sorting and searching
Performance Tip
performing operations concurrently
permutation
Permutation.java
PermutationTest.java
persistent data
persistent Hashtable
personal computer 2nd
phase
physical input operation
physical output operation
PI 2nd
"pick off" each digit
pie chart
Pie Chart exercise
PIE constant of Arc2D
pie shaped arc
Pig Latin
pipe
PipedInputStream class
PipedOutputStream class
PipedReader class
PipedWriter class
pixel ("picture element") 2nd
pixel coordinates
PixelGrabber class
PLAF (pluggable look-and-feel)
PLAIN constant of Font 2nd
PLAIN_MESSAGE
platform dependency
play method
of Applet
of AudioClip
Player interface
getControlPanelComponent method
getVisualComponent method
start method
playing an AudioClip
playing audio
pluggable look-and-feel (PLAF)
pluggable look-and-feel package
plus sign (+) indicating public visibility in the UML
PNG (Portable Network Graphics) 2nd
point 2nd
Point class
point-of-sale system
poker
Poker game
poll analysis program
poll method of PriorityQueue
polygon 2nd
Polygon class 2nd
    addPoint method 2nd
Polygons displayed with drawPolygon and fillPolygon
PolygonsJPanel.java
polyline
polylines
polymorphic processing
    of collections
    of related exceptions
polymorphic programming
polymorphic screen manager
polymorphically process Invoices and Employees
polymorphism 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
polynomial
pool of threads
pop method of Stack
pop off a stack
popup trigger event 2nd
port 2nd 3rd
port 80
port 8080
port number 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
Portability Tip

portable

portable GUI

Portable Network Graphics (PNG)

position number

positional notation

positional value

positional values in the decimal number system

positive and negative arc angles

positive degrees

post request

postcondition

postdecrement

postfix decrement operator

postfix expression evaluation algorithm

postfix increment operator

postfix notation

PostgreSQL

postincrement

postorder traversal

pow method of Math

power (exponent)

power of 2 larger than

precedence

arithmetic operators

chart

precedence chart

Precedence Chart Appendix

precision

format of a floating-point number

precision of a floating-point value

precision of a formatted floating-point number

precondition

predecrement

predefined character class

predicate

predicate method
preemptive scheduling
Preferences API
prefix decrement operator
prefix increment operator
preincrement 2nd
Preincrementing and postincrementing
preorder traversal
prepackaged data structures
primary key
primary memory
prime 2nd
prime number
primitive type 2nd 3rd 4th
  passed by value
  promotions
primitive types
  boolean
  byte
  char 2nd
  double 2nd
  float 2nd
  int 2nd 3rd 4th
  names are keywords
    short
principal
principle of least privilege 2nd
print a line of text
print an array
Print an Array Backwards exercise
Print an Array exercise
print an array recursively
print debugger command
print method of System.out 2nd
print on multiple lines 2nd
print spooling
printArray generic method
printArray method in which actual type names are replaced by convention with the generic name E

printf method of System.out

printing a binary tree in a two-dimensional tree format

Printing a line of text with multiple statements

Printing array elements using generic method printArray

Printing array elements using overloaded methods

Printing Dates in Various Formats

Printing multiple lines of text with a single statement

Printing positive and negative numbers with and without the + flag

Printing the bits in an integer

printing trees

println method of PrintWriter

println method of System.out 2nd 3rd

printStackTrace method of Throwable 2nd

PrintStream class 2nd

PrintWriter class 2nd 3rd 4th

println method

priority of a thread

PriorityQueue class

clear method

offer method

peek method

poll method

size method

PriorityQueue test program

private

access modifier

data

field

keyword

private access modifier 2nd

private keyword 2nd

Private members of Time1 are not accessible

private superclass members cannot be accessed in subclass

probability
procedure
processing phase
processing unit
producer
producer thread
producer/consumer relationship
product of odd integer
program
program construction principles
program control
program execution stack
program in the general
program in the specific
program-development process
program-development tool
programmer
programmer-declared method
programmer-declared method
maximum that has three double parameters
programmer-defined class
promotion
promotion rules
promotions for primitive types
prompt
Properties class
getProperty method
keySet method
list method
load method
setProperty method
store method
Properties class of package java.util
property attribute of <jsp:setProperty> action
proprietary class
protected
access modifier
protected access modifier 2nd
protected superclass members inherited into subclass
BasePlusCommissionEmployee3
protocol
protocol for communication (jdbc)
Prototype design pattern 2nd 3rd
Proxy design pattern 2nd 3rd
proxy object
pseudocode 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
    first refinement 2nd
    second refinement 2nd
pseudocode algorithm
pseudorandom number 2nd
public
    abstract method
    access modifier 2nd 3rd 4th
class
    final static data
interface
    keyword 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
member of a subclass
method 2nd 3rd
method encapsulated in an object
service
    static class members
static method
publish
publishers table of books database 2nd
pure Java components
push method of Stack
push onto a stack
put HTTP request
put method of BlockingQueue 2nd
put method of Map
Pythagorean Triples
quadratic run time
qualified name
quantifiers used in regular expressions
quantum
query 2nd
query a database
query application for the *Books.mdb* database
query method
query string
*QUESTION_MESSAGE*
queue 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
*Queue* interface 2nd 3rd
queue length
Queue processing program
queue to the server
*QueueInheritance* extends class *List*
quicksort algorithm
*QuickTime* (.mov) files
*QuickTime* files
file open mode 2nd
radians
radio button 2nd
radio button group
radius 2nd
radius of a circle
radix
raised rectangle
Random Characters exercise
Random class 2nd 3rd
  nextInt method 2nd
   setSeed method
Random Colors exercise
Random Interimage Transition exercise
random limericks
Random Lines Using Class Line2D.Double exercise
random method of Math 2nd
random number generation
random number generation to create sentences
random number processing
random numbers
   difference between values
   scaling factor 2nd
   seed value 2nd
   shifting value
Random Triangles exercise
random-access file 2nd 3rd
RandomAccessAccountRecord class used in the random-access file programs
RandomAccessAccountRecord.java
RandomAccessFile class 2nd 3rd 4th
readDouble method
readInt method
seek method 2nd
writeChars method
writeDouble method
writeInt method
Randomly Erasing an Image exercise
randomly generated triangles
randomly sized shapes
range method of EnumSet
range-view methods
rapid application development (RAD)
ratio of successive Fibonacci numbers
Rational class
Rational Numbers (exercise)
Rational Software Corporation 2nd
Rational Unified Process™
raw type
Raw type test program
Reaction Time/Reaction Precision Tester exercise
read-only file
read-only text
read-only variable
Read/Write Lock design pattern 2nd
readability 2nd 3rd
readDouble method of RandomAccessFile
Reader class
Reading a file by opening a connection through a URL
reading a file on a web server
Reading data sequentially from a randomaccess file
readInt method of RandomAccessFile
readLine method of BufferedReader
readObject method of ObjectInput
readObject method of ObjectInputStream
ReadRandomFile.java
ReadRandomFileTest.java
ReadSequentialFile.java
real number 2nd
real part
realization in the UML
receive a connection
receive data from a server
receive method of DatagramSocket
receive method of MulticastSocket
"receiving" section of the computer
reclaim memory
reclaiming dynamically allocated memory
record 2nd
record key 2nd 3rd
record size
recover from an error
rectangle 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
Rectangle Class (exercise)
Rectangle2D class
Rectangle2D.Double class
Recursion Examples

FactorialCalculator.java
FactorialTest.java
FibonacciCalculator.java
FibonacciTest.java
Fractal.java
FractalJPanel.java
Permutation.java
PermutationTest.java
TowersOfHanoi.java
TowersOfHanoiTest.java
recursion exercises
binary search
Recursion Exercises

Eight Queens
Find the Minimum Value in an Array
Fractals
Generating Mazes Randomly
Greatest Common Divisor

recursion exercises
linear search

Recursion Exercises
Maze Traversal Using Recursive Backtracking
Mazes of Any Size
Palindromes
Print an Array
Print an Array Backwards
Recursive power Method
Time to Calculate Fibonacci Numbers
Visualizing Recursion

recursion overhead
recursion step 2nd
recursive backtracking
recursive binary search algorithm
recursive call 2nd 3rd
recursive evaluation

of 5!
recursive factorial method
recursive linear search algorithm
recursive method
Recursive power Method exercise
recursive step
recursively generating Fibonacci numbers
Recursively Print a List Backwards
Recursively Search a List
redirect a stream
redirecting requests
Redirecting requests to other resources

RedirectServlet.html document to demonstrate redirecting requests to other resources

redundant parentheses

ReentrantLock class 2nd refer to an object reference
reference reference type 2nd 3rd refinement process
refresh interval

regionMatches method of String

register a port

register an ActionListener registered listener

registering the event handler

regular expression

* 
+ . 
? \D \d \S \s \W \w ^ 
{n} 

Regular expressions checking birthdays

reinventing the wheel 2nd

relational database 2nd relational database management system (RDBMS)

relational database table

relationship between an inner class and its top-level class
relative path
release a lock
release a resource
Reload from appletviewer's Applet menu
2nd reluctant quantifier
remained
REMAINDER constant of GridBagConstraints
remainder operator, \% 2nd 3rd
remote method call
Remote Method Invocation (RMI)
Remote Method Invocation over the Internet Inter-Orb Protocol (RMIIOP)
remove duplicate String
remove method
remove method of Iterator
remove method of Vector
removeAllElements method of Vector
removeElementAt method of Vector
removeTableModelListener method of TableModel
Reordering output with argument index
repaint method of Component
repaint method of JComponent
repainted
repetition 2nd
counter controlled 2nd 3rd
definite
sentinel controlled 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
repetition statement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
do...while 2nd 3rd 4th
do/while
for 2nd 3rd
while 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
repetition terminates
replace of String
replaceAll method of Matcher
of String
replaceFirst method
    of Matcher
    of String
representing integers in hexadecimal format
representing integers in octal format
request implicit object
request method
request parameter
request scope 2nd 3rd
request type
request-time error
requestFocus method of Component
requirements 2nd
requirements document 2nd 3rd 4th
requirements gathering
reservations system
reserved word 2nd 3rd
    false 2nd
    null 2nd 3rd 4th
    true 2nd
resizeable array
    implementation of a List
resolution 2nd
resource leak 2nd
response
response implicit object
responses to a survey
restart method of Timer
result
result set concurrency
result set type
ResultSet interface 2nd 3rd
    absolute method
    column name
    column number
CONCUR_READ_ONLY constant
CONCUR_UPDATABLE constant
concurrency constant
getInt method
getObject method 2nd
getRow method
last method
next method
TYPE_FORWARD_ONLY constant
TYPE_SCROLL_INSENSITIVE constant
TYPE_SCROLL_SENSITIVE constant
ResultSetMetaData interface 2nd
getColumnClassName method
getColumnCount method 2nd
getColumnName method
getColumnType method
ResultSetTableModel enables a JTable to display the contents of a ResultSet
resume a suspended thread
resume a thread
resumption model of exception handling
rethrow an exception 2nd
Rethrowing Exceptions exercise
Return key 2nd
return keyword 2nd 3rd
return message in the UML
return statement
return type in the UML 2nd
return type of a method
Returning Error Indicators from Methods (exercise)
Returns: note
reusability 2nd
reusable component
reusable software components 2nd
reuse 2nd
reverse
reverse method of Collections 2nd
reverse method of StringBuffer
reverseOrder method of Collections
RGB value 2nd 3rd
RGB values
Richards, Martin
right aligned
right brace, } 2nd 3rd 4th
right child
RIGHT constant of FlowLayout
right justification 2nd
right justify output
right subtree 2nd 3rd
right-justifying integers
Right-justifying integers in a field
rigid area of Box
rise-and-shine algorithm
Ritchie, Dennis
RMI used between Java object
robust
robust application 2nd
role in the UML
role name in the UML
Rolling a six-sided die 6000 times
rolling two dice
rollover Icon
root directory
root node
rotate method of Graphics2D
Rotating Images exercise
Rotator bean that maintains a set of advertisements
round a floating-point number for display purposes
round-robin scheduling
rounded rectangle 2nd
rounded rectangle (for representing a state in a UML state diagram)
rounding
rounding a number 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
RoundRectangle2D class
RoundRectangle2D.Double class
row 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
rows of a two-dimensional array
rows to be retrieved
RowSet interface
   setCommand method
   setUrl method
Rule of Referential Integrity
rule of thumb (heuristic) 2nd
rules for forming structured programs
rules of operator precedence 2nd
Rumbaugh, James 2nd
run an applet in a Web browser
run debugger command
run method of Runnable
run-time logic error 2nd
Runnable interface 2nd 3rd
   run method
runnable state
running an application
running state
running total
runtime error
RuntimeException class 2nd
"rw" file open mode 2nd
Index

[S] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [V] [W] [X] [Y] [Z]

SalariedEmployee class derived from Employee
SalariedEmployee class that implements interface Payable method
getPaymentAmount
Sales Commissions
sandbox security model
SansSerif Java font 2nd
saturation
savings account
SavingsAccount Class (exercise)
scalar
scaling an image
scaling factor (random numbers) 2nd
Scanner class
   hasNext method
   next method
   nextDouble method
   nextLine method 2nd
scanning images
scheduling
scientific notation
scope
scope attribute of <jsp:useBean> action
Scope class demonstrates field and local variable scopes 2nd
Scope class demonstrating scopes of a field and local variables
scope of a bean
scope of a declaration
scope of a type parameter
screen 2nd 3rd
Screen class (ATM case study) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th
screen cursor
security
SecurityException
See Also: note
seed value (random numbers) 2nd
seek method of RandomAccessFile 2nd
SELECT SQL keyword 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
selected
selected text in a JTextArea
selecting an item from a menu
selecting data from a table
Selecting Shapes exercise
selection 2nd 3rd
selection criteria
selection mode
selection sort algorithm 2nd 3rd
selection statement 2nd

if 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
if...else 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
switch 2nd 3rd 4th
self-documenting code
self-referential class 2nd
self-referential class objects linked together
self-similar property
semicolon (;) 2nd 3rd
send data to a server
send message
send method of DatagramSocket 2nd
sendRedirect method of HttpServletRequest
sendRedirect method of HttpServletResponse
sentence-style capitalization
sentinel value 2nd 3rd
sentinel-controlled repetition 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
separator character
separator line in a menu 2nd
sequence 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
sequence diagram in the UML 2nd
sequence of messages in the UML
sequence statement
sequence structure
sequence-structure activity diagram
`SequenceInputStream` class
sequential execution
Sequential file created using `ObjectOutputStream`
Sequential file read using an `ObjectInputStream`
Sequential file reading using a `Scanner`
sequential-access file 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
`Serializable` interface 2nd
serialized object
`serialized-form.html` generated by `javadoc`
Serif Java font 2nd
server
server host name
server port number
Server portion of a client/server stream-socket connection
server waits for connections from clients
server-side component
server-side of connectionless client/server computing with datagrams
server's Internet address
`ServerSocket` class 2nd 3rd 4th
   `accept` method 2nd
`service` method of `Servlet` 2nd 3rd 4th
service of a class 2nd
`servlet` 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
`servlet container` 2nd
`servlet element` 2nd 3rd 4th
`servlet engine`
`Servlet` interface 2nd
   `destroy` method 2nd
   `getServletConfig` method
   `getServletInfo` method
   `init` method
   `service` method
`Servlet` interface methods
`servlet life cycle`
servlet mapping
servlet resource
servlet specification
servlet termination
servlet-class  element 2nd 3rd 4th
servlet-mapping  element 2nd 3rd 4th
servlet-name  element 2nd 3rd 4th
ServletConfig  interface 2nd 3rd

   getInitParameter  method
ServletContext  interface 2nd
ServletException  class 2nd 3rd 4th
ServletOutputStream  class 2nd
ServletRequest  interface 2nd 3rd 4th
ServletResponse  interface 2nd 3rd 4th

session  attribute  of  page directive
session  implicit object
session scope 2nd
set a value
set debugger command
Set  interface 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
set method 2nd
set method of  BitSet
set method of  ListIterator
set method of  Vector

set of constants
   as an interface
Set of Integers (exercise)
Set of recursive calls for  fibonacci(3)
SET  SQL clause
set up event handling
set-theoretic intersection
set-theoretic union
setAlignment  method of  FlowLayout
setBackground  method of  Component 2nd 3rd
setBorder  method of  JComponent
setCharAt  method of  StringBuffer
setColor  method of  Graphics 2nd 3rd
setColor  method of  Graphics
setColor  method of  Graphics
setProperty method of Properties 2nd
setRolloverIcon method of AbstractButton
setSeed method of Random
setSelected method of AbstractButton
setSelectionMode method of JList
setSize method of Component
setSize method of JFrame 2nd
setSoTimeout method of MulticastSocket
setSoTimeOut method of Socket
setStroke method of Graphics2D
setText method of JLabel 2nd
setText method of JTextComponent
setToolTipText method of JComponent
setUrl method of CachedRowSet
setUrl method of JdbcRowSet interface
setUrl method of RowSet
setUsername method of CachedRowSet
setUsername method of JdbcRowSet interface
setVerticalAlignment method of JLabel
setVerticalScrollBarPolicy method of JSlider
setVerticalTextPosition method of JLabel
setVisible method of Component 2nd
setVisible method of JFrame
setVisibleRowCount method of JList
setWrapStyleWord method of JTextArea
shadow a field
shallow copy
shape
Shape class hierarchy 2nd 3rd
Shape Hierarchy exercise
Shape object
shapes
Shapes.java
Shapes2.java
Shapes2JPanel.java
ShapesJPanel.java
shared buffer
shell
shell prompt in UNIX
shell script
shift
Shift
shifted and scaled random integers
shifting value
shifting value (random numbers)
"shipping" section of the computer
shopping list
SHORT
Short class
short keyword 2nd
short primitive type
short promotions
short-circuit evaluation
shortcut key
show method of JPopup Menu
ShowColors.java
ShowColors2.java
ShowColors2 JFrame.java
showDialog method of JColor Chooser
showDocument method of Applet Context
showInputDialog method of JOptionPane 2nd
showMessageDialog method of JOptionPane 2nd
showOpenDialog method of JFileChooser
showStatus method of Applet
shuffle algorithm
shuffle method of Collections 2nd 3rd
Shuffleboard exercise
shuffling
shutdown method of Executor Service
shutdown.bat (Tomcat)
shutdown.sh (Tomcat)
sibling
side effect
Sieve of Eratosthenes
Sieve of Eratosthenes, using a BitSet
signal method of Condition 2nd 3rd
signal value
signalAll method of Condition
signature
signature of a method
signed right shift (>>) 2nd 3rd
Silicon Graphics
Simple commands
Simple Compiler
simple condition
Simple Interpreter
Simple Language
simple name
SimpleGraph applet
simplest activity diagram 2nd
Simpletron Machine Language (SML) 2nd
Simpletron simulator 2nd 3rd 4th
simulate a middle-mouse-button click on a one- or two-button mouse
simulate a right-mouse-button click on a one-button mouse
simulation
  coin tossing
Simulation: Tortoise and the Hare 2nd
simulator
sin method of Math
Since: note
sine
single entry point
single exit point
single inheritance
single quotes
single static import
single-entry/single-exit control statements 2nd
single-line (end-of-line) comment 2nd 3rd
single-precision floating-point number
single-quote character
single-selection list
single-selection statement 2nd 3rd
  if
Single-Threaded Execution design pattern 2nd
single-type-import declaration
SINGLE_INTERVAL_SELECTION constant of ListSelectionModel 2nd 3rd
constant of ListSelectionModel
SingleThreadModel interface
Singleton design pattern 2nd
singly linked list
size
size method
  of BitSet
  of List 2nd
  of Map
  of PriorityQueue
  of Vector
size of the applet's display area
sleep interval
sleep method of Thread 2nd 3rd 4th
sleeping thread
small diamond symbol (for representing a decision in a UML activity diagram)
smallest integer in a group
smallest of several integers
SML
snap-to ticks for JSlider
"sneakernet"
socket
Socket class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
  close method
  getInetAddress method
  getInputStream method 2nd
  getOutputStream method
  setSoTimeOut method
socket-based communication
SocketException class
SocketImpl
SocketMessageManager implementation of MessageManager for communicating via Sockets and multicast DatagramPackets
SocketTimeoutException class
software 2nd
software asset
Software Engineering Observations

Software life cycle

software model

software reuse

Software simulation

solid circle

solid circle (for representing an initial state in a UML diagram) in the UML

solid circle enclosed in an open circle (for representing the end of a UML activity diagram)

solid circle surrounded by a hollow circle

solid diamonds (representing composition) in the UML

Solves Towers of Hanoi problem with a recursive method

sort

sort algorithms

  - bubble sort
  - bucket sort
  - insertion sort
  - merge sort
  - quicksort
  - selection sort

sort key

sort method of Arrays

sort method of Collections

SortDemo applet

sorted array

sorted order

SortedMap interface

SortedSet interface

  - first method
  - last method

sorting

  - descending order

  - with a Comparator

sorting data

sorting techniques
sound 2nd
sound card
sound engine
source code 2nd
SOUTH constant of BorderLayout 2nd
SOUTH constant of GridBagConstraints
SOUTHEAST constant of GridBagConstraints
SOUTHWEST constant of GridBagConstraints
space character
space flag 2nd
space/time trade-off
spanky.triumf.ca/www/fractint/fractint.html
speaker
speaking to a computer
special character 2nd
Special Section: Advanced String Manipulation Exercises
Special Section: Building Your Own Compiler 2nd
Special Section: Building Your Own Computer
special symbol
specialization in the UML
specifics
Spelling Checker project
sphere
spiral 2nd
split a statement over multiple lines
split method of String
split the array in merge sort
spooler
spooling
SpreadSheet applet
SQL 2nd 3rd 4th
DELETE statement 2nd 3rd 4th
FROM clause
GROUP BY
INNER JOIN clause 2nd
INSERT statement 2nd
LIKE clause 2nd
ON clause
ORDER BY clause 2nd 3rd
SELECT query 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
SET clause
UPDATE statement
VALUES clause
WHERE clause

SQL keyword
SQL script
SQL statement
SQLException class 2nd
sqrt method of Math 2nd 3rd
square brackets, [] 2nd
square root
Squares eliminated by placing a queen in the upper-left corner of a chessboard
stack 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
Stack class 2nd
isEmpty method
of package java.util 2nd
peek method
pop method
push method
stack frame
Stack generic class
Stack<Double>
Stack<Integer>
Stack manipulation program
stack operation
pop
push
stack overflow
stack trace
stack unwinding
StackComposition uses a composed List object
stacked building block
stacking control statements 2nd 3rd
stacking rule
StackInheritance extends class List
StackTraceElement class
  getClassName method
  getFileName method
  getLineNumber method
  getMethodName method

"standalone" units
standard action 2nd
standard error stream (System.err) 2nd 3rd 4th
standard input stream (System.in) 2nd 3rd
standard output stream (System.out) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
standard reusable component
standard time format
"standardized, interchangeable parts"
start method of JApplet 2nd 3rd
start method of Player
starting angle
startsWith method of String
startup.bat (Tomcat)
startup.sh (Tomcat)
starvation
state
state button
State design pattern 2nd 3rd 4th
  context object
  State class
  state object
  State subclass
state diagram for the ATM object
state diagram in the UML
state in the UML 2nd
state machine diagram in the UML 2nd
state object
state of an object 2nd

stateChanged method of ChangeListener

statement 2nd

Statement

Statement interface 2nd 3rd

executeQuery method

Statements

break 2nd 3rd 4th

continue 2nd 3rd

control statement 2nd 3rd 4th

control-statement nesting

control-statement stacking

do...while 2nd 3rd 4th

double selection 2nd

empty 2nd

empty statement

for 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th

if 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th

if...else 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th

labeled continue

looping

multiple selection

nested

nested if...else 2nd

repetition 2nd 3rd

return 2nd

selection 2nd

single selection

switch 2nd 3rd 4th

switch multiple-selection statement

while 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th

static
class member 2nd
class member demonstration
class variable
field (class variable)
keyword
method 2nd 3rd
static binding
static class variable used maintain a count of the number of Employee objects in memory
static import 2nd
    of Math methods
    on demand
static method cannot access non-static class members
status bar
step debugger command
step up debugger command
stop debugger command
stop method
    of AudioClip
    of JApplet 2nd
    of Timer
stop method of JApplet
store method of Properties
straight-line form
Strategy design pattern 2nd 3rd
strategy object
stream 2nd
stream header
stream of bytes
stream processing
stream socket 2nd 3rd
stream-based communications
streams
streams-based transmission
strictfp keyword
strictly self-similar fractal string 2nd literal of characters
String array String class
charAt method 2nd 3rd compareTo method 2nd concat method
deleteCharAt method endsWith method equals method
equalsIgnoreCase method 2nd 3rd format method 2nd getChars method
indexOf method lastIndexOf method length method
matches method regionMatches method replace
replaceAll method replaceFirst method split method
startsWith method substring method 2nd 3rd toCharArray method 2nd
toLowerCase toUpperCase trim method
valueOf method String class character-manipulation methods
String class constructors
String class searching methods
String class startsWith and endsWith methods
String class substring methods
String class valueOf methods
String comparison methods
String comparisons
string concatenation 2nd
string literal
String method concat
String methods replace, toLowerCase, toUpperCase, trim and toCharArray
String permutations generated with a recursive method
StringBuffer class 2nd 3rd 4th
  append method
  capacity method
  charAt method
  delete method
  ensureCapacity method
  getChars method
  insert method
  length method
  reverse method
  setCharAt method
  trim method
StringBuffer class append methods
StringBuffer class character-manipulation methods
StringBuffer class constructors
StringBuffer constructors
StringBuffer method length and capacity
StringBuffer methods insert and delete
StringIndexOutOfBoundsException class 2nd
StringReader class
StringTokenizer class 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
  countTokens
  hasMoreTokens method 2nd
nextToken method 2nd
StringTokenizer object used to tokenize strings
StringWriter class
Stroke object 2nd
strongly typed languages
Stroustrup, Bjarne 2nd
structural design pattern
structural design patterns 2nd 3rd
structure of a system 2nd
structured programming 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th
summary
Structured Query Language (SQL) 2nd
Student Poll exercise
subarray
subclass 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
subdirectory
subject object
sublist
subList method of List
submenu
submit method of ExecutorService 2nd
subprotocol for communication
subscribe
subscript (index)
substring method of String 2nd 3rd
subsystem
subtraction 2nd
operator, -
suffix F
suffix F for float literals
suffix L for long literals
sum the elements of an array
Summary of the 32 recursion examples and exercises in this text
Summing integers with the for repetition statement
Sun Audio file format (.au extension) 2nd
Sun Java System Application Server
Sun Microsystems 2nd
call superclass constructor
super.paintComponent( g )
superclass 2nd 3rd 4th
constructor
constructor call syntax
default constructor
direct 2nd
indirect 2nd
method overridden in a subclass

Superclass private instance variables are accessible to a subclass via public or protected methods inherited by the subclass

Supercomputer
Supermarket Simulation
surrogates
survey
Survey.html document that allows users to submit survey responses to SurveyServlet
suspend a thread 2nd
suspend an applet's execution
swapping values 2nd
sweep 2nd
sweep counterclockwise
Swing Event Package
Swing GUI components
Swing GUI components package
SwingConstants interface 2nd 3rd
SwingUtilities class 2nd
invokeLater method
updateComponentTreeUI method
switch logic
switch multiple-selection statement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
activity diagram with break statements

case label 2nd
controlling expression
default case 2nd 3rd
testing multiple input values

Sybase
Sybase, Inc.
symbol table
synchronization 2nd 3rd 4th
synchronization wrapper
synchronize
synchronize access to a collection
synchronized

keyword 2nd 3rd
method
statement
synchronized collection
synchronous call
synchronous error
syntax
syntax error 2nd 3rd
system
system behavior
System class

arraycopy
exit method 2nd
setErr method
setIn method
setOut

system requirements
system service
system structure
System.err (standard error stream) 2nd 3rd 4th
System.in (standard input stream)
System.out
print method 2nd
println method 2nd 3rd
System.out (standard output stream) 2nd
System.out.print method 2nd
System.out.printf method 2nd
System.out.println method 2nd 3rd
SystemColor class
Index

[S] [A] [B] [C] [D] [E] [F] [G] [H] [I] [J] [K] [L] [M] [N] [O] [P] [Q] [R] [S] [T] [U] [V] [W] [X] [Y] [Z]

tab
tab character, \t 2nd
Tab key
tab stops 2nd
table 2nd
table element
table of values
TableModel interface
   addTableModelListener
   getColumnClass method 2nd
   getColumnCount method 2nd
   getColumnName method 2nd
   getRowCount method
   getValueAt method
   removeTableModelListener
TableModelEvent class
tabular format
tag
tag extension mechanism
tag library 2nd 3rd
 tagging an interface
tagging interface 2nd 3rd
taglib directive
tail of a queue 2nd
tailSet method of TreeSet
take method of BlockingQueue 2nd
tan method of Math
tangent
target frame
TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)
TCP/IP
Telephone system
Telephone-Number Word Generator exercise
Template Method design pattern 2nd 3rd
temporary
terminal
Terminal application (Max OS X)
terminal window
terminate a loop
terminate an application
terminate successfully
terminated state
termination housekeeping 2nd
termination model of exception handling
termination phase
termination test
ternary operator
Testing the factorial method
Testing the fibonacci method
Testing the iterative factorial solution
Testing the recursive method for permutations
Testing the Towers of Hanoi solution
Text analysis
text editor 2nd
text field
text file
Text Flasher exercise
Text Package
text that jumps
Text-printing program
text/html MIME type 2nd
TexturePaint class 2nd 3rd
thick lines
thin client
third tier
this

keyword 2nd 3rd
reference
to call another constructor of the same class
used implicitly and explicitly to refer to members of an object
this keyword
Thompson, Ken
thread 2nd 3rd
life cycle 2nd
of execution
scheduling 2nd
state
synchronization 2nd 3rd
Thread class
  currentThread method
  getName method
  interrupt method
  sleep method 2nd 3rd 4th
thread pool
thread safe
thread scheduler
thread states
  blocked
  new
  ready
  runnable
  running
  terminated
  timed waiting
  waiting
thread-life-cycle statechart diagram 2nd
Threads sleeping and printing

two-button mouse
two-dimensional rectangle
two-dimensional shape
two-dimensional view
two-dimensional, high-resolution, color graphics
two-tier distributed application
two-tier distributed applications
TwoDimensionalShape

throughput

throw an exception

throw keyword

throw point

throw statement

Throwable class

getMessage method

getStackTrace method

printStackTrace method

Throwable class hierarchy

Throwable methods getMessage, getStackTrace and printStackTrace

throws clause

throws keyword

thumb of JSlider

Tic-Tac-Toe

tick marks on JSlider

TicTacToe

applet

exercise

tightly balanced tree

tightly packed binary tree

tightly packed tree

time formatting

Time to Calculate FibonacciNumbers

Time1 abstract data type implementation as a class

Time1 class declaration maintains the time in 24-hour format
object used in a program
object used in an application
class with overloaded constructors
timed waiting state
class 2nd 3rd
getDelay method
isRunning method
setDelay method
stop method
timesharing
timeslice
timeslicing
timing diagram in the UML
title bar 2nd
title bar of a window
title bar of internal window
tables table of books database 2nd
toArray method of List 2nd
toBinaryString method of Integer
toCharArray method of String 2nd
toggle buttons
token
token of a String
tokenization
toLowerCase method of Character
toLowerCase of String
Tomcat
  shutdown.bat
  shutdown.sh
  startup.bat
  startup.sh
Tomcat documentation home page
Tomcat server 2nd 3rd 4th
Tomcat shut down
Tomcat start
tool tips 2nd 3rd
top 2nd

TOP constant of JTabbedPane
top of a stack
top-down, stepwise refinement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
top-level class
Tortoise and the Hare 2nd
Tortoise and the Hare exercise
toString method of ArrayList 2nd
toString method of BitSet
toString method of Formatter
toString method of Object 2nd
total 2nd
Total Sales
Totaling the numbers in an ArrayList<Number>
toUpperCase method of Character
toUpperCase of String
toURL method of File
Towers of Hanoi
  for the case with four disks
TowersOfHanoi.java
TowersOfHanoiTest.java
trace request
track mouse events
traditional comment
trailing white-space characters
Transaction class (ATM case study) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
transaction file
transaction record
transaction-processing program 2nd 3rd 4th
TransactionProcessor.java
TransactionProcessorTest.java
transfer of control 2nd 3rd 4th
transient keyword 2nd
transition
transition arrow 2nd 3rd 4th
transition arrow in the UML
transition between states in the UML 2nd
translate method of Graphics2D
translation
time error
time include
translator program

transparency of a JComponent
transparent Swing GUI components
traverse a tree
traverse an array
tree

Tree link in API

TreeMap class

TreeNode and Tree class declarations for a binary search tree

TreeSet class

head method
tail method

trigger an event

trigonometric cosine
trigonometric sine
trigonometric tangent

trim method of String
trim method of StringBuffer
trimToSize method of Vector

true

truncate

truncated

trusted source

truth table

truth tables

for operator

for operator &&

for operator ^

for operator ||

try block

try block terminates

try keyword

try statement

Turtle Graphics
Turtle Graphics exercise
two largest values
two-dimensional array 2nd 3rd
Two-dimensional array representation of a maze
two-dimensional array with three rows and four columns
two-dimensional data structure
two-dimensional graphics
two-dimensional graphics demo
two-dimensional shapes
Two-Phase Termination design pattern 2nd
two's complement
TwoDimensionalShape class
twos position
type 2nd 3rd
Type 1 (JDBC-to-ODBC bridge) driver
Type 2 (Native-API, partly Java) driver
Type 3 (Pure Java client to server) driver
Type 4 (Pure Java) driver
type argument
type attribute of <jsp:useBean> action
type parameter 2nd 3rd
  scope
  section 2nd
type variable
type-import-on-demand declaration
type-wrapper class 2nd 3rd
  implements Comparable
  TYPE_FORWARD_ONLY constant
  TYPE_INT_RGB constant of BufferedImage
  TYPE_SCROLL_INSENSITIVE constant
  TYPE_SCROLL_SENSITIVE constant
types
  boolean
  Types class
typesetting system
typing in a text field
U+yyyy (Unicode notational convention) 2nd
UDP (User Datagram Protocol) 2nd
UIManager class
    getInstalledLookAndFeels method
    LookAndFeelInfo nested class
    setLookAndFeel method
UIManager.LookAndFeelInfo class getClassName method
UML
    activity diagram 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
    arrow
    class diagram
    diamond
    dotted line
    final state
    guard condition
    merge symbol
    note
    solid circle
    solid circle surrounded by a hollow circle
UML (Unified Modeling Language) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th
diagram
UML Activity Diagram
    small diamond symbol (for representing a decision) in the UML
    solid circle (for representing an initial state) in the UML
    solid circle enclosed in an open circle (for representing the end of an
activity) in the UML
UML Class Diagram
  attribute compartment
  operation compartment
UML Partners
UML Sequence Diagram
  activation
  arrowhead 2nd
  lifeline
UML State Diagram
  rounded rectangle (for representing a state) in the UML
  solid circle (for representing an initial state) in the UML
UML Use Case Diagram
  actor
  use case
  unambiguous (Unicode design basis) 2nd
  unary cast operator
  unary operator 2nd
  unboxing conversion
  uncaught exception
  unchecked exceptions
  uncovering a component
  underlying data structure
  underscore (_ ) SQL wildcard character 2nd
  uneditable JTextArea
  uneditable text or icons
  unicast
  Unicode character set 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th
  Unicode Consortium 2nd
  Unicode Standard
  Unicode Standard design basis
  Unicode Transformation Format (UTF)
  Unicode value of the character typed
  Unified Modeling Language (UML) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th
  uniform (Unicode design principle)
  Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) 2nd
Uniform Resource Locator (URL) 2nd
union of two sets
universal (Unicode design basis)
universal (Unicode design principle)
universal-time format 2nd
UNIX 2nd 3rd
Unix
UNIX 2nd 3rd
UnknownHostException class
unlock method of Lock 2nd
unmodifiable collection
unmodifiable wrapper
unnecessary parentheses
unsigned right shift (>>>) 2nd 3rd
unspecified number of arguments
UnsupportedOperationException class
UnsupportedOperationException class
unwatch debugger command
unwinding the method call stack
UPDATE SQL statement 2nd 3rd
updateComponentTreeUI method of SwingUtilities
updateString method of CachedRowSet
upper bound
  of a type parameter
  of a wildcard
upper-left corner (0, 0) coordinates of an applet
upper-left corner of a GUI component 2nd
upper-left x-coordinate
upper-left y-coordinate
uppercase letter 2nd
URI (Uniform Resource Identifier) 2nd
URI path of a resource
URL
URL (Uniform Resource Locator) 2nd 3rd 4th
URL class 2nd 3rd
URL format
URL pattern
url-pattern element 2nd 3rd 4th
Use case diagram in the UML 2nd
Use case in the UML 2nd
Use case modeling
User Datagram Protocol (UDP) 2nd
User interface
User interface tier
User-defined classes
Using an object to store a shape
Using floating-point conversion characters
Using integer conversion characters
Using `SortedSets` and `TreeSets`
Using the `#` flag with conversion characters `o` and `x`
Using the `( )` flag to place parentheses around negative numbers
Using the `0` (zero) flag
Using the character and string conversion characters
Using the enhanced `for` statement to total integers in an array
Using the space flag to print a space before non-negative values
Using the `,` flag to display number with thousands separator
Using variable-length argument lists
Using `ChainedExceptions.java`
Using `Exceptions.java` 2nd 3rd
UTF (Unicode Transformation Format)
UTF-16 2nd
UTF-32 2nd 3rd
UTF-8 2nd
Utilities Package
Utility class that displays bit representation of an integer
utility method
vacated bits
valid identifier
validate method of Container
Validating user information using regular expressions
validity checking
value
value attribute of <jsp:param> action
value attribute of <jsp:setProperty> action
value of a param
value to the nearest integer
valueChanged method of ListSelectionListener
valueOf method of String
VALUES
values method of an enum
VALUES SQL clause
varargs (variable-length argument lists)
variable 2nd
   declaration statement
   name 2nd
variable is not modifiable
variable scope
variable-length argument list
variables
   reference types
Vector class 2nd 3rd 4th
   add method
   capacity method
   contains method
   firstElement method
indexOf method
insertElementAt method
isEmpty method
lastElement method
remove method
removeAllElements method
removeElementAt method
set method
size method
trimToSize method

Vector class of package java.util

verb phrase in requirements document

Version note

VERTICAL constant of GridBagConstraints
vertical coordinate 2nd
vertical gap space
vertical scrolling
vertical strut

VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_ALWAYS constant of JScrollPane
VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_AS_NEEDED constant of JScrollPane
VERTICAL_SCROLLBAR_NEVER constant of JScrollPane

vi
video 2nd
video game

View

view

view (in MVC)

view a shape from different angles

virtual key code

virtual machine (VM)

visibility in the UML

visibility marker in the UML

Visitor design pattern

Visual Basic .NET

Visual C++ .NET

visual feedback
Visualizing Recursion exercise

Vlissides, John

void keyword 2nd 3rd

volatile keyword

volume of a sphere 2nd
wait for a new connection
wait method of Object 2nd
waiting line
waiting state
Waiting thread
walk the list
WAR (Web application archive)
"warehouse" section of the computer
watch debugger command
waterfall model
Web application
Web application archive (WAR)
Web application deployment descriptor
Web application deployment tool
Web browser 2nd 3rd
execute an applet 2nd
Web form 2nd
Web page
Web page with animation
Web server 2nd 3rd 4th
Web servers that support servlets
Web sites

apache.towardex.com/jakarta/tomcat-5/v5.0.25/bin/
chortle.ccsu.ctstateu.edu/cs151/cs151java.html
cte.rockhurst.edu/burgerk/research/scramble/paper.pdf
dev.mysql.com/doc/connector/j/en/index.html 2nd
dev.mysql.com/doc/mysql/en/index.html 2nd
dev.mysql.com/downloads/mysql/4.0.html
www.nasa.gov/multimedia/highlights/index.html
www.netbeans.org
www.omg.org
www.pngart.com
www.soundcentral.com
www.sql.org
www.thefreesite.com
www.uml.org 2nd
www.w3.org
www.w3.org/Addressing
www.w3.org/Jigsaw/
www.w3.org/Protocols/HTTP
wwws.sun.com/software/products/appsrvr/home_appsrvr.html
wwws.sun.com/software/sundev/jde/

web-app element
WEB-INF 2nd
WEB-INF/classes
WEB-INF/lib
web.xml 2nd 3rd
webapps directory

Websites
  grouper.ieee.org/groups/754/
weightx field of GridBagConstraints
weighty field of GridBagConstraints
welcome file
Welcome file index.html
welcome-file element
welcome-file-list element
WelcomeServlet that responds to a simple HTTP get request
WelcomeServlet2 responds to a get request containing data
WelcomeServlet3 responds to a post request containing data
well-known port number
WEST constant of BorderLayout 2nd
WEST constant of GridBagConstraints
WHERE SQL clause 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th
while repetition statement 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th
activity diagram in the UML
white space 2nd 3rd
whitespace character 2nd 3rd
whole/part relationship
widgets
width
width of a rectangle in pixels
width of an applet in pixels
wildcard
   as a type argument
   without an upper bound
Wildcard test program
wildcards 2nd 3rd
type argument
upper bound
window 2nd 3rd 4th
Window class
   addWindowListener method
dispose method
   pack method
window events
window gadgets
window-event-handling methods
windowActivated method of WindowListener
WindowAdapter class
windowClosed method of WindowListener
windowClosing method of WindowListener
WindowConstants interface
   DISPOSE_ON_CLOSE constant
windowDeactivated method of WindowListener
windowDeiconified method of WindowListener
windowIconified method of WindowListener
windowing system
WindowListener interface 2nd 3rd
   windowActivated method
windowClosed method
windowClosing method
windowDeactivated method
windowDeiconified method
windowIconified method
windowOpened method

windowOpened method of WindowListener

Windows 2nd 3rd 4th 5th
Windows look-and-feel 2nd
Windows Notepad
Windows Performance Package
Windows Wave file format (.wav extension)

WireFrame applet

with identical parameter lists cause compilation errors

Withdrawal class (ATM case study) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th 7th 8th 9th 10th 11th 12th 13th 14th 15th 16th 17th 18th 19th 20th 21st
WORA (Write Once Run Anywhere)

word character

word processor 2nd

workflow

workflow of an object in the UML

workstation

World Wide Web (WWW) 2nd 3rd 4th 5th

browser 2nd

worst-case run time for an algorithm

wrap stream types 2nd

wrapper methods of the Collections class

wrapper object (collections)

wrapping stream objects 2nd

wrapping text in a JTextArea

writeable

writeBoolean method of DataOutput

writeByte method of DataOutput

writeBytes method of DataOutput

writeChar method of DataOutput

writeChars method
of DataOutput
of RandomAccessFile
writeDouble method
of DataOutput
of RandomAccessFile
writeFloat method
of DataOutput
writeInt method
of RandomAccessFile
writeInt method of DataOutput
writeLong method of DataOutput
writeObject method
of ObjectOutput
of ObjectOutputStream
Writer class
WriteRandomFile.java
WriteRandomFileTest.java
writeShort method of DataOutput
writeUTF method of DataOutput
Writing data to a random-access file
Writing the Word Equivalent of a Check Amount
www-3.ibm.com/software/webservers/appserv/
www.42explore.com/fractal.htm
www.animationfactory.com
www.apache.org
www.arcytech.org/java/fractals/koch.shtml
www.blueJ.org
www.borland.com
www.cafeaulait.org/javatutorial.html
www.clipart.com
www.cs.ttu.edu/~denton/fractals/Koch.html
www.cs.utexas.edu/users/scottm/cs307/handouts/Slides/lec11Recursive
www.deitel.com 2nd
Index

x-coordinate 2nd 3rd 4th
x axis 2nd
X_AXIS constant of Box
XHTML 2nd 3rd 4th 5th 6th
XHTML comments
XML (eXtensible Markup Language) 2nd
xor method of BitSet
Index

y-coordinate 2nd 3rd
y-axis 2nd
Y_AXIS constant of Box
Index

zero-based counting
zeroth element
zooming